

Dvoretsky's



ENDGAME MANUAL

5th
Edition

Revised by
Karsten Müller

Foreword to the Fifth Edition by Vladimir Kramnik

Table of Contents

Title page
From the Author, First Edition
Introduction to the Fifth Edition
Foreword by Vladimir Kramnik
Other Signs, Symbols, and Abbreviations

Chapter 1 Pawn Endgames

Key Squares
Corresponding Squares
Opposition
Mined Squares
Triangulation
Other Cases of Correspondence
King vs. Passed Pawns
The Rule of the Square
Réti's Idea
The Floating Square
Three Connected Pawns
Queen vs. Pawns
Knight or Center Pawn
Rook or Bishop Pawn
Pawn Races
The Active King
Zugzwang
Widening the Beachhead
The King Routes
Zigzag
The Pendulum
Shouldering

Breakthrough

The Outside Passed Pawn

Two Rook Pawns with an Extra Pawn on the Opposite Wing

The Protected Passed Pawn

Two Pawns to One

Multi-Pawn Endgames

Undermining

Two Connected Passed Pawns

Stalemate

The Stalemate Refuge

“Semi-Stalemate”

Reserve Tempi

Exploiting Reserve Tempi

Steinitz’s Rule

The g- and h-Pawns vs. the h-Pawn

The f- and h-Pawns vs. the h-Pawn

Both Sides have Reserve Tempi

Chapter 2 Knight versus Pawns

King in the Corner

Mate

Drawn Positions

Knight vs. Rook Pawn

The Knight Defends the Pawn

Chapter 3 Knight Endgames

The Deflecting Knight Sacrifice

Botvinnik’s Formula

Pawns on the Same Side

Chapter 4 Bishop versus Pawns

The Elementary Fortresses

Bishop and Rook Pawn

Pawns at h6 and h7

Pawns at g6 and g7

Bishop at h7 and Pawn at g6

Bishop vs. Disconnected Pawns

Bishop vs. Connected Pawns

Chapter 5 Opposite-Color Bishops

The Most Important Rules

Bishop and Two Connected Pawns vs. Bishop

Separated Passed Pawns

The King Blockades the Passed Pawn

The Bishop Restrains the Passed Pawn

Chapter 6 Bishops of the Same Color

Minimal Material

Bishop and Pawn vs. Bishop

Transposition to Positions with One Pawn

Interference

The Bad Bishop

Fixing Pawns

Zugzwang

Pawns Which Do Not “Play by the Rules”

Barrier

Chapter 7 Bishop versus Knight

Bishop and Pawn vs. Knight

Knight and Pawn vs. Bishop

The Bishop is Superior to the Knight

Cutting the Knight Off

Fixing the Pawns

The Passed Pawn

An Open Position, A More Active King

Defensive Methods with a Knight against a Bishop

The Knight is Superior to the Bishop

Domination and Knight Forks

Fixing the Pawns

Closed Position, Bad Bishop

Chapter 8 Rook versus Pawns

Rook vs. One Pawn

“Moving Downstairs”

Cutting the King Off

Pawn Promotion to a Knight

Stalemate

An Intermediate Check for a Gain of Tempo

Shouldering

Outflanking

Rook vs. Connected Pawns

Rook vs. Separated Pawns

Chapter 9 Rook Endgames

Rook and Pawn vs. Rook

The Pawn on the Seventh Rank

The Pawn on the Sixth Rank

The Pawn on the Fifth Rank

The Umbrella

The Pawn Has Not Crossed the Mid-line

A Rook and Rook Pawn vs. a Rook

The King is in Front of Its Own Pawn

The Rook is in Front of the Pawn and the Pawn Is on the Seventh Rank

The Rook is in Front of the Pawn and the Pawn Is on the Sixth Rank

a- and h-Pawns

A Rook and Two Pawns vs. a Rook

Doubled Pawns

Connected Pawns

f- and h-Pawns

Other Pairs of Disconnected Pawns

A Far-Advanced Passed Pawn

Transition to a Rook vs. Pawns Endgame

Lasker's Idea

A Rook and Two Pawns vs. a Rook and Pawn

All Pawns are on the Same Wing

Pawns on Opposite Wings

Disconnected Pawns, One of them is Passed

Four Pawns vs. Three on the Same Wing

Balance on One Wing and an Extra Pawn on Another

The Rook Behind Its Own Pawn

The Rook in Front of the Pawn, with the Pawn on the Seventh Rank

The Rook in Front of the Pawn, with the Pawn on the Sixth Rank

A Knight Pawn

When the Attacker Achieves g3-g4

The Rook at the Side of the Pawn

Common Observations about Endgames with Many Pawns

The Rook's Activity

The King's Activity

The King on the Edge

Cutting the King Off

Akiba Rubinstein's Masterpiece

Chapter 10 Rook versus Knight

The Lone Knight

Rook and Pawn vs. Knight and Pawn

Multi-Pawn Endgames

Pawns on One Side of the Board

Pawns on Both Sides

When the Knight is Stronger than the Rook

Chapter 11 Rook versus Bishop

The Lone Bishop

The Dangerous Corner

The Safe Corner

A Bishop Pawn

Rook and Pawn vs. Bishop and Pawn

The Pawns are on the Same File or on Adjacent Files

Rook Pawns

Two Pawns vs. Two on the Same Wing

Three Pawns vs. Three on the Same Wing

Chapter 12 Queen Endgames

Queen and Pawn vs. Queen

Winning Tactical Tricks

Defensive Tactics

Pawns on the Same Wing

A Passed Pawn

An Active Queen

Chapter 13 Queen versus Rook

A Solitary Rook

Queen vs. Rook and Pawn

The Rook behind the Pawn

The Pawn on the Seventh Rank

The Pawn on the Sixth Rank

A Knight Pawn on the Fifth or Sixth Rank

Queen and Pawn vs. Rook and Pawn

Passed Pawns

Pawns on Adjacent Files

A Fortress with Multiple Pawns

Chapter 14 Other Material Relations

Two Extra Pieces

Checkmating with Bishop and Knight

Checkmating with Two Knights

Rook and Knight vs. Rook

Rook and Bishop vs. Rook

Without Pawns

With Pawns

An Extra Bishop or Knight with Queens or Minor Pieces

Rook vs. Two Minor Pieces

Queen vs. Various Pieces

Queen vs. Two Rooks

Chapter 15 General Endgame Ideas

King's Activity

Pawn Power

Zugzwang

Fortresses

A Fortified Camp

A Pawn Barrier

An Imprisoned King

An Imprisoned Piece

Binding

Stalemate

Checkmate

Domination

Bibliography

Indexes

Index of Players

Index of Composers and Analysts

Index of Strategic and Tactical Techniques

Dvoretsky's Endgame Manual

by
Mark Dvoretsky

Fifth Edition
Revised by Karsten Müller
Foreword by Vladimir Kramnik



2020

Russell Enterprises, Inc.

Milford, CT USA

Dvoretsky's Endgame Manual

© Copyright 2003, 2006, 2008, 2011, 2014

Mark Dvoretsky

© Copyright 2020

Leonid Dvoretsky

All Rights Reserved

ISBN: 978-1-949859-18-8 (print)

ISBN: 978-1-949859-19-5 (eBook)

No part of this book may be used, reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any manner or form whatsoever or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the express written permission from the publisher except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles or reviews.

Published by:

Russell Enterprises, Inc.

PO Box 3131

Milford, CT 06460 USA

<http://www.russell-enterprises.com>

info@russell-enterprises.com

Cover design by Opus 1 Design and Fierce Ponies

Printed in the United States of America

From the Author (First Edition)

Endgame theory is not a complicated subject to study!

All one needs is thorough knowledge of a limited number of “precise” positions (as a rule, elementary ones) plus some of the most important principles, evaluations, and standard techniques. The question is, how to select the most important material from the thousands of endings analyzed in various handbooks? That is why this book was written: it offers the basic information you need as the foundation of your own personal endgame theory.

As long ago as 1970, when I was just a young chess master and a student at Moscow University, I was unexpectedly invited to give some endgame lectures to the chess faculty of the Moscow High School for Sports. It was then that I had to think about what exactly a practical chess player must study. I defined sound methods of studying endgame theory (from the point of view of logic, rather obvious ones) and prepared examples of the most important types of endgames (pawn, rook-and-pawn endgames, and those with opposite-color bishops). I also prepared a series of lectures on the general principles of endgame play. By the way, the main ideas of that series became (with my permission) the basis of the popular book *Endgame Strategy* by Mikhail Shereshevsky (I recommend that book to my readers).

Later on, these materials, continually corrected and enlarged, were used in teaching numerous apprentices. They proved to be universal and useful for players of widely different levels: from ordinary amateurs to the world’s leading grandmasters. My work with grandmasters, some of them belonging to the world’s Top Ten, have convinced me that almost none of them had studied chess endings systematically. They either did not know or did not remember many important endgame positions and ideas, which can be absorbed even by those of relatively modest chess experience. As a result, even among grandmasters, grave errors occur even in elementary situations: you will find plenty of examples in this book. Some grandmasters asked me to help them, and our studies resulted usually in a substantial improvement of their tournament achievements. Two weeks of intensive study were usually more than enough to eliminate the gaps in their endgame education.

So, what will you find in this book?

Precise positions

This is our term for concrete positions – positions with a minimum number of pawns, which should be memorized and which will serve as guideposts again and again in your games.

The hardest part of preparing this book was deciding which positions to include and which to leave out. This required rejection of many examples that were intrinsically interesting and even instructive, but of little practical value. Common sense dictates that effort should be commensurate to the expected benefit. Human memory is limited, so there is no sense in filling it up with rarely-seen positions that will probably never occur in our actual games. One should study relatively few positions, the most important and most probable, but study and understand them perfectly. One should not remember long and perplexing analyses. We may never have an opportunity to reproduce them in our games, and we

will certainly forget them sooner or later. Our basic theoretical knowledge must be easy to remember and comprehend. Some complicated positions are also important, but we may absorb their general evaluations and basic ideas, plus perhaps a few of their most important lines only.

The positions that I consider part of the basic endgame knowledge system are shown by diagrams and comments in blue print. [Text which had appeared in blue in prior editions is now highlighted with a light gray background in the fifth edition.] If the explanatory notes are too complicated or less important the print is black; these positions are also useful but there is not much sense in committing them to memory.

Endgame ideas

These represent, of course, the most significant part of endgame theory. Study of certain endgame types can be almost fully reduced to absorbing ideas (general principles, standard methods and evaluations) rather than to memorizing precise positions.

When discussing precise positions, we will certainly point out the endgame ideas in them. But many standard ideas transcend any particular precise position. These ideas should be absorbed with the help of schemata – very simple positions where a technique or a tool works in a distilled form and our attention is not distracted by any analysis of side lines. Over the course of time we may forget the precise shape of a schema but will still remember the technique. Another method of absorbing endgame ideas is to study practical games or compositions where the ideas have occurred in the most attractive form.

The schemata and the most instructive endgames are represented by color diagrams as well. Plus, important rules, recommendations and names of the important tools are given in ***bold italics***.

As I am sure you realize, the choice of the ideas and precise positions included in this system of basic endgame knowledge is, to some extent, a subjective matter. Other authors might have made slightly different choices. Nevertheless I strongly recommend that you not ignore the blue text: it is very important. However you of course are free to examine it critically, and to enrich it with the other ideas in this book (those in black print), as well as with examples you already know, from other books or your own games.

Retention of the material

This book would have been rather thin if it included only a laconic list of positions and ideas related to the obligatory minimum of endgame knowledge. As you see, this is not so.

Firstly, the notes are definitely not laconic, after all, this is a manual, not a handbook. In a handbook, a solution of a position is all one needs; in a manual, it should be explained how one can discover the correct solution, which ideas are involved.

Second, in chess (as in any other sphere of human activity), a confident retention of theory cannot be accomplished solely by looking at one example: one must also get some practical training with it. For this purpose, additional examples (those with black diagrams and print) will be helpful.

You will see instructive examples where the basic theoretical knowledge you have just studied is applied in a practical situation. The connection between the theory and the practical case will not

always be direct and obvious. It is not always easy to notice familiar theoretical shapes in a complicated position, and to determine which ideas should be applied in this concrete case. On the other hand, a position may resemble theory very much but some unobvious details exist; one should discover them and find how this difference influences the course of the fight and its final outcome.

Some practical endings are introduced by the heading “Tragicomedy.” These are examples of serious errors committed by various players (sometimes extremely strong ones). The point is not to laugh at them: you know that there are spots even on the sun. These cases are simply excellent warnings against ignoring endgame theory. Additionally, experience shows that these cases tend to be very well remembered by the student, and are therefore very helpful in absorbing and retaining endgame ideas.

Practical training, by which I mean solving appropriate exercises, is essential. You will find a large number and wide variety of exercises in this book, from easy to very difficult. Some solutions are given directly after the exercises, other are placed in the special chapter that concludes the book.

Some exercises do not involve a search for a single correct solution. They are designed for solving in the playing mode, when a series of contingent decisions is required. The best result can be achieved if a friend or coach assists you by referring to the book. But you can also play through the example without assistance, choosing moves for one side and taking the answering moves from the text of the book.

Of course, one need not study all these examples, nor must one solve all the exercises. But still, if you do, your knowledge of the basic theory will be more sound and reliable. Also, self-training develops one’s ability to calculate lines deeply and precisely; this skill is essential for every player.

Analysis

When working on the manuscript, in addition to the large volume of material I had collected myself, I also – quite naturally – used endgame books by other authors. Checking their analysis, I found that an amazingly high number of endings, including many widely known and used in book after book, are analyzed badly and evaluated wrongly. In those cases I went deeper than the concept of the endgame manual required. I felt I had to do it. As I wrote above, studying endgame theory is not a very labor-intensive process, but analysis of a particular endgame, or practical play under time restriction in a tournament, can be a much more sophisticated and complicated matter. Therefore, my readers will find corrected versions of many *interesting endgame analyses, plus some entirely new analyses that are important for endgame theory*.

Presentation of the material

The material here is presented mainly in a traditional manner, classified according to the material relationships on the board. First pawn endings are analyzed, then those with minor pieces, then rook-and-pawn, etc. But this method is not followed too strictly. For example, the queen-versus-pawns section is in chapter 1, to demonstrate immediately what can arise in some sharp pawn endings.

In the chapter on pawn endings, you will meet some terms and techniques (such as “corresponding squares,” “breakthrough,” “shouldering” etc.) that are important for many kinds of endgame. Some of these techniques are illustrated by additional examples with more pieces on the board; as the book continues, we may refer to these cases again.

Some chapters (for example, those on pawn and rook-and-pawn endings) are quite long while others

are rather short. Chapter length does not reflect the relative importance of a kind of endgame; rather it has to do with the richness of ideas and number of precise positions required for full understanding.

The final chapter deals with the most general principles, rules and methods of endgame play, such as king's activity, zugzwang, the fortress etc. Of course, these themes appear earlier in the book, but a review of already familiar ideas improves both understanding and retention.

What this book does not contain

Obviously, one cannot embrace the infinite. I have already described how the book's material has been selected. Now about other limitations.

My own formal definition of "endgame" is: the stage of a chess game when at least one side has no more than one piece (in addition to the king). Positions with more pieces are not discussed here (except for cases when the "extra" pieces are exchanged).

Our subject is endgame theory. Some problems of chess psychology that belong to "general endgame techniques" are beyond our discussion. Interested readers may turn to the aforementioned *Endgame Strategy* by Shereshevsky, or to *Technique for the Tournament Player*, a book by this writer and Yusupov.

Special signs and symbols

The role of the blue text in this book has already been explained. Now the time has come to explain special signs and symbols.

To the left of diagrams, you will find important information. First of all, the indication of who is on move: "W" means White and "B" Black.

If a question mark is shown, the position can be used as an exercise. Most often, there is no special explanation of what is expected from the reader – he must make a correct decision on his own, because in an actual game nobody will tell you whether you should play for a draw or for a win, calculate a lot or simply make a natural move. Sometimes, however, a certain hint is included in a verbal question.

Exercises with solutions that are given separately, at the end of the book, have two sets of numbers beside the diagrams. For example, diagram 1-14, the 14th diagram of chapter 1, also has the designation the information given in the 1/1, meaning it is the first such exercise of chapter 1.

The combination "B?/Play" means that the position is designed for replaying, and that you are to take the black pieces.

Beside some black diagrams, the symbol "\$" appears. This indicates that the position and the idea behind it have theoretical value, though less compared to those from basic theory.

Many years ago, the publication *Chess Informant* developed a system of symbols to describe the evaluation of a position or move. This system is widely used now and, with minimal changes, is applied in this book, too.

Finally, a work of this scope cannot be produced by a single individual. I am grateful to many others for their assistance during the many stages of producing this book. I would like to thank Artur Yusupov and Jacob Aagaard for their encouragement and eventual contributions; Karsten Müller for his help

proof-reading the text and checking the accuracy of variations; Taylor Kingston for his assistance editing the final version of the text; Jim Marfia and Valery Murakhveri for their translations of the original Russian text; Harold van der Heijden for his assistance checking sources; and Hanon Russell, the publisher, for coordinating the efforts of all concerned.

This book is an improved and expanded version of the German-language edition, and in that regard, it is also appropriate to thank Ulrich Dirr, who provided invaluable assistance in the preparation of the German edition and Jürgen Daniel, its publisher. Without their fine work, it would have been significantly more difficult to bring out this English-language edition.

Mark Dvoretsky
Moscow
September 2003

Introduction to the Fifth Edition

With the untimely passing of the great Russian trainer and author Mark Dvoretsky, the question of how his *Endgame Manual* should be continued was raised. The book has been recognized worldwide as one of the classics of chess literature.

Dvoretsky had begun to compile a list of revisions for a possible fifth edition and had sent the list to the publisher. When I was offered the opportunity to supervise this revision, it was an offer I could not refuse. I was quite familiar with the book's exceptional content; I use it regularly with my students.

When Mark Dvoretsky was working on the first edition in 2001 and 2002, I was asked to assist by cross-checking his analysis. For the fifth edition, American grandmaster and endgame authority Alex Fishbein was asked to fill this role. He put my suggestions under the analytical microscope and added a couple of his own discoveries. Most importantly, he reorganized much of the newer and more complicated theory, particularly in the rook endings section, to make it more accessible to the reader. A student of Dvoretsky in the 1990s, Alex Fishbein tried to make the changes and additions to this classic as close as possible stylistically to what Dvoretsky would have wanted.

Undertaking a review and revision is not the result of the work of just one or two people, and there were other contributors. In the section on rook endings alone, Jacob Aagaard's plan in the Steckner position (diagram 9-158), Erwin L'Ami's new Vancura-like plan (diagram 9-168a), and Anish Giri's discovery in $\text{K}+4\Delta s$ vs. $\text{K}+3\Delta s$ (diagram 9-208e) have all been added and recognized. Comments by Chessable followers were also considered.

Previous editions highlighted in blue the text that the author felt all players should study. For the fifth edition, that text is now emphasized with a gray background. This will make it much easier to follow. Some diagrams have been omitted, and others added. If a diagram is new, it will carry a lower-case letter after the number. For example, the new diagram after 9-168 is designated 9-168a. The omission of a diagram is also noted.

For the fifth edition, Mark Dvoretsky's original introduction has been preserved. The other introductions and forewords which have appeared over the years have been removed. However, we are proud to add a new foreword by the fourteenth world champion Vladimir Kramnik.

I would be remiss if I failed to mention the valuable contributions either in this or prior editions by Artur Yusupov, Jack Jeffrey, Yakov Konoval, Michael Taktikos and Vincent Keymer. In addition, Vardan Pogosyan provided additional rook endgame analysis for the fourth edition, checked by Dvoretsky himself with the Lomonosov seven-piece tablebases. My gratitude is also extended to David Kramarley of Chessable for making the comments to the fourth edition on Chessable available.

Finally, there is no better way to close than quoting grandmaster Artur Yusupov, considered by many to be Dvoretsky's most successful student: "I am sure that those who study this work carefully will not only play the endgame better, but overall their play will improve. One of the secrets of the Russian chess school is now before you, dear reader!"

Karsten Müller
Hamburg
April 2020

Foreword

There are many chess endgame books, and some of them are very instructive and undoubtedly are worth careful study. But in my view, *Dvoretsky's Endgame Manual* can be called the Bible among them because the material in it is very well structured and explained.

There are many existing theoretical endgames and it is impossible to remember them all. It is therefore necessary to select those which have a “basic structural value.” I think Dvoretsky succeeded in doing this very well, making outstanding and painstaking efforts to select the “endgame knowledge base” for a chess player. The book contains all that you NEED to know and sets aside everything superfluous, or more precisely, what is not so necessary to remember.

Although of course I had fully mastered this material when the book first came out, I always had it close at hand. Before my world championship matches and candidates' tournaments, I always refreshed and reinforced these endings in my memory by glancing through this book.

Indeed, modern chess has changed a lot, and very often you have to make critical decisions with little time on the clock. A player is often faced with calculating in the seventh hour of play, trying to find the best move, for which there is often simply neither time nor energy. To handle a situation like that, it is crucial to have markers – beacons in this vast ocean of possibilities in the endgame – to know well which endings are winning and which are not, and to have at least a rough idea of how to play them.

While it is impossible to remember everything, if a chessplayer has at his command the assessment and the core criteria of play in theoretical endings, the benefits will be obvious.

Of course, it does not often happen that a precise position from the book appears on the board. But your endgame technique is certain to improve, as well as your defensive abilities. The fact is, if you know which theoretical endings you should enter and which you should not, depending on the result you are trying to achieve, this is a tremendous help in making the correct decisions in many other endgames not covered here.

I think that all chessplayers should express their gratitude to Mark Dvoretsky for undertaking such work, synthesizing in a practical format and in a condensed and well-explained form, the most important endgame knowledge which every chessplayer must possess.

Naturally, in today's world, everyone has gotten used to working with computers, and you can pull up a tablebase and see how a theoretical endgame is evaluated, what correct moves should be made. But it is impossible to attain real endgame mastery by just working with a computer. An explanation of why an endgame is winning, and how to win (or save) it from a human point of view, described in words and in language that a person understands (as opposed to computer variations), is needed.

In short, I consider *Dvoretsky's Endgame Manual* an absolute must for every chess professional, and no less important even for a club player. Learn the endgame principles in this book well, refresh them in your memory from time to time, and your rating and your tournament performances will surely improve.

I often get questions from both chess amateurs and professionals about which books to study to improve their play. The list is short, but have no doubt – I always recommend this book for everyone.

I consider it to be one of the very best chess books published in recent times and I am very pleased with the new enhanced edition that has come out.

Vladimir Kramnik
14th World Champion
April 2020

Signs and Symbols

!	a strong move
!!	a brilliant or unobvious move
?	a weak move, an error
??	a grave error
!?	a move worth consideration
?!	a dubious move
□	a forced move
=	an equal position
≤	White stands slightly better
±	White has a clear advantage
+−	White has a winning position
≥	Black stands slightly better
+	Black has a clear advantage
-+	Black has a winning position
∞	an unclear position
Δ	with the threat or idea of
⇄	with counterplay
#	mate
○	zugzwang
*	in a game: a position that could arise but did not actually happen
*	in a study: a position that is not an initial one
m	match
wm	match for the world championship
zt	zonal tournament
izt	interzonal tournament
ct	candidates' tournament
cm	candidates' match
ch	championship
ch(1)	championship, 1st league

wch world championship

ech European championship

f final

sf semifinal

qf quarterfinal

ol Olympiad

tt team tournament

jr junior competitions

cr correspondence game

simul simultaneous display

Chapter 1

Pawn Endgames

Pawn endings are very concrete – even the tiniest change in the position generally alters the shape and outcome of the struggle. Here you can rarely get along on “general principles” – you **must** know how to calculate accurately.

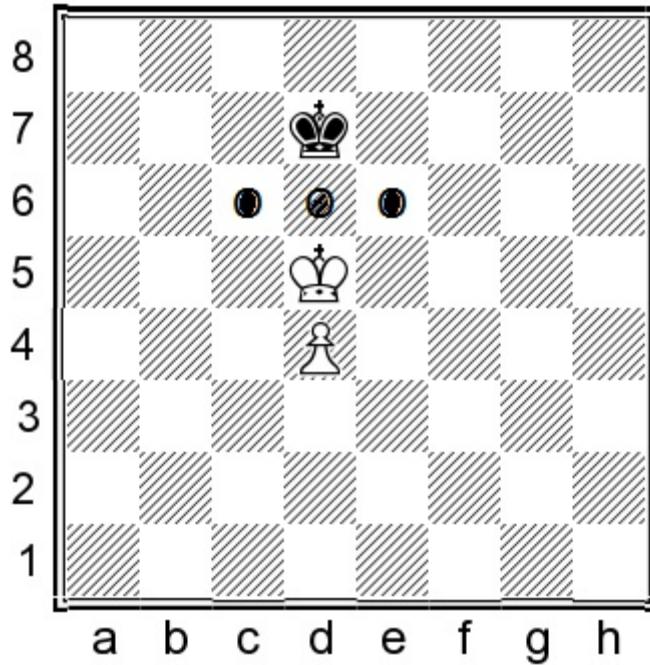
The study of pawn endings chiefly boils down, not to the memorization of exact positions, but to the assimilation of standard techniques, which considerably eases our search for a solution and the calculation of variations.

Many pawn endings are clearly defined tempo-battles. In these endgames, speed is everything: which pawn will queen first, will the king come in time to stop the passed pawn or get to the other side of the board in time. And there are other pawn endings in which a maneuvering war predominates, and in which zugzwang assumes paramount importance.

“Maneuvering” endgames are generally more complex than “rapid” ones, but we shall begin with them anyway, in order to acquire the vital concept of “corresponding squares.” Then we shall switch to studying the ideas involved in “rapid” endgames, before returning once again to the “maneuvering.”

Key Squares

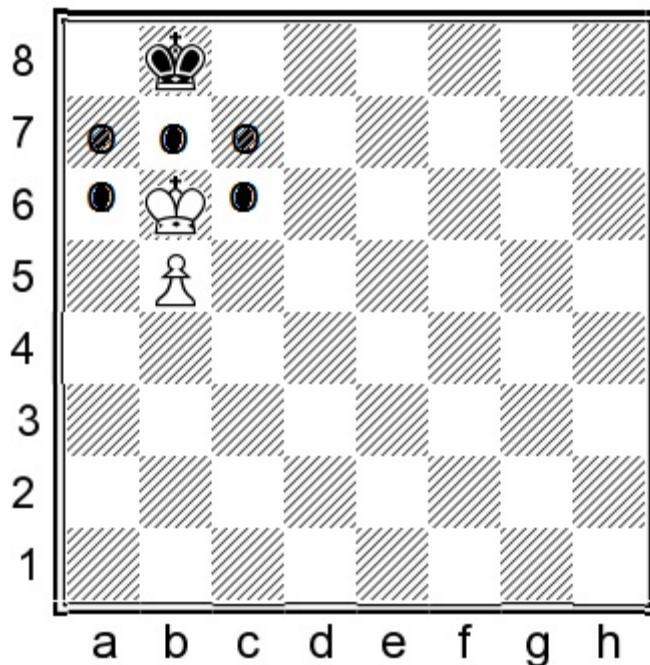
Key Squares are what we call those squares whose occupation by the king assures victory, regardless of whose turn it is to move. In other types of endgames, we may also speak of key squares for other pieces besides the king.



1-1

The d5-square on which the king now stands is not a key square – White to move does not win. The key squares are c6, d6 and e6. Black to move must retreat the king, allowing the enemy king onto one of the key squares. With White to move, the position is drawn, since he cannot move to any key square.

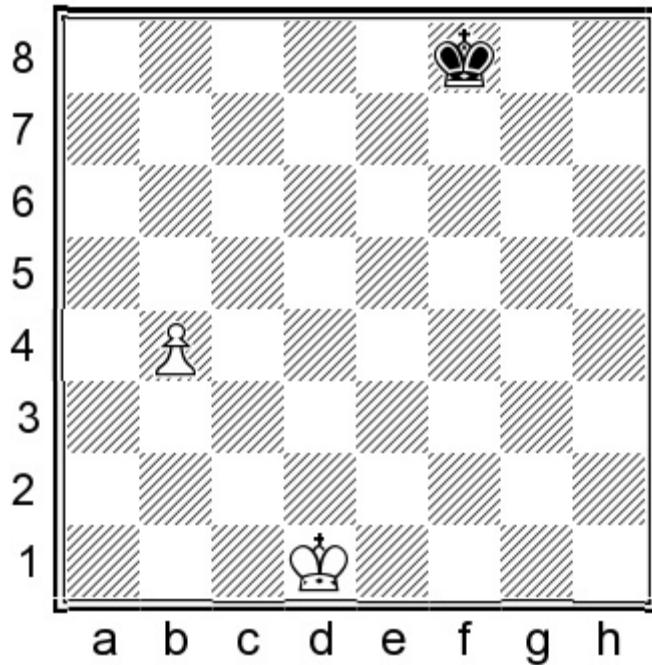
With the pawn on the fifth rank (see the next diagram), the key squares are not only a7, b7 and c7, but also the similar sixth-rank squares a6, b6, and c6. White wins, even if he is on move.



I-2
W

1.†a6! †a8 2.b6 †b8 3.b7+–

Note that 1.†c6?! is inaccurate in view of 1...†a7!, when White has to return to the starting position with 2.†c7 (2.b6+? †a8!O=) 2...†a8 3.†b6 (again, 3.b6?? is stalemate) 3...†b8 4.†a6!, etc.

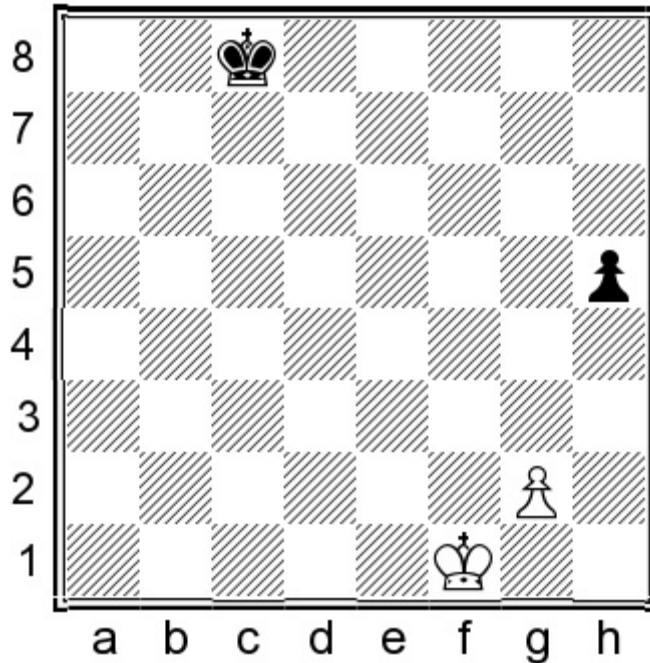


I-3
W?

The key squares are a6, b6 and c6. The sensible thing here is to head for the square farthest from the enemy king, since that will be the one hardest to defend.

1.†c2! †e7 2.†b3 †d6 3.†a4 (3.†c4? †c6=) 3...†c6 4.†a5 (Δ 5.†a6) 4...†b7 5.†b5O+–

J. Moravec 1952



I-4

W?

1.♔f2!

On 1.♔g1? ♔d7, Black's king successfully defends the pawn, whereas now, it is too late:

1.♔f2!

1...♔d7 2.♔g3 ♔e6 3.♔h4+–

1...h4! 2.♔g1!!

The natural 2.♔f3? is refuted by 2...h3! If the pawn is taken, Black's king heads for h8. And if 3.g4, White cannot gain control of the key squares on the sixth rank: 3...♔d7 4.♔g3 ♔e6 5.♔xh3 ♔f6 6.♔h4 ♔g6.

2...h3 3.g3!

The key squares for a pawn on g3 are on the fifth rank – closer to White's king.

3...♔d7 4.♔h2 ♔e6 5.♔xh3 ♔f5 6.♔h4 ♔g6 7.♔g4O+–

Corresponding Squares

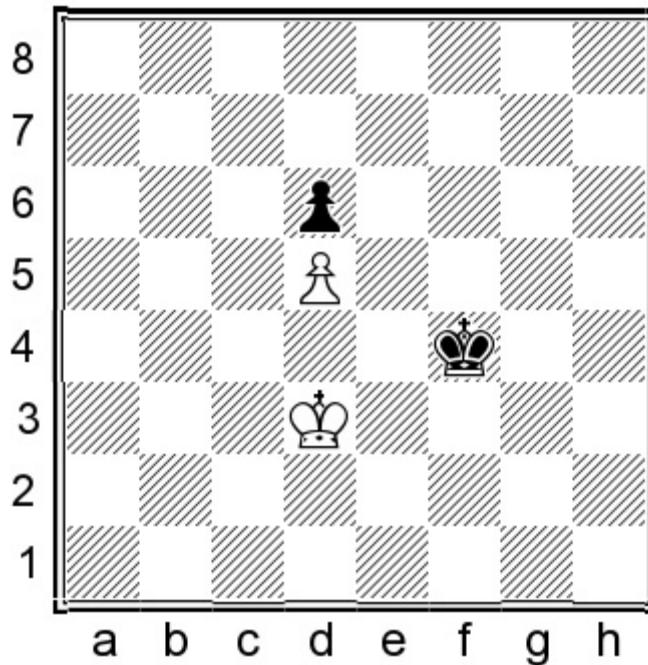
Corresponding squares are squares of reciprocal zugzwang. We may speak of corresponding squares for kings, for kings with pawns, and with other material, we may speak of correspondence between any pairs of pieces.

The most commonly seen cases of corresponding squares are: ***the opposition, mined squares, and triangulation.***

Tragicomедies

Coull – Stanciu

Saloniki ol 1988

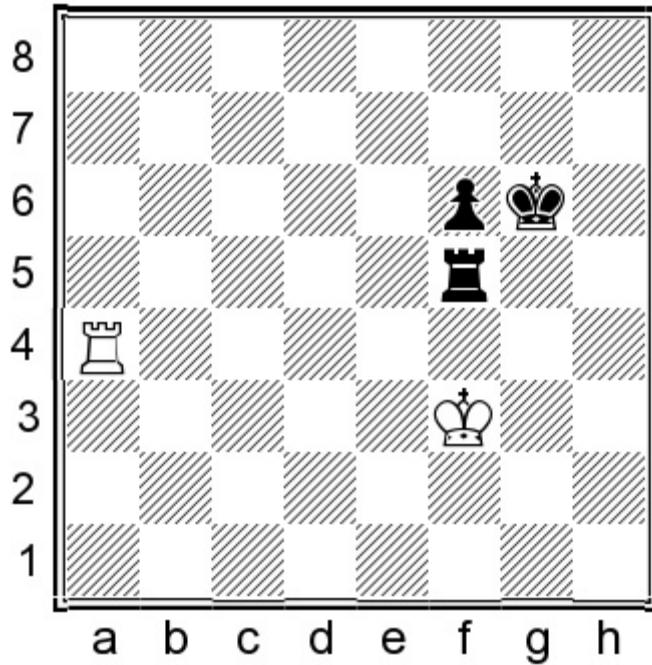


1-5

The lady playing White, Scotland's Board One, saw that she must lose the d5-pawn, and therefore resigned. What can I say, except: No comment needed!

Spielmann – Duras

Karlsbad 1907



1-6
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}f4?? \mathbb{Q}g5!$ White resigned.

Opposition

Opposition is the state of two kings standing on the same file with one square separating them (“close” opposition, three or five squares between them, is called “distant” opposition); the opposition may be vertical, horizontal, or diagonal.

“To get the opposition” means to achieve this standing of the kings one square apart with the opponent to move (that is, to place him in zugzwang); “to fall into opposition” means, conversely, to fall into zugzwang oneself.

Return to diagram 1-1, where we see the simplest case of the opposition (close, vertical). With White to move, there is no win: 1. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}c7O$;

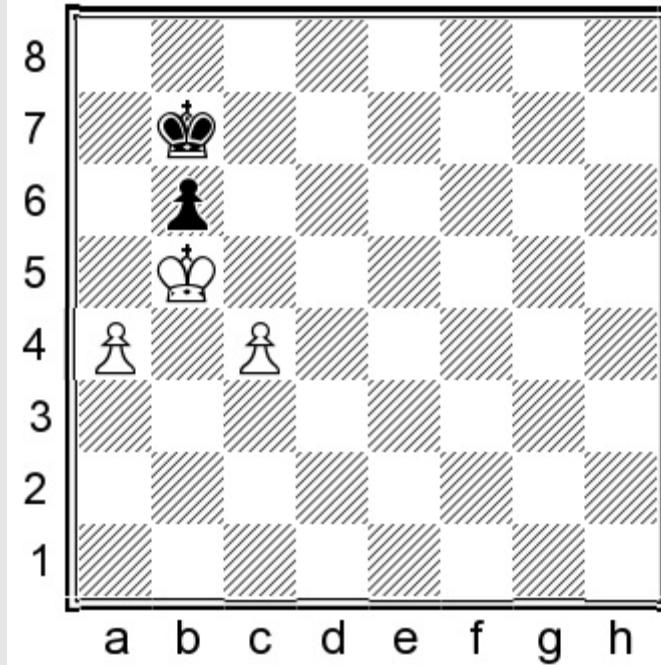
or 1. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}e7O$.

Black to move loses, because he must allow the enemy king onto one of the key squares:

1... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$;

or 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$. **Opposition is the main weapon in the fight for three connected key squares (in diagram 1-1 they are c6, d6 and e6).**

When we are speaking of the opposition, it is usually not just one pair of squares, but several, which are under consideration: c5 and c7, d5 and d7, e5 and e7. **The stronger side gets the opposition in order to execute an outflanking** (where the enemy king retreats to one side, and our king then attacks the other way). **The weaker side gets the opposition in order to prevent this outflanking.**



I-7

B

White has the opposition, but it is not enough to win.

1...♔c7!

1...♔a7? is a mistake, in view of 2.a5! bxa5 3.♔xa5 (here, getting the opposition decides) 3...♔b7 4.♔b5 ♔c7 5.♔c5〇+-

1...♔c7! 2.♔a6

Since 2.c5 would be useless, the king starts an outflanking maneuver. Black replies by getting the horizontal opposition.

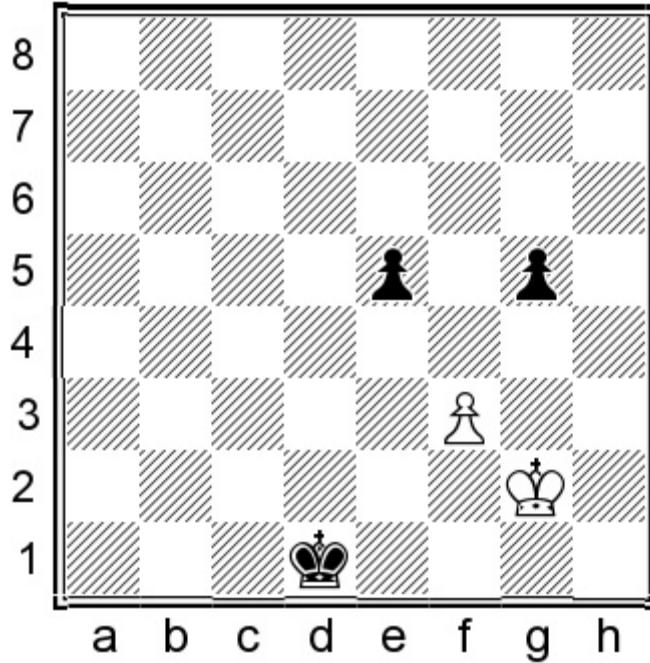
2...♔c6 3.♔a7 ♔c7! 4.♔a8 ♔c8!= (but not 4...♔c6? 5.♔b8 ♔c5 6.♔b7+-).

If we moved the position one file to the right, White would win: 1...♔d7 is met by 2.d5!

White would also win if he had a reserve tempo at his disposal. Let's move the a-pawn back to a3 – then, after 1...♔c7 2.♔a6 ♔c6, he first recaptures the opposition by 3.a4!, and then performs the outflanking maneuver, 3...♔c7 4.♔a7 ♔c6 5.♔b8! (outflanking!) 5...♔c5 6.♔b7+-

In the next diagram, White's king cannot move forward: on 1.♔g3? there comes 1...♔e1! 2.♔g2 ♔e2 3.♔g3 ♔f1!〇

White would like to take the opposition, however 1.♔f1? is also a mistake. After 1...♔d2 2.♔f2 ♔d3, the f3-square his king needs is occupied by his own pawn, and the opposition passes to his opponent: 3.♔f1(or g3) 3...♔e3! 4.♔g2 ♔e2, etc.



I-8

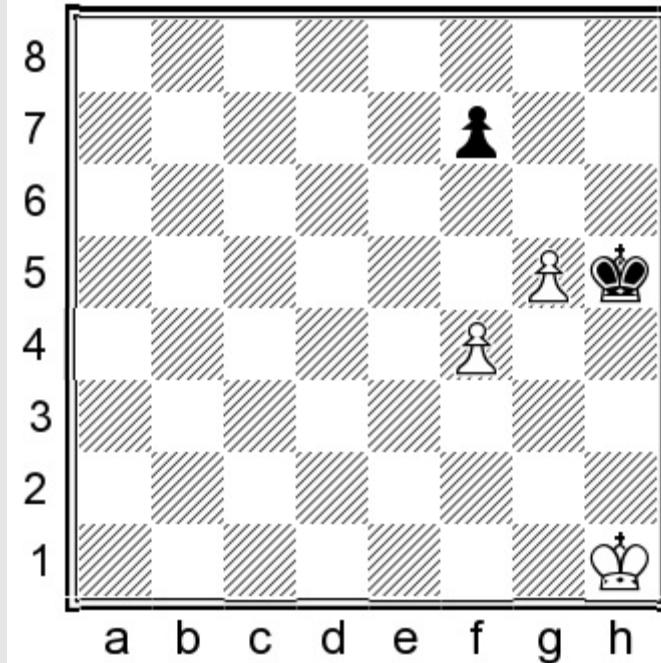
W?

The only thing that saves White is getting the distant opposition:

1. ♔h1!! ♔d2 (1...♔e1 2.♔g1=; 1...g4 2.♔g2! ♔d2 3.fxg4=) 2.♔h2 ♔d3 3.♔h3=

Now let's examine the mechanism by which the stronger side can exploit the distant opposition. It is, in fact, quite simple, and consists of the conversion of the distant opposition into close opposition by means of outflanking. If outflanking is not possible, then possession of the distant opposition is worthless.

H. Mattison 1918*



1-9

W?

The pawns are lost, after which Black's king will control the key squares in front of the f7-pawn. But White has a tactical resource at hand: he moves both pawns forward to lure Black's pawn nearer to his king allowing him to defend the new key squares.

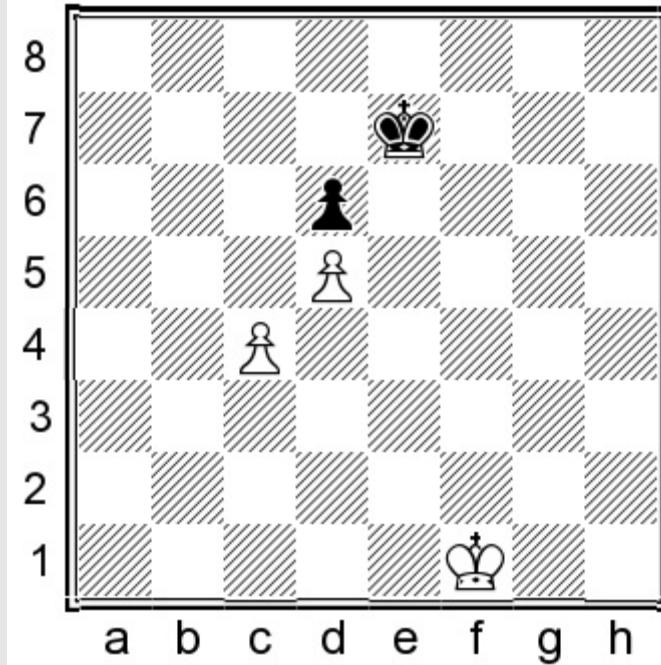
1.g6! fxg6 2.f5!

2.♔g2? ♔g4 3.f5 gxf5+, and Black controls the opposition; also bad is 2.♔h2? ♔g4 3.f5 ♔xf5!
4.♔g3 ♔g5+

2...gxf5 3.♔g1

Black controls the distant opposition, but he cannot convert it into the close opposition. The problem is that after 3...♔g5 4.♔f1, outflanking with 4...♔h4 has no point. On 4...♔f4 (g4), it is White who takes the close opposition by 5.♔f2 (g2), and Black's king cannot use the f5-square as it is blocked by its own pawn. If the king and the pawn could both occupy this square simultaneously, then on the next move the outflanking would be decisive; unfortunately, the rules of chess do not allow such a thing.

J. Drtina 1907



1-10

W?

Taking the distant opposition with 1.♔e1? leads only to a draw. The opposition on the e-file is meaningless: 1...♕e8! 2.♔e2 ♕e7 3.♔e3 ♕e8 4.♔e4 ♕e7, and White cannot get any closer, because the e5-square is off limits. And if the white king leaves the e-file, his opponent will take the opposition forever, e.g., 2.♔f2 ♕f8! 3.♔g3 ♕g7! 4.♔f3 ♕f7!, etc.

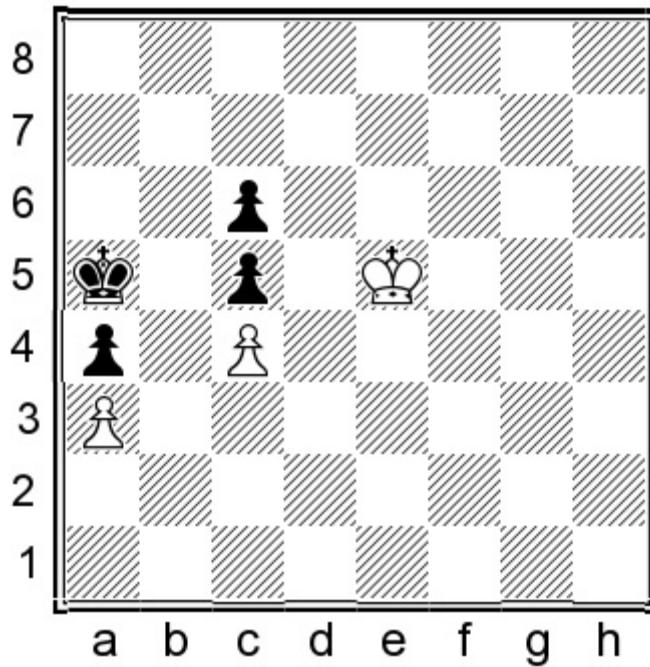
In such situations there is usually a “major” line, through the middle of three connected key squares, in which it vitally important to capture the opposition. And when the enemy king retreats from it, you must outflank it. In this instance, the key squares are e6, f6, and g6, the middle square is f6, and the major line is the f-file.

Imagine that Black’s king was on f7, and moved to one side. White must move to outflank, thus:
1.♔g2!

It is pointless to stay on the e-file: White’s king will reach the key square g6. So Black plays 1...♗f6
As we have already noted, on the f-file it is necessary to maintain the opposition; therefore, 2.♗f2!

What is Black to do now? Moving the king forward is useless: 2...♗f5 3.♗f3 ♗e5 4.♗e3 ♗f5 5.♗d4 and 6.♗c5. If we retreat the king to the right, White’s king advances left and takes over the key squares on the queenside: 2...♗g6 3.♗e3 ♗f7 4.♗d4 (4.♗f3 is not bad, either) 4...♗e7 5.♗c3 ♗d7 6.♗b4 ♗c7 7.♗a5! (diagonal opposition!) 7...♗b7 8.♗b5O 8...♗c7 9.♗a6+–

That leaves only 2...♗e7; but then comes the algorithm we already know: 3.♗g3! ♗f7 4.♗f3! ♗e7 5.♗g4 ♗f8 6.♗f4! ♗e7 7.♗g5! ♗f7 8.♗f5+– The distant opposition has been successfully transformed into the close one.



1-11
W?

The first thing White must do is seize the opposition.

1. ♔f5! ♔b6

Black's king must be the first one on the sixth rank. If it had been on a7 in the starting position, then 1...♔b7! would lead to a draw, since White could no longer seize the opposition: 2.♔e6 ♔a6!= or 2.♔f6 ♔b6!=

2. ♔f6!

The rest is the standard technique of converting the distant opposition into the close opposition. Here, the "major line" is the seventh rank, through the middle square c7 in the three connected key squares c8, c7 and c6.

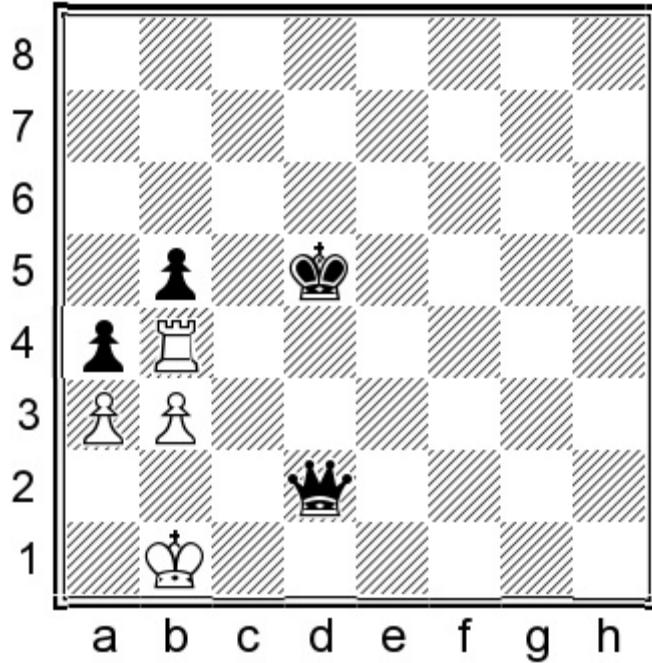
2...♔b7 3.♔f7! (3.♔e5? ♔a7!=) 3...♔b6 (3...♔b8 4.♔e6!) 4.♔e8! (outflanking!) 4...♔a7 5.♔e7! ♔a8 6.♔d6! ♔b7 7.♔d7! ♔b6 8.♔c8+– (the final, decisive outflanking).

Instead of the easily winning 7.♔d7!, White might also play 7.♔xc5?! ♔c7 8.♔b4 ♔b6 9.♔c5+! (9.♔xa4? ♔c5 10.♔b3 ♔a5 11.♔c3 ♔a4 12.♔b2 ♔a5 13.♔b3 ♔b6 14.♔c3 ♔a5=) 9...♔a6 10.♔xa4.

George Walker analyzed a similar position as far back as 1841. We shall return to it in our next section – mined squares.

Tragicomедies

Yates – Tartakower
Bad Homburg 1927



1-12

B

Black has a won position. 1...axb3 is possible;

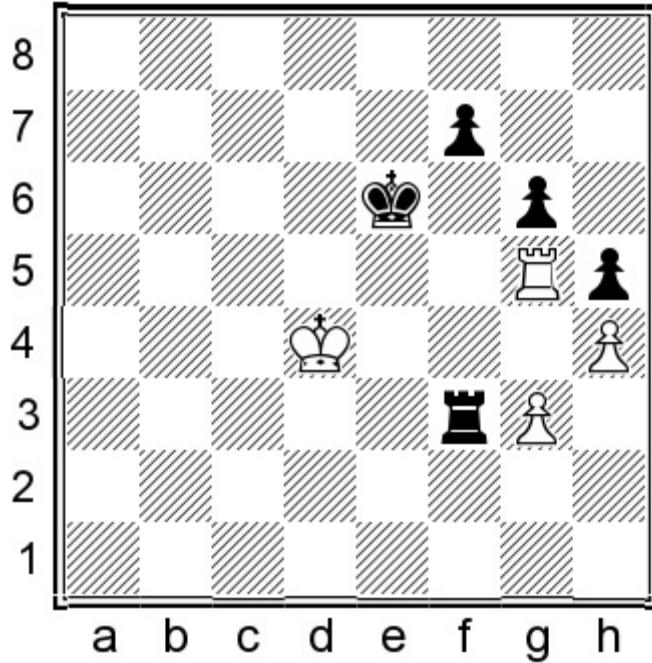
1... $\mathbb{W}c3$?? 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb5+$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}a2 \mathbb{W}c2+$; 2.bxa4 $\mathbb{W}xa3$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3.bxa4 $\mathbb{W}xa3$ is also strong. Tartakower, however, decided to transpose into a pawn ending, which he thought was won.

1... $\mathbb{W}xb4$?? 2.axb4 axb3 3. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ b2 (4... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ is stalemate) 5. $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ Draw.

Black had missed this move when he traded off his queen. He had hoped to win the b4-pawn and seize the opposition, but miscalculated. After 5... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$, the draw is obvious.

Yusupov – Ljubojevic

Linares 1992



1-13
B?

White's rook is tied to the defense of the pawn at g3. Black would have won easily if he had transferred his rook by 1... $\mathbb{R}a3!$ (to prevent the white king from approaching the pawns: 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f5+! and 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ wins), followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}f6-g7$ and ...f7-f6 (or ...f7-f5).

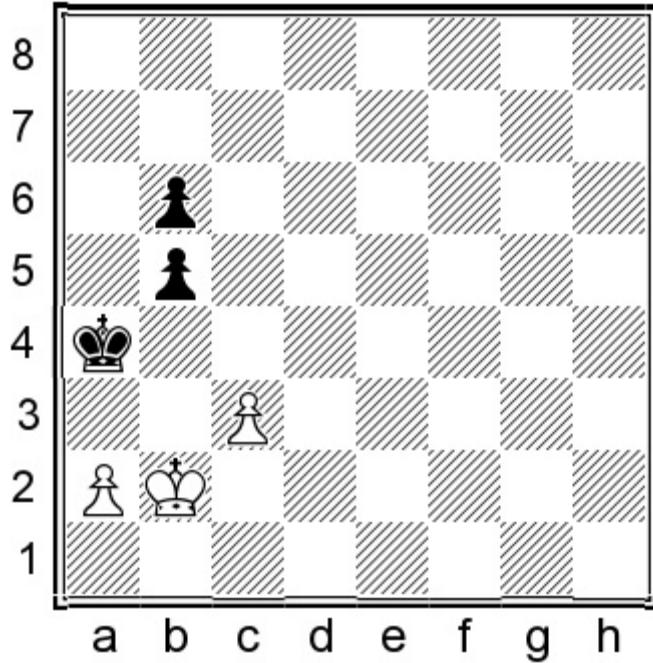
Instead, Black played 1... $\mathbb{R}f5??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{R}xg5$ 3.hxg5

White has the opposition, but Ljubojevic had counted on 3...f6 4.gxf6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ g5+

Yusupov replied 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$, and it became clear that the opposition on the f-file would give Black nothing, since 6... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ is met by 7.g4+! hxg4+ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$. And as soon as Black's king goes to the e-file, White's king immediately takes the opposition.

6... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ Draw.

Exercises



1-14

1/1

B?

Show/Hide Solution

1/1. C.Salvioli 1887

The solution of this exercise is based on the ideas we discussed in diagram 1-7.

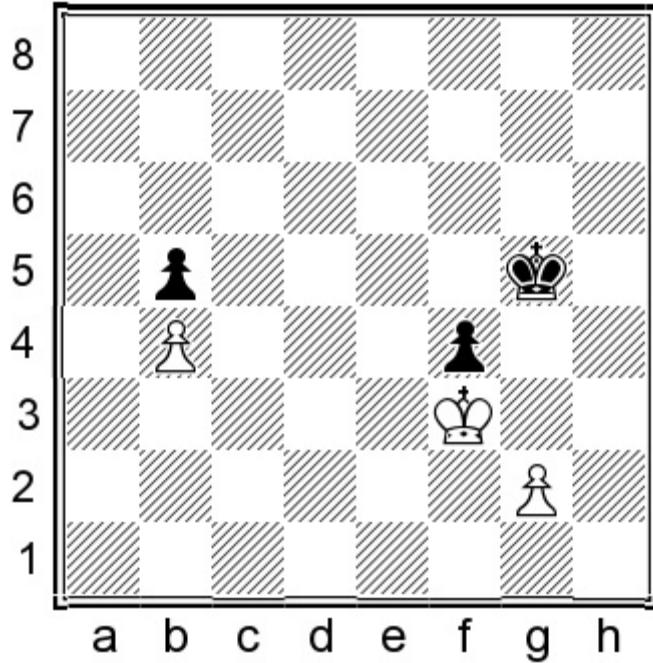
1...b4! 2.c4 b3!

2... $\mathbb{Q}a5?$ loses to 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 6.a3! $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8.a4! $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b8!$

3.a3 (3.axb3+ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ and 4...b5=) **3... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$**

Here White has only one spare tempo while in the line 2... $\mathbb{Q}a5?$ he had two.

7.a4 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}a7??$ 8.a5+-) 8. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}c8=$



1-15
1/2
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/2. H.Weenink 1924

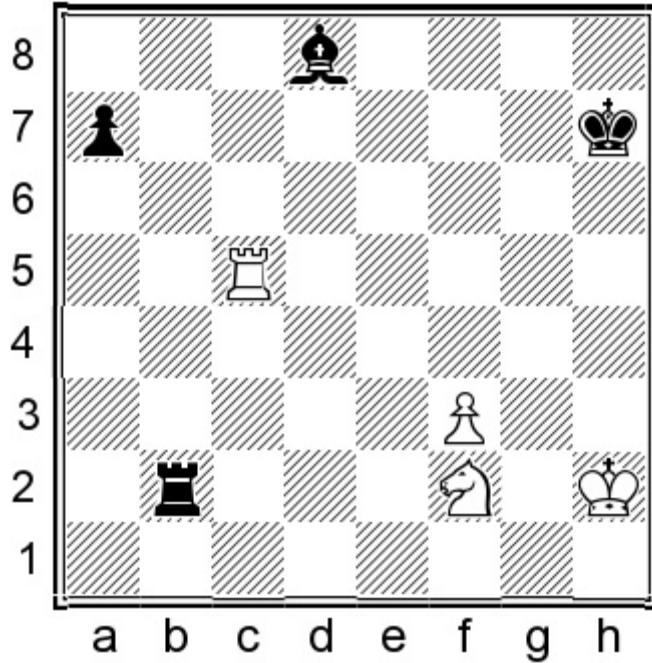
1. ♕e4 ♕g4

How should White continue? If he managed to pass the move to his opponent, he could force a favorable pawn exchange on the kingside (2.-- 2... ♕g5 3. ♕e5 ♕g4 4. ♕f6!, etc.). But how can this be done? 2. ♕e5 is useless: 2... ♕g5! (2... ♕g3? 3. ♕f5) 3. ♕d4 ♕h4! The only chance is to threaten the b5-pawn!

2. ♕d5! ♕h5! (2... ♕f5 3. ♕d4 and Black loses the opposition) 3. ♕c6!

After 3. ♕c5 ♕g5!, Black still maintains the opposition, while capture of the pawn leads to a draw: 4. ♕xb5? ♕g4 5. ♕c5 ♕g3 6. b5 ♕xg2 7. b6 f3=. But what can Black do now? To maintain the opposition, 3... ♕g6 is required, but the king is too far from the g2-pawn then and 4. ♕xb5 wins. Otherwise White seizes his coveted opposition and then transforms the distant opposition into the close one by standard means (outflanking).

3... ♕g5 4. ♕c5! ♕g4 5. ♕d6! ♕h5 6. ♕d5! ♕h4 7. ♕e6 ♕g5 8. ♕e5 ♕g4 9. ♕f6 ♕g3 10. ♕f5+–



1-16
1/3
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/3. E. Somov-Nasimovich 1936

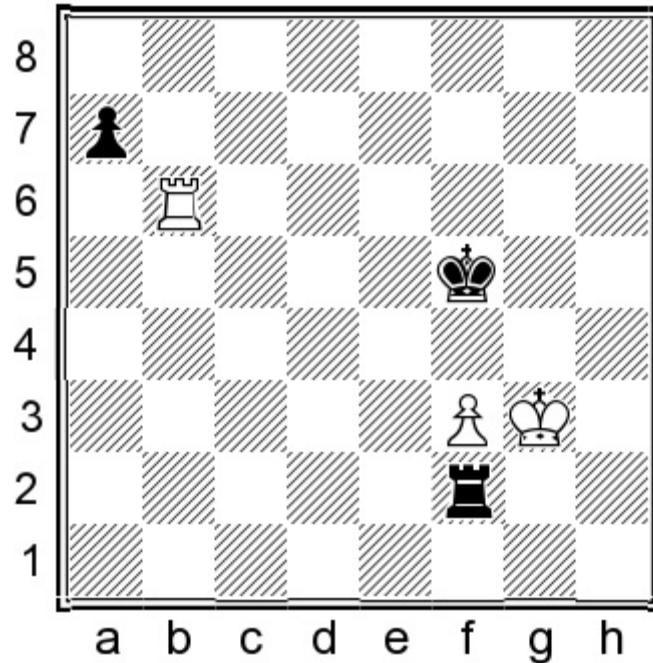
1. Kg3!

1. Kg1? is wrong in view of 1... Qb6 2. Kh5+ Kg6 3. Kh2 Qxf2 4. Qxf2 a5 5. Qf1 Qxf2 6. Qxf2 a4+.

1. Kg3!

Now 1... Qb6 can be met with 2. Qd3!

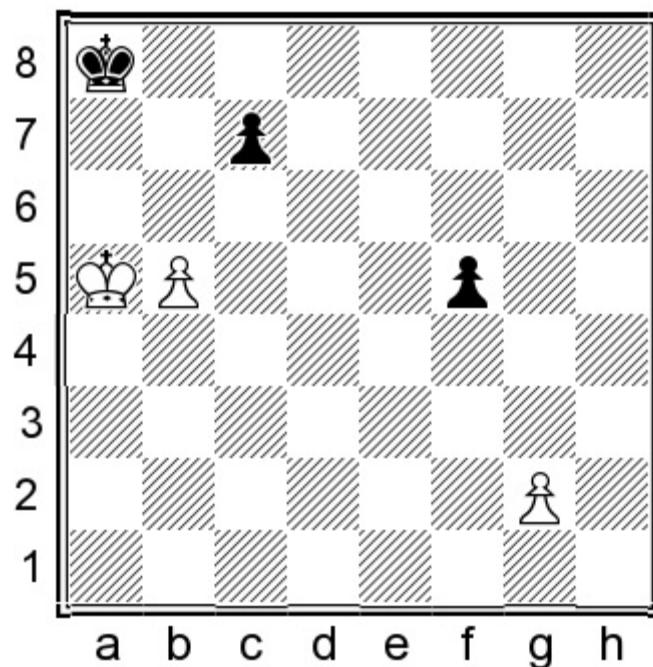
1... Qxf2! 2. Kh5+! Kg6 3. Qd5 Qb6 4. Qd6+ Qf5 5. Qxb6



16-1
B

5... $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$! 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2!!$ axb6 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf3=$

Because of the pretty loss of a tempo on move six, White has seized the opposition.



I-17
1/4

W?
Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/4. N.Grigoriev 1933

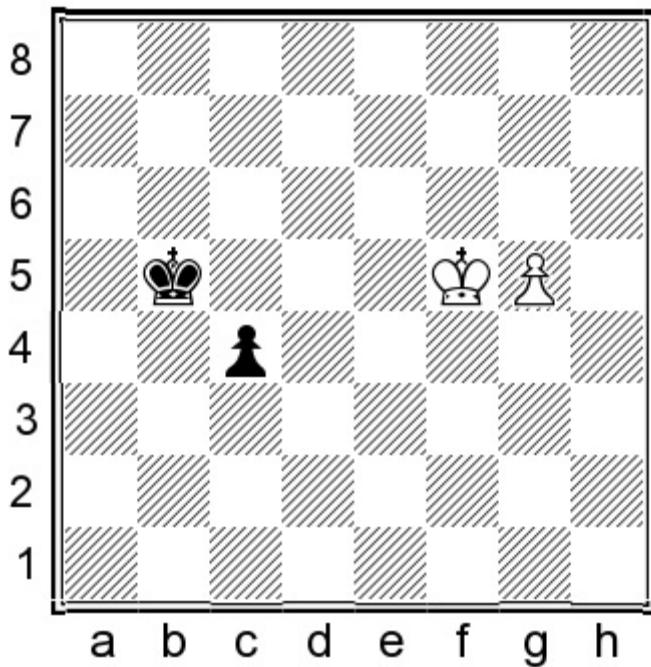
1. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ (of course, not 1.b6? $\mathbb{Q}b7=$)

1. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{Q}b8$ (1...f4 2.b6+-) 2.g3!

The hasty 2.b6? misses the win: 2... $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ (Δ 3...cxb6) 3.b7+ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 4.g3 c5 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}xb7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc5 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5 f4!$ 8.gxf4 $\mathbb{Q}d7=$; Black saves the game by seizing the opposition.

2... $\mathbb{Q}a8$

Another defensive method also does not help: 2... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a7 \mathbb{Q}d8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ (an opposition!) 4... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}d8$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c8+-$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (outflanking!) 6... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{Q}xb5$ 10. g4 c5 11. g5 c4

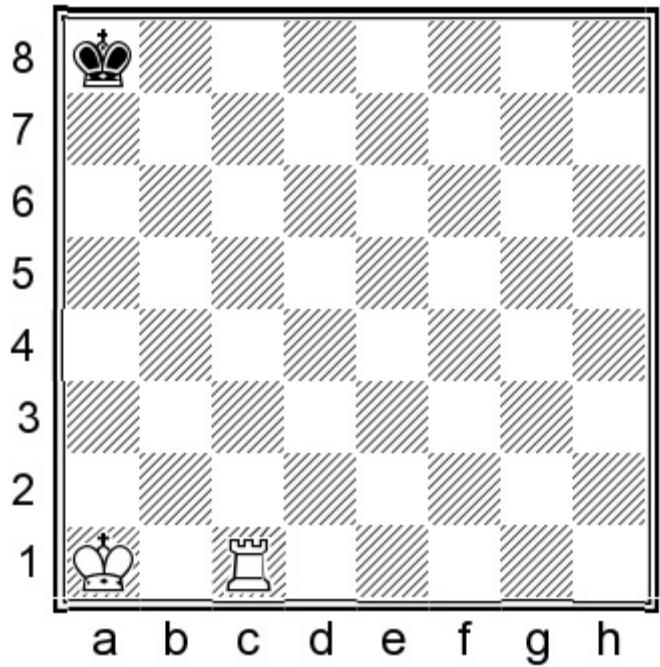


16-2
W?

12. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ (we shall see this method – decoying the hostile king into a check – more than once in this book) 12... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 13. g6 c3 14. $\mathbb{Q}d3! \mathbb{Q}b3$ 15. g7 c2 16. g8= $\mathbb{W}+$

3. b6 $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ (4.b7? c5 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}xb7=$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5. bxc7 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5+-$

This time White has seized the opposition, therefore the pawn sacrifice 7...f4 is pointless.



1-18

1/5

W?

Mate Black with just one [mating] move by the rook.

Show/Hide Solution

1/5. An Ancient Problem

The white king must come closer to the black one, maintaining the opposition. And, when this is impossible, to outflank it along the c-file. In fact, all this is an algorithm that we know already – a transformation of a distant opposition into a close one.

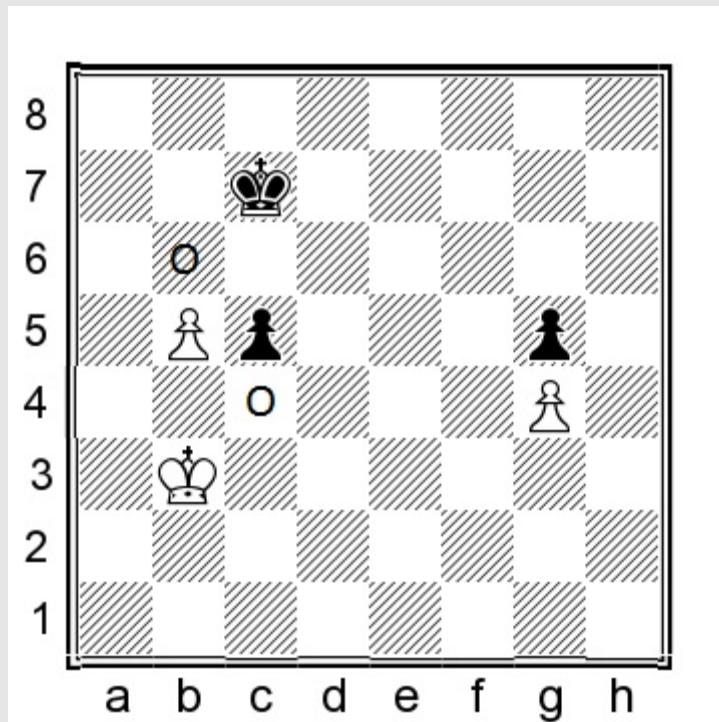
1. $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$; 9... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$)
10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$

Mined Squares

Sometimes, it is a single pair of squares that correspond; I refer to such squares as being “mined.” Do not be the first to step on a mined square, or you’ll be “blown up” – that is, fall into zugzwang.

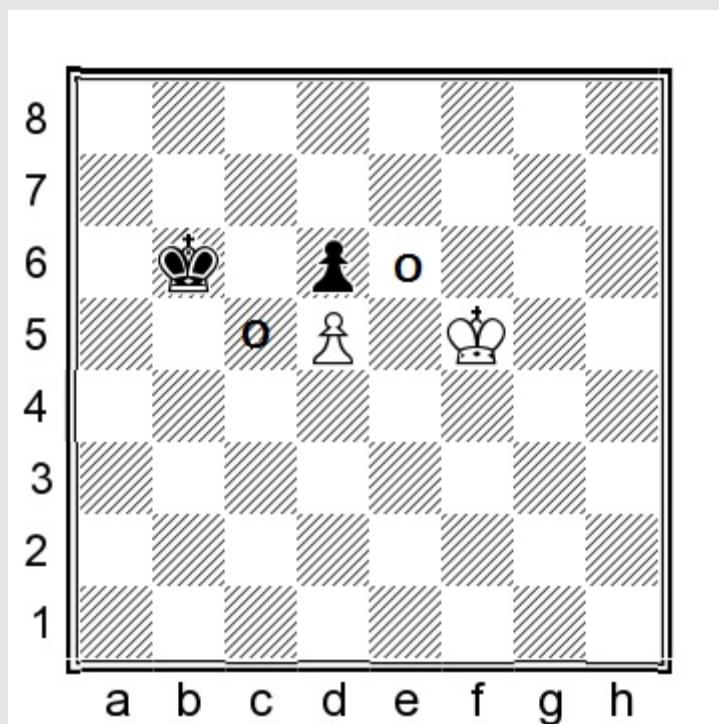
You must either first allow your opponent to step on the mined square, or move forward, accurately avoiding it.

Here are two quite typical examples of mined squares.



1-19

Here we have what I call “***untouchable pawns***.” White’s king shuttles between b3, c3 and d3, while the black king goes from c7 to b7 to a7, neither of them able to attack the pawn – the squares c4 and b6 are mined.



1-20

Here, kings at e6 and c5 result in reciprocal zugzwang. White wins by forcing his opponent to go to the mined square first.

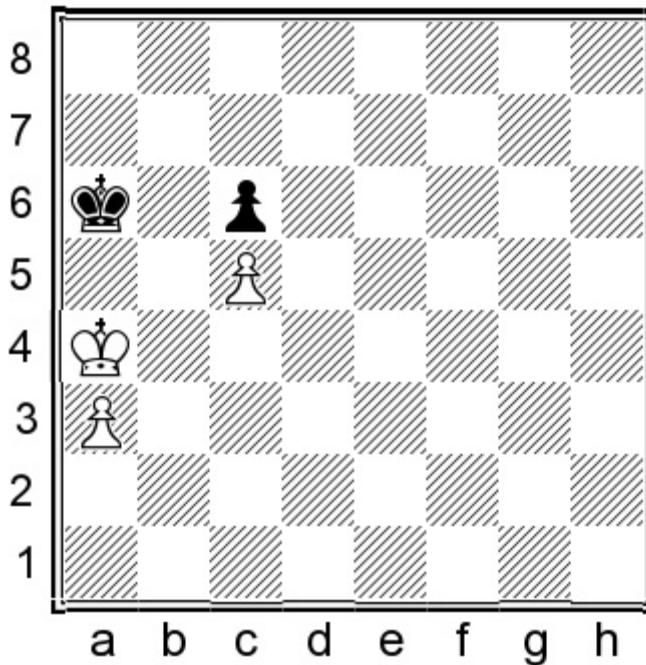
1.♔f6! ♔b5

Passive defense is hopeless too: 1...♔c7 2.♔e7 ♔c8 3.♔xd6 – the king captures the d6-pawn while simultaneously occupying a key square for the d5-pawn.

2.♔e7! ♔c5 3.♔e6!○+-

Black to move plays 1...♔b5! White, however, is better off than his opponent in that the loss of a pawn does not mean the loss of the game: he replies 2.♔e4 (but not 2.♔f6? ♔c4! 3.♔e6 ♔c5+–) 2...♔c4 3.♔e3 ♔xd5 4.♔d3, with a draw.

And now, let's return to a position we reached while analyzing Sackmann's study (diagram 1-11).



I-21

\$

B

The only winning try is to get the king to the d6-square. To keep the opponent from counterattacking successfully on the queenside, it is important to begin the march with the black king as far away as possible. This consideration shows us the first pair of corresponding squares: a6 and b4.

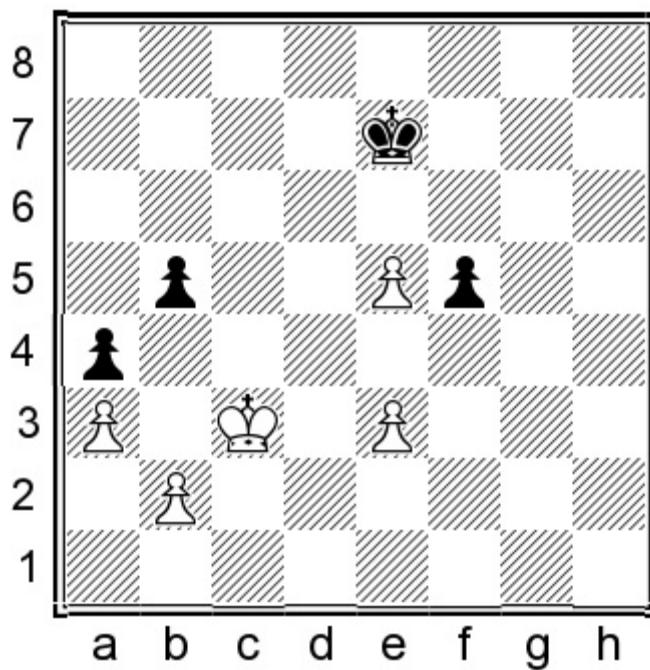
1...♔b7 2.♔b3! ♔a6 3.♔b4!○ 3...♔b7

Now it is time to consider further action. Note the reciprocal zugzwang with the kings at d4 and b5; that means the d4-square is mined, and must be circumvented.

4.♔c4 ♔a6 5.♔d3!! ♔a5 6.♔e4 ♔b5 7.♔d4 (and Black is in zugzwang) **7...♔a4 8.♔e5 ♔xa3 9.♔d6+–**

Alekhine – Yates

Hamburg 1910



1-22

W?

A mistake would be 1.♔d4? ♔e6!○ thus, the d4- and e6-squares are mined.

And 1.♔b4? ♔e6 2.♔xb5 ♔xe5 3.♔xa4 ♔e4 4.b4 ♔xe3 leads to a queen-and-rook-pawn vs. queen endgame, which is, according to theory, drawn.

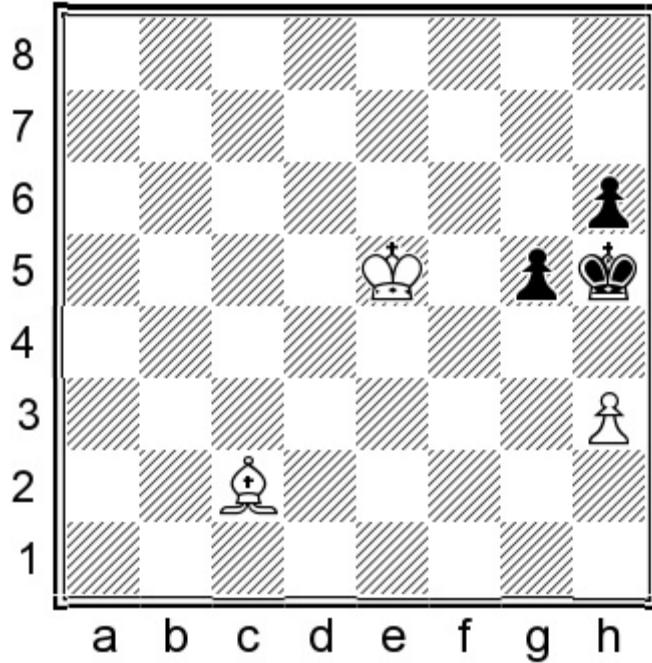
1.♔d3 ♔d7 (1...♔e6?! 2.♔d4+–) 2.e4! f4 3.♔e2 ♔e6 4.♔f2!!, and Black resigned. With a white pawn at e4 and a black one at f4, we already know the squares f3 and e5 are mined. White's king avoided entering the f3-square first, while his opposite number had no similar waiting move, since the e5-pawn was in the way.

Incidentally, White's moves could also have been transposed: 1.e4 f4 2.♔d3 ♔e6 3.♔e2!○ (3.♔d4?! ♔e7).

Tragicomедies

Kobese – Tu Hoang Thai

Yerevan ol 1996



1-23
W

The position is drawn. White sets a last trap, which unexpectedly succeeds.

1. ♖d1+!? ♜h4??

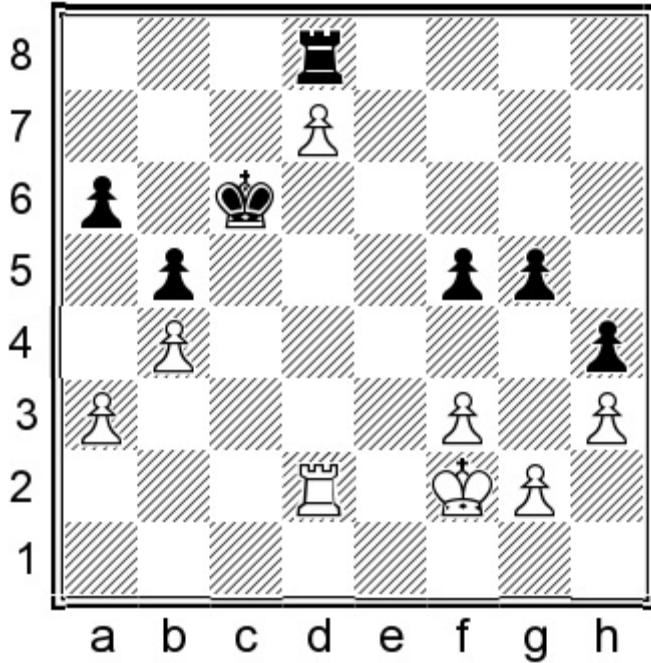
1...♜g6! was necessary, Δ 2...h5 and 3...g4=

2. ♖g4 h5 3. ♖f5! hxg4 4. hxg4○ and Black resigned.

It is worth noting that 1.♖f5!? must be met not with 1...♜h4?? 2.♖g4+-, but with 1...g4! 2.♖xg4+ (2.hxg4+ ♜g5 Δ 3...h5=) 2...♜g6, with a draw (doubters are referred to the beginning of Chapter 4).

The next pair of exercises are rather difficult. In each, you must judge whether to go into the pawn endgame.

Exercises



1-24
1/6
B?

Show/Hide Solution

1/6. M. Dvoretsky 1976 (based on the themes of an Estrin-Gusev ending, Moscow 1963).

If Black postpones the transition to a pawn ending, playing 1...f4?! (with the idea 2.♔e2 ♖xd7 3.♖xd7? ♔xd7 4.♔d3 ♔e7!, and Black seizes the opposition when the white king enters the fourth rank) he will have serious troubles in the rook ending after 2.♖c2+! ♔xd7 3.♖c5 ♖g8 4.♔e2. He should focus on the task at hand and calculate the following forced drawing line:

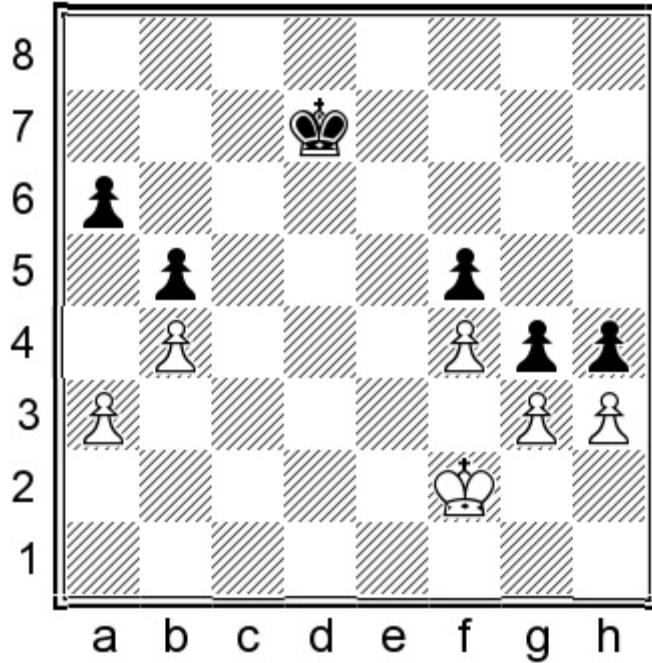
1...♖xd7! 2.♖xd7

2.♖c2+ ♔d6 3.♖c5 ♔e6 4.♖c6+ ♕d6 is not dangerous for Black.

2...♔xd7 3.f4! g4!

After 3...gxf4? 4.♔f3 ♔e6 5.♔xf4 ♔f6 6.g3, White creates a distant passed pawn that will be decisive. We shall discuss this sort of position later.

4.g3!



16-3

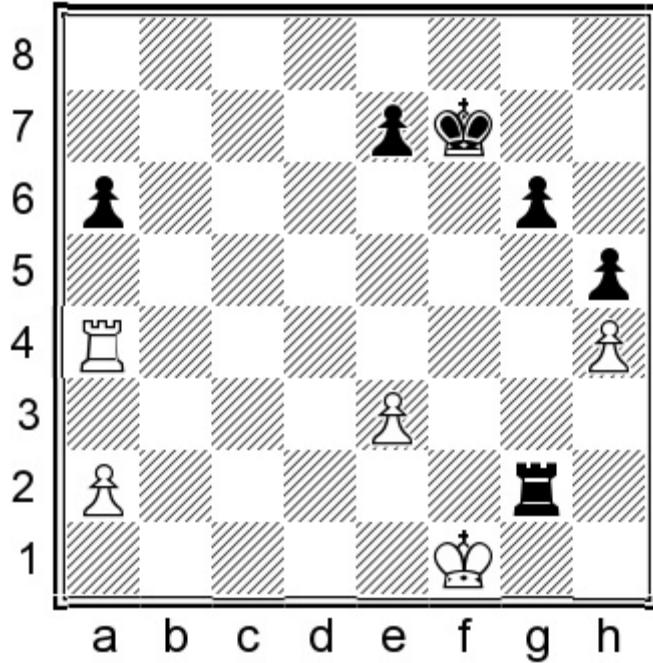
B?

4...gxh3!!

4...hxg3+? loses to 5.†xg3 gxh3 6.†xh3 †e6 7.†h4 †d5 (the pair of mined squares are g5/e4)
8.†h5! †d4 9.†g6! †e4 10.†g5+–

5.gxh4 †e6 6.†g3 †f6 7.h5 (7.†xh3 †g6=) 7...†g7 8.†xh3 †h7! 9.†g3 †g7=

The h4- and h6-squares are mined. White cannot win because 10.†f3 †h6 11.†e3? †xh5 12.†d4
†h4! 13.†d5 †g3 14.†e5 †g4O is bad.



1-25

1/7

B?

Show/Hide Solution

1/7. Taimanov-Botvinnik, USSR ch tt, Moscow 1967

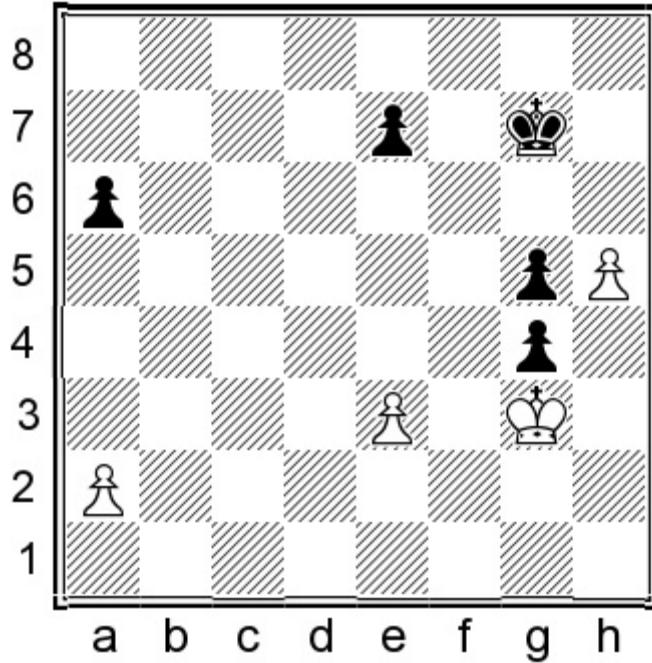
1...Bg4! 2.Bxg4 (2.Bxa6 Bxh4+) 2...hxg4 3.Qg2 g5!

3...Qf6 4.Qg3 Qf5? (it is not too late for Black to play 4...g5!) is wrong: 5.e4+! Qxe4 6.Qxg4 e5 7.Qg5 Qf3 8.Qxg6 e4 9.h5=

4.h5

4.Qg3 Qg6 5.Qxg4 does not help: 5...gxh4 6.Qxh4 Qf5 7.Qg3 Qe4 8.Qf2 a5!? (rather than 8...Qd3 9.Qf3 e5? 10.a3=) 9.Qe2 a4 10.a3 e6! 11.Qd2 Qf3 12.Qd3 e5O-+

4...Qg7 5.Qg3



16-4

B?

5...♝h7!

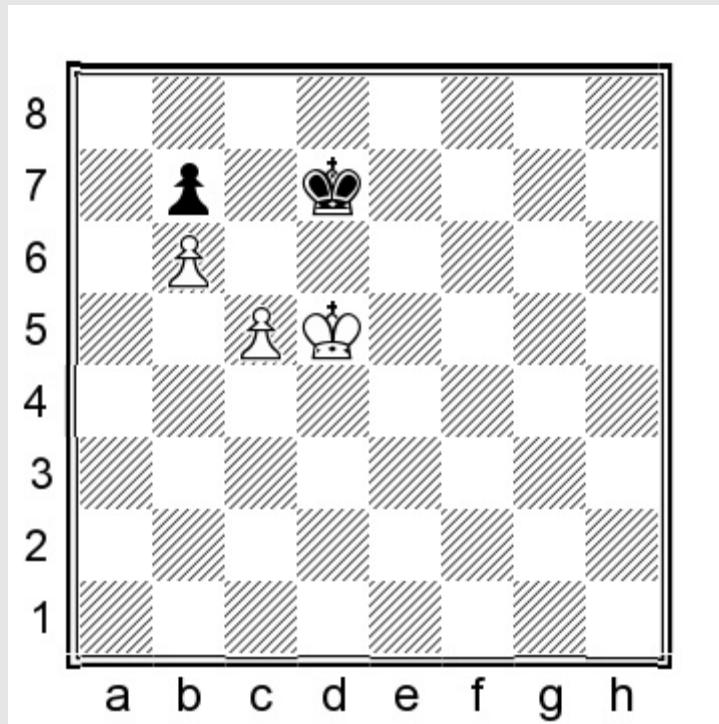
The situation is very much like that in the game Alekhine-Yates (diagram 1-22). 5...a5? would have been a grave error in view of 6.♝xg4 ♝h6 7.e4 and it is Black who is in zugzwang.

6.♝xg4 ♝h6 7.e4

White resigned in view of 7...a5 8.a4 e5 9.♝f5 ♝xh5 10.♝xe5 g4 11.♝f4 ♝h4 12.e5 g3 13.e6 g2 14.e7 g1=♛ 15.e8=♛ ♛f2+ 16.♝e5 ♛e2+ winning the queen.

Triangulation

Triangulation refers to a king maneuver which aims to lose a tempo, and leave the opponent with the move.



I-26

W?

The d5- and d7-squares are in correspondence. The mobility of Black's king is restricted: he must watch for the c5-c6 break, and also avoid being pressed to the edge of the board. It is not surprising, therefore, that White can easily "lose" a tempo and place his opponent in zugzwang.

1.♔e5!

1.c6+? is mistaken here, in view of 1...♔c8! (but not 1...bxc6+? 2.♔c5 ♔d8 3.♔d6! ♔c8 4.♔xc6 ♔b8 5.b7+-) 2.♔d6 ♔b8! 3.♔d7 bxc6=

1.♔e5! ♔c6 (1...♔e7 2.c6) 2.♔d4 ♔d7 3.♔d5

White has achieved his aim, by describing a triangle with his king. The rest is simple.

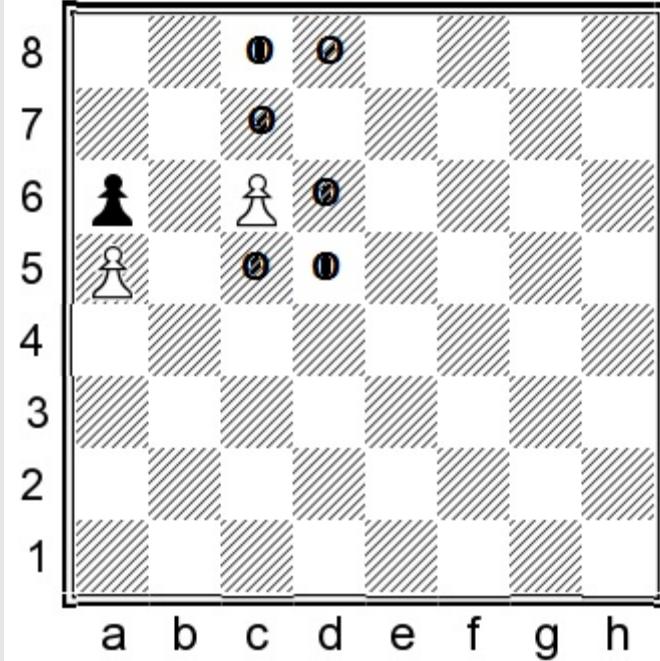
3...♔c8 4.♔e6! (diagonal opposition) 4...♔d8 5.♔d6 (and now, vertical) 5...♔c8 6.♔e7 ♔b8 7.♔d7 ♔a8 8.c6+-

The following position is very important, both for itself and as an illustration of the characteristic

logic of analyzing corresponding squares.

Fahrni – Alapin

1912



I-27

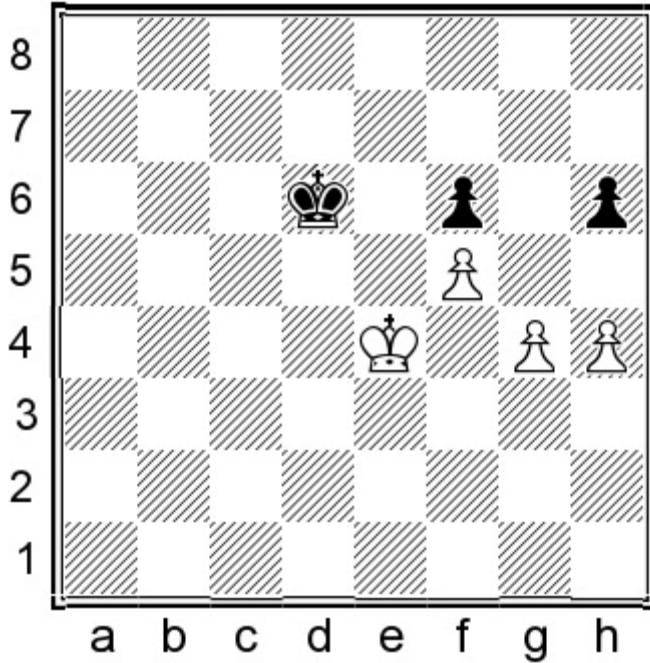
The kings were on d5 and c8 here; but we shall not place them on the board just yet – let's deal with the squares of correspondence first.

Two pairs of squares of reciprocal zugzwang are obvious right off: d6/d8, and c5/c7. The squares d6 and c5 border on d5; and for Black, the corresponding squares d8 and c7 border on c8. Thus, a standard means of identifying a new correspondence: that of the d5- and c8-squares.

Along with d5 and c5, White has two equally important squares: c4 and d4. Black also has two corresponding squares, b8 and d8, but they are not connected, while c4 and d4 are connected. With Black's king on d8, White makes a waiting move with his king, from c4 to d4 (or the reverse). Black's king will be forced onto c7 or c8, when White occupies the corresponding square and wins.

1.♔c4(d4)! 1...♚d8 2.♔d4(c4)!O 2...♚c8 3.♔d5! ♔d8 (3...♚c7 4.♔c5O and 5.♔b6) 4.♔d6 ♔c8 5.c7O

H. Neustadt 1898



1-28

W?

Find two winning plans

The author's solution to this study involves the opposition, which White seizes with his very first move.

1. ♔d4 ♔c6 2. ♔c4 (2.g5? fxg5!= does not work) 2... ♔d6 3. ♔b5!

The opposition can only win if it leads to an outflanking. Here the outflanking looks risky, but it turns out to be playable because of the line 3... ♔e5 4. ♔c6 ♔f4 (4...h5 5.gxh5 ♔xf5 6. ♔d5O) 5. ♔d6 ♔xg4 6. ♔e6+–

3... ♔d5! 4. ♔b6!

White will get the opposition again, thanks to his reserve tempo, h4-h5. But first, the enemy king must be decoyed to a bad position – as far as possible from the g4-pawn.

4... ♔d6 5. ♔b7 ♔d7 6. h5! ♔d6 7. ♔c8 (another outflanking) 7... ♔e5 8. ♔d7 ♔f4 9. ♔e6+–

In 1968, during a session of training in the calculation of variations (I find pawn endings quite useful for this), I discovered a second solution to this study, based on completely different logic.

The d5-square is key here (with White's king at d5, and Black's at d7, White wins by h4-h5). By the way, with the pawn already on h5, occupying the d5-square is no longer decisive: the key squares are now on the sixth rank – c6, d6 and e6. Which leads us to an important conclusion:

When the pawn structure changes, the system of key squares associated with the position generally changes too, just as with the system of corresponding squares.

With White's king at f4, Black must deal with the threat of g4-g5. It can be parried by putting the

black king on e7 (but not f7, since then White will occupy the key square d5) – which immediately gives us two pairs of corresponding squares: f4/e7 and e4/d6. Next to these, White has two equivalent squares: f3 and e3. Black, meanwhile, has only one – d7. Thus, the winning mechanism becomes clear – triangulation!

1.♔f4

1.♕f3 –

but not 1.♔e3? ♔e5! 2.♔f3 h5 3.♔g3 ♔e4○.

1.♔f4 ♔e7 2.♔f3 ♔d7 3.♔e3! ♔d6

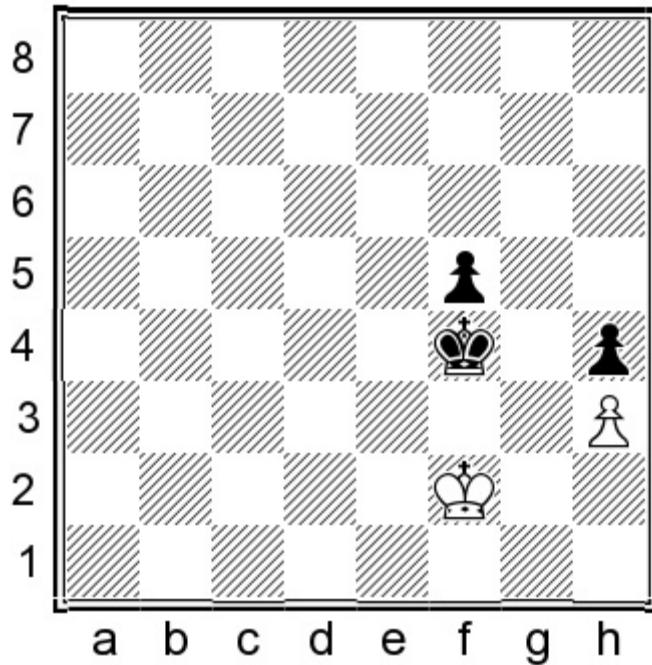
3...♔e7 4.♔f4! ♔f7 5.♔e4 ♔e7 6.♔d5 ♔d7 7.h5+–

4.♔e4!○ 4...♔c6 5.♔f4 ♔d6 6.g5+–

Tragicomедies

Yudasin – Osnos

Leningrad 1987



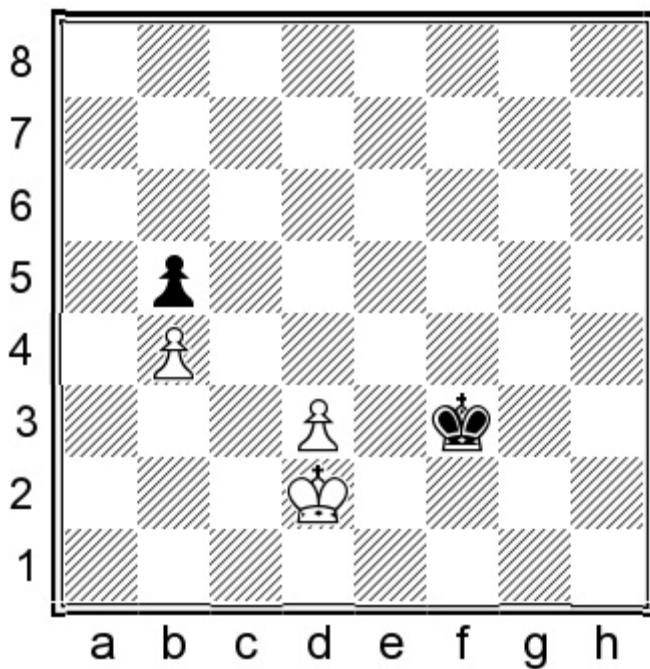
I-29

B

With his last move (1.♔e2-f2), Yudasin offered a draw, adding that this position was a well-known draw, which one might find in any book. His opponent, an international master and an experienced trainer (he trained Viktor Korchnoi for many years) believed him, and accepted his offer!

After 1...♔e4 2.♔e2 f4 3.♔f2 f3, we reach a position which is, indeed, in all endgame books (Fahrni-Alapin), but it is a win. Black wins by triangulation: 4.♔f1 ♔f5 5.♔e1 ♔e5○ 6.♔f1 ♔e4○

Exercises



1-30

\$

1/8

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/8. N.Grigoriev 1920

The c3- and e3-squares are obviously corresponding.

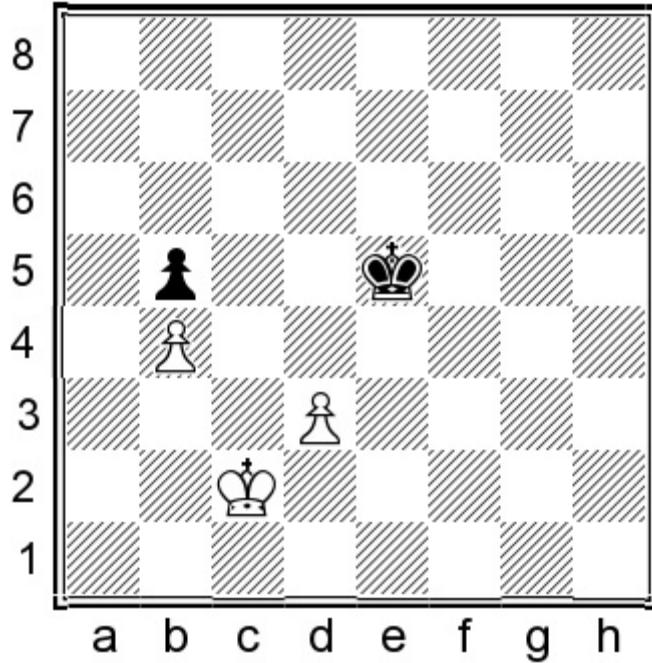
The white king wants to break through to e3 in order to set the d-pawn in motion; the black king will confront it from the f3-square. The reciprocal zugzwang arises when the kings are on d2 and f3, so another pair of corresponding squares is defined. The third pair – c2 and f4 – is adjacent to those already known. Finally, we come to the squares b3 and b2, which can be used for ceding the move because the single square, f3, corresponds to them.

1.♔c2!

Rather than 1.d4? ♔e4 2.♔c3 ♔f5! 3.♔d3 ♔f4=

1.♔c2! ♔f4! 2.♔b3(b2)! 2...♔f3 3.♔b2(b3)!O 3...♔f4 4.♔c2! ♔e5

4...♔e3? is quite bad in view of 5.♔c3O; 4...♔f3 5.♔d2O is also inferior.



16-5

W?

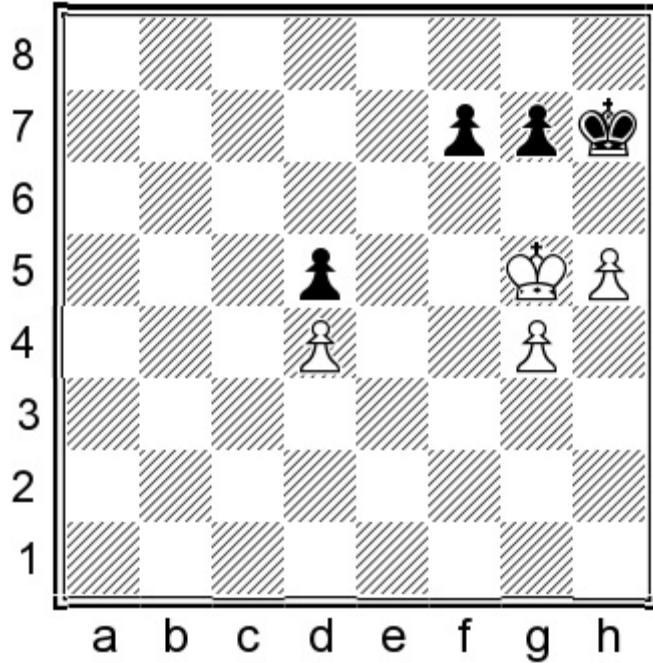
Now we must discover a new subtlety: there is a reciprocal zugzwang when the kings are on d2 and d4, so the mined square d2 should be avoided.

5.†d1! (5.†d2?! †d4 6.†e2? †c3=) **5...†d5 6.†e2 †d4 7.†d2 †e5! 8.†e3 †d5 9.d4 †c4**

Black's only hope is to attack the b4-pawn. His pawn would promote simultaneously, but unfortunately the new queen is immediately lost.

10.†e4 †xb4 11.d5 †c5 12.†e5 b4 13.d6 b3 (13...†c6 14.†e6 makes no difference) **14.d7 b2 15.d8=† b1=† 16.†c7+ †b4 17.†b7++-**

It is worth mentioning that 11...†a3 (instead of 11...†c5) 12.d6 b4 does not save Black – a queen versus knight pawn endgame is winning. But if we shift the initial position one file to the right, then Black, with the bishop pawn against the queen, holds. We shall discuss this sort of position later.



1-31

1/9

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/9. B.Neuenschwander 1985

1. $\mathbb{Q}h4?$ with the idea 2. $g5$, for example, 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6?$ 2. $g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4+-$ or 1... $f6?$ 2. $g5!+-$, does not win in view of 1... $g6!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ (rather than 2... $gxh5?$ 3. $gxh5$ and White creates a distant passed pawn) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $f6!=$

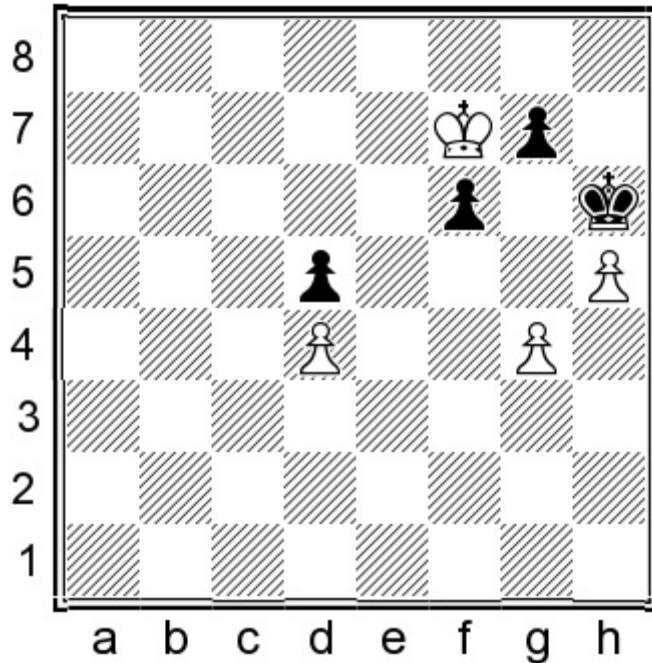
The natural plan is an attack against the d5-pawn, but it should be conducted very carefully. White must take Black's counterplay ($g7-g6$) into account.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f5?$ is wrong in view of 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ and White is in zugzwang. 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ is met with 2... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4=$, and 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4 -$ with 2... $g6!$ 3. $hxg6$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $gxh5$ 4. $gxh5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $f5=$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4=$

However Black could have had serious difficulties if he was on move when the kings were on f5 and h6. We come to the conclusion that these squares are mined.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5! \ominus$ 2... $f6! \square$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$

4... $\mathbb{Q}xg4?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ (5... $f5$ 6. $h6$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ was bad, but what should White do now?



16-6

W?

The answer is rather simple: he uses triangulation in order to pass the move to Black.

5. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ (rather than 5. $\mathbb{Q}e8?$ g6) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (6...g6 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7!+ -$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7\mathbb{O}$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+ -$

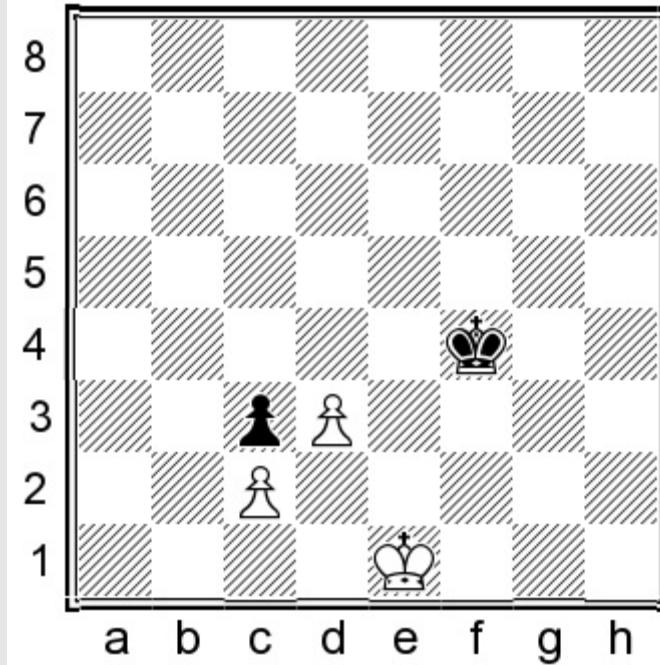
Other Cases of Correspondence

Situations with corresponding squares come in all shapes and sizes – from the most elementary to cases so complex that most of the unoccupied squares on the board turn out to be squares of reciprocal zugzwang.

How is the correspondence between squares determined? There is no special formula. The sensible way is to find key squares, examine the possible plans for both sides, and calculate the simplest variations. This preliminary analysis may uncover some reciprocal zugzwang situations; from there, you may go on to define an entire network of corresponding squares.

The following examples demonstrate how to make a logical analysis of a position.

N. Grigoriev 1921



I-32

B?

Black is obliged to defend the key squares e2 and f2, which he can do either by 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ or 1... $\mathbb{Q}f3$. The first appears more natural (the opposition!); but let's not be too hasty about drawing a conclusion.

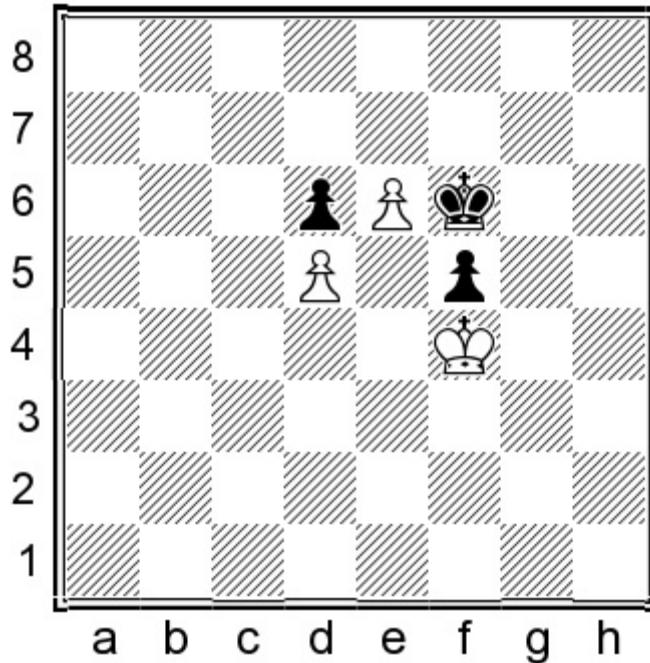
White's king will attempt to break through on the queenside by occupying the key square b3 – this too must be prevented. With White's king at a2, Black's king is obliged to occupy the b4-square (a4 would be too far from the kingside). Immediately, we have the whole packet of corresponding squares: a2/b4, b1/c5, c1/d4, d1/e3 and e1/f3. As it turns out, the routine 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3$? loses – after 2. $\mathbb{Q}d1$, Black would be in zugzwang.

But 1... $\mathbb{Q}f3$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ draws easily.

I presented this position as one to be studied by all players, not because it was especially important, but in order to underscore that a system of corresponding squares certainly does not have to always be “straight-line,” as with the opposition. Each case demands concrete analysis. You may only take the opposition after having ensured that this will place your opponent in zugzwang, not yourself.

And if, as in the present example, you must instead cede the opposition to your opponent, I call such cases of corresponding squares the “*anti-opposition*.” This term seems more exact than the term “knight's-move opposition” I have seen used (after all, the entire idea of “opposition” is for the kings to be standing on the same line, not on adjoining lines).

N. Grigoriev 1922



1-33

W?

The correspondence of the squares f4 and f6 is obvious (on 1... $\mathbb{Q}g6$, 2.e7 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ decides). And when White's king appears on h4, Black must be on the g6-square (but not f6, because of $\mathbb{Q}h5$). The adjoining-squares principle permits us to define yet a third pair of corresponding squares, g3-g7.

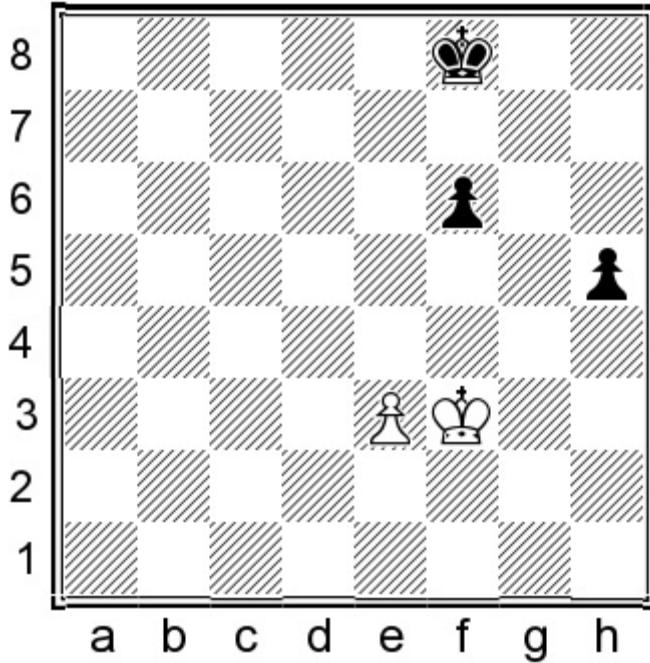
Let's go further. The square f3 adjoins both f4 and g3 – its obvious correspondent is g6. From h3, the king wants to go to g3 and h4 – thus, the corresponding square for Black is f6.

Let's pull back one rank, and look at the g2-square. From here, the king can go to f3 (the corresponding square: g6), g3 (g7), or h3 (f6). The only equivalent square for Black is f7 – but he cannot go there.

Thus, the solution becomes clear. The g2-square is the key: White must simply retreat his king there, see where Black's king goes in response, and go to the corresponding square.

**1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$)
5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6.e7 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$**

Gulko – Short
Riga 1995



1-34

W?

First, we must make sure that the direct attempt to force a draw by trading off the e-pawn does not work.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ (it will become clear later why the king goes to this square, and not to f7) 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. e4 (3. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ h4 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}d5! - +)$ 3... h4! 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh4 \mathbb{Q}e5 - +$

It is also worth noting that if it were White's move in the position after 3.e4, he would still lose after 4.e5 h4! 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ fxe5 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh4 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}d4$. The move e4-e5 only saves the game with Black's king at g7 or e7 (since the threat is to take on f6 with check).

Now, what can White do against the black king's march to the center? The only possibility is to attack the h5-pawn. He can draw, if he can meet $\mathbb{Q}e6$ with $\mathbb{Q}h4$ (with the pawn still on e3).

But if Black's king goes to g6, then keeping the king at h4 becomes pointless – here, White must go to f4, with the idea of pushing the e-pawn. Note that these paired squares we have found are not corresponding squares, since no zugzwangs exist; but our calculations now allow us to begin the search and analysis of correspondences.

From f7, Black's king is ready to move in two directions – to e6 or to g6. White's king must keep the same possibilities in hand. This clarifies the first, and most important pair of corresponding squares: f7/g3. (And this is why 1. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ is to be met by 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ – in order to meet 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3!?$ with 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$, placing White in zugzwang).

We are almost ready to make our first move. 1. $\mathbb{Q}g3? \mathbb{Q}f7! \text{O}$ is bad;

and on 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ decides – the threat of 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ forces White's king to approach h4 through the mined square g3.

1. ♔g2!! ♔g8

On 1...♔g7, White saves himself by 2.♔f3! The black king can reach e6 only through f7. The white king will then be able to access g3 on its way to h4.

2. ♔f2 (2.♔f3 leads to the same thing) 2... ♔f8 3. ♔g2! ♔e7 4. ♔h3! ♔f7 5. ♔g3! ♔g6

If 5...♔e6 6.♔h4=; and if 5...f5, either 6.e4=, or 6.♔f4 h4 7.e4 h3 8.♔g3 fxe4 9.♔xh3 ♔e6 10.♔g3 ♔d5 11.♔f2 ♔d4 12.♔e2=

6. ♔f4 ♔h6

On 6...♔f7, the only reply is 7.♔g3! (7.♔f5? ♔e7O), while on 6...♔g7, it is 7.♔f3! (7.e4? ♔g6O, and 7.♔f5? ♔f7 8.e4 h4+ are two bad alternatives).

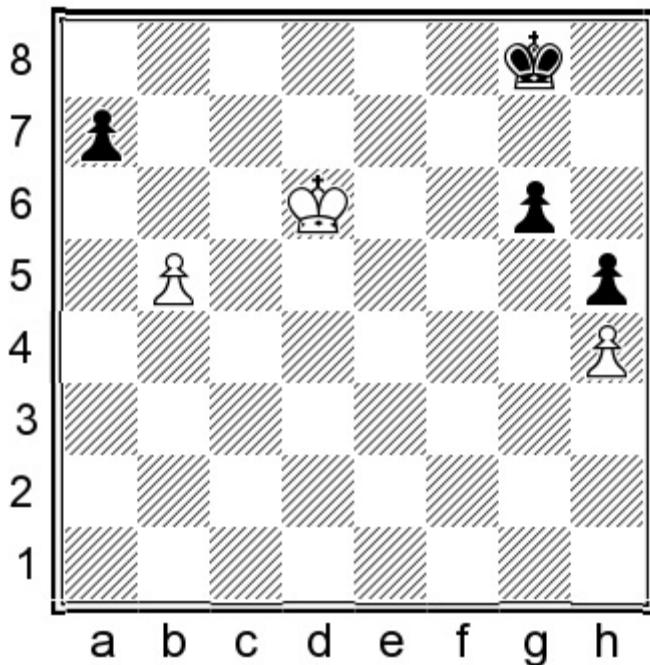
7. ♔f5 ♔h7

If 7...♔g7, then 8.♔f4! (but not 8.e4? ♔f7 9.e5 h4+) 8...♔g6 9.e4!O 9...♔h6 10.♔f5 ♔g7 11.e5=

8.e4 ♔h6 (8...♔g7 9.e5) **9.♔xf6 h4** Draw.

Note that the game position is not new – in 1979, Costantini composed it as a study. Of course, Gulko did not know this – but he was acquainted with the idea of corresponding squares and was able to put the method successfully into practice.

Exercises



I-35

1/10

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/10. R.Réti 1929

First let us try 1.♔c6 g5! 2.♔b7 (2.hxg5 h4–+). Black wins by means of 2...g4! because his pawn promotes with check. Now we notice that if the black king is on f6, White may play ♔c6 because he exchanges on g5 with check, avoiding Black's promotion on g1.

White cannot prevent ...g6-g5, but does this move invariably win? Assume that the black king has just taken the white pawn on g5 and White has replied with ♔g3. Now we calculate: 1...♔f5 2.♔h4 ♔e5 3.♔xh5 ♔d5 4.♔g4 ♔c5 5.♔f3 ♔xb5 6.♔e2 ♔c4 7.♔d2 ♔b3 8.♔c1 with a draw. White has made it just in time! This means that he would have lost if his king were slightly further away from the h5-pawn (say, on f3).

We know enough to define the corresponding squares. The simplest reciprocal zugzwang is with the kings on f4 and f6: Black, if on move, cannot achieve anything, while otherwise White is lost: 1.♔e4 g5–+

or 1.♔g3 ♔e5–+

The correspondence between the e5- and f7-squares is less evident. Actually, if Black is on move, 1...♔e7 is met with 2.♔d5 ♔f6, and now 3.♔c6!=, profiting from the fact that the black king is unfortunately placed on f6.

But what if White is on move? If 1.♔f4, then 1...♔f6–+,

while after 1.♔d5, Black wins by means of 1...g5! 2.hxg5 ♔g6 3.♔e4 (3.♔c6 h4) 3...♔xg5 4.♔f3 ♔f5.

Using the neighborhood principle, the third pair of corresponding squares is g7/e4. When the black king is on e7, White plays ♔d5.

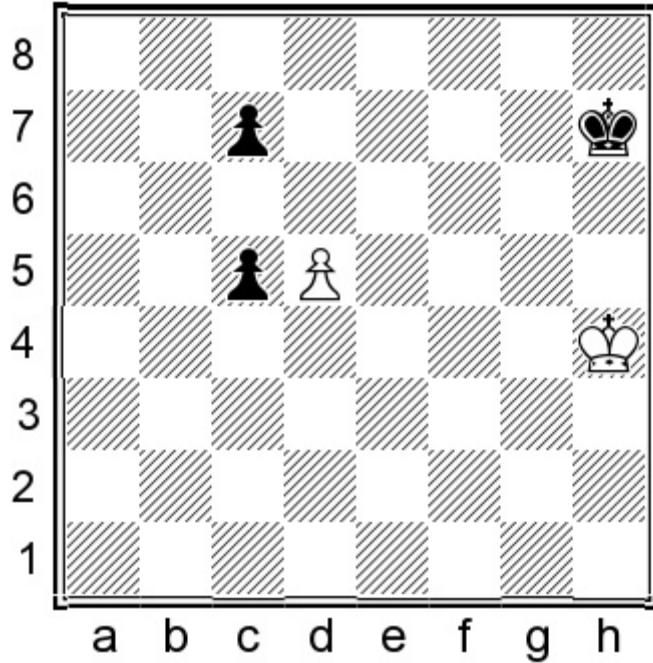
1.♔d5! (1.♔e6? g5–+;

1.♔e5? ♔f7O–+)

1.♔d5! ♔f7

Or 1...♔g7 2.♔e4! ♔f6 3.♔f4 ♔e7?! 4.♔e3!=, rather than 4.♔e5? ♔f7O–+ or 4.♔g5? ♔f7 5.♔f4 ♔f6O–+

2.♔e5! ♔e7 3.♔d5! ♔f6 (3...♔d7 4.♔e5 ♔c7 5.♔d5!=) 4.♔c6! g5 5.hxg5+ ♔xg5 6.♔b7=



I-36

1/11

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/11. M.Zinar 1987

While both kings travel to the queenside, they must be aware of the pair of mined squares c4-d6. If the white king should arrive safely at d3, a drawing situation with untouchable pawns arises. However, we should take into account the utmost importance of the potential reciprocal zugzwang position with the kings on e4 and f6 that may occur. Analyzing all this, we discover the correspondence of the squares f4/g6 and g4/h6 and come to the conclusion that an anti-opposition takes place here.

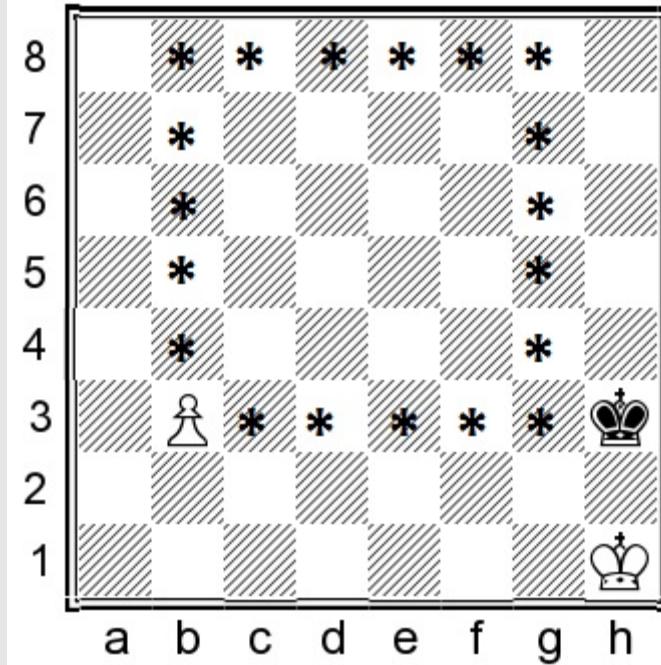
1. $\text{†g}5?$ $\text{†g}7$ 2. $\text{†f}5$ $\text{†f}7$ 3. $\text{†e}4$ (3. $\text{†e}5$ $\text{†e}7\text{O}-+$) 3... $\text{†f}6!\text{O}$ 4. $\text{†d}3$ (4. $\text{†f}4$ c4 5. $\text{†e}4$ c3 6. $\text{†d}3$ $\text{†e}5-$ +) 4... $\text{†e}5$ 5. $\text{†c}4$ $\text{†d}6\text{O}-+$;

1. $\text{†g}4?$ $\text{†h}6!!$ 2. $\text{†f}5$ (2. $\text{†f}4$ $\text{†g}6$ 3. $\text{†e}5$ $\text{†f}7)$ 2... $\text{†g}7$ 3. $\text{†f}4$ $\text{†g}6!$ 4. $\text{†e}5$ $\text{†f}7!$ 5. $\text{†e}4$ $\text{†f}6\text{O}-+$;

1. $\text{†g}3!!$ $\text{†h}6!$ 2. $\text{†g}4!$ $\text{†g}7!$ 3. $\text{†f}3!$ (3. $\text{†f}4?$ $\text{†g}6!-+$) 3... $\text{†g}6$ 4. $\text{†f}4!$ $\text{†f}7$ 5. $\text{†e}3!$ $\text{†f}6$ 6. $\text{†e}4!$ $\text{†e}7$ 7. $\text{†d}3$ $\text{†d}7$ 8. $\text{†c}3=$

King vs. Passed Pawns

The Rule of the Square



1-37

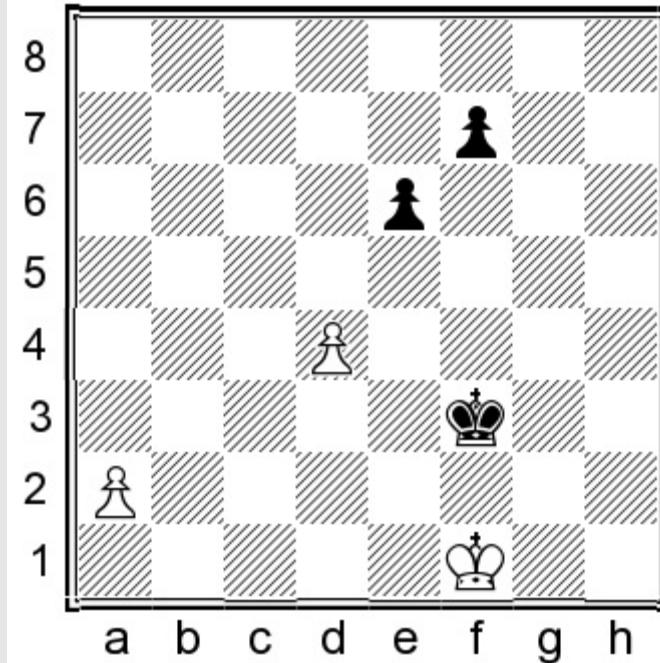
Imagine a square having for one of its sides the path from the pawn to its queening square. (One easy way to construct the square is to draw a diagonal from the pawn to its promotion rank and then complete the square.) If the king stands within the square of the passed pawn, or can reach it on its move, the pawn can be stopped; otherwise, it will queen.

Black to move gets inside the square and draws (1... $\mathbb{Q}g4$
or 1... $\mathbb{Q}g3$).

If it is White's move, then after 1.b4, the side of the new square becomes the f-file, which Black's king cannot reach in time.

If the pawn stood on b2, then because the pawn can move two squares, the square should still be constructed from the b3-square.

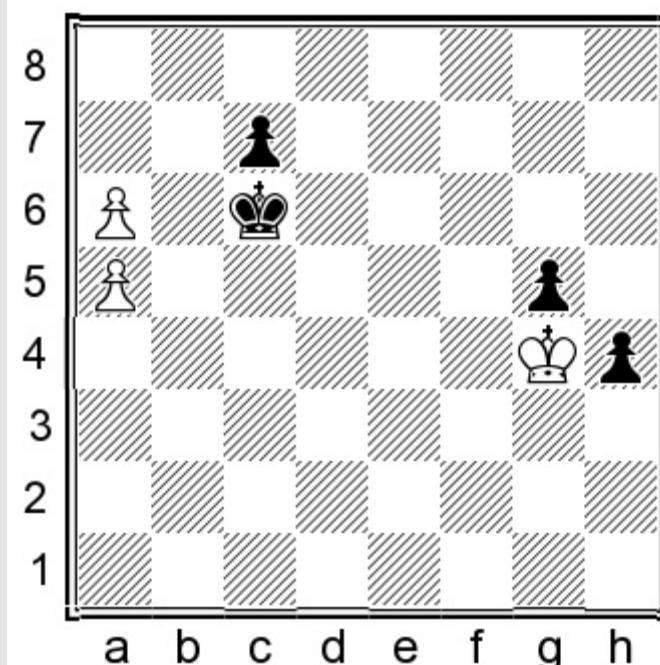
Obstacles in the path of the king: It sometimes happens that even though the king is located within the square, it still cannot stop the passed pawn, because its own pawns get in the way.



I-38

W?

1.d5! exd5 **2.a4 ♖e4** (2...d4 3.a5 d3 4.♖e1) **3.a5+–**, as Black cannot play 3...♖d5.



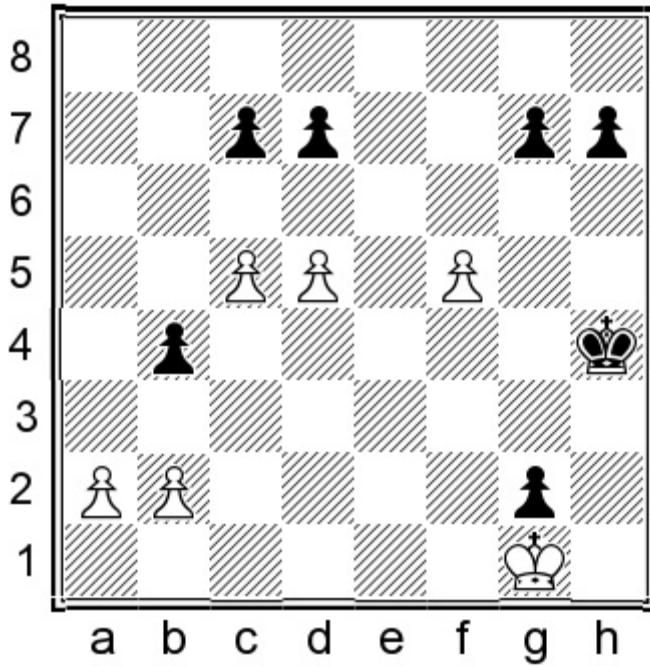
I-39

W

The waiting move **1.♖h3** places Black in zugzwang – now he loses. Without the pawn at c7, the opposite result occurs.

An analogous zugzwang occurs if you move the pawn at a5 to c5. The only difference is that this time, without the pawn at c7, the position would be drawn.

Exercises



1-40

1/12

W?

Show/Hide Solution

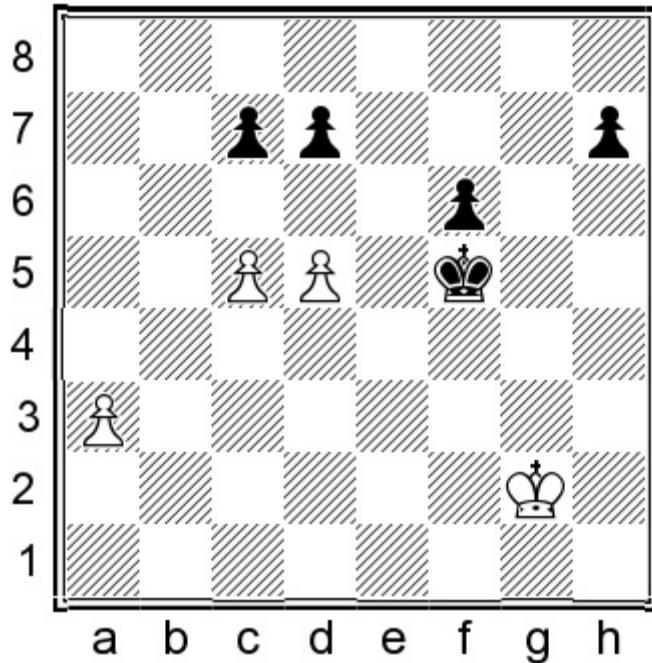
1/12. A.Troitsky 1913

White must eliminate the g2-pawn; after the premature 1.a4? bxa3 2.bxa3 ♜g3! 3.a4 h5, his king will be mated.

However, after 1.♗xg2? ♜g5 2.a4 bxa3 3.bxa3, the black king enters the square of the a-pawn and arrives in time to hold the eighth rank: 3...♗f6! 4.a4 ♜e7! 5.a5 (or 5.♗f3) 5...♗d8, etc.

1.f6! gxf6 2.♗xg2! ♜g5 3.a4 bxa3 4.bxa3 ♜f5

The eighth rank is not available anymore; Black must use the fifth rank. However, White creates barriers to this route, too.



16-7

W?

5.a4

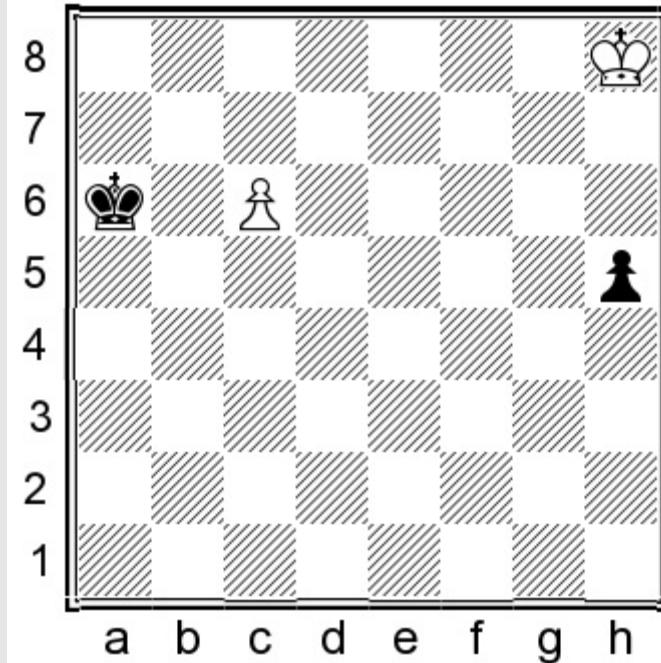
5.d6? cxd6 6.a4 is premature in view of 6... $\hat{e}e6!$ 7.c6 dxc6 8.a5 $\hat{d}d7$.

5... $\hat{e}e5$ 6.d6! (rather than 6.c6? d6!) **6...cxd6 7.c6! dxc6 8.a5 $\hat{d}d5$ 9.a6+–**

Réti's Idea

It sometimes happens that a king outside the square of a passed pawn can still catch it. The win of the missing tempo (or even several tempi) is accomplished by the creation of accompanying threats, most often (though not exclusively) involved with supporting one's own passed pawn.

R. Réti 1921



1-41

W?

Black's king lies within the square of the c6-pawn, while White is short two tempi needed to catch the h5-pawn. Nevertheless, he can save himself – the trick is "**to chase two birds at once.**" The king's advance is dual-purpose: it chases after the h-pawn, while simultaneously approaching the queen's wing.

1. ♔g7! h4 2. ♔f6! ♔b6

If 2...h3, then 3. ♔e7(or e6), and the pawns queen at the same time.

3. ♔e5! ♔xc6

3...h3 4. ♔d6 h2 5.c7=

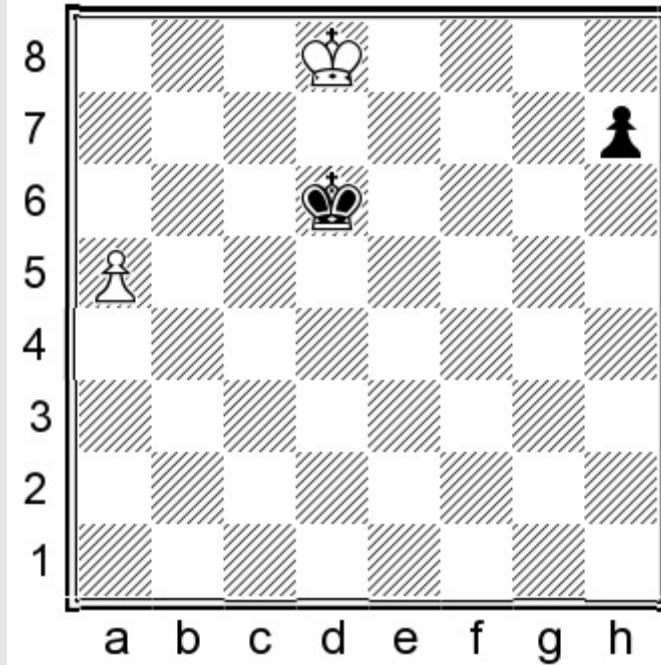
4. ♔f4=

A miracle has come to pass: the king, even though two tempi behind, nevertheless has caught the pawn!

In 1928, Réti offered a different version of this study: move the white king to h5, and instead of the pawn at h5, put three (!) black pawns at f6, g7 and h6. The solution is similar: **1. ♔g6!,** and after any Black reply (1...f5, 1...h5, or 1...♔b6) – **2. ♔xg7!,** followed by the well-known “chasing two birds at once.”

And now, a slightly different version of the same idea.

L. Prokeš 1947



1-42

W?

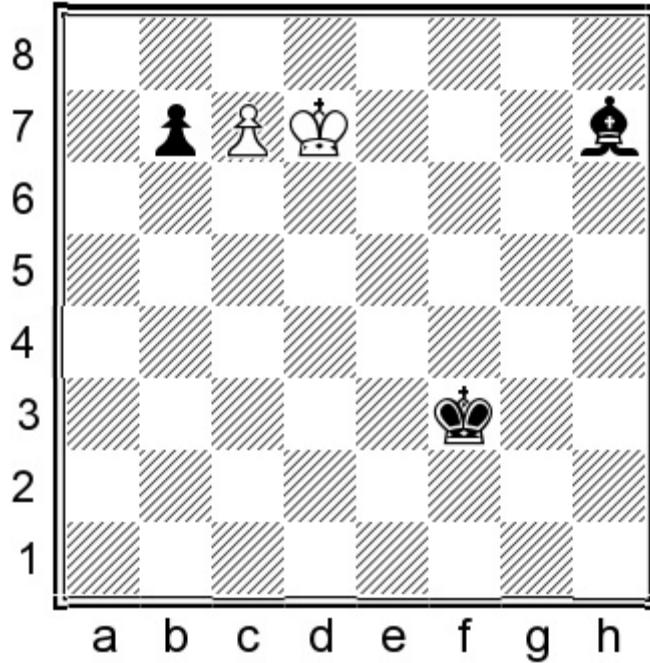
1. ♔c8 ♔c6 2. ♔b8! ♔b5 (else 3.a6) 3. ♔b7!

Thanks to the threat of 4.a6, White wins a tempo and gets into the square of the h-pawn. 3.♔c7? h5 is hopeless.

3... ♔xa5 4. ♔c6=

The study we shall now examine shows us that Réti's idea can be useful in more than just pawn endings.

A. & K. Sarychev 1928



1-43

W?

1.c8=Q? Qf5+ 2.Qc7 Qxc8 is hopeless,

as is 1.Qd6? Qf5 2.Qc5 Qe4 3.Qb6 Qc8 4.Qa7 b5— The only saving line starts with a paradoxical move that forces the black pawn to advance.

1.Qc8!! b5

As in Réti's study, White is short two tempi.

2.Qd7 b4 3.Qd6 Qf5

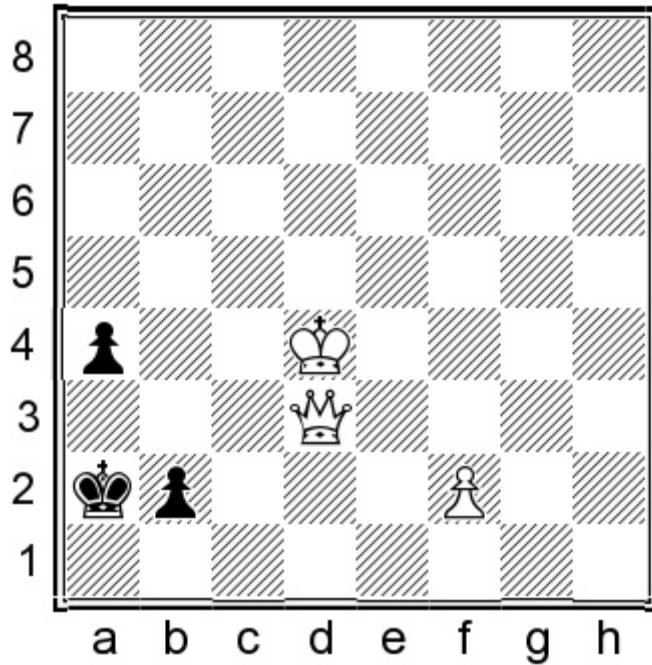
Thanks to the threat of 4.c8=Q, White wins one tempo; now he wins the other tempo by attacking the black bishop.

4.Qe5! Qc8 5.Qd4=

Tragicomедies

Yates – Marshall

Karlsbad 1929



1-44

W

1. $\mathbb{W}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 2. $\mathbb{W}b5(c2)?$ is a mistake, in view of 2... $b1=\mathbb{W}!$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xb1$ stalemate.

But White wins easily after 1. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $a3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $b1=\mathbb{W}+$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xb1+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$, when the black king cannot reach the square (remember that when the pawn is on the second rank, the square is constructed from f3, not from f2).

In the game, White chose a less accurate method of transposing into a pawn endgame.

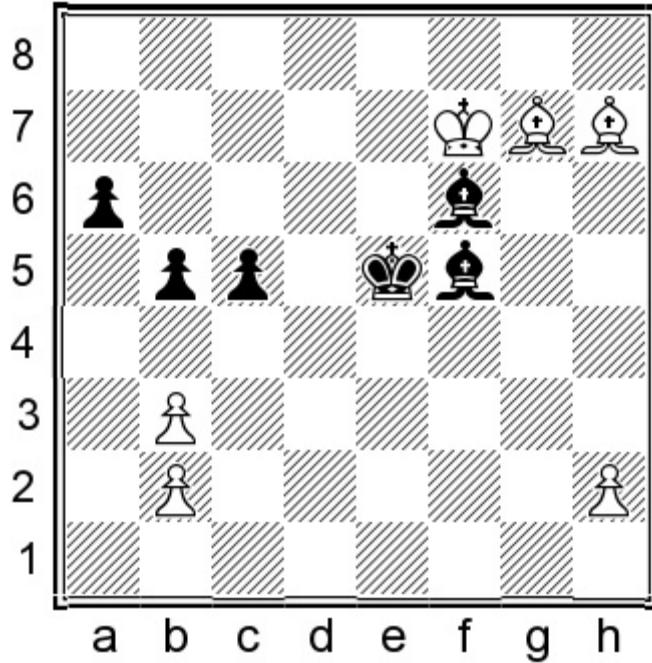
1. $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ $b1=\mathbb{W}$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xb1+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$

This is a situation known to us from the Prokeš study.

3... $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$, with a draw.

Lasker – Tarrasch

St. Petersburg 1914



1-45
B?

Black wins without any trouble after 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 4.h4 $\mathbb{Q}d1$. Tarrasch decided that the pawn endgame would be simpler still. However, he overlooked the very same finesse as Yates did in the preceding example.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5??$

I leave it to the readers to decide on their own if White could have saved himself after 2... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ or 2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$. Perhaps it would be worthwhile to return to this difficult question after we study the chapter on opposite-color bishops.

3. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ a5 4.h4 $\mathbb{Q}g4$

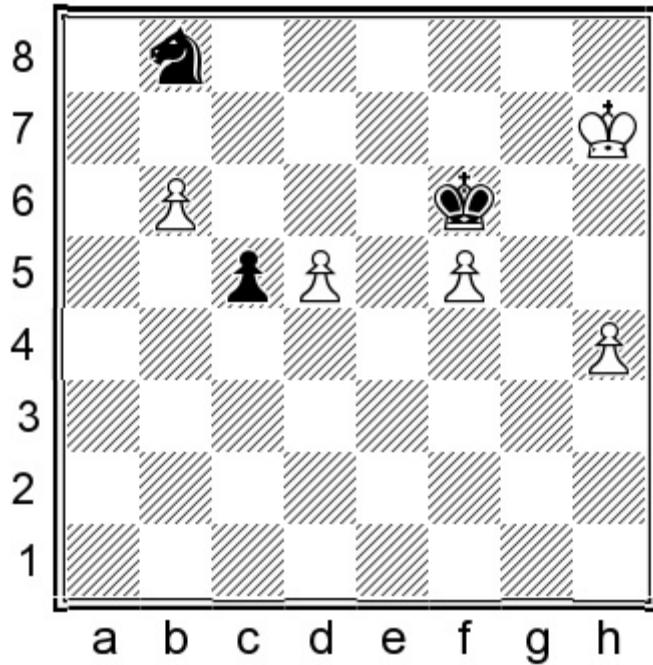
Tarrasch had expected to block White's king from stopping the passed pawn after 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ c4 6.bxc4 bxc4 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ c3 8.bxc3 a4 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ a3.

5. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$

6...c4 7.bxc4 bxc4 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ c3 9.bxc3 a4? 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ is now useless.

7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ Draw.

Exercises



1-46
1/13
W?

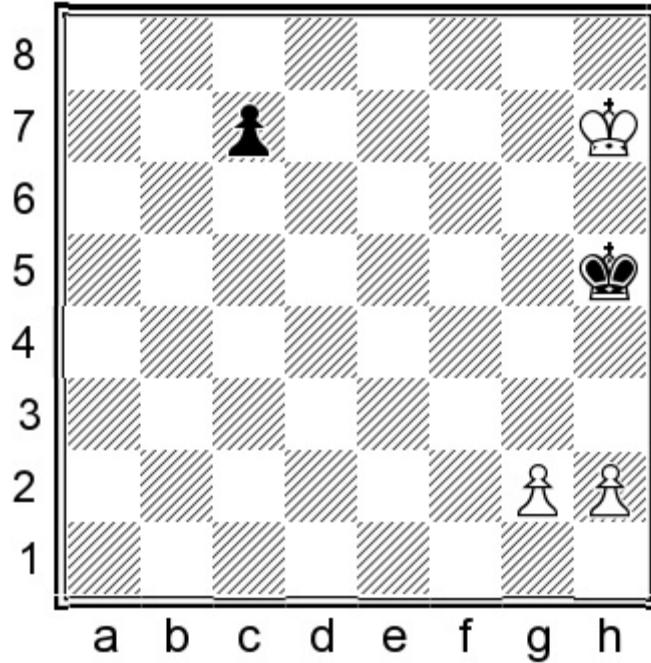
Show/Hide Solution

1/13. Gustavson-Bata, cr 1985

1. $\mathbb{Q}g8!!$ (1.h5? $\mathbb{Q}f7!-+$)

1. $\mathbb{Q}g8!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ (1...c4 2.h5) 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (otherwise 3.h5=) 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5=$

None of this actually happened. Even though the game was played by mail, White failed to find the saving maneuver and resigned!



1-47

1/14

W?

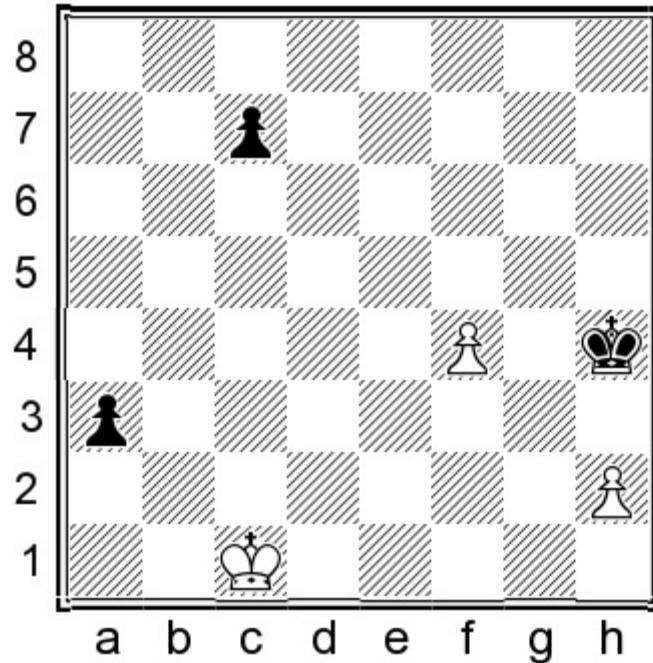
Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/14. T.Gorgiev 1928

1.g4+! ♕g5! (1...♕xg4 2.♕g6 c5 3.h4=) **2.♕g7!**

The premature 2.h4+? loses to 2...♕xh4! 3.♕g6 ♕xg4 4.♕f6 ♕f4 5.♕e6 ♕e4+ 2...c5 3.h4+! ♕xg4 (3...♕xh4 4.♕f6) **4.♕g6! ♕xh4 5.♕f5=**



1-48

1/15

W?

Play

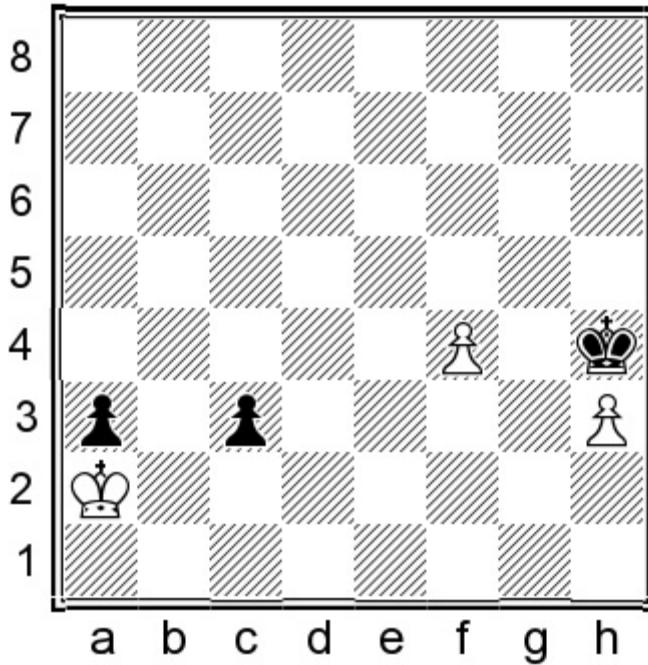
Show/Hide Solution

1/15. N.Grigoriev 1937

1.h3 c5 2.♗b1 c4 3.♗a2

Black has not managed to unite his pawns, so he relies on the Réti idea!

3...c3



16-8
W?

4.†b3!!

After 4.†xa3? Black holds by means of the Réti maneuver: 4...†g3! 5.f5 †f4! 6.f6 †e3 7.†b3 †d3 8.f7 c2 9.f8=† c1=†=. By postponing the pawn capture, White gets the same position but with his king on a more favorable square: a2 instead of a3.

4...a2□ 5.†xa2 †g3 6.f5 †f3

If 6...†f4, then 7.f6 †e3 8.f7 c2 9.f8=† c1=†= (the pawn is promoted without check) 10.†h6+ winning the new queen.

7.†b1!+-

Another advantage of the king's position on a2! The Réti idea could have worked after both 7.f6? †e2! and 7.†b3? †e4!

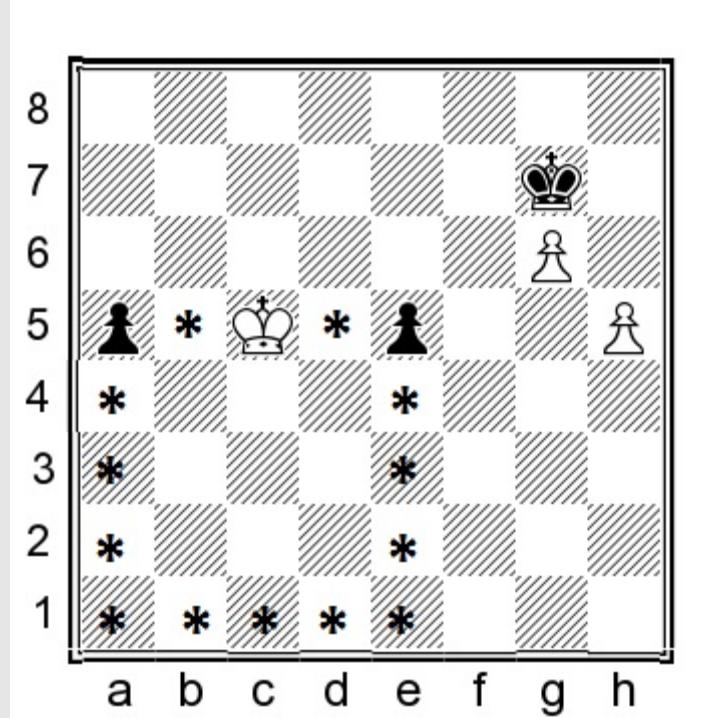
The Floating Square

There are cases in which the king must do battle with two separated passed pawns; in these cases, a useful rule is ***the floating-square rule***, suggested by Studenecki in 1939.

If a square whose two corners are occupied by pawns (on the same rank) reaches the edge of the board, then one of those pawns must queen.

If the square does not reach the edge of the board, then the king can hold the pawns. If there are two files between the pawns, the king can capture both; if the distance is any greater, he can only

prevent their further advance.



I-49

B

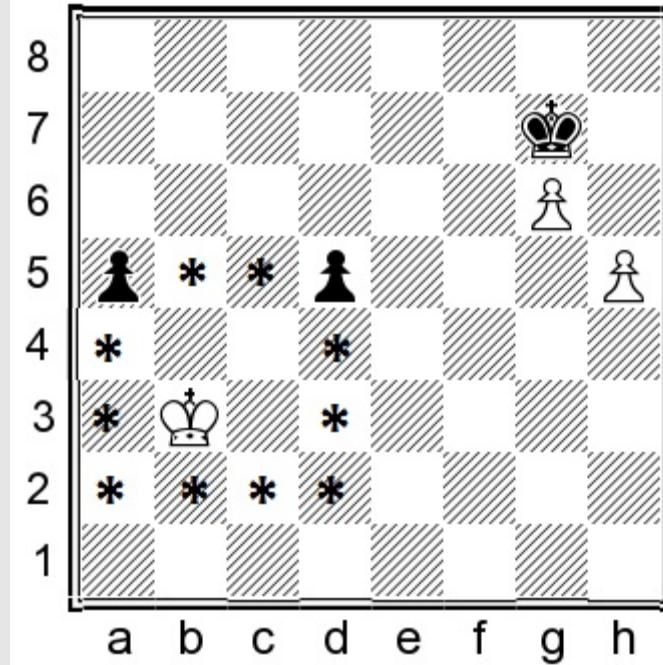
The square having reached the edge of the board, the pawns will queen, regardless of whose move it is.

1...a4 2.♔b4 e4 3.♕xa4 e3+–

Let's shift the pawns to a6 and e6. The square now reaches only to the second rank, and the position becomes a draw. In fact, 1...a5? would be bad: 2.♔b5 e5 3.♕xa5+–;

and so is 1...♔h6? 2.♔d6! a5 3.♕xe6 a4 4.♔f7 a3 5.g7 a2 6.g8=♕ a1=♕ 7.♕g6#.

Black must play **1...♔f6 2.♔c6** (but not 2.♔b6? e5 3.♔c5 a5+–) **2...♔g7** (2...e5 3.♔d5 a5 4.g7 ♔xg7 5.♔xe5= is possible, too) **3.♔c5=**



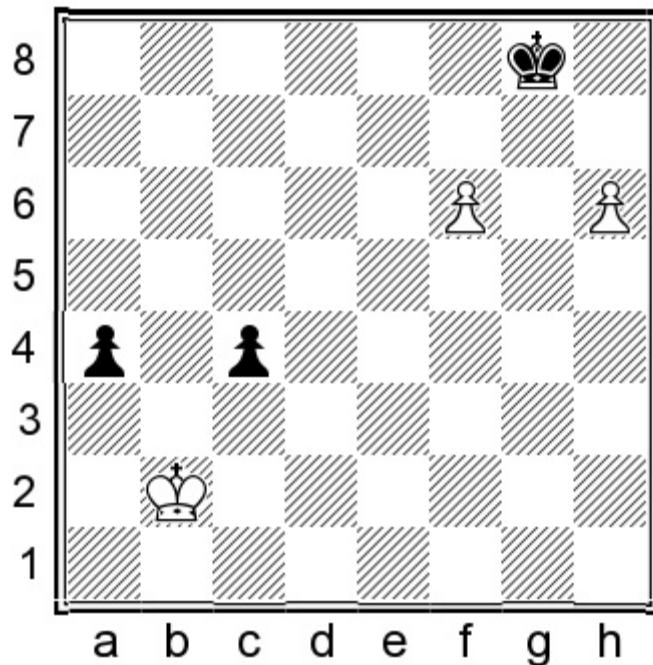
1-50

W

This square does not reach the edge of the board, and the distance between the pawns is the most unfavorable: two files. This means the pawns are lost, regardless of who is on move.

1. ♖a4 d4 2. ♖b3 ♖h6 3. ♖c4 a4 4. ♖xd4+–

Let's examine one more substantive case.



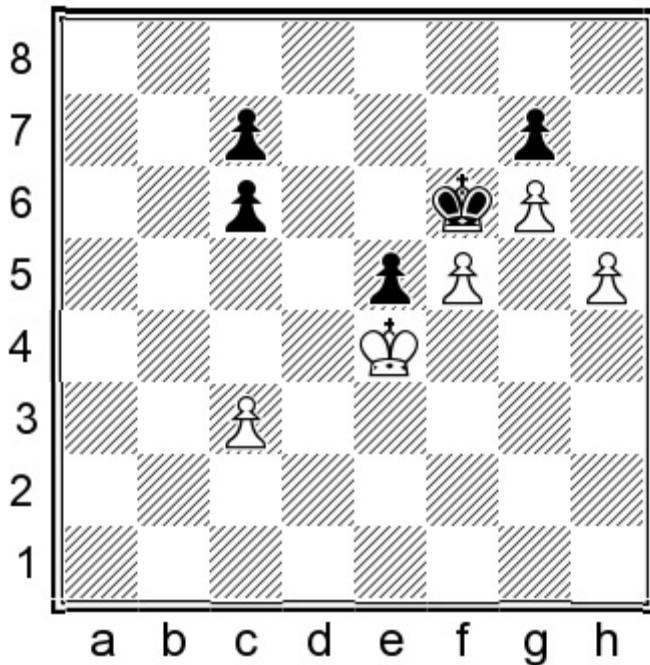
1-51

W

On the queenside, the square does not reach the edge of the board, so the pawns can be held: **1.♔c3 a3 2.♔c2**. On the kingside, however, the pawns are already quite far advanced. True, the king can prevent them from queening – so far; but because of zugzwang, he will soon be forced to let them through.

Khalifman – Belikov

Podolsk 1992



I-52

W

1.h6! gxh6 2.♔f3 h5 3.♔g3 c5

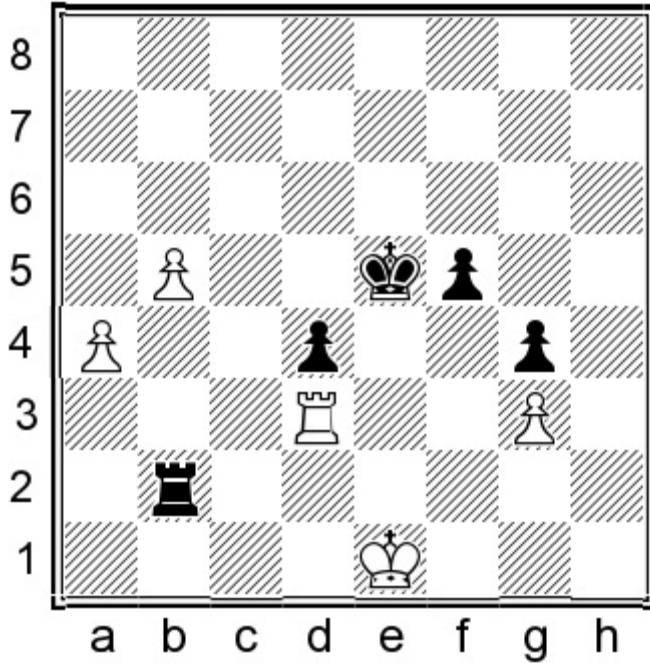
There are two files between the black passed pawns; the square does not reach the edge of the board – that means the pawns must be lost. The attempt to defend them with the king is doomed to failure:
3...♔g7 4.c4 c5 5.♔h3 ♔h6 6.♔h4 c6 7.♔h3 ♔g7 8.♔g3 (triangulation!) 8...♔h6 9.♔h4O 9...e4
10.♔g3 ♔g7 11.♔f4+–

4.♔h4 e4 5.♔g3 Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Stoltz – Nimzovitch

Berlin 1928



I-53
W

White would secure the draw by advancing his a-pawn and putting the rook behind it, thus: 1.a5! $\mathbb{R}xb5$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a3=$,

or by 1. $\mathbb{R}a3!$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2.a5 d3 3.a6 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{R}xd3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 5.a7=. Instead, Stoltz offered to trade rooks:

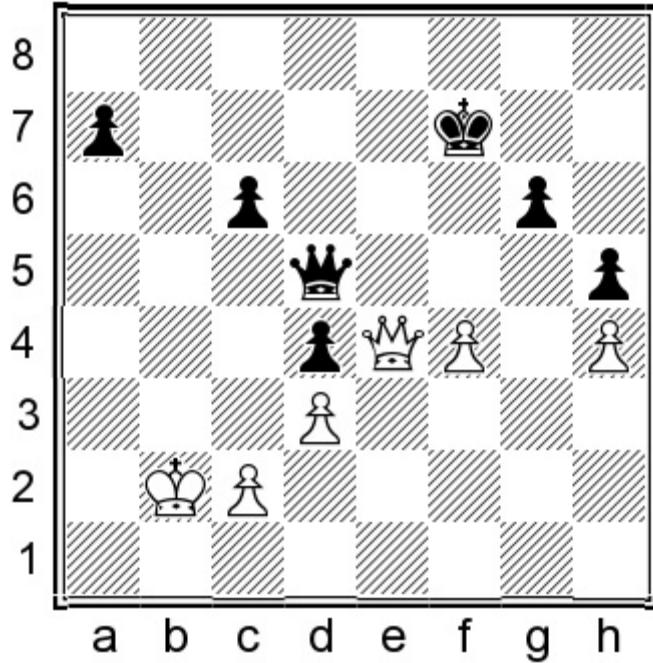
1. $\mathbb{R}d2?? \mathbb{R}xd2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ f4! 3.gxf4+ (3.a5 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4.a6 $\mathbb{Q}c7$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}d6!$

The square of the d4- and g4-pawns reaches the edge of the board – that means it is impossible to prevent one of them from queening. The same could also be said of White's pawns – but they are much too late. Note the excellent move of the black king – from d6, it is prepared to stop either white pawn with a minimum of effort.

4.a5 g3 5.a6 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ d3+ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ g2 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ g1= \mathbb{W} 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 11.f5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ White resigned.

We may add to our list of tragicomedies not just White's gross blunder, but also his stubborn refusal to end resistance in a completely hopeless situation.

Exercises



1-54

1/16

B?

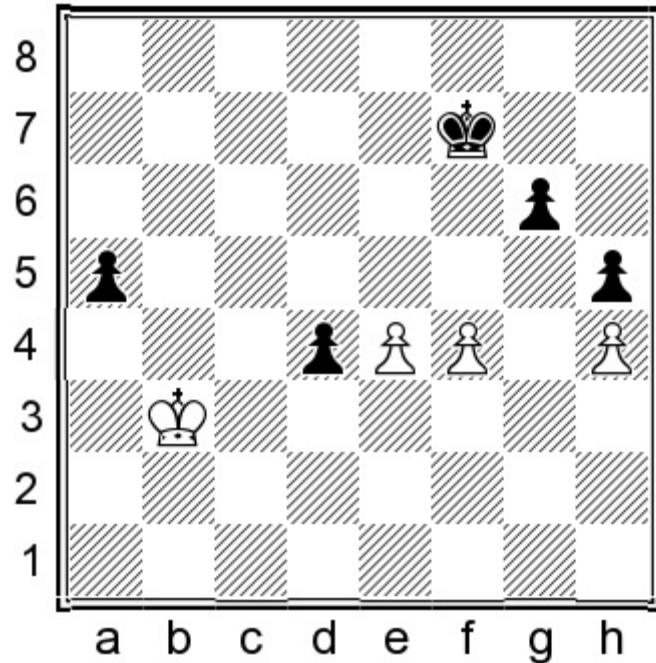
Show/Hide Solution

1/16. Lickleder-Dvoretsky, Germany tt 1997

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$ 2.dxe4 a5!

White resigned in view of 3.c3 d3 4.c4 a4+ or 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ c5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (4.c3 d3; 4.c4 $\mathbb{Q}e6\circlearrowright$) 4...a4 5.c3 a3 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ d3+

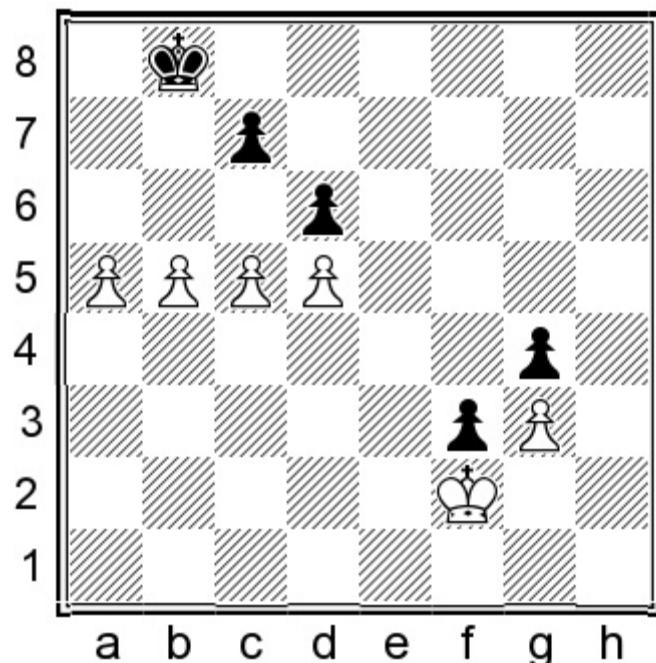
2...c5? would have been a grave error in view of 3.c3! Now 3...d3? loses to 4.c4 a5 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$. 3...dxc3+ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ a5 is an obvious draw, while after 3...a5 4.cxd4 cxd4 5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$, White is threatening to eliminate all the queenside pawns.



16-9

B?

However, Black still has a draw: 5...g5!! 6.fxg5 ♖e6 7.♖c4 ♖e5 8.g6 ♖f6 9.♖xd4 ♖xg6=



1-55

1/17

B?

Show/Hide Solution

1/17. Ravikumar-Nielsen, Esbjerg 1980

Black has a single way to a draw.

1... $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ (Δ 2...dxc5) 2.a6+ (2.cxd6 cxd6=; 2.b6 cxb6!=) 2... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ 3.b6+ $\mathbb{Q}xa6!$ 4.bxc7 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5.cxd6 $\mathbb{Q}c8=$

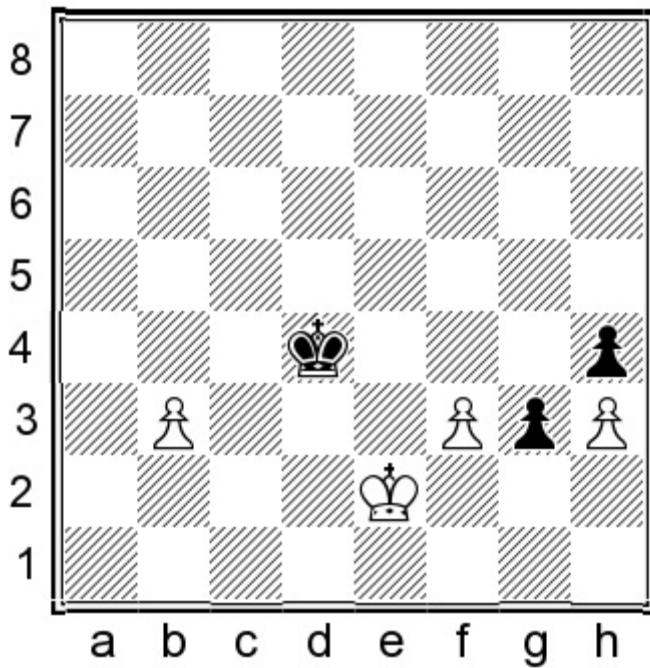
All other moves lose:

1...dxc5? 2.b6 c4 (2...cxb6 3.a6 c4 4.d6 c3 5.d7 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 6.a7+-) 3.a6 c3 4.a7+ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5.bxc7+-;

1... $\mathbb{Q}c8?$ 2.a6! Δ 3.b6+-;

1... $\mathbb{Q}a7?$ 2.b6+ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (2...cxb6 3.cxd6+-;) 3.bxc7+-;

1... $\mathbb{Q}a8?$ (this was played in the actual game) 2.b6 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3.bxc7 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 4.cxd6+ Black resigned.



1-56

1/18

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/18. M.Rauch

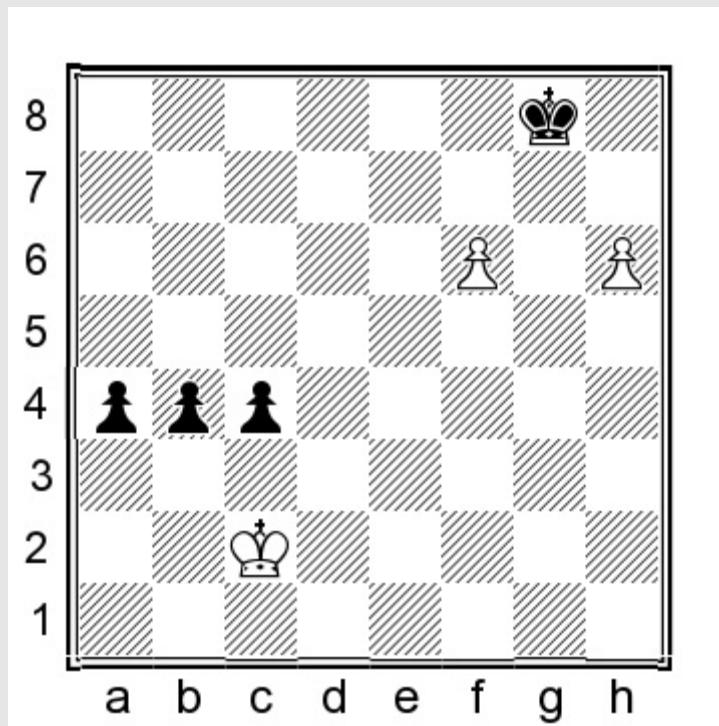
The winning method is not complicated: White should pass the move to his opponent by means of triangulation. Then he will be able to advance his pawns so that they can decide the fight without the king's help.

1.♔f1! ♔d3 2.♔g2 ♔d4 3.♔g1! ♔d3 4.♔f1○ 4...♔d4 5.♔e2○ 5...♔d5 6.♔e3 ♔d6 7.f4 ♔d5 8.b4+- (the pawn square has reached the edge of the board).

Show in Text Mode

Three Connected Pawns

It is difficult for the king to fight three connected passed pawns. It has no chance at all if the enemy has any moves in reserve. If not, then a situation of reciprocal zugzwang could arise.



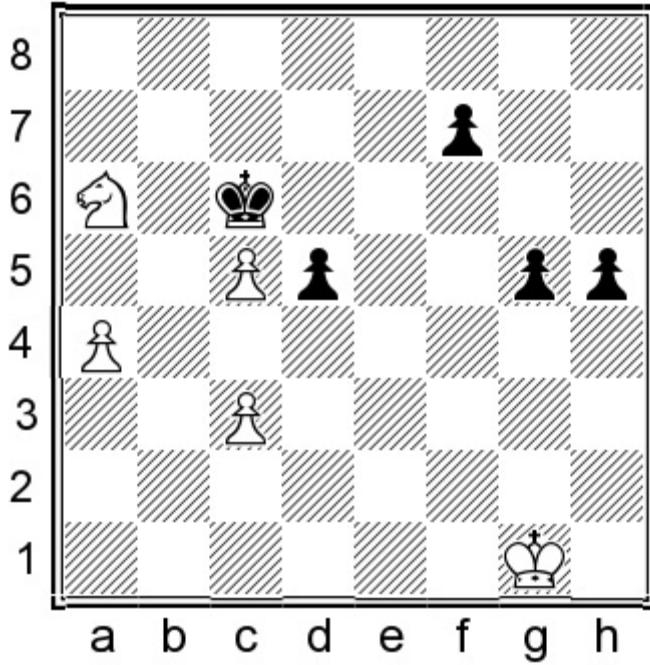
I-57

W?

White to move wins by **1. ♕b1!** ($1\dots b3\ 2.\ddot{\text{Q}}b2\text{O};\ 1\dots a3\ 2.\ddot{\text{Q}}a2\ c3\ 3.\ddot{\text{Q}}b3\text{O};\ 1\dots c3\ 2.\ddot{\text{Q}}c2\ a3\ 3.\ddot{\text{Q}}b3\text{O}$). Any other first move by White leads to the opposite result.

Nunn – Friedlander

Islington 1968



1-58

W?

On the queenside, we have equality: it would be bad for either side to make the first move there. The question is, who will fall into zugzwang when the kingside pawn moves run out?

White would win by playing 1. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ (or 1. $\mathbb{Q}g2!?$); the important point is to be able to meet 1... $h4$ with 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$, for instance: 2... $f5$ (2... $f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $f5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4\mathcal{O}$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ $g4$ (3... $f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $f4$ (4... $h3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $f4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $f3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3\mathcal{O}$; 4... $g3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $f4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2\mathcal{O}$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1!\mathcal{O}$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4$.

Nothing would be changed by 1... $g4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $f5$ (2... $f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2(h2)$; or 1... $f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ (or, with the king at $g2$ – 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$, etc.).

The actual game took an immediate wrong turn:

1. $\mathbb{Q}f2??$ $h4!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $g4$) 2... $h3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $g4$ 4. $a5$

White has to be the first to upset the queenside equilibrium. He can no longer place his opponent in zugzwang, because the f-pawn retains the right of moving either one or two squares, according to circumstances (an important technique, to which we shall be returning).

4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $f6!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $f5\mathcal{O}$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $f4\mathcal{O}$

4... $f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 6. $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ 8. $c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ Draw.

The section which follows is devoted to those cases in which both sides queen simultaneously. In such situations, the game sometimes turns into a “queen versus pawns” endgame – so it makes sense to get to know its theory first.

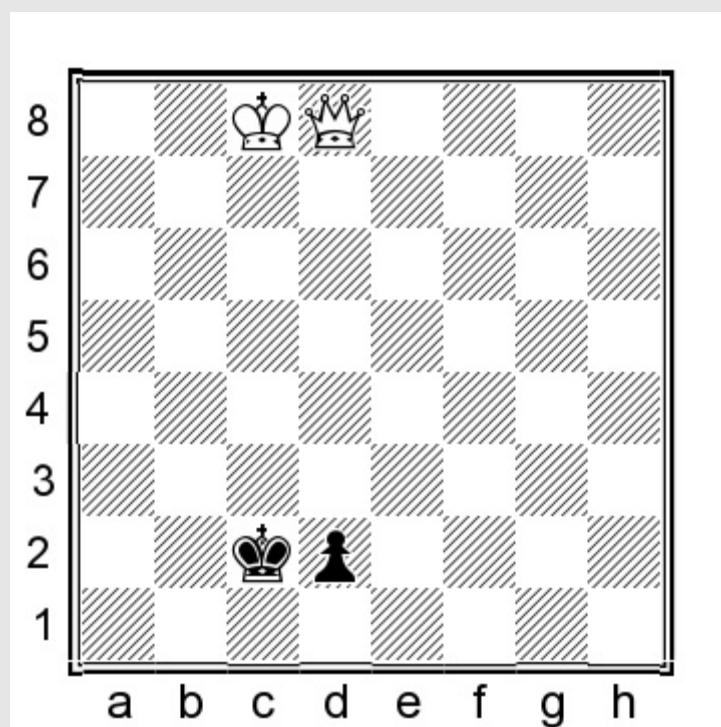
Queen vs. Pawns

The only cases which have significant practical importance are those elementary endings in which a

queen plays against a pawn which has reached the next-to-last rank.

Knight or Center Pawn

The queen generally wins against either a center or knight pawn.



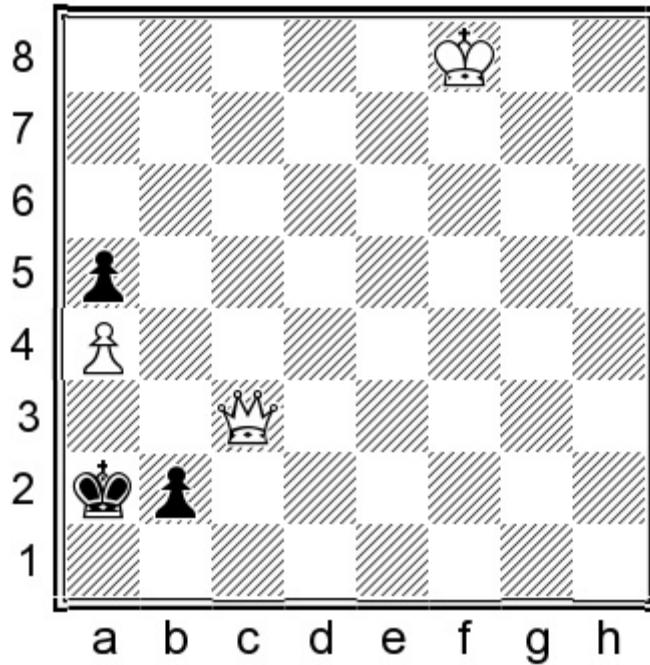
I-59

W

The algorithm is simple: the queen uses either checks or attacks on the pawn to get closer to the enemy king, and drive it onto the d1-square. This gives White's king a tempo to get closer to the pawn. This procedure is repeated as often as necessary.

1. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{K}b1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ $\mathbb{K}c2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ $\mathbb{K}b1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ (or 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$) 4... $\mathbb{K}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{K}b2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{K}c1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{K}d1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{K}e2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (or 9. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$) 9... $\mathbb{K}e1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ $\mathbb{K}f2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{K}e1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ $\mathbb{K}d1$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c6$, etc.

A draw is only very rarely possible – when, for some reason, White is unable to execute this mechanism. An example would be if the white king in our previous diagram were at c7, c6 or c5. Sometimes, the queen's approach is hindered by the presence of additional pawns on the board, as in the following diagram.



1-60
\$
W

The king cannot be driven to b1, since White is unable to check on the a-file. The most White can achieve is a queen endgame with an extra rook's pawn by 1. $\mathbb{Q}xa5!?$ b1= \mathbb{Q} ; but theory considers that endgame to be drawish.

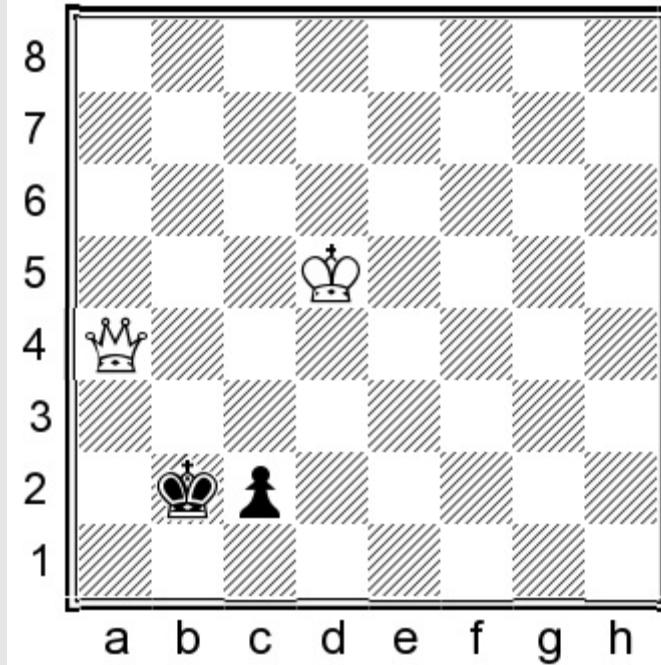
And the pawn endgame is not won either: 1. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ b1= \mathbb{Q} 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb1+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xa5 \mathbb{Q}c5=$

However, with the white king at f7, the exchange of queens leads to victory.

1. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ b1= \mathbb{Q} 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb1+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ (the first, but not the last time we shall see “shouldering” used in this book) 5... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5+-$.

Rook or Bishop Pawn

With a rook or bishop pawn, the above described winning algorithm does not work – a stalemate defense appears.



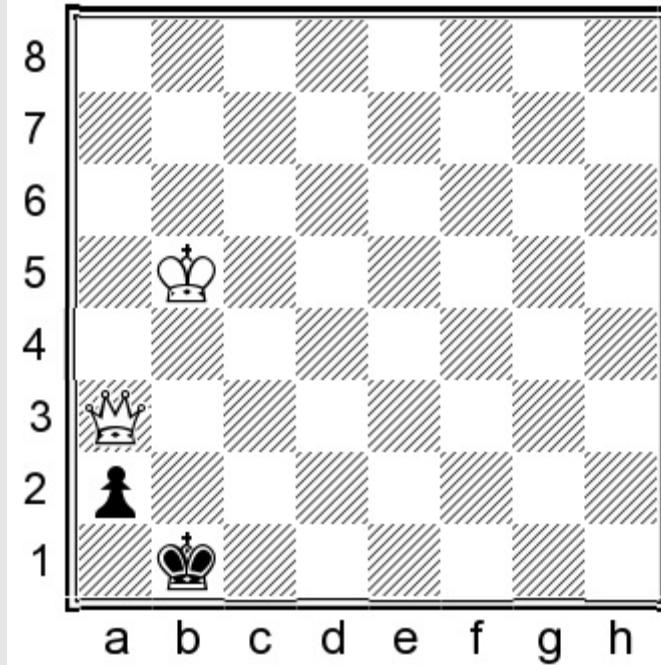
1-61

W

1. $\mathbb{W}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}a1!$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e2!?$ $\mathbb{Q}a1!=$ (but not 6... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ $c1=\mathbb{W}+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b3+-$).

The win is possible only if the white king stands so close that it can help the white queen mate the enemy king.

Let's put the black king on d2. Now, in order to reach its stalemate haven, it will have to cross the c1-square, giving White the tempo he needs to win: 1. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3+-$.



1-62

W

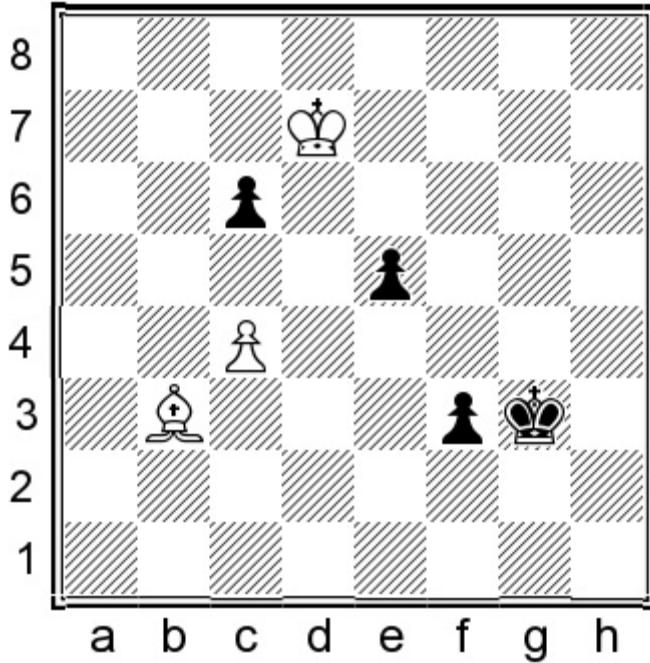
1. $\mathbb{W}b3+$ $\mathbb{K}a1!$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d1+$ $\mathbb{K}b2$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d2+$ $\mathbb{K}b1$ 4. $\mathbb{K}b4!$ $a1=\mathbb{W}$ 5. $\mathbb{K}b3+-$

Starting with the white king at e4, the mate is delivered in somewhat different fashion: 1. $\mathbb{W}b3+$ $\mathbb{K}a1$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{K}b1$ 3. $\mathbb{K}d3!$ $a1=\mathbb{W}$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c2\#$

With the king any farther from the pawn, there is no win. I shall limit myself to just that general observation – I do not think it makes any sense to reproduce the “winning zone” for each and every position of the black pawn which I have seen in other endgame texts. It is not worth memorizing – once you have mastered the winning and drawing mechanisms, you can easily figure out for yourself at the board what sort of position you are facing.

Of course, there are exceptions, in which the standard evaluations and techniques are no longer sufficient.

J.Timman 1980



1-63

W?

1.c5! e4 (1...f2 2.Qc4=) **2.Qd1!! e3** (2...f2 3.Qe2=) **3.Qxf3 Qxf3** **4.Qxc6 e2** **5.Qd7!** **e1=W** **6.c6** (Δ 7.c7), and after 6...Wd1(d2)+ 7.Qc8=, Black cannot prevent 8.c7.

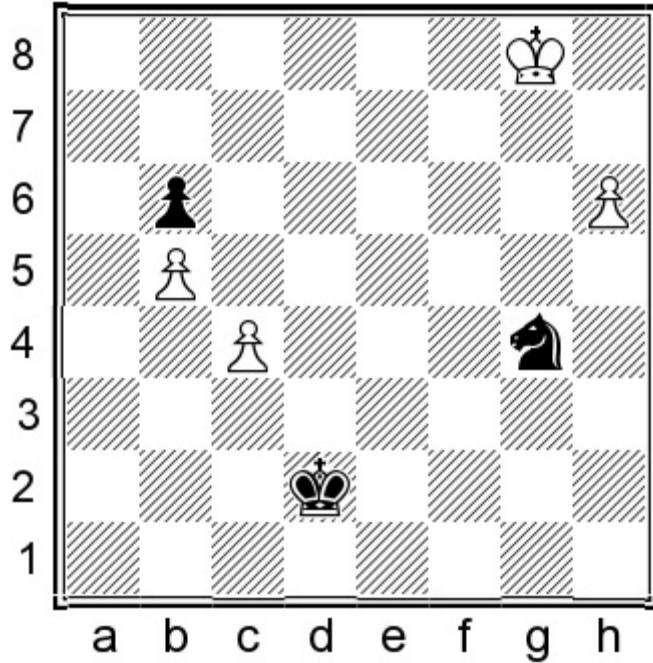
In the final position, it is very important that White's king is on d7. This is why 1.Qd1? c5! would have been a mistake, since the king cannot get to d7.

And 1.Qc2? f2 2.Qd3 Qf3! (2...e4? 3.Qe2=) 3.Qxc6 e4 4.Qf1 e3 5.c5 e2+ is also hopeless.

And Black's king must be drawn to f3 – with the king still on g3, Black wins by 6...Wd1+! 7.Qc8 Wg4+.

After 1.c5! e4, the move 2.Qd1!! solves this problem, while 2.Qc6? e3 3.Qc4 e2 4.Qe2 fxe2 5.Qd7 e1=W leaves the black king on g3. White does no better with 3.Qd5 e2 4.Qxf3 e1=W 5.Qd7 – Black manages to bring up his king by: 5...Wd2+ 6.Qc8 Qf4! 7.c6 Qe5 8.c7 Wb4! 9.Qb7 (9.Qd7 Wd6+ 10.Qc8 Wb6! 11.Qd7 We6+ 12.Qd8 Qd6+) 9...Wf8+ 10.Qd7 Wd6+ 11.Qc8 Qe6 12.Qb8 Qd7 13.Qc8+ Qc6 14.Qb7+ Qb6+.

N.Elkies 1986



1-64

W?

When is the right time to break with c4-c5? Right now it would obviously be premature: 1.c5? ♜xh6+ 2.♔f8 bxc5, or 2...♜f5 3.cxb6 ♜d6, and draws.

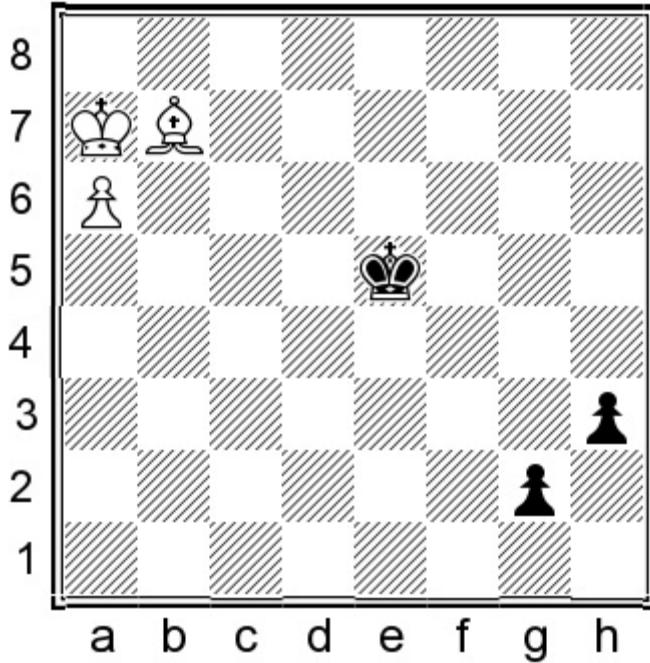
And on 1.♔g7? ♜xh6 2.♔xh6 ♜e3! 3.c5 bxc5 4.b6 c4 5.b7 c3 6.b8=♕ c2 7.♔g5! (threatening the check at f4) 7...♔d2! the white king is too far from the pawn. The single tempo that White gets when Black's king occupies the c1-square is insufficient to win.

1.h7!! ♜f6+ 2.♔g7 ♜xh7 3.♔xh7

Now we have virtually the same position as in the preceding variation, with the king standing even farther from the queenside. But here, the h6-square is open!

3...♜e3! 4.c5 bxc5 5.b6 c4 6.b7 c3 7.b8=♕ c2 8.♕h2!! c1=♕ (8...♔d3 9.♕f4+-) 9.♕h6++-

Exercises



1-65
1/19
W?

Show/Hide Solution

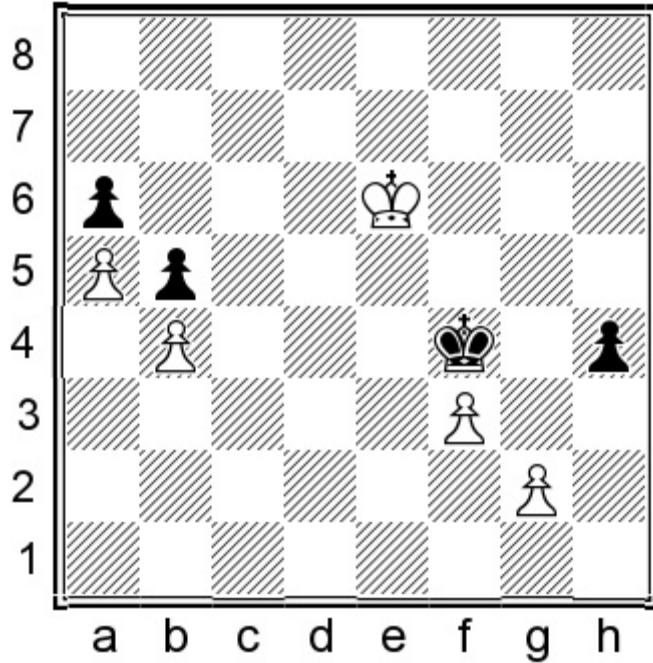
1/19. Bologan-Vokáč, Ostrava 1993

The game continued 1. $\mathbb{Q}xg2?$ $hxg2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $g1=\mathbb{W}$ 3. $a7$. As we know from the discussion at diagram 1-62, White is lost here: the black king comes in time to set up a mating attack.

3... $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{W}c2$ (4... $\mathbb{W}h7$ would have made the process shorter) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{W}b3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{W}b5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{W}c6+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ White resigned.

Baron has shown that White could hold the draw by retaining his bishop.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ $g1=\mathbb{W}$ 2. $a7$ $\mathbb{W}g8+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}c8?$ $\mathbb{W}b3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $h2-$) 3... $\mathbb{W}f7+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6!=$



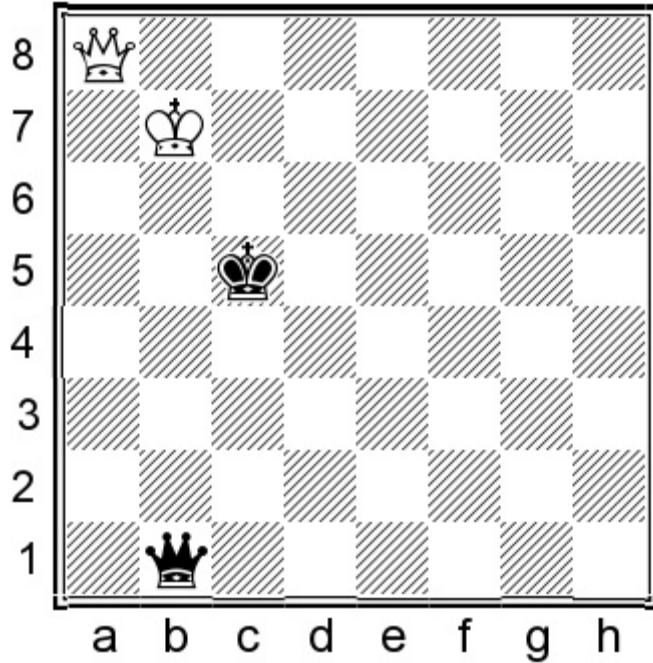
1-66
1/20
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/20. A.Botokanov 1985

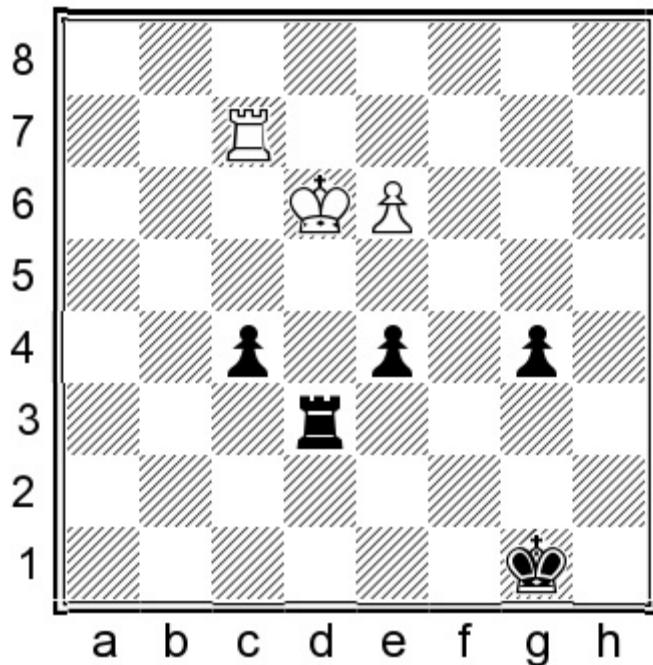
1. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ would be bad, as Black's king would get to the queenside first.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ (2... $h3?$ 3. $gxh3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7+-$) 3. **f4 h3 4. f5 h2 5. f6 h1=** \mathbb{W} 6. **f7**, and there is no win for Black, for example, 6... $\mathbb{W}h6$ 7. $f8=\mathbb{W}$ $\mathbb{W}xf8+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $b4$ 15. $a6$ $b3$ 16. $a7$ $b2$ 17. $a8=\mathbb{W}$ $b1=\mathbb{W}+$



16-10
W?

18.†c8! (but not 18.†c7? ♜h7+ and mate is forced) 18...♜f5+ 19.†b8! ♜f4+ 20.†a7!=



1-67
1/21
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/21. A.Troitsky 1935*

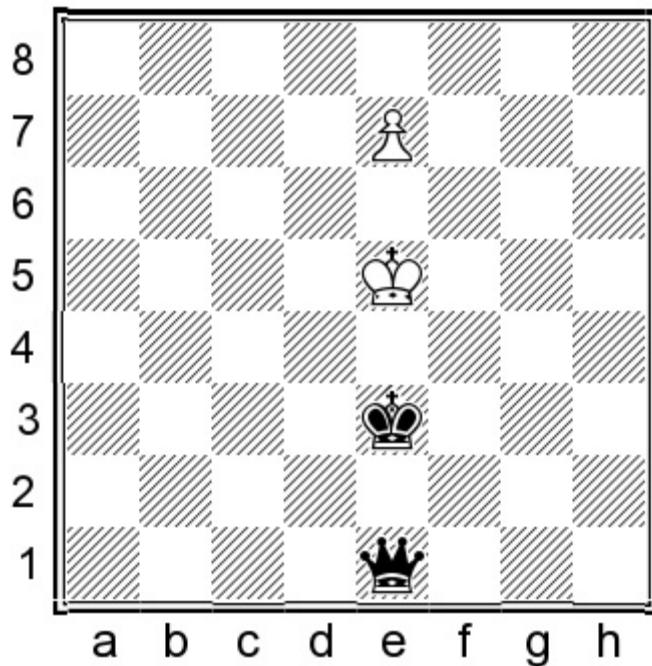
1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$

1. $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ loses after 1... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 2. e7 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ g3 or 3... e3 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$) 3... e3 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ g3 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ e3 (1... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe4=$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ (2. e7? e2+) 2... e2 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg4+$

3. $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 4. e7 e1= \mathbb{W} 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2-$

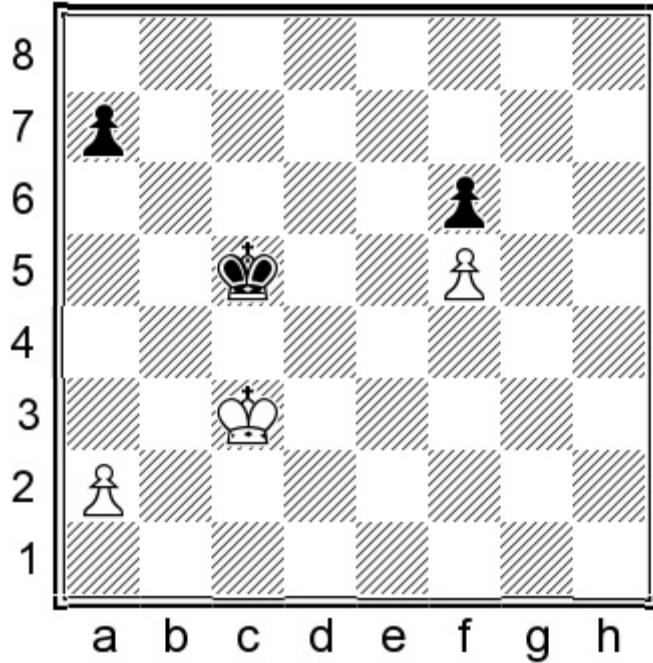
3... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ is equivalent) 4... $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 6. e7 e1= \mathbb{W}



16-11

W?

7. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d7!=$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f7!=$



1-68

1/22

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/22. J.Timman 1988

After 1.♔b3? ♔d5 2.♔b4 ♔e5 3.♔b5 ♔xf5 4.♔a6 ♔e6 5.♔xa7 f5, an endgame of “queen versus rook pawn” arises. The black king is close enough to the queenside to set up mate: 6.a4 f4 7.a5 f3 8.a6 f2 9.♔b8 f1=♕ 10.a7 ♕b5+ 11.♔c7 ♕d7+ 12.♔b8 ♕d6 13.a8=♕ ♕c7#

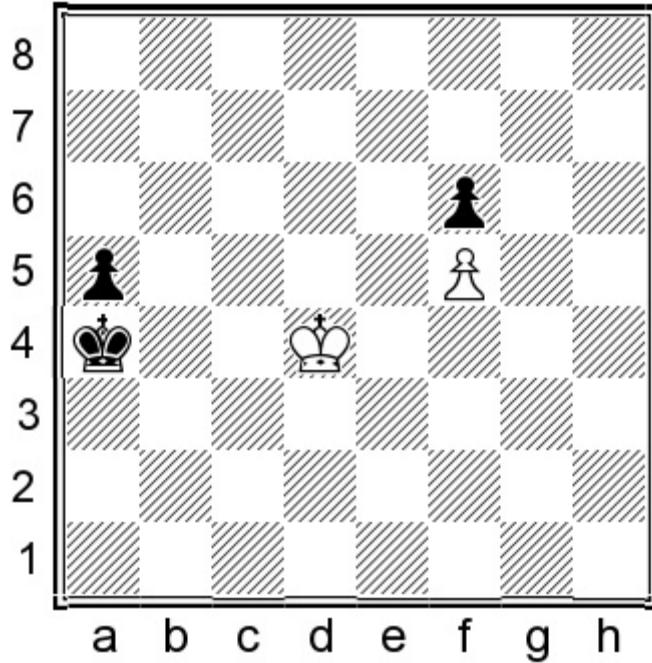
1.a4! a5

After 1...♔d5 2.♔b4, White has an extra tempo in comparison with the previous annotation.

2.♔d3!

2.♔b3? ♔d4 is quite bad. Black is at a crossroads now. The line 2...♔d5 3.♔c3 ♔e5 4.♔c4 ♔xf5 5.♔b5 leads to a mutual promotion, while after 2...♔b4, the white king will be able to attack the f6-pawn.

2...♔b4 3.♔d4 ♔xa4



16-12
W?

4.†c4!!

A necessary subtlety! It is important to push the black king as far away as possible from the f-pawn. The straightforward continuation 4.†d5? loses to 4...†b5! 5.†e6 a4 6.†xf6 a3 7.†e7 (unfortunately he cannot go to g7 because Black's new queen then pins the f6-pawn) 7...a2 8.f6 a1=† 9.f7 †g7 10.†e8 †c6 11.f8=† †d7#

4...†a3 5.†d5 a4 6.†e6 †b4 7.†xf6 a3 8.†e7! a2 9.f6 a1=† 10.f7=

When on b4, the black king is no longer dangerous!

Pawn Races

Let's examine the sort of situation where both players advance simultaneously and queen at the same time, or almost at the same time. Here, the following outcomes are possible:

- (1) One rook pawn promotes, preventing the other rook pawn from queening;
- (2) The pawn queens with check, and thereby prevents the enemy pawn from queening; or
- (3) We get a “queen vs. pawn (or pawns)” endgame.

Or, if both pawns queen, then:

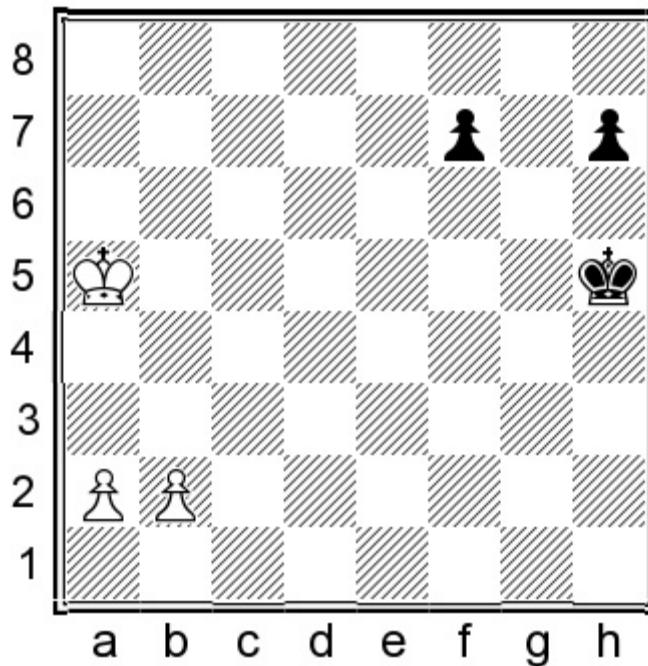
- (4) One queen is lost to a “skewer” check along the file or diagonal;
- (5) Mate follows;

(6) The queens are exchanged, after which we once again have a pawn ending; or

(7) We get a queen ending (either an elementary one, or one with some play to it).

In order to get an idea of all these possibilities (except perhaps the last one), we shall present a fair number of examples. In the previous chapter we have already seen an ending which transposed into a “queen vs. pawns” endgame; and earlier, we also saw cases where the king fell into check, or the queen was lost to a skewer check (see exercises 1/4, 1/7, 1/8, 1/10). Quite often, the chief problem of a position is either to draw the enemy king onto a bad square, or to avoid such a square with one’s own king.

G.Walker 1841



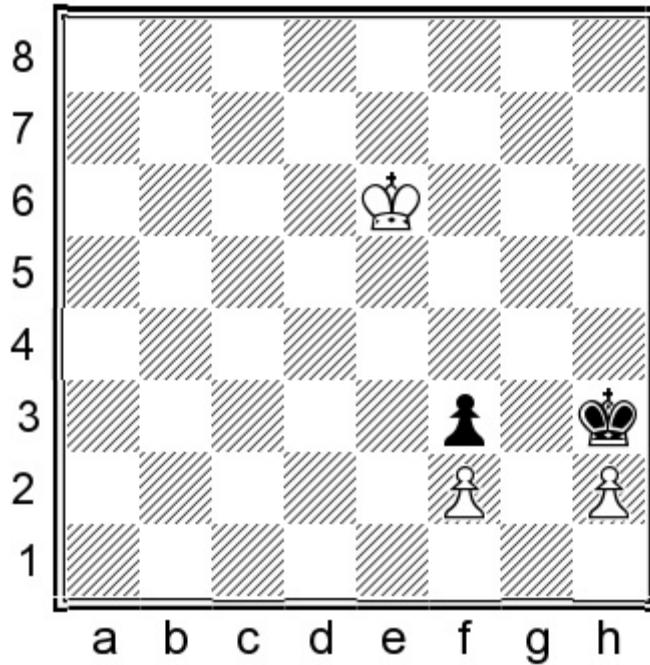
1-69

W

1.b4 f5 2.b5 f4 3.b6 f3 4.b7 f2 5.b8=Q f1=Q 6.Qb5+! Qxb5 7.Qxb5 Qg4 8.a4+-, and the h-pawn will never become a queen.

This simple example illustrates Points 1 and 6 of the above list; the following example is for Points 2 and 4 (perhaps the most important ones).

J.Moravec 1925



1-70

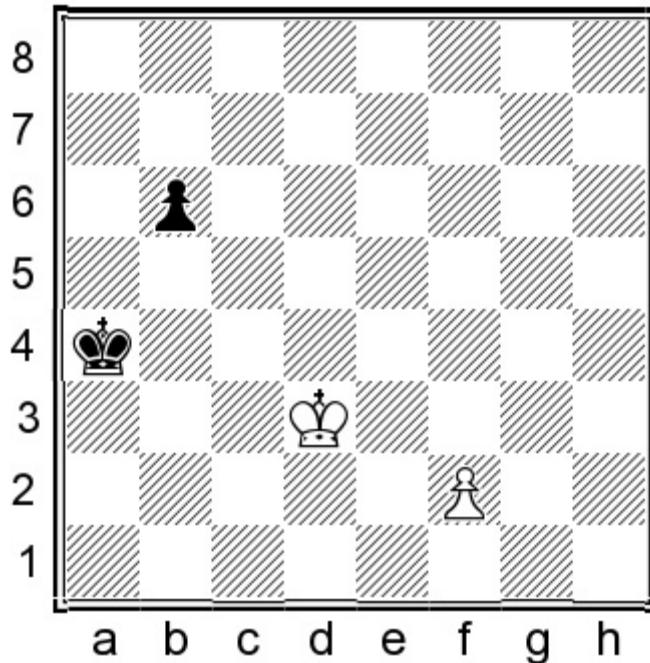
W?

The only move to draw is **1.♔d5! ♔g2!** ($1\dots\hat{\square}xh2?$ $2.\hat{\square}e4\hat{\square}g2\ 3.\hat{\square}e3\odot$) **2.h4**, and White's pawn queens immediately after Black's.

On **1.♔f5? ♔g2!** the black pawn queens with check;

while on **1.♔e5? ♔g2!** White's queen will be lost after ... $\hat{w}a1+$.

N.Grigoriev 1928



I-71

W?

Black's king is in the square of the f-pawn, so the hasty 1.f4? ♕b5! leads only to a draw. White has to block the king's path to the kingside ("shouldering!").

1.♔d4! b5

The other defensive plan gets instructively refuted: 1...♕b5 2.♔d5! ♕a6 3.f4 ♕b7 4.f5 ♕c7 5.♔e6 ♕d8 6.♔f7! b5 7.f6 b4 8.♔g7 b3 9.f7 b2 10.f8=♕+. In a practical game, nearly every pawn for some reason ends up queening with check; there are times, however, when you have to do a little work for it!

Interestingly, if we place the pawn on b7 in the starting position, Black saves himself by 1...♕b5! 2.♔d5 ♕b6! 3.♔d6 ♕a7 4.f4 b5.

2.f4 b4 3.f5 b3

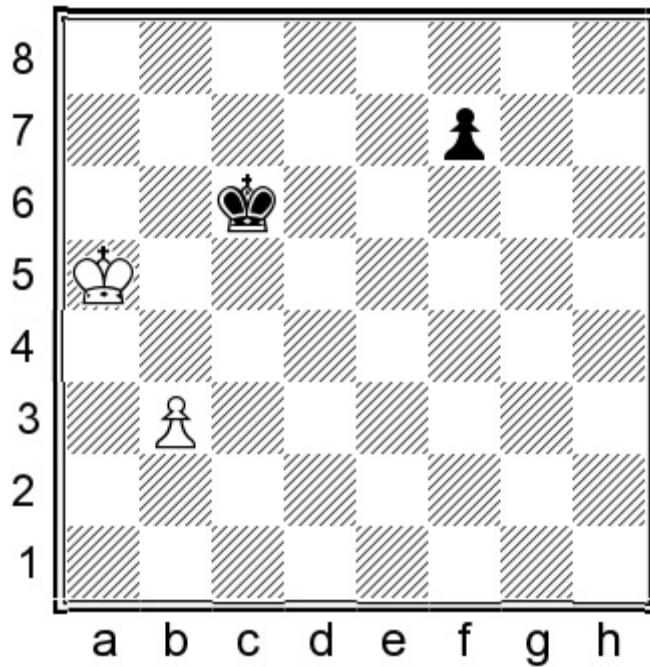
Now the enemy king must be drawn to a checkable square.

4.♔c3! ♕a3 5.f6 b2 6.f7 b1=♕ 7.f8=♕+ mating or winning the queen.

Tragomedies

Ljubojevic – Browne

Amsterdam 1972



I-72

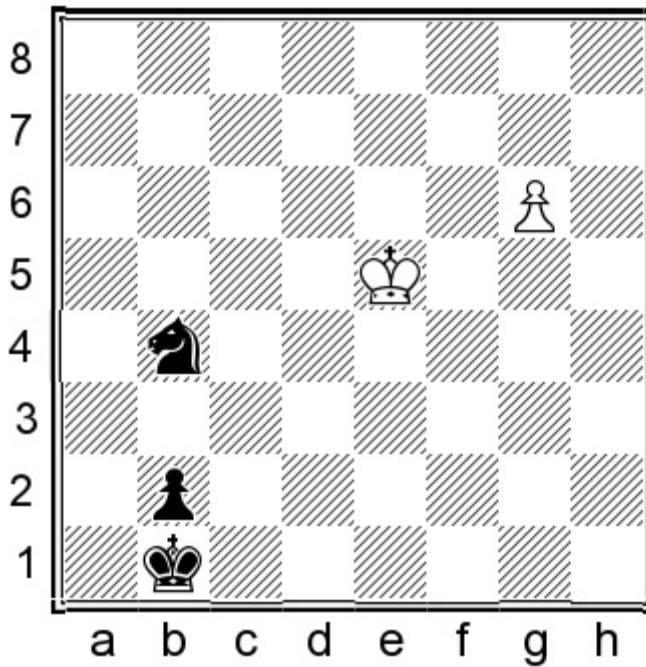
B?

Recognize this position? Yes, it is the Grigoriev study we just examined, except with colors reversed and the black king positioned differently (which has no meaning here). 1...♔d5! would have won;

instead, Browne played 1...f5?? and after 2.♔b4, a draw was agreed.

Mohr – Conquest

Gausdal 1989



1-73

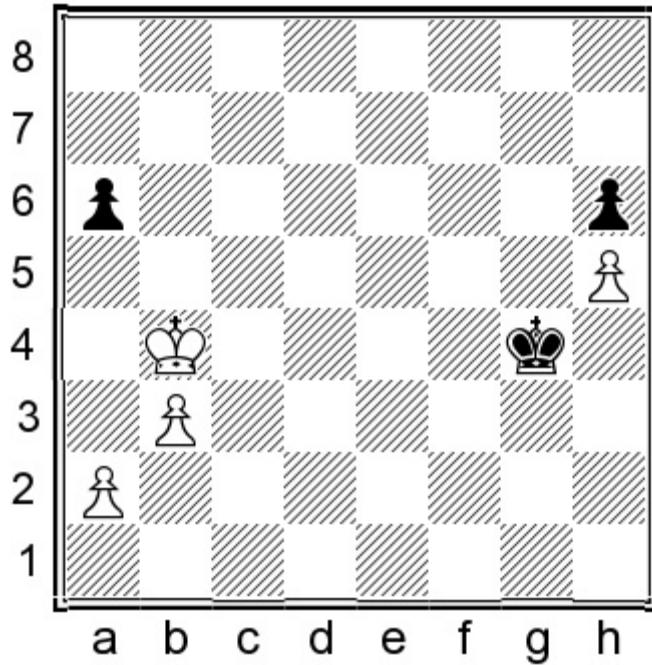
B?

After Conquest's move, 1...♔c1? the position became drawn: 2.g7 b1=♕ 3.g8=♕=

Black could have won by 1...♝d5! 2.♔xd5 (2.g7 ♝e7 3.♔e6 ♝g8 4.♔f7 ♔c2 leads to a won “queen vs. knight’s pawn” endgame) 2...♔c1 3.g7 b1=♕ 4.g8=♕ ♜b3+–+

Gavrikov – Kharitonov

USSR ch(1), Sverdlovsk 198



1-74

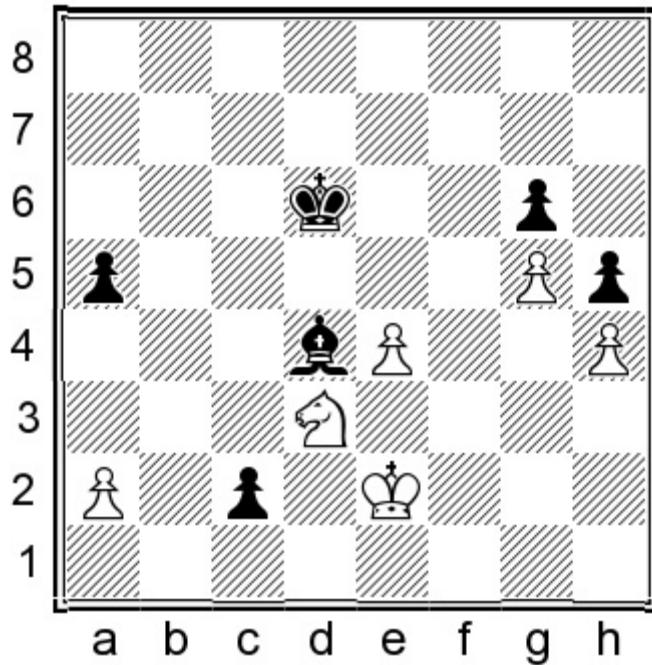
W?

The winning idea is 1. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 2. $b4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $a4$ $h5$ 4. $b5$ $axb5$ 5. $a5!$, when the white pawn queens, while preventing the black one from doing so.

The game line was 1. $\mathbb{Q}a5?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $b4$ $h5$ 4. $b5$ $h4$ 5. $b6$ $h3$ 6. $b7$ $h2$ 7. $b8=\mathbb{Q}$ $h1=\mathbb{Q}$, with a drawn queen endgame.

Golombek – Keres

Margate 1939



I-75

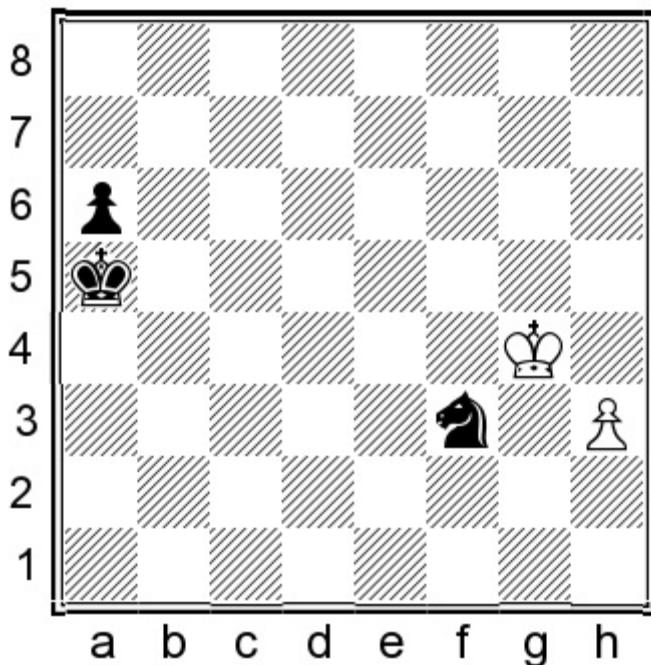
B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ would have won.

Even easier was 1... $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ with zugzwang: if 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}e1$.

Instead, Keres played 1... $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ and his opponent resigned, believing that after 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $c1=\mathbb{W}+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}xc1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$, his attack on the a5-pawn would come too late: 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 9.a4 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ h4 11.a5 h3 12.a6 h2 13.a7 h1= $\mathbb{W}-$ But White's king can also attack the other black pawn: 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ h4 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ h3 12.g6, with a draw.

Exercises



I-76

1/23

B?

Show/Hide Solution

1/23. Salwe-Flamberg, Petersburg 1914

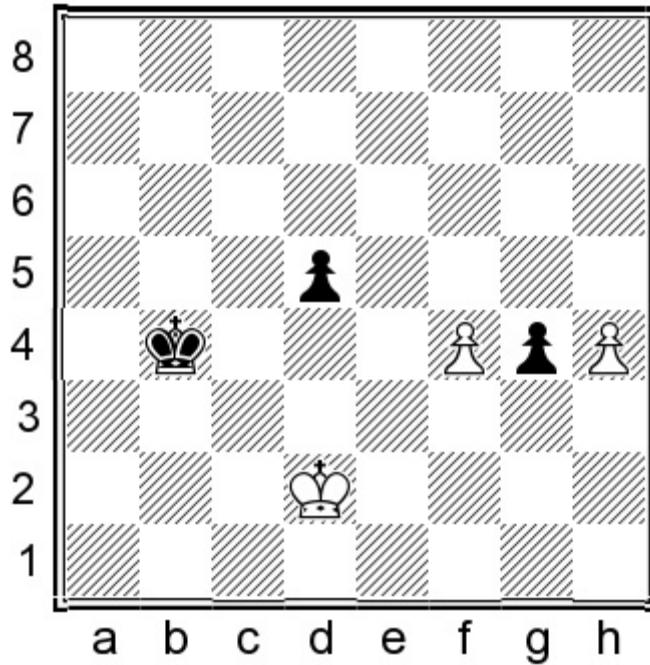
One's first impression might be that Black wins in all lines, but this is far from so. Only the pretty move 1... $\mathbb{Q}h4!!$, as was actually played, decides.

After 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$, Black promotes first and prevents White from promoting.

Black cannot create a similar situation by means of 1... $\mathbb{Q}b4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ a5. White plays 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$

4. $\hat{Q}d2$, either coming with his king to c1 or forcing the black king to occupy the b2-square and interfering with the a1-h8 diagonal.

1... $\hat{Q}e5+$ 2. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{Q}b4?$ also does not win (2... $\hat{Q}f3!$ 3. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}h4!$ is necessary) 3. h4 a5 4. h5. All lines lead to a drawn endgame of “queen versus rook pawn.” For example, 4... $\hat{Q}f7$ 5. $\hat{Q}g6$ $\hat{Q}h6$ 6. $\hat{Q}xh6$ a4 7. $\hat{Q}g7!$ a3 8. h6 a2 9. h7 a1= \hat{W} 10. $\hat{Q}g8=$, or 4... $\hat{Q}d7$ 5. h6 $\hat{Q}f8$ 6. $\hat{Q}f6$ a4 7. $\hat{Q}f7!$ (7. $\hat{Q}g7?$ $\hat{Q}e6+$ 8. $\hat{Q}f6$ a3+) 7... $\hat{Q}h7$ 8. $\hat{Q}g6!$ (8. $\hat{Q}g7?$ $\hat{Q}g5-$) 8... $\hat{Q}f8+$ 9. $\hat{Q}f7!=$



I-77

1/24

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/24. A.Khachaturov 1947 (after N.Grigoriev 1930)

Who finishes first in the coming breathtaking pawn race? White can win only if he promotes with check.

1.f5! $\hat{Q}c5$ 2.h5!

Rather than 2.f6? $\hat{Q}d6$, and the black king enters the square of the h-pawn.

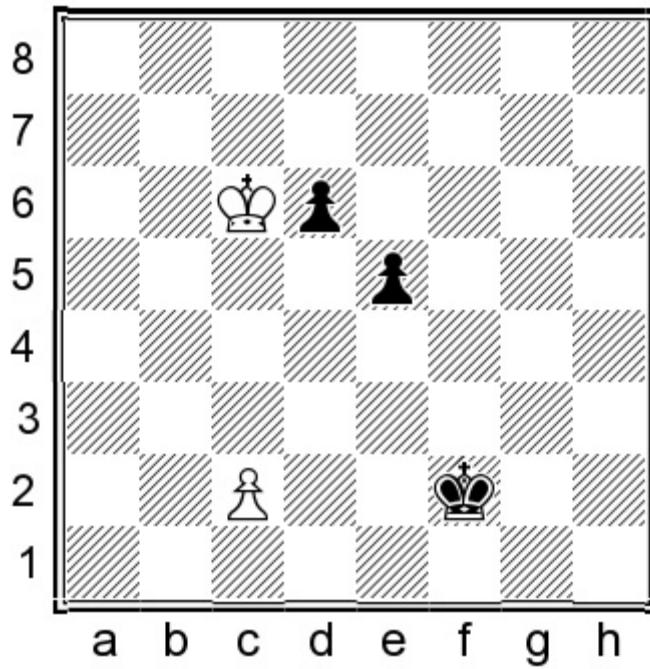
2...g3 3. $\hat{Q}e1!$

This is essential for postponing an eventual check from the d-pawn for as long as possible.

3...d4 4.f6! ♕d6 5.h6!

White's technique is becoming clear. First the f-pawn is advanced, threatening to promote with check (its mission is to decoy the black king to the eighth rank), then it is time for the h-pawn. If 5...d3 now (without check!), then 6.f7 ♕e7 7.h7.

5...g2 6.♕f2 d3 7.f7! ♕e7 8.h7 g1=♕+ 9.♕xg1 d2 10.f8=♕+! ♕xf8 11.h8=♕++-



I-78

1/25

W?

Show/Hide Solution

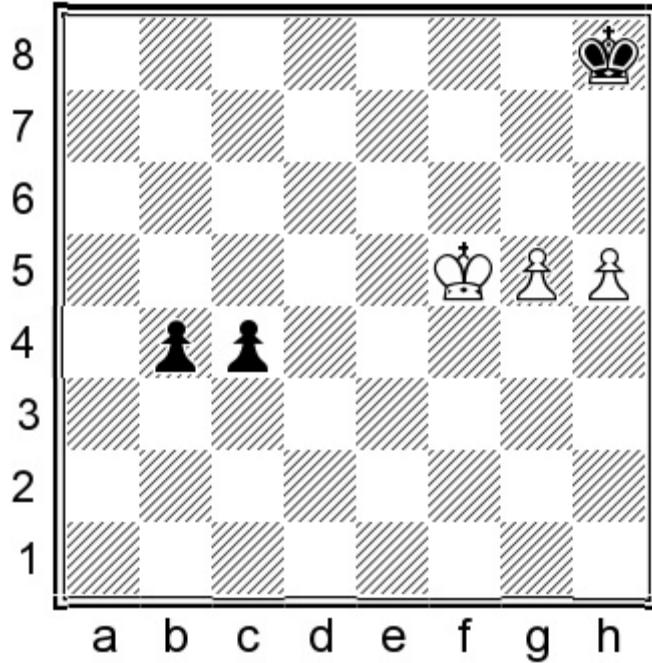
1/25. J.Moravec 1950

This exercise will be easy if one recollects the study by Timman (diagram 1-63).

1.♕d5!!

Rather than 1.♕xd6? e4 2.c4 e3 3.c5 e2 4.c6 e1=♕ 5.♕d7 ♕d1+! 6.♕c8 ♕g4+

1.♕d5!! ♕f3 (1...♕g3 2.♕e4 Δ 3.c4=) 2.♕xd6! e4 3.c4 e3 4.c5 e2 5.c6 e1=♕ 6.♕d7! ♕d1+ 7.♕c8!
with an inevitable 8.c7=



I-79
1/26
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/26. E.Dvizov 1965

1. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ is only good enough for a draw: 1... $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ 2. $g6$ $b3!$ 3. $h6$ $b2$ 4. $h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $b1=\mathbb{W}$ 7. $g8=\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$.

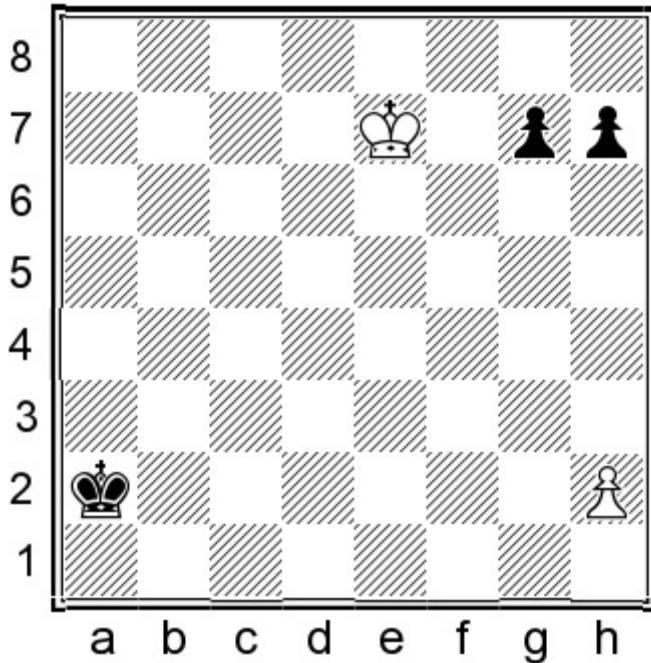
1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!! \mathbb{Q}g8$

1... $b3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $b2$ 3. $g6$ $b1=\mathbb{W}$ 4. $g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $g8=\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}g6+!$ $\mathbb{W}xg6$ 7. $hxg6$ $c3$ 8. $g7$ $c2$ 9. $g8=\mathbb{W}$ $c1=\mathbb{W}$ 10. $\mathbb{W}g6\#$

2. $h6$ $b3$

After 2... $c3$, White mates as in the previous note: 3. $h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $c2$ 5. $g6$ $c1=\mathbb{W}$ 6. $g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 7. $g8=\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}g6\#$ Now not a queen, but a pawn mates:

3. $h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ $b2$ 5. $g6$ $b1=\mathbb{W}$ 6. $g7\#$



1-80

1/27

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/27. N.Grigoriev 1931

1.h4!

White should keep the black pawn structure in a compact mass which can be comfortably attacked by the king. The premature 1.♔f7? misses the win: 1...g5! 2.♕g7 ♔b3 3.♔xh7 ♔c4 4.♔g6 g4! 5.♔g5 ♔d5 6.♔xg4 ♔e6 7.♔g5 ♔f7=.

1.h4!

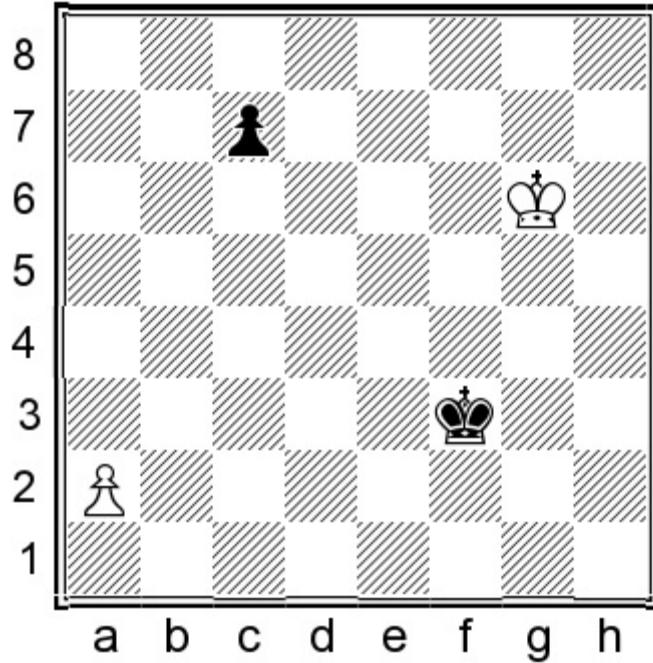
Now, however, White arrives in time: 1...♔b3 2.♔f7 ♔c4 3.♔xg7 h5 4.♔g6 ♔d5 5.♔xh5 ♔e6 6.♔g6+, 1...h6 2.h5 is also hopeless for Black. But the fight is still not over.

1...h5!

With the idea 2.♔f7? g5 3.hxg5 h4=. However, if the a2-g8 diagonal remains open, the white pawn promotes with check.

2.♔f8! g6 3.♔e7!+-

The only way to attack the g-pawn without fearing 3...g5. From f7, the king interferes with the diagonal, while from g7, with its own pawn.



1-81

1/28

W?

Play

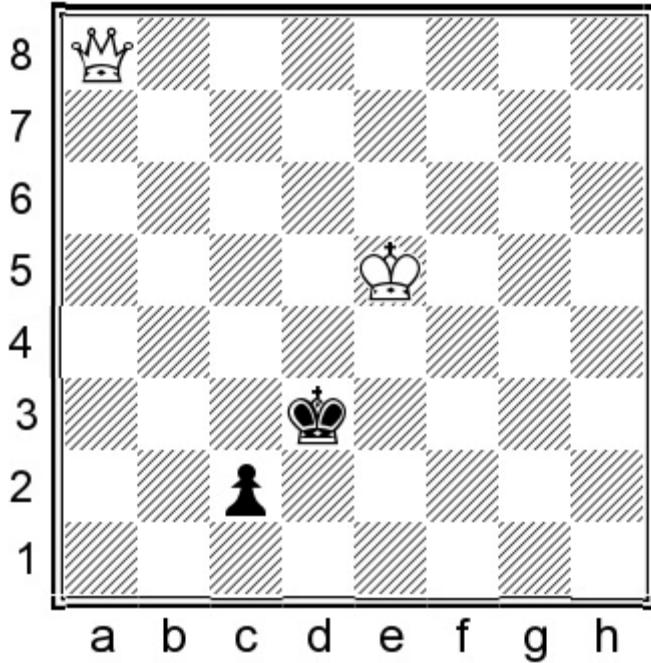
Show/Hide Solution

1/28. N.Grigoriev 1932

1.♔f5! ♔e3 2.♔e5 c6!

The only possibility to resist. 2...♔d3? 3.♔d5 ♔c3 4.♔c5 loses immediately.

3.a4 ♔d3 4.a5 c5 5.a6 c4 6.a7 c3 7.a8=♕ c2



16-13

W?

Black is close to saving the game, for example:

8. $\mathbb{W}a3+?$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 9. $\mathbb{W}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}c3!=$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $c1=\mathbb{W}$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3+-$);

8. $\mathbb{W}e4+?$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 9. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ (9. $\mathbb{W}d5+ \mathbb{Q}e1!$) 9... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ is also possible) 10. $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 11. $\mathbb{W}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 13. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a1!=$ (rather than 13... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $c1=\mathbb{W}+ 15. \mathbb{Q}b3+-$).

Nevertheless, White can win this position in the following way:

8. $\mathbb{W}d5+!! \mathbb{Q}e3$

8... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 9. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}a1+-$; 8... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 9. $\mathbb{W}a2!$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $c1=\mathbb{W}$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3+-$

9. $\mathbb{W}g2! c1=\mathbb{W}$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}g5+-$) 10. $\mathbb{W}g5++-$

A similar finale happened in the study by Elkies (diagram 1-64).

According to Vardan Pogosyan, the American mathematician Orrin Frink, five years before Grigoriev's study, had published a position that coincides (as a mirror image) with the one that arose after the second move in Grigoriev's study. There is no doubt that Grigoriev knew nothing about the predecessor, but nevertheless it is Frink who should be rightly regarded as the author of the well-known study that we have just examined.

Show in Text Mode

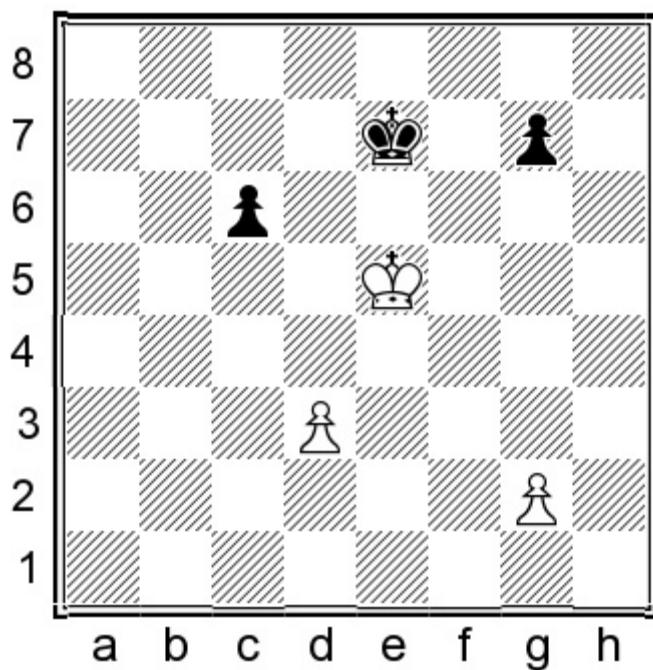
The Active King

King activity is the most important factor in the evaluation of position in a pawn endgame. In fact, not just in pawn endgames – in **any** endgame. But in pawn endgames, where there are no other pieces on the board, this is perhaps an especially important factor.

The influence the degree of king activity has on the battle's outcome is obvious in many of the preceding and succeeding examples. Here, we examine two vitally important means of exploiting an active king's position: playing for zugzwang, and the widening of the beachhead.

Zugzwang

M. Dvoretsky 2000



1-82
W?

1.g3! ♖d7 2.g4 ♖e7 3.g5〇

3.d4? ♖d7 4.♖f5 ♖d6 5.♖g6 ♖d5 6.♖xg7 ♖xd4 would be less exact, as the pawns both queen. However, White could transpose moves by 3.♖f5 ♖d6 4.g5! (4.♖g6? ♖e5! 5.♖xg7 ♖f4 6.♖f6 ♖xg4=)

4... $\hat{\Delta}e7$ (4... $\hat{\Delta}d5$ 5. $\hat{\Delta}g6$ $\hat{\Delta}d4$ 6. $\hat{\Delta}xg7$ $\hat{\Delta}xd3$ 7.g6 c5 8. $\hat{\Delta}f6$ c4 9.g7 c3 10.g8= \hat{W} c2 11. $\hat{W}g5+-$) 5. $\hat{\Delta}g6$ etc.

Let's think about the position after 3.g5. White's king dominates the board – that is why zugzwang is unavoidable. In fact, whichever pawn Black moves is bound to be lost (3...c5 4. $\hat{\Delta}d5$, or 3...g6 4.d4O). Retreating the king to f7 clears the way for his opponent to go after the c6-pawn. That leaves just one move; but after that move, White finally executes his main plan – getting his king to h7.

3... $\hat{\Delta}d7$ 4. $\hat{\Delta}f5$ $\hat{\Delta}e7$ 5. $\hat{\Delta}g6$ $\hat{\Delta}f8$ 6. $\hat{\Delta}h7$ $\hat{\Delta}f7$ 7.d4

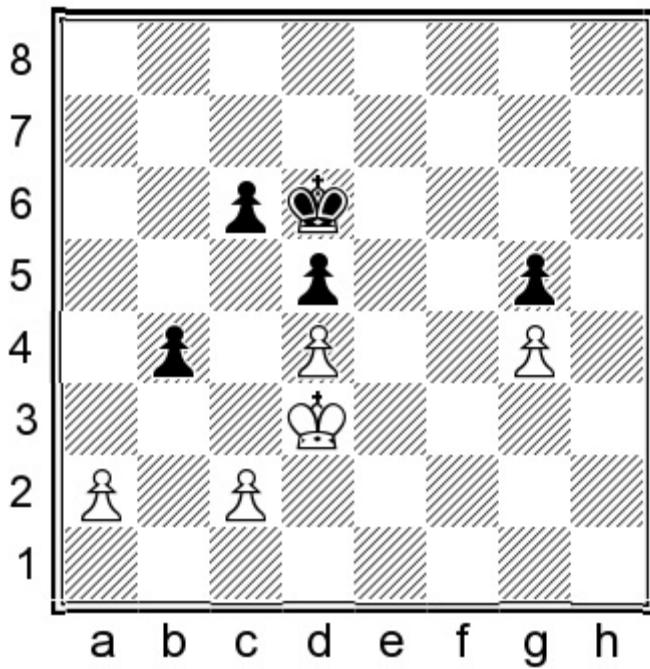
One final, decisive zugzwang.

If it were Black's move in the starting position, then after 1... $\hat{\Delta}d7$, 2.g4! would lead to the win. It sometimes makes quite a difference if you have a choice between moving a pawn one or two squares. For a more detailed examination of this, see "Steinitz's Rule," and the chapters which follow.

Widening the Beachhead

Hansen – Nimzovitch

Randers simul 1925



1-83

B?

Who stands better? White intends to play c2-c3, obtaining an outside passed pawn, which will secure him a decisive advantage (for example, after 1...c5? 2.dxc5+ $\hat{\Delta}xc5$ 3.c3).

Nimzovitch hits upon the correct plan – he activates his king, even if it means sacrificing a pawn.

1... $\hat{\Delta}c7!$ 2.c3 $\hat{\Delta}b6!$ 3.cxb4 $\hat{\Delta}b5$ 4. $\hat{\Delta}c3$ $\hat{\Delta}a4O$

As Black had foreseen, it is zugzwang. White resigned, since he has to lose all his queenside pawns: 5.♔c2 ♔xb4 (White still has the outside passed pawn, but the activity of Black's king means far more here) 6.♔d3 ♔a3 7.♔c3 ♔xa2 8.♔b4 ♔b2 9.♔c5 ♔c3+–

Let's look at 3.c4 (instead of 3.cxb4). White will continue by exchanging pawns at d5. It is not hard to see that b5/b3 and a4/b2 are corresponding squares; after that, we can establish a third pair of corresponding squares: a5/c2. Now we understand that Black must inevitably take advantage of this correspondence (since he can wait on either of the equivalent squares b6 and a6, while White cannot).

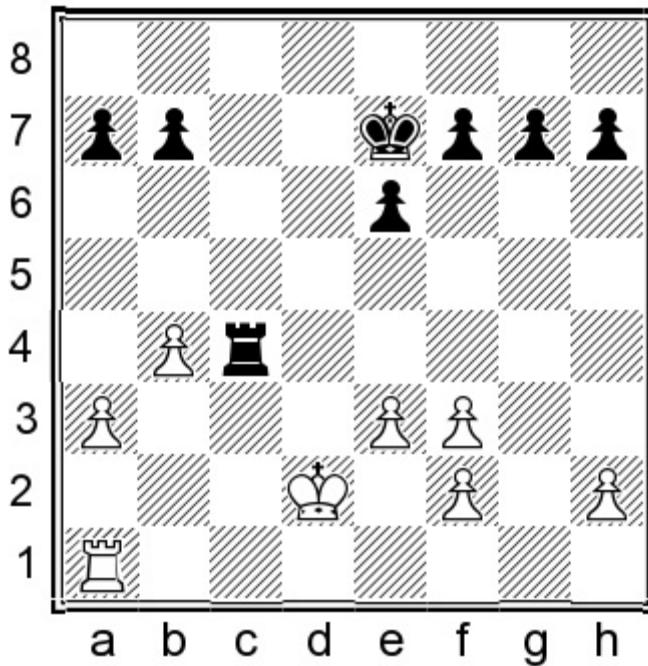
3...♗a6! 4.cxd5 cxd5 5.♔c2 ♔a5O 6.♔b2 ♔a4O 7.♔c2 ♔a3 8.♔b1 b3 9.♔a1 ♔b4 10.♔b2 bxa2

In order to win, Black cleared a path for his king towards the center. This is, in fact, what “widening the beachhead” means – trading off pawns, with the idea of clearing a path for the king.

Let's examine another classic endgame.

Cohn – Rubinstein

St. Petersburg 1909



1-84

W?

With 1.f4!, White would have had an inferior but defensible position. Instead, he decided to exchange rooks, because he had misjudged the pawn endgame.

1.♖c1? ♖xc1 2.♕xc1 ♔f6 3.♔d2 ♔g5

Rubinstein sends his king to h3, in order to tie White's king to the defense of the weak pawn at h2. It is not difficult to calculate that White's counterattack with 4.♔d3 ♔h4 5.♔c4 comes too late.

4.♔e2 ♔h4 5.♔f1 ♔h3 6.♔g1 e5 7.♔h1 b5!

It is useful to fix the queenside pawns, while Black also leaves himself the reserve tempo a7-a6. White could have prevented this by playing 7.a4!? but it would not have altered the assessment of the position.

8.♔g1 f5

Black's further plan is to "widen the beachhead" – clear a path for his king to the queenside via pawn exchanges.

9.♔h1 g5 10.♔g1 h5 11.♔h1 g4

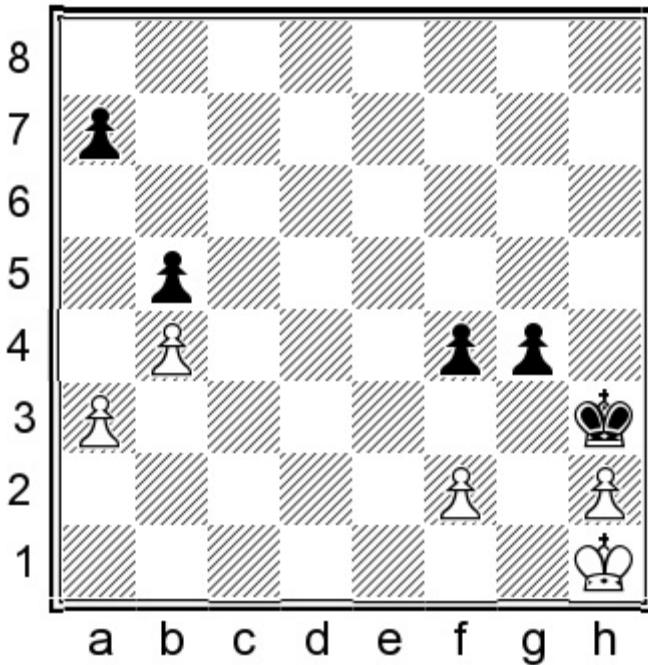
11...h4 12.♔g1 g4 13.fxg4 ♔xg4 14.♔g2 h3+ is also strong.

12.e4 fxe4! 13.fxe4

13.fxg4 hxg4 14.♔g1 e3 15.fxe3 e4 16.♔h1 g3 is no better.

13...h4 14.♔g1 g3 15.hxg3 hxg3 White resigned.

12.fxg4 (instead of 12.e4) 12...fxg4! 13.♔g1 e4 14.♔h1 h4 15.♔g1 g3 changes nothing – Black still wins. However, taking with the other pawn – 12...hxg4?! – would have been inaccurate, resulting in a longer win: 13.♔g1 f4 14.exf4 exf4 15.♔h1.



1-85

B?

Here, widening the beachhead no longer wins: 15...g3? 16.hxg3 fxg3 17.fxg3 (17.♔g1=) 17...♔xg3 18.♔g1 ♔f3 19.♔f1 ♔e3 20.♔e1 ♔d3 21.♔d1 ♔c3 22.a4!=

The right plan, 15...f3! 16.♔g1 ♔h4, was pointed out by Jonathan Mestel.

17.♔h1 ♔g5 18.h3 gxh3 19.♔h2 ♔g4 20.♔g1 ♔f4 21.♔h2 ♔e4 22.♔xh3 (22.♔g3 h2!) 22...♔d3

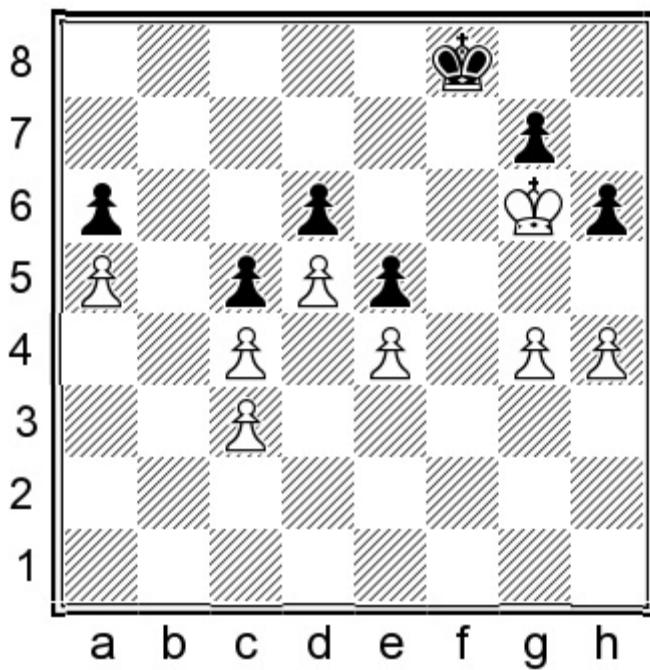
23.♔g4 ♔e2 24.♔g3 a6—+ (here is where the reserve tempo comes in handy!).

17.♔f1 ♔h5! 18.♔e1 ♔g5 19.♔f1 (19.♔d2 ♔h4—+) 19...♔f4 20.♔e1 ♔e4 21.♔d2 ♔d4 22.♔c2 ♔c4 23.♔d2 ♔b3 24.♔e3 ♔xa3 25.♔f4. ♔xb4 26.♔xg4 a5—+

Tragicomедies

Horowitz – Denker

Philadelphia 1936



1-86

W?

Here is how the game actually ended: 1.♔h7 ♔f7 2.♔h8 ♔f8 3.g5 Black resigned.

Zinar has shown that every move played by both sides was a mistake – except for the last one. His analysis follows:

(1) White should not take his king into the corner. The correct plan to exploit his advantage is – widening the beachhead!

1.g5! hxg5 2.♔xg5 ♔f7 3.h5 ♔e7 4.♔g6 ♔f8 5.h6! ♔g8! 6.♔h5! gxh6 7.♔xh6 ♔f7 8.♔h7 (the opposition) 8...♔f6 9.♔g8 (now, an outflanking) 9...♔g5 10.♔f7 ♔f4 11.♔e6 ♔xe4 12.♔xd6 ♔f4 13.♔xc5 e4 14.d6 e3 15.d7 e2 16.d8=♔ e1=♔ 17.♔f6+ with an easily won queen endgame.

1.♔h7 ♔f7

(2) With 1...h5! (instead of 1...♔f7?), Black would have drawn: 2.g5 ♔f7 3.♔h8 ♔g6! 4.♔g8 stalemate; or 2.gxh5 ♔f7 3.h6 g6! 4.♔h8 ♔f8=

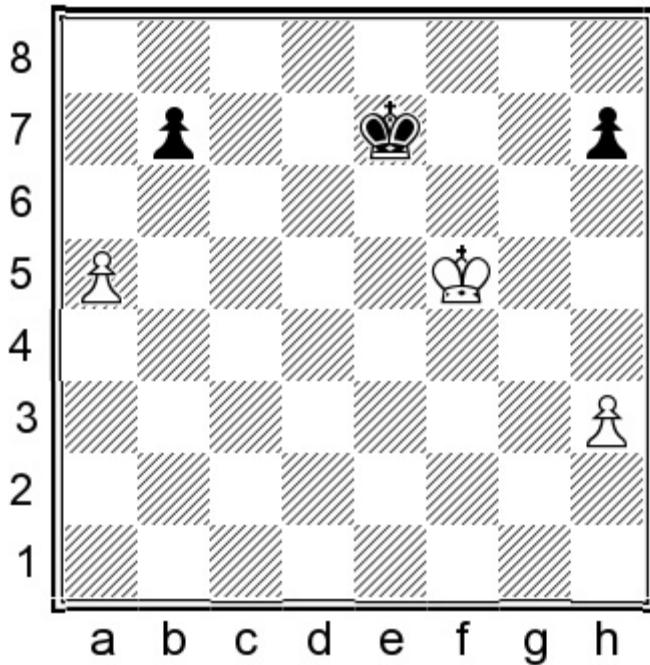
(3) But 2.♔h8? lets slip the win. Also insufficient was 2.g5? h5! 3.g6+ (3.♔h8 ♔g6!) 3...♔f6 4.♔g8 ♔xg6 5.♔f8 ♔f6 6.♔e8 g5 7.hxg5+ ♔xg5 8.♔e7 h4 9.♔xd6 h3 10.♔c7 h2 11.d6 h1=♔ 12.d7 ♔h7

13.†c8 ♘h3=

The right move was 2.h5! †f6 (we have already seen what happens after 2...†f8 3.†g6 †g8 4.†f5 †f7 5.g5 hxg5 6.†g5) 3.†g8 g6 (3...g5 4.†h7) 4.†f8! gxh5 5.gxh5 †g5 6.†e7 †xh5 7.†xd6 †g4 8.†xe5+–

(4) And retreating the king to f8 was the decisive mistake. Black could still have drawn with 2...h5! 3.g5 †g6! or 3.gxh5 †f8 4.h6 g6!

Exercises



1-87

1/29

W?

Show/Hide Solution

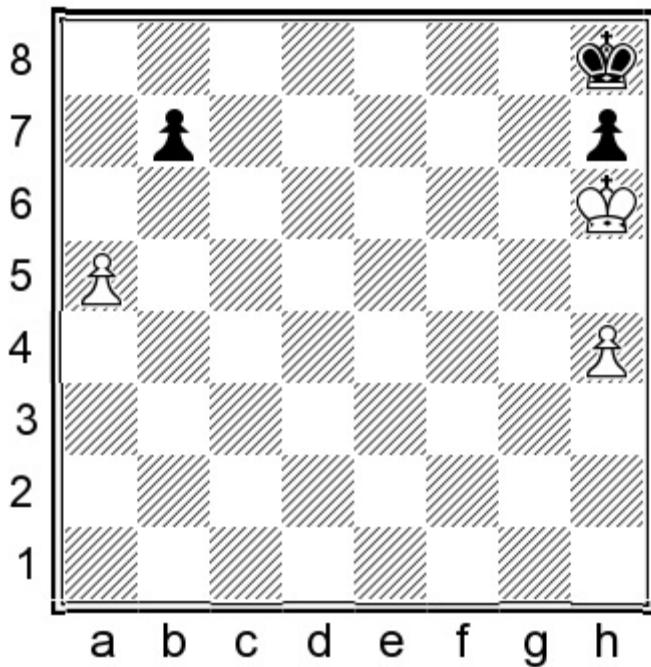
1/29. J.Speelman 1979

With 1.†e5? White forces his opponent to open the way to one of the pawns for the king. However, the line 1...†d7! 2.†f6 (2.†d5 is useless in view of 2...†c7 or 2...h5) 2...†c6 3.h4 †b5 4.h5 †xa5 5.†g7 b5 leads only to a draw.

Notice that White has missed, by a single tempo, promoting first and then winning the hostile queen. Thus, the same zugzwang position, but with the pawn on h4 (rather than h3), would have been winning.

After 1.h4? †f7 2.h5 h6, this goal cannot be reached because it is Black who seizes the opposition. White must act more subtly.

1.†g5! †f7 2.†h6 †g8 3.h4 †h8



16-14

W?

4.†h5!

After 4.†g5? †g7, it is Black again who holds the opposition. Another line that does not work is 4.h5? †g8 5.†g5 †f7 (or 5...†g7 6.h6+ †f7 7.†f5 †e7 8.†e5 †d7 9.†f6 †d6! 10.†g7 †e7 11.†xh7 †f7=) 6.†f5 (6.†f4 †e6) 6...h6=

4...†g8 (4...†g7 5.†g5) 5.†g4!

White seizes the distant opposition and, by means of the usual outflanking procedure, transforms it into the close opposition.

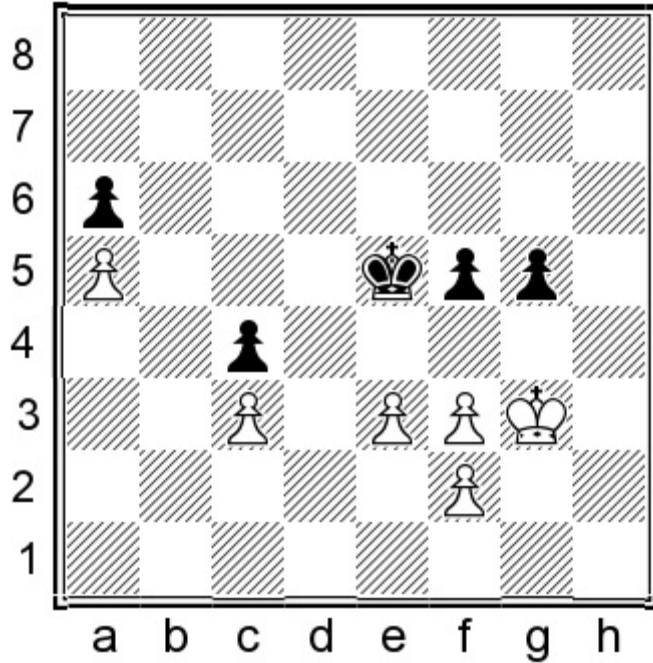
5...†f8 6.†f4 †e8 7.†g5!

Rather than 7.†e4? †d7! and Black holds: 8.†f5 †c6= or 8.†d5 h5=.

7...†f7 8.†f5 †e7 9.†e5○

White has successfully achieved his goal and, as a result of zugzwang, breaks through to one of Black's pawns.

**9...†d7 10.†f6 †c6 11.h5 †b5 12.†g7 †xa5 13.†xh7 b5 14.h6 b4 15.†g7! b3 16.h7 b2 17.h8=■
b1=■ 18.■a8+ †b4 19.■b8++-**



1-88
1/30
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/30. Yermolinsky-Komarov, USSR 1986

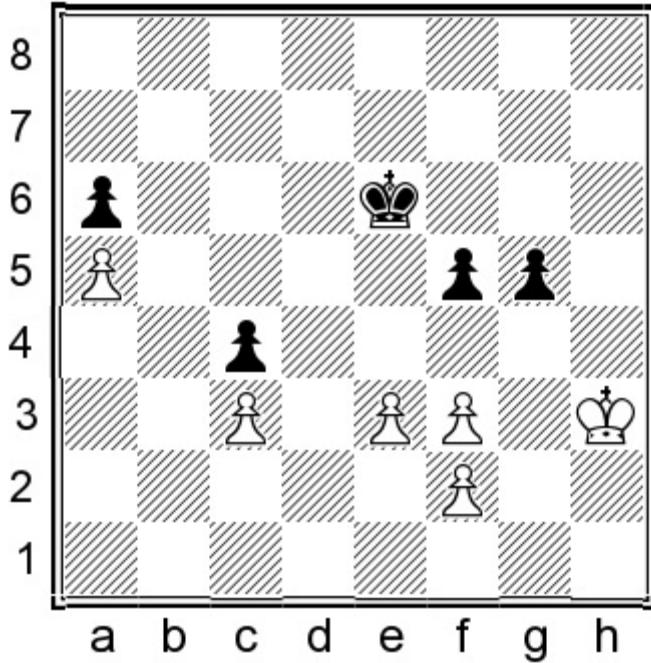
It is no easy matter to utilize the extra pawn to win. White found a superb solution: he opened the way for his king to the queenside.

1.f4+!! gxf4+ 2.♔f3! fxe3 3.fxe3! ♔d5 4.♔f4 ♔e6 5.e4 fxe4 6.♔xe4

Black resigned. White captures the c4-pawn unimpeded and advances his pawn to c6, achieving the position from Fahrni-Alapin (diagram 1-27).

Let us consider another attempt to make progress: triangulation.

1.♔g2 ♔d5 (1...♔e6? 2.e4+) 2.♔h3 ♔e6! After 2...♔e5? 3.♔g3 White's idea turns out to be successful: 3...♔e6 4.f4 g4 5.f3 gxf3 6.♔xf3 ♔d5 7.e4+ fxe4+ 8.♔e3+–



16-15

W

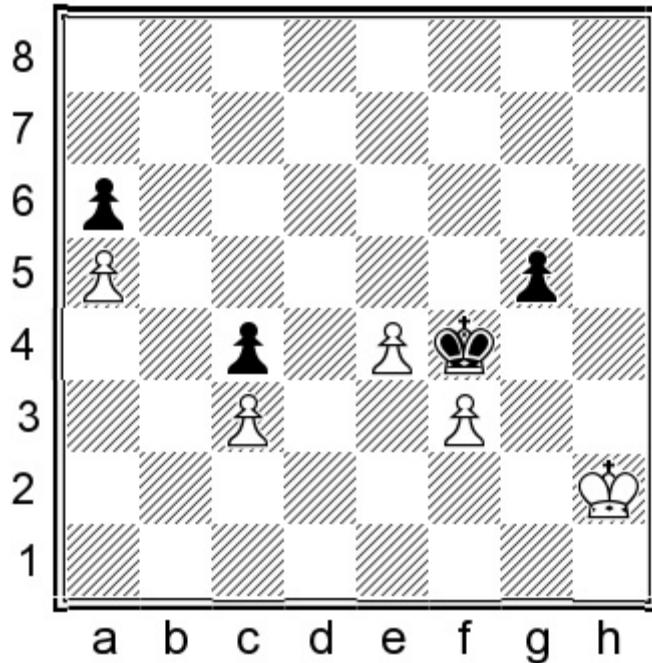
(a) 3.f4?! (this still wins, but takes a long time) 3...gxf4 4.exf4 ♕d5! 5.f3 ♕c5 6.♕h4 ♕b5 7.♕g5 ♕a4! 8.♕xf5 ♕b3 9.♕g6 ♕xc3 leads to a queen-and-pawn endgame with an extra pawn for White, which is winning. 4...♕f6?! is weaker in view of 5.♕h4! ♕g6 6.f3O 6...♕h6 7.♕g3 ♕h5 8.♕f2 ♕h4 9.♕g2 ♕h5 10.♕g3O 10...♕g6 11.♕f2 ♕h5 12.♕e3 ♕h4 13.♕d4 ♕g3 14.♕e5 ♕xf3 15.♕xf5 ♕e3 16.♕e5+-. But 5.♕g3?! is less accurate; White can achieve only the same queen-and-pawn endgame as above: 5...♕g6! 6.♕h4 (6.♕f3 ♕h5 7.♕e3? ♕g4 8.♕d4 ♕xf4 9.♕xc4 ♕f3 10.♕d5 ♕xf2 11.♕e5 ♕e3=) 6...♕h6 7.♕h3 ♕g7! 8.♕g2 ♕f6(f7)! 9.♕f3 ♕e6 10.♕g3 ♕d5 11.f3 ♕c5 12.♕h4 ♕b5 13.♕g5 ♕a4!? etc.

(b) 3.e4? fxe4 4.fxe4 ♕e5 5.f3 ♕f4 6.e5! (6.♕g2 g4 7.fxg4 ♕xg4=) 6...♕xf3 (6...♕xe5? 7.♕g4 ♕f6 8.f4+-) 7.e6 g4+ 8.♕h2 (8.♕h4) 8...♕f2 9.e7 g3+ 10.♕h3 g2 11.e8=威 g1=威 12.威f7+ and 13.威xc4, again with a queen ending a pawn up, but this time it is only drawn.

(c) The best option is a return to Yermolinsky's plan: 3.♕g3! ♕e5 4.f4+!! gxf4+ 5.♕f3!+-

Nevertheless, as grandmaster Najer has demonstrated, an "alternative solution" exists: White should play e3-e4 when the king is standing on h2 (rather than on h3 as in the (b) line).

1.♕h2! ♕e6 (1...♕d5 2.♕g2O) 2.e4! fxe4 3.fxe4 ♕e5 4.f3 ♕f4



16-16
W?

5. $\mathbb{Q}g1!!$ g4 6. e5! $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 7. fxg4 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2+-$

The King Routes

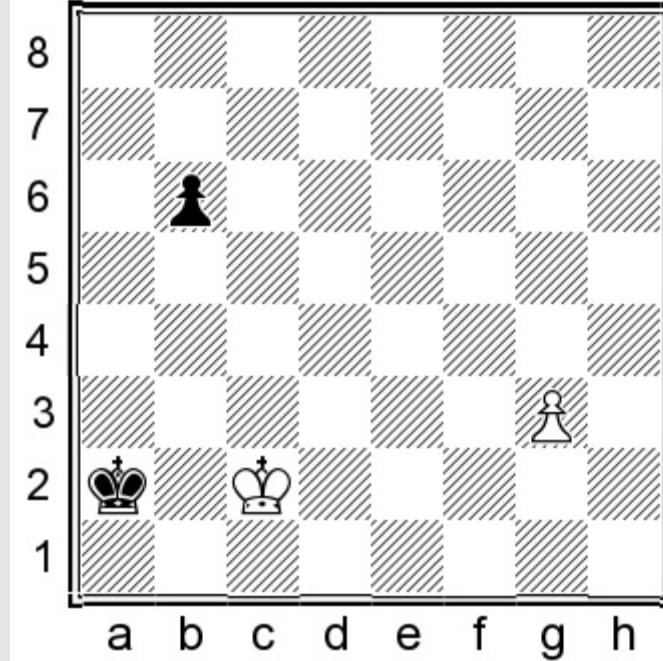
In this section, we shall examine some different types of king maneuvers.

Zigzag

The laws of geometry, as we have known them since grade school, have no relevance on the chessboard. There, a straight line is not the shortest distance between two points (or squares) – if the king follows a broken-line path, it is by no means longer. This phenomenon is exploited both in the Réti idea we have already examined, and in the “shoulder block” we shall learn later on.

Here, we shall speak of a technique closely connected with the simultaneous advance of pawns we just studied. To be more exact: we shall be speaking of two techniques, which look very similar. Let's call them “zigzag.”

N. Grigoriev 1928



1-89

W?

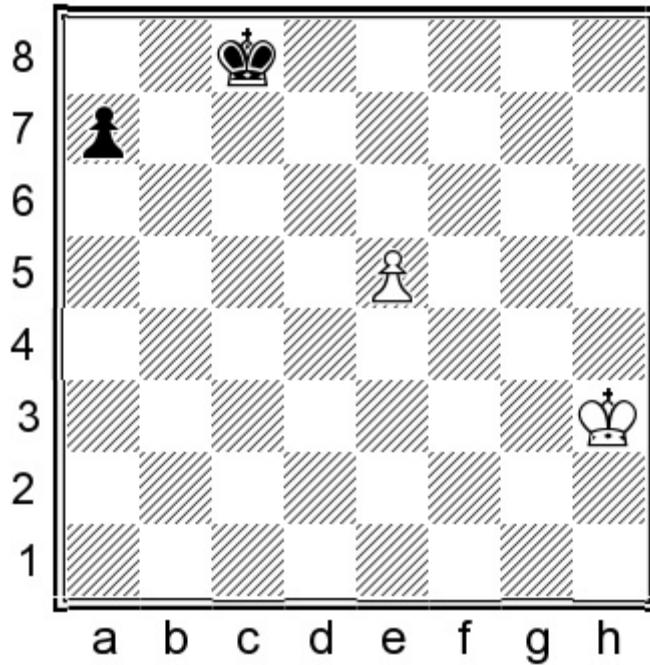
The direct 1.g4? leads only to a draw: 1...b5 2.g5 b4 3.g6 b3+ 4.♔c3 b2 5.g7 b1=♕ 6.g8=♕+ ♔a1!=
1.♔c3! ♔a3 2.♔c4 ♔a4 3.g4 b5+ 4.♔d3!

Here is the zigzag! The king returns to c2, while avoiding the pawn check.

4...♔a3 5.g5 b4 6.g6 b3 7.g7 b2 8.♔c2! (drawing the king into check) **8...♔a2 9.g8=♕+**

The other form of zigzag occurs when the king has to avoid a check from a newly-promoted queen.

J.Moravec 1952



1-90

W?

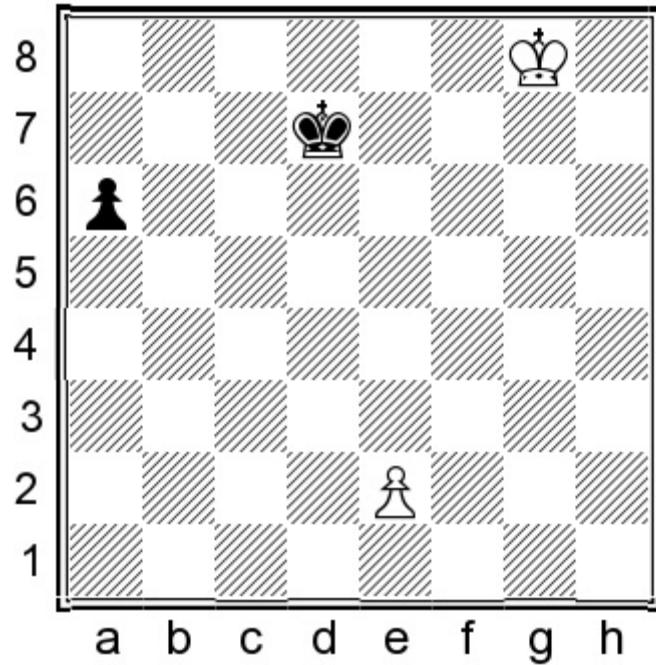
White is outside the square of the a-pawn. His only hope is Réti's idea.

1. ♔g4 a5 2. ♔f5! a4

Otherwise, the king gets into the square. Now White would lose by 3.e6? ♔d8 4. ♔f6 ♔e8; and 3. ♔f6? a3 4.e6 a2 5.e7 a1=威+ is also bad. The king must avoid the f6-square.

3. ♔g6! a3 4.e6 a2 5.e7 ♔d7 6. ♔f7=

Exercises



1-91

1/31

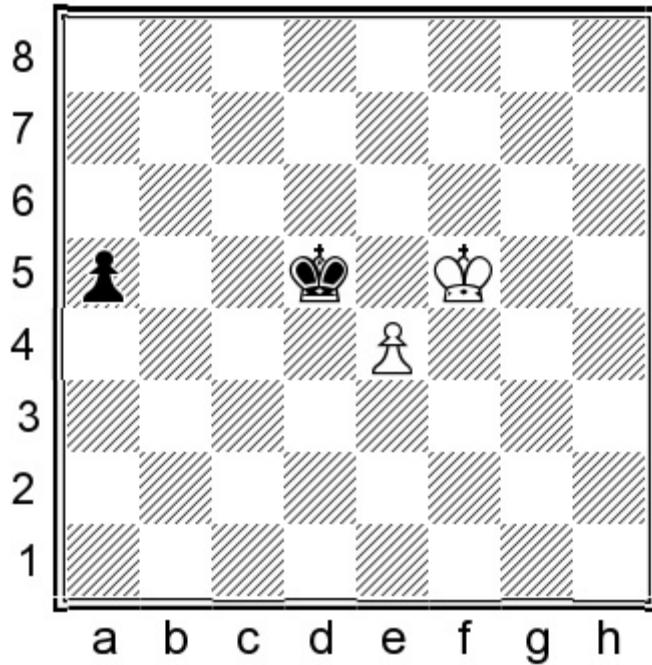
W?

How should this game end?

Show/Hide Solution

1/31. J.Moravec 1952

1. ♕f7 ♔d6 2. ♕f6 ♔d5! 3. ♕f5 a5 4. e4+



16-17
B

4...†c6!

Black applies the Grigoriev zigzag.

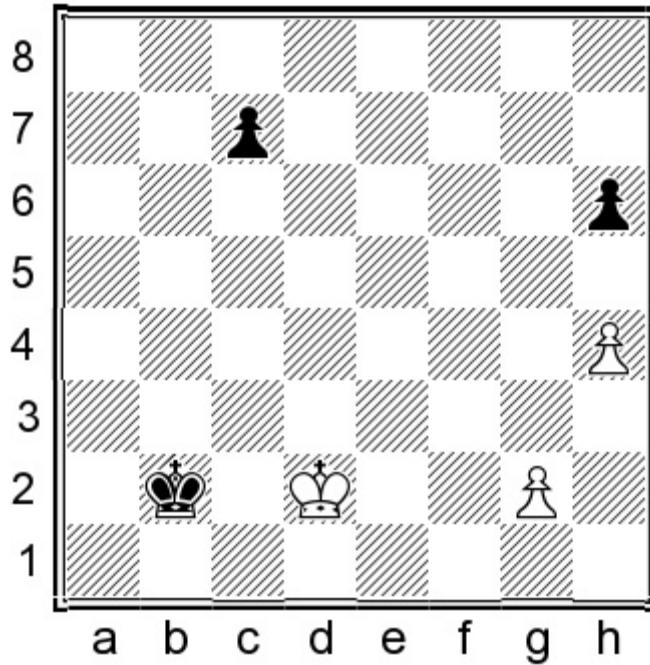
5.e5!

Of course, not 5.†e5? (Δ 6.†d4) 5...†c5! 6.†f6 a4 7.e5 a3 and Black promotes with check. 5.†g6? is also inaccurate in view of 5...a4 6.e5 †d5! 7.†f5 a3 8.e6 †d6! 9.†f6 a2+

5...a4 (5...†d7 6.†e4=) 6.e6 a3 7.†g6!

A similar zigzag saves White.

7...a2 8.e7 †d7 9.†f7=



I-92

1/32

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/32. I.Gabdrakipov 1985

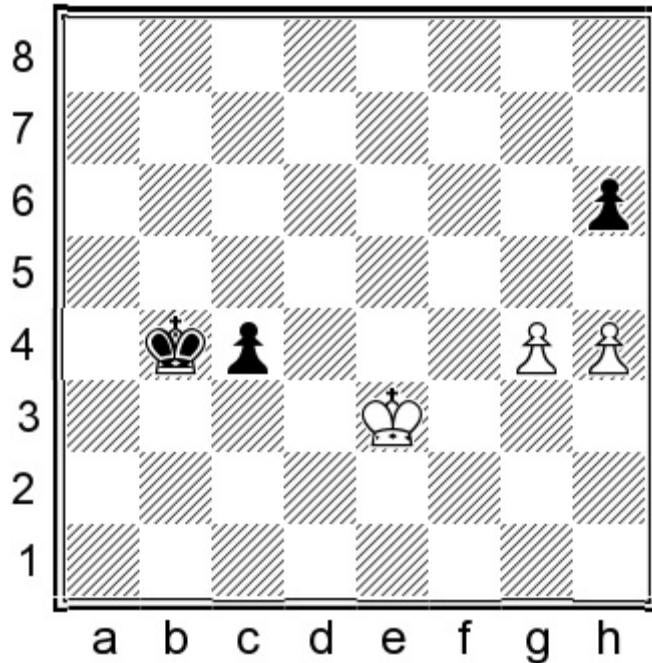
In this study we can see both kinds of zigzags again.

1.♔d3 (1.g4? c5=)

1.♔d3 ♔b3 2.♔d4! ♔b4

2...h5 does not help: 3.g4! hxg4 4.h5 c5+ 5.♔e3!

3.g4 (rather than 3.♔e3? ♔c5!=) 3...c5+ 4.♔e3! c4



16-18

W?

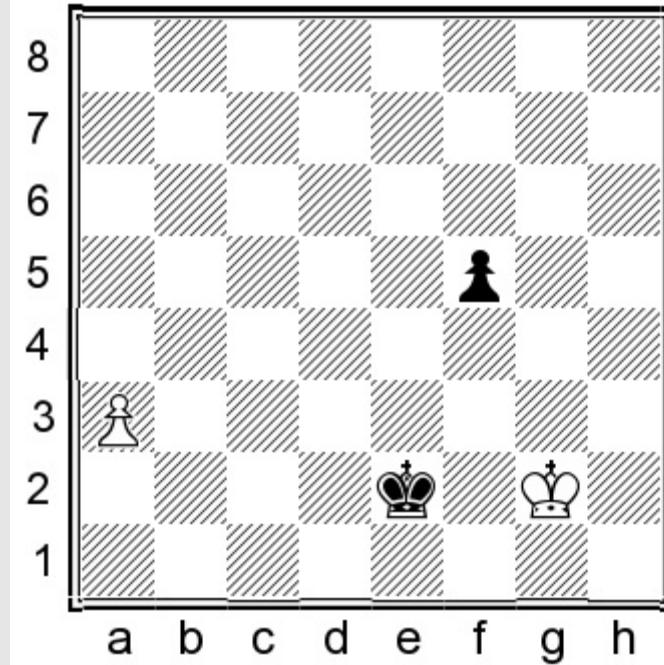
5.g5!

After 5.♔d2? c3+ 6.♕c2 ♔c4, White has no win: 7.g5 hxg5 8.h5 (8.hxg5 ♔d5=) 8...g4= or 7.h5 ♔d4 8.g5 ♔e5 9.g6 ♔f6=. One should know this drawing position with a pawn less; a reminder will be given in the section devoted to the protected passed pawn.

5...hxg5 6.h5!

After 6.hxg5? Black holds by means of a zigzag: 6...c3 7.g6 ♔a3! 8.♔d3 ♔b2 9.g7 c2= 6...c3 7.h6 ♔b3 8.h7 c2 9.♔d2! ♔b2 10.h8=威++-

The Pendulum



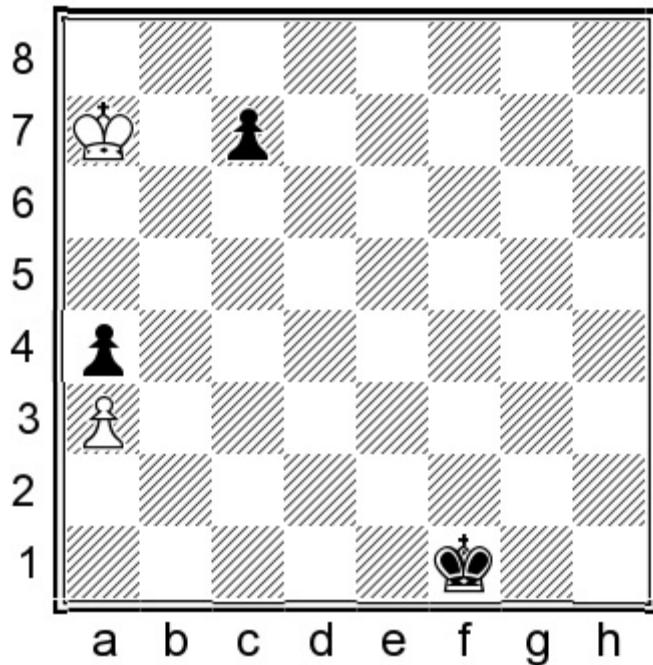
I-93

W

1. ♔g3! ♔e3 2. ♔g2! ♔e2 (2...f4 3. ♔f1) 3. ♔g3=

This elementary defensive technique appears frequently.

Exercises



I-94

Show/Hide Solution

1/33. V.Kondratiev 1985

1.♔a6 ♔e2 2.♔a5!

The squares b5 and d3 are mined. 2.♔b5? loses to 2...♔d3 3.♔b4 c6! 4.♔xa4 c5.

2...♔d3 3.♔b5O 3...c6+ 4.♔b4O

Of course not 4.♔xc6? ♔c4!–+. Now Black has no waiting move ...c7-c6, and his king is forced to leave the comfortable d3-square. Then White finally takes the a4-pawn and holds by means of a pendulum.

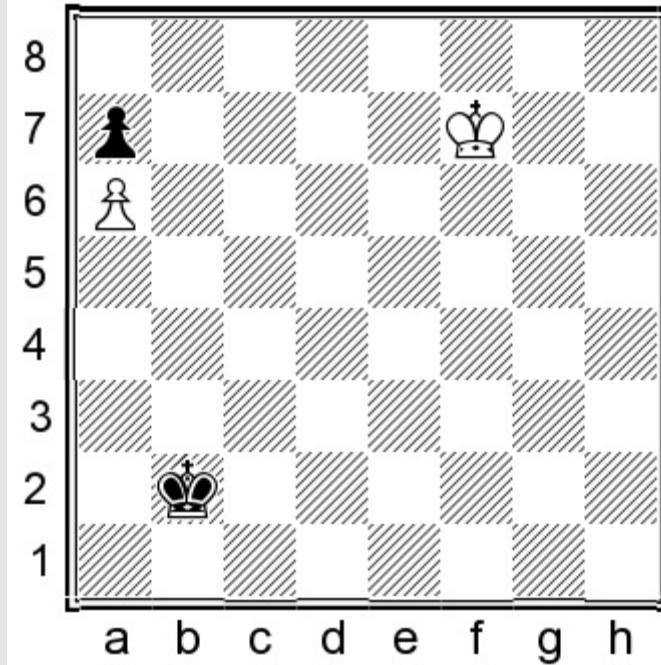
4...♔d4 5.♔xa4 c5 6.♔b3 ♔d3 7.♔b2! ♔d2 8.♔b3=

Shouldering

Quite often, one must choose a route for the king that gives a “shouldering” to the enemy king – that is, it prevents the enemy from arriving in time at an important part of the board. “Shouldering” is also often called a “bodycheck.”

Schlage – Ahues

Berlin 1921



1-95

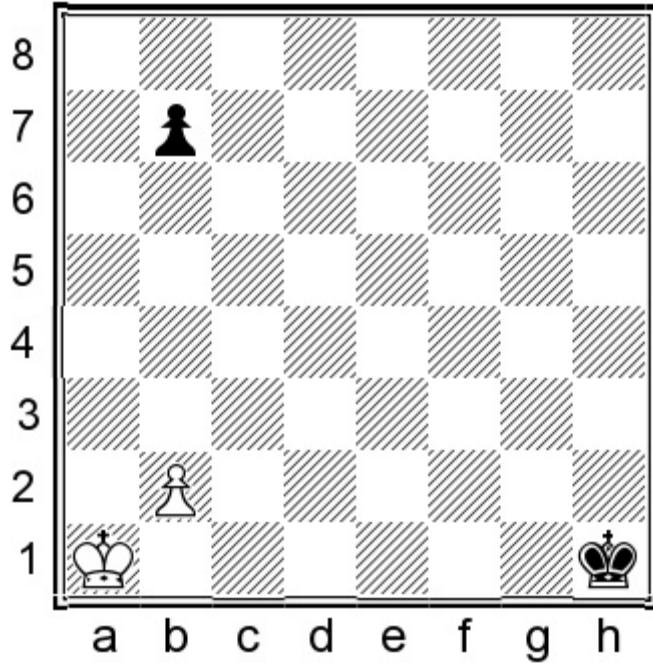
W?

White must inevitably win the pawn at a7. Black can save himself only if he can succeed in locking the white king into the corner with ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$. The game was drawn after 1. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$.

Maizelis demonstrated a win for White by 1. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5!+-$

White's king approaches the a7-pawn while simultaneously "shouldering" the enemy king, keeping it from approaching the c7-square.

J.Moravec 1940



1-96

W?

White only gets a draw out of 1. $\hat{Q}a2?$ $\hat{Q}g2$ 2. $\hat{Q}b3$ $\hat{Q}f3$ 3. $\hat{Q}c4$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 4. b4 $\hat{Q}e5$ 5. $\hat{Q}c5$ (White's king does manage to shoulder the enemy king, but here this is insufficient) 5... $\hat{Q}e6$ 6. $\hat{Q}b6$ (6. b5 $\hat{Q}d7$ 7. $\hat{Q}b6$ $\hat{Q}c8=$) 6... $\hat{Q}d5$ 7. $\hat{Q}xb7$ $\hat{Q}c4=$

It is important to keep Black's king farther away from the pawns; and for this, White needs to meet it halfway.

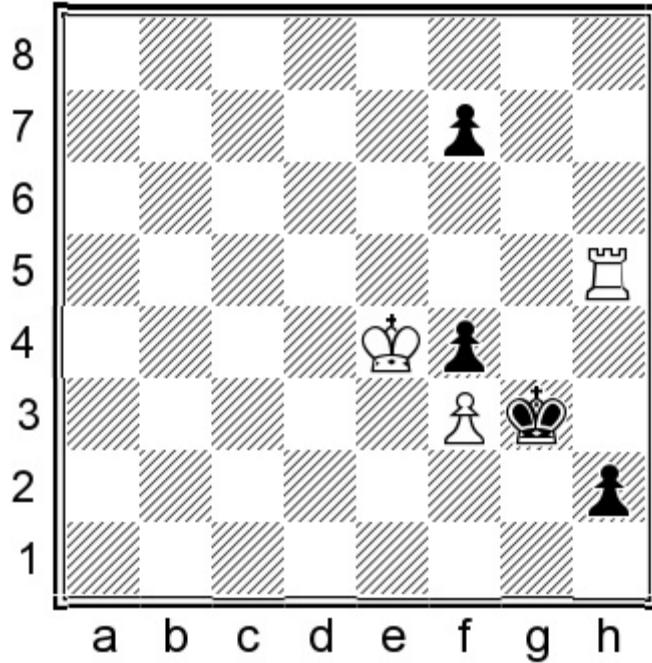
1. $\hat{Q}b1!$ $\hat{Q}g2$ 2. $\hat{Q}c2$ $\hat{Q}f3$ 3. $\hat{Q}d3!$ $\hat{Q}f4$ 4. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 5. $\hat{Q}d5$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 6. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{Q}f7$

If 6... $\hat{Q}f5$, then 7. b4 $\hat{Q}e4$ 8. b5 $\hat{Q}d4$ 9. b6 with the idea of 10. $\hat{Q}c7+-$

7. b4 $\hat{Q}e8$ 8. $\hat{Q}c7$ b5 9. $\hat{Q}c6+-$

Tragicomедies

Rogers – Shirov
Groningen 1990



1-97

B?

Black would have drawn had he continued 1...f5+! 2.♔xf5 (2.♗d4 ♔g2) 2...♔xf3 3.♕xh2 ♔g3 Δ 4...f3.

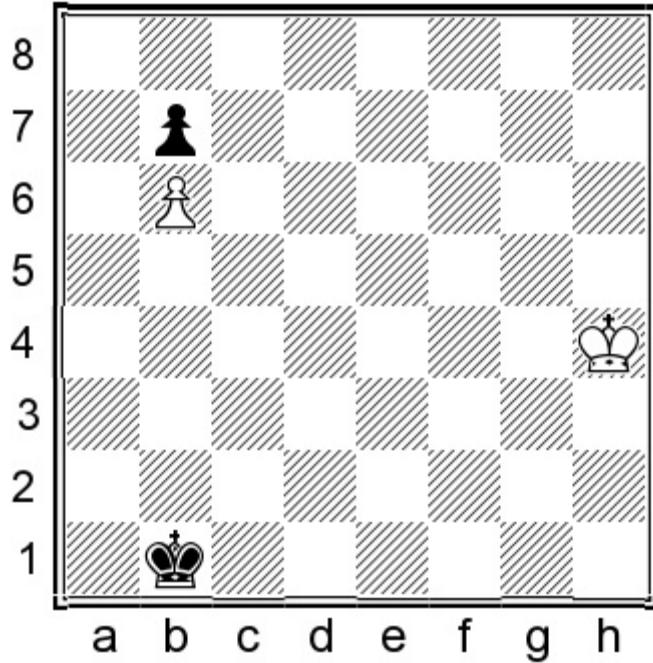
1...f6! is also possible: 2.♕h8 f5+ (or even 2...♔g2).

Shirov decided instead to pick up the rook for his h-pawn, but he misjudged the pawn ending.

1...♔g2?? 2.♔xf4 h1=♕ 3.♕xh1 ♔xh1 4.♔g3!

Black resigned. His king is squeezed into the corner, giving White time to push his f3-pawn forward, after which he can win Black's pawn. For example: 4...♔g1 5.f4 ♔f1 6.f5! (but not 6.♔f3? f5!=) 6...♗e2 7.♗f4 ♔d3 8.♗e5 ♗e3 9.f6!+–

Exercises



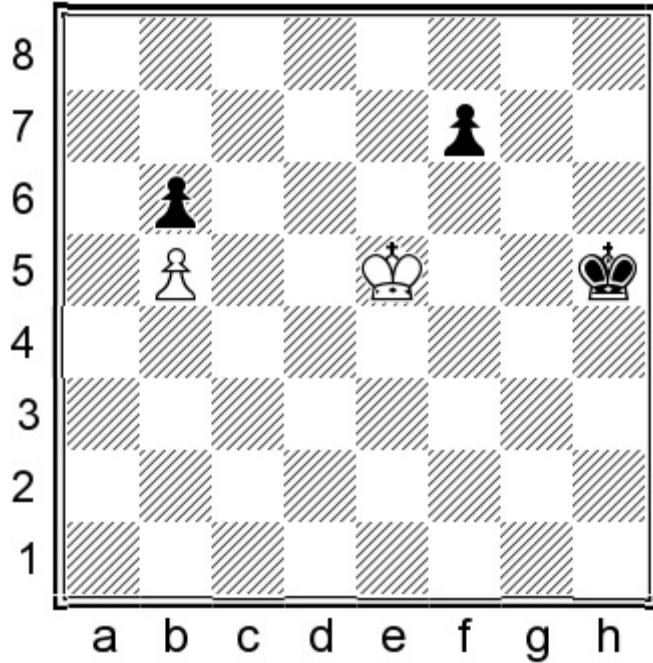
1-98
1/34
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/34. N.Grigoriev 1931

The attack against the b7-pawn comes too late: 1. $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}a6\circlearrowright$ The only hope is to meet ... $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ with $\mathbb{Q}b4$. The trail should be blazed with awareness of the fact that the black king will try to out-shoulder its colleague.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4=$



1-99

1/35

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/35. N.Grigoriev 1925

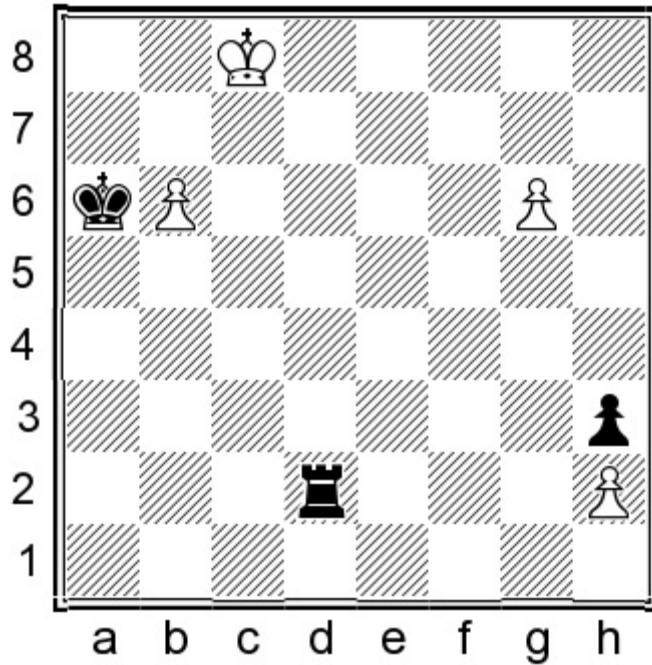
1. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ is hopeless.

On 1. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ $f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $f4$ we get a lost “knight pawn vs. queen” endgame. White’s only hope is to keep the black king locked on the h-file until Black advances his f-pawn close enough to the white king.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $f6$ (forced) 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$

The king has blocked the way of his own pawn, so White’s attack against the b6-pawn arrives in time. But 6... $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ would have been even worse: the white king eliminates the f-pawn and has enough time for a return to the queenside: 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ —

7. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}f5?$ $\mathbb{Q}e3-$) 7... $f5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xb6=$



1-100

1/36

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

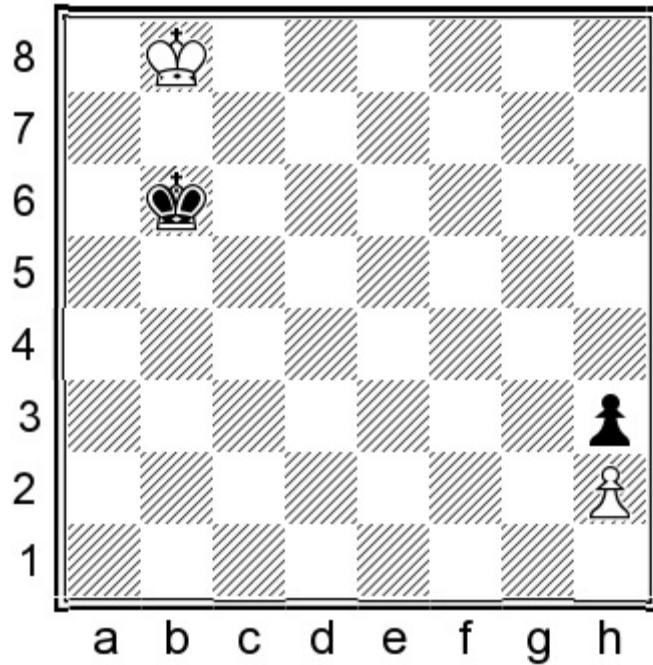
1/36. A.Gerbstman 1961

1.g7! (1.b7? $\mathbb{Q}c2+$!)

1.g7! $\mathbb{Q}c2+$

Or 1... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 2.b7 with the same result.

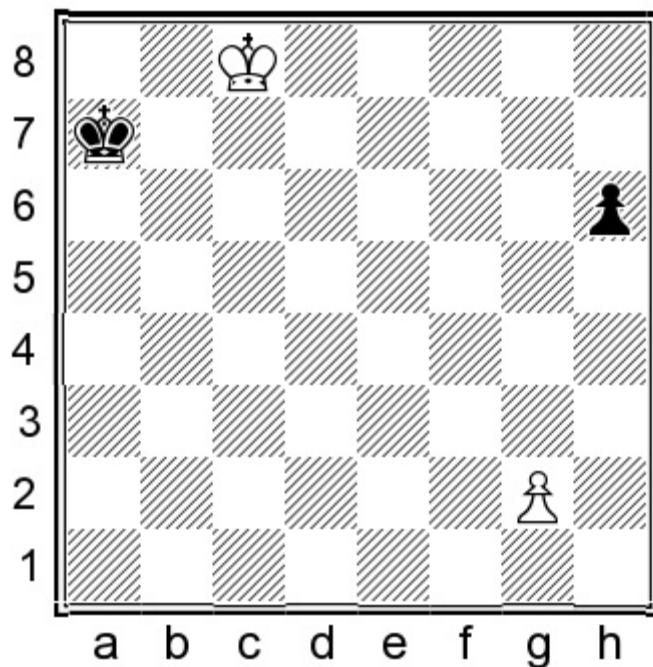
2. $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 3.b7 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+!$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ stalemate) 5.b8= $\mathbb{Q}xb8+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$



16-19
\$
W?

7. $\mathbb{Q}c8??$ would have been a grave error now: 7... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (shouldering!) 8. $\mathbb{Q}d8(b8)$ 8... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and the white king fails to reach f2.

7. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$



I-101

1/37

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/37. H.Adamson 1915

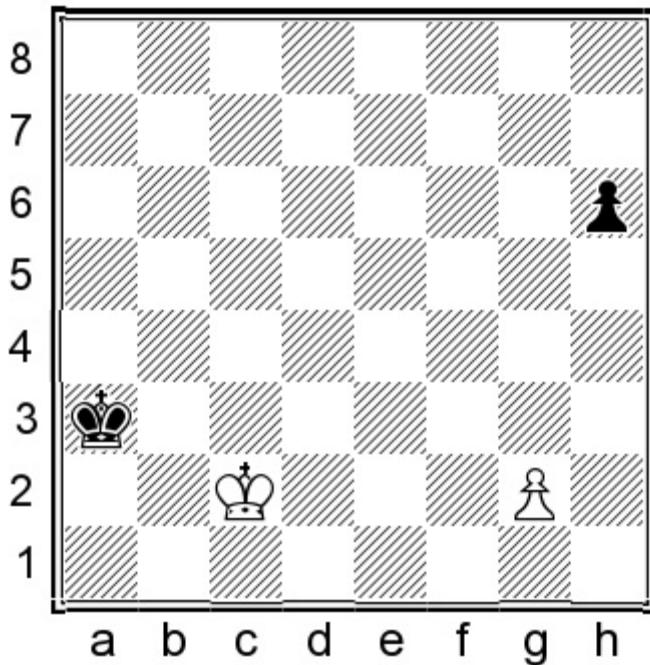
The straightforward 1.♔d7? fails: 1...♝b6 2.♗e6 ♜c5 3.♗f5 ♔d4 4.♗g6 ♜e3 5.♗xh6 ♔f4=. White must keep the black king locked on the edge, choose a proper moment for luring the pawns closer, and only then go to the kingside. Very subtle play is required for accomplishing this plan.

1.♗c7! ♜a6 2.♗c6 ♜a5 (2...♜a7? 3.g4! ♜b8 4.♗d7! ♜b7 5.♗e6+-) 3.♗c5 ♜a4 4.♗c4 ♜a3 5.♗c3 ♜a2 6.♗c2!

It is still early for a pawn advance: 6.g4? ♜b1= or 6.g3? ♜b1 7.♗d2 ♜b2 8.g4 ♜b1! (rather than 8...♜b3? 9.♗d3!+-) 9.♗d3 ♜c1!=

Now, if 6...♜a1, then 7.g4 ♜a2 8.♗d3 wins. 6...h5 is also bad: 7.♗d3 ♜b3 8.♗e4 ♜c4 9.♗f5.

6...♜a3



16-20

W?

7.g3!!

Rather than a hasty 7.g4? in view of 7...♝b4 8.♗d3 ♜c5 9.♗e4 ♜d6 10.♗f5 h5! 11.gxh5 ♜e7=

7...†a4!?

This continuation is perhaps more clever than the author's solution, 7...†b4 (7...†a2 8.g4+–; 7...h5 8.†d3 †b4 9.†e4 †c5 10.†f5+–) 8.†d3 †c5 9.†e4O 9...†d6 10.†f5 †d5 (10...†e7 11.†g6) 11.g4+–

8.†c3!

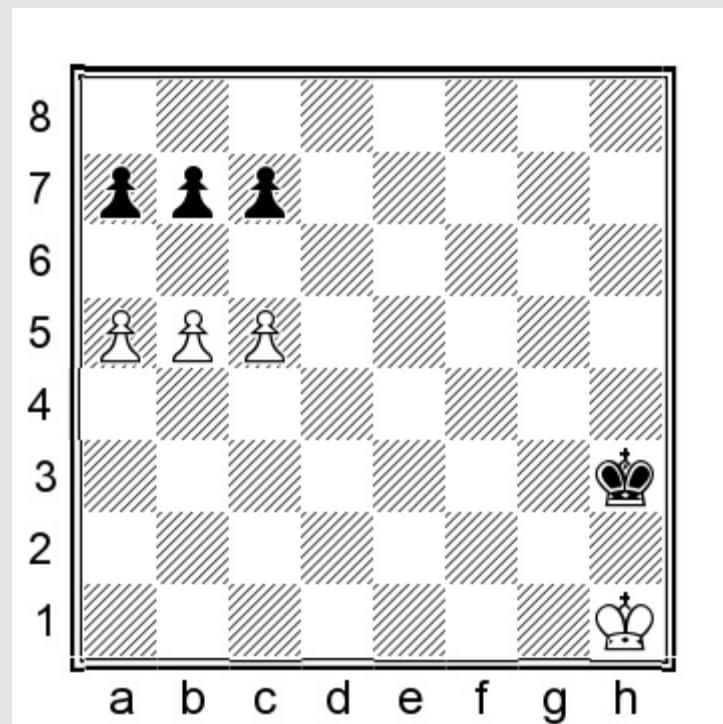
After 8.†d3? †b4 9.†e4 †c5, a position from the previous variation arises. However strange it may seem, this is a reciprocal zugzwang and, with White on move, the outcome is only a draw: 10.g4 †d6 11.†f5 h5!= or 10.†f5 †d4=

8...†b5 9.†d4 †c6 10.†e5! (10.†e4? †c5!O=) 10...†c5 (10...†d7 11.†f6+–) 11.g4+–

Breakthrough

A breakthrough occurs when one or more pawns are sacrificed in order to create a passed pawn and promote it.

Let's examine a few of the standard structures in which a pawn breakthrough is possible.



1-102

White to move wins by **1.b6! cxb6** (1...axb6 2.c6) **2.a6! bxa6** **3.c6**

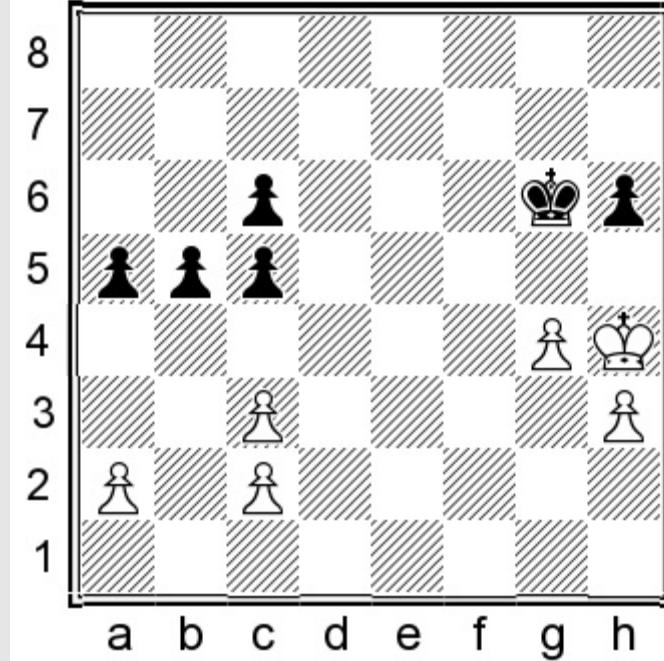
Black to move has only one way to parry the threatened breakthrough: by **1...b6!**

(both 1...a6? 2.c6!

and 1...c6? 2.a6! are bad).

Let's add one more white pawn at c4. Now the move 1...b6 no longer works because of 2.cxb6 cxb6 3.c5.

Now let's also move the a-pawn to a4. In this case, Black can stop the breakthrough for good by playing 1...c6! 2.a5 a6!



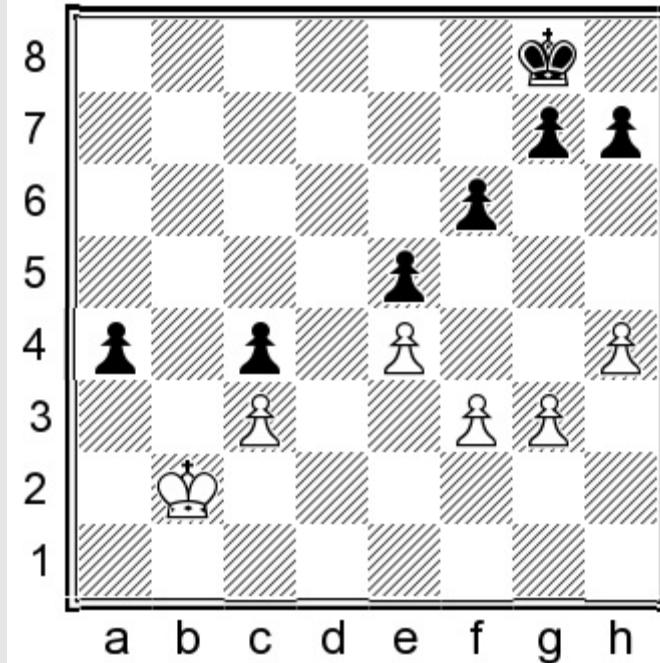
1-103

This is the sort of structure we find in the Ruy Lopez Exchange Variation. Black to move can create a passed pawn which wins by 1...c4! 2.♔g3 c5, followed by ...b5-b4, ...a5-a4 and ...b4-b3. (Strictly speaking, the term “breakthrough” is not really appropriate here, since no pawn sacrifice is involved; but the effect is still the same.)

White to move can stabilize the situation on the queenside by 1.c4! which guarantees him a decisive advantage, thanks to the outside passed pawn he will create on the opposite side of the board.

Maslov – Glebov

USSR 1936



1-104

B?

Black's position looks difficult, since the enemy king rules the queenside. But the possibility of a pawn breakthrough changes the evaluation of the position completely.

1...h5! 2.Qa3 (2.g4 g5!) 2...g5 3.Qxa4 f5! 4.Qb5

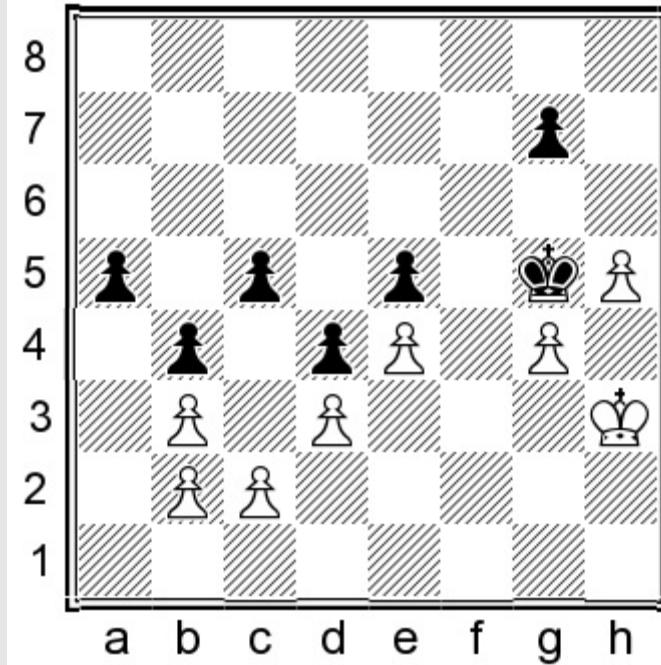
There is no defense: 4.hxg5 f4!, or 4.exf5 g4! 5.fxg4 e4.

4...f4 5.gxf4 gxh4 and the h-pawn queens.

The errors committed in the following examples are quite instructive. They could have been put in the "Tragomedies" section, except that I already had plenty of material for that section without them.

Havasi – Peko

Budapest 1976



1-105

B?

Black resigned, never suspecting that the queenside pawn structure contained the possibility of a breakthrough.

1...c4! 2.bxc4

If 2.dxc4, then 2...a4 3.bxa4 b3 4.cxb3 d3–+, while 2.♔g3 is met by 2...a4! 3.bxa4 b3 4.cxb3 c3.

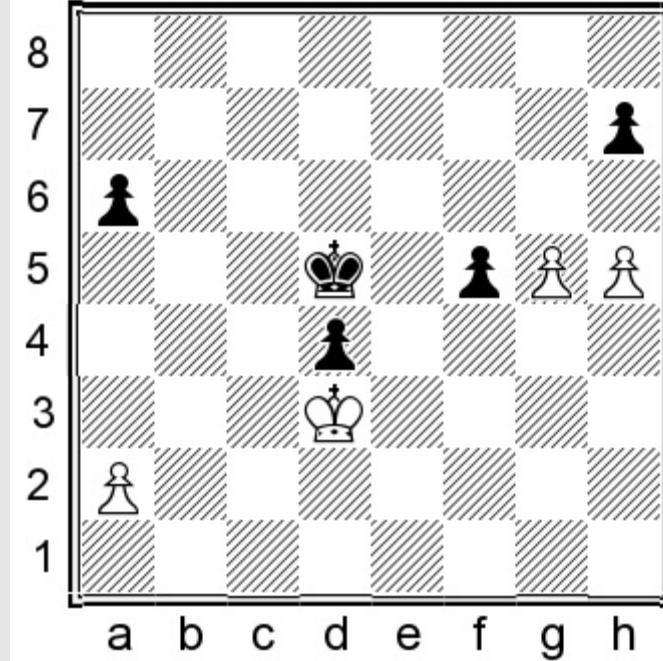
2...a4 3.c5 a3 4.bxa3 bxa3 5.c6 a2 6.c7 a1=♕ 7.c8=♕

The pawns queen simultaneously; but Black has an easy win by once again obtaining a pawn ending. Note Black's working the queen up to h4 – a standard technique in these positions – ensuring that the g4-pawn is captured with check.

**7...♕f1+ 8.♔g3 ♕f4+ 9.♔h3 ♕f3+ 10.♔h2 ♕f2+! 11.♔h3 ♕h4+ 12.♔g2 ♕xg4+ 13.♕xg4 ♔xg4
14.♔f2 ♔xh5–+**

Capablanca – Ed. Lasker

London simul 1913



1-106

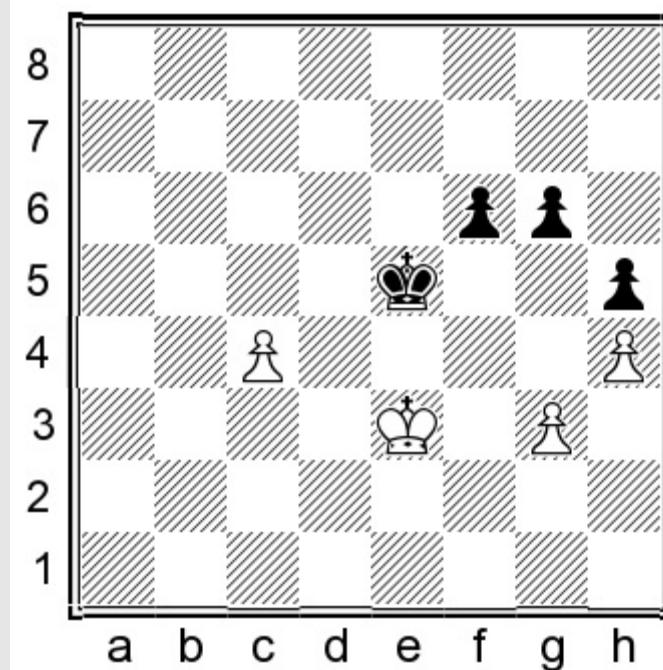
B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5??$ 2.h6! (Δ 3.g6) Black resigned.

The draw would have been assured after 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ f4 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f3 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5.g6 hxg6 6.h6 $\mathbb{Q}f6=$

Kharlov – Ernst

Haninge 1992



I-107

B?

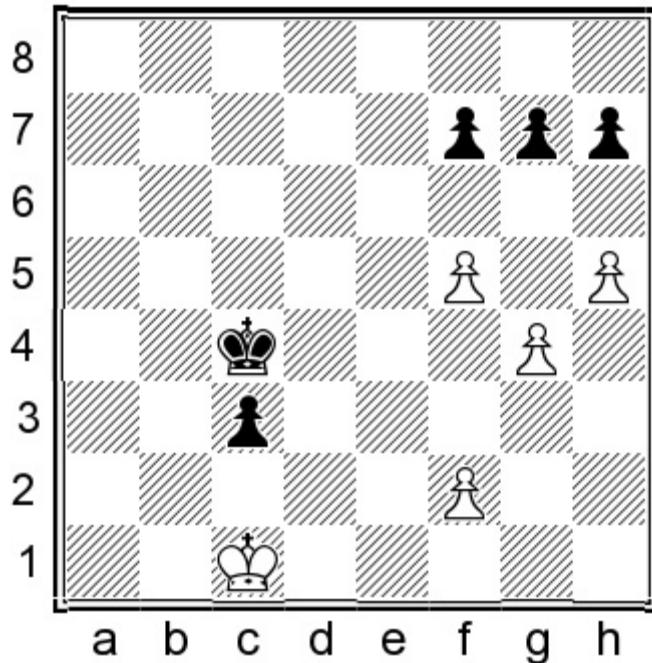
The position is drawn: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3.c5 g5 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ gxh4 5.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6=$

In the game, Black played 1...g5?? 2.g4!+–, and after a few more unnecessary moves (2...hxg4 3.h5 f5 4.h6 f4+ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ g3+ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 7.h7), he resigned.

Tragicomедies

Ed. Lasker – Moll

Berlin 1904



I-108

B

Black wins easily by 1...f6 2.g5 (2.h6 gxh6 3.f4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$) 2...h6;

1... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ is also good.

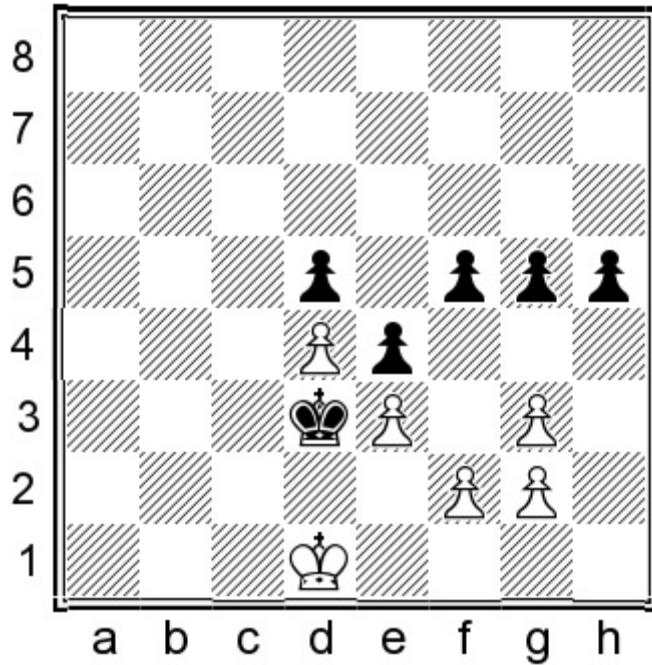
1...h6??

A terrible blunder, allowing the breakthrough 2.f6! gxf6 3.f4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4.g5 fxg5 5.fxg5 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6.gxh6 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2O+-$

But White failed to exploit his unexpected opportunity and lost after **2.f4?? f6! 3.g5 $\mathbb{Q}d4$.**

Svacina – H. Müller

Vienna 1941



1-109

B

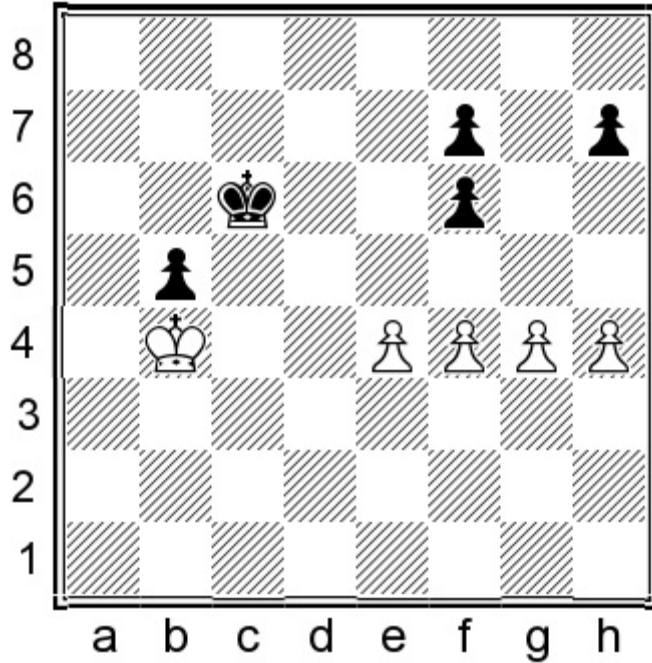
Black cannot capitalize on the active position of his king: 1...g4 2.♔e1 ♔c2 3.♔e2=; or 1...f4 2.gxf4 gxf4 3.exf4=. He thought up an amusing psychological trap: retreating his king instead.

1...♔c4 2.♔c2 ♔b5 3.♔b3 ♔c6 4.♔b4 ♔d6 5.♔b5 ♔d7 6.♔c5 ♔e6 7.♔c6?

And it worked! White, having no idea what his opponent was up to, naively marched his king deep into enemy territory – no doubt, he was already expecting to win. But now, Black plays the pawn breakthrough.

7...g4! 8.♔c5 f4! 9.exf4 h4! 10.gxh4 g3 11.fxg3 e3 White resigned.

Nakagawa – Day
Buenos Aires ol 1978

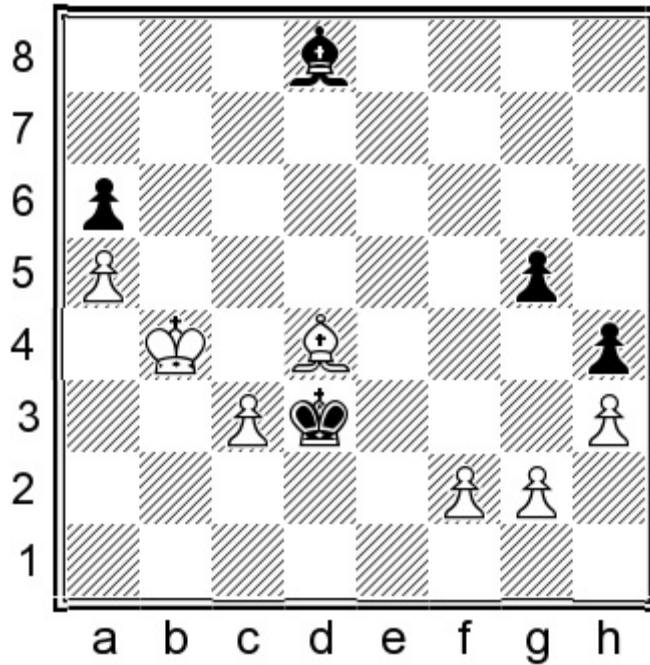


1-110
B

This position is drawn: the potential threat of a kingside breakthrough is counterbalanced by Black's outside passed pawn – but no more than that. Here is how matters should normally develop: 1... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 2.h5 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3.h6! $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 4.e5 (4.f5 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5.e5 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c6=$) 4...fxe5 5.fxe5 (5.f5 e4 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7.g5 is also possible) 5... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6.e6! $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (6...fxe6? 7.g5+–) 7.exf7 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4=$

But the game continued 1...h6?? and now White could have won easily by 2.h5! (Δ 3.g5). Instead, he chose 2.g5?? which lost after 2...fxg5 3.fxg5 h5! 4.e5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$, etc.

Süss – Haakert
BRD ch, Kiel 1967



1-111

W

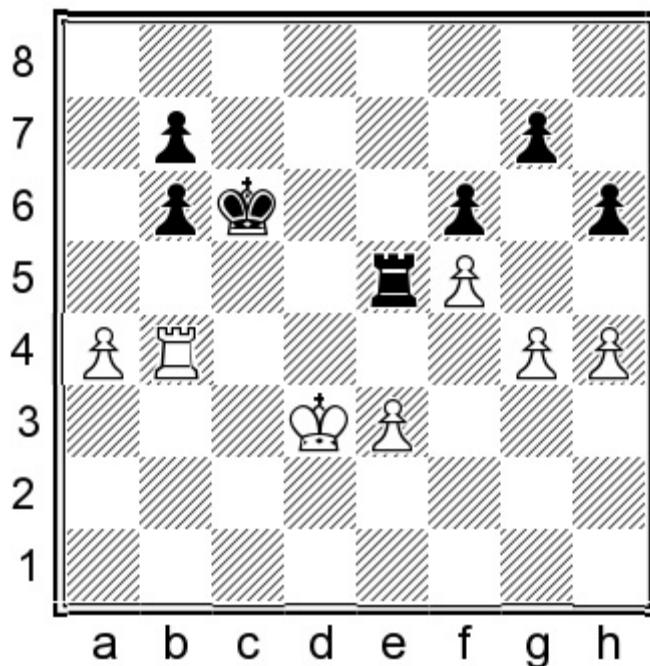
1.g4

or 1.♗b6 both win for White. However, he forgot about the possibility of a pawn breakthrough, and obtained the opposite result instead.

1.g3?? g4! 2.gxh4 gxh3 3.♗e5 ♗xh4 4.f3 ♗f6! 5.♗h2 ♗xc3+ 6.♗a4 ♗e3 7.f4 ♗e4 White resigned.

Averbakh – Bebchuk

Moscow 1964



I-112

B?

Black has an inferior, but defensible endgame. Bebchuk, however, misjudged the pawn ending.

1...b5? 2.♖xb5! ♖xb5 3.axb5+ ♔xb5 4.e4 ♔c6 5.e5! fxe5

If 5...♔d5 6.e6 ♔d6, White brings his king to b6 (or, if Black plays ...b7-b6, to b5), and after Black replies ...♔c8, uses his reserve tempo h4-h5 to win.

6.g5 hxg5

Black finds no relief in 6...♔d6 7.f6 ♔e6 8.fxg7 ♔f7 9.gxh6 b5 (the floating square for Black's pawns does not reach the last rank, and the distance between the pawns is the unfavorable two files) 10.♔e4 b4 11.♔d3 and 12.♔c4+–

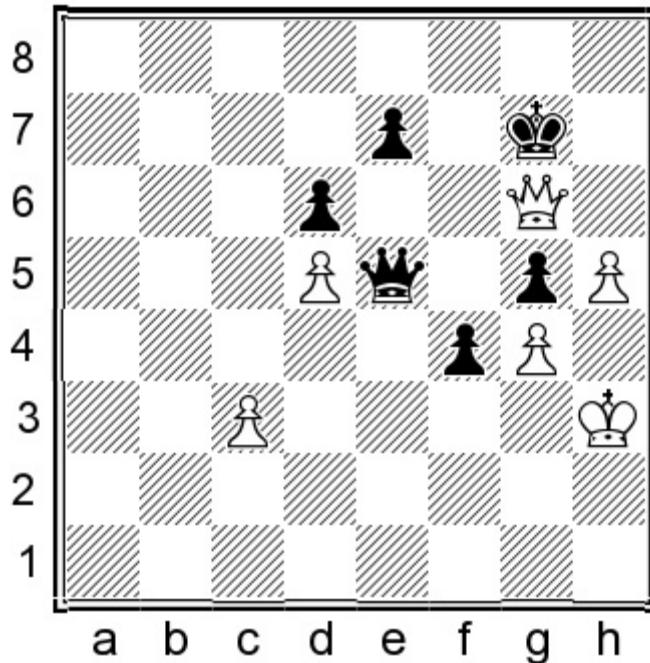
7.f6!

Not, however, 7.h5? ♔d6 8.f6 ♔e6 9.fxg7 ♔f7+–. Black resigned, in view of 7...gxf6 8.h5.

Black had a better defense in 1...h5!? when White could have tried 2.♖b5!. Here, too, the exchange of rooks leads to a loss: 2...♖xb5? 3.axb5+ ♔xb5 4.e4! ♔c6 (4...hxg4 5.e5) 5.e5 ♔d7□ 6.e6+ ♔d6 7.gxh5 b5 8.♔c3 b6 (8...♔c7 9.♔b4 ♔c6 10.♔a5) 9.♔b4 ♔c6 10.h6! gxh6 11.h5○ 11...♔d6 12.♔xb5 ♔c7 13.e7+–. Black would have to play 2...♖e8! 3.gxh5 ♕h8, with good drawing chances.

Gazik – Pétursson

Groningen ech jr 1978/79

**I-113**

B?

After 1...♕h8! the draw is obvious. In the game, however, Black allowed the trade of queens.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8??$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xf5+!$ $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 3. $gxf5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4.c4

A simpler way is 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5.h6+–) 5.c4 f3 (5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3\text{O}$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 7.f6 (7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ is good, too) 7... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 8.c5+–) 8.fxe7 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ +–

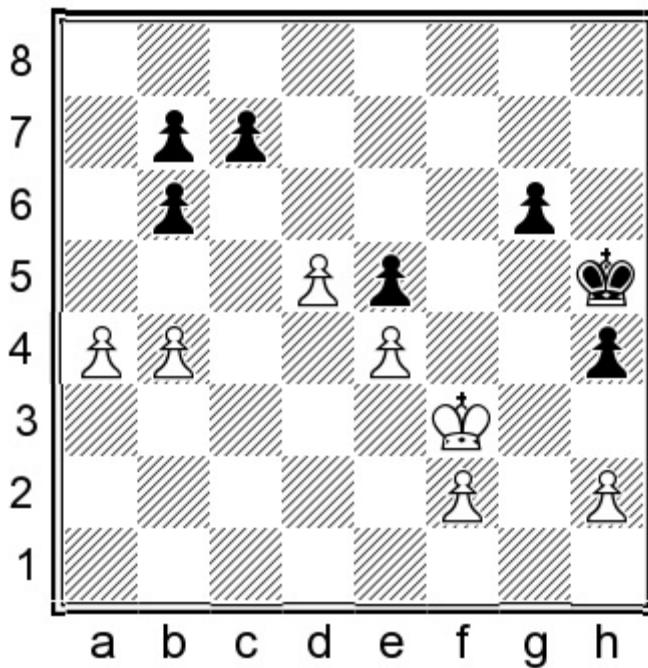
4...f3 5.h6+??

White returns the favor by being in too much of a hurry for the breakthrough. The win was 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ g4 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2!\text{O}$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7.h6) 7.c5 (or 7.f6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 8.c5) 7...dxc5 8.f6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 9.d6.

5... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 6.c5 dxc5 7.f6 $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ White resigned.

Wade – Korchnoi

Buenos Aires 1960



I-114

B?

Korchnoi ignored the possible pawn breakthrough on the queenside.

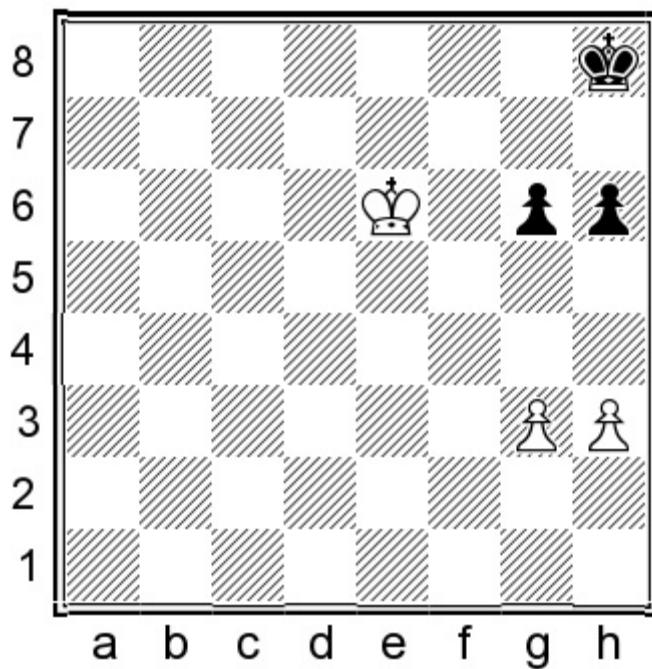
1... $\mathbb{Q}g5??$ 2.b5! $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 3.a5!

Black resigned, in view of 3...bxa5 4.b6 cxb6 5.d6.

He would also have lost after 1...g5? 2.b5 g4+ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4.f3 g3 5.hxg3 hxg3 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ is also possible) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (3...h3 4.a5!) 4.f3 or 4.h3. Black's king would be tied to the kingside, while White could break through on the queenside at the right moment.

The only way to ward off White's threat was by 1...b5! 2.axb5 b6 and we have a draw: 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (3.h3 g5 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ g4?! 5.f4! g3!= is also good) 3...g5! (3... $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ 4.f4+! $\mathbb{Q}xf4+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ +–; or 3... $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ 4.f3+ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 5.f4 $\mathbb{Q}xf4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 7.e5+–) 4.h3 (4.f3? is weaker in view of 4...g4 5.f4 h3!) 4...g4 5.f4! gxh3 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 7.e5, etc.

Exercises



I-II5

1/38

W?

Show/Hide Solution

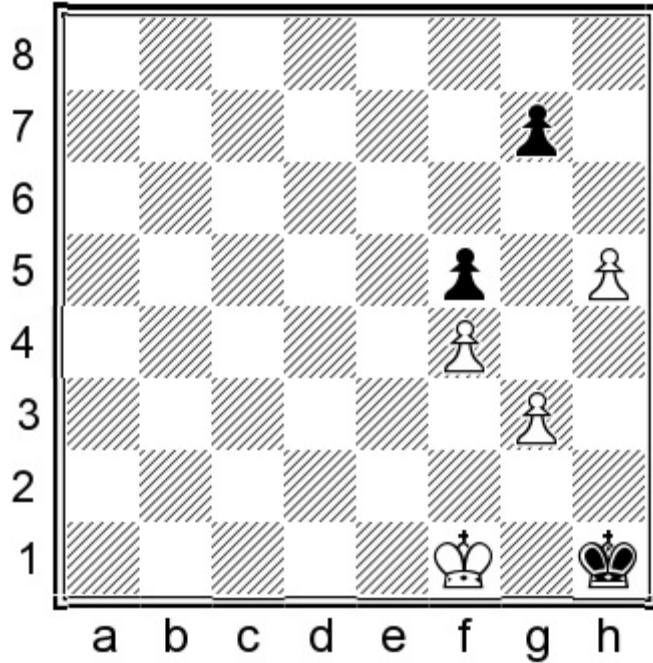
1/38. L.Prokeš 1944 (after H.Mattison 1929)

1. ♕f6!

Both 1. ♕f7? ♔h7 2.g4 g5O 3. ♕f6 h5=

and 1.g4? g5 2. ♕f6 h5= are wrong.

**1. ♕f6! ♔h7 2.g4 g5 (2...h5 3.g5+-) 3. ♕f7O 3...h5 4.h4! ♔h6 (4...gxh4 5.g5; 4...hxg4 5.hxg5)
5. ♕f6+-**



1-116

1/39

W?

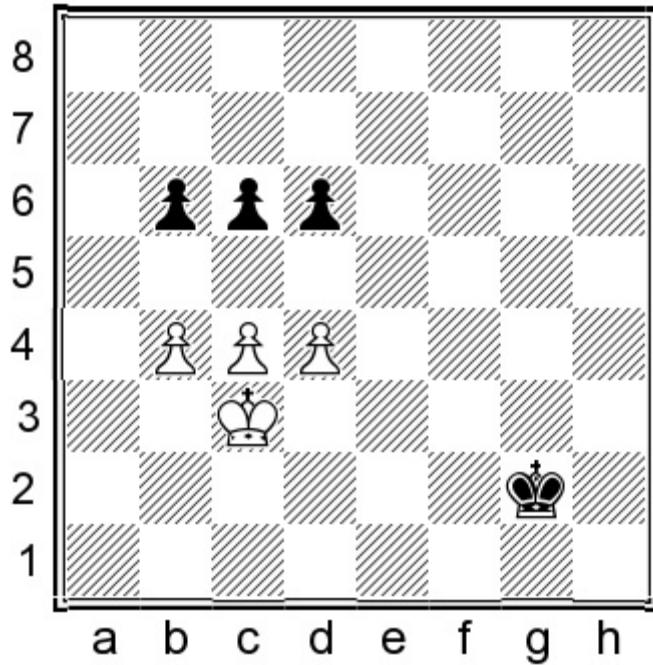
Show/Hide Solution

1/39. J.Behting 1905

1. $\mathbb{Q}e1!! \mathbb{Q}g2$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3\text{O}$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 4. $g4$) 2. $g4$ $fxg4$ 3. $f5$ $g3$ 4. $f6!$ (4. $h6?$ $gxh6$ 5. $f6$ $\mathbb{Q}h2=$) 4... $gxf6$ 5. $h6$ $f5$ 6. $h7$ $f4$ 7. $h8=\mathbb{W}$ $f3$ 8. $\mathbb{W}a8+-$

If the white king had gone to e2 on the first move, the move 7... $f3$ in the main line would have been check, with a draw after 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $f2$.

Another alternative, 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ also leads to a draw: 1... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h3\text{O}=$



1-117

1/40

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/40. T.Kok 1939

The standard pawn breakthrough does not work immediately: 1.c5?! dxc5 2.b5? (2.bxc5 bxc5 3.dxc5 ♕f3=) 2...cxd4+. White must prepare it, but how? Of the many king retreats, only one leads to success.

1.♔d2!! ♔f3 (1...b5 2.d5! cxd5 3.cxb5; 1...d5 2.b5! cxb5 3.cxd5; 1...c5 2.dxc5 dxc5 3.bxc5 bxc5 4.♔e3) **2.c5! bxc5** (2...dxc5 3.b5! cxb5 4.d5) **3.d5! cxd5 4.b5+–**

All other first moves draw or even lose.

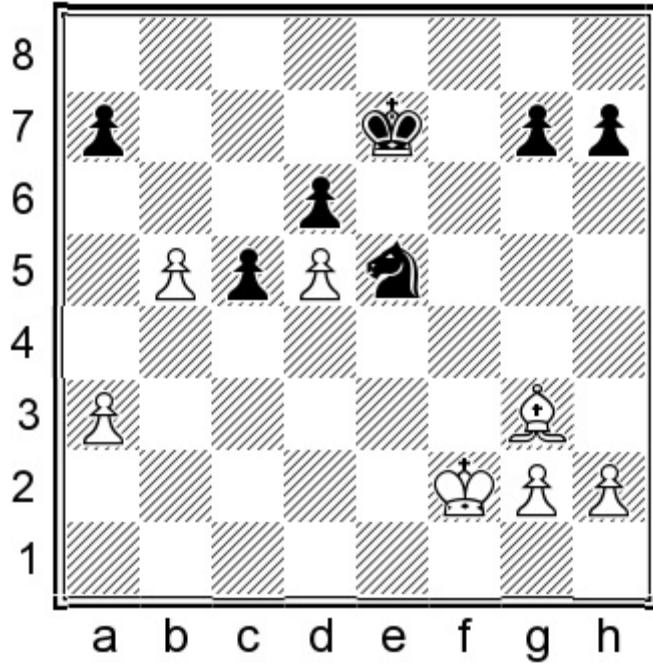
1.b5?? cxb5 (1...c5!–+ is even simpler) 2.♔b4 (2.cxb5 d5+–) 2...bxc4 3.♔xc4 ♔f3 4.♔d5 b5+–;

1.♔b2? ♔f2 2.c5 bxc5 3.d5? cxd5 4.b5 d4 5.b6 d3+–;

1.♔c2? ♔f3 (1...c5=) 2.c5 bxc5! 3.d5? cxd5 4.b5 ♔e2 5.b6 d4 6.b7 d3+ and 7...d2+–;

1.♔d3? ♔f3 2.c5 bxc5! 3.d5 cxd5 4.b5 c4+ 5.♔d4 c3! 6.♔xc3 ♔e3=;

1.d5? c5! (1...cxd5? 2.♔d4! dxc4 3.♔xc4 ♔f3 4.♔d5+–) 2.bxc5 bxc5 3.♔b3 ♔f3 4.♔a4 ♔e4 5.♔b5 ♔d4 6.♔c6 ♔xc4 7.♔xd6 ♔b4 8.♔e7 c4=



1-118

1/41

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/41. Guliev-Tukmakov, Nikolaev zt 1993

1. ♘xe5!

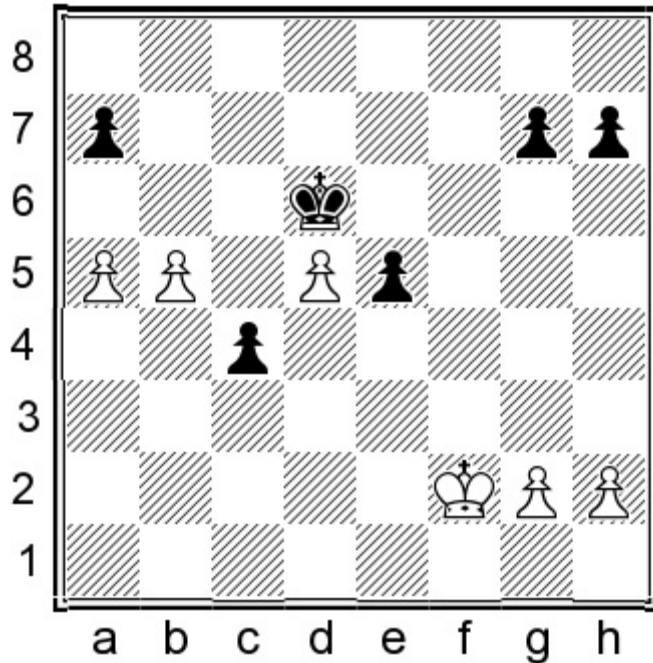
1.a4? ♗c4 gives Black chances to press (although it still does not lose).

1. ♘xe5! dx~~e~~5 2.a4!

This is how White should have played. However, the remainder of the game was 2. ♖e3?? ♖d6 3. ♖e4 c4 4.a4 c3 5. ♖d3 ♖xd5, and White resigned. One more tragicomedy!

2... ♖d6 3.a5 c4

If 3... ♖xd5, then 4.a6! Δ 5.b6+ – we have seen a similar conclusion in the game Capablanca-Ed. Lasker. But Black cannot avoid it.



16-21

W?

4.a6!

4.b6? leads only to a draw: 4...a6! 5. \hat{Q} e3 g5=.

4... \hat{Q} c5 5.d6! \hat{Q} xd6 6.b6+–

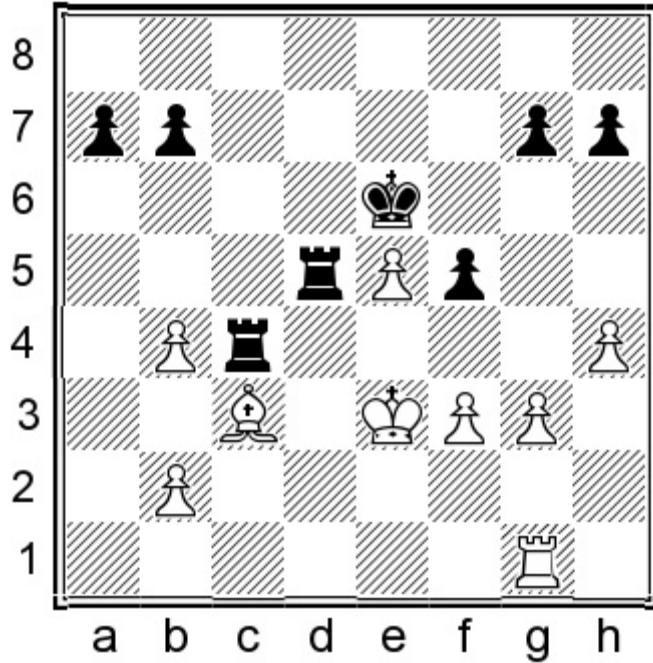
The Outside Passed Pawn

An outside passed pawn usually means a positional advantage sufficient to win. This pawn will draw off the enemy king, allowing the other king to be the first to attack the enemy pawns.

For example, in diagram 1-103, after 1.c4!, stopping the threatened enemy breakthrough, we broke off our analysis, since the further exploitation of the outside passed pawn is elementary here.

Of course, that is not always the case. In the endgames Kharlov-Ernst (diagram 1-107) or Nakagawa-Day (diagram 1-110), the proper outcome would have been a draw, despite the presence of an outside passed pawn. And in the game Hansen-Nimzovitch (diagram 1-83), Black met the threat of an outside passed pawn with the activation of his king, which even won for him.

Lombardy – Fischer
USA ch, New York 1960-61



1-119

W

After 1. $\mathbb{E}a1$ – in spite Black's material advantage – it is not so easy to find a way to win. However, Lombardy committed “harakiri”: he allowed Fischer to obtain an easily won pawn ending, based on an outside passed pawn.

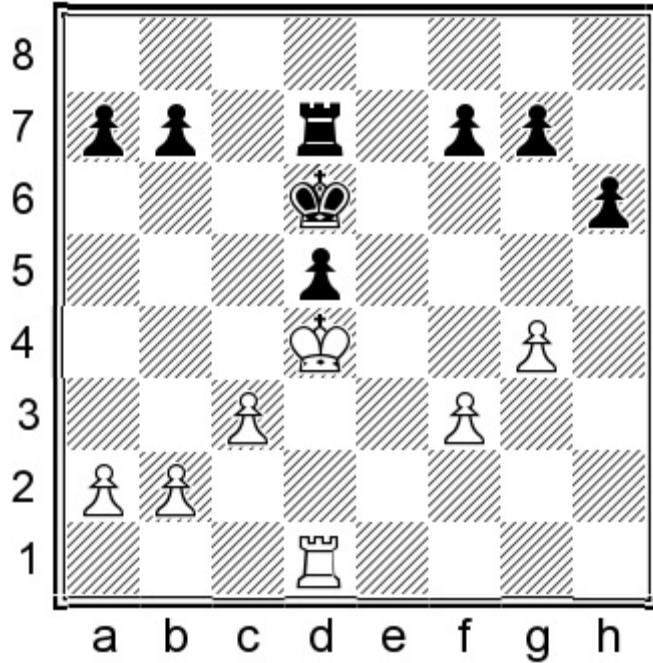
1. $\mathbb{E}e1?? \mathbb{E}xc3+!$ 2. $bxc3 \mathbb{E}xe5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{E}xe1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe1 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{Q}c4$ 6. $h5 b6$

Black gets an outside passed a-pawn by force, which draws the white king to the edge of the board.

7. $\mathbb{Q}c2 g5$ 8. $h6 f4$ 9. $g4 a5$ 10. $bxa5 bxa5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b2 a4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a3 \mathbb{Q}xc3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xa4 \mathbb{Q}d4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}e3$ White resigned.

Martynov – Ulybin

Daugavpils 1986



1-120

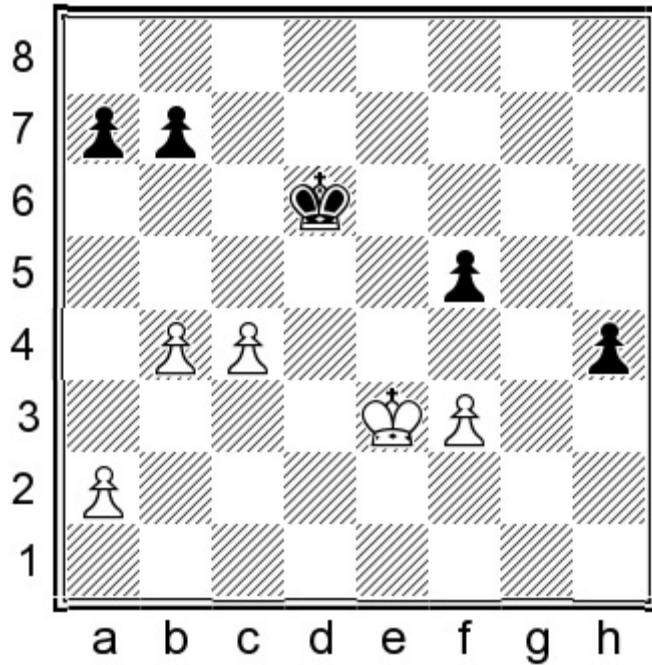
W?

White had to play 1. $\mathbb{E}h1!$, intending 2. $\mathbb{E}h5$. After 1... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (neither 1... $\mathbb{E}c7$ 2. b3, nor 1... $\mathbb{E}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{E}h5$ $\mathbb{E}e2$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xd5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 4. $\mathbb{E}a5=$ is dangerous) 2. $\mathbb{E}h5$ $\mathbb{E}d6$ 3. f4!??!, White's more active king and (even more importantly) rook position assure him good compensation for the pawn minus.

In the game, he played 1. $\mathbb{E}e1?$ misjudging the force of the reply 1... $\mathbb{E}e7!$

Ulybin allowed his opponent to reestablish material equality, because he knew that he would have a decisive positional advantage in the pawn endgame, thanks to his unstoppable threat to create an outside passed pawn.

2. $\mathbb{E}xe7?!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ g6! 4. c4 h5 5. gxh5 gxh5 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ h4 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ f5 8. b4 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$



1-121

B?

9...a5! 10.a3 axb4 11.axb4 h3! 12.♔f2 ♔e5 13.♔g3 ♔d4

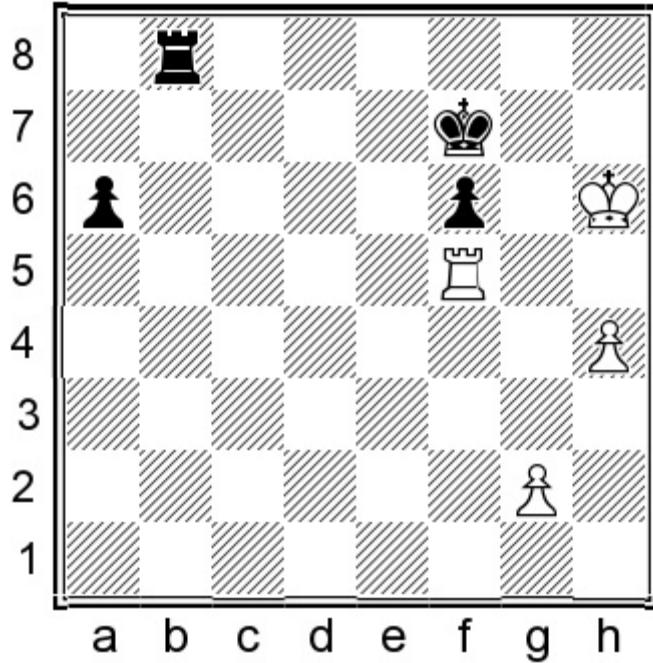
Here we see why Black exchanged a pair of pawns with 9...a5! In this way, he wins the queenside pawns quicker, and can queen his b-pawn before White gets anything going on the kingside.

14.♔xh3 ♔xc4 15.♔g3 ♔xb4 16.♔f4 ♔c4 17.♔xf5 b5 18.f4 b4 19.♔e6 b3 White resigned.

Tragicomедies

Nimzovitch – Tarrasch

San Sebastian 1911



1-122

W?

The actual move made, 1.♔h5? lost: 1...♝b5! 2.♗g4 ♞xf5 3.♗xf5 a5 4.♗e4

The outside passed pawn draws the white king to the queenside – but Nimzovitch probably hoped that his pawns would be able to defend themselves, as in the variation 4...a4? 5.♔d3 f5 6.g3! However, Tarrasch does not allow his opponent to connect his pawns.

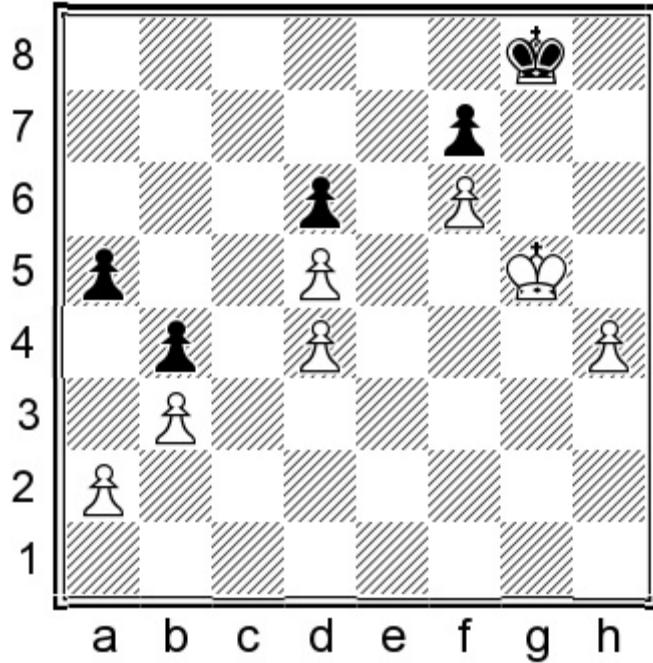
4...f5+!

White resigned, since after 5.♔d4 (5.♗xf5 a4) 5...f4! 6.♗c4 ♛g6, his pawns are lost.

White had a draw with 1.♔h7! ♜b5 2.♜xb5! (I suggest the reader establish for himself that White loses after 2.g4? ♜xf5 3.gxf5 a5 4.h5 a4 5.h6 a3 6.♔h8 a2 7.h7 ♔e7!) 2...axb5 3.g4 b4 4.g5=

Brüggemann – Darius

Bützow 1969



1-123

W

A draw was agreed here, but White can win.

1. ♕f5 ♔h7 2. ♕e4 ♔g6 3. ♕d3 ♔xf6

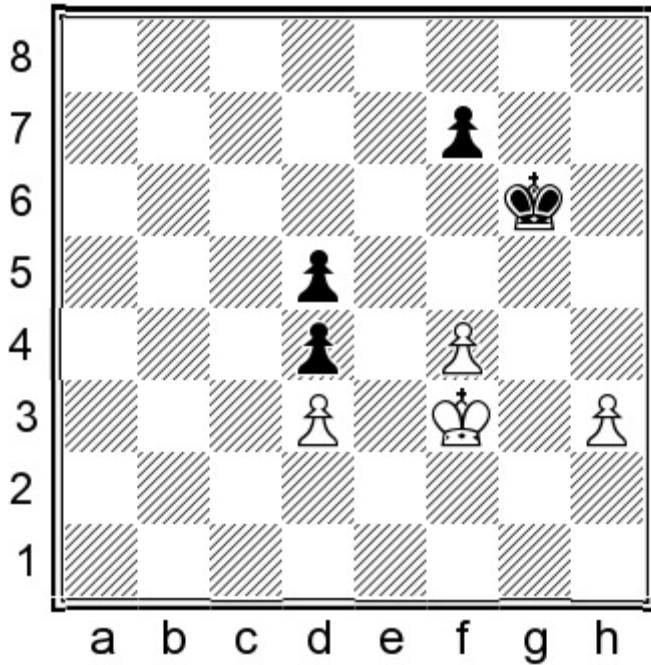
If Black does not take the pawn at once, White's king will capture Black's queenside, and still have enough time to get back to the kingside: 3... ♔f5 4. ♕c4 ♔xf6 5. ♕b5 ♔g6 (or 5... ♔f5 6. ♕xa5 ♔g4 7. ♕xb4 f5 8.a4 f4 9.a5, with a winning queen endgame) 6. ♕xa5 f5 7. ♕xb4 f4 (7... ♔h5 8.a4 f4 9.a5+–) 8. ♕c3 ♔h5 9. ♕d3 ♔xh4 10. ♕e2 ♔g3 11. ♕f1+–

4. ♕e4!

There is no time to go after the queenside anymore; however, the situation on the kingside is now a simple win because of the outside passed pawn.

4... ♔g6 5. ♕f4+– (after 5... ♔h5, both 6. ♕g3 and 6. ♕f5 are good).

Exercises



1-124

1/42

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/42. K.Rothländer 1893

Black, if on move, holds by means of 1...f5!

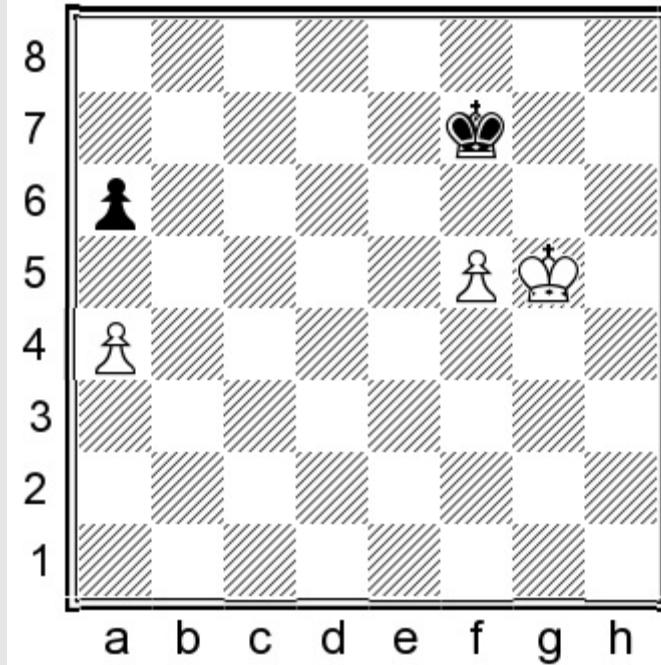
1.f5+! ♕xf5 (1...♕g5 2.f6!+-) 2.h4 ♕f6 (2...♕e5 3.♕g4 f6 4.h5 ♕e6 5.♕f4+-) 3.♕f4 ♕g6 4.♕g4 ♕h6 5.h5 f6

5...♕h7 6.♕g5(f5) is the same.

6.♕f5 ♕xh5 7.♕xf6 ♕g4 8.♕e5 ♕f3 9.♕xd5! ♕e3 10.♕c4O+-

Two Rook Pawns with an Extra Pawn on the Opposite Wing

Positions in which two rook pawns are facing each other, with one side having a distant passed pawn (with blocked a-pawns, it can be a d-, e-, f-, or h-passed pawn) are fairly common in practice, so it is useful to have a quick and accurate way of evaluating them. The plan to play for a win is obvious: the king will go after the rook pawn. His opponent, meanwhile, must eliminate the pawn on the other wing, and then rush the king over to the corner where it can stop the rook pawn. Under what circumstances can he succeed?



1-125

White to move wins: 1.a5! ♕g7 2.♕f4 ♕f6 3.♕e4 ♕f7 4.♕d5 ♕f6 5.♕c6 ♕xf5 6.♕b6 ♕e6 7.♕xa6 ♕d7 8.♕b7

If it is Black to move, after 1...a5!, the position is drawn, as you may easily determine: Black's king has enough time to get to c8.

But let's say that we move the kings and the f-pawn one rank down, or one file to the left; then, once again, Black loses. But what if we also move the queenside pawns one rank down?

Of course, with the position right in front of us, any question is easily answered. But in practice, such situations often occur at the end of long calculations, and extending such calculations a few moves further still could be most difficult. It would be good to have a definite evaluation of this position immediately, as soon as we lay eyes on it.

Bähr demonstrated such a means of quick appraisal in 1936. I did not find his rule very convenient for us; in addition, it was not designed to work when the king would be, not to one side, but ahead of the pawn. So therefore I offer a somewhat different method of quickly evaluating this sort of position.

First let's eliminate a couple of cases in which our method does not apply. If the attacking side can win without the blocked rook pawns (e.g., by using the opposition), then, of course, with the blocked pawns it is also a win. Let's also exclude those situations in which the distant passed pawn is very close and not far advanced. If it is a center pawn, and the defending king can try to capture the rook pawn, then it is necessary to calculate.

With this in mind, let's specify the method:

(1) The first rule is identical to the first part of Bähr's rule: ***If the rook pawn of the stronger side has crossed the middle of the board, it is always a win.***

(2) We shall designate a “normal” position, which is like diagram 1-125 after 1...a5, in that the attacking king is next to its pawn (and cannot move in front of it); and

(a) the rook pawns, which block one another, are separated by the middle of the board; and

(b) Black’s king, aiming for the c8-square, can reach it without loss of time. This is because the passed pawn has either traversed the key diagonal h3-c8, or stands upon it.

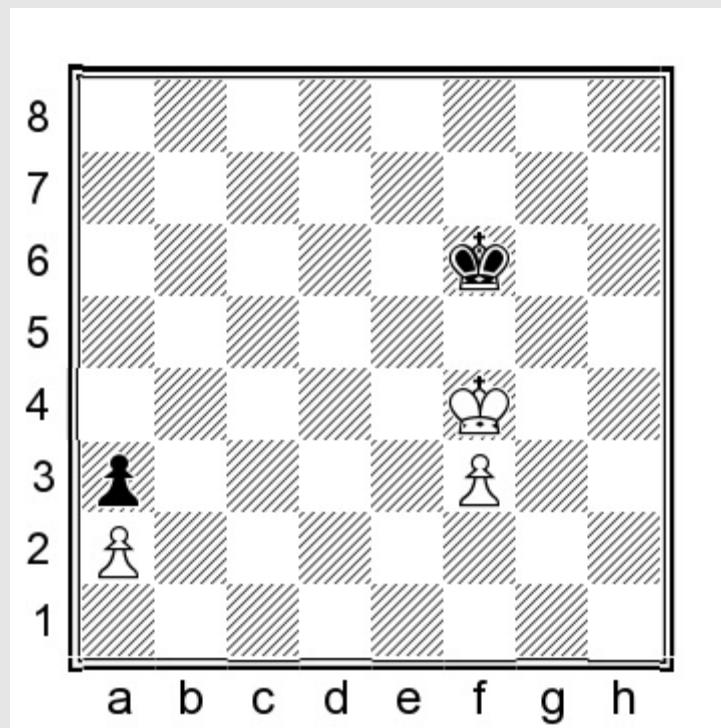
The “normal” position is drawn.

(3) For the kingside passed pawn, every square behind the h3-c8 diagonal is an extra tempo for White. For example, the pawn at f4 means one extra tempo; the pawn at e4 – two. And if the king is not beside the passed pawn, but in front of it, that is another extra tempo.

And every square the queenside pawns are behind the “normal” position is an extra tempo for the defending side. With pawns at a3/a4, Black has an extra tempo in his favor; with pawns at a2/a3 – two.

White wins only if the relative number of tempi calculated by the means shown above is in his favor.

The formulation may seem a bit ungainly, but once memorized, it is quite easy to apply. For example:



1-126

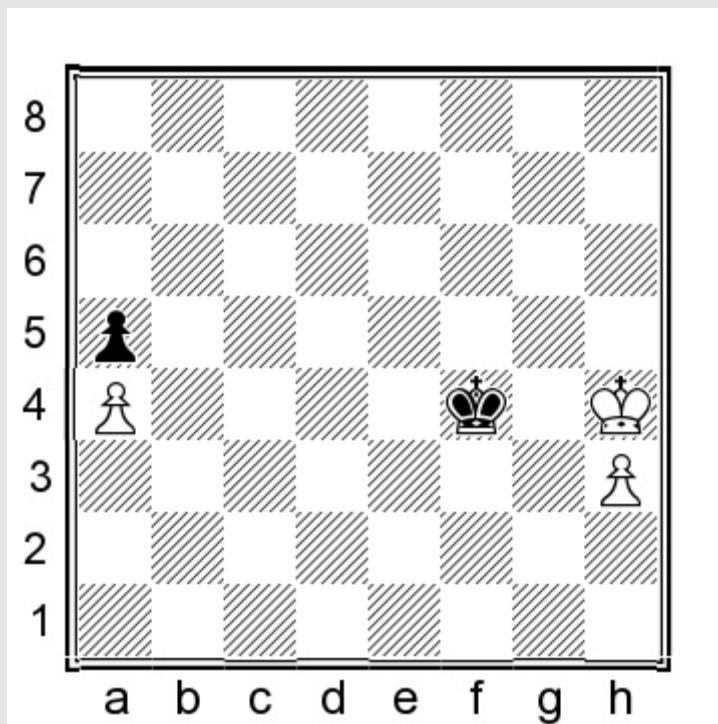
White of course is on move (if it were Black to move, the f-pawn would queen). White wins, because the count is 3:2 in his favor. Black has two tempi, because the queenside pawns are two squares behind the “normal” position. White’s f3-pawn is two squares lower than the h3-c8 diagonal (the f5-square), and his king, being in front of the pawn, gives him three tempi when added together.

1.♔e4! ♔e6 2.♔d4(d3)+–

1.♔e3? ♔e5(f5)= would be a terrible blunder, because then we would have a position where the

tempi are 2:2 (White's king is no longer in front of the f-pawn, but next to it) – which makes it a draw.

One more useful addendum to the rule. Let's suppose that White's passed pawn is a rook pawn, with the king in front of it, but the enemy king is boxing his opposite number in on the rook file. This situation is the same as the one in which the king is next to his pawn.

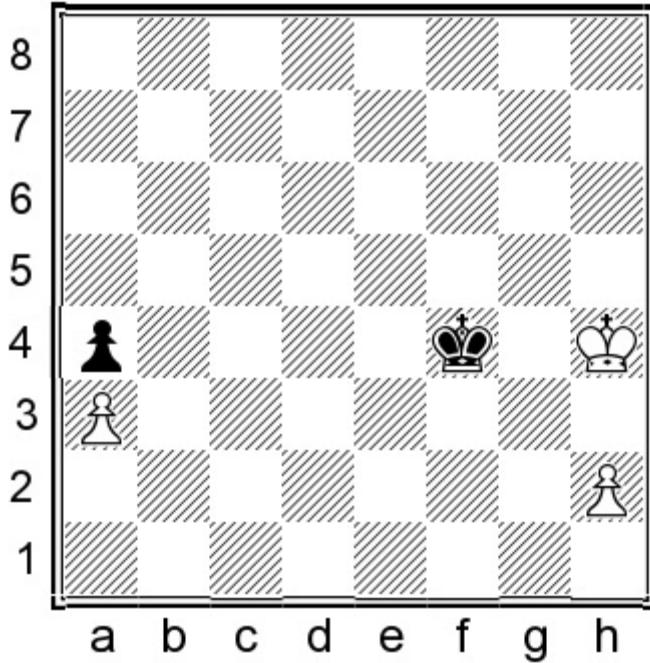


I-127

B

According to the rule formulated above, this is a draw. And in fact, after 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ is the “normal” position), Black does not play 2... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$, when White has an extra tempo, because his king is in front of his pawn, but 2... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ 3.h4 (3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7(f5)$ 6.h5 $\mathbb{Q}f6!$, etc.

It must be noted here that this last rule does not work with the pawn on its starting square.



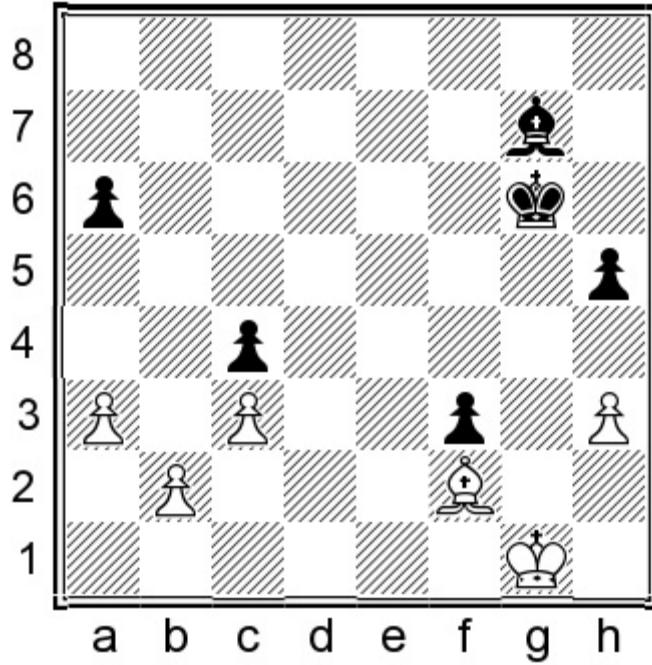
1-128

Black has one tempo (since the queenside pawns are one rank back), but if it is his move, he still loses. The problem lies in the fact that the standard 1... $\hat{Q}f3$ is impossible in view of 2. $\hat{Q}g5 \hat{Q}g2$ 3.h4, while after 1... $\hat{Q}f5$ 2. $\hat{Q}g3 \hat{Q}g5$, White has not one, but two tempi (the pawn is below the c8-h3 diagonal, and the king is in front of the pawn).

With White to move, the position is drawn, even if the queenside pawns are placed as in the “normal” position, because the h-pawn will have to go to h3: 1. $\hat{Q}h5 \hat{Q}f5$ 2.h3 (2. $\hat{Q}h6 \hat{Q}g4=$) 2... $\hat{Q}f4!=$

Let’s look at some more complex examples, in which understanding my proposed rule considerably simplifies the calculation of variations.

Privorotsky – Petersons
Riga 1967



1-129

W?

Black has an obvious positional plus. His plan is clear: ... $\hat{Q}g6-f5-e4$, and then attack the queenside pawns with either bishop or king. This plan can be forestalled by offering a trade of bishops, but this requires accurate calculation.

1. $\hat{Q}d4!$ $\hat{Q}xd4+$ (1... $\hat{Q}h6$ 2. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}c1$ 3. $\hat{Q}xf3$ $\hat{Q}xb2$ 4.a4=) 2.cxd4 $\hat{Q}f5$ 3. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 4.d5! (otherwise 4... $\hat{Q}xd4$ 5. $\hat{Q}xf3$ $\hat{Q}d3$) 4... $\hat{Q}xd5$ 5. $\hat{Q}xf3$ $\hat{Q}d4$ 6. $\hat{Q}e2$ c3

On 6...h4 7. $\hat{Q}d2$ a5, White plays 8. $\hat{Q}c2$ or 8.a4.

7.bxc3+ $\hat{Q}xc3$ 8.h4!!

Right! Otherwise, Black would play 8...h4! himself, and after picking up the a3-pawn, he wins, because his pawn on the opposite wing has crossed the center of the board. After the text, we have the “normal” – that is, the drawn – position.

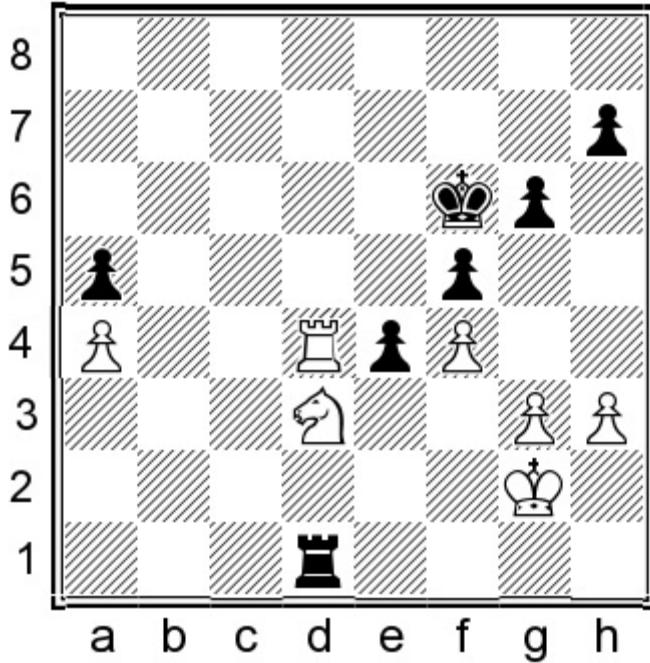
8... $\hat{Q}b3$ 9. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}xa3$ 10. $\hat{Q}c3$ a5 11. $\hat{Q}c4!$ $\hat{Q}a4$ 12. $\hat{Q}c3$ $\hat{Q}b5$ 13. $\hat{Q}b3$ Draw.

The calculation of this endgame resulted in positions we have examined in one form or another. If White had not been able to appraise them “mechanically,” using the rule shown above, but had had to extend the variations to the end, he would have had to take each of his calculations a dozen moves further – certainly not a simple process.

The following endgame created even more complex problems for both sides.

Matanovic – Botvinnik

Belgrade 1969



1-130

W?

In his notes, Botvinnik analyzed two approaches for White: 1. $\mathbb{R}d5$, and 1. $\mathbb{R}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a6$. In fact, he had a third try: 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ For example, 1... $\text{exd}3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ (2... $\mathbb{R}g1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$) 3. $\mathbb{R}xd3$ $\mathbb{R}xa4$ 4. $\mathbb{R}d6+$ followed by 5. $\mathbb{R}a6$, when White must draw.

But suppose we forget about this possibility, and try to choose the more exact of the two possible rook moves.

First, we must try some short variations, in order to establish the differences between them, to compare their advantages and their shortcomings.

On 1. $\mathbb{R}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a6$, a clear draw follows 2... $\mathbb{R}xd3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}xa5$, or 2... $\mathbb{R}d2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $e3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ (4. $\mathbb{R}xa5$ $\mathbb{R}xf2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ is also possible) 4... $e2$ (4... $\text{exf}2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$) 5. $\mathbb{R}a7+$. However, the pawn capture on d3 is unpleasant: 2... $\text{exd}3!$ 3. $\mathbb{R}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$. Now, 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ is bad, in view of 4... $\mathbb{R}g1!$; so White must continue 4. $\mathbb{R}a8$, allowing the black king to get closer to its passed d-pawn. Is this rook ending lost or drawn? It is hard to say – which means that it is time to break off the calculation here, and look at the alternative.

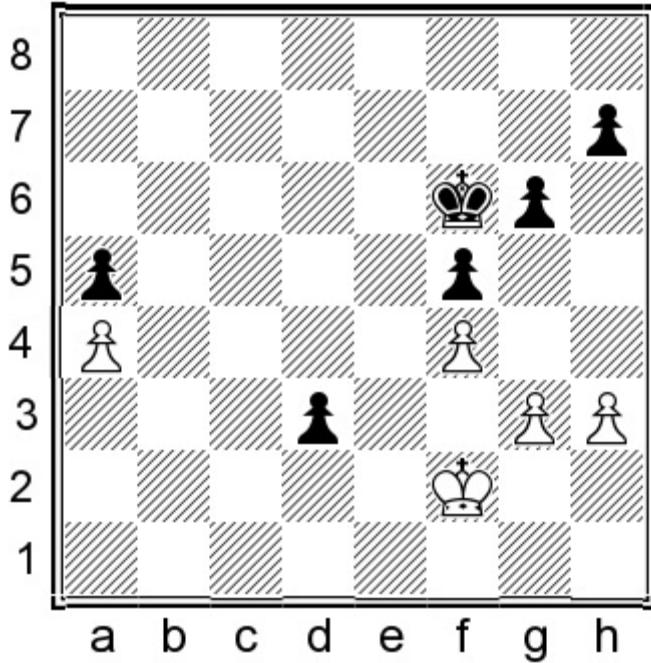
1. $\mathbb{R}d5!$ $\mathbb{R}d2+!$

Now this rook endgame, after 1... $\text{exd}3$ 2. $\mathbb{R}xa5$, is harmless for White: 2... $d2$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d5$, or 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{R}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $d2$ (4... $\mathbb{R}g1$ 5. $\mathbb{R}e3$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{R}g1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{R}xg3$ 7. $\mathbb{R}e3$. But, thanks to the pin of the knight on the d-file, Black has an in-between rook check, securing him a transition into a favorable pawn endgame.

2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{R}xd3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}xd3$

A forced exchange – otherwise, the g3-pawn is lost.

3... $\text{exd}3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$



1-131

B

Unfortunately, here too it is not clear whether White can be saved. Nonetheless, pawn endings are generally of a more forcing nature than rook endings are. Here, as a rule, it is possible to obtain an accurate appraisal of the position, if you can take a variation to its conclusion. So it makes sense to concentrate our efforts on the calculation of this pawn endgame.

Black has two plans of action: bringing the king to the center, in the hope of putting his opponent in zugzwang, and the kingside break with g6-g5.

We can easily establish that the first plan is harmless: 4... $\hat{\square}e6$ 5. $\hat{\square}e3$ $\hat{\square}d6$ (5... $\hat{\square}d5$ 6. $\hat{\square}xd3$ h6 7.g4) 6. $\hat{\square}xd3$ $\hat{\square}d5$ 7.g4 h6 (on 7...fxg4 8.hxg4 h5, there is 9.f5!, although 9.gxh5 gxh5 10. $\hat{\square}e3$ also does not lose) 8.g5! hxg5 (8...h5 9.h4) 9.fxg5 f4 10.h4 $\hat{\square}e5$ 11. $\hat{\square}e2$, with equality.

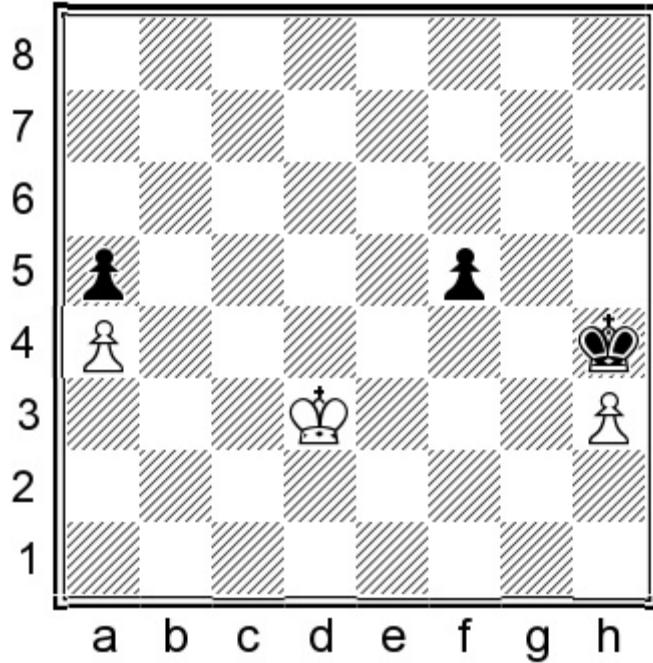
4...g5! 5.fxg5

5. $\hat{\square}e3$? would be a mistake: 5...gxf4+ 6.gxf4 $\hat{\square}e6$ 7.h4 $\hat{\square}d5$ 8. $\hat{\square}xd3$ h50

5... $\hat{\square}xg5$ 6. $\hat{\square}e3$ h5 7. $\hat{\square}xd3$ h4

We have already seen the situation occurring after 7...f4 8.gxf4+ $\hat{\square}xf4$ in the previous example. White's king cannot attack the a-pawn – but this is not necessary: it is enough to squeeze the enemy king onto the h-file. For example: 9.h4 (or 9. $\hat{\square}d4$) 9... $\hat{\square}g4$ 10. $\hat{\square}e4$ $\hat{\square}xh4$ 11. $\hat{\square}f4$, with a draw.

8.gxh4+ $\hat{\square}xh4$



1-132

W?

Which of the two natural moves – 9.♔e3 or 9.♔e2 – should White make? Let's go back to the rule set forth above. After Black wins the h-pawn, our “arithmetic” shows that he will have one tempo, since the f-pawn is one square above the crucial c1-h6 diagonal. White can only save himself if he can force that pawn forward to f4.

So clearly, 9.♔e2? loses: 9...♕g3 10.h4 (10.♔f1 ♕xh3 11.♔f2 ♕g4, and Black now has two tempi) 10...♕xh4 11.♔f3 ♕g5 12.♔g3 ♕f6 13.♔f4 ♕e6 14.♔f3 ♕d5, etc.

9.♔e3! ♕g3 10.♔e2

Now it is Black who is in zugzwang: he must advance his pawn to f4, since 10...♕g2 11.♔e3 ♕g3 12.♔e2 is a useless “pendulum.”

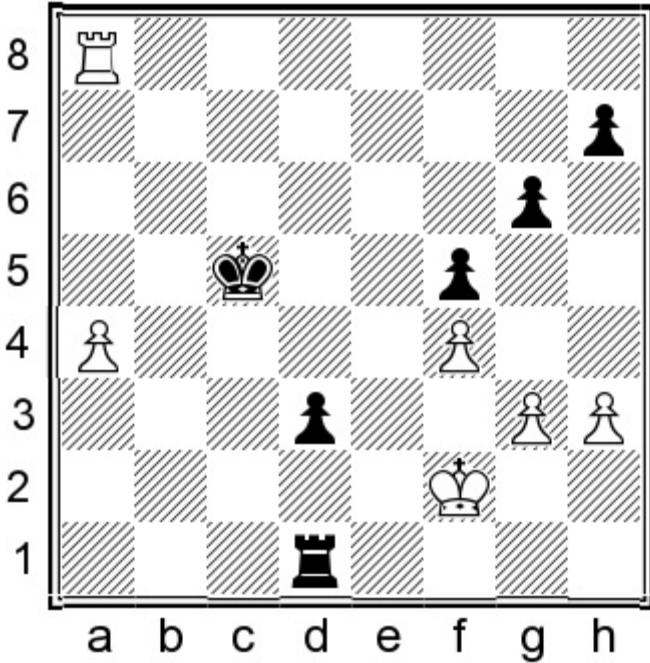
10...f4 11.♔f1 ♕xh3 12.♔f2 ♕g4 13.♔g2

And we have the “normal” drawn position.

Matanovic was unable to calculate the pawn ending accurately, and so preferred to keep rooks on. Unfortunately for him, the rook ending turned out to be lost.

Let's return to diagram 1-130:

1.♖d6+? ♕e7 2.♖a6 exd3! 3.♖xa5 ♕d6 4.♖a8 ♕c7 (Black repeats moves to gain time to think)
5.♖a5 ♕c6 6.♖a8 ♕c5 7.♔f2



1-133

B?

7...♝a1?

7...♝d4! 8.a5 ♘a1 would have won. For example: 9.a6 (9.♝d8+ ♖c3 10.♝c8+ ♖d2 would lead to approximately the same situation as in the game) 9...d2 10.a7 d1=♛+! (the only way; now wherever the king retreats, it will be checked by the knight, allowing it to get to d5) 11.♞f3 ♘a3+ 12.♞g2 (12.♞e2 ♖c3+) 12...♛e3+ 13.♞f2 ♘a2+ 14.♞f3 ♛d5 15.g4 ♛c7+. After the text, White manages to save himself by sacrificing several pawns: 8.♝e3! ♘g1 9.g4! fxg4 10.hxg4 ♘g3+ (10...♝xg4 11.♝d8!?) 11.♝d2 ♘xg4 12.f5! gxf5 13.♝xd3=

8.♝d8? ♖c4 9.♝e3 ♘e1+ (9...♝g1? 10.♝d4+) 10.♝f2 ♘e2+ 11.♝f3 ♘e6! 12.a5 ♖c3 13.♝c8+ ♖d2!
14.h4

According to Botvinnik's analysis, 14.♝c7 would not have saved White either: 14...h5 (14...♝e1? 15.a6 ♘a1 16.a7) 15.♝f2 ♖d1 16.♝f3 d2 17.♝f2 ♘e2+! 18.♝f1 ♘e3 19.a6 (19.♝f2 ♘a3, followed by ...♝a1-c1) 19...♝xg3 20.a7 ♘a3 21.♝f2 h4 22.♝f1 ♘a4 23.♝g2 ♖e2 24.♝e7+ ♖d3 25.♝d7+ ♖e3.

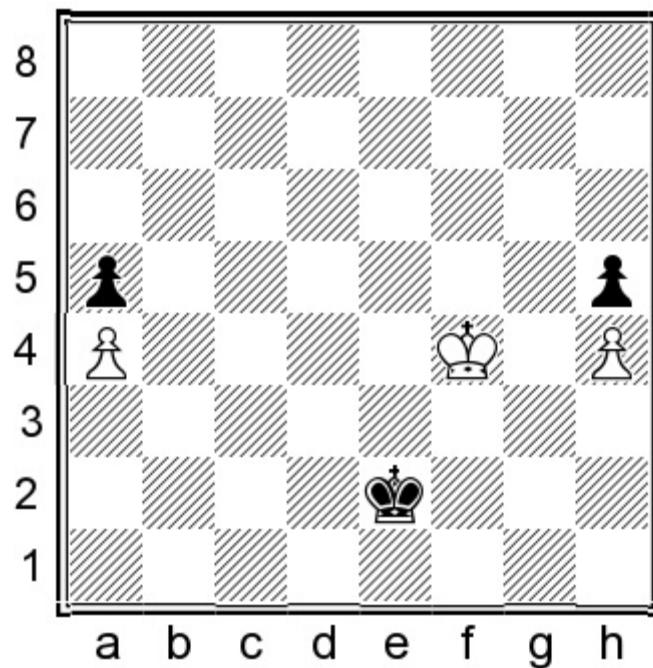
14...♝e1! 15.a6 ♘a1

Now on 16.♝c6 ♖e1 is decisive: 17.♝e6+ ♖f1 18.♝d6 (18.♝e3 ♘e1+) 18...d2 19.♝xd2 ♘a3+ and White gets mated! The same thing happens after 16.♝a8 ♖e1 17.a7 d2 18.♝e8+ ♖f1 19.♝d8 ♘a3+.

16.♝c7 ♖e1 17.♝g2 ♘xa6 18.♝e7+ ♖d1 19.♝xh7 ♘a2+ 20.♝f1 d2 21.♝c7 ♘a1 22.♝f2 ♘c1 White resigned.

Tragicomедies

Colle – Grünfeld

**I-134**

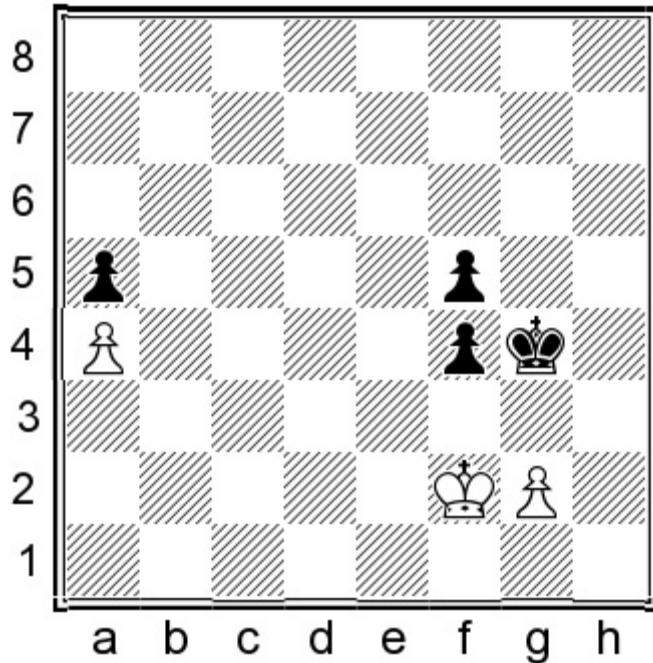
B

Grünfeld resigned, not realizing that, by squeezing the white king onto the h-file, he had an easy draw.

1... $\ddagger d3!$ 2. $\ddagger g5$ $\ddagger e4$ 3. $\ddagger xh5$ $\ddagger f5=$ etc.

Winants – L. Hansen

Wijk aan Zee 1994



1-135
B

The position is drawn. Black tries one last chance:

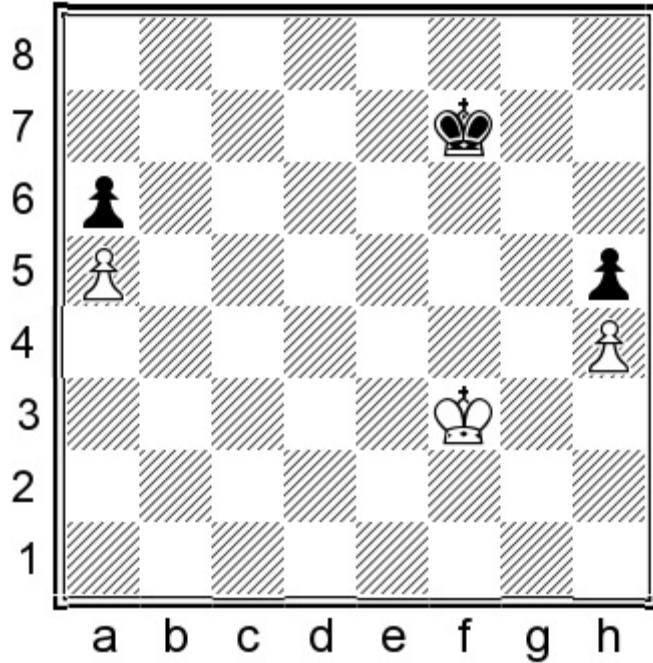
1...f3!? **2.gxf+3??**

The correct **2.g3!** **f4** **3.gxf4** **Qxf4** leads to the “normal,” i.e., drawn, position.

2...Qh3!

White resigned, since after **3.Qe3** **Qg3** **4.f4** **Qg4** **5.Qe2** **Qxf4** **6.Qf2**, Black has two extra tempi (even one would have been enough), since the pawn is above the c1-h6 diagonal and the king is in front of the pawn.

Exercises



1-136

1/43

B?

Show/Hide Solution

1/43. W.Bähr 1935

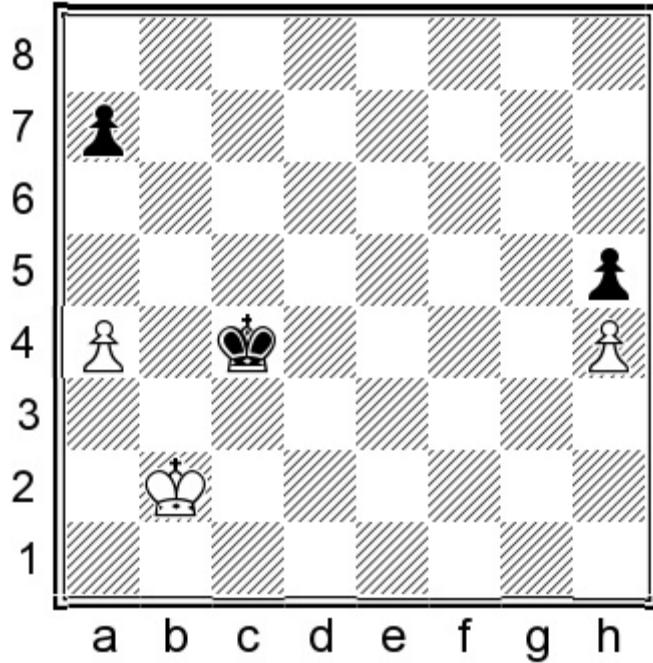
White has seized the opposition and his king will inevitably break through to one of the wings.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}f7!$

Black gives away the a-pawn. If he plays 2... $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ and gives away the h-pawn, White wins with 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7. $h5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ because his a-pawn is above the middle line.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ is playable, too) 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 8. $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8=$

A “normal position” has arisen.



1-137

1/44

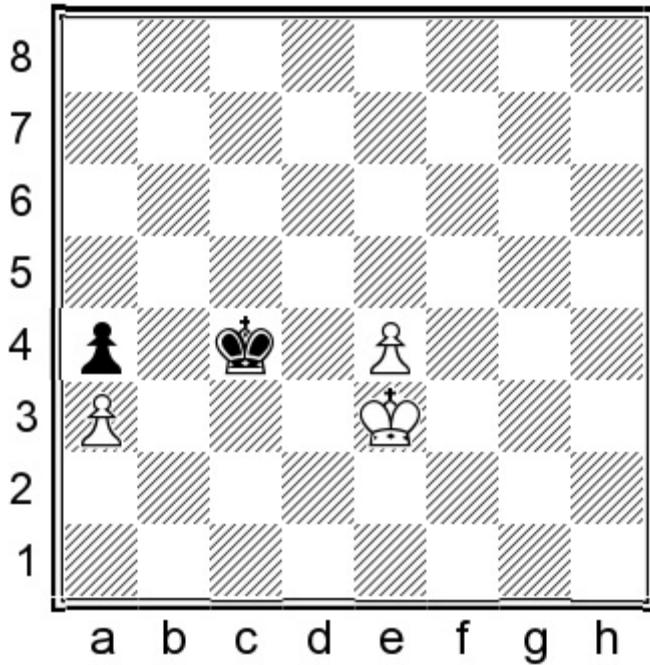
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/44. W.Bähr 1935

After 1. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4\circ$ (if White were on move here he would have been lost) 3...a6 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ $\mathbb{Q}b5-$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4=$, we come to a familiar drawing position.

1. $\mathbb{Q}a3?$ (hoping for 1...a5? 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b3=$) meets the refutation 1... $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ 2. a5 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ (3...a6? 4. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4=$) 4. a6 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}a5\circ$ is even stronger) 7. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$. The a7-pawn is standing above the key diagonal f1-a6, giving Black the decisive tempo to win.



1-138

1/45

W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/45. M.Zinar 1982

1.e5? is wrong; after 1... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7=$, the count of the reserve tempi is 1:1, therefore the position is drawn. When the pawn is on e4, however, White has two spare tempi instead of one (his pawn is two squares from e6) – a favorable situation for him.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$ does not work either: after 1... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 2.e5 $\mathbb{Q}xa3$, a drawn endgame with queen versus rook pawn arises. However, this endgame is winning when the king is standing on the e-file. From all this, the winning plan can be constructed: White must pass the move to the opponent by means of triangulation.

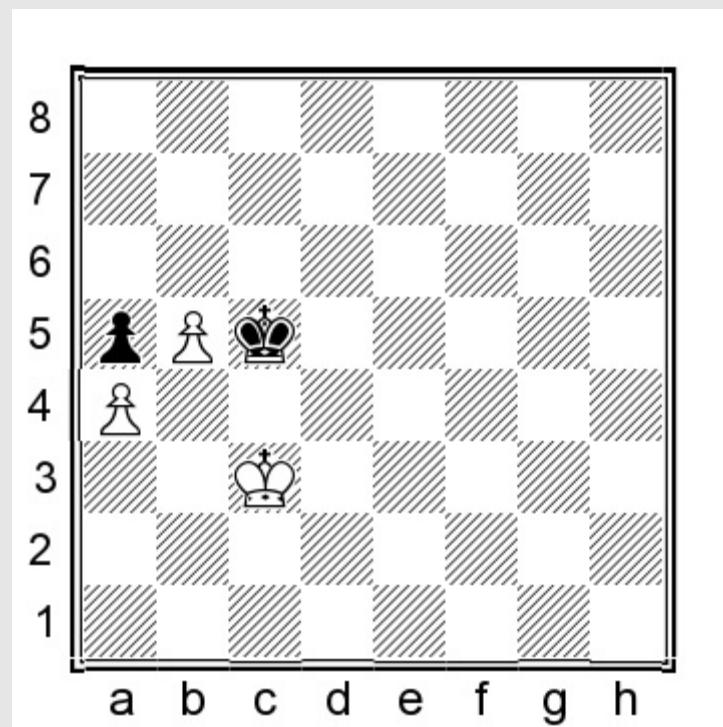
1. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4+-$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3\circlearrowright$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 4.e5 $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 5.e6 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 6.e7 a3 7.e8= \mathbb{Q} a2 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ a1= \mathbb{Q} 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c2+-$

The Protected Passed Pawn

The protected passed pawn, like the outside passed pawn, is usually a most definite positional advantage. The enemy king cannot leave its square, and cannot capture it, whereas our king has full freedom of movement.

Two Pawns to One

These positions are generally won.



1-139

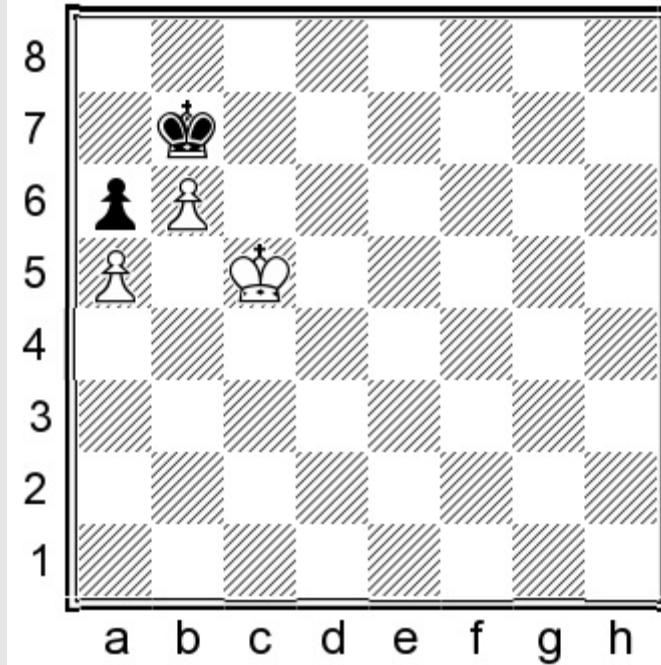
W

1. ♕d3 ♕d5 2. ♕e3 ♕e5 3. ♕f3 ♕d5 4. ♕f4 ♕d6 5. ♕e4 ♕e6 6. ♕d4 ♕d6 7. ♕c4 (Black must give up the opposition) 7... ♕c7 8. ♕d5!

8. ♕c5?! is inaccurate: 8... ♕b7, and White cannot continue 9.b6? because of 9... ♕a6! 10. ♕c6 stalemate.

8... ♕b6 9. ♕d6 ♕b7 10. ♕c5○ 10... ♕c7 11. b6+ ♕b7 12. ♕b5+—

Now let's look at the two most important drawn positions. The first is an elementary one, but it comes up rather regularly. The second is less likely to occur, but it is very instructive.



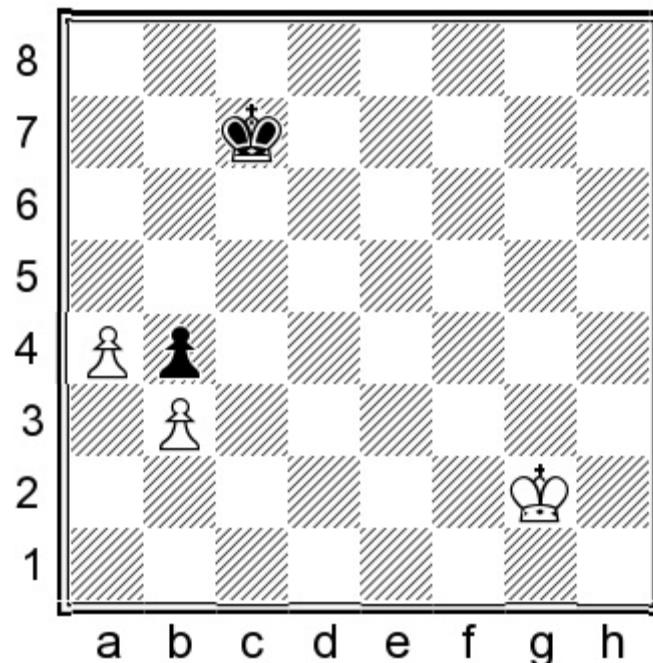
1-140

B

Black plays 1... $\hat{\Delta}b8$ 2. $\hat{\Delta}c6$ $\hat{\Delta}c8=$

Move the whole position one file to the right, and White wins easily by sacrificing the pawn and then winning the enemy's last pawn.

F.Dedrle 1921



1-141

B?

The main key squares are c4, d4, e4, e5, e6 and e7. Black can protect them, if he can control the opposition when the enemy king approaches.

Let's determine the corresponding squares. With White's king on d3, f3 or h3, Black's king must occupy d5; the e3- and g3-squares correspond to e5. When the king advances farther, Black must keep the lateral opposition, maneuvering along the d- and e-files.

When White's king is on the second rank, Black's king must stay next to the d5- and e5-squares – specifically, on d6 or e6. So the first move – as well as all the play that follows – now becomes clear:

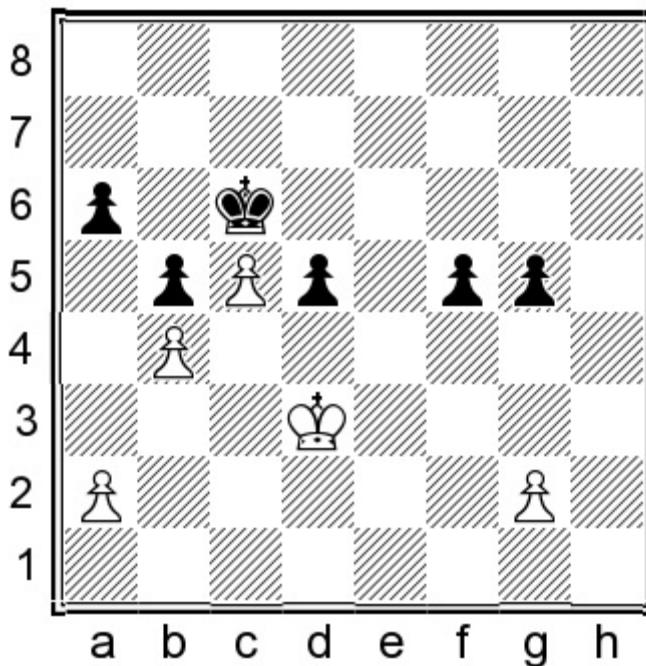
1... $\hat{\square}d6!$ (but not 1... $\hat{\square}c6?$ 2. $\hat{\square}g3!$ $\hat{\square}d6$ 3. $\hat{\square}f4!$ $\hat{\square}d5$ 4. $\hat{\square}f5+-$; or 2... $\hat{\square}c5$ 3. $\hat{\square}g4!$ $\hat{\square}d4$ 4. $\hat{\square}f4+-$)

1... $\hat{\square}d6!$ 2. $\hat{\square}h3$ (2. $\hat{\square}f2$ $\hat{\square}e6!$ 3. $\hat{\square}e2$ $\hat{\square}d6!$) 2... $\hat{\square}d5!$ 3. $\hat{\square}g3$ $\hat{\square}e5!$ 4. $\hat{\square}h4$ $\hat{\square}d4!$ 5. $\hat{\square}h5$ $\hat{\square}d5!$ 6. $\hat{\square}g6$ $\hat{\square}e6!$, etc.

Multi-Pawn Endgames

The next example features a typical plan for exploiting the advantage.

L.Bottlik 1952



I-142

W

Black may have an extra pawn, but his position is difficult. How does he meet the threatened invasion of the white king?

1.♗d4 f4 2.♗e5 a5! 3.a3 a4

Black would prefer to exchange a pair of pawns; but after 3...axb4 4.axb4, he is in zugzwang.

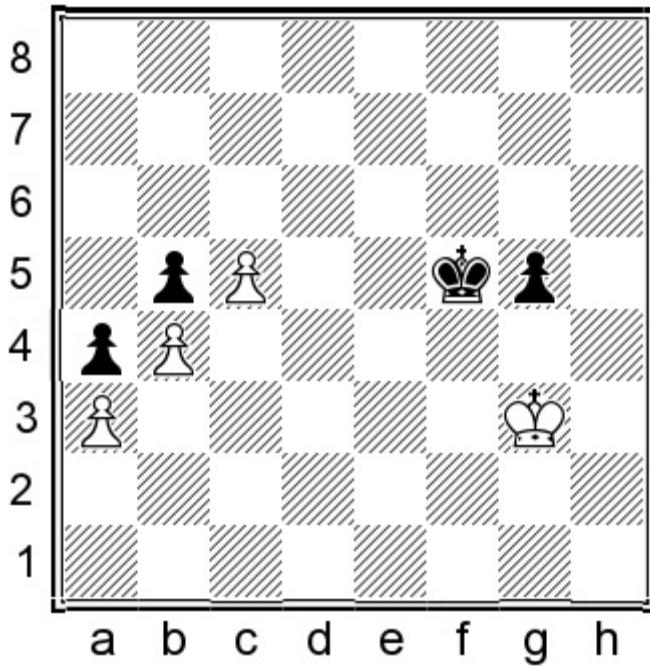
4.♗f5 d4! 5.♗e4 d3 6.♗xd3 ♗d5 7.g3!

A necessary undermining of the enemy kingside pawns (undermining, by the way, is the theme of our next section). It is only a draw after 7.♔e2? g4 8.♗d3 ♗e5 9.c6 ♗d6 10.♗e4 ♗xc6 11.♗xf4 ♗d5 12.♗xg4 ♗c4, because both pawns will queen.

7...fxg3

No better is 7... $\hat{Q}e5$ 8.gxf4+ gxf4 9. $\hat{Q}e2$ $\hat{Q}d5$ 10. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 11.c6 $\hat{Q}d6$ 12. $\hat{Q}xf4$ $\hat{Q}xc6$ 13. $\hat{Q}e5+$ — This position would be a draw if Black had exchanged pawns on his third move; but if he had, alas, he would not have gotten this position.

8. $\hat{Q}e2$ (or 8. $\hat{Q}e3$ g4 9. $\hat{Q}e2$) **8... $\hat{Q}e5$** (8...g4 9. $\hat{Q}f1$ changes nothing) **9. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 10. $\hat{Q}xg3$ $\hat{Q}f5$**



I-143

W

Here is a typical position with a protected passed pawn versus an outside passed pawn. The mined squares are g4 and f6. Most often (as here), the stronger side is unable to place his opponent in zugzwang. The only thing to be done then is to advance one's own passed pawn, and exchange it for the other side's passed pawn. Sometimes this wins, sometimes not. In the similar situation that occurred as one of the variations of the game Averbakh-Bebchuk (diagram 1-112), we were able to lose a move to Black, making use of our reserve tempo (in that case, h4-h5).

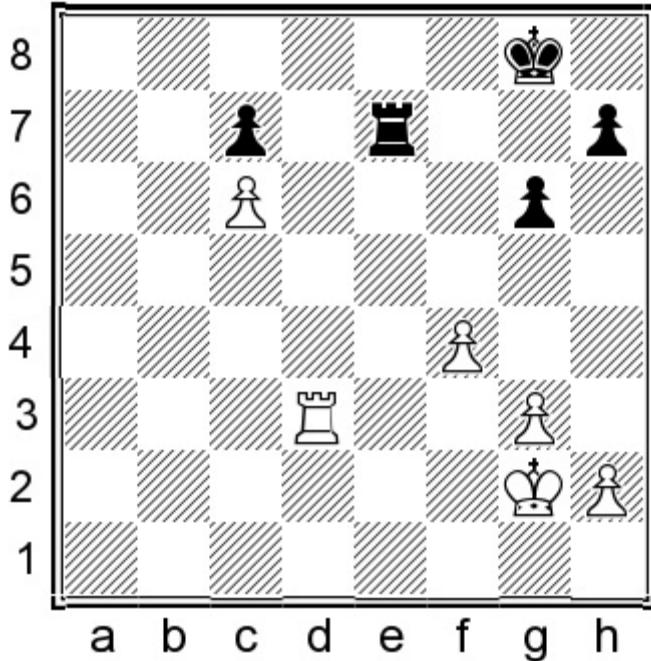
11. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 12. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 13.c6 $\hat{Q}e6$ 14. $\hat{Q}xg5$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 15. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{Q}xc6$ 16. $\hat{Q}e6+$ —

Tragicomедies

Here we shall include examples of overestimating the power of the protected passed pawn.

Shirov – Timman

Wijk aan Zee 1996

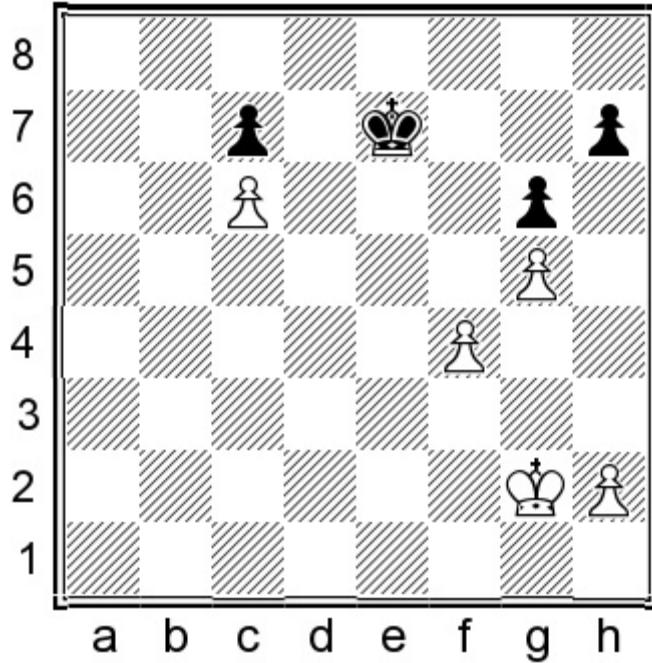


1-144
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ looks good. Black responds 1... $\mathbb{E}e6$, and if White defends the pawn by 2. $\mathbb{R}c3?$, then Black will have decent drawing chances in view of the passive position of White's rook. White could trade off the rooks by playing 2. $\mathbb{R}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d7+$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{R}xe7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ – this leads by force to a queen endgame in which White has an extra g-pawn: 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ c5 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ c4 10. f5 c3 11. f6 c2 12. f7 c1= \mathbb{W} 13. f8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{W}c2+$ 14. $\mathbb{W}f5$ $\mathbb{W}xh2$. Objectively speaking, this position is won (see Chapter 12); however, converting this advantage is not easy, and would take another several dozen moves.

None of this appealed to Shirov. The grandmaster discovered what seemed to him like a more forcing means to the desired end.

1.g4? $\mathbb{E}e6$ 2. $\mathbb{R}d8+?!$ (2. $\mathbb{R}c3$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d7+$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{R}xe7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 5. g5!



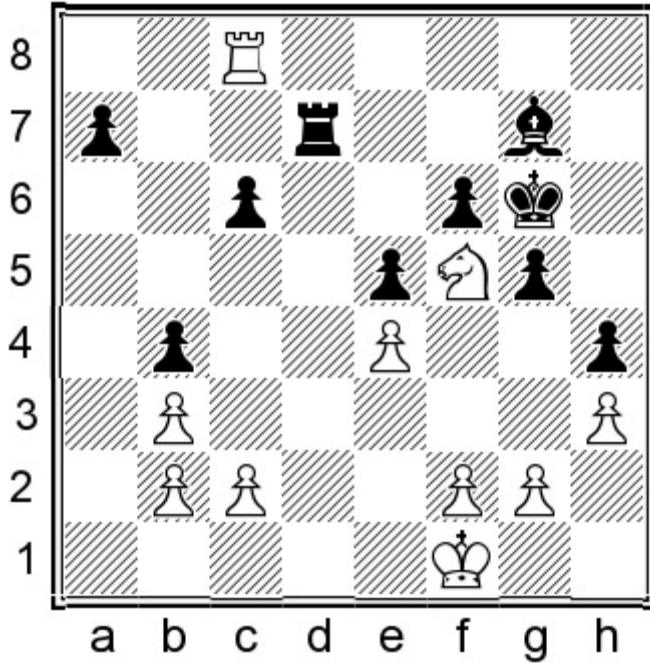
1-145
B

And in this position, Timman resigned. Both sides believed that 5... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ was refuted by the pawn breakthrough 6.h4 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 7.f5 gxf5 8.h5 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 9.g6 hxg6 10.h6+–

But Black does not have to take on f5! He could draw with the continuation 7... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 8.f6 $\mathbb{Q}e6(e8)$. This is the same position as in our previous example (a protected passed pawn versus an outside passed pawn). The mined squares are c6 and d8.

With kings at d5 and d7, Black plays 1... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$, after which White has nothing better than a draw:
2. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}d8\mathbb{O}$ 3.f7 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc7 \mathbb{Q}xf7=$.

Aronin – Smyslov
USSR ch, Moscow 1951



1-146

W

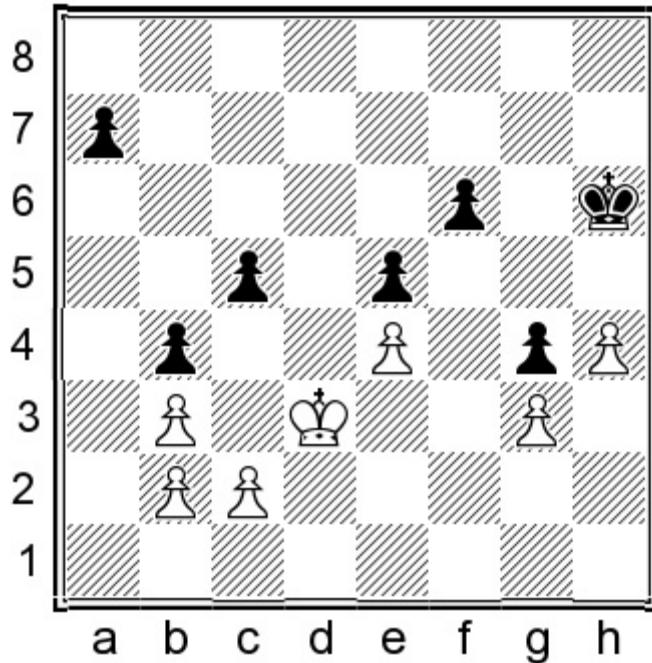
Black's position is quite hopeless. The simplest solution is 1. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$, or 1. $\mathbb{Q}g8 \mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ Δ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7$. However, the game was adjourned here, and Aronin chose, after home analysis, to cash in his advantage by entering a pawn ending.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g8 \mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+??$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg7 \mathbb{Q}xg7$ 4. g4

Before marching his king over to the queenside, White wishes to close up the kingside, to prevent Black's potential counterplay by ...f6-f5 and ...g5-g4. Aronin examined the lengthy variation 4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ a5 (7...c5 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$) 8. f3 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 10. c3 bxc3 11. bxc3 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 13. c4 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 14. c5+-

He did not think the exchange on g3 was playable, since White then gets the possibility of creating an outside passed h-pawn. However, Smyslov found an elegant defense: he offered his opponent, not an outside passed pawn, but a **protected** passed pawn!

4...hxg3! 5. fxg3 g4!! 6. h4 c5 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}h6$



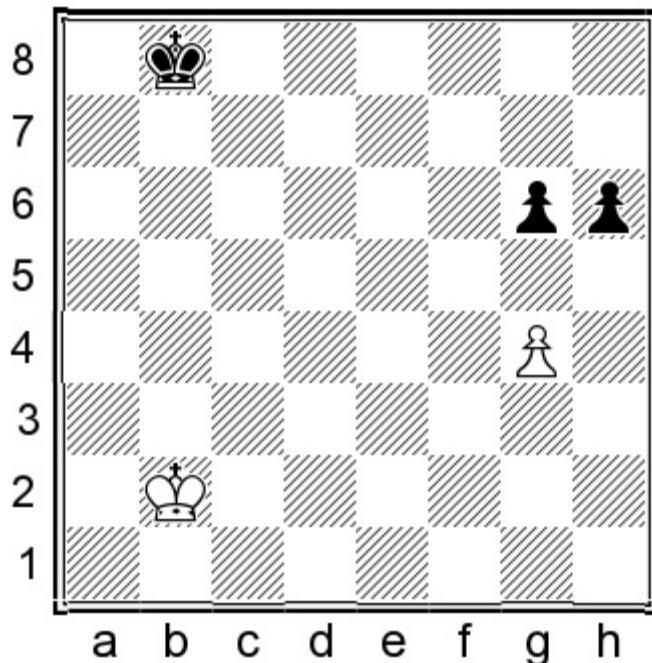
I-147

W

It turns out that the king can go no further: 9. $\hat{Q}c4?$ f5! 10. exf5 (10. $\hat{Q}d3$ f4 11. gxf4 exf4 12. $\hat{Q}e2$ $\hat{Q}h5$ 13. e5 $\hat{Q}g6$, and 14... $\hat{Q}f5-$ +) 10... e4 O-+

9.c3 a5 10.cxb4 axb4! Draw.

Exercises



I-148

1/46

W?

Show/Hide Solution

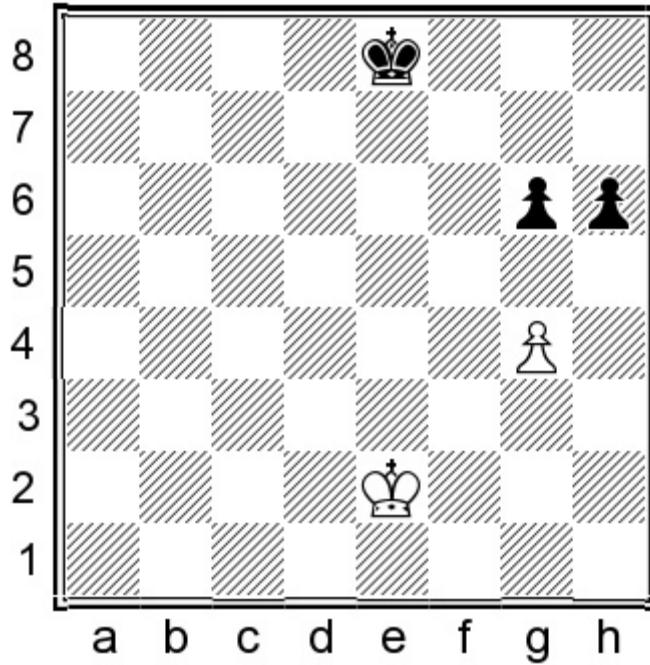
1/46. N.Grigoriev 1936

Black has the distant opposition and is planning to transform it into the close opposition by means of an outflanking at the appropriate moment. White's only hope is the drawn Dederle position (diagram 1-141), but how it can be achieved?

1.♔c2! ♔c8! (1...♔c7? 2.♔c3=) 2.♔d2 (rather than 2.g5? hxg5+) 2...♔d8 3.♔e2!

It is still too early to push the king ahead: 3.♔e3? ♔e7 4.♔f3 (4.g5 hxg5 5.♔f3 ♔e6+) 4...♔d6! 5.g5 h5+, and as we know, the white king must go to d4 in this position.

3...♔e8



16-22

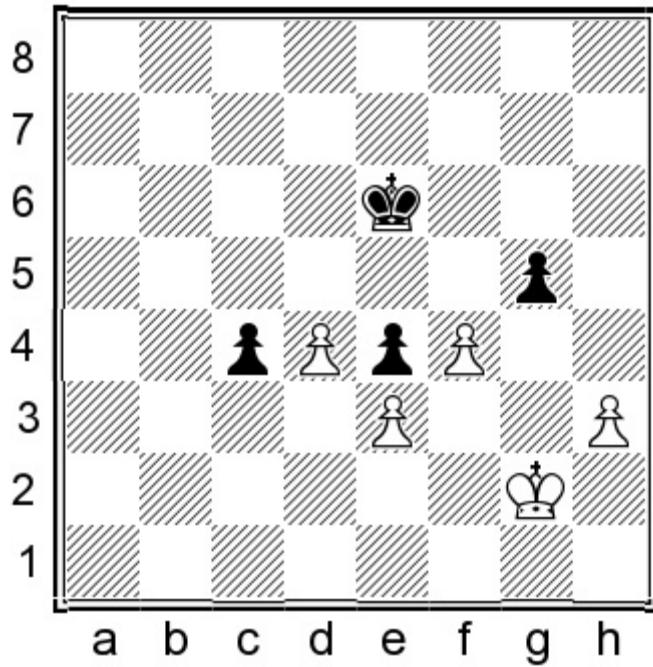
W?

Black is ready to outflank: 4.♔d2? ♔f7!+ or 4.♔f2? ♔d7!, while 5.g5 is still impossible in view of 5...hxg5.

4.♔f3! ♔d7

4...♔f7 5.♔f4 ♔f6 6.g5+! hxg5+ 7.♔g4=; 4...♔e7 5.♔e3!=

5.g5!! h5 6.♔e3! ♔c7 (6...♔d6 7.♔d4; 6...♔c6 7.♔e4 ♔c5 8.♔e5) 7.♔d3! ♔b7 8.♔e3! ♔a6 9.♔e4!, etc.



I-149

1/47

W?

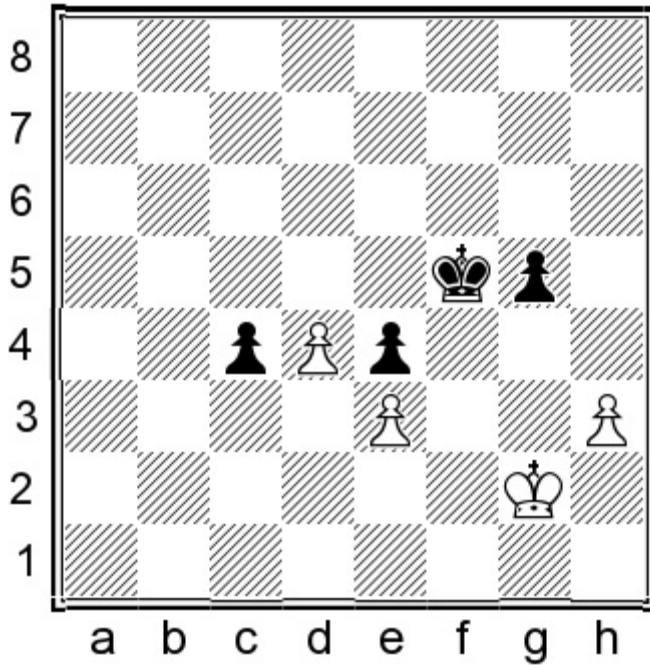
Show/Hide Solution

1/47. V.Chekhover 1951

The king must enter the square of the c-pawn (1.fxg5?? c3-+).

The immediate 1.♔f2? is not correct in view of 1...gxf4 2.exf4 c3 3.♔e3 ♔d5 4.f5 ♔c4. The d4-pawn must stay a protected passed pawn.

1.f5+! ♔xf5



16-23

W?

Black's counterplay on the queenside fails now, e.g., 2.♔f2 ♔e6? 3.♔e2 c3 4.♔d1 ♔d5 5.♔c1! (the squares c2/c4 are mined) 5...♔c4 6.♔c2 ♔b4 7.d5 ♔c5 8.♔c3 ♔d5 9.♔b4, and the white king controls key squares. But defensive resources are not exhausted: the black king can enter the fight via the kingside as well after ...g5-g4!

The natural continuation 2.♔f2? gives only a draw after 2...g4! 3.hxg4+ ♔xg4 4.♔e2 (4.♔e1 ♔f3 5.♔d2 c3+ or 5.d5 ♔xe3 6.d6 c3 7.♔d1 ♔f2 8.d7 e3=) 4...c3O 5.♔d1 (5.d5 ♔f5=) 5...♔f3 6.d5 ♔xe3 7.d6 ♔f2=

Notice that Black would have been lost if he had been on move in the position with the king on e2 and the pawn on c3. From this fact, we define the corresponding squares and choose the most precise route for the king.

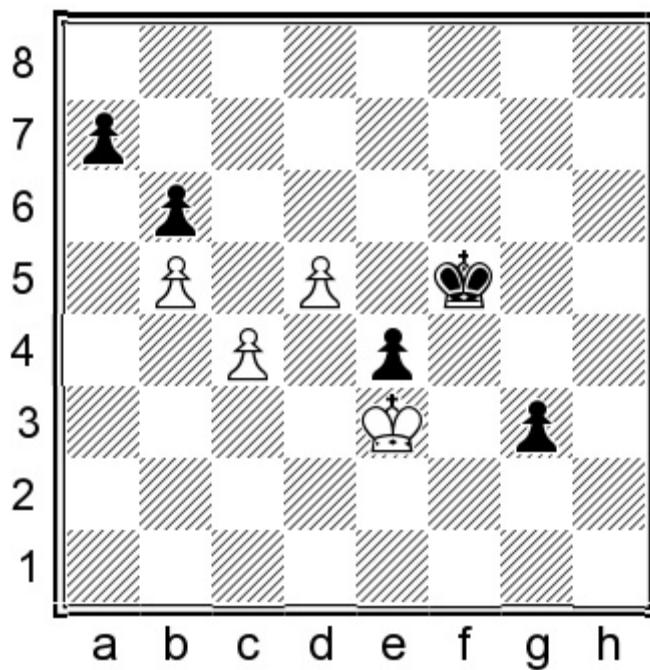
2.♔f1!! c3 (2...g4 3.hxg4+ ♔xg4 4.♔f2! c3 5.♔e2O) **3.♔e1! g4** 4.hxg4+ ♔xg4 5.♔e2!O 5...c2 (5...♔g3 6.d5; 5...♔f5 6.♔d1) **6.♔d2 ♔f3** 7.d5 c1=♕+ 8.♔xc1 ♔xe3 9.d6 ♔f2 10.d7 e3 11.d8=♕+-

Undermining

Sometimes the pawns are too strong to be successfully attacked by the king. In such cases, undermining can be used successfully – the exchange of a pair or two of pawns, with the aim of weakening the pawn chain.

Keres – Alekhine

Dresden 1936



1-150

B?

Grigoriev demonstrated the simplest winning method, involving an undermining on the queenside.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ a6 (5...a5) 6.bxa6+ $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (7...b5?? 8.d6 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 9.cxb5=) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ b5 11.cxb5 $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$

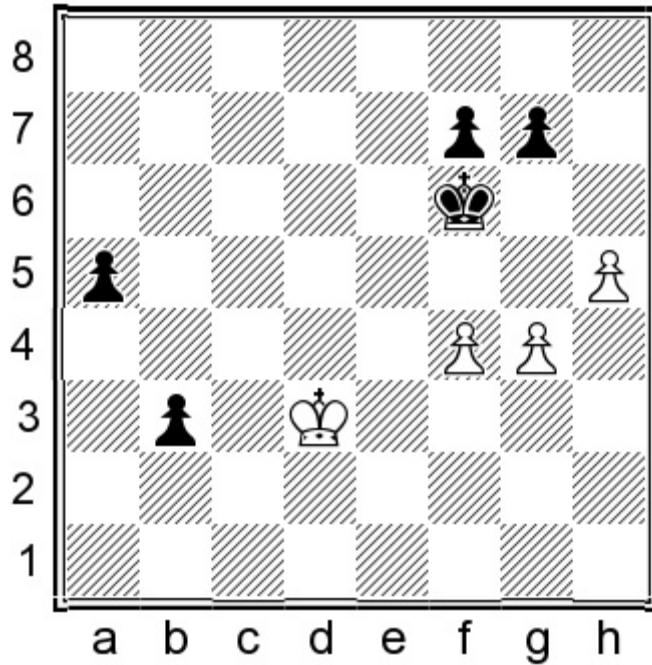
On the other hand, Alekhine's plan of going into a queen endgame was also quite strong.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g4!?$ 2.d6 g2 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 4.d7 e3+! 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g1= \mathbb{W} 6.d8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{W}f2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ e2 8. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 9. $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ White resigned.

Tragomedies

Golberg – Zhuk

USSR 1934



1-151

B

1...a4 (1...g6?? 2.h6 g5 3.f5 wins;

1...g5? 2.f5=)

1...a4 2.g5+ ♕f5??

The only winning plan was undermining with ...f7-f6. But first, Black had to bring his king to h7. As Grigoriev pointed out, the right way was 2...♔e7! 3.♕c3 ♔f8 4.♕b2 ♔g8 5.♕a3 ♔h7 6.♕b2 f6! 7.♕a3 fxg5 8.fxg5 ♔g8 9.♕b2 ♔f7 10.♕a3 ♔e6 11.♕b2 ♔f5.

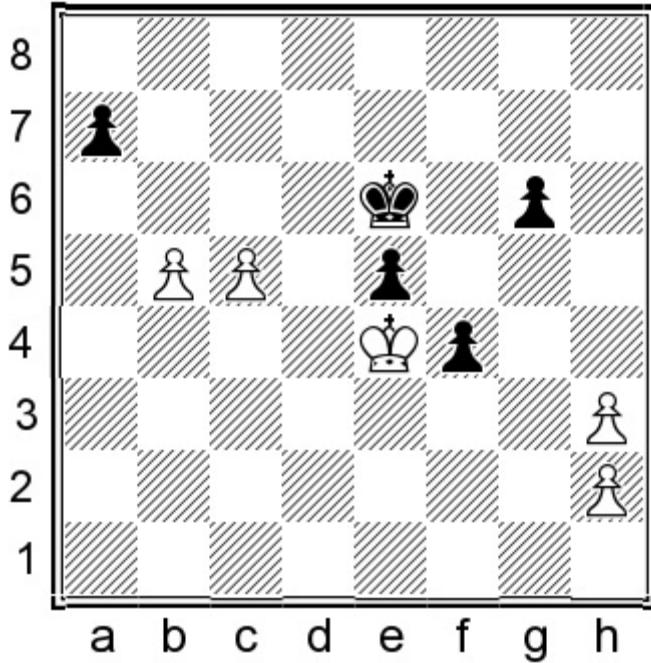
3.♕c3 ♔e6?

Having let the win slip, Black now lets slip the draw, which he could have had by playing 3...f6! 4.g6 ♔e6.

4.h6 gxh6 5.gxh6 ♕f6 6.f5○

Black resigned. We have already seen the final position in the section devoted to the rule of the square.

Sulipa – Gritsak
Lvov 1995



1-152

B?

1...g5??

Far from improving Black's position, this move actually degrades it significantly by giving his opponent the possibility of exchanging a pair of kingside pawns, and creating a passed h-pawn.

White had no answer to the undermining plan with 1... $\hat{Q}d7!$ 2. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}c7$ (2... $\hat{Q}e7$ is also good: 3. $\hat{Q}e4$ $\hat{Q}e6\Theta$ 4. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}d5$ 5.c6 $\hat{Q}d6$ 6. $\hat{Q}e4$ a6!+, or 4.h4 $\hat{Q}d7!$ 5. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}e7$ 6. $\hat{Q}e4$ $\hat{Q}e6$, triangulating again and again with the king, until the opponent runs out of pawn moves) 3.h4 $\hat{Q}c8$ (not 3... $\hat{Q}b7$ 4. $\hat{Q}e4$ a6? at once, in view of 5.bxa6+ $\hat{Q}xa6$ 6.c6! $\hat{Q}b6$ 7. $\hat{Q}xe5$ f3 8. $\hat{Q}d6$ f2 9.c7=) 4. $\hat{Q}e4$ $\hat{Q}b7\Theta$ 5.h3 $\hat{Q}c8$ 6. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}c7$ 7. $\hat{Q}e4$ $\hat{Q}b7\Theta$ 8. $\hat{Q}f3$ a6!+–

1...g5?? 2. $\hat{Q}f3$??

The wrong order of moves. After 2.h4! gxh4 3. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}d5$ 4.c6 $\hat{Q}d6$ 5. $\hat{Q}g4$ a6 6.bxa6 $\hat{Q}xc6$ 7. $\hat{Q}xh4$ $\hat{Q}b6$ 8. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}xa6$ 9.h4, it is now White who wins.

2... $\hat{Q}d5$ 3.c6 $\hat{Q}d6$??

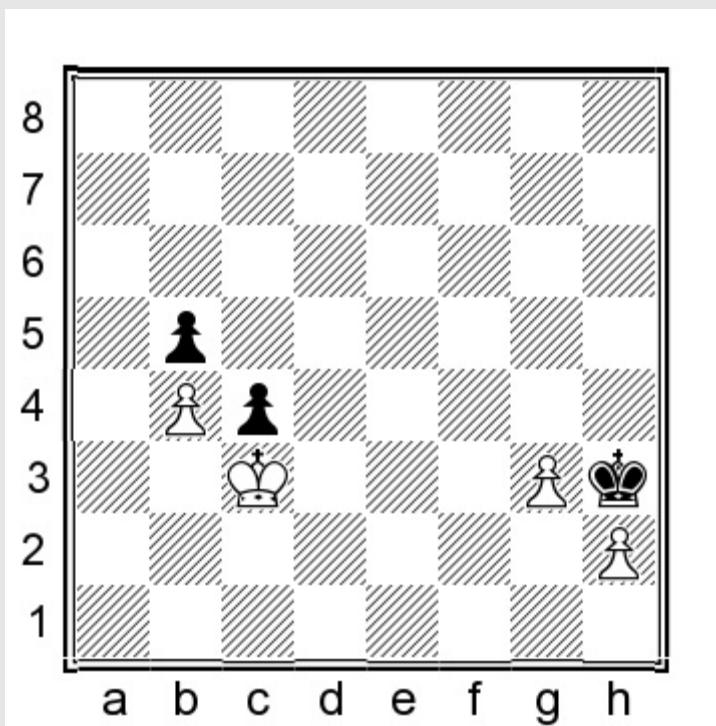
3...e4+! was necessary: 4. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}d6$ –+

4. $\hat{Q}e4$??

For the fourth time, the appraisal of the position is reversed. White wins with 4.h4! gxh4 5. $\hat{Q}g4$.

4...a6 5.bxa6 $\hat{Q}xc6$ 6. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}b6$ 7.h4 (too late!) **7...gxh4 8. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}xa6$ 9. $\hat{Q}xh4$ $\hat{Q}b6$ 10. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}c6$ 11.h4 $\hat{Q}d6$** White resigned.

Two Connected Passed Pawns



1-153

W

Here we have a typical situation with two connected passed pawns. The draw would appear to be inescapable, since the white king is tied to the square of the protected passed pawn at c4. But in fact, in such cases White can sometimes leave the square to help his pawns queen or mate his opponent.

White's plan usually consists of the following elements:

The farthest possible advance of the pawns;

The optimum placement of the pawns – “ready to roll”;

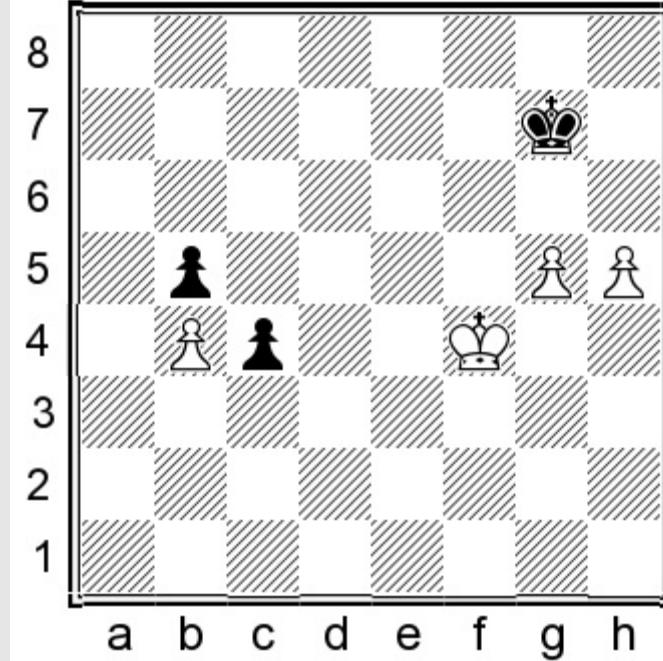
Choosing the best time for the king’s decisive advance.

Let's watch this plan in action. In the first stage the king, without leaving the square of the c4-pawn (which ends at f4), aids in the advance of its pawns.

1. ♕d4 ♕g4 2. h4 ♕h5 3. ♕e3 ♕g4 4. ♕e4 ♕h5 5. ♕f4 ♕h6 6. g4 ♕g6 7. h5+ ♕h6 8. ♕f3 ♕g5 9. ♕e4 ♕h6 10. ♕f4

Triangulation is White's most important weapon in this ending.

10... ♕h7 11. g5 ♕g7



1-154

W

12.g6!

The ideal pawn array! The erroneous 12.h6+? would throw away the win.

12...♔f6 13.♕e4 ♔g7 14.♔f3 ♔f6 15.♔f4 ♔g7

Now that White has strengthened his position to its utmost, it is time for the decisive advance!

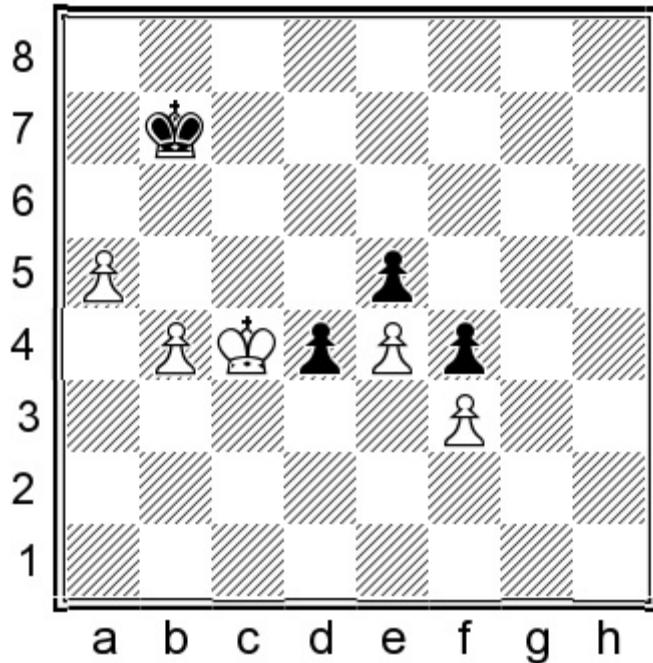
16.♔g5! c3 17.h6+ ♔g8 18.♔f6 c2 19.h7+ ♔h8 20.g7+ (or 20.♔f7 c1=♕ 21.g7+) 20...♔xh7

21.♔f7 c1=♕ 22.g8=♕+ ♔h6 23.♕g6#

Tragicomедies

Potter – Zukertort

London m (5) 1875



1-155

W

The situation is in fact the same as in our preceding example, which was published a quartercentury before this game. White, unacquainted with endgame theory, agreed to a draw here.

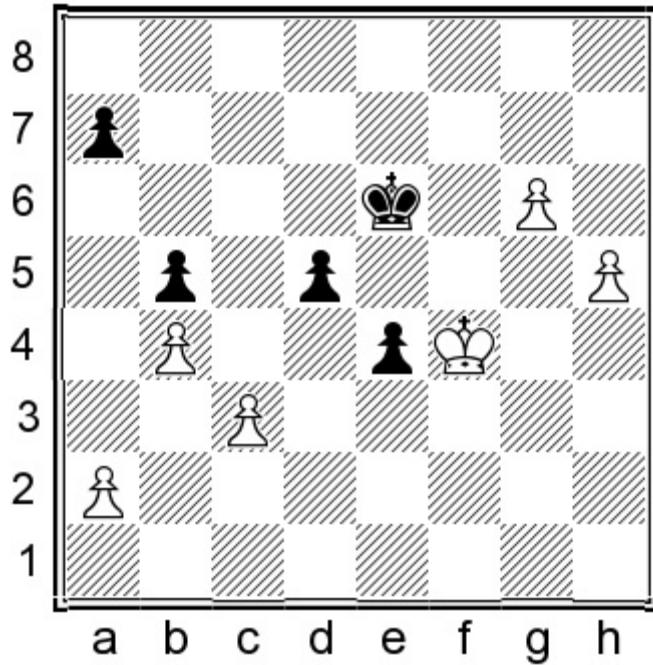
The win is elementary:

1.b5 ♖a7 2.b6+ ♖a6 3.♖b4 ♖b7 4.♖b5! d3 5.a6+ ♖b8 6.♖c6 d2 7.a7+ ♖a8 8.b7+ ♖xa7 9.♖c7 d1=♕ 10.b8=♕+ ♖a6 11.♕b6#

A century later, chessplayers, alas, continue to make the very same mistakes.

Bouaziz – Pomar

Siegen ol 1970



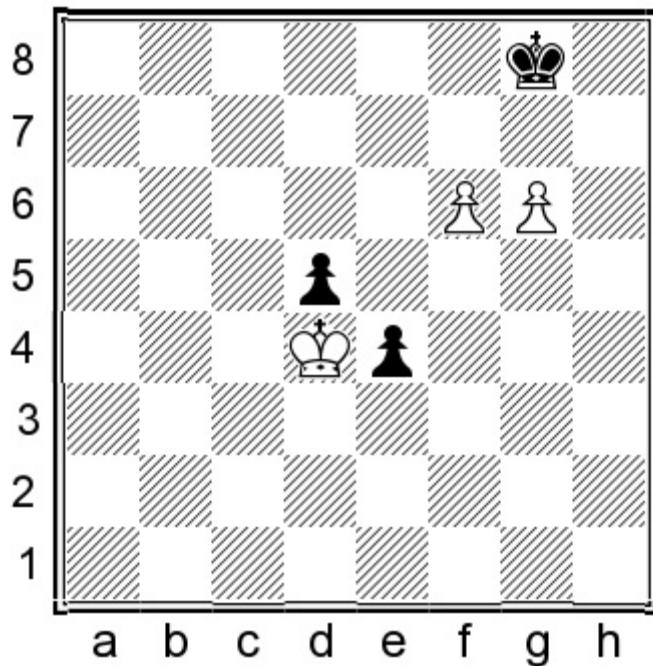
1-156

W?

The proper array of the pawns would be g6/h7. So the win is: 1.h6! ♖f6 2.h7 ♖g7 3.♖g4 (the immediate 3.♖f5 e3 4.♖e6 e2 5.h8=♕+ ♖xh8 6.♖f7 was also possible) 3...♖h8 4.♖f5 e3 5.♖f6 e2 6.g7+ ♖xh7 7.♖f7.

White chose 1.g7?? ♖f7 2.h6 ♖g8. Draw, because 3.♖f5(e5) is met by 3...♖f7!

Exercises



1-157

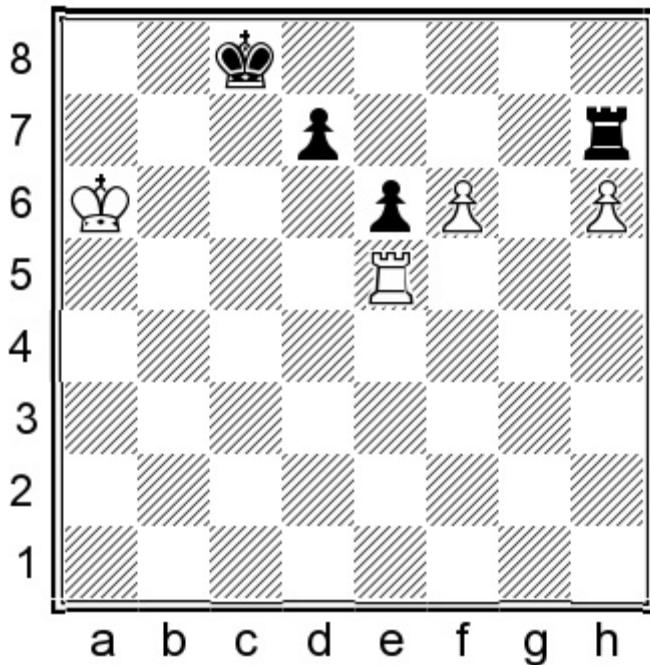
Show/Hide Solution

1/48. Hernandez-Ferragut, Cuba 1998

Question number one: where do we place the pawns? If 1.g7? ♕f7 2.♕e3 ♕g8 3.♕f4, with the idea 3...♕h7? 4.♕f5 e3 5.♕e6+–, Black responds with 3...♕f7!, and the king's march does not win: 4.♕g5 e3 5.♕h6 e2 6.♕h7 e1=♕ 7.g8=♕+ ♕xf6 8.♕g6+ ♕e7=

If the pawn is on f7 and the black king on f8, ♕xd5! wins. But the immediate 1.f7+? does not lead to this position because Black has 1...♕g7! 2.♕e3 ♕f8 3.♕f4 ♕g7=

1.♕e3! ♕f8 2.f7! ♕g7 3.♕d4O 3...♕f8 4.♕xd5! (if 4.♕e5, then 4...♕e7) 4...e3 5.♕e6 e2 (5...♕g7 6.♕e7) 6.♕f6 e1=♕ 7.g7#



I-158

1/49

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/49. N.Kopaev 1947

1.♔b6!

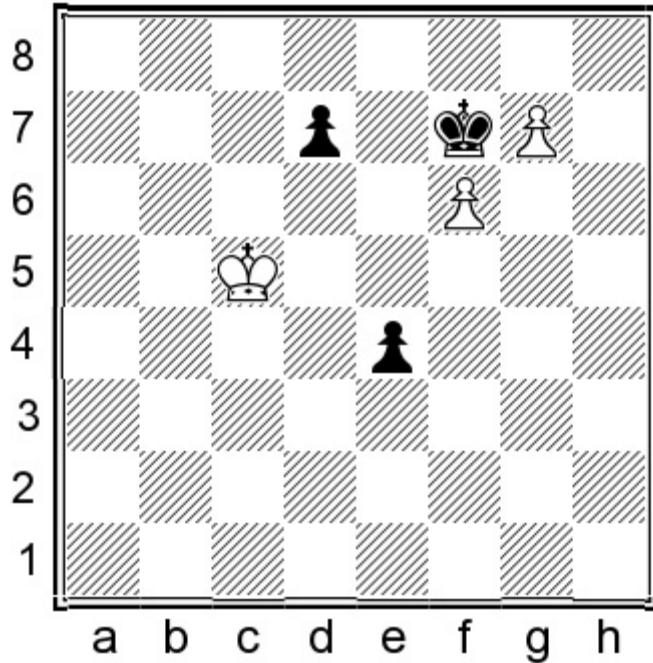
Both 1.♕h5? ♔d8

and 1.♕g5? ♔c7! yield nothing.

1.♔b6! ♔d8 (1...♕xh6? 2.♕g5+–) 2.♕g5 ♔e8 3.♕g8+ ♔f7 4.♕g7+ ♕xg7 5.hxg7!

We have reached a pawn endgame with White's far-advanced passed pawns by force.

5...e5 6.♔c5 e4



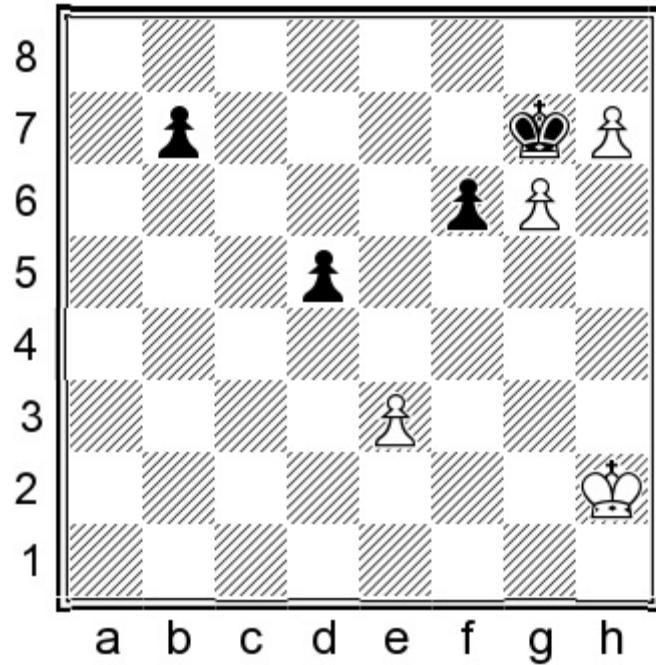
16-24

W?

7.♔c4!

An important subtlety; the upcoming king assault works only when the black king is standing on g8. At this moment White must plan how to reach the inevitable zugzwang position with Black on move. 7.♔d4? d5 8.♔e3 ♔g8 9.♔f4 ♔f7O leads only to a draw: we have already seen this position in the previous exercise, in the 1.g7? line.

7...d6!? 8.♔c3! (8.♔d4? d5=) 8...♔g8 9.♔d4 d5 10.♔e3 ♔f7 11.♔f4O 11...♔g8 12.♔g5! (12.♔f5?! ♔f7!) 12...♔h7 (12...e3 13.♔g6 e2 14.f7#; 12...♔f7 13.♔h6 e3 14.♔h7+–) 13.♔f5! e3 14.♔e6 e2 (14...♔g8 15.f7+ ♔xg7 16.♔e7) 15.♔f7 e1=威 16.g8=威+ ♔h6 17.威g6#



1-159

1/50

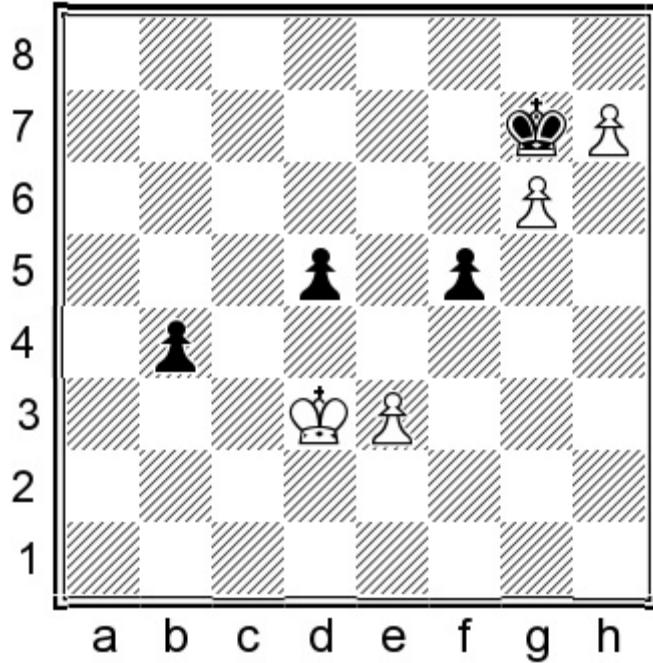
W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/50. N. Grigoriev 1932

White's king is in the square of the b-pawn, but if it approaches the pawn, Black will create another passed pawn on the f-file at cost of his d5-pawn. For example, 1. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ b5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ b4 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ f5 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$



16-25

B?

4...b3! 5.♔c3 d4+! 6.exd4 f4 7.d5 f3 8.d6 f2 9.d7 f1=♕ 10.d8=♕ ♕c1+ 11.♔b4 ♕e1+! 12.♔a4 ♕a1+! 13.♔xb3 ♕b1+ 14.♔c3 ♕c1+ 15.♔b4 ♕b1+! 16.♔a5 (16.♔c5 ♕c2+) 16...♕f5+ with a draw.

So the strongest plan is to rush the king over to its own passed pawns.

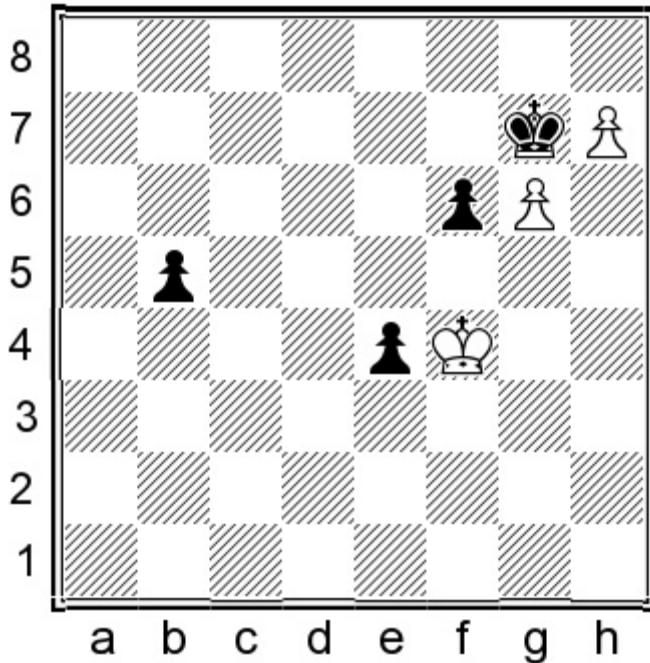
1.e4!!

The straightforward 1.♔g3? b5 2.♔f4 (there is already no time for 2.e4 in view of 2...b4!) 2...b4 3.♔f5 leads only to a draw: 3...b3 4.♔e6 b2 5.h8=♕+ ♔xh8 6.♔f7 b1=♕ 7.g7+ ♔h7 8.g8=♕+ ♔h6 and the black queen defends the g6-square where White would have liked to give mate. Therefore the b1-h7 diagonal must be closed.

1.e4!! dxe4

1...d4 is even worse in view of 2.♔g3 b5 3.♔f4 b4 (3...d3 4.♔e3) 4.♔f5 with mate.

2.♔g3 b5 3.♔f4



16-26
B

3...e3

We already know that Black will be mated from g6 after 3...b4 4.♔f5!, etc. For this reason, he tries to distract the white king from the kingside.

4.♕xe3 b4

After 4...f5 5.♔f4! (5.♔d4? f4) 5...b4 6.♔e5! b3 7.♔e6 b2 8.h8=♕+ ♔xh8 9.♔f7, the black pawn on f5 is as treacherous as the e4-pawn: it cuts its own queen off from the g6-square.

5.♔d4! f5

Unfortunately, this is forced: after 5...b3 6.♔c3 f5 7.♔xb3, the king remains in the square of the f-pawn.

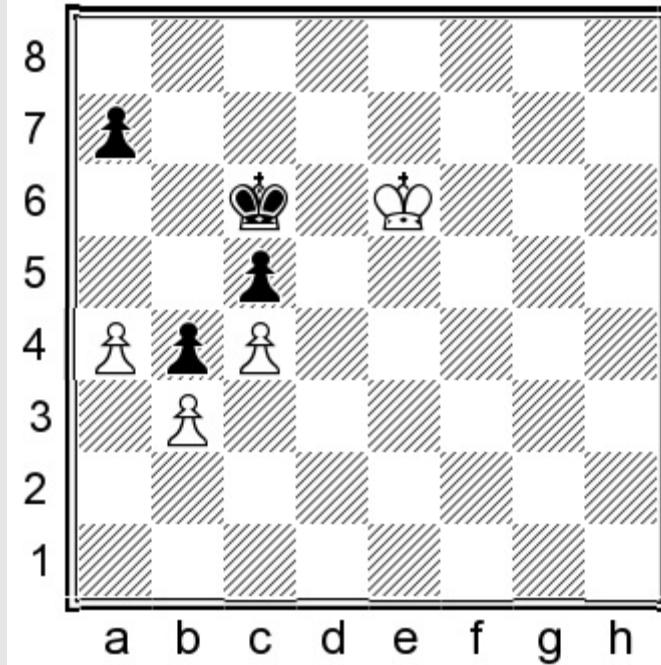
**6.♔e5! b3 (6...f4 7.♔e6!) 7.♔e6 b2 8.h8=♕+ ♔xh8 9.♔f7 b1=♕ 10.g7+ ♔h7 11.g8=♕+ ♔h6
12.♕g6#**

Stalemate

The Stalemate Refuge

When there are only a very few pieces left on the board, stalemate becomes one of the most important defensive resources – remember the “king and pawn vs. king” ending, if nothing else.

Out of the many possible stalemate situations, it is worth noting the following:



1-160
B

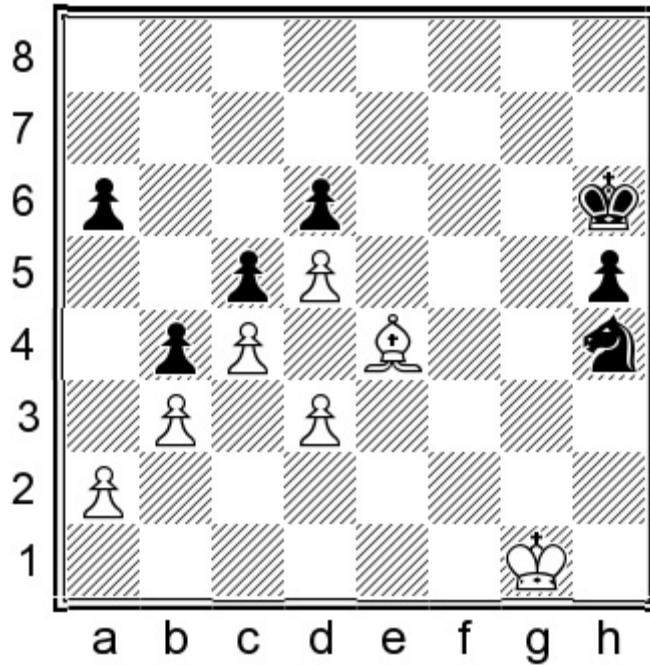
The loss of the c5-pawn appears inevitable; however, Black can still save himself.

1... $\ddot{\text{d}}\text{b6!}$ 2. $\ddot{\text{d}}\text{d5 a6!}$ 3. $\ddot{\text{d}}\text{d6 } \ddot{\text{a}}\text{a5!}$, and the pawn is untouchable, because of the stalemate.

Transposition of moves by 1...a6?? would be a grievous error – White would reply 2.a5!, eliminating the king's stalemate refuge.

In the following endgame, we shall see, besides stalemate, other techniques we saw earlier.

Nikolaevsky – Taimanov
USSR ch, Tbilisi 1966



1-161

W?

How should this game end?

1.d4! (breakthrough) **1...Qg6!**

Of course not **1...cxd4?** **2.c5**, and a pawn queens.

2.dxc5 dxc5 3.Qxg6

3.d6?! **Qe5**, and now it is White who must work for the draw.

3...Qxg6 4.Qf2

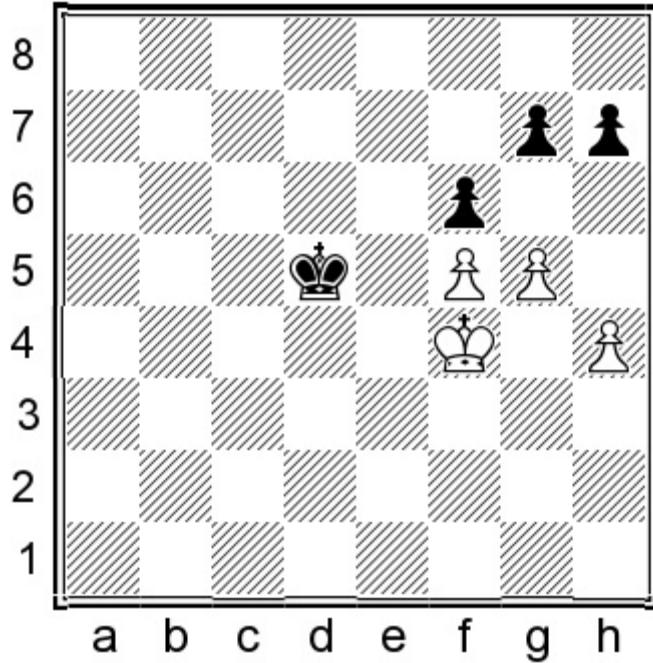
Here is a position we know: the protected versus the outside passed pawn. White cannot get a zugzwang position – kings at h4 and g6, with Black to move; therefore, he will have to trade his d-pawn for Black's h-pawn. This exchange would have led to victory, if Black's pawn were at a5 (instead of a6), or White's pawn at a4 (instead of a2). As it is, the upshot is stalemate.

4...Qf6 5.Qg3 Qg5 6.Qh3 Qf5 (**6...h4**) **7.Qh4 Qg6 8.d6 Qf6 9.Qxh5 Qe6 10.Qg5 Qxd6 11.Qf5 Qc6 12.Qe5 Qb6 13.Qd5 Qa5!** **14.Qxc5** stalemate.

Tragicomедies

Chigorin – Tarrasch

Ostende 1905



1-162

W?

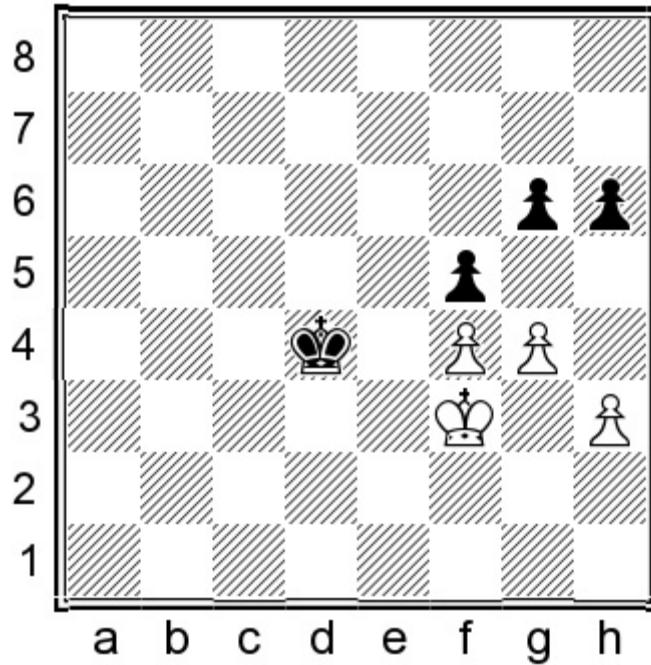
The draw is obtained by constructing a stalemate refuge: 1. ♔g4! (not 1.g6?? h5!–+)

1. ♔g4! ♕e4 2.g6! h6 (2...hxg6 3.fxg6 f5+ 4.♔g5 f4 5.h5 f3 6.h6=) 3.♔h5!=

The game continuation was: 1.gxf6?? gxf6 2.♔g4 ♕e4 3.♔h3 ♕f4 White resigned. Also insufficient was 3.♔h5 ♕xf5 4.♔h6, when Black's simplest win is 4...♔g4 5.♔xh7 ♔h5! (shouldering), but another possible win is 4...♔e6 5.♔xh7 f5 6.♔g6 f4 7.h5 f3 8.h6 f2 9.h7 f1=♕ 10.h8=♕ ♕f5+ with mate soon to follow.

Aronson – Mednis

USA 1953



1-163

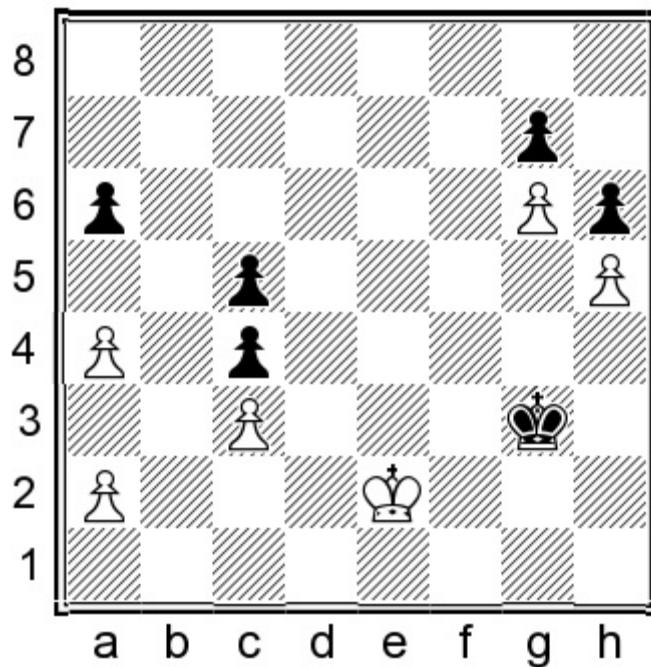
W?

The exact same position as in the previous diagram, except with all the pieces one rank lower. Here, 1.♔g3? ♔e3 2.g5 hxg5!–+ would be a mistake;

but 1.g5! h5 2.♔g3 ♔e4 3.♔h4!= is possible.

The game actually continued 1.h4?? h5–+

Exercises



Show/Hide Solution

1/51. A.Troitsky 1900*

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}g4$? the main line of the study arises. White builds a stalemate shelter on the queenside: 2.a5! $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ h5 (or 4... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 8.a3=) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ h4 6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ h3 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ h2 8.a3 h1= \mathbb{W} =

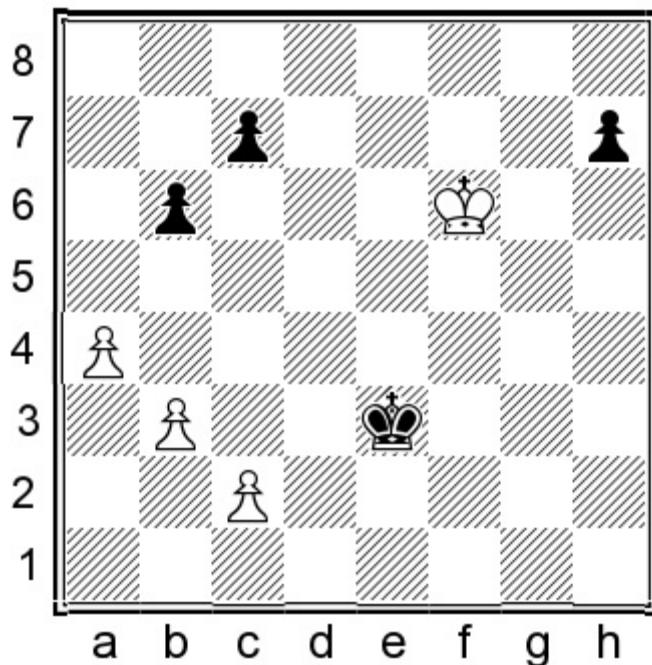
But 1...a5?? is even worse because White even manages to win after 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5\mathbb{O}$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$

However, Rubenis has refuted the study, yet Black nevertheless can win.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f4!!$ (Δ 2...a5) 2.a5 $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ is hopeless. After 3.a3 $\mathbb{Q}f4$, Black's king can simply steal the kingside pawns because the road to the refuge does not exist anymore.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 8.a3 c3–+ – there is no stalemate!



Show/Hide Solution

1/52. N.Grigoriev 1934**1.b4!**

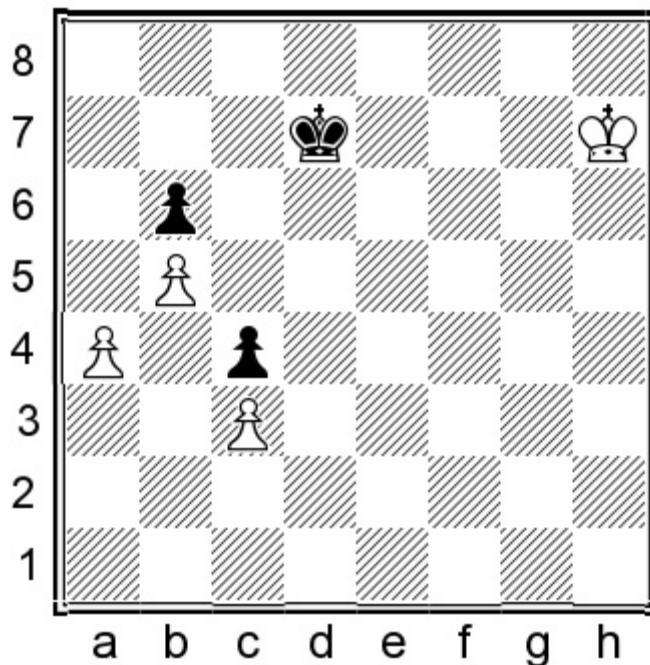
Of course, not 1.♔g5? c5 (or 1...♔d4) with a draw.

1.b4! ♔d4

At first glance everything is quite simple. White's pawns protect themselves after c2-c3; he must just go to the kingside for the h7-pawn and come back.

Actually, however, the problem is much more complicated than that. Black has an unexpected idea: to play ...c7-c5 and to answer b4-b5 with ...c5-c4. Then he gets a stalemate shelter on c5 for his king. We continue the analysis and come to see that, with this pawn configuration, the outcome depends on the flank opposition after capturing the h-pawn.

The superficial move 2.c3+? enables Black to win the fight for the opposition and to achieve a draw: 2...♔d5! 3.♔g5 c5 4.b5 c4 5.♔h6 ♔d6 6.♔xh7 ♔d7



16-27
W

7.♔h6 (7.♔g6 ♔e6 8.♔g5 ♔e5 9.♔g4 ♔e6) 7...♔d6 8.♔h5 ♔d5 9.♔h4 ♔d6! 10.♔g4 ♔e6 11.♔f4 ♔d6 12.♔e4 (12.♔f5 ♔d5 13.♔f6 ♔d6) 12...♔c5! (Black's defensive plan!) 13.♔e3 (13.♔e5 stalemate) 13...♔d5! 14.♔f3 ♔e5 15.♔g4 ♔e6!, etc.

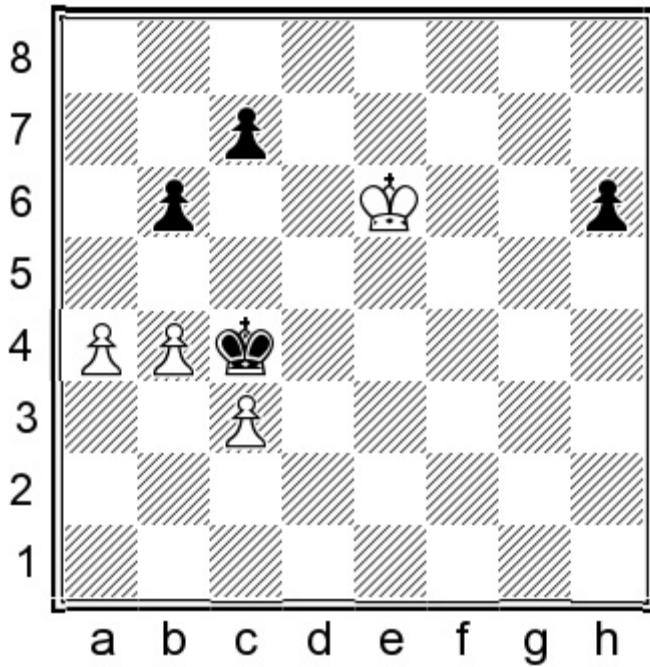
2.†e6!

White must take the d5-square away from the black king.

2...h6 3.c3+!

3.†f5? is premature: 3...c5 4.b5 †d5! 5.†g6 c4 6.†xh6 c3= or 6.c3 †e5 7.†xh6 †d6! and Black holds the opposition again.

3...†c4



16-28

W?

4.†e5!

It is important to entice the pawn to h5. 4.†f6? c5 5.b5 †d5 6.†g6 c4 7.†xh6 †d6!= is wrong.

4...h5 5.†f5 c6!? 6.†g5 †d5 7.†h4!

An obligatory loss of a tempo – after 7.†xh5? c5 8.b5 c4, it is again White who is in zugzwang.

7...c5 (there is nothing else) **8.b5 c4 9.†xh5**

White has won the fight for the opposition! The rest is standard (approaching with the help of outflanking).

9...†d6 10.†h6! (10.†g4? †e6=) **10...†d5** (10...†d7 11.†h7 or 11.†g5 †e6 12.†g6) **11.†g7!** †e6 **12.†g6+-**

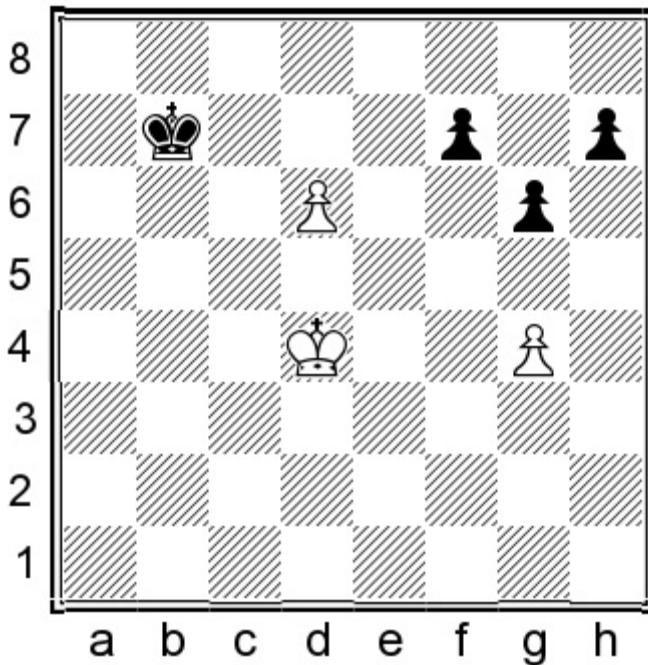
“Semi-Stalemate”

This is what I call the situation when the king is stalemated (on the edge or in the corner of the board), but there are still pawn moves left to make. Instead of stalemate, what we get is zugzwang – usually, a fatal one for the stalemated side.

Here are two simple examples:

Marshall – Réti

New York 1924*



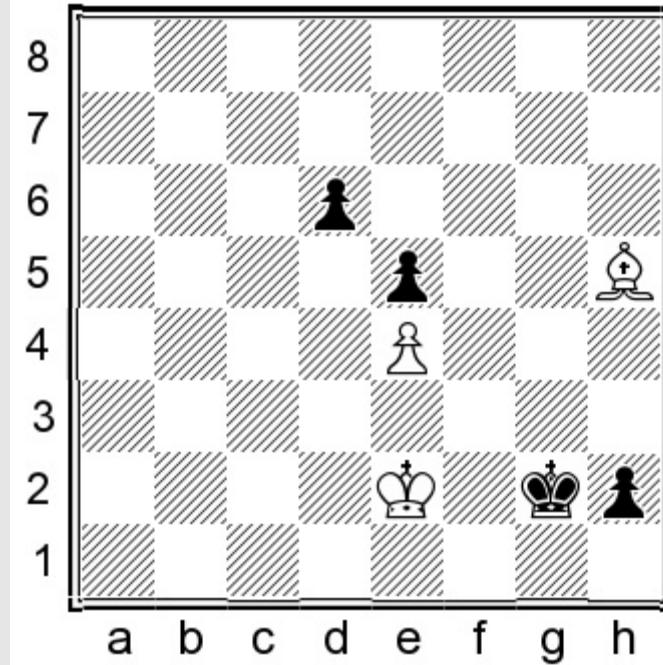
1-166

W

1.g5! (or 1.♔e5 ♔c8 2.g5!)

1.g5! ♔c6 2.♔e5 ♔d7 3.♔d5! (3.♔f6?? ♔xd6 4.♔xf7 ♔e5+) 3...♔d8 4.♔c6 ♔c8 5.d7+ ♔d8 6.♔d6○+-

J.Kling, B.Horwitz 1851



1-167

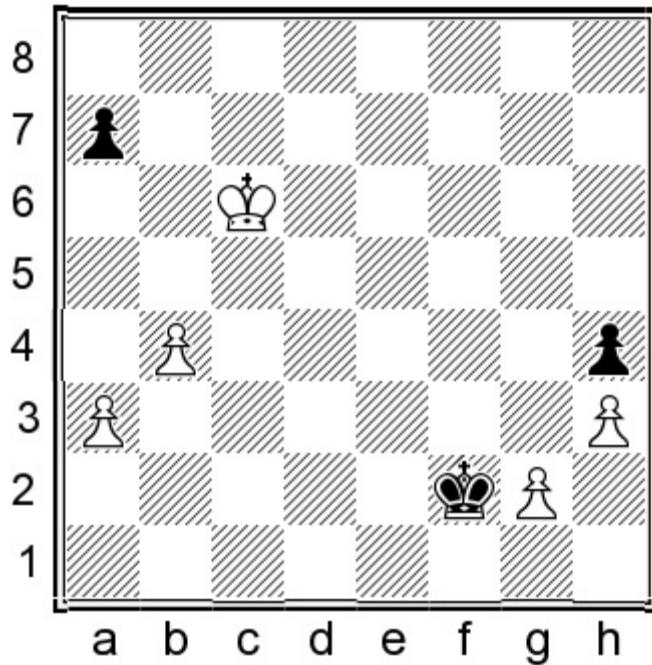
W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1!\odot$ 3...d5 4. exd5 e4 5. d6 e3 6. d7 e2+ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 8. d8= \mathbb{W} h1= \mathbb{W}
9. $\mathbb{W}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 11. $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f2+-$

The next example is considerably more difficult and hence more interesting.

Mandler – Procházka

Czechoslovakia 1976



I-168

W?

The straightforward 1.b5? leads to a drawn queen endgame with an extra rook's pawn: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ 4.b6 h3 5.b7 h2 6.b8= \mathbb{W} h1= \mathbb{W} .

The other, more promising plan is to squeeze the enemy king into the corner. However, it requires lengthy and accurate calculation.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d5!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$

After 4.b5? (or 4.a4?), Black's king can use Réti's idea to help him get to the queenside in time: 4... $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3=$

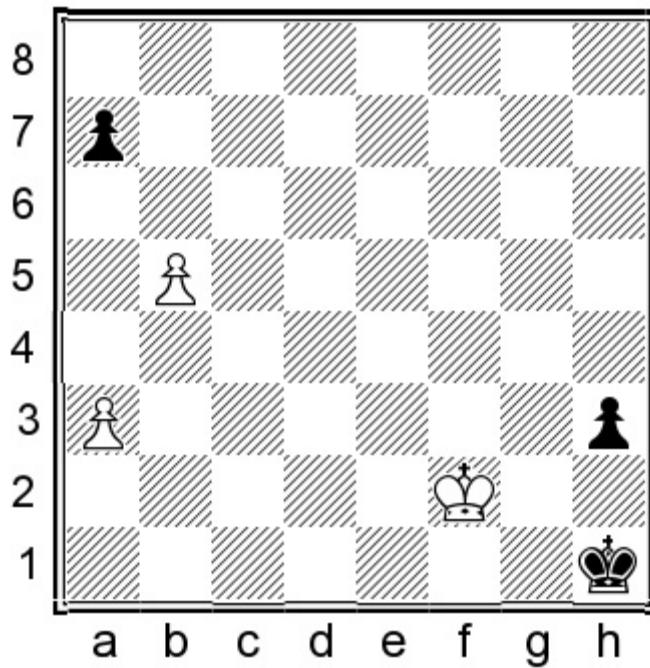
4...h3

4...a6 is inferior: 5.a4 h3 6.a5! $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 7.b5 h2 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ O+-

5.b5!

5.a4? would be a mistake, in view of 5...a5! 6.bxa5 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 7.a6 h2=

5... $\mathbb{Q}h1$

**I-169**

W?

6. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$

Again, not 6.a4? a5!=. Now Black must stalemate his own king, since 6... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ allows an easy win by 7.a4 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 8.a5 a6 (8...h2 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ a6 10. $\mathbb{Q}f1) 9.\mathbb{Q}f2.$

6...h2 7.b6!!

The only move! White only gets a draw after 7.a4? a5! or 7. $\hat{\square}f2$? a5!

7...a5

7...axb6 8.a4 b5 9.a5+–

8.b7 a4 9. $\hat{\square}e2!$ $\hat{\square}g1$ 10.b8=■ h1=■ 11.■b6+

White wants mate. As can easily be seen, exchanging queens wins also.

11... $\hat{\square}h2$ 12.■d6+ $\hat{\square}g1$ 13.■d4+ $\hat{\square}h2$ 14.■h4+ $\hat{\square}g2$ 15.■g4+ $\hat{\square}h2$ 16.■f2 Black resigned.

Reserve Tempi

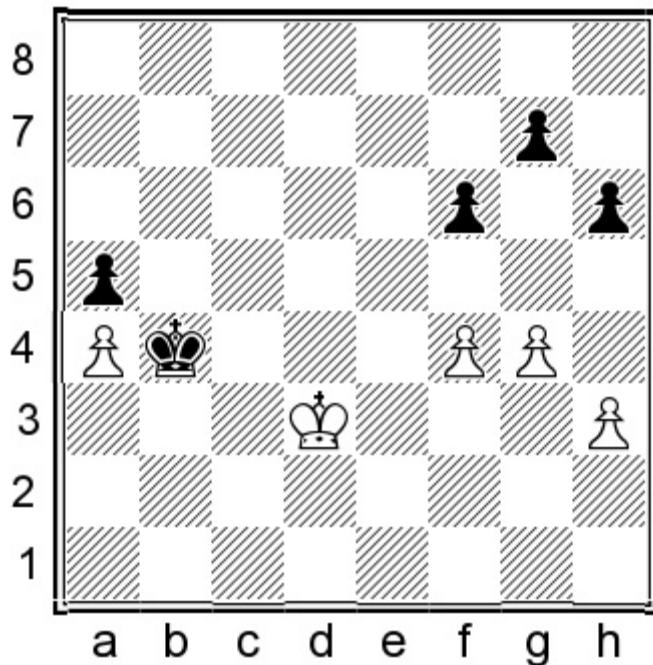
Exploiting Reserve Tempi

We have already seen more than once how the outcome of a game may hinge on one side's store of reserve pawn tempi. This is not surprising, considering that zugzwang is the fundamental weapon in the majority of pawn endings.

The rules involved in the use of reserve tempi are simple and self-evident:

- (1) Use every chance to accumulate reserve tempi and to deprive your opponent of his;
- (2) Hold onto them – do not waste them except when absolutely necessary.

Let's observe these rules in action. The first is illustrated in the following two examples.



I-170
W?

1.f5!

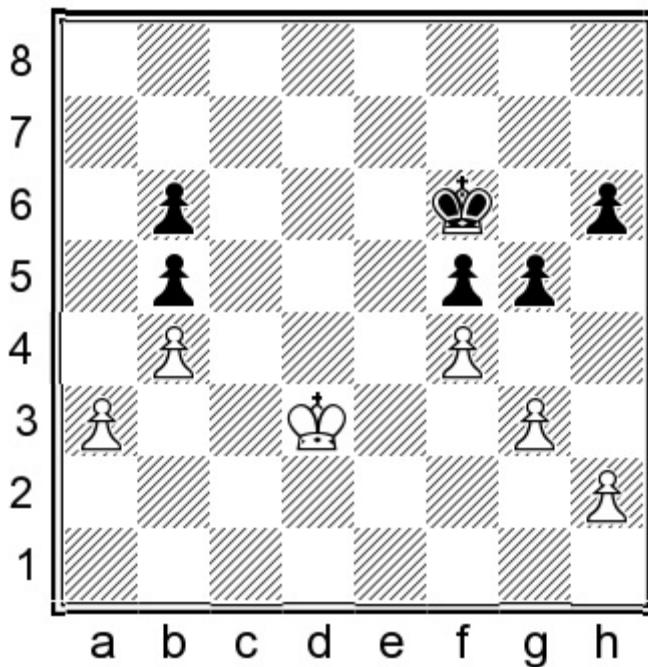
This move secures White two reserve pawn tempi – just enough to squeeze the enemy king at the edge of the board.

1... \mathbb{Q} x a 4 2. \mathbb{Q} c4 \mathbb{Q} a3 3. \mathbb{Q} c3 a4 4.h4 \mathbb{Q} a2 5. \mathbb{Q} c2 a3 (5...h5 6.gxh5 a3 7.h6 gxh6 8.h5 is zugzwang)

6.h5O 6... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c1=$

Despotovic – Dvoretsky

Moscow tt 1968



I-171

B?

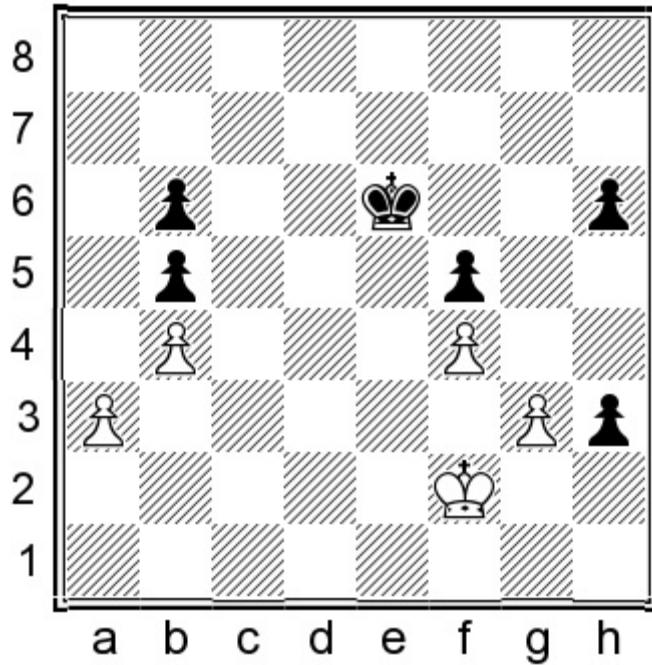
1...g4!

Now Black has the reserve tempo h6-h5. Here, the game was adjourned; White sealed the move 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ but later resigned without continuing, in view of 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4.a4 bxa4+ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4-$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ h5–+ Thanks to his reserve tempo, Black put his opponent into zugzwang, and his king broke through on the wing.

But White could have saved himself by playing 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3.h3!

Yes! White loses with either 3.h4? $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ h5O or 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4.h3 h5!

But now what is Black to do? On 3...h5 4.h4 (or 4.hxg4), he loses his reserve tempo, and the position is now drawn: 4... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ O And in the sharp variation 3...gxh3 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$



1-172

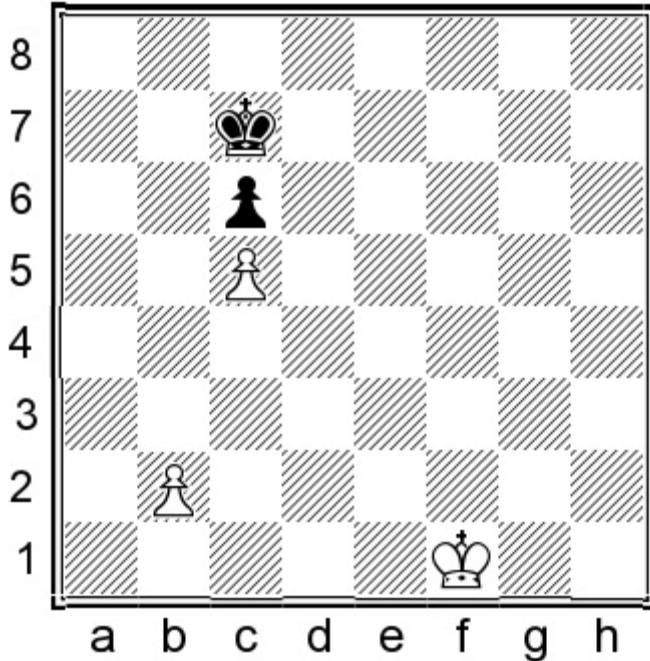
B

4...♝d5 White has time to create kingside counterplay.

Karsten Müller noted that if, instead of 4...♝d5, Black were to try 4...♝f6 5.♝g1 ♝g7!? then the only move to draw would be 6.♝h1! – the h2-square is mined. The problem is that after 6.♝h2? ♝g6 7.♝xh3 ♝h5 O 8.g4+ Black does not play 8...fxg4+? 9.♝g3 ♝g6 10.♝xg4 O 10...♝f6 (10...h5+ 11.♝h4) 11.♝h5 ♝f5 12.♝xh6 ♝xf4 13.♝g6, when the white king reaches the queenside in time, but 8...♝g6! 9.♝h4 ♝f6! 10.♝h5 fxg4 11.♝xg4 ♝g6 – here, it is White who falls into zugzwang.

5.♝g1 ♝c4 6.♝h2 h5 (6...♝b3? 7.g4!) 7.♝xh3 ♝b3 8.♝h4 ♝xa3 9.♝xh5 (9.♝g5!?) 9...♝xb4 10.g4 fxg4 11.♝xg4 ♝c3 (11...♝c5 12.♝f3!) 12.f5 b4 13.f6 b3 14.f7 b2 15.f8=♛ b1=♛ 16.♛f6+ and the queen endgame is drawn.

N.Grigoriev 1931



1-173
\$
W?

White's king has nothing to do on the kingside (with the kings on the fourth and sixth ranks, it is easy to establish that the opposition is meaningless, and therefore White cannot create zugzwang). The winning plan will be to feint with the king on the queenside, and then march over to the kingside. For this plan to succeed, White will need both of his reserve pawn tempi (with the pawn at b3, the position would be drawn); so it is important not to lose them on the way.

1. ♔e2 ♔d7

1...♔b7 2.♔d3 ♔a6 would be senseless, in view of 3.b4 (3.♔c4) 3...♔b5 4.♔c3 ♔a6 5.♔c4! ♔b7 6.♔d4+–

2.♔d3 ♔e7! 3.♔c3!

Both sides must keep in mind that the e6- and c4-squares are mined. After 2...♔e6 3.♔c4, Black cannot play 3...♔e5 in view of 4.b4 ♔e6 5.b5; however, if he does not play this, White's king continues on his way to the queenside. Now on

2...♔e7 3.♔c4? ♔e6, the line 4.♔b4(b3) 4...♔d5= is bad; so is 4.♔d4 ♔f6! 5.♔c3 ♔e5! – therefore, White has to play 4.b3, prematurely using up one of his reserve tempi, which renders the win impossible.

3...♔e6 4.♔c4 ♔d7 5.♔b4 ♔c7 6.♔a5 ♔b7 7.b3!

The first tempo is used up, in order to force the black king away from the kingside.

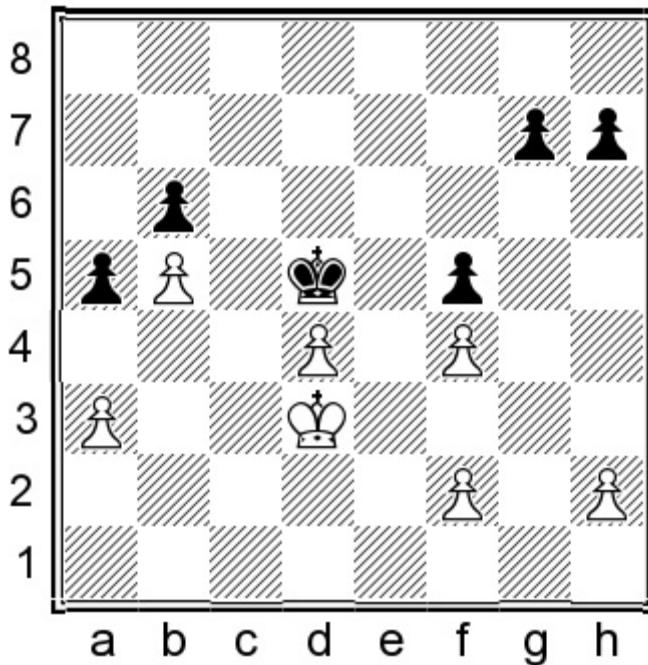
7...♔a7 8.♔b4 ♔b7 (8...♔a6 9.♔c3 ♔a5 10.♔c4 ♔a6 11.b4O) 9.♔c4 ♔c7 10.♔d4 ♔d7 11.♔e5 ♔e7 12.b4O+–

That is where we use the second tempo!

Tragomedies

Kachiani – Maric

Kishinev izt 1995



1-174

W?

On the kingside – equality (each side has three pawn moves). White has the reserve tempo a3-a4 on the queenside. Unfortunately, she was too eager to use it:

1.a4??

White wins by 1.♔c3! ♔e6 (1...♔e4 2.♔c4 ♔xf4 3.♔d5+–) 2.♔c4 ♔d6 3.d5 ♔d7 4.♔d4 ♔d6 5.a4 h6 6.h3 g6 (6...g5 7.fxg5 hxg5 8.f3 f4 9.♔e4+–) 7.h4 h5 8.f3○

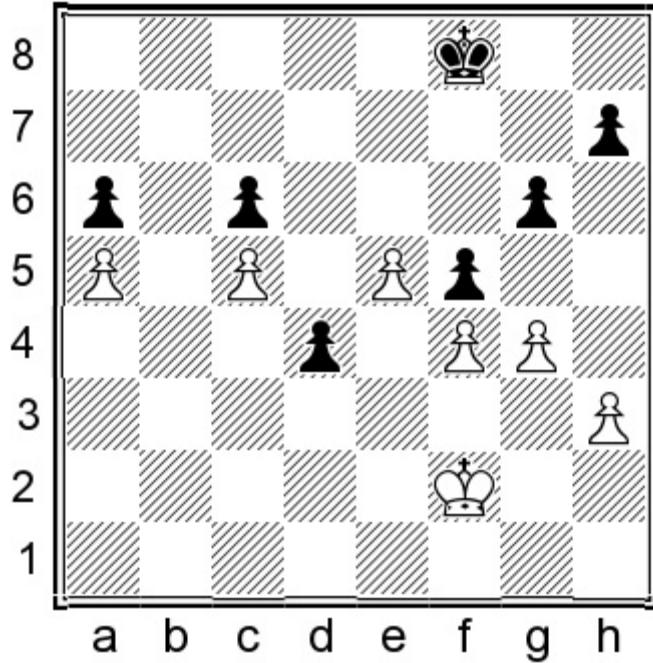
1.a4?? ♔d6 2.♔c4 ♔e6 3.d5+ ♔d7 4.♔d4 ♔d6○

Here is where White could have used the reserve tempo – but alas, it is already gone.

5.♔c4 ♔d7 6.♔d3 ♔e7

Of course, Black will not be the first to go to the mined square d6. The game soon ended in a draw.

Exercises



1-175
1/53
W?

Show/Hide Solution

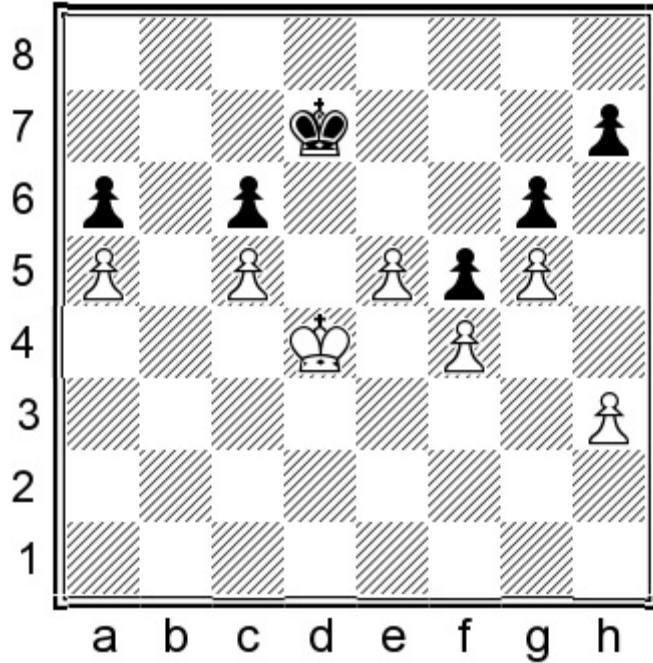
1/53. Yermolinsky-I.Ivanov, USA ch, Parsippany 1996

1.g5!

With this move, White not only gets a spare tempo (h3-h4) but also deprives the black king of the important f6-square.

The actual game continuation was 1.gxf5? gxf5 2.♔e2 ♔e7 3.♔d3 h5 4.♕xd4 h4 5.♔d3 Draw.

1.g5! ♔f7 2.♔e2 ♔e7 (2...♔e6 3.♔d3 ♔d5 4.e6 ♔xe6 5.♔xd4○) 3.♔d3 ♔e6 4.♔xd4 ♔d7



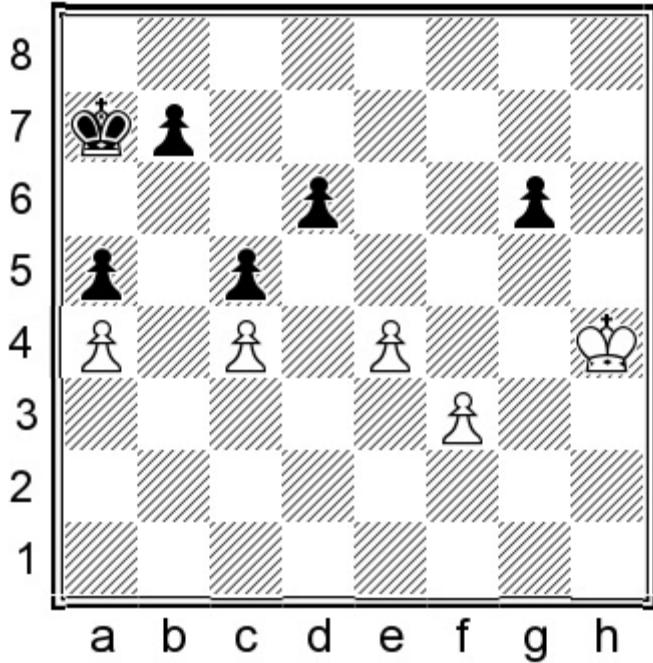
16-29

W

Now White should sacrifice the e-pawn and occupy the corresponding d4-square when Black captures it; this will put Black in zugzwang.

5. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4\text{O}$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $e6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3\text{O}$ 8... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4\text{O}$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $h4\text{O+-}$

If Black tries 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (planning 2... $h5$), the simplest is 2. $e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}e8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4!\text{O}$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd4\text{O}$ transposing to the main line.



1-176
1/54
W?

Show/Hide Solution

1/54. E.Post 1941

A breakthrough is threatened (1.f4? b5! 2.cxb5 c4), therefore the white king must enter the square of the c-pawn. The move 1.♔g5 seems illogical because it creates no threat (2.♔xg6 or 2.f4 will be still met with 2...b5). 1.♔g4 (Δ 2.f4) speaks for itself, the breakthrough fails thereafter and the black king must run to the kingside. But let us look what can happen:

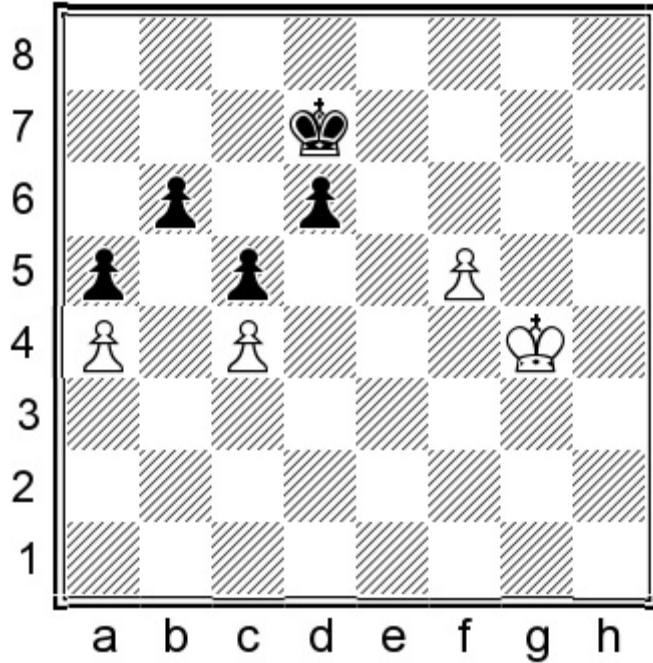
1.♔g4 ♔b8! 2.f4 ♔c7 3.f5 gxf5+ 4.exf5 ♔d7 5.f6! ♔e6 6.♔g5 ♔f7 7.♔f5. Black is in zugzwang, but his spare tempo 7...b6! saves him: the white king must go to an unfavorable square (g5).

8.♔g5 d5 9.cxd5 c4 10.d6 c3 11.d7 c2 12.d8=♕ c1=♕+ and the pawn promotes with check.

Looking for an improvement for White, we come back to 1.♔g5. Yes, it creates no threat but still, how should Black react? 1...♔b6 is bad in view of 2.♔xg6! (the black king is an obstacle for ...b7-b5); the same reply follows after 1...♔a6 (if 2...b5

White takes the pawn with check). If 1...♔b8, then 2.f4! b5 3.f5 gxf5 4.exf5 and the f-pawn promotes first with check. What remains is the waiting move 1...b6, but then Black lacks the highly important spare tempo.

1.♔g5!! b6□ 2.♔g4! ♔b7 3.f4 ♔c7 4.f5 gxf5+ 5.exf5 (White has created a distant passed pawn)
5...♔d7



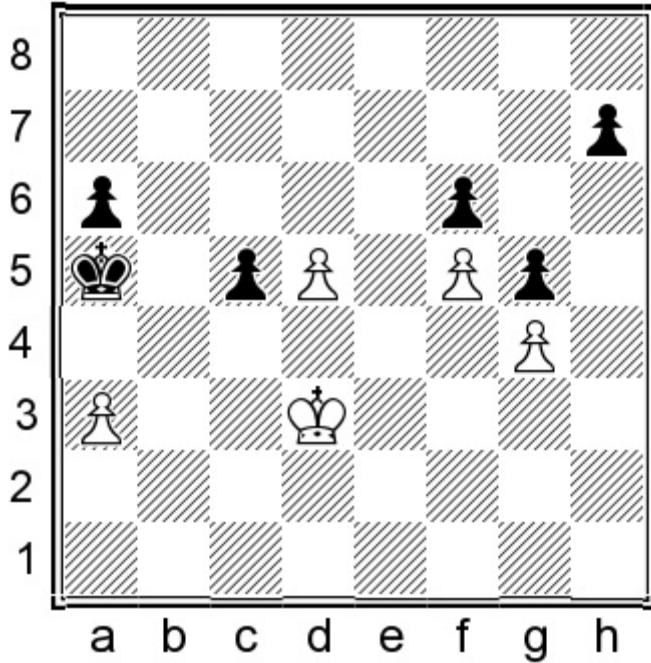
16-30

W?

6.f6!

A mistake would be 6.♔g5? d5 7.cxd5 c4 8.♔f4? (8.f6=) 8...b5! 9.axb5 a4 10.b6 c3! 11.♔e3 a3! 12.b7 ♔c7 13.f6 c2!—+ This technique of decoying the king into a check is already known to us from Khachaturov's study (exercise 1/24).

6...♔e6 7.♔g5 ♔f7 8.♔f5○ 8...d5 9.cxd5 c4 10.d6 c3 11.d7 c2 12.d8=♕ c1=♕ 13.♕e7+ with mate.



1-177

1/55

B?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

1/55. Randviir-Keres, Pärnu 1947

1... $\mathbb{Q}b5!$

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}b6?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ a5 3.a4 \mathcal{O} Black is forced to waste his spare tempo before the critical moment arrives: 3...h6. Thereafter, both 4.d6 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5.d7 $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ and the simpler continuation 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ lead to a draw (“untouchable pawns”).

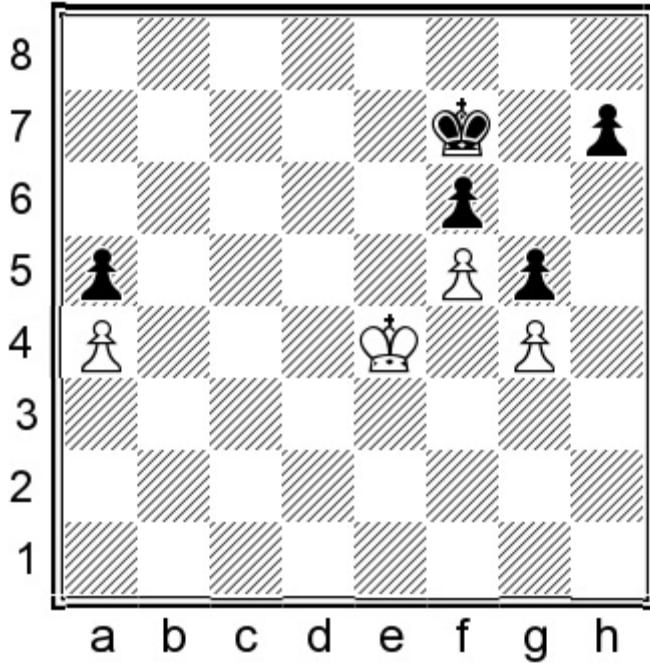
1... $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ 2.a4+ (2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ c4 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ c3! 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5-$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ a5! (3...h6? 4.a5+) 4.d6

4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ loses immediately: 4... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ h6 \mathcal{O} .

4... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5.d7 $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

The king goes to the kingside to create the threat ...h7-h5 (so that White has no time to attack the a5-pawn). 6... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ is also playable; White responds with 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (rather than 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!\mathcal{O}$).

7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ h5)



16-31

B?

8...h5? is premature here: 9.gxh5 ♕g7 10.♔f3 ♔h7 11.♕g3= (“untouchable pawns”). But how should White proceed if he is on move? If 8...-- 9.♔e3(f3), then 9...♔e7 10.♔e4 ♕d6 11.♔d4 h6○ (this is what the spare tempo is needed for!). If 9.♔d4(d5), then 9...h5 10.gxh5 ♕g7–+ (or 9...♕g7 Δ 10...h5–+).

8...♔f8!○

Thus, the move is passed to the opponent. The f8-square is equivalent to f7 in all aspects (two steps to both d6 and h6). 8...♕g7 is less precise: 9.♔f3! ♕g8 10.♔e3! ♔f7 11.♔e4!

9.♔e3 ♕e7! 10.♔e4 ♕d6 11.♔d4 h6○ 12.♔e4 (12.♔c4 ♕e5 13.♔b5 h5 14.gxh5 ♕xf5 15.♔xa5 g4) 12...♔c5 13.♔e3 ♕d5

Almost everything wins now. For example, 13...♔b4 14.♔d4 ♕xa4 is good enough.

14.♔d3 ♕e5 15.♔e3 h5 16.gxh5 ♕xf5 17.♔f3 ♕e6

17...g4+ 18.♔g3 ♕g5 is also strong: 19.h6 ♕xh6 20.♔xg4 ♕g6 (the f-pawn is standing above the c1-h6 diagonal).

18.♔g4 ♕f7 19.♔f5 ♕g7 White resigned.

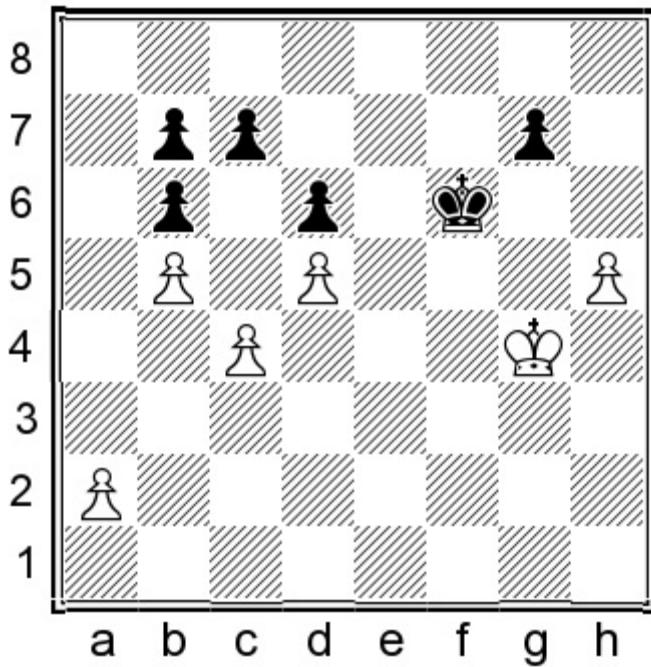
Steinitz's Rule

Wilhelm Steinitz, the first world champion, put forth the following paradox: that the pawns stand best on their original squares. His explanation: ***In the endgame, it is useful to have a choice of whether to advance a pawn one or two squares.*** We shall see the point of his idea to its fullest extent

in the following subchapters; so I shall limit myself to just one example of it here. The analysis given below was made by Artur Yusupov when he was still quite young, with the assistance of the author.

Yusupov – Ionov

Podolsk 1977*



I-178

W?

We can see at once the idea of a pawn breakthrough on the queenside, after a2-a4 and c4-c5. Obviously, it will have no chance of succeeding unless the black king is taken far enough away.

First, it is necessary to put Black on move. It is also important to leave the a-pawn where it is, since from its original square, it has the choice of moving one or two squares forward.

1.♔f4!

In playing this, White must be prepared for 1...g6 2.h6 g5+; however, now the pawn breakthrough works: 3.♔e3! (the best square for the king to deal with the black pawns) 3...♔g6 4.a4 ♔xh6 5.c5! bxc5 (5...dxc5 6.a5 bxa5 7.b6 cxb6 8.d6) 6.a5 c4 7.a6 bxa6 8.bxa6 c3 9.a7 c2 10.♔d2.

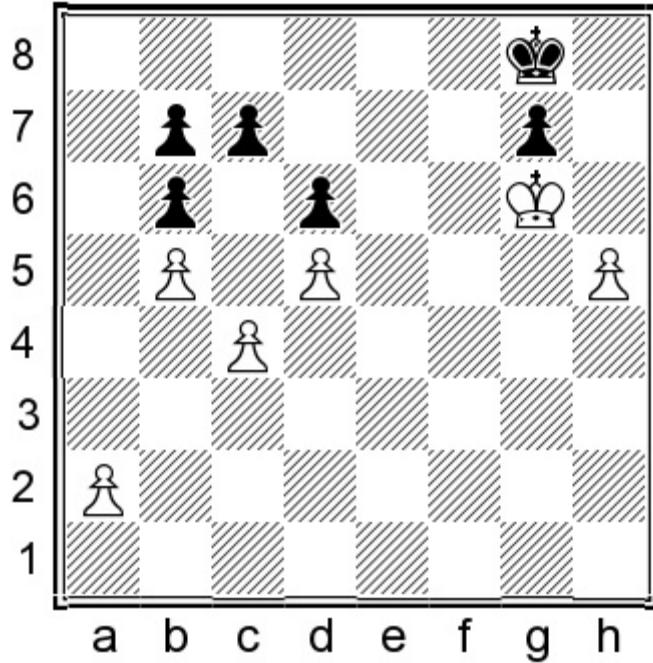
1...♔e7 2.♔g5

The king goes inexorably to g6, after which White – thanks to the fact that his pawn is still on a2 – can execute the breakthrough at the ideal moment: when Black's king is on g8.

2...♔f8

2...♔f7 is met by 3.♔f5 ♔e7 4.♔g6 ♔f8 5.a4! ♔g8 6.c5!

3.♔g6 ♔g8



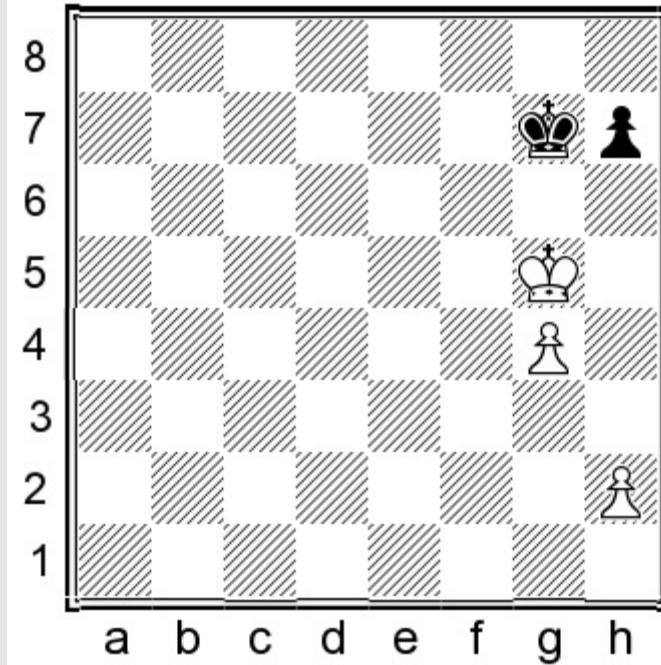
1-179

W?

**4.a3! ♕f8 5.a4 ♕g8 6.c5! dxc5 7.a5 bxa5 8.b6 cxb6 9.d6 ♕f8 10.d7 ♕e7 11.♕xg7 a4 12.h6 a3
13.h7 a2 14.d8=威+! ♕xd8 15.h8=威+**

An incautious pawn advance on move one would have let the win slip. Black in response need only be careful which square he picks for his king. For example, after 1.a3?, 1...♔f7? would be a mistake: 2.♔f5 ♔e7 (otherwise 3.♔e6) 3.♔g6 ♔f8 4.a4O+-; but Black could play 1...♔e7! 2.♔g5 (2.♔f5 ♔f7!) 2...♔f8! 3.♔g6 ♔g8 4.a4 ♔f8O, and the breakthrough does not work now, and the move losing maneuver is no longer possible.

The g- and h-pawns vs. the h-pawn



1-180

With Black's pawn on its starting square, the only winning plan becomes a king invasion at h6. Even the conquest of the h6-square, however, only guarantees victory in the event that one of White's pawns remains on the second rank, in order to have the choice between moving one or two squares.

Black to move loses:

1...h6+ 2.♔f5 ♔f7 3.h3 (3.h4 ♔g7 4.♔e6 is possible, too) 3...♔g7 4.h4 ♔f7 5.h5+–;

1...♔f7 2.♔h6 ♔g8 3.g5 ♔h8 4.h4! ♔g8 5.h5 ♔h8 6.g6 hxg6 7.hxg6 ♔g8 8.g7+–;

1...♔g8 2.♔h6! (2.♔f6? ♔f8=) 2...♔h8 3.g5 ♔g8 4.h3! ♔h8 5.h4 ♔g8 6.h5 ♔h8 7.g6 hxg6 8.hxg6 ♔g8 9.g7+–

But with White to move, the position is drawn.

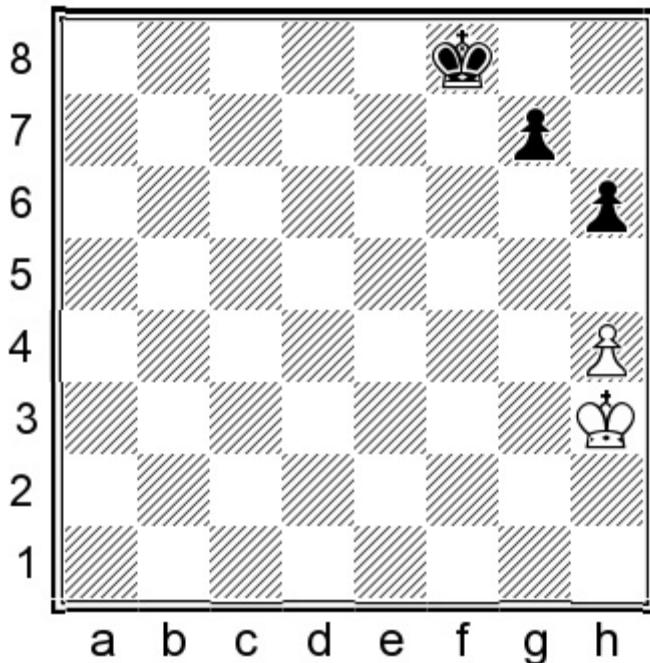
1.♔f5 ♔f7 is useless,

and on 1.♔h5 h6! draws. After the h-pawn moves, Black only needs to select the right square for his king to retreat to.

1.h3 ♔g8! 2.♔h6 ♔h8 3.g5 ♔g8 4.h4 ♔h8 5.h5 ♔g8 6.g6 hxg6 7.hxg6 ♔h8=

Clearly, 1.h4 would be met by 1...♔f7! (or 1...♔h8!) 2.♔h6 ♔g8, with the same outcome. We can see that the squares g8 and h8 correspond to the position of the pawn (at h3, h4 or h5); and with White's pawn at g4, there is one correspondence, but with the pawn at g5 – it is the opposite.

Matters are more complicated when the defending side's pawn has already left its starting square. Here everything depends on the nuances of king and pawn position. The ideas inherent in such positions are aptly illustrated by the following study.



I-181

\$
W?

1.♔g3!!

After 1.♔g4? ♔f7, the position is lost. For example:

2.h5 ♔e6 (the diagonal opposition);

2.♔h5 ♔f6 3.♔g4 ♔e5 4.♔h5 ♔f4 5.♔g6 ♔g4 6.♔xg7 h5;

2.♔f4 ♔e6! 3.♔e4 g6 4.♔f4 ♔d5 5.♔f3 ♔e5 6.♔e3 ♔f5 7.♔f3 h5. Note that with Black's pawn at g6, the opposition is important for both sides; with the pawn at g7, it is the anti-opposition that is important. This generalization is the mainspring driving this particular endgame.

2.♔f5 g6+ 3.♔e5 ♔e7 4.♔d5 (4.h5 g5 5.♔f5 ♔d6) 4...♔f6 5.♔e4 ♔e6, etc.;

2.♔f3 g6! (Black seizes the distant opposition, and then converts it into close opposition, as usual, with an outflanking) 3.♔e3 ♔e7! 4.♔f3 ♔d6! 5.♔e4 ♔e6, etc.

1.♔g3!! ♔e7

1...♔f7 is met by 2.♔g4! Now 2...♔g6 3.h5+ would be useless; and after 2...♔e6 3.♔f4! White, as should be done in positions with the pawn at g7, gives up the opposition to his opponent (3...♔f6 4.h5= or 3...g6 4.♔e4=); while after 2...g6 he seizes the distant opposition with 3.♔f3! All that remains is 2...♔f6, but then White is saved by the unexpectedly direct 3.♔h5! ♔e5 (3...♔f5 is stalemate) 4.♔g6 ♔f4 5.♔xg7 h5 6.♔f6! ♔g4 7.♔e5 ♔xh4 8.♔f4=

2.♔f3!

Of course not 2.♔f4? ♔e6!—+

2...♔f6

2...♔e6 3.♔f4!; 2...g6 3.♔e3!

3.♔e4!

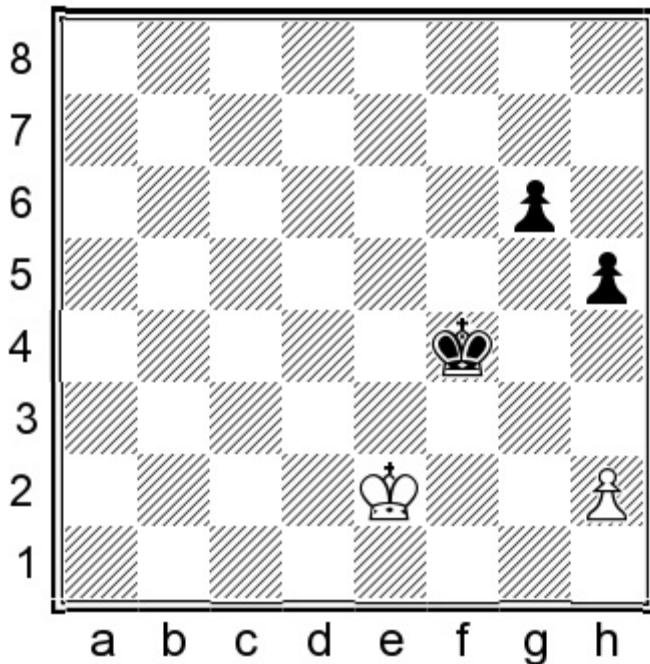
Still the same principle at work – with the pawn on g7, anti-opposition.

3...♔f7!? 4.♔e3! ♔e7 5.♔f3!=

Tragicomедies

Marshall – Schlechter

San Sebastian 1911



1-182

B?

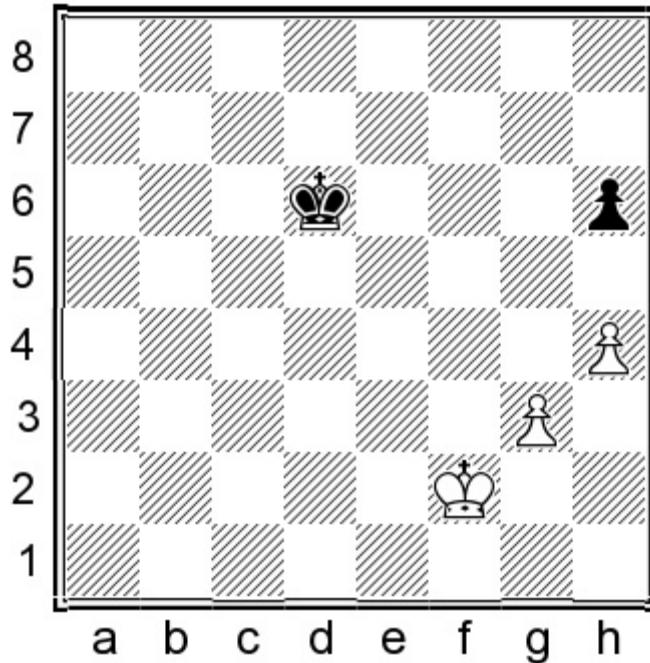
1...♔g4! 2.♔f2 ♔h3 decides: 3.♔g1 (White's king is on the wrong square: on h1, it would be a draw)
3...g5 4.♔h1 g4 5.♔g1 h4 6.♔h1 g3 7.hxg3 hxg3 8.♔g1 g2—+

Instead, Schlechter played 1...♔e4?? when the position was drawn, because both black pawns have now left their starting rank, and if Black tries to get his king into h3 (there is no other plan), White's king can always choose the right square on the first rank.

2.♔f2 ♔d3 3.♔f3 g5 4.♔f2 ♔e4 5.♔e2 ♔f4 6.♔f2 ♔g4 7.♔g2 h4 8.h3+ (the simplest, although 8.♔g1 was possible too) Draw.

Chiburdanidze – Watson

Brussels 1987



1-183

W

The position is almost the same as the Réti/Mandler study. White wins with either 1.g4! ♕e6 2.♕e2! ♕f6 3.♕d3,

or 1.♕e3! ♕e5 (1...♕e6 2.♕f4! ♕f6 3.g4) 2.g4.

1.♕f3?? ♕e7! 2.♕f4 ♕e6! 3.g4 ♕f6 4.♕f3 ♕e7??

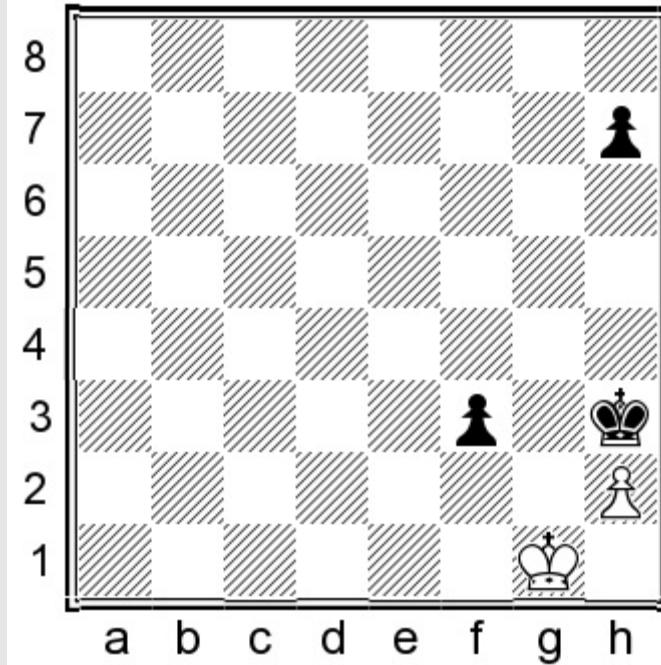
An awful blunder in return. As long as the pawn stood on g3, Black ceded his opponent the right to control the opposition. But now, with the pawn on g4, he cannot give the opposition up! 4...♕f7!= was necessary.

5.♕e3! ♕f7 6.♕d4! ♕f6 7.♕d5 ♕e7 8.♕e5 ♕f7 9.♕f5 ♕g7 10.♕e6 ♕g6 11.h5+ ♕g5 12.♕f7 ♕xg4 13.♕g6 ♕f4 14.♕xh6 Black resigned.

The f- and h-pawns vs. h-pawn

We shall analyze the basic ideas of such positions by using the following study as an example.

N.Grigoriev 1920



1-184

W?

If White plays 1.♔h1? (naively hoping for 1...f2?? stalemate), then after 1...♗g4, his position is lost. Black's plan is elementary: his king goes to e3, and then he advances ...f3-f2, forcing the advance of White's h-pawn. The fact that Black can choose whether to move his h-pawn one or two squares forward allows him to place his opponent in zugzwang. For example: 2.♗g1 ♔f4 3.♔f2 ♗e4 4.♔f1 (4.♔e1 ♗e3 5.♔f1 f2 6.h4 h5!) 4...♗e3 5.♔e1 f2+ 6.♔f1 ♗f3! 7.h3 h5! 8.h4 ♗g3, or 7.h4 h6! 8.h5 ♗g3.

1.♔f2! ♗g4 2.♔e3!○

Thanks to zugzwang, the pawn must leave the h7-square; the position is now a draw. White must only make sure he chooses the right back-rank square for his king (corresponding to the position of Black's h-pawn).

2...h6 3.♔f2 ♗f4 4.♔e1! ♗e3

Or 4...h5 5.♔f2 ♗e4 6.♔f1!

5.♔f1 h5

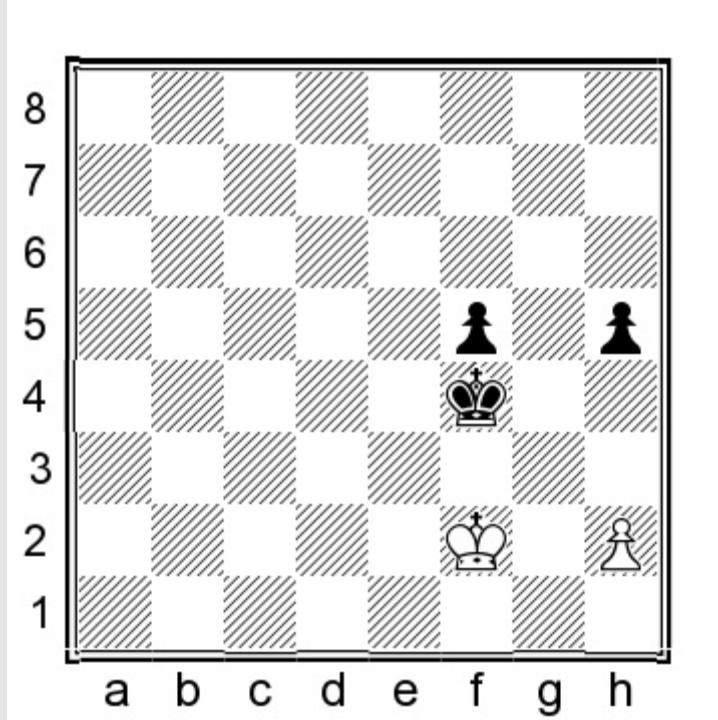
5...f2 6.h3! ♗f3 7.h4 ♗g3 8.h5○=

6.♔e1 f2+

6...h4 would be met by 7.♔f1! f2 8.h3=. But not the hasty 7.h3? which would be a terrible blunder here, leading to the Fahrni-Alapin ending we know so well (from diagram 1-27). Just a reminder: Black wins by triangulating with his king: 7...♗e4 8.♔f1 ♗e5 9.♔e1 ♗f5! 10.♔f1 ♗e4○

7.♔f1 ♗f3 8.h3! ♗g3 9.h4=

So the stronger side always wins when the attacker's rook's pawn is also on its starting square. When it has advanced, matters become much more difficult. One major winning position, which is worth knowing, was found by Maizelis in 1955 (although it was seen even earlier, in a 1949 study by Valles).



1-185

Here, everything depends on whose turn it is to move. Black to move wins.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ h4! (an exceptionally important position – reciprocal zugzwang!) **3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3!!$**

Control of the opposition is exploited, as usual, by outflanking – although this time, a paradoxical one.

4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h3!○ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$

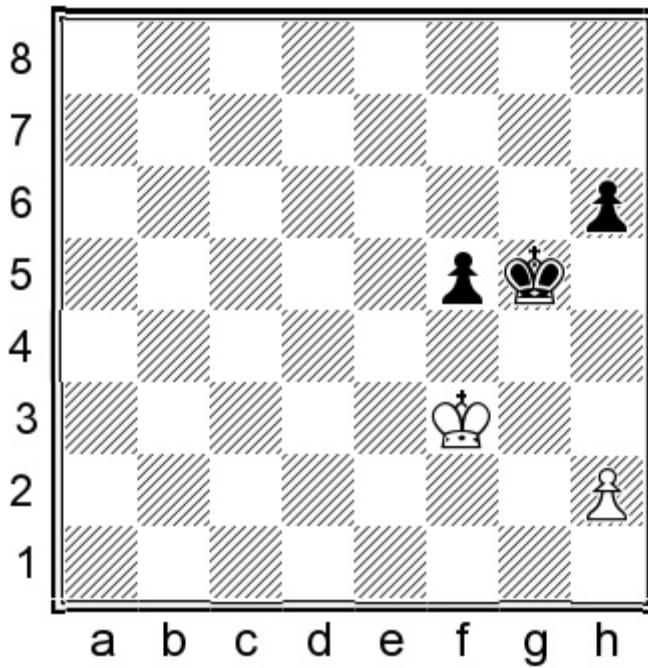
There is no help in either 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ or 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3(e2)$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ f4.

5... $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ f4 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e2-$ +) 6... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ f4+ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ f3) 10... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f3○-+

With White to move, there is no win: 1. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h4 (2... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h4 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf5=$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ ○ 3...h3 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2!=$

Maizelis' position serves as a most important guidepost in analyzing situations where one side has an advanced rook's pawn – the outcome of the battle depends on whether the stronger side can reach Maizelis' position and whose move it is.

Maizelis studied the following position, and considered it lost. His conclusion would appear to be supported by the result of this game.



1-186

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ h5! 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (on 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$, Black should play 2... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$, and if 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$, or 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ h4) 2... h4 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (White is in zugzwang) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3!!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h3! White resigned.

I was in Rio de Janeiro. Unfamiliar with Maizelis' analysis, and astounded that Black could win such a position, I focused on it intensely and quickly found the saving line. Pal Benko (who was Sunye Neto's second at the Interzonal) came to the same conclusion a bit earlier.

Since the central problem here is one of reciprocal zugzwang, let's analyze the corresponding squares. If Black's king moves to the fourth rank with the pawn at h4 or h6, White's king must respond by taking the opposition. If the pawn is at h5, the opposite is true – White must take the anti-opposition.

This means that neither 1. $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

nor 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ is good. And we have already seen what happens to 1. $\mathbb{Q}g3?$ So:

1. $\mathbb{Q}e2!!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$

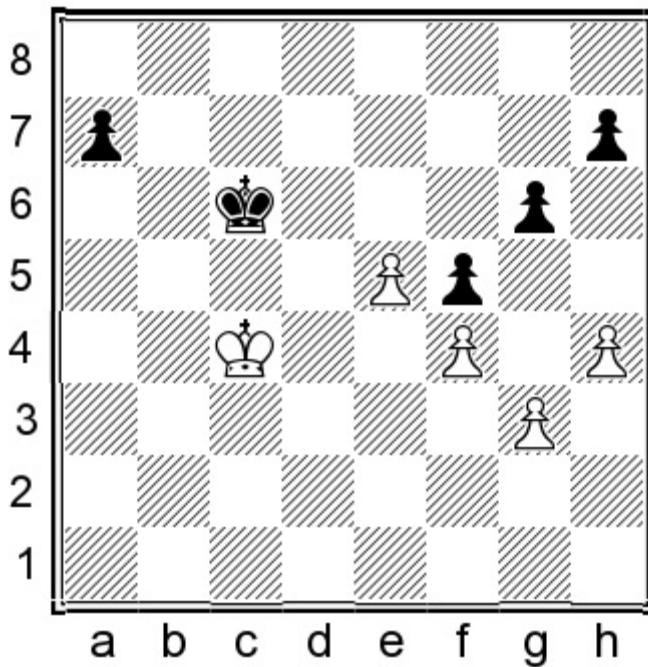
After 1... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$, White is in fine shape – he has the opposition with the pawn at h6. The game might continue 2... h5 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h4 (with the pawn at h5, the outflanking 4... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ does not work) 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2=$. If 1... h5, then either 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ or 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ h5 (2... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$

The goal is reached: White has the antiopposition, with the pawn at h5.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h4 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2\Theta=$

The following exceptionally complex example was first given in Fine's book (1941), but unfortunately with completely erroneous analysis. Maizelis (1956) did a much better job on the position; and later his conclusions were refined and extended by other authors.



I-187

W

Here we have a protected passed pawn versus an outside passed pawn. Since White cannot win the a-pawn, he will have to trade it for his e-pawn. But what does this leave us with?

1. $\mathbb{Q}b4$

Or 1. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ a6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (but not 3... $\mathbb{Q}c6$? 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4\Theta$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$

Black cannot close up the kingside with 1...h5, since then the trade of pawns will give White an easy win: 2. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 5.e6 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (taking the lateral opposition decides) 8... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ (outflanking) 10... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g8\Theta$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5!\Theta$

2. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ a5

Equally good is 2... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$. Fine only examined 2...a6? 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (4...a5 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ and White either queens his pawn or wins the pawn on a6

3.h5!

Before exchanging pawns, it is necessary first to weaken the enemy kingside pawn chain. Because it is zugzwang, Black has no choice:

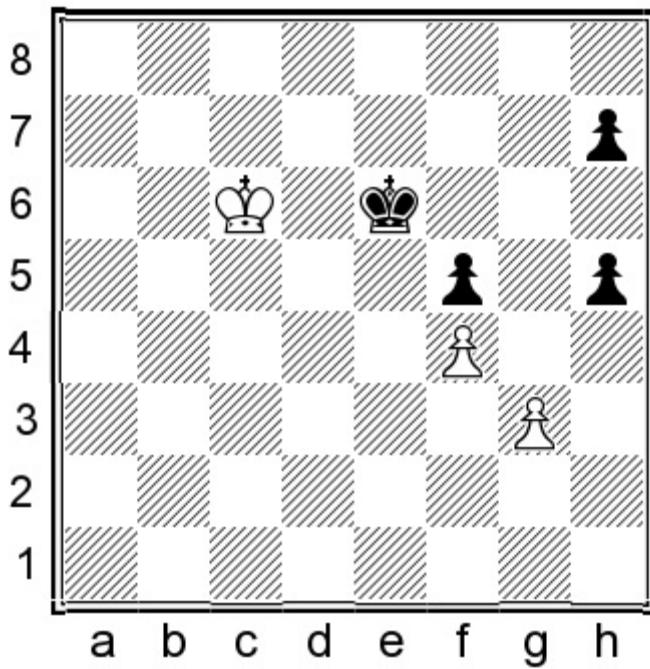
3...gxh5 4.e6! ♕c6 5.♕xa5 ♕d6 6.♕b6 ♕xe6

The pawn at f5 must fall. But if Black replies to the capture of the pawn, 1.♕xf5, with 1...h4 2.gxh4 ♕e7, he will draw, because this will lead to Maizelis' position with White in zugzwang. But if the pawn is captured instead with the king at either e7 or g7, Black is the one in zugzwang, and he loses. So this is what the further course of the struggle will be about.

This conclusion allows us to discover the corresponding squares e5 and f7, d5 and e7(g7). Continuing this analysis, we find more corresponding squares: e6 and g6(e8), f6 and f8.

7.♕c6!

But not 7.♕c5? ♕d7! (7...♕f7!) 8.♕d5 ♕e7 9.♕e5 ♕f7 10.♕xf5 h4 11.gxh4 ♕e7 12.♕e5 ♕f7 13.h5 ♕e7 0=



1-188

B

7...♕f7!

The most stubborn defense, pointed out by Euwe and Hooper (1958). Things are simpler for White after 7...♕e7 8.♕d5 ♕f6 9.♕d6 ♕f7 10.♕e5 ♕g6 11.♕e6 ♕g7 12.♕xf5 h4 13.gxh4 ♕f7 14.♕e5 ♕e7 15.h5 0+–

But now, since 8.♕d5? ♕e7! (8...♕g7!) and 8.♕d6? ♕f6 9.♕d5 ♕e7(g7)! do not work, there remains but one move:

8.♕d7! ♕f8 9.♕d6!!

9.♕e6? would be a mistake: 9...♕e8 10.♕f6 h4 (10...♕f8 11.♕g5 h4! 12.♕xh4 h6 is also possible, or 12.gxh4 ♕f7!) 11.gxh4 ♕f8 12.h5 (12.♕xf5 ♕e7!) 12...♕g8 13.♕xf5 ♕f7!=

9... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

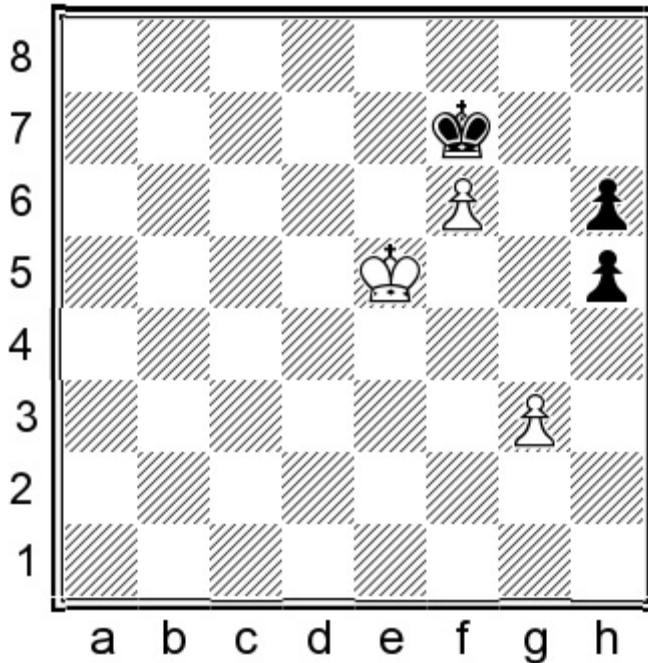
10... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ h4 13.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15.h5O+-

11. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f6O$ 12... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ h4 14.gxh4

White has achieved his aim – the enemy king cannot go to e7 now.

14... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 16.h5!O 16... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d6!!$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 18.h6!, etc.

The only defense left to examine involves Black holding on to both h-pawns: 10... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ h6 12. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15.f5 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 16.f6.



I-189

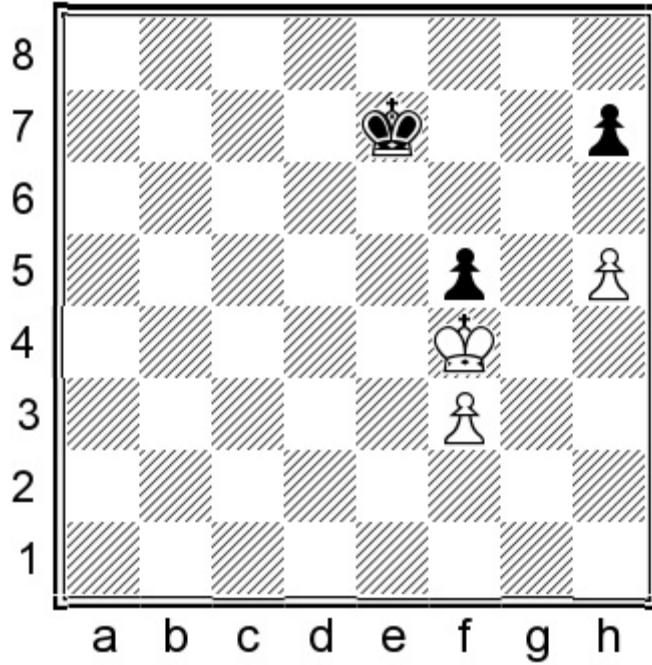
B

With the pawn pushed up to h6, 16...h4 17.gxh4 is now useless: at a minimum, White gets the winning position from the game Fahrni-Alapin. On the other hand, we have practically the same situation on the board now – the only difference being that the e6-square, as is easily seen, corresponds to f8, not e8; and that means the e5-square corresponds to e8. So the familiar triangulation decides.

16... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e5!O$ 19... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (19... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 20. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 21.f7+ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f6O$ 22...h4 23.gxh4 h5 24. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$

Tragicomедies

Azmaiparashvili – Eolian
USSR ch tt 1979



1-190

W

1.♔g5??

White wins by 1.♔xf5! ♔f7 2.f4 ♔e7 3.♔e5! 3...♔f7 4.♔d6!!

1.♔g5?? ♔f8 2.♔xf5 ♔f7??

2...♔e7! 3.f4 ♔f7=

3.♔g4??

The comedy of errors continues! Of course, either 3.f4 or 3.♔e5 was correct.

3...♔f6??

The king steps upon a mined square – one he should only have gone to after f3-f4. Black draws after either 3...♔e6! (4.♔g5 ♔f7!; 4.f4 ♔f6!), or 3...♔f8!

4.♔f4

4.f4!O was simpler: next move, the white king advances, seizing the opposition. For example:
4...♔e7 5.♔g5! ♔f7 (5...♔e6 6.♔h6) 6.♔f5, etc.

4...♔f7?!

4...♔e6!? would not have helped, in view of 5.♔g4!O (5.♔g5? ♔f7=) 5...♔f6 (5...♔e7 6.♔f5!) 6.f4!+–

5.♔f5??

And once again, White misses the opportunity: 5.♔e5! ♔e7 6.f4O+–

5...♔e7 6.♔e5 ♔f7 7.♔d6 ♔f6 8.♔d7 ♔f7

Black also draws after 8... $\hat{Q}g5$ (or 8... $\hat{Q}f5$ 9. $\hat{Q}e7 \hat{Q}g5!$) 9. $\hat{Q}e6$ h6! 10. $\hat{Q}e5 \hat{Q}xh5$ 11.f4 $\hat{Q}g6$ 12. $\hat{Q}e6 \hat{Q}g7!$ 13. $\hat{Q}e7 \hat{Q}g6$ (the pendulum).

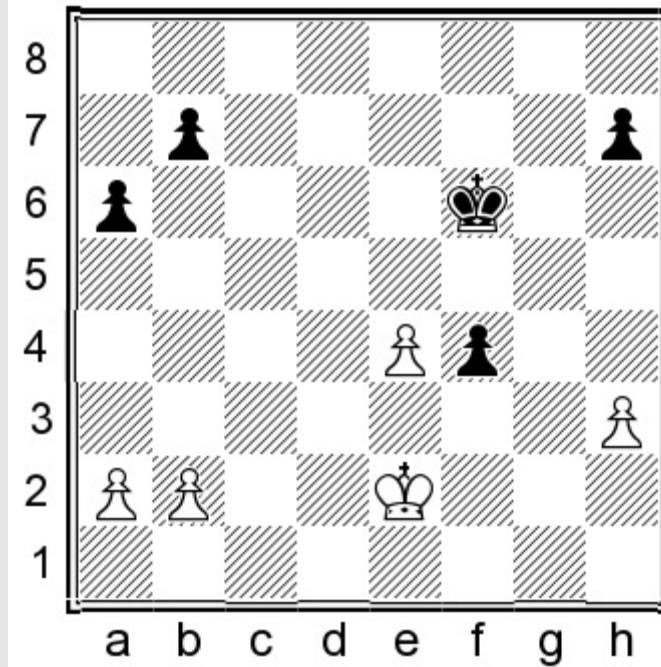
9.h6 (9.f4 $\hat{Q}f6$ 10. $\hat{Q}e8 \hat{Q}f5$ 11. $\hat{Q}f7 \hat{Q}xf4$ 12. $\hat{Q}g7 \hat{Q}f5$ 13. $\hat{Q}xh7 \hat{Q}f6=$) **9... $\hat{Q}g6!$** **10.f4** (10. $\hat{Q}e6 \hat{Q}xh6$ 11.f4 $\hat{Q}g7$ 12. $\hat{Q}e7 \hat{Q}g6!=$ – the pendulum) **10... $\hat{Q}f7!$** 10... $\hat{Q}xh6?$ 11.f5+–) **11.f5 $\hat{Q}f6$** Draw

This example demonstrates how senseless the play of both sides can seem when they are unacquainted with the ideas behind a position.

Both Sides Have Reserve Tempi

In many cases, it is not hard to establish the number of reserve tempi available for both sides (as it was, for example in the ending Kachiani-Maric, from diagram 1-174). However, there are far more complex situations as well.

Šveida – Sika
Brno 1929



1-191

Steinitz's rule tells us that, as far as reserve tempi go, White stands better on the queenside, while Black is better on the kingside. The following bit of advice will help you select the optimal strategy for such situations: ***Try to equalize, as quickly as possible, the situation on your “unfavorable” side.***

Whoever has the move in the above position will succeed in executing the principle outlined above, and will win.

Let's suppose it is Black to move as in the game.

1... $\hat{Q}e5$ 2. $\hat{Q}f3$ a5!

The pawns retaining the right to move either one or two squares should be left alone.

3.h4

3.a4 is met by 3...h6! The game continued 3.b3 b5! 4.a3 (4.h4 b4 5.h5 h6+) 4...a4 5.bxa4 bxa4 6.h4 h5 and White resigned.

3...a4 4.h5 h6 5.b4 axb3 (5...a3 6.b5 b6) 6.axb3 b6! 7.b4 b5+

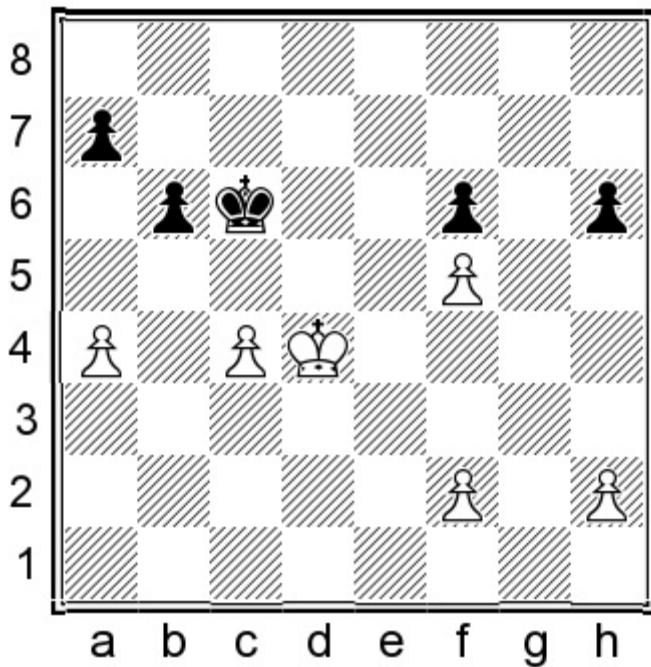
Now let's see what happens with White to move.

1.♔f3 ♔e5 2.h4! (but not 2.b4? h6!) **2...a5 3.h5 a4** (3...h6 4.a4) **4.h6! b6** (4...a3 5.bxa3 b5 6.a4 bxa4 7.a3) **5.b4! axb3** (5...a3 6.b5) **6.axb3 b5 7.b4○ 7...♔e6** (7...♔f6 8.♔xf4 ♔g6 9.♔e5! ♔xh6 10.♔f6+–) **8.♔xf4 ♔f6 9.e5+ ♔g6 10.♔e4 ♔xh6 11.♔d5 ♔g7 12.♔d6 h5 13.e6+–**

Tragicomедies

Draško – Vratonjic

Yugoslavia tt 1997



1-192

W

1.f4??

An awful move! Without any need, White gives away two reserve tempi. The obvious drawing line was 1.♔d3 ♔c5 2.♔c3 h5 3.h4 a6 4.f3 a5 5.f4=

1.f4?? ♔d6 2.♔d3 ♔c5 3.♔c3 h5 4.♔b3 (4.h4 a5○) 4...h4 5.♔c3 h3 6.♔b3 a6

After 6...♔d4? 7.♔b4 a6 8.a5! bxa5+ 9.♔xa5 ♔xc4 10.♔xa6 ♔d4, White's king is just in time to get

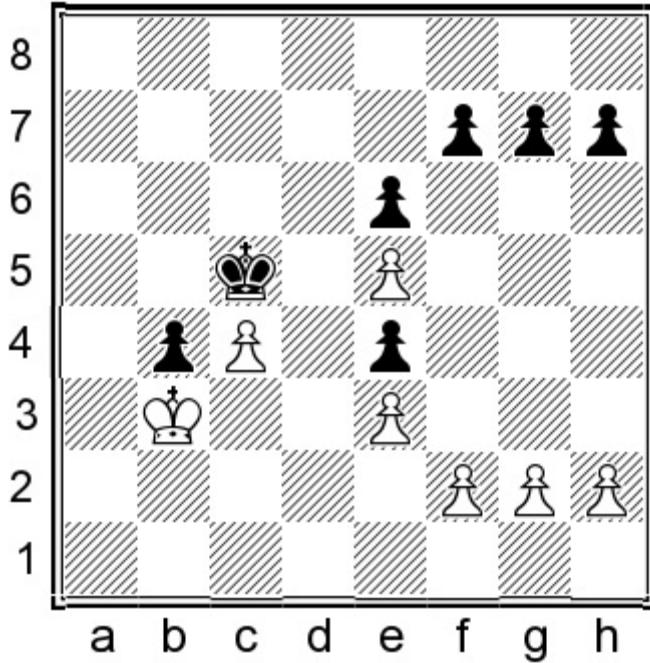
back to the kingside: 11.♔b5 ♔e4 12.♔c4 ♔xf5 13.♔d3 ♔xf4 14.♔e2=

7.a5 (7.♔c3 a5O–+) 7...bxa5 8.♔a4 ♔xc4 9.♔xa5 ♔d4 10.♔xa6 ♔e4 11.♔b5 ♔xf5 White resigned.

With the following difficult, but beautiful example, I wish to close this chapter devoted to pawn endgames. The comments are based on those of Lindgren in *Informant* 74.

Laveryd – Wikström

Umeå 1997



I-193

B?

How should this game end?

On the queenside, the two kings have already occupied the mined squares b3 and c5. It would seem that the side (let's say, Black) that first runs out of pawn moves will lose. So the correct answer – that the position is a draw – appears paradoxical.

The first question is: How is Black to avoid losing immediately? For 1...f6? (or 1...f5?) is completely hopeless in view of 2.exf6 gxf6 3.g4!

1...h5!

It turns out that, after the natural 2.h4? it is not White who places his opponent in zugzwang – he falls into it himself: 2...g5! 3.hxg5 h4O

By the way, this example fully deserves to be placed in “Tragicomedies,” since the actual continuation was 1...h6?? 2.h3?? (2.g4! g6 3.h4+–; or 2...f5 3.exf6 gxf6 4.h4+–) 2...h5!–+ 3.h4 g5! 4.g3 g4, and White resigned.

1...h5! 2.h3!

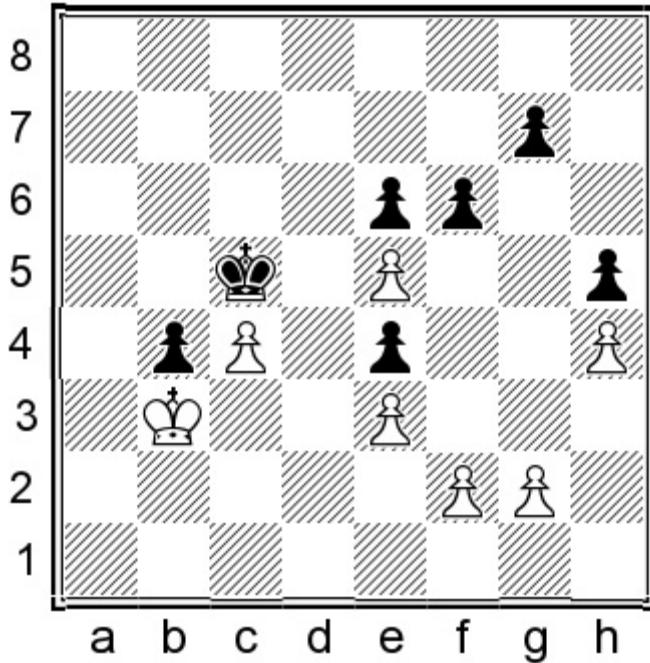
The only move! We already know that 2.h4? does not work; and 2.f4? exf3 3.gxf3 h4 4.h3 f6 (or 4...f5) and 2.g3? f6 (2...f5) are both bad. But now, Black once again faces a tough defensive task.

2...g5? loses at once to 3.g3, and 2...f5? to 3.h4. No better is 2...h4? 3.g3! hxg3 (3...g5 4.g4) 4.fxg3 f5 5.exf6 gxf6 6.h4. And 2...g6? is elegantly refuted by 3.g4! (but not by 3.h4? g5!) 3...hxg4 4.h4!

So there is only one move left.

2...f6! 3.h4!

Of course not 3.exf6? gxf6; and it is not difficult to see that White is the one in zugzwang. But now what does Black do?



I-194

B?

3...fxe5 is met by 4.g4!; and if 3...f5, then 4.f4! exf3 5.gxf3 g5 (5...f4 6.exf4 g6 7.f5) 6.hxg5 h4 7.g6 h3 8.g7 h2 9.g8=Q h1=Q 10.Qf8+ ♕c6 11.Qd6+ with an easily won queen endgame.

One must have an unusual gift for the fantastic (or know some of Grigoriev's studies) to find the idea of a stalemate haven in the middle of the board! 3...fxe5! 4.g4! g6! (4...hxg4? 5.h5+) 5.g5Q 5...Qb6! (5...Qd6!) 6.Qxb4 Qc6 7.c5 Qd5!! 8.Qb5 stalemate.

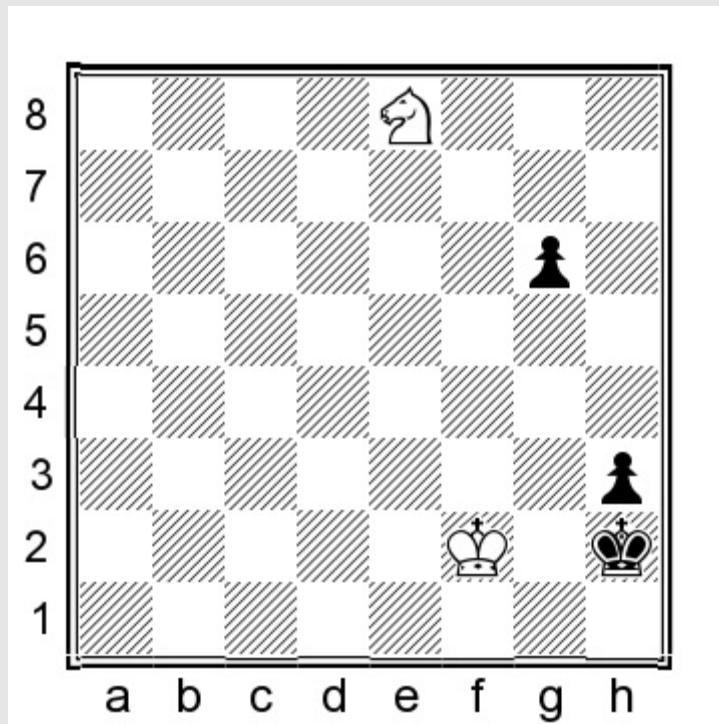
Chapter 2 Knight versus Pawns

King in the Corner

Mate

If the defender's king is trapped in the corner, sometimes even a lone knight is able to mate.

A.Salvio 1634



2-1

White to move wins by 1. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1\Theta$ 3... $h2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ But even with Black to move, the game lasts only a little longer.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h1$

1... $g5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1\Theta$ 4... $h2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$

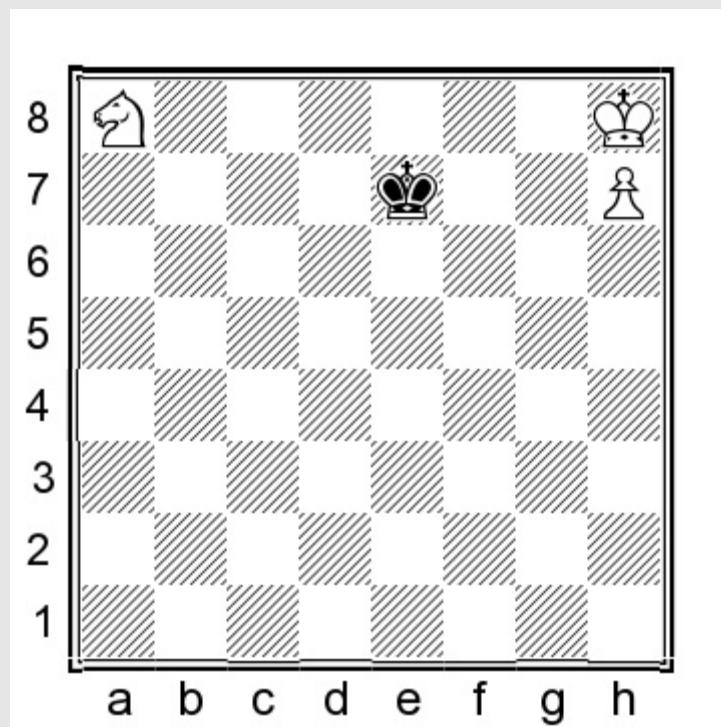
1... $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$

2... $h2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $g5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $g3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#$; 2... $g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4\Theta$ 3... $h2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$

3. ♔g4+ ♕h1 4. ♔f1 g5 5. ♔f2 0 5...h2 6. ♔e3 g4 7. ♔f1 g3+ 8. ♔xg3#

Drawn Positions

Knight and pawn win easily against a lone king (that is, of course, so long as the pawn is not lost). But there are exceptions.



2-2

B?

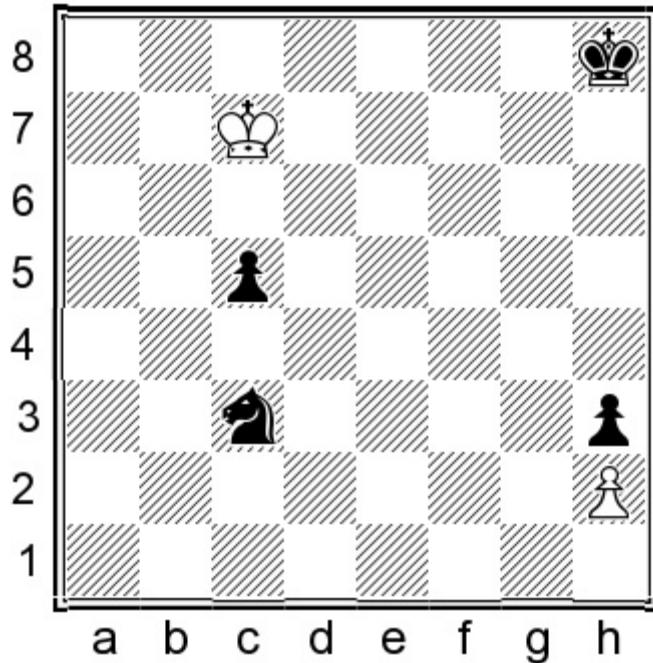
Black saves himself by squeezing the opposing king in the corner. He must only be careful to choose the correct square for his king. 1... ♔f8? loses after 2. ♔c7 ♔f7 3. ♔e6 0

1... ♔f7! 2. ♔c7 ♔f8 3. ♔e6+ ♔f7=

It is useful to note that the knight (unlike the other pieces) cannot “lose” a move in order to give the move to the opponent – the knight cannot triangulate.

We shall learn about other drawing situations by analyzing the following example:

V.Chekhover 1952*



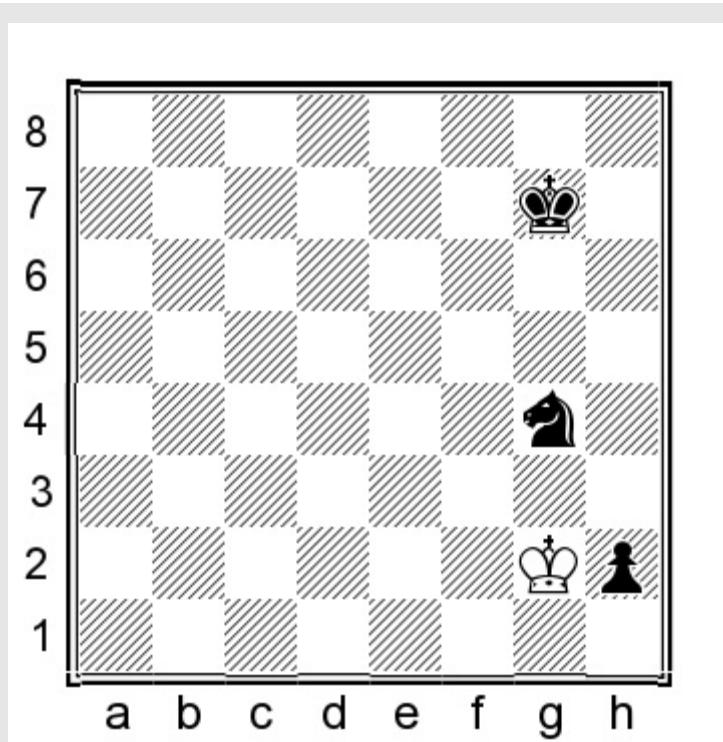
2-3

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (1. $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$;

1. $\mathbb{Q}b6?$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$)

1. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $h2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

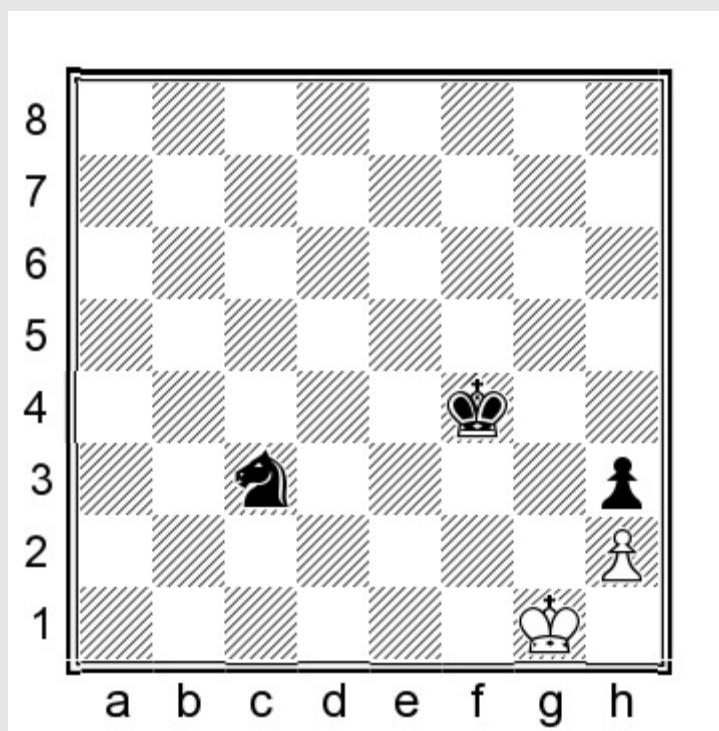


2-4

We may conclude that *in those cases where the rook pawn has gone too far (in other words, to the*

next-to-last rank), the position is drawn. The knight could also be at f1 (5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h2 9. $\mathbb{Q}g2$) without affecting the outcome.

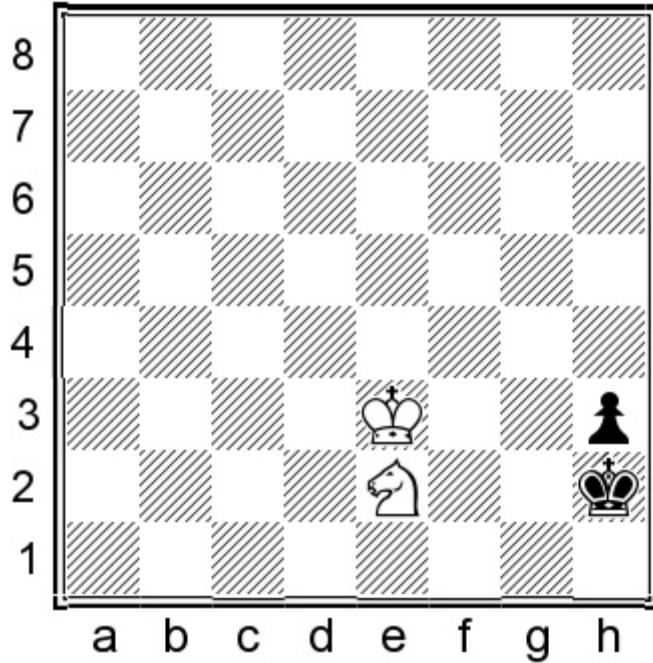
Another try for Black is: 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$



2-5

It is impossible either to drive the king from the corner or to mate it – the best Black can achieve is stalemate.

Exercises



2-6

2/1

W?

Show/Hide Solution

2/1. A.Troitsky 1906

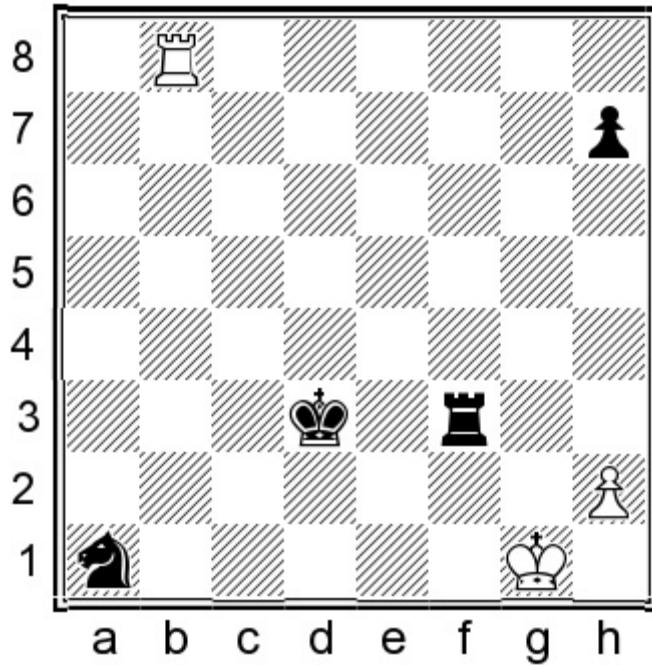
1. ♕f3!

Rather than 1. ♕f2? ♔h1 2. ♔g3+ ♔h2 3. ♔e4 ♔h1○ and White fails to mate. As we already know, a knight cannot “lose” a tempo.

1. ♕f3! ♔h1 2. ♕f2 ♔h2 3. ♔c3

The goal is the f1-square. It can also be reached via ♔d4-f5-e3-f1.

3... ♔h1 4. ♔e4 ♔h2 5. ♔d2 ♔h1 6. ♔f1○ 6...h2 7. ♔g3#



2-7

2/2

W?

Show/Hide Solution

2/2. L.Kubbels 1934 (adapted as an exercise)

White can exchange rooks by force if he attacks the knight. But first, in order to make this endgame drawn, the h-pawn should be enticed to h3.

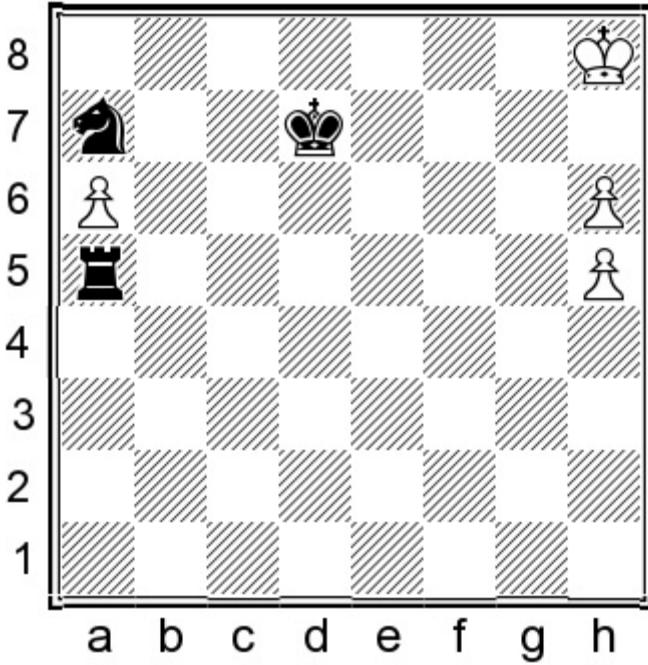
1. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ $h6$

1... $\mathbb{Q}h3?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b1$, and there is no 2... $\mathbb{Q}c2??$ in view of 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$

2. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $h5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $h4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$

It turns out that 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ also draws, but it is more complicated.

4... $h3$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $h3=$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h1(f1)=$



2-8

2/3

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

2/3. P.Faragó 1943

1.h7? $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 2.h6 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3.a7 $\mathbb{Q}e5(d8)$ loses immediately, hence White's initial move is forced.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}g5+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$

2. $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ is incorrect: 2... $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. h7 $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}h8!$ 7. h6 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. a7 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. a8= \mathbb{Q} xa8 10. h8= \mathbb{Q} xh8 11. $\mathbb{Q}xh8 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h7 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h8 \mathbb{Q}f8$ 14. h7 $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ Checkmating the white king in the corner with the knight is Black's goal in all cases, while White has to find a way to avoid this sorrowful outcome.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

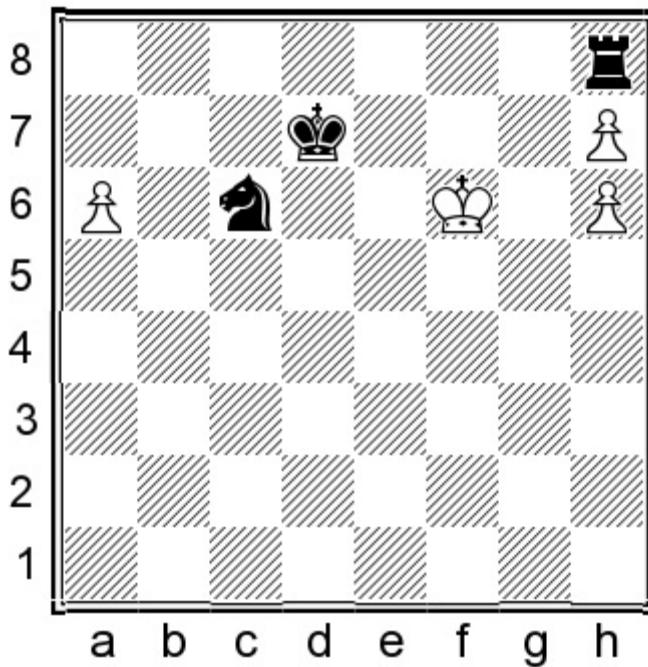
2... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. h7 leads to nothing, for example: 4... $\mathbb{Q}h3!?$ 5. h8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h6!=$ (rather than 6. $\mathbb{Q}h7?$ $\mathbb{Q}f7-$).

3. h7!

The king prefers to stay on f6 where it deprives the black knight of the important e5-square. After 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ White can no longer hold the game: 3... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ (the rook will be sacrificed in the corner only when the white pawn comes to h7) 4. h7 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. h6 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6. a7 $\mathbb{Q}e5+!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}d6!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}e7$, and we have already seen what follows. By the way, another winning method exists: 8... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 9. a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 10. h8= \mathbb{Q}

$\mathbb{E}a7+!?$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (12.h7 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{E}a8+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ and 15... $\mathbb{E}xh8$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}f6$, and White has no satisfactory defense against the threat 13... $\mathbb{E}f7\#$

3... $\mathbb{E}h8$ (3... $\mathbb{E}a8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7=$) 4.h6! (rather than 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5.h6 $\mathbb{Q}c6-$ again) 4... $\mathbb{Q}c6$



I6-32

W?

5.a7!

Before White sends his king to the corner he wants to get rid of the a-pawn (5... $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7=$). Of course, Black does not take the pawn but his knight cannot go to e5; it must occupy a less favorable square.

5... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$

6.a8= \mathbb{W} ? is premature: 6... $\mathbb{E}xa8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$.

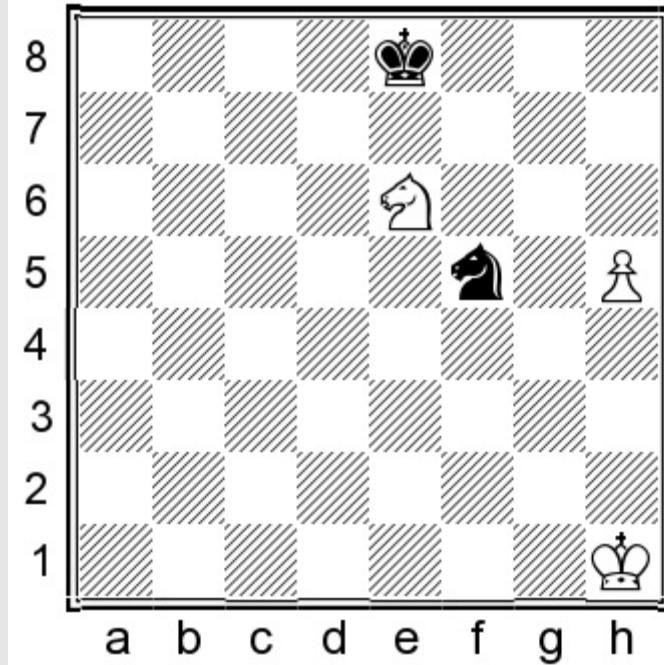
6... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7.a8= \mathbb{W} ! $\mathbb{E}xa8$ 8.h8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{E}xh8$

White's last opportunity for a mistake: 9. $\mathbb{Q}xh8?$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (we know this position from exercise 2/1) 10... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 14.h7 $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$

9.h7!=

Knight vs. Rook Pawn

The closer the passed pawn to the edge of the board, the more difficulty the knight has dealing with it. The rook pawns are especially dangerous. Here is a simple, yet instructive example.



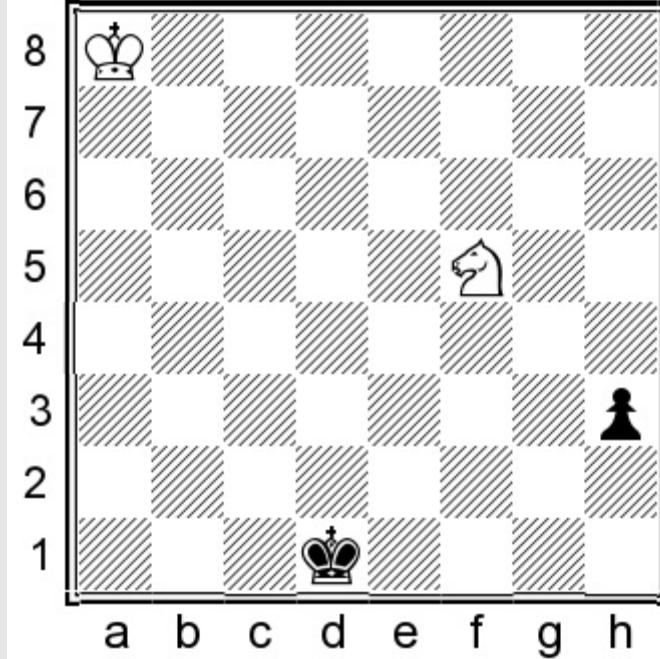
2-9

W?

1. ♔g7+! ♔xg7 2. h6 ♔f7 3. h7+—

Note, that with White's king at g2, the position would be drawn: the pawn is stopped after, for instance, 2... ♔e6 3. h7 ♔f4+ and 4... ♔g6. *In many instances, the knight can win the necessary tempo with a check to the enemy king.*

The knight can hold a rook pawn without the king's help, if it “touches” any square in the pawn's path, except the final, corner square.



2-10

W?

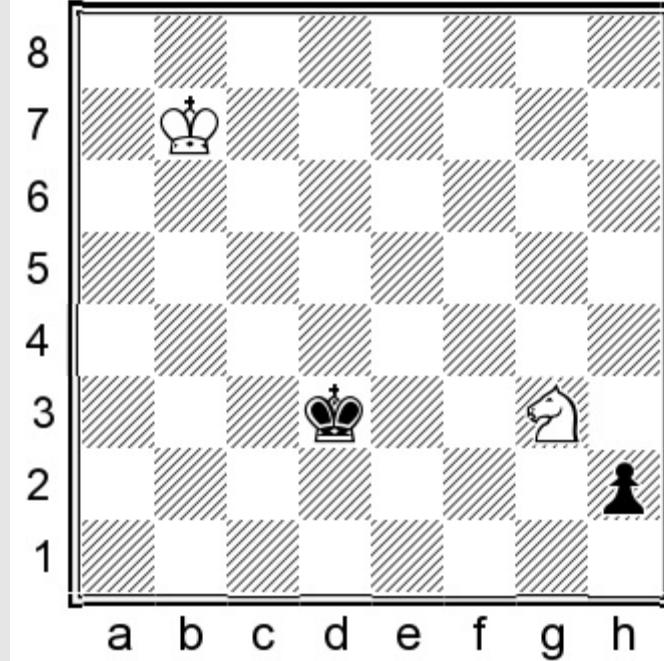
1. $\mathbb{Q}g3?$ h2 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ is hopeless. The knight should aim for h2, not h1.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e3+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (5...h2 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1+$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$, etc.

I should also point out that even with the knight in the corner, the position is certainly not always hopeless. True, the knight can no longer deal with the pawn by itself; but sometimes the king can come to its rescue in time.

In the starting position, let's move the black king to d3. Now the knight cannot get to h2 (1. $\mathbb{Q}h6?$ h2 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ h1=威+; the pawn queens with check).

So White has to play 1. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (threatening 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$) 1...h2 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$.



2-11

B

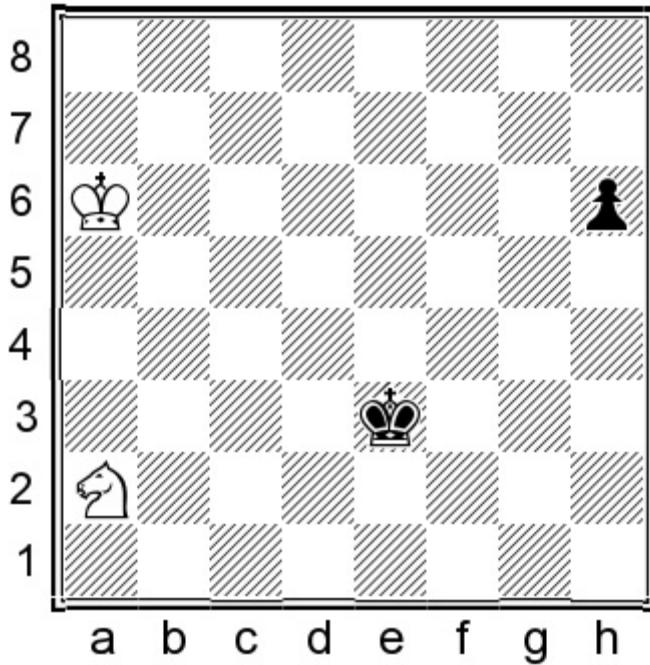
The knight has set up a *barrier* against the enemy king, which not only cannot cross the e2- and e4-squares, but also is denied e3 and d2 (because of the forking $\mathbb{Q}f1+$). ***Knight forks are a vital technique in knight endgames.***

In order to attack the knight, the king will have to lose time with the outflanking ... $\mathbb{Q}c2-d1-e1-f2$, or ... $\mathbb{Q}d4-e5-f4$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$

2... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4=$ (or 6. $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3=$).

N.Grigoriev 1932



2-12

W?

The knight goes after the h-pawn, while the black king stands athwart his path. Which side will win out?

1. ♔b4! h5 2. ♔c6!

2. ♔d5+? ♕f3! 3. ♔c7 h4 4. ♔e6 ♕g4! loses for White.

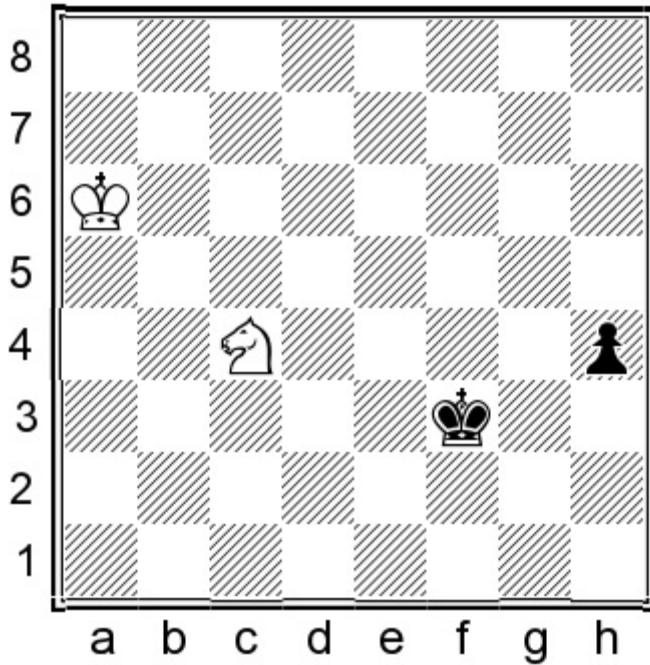
2...♕e4!

Certainly not 2...h4? 3. ♔e5 h3 (3...♕f4 4. ♔g6+ and 5. ♔xh4) 4. ♔g4+ ♕f4 5. ♔h2=

The king restricts the knight best from a distance of one square diagonally (and also two squares away on a file or a rank).

This generalization may be illustrated by the variation 3. ♔d8? h4 4. ♔e6 ♕f5! 5. ♔d4+ ♕g4+

3. ♔a5!! h4 4. ♔c4 (4. ♔b3? ♕e3) 4...♕f3!? (4...h3 5. ♔d2+ ♕e3 6. ♔f1+)



2-13
W?

One last little task: to choose between 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ and 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$. On 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2+?$ Black responds 5... $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ h3 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3+$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ h3 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ – and since the knight cannot reach the h2-square, White loses.

5. $\mathbb{Q}e5+! \mathbb{Q}g3$

On 5... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ White plays 6. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ while other retreats allow the knight to get to g4.

6. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ h3 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3=$

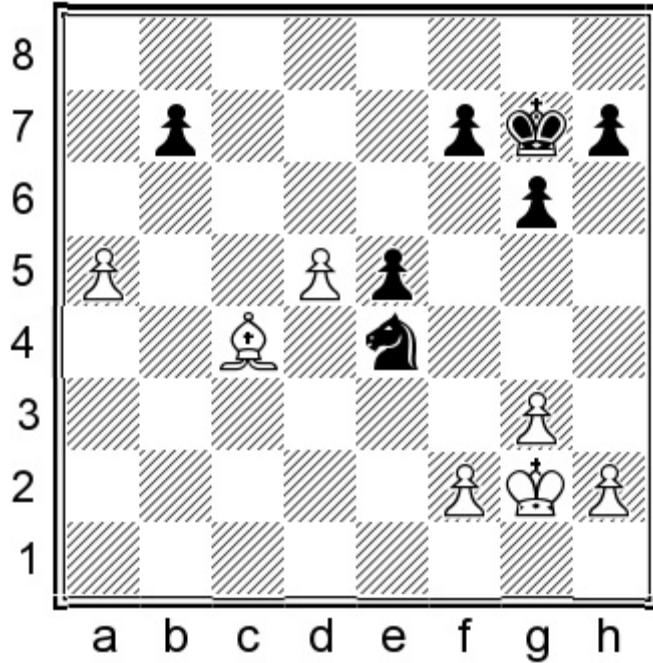
It is interesting that the only way to refute 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2+?$ (instead of 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6!)$ is by 2... $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ The natural reply 2... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ allows White the same sort of saving maneuver as in the main variation: 3. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ h4 (3... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ h4 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ h3 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5+)$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4=$

Let's think about the strategic basis for White's saving plan. His knight goes to the h2-square via g4 or f1. Each of those routes individually might be interdicted by the king. The c4-square is key, because both routes intersect here: c4-e5-g4 and c4-d2-f1. Black cannot prevent the double threat.

Double attack is one of the most effective methods of struggle in chess. Along with tactical double attacks (such as knight forks), it is important to learn the use of “strategic double attacks” as well – moves which further two (or more) goals simultaneously.

In addition to the study we have just examined, this strategy might also be illustrated by some of the pawn endgames examined earlier, such as Weenink's position (diagram 1-15) or Neuenschwander's position (diagram 1-31).

Exercises



2-14
2/4
W?

Show/Hide Solution

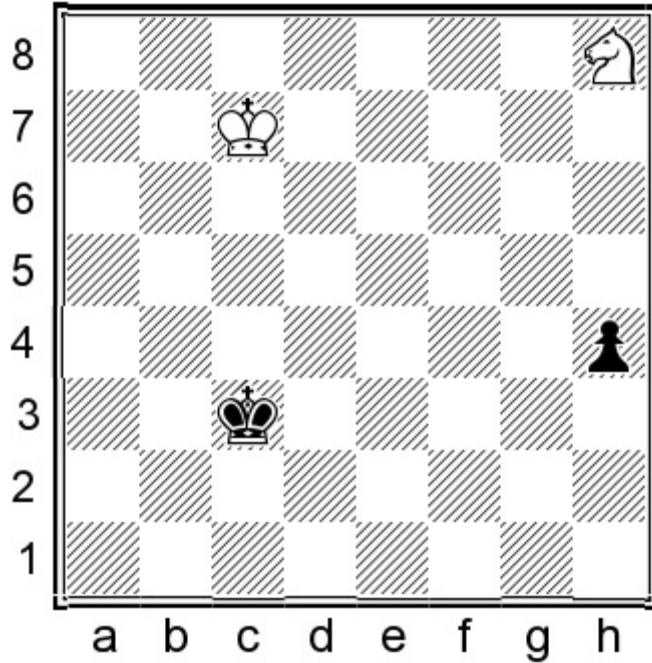
2/4. Mankus-Fokin, Vilnius 1977

If Black had had time to block the pawn by playing 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$, he would have stood better.

1.d6! $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5\pm$

White's next move is 2...-- 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7!$, and the bishop cannot be captured because White promotes after 3... $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 4.a6. But White still has an obvious advantage even if Black does not take the bishop. In this sort of open position, with a distant passed pawn as well, a bishop is much stronger than a knight.

2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ f5 5.h4 h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ (7.a6+–) 7... $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ gives drawing chances) 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (9...g5 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 11.a6 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$ and White won (if 12... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$, then 13. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ and 14. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ is decisive).



2-15
2/5
W?

Show/Hide Solution

2/5. N.Grigoriev 1932

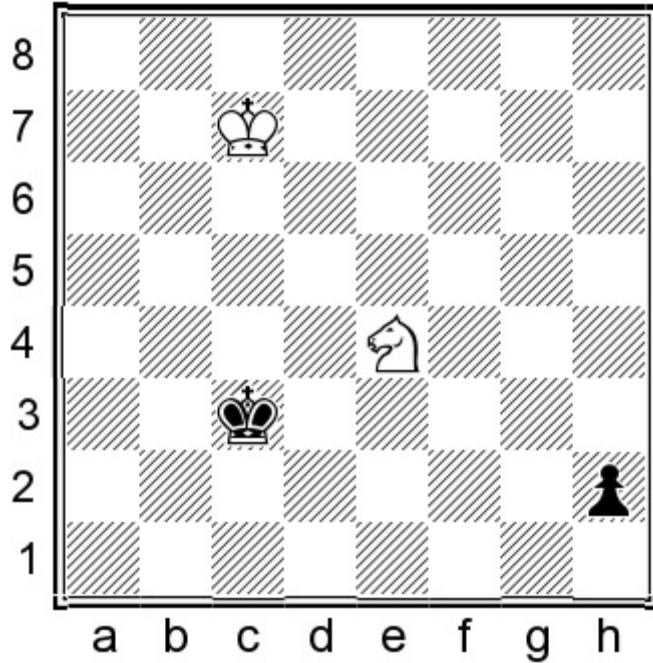
The knight cannot arrive at h2 in time – at most, it can only prevent a promotion by taking the h1-square under control. Then White's only hope is to create a barrier that will make it difficult for the black king to approach.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g6?$ h3 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ h2 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ does not work. Let us try another route.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ h3 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$

2. $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ fails to 2... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+$

2...h2 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$



16-33

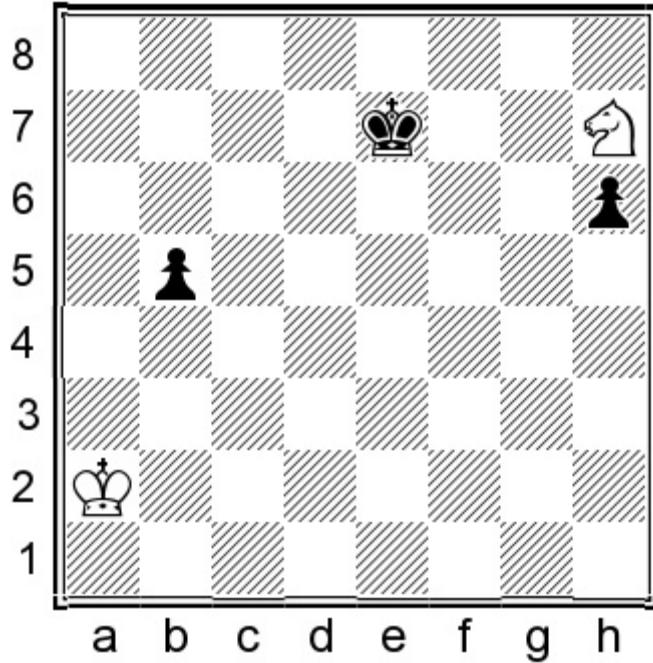
B

Where should the black king go? After 3... $\hat{Q}d3$?! 4. $\hat{Q}g3$!, a barrier arises, as we already know. If 3... $\hat{Q}d4$, then 4. $\hat{Q}g3$? is bad: 4... $\hat{Q}e5$! 5. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}f4$ 6. $\hat{Q}h1$ $\hat{Q}f3$ and the white king fails to get to f2, but White has 4. $\hat{Q}f2$! $\hat{Q}c3$ (both 4... $\hat{Q}e3$ and 4... $\hat{Q}e5$ are met with 5. $\hat{Q}g4+$) 5. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{Q}d2$ 6. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}e2$ 7. $\hat{Q}h1$ $\hat{Q}f3$ 8. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{Q}g2$ 9. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}xh1$ 10. $\hat{Q}f2=$

3... $\hat{Q}c2$ 4. $\hat{Q}g3$!

4. $\hat{Q}f2$? $\hat{Q}d2$ leads to the line from the previous annotation, but with an extra tempo for Black.

4... $\hat{Q}d1$ 5. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{Q}e1$ 6. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}f2$ 7. $\hat{Q}f4=$



2-16

2/6

W?

Show/Hide Solution

2/6. D.Gurgenidze 1970 (after N. Grigoriev, 1934)

White can easily parry the threat to the h7-knight by approaching the b5-pawn with his king, e.g., 1.♔b3(a3) 1...♕f7 2.♔b4 ♕g7 3.♔xb5 ♕xh7 4.♔c4=. However, Black has a more dangerous plan, namely 1...♕e6!, and if 2.♔b4, then 2...♕f5 3.♔xb5 h5+. Since the white king fails to enter the square of the h-pawn after 1...♕e6, the task of fighting against it must be taken up by the knight: 2.♘f8+. It is highly important to foresee its entire route, because the correct first move can only be discovered in this way.

1.♔a3!!

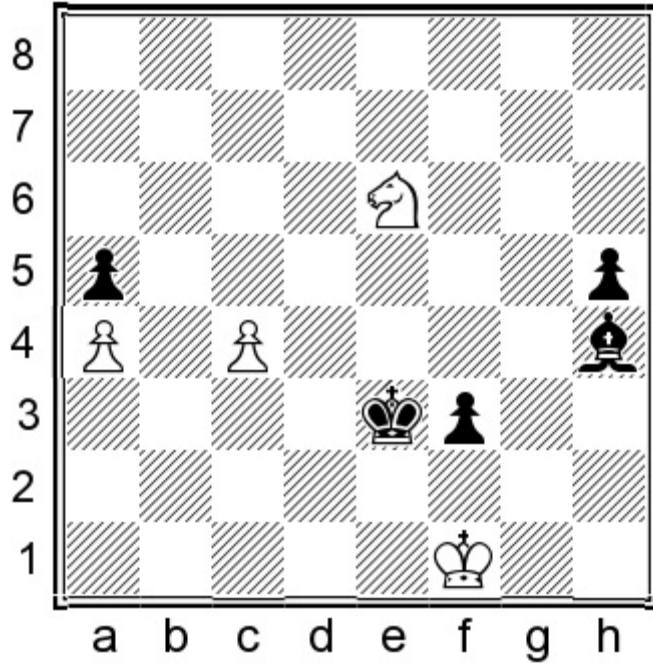
Only here, to keep the b3-square free. Both 1.♔b3? ♕e6!

and 1.♔b2? ♕f7! are losing.

1.♔a3!! ♕e6! 2.♘f8+! ♕f5 3.♘d7 h5 4.♘c5 h4 5.♘b3!!

5.♘d3? h3 6.♘f2 h2 7.♘b4 ♕f4+

5...h3 6.♘d2 h2 (6...♕f4 7.♘f1=) 7.♘f1 h1=威 8.♘g3+=



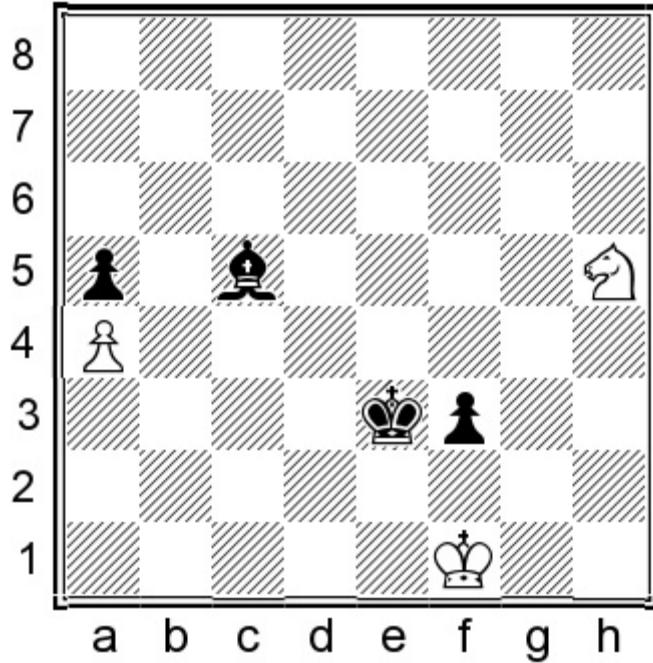
2-17
2/7
W?

Show/Hide Solution

2/7. Stangl-Schneider, Berlin 1992

In the actual game, White played 1. $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ The position after 1... $\mathbb{K}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (Δ 3... $\mathbb{Q}d3$) is definitely lost: White cannot prevent Black's king march to the queenside pawns.

3. $c5 \mathbb{Q}xc5$



16-34

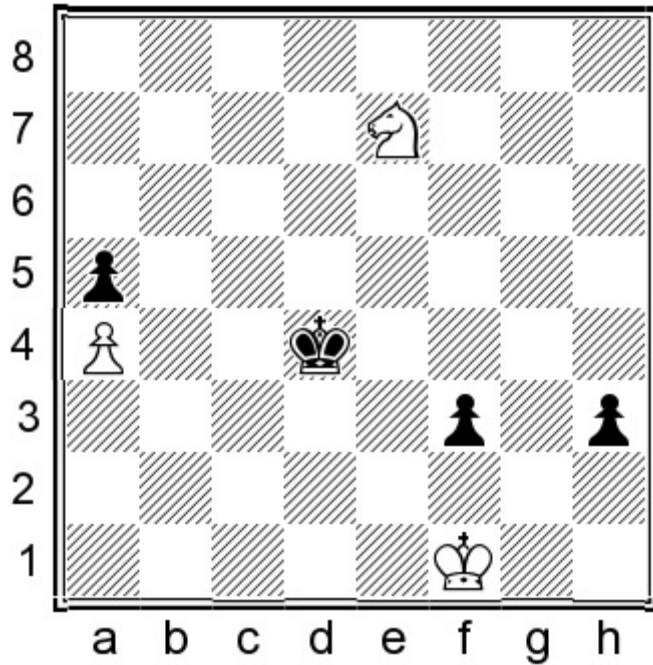
W

4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ On the more stubborn 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7!?$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$, both 5... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c6=$ and 5... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ (6... $f2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2=$ are useless. As Müller has demonstrated, Black wins after 5... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}b3+$

4... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $f2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $a4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$

White resigned. White can advance his c-pawn in order to win the bishop for it. It looks highly risky but should be checked, because the alternative is completely hopeless.

1.c5! $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 2.c6 h4 3.c7 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ h3 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h5=$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$



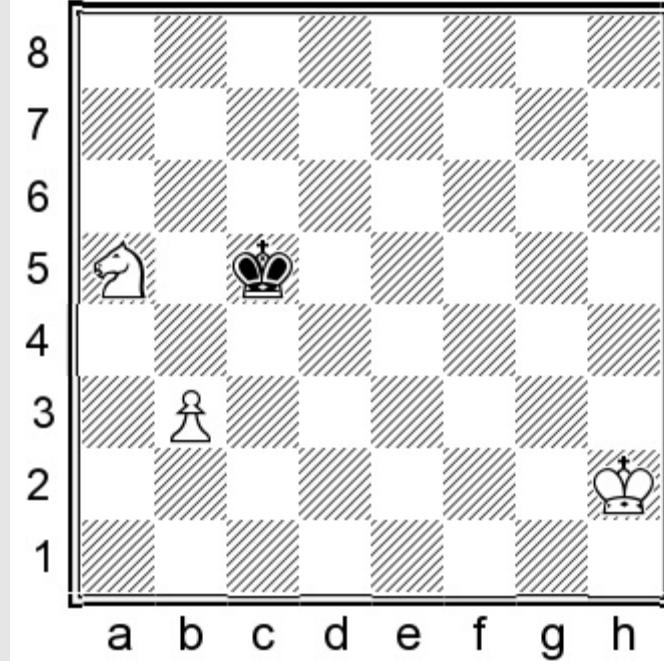
16-35

B

6...h2 (6... $\hat{Q}e4$ 7. $\hat{Q}g1!=$) **7. $\hat{Q}f5+$** $\hat{Q}c4$ **8. $\hat{Q}g3$** $\hat{Q}b4$ **9. $\hat{Q}f2$** $\hat{Q}xa4$ **10. $\hat{Q}xf3$** $\hat{Q}b3$ **11. $\hat{Q}g2$** $a4$ **12. $\hat{Q}e2$** $\hat{Q}b2$ (12... $a3$ 13. $\hat{Q}c1+$) **13. $\hat{Q}f4$** (we know this drawing position from the Grigoriev's study) **13... $\hat{Q}c3!?$** (13... $a3$ 14. $\hat{Q}d3+$) **14. $\hat{Q}d5+!$** (14. $\hat{Q}e2+?$ $\hat{Q}d2!-+$) **14... $\hat{Q}b3$** **15. $\hat{Q}f4!$** $a3$ **16. $\hat{Q}d3=$** (Dvoretsky).

The Knight Defends the Pawn

The best way for the knight to defend the passed pawn is from the rear. Here, the knight is immune from capture, since that would put the king outside the square of the passed pawn.



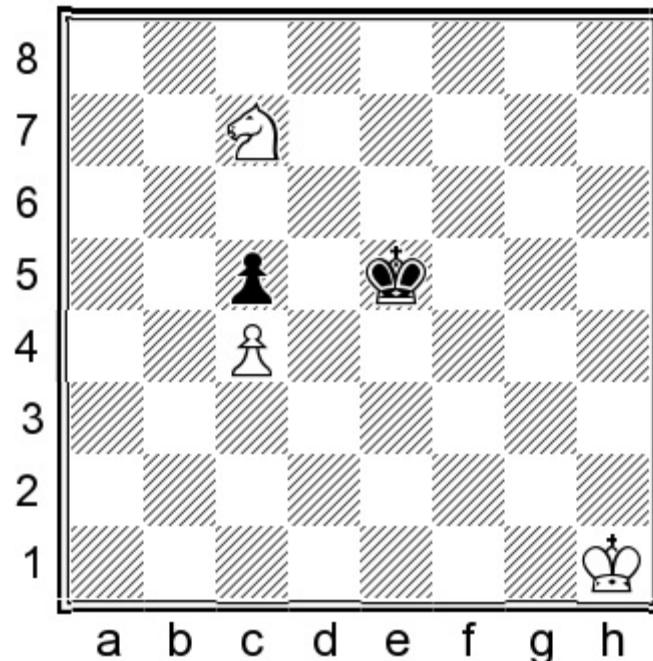
2-18

W

White parries the threat of 1... $\hat{b}b4$ with 1. $\hat{d}c4!$ $\hat{b}b4$ 2. $\hat{d}d2$ $\hat{c}c3$ 3. $\hat{g}g3+-$

The knight can easily defend its pawn if both white and black pawns are on the same file, and the pawns blockade one another.

M.Dvoretsky 2000



2-19

W

White can play either 1. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$

or 1. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ – in either case, the knight can handle it, without the king's assistance.

Let's move the pawn to c3. White's task is now more complex. He only gets a draw out of 1. $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5(d5)$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}c4$,

or 1. $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ 2. $c4$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. $c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ (here, if the king were on e5, White would win with 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$).

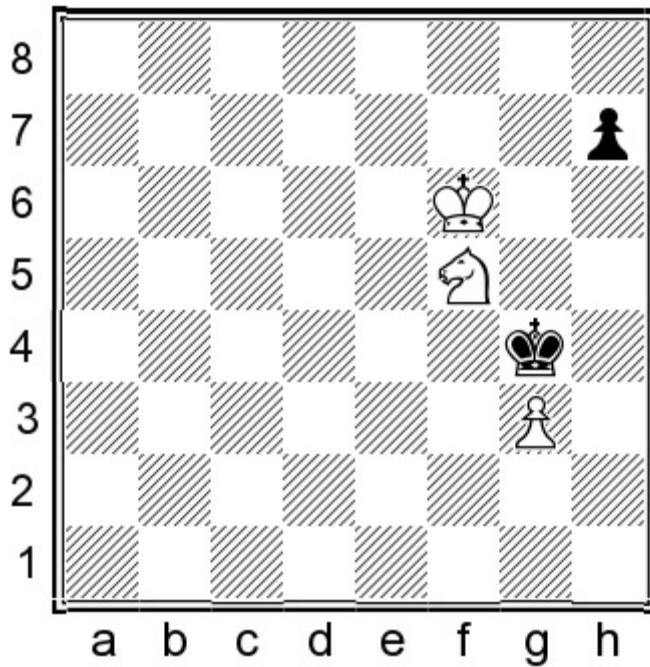
But there is a solution: 1. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $c4$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and now the simplest is 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2+-$ (the barrier).

Understandably, if we moved the starting position one file to the left, there would be no win.

If White must defend the knight with his king, then the wins come far less often. Sometimes, we get a position of reciprocal zugzwang.

Ebralidze – Bondarevsky

USSR ch, Tbilisi 1937



2-20

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$

Seizing the opposition is important when the black pawn is at h5 – consequently, it follows that with the pawn at h7, White needs the anti-opposition. In the actual game, White erred, missing the win:

1. $\hat{\Delta}e6?$ $\hat{\Delta}g5!$ 2. $\hat{\Delta}e5$ h5 3. $\hat{\Delta}e6$ (3. $\hat{\Delta}e4$ $\hat{\Delta}g4$) 3... $\hat{\Delta}g6!$ 4. $\hat{\Delta}e3$ $\hat{\Delta}g5$. Draw, in view of 5. $\hat{\Delta}e5$ h4 6. g4 h3.

1. $\hat{\Delta}e5!$ $\hat{\Delta}g5$

Other moves do not help either:

1... h5 2. $\hat{\Delta}f6$ (or 2. $\hat{\Delta}e4$);

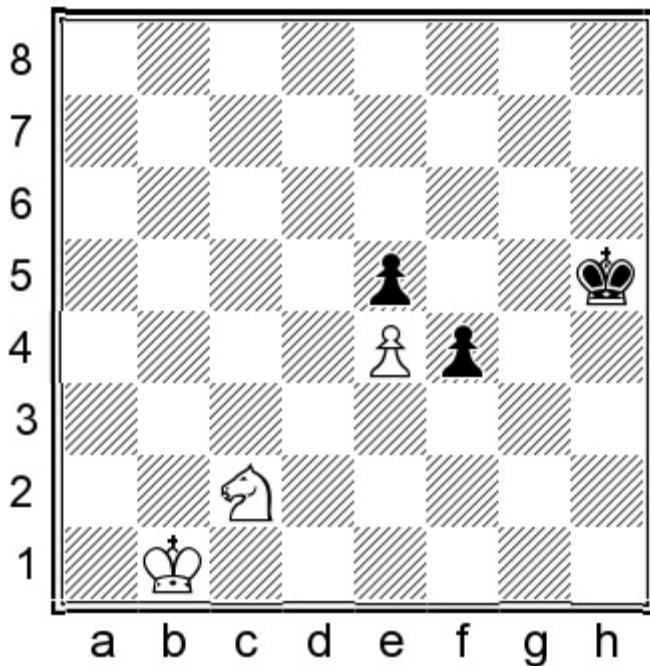
1... h6 2. $\hat{\Delta}f6!$ $\hat{\Delta}h5$ 3. $\hat{\Delta}xh6!$ $\hat{\Delta}xh6$ 4. g4;

1... $\hat{\Delta}f3$ 2. $\hat{\Delta}e6!$ $\hat{\Delta}g4$ 3. $\hat{\Delta}f6$ (the king triangulates) 3... $\hat{\Delta}h5$ (3... h5 4. $\hat{\Delta}g6$) 4. $\hat{\Delta}e3$.

2. $\hat{\Delta}e3$ h5 3. $\hat{\Delta}e4$ (3. $\hat{\Delta}f5$) 3... h4 4. g4 h3 5. $\hat{\Delta}f3+$

And now I offer for your enjoyment, the analysis of a very deep and elegant study.

D.Blundell 1995

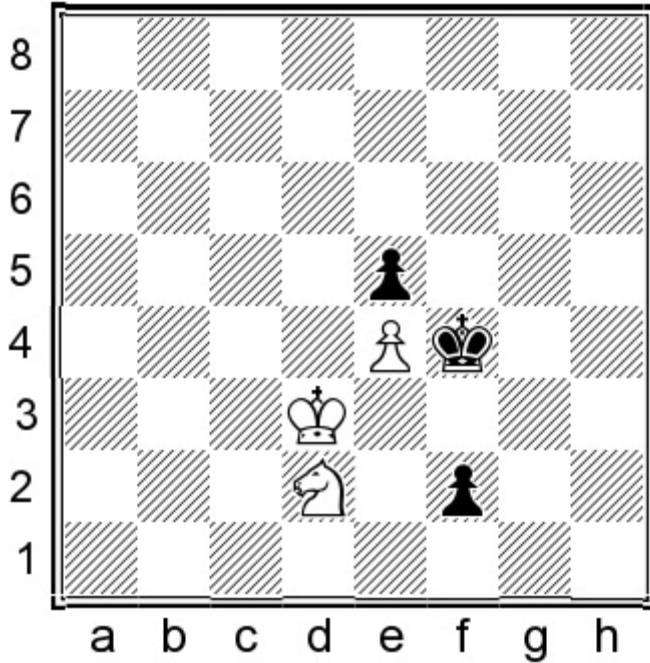


2-21

W?

Let's first examine White's most natural plan: approaching the pawns with his king.

1. $\hat{\Delta}c1?$ $\hat{\Delta}g4$ 2. $\hat{\Delta}d2$ f3 3. $\hat{\Delta}e3+$ (3. $\hat{\Delta}e3$ f2! 4. $\hat{\Delta}xf2$ $\hat{\Delta}f4=$) 3... $\hat{\Delta}f4$ 4. $\hat{\Delta}d3$ f2 5. $\hat{\Delta}f1$ $\hat{\Delta}f3$ 6. $\hat{\Delta}d2+$ $\hat{\Delta}f4!$



2-22

W

We have reached the reciprocal zugzwang position fundamental to this endgame. Black to move loses ($7\dots\ddot{\text{g}}3$ $8.\ddot{\text{d}}e2$). But it is

White's move here, and $7.\ddot{\text{d}}e2$ is met by $7\dots f1=\ddot{\text{w}}+!$ $8.\ddot{\text{d}}xf1 \ddot{\text{e}}3$ $9.\ddot{\text{d}}e1 \ddot{\text{d}}3$ $10.\ddot{\text{d}}d1 \ddot{\text{e}}3$ $11.\ddot{\text{d}}c2 \ddot{\text{d}}4=$

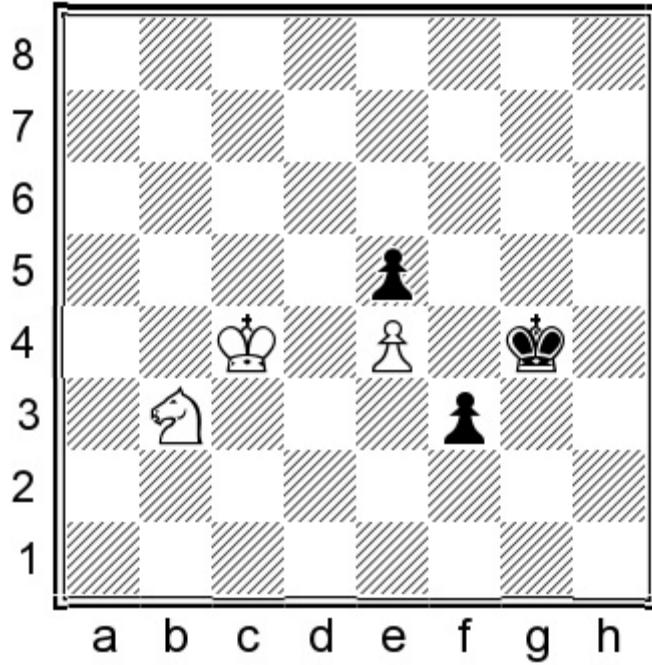
Let's try $1.\ddot{\text{d}}a3?$ $f3$ $2.\ddot{\text{d}}c4$. Now the natural $2\dots\ddot{\text{g}}4?$ leads to a loss: $3.\ddot{\text{d}}c2 \ddot{\text{g}}3$ $4.\ddot{\text{d}}c3!\text{O}$ $4\dots\ddot{\text{g}}4$ ($4\dots f2$ $5.\ddot{\text{d}}d2 \ddot{\text{f}}4$ $6.\ddot{\text{d}}d3\text{O}+-$; $4\dots\ddot{\text{f}}4$ $5.\ddot{\text{d}}d3$ $f2$ $6.\ddot{\text{d}}d2\text{O}+-$) $5.\ddot{\text{d}}xe5+!$ $\ddot{\text{f}}4$ $6.\ddot{\text{d}}d4$.

White won here only because with his king at c3 the e5-pawn could be captured with check. That can be avoided by playing $2\dots\ddot{\text{g}}5(\text{h}4)!!$ $3.\ddot{\text{d}}c2 \ddot{\text{g}}4!$ $4.\ddot{\text{d}}c3!?$ $\ddot{\text{g}}3!$ (there is also $4\dots\ddot{\text{g}}5!?$, for example, $5.\ddot{\text{d}}d2!?$ $f2$ $6.\ddot{\text{d}}e3 \ddot{\text{f}}4$ $7.\ddot{\text{d}}d3 \ddot{\text{g}}3!$ $8.\ddot{\text{d}}f1+\ddot{\text{d}}f3!$ $9.\ddot{\text{d}}d2+\ddot{\text{d}}f4$). We have reached another reciprocal zugzwang position, this time with White to move. $5.\ddot{\text{d}}d2$ runs into $5\dots\ddot{\text{f}}4$ $6.\ddot{\text{d}}d3$ $f2=$ (the main zugzwang); an equivalent line is $5.\ddot{\text{d}}d2$ $f2$ $6.\ddot{\text{d}}e2 \ddot{\text{f}}4$ $7.\ddot{\text{d}}d2$ ($7.\ddot{\text{d}}d6 \ddot{\text{g}}3$) $7\dots f1=\ddot{\text{w}}+!$ or $5.\ddot{\text{d}}d3$ $f2$ $6.\ddot{\text{d}}d2 \ddot{\text{f}}4!\text{O}$

Incidentally, looking at this variation leads us to the astonishing conclusion that **both** sides should maneuver so as not to be the first to approach the other. As soon as White plays either $\ddot{\text{d}}d2$ or $\ddot{\text{d}}d3$, he falls into zugzwang; and if Black is too hasty with either $\dots f2$ or $\dots\ddot{\text{f}}4$, the zugzwang position occurs with him to move instead. Thus, we have a case known to us from pawn endings: mined squares. However, this is the only case I know of where the squares are mined for four different pieces at once, and not for the usual two.

And now, for the solution. White must play much as in the last variation, except that he must place his knight, not on c4, but on b3, leaving the c4-square open for his king.

1. $\ddot{\text{d}}a1!!$ $f3$ 2. $\ddot{\text{d}}b3 \ddot{\text{g}}4$ 3. $\ddot{\text{d}}c2 \ddot{\text{g}}3$ 4. $\ddot{\text{d}}c3!$ $\ddot{\text{g}}4$ 5. $\ddot{\text{d}}c4!$



2-23

B

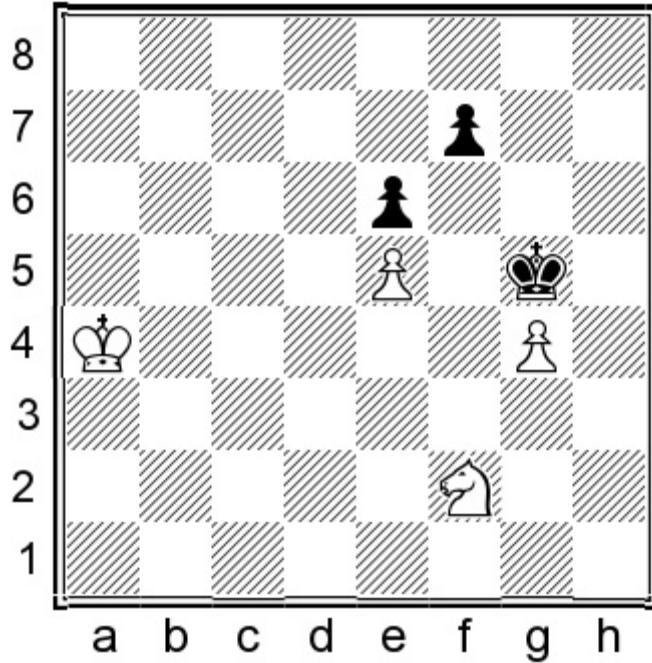
The point! Black can wait no longer: on 5... $\mathbb{Q}g3$, 6. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ f2 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1+-$ decides. He must go to the mined square first, which of course puts him into zugzwang.

5... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$; 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$) 6...f2 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2\Theta$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ is mistaken in view of 9... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ $\mathbb{Q}f4\Theta=$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3\Theta+-$

Tragicomедies

Nimzovitch – Rubinstein

Karlsbad 1911



2-24

W?

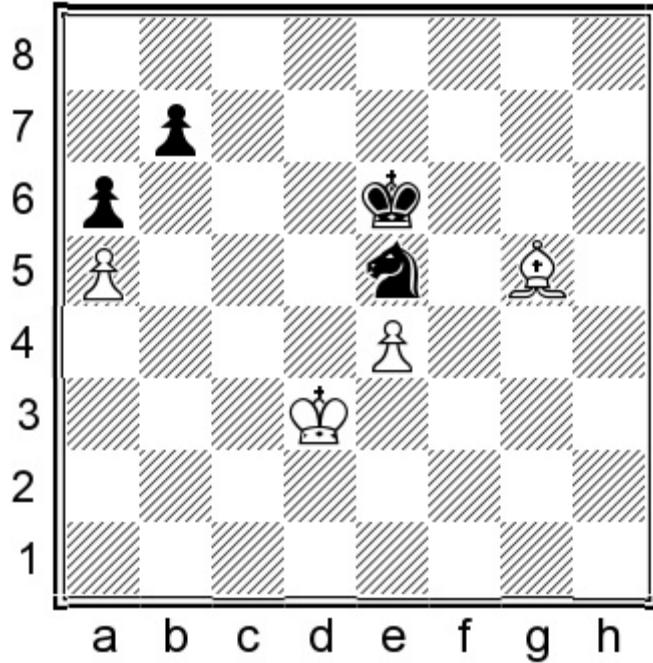
The best square for the knight would have been d7, from where it defends the e5-pawn and prevents the exchange ...f7-f6. This could easily have been achieved by 1. $\mathbb{Q}b4(b3, b5)!$ 1... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ Unfortunately, Nimzovitch was too hasty.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ f6! 2. exf6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$

White's king is too far from the center of the action – Black has enough time to drive the knight from f2 by advancing his e-pawn.

4. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ e5 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ e4 Draw, in view of 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ and 7...e3.

Trolldalen – Schüssler
 Groningen ech jr 1975/76



2-25

W

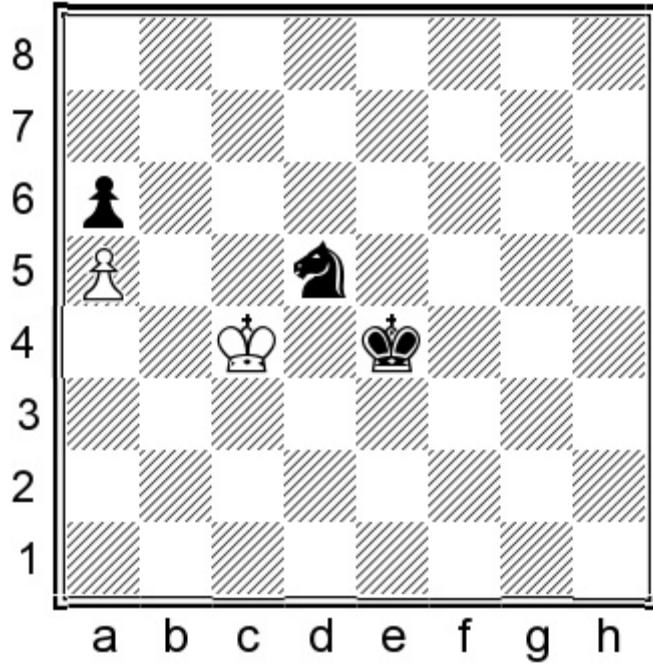
With 1. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}c4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ (stronger than 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1! \mathbb{Q}xe4$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3! \mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{Q}xe4+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$, White would probably have drawn.

An even simpler route to the same end was 1. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}xa5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \Delta$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6$.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}xg5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}xe4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb7 \mathbb{Q}c5+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6$

Sacrificing his bishop, Trolldalen assessed the position as drawn, and his opponent evidently agreed with him. Neither side suspected that this was now a position from a 1914 study by Kubbel (with colors and flanks reversed).

6... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$

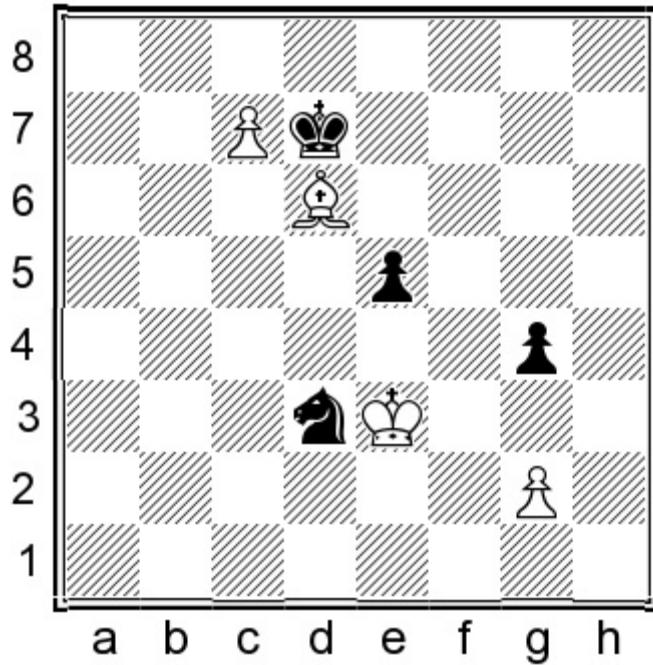


2-26
\$
B?

10... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ does not work: 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5=$. Kubbels solution was 10... $\mathbb{Q}f6!!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (shouldering) 15. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}b5+$

10... $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}f6!!)$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c6$
Draw. Even if Black had found the winning plan at that moment, he could no longer have avoided the three-time repetition.

Keres – Lengyel
Luhacovice 1969



2-27

B

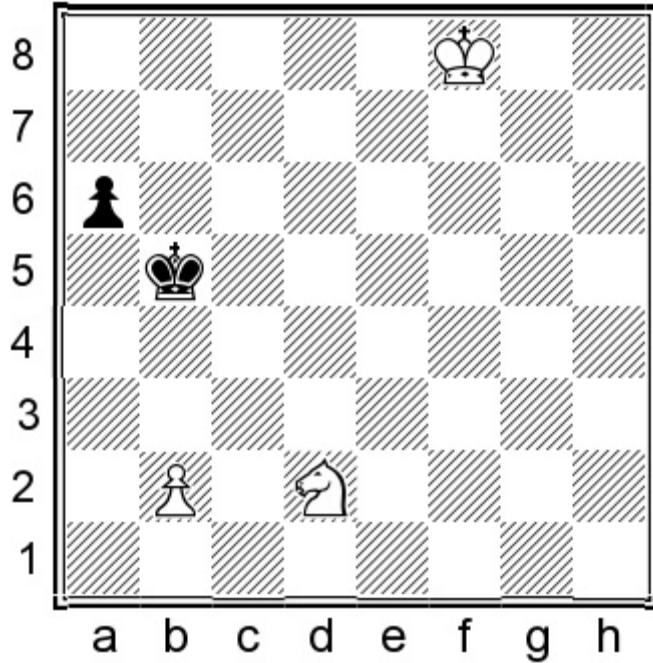
The game was adjourned here, and Lengyel resigned without continuing. Evidently, he assumed that his e- and g-pawns were doomed, and White must inevitably wind up two pawns ahead.

But this is not the case. As Keres pointed out, Black has a simple plan of defense which guarantees him the draw. First, he must force g2-g3, after which he can defend the g4-pawn from h2 with his knight. White cannot break down this defensive setup: ♜g1 is met by ...♞f3 with tempo. And there is no possible zugzwang, either.

Simplest is 1...♝e1 at once. On 2.g3 ♝f3, we already have the indicated defensive position. And 2.♔f2 is met by 2...♞d3+ 3.♔f1 (3.♔g3 e4 4.♔xg4 e3 5.♔f3 ♜e1+ 6.♔g3 e2 7.♔f2 ♜xg2=) 3...♞c8 4.g3 ♔d7 5.♔e2 e4 6.♔e3 ♜e1=

1...♝f4 2.g3 ♜e6 is also possible (but not 2...♝d5+ 3.♔e4 ♜f6+ 4.♔f5!+) 3.♝xe5 ♜g5 4.♔f4 ♜f3 5.♔d6 ♜h2=

Exercises



2-28
2/8
W?

Show/Hide Solution

2/8. I.Horowitz, I.Kashdan 1928

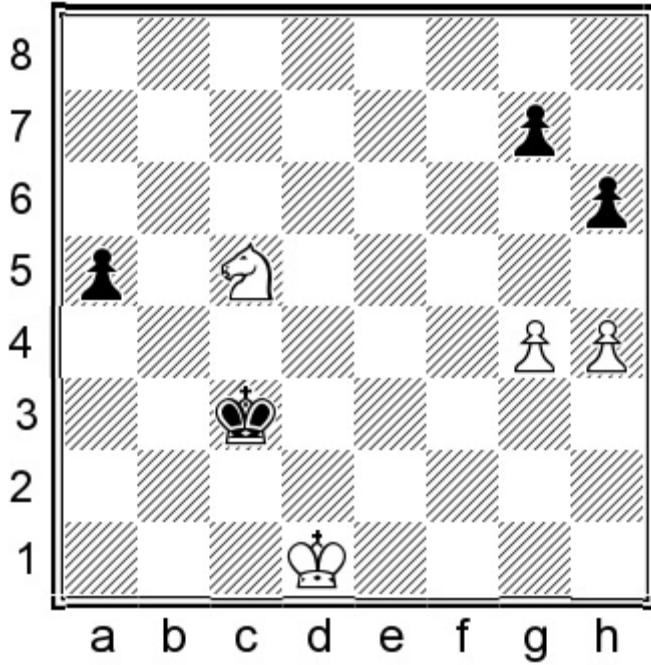
White's barrier is not effective: Black plans 1... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ followed by ...a5-a4-a3.

For example, 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ a5 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ a4 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b3=$. A better place for the knight should be investigated.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b3!!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a1+-$

This barrier is solid enough. An advance of the a-pawn gives Black nothing now: if ...a4-a3, then $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ with bxa3 to follow. We should also explore the attempt to overcome the barrier from the side. As we shall see, it takes too much time.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c4!?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a1!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ a5 (4... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 5.b4! $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$, rather than 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ 0=) 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ a4 (5... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 6.b3 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b5) 6.\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}c1 7.\mathbb{Q}a3 (7.\mathbb{Q}c3) 7...\mathbb{Q}b1 8.\mathbb{Q}b3!+-$



2-29
2/9
B?

Show/Hide Solution

2/9. Tal-Böök, Stockholm 1960*

Black's king must go to the hostile pawns but 1... $\hat{Q}d4$ is met with the fork 2. $\hat{Q}e6+$. An advance of the g-pawn enables White to fix the kingside: 1...g6? 2.g5! hxg5 3.hxg5 a4 4. $\hat{Q}c1!$ $\hat{Q}d4$ 5. $\hat{Q}e6+$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 6. $\hat{Q}f8$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 7. $\hat{Q}h7+/-$,

or 1...g5? 2.hxg5 hxg5 3. $\hat{Q}c1$ (3. $\hat{Q}e4+$ $\hat{Q}b2$ 4. $\hat{Q}xg5$ a4 5. $\hat{Q}f3$ a3 6. $\hat{Q}d4$ a2 7. $\hat{Q}c2$ is also strong)
3... $\hat{Q}d4$ 4. $\hat{Q}d7!$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 5. $\hat{Q}b2$ $\hat{Q}f4$ 6. $\hat{Q}f6$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 7. $\hat{Q}h5+/-$

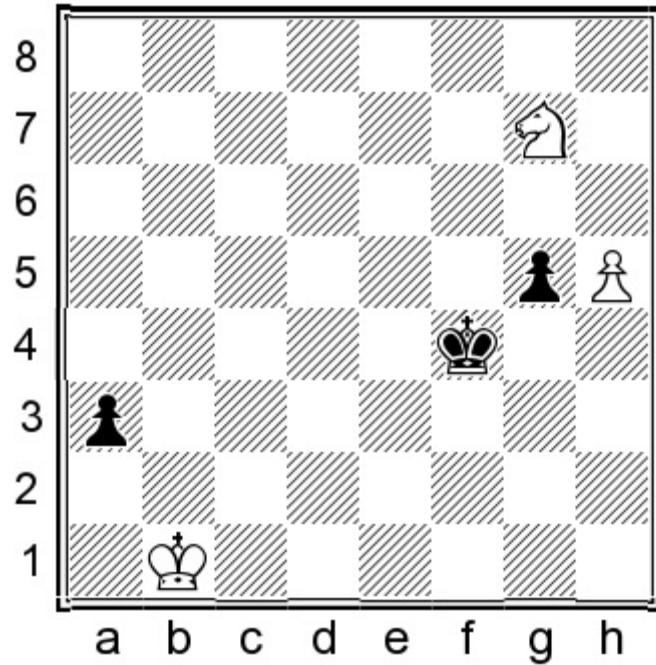
Let's study 1... $\hat{Q}d4$? more attentively. We can see that Black loses here, too: 2. $\hat{Q}e6+$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 3. $\hat{Q}xg7$ $\hat{Q}f4$ 4.g5 hxg5 5.h5 $\hat{Q}e5$ 6. $\hat{Q}e8!$ (Δ 7.h6) 6... $\hat{Q}f5$ 7. $\hat{Q}d6+$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 8. $\hat{Q}e4+$ and 9. $\hat{Q}g3+/-$, or 5...g4 6.h6 g3 7. $\hat{Q}e2!+/-$

However, the last line gives us a tip to the correct solution: first the white king should be diverted to the queenside.

1...a4!! 2. $\hat{Q}c1$

After 2. $\hat{Q}xa4+$ $\hat{Q}d4$, neither the knight nor the king can help the pawns in time.

2...a3 (2... $\hat{Q}d4$ is also possible already) 3. $\hat{Q}b1$ $\hat{Q}d4$ 4. $\hat{Q}e6+$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 5. $\hat{Q}xg7$ $\hat{Q}f4$ 6.g5 hxg5 7.h5



16-36

B?

7...g4! 8.h6 g3 9.Qe6+ (9.Qh5+ Kg5) 9...Qf5! 10.h7 g2 11.Qd4+ Qg6=

Chapter 3

Knight Endgames

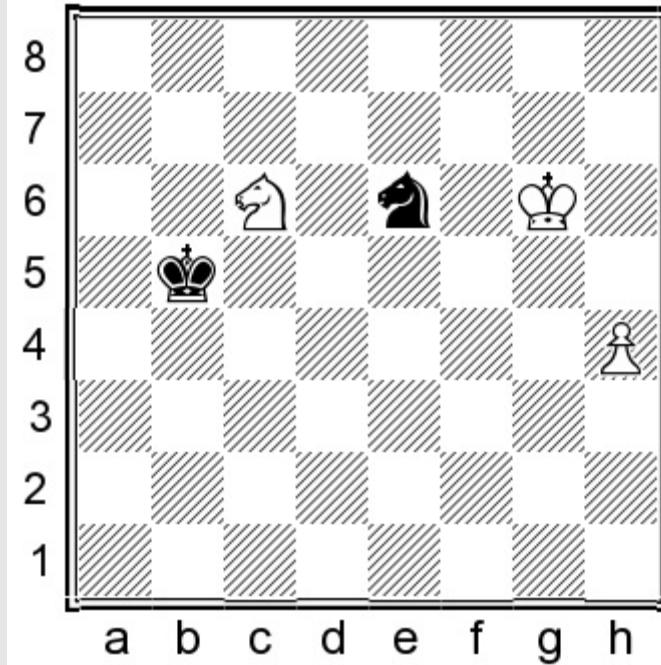
In examining the “knight versus pawns” endgame, also we learned quite a bit that is useful about knight endgames. First, because the peculiarities of the knight which we learned about there (such as its “distaste” for rook pawns, or its ability to fork or win tempi by checking the enemy king), also function here. And second, the knight must quite often be sacrificed in order to obtain a “knight versus pawns” endgame.

The Deflecting Knight Sacrifice

We shall not be making a systematic examination of the endgame in which a knight faces a knight and pawn: its theory is quite complex, and in my view, rather chaotic. There are no principles which are operative for many positions; the evaluation and the course of the struggle depend entirely upon the concrete details.

The deflecting knight sacrifice is the almost universally employed technique in such endings. And not only in these – there are many situations in which one side tries to queen its own passed pawn or to break into the enemy’s camp with his king.

Eingorn – Beliavsky
USSR ch, Kiev 1986



3-1

W

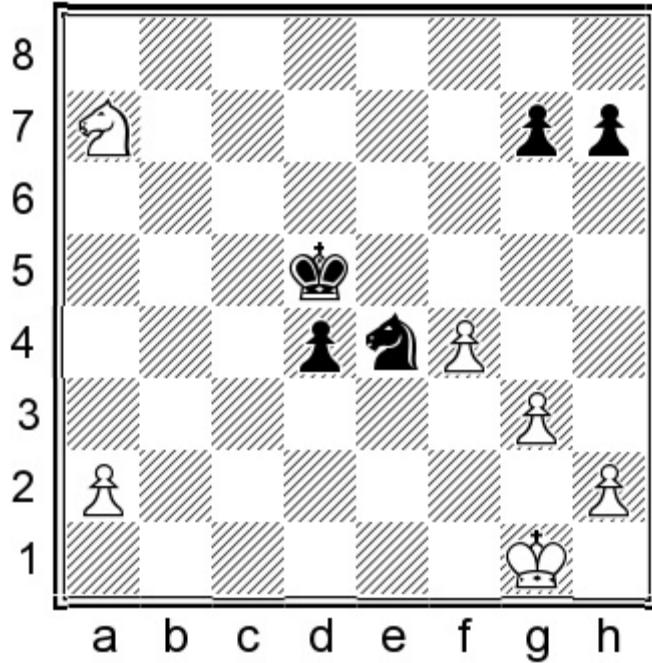
1. ♔d4+! ♔xd4 2. ♔f6!+-

The king goes, as we taught, one square diagonally away from the knight; which renders the h-pawn unstoppable.

2... ♔c2 3.h5 ♔e3 4. ♔g5! (the same idea again) **4... ♔c4 5.h6** Black resigned, in view of **5... ♔e5 6.h7 ♔f7+ 7. ♔f6 ♔h8 8. ♔g7.**

In the next diagram, Black may be a pawn down, but White's scattered pieces and more importantly the dangerous passed d-pawn, supported by the excellently centralized king and knight, assure him the advantage.

Barcza – Simagin
Moscow-Budapest m tt, 1949



3-2
B?
Play

1...d3 2.♔f1 ♔c3!

It is most important to deprive the white knight of the b5-square, which is precisely the square it needs to help the king battle the passed pawn, as shown by the following variations:

2...♔d4? 3.♔b5+ ♔e3 4.♔a3! d2 5.♔c4+ ♔d3 6.♔xd2!, when White draws without too much trouble, since the a-pawn will draw one of Black's pieces to the queenside.

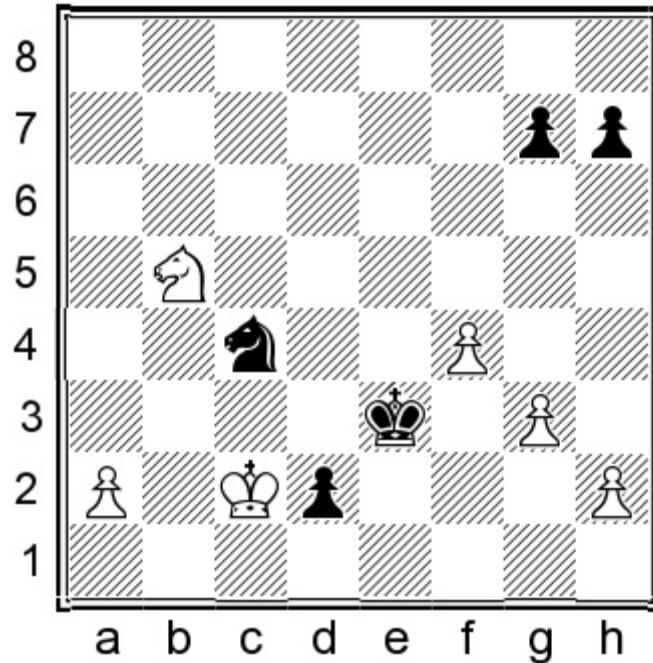
3.♔e1! ♔d4 4.♔d2 (4.♔c6+? ♔e3--) 4...♔e4+ 5.♔c1□

5.♔e1? (or 5.♔d1?) would lose at once to 5...♔e3. Here, that move would fall short after (5...♔e3) 6.♔b5 d2+ 7.♔c2 ♔e2 8.♔d4+.

5...♔d6!!

The knight repositions itself more favorably, all the while maintaining control over that vital b5-square. Meanwhile, White's knight has no other way to reach the pawn: 6.♔c6+ ♔c3 7.♔e7 (7.♔e5 d2+ 8.♔d1 ♔e4) 7...d2+ 8.♔d1 ♔e4 9.♔d5+ ♔c4!--

6.♔d2 ♔c4+ 7.♔c1 d2+ 8.♔c2 ♔e3 9.♔b5 (9.♔c6 ♔b2--)



3-3

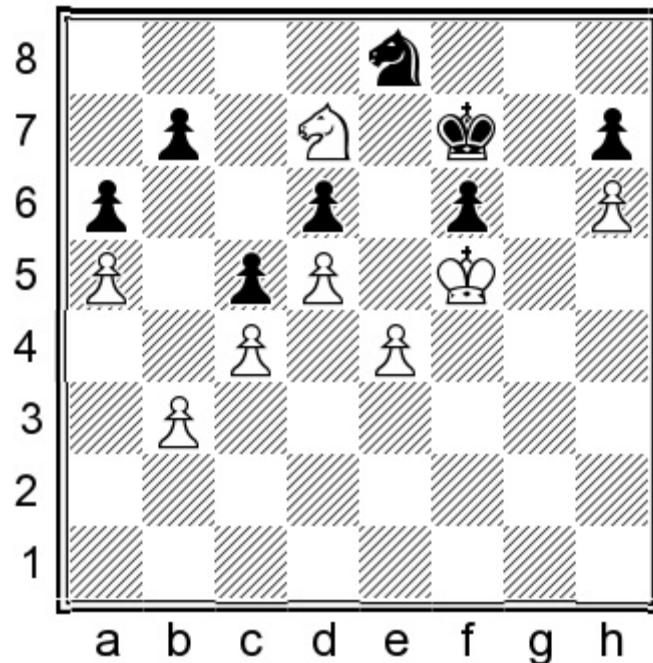
B?

9...♞a3+!

And in conclusion – a deflecting knight sacrifice (10.♝xa3 ♔e2). White resigned.

Hernandez – Sula

Saloniki ol 1984



3-4

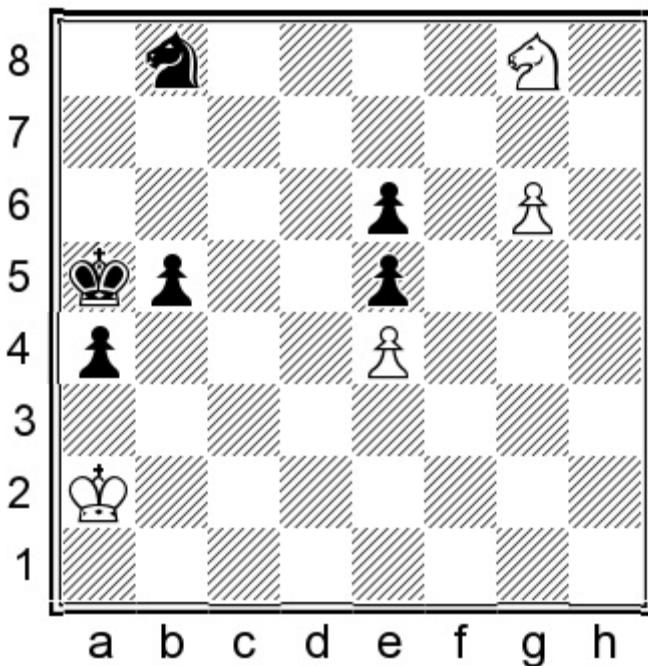
W?

1.♘f8! ♜xf8 2.♗e6

This knight sacrifice has allowed the king to invade the enemy camp. Black is in zugzwang: on 2...♝g8, 3.♗e7 decides.

2...♝g7+ 3.hxg7+ ♜xg7 4.♗xd6 h5 5.♗e7 h4 6.d6 h3 7.d7 h2 8.d8=♛ h1=♛ 9.♛f8+ ♜h7 10.♛f7+ ♜h8 11.♛xf6+ ♜h7 and Black resigned.

Exercises



3-5

3/1

W?

Show/Hide Solution

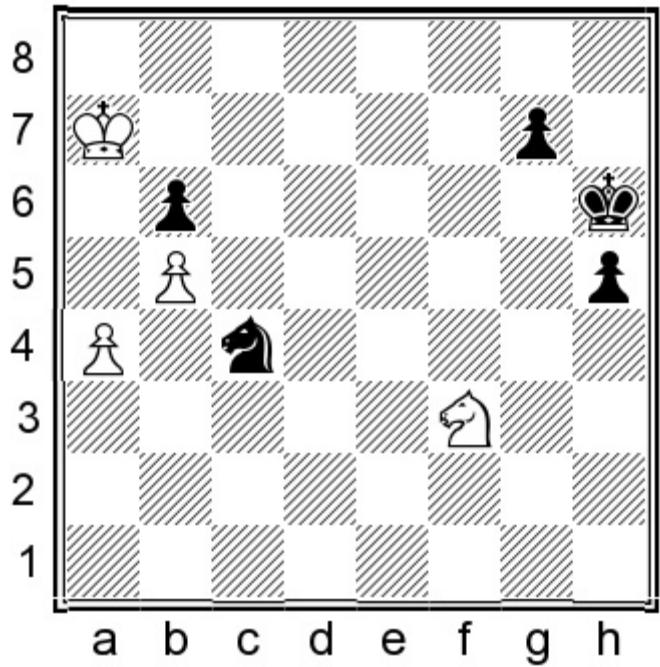
3/1. H.Rinck 1920

1.♘e7 is met with 1...♞d7 Δ 2...♞f6, and 1.♘f6 fails after 1...♞c6 Δ 2...♞e7. A win of the knight for the g-pawn gives White nothing; he should try to deflect the knight from the passed pawn, exploiting the fact that Black's king is misplaced.

1.♘e7! ♞d7 2.♘c6+ ♜b6

On 2...♞a6, the deflecting knight sacrifice decides: 3.♘b8+! ♞xb8 4.g7. And now, again, the same technique rapidly leads to the goal:

3.♘xe5! ♞f6 4.♘d7+! ♞xd7 5.e5+-



3-6

3/2

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

3/2. Szabó – Grószpéter, Kecskemet 1984

1.♘d2! ♘xd2

He must accept the knight sacrifice because both 1...♘e5 2.♗xb6 and 1...h4 2.♗xc4 h3 3.♗e3 (Δ 4.♗f1) 3...h2 4.♗g4+ are quite bad.

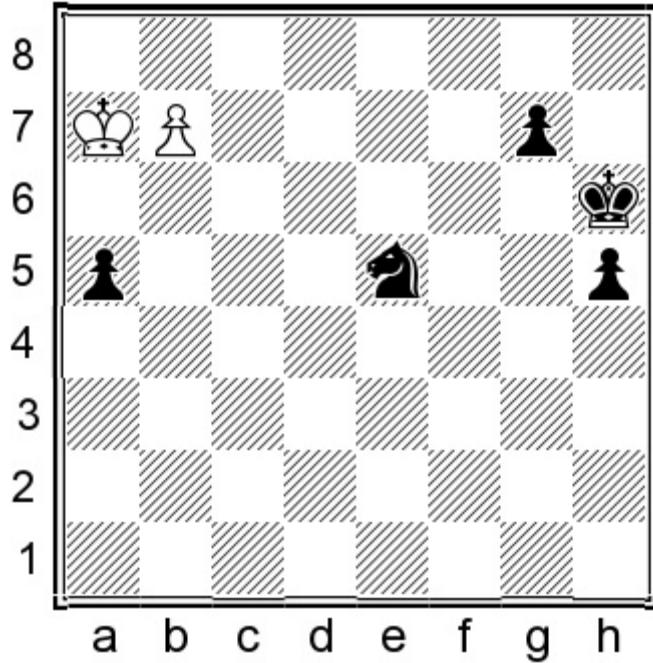
2.a5 (2.♗xb6? h4)

In this position, the game (it was played in a team competition) was adjudicated and White was awarded a win. The main line is instructive and nice:

2...bxa5

2...h4 3.axb6 h3 4.b7 h2 5.b8=♕ h1=♕ 6.♕h8+; 2...♗c4 3.a6 ♘d6 (3...h4 4.♗b8) 4.♗xb6 h4 5.♗c5! (5.♗c6? h3; 5.♗a5? ♘c4+; 5.a7? ♘c8+ 6.♗c5 ♘xa7 7.b6 ♘c6!) 5...♗c8 6.b6+–

3.b6 ♘c4 4.b7 ♘e5



16-37

W?

5.♔b8!!

An unusual move: the king interferes with its own pawn! The natural looking 5.♔b6? is wrong: 5...♝d7+ 6.♔c6 (6.♔c7 ♝c5) 6...♝b8+ 7.♔c7 a4! (it makes no sense for Black to repeat moves 7...♝a6+ 8.♔b6 ♘b8) 8.♔xb8 a3, and Black wins the queen ending with two extra pawns.

5...♝c6+

5...a4 6.♔c7+–; 5...♝d7+ 6.♔c8!+–

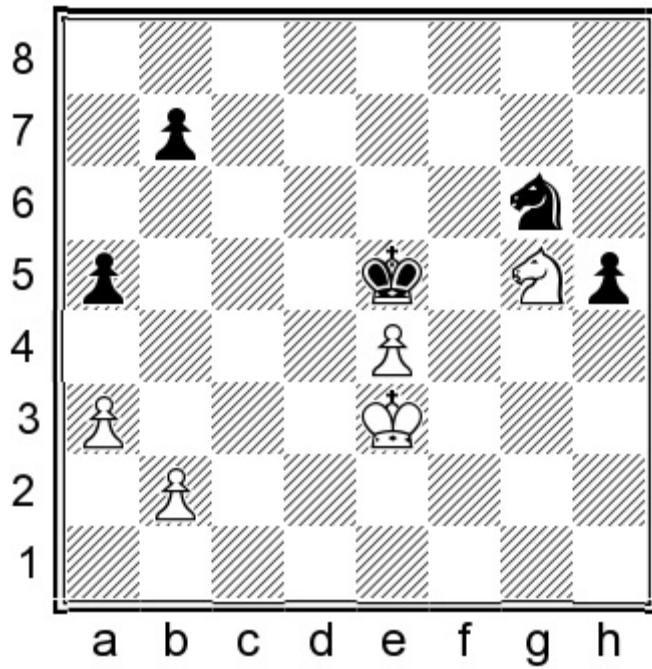
6.♔c7 ♘b4 7.♔b6+–

Botvinnik's Formula

“Knight endgames are pawn endgames”: that is something Botvinnik once said. What he had in mind is that many of the laws of pawn endings apply equally to knight endings. The same high value is given, for instance, to the active position of the king or the outside passed pawn. Such techniques as the pawn breakthrough, shouldering, the various methods of playing for zugzwang, and so forth, are seen constantly, not just in pawn endgames, but also in knight endgames. And we shall be convinced of this after studying a few practical examples.

Let's begin with a classic endgame.

Lasker – Nimzovitch



3-7

B

In the diagram, the pawn endgame would be an easy win for Black with the outside passed pawn. In the knight ending, Black has considerably more problems to solve. The canonical text is that Black played flawlessly to win a better ending, but Karsten Müller put this ending under the microscope in 2019 and found some amazing resources for both sides. We present his analysis here.

1...♞f6

Always watch out for knight checks. The overhasty 1...h4?! would allow the white knight to attack the queenside pawns by 2.♘f7+ ♜f6 3.♘d6 b6 4.♘c4 h3 5.♘f2!

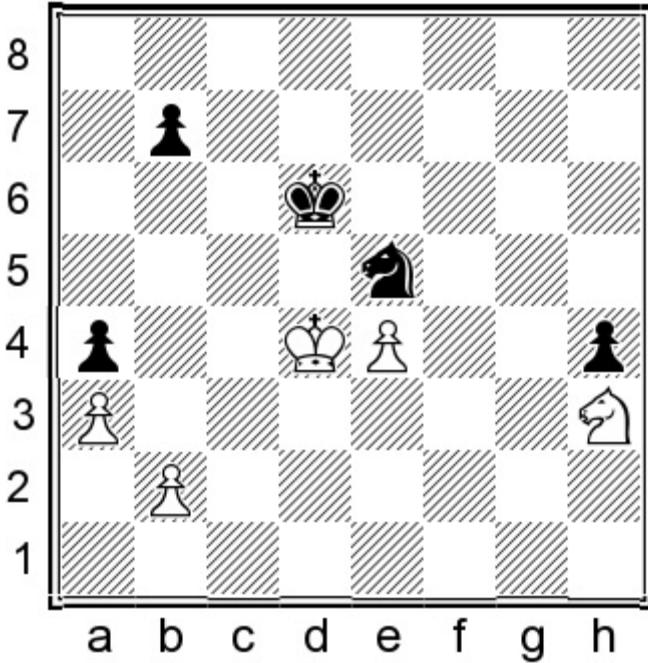
1...♞f6 2.♘h7+ ♜g7 3.♘g5 ♜f6 4.♘h7+ ♜e7!

The king retreats, but only very briefly. Now the e5-square will be occupied by the knight. On 5.♘d4?, Black forces a won pawn endgame with 5...♝f8! 6.♝g5 ♜e6+!

5.♝g5 ♜e5 6.♘d4 ♜d6 7.♘h3?

A careless move which allows Black to fix White's queenside pawns. The prophylactic 7.b3= was called for; now White is losing, although it is very complicated.

7...a4! 8.♝f4 h4 9.♝h3



3-8
B

9...b6?

Nimzovitch's only error in this ending, violating the "Steinitz rule" that says that pawns are best placed on the second rank. It turns out that Black needs all the tempi he can keep in reserve.

The win is very deep as Black must lose a tempo by triangulation with the king: 9...Qc6+ 10.Qd3 Qc5 11.Qc3 Qd4 12.Qg1 Qe6 (from this important square, the knight threatens to go to g5 and so White must move back to h3) 13.Qh3 Qb5 14.Qd3 Qb6! 15.Qd2 (trying to be stubborn, but the king will run out of squares) 15...Qc6 16.Qc2 Qc5! 17.Qf2 Qb5 (the king wants to go to d3 now to maintain the correspondence of squares, but the knight stops that) 18.Qc3 Qe6 19.Qh3 Qc5! (finally achieving the desired zugzwang) 20.Qd3 Qd8! 21.Qc3 Qf7 22.Qd3 Qe5+ 23.Qc3 Qf3 24.Qd3 b6! (only now can the pawn advance, and only very carefully!) 25.Qc3 b5 26.Qd3 b4+ and Black wins similar to the game.

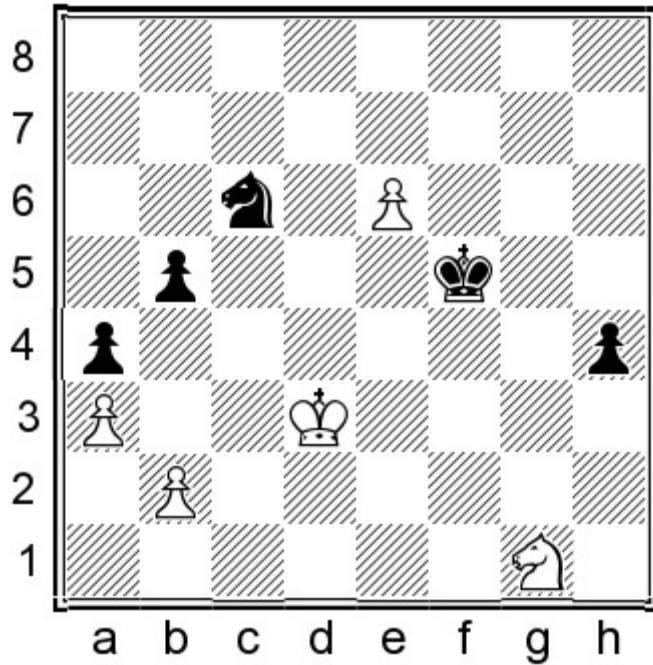
10.Qf4 b5 11.Qh3?!

Not yet a losing move, but it makes the task very hard. After 11.Qc3! Qc5 12.Qe6+ (12.b3 also draws) 12...Qb6 13.Qg5!= Black will not be able to make progress.

11...Qc6+! 12.Qe3?

The decisive error, allowing Black to apply another technique borrowed from the arsenal of pawn endgames: widening the beachhead.

Emanuel Lasker probably rejected 12.Qc3 because of 12...Qe5 13.Qd3 Qa5. Let's look at what could happen: 14.Qg1! Qf4 15.e5! Qc6 16.e6 Qf5 and now:



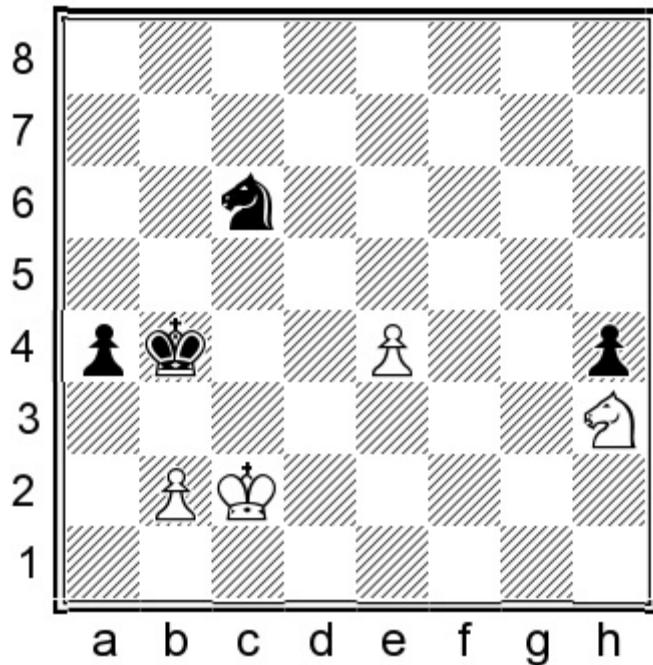
3-8a

W?

(a) after 17. ♔c3? ♔f6+ White is in zugzwang. If 18. b3 [18. ♔d3 ♔xe6 19. ♔f3 ♔e5+] 18... axb3 19. ♔xb3 ♔d4+ 20. ♔c3 ♔xe6 21. ♔b4 ♔d4 22. ♔c5 ♔e5! defending the knight and Black wins.

(b) but the remarkable 17. ♔d2!! changes everything: 17... ♔f6 18. ♔c3= Now Black is in zugzwang. 18... ♔e7 19. b3! axb3 20. ♔xb3 ♔d4+ 21. ♔c3 ♔xe6 22. ♔b4 ♔d4 23. ♔c5, and the black king is too far away to help. Draw.

12... ♔c5 13. ♔d3 b4! 14. axb4+ ♔xb4 15. ♔c2



3-8b

B

15... $\mathbb{Q}d4+$

Nimzovitch displays good technique. The point of widening the beachhead is to clear the king's path to the opposite wing, but the grandmaster is in no hurry to execute this plan. First, it is useful to reposition the knight on e6 from where it hobbles the enemy knight.

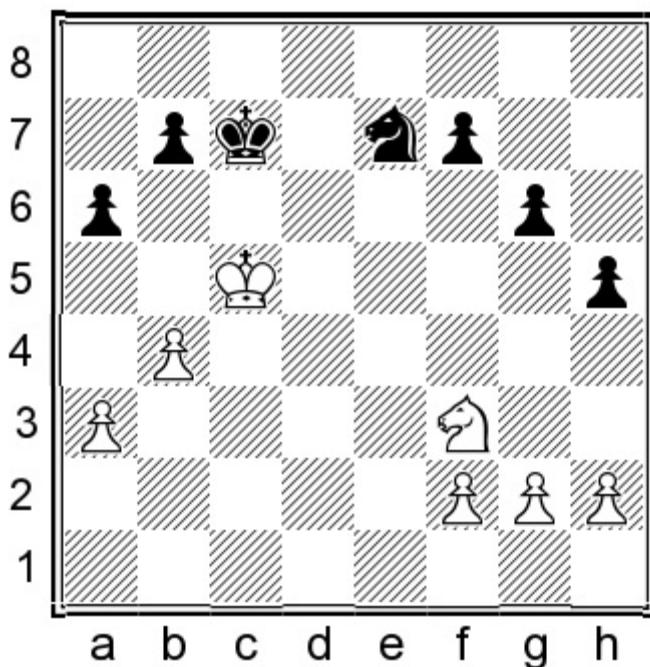
The direct 15... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ wins as well, e.g., 16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 18.b3 axb3+ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$

16. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 20.b4 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 21.b5 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ White resigned. On 22.b6 there follows 22... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 23.b7 (23. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$) 23... $\mathbb{Q}c5+$. Nimzovitch evidently calculated this variation when he played 15... $\mathbb{Q}d4+$.

Diagrams 3-9 and 3-10 have been intentionally omitted.

Botvinnik – Kholmov

Moscow ch tt, 1969



3-11

W

White's king is considerably more active than his opponent's, and that factor defines his great, and probably winning, advantage. Still, many subtleties remain.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$

It is important to induce Black's pawns to advance, as then they will be easier to attack.

1...f6 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7?$

But this is a mistake which allows Black to draw with precise defense. The correct method was found by Müller (2019): 2.♘e6+! ♖d7 3.♘f4 h4 4.♘d5, and either the pawn ending is winning for White or White dominates in the knight ending.

2...f5 3.h4

If White played 3.f4?!, then after 3...b6+ 4.♔d4 ♖d6 5.♘f8 ♜c6+ 6.♔e3 ♜e7, Black would hold easily, as the white king does not have the f4-square.

3...f4

Waiting tactics would eventually result in zugzwang for Black, so he initiates a kingside counterattack.

4.♘f8 b6+

It is not yet time for desperation with 4...f3? 5.g3 (5.gxf3? b6+ 6.♔d4 ♜f5+=) 5...♘f5 6.♘xg6 ♜xg3 7.♔d4 and Black will lose, as shown by Müller (2019).

5.♔d4 ♜f5+ 6.♔e4

6.♔d5!? must now be met with 6...f3! (which does not work in other variations, but here the white king is too far) 7.g3 ♜xg3 8.♘xg6 ♜h1=

6...♘xh4

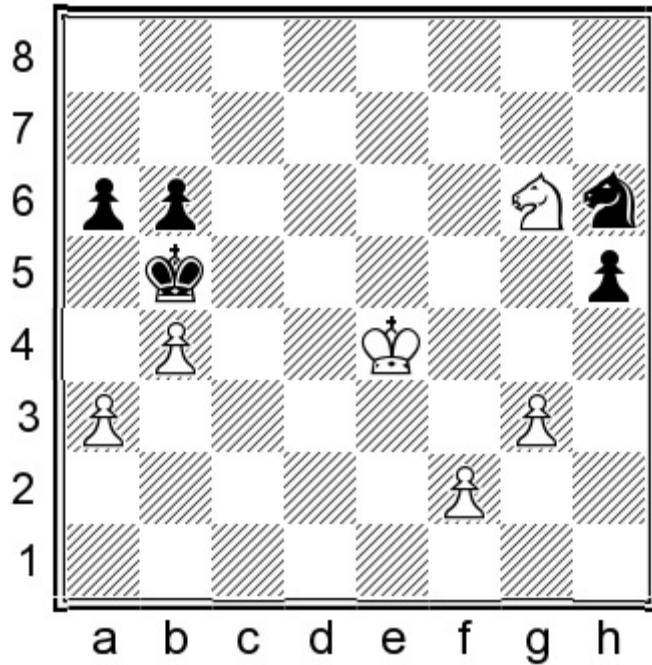
Not 6...f3? 7.g3 ♜xg3+ 8.♔xf3 ♜f5 9.♘xg6 with an easy win.

7.♘e6+ ♜c6 8.♘xf4 ♔b5?!

8...g5? loses to 9.g3! gxf4 10.gxh4. 8...a5! draws, however: 9.g3 ♜f5 10.♘xg6 ♜d6+ 11.♔d3 ♔b5=

9.g3 ♜f5 10.♘xg6 ♜h6?

It is only here that Black commits the fatal mistake. As Müller discovered in 2019, 10...♘d6+ 11.♔d5 ♜c4 12.f4 ♜e3+ 13.♔e4 ♜f1 gives Black enough counterplay to still hold the game.



3-12

W

Now it is time to use the technique of defending the pawn with the knight that we learned in the “Knight vs. Pawns” chapter.

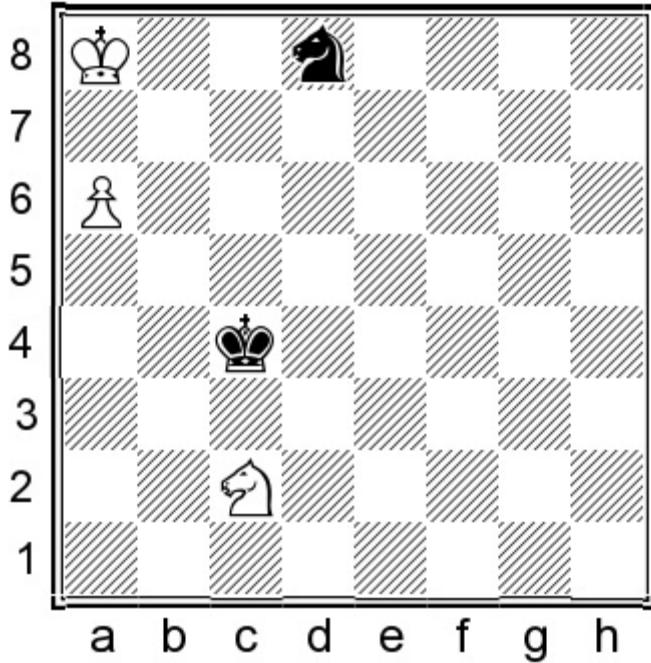
11.♘e5! ♖a4 12.♘c4 ♖b3

After 12...b5 13.♘e5 ♖xa3 14.♘c6!, the knight defends the pawn and prevents ...a6-a5. If 12...♖b5, then 13.♘b2+– (barrier).

13.♘xb6 ♖xa3 14.♘d5 ♖b3 15.f4 ♖c4 16.♘c7 ♖xb4 17.♘xa6+ Black resigned.

The following is an example of zugzwang.

R.Réti 1929



3-13
\$
W?

On 1. $\mathbb{Q}b8?$ $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}c6+?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ or 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ – a standard deflecting knight sacrifice) 2. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7$, Black forces the draw with 3... $\mathbb{Q}a5+!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$.

Before moving his king to b8, White must lose a move so as to force the enemy king, through zugzwang, to occupy the a5-square.

1. $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$

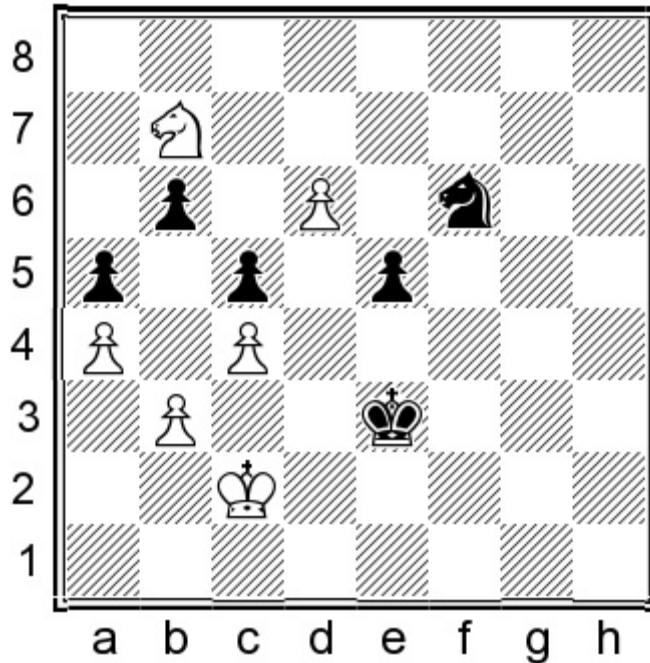
Black loses immediately with 1... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (zugzwang – but not 2. $\mathbb{Q}b4?$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ with the drawing position we know already) 2... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b6+-$

2. $\mathbb{Q}b4\odot$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}a5$

The goal is achieved! Black's king stands badly here – it deprives the knight of this square, and also fails to control c6.

3. $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}c7??$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 5. a7 $\mathbb{Q}d5+)$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8(c6)+-$

Alburt – Lerner
Kiev 1978



3-14

W?

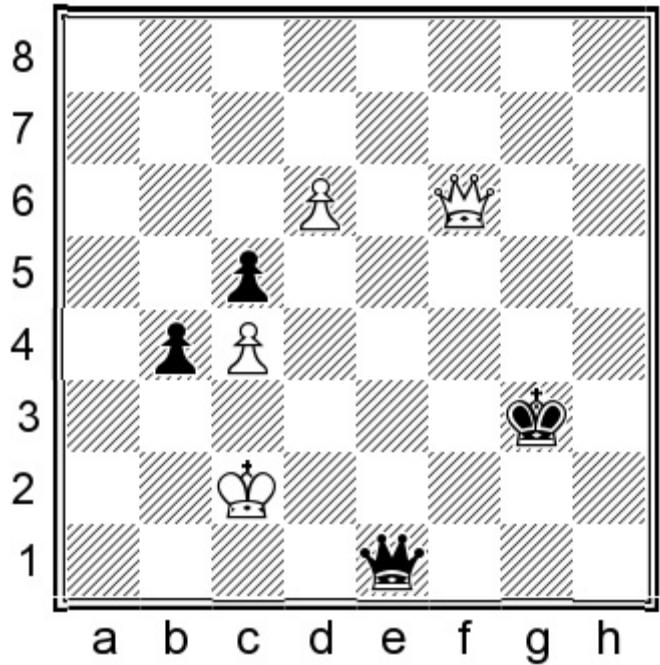
Although Black might appear to be better, thanks to his more active king, White's spectacular pawn break completely changes the picture.

1. ♜xc5!! bxc5 2.b4 axb4

Let's examine the other possibilities:

- (1) 2...cxb4 3.c5 b3+ 4.♗b2 (or 4.♔xb3 ♜e4 5.♔c4);
- (2) 2...e4 3.bxc5 ♔f2 4.c6 e3 5.d7 e2 6.d8=♕;
- (3) 2...♜d7 3.bxa5 ♔f2 4.a6 e4 5.a7 e3 6.a8=♕ e2 7.♕e4 e1=♕ 8.♕xe1+ ♔xe1 9.a5.

3.a5 e4 4.a6 ♔f2 5.a7 e3 6.a8=♕ e2 7.♕f8 e1=♕ 8.♕xf6+ ♔g3



3-15
W

The queen ending is a win. White only has to get his queen to the d-file, where it will safeguard the king against checks and support the advance of his passed pawn.

9.♕g5+ ♔h3

9...♔f3 10.♕d5+ ♔g3 11.♕d3+ ♔h4 12.d7+-

10.♕d2! ♕a1

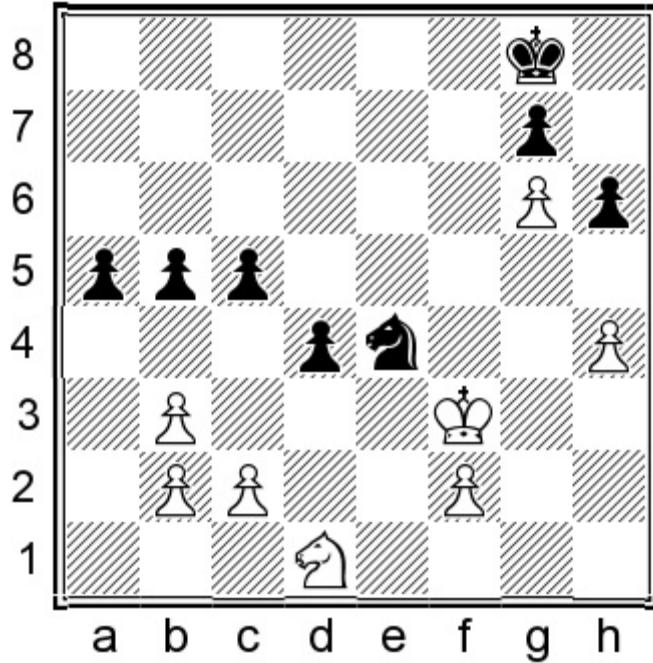
10...♕e4+ 11.♕d3+; 10...b3+ 11.♔c3 ♕a1+ 12.♔xb3 ♕b1+ 13.♔a4+-

11.d7 ♕a4+ 12.♔b1 ♕b3+ 13.♔c1 ♕a3+ (13...♕xc4+ 14.♔b2) 14.♔d1 ♕b3+ 15.♔e2 ♕g4!

The final trap: on 16.d8=♕?? Black has a perpetual: 16...♕f3+ 17.♔e1 ♕h1+ 18.♔f2 ♕h2+ 19.♔e3 ♕f4+ 20.♔d3 ♕f5+ White replies with a typical trick for queen endgames: he utilizes the enemy king position to meet Black's check with a check of his own.

16.♔d1! ♕xc4+ 17.♔e3+ Black resigned.

Exercises



3-16
3/3
B?

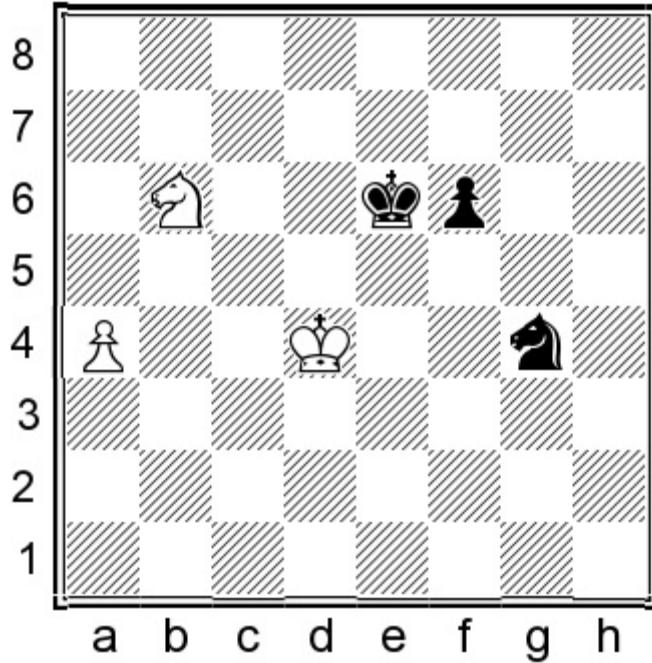
Show/Hide Solution

3/3. Bonner-Medina, Haifa o1 1976

The goal is achieved by means of a knight sacrifice followed by a pawn breakthrough to the promotion square.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ 2.bxc3 a4 3.cxd4 cxd4+

White resigned after 4.c3 a3.



3-17
3/4
W?

Show/Hide Solution

3/4. Vilela-Augustin, Prague 1980

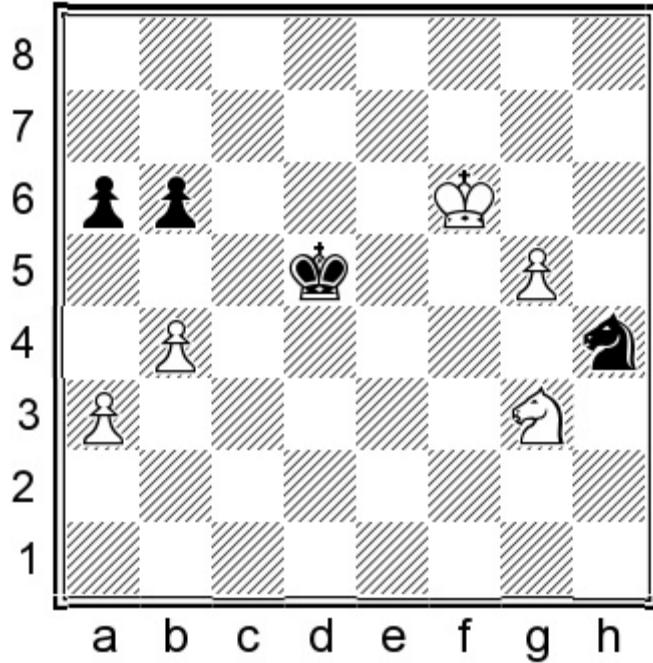
1.♘c5!

Shouldering! 1.a5? does not work in view of 1...♗d6! 2.a6 ♗e5!=

1.♘c5! f5 (1...♗e5 2.a5 ♗d7+ 3.♘c6!+-) **2.a5 f4 3.a6 f3 4.♗c4!+-**

4.a7? f2 5.a8=♕ f1=♕ 6.♕e8+ ♘f5! leads only to a draw. Now, on the contrary, the white knight holds the f-pawn while the a-pawn cannot be stopped.

The remainder was 4...f2 5.♗d2 ♗f6 6.♘c6! (6.a7? ♗e4+) 6...♗e4 7.♗f1 and Black resigned.



3-18
3/5
W?

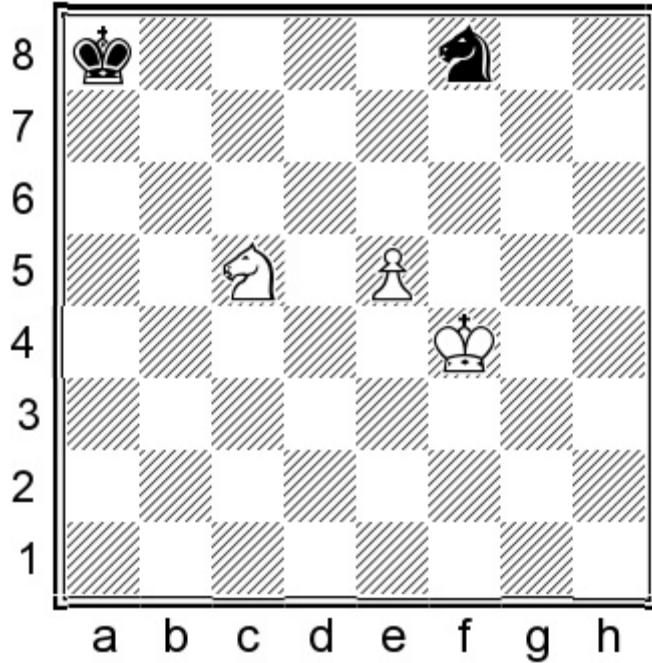
Show/Hide Solution

3/5. Timman-Ree, Amsterdam 1984

1. $\mathbb{Q}f5$?! suggests itself, but after 1... $\mathbb{Q}g2$, what should White do? If 2. g6? $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 3. g7 $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$, the knight cannot arrive in time to prevent an exchange of queenside pawns. The tempting knight sacrifice deflection 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3+?$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 3. g6 is refuted by 3... $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ 4. g7 $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$. As Müller has discovered, White still wins after 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4+-$) 3. g6 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 4. a4 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ a5 6. b5 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$.

But playing for zugzwang wins much more simply.

1. a4! b5 2. a5 ⊙ 2... ♕c4 3. ♔f5 ♔g2 4. ♔e5! Black resigned.



3-19

3/6

W?

Show/Hide Solution

3/6. V.Halberstadt 1949

To achieve success, one must remember the triangulation technique.

1.♕g5!! ♕a7

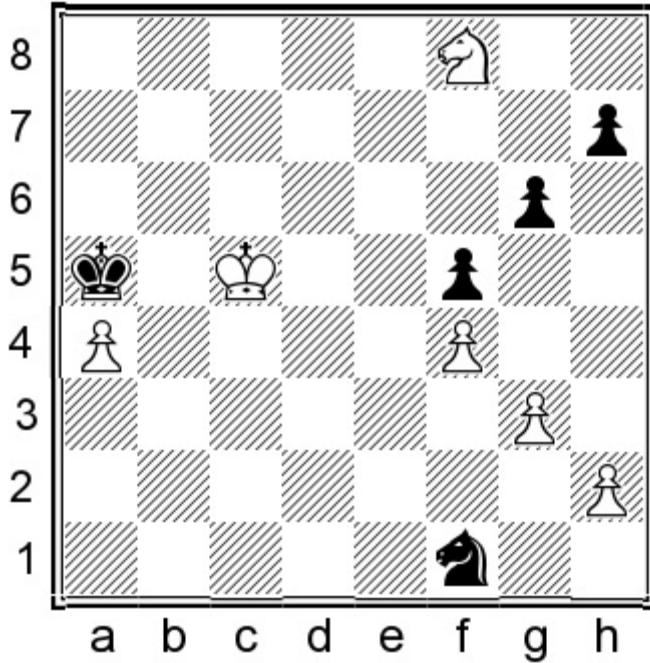
If 1...♔b8, then 2.♔f6 ♔c8 (2...♔c7 3.♘e6+) 3.♔g7 ♘d7 4.♘xd7 ♔xd7 5.♔f7+-

2.♔f5

The tempo is lost, and Black is in zugzwang.

2...♔b6 3.♘d7+! ♘xd7 4.e6+-

1.♔f5? misses the win: after 1...♔a7!, it is White who is in zugzwang. 2.♘d7 does not win here in view of 2...♘xd7 3.e6 ♘b6! 4.e7 ♘c8, while 2.♔f6 is met with 2...♔b6=



3-20
3/7
W?

Show/Hide Solution

3/7. Cvetkovic-Stefanovic, Porec 1987 Thanks to the distant passed a-pawn, the white king is placed closer to the kingside than its counterpart. But how does it save the pawns from annihilation by the black knight? This mission is far from simple.

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh7?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2 \Delta 2... \mathbb{Q}f1=;$

1. $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2 2. \mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}g4+ 3. \mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}f6=;$

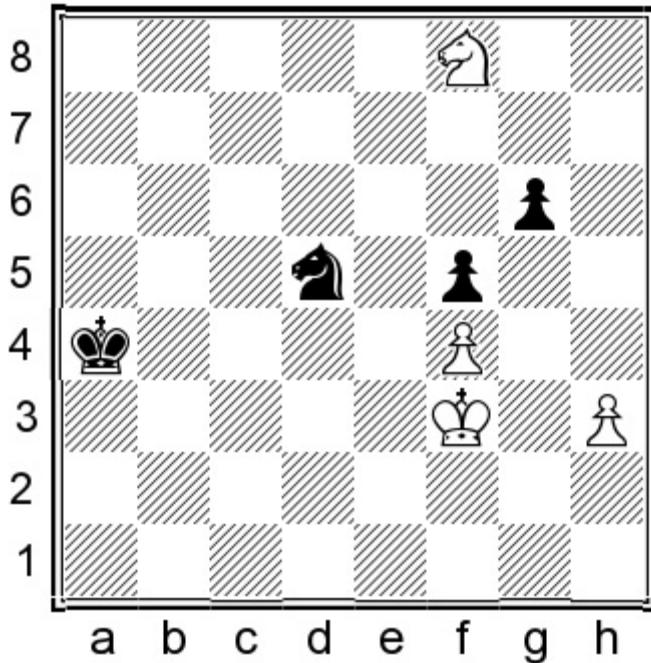
1. $h4?$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3 2. \mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}e2+ 3. \mathbb{Q}e3 (3. \mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}g1 \Delta 4... \mathbb{Q}f3=) 3... \mathbb{Q}c3 4. \mathbb{Q}xh7 \mathbb{Q}d5+ 5. \mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}xa4 6. \mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}e7$, and White cannot activate his king in time: 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}b4 8. \mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}c5$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}d5+ 8. \mathbb{Q}e2!?$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4+ 9. \mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}h5 10. \mathbb{Q}xg6 \mathbb{Q}b5 11. \mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}c5 12. \mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{Q}d5 13. \mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}e5=$

The last line can be improved if White takes a single step with his h-pawn instead of a double. In that case, the king gets an additional route, via h4.

1. $h3!! \mathbb{Q}xg3 2. \mathbb{Q}d4!$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ $\mathbb{Q}e2 3. \mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}g1=) 2... \mathbb{Q}e2+$

If 2... $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ then 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh7 \Delta 4. \mathbb{Q}f8+-$. After 2... $\mathbb{Q}h5$, 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ decides (rather than 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$).

3. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}c3 4. \mathbb{Q}xh7 \mathbb{Q}d5+ 5. \mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}xa4 6. \mathbb{Q}f8$



16-38

B

6... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is hopeless now: 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$.

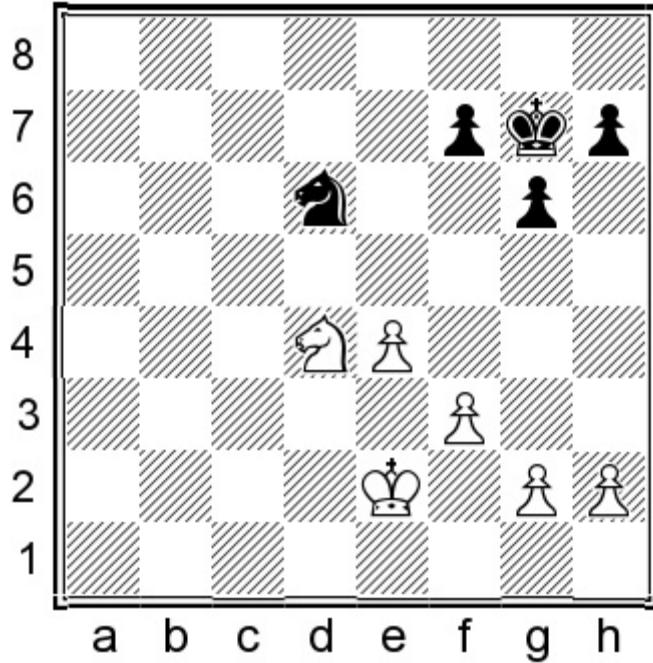
The game continued 6... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ (the king must be activated) 8... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$, and White had two extra pawns.

Pawns on the Same Side

Is it possible to convert an extra pawn, if all the pawns are on the same side? Practice in such positions has shown that, with the exception of pawn endgames, a player's chances of success are greatest in knight endgames. The "four vs. three" knight endgame was considered a win for a long time, going back to analysis by Reuben Fine in 1941. Taking into account today's state of the art in endgame theory and practice, we revise this evaluation to "good winning chances." There are many drawn positions, and many positions which for the moment defy a clear verdict. In this section, we show both the theory and practical examples and illustrate some ideas for both sides.

Let's start with Fine's position, which has been reprinted in many endgame manuals.

R.Fine 1941



3-21
B

Reuben Fine's analysis focused on forcing lines where Black tries to trade pawns and achieve a draw quickly. We shall also see what can happen if Black tries a passive defense.

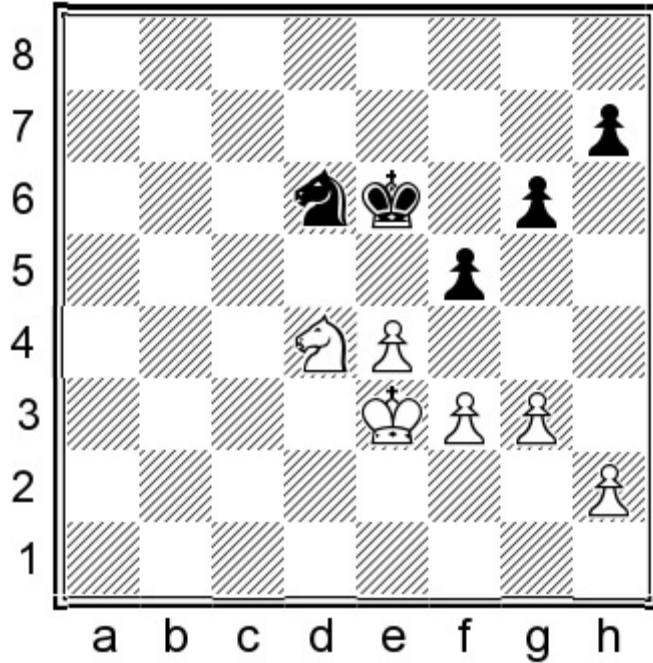
1... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.g3 $\mathbb{Q}e5$

The move 2...h5 should be mentioned. The f7-g6-h5 pawn configuration is often recommended in rook endings, as White may have to trade some pawns to make progress. But in a knight ending, this can also create weaknesses in Black's camp: 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5.f4+ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ f6 (or 7... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 8.e5+ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f6 10. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d5$, which will win) 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (as the black king has to attend to its pawn on g6, the white king can go around) 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ g5 12.fxg5 fxg5 13. $\mathbb{Q}f3+$

3. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Trying to avoid weakening anything for now. Immediately forcing the action is fraught with danger for Black:

Fine's main line was 4...f5, but now after 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$



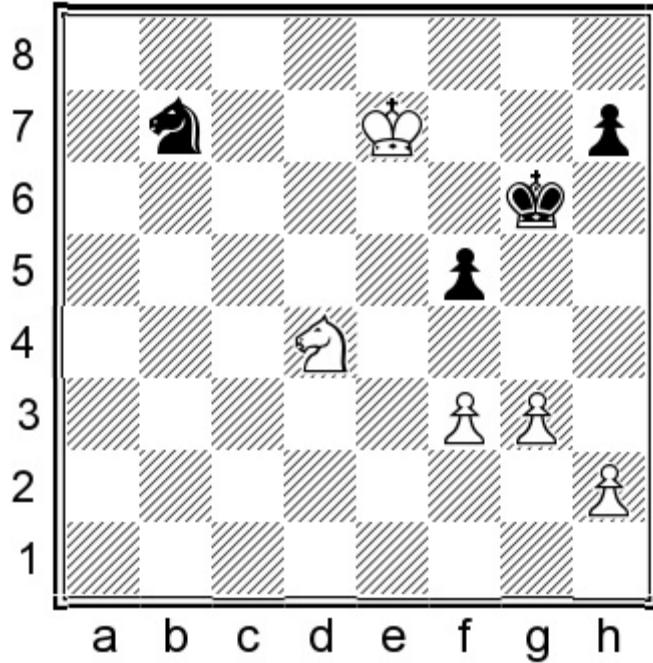
3-21a
B

all king retreats lose:

(a) 5... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6.e5 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ h6 8.g4 fxg4 9.fxg4 is similar to positions we shall look at later in our main line, but Black's pawn is already on h6 where it is placed worse than on h7, as we shall see. Now if 9... $\mathbb{Q}b2$, 10.g5! hxg5+ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 12.e6+–;

(b) 5... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ fxe4 7.fxe4 g5+ (7... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9.e5+–) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 12.e5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ g4 14. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ –

(c) 5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6.exf5 gxf5 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (Black is in zugzwang and must give way) 7... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$



3-21b

W

We shall see in the main line that the winning method often involves displacing the black knight. Now White has more than one way to win, but the simplest is 11.f4 ♜c5 (11...h5 12.♘f3+–) 12.g4! fxg4 13.f5+ ♔h5 14.f6 ♜d3 15.♗c6+– (Müller).

Instead of 4...f5, insufficient is 4...g5 5.♗d4+ ♔f6 6.f4 gxf4+ 7.gxf4 ♜c4+ 8.♗d3 ♜b2+ 9.♗c2 ♜c4 10.e5+ ♔e7 11.♗d3+–, and Black will have trouble with his weak h-pawn.

5.♗d4 f6

We are still following in Fine's footsteps, but here is an important point of uncertainty. Karsten Müller suggested 5...♜c4+!? with the idea of holding back the f7-f6 advance for now, which allows White in some variations to advantageously create a passed e-pawn. While it is hard to say for sure if it will make a difference, 5...♜c4+ may offer additional defensive resources.

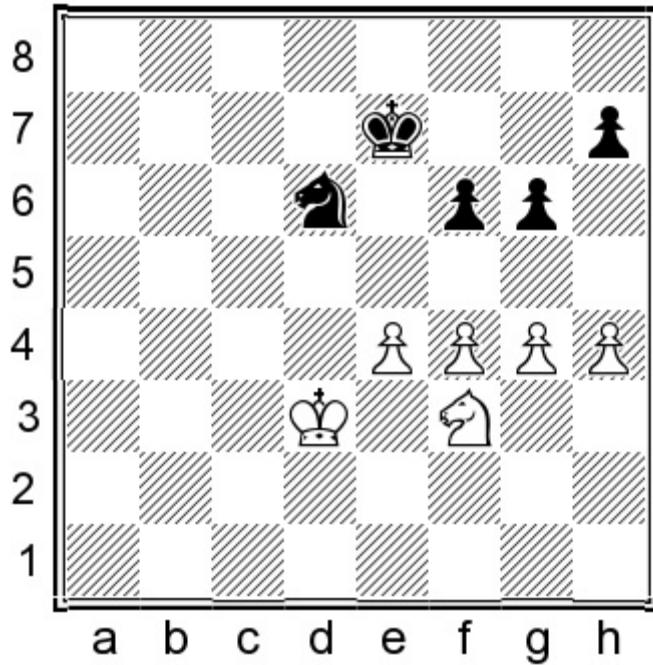
6.♗d3 ♜f7 7.f4 ♔e7 8.♗f3!

The white knight needs to keep an eye on the g5- and e5-squares. The immediate 8.g4?! is countered by 8...g5! and if 9.fxg5? ♜e5+=

8...♜d6 9.g4

White strengthens his position by advancing his kingside pawns.

9...♝d7 10.h4 ♔e7



3-21c

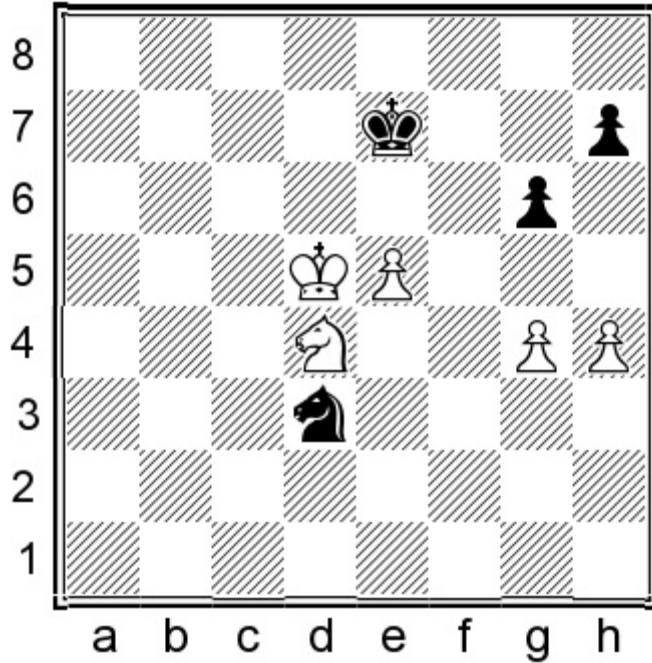
W

This position, which can be arrived at by different move orders, became the starting point for grandmaster Alex Fishbein's research in 2019. We believe that White wins in all lines. Here is his analysis:

11.e5 ♜c8

Black is trying to keep the tension in the hope that White will be forced to either trade on f6, remaining without a passed pawn, or push it through to e6, where, surprisingly, it will tie down his own pieces. Other options are not better:

The direct 11...fxe5 loses, although it is by no means easy: 12.fxe5 ♜b5 13.♗d4 ♜c7 14.♔e4 ♜a6 15.♗f3 (15.h5? is premature and leads to a draw after 15...♜c5+ 16.♔d5 ♜d3) 15...♜c5+ 16.♔d5 ♜d3 17.♗d4!



3-21d

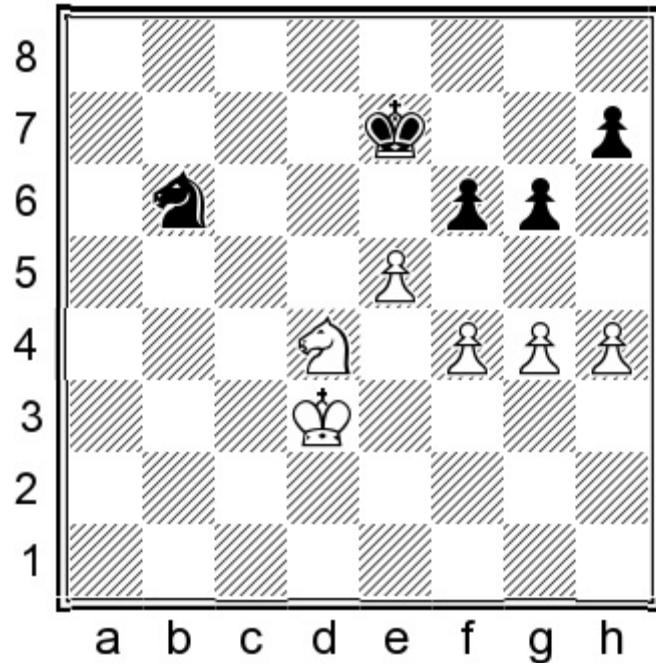
B

The first step is to push away the black knight to some distant squares on the queenside, and in some lines even threaten to trap it. White can only later convert into a simpler ending with h4-h5. 17... $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (19.h5? $\mathbb{Q}c7$ is still a draw) 19... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (here 22.h5 also wins, but after 22...gxh5 White must take with the knight) 22... $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 28.h5! gxh5 29.gxh5 $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}f5+-$ reaching the key zugzwang position which we shall see in the main line.

11... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ forces Black to trade on e5, which will transpose to the previous line, as 16... $\mathbb{Q}b4?$ loses immediately to 17. $\mathbb{Q}c6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 18.exf6+ (intermediate check!) 18... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$;

11... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ (the d4-square needs to be saved for the knight) 12...fxe5 (12... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ fxe5 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 16.fxe5+- actually trapping the knight) 13.fxe5 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ h6 15.h5!+-

12. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$

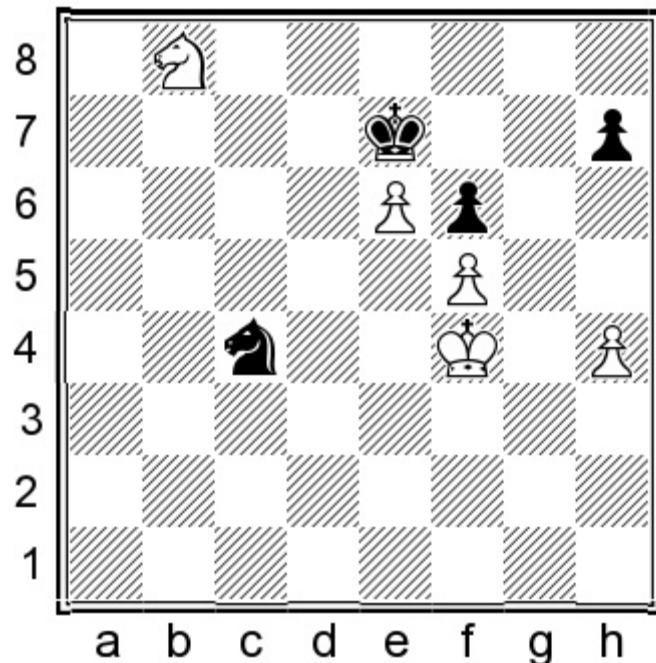


3-21e

W

13. $\mathbb{Q}b5!!$

The most natural move is 13. $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 15. $f5+$ $gxf5$ 16. $gxf5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 18. $e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$

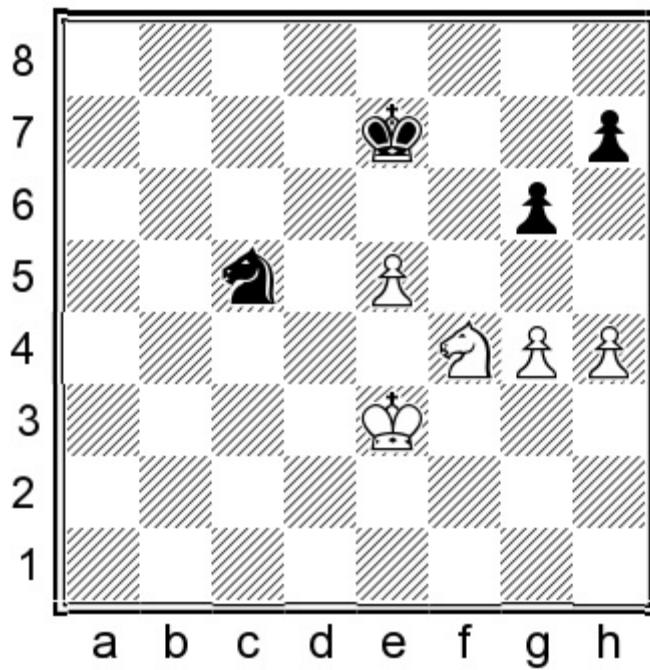


3-21f

W

Although it looks like White is close to breaking through, a win for White is not apparent.

13... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ fxe5 18.fxe5 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

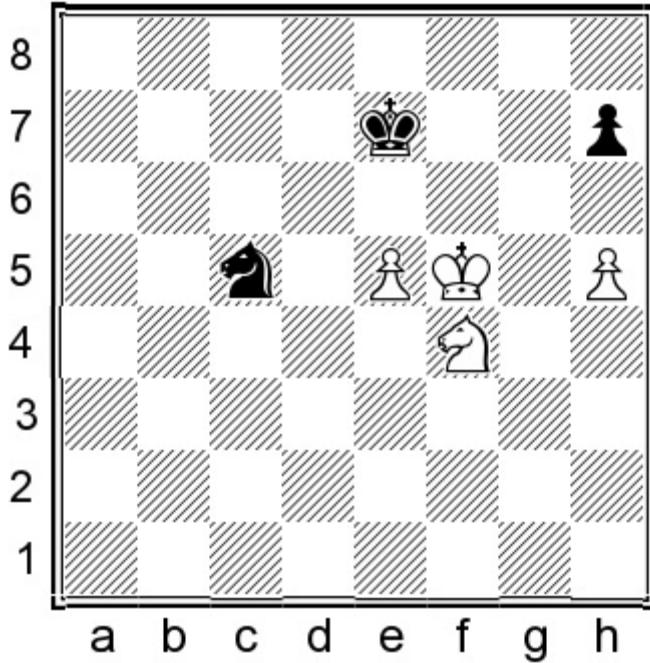


3-21g
W

Knight + e-, g-, and h-pawns vs. knight +g- and h-pawns positions are often drawn, as we shall see later in this section. Here, however, White's knight occupies a good square on f4, keeping the black king from attacking the e-pawn, and also keeping an eye on g6 and h5. Still, a win for White is very tricky.

20. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

20.h5? leads to a drawn position after 20...gxh5 21.gxh5 (21. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b3+=$) 21... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$



3-21h
W

We have here a position of mutual zugzwang. With Black to move, he would have to allow e6 with check and it is an easy win. But with White to move, he cannot win! 25.e6 ♘d6! and now in order to make progress, White has to push the h-pawn, but then it is a stalemate fortress in the corner. 26.h6 (26.♘f6 ♜e4+ is just a perpetual) 26...♜e7 27.♘d5+ ♜f8 28.♘f6 ♜xe6 29.♘xe6 ♜g8=

20...♝b3+ 21.♔d3

21.♔d5? does not win because of 21...♝d2 22.h5 gxh5 23.gxh5 ♜f1!=

21...♝c5+ 22.♔e3!

Having triangulated, White is preparing that zugzwang position for the opponent.

22...♝b3

A tougher defense than 22...♔d7 23.h5 gxh5 24.gxh5 ♜e7 25.♔d4 ♜a4 26.♔e4 ♜c5+ 27.♔f5 (zugwang for Black) 27...♝f7 28.e6+ ♜e7 29.♔e5+- and now the win is easy.

23.h5

The black knight is far away, and White can convert into the ♜+2♝ vs ♜+1♝ ending.

23...gxh5 24.gxh5 ♘f7

24...♝c5 25.♔d4 ♜b3+ 26.♔e4 ♜c5+ 27.♔f5+- zugzwang again.

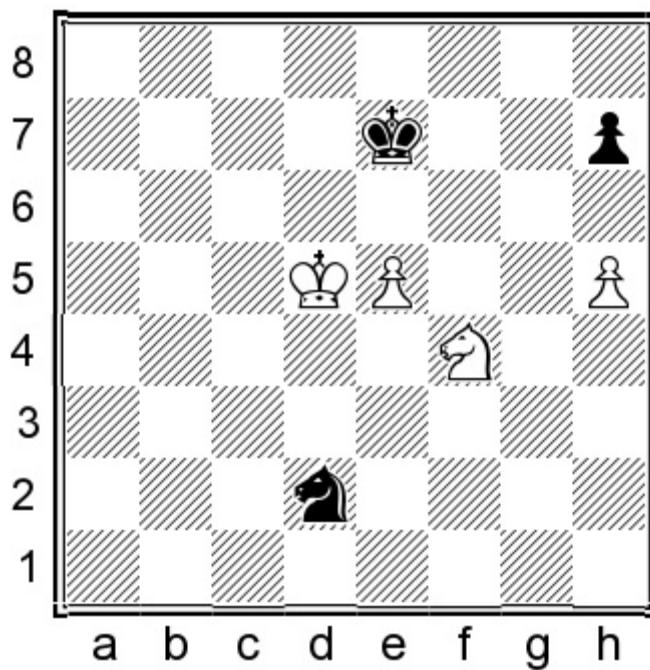
25.♔e4 ♜e7

25...♝c5+ 26.♔d5 and 27.e6+ wins.

26.♔d5

Only not 26. $\hat{\Delta}f5?? \hat{\Delta}c5$ and it is White who is in zugzwang.

26... $\hat{\Delta}d2$



3-21*i*

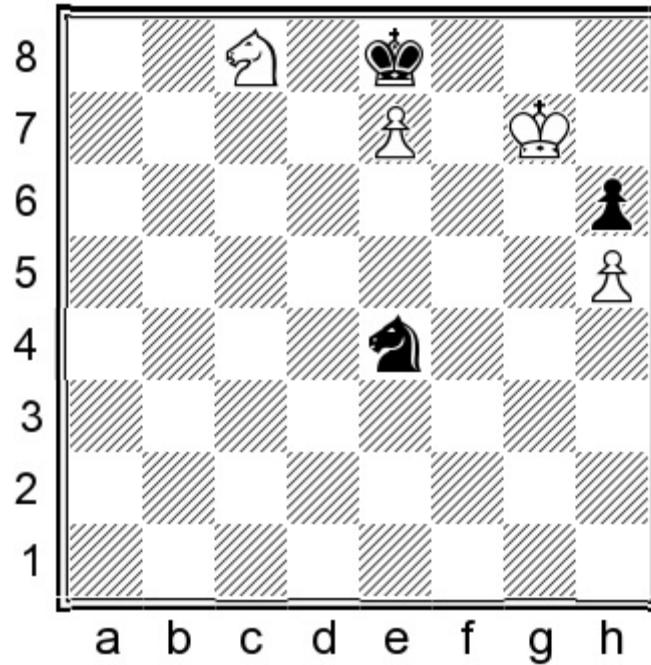
W

We saw earlier that with Black to move, this position is drawn. With White to move, it is winning, but there is only one way.

27. $\hat{\Delta}g6+!! \hat{\Delta}f7$ (if 27...hxg6, 28.h6!+-) 28. e6+ $\hat{\Delta}f6$ 29. $\hat{\Delta}f8!$

29. $\hat{\Delta}e5 \hat{\Delta}e7$ 30. $\hat{\Delta}c6+ \hat{\Delta}f6$ makes no progress.

29... h6 30. $\hat{\Delta}d7+! \hat{\Delta}e7$ 31. $\hat{\Delta}b6! \hat{\Delta}f6$ 32. $\hat{\Delta}c8! \hat{\Delta}f3$ 33. e7! $\hat{\Delta}f7$ 34. $\hat{\Delta}d6 \hat{\Delta}e8$ 35. $\hat{\Delta}e6 \hat{\Delta}g5+$ 36. $\hat{\Delta}f6 \hat{\Delta}e4+$ 37. $\hat{\Delta}g7+-$

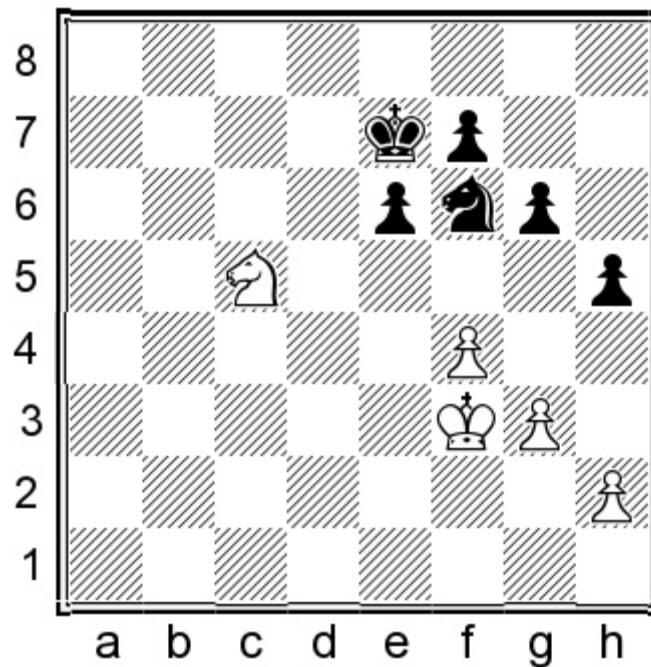


3-21j
B

The end is finally in sight. The many moves with “!” and “!!” illustrate how difficult these endings are for both sides.

Let's now take a look at a position with a slightly different pawn structure.

Esipenko – Short
Moscow (rapid), 2018



3-21k

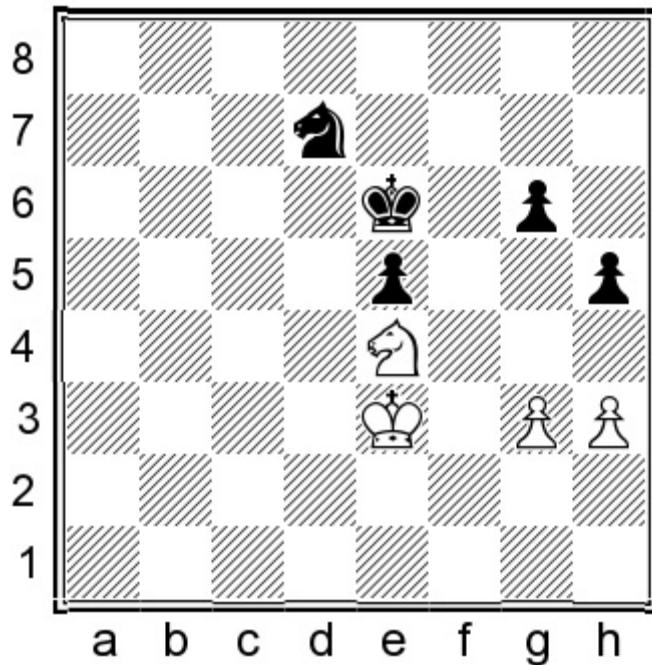
B

With this configuration, Black cannot win against accurate defense.

1... $\hat{Q}d6$ 2. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}d7$ 3. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}d5$ 4. $\hat{Q}e4$ f6 5. $\hat{Q}e3$ e5 6.fxe5 fxe5 7.h3

Black has formed a passed e-pawn like in the previous example, but here it should not bring him a victory, because it is not far enough advanced and White has enough space.

7... $\hat{Q}e6$



3-21l

W

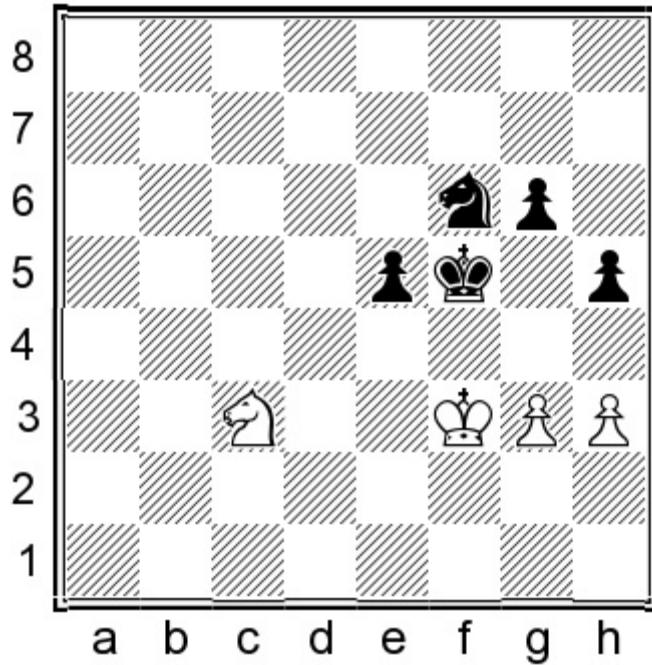
8. $\hat{Q}c3$??

8.g4 draws relatively easily, as Black just cannot break through: 8...hxg4 9.hxg4 $\hat{Q}f6$ 10. $\hat{Q}g5+$ $\hat{Q}d5$ 11. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}d4$ 12. $\hat{Q}e6+$ $\hat{Q}d3$ 13. $\hat{Q}c5+$, etc. But the move played also does not lose.

8... $\hat{Q}f6$ 9. $\hat{Q}f3$? But this is a serious misstep. The white knight is placed unfortunately on c3 and needs to find a better post: 9. $\hat{Q}b5$ g5 10. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}f5$ (10...g4 11.hxg4 $\hat{Q}xg4$ 12. $\hat{Q}e4=$) 11. $\hat{Q}d6+=$

9... $\hat{Q}f5$?

Returning the favor. 9...g5! 10.h4 (it is too late for 10. $\hat{Q}b5$ e4+ 11. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}e5+$ with similar positions to what we saw in the last example) 10...g4+! 11. $\hat{Q}f2$ (11. $\hat{Q}e3$ would draw if not for 11... $\hat{Q}d5+$. This is why the knight needed to move from c3) 11... $\hat{Q}d6!$ 12. $\hat{Q}e2$ e4 13. $\hat{Q}b5+$ $\hat{Q}e5$ would win for Black.



3-21m
W

10.♘e3?

Giving the former world #2 a second chance, which he does not miss. White could hold with 10.h4.

The position with the extra e-pawn and the pawns on g3, h4/g6, h5 is frequently drawn. If the pawn cannot advance to e4 it is usually a simple draw, and even if the pawn can reach e4 safely, it can be a draw if the white knight is well placed:

10...e4+ 11.♘e3 ♘e5 12.♗e2! ♗d5+ 13.♗f2 ♘f5 14.♗d4+ ♘g4 15.♗e2 and Black cannot convert his advantage here.

Another way to draw is 10.♗e2 and if 10...g5 11.g4+=

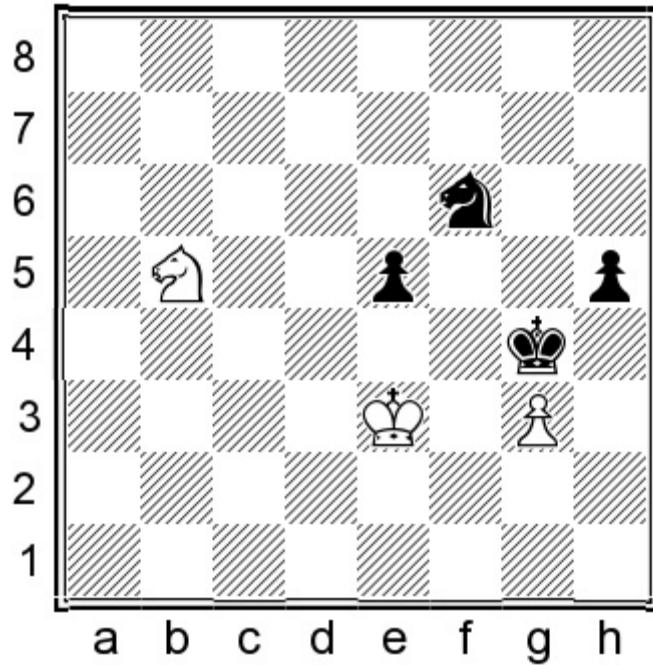
10...g5! 11.♗b5

Nigel Short has a way to win a pawn by force and finds it.

11...g4! 12.hxg4+

12.h4 ♗e4!—+

12...♘xg4!



3-21n
W

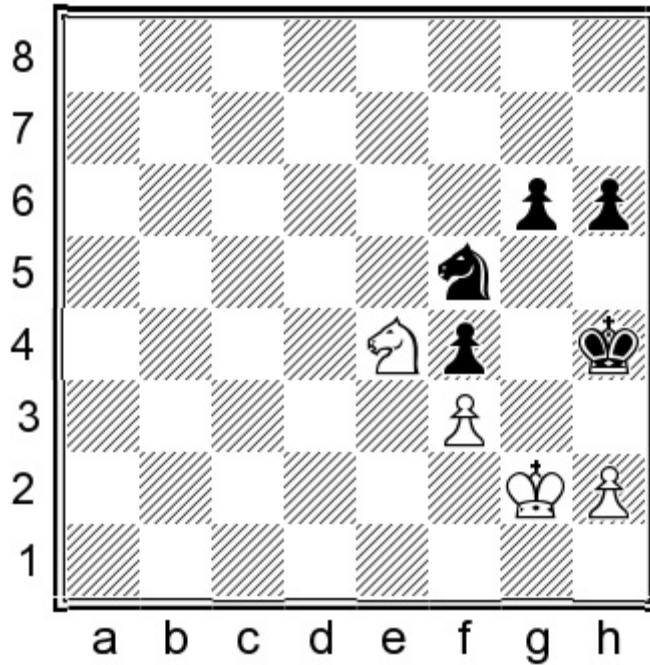
White cannot defend the pawn (13.♔f2 ♔e4+) and soon resigned.

Diagrams 3-22, 3-23 and 3-24 have been intentionally omitted.

Tragomedies

The configurations of “one pawn vs. two” and “two pawns vs. three” can frequently be saved; defending them, however, requires accuracy.

Fine – Najdorf
New York m(3) 1949



3-25

W?

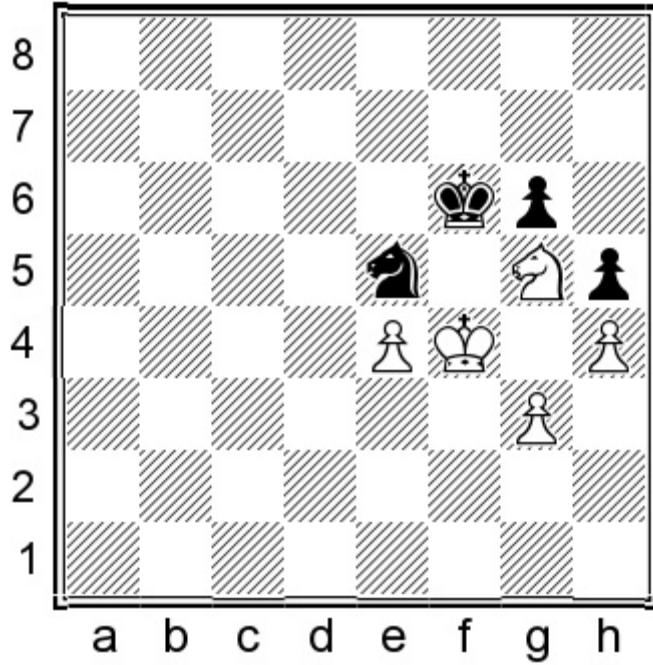
White should hold the position. It is essential, however, not to move the pawn from h2. 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ g5 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ h5 (5... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$, etc.

1.h3?

Now Black has a forced win. He executes a deflecting sacrifice of his knight, which allows him to snap off the pawn at h3, and thereby obtain a decisive passed pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ h5 7. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h4 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ g5! White resigned in view of 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ h3 10. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g2-$

Grischuk – Moiseenko
 Russia (ch) Sochi, 2006



3-25a

W

As we mentioned, the position with the e-pawn blocked on e4 and the pawns on g3-h4/g6-h5 is drawn. It is because of the abundance of such drawn positions that we can no longer state that the knight four vs. three ending is winning in general.

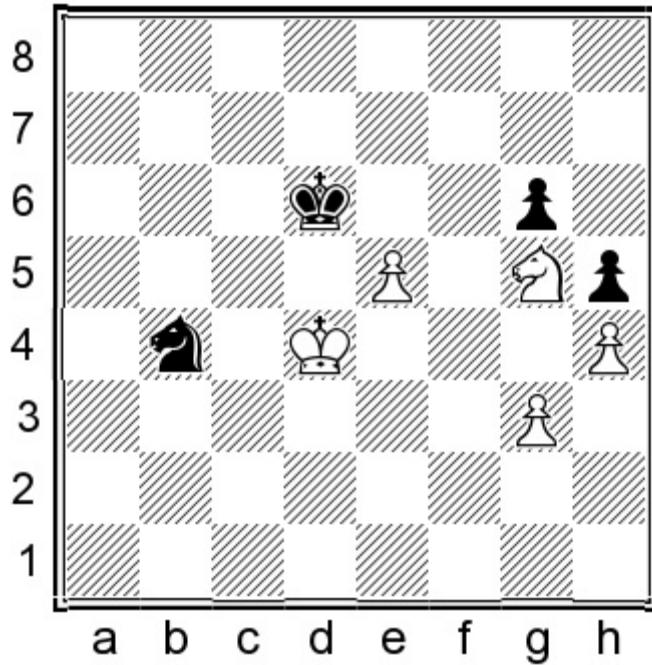
1. ♜f3 ♜d3+

Also good is 1... ♜g4 2. ♜d2 (2. e5+ ♜e6 3. ♜g5 ♜f7 4. e6+ ♜g7! 5. e7 ♜f6 6. ♜e5 ♜h7+ 7. ♜f4 ♜f6 8. ♜f3 ♜e8) 2... ♜e5 3. ♜e3 ♜g4+ 4. ♜d4 g5 5. ♜c4 gxh4 6. gxh4 ♜h2 7. e5+ ♜e6 8. ♜e4 ♜g4, etc.

2. ♜e3 ♜b4 3. ♜d4 ♜e6?

An instructive mistake: the knight needs to harass the white king with 3... ♜c2+! 4. ♜d3 ♜b4+ 5. ♜c4 ♜c2 6. ♜d5 ♜e3+ 7. ♜d6 ♜c4+ 8. ♜c5 ♜e3 (or 8... ♜e5).

4. ♜g5+! ♜d6 5. e5+!



3-25b

B

Whereas the position with the pawn stuck on e4 was drawn, the position with the pawn on e5 can be winning, especially if the knight can reach the key f4-square.

5... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$

6... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ is hopeless, so Black tries to counterattack.

7. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 8.e6 $\mathbb{Q}c6+$

8... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5++-$

9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 11.e7

Alexander Grischuk finishes in fine style.

11... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ g5 13. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ gxh4 15.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ Black resigned.

Chapter 4

Bishop versus Pawns

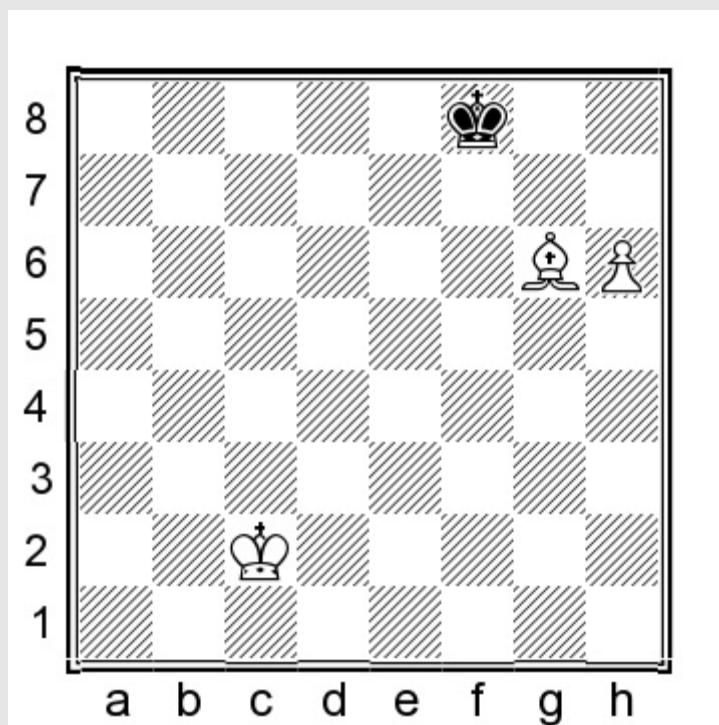
The Elementary Fortressses

There are many endgames in which the only way to defend consists of constructing a position impenetrable to the enemy. Such a position is called a fortress, and the method is called constructing a fortress.

I use the term “elementary fortress” to mean those theoretical positions with minimal material and a king usually placed on the edge or in a corner of the board, in which the stronger side proves unable to exploit a significant material advantage. We have already encountered such positions in the chapter on “Knight vs. Pawns” (diagrams 2-2, 2-4, and 2-5). Here, and also in later chapters, you will learn other elementary fortresses which are important for the practical player.

Bishop and Rook Pawn

If the bishop does not control the rook pawn’s queening square, then the weaker side has only to get his king into the corner (we call that the “safe” corner).



4-1

Black to move plays 1... $\hat{Q}g8!$, with an obvious draw.

Let's learn the techniques of cutting the king off from the safe corner. Let's suppose that it is White's move instead. If the bishop were on f5, he would win after 1. $\hat{Q}e6$!

With Black's king on f6, a different standard cutoff maneuver – 1. $\hat{Q}h5(e8)!$ – works instead. But in the diagrammed position, there is only one way to play for the win:

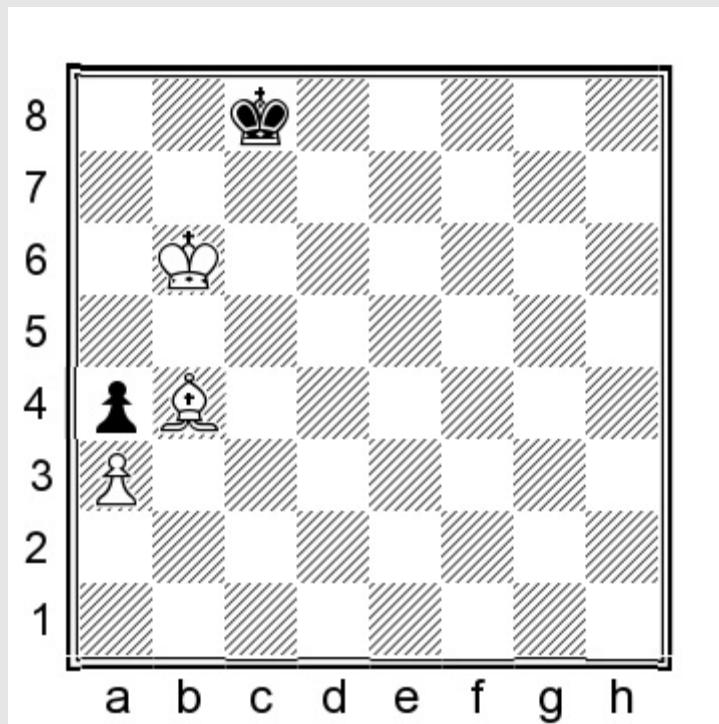
1. $\hat{Q}h7$ $\hat{Q}f7$ 2. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}f6$ (Δ 3... $\hat{Q}g5$) 3. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{Q}f7$ (Δ 4... $\hat{Q}g8$) 4. $\hat{Q}h7$ (4. $\hat{Q}e6+$ $\hat{Q}g6$) 4... $\hat{Q}f6=$

Relocate the white king to d2, and it can reach the pawn in time to help it queen: 1. $\hat{Q}h7!$ $\hat{Q}f7$ 2. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 3. $\hat{Q}f4+-$

Everything we have said so far is elementary. Yet even strong players forget about these ideas surprisingly often, and make mistakes in the simplest positions. I had no difficulty finding examples for the “Tragedies” section of this chapter.

Now let's look at a position with paired rook pawns (with the king cut off from the corner). The famous theoretician Vsevolod Rauzer did considerable analysis on this situation.

V.Rauzer 1928



4-2
W

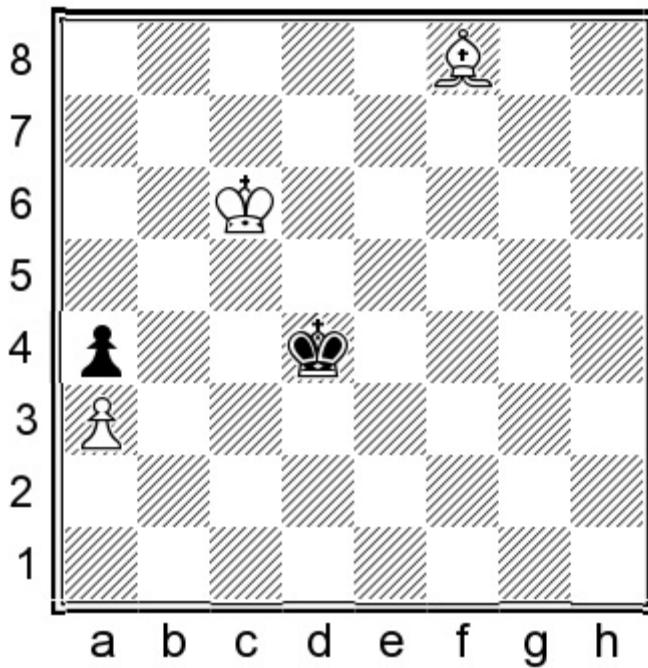
White cuts off and then drives the king away from the corner, yet he still cannot win. **Rauzer found a key drawing zone for this ending: a7-d4-e5-f4-h6.** If the black king finds itself outside the zone and cannot get back in, the game is lost. If the king is being chased by the white king but stays inside the zone, the game is often drawn, but if the king is on the border (for example, on d4), then the

situation can be more complicated. If you are defending this position, try to stay inside the border.

Let's see how this works in practice:

1. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}d8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}e6!$

Staying well inside the drawing zone. By contrast, 7... $\mathbb{Q}d4?$



4-2a

W?

is an instructive mistake. Now we have a border case: 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ is the precise winning move, forcing the king to immediately abandon the drawing zone. (Averbakh only examined 8. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$, allowing Black to gain the half-point with 8... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ (after 8... $\mathbb{Q}c4?$. 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ is the quickest win) 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}f5$ back in the zone, and the white king is close, so this should be a draw! 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}g6$ draws as we shall see in the main line, but not the “active” 10... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}f3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}e3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ and with his wayward king, Black loses, although the win is still quite complicated) 8... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2\mathbb{O}$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xa4 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}c8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b6+-$

From this variation we can see how vital the h2-b8 diagonal is to the bishop. However, the only way the bishop can occupy it is if the black king gets too frisky. Usually when the black king is in the drawing zone, the bishop cannot occupy the h2-b8 diagonal because then the king can come nearer the safe a8-corner. So the inner part near the a8-corner of the drawing zone is safer than the outer part.

8. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}f7$

10... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}g5$ (but again, not outside the zone with 11... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$) 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}g6$ is also possible.

11. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}g6$

11... $\hat{Q}g8$? is stepping too far away: 12. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}f7$ 13. $\hat{Q}b5$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 14. $\hat{Q}xa4!+-$; 11... $\hat{Q}f8$ is fine, however.

12. $\hat{Q}e6$

12. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}f5$! An important theme, attacking the bishop on that critical diagonal; we shall see this theme again.

12... $\hat{Q}g5$ 13. $\hat{Q}b2$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 14. $\hat{Q}f6$ $\hat{Q}h6$ 15. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{Q}h7$!

But not 15... $\hat{Q}h5$? which steps outside the zone. White then wins with 16. $\hat{Q}g7$, although the win is very complicated.

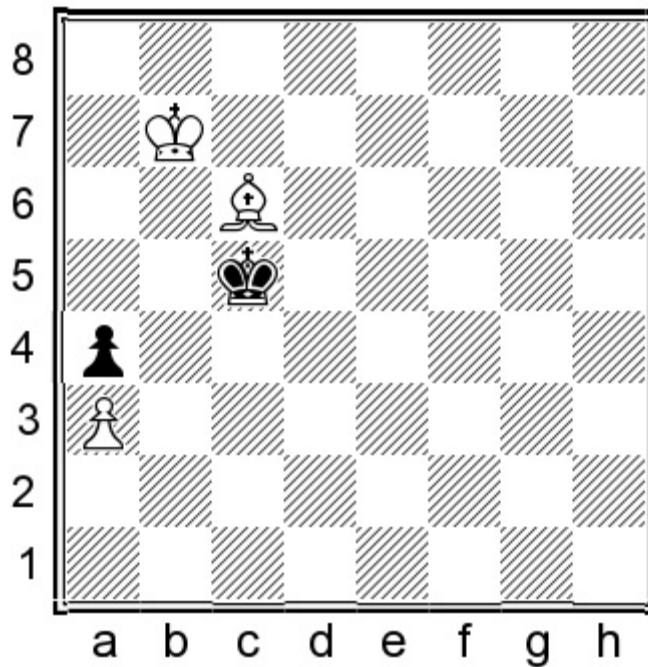
16. $\hat{Q}e6$ $\hat{Q}h6$ 17. $\hat{Q}f7$ $\hat{Q}h7$ 18. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}h6$ 19. $\hat{Q}g7+$ $\hat{Q}h7$ 20. $\hat{Q}f8$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 21. $\hat{Q}g8$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 22. $\hat{Q}f7$ $\hat{Q}g5$ 23. $\hat{Q}f8$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 24. $\hat{Q}e7$

White has managed to drive the king closer to the center; but now he has to keep it from returning to a8. As a result, Black can stay well within the drawing zone.

24... $\hat{Q}e5$ 25. $\hat{Q}e8$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 26. $\hat{Q}f8$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 27. $\hat{Q}b4$ $\hat{Q}g7$, etc.

When the black king is far from the pawns, then staying on the upper half of the board is usually sufficient to stay in the zone. But when the king is close to your pawn, that can actually be an important trap to avoid, as we see in the next example.

After Rauzer 2019



*4-2b
B?*

The zone is a7-b6-c5-d4-e5-f4-g5-h6. And a8, etc., are inside the zone.

Where should the king go? There are four moves, but only one draws. It is the one that stays well inside our zone.

1... \hat{Q} d5!

1... \hat{Q} b5? is tempting because it seems close to the corner which is where we need to get, but it is outside the Rauzer zone and loses: 2. \hat{Q} b7 \hat{Q} a5 3. \hat{Q} c5 \hat{Q} b5 4. \hat{Q} b4 \hat{Q} c4 5. \hat{Q} c6 \hat{Q} d4 6. \hat{Q} d6!, reaching the winning position we saw in the previous example.

1... \hat{Q} d5! 2. \hat{Q} d7 \hat{Q} e4!

2... \hat{Q} d4? only temporarily gets in the zone: 3. \hat{Q} c6! wins, as previously seen.

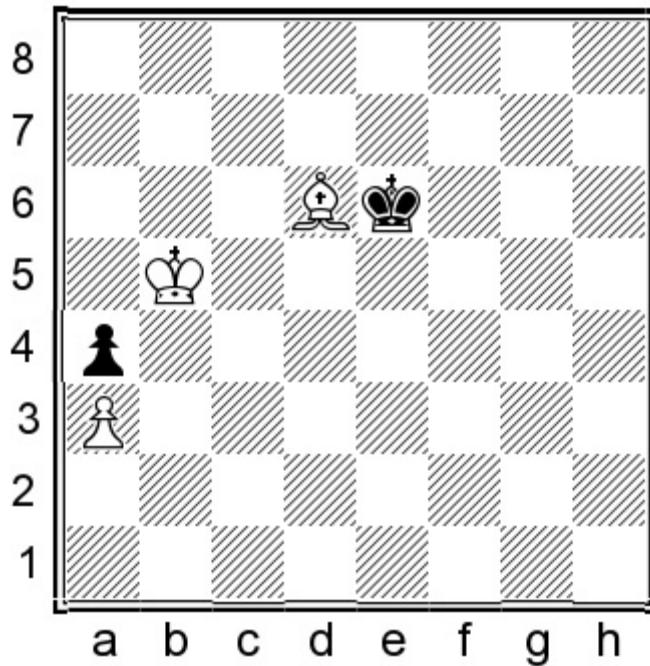
3. \hat{Q} c6

3. \hat{Q} e6 \hat{Q} d4, with the white king on e6, the d4-square (still in the zone) is not as dangerous. 4. \hat{Q} b4 \hat{Q} c4 5. \hat{Q} d6 \hat{Q} d4! 6. \hat{Q} c6 (6. \hat{Q} e6 \hat{Q} c4=) 6... \hat{Q} e5= (6... \hat{Q} c4? 7. \hat{Q} c5+-) Note that 5... \hat{Q} b5? loses again: 6. \hat{Q} c7 \hat{Q} a6 7. \hat{Q} c5 \hat{Q} b5 8. \hat{Q} e3 \hat{Q} a6 9. \hat{Q} c6 \hat{Q} a5 10. \hat{Q} b7 \hat{Q} b5 11. \hat{Q} b6 \hat{Q} c4 12. \hat{Q} c6 \hat{Q} b3 13. \hat{Q} c5 \hat{Q} c4 14. \hat{Q} d6+- as previously noted.

3... \hat{Q} f5!

We cross the frontier. 3... \hat{Q} d4? 4. \hat{Q} b5 \hat{Q} d5 5. \hat{Q} h2+-○

4. \hat{Q} b5 \hat{Q} e6!



4-2c

W

The only way to draw, but a theme we have seen. The bishop needed to be on the h2-b8 diagonal, but to keep some key squares away from the black king, it had to be on a square where it gets attacked at the critical moment. The position is drawn.

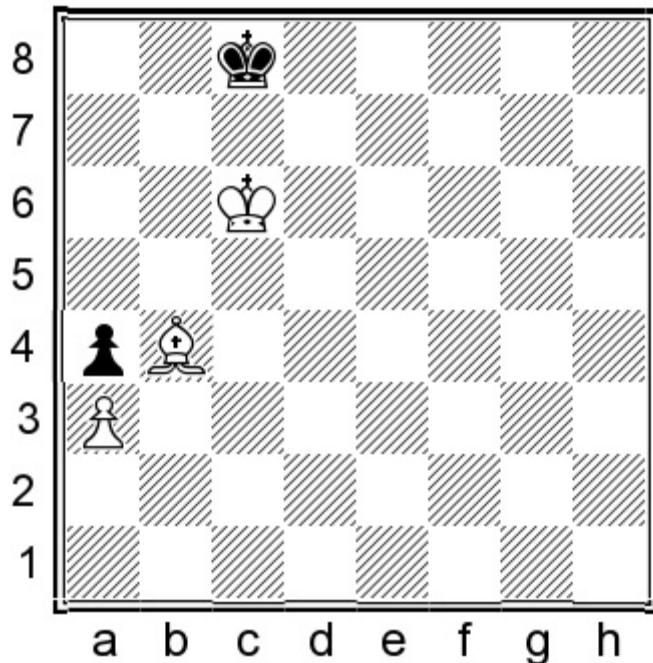
5. \hat{Q} h2 \hat{Q} d7 6. \hat{Q} xa4 \hat{Q} c8 7. \hat{Q} b5 \hat{Q} b7= and Black has arrived in time.

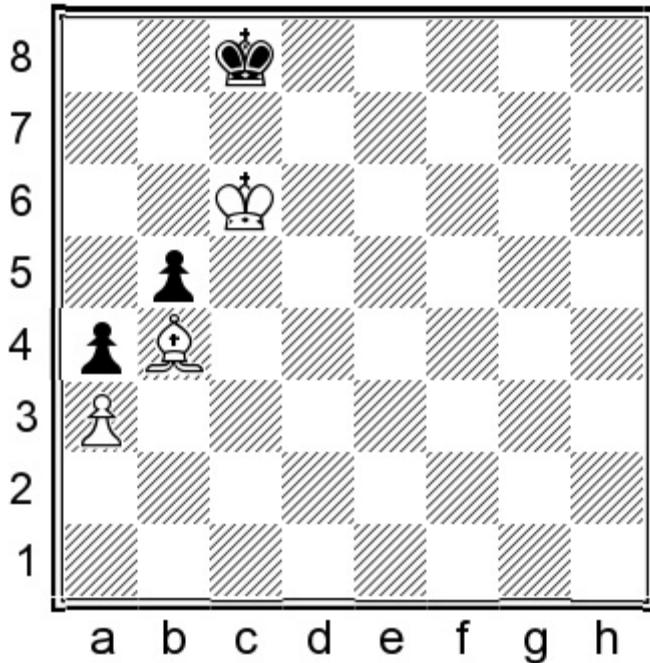
I might add (without giving the full proof, which is pretty weighty) that if, in Rauzer's starting

position, we move the pawn on a3 back to a2, the evaluation changes. White will try to stalemate the enemy king (while still keeping him away from the corner, of course), in order to force the move a4-a3, after which the bishop can pick off the pawn. If Black tries to avoid this scenario, then he must move his king into the center, which will allow White, by playing a2-a3 at the right moment, to obtain the “bad” black king situation we have already seen.

Diagrams 4-3 and 4-4 have been intentionally omitted.

Now for one more variation (analyzed by Horwitz and Averbakh) on Rauzer’s position (see diagram 4-2). Let’s add a black pawn on b5.





4-5
\$
B?

Now the king's arrival in that upper left-hand corner is mortally dangerous. It will be stalemated, and ...b5-b4 will be forced, when the a3-pawn goes to the b-file. White to move wins quickly by 1. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{Q}b8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}a8$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7\mathbb{O}$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7\mathbb{O}$ 3...b4 4. axb4+—.

But Black to move renders the position drawn, since White can no longer stalemate the king. The move ...b5-b4 is no longer even fatal; in fact, at the right moment it will be Black's salvation.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}d8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8!$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}e8?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7\mathbb{O}$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}b7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ b4! 7. axb4 $\mathbb{Q}b6=$, but not 7...a3? 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ a2 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4+—$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}d8!$

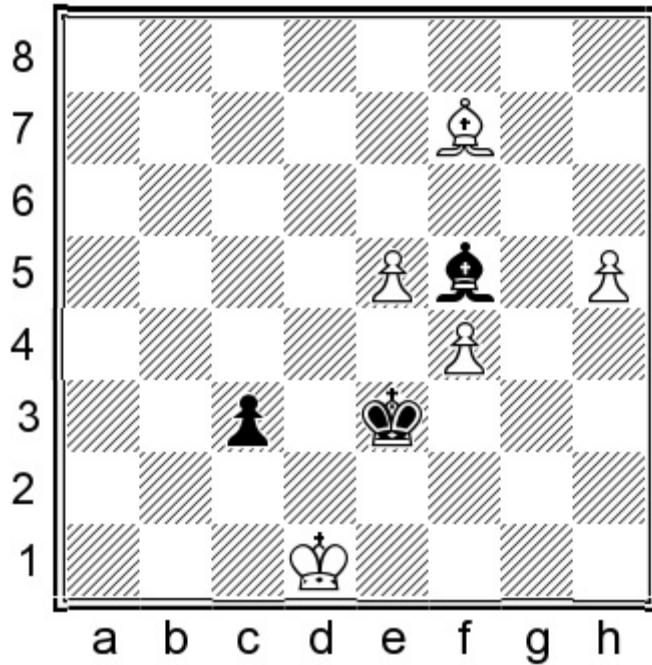
Black loses after 5... $\mathbb{Q}b7?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}c8$ (6...b4 7. axb4 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a3 \mathbb{Q}c4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 11. b5; 6... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d7$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{Q}c8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}b7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}c8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}b8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{Q}a7$ (12... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c7$; 12... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}a7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$) 13. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ or 13. $\mathbb{Q}b4$.

6. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ b4!=

White can drive the enemy king to the kingside and try to stalemate it there. In order to avoid stalemate, the king will have to retreat to the lower half of the board; but that is less dangerous now than it was without the b5-pawn, in view of ...b5-b4! at the right moment, which now becomes a resource for Black.

Tragicomедies

Gutman – Mikenas
Riga 1969



4-6

W

What could have been simpler than 1.e6 ♕xf4 2.e7 ♔d7 3.h6+–,
or 1.h6 ♕xf4 2.e6+–?

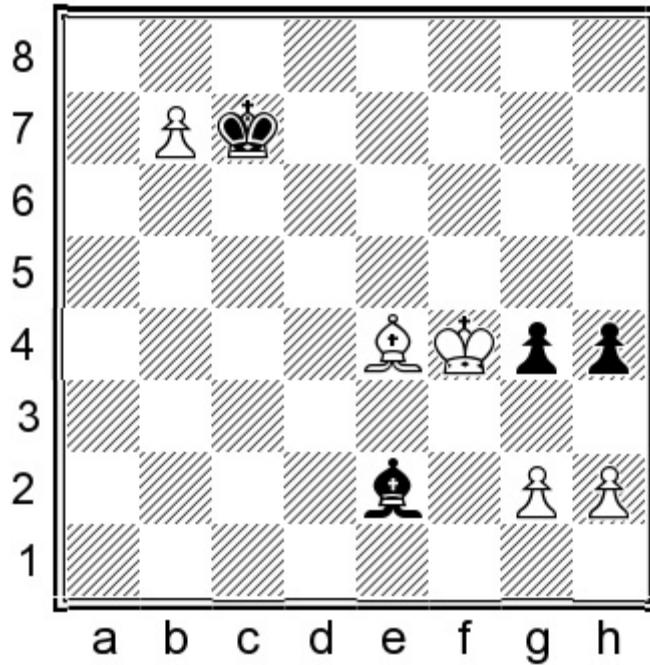
1.♕g6?? ♕xf4 2.♕xf5

Gutman evidently expected 2...♕xf5? 3.h6 ♕g6 4.e6+– However, it is more important for Black to take, not the bishop, but the e-pawn.

2...♙xe5! 3.h6 ♕f6 4.♕c2 ♕f7 5.♕h7 ♕f6 6.♕g8 ♕g6 7.h7 ♕g7 Draw.

Gershon – Thorhallsson

Bermuda 1999



4-7
W

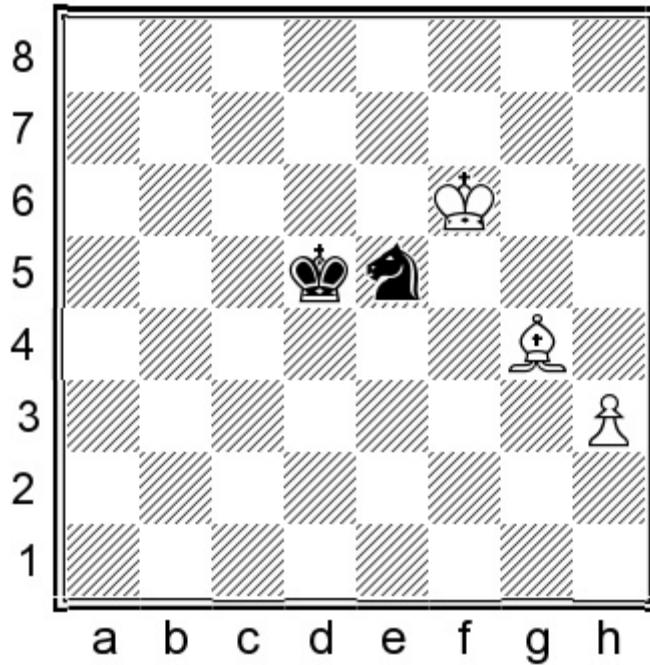
Here too, the win is elementary: 1. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h3 2. g3, followed by 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ – White winds up two pawns ahead. Gershon chose a different way, making the same mistake Gutman did in the preceding example: he only expected Black to take his attacked bishop.

1.h3?? gxh3 2.gxh3 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!$

On 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$, the black king has time to get to h8; otherwise, we have Rauzer's drawn position. The game ended in a draw.

Where should Black put his king in the next diagram? As close as possible to h8, of course.

Fischer – Taimanov
Vancouver cmqf (2) 1971



4-8
B

The most accurate way to draw was: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ 2.h4 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7=$

Also possible was 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4.h4 $\mathbb{Q}f6=$

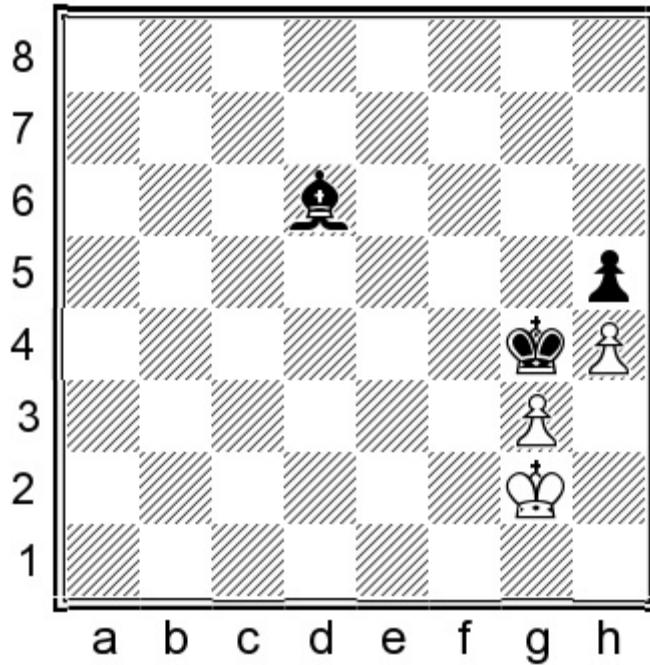
Amazingly, the highly experienced grandmaster sent his king off in the opposite direction.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$; 2... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5+)$ 3.h4

Nothing can save him now: as you will recall, the knight has a difficult time with rook pawns.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 4.h5 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 8.h7 $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ Black resigned.

Dombrowska – Lyszowska
Polish ch 1988



4-9

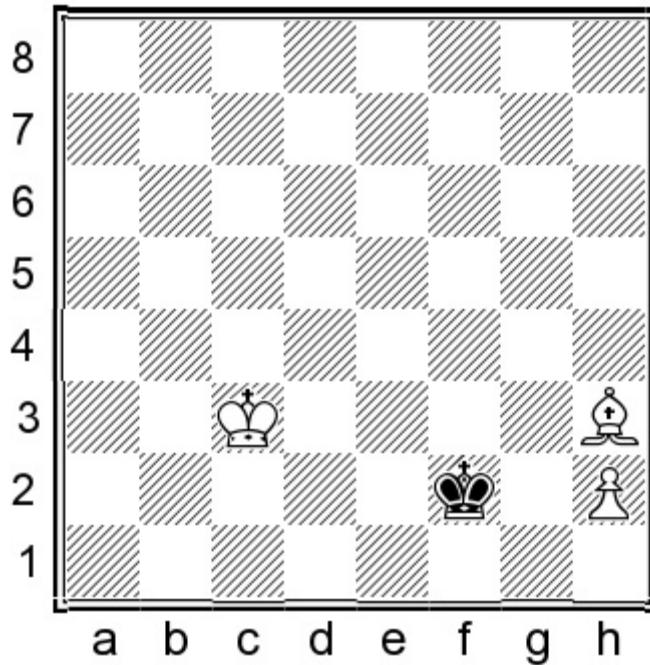
W?

1. ♔g1?? ♔h3!

If 2. ♔h1, then 2... ♔c5O 2.g4 hxg4, and the rook pawn becomes a knight pawn. And on 2. ♔f1, either 2... ♔h2 or 2... ♔c5 decides. Therefore, White resigned.

White had to play 1. ♔h2! Black can neither drive White's king from the corner, nor put White in zugzwang. For example, 1... ♔f3 2. ♔h3 ♔c5 3. ♔h2 ♔d4 4. ♔h1!= (but not 4. ♔h3?? ♔g1O).

Exercises



4-10

4/1

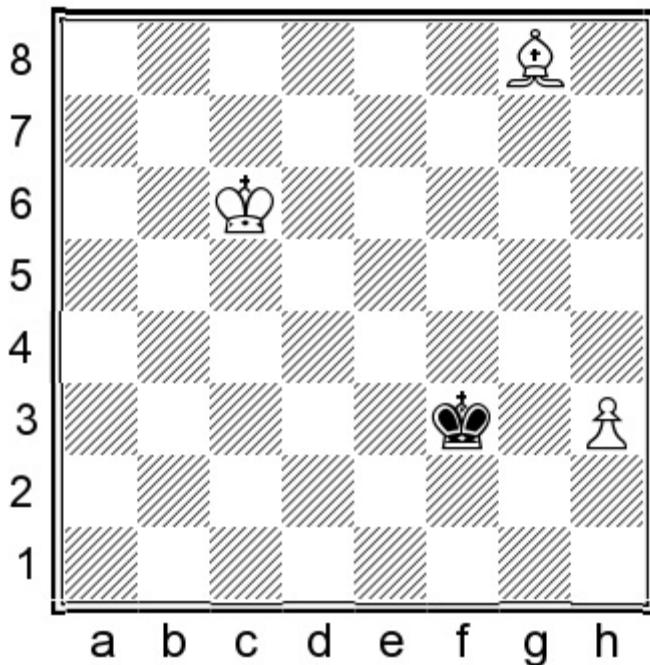
W?

Show/Hide Solution

4/1. O.Frink 1923

1. $\mathbb{Q}d7!! \mathbb{Q}e3$ 2. h4 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4+-$) 3. h5 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. h6 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e8!+-$

According to the computer database, this same study was published a year before by Josef Vancura.



4-11

4/2

W?

Show/Hide Solution

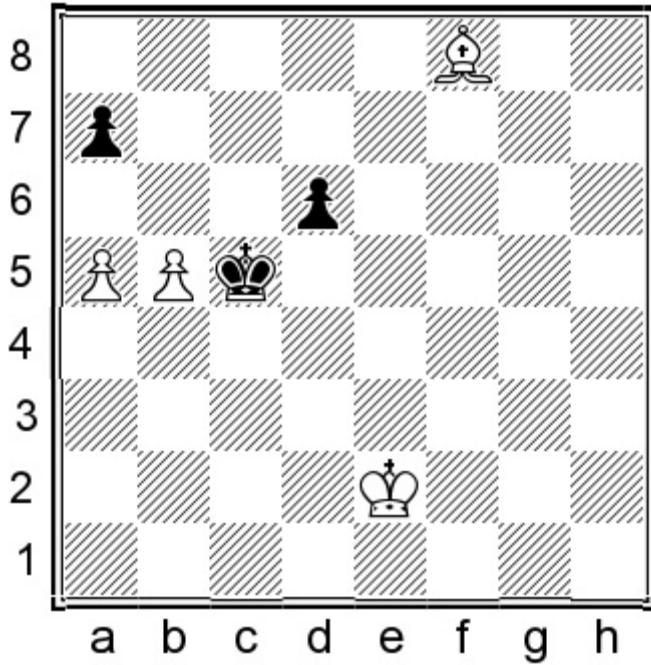
4/2. G.van Breukelen 1969

Is it possible to prevent the black king's march to the corner? Yes, if White manages to discover the reciprocal zugzwang positions and reach them with Black to move.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d7!! \mathbb{Q}f4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7!\Theta$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8\Theta$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$

†g5 6. †g7+

1. †d6? leads only to a draw: 1... †f4 2. †e7 (2. †e6 $\text{†g3}! =$) 2... †g5O 3. †e8 (3. †e6 $\text{†g6} =$; 3. †f7 $\text{†h4} =$) 3... †f6! (or 3... †h5!) 4. †f8 †g6O , because both zugzwang positions arise with White on move.



4-12

4/3

W?

Show/Hide Solution

4/3. A.Gerbstman 1928

1.b6 axb6

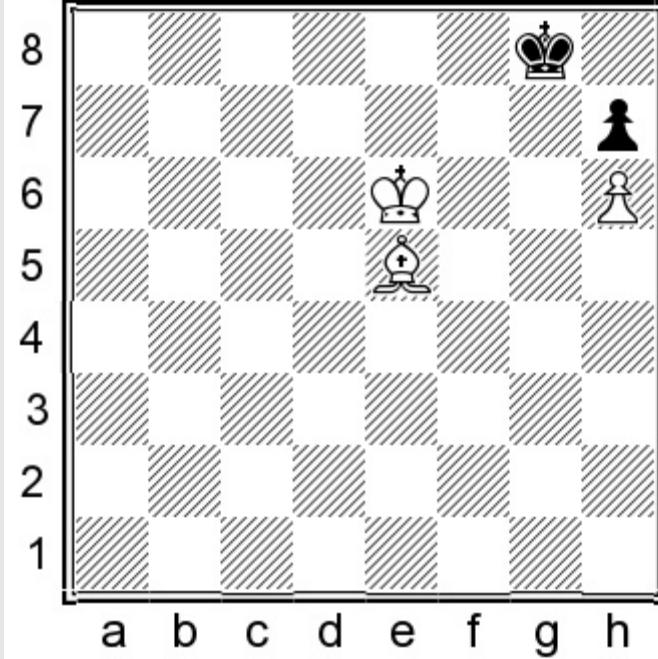
1... †c6 2. †e7! axb6 (2... †b7 3. †d8+--) 3. a6 is the same.

2.a6 †c6 3. †e7!

Thanks to the threat of 4. †d8 , White distracts the king to c7 winning an extremely important tempo. The straightforward 3. †xd6? does not give more than a draw: 3... b5 4. †c5 †c7 5. †a7 b4 6. †d3 †c6 7. †c4 b3 8. †xb3 $\text{†b5} =$

3... †c7 (3... b5 4. †d8 d5 5. †d3 b4 6. †d4O+--) 4. †xd6+! †c6 5. †d3 b5 6. †c5 †c7 7. †a7 †c6 8. †c3+--

Pawns at h6 and h7

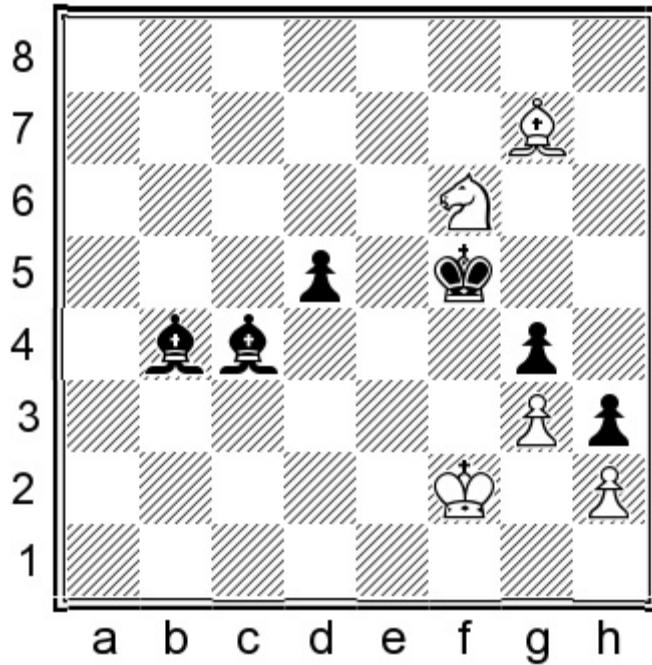


4-13

Even though the bishop controls the queening square, this position is still drawn. On 1. $\mathbb{Q}f6$, Black of course replies 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!=$ (but not 1... $\mathbb{Q}h8??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$). The evaluation would not be changed, even if you added pawn pairs at g5/g6 and f4/f5.

Tragomedies

Maiwald – Bischoff
German ch Gladenbach 1997



4-14

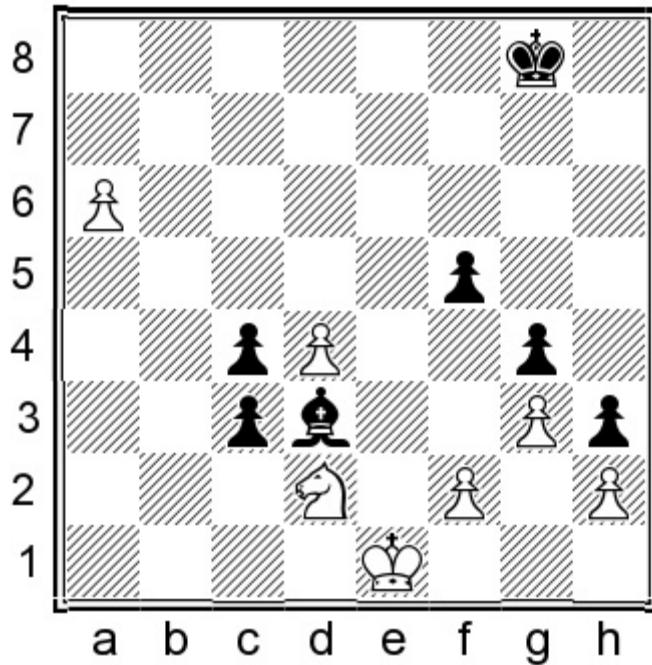
W?

1. ♜e8? ♜c5+ 2. ♜e1 ♜e4

White resigned, since the enemy king marches unhindered to g2.

He could have saved the game with a piece sacrifice: 1. ♜xd5! ♜xd5 (1... ♜c5+ 2. ♜e3+ ♜e4 3. ♜h6=) 2. ♜d4 ♜e4 3. ♜a7. White keeps his king at g1, and his bishop on the g1-a7 diagonal. If the bishops are exchanged, we have the drawing position we already know.

Exercises



4-15

4/4

W?

Show/Hide Solution

4/4. V.Smyslov 1999

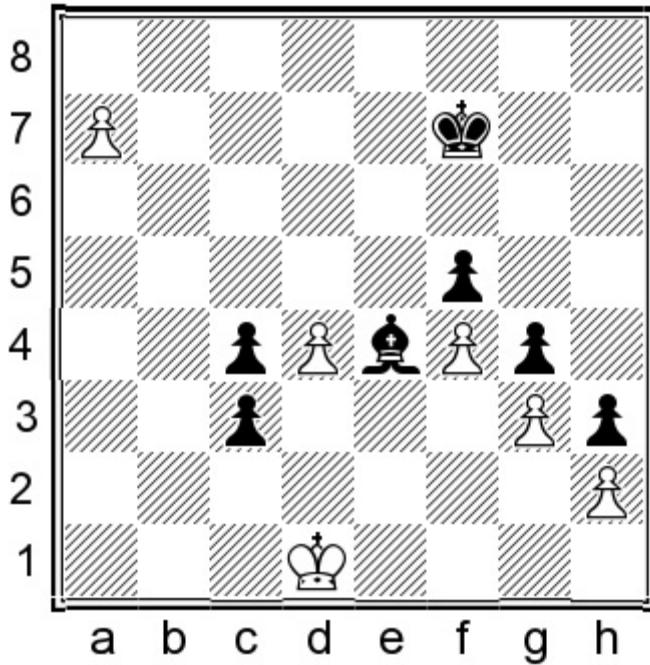
1. ♜f1! ♜xf1 (1...c2 2. ♜d2 ♜xf1 3. f4!!) 2. f4!!

White's goal is the elementary fortress that we already know. 2.d5? ♜g2 3.d6 ♜f7 loses.

2... ♜g2 (2...gxf3? 3.a7+-) 3. ♜d1!

3.a7? is wrong in view of 3... ♜f3!+-

3... ♜e4 4.a7 ♜f7



16-39

W?

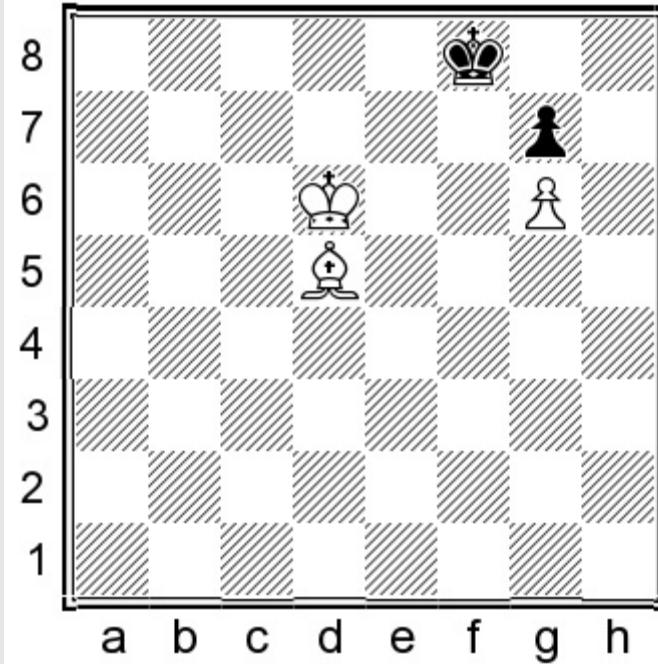
5.d5!

White uses his passed pawns to distract the bishop from protecting its own pawns. The last two moves can be transposed.

5... ♜xd5 6. ♜c2 ♜e6 7. ♜xc3 ♜d7 8. a8=威 (or 8. ♜d4 ♜d6 9. a8=威) 8... ♜xa8 9. ♜xc4=

White has only one remaining thing to do: to return his king to g1.

Pawns at g6 and g7

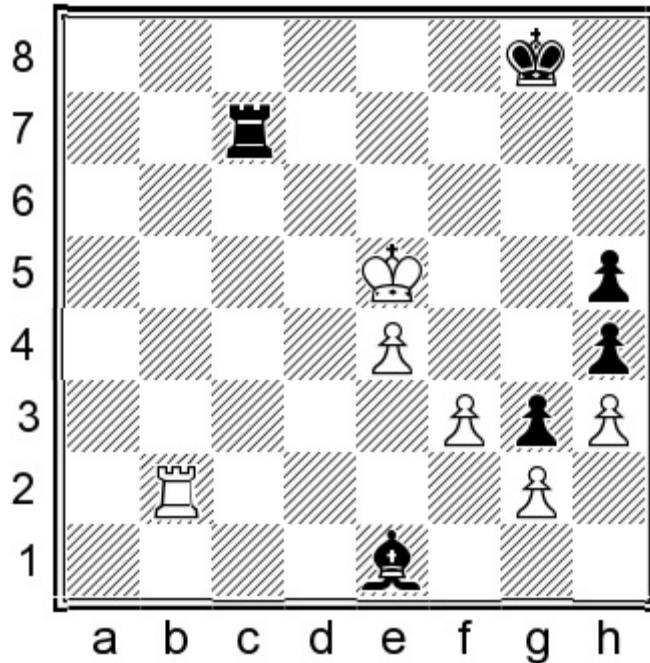


4-16

Here too the draw is obvious, and it would still be so if we added more pawn pairs at h5/h6, f5/f6, and e4/e5

Tragicomедies

Polugaevsky – Zakharov
USSR ch, Leningrad 1963



4-17

B

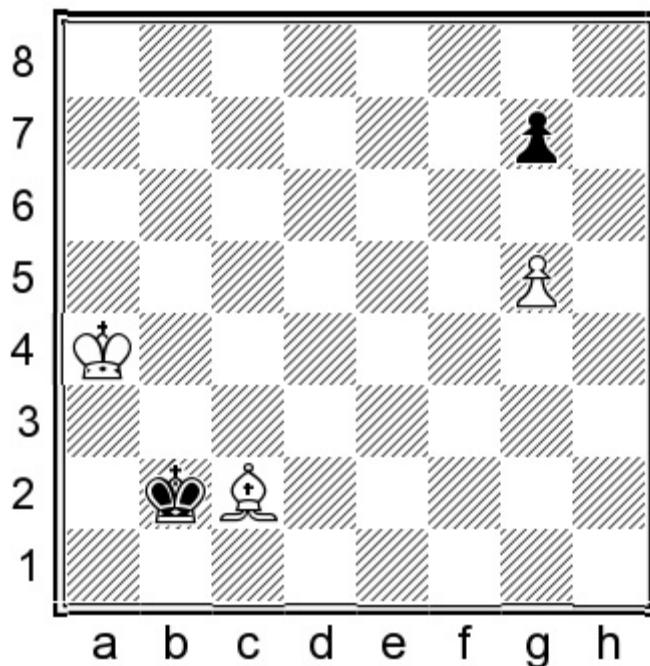
1...♝c3+ 2.♝d6 ♝xb2?

After 2...♝a7, Black would soon have won with his extra bishop. The text allows White to set up an elementary fortress.

3.♝xc7 ♞f7 4.♝d6 ♞f6 5.♝d5 ♞g5 6.♝c4

Draw. The king has managed to get home in time from his far-flung peregrinations (6...♞f4 7.♝d3=).

Exercises



4-18

4/5

W?

Show/Hide Solution

4/5. H.Weenink 1922

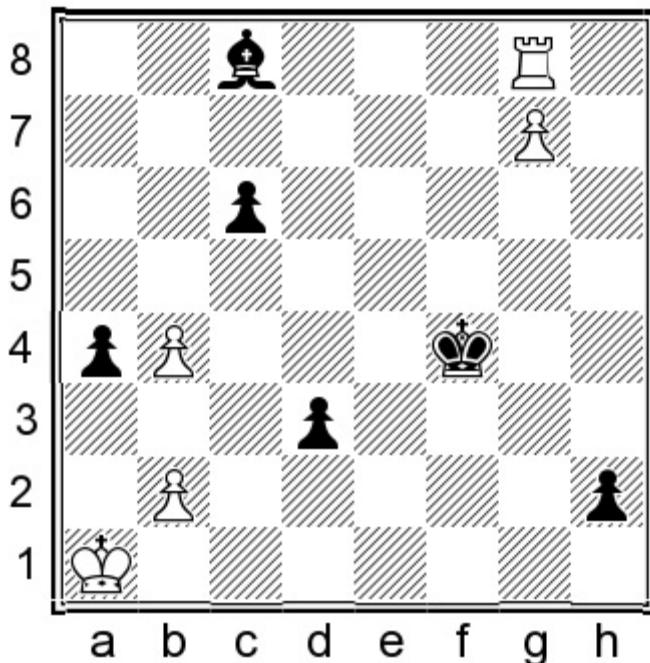
Black's hopes to build an elementary fortress, e.g., 1. $\hat{Q}h7?$ $\hat{B}c3$ 2. $\hat{B}b5$ $\hat{B}d4$ 3. $\hat{B}c6$ $\hat{B}e5$ 4. $g6$ (4. $\hat{B}d7$ $g6!=$) 4... $\hat{B}e6$ 5. $\hat{B}g8+$ $\hat{K}e7=$

White can get the missing tempo by means of a bishop sacrifice followed by shouldering in the arising pawn endgame, but the straightforward attempt 1. $\hat{B}b4?$ $\hat{B}xc2$ 2. $\hat{B}c4$ does not win: 2... $\hat{B}d2$ 3. $\hat{B}d4$ $\hat{B}e2$ 4. $\hat{B}e4$ $\hat{B}f2$ 5. $\hat{B}f4$ (5. $\hat{B}f5$ $\hat{B}g3$ 6. $\hat{B}g6$ $\hat{B}g4=$) 5... $\hat{B}g2$ 6. $\hat{B}g4$ $g6$ 7. $\hat{B}f4$ $\hat{B}h3=$

1. $\hat{B}b1!!$

A brilliant move! After 1... $\hat{B}c3$, the bishop is better placed on b1 than on h7: 2. $\hat{B}b5$ $\hat{B}d4$ 3. $\hat{B}c6$ $\hat{B}e5$ 4. $\hat{B}d7$ $g6$ (4... $\hat{B}f4$ 5. $g6+-$) 5. $\hat{B}e7$, and the black king cannot step to f5.

1... $\hat{B}xb1$ also loses: 2. $\hat{B}b3$ $\hat{B}c1$ 3. $\hat{B}c3$ $\hat{B}d1$ (3... $\hat{B}b1$ 4. $g6+-$) 4. $\hat{B}d3$ $\hat{B}e1$ 5. $\hat{B}e3$ $\hat{B}f1$ 6. $\hat{B}f3+-$



4-19

4/6

W?

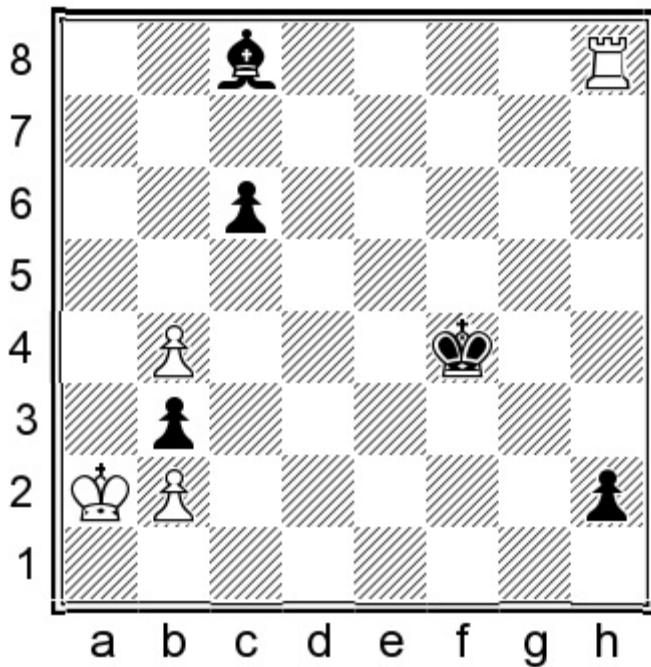
Show/Hide Solution

4/6. E.Somov-Nasimovich, 1935

The rook must go back from g8, but where? Only deep, precise calculation can tell.

If 1. $\mathbb{R}f8+$? then 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $g8=\mathbb{W}$ $h1=\mathbb{W}+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a2 \mathbb{W}d5+!$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $cxd5$. The d-pawn can be stopped by means of 5. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $d2+$ 6. $\mathbb{R}xf5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$, but the pawn ending turns out to be losing: 7... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ and if 9. $b3$ then 9... $a3-$ (rather than 9... $axb3?$ 10. $b5=$).

1. $\mathbb{R}h8!$ $d2$ 2. $g8=\mathbb{W}$ $d1=\mathbb{W}+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a2 \mathbb{W}b3+!$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xb3$ $AXB3+$



16-40

W?

5. $\mathbb{Q}a3!!$

If 5. $\mathbb{Q}xb3?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{R}xh2$ (forced – otherwise 6... $\mathbb{Q}h3-$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+!$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}g3?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ and 13. $b5=$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$, White is lost. 5. $\mathbb{Q}a1?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{R}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 7. $b5$ $c5!$ is also useless.

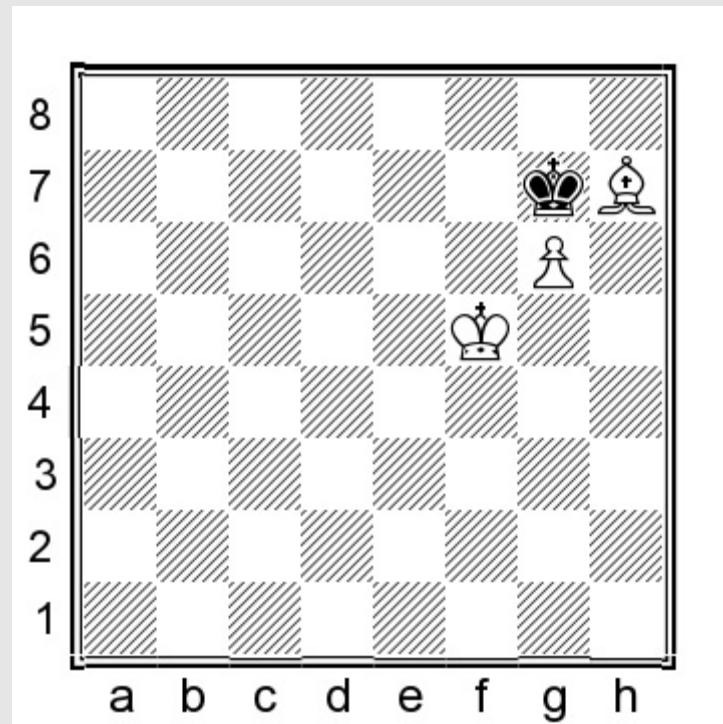
5... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (Δ 6... $\mathbb{Q}h3$) 6. $\mathbb{R}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 7. $b5!$ $cxb5$

7... $c5$ makes no sense in view of 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb3=$. Now the drawing pawn structure has been built, and all that remains to do is a king retreat homewards.

8. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d2=$

Bishop at h7 and Pawn at g6

D. Ponziani 1782



4-20

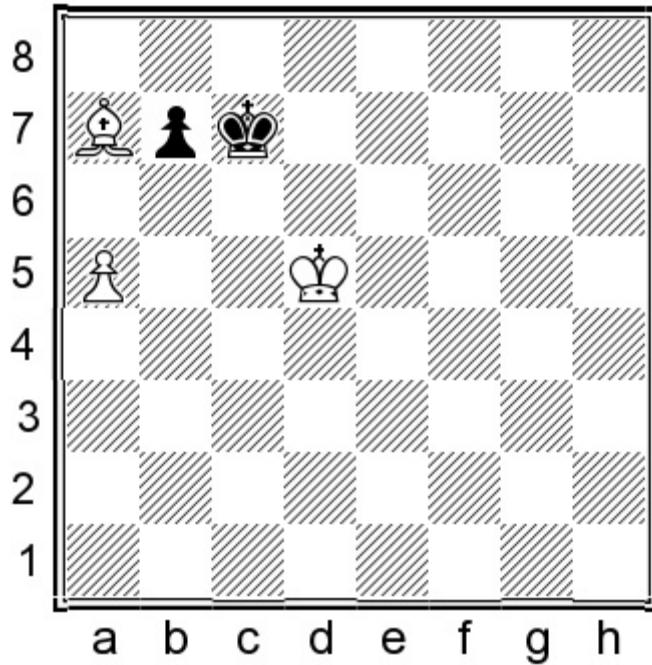
This drawing position has been known since the 18th century. The bishop cannot escape from its corner; and giving it up leads to a drawn pawn ending.

1. ♕g5 ♕h8 2. ♕g8 ♕xg8 3. ♕h6 ♕h8=

Tragicomедies

Paulsen – Metger

Nürnberg 1888



4-21

W?

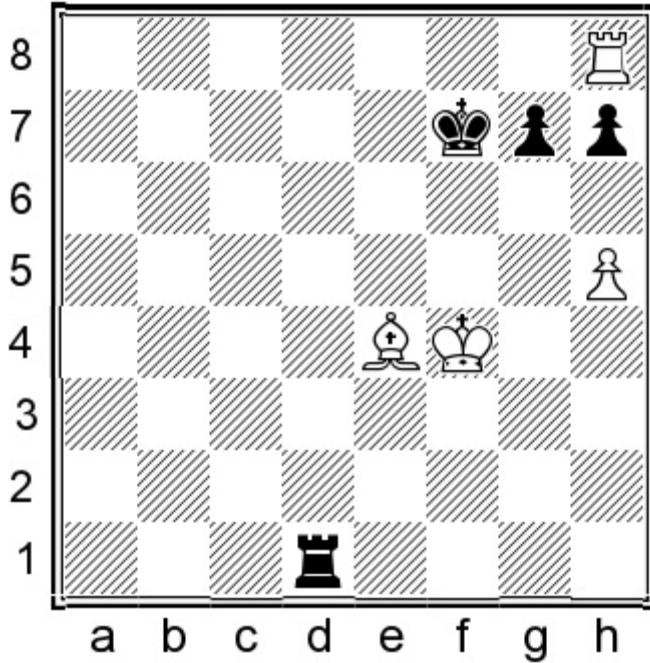
After 1.♗c4?? b5+! (but not 1...b6? 2.a6!+—), the draw would have been inescapable, since either Black's king reaches the corner not controlled by the bishop (2.♗xb5 ♗b7), or Ponziani's position is reached (2.axb6+ ♗b7).

The game continuation 1.♗c5? also drew after 1...b6+!

The winning move was 1.♗d4! ♗c6 (1...b5 2.a6 ♗c6 3.♗c3 or 1...b6 2.a6 ♗c6 3.♗c4) 2.♗b6! (2.♗c3? b6! 3.a6 ♗b5=) 2...♗d6 (2...♗b5 3.♗d5 ♗a6 4.♗d6) 3.♗c4 ♗c6 4.♗b4 ♗d7 5.♗c5 ♗c8 6.♗a7 ♗c7 7.♗b5 ♗d7 8.♗b8 ♗c8 9.♗f4 ♗d7 10.♗b6 ♗c8 11.♗e5+—

Sax – Kovacevic

Sarajevo 1982



4-22

W

White has good chances for success. One very strong line is 1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{E}e1$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c8$ $\mathbb{E}e2$ 3. $\mathbb{R}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \Delta$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh7.$

Another way of threatening the h7-pawn would be 1. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$

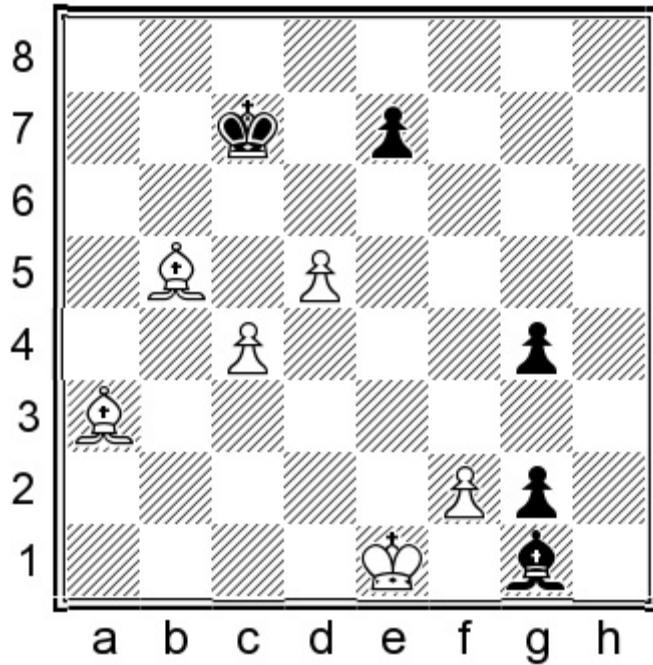
But the immediate capture of this pawn is a terrible mistake.

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh7?$ (1. $\mathbb{Q}xh7?$ $\mathbb{Q}g8=)$

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh7?$ $\mathbb{Q}g5+!!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=)$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ It turns out that even adding rooks does not change the evaluation of Ponziani's position – White can neither queen the pawn nor free his bishop.

4. $\mathbb{R}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{R}f1+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}e1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6,$ and the game was soon drawn.

Exercises



4-23

4/7

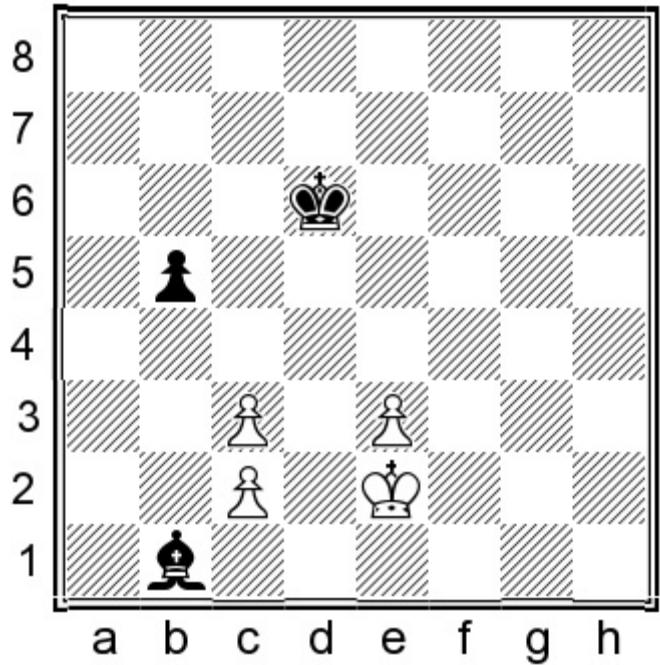
W?

Show/Hide Solution

4/7. H. Seyboth, 1908

1. $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 2. f4 gxf3 (Δ 3... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ loses to 3... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ 4. c5 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ (Δ 5... $\mathbb{Q}h4-+$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+-$. In order to stop the menacing g2-pawn, White must give all his pieces and pawns away.

1. d6+! exd6 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd6+$! $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 3. c5+ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ gxf1=+= 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 6. f3! g3 (6... gxf3 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (or 7. f4) with a draw.



4-24

4/8

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

4/8. P. Kiriakov, 1997

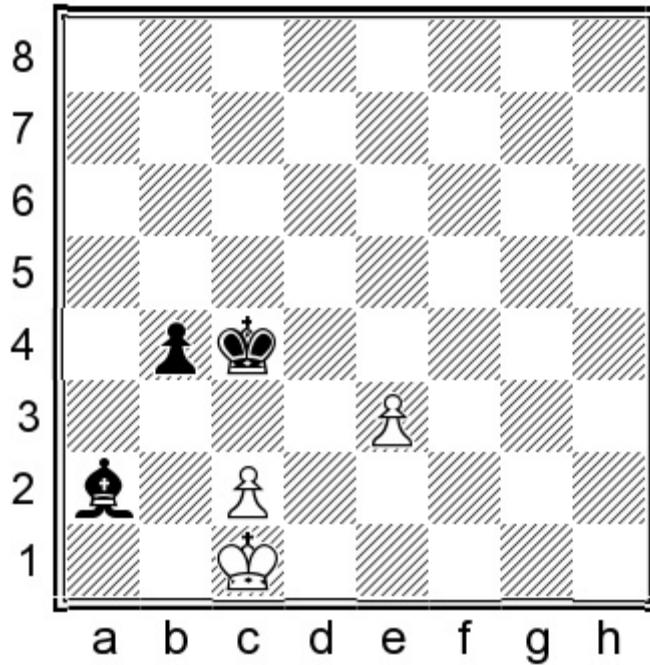
1.c4! (otherwise 1... $\mathbb{Q}a2-$) **1...b4!** (1... $bxc4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2=$) **2. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$**

White must lose a tempo. After 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$, he is put in zugzwang. 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 4.c3 $bxc3$ is hopeless, while 3.e4 loses to 3... $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (rather than 3... $\mathbb{Q}a2?$ 4.c3).

2... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$

Now it is Black who is in zugzwang, and it may seem that the fight is over: 3... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ or 3... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 4.c3! b3 5. $\mathbb{Q}c1=$. However Black still has resources.

3... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$



16-41

W?

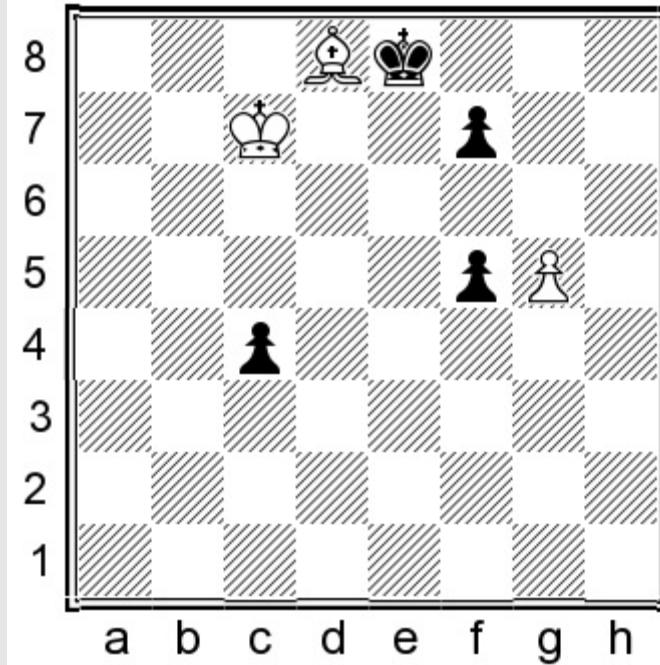
5.♗d2!!○

The “obvious” 5.♗b2? is met with 5...♝b3!! 6.cxb3+ ♛d3 with a winning pawn endgame. Now, however, Black cannot avoid the Ponziani position.

5...♝b5 6.c3! b3 7.♗c1=

Bishop vs. Disconnected Pawns

M.Dvoretsky 2000



4-25

W?

The primitive 1.♗f6? f4 2.♕d6 f3 3.♗d4 leads to a loss after 3...c3! In chess jargon, this situation is referred to as “***the pants***”: the bishop stops pawns on two different diagonals, but advancing one of the pawns means the bishop must give up its guard over the other. This is the same sort of “pants” situation that could have arisen in the Gutman-Mikenas game (diagram 4-6) after the correct 1.e6 or 1.h6.

Sometimes, the bishop is not holding a passed pawn on one of the two diagonals, but defending its own pawn, or some other important point. For all practical purposes, this is the same thing: advancing a pawn pulls the bishop away from fulfilling its other obligation. An example of this might be Smyslov’s study (Exercise 4/4). Keep in mind also that there are other ways to exploit a “torn” bishop. Sometimes, it may be driven away from the intersection of two diagonals by the king, or forced to move away by means of zugzwang.

Return to the position above. White saves himself with a pawn sacrifice:

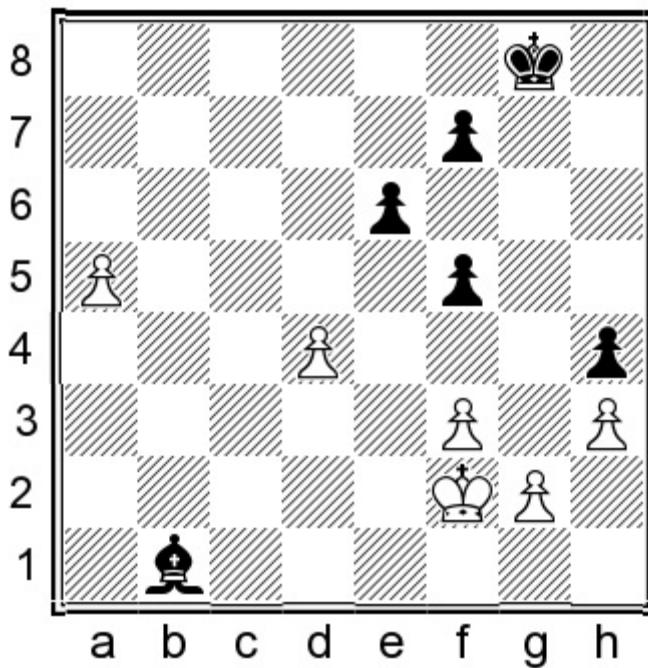
1.g6! (Δ 2.g7) 1...fxg6 2.♗g5=

The one-diagonal principle! The bishop now fulfills both functions from a single diagonal, c1-h6, which allows White to draw without difficulty.

Rather than taking the pawn, Black could try 1...f6!? hoping to get “the pants” after 2.♗xf6? f4. But by continuing 2.♗d6! ♗f8 (2...f4? is bad in view of 3.♗e7! f3 4.♗e6 f2 5.g7+–) 3.♗d5(c5) instead, White draws.

Tragicomедies

Ilyin-Zhenevsky – Miasoedov
Leningrad 1932



4-26

W

Black should have an uncomplicated win with his extra piece. For instance, on 1. $\hat{Q}e3$, he has the strong continuation 1... $\hat{Q}a2$ 2. $\hat{Q}f4$ f6! 3. g4 hxg3 4. $\hat{Q}xg3$ e5 5. dx5 fxe5 6. $\hat{Q}h4$ e4 7. fxe4 fxe4 8. $\hat{Q}g3$ $\hat{Q}d5$ (of course not 8... $\hat{Q}c4$ 9. $\hat{Q}f4$ $\hat{Q}d3??$ 10. a6=) 9. $\hat{Q}f4$ $\hat{Q}g7$ 10. a6 $\hat{Q}g6$ 11. a7 $\hat{Q}h5$. White is helpless in this variation, because the bishop holds the a-pawn while defending its own pawn on one diagonal, a8-h1.

Ilyin-Zhenevsky tries one last chance:

1.d5! $\hat{Q}d3?$

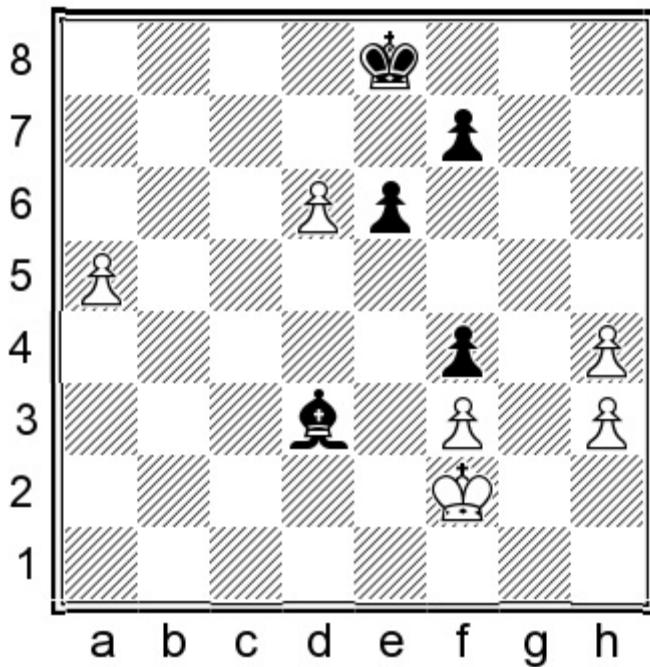
This error costs Black the win. Of course, 1... exd5?? 2. a6 is bad, since the pawn cannot be stopped; but he had to fix the kingside with 1... f4! After 2. a6 $\hat{Q}a2$ 3. dx5 (3. d6 $\hat{Q}f8$) 3... fxe5 4. a7 $\hat{Q}d5$ 5. $\hat{Q}e2$ e5, or 2. $\hat{Q}e2$ e5! 3. a6 $\hat{Q}a2$ 4. d6 $\hat{Q}f8$, the struggle is over. Now, on the other hand, it is just beginning.

2.d6 $\hat{Q}f8$ 3.g3!

Now in addition to the a-pawn, White will have a passed h-pawn, which the bishop will be helpless against (“the pants!”). The question now will be whether Black will have time to capture the d6-pawn, stop one rook pawn with his king, and the other with his bishop.

The solution is 3... hxg3+ 4. $\hat{Q}xg3$ $\hat{Q}e8$ 5. h4 $\hat{Q}d7$ 6. h5 $\hat{Q}xd6$ 7. h6 (7. f4? $\hat{Q}e7$) 7... f4+! (7... $\hat{Q}e7$? 8. a6+; 7... $\hat{Q}c6$? 8. f4+) 8. $\hat{Q}xf4$ f6 9. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}f5$. But with 10. a6 $\hat{Q}c6$ 11. a7 $\hat{Q}b7$ 12. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{Q}xa7$ 13. $\hat{Q}c5$ $\hat{Q}b7$ 14. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{Q}b6$ 15. $\hat{Q}e7$ $\hat{Q}c5$ 16. $\hat{Q}xf6$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 17. f4 $\hat{Q}d5$ 18. $\hat{Q}f7$, White gets a draw. On 18... $\hat{Q}e4$ there follows 19. h7 – the bishop is torn between two diagonals.

3...f4?? 4.gxh4 ♕e8



4-27

W?

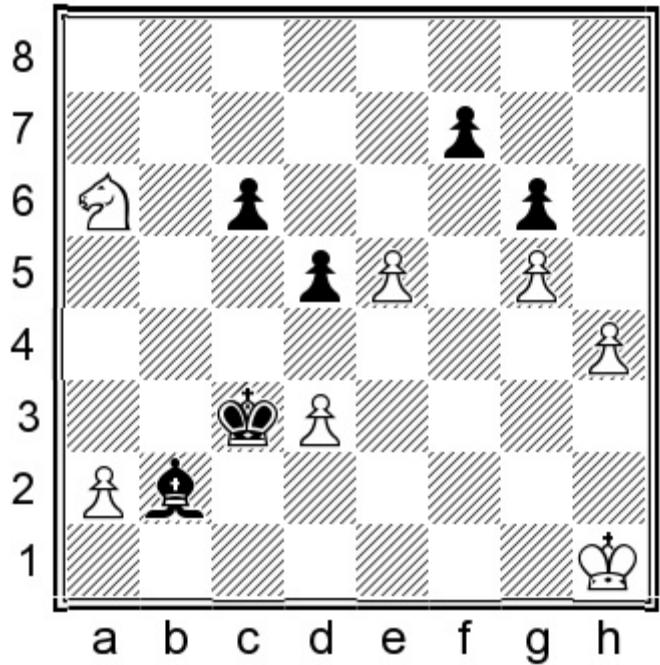
Black obviously had 5.h5? ♔d7 6.h6 ♔xd6 7.a6 ♔c6+ in mind. Unfortunately, a major disappointment awaits him.

5.♔e1!

The king can drive the bishop from the d3-square, the point of intersection of the two diagonals; this will inescapably result in one of the two pawns going on to queen.

5...e5 (5...♔d7 6.♔d2 ♕a6 7.h5+) 6.♔d2 e4 7.h5 ♕b1 8.a6, and White won.

Exercises



4-28

4/9

W?

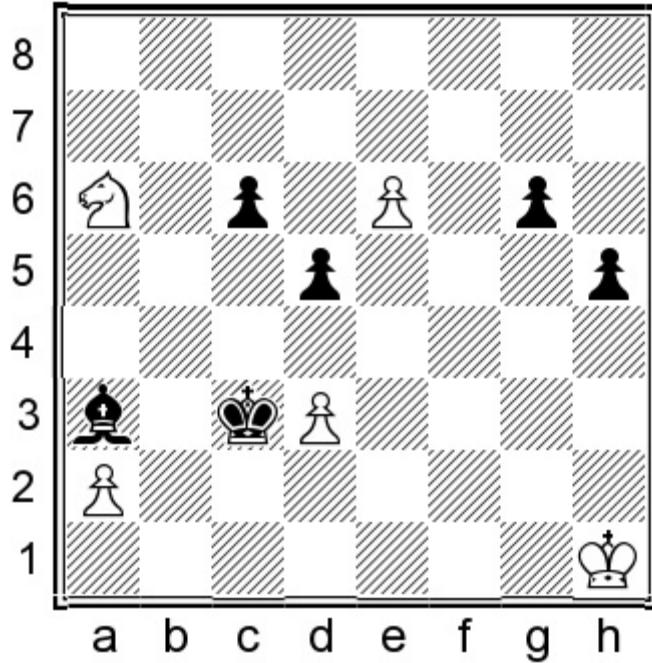
Show/Hide Solution

4/9. V. & M. Platov 1911

1.h5! gxh5

1... $\hat{\square}xd3$ 2.hxg6 fxg6 3. $\hat{\square}c5+!$ (or 3. $\hat{\square}b4+!$) and 4.e6+-

2.g6! fxg6 3.e6 $\hat{\square}a3$



16-42

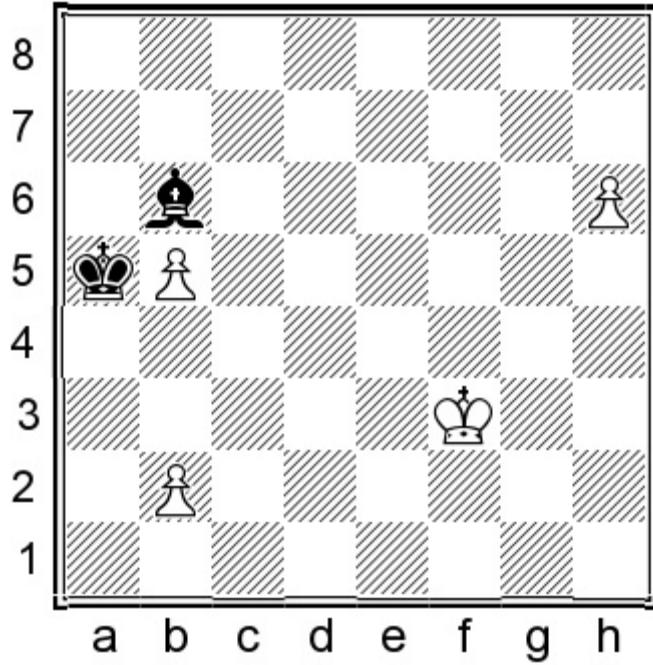
W?

4. ♜b4!! ♜xb4 5.a4

“Pants!” Yes the black king is in the square of the a-pawn, but its own pawns and bishop are obstacles in its way (“obstacles” is a method that we have seen when studying pawn endgames).

5...♝d4 6.a5 ♜c5 7.e7+–

5...♝xd3 does not help: 6.a5 d4 7.a6 ♜e2 8.a7 d3 9.a8=♛ d2 10.♛a2 ♜e1 (10...♜e3 11.♛b3+) 11.♛g2! d1=♛ 12.♛f2#



4-29

4/10

W?

Play

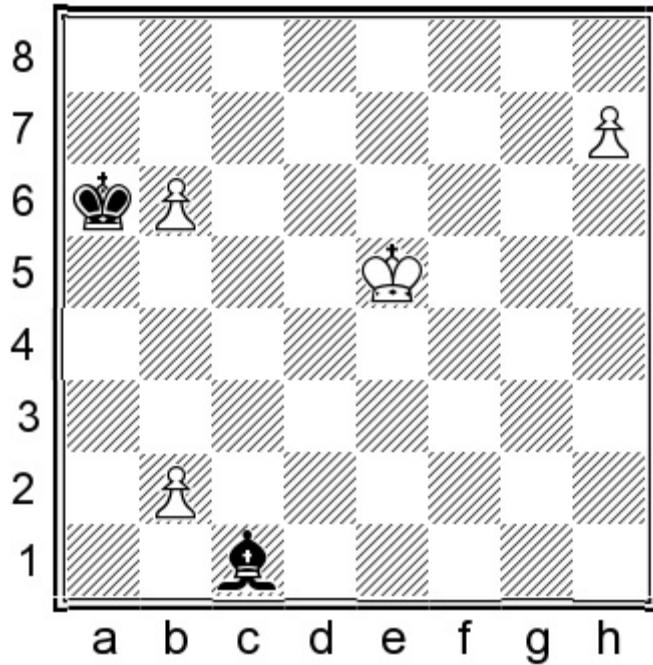
Show/Hide Solution

4/10. M.Lewitt 1933

1.♗e4 ♕d8

The first move was obvious, but what to do now? The bishop plans to go to f6, 2.♗f5 will be met with 2...♗b6. 2.♗e5 (hoping for 2...♗c7+? 3.♗d5+-) suggests itself, but Black has a defense: 2...♗g5! 3.h7 ♗c1 4.♗d5 ♗xb2 5.♗c6 ♗e5! 6.b6 ♗a6=O=. We come to the conclusion that this zugzwang is reciprocal: Black's bishop is overburdened, but how can we reach this position with Black to play?

2.b6!! ♗a6! (2...♗xb6 3.h7; 2...♗xb6 3.♗f5) 3.♗e5! ♗g5 4.h7 ♗c1



16-43

W?

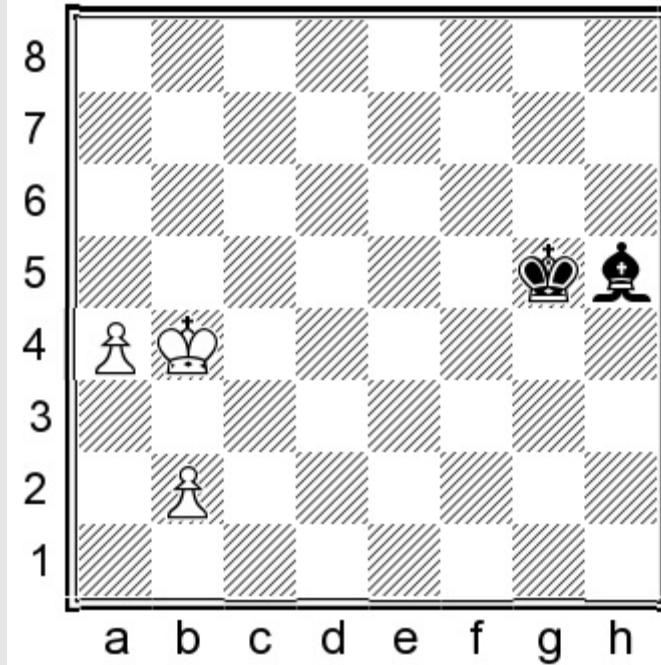
5. $\mathbb{B}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 6. $\mathbb{B}c7!$ (Δ 7.b7) 6... $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ 7. $\mathbb{B}c6\odot$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 8. b7 $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 9. $\mathbb{B}c7+-$

Bishop vs. Connected Pawns

The following instructive ending demonstrates the most important ideas for positions involving connected pawns.

Gavrikov – Chikovani

USSR 1979



4-30

W

First, we examine 1. $\hat{\square}c5$ $\hat{\square}f6$ 2. $\hat{\square}d6$ (shouldering). White's plan works after 2... $\hat{\square}f7?$ 3. b4 $\hat{\square}e8$ 4. $\hat{\square}c7$ $\hat{\square}d1$ 5. b5+—

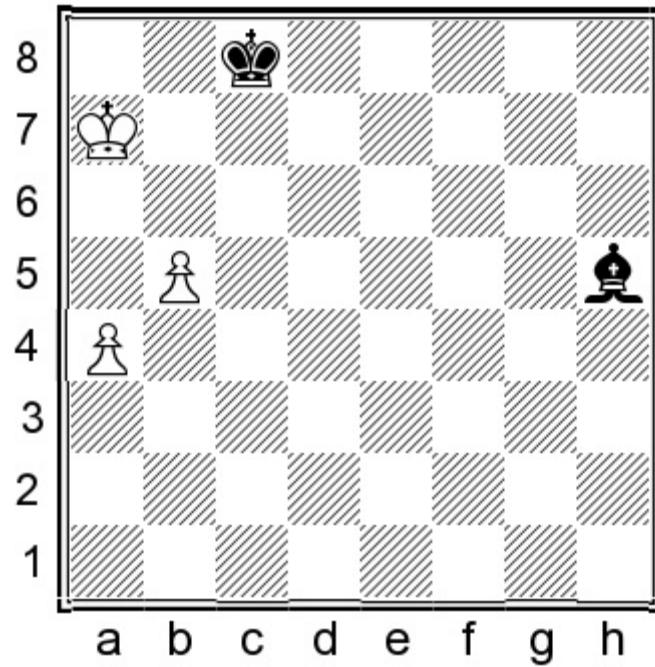
In response, Black employs a standard technique, which I call "**pawns in the crosshairs**" – attacking the enemy pawns with the bishop. The point to this attack is either to force the pawns to advance, which aids in the task of their subsequent blockade (as in the present example), or else to tie the king to their defense.

2... $\hat{\square}d1!$ 3. a5 $\hat{\square}e2$ 4. b4 $\hat{\square}f1$ 5. $\hat{\square}c6$ $\hat{\square}e7$ 6. b5 $\hat{\square}d8=$ (or 6... $\hat{\square}xb5+$).

In the game, White tried a different plan.

1. $\hat{\square}a5$ $\hat{\square}f6$ 2. b4

How does Black defend now? The attempt to put the king in front of the pawns (as he did after 1. $\hat{\square}c5$) no longer works: 2... $\hat{\square}e7$ 3. b5 $\hat{\square}d7?$ (3... $\hat{\square}d1?$ 4. b6! $\hat{\square}d7$ 5. $\hat{\square}a6+—$; 3... $\hat{\square}d6!$) 4. $\hat{\square}a6!$ (but not 4. $\hat{\square}b6?$ $\hat{\square}d1!$ 5. a5 $\hat{\square}e2=$ – once again, "pawns in the crosshairs") 4... $\hat{\square}c8$ 5. $\hat{\square}a7+—$



4-31

This scheme of interaction between king and pawns, securing their passage to the queening square, I suggest we label "*autopilot*" (later we shall have further reason to refer to it).

Black is saved by another, also quite widespread technique: “*the tail-hook*” – tying the king to the rearmost pawn from behind. We shall use this defensive method also in the “rook vs. two connected passed pawns” endings.

2... $\hat{e}5$! 3. $b5$ $\hat{d}4$ 4. $\hat{b}6$

White can no longer go on autopilot: 4.b6 ♕f3 5.♔a6 ♔c5 6.a5 ♔b4!, or 5.♔b5 ♕e2+ 6.♔c6 ♔c4, followed by 7...♕f3+.

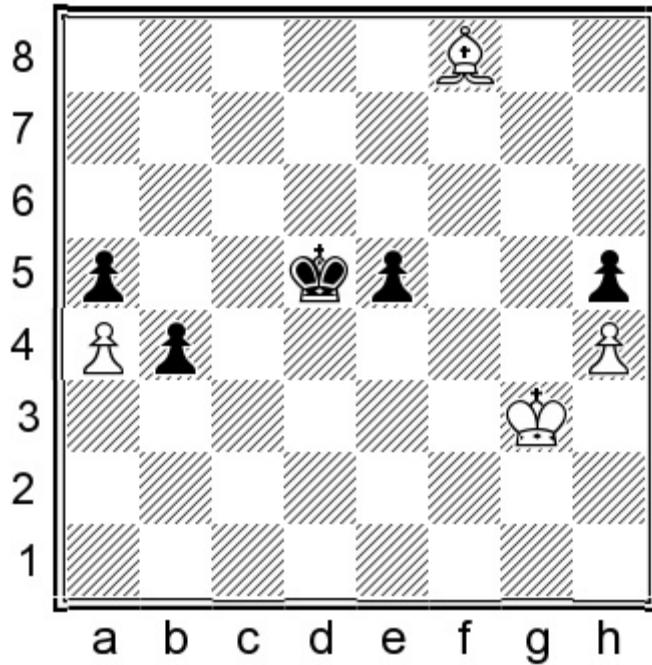
4... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ transposes) 5.a5 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 6.a6 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 7.a7

One last task for Black. Now the waiting 7... $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ fails to 8. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 9.b6 $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c7+-$.

7...a8!

Draw, in view of 8. $\hat{a}a6$ $\hat{c}c5$ 9. $b6$ $\hat{c}c6=$.

V. Zviagintsev 1993



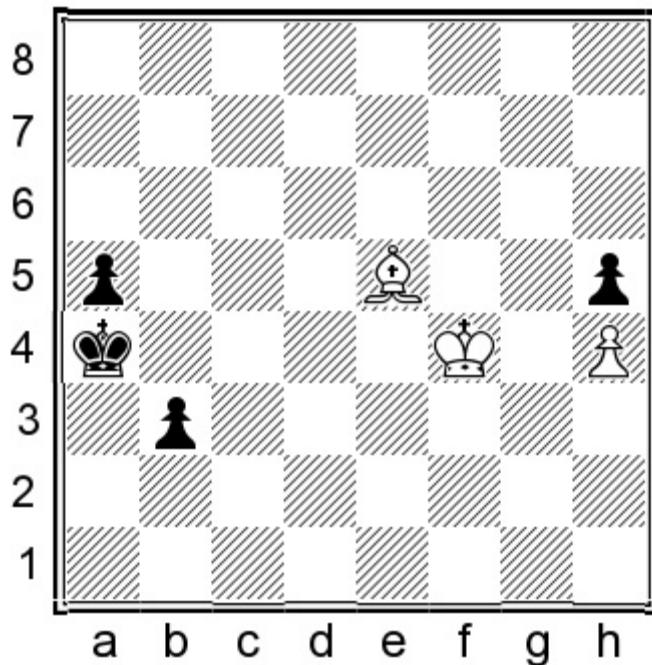
4-32

B?

Which should Black aim for: the separated passed pawns on the b- and e-files, or two connected passed pawns, after he captures the a-pawn? Let's examine both plans:

(1) 1... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6\Box$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ b3 4. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3+$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$. If now 4... $\mathbb{Q}a3$, then 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ b3 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ a4 7. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ (7...b2 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb2+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 9.h5) 8.h5 a3 9.h6=

Let's look at the attempt to save a tempo by playing 4...b3.

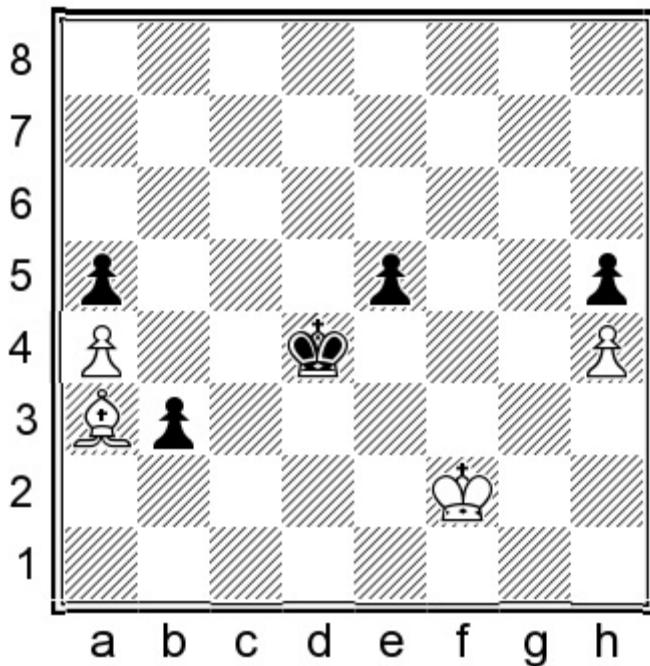


4-33

It would be justified after 5.♔e3? ♔a3!–+ (autopilot) or 5.♗g5? ♔b5! (indicated by Müller; 5...♔b4? 6.♗xh5 a4 7.♗d6! gives only a draw) 6.♗f4 (6.♗xh5 a4–+) 6...a4 7.♔e3 ♔b4! 8.♗d2 ♔a3 and 9...♔a2–+ The correct way is 5.♗b2! ♔b4 6.♗e4, and now 6...a4? even loses after 7.♗d3 a3 (7...♔c5 8.♗c3) 8.♗g7– But the position remains drawn after 6...♔c4! 7.♔e3 a4 8.♗e4 ♔c5 9.♗d3 ♔d5 10.♗c3 ♔e4 11.♗b4 ♔f5 Δ 12...♔g4 (Black is just in time).

(2) 1...♔d4 2.♗f2□ (2.♗f3 would be a mistake: 2...b3 3.♔a3 ♔d3–+). If Black goes back to the first plan here, by 2...♔c3 3.♗g7 ♔b3 4.♗xe5 ♔xa4, it is already too late to attack the h5-pawn; on the other hand, White's king is a bit closer to the queenside, and therefore can "grab onto the tail" of the enemy pawns and prevent the autopilot: 5.♔e3 ♔b3 6.♗d4 ♔a2 7.♔c4 b3 8.♔b5=.

There is also no win after 2...b3 3.♔a3.



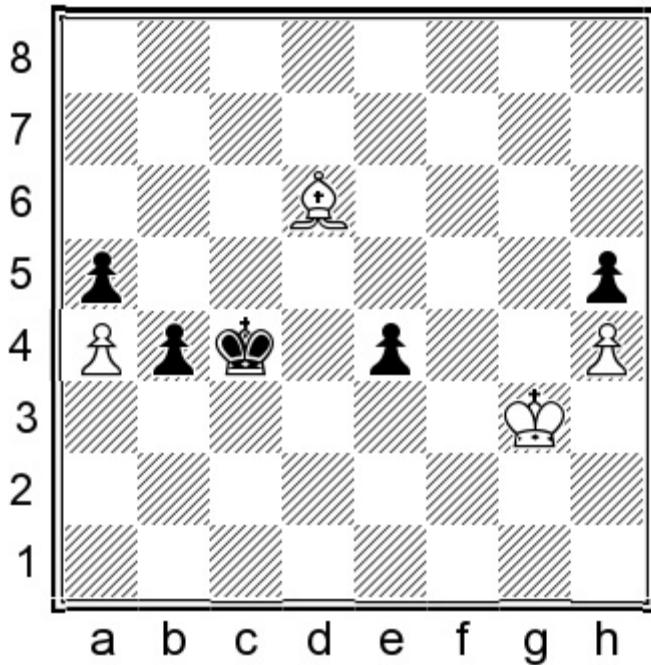
4-34

B

For example, 3...♗c3 4.♗d6! (it is important to drive the e-pawn closer to the white king) 4...e4 5.♔e3 b2 6.♗e5+ ♗c2 7.♗xb2 ♗xb2 8.♗xe4 ♗b3 9.♗d4 ♗xa4 10.♗c4, we have a draw (remember the section "Two rook pawns with an extra pawn on the opposite wing," from the theory of pawn endgames). Nothing is changed by 3...♗d3 4.♗b2 e4 5.♗g7 ♗d2 6.♗d4! (the bishop may be "torn" here, but it is impossible to put it in zugzwang – in other words, to obtain the same position, but with White to move) 6...b2 7.♗xb2 e3+ 8.♗f3 e2 9.♗c3+ ♗xc3 10.♗xe2 ♗b4 11.♗d3 ♗xa4 12.♗c4=.

When examining the Grigoriev study in diagram 2-12, we spoke of "strategic double attacks" – we noted that those moves and plans which pursue not just one, but two aims, are usually the most effective. Here too, we must find a way to combine both strategies, selecting one or the other depending on what our opponent does.

1... $\hat{\Delta}c4$! 2. $\hat{\Delta}d6$ e4!



4-35

W

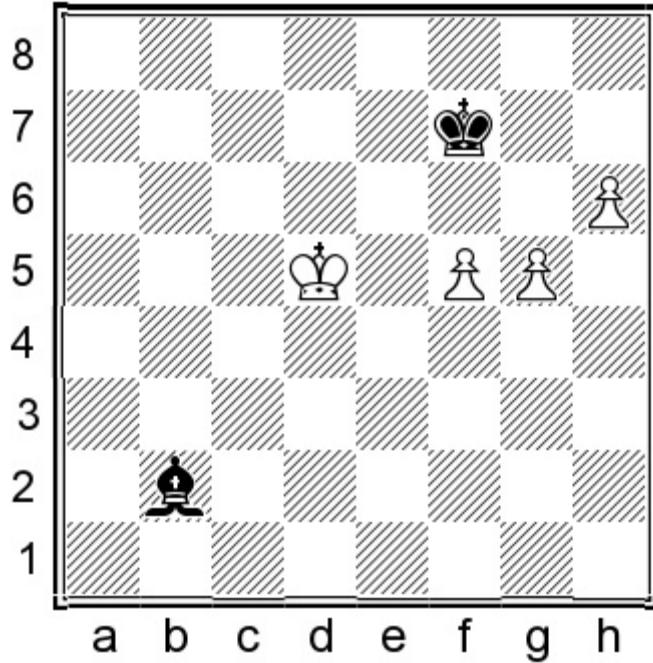
The main line runs: 3. $\hat{\Delta}f2$ $\hat{\Delta}b3$! 4. $\hat{\Delta}e3$ $\hat{\Delta}xa4$ 5. $\hat{\Delta}xe4$ $\hat{\Delta}a3$

Black engages the autopilot; meanwhile, his opponent can neither counterattack on the kingside, nor “grab onto the tail” of the black pawns (which would have happened if the white bishop had stood on e5).

6. $\hat{\Delta}d3$ $\hat{\Delta}a2$ 7. $\hat{\Delta}c4$ b3 8. $\hat{\Delta}e5$ (the decisive loss of tempo) 8...a4–+

If we save a move in this variation by playing 3. $\hat{\Delta}e5$, then Black’s king switches to the support of the e-pawn: 3...e3! (but not 3... $\hat{\Delta}d3$? 4. $\hat{\Delta}f2=$) 4. $\hat{\Delta}g2$ $\hat{\Delta}d3$ 5. $\hat{\Delta}f1$ $\hat{\Delta}d2$ –+. And 3. $\hat{\Delta}f4$ $\hat{\Delta}d3$ is just as hopeless.

Exercises



4-36
4/11
B?

Show/Hide Solution

4/11. Minev-Dukanovic, Belgrade 1977

The “pawns in the crosshairs” method is applicable here.

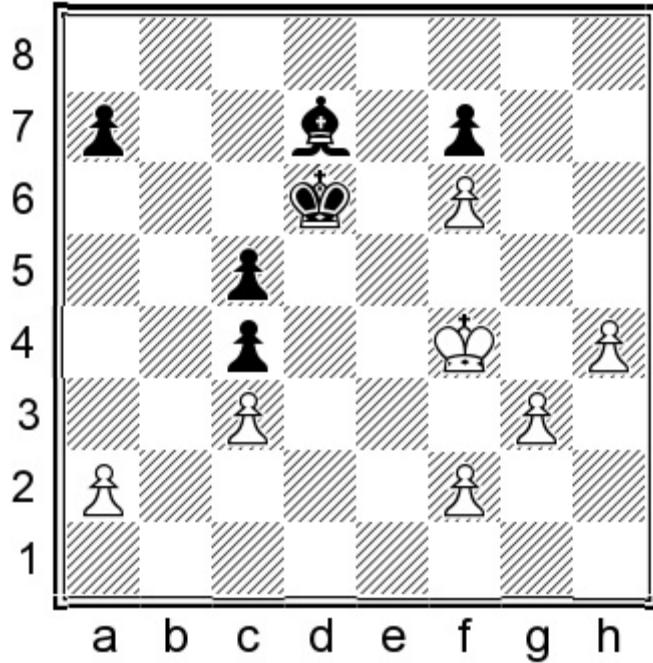
1... $\mathbb{Q}c1!$ 2.h7 (2.g6+ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ or 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3.g6 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4.f6 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5.f7 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$ is also playable) 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (the threat is 4...-- 5.f6+ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 6.h8= $\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}h8!$ 5.f6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ stalemate.

In the actual game, however, Black decided to wait, thinking that White would play g5-g6 anyway. But this idea failed.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ 2.h7! $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 3.f6) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$

3... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ does not help: 4.f6 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (or 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ (6.g6? $\mathbb{Q}xf6=$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$) 7.f7 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 8.f8= $\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h6+-$

4. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5.g6 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 6.f6 Black resigned.



4-37
4/12
B?

Show/Hide Solution

4/12. Azmaiparashvili-Shirov, Madrid 1996

White's pawns are very dangerous; this can be seen from the following line: 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 3.f4! $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 4.g4 (Δ 5.f5+) 4... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$) 5.h5 a5 6. $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ —

Black should prevent f2-f4 by placing his bishop on f3, where the bishop will keep the advancing gand h-pawns in the crosshairs.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c6!!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}f3!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 4.g4 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5.h5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}d1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}f3!=$

White cannot make any progress because 8.h6? $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 9.f4 $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ loses. The remainder was 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}d1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}f3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ Draw.

Chapter 5

Opposite-Color Bishops

The Most Important Rules

Endings with opposite-color bishops are perhaps the most “strategic” of them all. My studies of these endings have taught me some rules which will help you get your bearings in nearly all such endings.

I. Drawing Tendencies

Here it is frequently possible to save oneself even two or three pawns down. The consequences of this rule are obvious: the stronger side must be exceptionally alert, whether going into a pure opposite-color bishops endgame, or playing one out – here it is easy to stumble into a drawing counterchance. And for the weaker side, going into the opposite-color bishops ending is sometimes the key to salvation, sharply increasing the chances for a favorable outcome. This is especially true when there are rooks or queens, and the stronger side can generate an attack on the king. In general, the drawing tendencies only apply to pure oppositecolor bishop endings and not to positions with more pieces on the board.

II. The Fortress

The main theme of opposite-color bishops endings is that of the Fortress. The weaker side strives to create one, the stronger side strives to prevent its formation, or (if it already exists) to find a way to break through it.

An important factor in endgame play is the ability to analyze a position logically, to think through various plans and schemes. Logical thinking is of special importance in endings with opposite-color bishops. In the majority of cases, such endings are not “played” as much as they are “constructed” – first it is necessary to determine the configuration of pawns and pieces which will render the position impenetrable; only then can we proceed with the calculation of variations which will prove whether or not we can attain the desired configuration, and whether it is in fact impenetrable.

The following rules show the most important techniques for setting up and breaking down fortresses.

III. Pawn Placement

In the next chapter, we discuss the principle that requires us to place our pawns on the opposite color squares from those controlled by our bishop. In opposite-color bishop endings, this principle only holds true for the stronger side – it is especially important with connected passed pawns.

But *the weaker side must, contrary to the general rule, keep his pawns on the same color squares*

as his own bishop – in that event, he will usually be able to defend them. In fact, a pawn defended by its bishop can only be attacked by the enemy king – which renders it invulnerable. In other types of endgames, such a pawn could be attacked, not just by the king, but also by other pieces (such as a knight, or a bishop of the same color).

IV. Positional Nuances are Worth More than Material

When we are playing an opposite-color bishops ending, the number of pawns on the board frequently has less significance than a small alteration in the placement of pieces or pawns – even an apparently insignificant one. Therefore, *in opposite-color bishops endgames, we quite frequently encounter positional pawn sacrifices.*

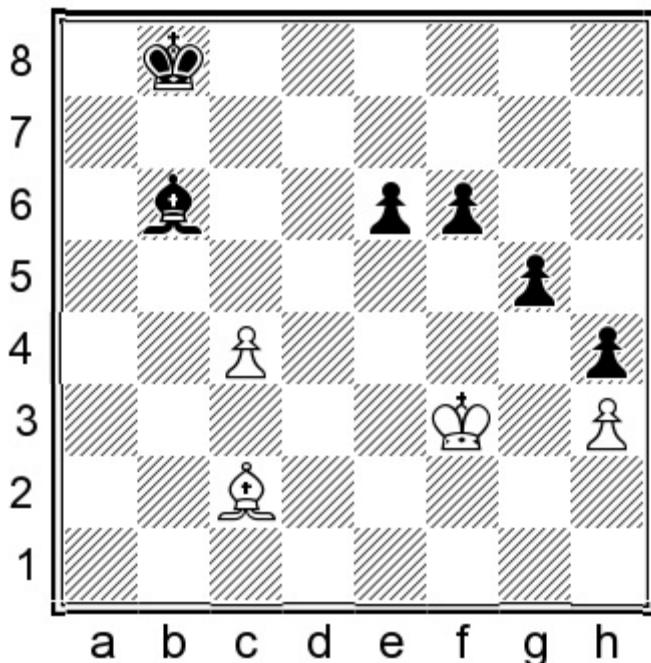
V. The One-Diagonal Principle

We have already met this principle in the “Bishop vs. Pawns” endgame (Chapter 4). For both the stronger and the weaker side it, is very important that the bishop should both defend its own and stop the enemy pawns “without tearing” – that is, along one and the same diagonal.

VI “Pawns in the Crosshairs”

A typical means of defense is for the bishop to attack the enemy pawns. This will either force their advance, to the less favorable squares of the color of their own bishop, or tie the enemy king to the pawns’ defense. This technique, like the previous one, was also studied in Chapter 4. In opposite-color bishops endgames, both techniques are used frequently.

The logical thing would be to illustrate each of these rules by concrete examples. However, that would be difficult, only because they are rarely employed separately. Consider the following simple endgame, and you will see all of the rules we have been talking about, appearing simultaneously.



W?

1.c5! ♖xc5 2.♖b3 e5 3.♖e6 ♜c7 4.♕e4

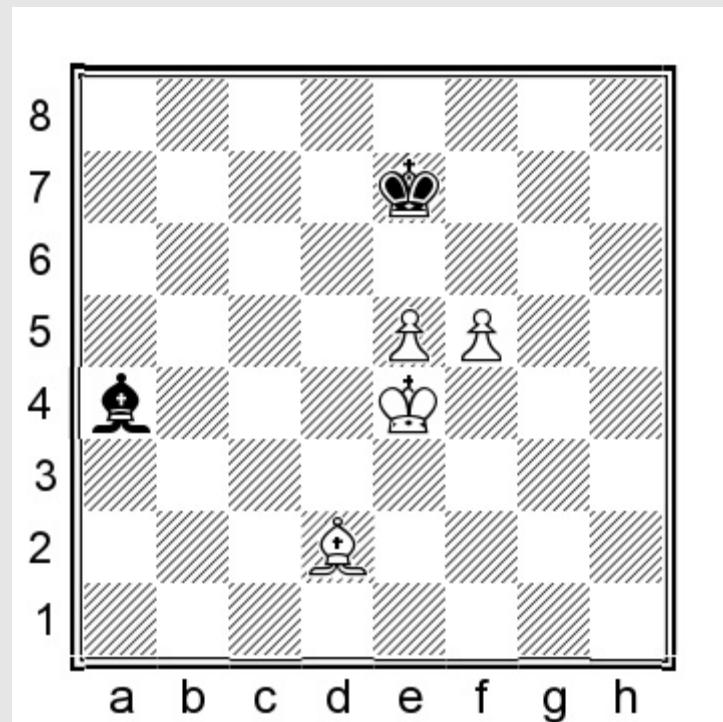
The draw is obvious – White need only run his bishop up and down the h3-c8 diagonal.

Thus, White was able to save himself – three (!) pawns down (**drawing tendency**). The final position is a **fortress**, in which the **weaker side's only pawn is properly placed on the same color square as its own bishop**. The bishop defends its pawn at h3 and holds the enemy pawns at g5 and f6 **on the same diagonal**. White **sacrificed a pawn**, so that **by attacking the enemy's sole, well-placed pawn at e6**, he could force it to advance to a dark square, after which the pawns could be easily blockaded.

Analyzing almost any endgame in this chapter, you will see some or all of our just-formulated rules in action.

Bishop and Two Connected Passed Pawns vs. Bishop

Careful analysis of the following basic theoretical position will familiarize us with the characteristic ideas of such endgames.



5-2

B

White threatens to continue e5-e6, followed by ♔e5 and f5-f6. To stop this plan, Black must take the e6-square under control with his bishop. But from d7 or from b3? Let's examine both choices.

On 1... $\mathbb{B}b3?$ the position is lost. First, White gives a *probing check*, to see which way the enemy king goes. ***It is important to have the bishop prevent it from getting between the pawns after e5-e6.*** Therefore, 2. $\mathbb{B}g5+!$

Then, *the white king goes to help the e-pawn from the side opposite the one the enemy king went*

to. For example: 2... $\hat{B}f7$ 3. $\hat{B}d4$ $\hat{Q}a2$ 4. $\hat{B}c5$ $\hat{Q}b3$ (4... $\hat{Q}b1$ 5.e6+ and 6.f6) 5. $\hat{B}d6$ and 6.e6+ Or 2... $\hat{B}d7$ 3. $\hat{B}f4$ $\hat{Q}a2$ 4. $\hat{Q}h4$ $\hat{Q}f7$ 5. $\hat{B}g5$ $\hat{Q}e7$ 6. $\hat{Q}h6+$ $\hat{B}d7$ 7. $\hat{B}g7$ $\hat{Q}c4$ 8. $\hat{B}f6$ and 9.e6+ winning.

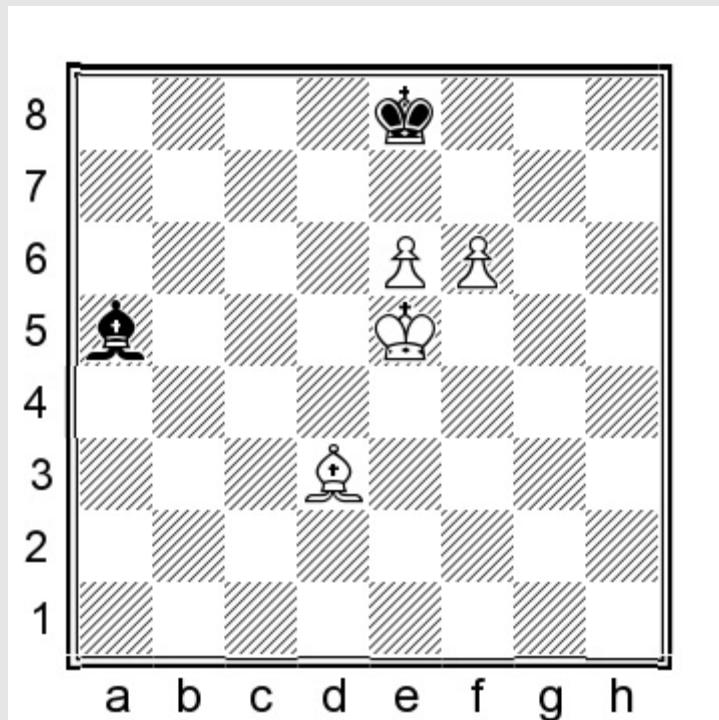
Note that the bishop check from the other side is ineffective: 2. $\hat{Q}b4+$ $\hat{B}f7!$ 3. $\hat{B}d4?$ $\hat{Q}c2!$ 4.e6+ $\hat{B}f6$ 5.e7 $\hat{Q}a4$, and draws. *As soon as the pawns are blocked on the same color squares as their bishop, the draw becomes obvious.*

So with his bishop on b3, Black loses. But he gets an easy draw after 1... $\hat{Q}d7!$ 2. $\hat{Q}g5+$ $\hat{B}f7$. Now Black merely waits, shuttling the bishop back and forth between c8 and d7. In order to prepare e5-e6, White needs to maneuver his king left. But this is impossible, as long as the king is tied to the defense of the f5-pawn.

Which suggests a rule: The bishop must be placed where it prevents the advance of one of the pawns while simultaneously attacking the other.

Let's use the ideas from the position we just looked at to analyze other positions.

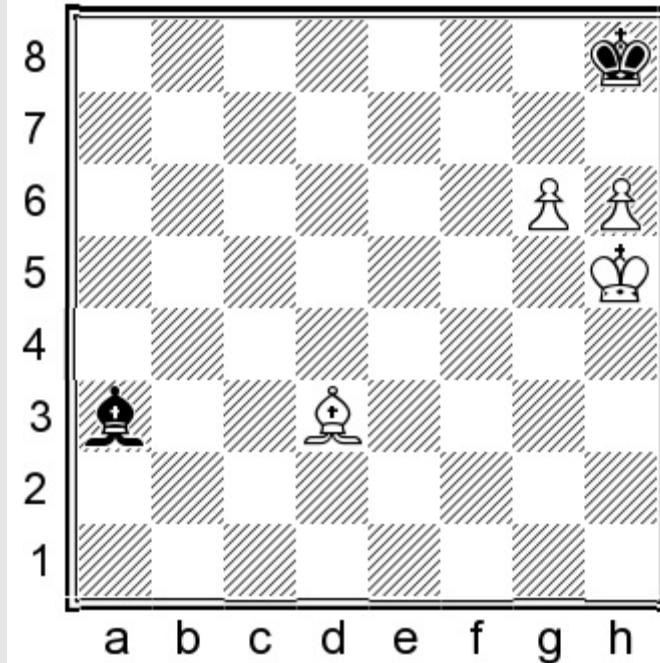
Move all the pieces one rank further up. What has changed?



5-3
B

On 1... $\hat{Q}b4$, nothing. White wins by the exact same method (check, followed by a king outflanking); here, both checks – from g6 or b5 – are equally good.

After 1... $\hat{Q}d8$ 2. $\hat{Q}g6+$ (or 2. $\hat{Q}b5+$) 2... $\hat{B}f8$ 3. $\hat{B}f5$, Black loses because of zugzwang – compared to the previous position, he no longer has any waiting moves with his bishop.



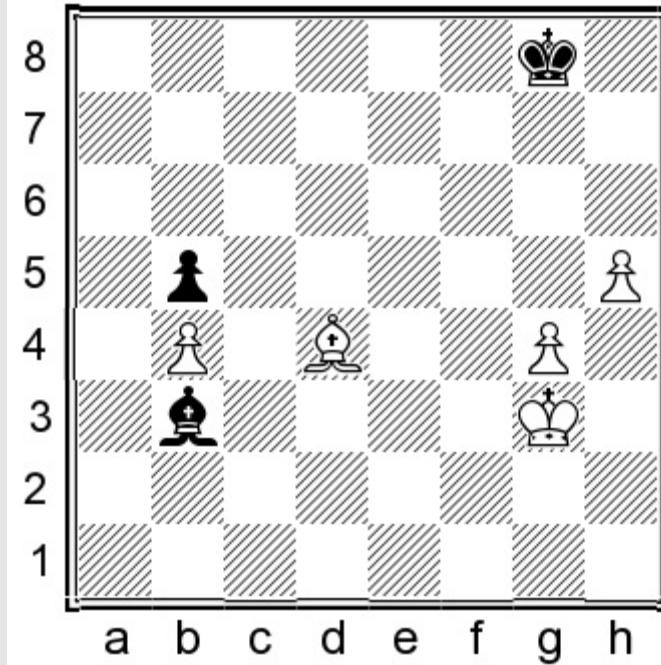
5-4

B?

Being at the edge of the board introduces new elements into the assessment of the position. Let's try 1... $\mathbb{Q}b2$. If Black could follow up with 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ and 3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$, the draw would be obvious. With the king on f8, White's only plan – an outflanking to the right with the king – is impossible, because the board's edge gets in the way.

But White to move locks the enemy king in the corner by 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$, and then carries out an outflanking to the left by $\mathbb{Q}g4-f5-e6-f7$.

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$, the outflanking is now impossible; but how about threatening zugzwang? In order to force the enemy into zugzwang, White must take away the g8-square from the king with 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4$. However, after 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$, it is stalemate.



5-5

B?

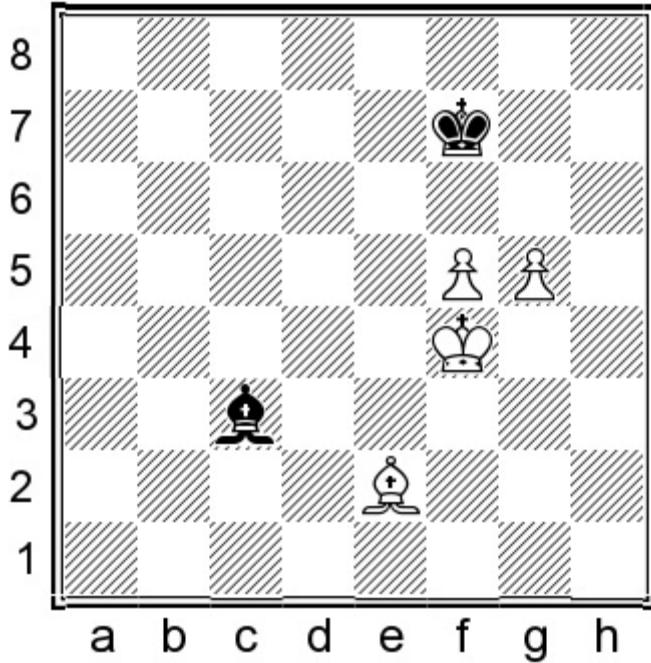
In all the endings we have so far analyzed, the defending side tried to give up its bishop for the two pawns. Here, this defensive plan is obviously insufficient. So does that mean that Black is doomed? As it turns out, no: the wing pawns can be stopped without recourse to a bishop sacrifice.

1...♝d1! (“pawns in the crosshairs”) **2.♝h4** (how else does he get in g4-g5?) **2...♞f7** **3.g5 ♞e6!** **4.g6 ♞f5!**

White cannot advance either his king (the edge of the board gets in the way), or the h-pawn. And on **5.g7 ♜b3** and **6...♜g8** blocks the enemy pawns securely on white squares.

Let's look at a more complex case.

M.Henneberger 1916



5-6
\$
W

Black's bishop is not ideally posted – it should be at either e7 or d8. In the basic theoretical position we started with, White won easily against such a bishop. Proceeding logically, it would seem that only one circumstance could hinder the execution of the standard winning plan, and that is the nearness of the board's edge. Let's see:

"According to the rules," one should first check on h5, in order to control the g6-square. Black retreats his king to e7, forcing White's king to go on a right-hand outflanking, where there is little room to maneuver.

1. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{B}e7!$ (on 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$, Black does not have the same resources to prevent a left-hand outflanking) 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (there is no other way of making progress; but now the g6-square is not available to the king) 3... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (threatening 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6$, 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ etc.) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$, and White cannot reach his goal of preparing f5-f6+.

And the bishop check on the other diagonal we already know gives nothing: 1. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ 3. $f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$.

However, White's resources for playing to win are not yet exhausted. We could decoy the king to g7 first, and then put the bishop on the e8-h5 diagonal, thus preparing a left-hand outflanking by the king.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7!$

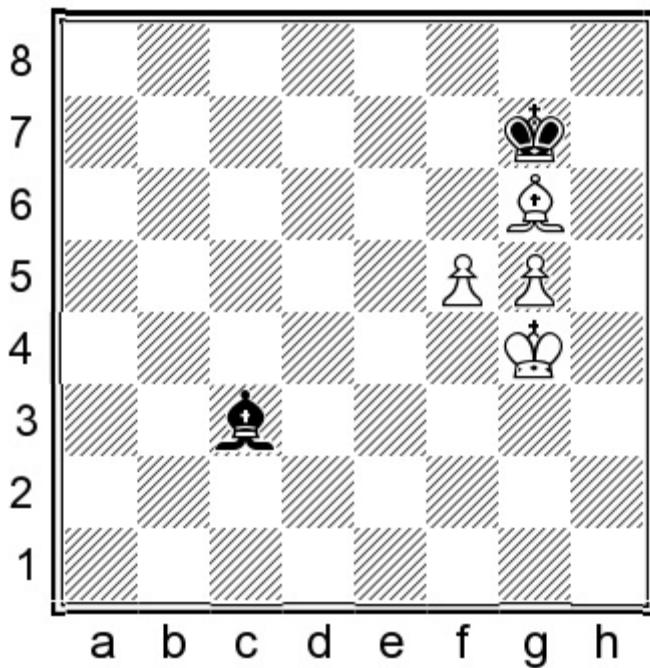
White threatened 3. $\mathbb{Q}h6$; 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ is bad, because of 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ and 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ is the same thing) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$

On 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (threatening 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$, 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$, 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ etc.) Black's king has enough time to relocate to e7:

5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$! 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$, transposing to the first variation.

5... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4$



5-7

B?

White's plan appears triumphant: 6... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7.f6 is bad; and on other moves, White plays 7. $\mathbb{Q}h5$. But as Berger pointed out, at precisely this moment, the black bishop succeeds in reaching its destined spot.

6... $\mathbb{Q}a5!!$

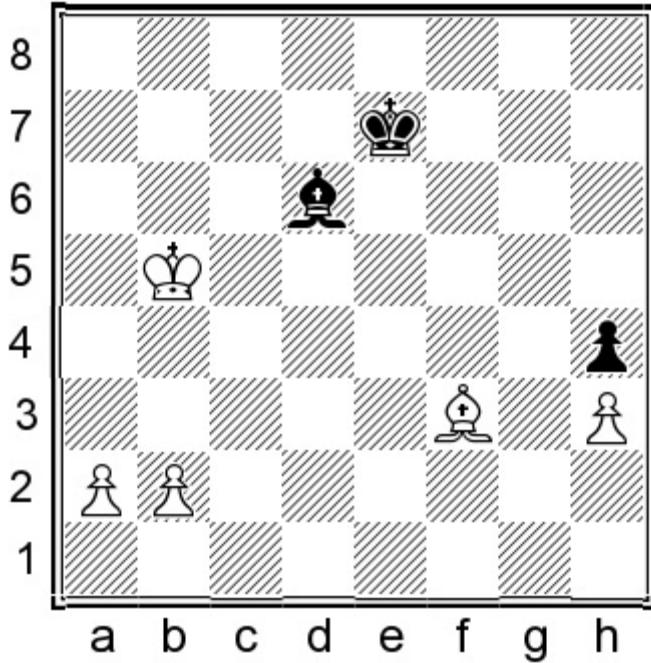
With White's bishop at g6, he no longer has 7.f6+.

7. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$

And Black has set up the basic fortress draw of this type of ending.

Tragomedies

Walther – Fischer
Zürich 1959



5-8

B?

Black dreams of giving up his bishop for the queenside pawns. Then his king would go to h8, and even if it cannot, we have Rauzer's drawing position (diagram 4-2).

White's goal is to put his king at a6 and his pawn at b5. This situation ("autopilot") is known to us from the section on bishop vs. connected passed pawns from Chapter 4.

1...♝d7??

Black had to employ the "pawns in the crosshairs" technique: 1...♝f4! 2.b4 ♘d2 3.a3 ♘c1! 4.a4 ♘d2! 5.♘c5 ♘d7 (pointed out by Solomon). After 6.a5 (6.b5 ♘e3+ 7.♘c4 ♘d6 8.a5 ♘d2 9.a6 ♘e3=) 6...♞c7 7.♗b5 ♘e1 8.♗a4 ♘d2 9.b5, Black defends himself similarly to diagram 5-5: 9...♝d6! 10.b6 ♘c5=

1...♝d7?? 2.a4??

White errs in return. The winning line was 2.b4! ♘c7 3.♗a5! ♘b8 (3...♝g3 4.b5 ♘f2 5.♗a6 Δ a4-a5) 4.b5 (Black does not have time to prevent b5-b6) 4...♝a3!? 5.b6 ♘c8 6.♗a6 ♘b8 7.♗e4>O 7...♝c8 (7...♝c5 8.a4) 8.♗a7 ♘c5 9.a4+- (pointed out by the Swiss problemist Fontana).

2...♞c7

A simpler draw could probably have been obtained by 2...♝g3!? 3.♗b6 (3.b4 ♘e1) 3...♝f2+! 4.♗b7 ♘e1.

3.b4 ♘b8!

By tucking his king at a7, Fischer gains control of a6, which prevents his opponent from going on autopilot.

4.a5 ♘a7 5.♘c4 ♘g3 (5...♞c7) 6.♗b3

If 6.b5, then 6... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 7.b6+ $\mathbb{Q}a6=$

6... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 9.b5 $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

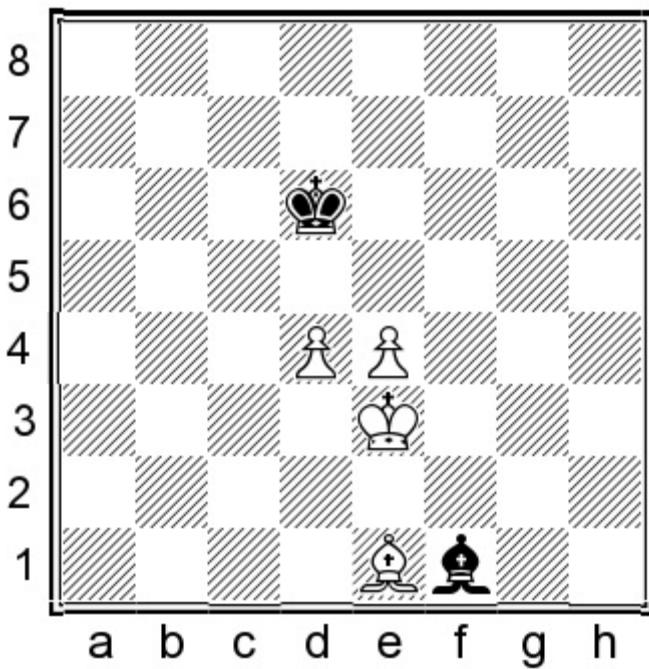
On 10.b6+ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 11.axb6+ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$, the king goes to h8. Also useless is 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$.

10... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2!$

Black allows his opponent to advance the pawn to b6, so as to reach the defensive position of diagram 5-5.

12.b6+ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ Draw.

Exercises



5-9

5/1

B?

Show/Hide Solution

5/1. S.Tarrasch 1921

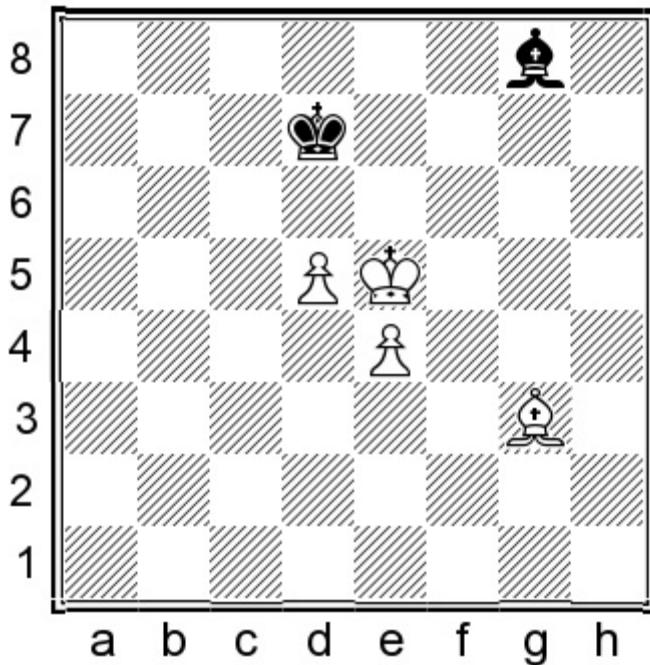
Black cannot prevent White's pawns from taking one step forward: to this end, the bishop should have gone to c6. Therefore he must try to reach the basic drawing position with the pawns on the fifth rank (the bishop on f7 or g8, the king on d7).

1... $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ is wrong in view of 2. $\mathbb{Q}b4+!$ (rather than 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3+?$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 3.d5 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4.e5 $\mathbb{Q}f7=$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3.d5 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4.e5 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5.e6) 3.d5+ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 6.e5+. Black is a single tempo short in all these lines.

1...♝c4! 2.♝g3+ ♚c6!

Of course not 2...♚e6? 3.♝d2 and 4.♝c3 planning the king's march to c5. As soon as the black king leaves e6, White plays d4-d5, and the bishop does not get to f7.

3.♝f4 ♝g8 4.♝e5 ♞d7 5.d5



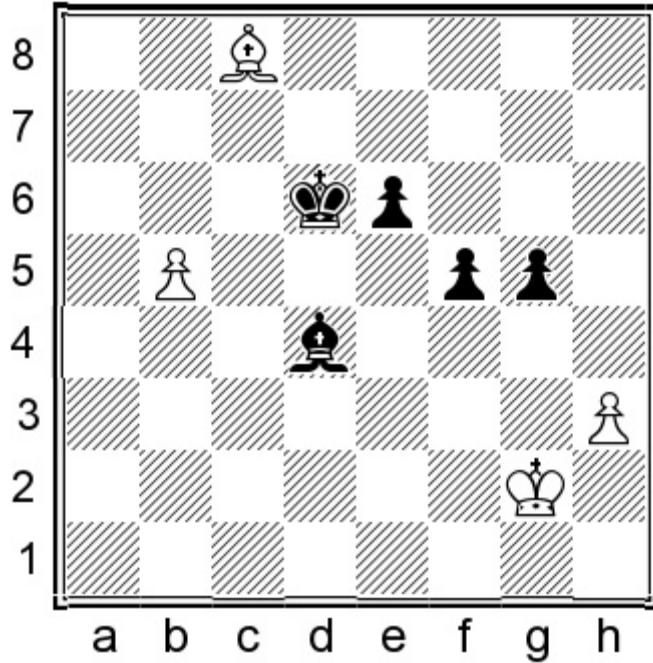
16-44

B

5...♝h7!

Pawns in the crosshairs: Black does not allow the white king to go to f6. In the meantime, 5...♝f7 6.♝f6 ♞e8! 7.♝f4 ♝g8 is less precise but still good enough for a draw.

6.♝f4 ♝g6 7.e5 ♞f7!=



5-10
5/2
W?

Show/Hide Solution

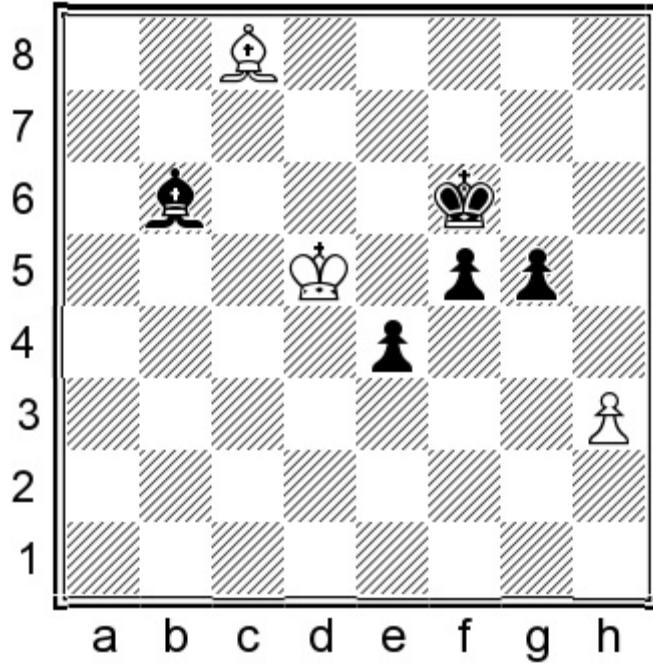
5/2. Schöneberg-Starck, DDR ch, Weimar 1968

Black's intentions are obvious: ... $\hat{Q}e5-f6$ followed by ...e5-e4. This plan can be parried only by a king assault on d5 (similar to diagram 5-5). But prior to it, White should get rid of his own b5-pawn, which only snarls his plans (positional factors are more important than pawns!).

1.b6!! $\hat{Q}xb6$

Attempting to save a tempo by ignoring the b6-pawn fails: if 1... $\hat{Q}e5$, then the simplest is 2. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 3. $\hat{Q}e2$ e5 4. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}xb6$ 5. $\hat{Q}c4$, but 2.b7 $\hat{Q}a7$ 3. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 4. $\hat{Q}e2$ e5 5.b8= \mathbb{W} !! $\hat{Q}xb8$ 6. $\hat{Q}d3$ e4+ 7. $\hat{Q}d4$ is also playable.

2. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 3. $\hat{Q}e2!$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 4. $\hat{Q}d3$ e5 5. $\hat{Q}c4$ e4 6. $\hat{Q}d5$



16-45
B

6...e3

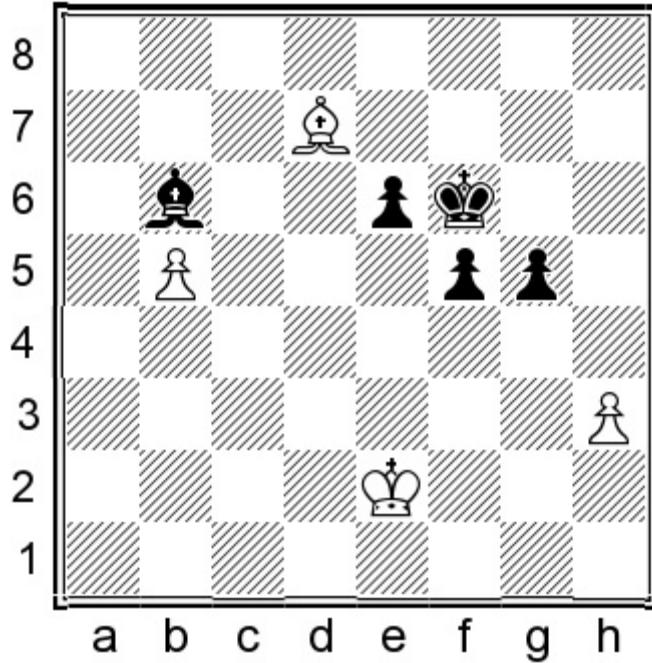
On 6... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (with the idea 7...e3 8. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{Q}h5$), both 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}c7+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4=$ and 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4 f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5! e3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4=$ are good.

7. $\mathbb{Q}a6$

The draw is obvious now, e.g., 7...g4 (7... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$) 8.hxg4 fxg4 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (9. $\mathbb{Q}f1?? g3$) 9... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3! \mathbb{Q}h4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}g3$ and now either 12. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ or 12. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}h2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b7$.

In the game, however, White failed to tackle the problem he was faced with.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$ $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}b6!$ was winning) 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ (he could have saved the game with 2.b6! again)
2.... $\mathbb{Q}b6! -+ 3.\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}f6$



16-46

W

The pawn is stopped on b5 where it blocks the important a6-f1 diagonal, so the king's march is not possible anymore: 4. $\hat{Q}d3$ e5 5. $\hat{Q}c4$ e4 6. $\hat{Q}d5$ e3+ –

4. $\hat{Q}f3$ e5 5. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 6. $\hat{Q}b7$ e4+

This win of the bishop leads to a quick finish. Black could also have won another way: 6... $\hat{Q}d6$!? followed by ... $\hat{Q}c5$ -d4, as in the theoretical positions we have studied.

7. $\hat{Q}xe4$ fxe4+ 8. $\hat{Q}xe4$ $\hat{Q}f2$

8... $\hat{Q}c7$ also leads to the goal: 9. b6 $\hat{Q}b8$ (9... $\hat{Q}xb6$? 10. h4!=) 10. $\hat{Q}f3$ (10. h4 g4) 10... $\hat{Q}f5$ 11. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}g6$ + –

9. b6 $\hat{Q}d6$ 10. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{Q}h4$ White resigned.

Before we leave this example, I want to draw your attention to another defensive possibility: a pawn sacrifice on the kingside.

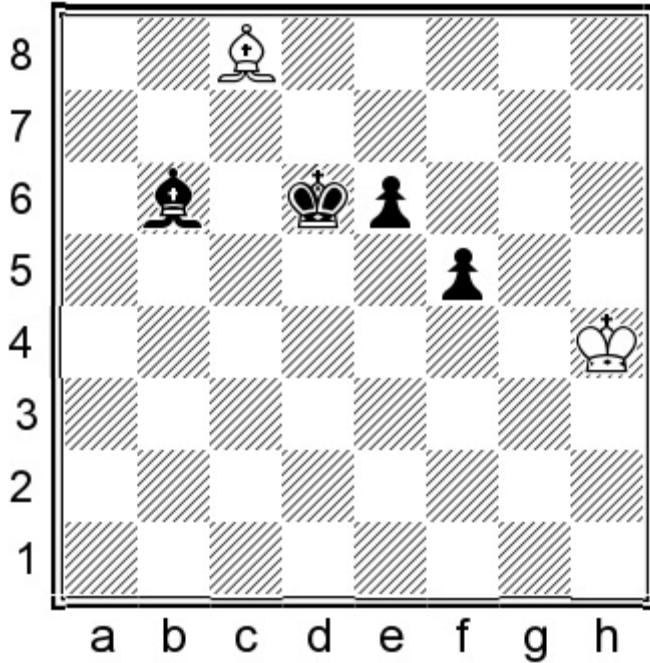
1.h4? gxh4

1... g4? seems to lead to a draw: 2. h5 $\hat{Q}e3$ 3. $\hat{Q}f1$ f4 4. $\hat{Q}e2$ (rather than 4. h6? f3 5. h7 g3+–) 4... $\hat{Q}d4$ 5. $\hat{Q}d3$ f3 (Δ 6... g3) 6. $\hat{Q}b7$ $\hat{Q}g7$ 7. $\hat{Q}e4$! (7. b6? $\hat{Q}c5$ 8. $\hat{Q}xf3$ gxf3 9. b7 $\hat{Q}e5$ +–) 7... $\hat{Q}c5$ 8. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}h6$ + 9. $\hat{Q}f2$ = Δ 10. $\hat{Q}g3$.

2. $\hat{Q}h3$ $\hat{Q}f2$!? 3. b6

After 3. $\hat{Q}g2$ $\hat{Q}b6$ 4. $\hat{Q}h3$, Black can choose between 4... $\hat{Q}d8$ 5. b6□ 5... $\hat{Q}xb6$ and 4... $\hat{Q}e5$!? 5. $\hat{Q}xh4$ $\hat{Q}f6$ 6. $\hat{Q}g3$ e5 7. $\hat{Q}b7$ e4 8. $\hat{Q}f4$ $\hat{Q}c7$ + 9. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}e5$

3... $\hat{Q}xb6$ 4. $\hat{Q}xh4$



16-47

B?

Can Black win here? Frankly, I started the analysis of 1.h4 mainly to answer this question.

4...♝e7!

The incautious 4...♝e5? allows White to save the position by means of 5.♝g5! (Δ ♜g6-f7). The same technique as in the 1.b6!! line – the king attacks the pawns from the rear!

5.♝g5 ♜f7! 6.♝f4

If 6.♜a6 ♜e3+! 7.♝h4, then either 7...e5 or 7...♝f4, but in any event not 7...♝f6?? 8.♝g3 e5 9.♝f3 and 10.♝d3=

6...♝f6 7.♝f3 e5 8.♜b7

To play ...e5-e4, Black must bring his king to d4, but before that, as we already know, he should take control of the f4-square by transferring his bishop to h6.

8...♞c5 9.♞d5 ♜f8!

White has two alternative defensive strategies: one is waiting, another involves the king transfer to d3.

(a) 10.♞c6 ♜h6 11.♞b7 ♜e7 12.♞c6 ♜d6 13.♞b7 ♜g5! 14.♞a8 ♜c5 15.♞b7 ♜d4+. Notice the premature 13...♞c5? (instead of 13...♜g5!) allows White to save himself: 14.♞c8! e4+ 15.♞e2! (rather than 15.♞f2? f4 16.♞h3 ♜d4! 17.♞g2 ♜d3) 15...f4 16.♞h3! f3+ (otherwise 17.♞g2 leads to a basic drawing position) 17.♞f2, and there is no defense to ♜h3-g4xf3.

(b) **10.♝e3 ♜h6+ 11.♞d3 ♜g5 12.♞g2**

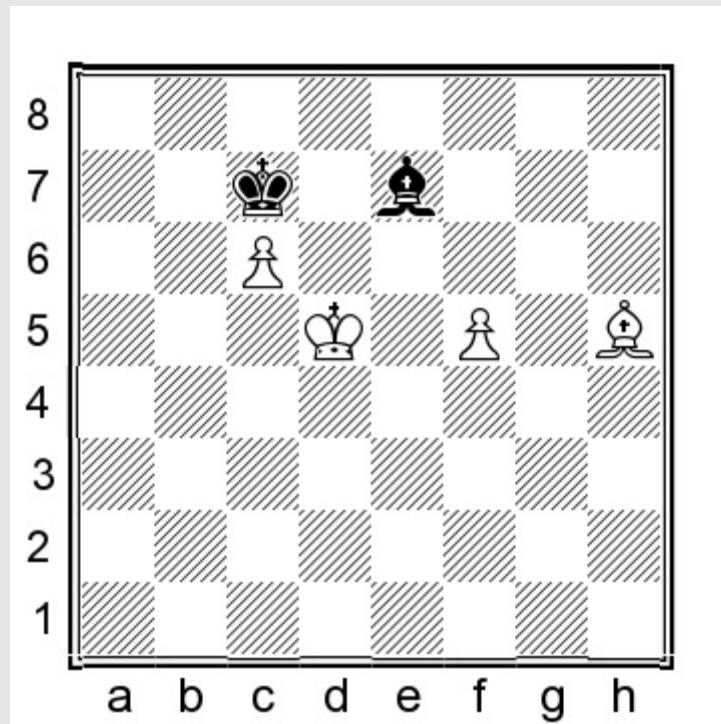
This plan is familiar to us from the previous exercise. However it fails here due to zugzwang.

12... $\hat{Q}f4$ 13. $\hat{Q}h3$ e4+ 14. $\hat{Q}e2$ $\hat{Q}f8$ 15. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}c5+$ 16. $\hat{Q}e2$ $\hat{Q}g5!$ (but not 16... $\hat{Q}e5$ 17. $\hat{Q}g2$ f4?? 18. $\hat{Q}h1=$) 17. $\hat{Q}g2$ $\hat{Q}g4$ 18. $\hat{Q}f1$ $\hat{Q}g3$ 19. $\hat{Q}h1$ $\hat{Q}h2$ 20. $\hat{Q}g2$ $\hat{Q}d4$ —+

Separated Passed Pawns

With separated passed pawns, the stronger side's strategy is always one and the same: the king goes toward the pawn that the bishop is holding back.

C.Salvioli 1887



5-II

W

1. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}d8$ 2. $\hat{Q}e6$ $\hat{Q}b4$ 3.f6 $\hat{Q}a5$ 4.f7 $\hat{Q}b4$ 5. $\hat{Q}f6$ $\hat{Q}c3+$ 6. $\hat{Q}g6$ $\hat{Q}b4$ 7. $\hat{Q}g7+-$

It is interesting to analyze those situations in which it is impossible to realize a material advantage. Here are some instances:

If one of the pawns is a rook pawn, and the bishop does not control the queening square, the draw can be secured by blocking that pawn with the king and sacrificing the bishop for the other.

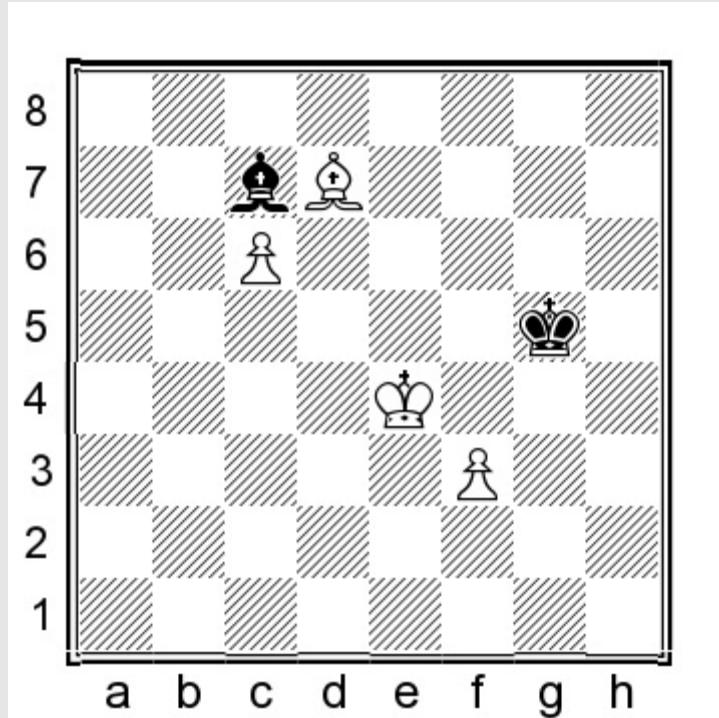
If the pawns are separated by just one file, then the stronger side will only be able to win the bishop for the two pawns (imagine white pawns at c6 and e6 with the black king at d8, and the bishop restraining the pawn which is supported by White's king).

Sometimes the weaker side's king can help the bishop defend against both pawns at once. It **“maintains the zone”** (an expression borrowed from hockey), by shuttling to whichever flank it is needed to prevent the enemy king from invading its territory. This kind of defense is very important

when the pawns are split.

The next diagram offers a very simple example.

Y.Averbakh 1950



5-12

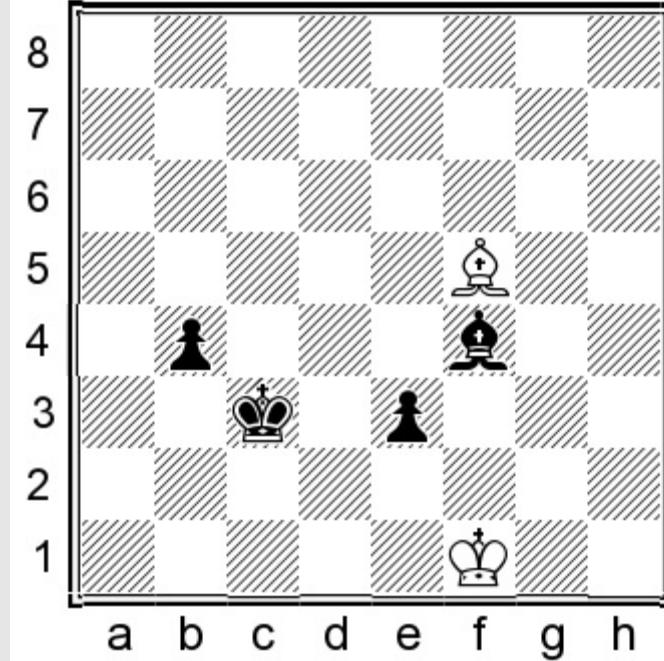
W

The draw is obvious: 1. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ is met by 1... $\mathbb{Q}f6$; if the king goes to b7, Black's king in turn goes to d8. Black can draw in large part because his bishop restrains both pawns along the b8-h2 diagonal.

And finally, the standard winning plan often does not work because the edge of the board is too close (for example, when one of the pawns is a knight's pawn). The following position has great practical significance.

Berger – Kotlerman

Arkhangelsk 1948



5-13

W

1. ♕e2 b3 2. ♕d1 ♕b4 3. ♕h7 ♕a3 4. ♕g6

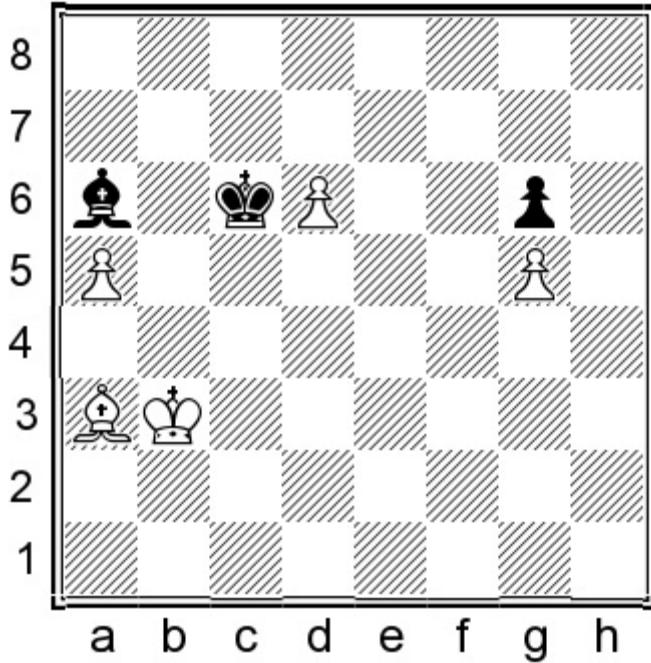
If 4...b2 (threatening 5...♕a2), then 5. ♕b1! ♕b3 6. ♕e2.

4... ♕b2 5. ♕f7!

Black threatened 5...♕a1 and 6...b2. White stops this plan by attacking the b3-pawn.

5... ♕a2 6. ♕e6 ♕a3 (threatening 7...b2 8. ♕f5 ♕a2) **7. ♕f5!** Draw.

The ideas we have examined thus far will help you orient yourself in the most varied kinds of situations with disconnected pawns – even with a large number of pawns on the board.



5-14

B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$

3... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ is equivalent.

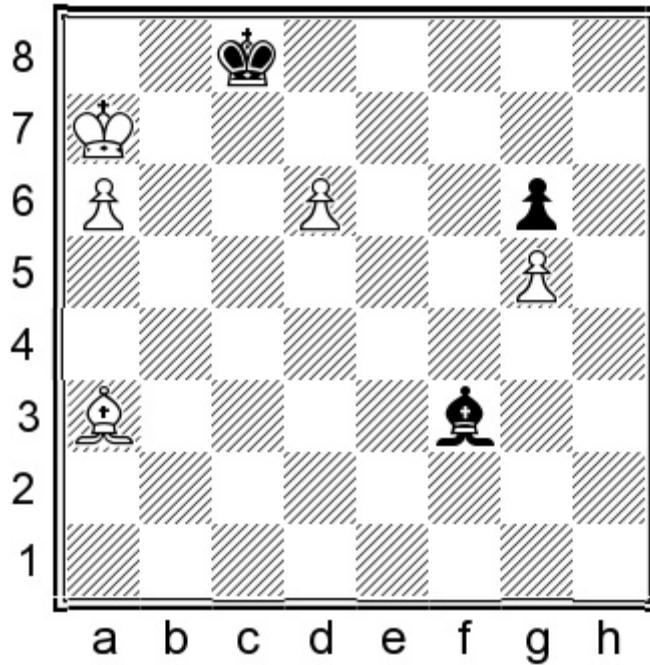
4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ ($\Delta \mathbb{Q}c6-c7+-$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}f3!$

4... $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ would be a mistake: after 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$, when the white king gets into the kingside. Now, White will get nothing out of 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8.a6? $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ – with the same drawing position as in the game Berger-Kotlerman (with opposite colors and reversed flanks).

The correct idea is to play for zugzwang. From d3, the bishop defends the g6-pawn on one diagonal, while on the other, it restrains the advance of the a-pawn; *ergo*, it has no moves. White's king cannot be allowed to get to e7 – that means that, in addition to d7, the black king has just two other squares: e8 and d8. We can take away the first one by putting the king on f7; the second, by moving the bishop to c7.

7. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g7\Theta$ 11... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7\Theta+-$

5.a6 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ (the king maintains the zone: White threatened 6...-- 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 8.d7+! $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b8+-$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7$

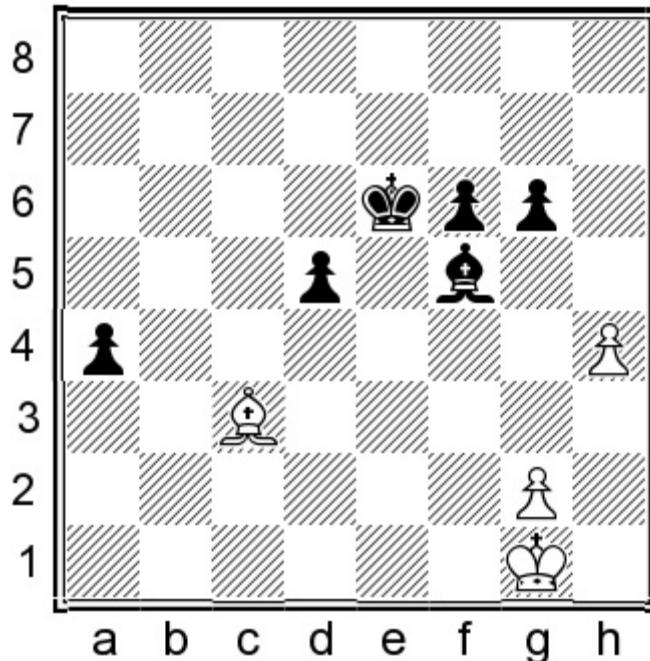


5-15
\$
B?

Once again, Black must be accurate. After 7... $\mathbb{Q}c6?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b4$, he gets into zugzwang: 8... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 10.d7+! $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b7$, or 10... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 11.a7.

7... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!=$

Topalov – Shirov
Linares 1998



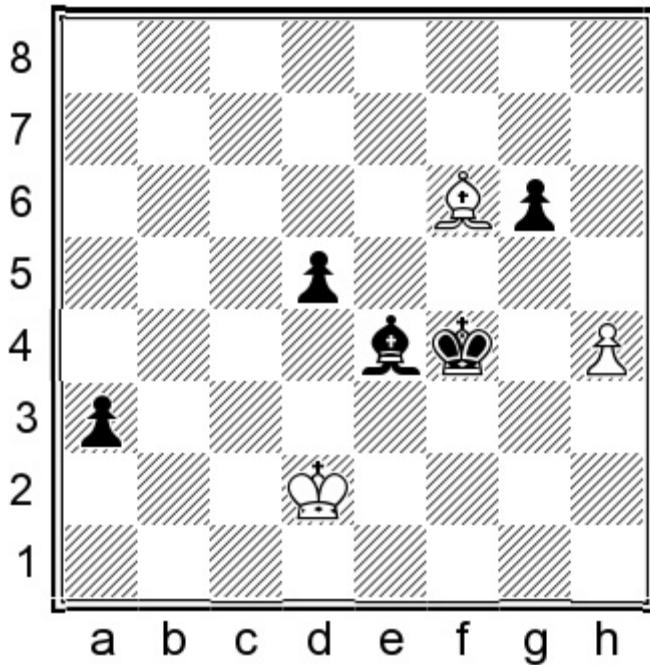
5-16

B?

“Normal” play would bring White the draw without too much trouble, for instance:

1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$? 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$! (simplest – although White also does not lose after 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ d4 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ =;

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4$? 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3.g3! a3 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (on 6...d4 7. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ g5 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ a2 10. $\mathbb{Q}b2$, White need only give up his bishop for the g-pawn).



5-17

W

7. $\mathbb{Q}e7$! (while there is time, it is useful to force the enemy pawn onto the same color square as his bishop) 7...a2 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ d4 11. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ (with the pawn at a3, White would risk falling into zugzwang here) 11...d3 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ a1=Q 15. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$, and we have transposed into the Berger-Kotlerman ending.

Shirov found a fantastic resolution of the position.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$

The bishop is sacrificed for a single tempo – the one needed for the king to get to e4.

2.gxh3

2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ would not help in view of 3... $\mathbb{Q}xg2+$! 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ –+.

2... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

After 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ f5, Black has too many passed pawns.

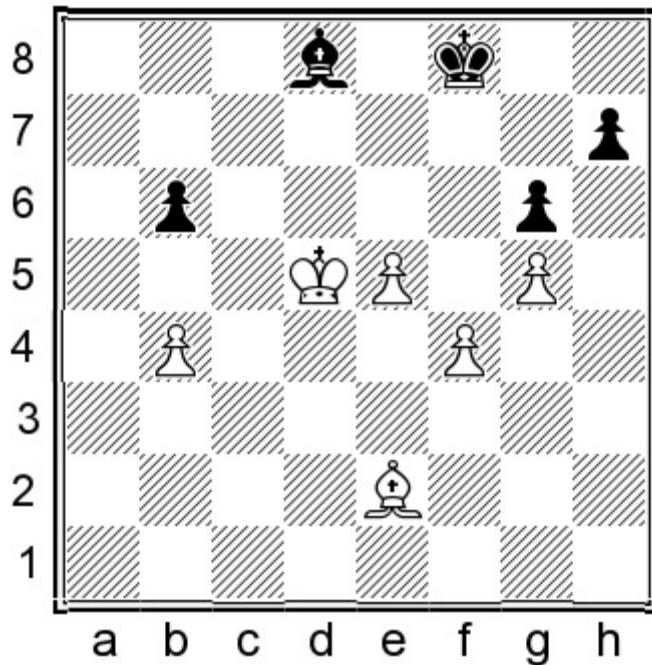
4...d4 (Δ 5...a3) 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ (threatening 6... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ and 7...d3) 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ (but not 6... $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ is just as good).

Now the king must reach c2, which gives us the “pants” situation we spoke of in Chapter 4. White resigned.

Tragicomедies

Marin – Slovineanu

Romania 1999

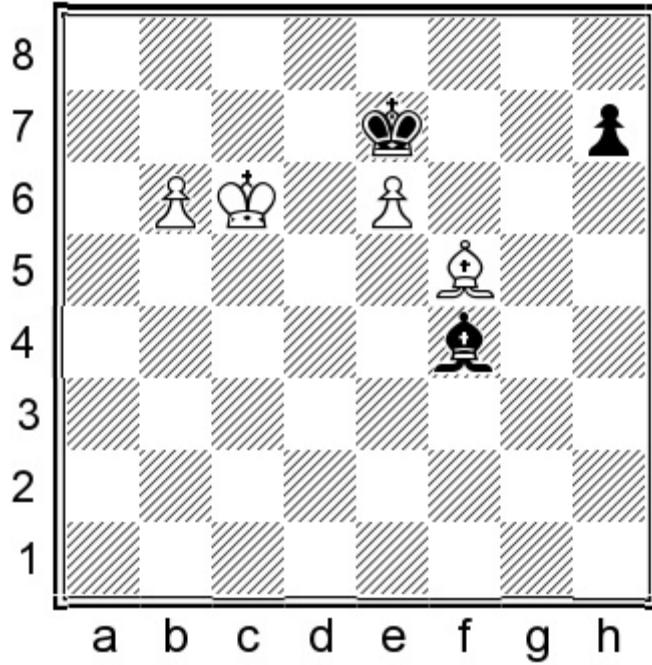


5-18

W

The game ended very quickly: 1. $\mathbb{Q}c4?!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ h6 Draw.

Marin, in *Informant 75*, gave his 1. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ two question marks. He assessed his position as winning, and demonstrated this with the following variation: 1. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2.b5 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 4.e6 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7.f5 gxf5 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (Rogozenko) – apparently it was this last move, later pointed out by his colleague, that the grandmaster failed to notice during the game – 9... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 12.b6.



5-19

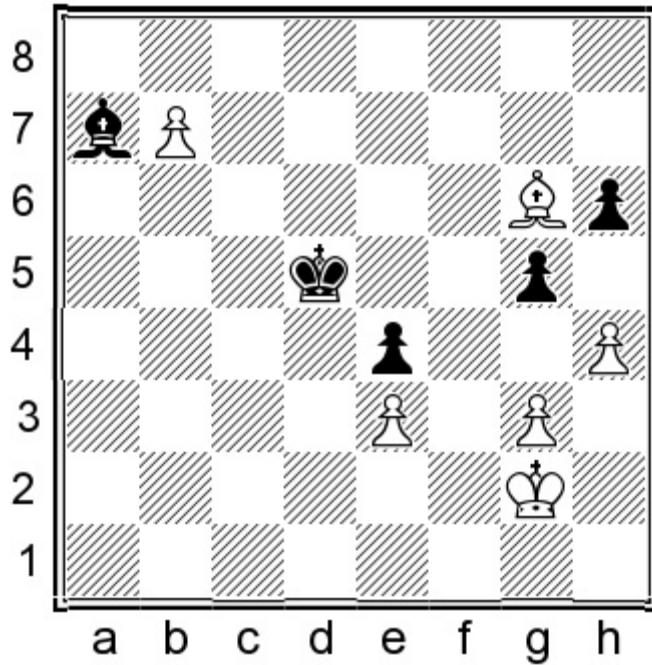
B?

12...h5 13.♔b7 ♔e3 14.♔c7+—

Evidently, neither Marin nor Rogozenko was aware of the Berger-Kotlerman endgame. Otherwise, they would clearly have seen that 12...♔d8! (instead of 12...h5??) would secure Black the draw. Actually, if he wishes, Black could even keep his h-pawn (which, in fact, has not the slightest value anyway) by playing 11...h5 (instead of 11...♔f4) 12.b6 (12.♔c7 ♔f4+ 13.♔c8 ♔e3) 12...♔d8 13.♔b7 ♔e3!=, or 13.b7 ♔f4 14.♔b6 ♔b8!=.

Cifuentes – Langeweg

El Vendrell 1996



5-20

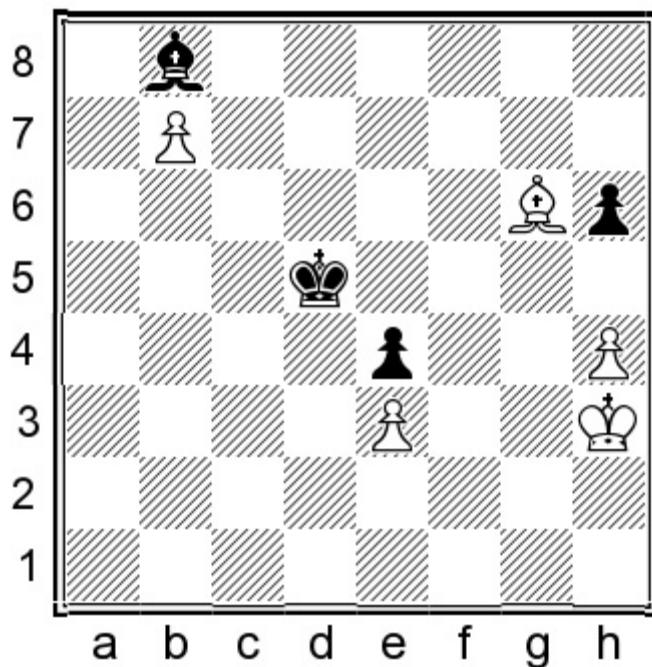
B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5?!$

A strange move indeed! Common sense would indicate Black should exchange on h4.

The side that is down material should usually exchange pawns whenever possible.

Cifuentes believes that Black would stand poorly then, and demonstrates this with the following variation: 1...gxh4 2.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h3$.



3... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h5$! 5... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$! (6. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$? would be premature: 6... $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$! 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 9.h5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 10.h6 $\mathbb{Q}c6=$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (7...h5 8. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xe4+!$) 8.h5 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$! $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$

Cifuentes' analysis is completely unconvincing. Why should Black allow White's king to attack his h-pawn? For example, he could try 3...h5!? 4. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$. It would be much simpler, however, to set up an impregnable fortress by giving up Black's main weakness – the e4-pawn – at once.

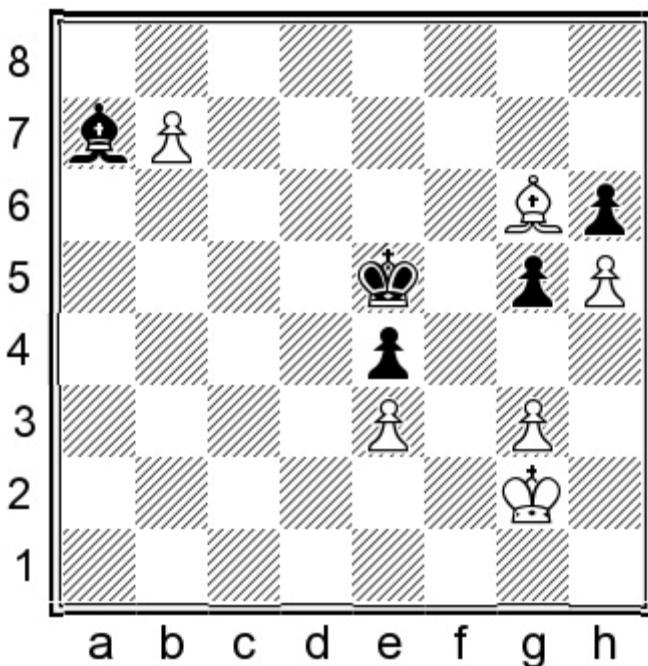
Let's continue: 3... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$! 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$. Now the h-pawn is untouchable – 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ is met by 6... $\mathbb{Q}g7$. White has to bring his king to the queenside; but the most he can achieve there is the win of the bishop for his b- and e-pawns. But then Black's king goes to h8, with an elementary draw (the enemy bishop does not control the rook pawn's queening square). And this important defensive resource comes about precisely because of the exchange of pawns at h4.

Even in Cifuentes' line, 3... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h5$, it is still not too late to return to the right plan: 5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$!, since after 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$, White is unable to queen the h-pawn: 9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 10.h5 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 11.h6 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}e5+$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$??

Black's refusal to trade pawns probably stems from the fact that Langeweg did not want to free the g3-square for White's king. The king cannot approach through the h3-square, which can be seen from the line 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$! 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ (3...gxh4) 4.h5 (4.hxg5 hxg5 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3=$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7=$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ g4!=

2.h5!?



5-22

B?

2... $\hat{\Delta}d5?$

This was, evidently, the decisive error! As Bologan pointed out, Black had a simple draw with 2...g4! followed by ... $\hat{\Delta}b8$. Black's king easily defends the kingside pawns (3. $\hat{\Delta}e8$ $\hat{\Delta}f5$); and the g3-pawn will drop as soon as the white king leaves its side.

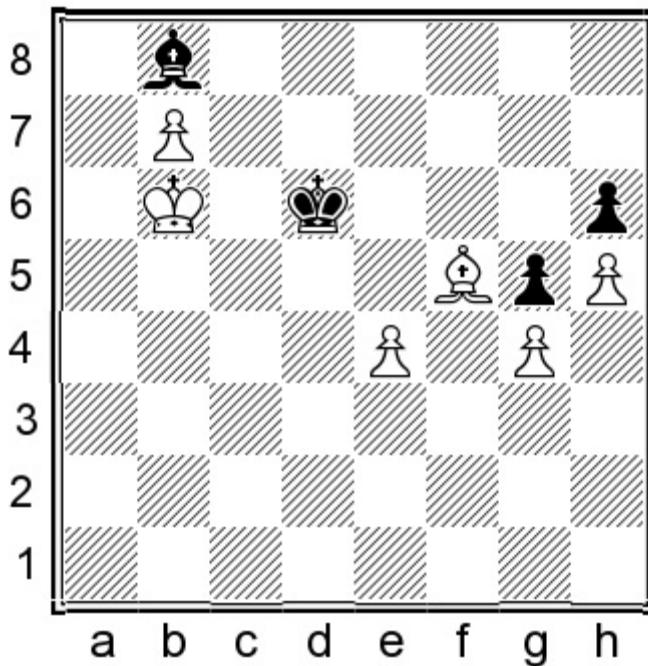
3.g4!

After fixing the kingside, White can now direct his king to the opposite side of the board, restrict his opponent's movements, and finally break through the center to reach the weak pawn at h6.

3... $\hat{\Delta}e5$ 4. $\hat{\Delta}f2$ $\hat{\Delta}b8$ 5. $\hat{\Delta}e2$ $\hat{\Delta}a7$ 6. $\hat{\Delta}d2$ $\hat{\Delta}d5$ 7. $\hat{\Delta}c3\circ$ 7... $\hat{\Delta}b8$ 8. $\hat{\Delta}f7+$ $\hat{\Delta}c5$ 9. $\hat{\Delta}g6$ $\hat{\Delta}d5$ 10. $\hat{\Delta}b4!$ $\hat{\Delta}g3$ 11. $\hat{\Delta}b5$ $\hat{\Delta}c7$ 12. $\hat{\Delta}a6$ $\hat{\Delta}b8$ 13. $\hat{\Delta}b6\circ$ 13... $\hat{\Delta}e5$ 14. $\hat{\Delta}c6$ $\hat{\Delta}e6$

Black had to give up the e4-pawn anyway (because of the deadly threat of $\hat{\Delta}d7-c8$), but in a far less favorable situation.

15. $\hat{\Delta}xe4$ $\hat{\Delta}g3$ 16. $\hat{\Delta}f5+$ $\hat{\Delta}e7$ 17. $\hat{\Delta}b6$ $\hat{\Delta}b8$ 18.e4 $\hat{\Delta}d6$



5-23

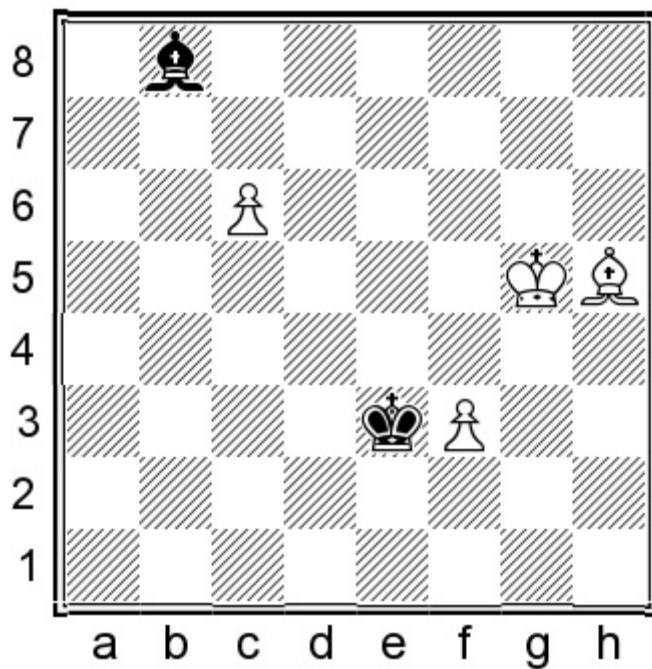
W?

19.e5+! $\hat{\Delta}e7$

19... $\hat{\Delta}xe5$ loses to 20. $\hat{\Delta}c6$; and if 19... $\hat{\Delta}d5$, then 20. $\hat{\Delta}c8$ $\hat{\Delta}xe5$ 21. $\hat{\Delta}c6$ $\hat{\Delta}f6$ 22. $\hat{\Delta}d7$ $\hat{\Delta}f7$ 23. $\hat{\Delta}d8+-$ Now imagine the same position, but without the g-pawns: Black could then simply capture on e5.

20. $\hat{\Delta}c2$ $\hat{\Delta}e6$ 21. $\hat{\Delta}b3+$ $\hat{\Delta}e7$ 22. $\hat{\Delta}a2\circ$ (if 22. $\hat{\Delta}c6??$ then 22... $\hat{\Delta}xe5$ 23. $\hat{\Delta}d5$ $\hat{\Delta}f6=$) 22... $\hat{\Delta}d7$ 23. $\hat{\Delta}c5!$ $\hat{\Delta}xe5$ 24. $\hat{\Delta}d5$ $\hat{\Delta}f4$ 25. $\hat{\Delta}e4$ $\hat{\Delta}e7$ 26. $\hat{\Delta}f5$ $\hat{\Delta}c7$ 27. $\hat{\Delta}g6$ Black resigned.

Exercises



5-24

5/3

B?

Show/Hide Solution

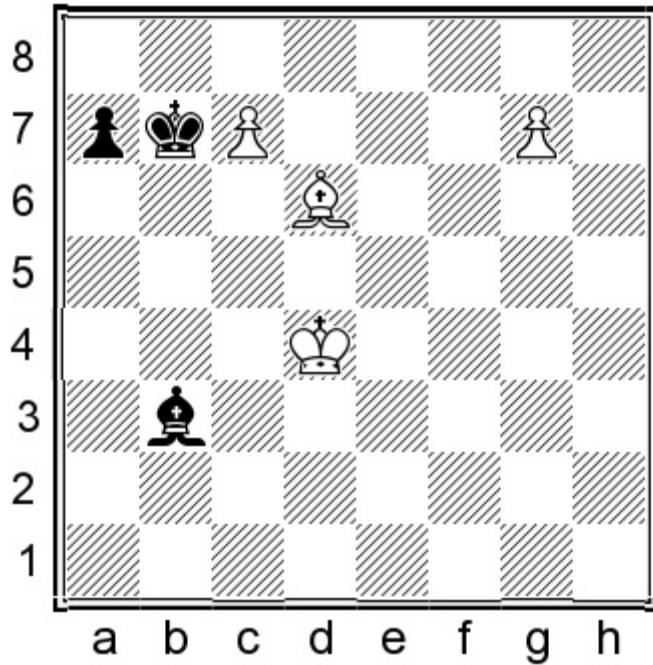
5/3. A.Chéron 1957

1...♝c7!

The diagonal b8-h2 is quite long, but only two squares are available for the bishop: b8 and c7. Both
1....♝d6? 2.♝f5 ♝d4 3.♝e6 ♝c5 4.♝d7+–

and 1...♝h2? 2.♝f5 ♝d4 3.f4+– are bad.

1...♝c7! 2.♝f5 ♝d4! 3.♝e6 (3.f4 ♝e3) 3...♝c5 4.♝d7 ♞b6 (the king “maintains the zone” quite successfully)
5.♞e8 ♞b8! 6.♝e6 ♝c5 7.♝f5 ♝d4 8.♝g4 ♝e3 9.♝h5 ♝c7!=



5-25
5/4
W?

Show/Hide Solution

5/4. A.Norlin 1922

White's king wants to go to f8, to help its pawn that is stopped by the black bishop, but Black then advances his pawn, deflecting the white bishop from the c7-pawn.

The principle of "the single diagonal" is helpful here. White should transfer his bishop to a5, where it will protect the c7-pawn and hold back the black one. For this purpose, he must first protect the c7-pawn with the king, without allowing ...a7-a5-a4 (with the pawn on a4, it is a draw, e.g., 1.♔c5? a5! 2.♗b5 a4 3.♗b4 ♔c8=).

1.♗c3! ♕f7 2.♗b4 ♕e6 3.♗e5!

The bishop should now clear the d6-square. 3.♔c5?! is inaccurate in view of 3...♗b3! with the threat 4...a5.

3...♗c8!?

If 3...♕f7, then 4.♔c5 ♔c8 (4...a5 5.♗b5; 4...♗b3 5.♗d6 ♗c8 6.♗c3) 5.♗c6! (6.♗c3 is threatened) 5...♗e8+ (5...a5 6.♗b5) 6.♗d6 ♕f7 7.♗c3! and 8.♗a5.

4.♗b5!

The author's line, 4.♔c5 ♕b3! 5.♔b5! ♗b7 6.♗b4! and 7.♗c5, is a little bit slower than this.

4...♝b7 (5.♝a6 was threatening) **5.♝c5 ♜b3 6.♝d6** (Δ 7.♝d7) **6...♝c8 7.♜c3!+-**

White has carried out his plan. With his next move, he places the bishop on a5 and then advances his king to f8.

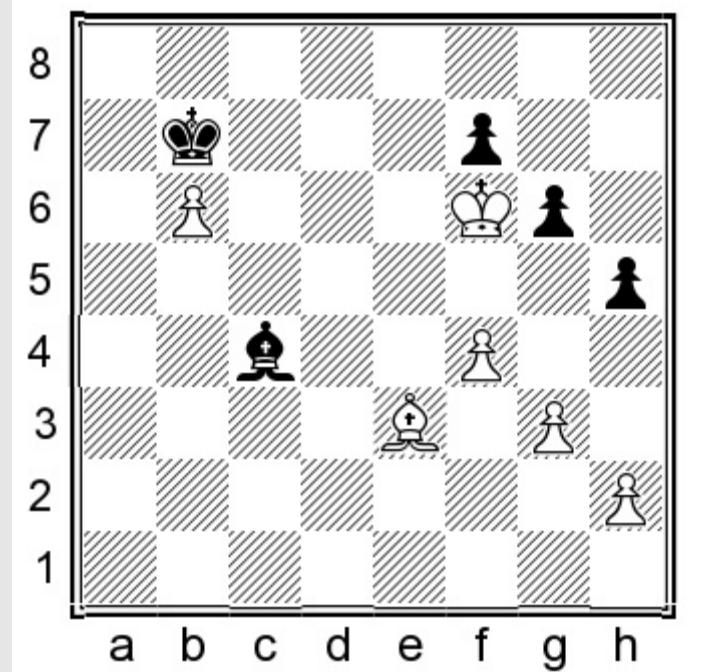
The King Blockades the Passed Pawn

Quite often the stronger side will have a passed pawn, which needs to be blockaded by either the king or the bishop.

The first defensive system: The king blockades the enemy passed pawn, while the bishop defends its own pawns. This is the basic and usually the most secure defensive arrangement.

Attempts to break down the first defensive system always involve the creation of a second passed pawn, frequently by means of a pawn breakthrough.

J.Speelman



5-26

W

In such situations the bishop can easily handle the defense of the kingside, so a drawn outcome should come as no surprise.

1.f5 (the only try) **1...gxf5?!**

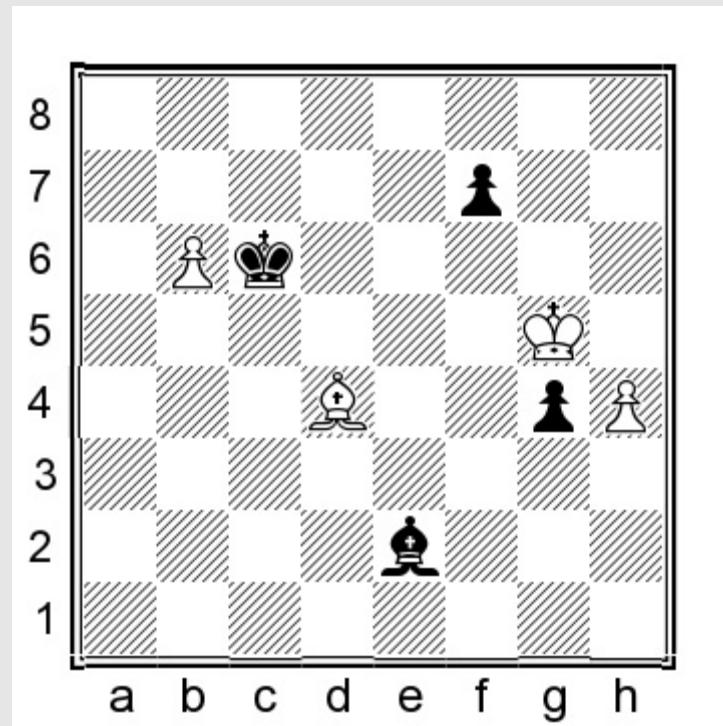
This move makes Black's task a bit more difficult. **1...♝d3!=** is safer.

2.♝xf5 ♝e6+! 3.♝g5 ♝g4=

The assessment of the position would change if Black incautiously played 2... $\hat{Q}c6$? (instead of 2... $\hat{Q}e6+!$):

3. $\hat{Q}g5$ $\hat{Q}e2$ 4.h3! (but not 4. $\hat{Q}f6$ $\hat{Q}c4$ 5.h3? in view of 5... $\hat{Q}f1!$ 6.g4 h4! 7. $\hat{Q}xf7$ $\hat{Q}xh3$ 8.g5 $\hat{Q}f1$ – the advance of the h-pawn distracts the bishop from the defense of the b6-pawn).

4... $\hat{Q}b7$ (4... $\hat{Q}f1$ 5.g4 hxg4 6.h4+–) 5. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{Q}c6$ 6.g4 hxg4 7.h4+–



5-27

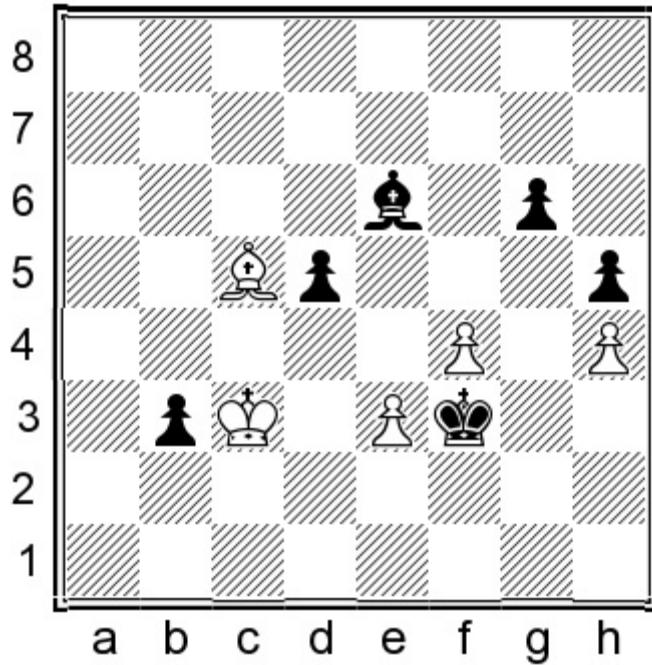
B

White has achieved his aim: the creation of a second passed pawn!

7...g3 8. $\hat{Q}f4$ (8.h5 f6+ 9. $\hat{Q}g6$?! is much less convincing: 9...f5 10.h6 f4 11. $\hat{Q}g5$ f3 12.h7 f2 – White's play might be strengthened, however, by 9. $\hat{Q}h4$!) 8... $\hat{Q}h5$ (8...g2 9. $\hat{Q}g5$ Δ 10.h5) 9. $\hat{Q}xg3$ f6 10. $\hat{Q}f4$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 11. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}b7$ 12.h5 $\hat{Q}h7$.

Black has set up a barrier, but one which can be overcome without much difficulty. White's king goes to a5, to free his bishop from the defense of the b6-pawn. The f6-pawn will then have to advance, and White's king will return to the kingside.

Kotov – Botvinnik
USSR ch, Moscow 1955



5-28

B?

A classic example of the destruction of the first defensive system. The decisive breakthrough aims to create a second passed pawn.

1...g5!!

A mistake would be 1... $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7=$, and if 2... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (this position occurred in the game: White played $\mathbb{Q}c5?$), then 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ b2 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3=$.

1...g5!! 2.fxg5

Hopeless is 2.hxg5 h4 3.f5 (3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4.g6 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 5.f5 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ h3 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$.

2...d4+!

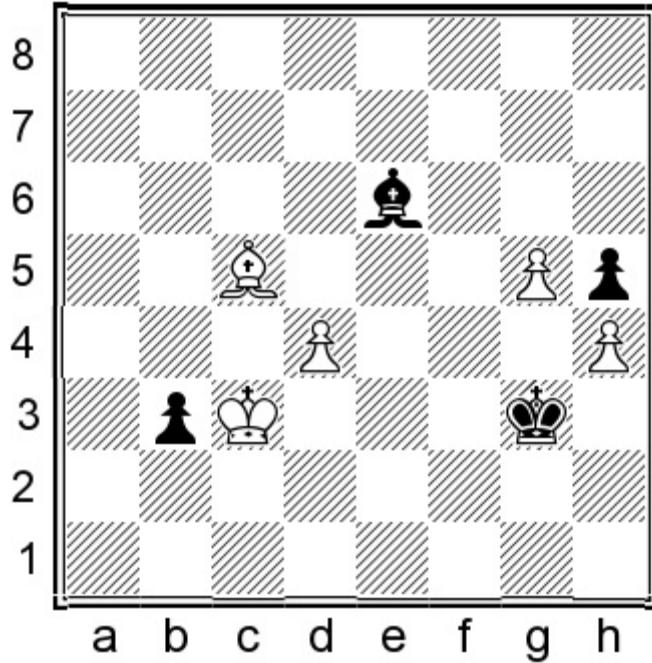
The b3-pawn must be defended as 2... $\mathbb{Q}g3?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ is only drawn.

3.exd4

An interesting sideline is 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 4.g6 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ h4) 6...h4 (threatening 7... $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2-$ (“pants”).

3... $\mathbb{Q}g3$

The careless 3... $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ would have led to a draw after 4.d5 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$.



5-29

W

4.♗a3

Note the black bishop's excellent position in the variation 4.♗e7 ♗xh4 5.g6+ ♗g4. It protects the b3-pawn and restrains both enemy pawns along the single diagonal a2-g8. White has no counterplay, so Black just advances his h-pawn and wins the bishop for it.

4...♗xh4 5.♗d3 ♗xg5

Another strong line is 5...♗g3 6.♗e4 h4 7.d5 h3 8.dxe6 h2 9.♗d6+ ♗g4 10.♗xh2 b2 11.e7 b1=♕+

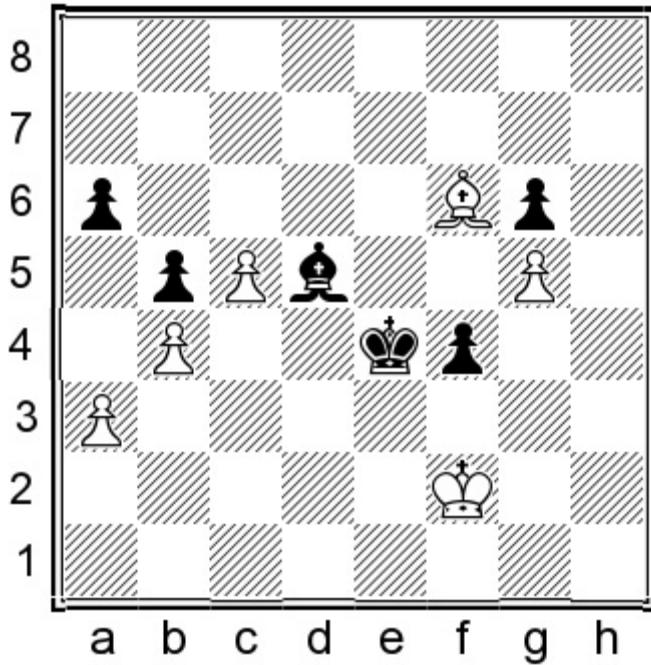
6.♗e4 h4 7.♗f3 (7.d5 ♗xd5+) 7...♗d5+

White resigned. After 8.♗f2, Black's king goes toward the b3-pawn. The bishop, meanwhile, defends the h-pawn, while restraining the d-pawn along the diagonal c8-h3.

Tragicomедies

Bellón – Minic

Siegen ol 1970



5-30

W?

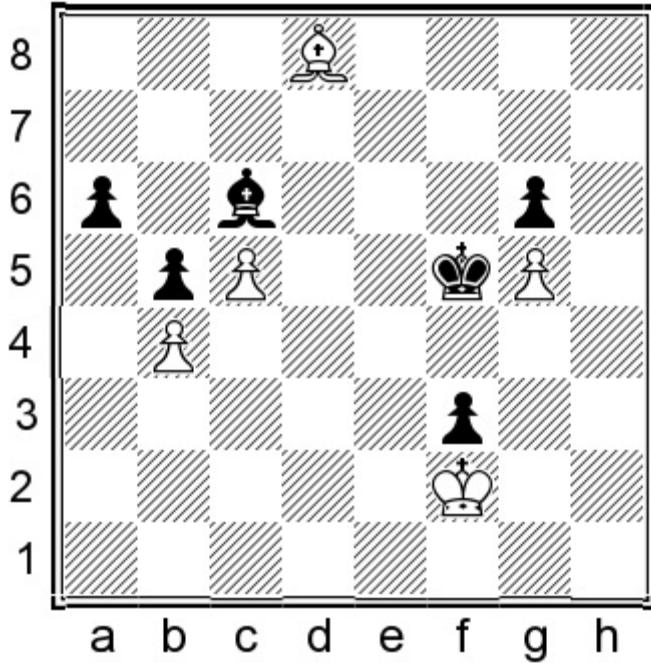
This was the adjourned position in which White sealed his 41st move. After analyzing in their rooms, the players agreed to a draw without resumption. Black's positional advantage appeared insufficient for victory to Minic. Judging from his comments in the *Informant*, he was convinced by the following line: 1. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ a5 5. bxa5 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. a6 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. a7 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 8. a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 9. c6 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6$, when the a3-pawn is securely protected, and the draw is obvious.

It is surprising that even after home analysis, neither the players themselves nor their teammates were able to solve this rather simple position. In point of fact, its evaluation hinges on the sealed move.

After 1. $\mathbb{Q}d8?$ $\mathbb{Q}c6!$, Black wins. To begin with, he must simply capture the a3-pawn (since the bishop cannot protect it), and then the threat of the ...a6-a5 breakthrough will become more serious. Taking the pawn at a5 would give Black his second passed pawn.

2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ f3 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2! \mathcal{O}$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathcal{O}$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathcal{O}$ Having done its job, the king returns to the other side.

10. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d8$



5-31
B

13... $\hat{Q}f4!$

Zugzwang! White's bishop is torn apart: on one diagonal, it protects the g5-pawn; on the other, it controls the a5-square. On 14. $\hat{Q}c7+$ $\hat{Q}xg5$, Black moves his king to d3 and plays ...g6-g5-g4-g3+ when $\hat{Q}xg3$ loses to ...a6-a5, and $\hat{Q}xg3$ to ... $\hat{Q}e2$.

After 14. $\hat{Q}e7$ a5! 15.bxa5 b4, the king goes to the queenside once again, to win the bishop for the b-pawn. White has no counterplay, since the black bishop does everything on the one diagonal a8-h1, defending the f3-pawn and stopping both enemy passers.

The king retreat is no help either. 14. $\hat{Q}f1$ $\hat{Q}e3$ 15. $\hat{Q}c7$ a5! 16. $\hat{Q}xa5$ (16.bxa5 b4) 16... $\hat{Q}d5$, followed by 17... $\hat{Q}c4+$ and 18...f2+.

After giving some thought to the final position of this variation, we come to understand that White's own pawn at c5 is in his way, because it blocks the important a7-g1 diagonal. So White must rid himself of it.

1.c6!!

The only saving line. In fact, Bellon probably sealed the other move instead. Otherwise, after the game ended, this line would have been revealed in the annotations.

1... $\hat{Q}xc6$ 2. $\hat{Q}d8$ $\hat{Q}d3$ 3. $\hat{Q}c7!$

“Pawn in the crosshairs” – it is important to force it to move onto the same color square as its bishop.

3...f3 4. $\hat{Q}d8$ $\hat{Q}c2$ 5. $\hat{Q}c7$ $\hat{Q}b3$ 6. $\hat{Q}d8$ $\hat{Q}xa3$ 7. $\hat{Q}a5$ $\hat{Q}b3$ 8. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}c4$ 9. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}d3$ 10. $\hat{Q}c7$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 11. $\hat{Q}b6$ $\hat{Q}d5$ 12. $\hat{Q}c7$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 13. $\hat{Q}d8$

This is the same position as in the last diagram – except that there is no pawn at c5. Here Black gets

nothing from 13...a5 14. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$, since the connected passed pawns are easily blockaded on the dark squares. If White had not forced the timely advance of the f-pawn, with the pawn at f4 this position would be lost, of course.

13... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$

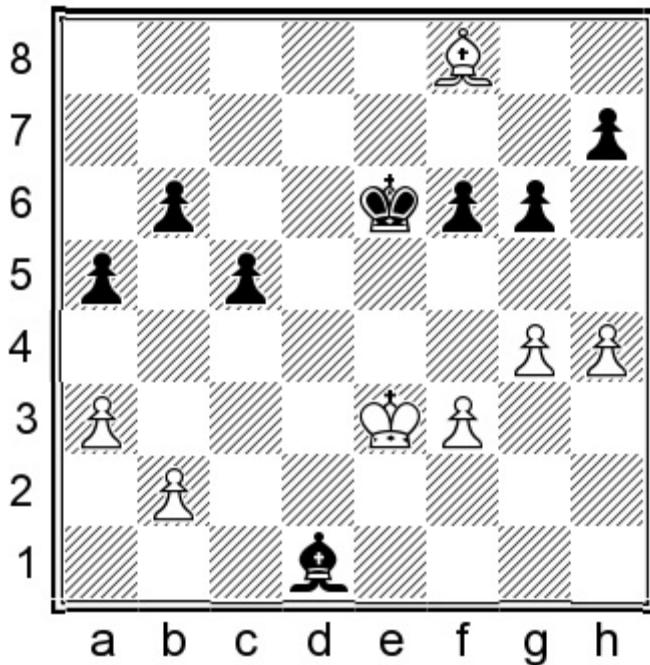
Now on 14... $\mathbb{Q}e3$, White has 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ – this check was the reason behind the pawn sacrifice.

14... $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f2$

On 15... $\mathbb{Q}d3$, White cannot play either 16. $\mathbb{Q}e1?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ or 16. $\mathbb{Q}g1?$ $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$, followed by 18...a5. However, he does have 16. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ exploiting the fact that the f3-pawn is not protected by the bishop (16... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$). On 15... $\mathbb{Q}e2$, there follows 16. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ (the e2-square is occupied). And if the bishop goes to g2, White plays $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ (analysis by Dvoretsky).

Ljubojevic – Karpov

Milan 1975



5-32

W

Of course, the position is drawn. All White needs do is to take the kingside pawns off the light squares, and his bishop can defend them. This frees the king to counter Black's play on the queenside, where he wants to create a passed pawn.

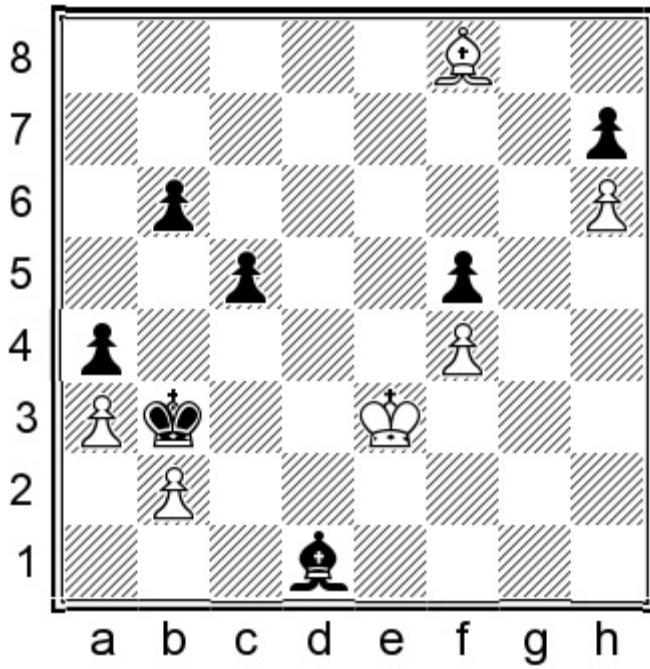
The simplest solution to the problem is 1.g5! f5 (1...fxg5 2.hxg5 Δ f4=) 2.f4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g7$.

Another reasonable line would be 1.h5!? g5 (1...gxh5 2.gxh5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ f5 4.h6 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5.f4 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2=$ Matanovic) 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ f5 4.gxf5+ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 5.h6=

1. $\mathbb{Q}e4?!$ a4 2.h5?

White is doing all he possibly can to complicate his life. Here again, 2.g5! f5+ 3.♔e3 would have secured an elementary draw.

2...gxh5 3.gxh5 f5+ 4.♔e3 ♔d5 5.h6 ♔c4 6.f4 ♔b3



5-33

W?

White might still have saved the game by playing 7.♔d2! ♕f3 8.♔c1 (or 8.♗g7). Evidently, Ljubojevic did not feel like calculating the consequences of 7...♗xb2. However, as Villeneuve has shown, the bishop sacrifice is insufficient: 8.♗xd1 c4 (8...♗xa3 9.♔c2 ♔b4 10.♔b2=) 9.♗g7+ c3 10.♔e2! (10.♔e5? b5 11.♔d4 b4+) 10...♗xa3 (10...♔c2 11.♔e3 b5 12.♔d4! ♔d2 13.♔c5!) 11.♔xc3 (11.♔d3 b5 12.♔c2!) 11...b5 12.♔e5 b4 (Δ 13...♔a2+–) 13.♔d6!=

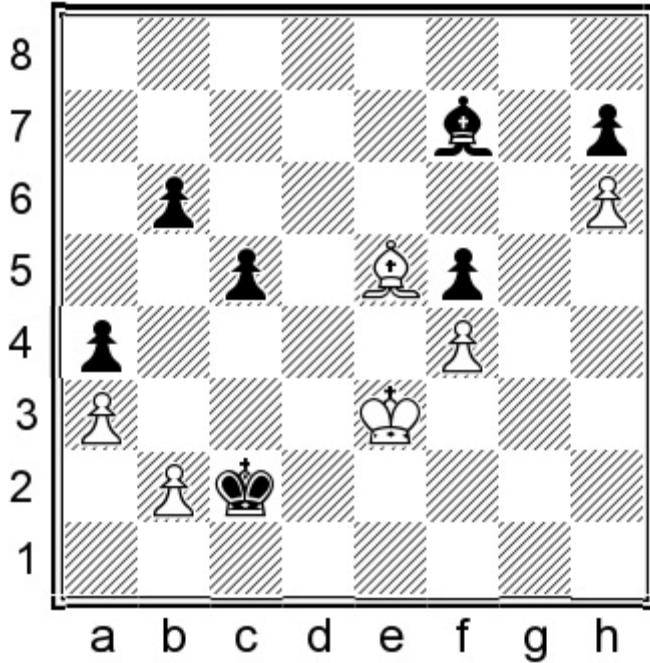
7.♗g7? ♔c2!

Only now, when the white king is cut off from the queenside, does his position become lost. Black's pawn advance will reach its goal – but only with the black bishop on b3, which is where Karpov is sending it now.

8.♔e5 ♔h5 9.♔f6

9.♔c7 would not help: 9...♗xb2 10.♔xb6 c4 11.♔d4+ (11.♔c5 c3 12.♔d4 ♔c2 13.♔f6 ♔e8 followed by 14...♔b5 and 15...♔b3) 11...♗xa3 12.♔d2 ♔b3 13.♔f6 a3. Then Black will place his bishop at b1, pawn at a2, transfer his king to g6 and (with the white bishop at g7), trade the c4-pawn for the h6-pawn by means of ...c4-c3.

9...♔f7 10.♔e5



5-34

B?

10...♝b3! 11.♝g7 b5 12.♝f8

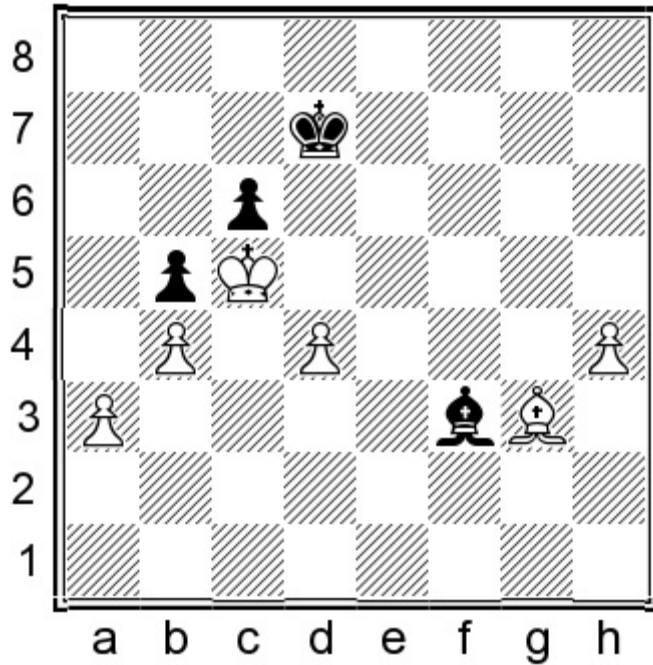
Nothing would be changed with 12.♝c3 b4! 13.♝g7 (13.axb4 a3!; 13.♚e1 ♝xb2 14.axb4 cxb4 15.♝xb4 a3 16.♝d4 a2 17.♝c3+ ♞c2 18.♝a1 ♞b1 19.♝c3 ♝f7! 20.♝e5 ♝g6+) 13...c4.

12...c4 13.♝g7 b4! 14.♝d4

The main line of Karpov's idea runs 14.axb4 c3 15.♝xc3 (15.bxc3 ♜c4!) 15...a3 16.♝e5 a2+ Without the bishop at b3 in the final position, White could save himself with 17.b3.

14...c3 15.bxc3 bxa3 16.c4 a2 17.♝c5 ♜b1 18.♝b4 a1=♛ 19.♜xa1 ♜xa1 20.c5 ♜b2 21.c6 a3 22.c7 ♜e6 23.♝c5 a2 24.♝d6 ♜c8 White resigned.

Exercises



5-35

5/5

B?

How should the game end?

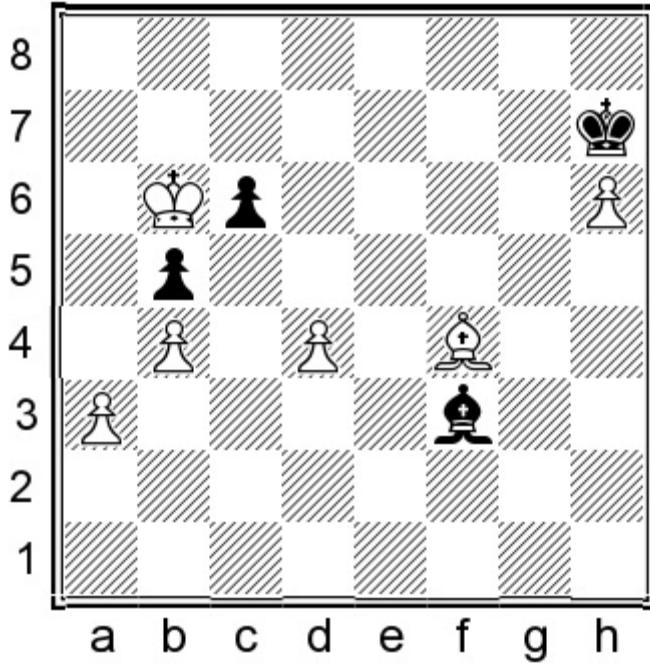
Show/Hide Solution

5/5. Berezhnoy-Gusev, Rostov-Don 1972

1...♝e6!

The king runs to the h-pawn, reaching the first defensive position. But can the bishop prevent the creation of another passed pawn on the queenside?

2.h5 ♞f7 3.h6 ♞g6 4.♗f4 ♞h7 5.♗b6



16-48

B?

5...♝d5!

The game continued 5...♝e4?? 6.♔a5 ♝g6 (6...♝c2 7.d5!+–) 7.a4 bxa4 8.♔xa4 ♝f7 9.b5, and Black resigned.

6.♔a5 ♝b3!

White has no win. 7.a4 bxa4 8.b5 cxb5 9.♔xb5 a3 is useless – the a-pawn will deflect the bishop from protecting its own pawn.

It is worth mentioning that reaching the first defensive position is the only correct plan for Black. Yes, after 1...♝e2, the immediate 2.d5 cxd5 3.♗xd5 does not succeed in view of 3...♝d1! 4.♔d6 (4.♔c5 ♞a4=) 4...♝e8 5.♔e6 ♘b3+ 6.♔f6 ♘d1=. But White plays 2.♔f4 ♘f3 3.♔e5, and 3...♝e6! is quite necessary here, because the prolonged passive policy 3...♝e2? loses to 4.d5 cxd5 5.♗xd5 ♘d1 (5...♝e7 6.♔c5, planning ♘b6-a5 and a3-a4+–) 6.♗c5 ♘e6 (6...♞a4 7.h5 ♘e6 8.h6) 7.♔xb5! ♘xe5 8.♔c6! (shouldering in the most precise way) 8...♞f3+ 9.♔c7 ♘e2 10.a4+–

The Bishop Restrains the Passed Pawn

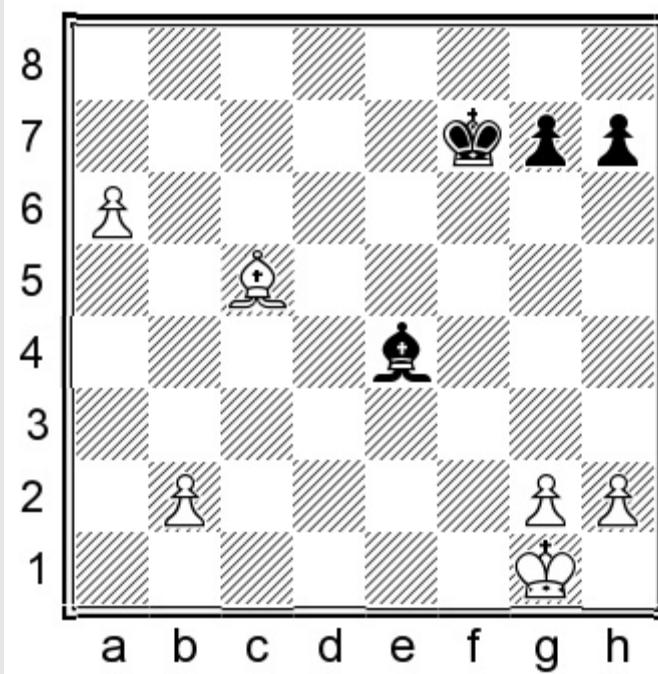
Situations in which the bishop stops a passed pawn (and sometimes two – on the same diagonal) we call the ***second defensive system***. The weaker side's king in these cases “maintains the zone” – that is, it defends its pawns, and limits the activity of the opposing king.

Attempts to break down the second defensive system invariably involve breaking through to the

passed pawn with the king (often after a preliminary diversionary attack, and “widening the beachhead” on the other wing).

Euwe – Yanofsky

Groningen 1946



5-36

B

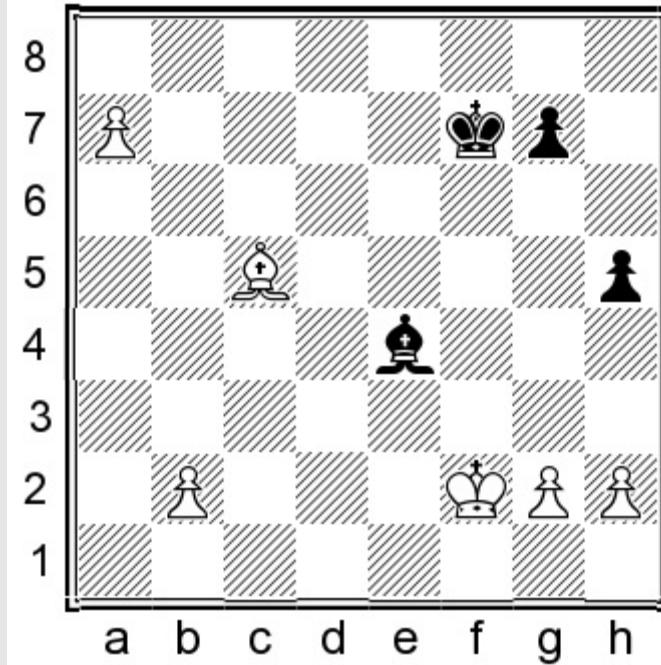
1...h5!

A typical move, ensuring the safety of the kingside pawns. On 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6?!$, Black would have had to reckon not only with 2.g4!?, but also with 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}d7?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8 g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$, when the h7-pawn becomes an attractive target for the white king.

1...h5! 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}d3?$

A technique we have already seen more than once: the a-pawn is forced onto a square of the same color as its bishop. However, now was not the time to attack the pawn. Necessary was 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$, bringing the king closer to the important f5-square.

3.a7 $\mathbb{Q}e4$



5-37

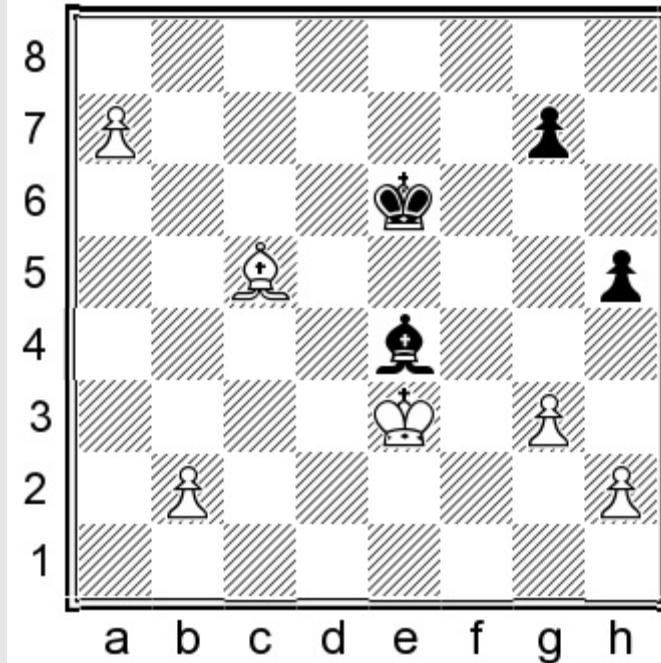
W?

4.g3?

His opponent's inaccuracy remains unpunished. As John Nunn has correctly noted, 4.g4!! hxg4 5.♔g3 won. For example, 5...♗f3 (with the king on e6, ♔f5 holds) 6.♔f4 ♗e6 7.♔d4 g6 8.h3>O 8...♗g2 (8...g5+ 9.♔g3+-) 9.♔xg4!=+ (but not 9.hxg4 ♗h1=) with a situation as soon arose in the game.

Also sufficient for victory is 4.h4! g6 5.g4! hxg4 6.♔g3 ♗f3 7.♔f4 ♗e6 8.♔g5 ♗e4 9.♔xg4 ♔d7 (the attempt to transfer the king to b7 is hopelessly late) 10.♔f4 ♗g2 11.♔g5 ♗e4 12.a8=♕ ♗xa8 13.♔xg6+- (shown by Burkhard Treiber).

4...♗e6 5.♔e3



5-38

B?

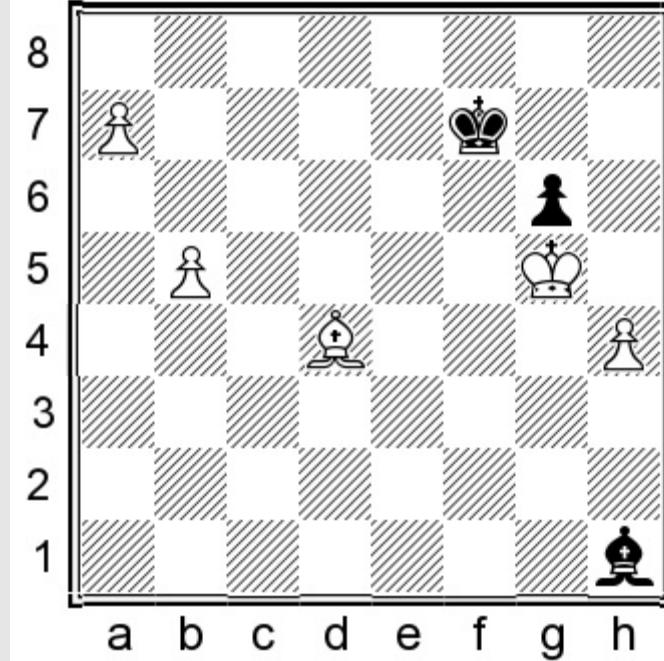
5...♝g2?

An instructive error: the white king should not have been allowed near the pawns. The draw becomes unavoidable after 5...♝f5! 6.♝f8 g6 7.♝d4 ♝g2 8.♝c5 ♜e6! 9.♝b6 ♜d7 10.b4 ♜a8 11.b5 ♜c8!= (but not 11...♝g2? in view of 12.a8=♛! ♜xa8 13.♝a7 ♜f3 14.♝b8+–, with the unstoppable threat of b5-b6-b7).

6.♝f4! g6 7.g4!

The first step is to widen the kingside beachhead.

7...hxg4 8.♝xg4 ♜h1 9.♝g5 ♜f7 10.♝d4 ♝g2 11.h4 ♜h1 12.b4 ♝g2 13.b5 ♜h1



5-39

W?

14.♗f6! ♗g2

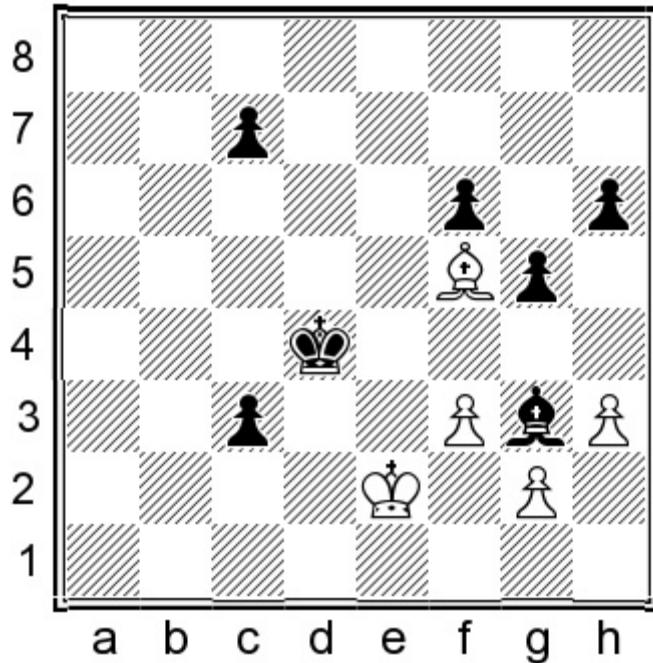
On 14...♝e4, both 15.♔f4 Δ ♜e5 and 15.b6〇 are strong.

15.h5! (the second, decisive step!) **15...gxh5 16.♗f5** Black resigned.

If 16...♜e8, then 17.♔e6 Δ ♜d6-c7. White's bishop restrains the h-pawn and simultaneously deprives the enemy king of the squares e7 and d8 on the single diagonal d8-h4.

Makarychev – Averbakh

Lvov 1973



5-40

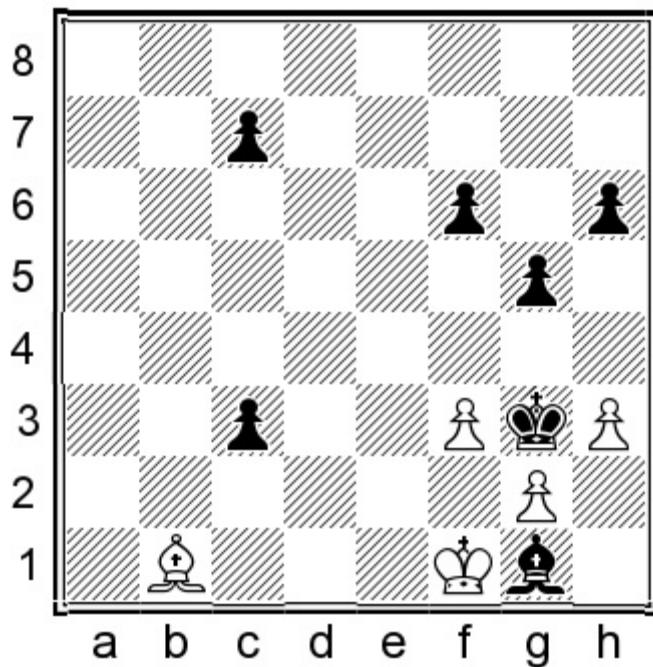
B?

Black's plan is the same as in the preceding example: first, the king invades the kingside; then, the beachhead is widened; and finally, the king breaks through to the c-pawn.

1... \hat{Q} e5 2. \hat{Q} c2 \hat{Q} f4 3. \hat{Q} b1 \hat{Q} h2 4. \hat{Q} f2 \hat{Q} g1+! 5. \hat{Q} e2

5. \hat{Q} xg1 \hat{Q} e3 6. \hat{Q} f1 \hat{Q} d2 would lose immediately.

5... \hat{Q} g3 6. \hat{Q} f1



5-41

B?

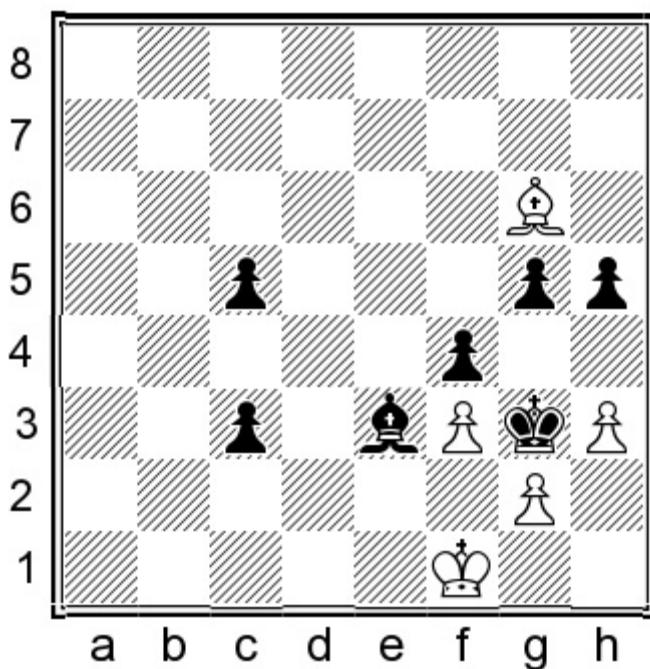
6... $\mathbb{Q}f2!$

In order to prepare ...f7-f5, Black must first take control of the e1-square.

7. $\mathbb{Q}c2 f5! 8.\mathbb{Q}b1$

On 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$, the king gets through to his passed pawn: 8... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}e3+$ (it is important that White cannot reply 10. $\mathbb{Q}e1$).

8...f4 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}e3 10.\mathbb{Q}c2 h5 11.\mathbb{Q}f5 c5 12.\mathbb{Q}g6$



5-42

B?

12...h4! 13. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (13. $\mathbb{Q}e4 c4\circlearrowleft$) 13...g4! 14.hxg4

No better is 14.fxg4 f3 15.gxf3 $\mathbb{Q}xh3+$

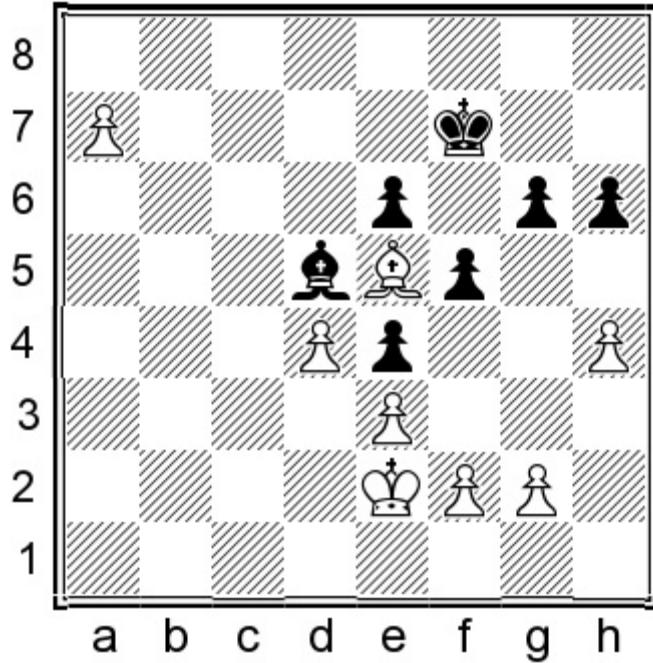
14...h3 15.gxh3 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 16.g5 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 17.g6 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 18.h4 f3 19.h5 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e1 f2+$

White resigned. After 21. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}f3$, the king marches unhindered to d2.

And now, let's examine a much more complex ending, excellently played and annotated by Kaidanov.

Kaidanov – Antoshin

RSFSR ch 1984



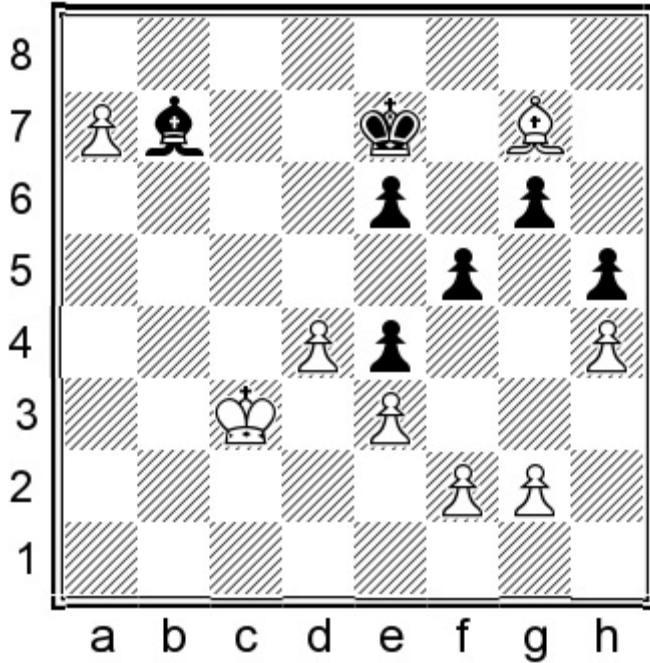
5-43

W?

What plan should White select? 1. $\mathbb{Q}f4$? (hoping to induce the reply 1...h5, giving his king invasion squares on the kingside) would be a gross blunder, in view of the pawn sacrifice 1...g5! 2.hxg5 hxg5 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$. Black's king arrives at b7 (the "first defensive system"), and White is unable to create a second passed pawn on the kingside.

By the way, ...g6-g5 is not yet a threat – White replies h4-h5, fixing the h6-pawn. (With a lightsquare bishop, for the weaker side to have his pawns on dark squares renders them weak, and is generally a serious positional defect.) But without exchanging off these pawns, it makes no sense to go into the first defensive position, because the bishop will be unable to defend its kingside.

White will not be able to get to the a-pawn through the queenside: the enemy king will "maintain the zone." But by doing so, he will be diverted from the f7-square, and then White can play $\mathbb{Q}g7$, induce ...h6-h5, and return with his king to the kingside. Let's try it: 1. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ h5 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$



5-44

B?

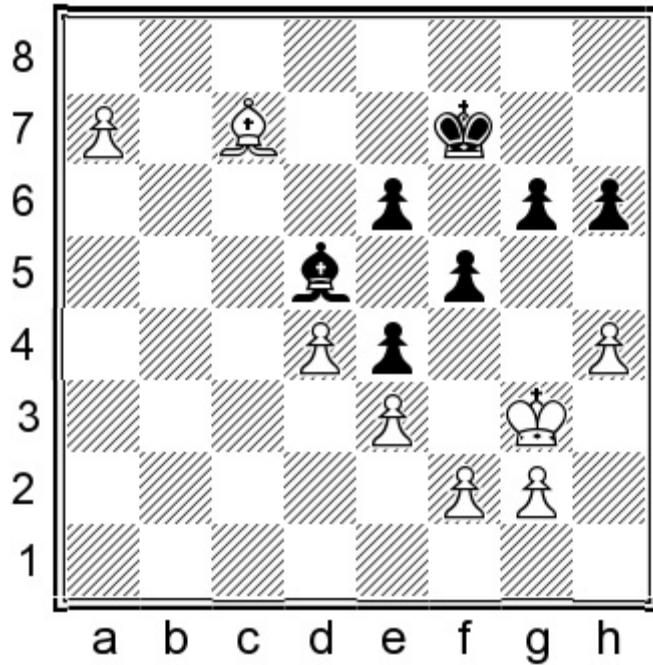
Is there a way to prevent the king march via h2 to e5? Kaidanov suggests a counterattack by Black's king: 5... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e2=$. However, he must also consider 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ (instead of 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 8.f3.

It would be safer to exploit the absence of White's king from the kingside by switching, at precisely this moment, to the first defensive position: 5... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ changes nothing, while 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ loses the pawn at a7) 8... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4!$, and if 10.f3, then 10... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f4! 12.fxe4 (12.exf4 exf3 13.gxf3 $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!?=$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 13.exf4 $\mathbb{Q}f5!?$, with an obvious draw. At first it seemed to me that the same objective could be achieved through the immediate 10...f4?, but Stephan Neurohr has proven that White wins here by continuing 11.fxe4 fxe3 12.d5 exd5 (12...e5 is also no better) 13.e5.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$

Now let's examine 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5.g4? fxg4+ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b4$. Now, the defensive plan of marching the black king down to e2 (13... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ h5 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5?$) does not work, because his opponent will advance through the now open g2-square. But there is another idea: Black can return to the first defensive position: 13... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ h5 16. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}b6!$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c4!=$, and White's king will not get to the kingside.

4... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$



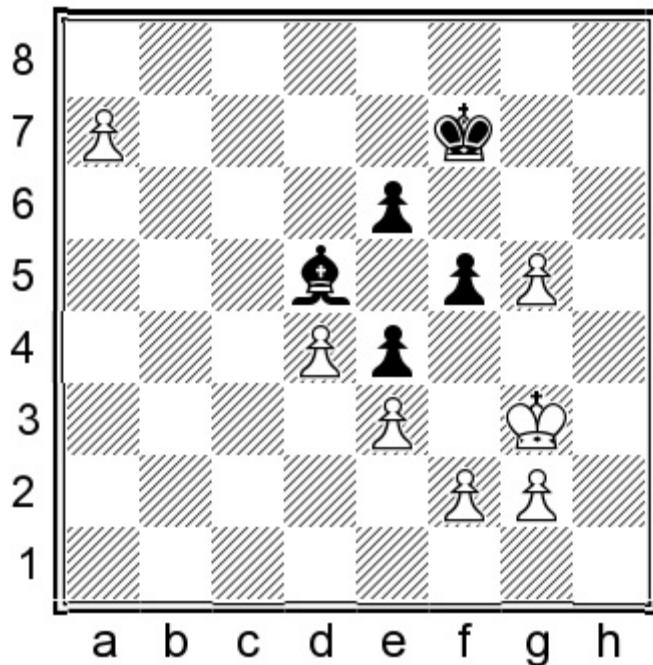
5-45

B

5...♝e7

Forced, because the temporizing 5...♝a8? allows White's king to get to its passed pawn: 6.♝f4! g5+ 7.♝e5! gxh4 (7...♝e7 8.h5!+) 8.♝d6+– With the king already on e7, 6.♝f4? g5+= no longer works for White; on the other hand, the bishop sacrifice now becomes strong.

6.♝f4! g5! 7.♝xg5+! hxg5 8.hxg5 ♜f7



5-46

W?

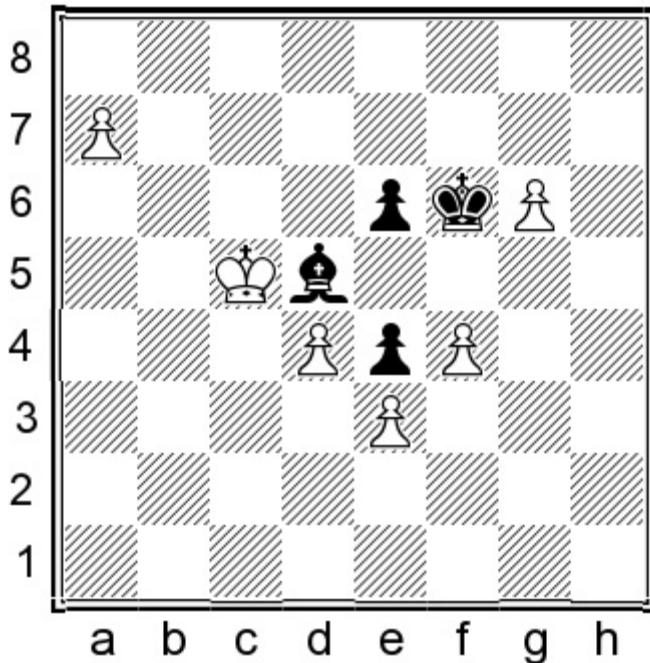
9.f4!

But not 9.♔f4? ♔g6 10.f3 ♔h5=

9...♔g6 (9...exf3 10.gxf3 Δ ♔f4, e4+-) **10.♔h4 ♕a8 11.g4! fxg4 12.♔xg4 ♕d5 13.♔g3**

Having strengthened his kingside position to the utmost, White brings the king over to the queenside. Black must send his king to meet it – but then the g-pawn charges ahead.

13...♔f7 14.♔f2 ♕e7 15.♔e1 ♔d6 16.♔d2 ♕c6 (16...♔c7 17.g6 ♔b7 18.g7 e5 19.dxe5 ♔xa7 20.f5+-) **17.♔c3 ♕a8 18.♔b4 ♕d5 19.g6 ♕e7 20.♔c5 ♔f6** (20...♕a8 21.f5 exf5 22.d5+-)



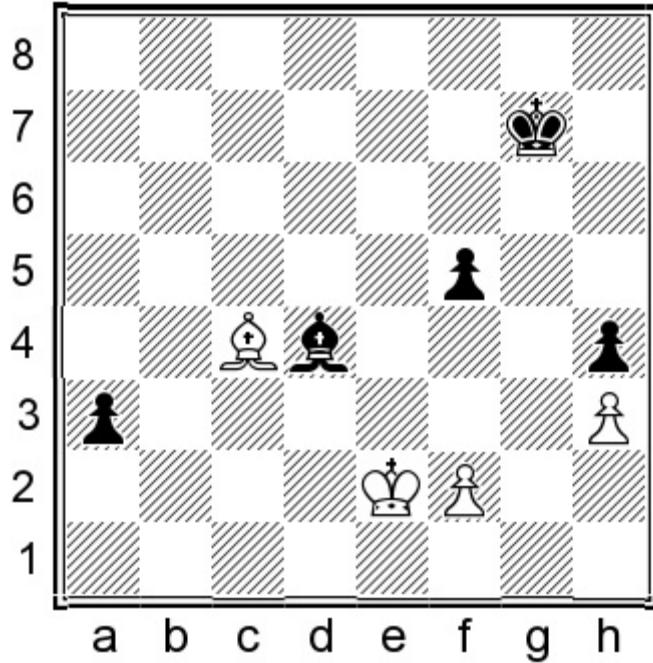
5-47

W

21.f5! ♕a8 22.fxe6 ♔xe6 23.d5+ Black resigned.

Exercises

Both of the following exercises are rather difficult. In the first, you must calculate variations accurately; in the second, you must find a far from obvious plan of action.



5-48
5/6
W?

Show/Hide Solution

5/6. Tringov-Smyslov, Reykjavik 1974

The f2-pawn must go forward, but where?

The game continued 1.f4? ♕g1! 2.♗d3 ♔h2 3.♗e3 ♖f6

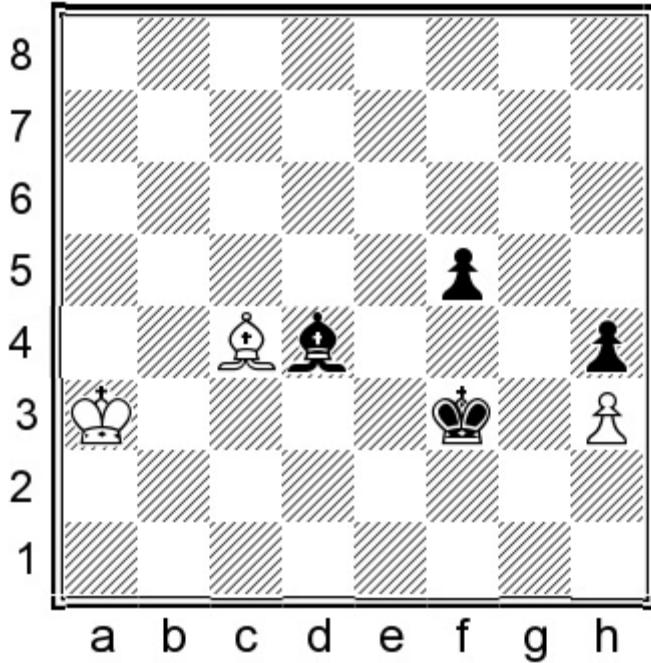
Black has chained his opponent to the defense of the f4-pawn and now directs his king to b2. White has no answer to this simple plan. By the way, the bishop has gone to h2 (rather than c7) in order not to interfere with the king when it steps to d6.

4.♔a2 ♔e7 5.♕g8 ♔d6 6.♕f7 ♔c5 7.♔a2 (7.♕e6 ♔b4 8.♗d3 ♕xf4 9.♔c2 ♕e5! 10.♕xf5 a2–+) 7...♗b4 8.♗d4 ♕xf4 9.♗d5 ♔g3 10.♗d4 f4 White resigned.

In endings with opposite-color bishops, the defender should keep his pawns on the squares of his bishop's color. Therefore 1.f3! suggests itself, having in mind the first defensive position. The bishop can protect kingside pawns easily when the king stands on b3 (if ...♗f4, then ♕e6!, and if ...f5-f4, then the bishop goes to g4). The question is whether White can build this setup in time.

1...♗f6 2.♗d3 ♔e5!

The eventual consequences of 3.♔c2? ♗f4 4.♗b3 (4.♕e6?! ♕xf3 5.♕xf5 a2) 4...♕xf3 (4...♔c5? 5.♕e6=) 5.♔xa3 are not so easy to calculate right now.



16-49

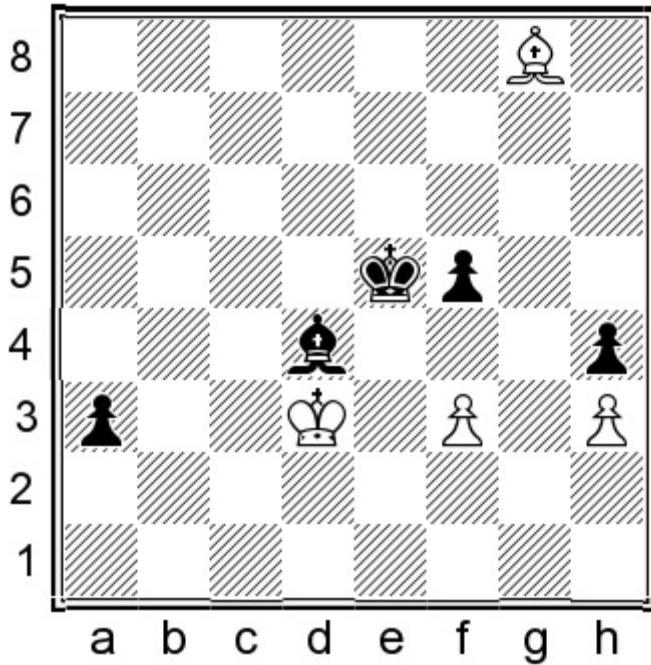
B?

After the apparently natural 5...f4? White's king comes to the kingside in time: 6.♔b3 ♔g3 7.♔c2 f3 (7...♔xh3 8.♔d3 Δ ♔d5, ♔e2=) 8.♔d3 ♔xh3 (8...♔b6 9.♔d5; 8...f2 9.♔xd4) 9.♔xd4 ♔g3 (9...♔g2 10.♔d5) 10.♔e3 f2 (10...h3 11.♔d5 f2 12.♔e2=) 11.♔f1=

However, Black can successfully apply the “shouldering” technique we have already seen in pawn endgames: 5...♔e3!! 6.♔b3 ♔d2! 7.♔d5 (7.♔e6 f4 8.♔g4 ♔e3 9.♔c2 f3 10.♔d1 ♔f2 11.♔e6 ♔g1+) 7...f4 8.♔c6 ♔b6 9.♔d5 ♔e2! (Δ ...f3-f2) 10.♔c4+ ♔f2 11.♔c2 f3 12.♔d1 (12.♔d5 ♔e2) 12...♔g1, winning.

The alternative 3.f4+? ♔xf4 4.♔xd4 does not help either: 4...♔g3 5.♔e3 f4+ 6.♔e2 f3+ 7.♔f1 ♔xh3 8.♔f2 ♔g4+

But the position is drawn after all! White should make a waiting move, for example 3.♔g8!, and Black turns out to be in zugzwang (a unique case: the stronger side is in zugzwang in a sharp fight for tempi in the forthcoming race).



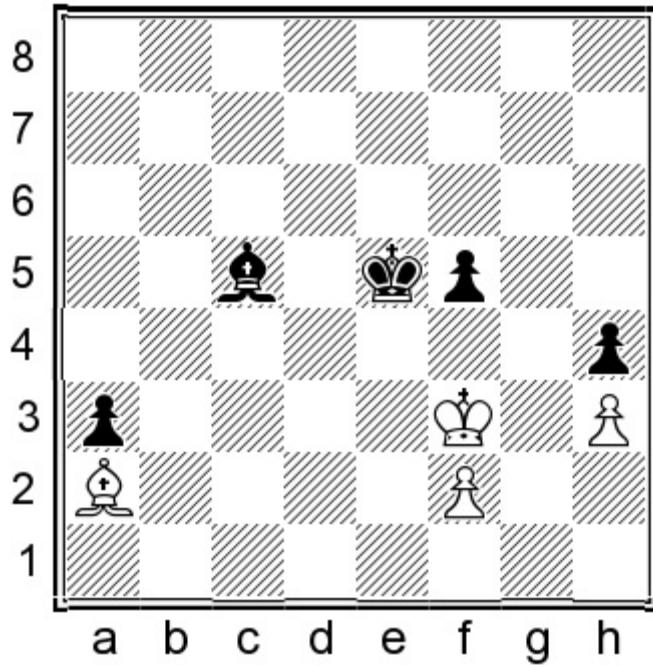
16-50

B

If the bishop retreats from d4, White can transpose to the first defensive position: (3... $\mathbb{Q}c5$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$, and 6...a2 is not dangerous for him anymore, while after 3... $\mathbb{Q}f4!?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$, the king is placed worse on f3 than on g3 (see the line 3.f4+?), and this circumstance allows White to save the game: 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5!+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ f4+ (6... $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$, locking the king on the h-file) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ f3+ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ (analysis by Dvoretsky).

I want to mention that Nikolay Minev, when annotating this endgame for the *Encyclopaedia of Chess Endings*, was very close to unlocking the secrets of this position: he analyzed 3. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ f4+. Of course, instead of 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ White has to play 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6!=$ (“pawns in the crosshairs!”).

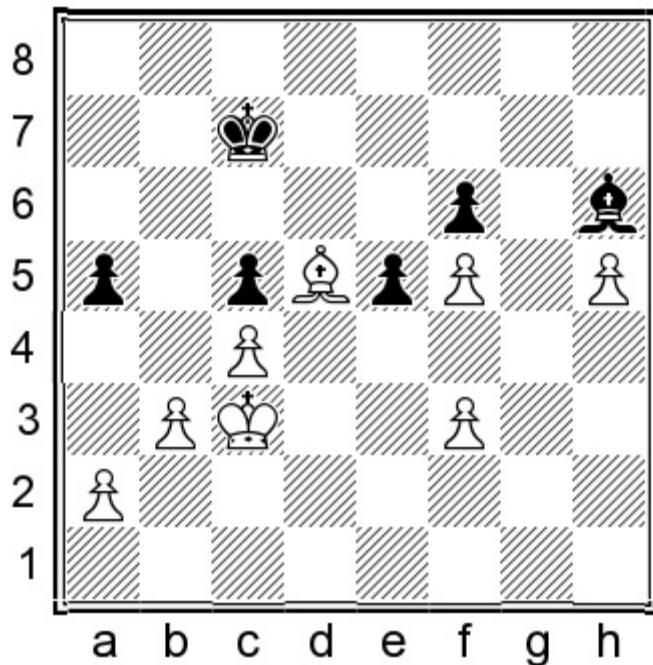
At the training session for young Russian players I led in the spring of 2001, my apprentices suggested another defensive plan for White: 1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a2$



16-51

B

The king cannot now go to d4 in view of 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$, therefore Black plays 4... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ with the idea of 5... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ and only then, finally, 6... $\mathbb{Q}d4$. White responds with 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$, closing the way to the black king. However, after 6... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ is threatened) 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (the bishop wants to go to c5 in order to attack the f2-pawn) 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$, Black wins by the familiar “shouldering” technique: 10... $\mathbb{Q}e3!!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2!!$.



5-49

5/7

W?

Show/Hide Solution

5/7. Simagin-Janssen, wchsf cr 1967

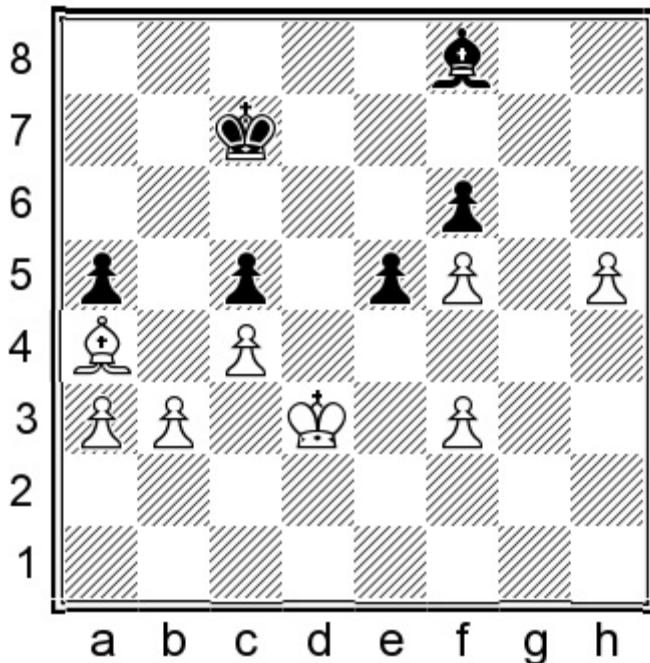
The second defensive position is present. According to the rules, a road for the king to the h5-pawn should be paved, but how does one do so? The straightforward attempt 1.♔b2 ♔b6 2.♔a3 ♔g5 3.♔a4 ♔h6 4.a3 ♔g5 5.b4 axb4 6.axb4 cxb4 7.♔xb4 allows Black to build an unassailable fortress by means of 7...♔d2+! 8.♔b3 ♔c5.

The breakthrough a2-a3 and b3-b4 (followed by c4-c5) should be carried out when the king is on d3. The bishop belongs on a4 where it deprives the black king of important squares and restrains Black's eventual passed b-pawn that soon appears.

1.♕f7! ♕f8 2.♕e8 ♕h6 3.a3 (Δ 4.b4) 3...♕f8

If 3... $\mathbb{Q}b6$, then 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ ($\Delta \mathbb{Q}e4-d5$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 5. $b4!$ $a\times b4$ 6. $a\times b4$ $c\times b4$ 7. $c5$ $b3$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $b3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $b2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c2+-$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ (or 8. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $b2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2+-$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 9. $c6+-$

4.♕a4! 0-0... ♔b6 (on 4...♔h6 or 4...♔d6, 5.b4 is decisive) 5.♔d3 (Δ ♔e4-d5) 5...♔c7



16-52

W?

6.b4! (There are other ways to win, but this is the simplest) 6...axb4 7.axb4 cxb4 8.c5!

Black resigned because of 8... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ (8...b3 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ b2 10. $\mathbb{Q}c2$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 10.h6) 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6+-$

Diagram 16-53 has been intentionally omitted.

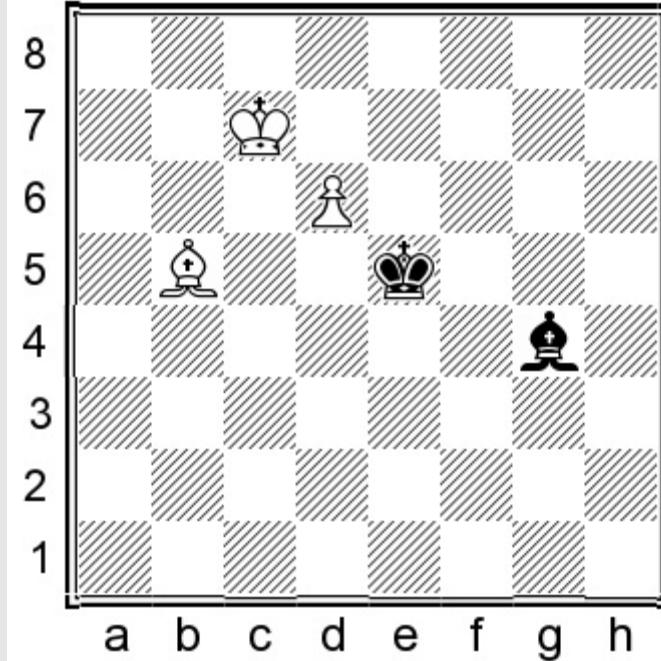
Chapter 6

Bishops of the Same Color

Minimal Material

Bishop and Pawn vs. Bishop

These endgames were first subjected to thorough analysis in the mid-19th century by the Italian player Centurini. Later, significant additions to the theory were made by GM Averbakh.



6-1

White to move wins, by *driving off* the enemy bishop from one diagonal, and then *interfering* along the other diagonal.

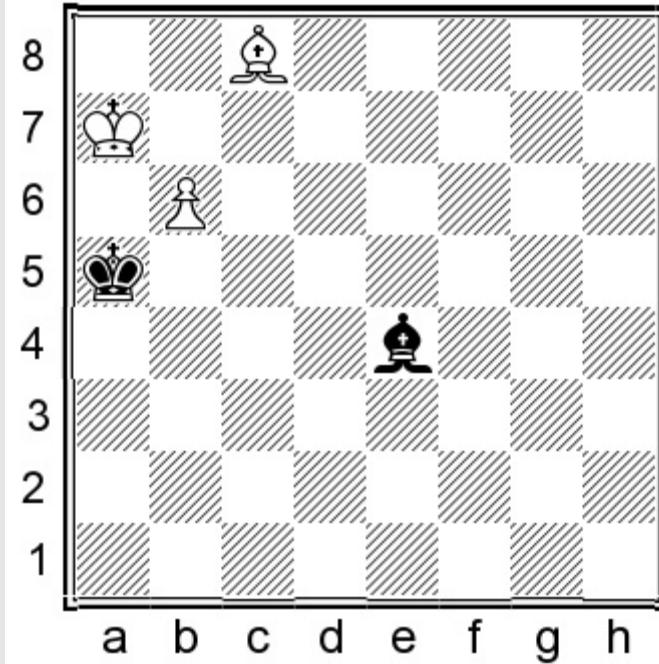
1. $\mathbb{B}d7 \mathbb{B}d1$ 2. $\mathbb{B}h3 \mathbb{B}a4$ 3. $\mathbb{B}g2 \Delta$ 4. $\mathbb{B}c6+ -$

Can this plan be prevented? Yes, it can – provided Black's king can get to c5, preventing White's bishop from interfering along the diagonal. Black to move draws:

1... $\mathbb{B}d4!$ (but not 1... $\mathbb{B}d5?$ 2. $\mathbb{B}d7 \mathbb{B}d1$ 3. $\mathbb{B}c6+ -$ and 4. d7)

1... $\mathbb{B}d4!$ 2. $\mathbb{B}d7 \mathbb{B}d1$ 3. $\mathbb{B}h3 \mathbb{B}a4$ 4. $\mathbb{B}g2 \mathbb{B}c5! =$ Thus, if the weaker side's king cannot get in front of the pawn, then the basic defensive principle becomes: ***king behind the king!***

The short diagonal: even with the “right” king position, the draw is impossible if one of the diagonals along which the bishop will restrain the pawn proves too short.

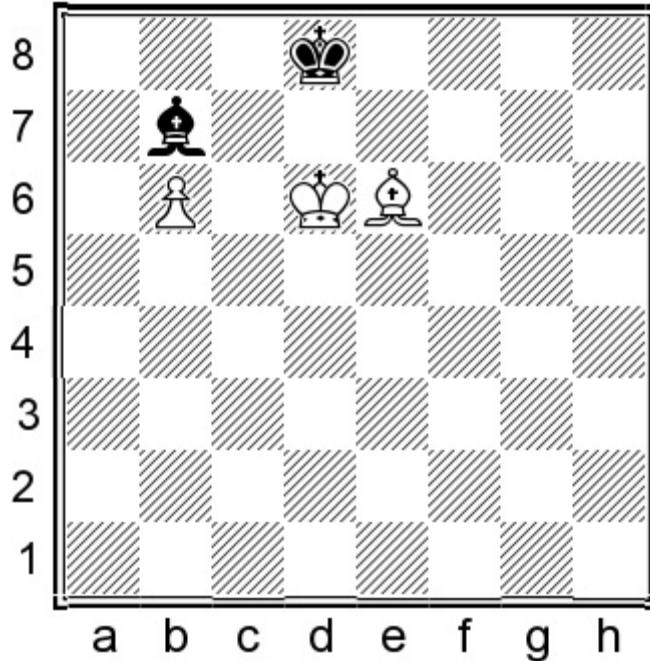


6-2
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ O+–

All the squares on the c8-a6 diagonal, except c8, are under the control of White pieces – that is why we get zugzwang. Now, if we were to move the entire position down one rank, the bishop would get another free square, and White could no longer win.

The following position of reciprocal zugzwang has some practical significance.



6-3
\$

White to move only draws. 1. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (or 1... $\mathbb{Q}a6$) is useless.

On 1. $\mathbb{Q}f5$, there follows 1... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (Δ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5+-$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (Δ $\mathbb{Q}c8$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7=$

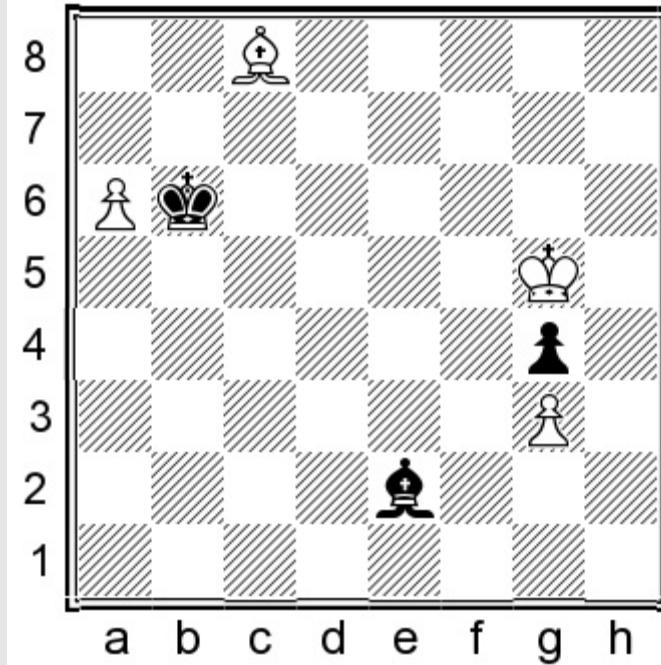
But what is Black to do if it is his move? Any bishop retreat along the h1-a8 diagonal is refuted by 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$; therefore, he must play 1... $\mathbb{Q}a6$. By the way (here's a tragicomedy!), in this won position, Botvinnik accepted a draw against Model in the 1931 Leningrad Championship.

The path to victory is not complicated: 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4! \mathbb{O}$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}a6-$ $b7+-$

Transpositions to Positions with One Pawn

Charushin – Rosenholz

cr 1986



6-4

W?

A typical situation: White can take the g4-pawn only at the cost of his a6-pawn. The question is whether the enemy king can get back in time.

1.♖f4!○

Excellently played! White improves his own king's position (now it no longer stands in the path of its pawn) while simultaneously using zugzwang to force the enemy king further away from the kingside. The hasty 1.♕xg4? ♔xa6 2.♖f4 ♕c7 3.♕f3 ♕d6 4.g4 ♕e7 leads only to a draw.

1.♖f4!○ 1...♕a7□ (1...♕c7 2.a7 ♕f3 3.♕xg4) 2.♕xg4 ♕xa6 3.♕f3 ♕b6

No better is 3...♕c8 4.♕e4 ♕b6 5.♕f5.

4.g4 ♕c5 5.g5 ♕d6 6.g6 ♕e6

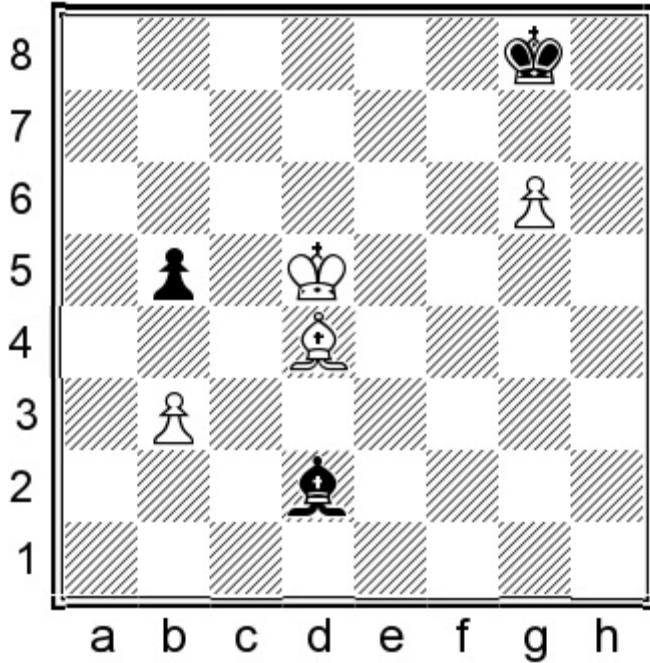
Nothing is changed by 6...♕e7 7.♕g5 ♕f8 8.♕h6 ♕c4 9.g7+ ♕g8 10.♕e4 Δ 11.♕h7+.

7.♕g5 ♕c4 8.g7

Black resigned, in view of 8...♕f7 9.♕h6 ♕f6 10.♕h7 ♕g5 11.♕h8 ♕h6 12.♕e4, followed by ♕h7-g8 (the h7-g8 diagonal, where the black bishop must move, is too short).

Capablanca – Janowsky

New York 1916



6-5
W

White has nothing to play for, other than to pick up the b-pawn in exchange for his g6-pawn. Unfortunately, this plan would not be enough to win. I present the main variation: 1. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ b4 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ (Averbakh's analysis shows that 4... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ also draws, but that 4... $\mathbb{Q}h4?$ loses) 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 6. b4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. b5 $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7=$

1. $\mathbb{Q}e4$

Capablanca is in no hurry to force matters – he maneuvers, hoping for a mistake by his opponent.

1...b4

By no means forced (1... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is not bad); but, on the other hand, it does not spoil anything.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}c5?$

And here is the mistake! Now White captures the b4-pawn, with a tempo ahead of the other variations. First Black had to lure the king away from the queenside: 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$, and now he can defend the pawn (6... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8=$).

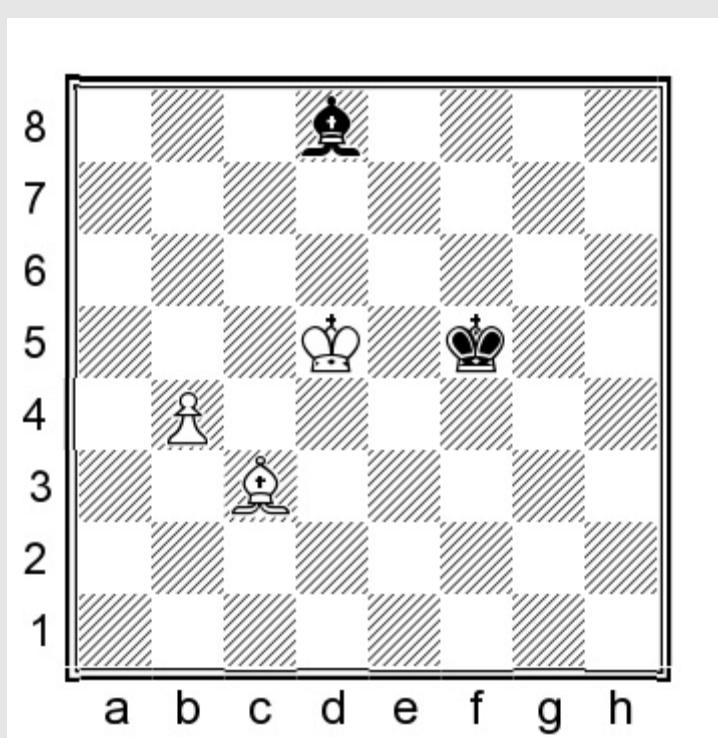
6. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

Still worse is 6... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 9. b4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 11. b5 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}c7+-$

7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3+?$

White errs in return – although it is not at all obvious. The win was 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ – a variation we shall examine later.

9... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 10.b4 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d5$



6-6

B?

Play

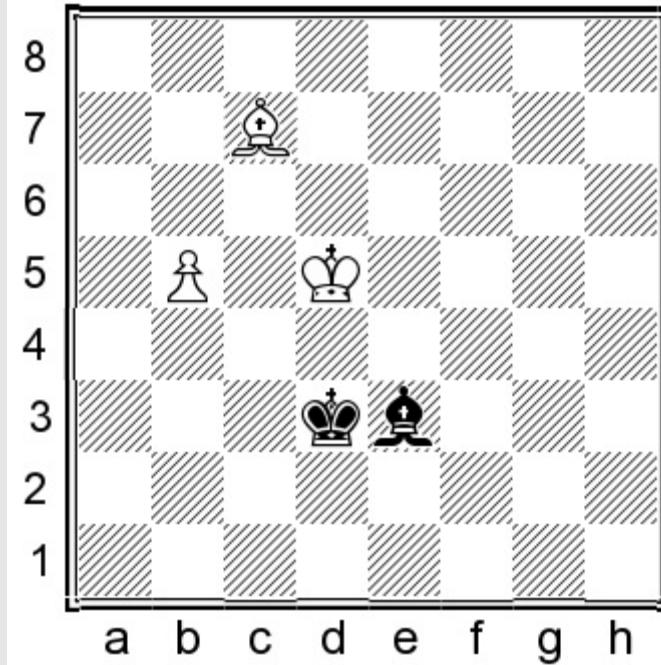
In this position, Janowsky resigned. And wrongly so – as Averbakh has shown. Black could get a draw by employing the basic defensive plan of “king behind king.”

Since White is going to put his king on c6, Black must hurry his king over to c4:

11... $\mathbb{Q}f4!!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 13.b5 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4=$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ 13.b5 (13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 16.b5 $\mathbb{Q}c4$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$

After 17. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$, Black prevents the interference along the diagonal at c5 just in time. But the struggle is not over yet.

17. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$



6-7

B?

The most dangerous continuation, as pointed out by Issler. If Black now plays 17... $\hat{Q}c3?$ then 18. $\hat{Q}d6 \hat{B}b6$ (18... $\hat{Q}b3$ 19. $\hat{Q}c5 \hat{Q}a4$ 20. $\hat{Q}c6$) 19. $\hat{Q}c6$. Black has no time to play $\hat{Q}c4$ – White is ready to reply with either 20. $\hat{Q}c7$ or $\hat{Q}c5$, depending on where Black's bishop retreats.

Black is saved by a tactic, which is very useful to remember: it is a typical trick in bishop endgames.

17... $\hat{Q}d2!!$

On 18.b6, the *pin* 18... $\hat{Q}a5$ saves him.

18. $\hat{Q}d8 \hat{Q}e3!$

Now the threat of 19.b6 $\hat{Q}a5$ 20.b7 forces Black to retreat. That is fine – White's bishop stands worse on d8 than it did on c7, and there is no longer any danger in 19. $\hat{Q}e7$ (Δ 20. $\hat{Q}c5$) 19... $\hat{Q}b6!$ 20. $\hat{Q}c6 \hat{Q}a5!$ (White no longer has 21. $\hat{Q}c7$) 21. $\hat{Q}d6 \hat{Q}c4=$

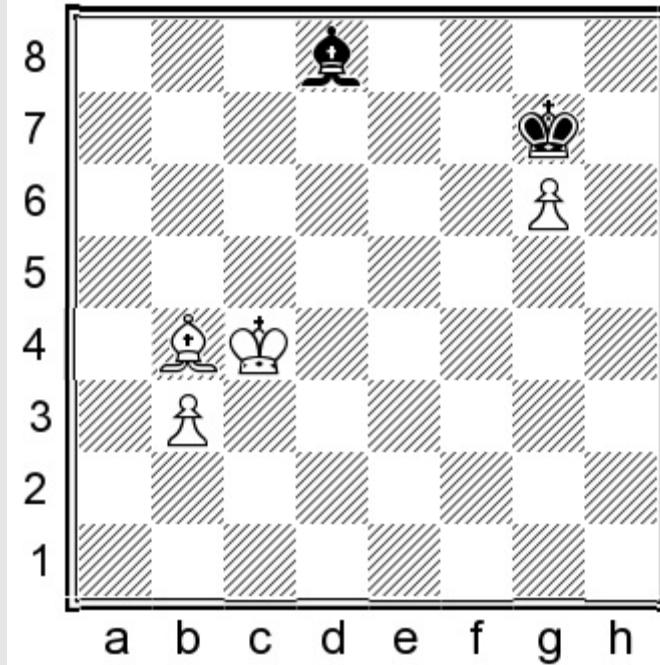
White has just one final trap:

19. $\hat{Q}c7 \hat{Q}d2!$ 20. $\hat{Q}c6 \hat{Q}e3!$ 21. $\hat{Q}b7!$ (21. $\hat{Q}d6 \hat{Q}c4=$) 21... $\hat{Q}c4$ 22. $\hat{Q}a6 \hat{Q}b3!!$

Once again, the same technique of “king behind king”: the black king heads for a4. He would lose after 22... $\hat{Q}f2?$ 23. $\hat{Q}b6 \hat{Q}h4$ 24. $\hat{Q}e3 \hat{Q}d8$ 25. $\hat{Q}d2 \Delta \hat{Q}a5+-$ And 22... $\hat{Q}b4?$ 23. $\hat{Q}b6 \hat{Q}g5$ 24. $\hat{Q}a5+$ and 25.b6+– is wrong too.

23. $\hat{Q}b6 \hat{Q}g5$ 24. $\hat{Q}f2 \hat{Q}d8$ 25. $\hat{Q}e1 \hat{Q}a4=$

All that is left for us to see is what would have happened, had Capablanca played more precisely on his ninth move.



6-8

W?

9.♗d2! ♗xg6 10.b4 ♗f5 11.♗d5

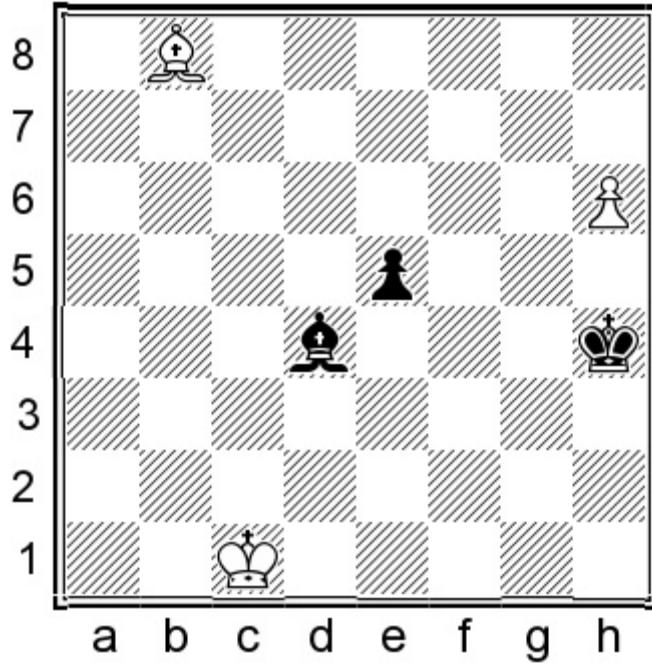
Now we are looking at the position from the next-to-last diagram, but with the bishop on d2 (instead of c3). Here Black's king is unable to get behind White's.

11...♗g4 12.b5 ♗f3 13.♗c6 ♗e4 14.♗b7!! ♗d3 15.♗e1! ♗c4 16.♗a6 ♗b3 17.♗a5 ♗g5 18.b6+-

Interference

We know that interference is the primary instrument by which the stronger side secures (or attempts to secure) the queening of its pawn. In all the examples we have looked at thus far, the bishop has done this work. But sometimes (although certainly not nearly as often), interference is carried out with the aid of the pawns. For instance, there is the following spectacular study.

P. Heuäcker 1930



6-9

W?

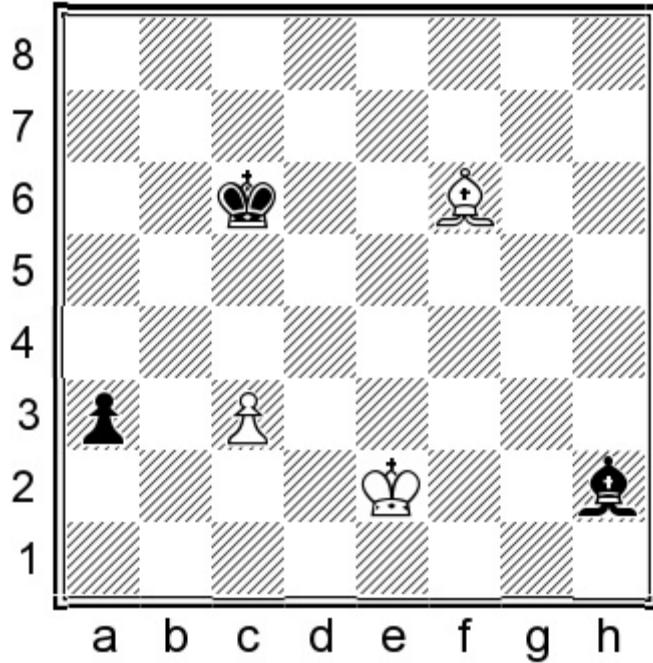
1. ♜a7! (1.h7? e4=)

1. ♜a7! ♜a1 2. ♜b1 ♜c3 3. ♜c2 ♜a1 4. ♜d4!! ♜xd4 (4... exd4 5. ♜d3+–) 5. ♜d3 ♜b2 6. ♜e4+–

Tragomedies

We have already seen the tragicomedies that occurred in the games Botvinnik-Model and Capablanca-Janowsky. I will add one more example.

Savchenko – Krivonosov
USSR 1989



6-10

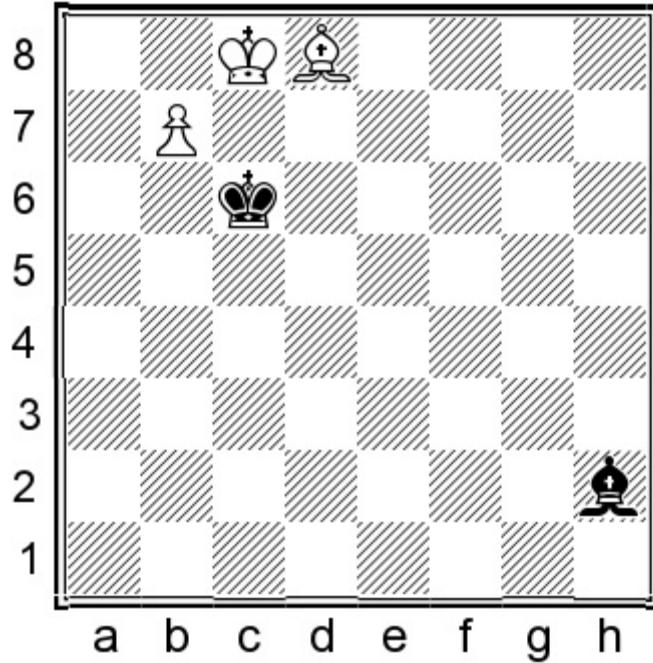
B

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g7??$ $\mathbb{Q}c4!$, and Black won.

The same tactical idea of interference as in the Heuäcker study brought Black success here. However, this occurred only as a result of his opponent's gross blunder. After 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ (3...a2? 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7+-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$, the king is in the square of the a-pawn.

Black should have carried out his interference in a more primitive form, by preparing ... $\mathbb{Q}e5$. This could have been achieved either by 1... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3!?$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ (but not 2...a2? 3.c4+) 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ a2 4.c4 $\mathbb{Q}e5$, or by 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 2.c4 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (2...a2; 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$) 3.c5+ $\mathbb{Q}e6!+-$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ is a mistake, because of 4.c6=).

Exercises



6-11

6/1

W?

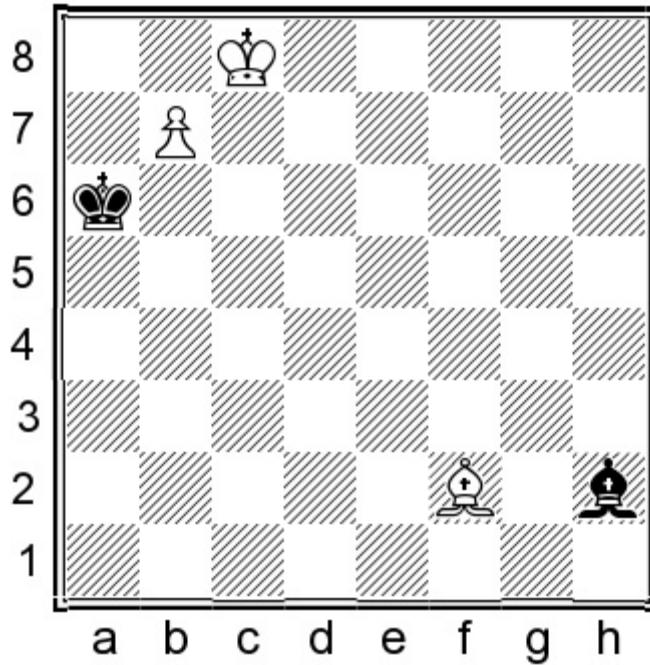
Show/Hide Solution

6/1. L.Centurini 1847

1.♗h4

The bishop wants to go to b8; if it manages to get there, the fight will be over immediately. So Black tries to prevent it.

1...♝b5! 2.♝f2 ♞a6

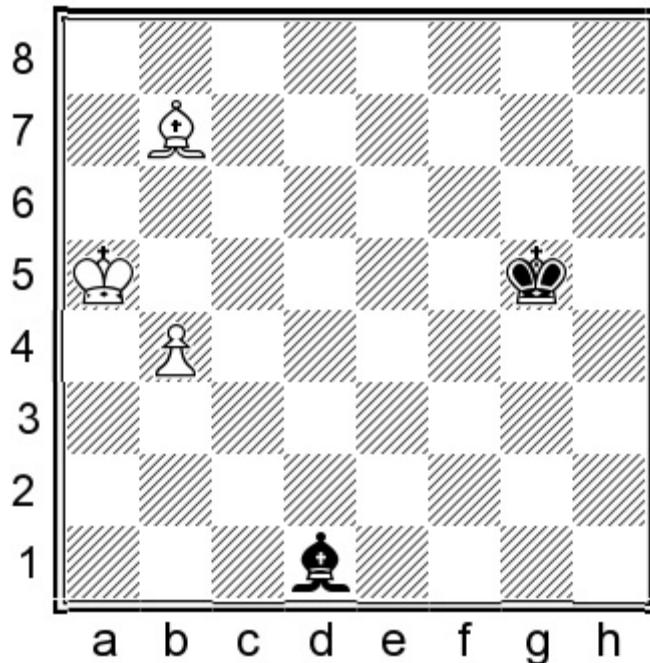


16-54

W?

If White now directs the bishop to c7, then the black king returns to c6 in time. After 3.♗e3 ♗d6!
4.♗g5 ♗b5 5.♗d8 ♗c6, there is no sense in 6.♗e7 ♗h2, because the white bishop cannot enter the g1-a7 diagonal immediately. But if the black bishop occupies some other position, White could win the decisive tempo by means of deflection.

3.♗c5! 3...♗e5 4.♗e7 ♗b5 5.♗d8 ♗c6 6.♗f6! ♗h2 7.♗d4 Δ ♗a7-b8+–



6-12

6/2

B?

Show/Hide Solution

6/2. Zviagintsev-Chernin, Portoroz 1997

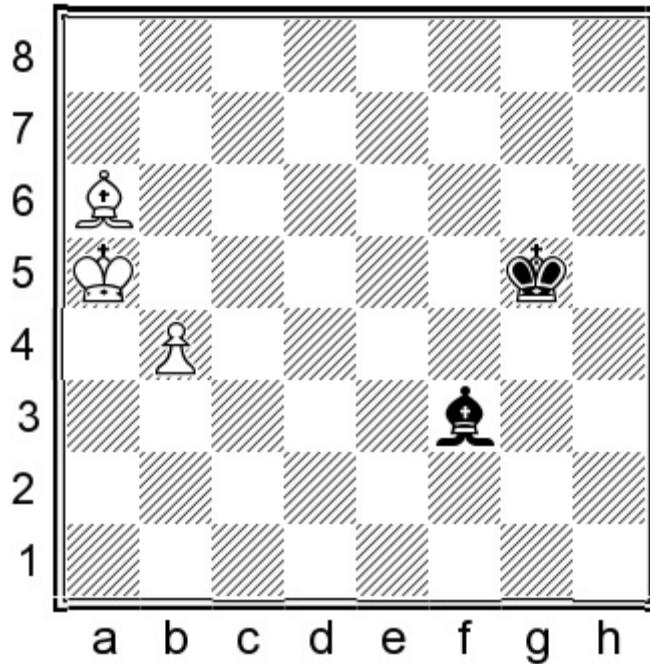
White wins if he manages to advance the pawn to b6 and to penetrate to a7 with his king. Black's initial move 1... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ allowed White to carry out this plan unhindered.

2.b5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3.b6 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb5+$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

Black resigned. The king transfer to the rear of the white king (7... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$) cannot help here because the a6-c8 diagonal, where the bishop will be forced, is too short.

As Zviagintsev has demonstrated, Black could have held the game.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$



16-55

W

3.b5

If 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$, then 3... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (rather than 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ 4.b5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 11.b5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 12.b6 $\mathbb{Q}d8=$

3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4.b6 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

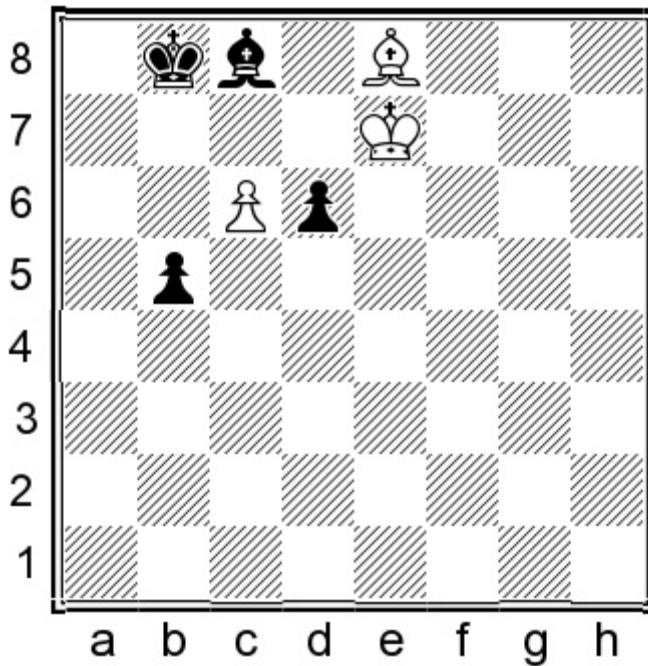
5. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ or 6... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ gives nothing – the king cannot get to a7.

5... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$

6... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ is also playable, but after 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ he must retreat anyway: 7... $\mathbb{Q}e7\Box$

7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!=$

A position of reciprocal zugzwang has arisen, with White on move (see diagram 6-3).



6-13

6/3

W?

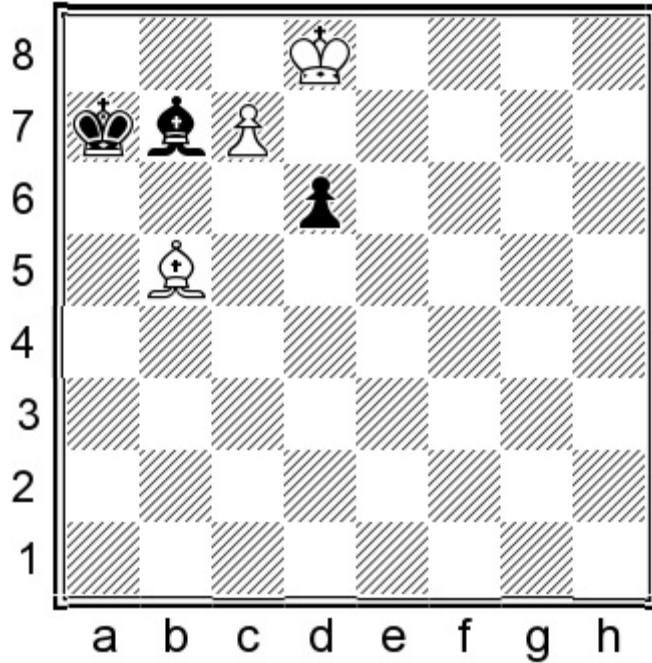
Play

Show/Hide Solution

6/3. Y.Hoch 1977

The initial moves are easy to find.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 2.c7+ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$



16-56

W?

5. $\mathbb{Q}c6!!$

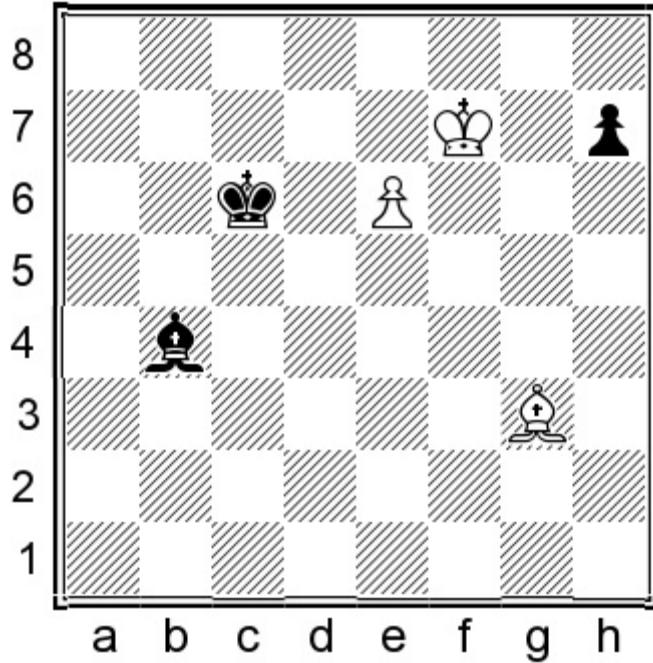
But here precise calculation is required to the end. Only then will the reason for this zwischenzug be clear.

5... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}b6$ (6...d5 7. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{Q}f1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}h3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ d4 10. $\mathbb{Q}d7+-$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{Q}f1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}h3$

Now White should bring his bishop to d7 as soon as possible (before the black king comes to d6).

9. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$; 9... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}c5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e8 \Delta \mathbb{Q}d7+-$

Black's d6-pawn caused his downfall because it stood in the way of his own king. If White had not found the correct continuation on the fifth move, Black could have gotten rid of the pawn: 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{Q}g2$ (or 6... $\mathbb{Q}d5$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{Q}h3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}e6!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ d5! 10. $\mathbb{Q}xd5 \mathbb{Q}h3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}c5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e8 \mathbb{Q}d6=$



6-14
6/4
W?

Show/Hide Solution

6/4. J. Sulz, 1948

White has a clear plan: to drive the black bishop off the a3-f8 diagonal and create an interference on f6. Black's only hope is the advance of his h-pawn because his king cannot get to f5 in time. The hope is not completely groundless, as can be seen from the line 1. $\mathbb{Q}h4?$ h5! 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}a5!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}d8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ h4 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ h3! 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ h2 7. e7 h1=+=

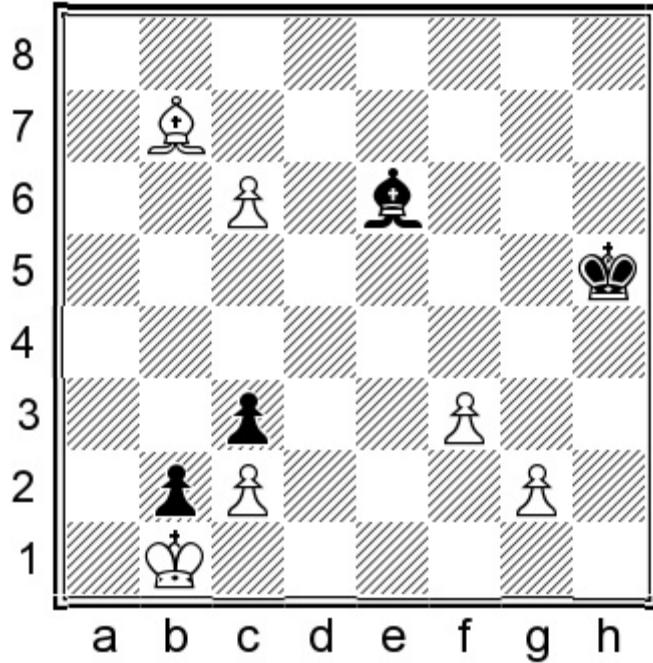
1. $\mathbb{Q}e1!!$

A subtle zwischenzug that provides the important b4-square to the bishop in the future.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ h5! (2... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a5!$

This is the point! The black bishop is forced out from the comfortable d8-square.

5... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ h4 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}xf6$ (7... h3 8. e7) 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ h3 9. e7+-



6-15

6/5

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

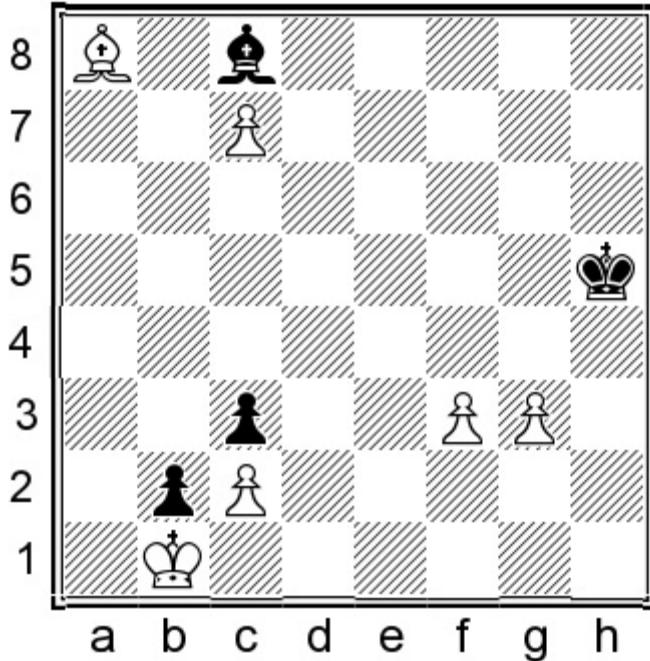
6/5. I. Agapov, 1981

The task of utilizing the material advantage is rather difficult here because the white king is out of play forever. For example, the straightforward attempt 1.c7? ♕h4 2.c8=♕ ♕xc8 3.♕xc8 ♔g3 leads to a draw. ***Connected passed pawns are often impotent when they are fixed on squares of their bishop's color.***

1.g3!

Now 2.c7+– is threatened. Black prevents the pawn advance with a pinning technique, similar to the Capablanca-Janowsky ending we have seen already.

1...♗d5! 2.♗a8! (Δ 3.c7 ♗e6 4.♗b7+–; 2.f4? is wrong in view of 2...♔g4 3.♗c8+ ♔xg3=) 2...♗e6!
(2...♗xf3? 3.c7 ♗g4 4.♗f3+–) 3.c7 ♗c8



16-57

W?

What to do now? If 4.f4? $\mathbb{B}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{B}e4$ $\mathbb{B}d7$, White cannot make any progress.

We might consider the idea of a bishop sacrifice on h3 with the interference g3-g4 to follow. But this plan is difficult to carry out, because Black can respond with a king march to the c7-pawn. For example, 4. $\mathbb{B}e4?$ $\mathbb{B}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}f6!$ 6. $\mathbb{B}f1$ (6.f4 $\mathbb{B}e7=$; 6.g4 $\mathbb{B}g5$ 7. $\mathbb{B}f5$ $\mathbb{B}a6=$) 6... $\mathbb{B}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}h3?$ $\mathbb{B}xh3$ 8.g4 $\mathbb{B}d7+$

The bishop should therefore be transferred to e8 first, so that Black will be forced to defend the h5-square in order to avoid the bishop exchange $\mathbb{B}h5-g4$. Only when the black king is farthest from the queenside can the main plan be successful.

4. $\mathbb{B}c6!$ $\mathbb{B}g6!?$ 5. $\mathbb{B}e8+$ $\mathbb{B}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{B}f7!O$ 6... $\mathbb{B}h6$ (6... $\mathbb{B}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}c4$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 8. $\mathbb{B}a6$) 7. $\mathbb{B}c4!$

There is no other way to win: 7.f4? $\mathbb{B}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{B}h5$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 9.g4 $\mathbb{B}e7=$.

7... $\mathbb{B}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 9. $\mathbb{B}h3!$ $\mathbb{B}xh3$ 10.g4+–

The Bad Bishop

A vital principle of chess strategy (which is certainly applicable to more than just the endgame) requires us ***not to place our pawns on the same color squares as our own bishop***.

In the first place, pawns that are fixed on the same color squares as the bishop limit its mobility – this is why such a bishop is called “bad.”

In the second place, a bad bishop is unable to attack the enemy pawns (which are usually placed on

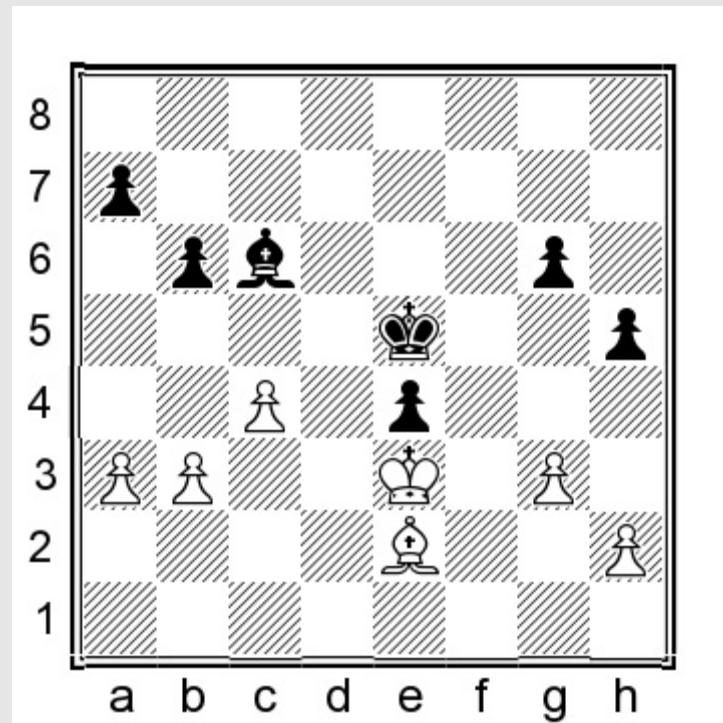
the opposite color squares), which dooms it to passive defense of its own pawns.

And third, since both pawns and bishop control only one color of squares, there will be “holes” in between those squares that the enemy pieces will occupy.

Fixing Pawns

Averbakh – Veresov

Moscow 1947



6-16

W

1.h4!

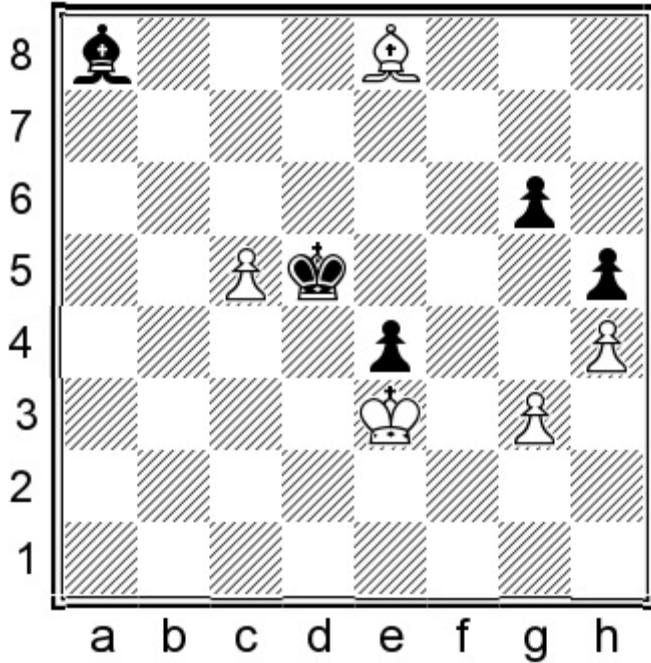
The experienced player makes such moves – fixing the enemy pawns on the same color squares as his bishop – without thinking.

White has a great positional advantage. After the necessary preparations, he will create an outside passed pawn on the queenside, which will divert the enemy forces, allowing White to fall upon the kingside pawns.

1...♝d7 2.♝f1 a5 3.♝g2 ♜c6 (3...♝f5 4.♝h1〇) 4.♝h3!

The bishop aims for d7, where it will support the queenside pawn advance while at the same time be ready to attack the pawn at g6. For example:

4...♜a8 5.♝d7 ♜b7 6.b4 axb4 7.axb4 ♜a8 8.c5 bxc5 9.bxc5 ♛d5 10.♝e8



6-17

B

10...g5! (10... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 14.g4+–) 11.hxg5 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ –

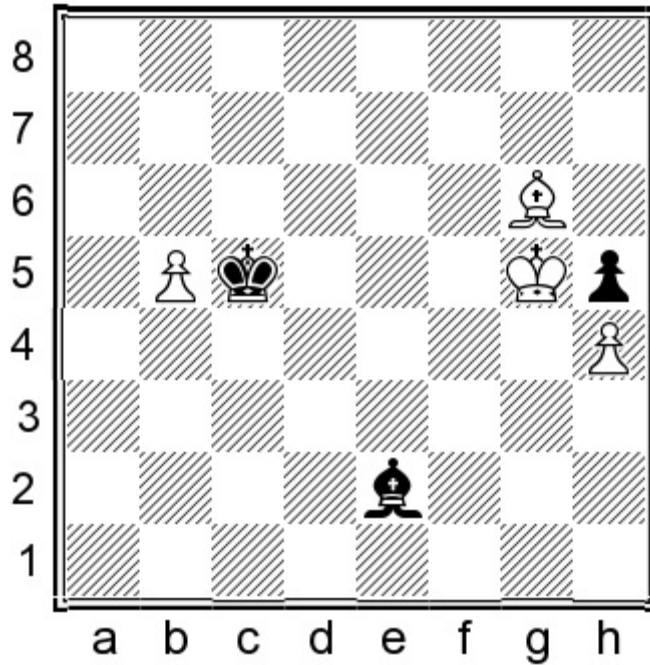
4...b5 5.cxb5 $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7.b4 axb4 8.axb4 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ g5!

On 9... $\mathbb{Q}d3$, 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11.b5 (11. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ +–) 11... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ e3+ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ +–) 12.b6 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ e3+ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ is decisive.

10. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ gxh4 11.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}a4$

11... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ loses also: 12. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2$! (but not 13. $\mathbb{Q}d4$? $\mathbb{Q}f4$ and 14... $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d3$! O 14... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ +–) 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 18.h5 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 20.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ +–

12. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 13.b5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$! (15... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 18.h5 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ +–)



6-18

W?

16. ♜e8! O

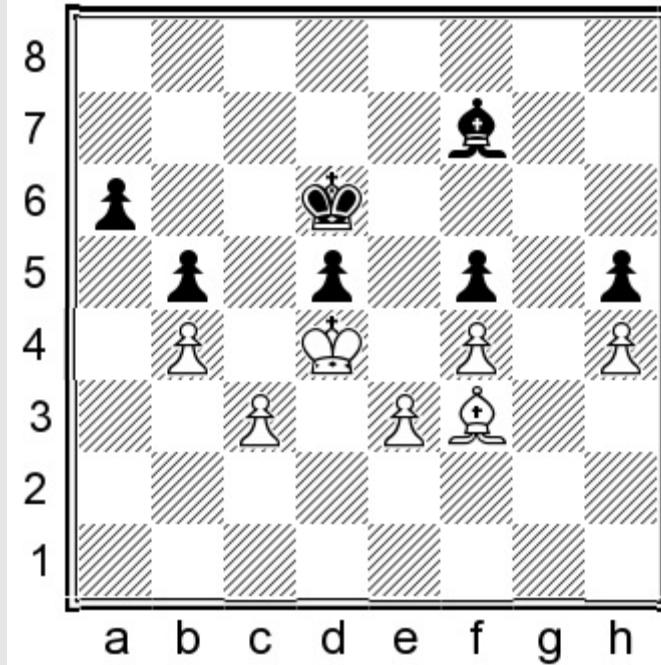
We know this technique from the ending Charushin-Rosenholz (diagram 6-4). Before taking the pawn, it is important to drive the black king back to b6 – as far as possible from the kingside. The hasty 16. ♜xh5? ♜xb5 17. ♜g4 ♜e8 18. ♜f5 ♜d6 19. ♜g6 ♜e7! leads only to a draw.

16... ♜b6 17. ♜xh5 ♜xb5 18. ♜g4 ♜e8 19. ♜f5 ♜c7 20. ♜g6 ♜d8 21. ♜f6! Black resigned (analysis by Averbakh).

Zugzwang

With a bad bishop, the weaker side's defensive hopes often are destroyed through zugzwang. Here is the simplest example:

Y.Averbakh 1954



6-19

W

The correspondence between the f3- and f7-squares is obvious – to win, it is necessary only to give Black the move. If you like, you can also find other pairs of corresponding squares (for example, the f1- and b3-squares also correspond to f7), but there is no real need.

1. ♕e2 ♕e8

If 1... ♕g6, then 2. ♕d3 ♕h7 3. ♕f1! ♕g6 (3... ♕g8 4. ♕e2 ♕f7 5. ♕f3〇) 4. ♕g2 ♕f7 5. ♕f3〇

2. ♕d3 ♕g6

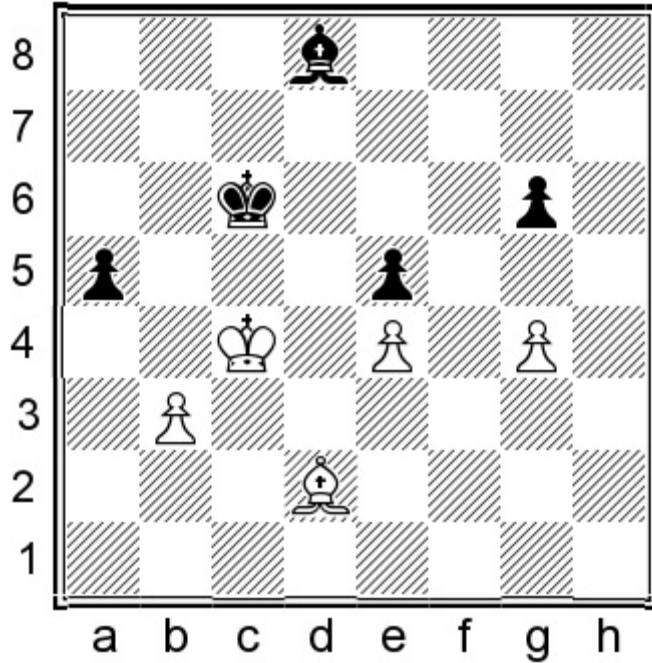
2... ♕d7 3. ♕c2 ♕e6 4. ♕d1 ♕f7 5. ♕f3〇

3. ♕c2 ♕h7 4. ♕b3! ♕g8 5. ♕d1 ♕f7 6. ♕f3+–

Now, let's look at a considerably more complex endgame.

Shabalov – Varavin

Moscow 1986



6-20
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}b6$

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}c7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$, Black is in zugzwang, and must put another pawn on the same color as his bishop, making his opponent's winning task that much simpler. For example, 2...g5 3. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c1 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}f6$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2\mathcal{O}$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}d8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a3 \mathbb{Q}b6$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \Delta \mathbb{Q}c3$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3\mathcal{O}$ White's bishop maneuvers here in roughly the same way as it did in the preceding example.

2. $\mathbb{Q}h4! \mathbb{Q}e3$

The c7-square turns out to correspond, not just to the c3-square, but also to g3. 2... $\mathbb{Q}c7?$ would be bad: 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$. And on 2... $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ decides.

3. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}d4$

After 3... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e1$, Black must defend the a5-pawn with his king, and allow the enemy king to enter. This does not bode well for Black: 4... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}b5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3 g5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe5 \mathbb{Q}xe5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe5 \mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}xb3$ 10.e5 a4 11.e6 a3 12.e7 a2 13.e8= \mathbb{W} a1= \mathbb{W} 14. $\mathbb{W}e3+\mathbb{Q}c2$ 15. $\mathbb{W}e2+$ forcing the exchange of queens.

4. $\mathbb{Q}h2!\mathcal{O}$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}b2$

4... $\mathbb{Q}a1?$ loses to 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}b2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \Delta \mathbb{Q}e1+-$

5. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}a3!$

On 5... $\mathbb{Q}c1?$, White wins with 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}d2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a3 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2+-$

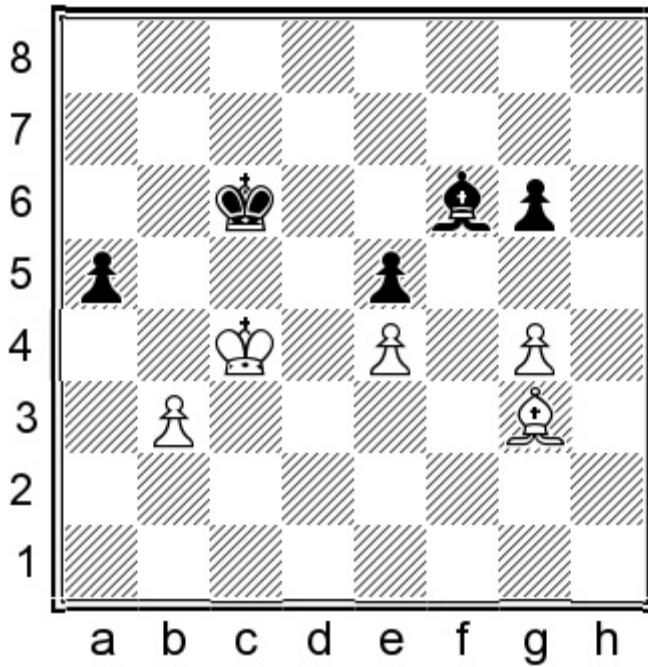
6. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}e7!$

Otherwise, we get the basic zugzwang position:

6... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3\text{O}$ or 6... $\mathbb{Q}b4?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e1$, etc.

7. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

By means of a series of accurate maneuvers, Shabalov has achieved his aim – the bishop has been deflected onto a poor diagonal. On the other hand, there was no longer any choice: 7... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3\text{O}+ -$



6-21

W?

8. $\mathbb{Q}h2\text{O}$ 8... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9.g5!

White “breaks the rule,” by moving a pawn onto a square the same color as his own bishop – in order to restrict the enemy bishop’s mobility still further. There is no other way to make any progress.

9... $\mathbb{Q}f8$

9... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ is hopeless.

10. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4?$

The decisive error. After the accurate 11... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (shown by Aczel) realizing the extra pawn is evidently not possible.

12. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$

Advancing the e-pawn does nothing for White: 12.e5 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 13.e6 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 14.e7 $\mathbb{Q}d7$. So he takes the a5-pawn in exchange for the g5-pawn.

12... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 14.b4 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 15.b5+ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ g5 17.e5+ $\mathbb{Q}c7$

17... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 19.b6! (but not 19. $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$) 19... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ g4 21. $\mathbb{Q}a6+ -$

18.♔a5+ ♔c8 19.♔d5 g4 20.e6 g3 21.♔c6! ♔g5 (22.e7 was threatened) **22.b6** Black resigned.

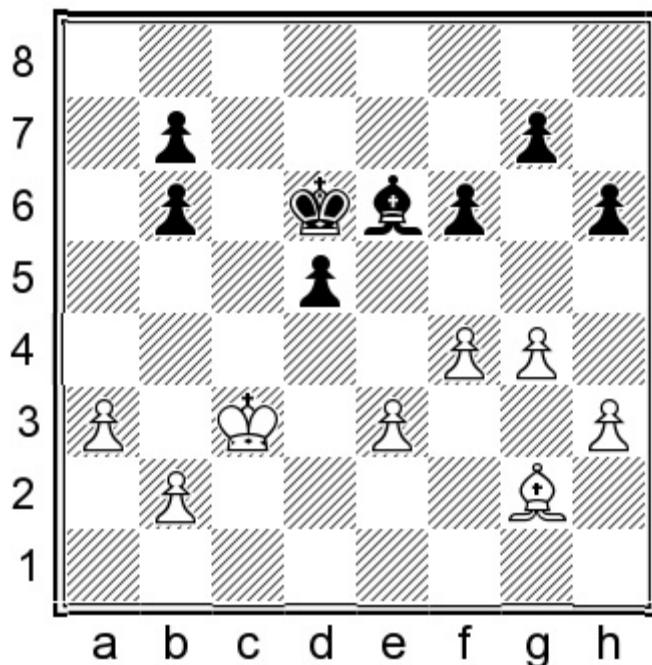
Pawns Which Do Not “Play by the Rules”

In chess, there are no absolute laws. Even so important and generally useful an axiom as the unprofitability of placing one’s pawns on the same color squares as one’s bishop must occasionally be broken. Here are the possible reasons for doing so:

- To restrict the mobility of the enemy bishop using one’s own pawns (as occurred in the preceding example);
- The need to undermine the enemy pawn chain; and
- The attempt to create an impregnable fortress around a “bad bishop.”

The first and third points are illustrated by the following case:

Wojtkiewicz – Khalifman Rakvere 1993



6-22
W?

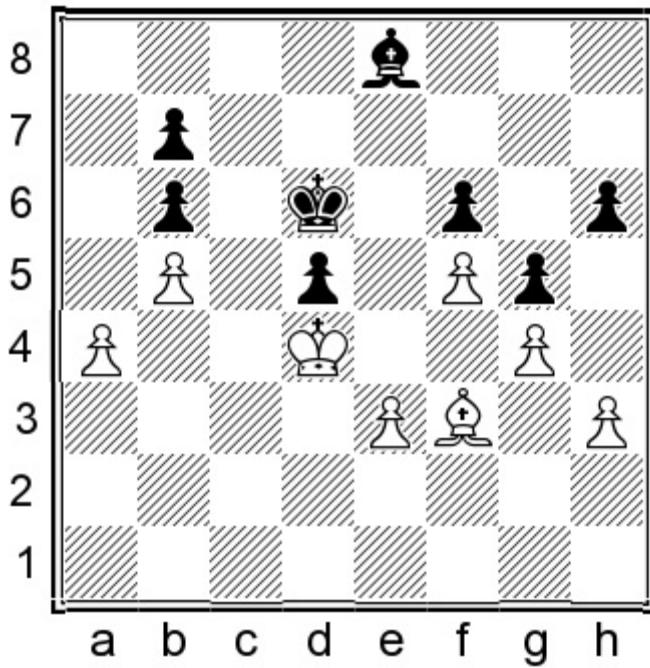
The hackneyed 1.♗d4? would have allowed Black to set up an impregnable fortress by 1...b5!, followed by ...b7-b6. For example, 2.♗f1 ♗d7 3.♗c3 ♗c5! (not allowing the enemy king to get to b4)

4.b4+ ♕d6. Here there can be no zugzwang, since White's bishop is unable to attack two enemy pawns simultaneously (as in the endings examined earlier).

1.a4! g5?

1...♗d7! was the right defense. On 2.♗d4?! ♗xa4 3.♗xd5 ♗c6 4.e4 g5 5.e5+ fxe5+ 6.fxe5+ ♔e7, Black should get a draw. A better try would be 2.b3 ♔c5 (2...b5? 3.a5 ♔c5 4.b4+ ♔d6 5.♗d4 is hopeless, in view of the weakness of the b7-pawn after the unavoidable e3-e4) 3.♗f3! (3.b4+?! ♔d6 is premature). And now: 3...g5? 4.b4+ ♔d6 5.♗d1!, with 6.♗d4 to follow, leads to roughly the same position as in the game, while 3...h5! draws. For example, 4.b4+ ♔d6 5.♗d4 (5.♗d1 h4 6.♗c2 g6 7.♗d4 b5 8.a5 f5=) 5...hxg4 6.hxg4 7.♗xd5 ♗c6 8.♗c4 g5=

2.♗d4 ♗f7 3.♗f3 ♗e6 4.f5! ♗f7 5.b4 ♗e8 6.b5!



6-23

B

White's pawns have maximally restricted the enemy bishop. Now he brings his bishop around to b3, and plays e3-e4. When he thought up his plan, Wojtkiewicz had to calculate exactly the pawn endgame that now arises by force.

6...♗f7 7.♗d1 ♗g8 8.♗b3 ♗f7 9.e4 ♗g8 10.♗a2 ♗f7 11.♗xd5 ♗xd5 12.exd5 ♔c7 13.♔c3! (Δ 14.♗b4, 15.a5) 13...♔d6 14.♗c4 ♗e5

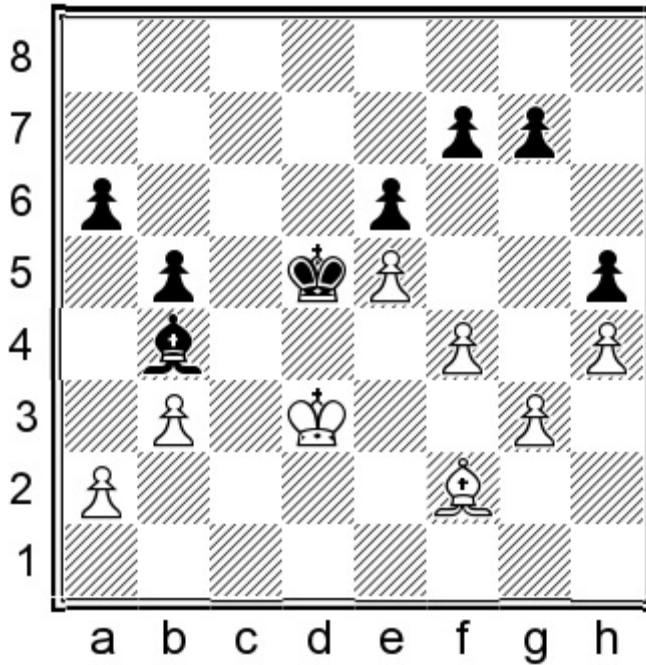
Also losing was 14...♔d7 15.♗b4 ♗d6 16.a5 ♗xd5 (16...bxa5+ 17.♗xa5 ♗xd5 18.♗b6 ♗c4 19.♗xb7 ♗xb5 20.♔c7+-) 17.a6 bxa6 18.bxa6 ♗c6 19.♗a4 b5+ 20.♗a5.

15.a5! bxa5 16.♗c5 a4 17.d6 b6+ 18.♗c6 a3 19.d7 a2 20.d8=♕ a1=♕ 21.♕d6+ ♗e4 22.♗xb6 ♗f3 23.♗b7 ♗g2 24.♗d3 ♗c1 25.b6 ♗c5 26.♗b3 ♗h2 27.♗f3 ♗d4 28.♗c6! ♗xh3 29.♗c8 ♗b4 30.b7 ♗f8+ 31.♗d7 ♗xg4 (31...♗f7+ 32.♗d6 ♗f8+ 33.♗e6) 32.♗c8 Black resigned.

And now an example of the undermining theme:

Sveshnikov – Kasparov

USSR ch, Minsk 1979



6-24

B?

First, let's evaluate what actually happened in the game.

1...g6? 2.♗e2 (the bishop cannot retreat, owing to 2...♝e1) 2...♝c5 3.♝xc5? (the pawn ending is lost) 3...♝xc5 4.♝d3 ♘b4 5.♝c2 ♘a3 6.♝b1 a5 7.♝a1 a4! (widening the beachhead) 8.bxa4 ♘xa4 9.♝b1 (9.♝b2 b4) 9...♝a3 10.♝a1 b4 11.♝b1 b3 White resigned.

White could have drawn by avoiding the exchange of bishops. After 3.♝e1! ♘e4 4.♝a5, I cannot see how Black can improve his position. And if 3...b4 (hoping for 4.♝d2? ♘e4 5.♝e1 a5 6.♝d2 ♘d4 7.♝e1 ♘e3, with zugzwang, or 7.♝c1 ♘c3 8.♝e3 ♘e1!), then simply 4.♝f3!=

But Black was the first to err here – the natural move 1...g6? was a mistake. The pawn should have been left on g7 to support the undermining with ...f7-f6! The right way to obtain zugzwang was by making a waiting move with the bishop.

1...♝a5! 2.♝e2 (after 2.a3!? followed by b3-b4, Black should also win with 1..♝d8 followed by the undermining ...f7-f6 and ...a6-a5) 2...♝e4 3.♝c5 f6! (undermining!) 4.exf6 gxf6. Black continues by getting his bishop to c7 (or on 5.♝d6 – to b6), his king to f5, and playing ...e6-e5 with a great and probably decisive advantage.

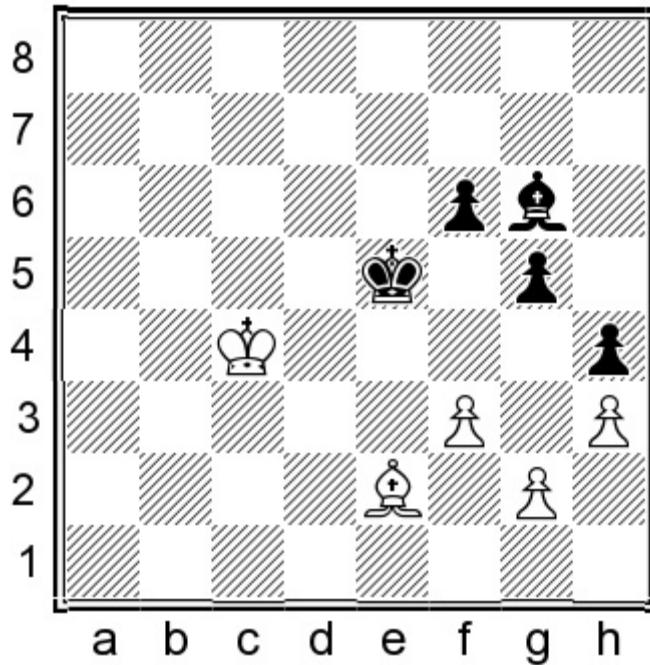
A reader found a second solution for this position: 1...♝c5! If 2.♝e1 b4 3.♝e2 (3.♝d2 ♘f2 4.♝xb4 ♘xg3) 3...♝e4, Black wins using one of the methods examined previously: either by playing for zugzwang, or by undermining the enemy pawn chain by f7-f6. Trading bishops also loses: 2.♝xc5

$\hat{\square}xc5$ 3. $\hat{\square}c3$ a5 4. a3 (4. $\hat{\square}d3$ $\hat{\square}b4$ 5. $\hat{\square}c2$ $\hat{\square}a3$ 6. $\hat{\square}b1$ a4; 4. b4+ axb4+ 5. $\hat{\square}b3$ f6) 4...a4 5. bxa4 bxa4 6. $\hat{\square}d3$ $\hat{\square}d5$ 7. $\hat{\square}c3$ $\hat{\square}e4$ 8. $\hat{\square}b4$ $\hat{\square}f3$ 9. $\hat{\square}xa4$ $\hat{\square}xg3$ 10. $\hat{\square}b5$ $\hat{\square}xf4$ 11. a4 g5 12. a5 g4 13. a6 g3 14. a7 g2 15. a8= \hat{W} g1= \hat{W} , and the queen endgame is completely hopeless for White.

Tragicomедies

Teichmann – Marshall

San Sebastian 1911



6-25

B

Even though Black has an overwhelming positional advantage, the endgame is not as simple as it seems. Both sides made many errors; nor did grandmaster Averbakh avoid errors in his commentaries.

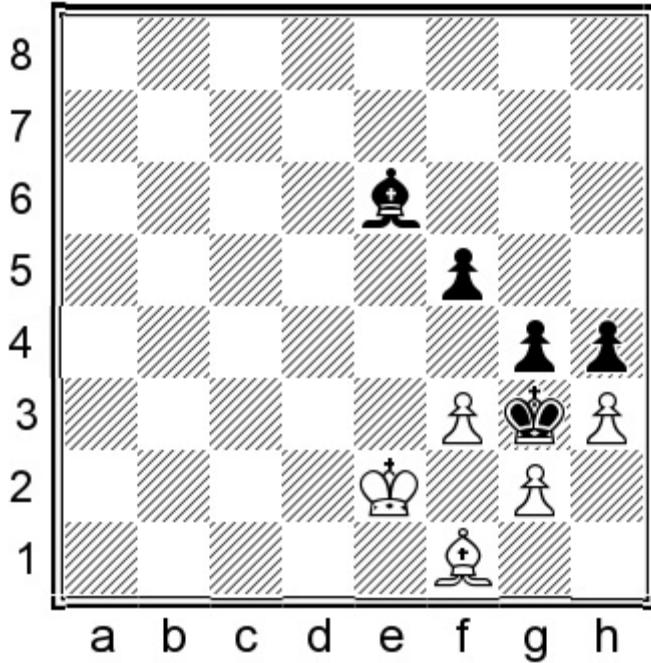
1... $\hat{\square}f7+?$

An unfortunate move, allowing the king to return to the defense of the kingside through the d3-square. Now the position becomes drawn.

2. $\hat{\square}d3!$ $\hat{\square}f4$ 3. $\hat{\square}f1$ $\hat{\square}g3$ 4. $\hat{\square}e3$ $\hat{\square}d5$ 5. $\hat{\square}e2$ f5 6. $\hat{\square}e3$ $\hat{\square}e6$

The bishop sacrifice is insufficient: 6...f4+ 7. $\hat{\square}e2$ $\hat{\square}b7$ 8. $\hat{\square}e1$ $\hat{\square}xf3$ 9. gxf3 $\hat{\square}xf3$ 10. $\hat{\square}e2+$ $\hat{\square}g2$ (10... $\hat{\square}g3$ 11. $\hat{\square}g4$ $\hat{\square}g2$ 12. $\hat{\square}e2$) 11. $\hat{\square}f1+$ $\hat{\square}g3$ 12. $\hat{\square}e2=$. The only remaining try at making progress is ...g5-g4, but this leads to the exchange of too many pawns.

7. $\hat{\square}e2$ g4



6-26

W

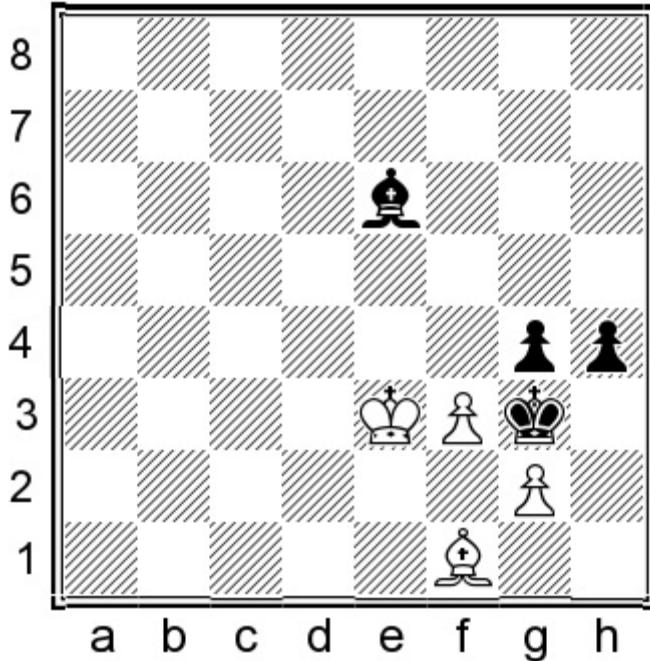
8.hxg4

Averbakh recommends 8.fxg4 fxg4 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$, which leads to an obvious draw after 9...gxh3 10.gxh3 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2=$. And if 9... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ then White replies either with Benko's recommendation of 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ (not 12.hxg4 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$, when the h-pawn will queen with check), or with 10.hxg4! $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ (pointed out by Chéron), giving up the g2-pawn right away, but activating his bishop. For example, 11... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e6=$ (the attempted interference leads to a drawn pawn ending), or 11... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}c6+?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3 \Delta h3-h2, \mathbb{Q}h3-g2$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ (after 13... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ h3 15. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ h2 the interference on g2 is impossible) 14. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e6=$

Averbakh considers the text move the decisive error, but he is wrong.

8...fxg4 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$

9.fxg4! $\mathbb{Q}xg4+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ was necessary (Averbakh only considers 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7=$), leading to a curious position of reciprocal zugzwang. White to move loses: 10...-- 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$. But it is Black to move here, and after 10... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d7$, or 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ first) 11. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d7=$) 12. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$, White has time to get his king to g3: 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ h3 14. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h2 15. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$



6-27

B?

9...♝d7?

Black blunders in turn, allowing his opponent to force the draw by the same means indicated in the notes to move 8. The win was 9...gxf3! 10.gxf3 ♝d7>O 11.♔e2 (11.f4 ♝g4!O 12.♔e4 ♔f2-+) 11...♝b5+ 12.♔e1 ♝c6 13.f4 ♝e4! (13...♝g2? 14.f5 h3 15.f6) 14.♔e2 ♝f5! 15.♔e1 ♝g4>O

10.fxg4! ♝xg4 11.♔e4??

The loser is always the one who makes the last mistake! We already know that 11.♝b5! would draw. But with the bishop on f1, White is helpless.

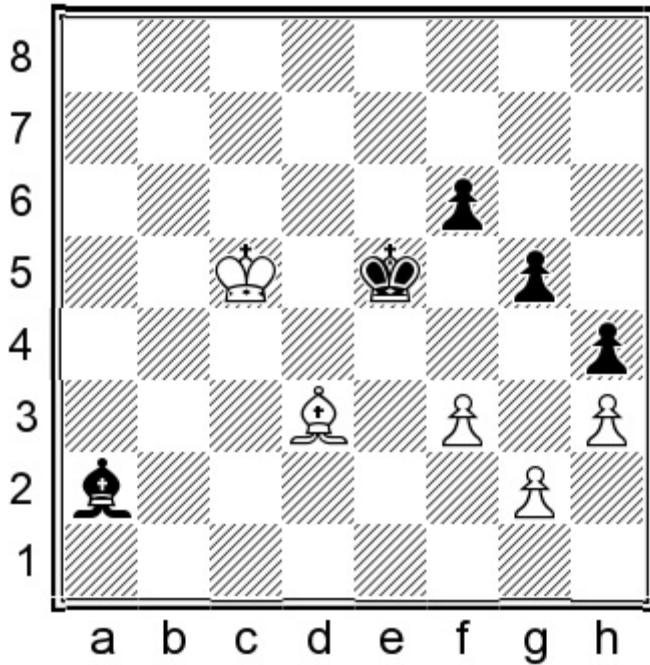
11...♝c8 12.♔e3 ♝d7>O White resigned.

On 13.♔e4 (or 13.♔e2), Black wins by 13...♝c6+ 14.♔e3 ♝xg2; while if 13.♔d2 ♔f2! 14.♝c4 ♝xg2 15.♔e1 ♔g1! 16.♔f1 ♝e6>O 17.♔b5 h3 18.♝c6 h2 19.♔e4 ♝h3 Δ ♝g2.

Let's go back to the starting position of this endgame. Averbakh recommends 1...♝b1!

On 2.♔f1, 2...♔f4 decides, for instance: 3.♔d4 f5!O 4.♔d5 ♔e3 5.♔e6 ♔f2 6.♝c4 ♝xg2, or 3.♔d5 ♔g3 4.♔e6 f5 5.♔f6 ♔f2 6.♝c4 ♝xg2 7.♔xg5 ♔xh3 8.f4 ♔g3-+

White has greater practical chances with 2.♔d3?! ♘a2+! 3.♔c5



6-28

B

Averbakh contents himself with the single variation 3... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ But I think that 3... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ is an error, because of 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$

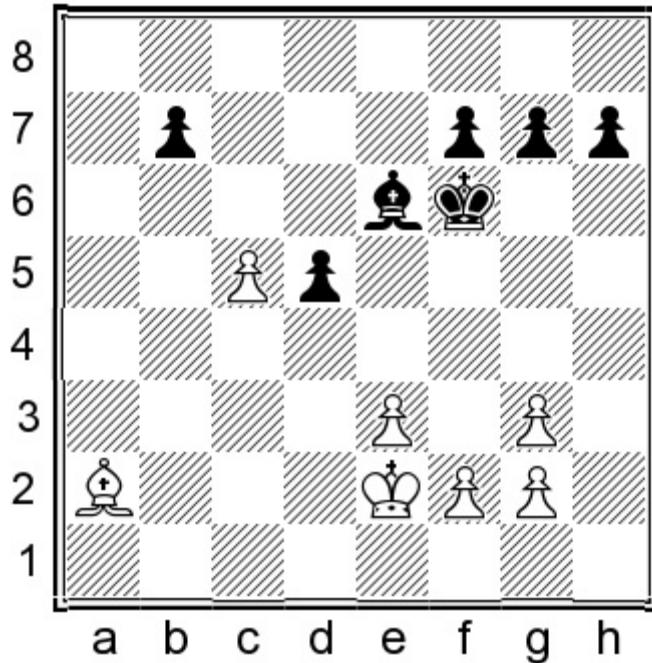
(a) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ (5...f5 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}f5?$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$, with ... $\mathbb{Q}f1xh3$ to follow) 8... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4=$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ (9. $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ or 9. $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ are both bad) 9... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (reaching a position from Chéron's line) 14... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$, etc.

(b) 4...f5 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ is a mistake, in view of 6...g4 7.fxg4 fxg4 8.hxg4 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 9.g5 h3 10.g6 h2 11.g7 $\mathbb{Q}d5-$) 6...g4 (6... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ is not dangerous either) 7.fxg4 fxg4 8.hxg4 $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h5=$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h6!=$ (but not 13. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{Q}f4!$, when White is in zugzwang).

Black's king stands very well on e5, where it shoulders aside the enemy king. Before attacking the g2-pawn, Black must first strengthen his position. Simplest is 3...f5!, for example: 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ g4! 5.fxg4 fxg4 6.hxg4 $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 8.g5 h3 9.g6 $\mathbb{Q}f6!-$ or 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ O) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3-$

And 3... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ f5 5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!?$ or 5... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ O-+ are not bad either. However, the hasty 5...g4? would let slip the win: 6.fxg4 fxg4 7.hxg4 $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$ (on 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4?$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ O-+ or 11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ O-+, we get zugzwangs already familiar to us) 8... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c8=$

Euwe – Menchik
Hastings 1930/31

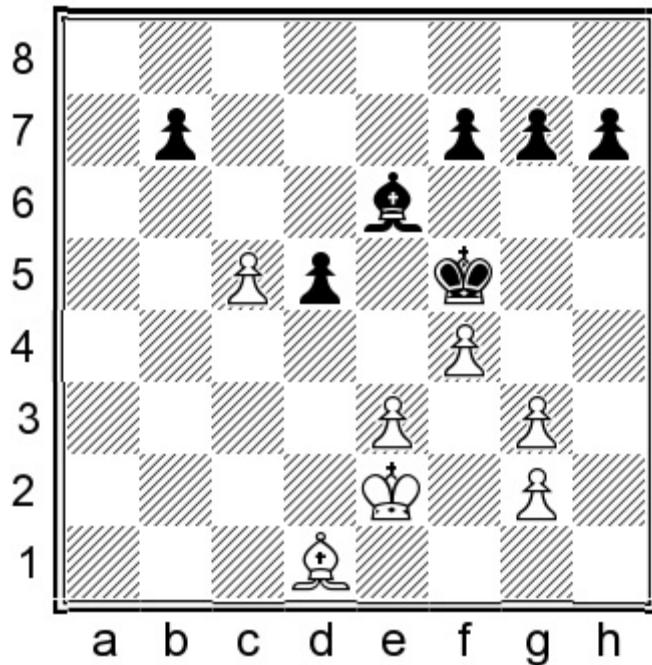


6-29

W?

White's king wants to get to d4. Black will prevent that with ... $\hat{\Delta}e5$; after White responds with f2-f4+ he will try to counterattack with ... $\hat{\Delta}f5$ and ... $\hat{\Delta}g4$.

The accurate prophylactic move 1. $\hat{\Delta}b3$! is worth serious consideration. The idea is 1... $\hat{\Delta}e5$ 2.f4+ $\hat{\Delta}f5$ 3. $\hat{\Delta}d1$! (covering g4 and intending 4. $\hat{\Delta}d3$).



6-30

B?

For example, 3...d4 4.♗c2+! ♗g4 5.exd4 ♗xg3 6.♗e3 f5 7.♗d1 ♗d5 8.♗f3+–; or 3...♗g4 4.♗f2+ ♗f5 5.♗f3! g5 (5...♗f6 6.♗e2 ♗e7 7.♗d3 ♗d7 8.♗d4 ♗c6 9.f5 ♗xf5 10.♗xd5+ ♗c7 11.♗xf7+–) 6.g4+ ♗f6 7.♗e2! (7.f5 is possible, too) 7...♗d7 8.♗d3 ♗c6 9.♗d4 gxf4 10.exf4 ♗e6 11.g5 ♗f5 12.g3+–

However, as Artur Yusupov has shown, Black successfully maintains his defensive position with 3...♗f6! 4.♗d2(d3) 4...♗f5 and 5...♗e4. The exchange of bishops on e4 (after 5.♗f3 ♗e4) or f3 leads to a drawn pawn ending.

1.♗d3 ♗e5 2.g4

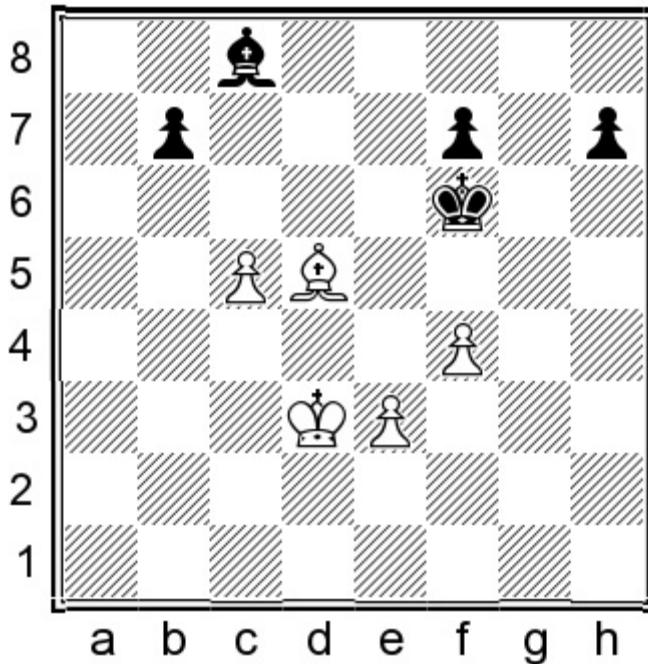
If 2.f4+ ♗f5 3.♗e2 (3.♗d4 ♗g4 4.♗xd5 ♗xd5 5.♗xd5 ♗xg3=) 3...♗g4 4.♗f2, then 4...d4! (4...h5 5.♗b3 g6 is also possible) 5.♗xe6+ fxe6 6.exd4 g6=.

2...g5!

Worse is 2...♗xg4?! but Black can probably still defend after 3.f4+ ♗e6 4.e4 ♗d7 (4...♗e7? 5.♗xd5 ♗c8 6.♗c4!+–) 5.♗xd5 f6 6.♗xb7 h5.

3.g3 ♗xg4 4.f4+ gxf4 5.gxf4+ (5.exf4+ ♗e6 6.♗d4 ♗f3=) 5...♗f6 6.♗xd5 ♗c8?

6...♗e7 7.♗xb7 h5 defends.



6-31

W?

Comparing this position to the analogous position after 2...♗xg4?! here Black has a passed h-pawn. For this reason 7.♗c4? ♗e6! does not win. On 7.♗c3? ♗e7 8.♗b4, advancing the h-pawn gives Black serious counterplay: 8...h5! 9.♗b5 h4 10.♗b6 h3 11.♗c7 ♗e6 12.♗xb7 ♗c4 Δ ♗f1-g2.

However White wins by 7.e4! ♗e7 8.♗e3! f6 9.f5!, followed by ♗f4, and then either e4-e5 or ♗g4-h5.

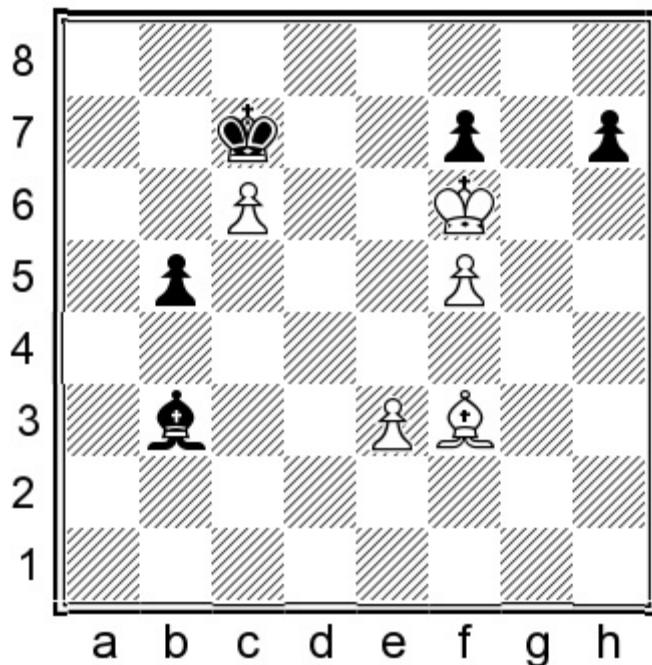
7.♕f3?

White restrains the passed pawn, but now Black's king is able to get to c7.

7...♔e7 8.♗c4 ♔d8 (9.♗b5 allows 9...♔c7) 9.♗d5?! b6! 10.c6?!

Euwe fails to sense the danger. He had to resign himself to a draw after 10.♗h5.

10...♔c7 11.♗e5 ♔e6 12.f5 ♔b3 (12...♔c4) 13.♗f6 b5



6-32

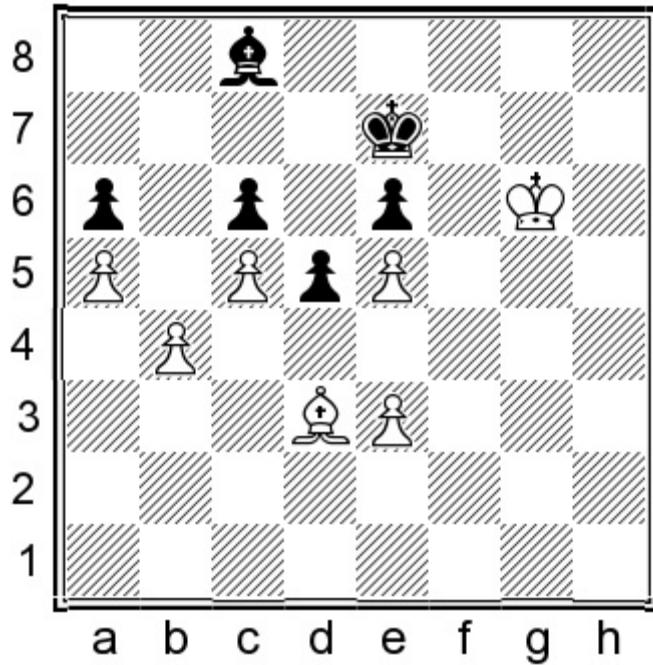
W

14.♗g7

14.e4! is a more direct way to draw.

14...b4 15.♗xh7? The decisive mistake. 15.♗h5 ♔xc6 16.f6 defends. 15...♔c2 16.♗g7 b3 17.♗d5 b2 18.♗a2 ♔xc6 19.f6 ♔d6 20.e4 ♔xe4 21.♗xf7 ♔d5+ 22.♗xd5 b1=♔ 23.♗g7 ♔g1+ 24.♗f8 ♔xd5
White resigned.

Exercises



6-33
6/6
W?

Show/Hide Solution

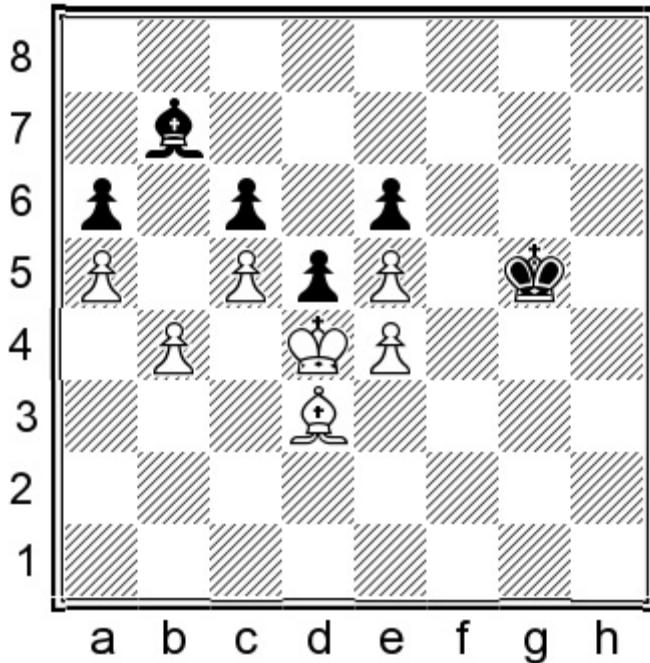
6/6. Lasker-Bogatyrchuk, Moscow 1935

White cannot do without e3-e4. The game continued 1.e4? d4! 2.♕c4 ♕b7 3.♗g5 ♕c8 4.♗f4 ♗d7 5.♗f3 ♕b7 6.♗e2 ♕c8 7.♗d3 ♕b7 8.♗xd4 ♕c8 9.♗e3 ♕b7 and a draw was agreed. In the final position, White's own e4-pawn only causes him trouble because it closes the important h1-a8 diagonal. Without this pawn, White would have had the upper hand. So the correct plan is a king transfer to d4 prior to the advance e3-e4.

1.♗g5! ♗f7 2.♗f4

As Grigoriev demonstrated, 2.♗g6+! ♗e7 3.♗f4 would be even more precise. However, even with an active king, Black is faced with severe problems.

2...♗g7 3.♗f3 ♗h6 4.♗e2 ♗g5 5.♗d2 ♗g4 6.♗c3 ♗g5 7.♗d4 ♕b7 8.e4!



16-58

B

If now 8... $\mathbb{Q}c8$, then 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3\circlearrowright$ 12... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (12... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$; 12... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h3$) 13. $e6+-$

8...dxe4 9. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e3\circlearrowright$ 11... $\mathbb{Q}h6$

11... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 12. $b5!$ $axb5$ 13. $a6$ $b4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}b3+-$;

11... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d7\circlearrowright+-$

12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g7\circlearrowright$ 15... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 16. $b5!$ $axb5$ 17. $a6+-$

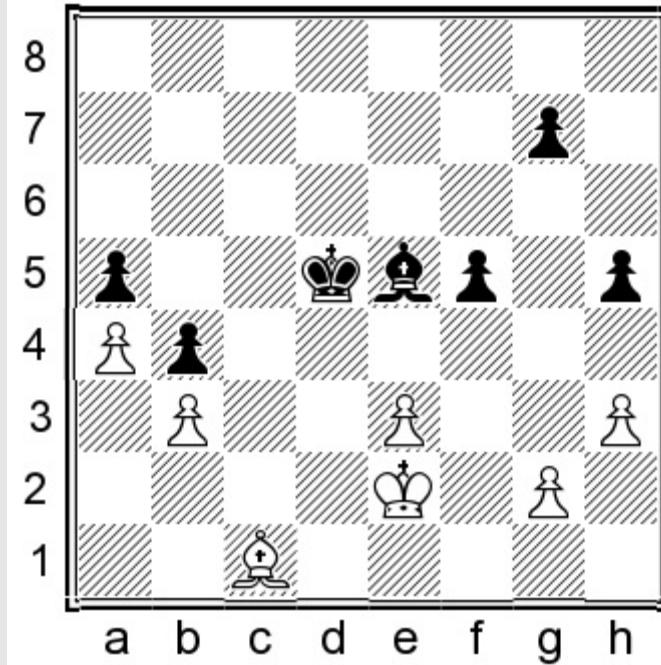
Barrier

Although there are occasional cases where a player can save himself with his pawns on the same color as his bishop, such a defensive method is not to be recommended in the majority of cases. The more secure defensive method is ***to control the squares of one color with the bishop, and of the other color, with pawns.*** This places a barrier in the path of the enemy king, making it difficult to invade our camp.

If the opponent has a passed pawn, the king must usually blockade it.

I.Ivanov – Christiansen

Pasadena 1983



6-34

W?

White's position is difficult. The e3-pawn greatly restricts the bishop's mobility; and on the other wing, the same role is played by the enemy pawns (White's bishop will not likely ever have the opportunity to attack them from behind.)

Nevertheless, as Christiansen pointed out, White has a comparatively simple way to draw – he must sacrifice a pawn, opening the diagonal for his bishop and erecting an impassable barrier before the black king.

1.♗d3! ♜c3 2.e4+! fxe4+ 3.♗e2=

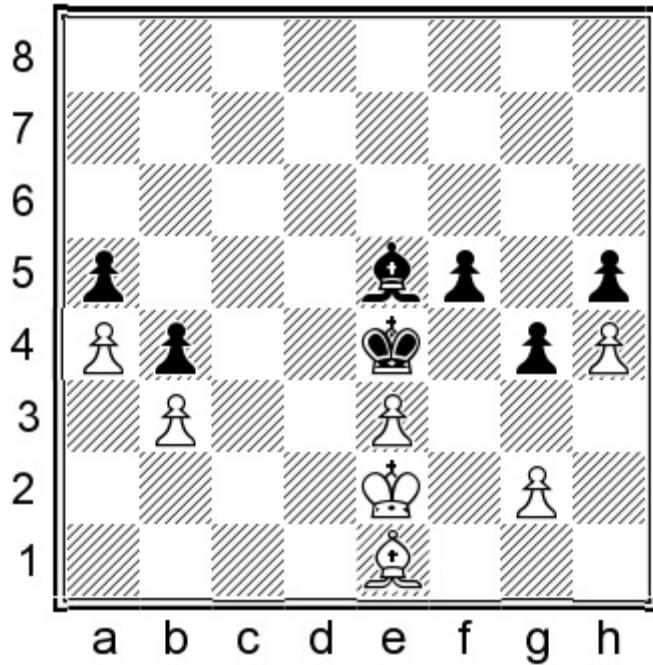
It is worth mentioning that the pawn endgame after 2.♗d2? ♜xd2 3.♗xd2 is lost: 3...h4! (but not 3...♗e4? 4.h4! f4 5.exf4 ♜xf4 6.♗d3 ♜g3 7.♗c4=) 4.♗d3 g6O (4...♗e5? 5.♗c4=; 4...g5 5.♗d2 ♜e4 6.♗e2 f4 7.exf4 gxf4!–+) 5.♗d2 ♜e4 6.♗e2 f4 7.exf4 ♜xf4 8.♗f2 ♜e4 9.♗e2 ♜d4 10.♗d2 g5O–+

Ivanov failed to find the pawn sacrifice, and wound up in a hopeless position.

1.♗d2? ♜e4 2.♗e1 g5 3.h4

If 3.♗f2, then 3...h4! 4.♗e1 (4.♗g1 ♜c7 5.♗f2 ♜b6O 6.♗d2 f4 7.♗e2 ♜xe3 8.♗e1 ♜d4) 4...♗b2 5.♗f2 (5.g3 g4! 6.gxh4 gxh3 7.♗g3 ♜c1; 5.♗d2 ♜c3 6.♗c1 g4) 5...♗c1 6.♗g1 g4 7.♗f2 g3 8.♗g1 ♜b2 9.♗d2 ♜e5 10.♗e2 ♜c3O–+ (or 10...♗c7 11.♗d2 ♜b6 12.♗e2 f4–+).

3...g4



6-35

W

4.g3

If 4.♗f2 g3 5.♗e1, Black “triangulates” with the bishop: 5...♗d6! 6.♔d2 ♗c7! 7.♔e2 ♗e5, and then wins the h4-pawn: 8.♔d2 (8.♔d2 ♗c3+) 8...♗f6 9.♗e1 ♗xh4 10.♔d2 f4— However, the text is no better.

4...♗d6 5.♗f2 ♗c5 6.♗g1 f4! 7.gxf4 g3 8.f5 ♗e7 9.♗f1 ♗f3! 10.e4 g2+ 11.♗e1 ♗xh4+ 12.♔d2 ♗xe4 13.♗e2 ♗f6

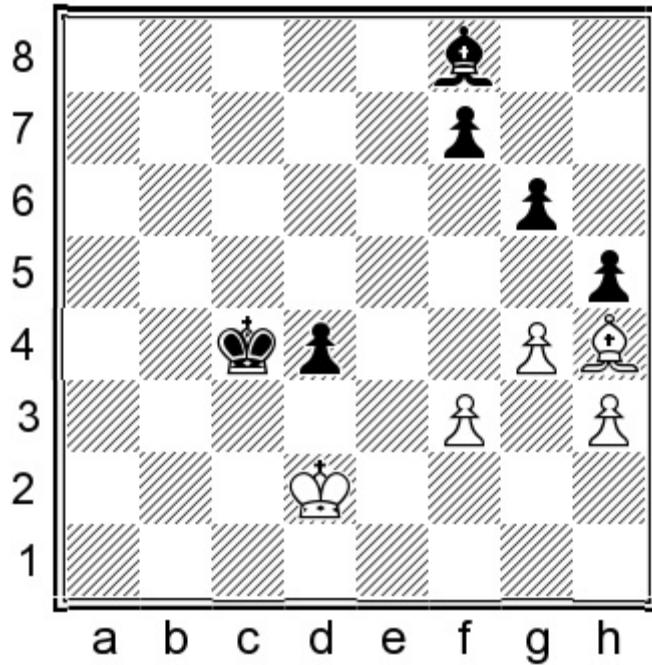
White resigned (14.♔f2 ♗d4+)

Diagrams 6-36 and 6-37 have been intentionally omitted.

Setting up a barrier is an effective defensive tool, but it too is not always sufficient. Sometimes the opponent can overcome the barrier by offering an exchange of bishops. When doing so, it is necessary to calculate the pawn ending accurately.

Donner – Smyslov

Havana 1964

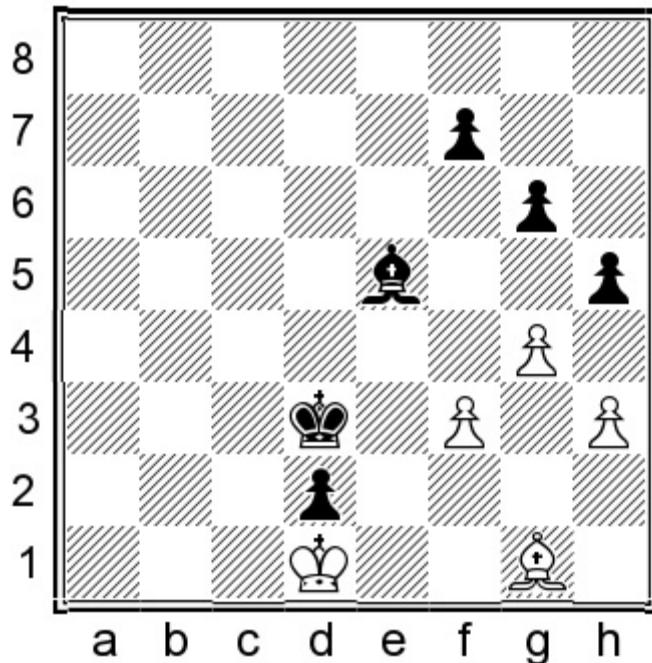


6-38
B

With the pawn on g2, Black could not have broken through the enemy defenses; but now it is possible, although with considerable difficulty – thanks to the weakness of the pawn at f3.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $d3+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $d2!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5\circlearrowright$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$

If 9. $gxh5$ $gxh5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g1$, then 10... $\mathbb{Q}c3\circlearrowright$ (premature would be 10... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h2$, when Black cannot play 11... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ because of 12. $\mathbb{Q}g1+\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd4=$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $h4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $f4\circlearrowright$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd2+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\Delta\dots f5-f4-f3$.



6-39

B?

9...h4!

Smyslov prepares the exchange of bishops. The immediate 9... $\mathbb{B}d4?$ leads only to a draw: 10. $\mathbb{B}xd4$ $\mathbb{B}xd4$ 11. $\mathbb{B}xd2$ h4 12.g5!

10. $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}c3\circlearrowright$ 11. $\mathbb{B}g1$ $\mathbb{B}d4!$ 12. $\mathbb{B}xd4$

After 12. $\mathbb{B}h2$ Black sacrifices the bishop: 12... $\mathbb{B}e3!$ 13. $\mathbb{B}g1+$ $\mathbb{B}xf3$ 14. $\mathbb{B}xd4$ $\mathbb{B}g2$ 15. $\mathbb{B}xd2$ $\mathbb{B}xh3$ 16.g5 $\mathbb{B}g2$ 17. $\mathbb{B}e5$ h3 18. $\mathbb{B}e3$ h2 19. $\mathbb{B}xh2$ $\mathbb{B}xh2-$ +

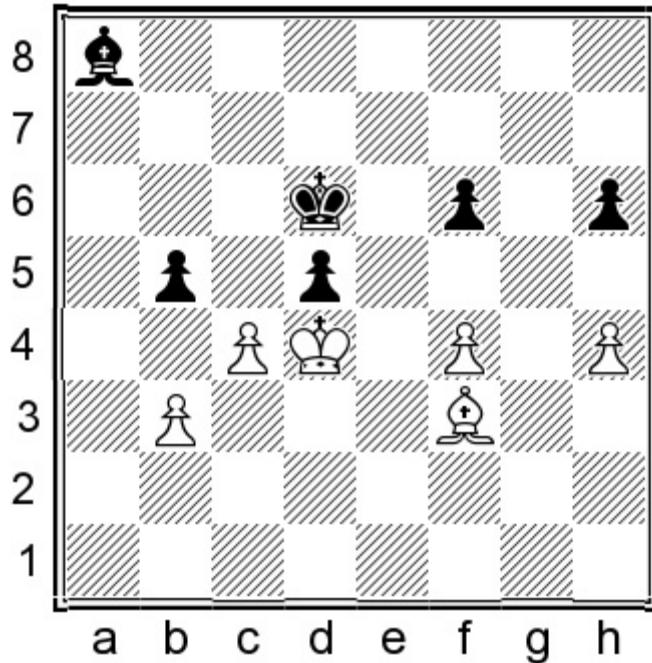
12... $\mathbb{B}xd4$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xd2$ $\mathbb{B}e5$ 14. $\mathbb{B}e3$ g5

White resigned, in view of 15.f4+ (15. $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}f4$ 16. $\mathbb{B}f2$ f6 \circlearrowright) 15...gxf4+ 16. $\mathbb{B}f3$ f6 17. $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}e4$ 18. $\mathbb{B}e2$ f3+ 19. $\mathbb{B}f1$ f2! (the standard triangulation maneuver, as seen in the game Fahrni-Alapin, does not work here, since Black's king does not have the f5-square available) 20. $\mathbb{B}xf2$ (20. $\mathbb{B}e2$ f1= $\mathbb{W}+$) 20... $\mathbb{B}f4\circlearrowleft-$ +

Tragicomедies

Matanovic – Uhlmann

Skopje 1976



6-40

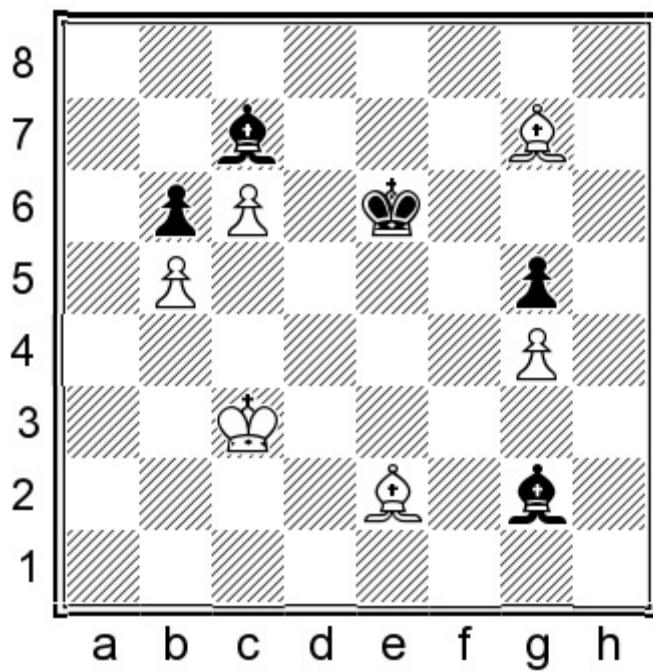
B?

Black chose the desperate 1... $dxc4?$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xa8$ $cxb3$, but after 3. $\mathbb{B}e4$ b2 4.h5 b4 5. $\mathbb{B}c4$, he resigned.

As Matanovic pointed out, Black could have saved the game by playing 1... $bxcc4$ 2. $bxcc4$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xd5$

$\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4.c5+ $\mathbb{Q}c7$. White's king cannot get through the barrier.

Exercises



6-41

6/7

B?

Show/Hide Solution

6/7. Stefanov-Beliavsky, Bucharest 1980

Beliavsky has calculated quite well that, after the exchange of dark-square bishops, he will be able to create a solid barrier against White's king.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5+$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

If 3.c7 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ ($\Delta \mathbb{Q}f5$), then 4... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ is less strong, but Black perhaps can survive after 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 9.f6 g4 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6=$, or 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6(d7)=$

3... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8=$

White cannot utilize his extra pawn. The defense is successful mainly because all of White's pawns are on the squares of their own bishop's color.

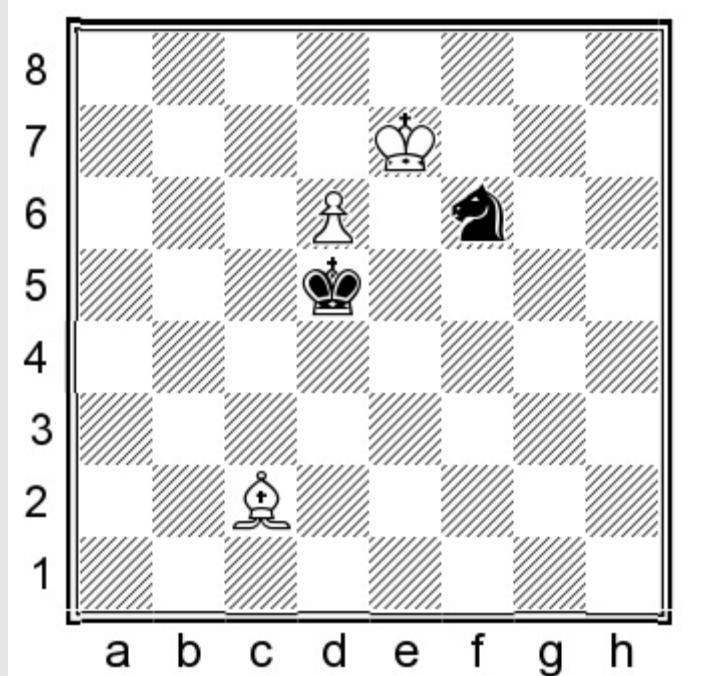
6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 16.c7 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ Draw.

Chapter 7 Bishop versus Knight

With this configuration of material there is not, in my opinion, a single fundamental theoretical position that would be worth memorizing. For the practical player, what is important is to become acquainted with the overall ideas, and with some concrete battle techniques.

Bishop and Pawns vs. Knight

V.Bron 1955



7-1

W

The outcome in all endgames of this sort depends wholly on whether the stronger side can place his opponent in zugzwang. In the present case, this is possible.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6\mathcal{O}$, the game ends at once.

2. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ or 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ O is no better.

6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4!+-$

The decisive zugzwang!

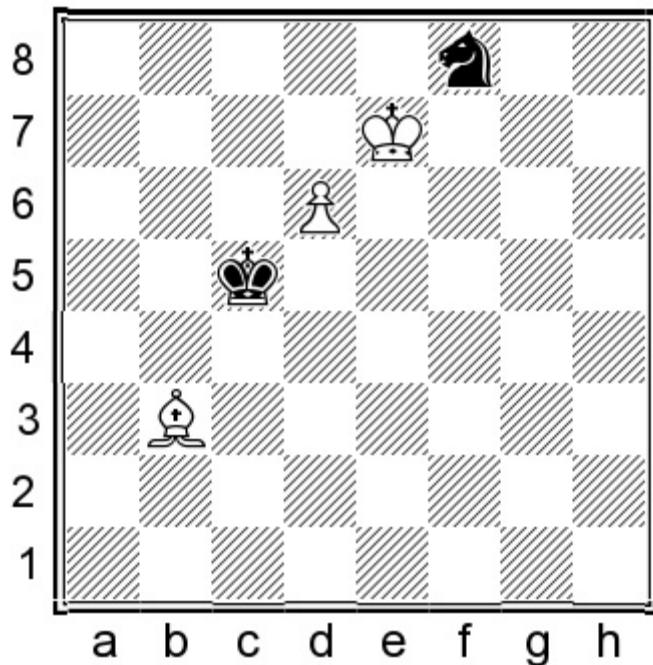
Let's put Black's king on e5. Now the variations are different, but the evaluation of the position does not change, and neither does the goal of White's maneuvers – zugzwang.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ O) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ O)
5. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ O (in order to give his opponent the move, White has triangulated with his king)
6... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (but not 8.d7? $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9.d8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{Q}c6+$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6$
 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ O) 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 11.d7 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ O 13... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e7+-$

Now, in the diagrammed position, let's move White's king to c7. It is not hard to see that Black can draw this – and not just with his knight on f6, but also on f8 or e5, which brings us to the conclusion:
For a successful defense, it is important to keep the knight far away from the enemy king.

But even for a knight placed close to the enemy king, zugzwang is not at all a sure thing. Let's return once again to the diagrammed position. Suppose that after 1. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ White, instead of the waiting move 2. $\mathbb{Q}a2!$, chose 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (there is nothing better) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$

M.Mandelail 1938



7-2

\$

W

4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (White cannot allow the knight check at g6) 4... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ is also possible) 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4+$

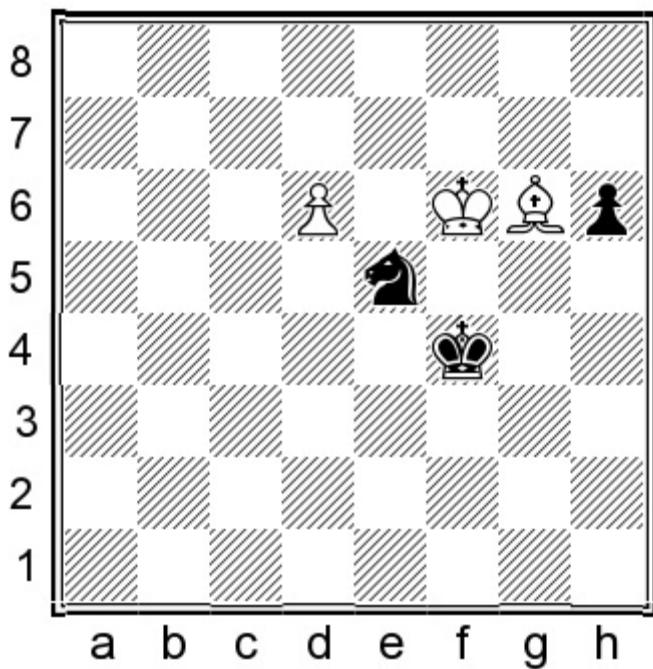
With the bishop on the b1-h7 diagonal, the king will shuttle between c6 and d5, avoiding the mined squares c5 and e5. For example: 5.♗b1 ♗d5! 6.♗d3 ♗c6! (6...♗c5? 7.♗e4O, 6...♗e5? 7.♗e4O) 7.♗e4+ ♗c5O

5...♗c5 6.♗e8 ♗d5 7.♗f7+ ♗c6 8.♗h5 ♗c5!=

8...♗d5? is a mistake, in view of 9.♗f3+ ♗e5(c5) 10.♗e4O+- But now we have a position of reciprocal zugzwang, with White to move; and he cannot give the move back to his opponent.

It is not uncommon in such situations for Black to also have a passed pawn. The stronger side's strategy remains unchanged: White must still play for zugzwang. The defender, however, now has a new resource: **deflection**. Sometimes, the pawn distracts the bishop from controlling an important square, which the knight then immediately occupies. Or the reverse can happen: sometimes the knight is sacrificed to allow the pawn to queen.

Lisitsyn – Zagorovsky



7-3

W?

1.♗e8? would be a mistake in view of 1...h5! (deflection) 2.♗xh5 ♗d7+ 3.♗e6 ♗b6. The knight stands far away from the king, and the position would be drawn.

1.♗f5! h5 2.♗e6 h4 3.♗f6O 3...♗c6

3...h3 is no better: 4.♗xh3 ♗e4 5.♗e6 ♗d4 6.♗f5O

4.d7 ♗d8 5.♗e6 (Δ ♗d5, ♗e7) 5...♗e4 6.♗h3

The most accurate move, threatening 7.♗g2+ and 8.♗e7. But the immediate 6.♗e7 ♗b7 7.♗c4 h3

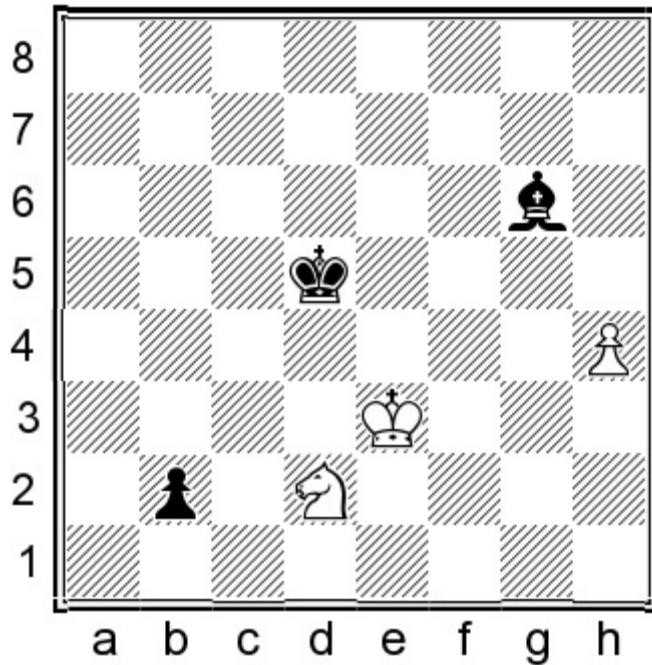
8. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ was also possible.

6... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 10. $d8=\mathbb{W}$
Black resigned.

Now, here is a more complex example.

Nazarevsky – Simonenko

Kiev 1939



7-4

\$

W

1.h5!

Exploiting the fact that the pawn is temporarily poisoned (1... $\mathbb{Q}xh5?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3=$), to advance it further.

On 1. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ the position is lost.

1.h5! $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2.h6 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$

Let's examine the other attempts to play for zugzwang:

4... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ works well if White plays 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ $\mathbb{Q}f2\mathcal{O}$. But White saves himself if he sacrifices a pawn to deflect the bishop: 6. h7! $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$.

4... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ (but not 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2\mathcal{O}$). Now 6... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ is met by 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$, leading back to the game line (7. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}d3\mathcal{O}$ or 7. $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2\mathcal{O}$ would be a mistake). And if 6... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (counting on 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1?$ $\mathbb{Q}d3\mathcal{O}$ or 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}d1\mathcal{O}$), then White saves himself with the knight sacrifice indicated by Konstantinopolsky: 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4!!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 9. h7 b1= \mathbb{W} 10. h8= $\mathbb{W}=$

5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$

7. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}c3\ominus$ is a mistake.

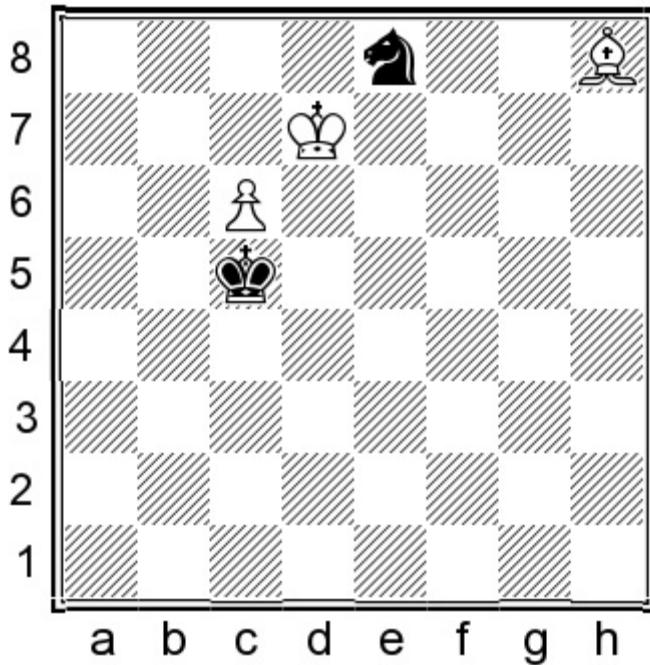
7... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$

The final touch. 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2+?$ $\mathbb{Q}c2\ominus$ or 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ both lose.

9... $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 15. $h7$ $b1=\mathbb{W}$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 17. $h8=\mathbb{W}$ Draw.

Exercises

In the following exercises, you must answer the question, “What should be the result of this game?”



7-5

7/1

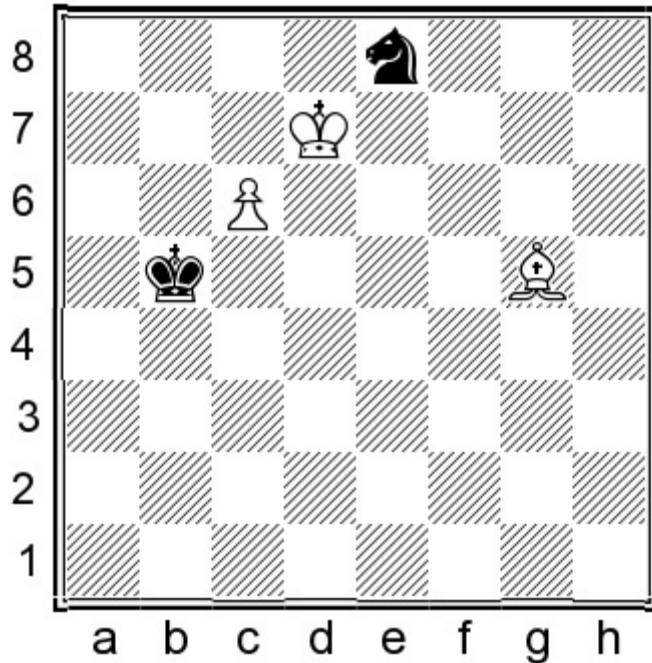
W?

Show/Hide Solution

7/1. P.Seuffert 1856

Reciprocal zugzwang arises with the bishop on d4 and the king on b5 or d5. We have discussed an almost identical position, only moved one file to the right (diagram 7-2), where Black could successfully avoid a zugzwang. Here he fails to do so.

1. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b6\Box$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$



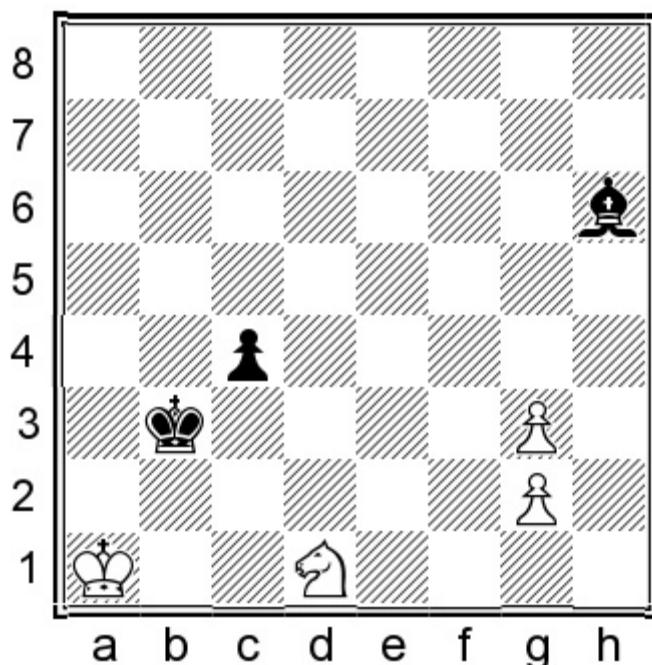
16-59

W?

5.♘h4!○

This waiting move was not possible in the above-mentioned case: the edge of the board was closer.

5...♝c5 6.♞f2+ ♞d5 7.♞d4○ 7...♝d6 8.c7+-



7-6

[Show/Hide Solution](#)**7/2. L.Katsnelson 1979****1.♗b1!**

The line 1.g4? ♜c2 2.♗f2 ♜e3 3.♗e4 ♜d3 or 2.♗b2 ♜g7 is hopeless.

But if White had no pawns in the latter case, he could have saved the game because of stalemate, 3.♔a2. This tactical idea can serve as an anchor, because White cannot avoid zugzwang anyway.

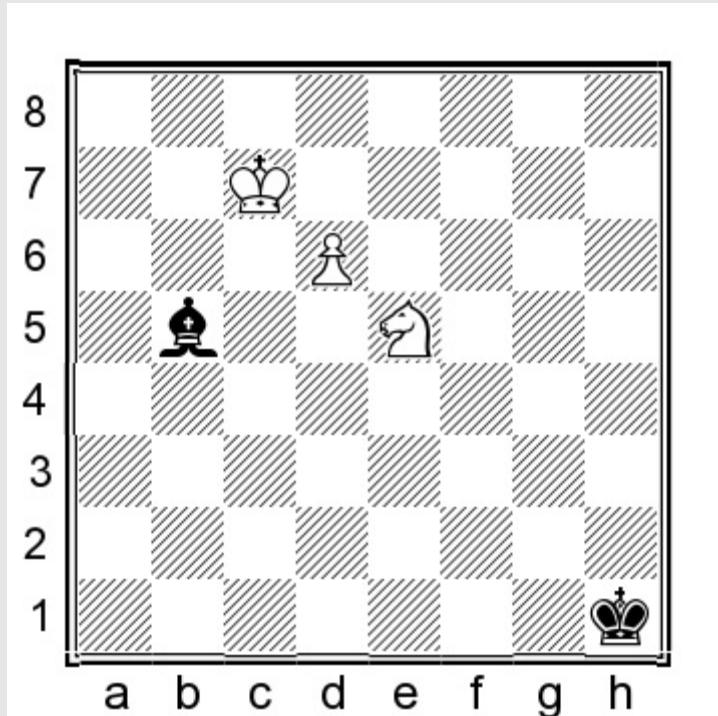
1.♗b1! ♜g5 (1...♜d2 2.g4 ♜g5 3.g3) 2.g4 ♜d2 3.g5! ♜xg5 4.g4

After 4.g3? ♜h6 5.g4 ♜g5! O 6.♔a1 ♜c2, White is lost because he has failed to get rid of his own pawn in time.

4...♜h6 5.g5! ♜xg5 6.♔a1 ♜c2 7.♗b2! ♜f6 (7...c3 8.♔a4=) 8.♔a2 ♜xb2 stalemate.

Knight and Pawn vs. Bishop

The bishop is a strong piece, sometimes capable of preventing a pawn from queening even without the king's help.

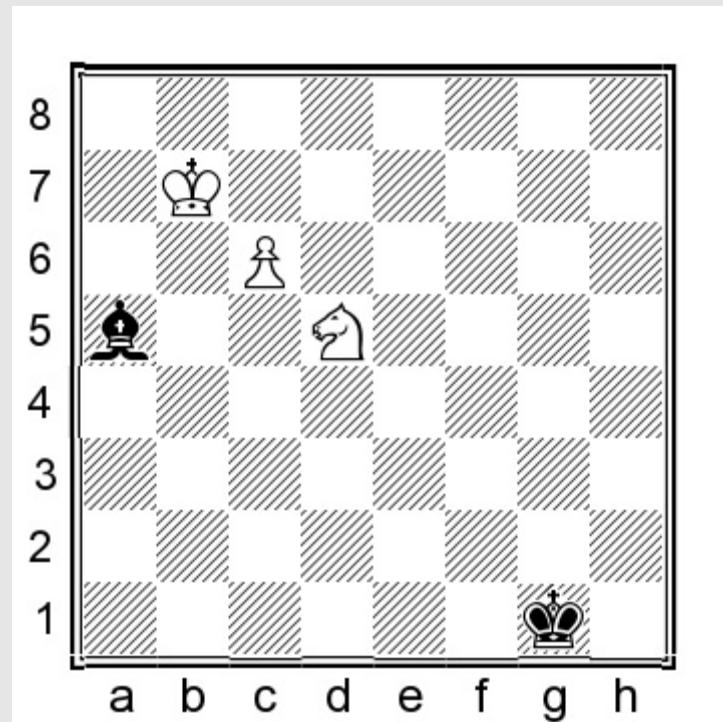


B

1... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ (White threatened interference with 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (Δ
 $\mathbb{Q}e6$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}c8!=$

Black was saved, first of all, because the pawn had not yet reached the seventh rank, and second, because the bishop's diagonal was sufficiently long: five squares. Knight and king are only capable of interdicting two squares each, which leaves the fifth square free.

If we move the position one file to the left, the diagonal grows shorter, and Black loses.



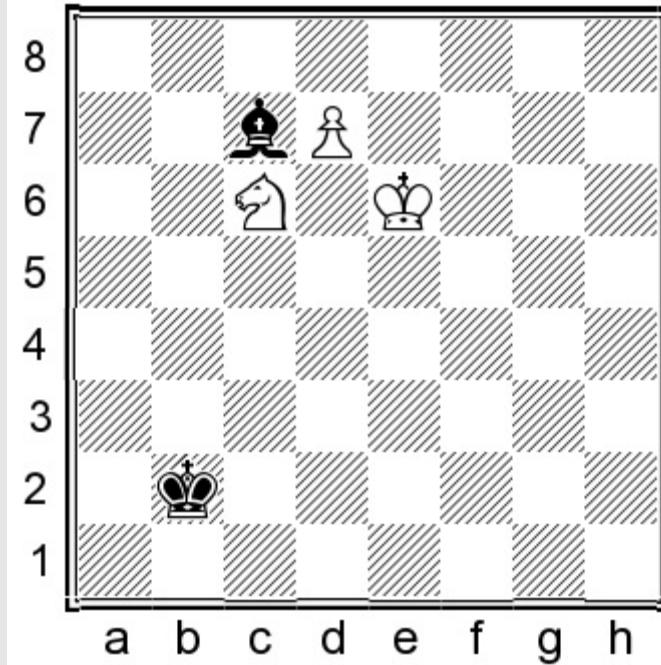
7-8
B

1... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6+ -$

These examples show us the two basic techniques for promoting the pawn: driving the bishop off the diagonal and interference.

If the bishop cannot handle the job on its own (which is what happens most often), then the outcome depends upon the position of the defending king: can it prevent the bishop from being interfered with or driven off?

Y.Averbakh 1958



7-9

W

With the king at a1 or b1, White would win by $\mathbb{Q}d5-c4-b5-a6-b7$. But here (or with the king at c2, also), Black's king is in time to help the bishop: 1. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}c3!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}d3!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}e4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}d6=$

Note Black's accurate first move: 1... $\mathbb{Q}a3?$ would be refuted by 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5O+-$ (this is how White wins if the king is on a2 in the starting position). And if 1... $\mathbb{Q}b3?$ (hoping for 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$, when White is the one in zugzwang), then 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$, with the unstoppable threat of interference by 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7$.

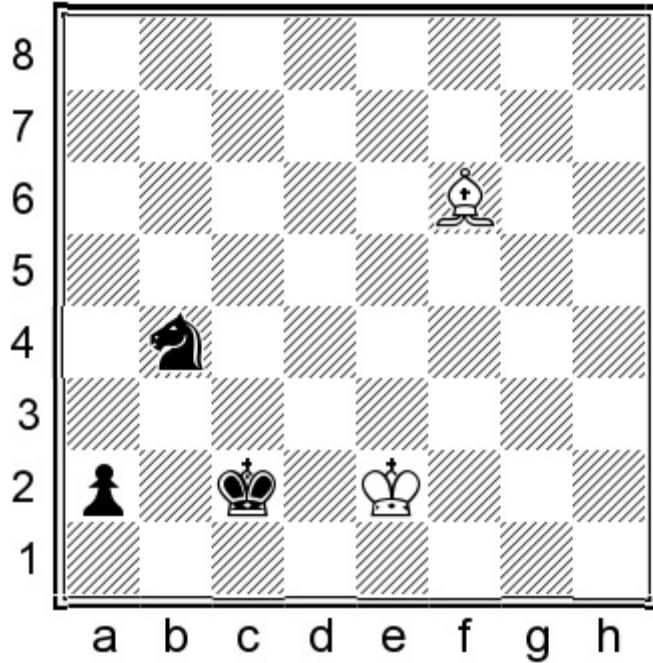
The other plan, 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}c3(b3)$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{Q}c4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}b4+!$ does not win for White either. It is important that White does not have the 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ interference – the king covers that square.

But with the king at c1 in the starting position, this plan leads to the queening of the pawn: 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8 \mathbb{Q}h4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \Delta$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7) 2. \mathbb{Q}d4! \mathbb{Q}a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}b4+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c6+-$, or 3... $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \Delta \mathbb{Q}c6$, $\mathbb{Q}c7+-$

Tragicomедies

Stein – Dorfman

USSR 1970



7-10
\$
B

The bishop has a hard time with a rook's pawn, since it has only one diagonal to work with. However, Dorfman played too straightforwardly, and was unable to garner the full point.

1...♝d3 2.♝a1□ (Black threatened the interference 2...♝b2) **2...♝b2 3.♝e1**

3.♝e3 must be answered by 3...♝a4! 4.♝e2 ♜c1! (see below), or 4.♝d4 ♜b1 5.♝d3 ♜c5+ 6.♝c3 ♜xa1— Whereas, in the game Sakaev-Sunye Neto (Sao Paulo 1991), after 3...♝b1? 4.♝d2! the win was gone.

3...♝b1 4.♝d2 ♜xa1 5.♝c1! ♜c4 6.♝c2 Draw. We know the concluding position from the chapter “Knight vs. Pawns” (diagram 2-2).

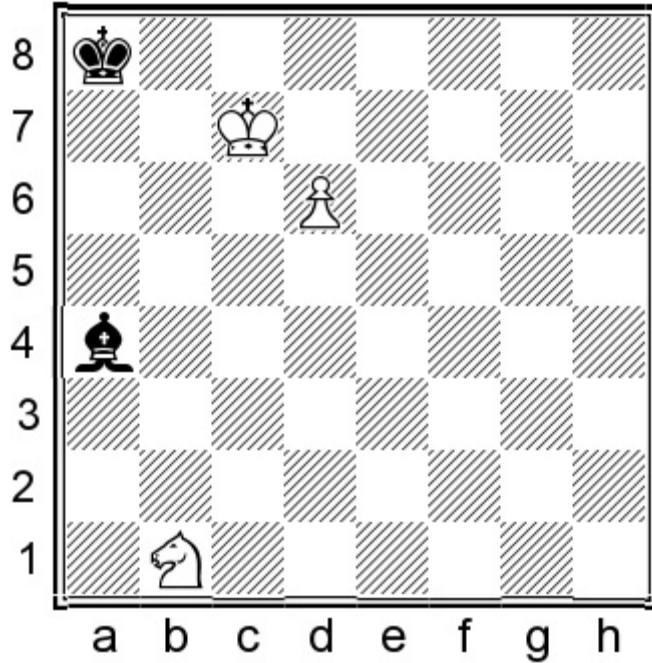
The road to victory was noted as far back as the 19th century by Horwitz. Black should have played 3...♝a4! (instead of 3...♝b1?) 4.♝e2 ♜c1. Possible variations are:

(a) 5.♝d3 ♜b1 6.♝d2 ♜b2O 7.♝c3 ♜xa1 8.♝c2 ♜d3O—+;

(b) 5.♝e3 ♜b1 6.♝d3 (6.♝d2 ♜b2O) 6...♜c5+! (of course not 6...♜xa1? 7.♝c2=) 7.♝c3 (7.♝d2 ♜b3+) 7...♜xa1 8.♝c2 ♜b3(d3)O—+;

(c) 5.♝e1 ♜c5! 6.♝e2 (6.♝g7 ♜d3+ and 7...♜b2) 6...♜b1 7.♝d1 (7.♝g7 ♜a4) 7...♜d3 8.♝d2 ♜b2O—+

Exercises



7-11

7/3

W?

White to move – what result?

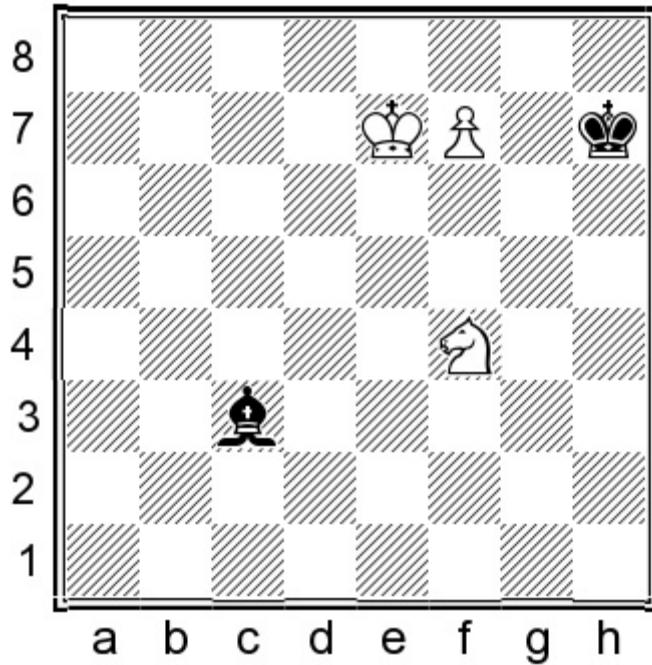
Show/Hide Solution

7/3. J.Kling, B.Horwitz 1851

1. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}b5!!$

Only this subtle move, suggested by Chéron, saves Black. After 1... $\mathbb{Q}e8?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5\mathbb{O}$ he loses because of the unfortunate placement of his king in the corner. For example, 2... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ (Δ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6\mathbb{O}$, or 2... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4\mathbb{O}$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6\mathbb{O}$

2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ stalemate) 2... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}e8!\mathbb{O}$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6=$



7-12
7/4
W?

Show/Hide Solution

7/4. A.Kalinin 1974*

The bishop is ready to hold the pawn from either diagonal. If it occupies the a3-f8 diagonal, then White must interfere by means of ♜e7 before the black king can prevent this. From g7, the bishop can only be driven away by the knight from f5.

There is a single (and unusual) way to solve both these problems in time.

1. ♜g2!! ♕b4+

If 1...♕g7, then 2. ♜h4!, and 3. ♜f5 cannot be prevented. 1...♕g6 also loses: 2. ♜h4+ ♕g5 3. ♜f5! ♕b4+ 4. ♜d6. Finally, 1...♕b2 2. ♜e8 ♕a3 transposes to the main line of the solution.

2. ♜e8 ♕a3

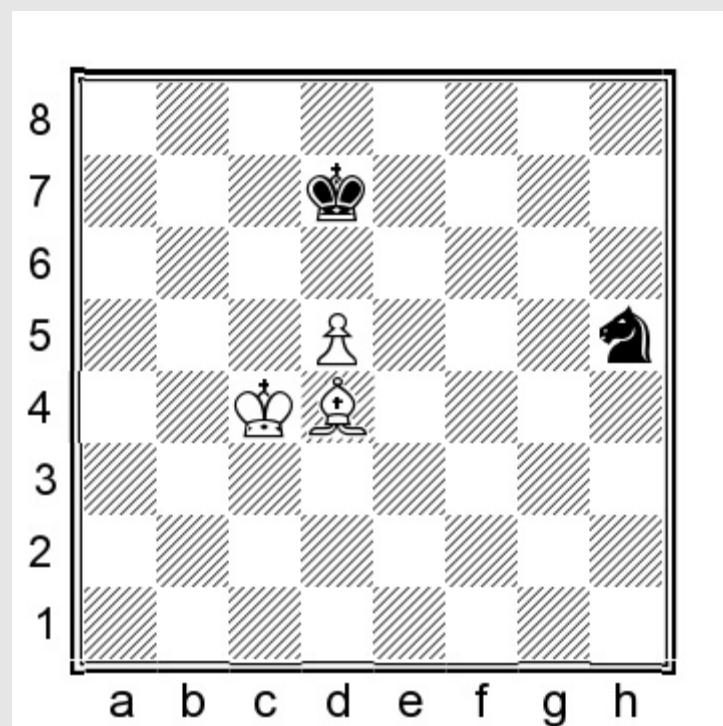
Or 2... ♜g7 3. ♜f4 ♜f6 and Black loses the bishop: 4. ♜d5+

3. ♜f4(e3) 3... ♜g7 4. ♜d5+- (Δ 5. ♜e7).

The Bishop is Superior to the Knight

Cutting the Knight Off

If the knight is on the edge of the board, the bishop can deprive it of moves.



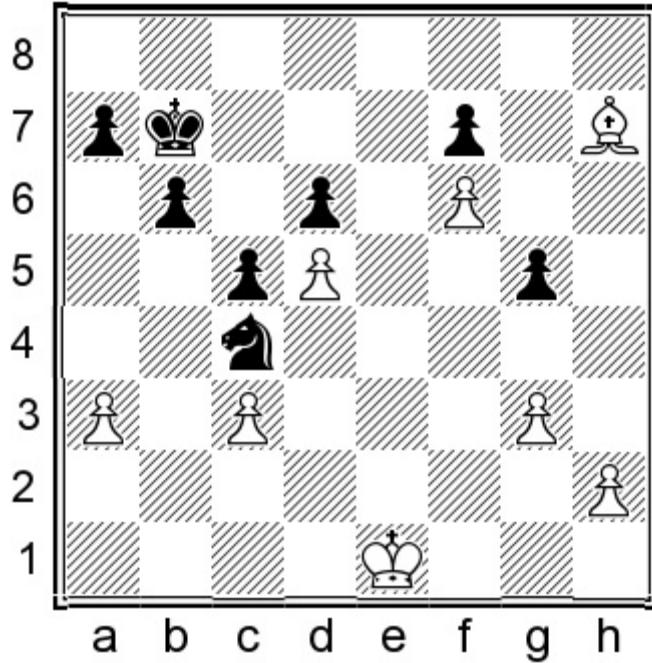
7-13

W

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $d6$ (but not 3. $\mathbb{Q}b6??$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!=$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 5. $d7+-$

Sometimes it is not necessary to “arrest” the knight – it is enough to cut it off from the main theater of conflict (for example, from the passed pawn), as in the following example.

Goldberg – Tolush
USSR chsf, Moscow 1949



7-14

W?

1.h4! gxh4 2.gxh4 ♖e5 3.♗f5!

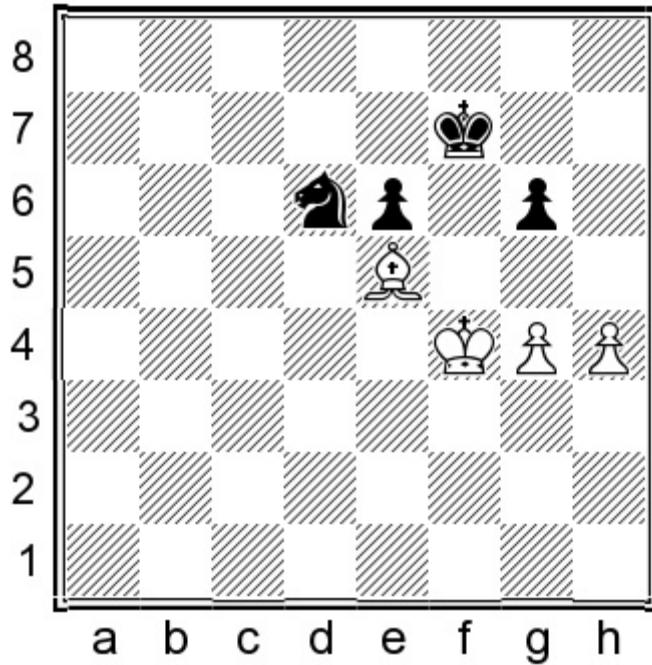
The bishop deprives the knight of the important squares g4 and d7, which it would otherwise use for the fight against the h-pawn. It is true that the knight can immediately remove this pawn – but then it comes “under arrest.”

3...♗f3+ 4.♔f2 ♗xh4 5.♕e4! ♔c7 6.♕g3 ♗g6 7.♗xg6 fxg6 8.f7 Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Bykova – Volpert

USSR 1951



7-15
B

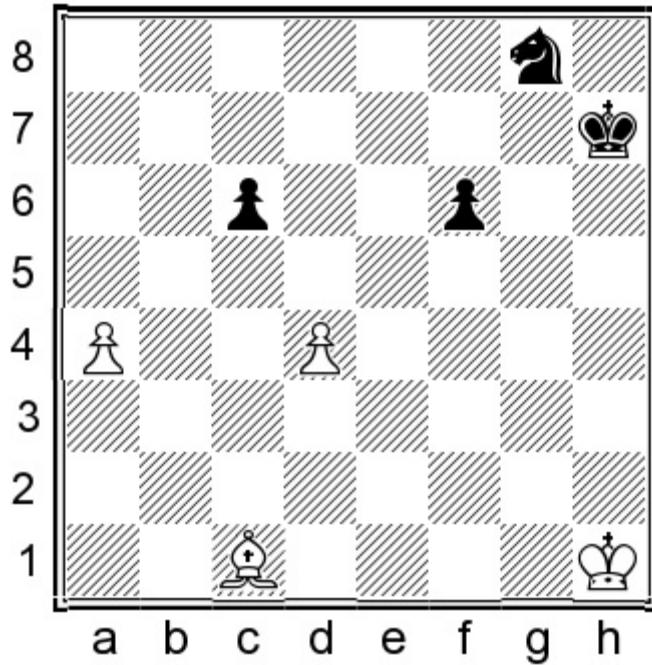
1...♞e8??

A mistake that's hard to explain. Almost any other retreat by the knight would have led to an uncomplicated draw. Now Black loses.

2.♝g5 ♞g7 3.♝h6

Black resigned, in view of 3...♞e8 4.g5〇.

Exercises



7-16

7/5

W?

Show/Hide Solution

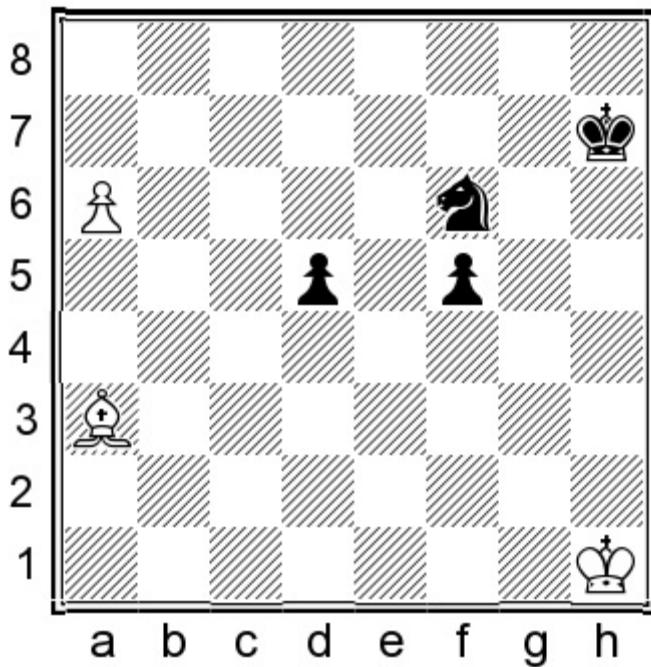
7/5. A.Troitsky 1924

1.♘a3! f5 2.d5!

The black knight must not be allowed to occupy the d5-square, as 2.a5? ♘f6 3.a6 ♘d5 only leads to a draw.

The initial moves cannot be transposed: 1.d5? cxd5 2.♘a3 d4! 3.♗g2 (3.a5 d3 4.♗b4 ♘e7) 3...f5! 4.a5 ♘f6 5.a6 ♘d5=

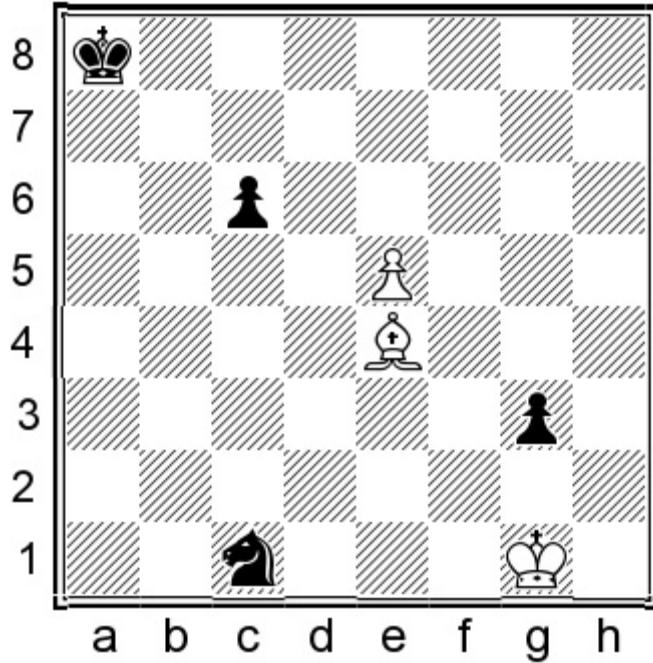
2...cxd5 3.a5 ♘f6 4.a6



16-60

B

4...♝e8 (4...♝d7 5.♗c5! ♘xc5 6.a7+-) 5.♗d6! ♘xd6 6.a7+-



7-17

7/6

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

7/6. J.Marwitz 1937

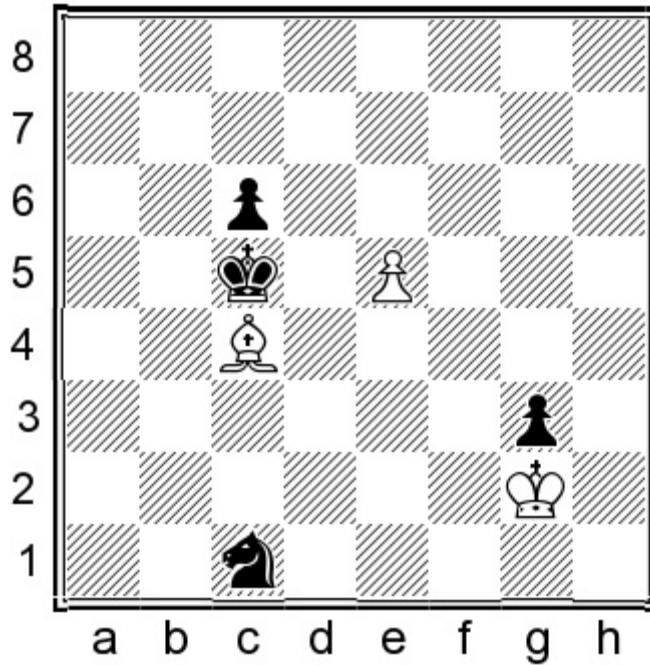
1.♘d3!!

Both 2.e6 and 2.♗c4 are threatened. The premature attempt 1.e6? misses the win: 1...♝e2+ 2.♗f1 g2+! 3.♗xg2 ♝g3+ and 4...♝f5=

1.♘d3!! ♘b7 (1...♝xd3 2.e6+-) 2.♗c4!

The knight is corralled, but the fight is still not over yet.

2...♘b6 3.♗g2 ♘c5



16-61

W?

4.†xg3!

After 4.e6? †d6, the knight releases itself via d3 or e2 because the bishop is overworked between the two diagonals.

4...†xc4 5.e6 †e2+ 6.†h2!!+-

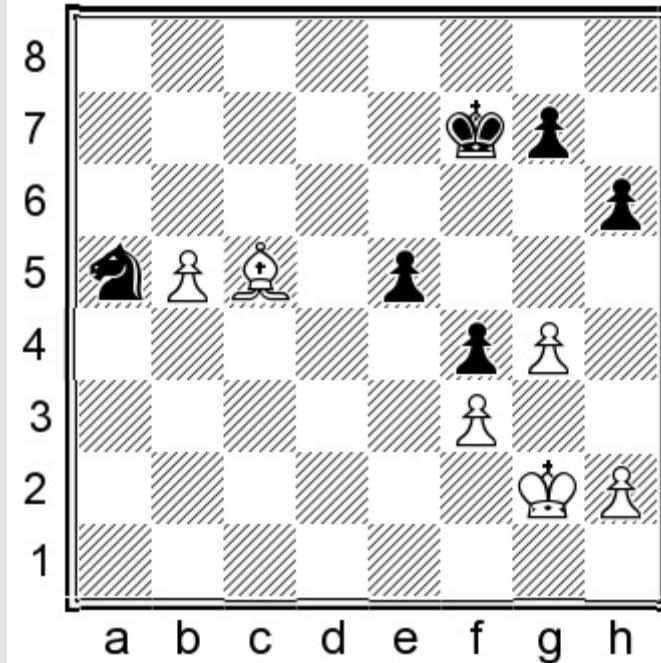
The knight fails to stop the pawn after this move, while after 6.†g4? it could do so successfully:
6...†c3 7.e7 †d5 8.e8=†? (8.e8=†= is relatively better) 8...†f6+

Fixing the Pawns

It is useful to fix the enemy pawns on squares where they may be attacked by the bishop. In this case, either the king or the knight will be tied down to their defense.

Chiburdanidze – Muresan

Lucerne ol 1982



7-18

W?

In order to make progress, White must bring her king to the queenside – but this will be met by the black king coming to d5. For example: 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ g6! 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5=$. White also gets nothing from 2. b6 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ h5 4. gxh5 gxh5 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4=$

One of the most important methods of converting one's advantage in endgames (and not just in endgames) is “the principle of two weaknesses.” Sometimes it is impossible to win by working only on one part of the board. In such cases, the attacking side strives to create a second weakness in the enemy camp, or to exploit one which already exists. By attacking this second weakness, and then if necessary returning the attack to the first weakness, the attacker succeeds in breaking down and eventually overcoming the enemy’s resistance.

1.h4!

An excellent positional move, stemming from the “principle of two weaknesses.” The vulnerability of the h6-pawn prevents Black’s king from heading towards the center; but how, then, is she to meet the advance of the enemy king to the queen’s wing?

1...g6 2.h5! gxh5 3.gxh5

White’s position is now won.

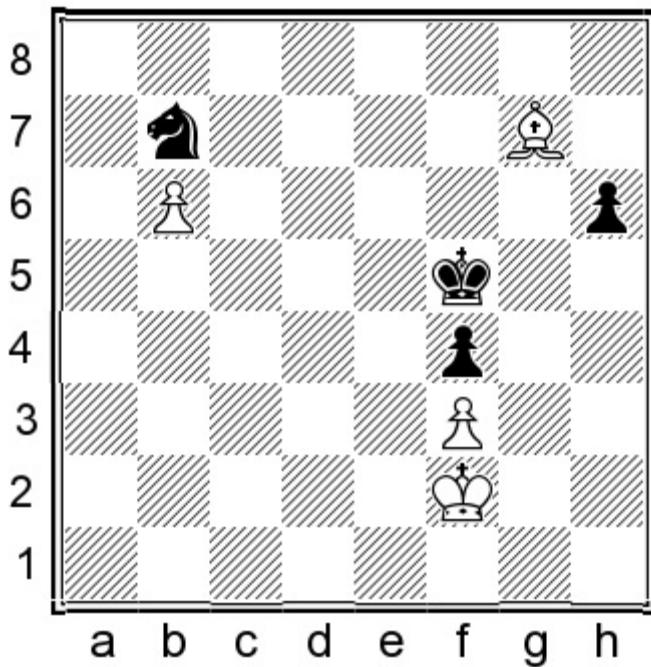
3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4.b6 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

The h5-pawn is gone, but now the king must defend another vulnerable pawn – the one at f4.

7... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$

For now, White’s king cannot penetrate the kingside: 8. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$.

8... $\hat{Q}f5$ 9. $\hat{Q}g7$



7-19
B

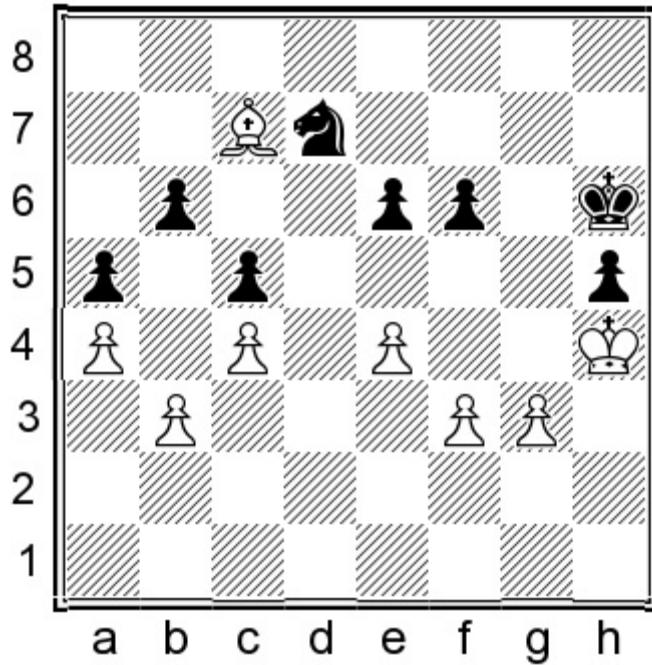
9...h5

9... $\hat{Q}g5$ is met by 10. $\hat{Q}e2$, when the h-pawn must be advanced anyway. After h6-h5, White changes her plan, and decides the outcome on the kingside.

10. $\hat{Q}g2!$ $\hat{Q}c5$ 11. $\hat{Q}f8$ $\hat{Q}b7$ 12. $\hat{Q}h3$ $\hat{Q}g5$ 13. $\hat{Q}e7+$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 14. $\hat{Q}h4$

Black resigned, since her king cannot simultaneously defend the pawns at h5 and f4. There can be no help from her knight, either – as before, it is tied to the queenside; meanwhile, throughout this endgame, White's bishop remained very active.

Miles – Dzhindzhikhashvili
Tilburg 1978



7-20
W

Whereas in the preceding example Black's king was forced to defend its pawns, here this role is played by the knight. In order to let his king break into the enemy camp, White uses the standard techniques of widening the beachhead and zugzwang.

1.g4! hxg4 2.fxg4! ♖g6 3.♖g3 ♖g5

On 3...f5, 4.gxf5+ exf5 5.♔f4! decides.

4.♔f3 ♖h6

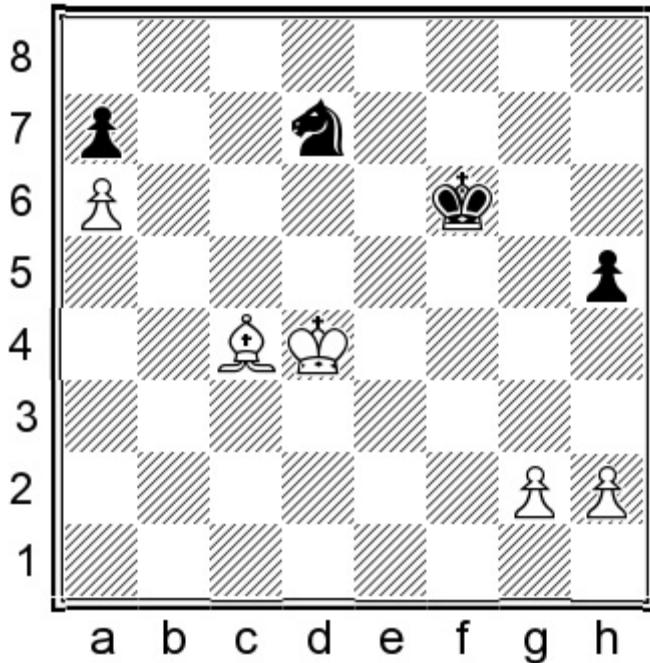
Nor does 4...e5 help, in view of 5.♔g3 ♖g6 6.♔h4 ♖h6 7.♕d8 ♖g6 8.g5! fxg5+ (8...f5 9.exf5+ ♖xf5 10.♔h5 e4 11.g6+-) 9.♕xg5 ♔b8 10.♕d8 ♔d7 11.♔g4O+-

5.♔f4 ♖g6 6.e5! fxe5+ (6...f5 7.gxf5+ exf5 8.e6) 7.♕xe5 ♔f7 8.♕c7 ♔f6 9.g5+ ♔f7 10.♔g4 ♖g6 11.♕d6

Black resigned. He is in zugzwang, and will find himself in zugzwang over and over again, since his knight is tied to the defense of the b6-pawn, and cannot budge. For example: 11...e5 12.♕c7O 12...e4 13.♔f4 (13.♕d8) 13...e3 14.♕xe3 ♖xg5 15.♔e4+-, or 11...♔f7 12.♔h5 ♖g7 13.♔c7O 13...♔h7 (13...e5 14.♔g4+-) 14.g6+ ♖g7 15.♔g5O+-

Tragicomедies

Smyslov – Gurgenidze
USSR ch, Tbilisi 1966



7-21

W?

White wins, using exactly the same move (and the same technique) as in the Chiburdanidze-Muresan game: 1.h4! It is vital to fix the enemy pawn on the vulnerable h5-square, in order to tie one of Black's pieces to its defense, or in some lines to create a dangerous passed h-pawn.

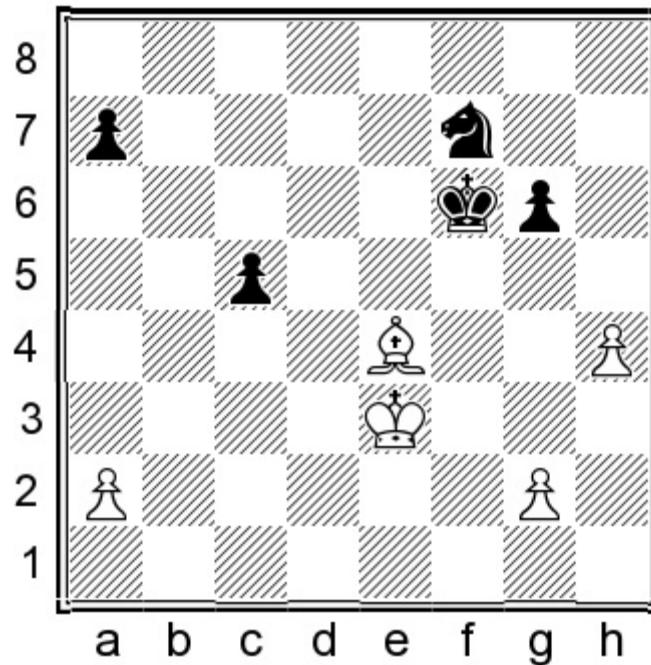
In the game, White erred with 1.♗d5? After 1...h4!, the position became drawn. If White sends his king after the a7-pawn, Black squeezes it into the corner with ...♔c7. And on g2-g3, Black exchanges pawns and easily blockades the passed g-pawn which results. Besides, he only needs to give up his knight for it, and then bring his king back to b8 (the elementary fortress already known to us) to secure the draw.

The continuation was: 2.♕e2 ♔f8 3.♕e4 ♔g5 4.♗d5 ♔f6 5.♗g4 ♔g6, and the game ended in a draw.

The Passed Pawn

The presence of passed pawns on the board, as a rule, favors the side with the bishop. The bishop is a wide-ranging piece, able both to support its own pawns, while simultaneously dealing with the enemy's, whereas the knight generally succeeds in acting only upon a narrow segment of the board. If it succeeds, let's say, in blockading the passed pawn on one wing, it cannot successfully involve itself in the fray on the opposite wing.

A few of the endings we have examined have already illustrated the difficulties faced by the knight when battling against a passed pawn (Goldberg-Tolush, for instance, or Chiburdanidze-Muresan). Let's analyze some more examples of this theme.

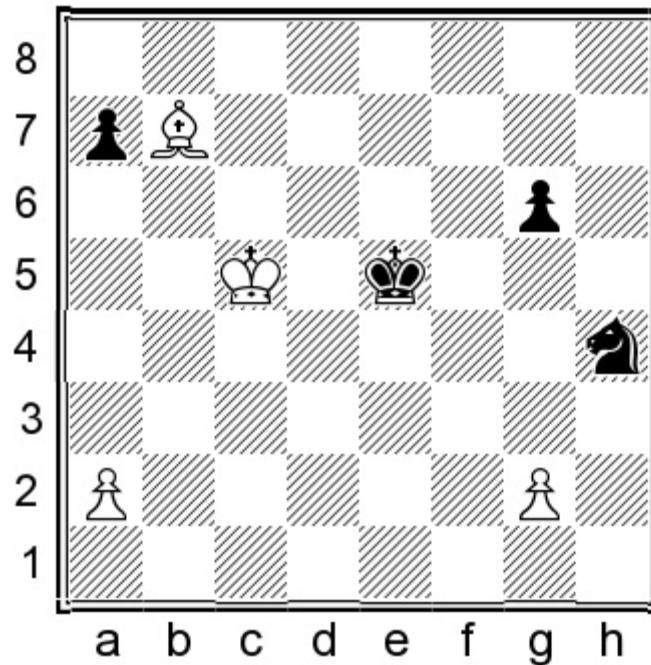


7-22

B?

White would certainly love to play g2-g4 (for instance, in reply to 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$), tying one of the enemy pieces to the kingside. Then the king would move over to the queenside, and attack Black's pawns.

The most stubborn line was Gligoric's suggestion 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ (and if 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 3.g4 g5+). Averbakh extends the line as follows: 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7$



7-23

B?

5... $\hat{Q}f4$ 6. $\hat{Q}b5$ $\hat{Q}g3$ 7. $\hat{Q}a6$ $\hat{Q}xg2$ 8. $\hat{Q}xa7+$ — (the knight is, as usual, helpless against a rook's pawn).

But instead of the desperate king march to the g2-pawn, Zviagintsev suggested the more restrained plan of 5... $\hat{Q}f5$, which offers Black realistic saving chances, in view of the small amount of remaining material. On 6. $\hat{Q}b5$, there follows 6... $\hat{Q}d6$ 7. $\hat{Q}a6$ $\hat{Q}c5$ 8. $\hat{Q}xa7$ $\hat{Q}b4=$ (after the king gets to a3, the knight will be given up for the g-pawn). Or 6.a4 $\hat{Q}e3$ 7. $\hat{Q}b5$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 8.a5 (8. $\hat{Q}a6$ $\hat{Q}c5$ Δ 9... $\hat{Q}b4$) 8...g5 9. $\hat{Q}e4$ g4 10. $\hat{Q}a6$ g3 11. $\hat{Q}xa7$ $\hat{Q}c7$ 12. $\hat{Q}a6$ $\hat{Q}c4$ 13. $\hat{Q}f3$ $\hat{Q}e3$ 14. $\hat{Q}b5$ $\hat{Q}b8$ 15. $\hat{Q}c5$ (15. $\hat{Q}b6$ $\hat{Q}c4+$) 15... $\hat{Q}a7$ 16. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{Q}xg2=$

Fischer's choice makes things considerably easier for White, since it gives him a passed pawn without even having to exchange pawns for it.

1...g5? 2.h5 $\hat{Q}h6$ 3. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 4. $\hat{Q}a8$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 5. $\hat{Q}c4$ g4 6.a4

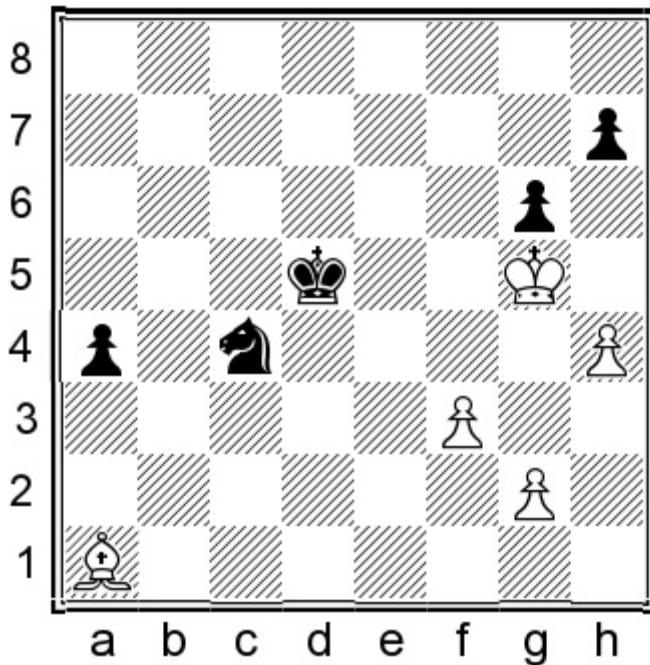
Black's king can only defend one of the two queenside pawns. Seeing that the a7-pawn is doomed, Spassky does not hurry to attack it, preferring to strengthen his position maximally first.

6... $\hat{Q}g8$ 7.a5 $\hat{Q}h6$ 8. $\hat{Q}e4$ g3 9. $\hat{Q}b5$ $\hat{Q}g8$ 10. $\hat{Q}b1$ $\hat{Q}h6$ 11. $\hat{Q}a6$ $\hat{Q}c6$ 12. $\hat{Q}a2$ Black resigned.

The following sharp endgame features an interesting, though not wholly error-free, struggle.

Perelstein – Vepkhvishvili

Pushkin Hills 1977



7-24

W

Who stands better? The black a-pawn could become very dangerous, while White will soon create a

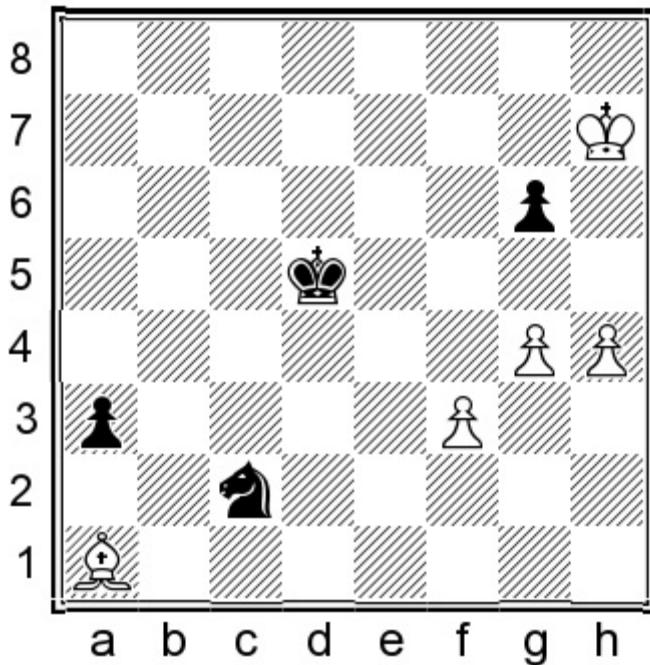
kingside passed pawn. In such sharp positions, the bishop is usually stronger than the knight, which is why Perelstein did not go in for the drawing line 1.h5 gxh5 2. \mathbb{Q} xh5 \mathbb{Q} e3 3.g4 a3 4. \mathbb{Q} h6 \mathbb{Q} c2 5. \mathbb{Q} xh7! \mathbb{Q} xa1 6.g5 a2 7.g6=

1. \mathbb{Q} h6 \mathbb{Q} e3 2.g4 a3?!

The accurate 2... \mathbb{Q} g2! 3.h5 gxh5 would have led to a draw. Black hopes for more, and does indeed achieve it – but only as a result of errors on the part of his opponent.

3. \mathbb{Q} xh7 \mathbb{Q} c2

Already pointless is 3... \mathbb{Q} g2 4.h5 gxh5 5.gxh5.



7-25

W?

The bishop can find no square on the long diagonal: 4. \mathbb{Q} f6? loses to the interference move 4... \mathbb{Q} d4, and 4. \mathbb{Q} c3? is met by 4... \mathbb{Q} c4. All that is left to hope for is his pawns.

The strongest move here was 4.g5!! After 4... \mathbb{Q} xa1 5.h5 a2 6.hxg6 \mathbb{Q} c2 7.g7 a1= \mathbb{Q} 8.g8= \mathbb{Q} + Black loses his knight. For example: 8... \mathbb{Q} d6 (8... \mathbb{Q} d4? 9. \mathbb{Q} g7+) 9. \mathbb{Q} g6+ \mathbb{Q} e7 10. \mathbb{Q} xc2 \mathbb{Q} h1+ 11. \mathbb{Q} g7 \mathbb{Q} xf3 12. \mathbb{Q} c7+ \mathbb{Q} e6 13. \mathbb{Q} b6+ \mathbb{Q} d7 14. \mathbb{Q} f6, with a winning queen endgame.

In Chapter 12, which is devoted to the theory of queen endgames, you will read that in such situations the only hope for salvation lies in the black king getting as close as possible to the corner square a1. Black should therefore play 8... \mathbb{Q} c5! 9. \mathbb{Q} c8+ \mathbb{Q} b4 10. \mathbb{Q} xc2 \mathbb{Q} h1+ 11. \mathbb{Q} g7 \mathbb{Q} xf3. The computer assures us that the resulting position is drawn; however, to demonstrate this evaluation right at the board is quite difficult – as a rule, the defending side errs somewhere along the way, and loses.

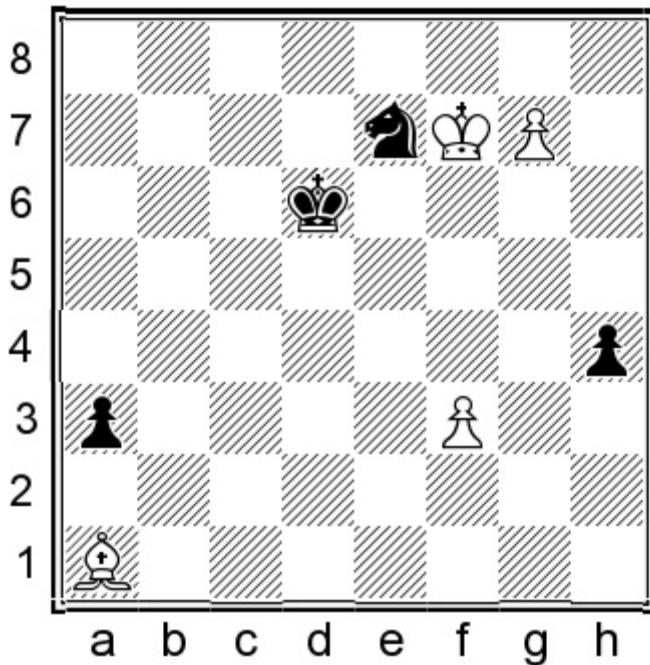
4.h5? gxh5 5.g5?

White still draws after 5.gxh5! \mathbb{Q} xa1 6.h6.

5... $\mathbb{Q}e3!$

Now it is Black who wins. On 6.g6 $\mathbb{Q}f5$, the knight will sacrifice itself for the g-pawn, and the bishop cannot stop both passed pawns (“pants”).

6. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ h4 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ 8.g6 $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10.g7



7-26

B

10... $\mathbb{Q}f5??$

10...h3 would have reached the goal much more simply.

11.g8= \mathbb{Q} ! h3 12. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ h2

There was also a more elegant solution, based on the idea of a deflecting knight sacrifice: 12... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (13. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6+!!$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}h6+!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ h2–+

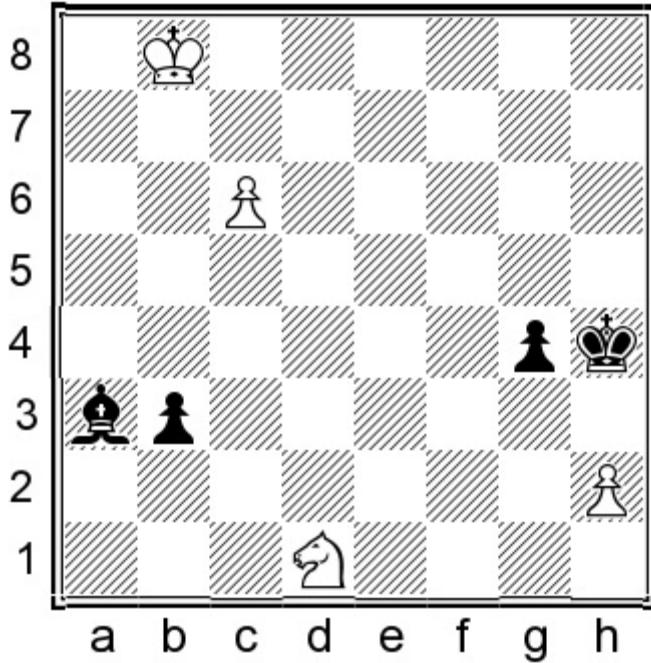
13. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$

As a result of the inaccuracies committed, the knight must repeat its earlier task of attacking the bishop, and then returning to battle with the enemy passed pawns. It turns out to be just in time.

15.f4 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 16.f5 (there is nothing else) 16... $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 18.f6 $\mathbb{Q}d4$

White resigned, in view of 19.f7 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (analysis by Dvoretsky).

Exercises



7-27

7/7

W?

Can White save himself?

Show/Hide Solution

7/7. L.Katsnelson, L.Mitrofanov 1977

The bishop clearly dominates the knight. White's hopes are based on the reduced material on the board and on the Réti idea that we have discussed in the chapter on pawn endgames.

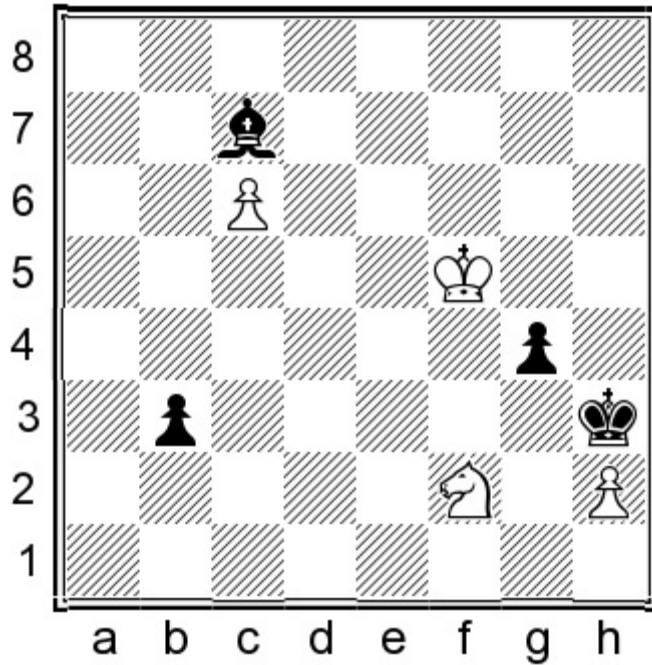
1.♗c7!

Both 1.c7? ♜d6 2.♗b7 ♜xc7 3.♗xc7 ♔h3

and 1.♗b7? ♜d6 2.♗b6 ♜xh2 (2...♔h3) 3.♗b5 ♜c7 4.♗c4 g3 lose.

1.♗c7! b2

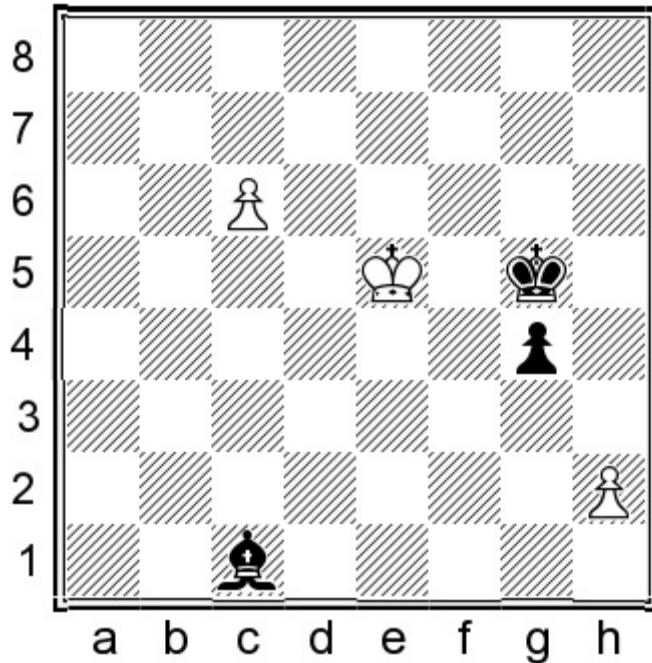
An immediate draw results from 1...♗b4 2.♗b6 ♜d6 3.♗b5 ♔h3 (3...♜xh2 4.♗c4) 4.♗c4 ♜xh2 5.♗xb3 g3 6.♘e3=. The consequences of 1...♗c5!? are less obvious: 2.♗d7 ♜b6 3.♗e6 ♔h3 (3...♔c7 4.♗d5 Δ ♜c4=) 4.♗f5 (the king must move away from the b3-pawn because the threat 4...♜xh2 has to be prevented) 4...♜c7 5.♗f2+ (a safer alternative is 5.♗e4! ♜xh2 6.♗d3 followed with 7.♘e3).



16-62

B

- (a) 5... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ b2 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b1=;$
 - (b) 5... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ g3 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3=;$
 - (c) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg4=$
2. $\mathbb{Q}xb2!$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ $\mathbb{Q}b4-$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (the only way to stop the c-pawn)



16-63

W

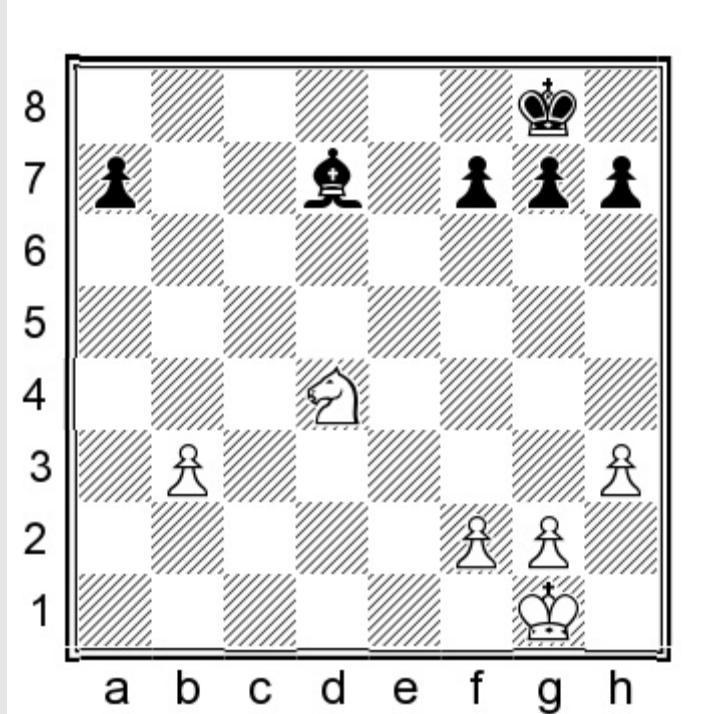
5.†e4 ♘f4 6.h4+! gxh3 7.†f3 †f5 8.†f2 ♘h2 9.c7=

An Open Position, A More Active King

The classic example of the exploitation of this type of advantage is the following endgame.

Stoltz – Kashdan

The Hague ol 1928



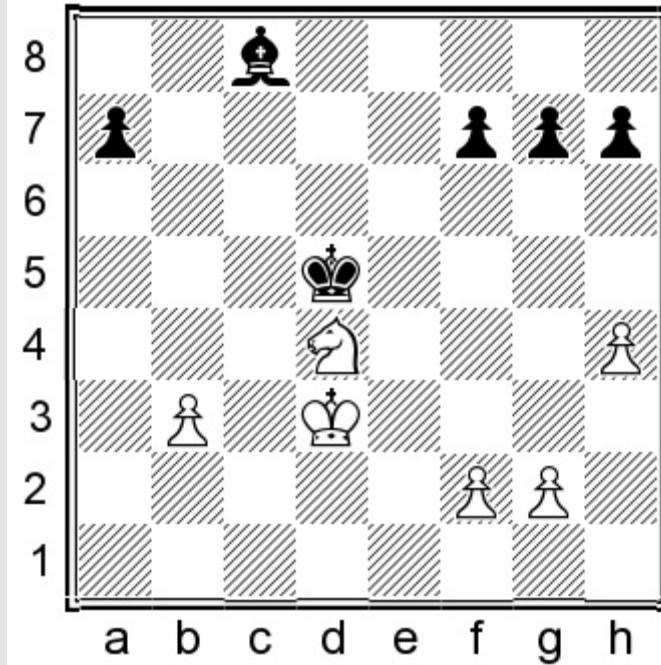
7-28

B

The position seems about equal, but it is not: Black has a significant advantage in fact. First, because his king succeeds in occupying the d5-square, and will therefore stand better than its opposite number. And second, because the position is open, the bishop is stronger than the knight (although you would not say so, at first glance).

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!$

After the bishop check at a6, the black king goes in the opposite direction to the one White's king retreats to.



7-29

W

6. $\mathbb{Q}f3?!$

6.f3 $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ should have been preferred. Here is Averbakh's suggested continuation: 8... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 9.g3 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ g6 14. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ a6 15. $\mathbb{Q}b2$, and it is still not clear how Black will break down his opponent's resistance.

6... $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

On 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ is called for) 8... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$, the a-pawn decides.

7...h6 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ (8.g3 is necessary) 8...g6? (8... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ gives good winning chances) 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2?$

9.f3 is stronger, taking the important e4-square under control.

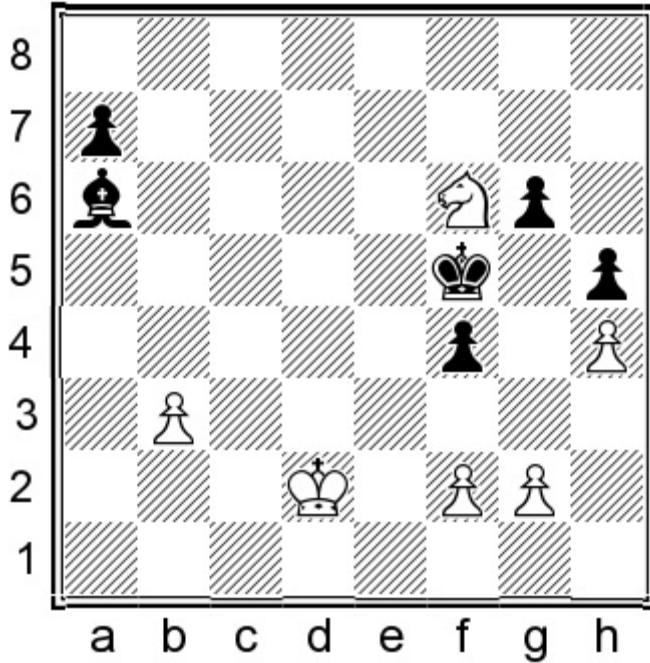
9... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ f5

Black has deployed his king to maximum effect. He intends to drive the knight from e3, and then to attack the g2-pawn with his bishop.

11. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ f4 12. $\mathbb{Q}g4$

Hopeless is 12. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (Δ 14... $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 14.f3 g5 15.hxg5 $\mathbb{Q}xg5!$, and the king reaches g3.

12...h5 13. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$



7-30
W

14. $\mathbb{Q}d7??!$

Once again Stoltz fails to show defensive grit. As Müller and Lamprecht indicate, Black's task would have been considerably more difficult after 14. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 15. $f3$, and if 15... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$, then 16. $\mathbb{Q}e2$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (the pawn endgame after 18. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $h4!$ 21. $b4$ $a6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ is lost) 18... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e2$, but Black still wins with 19... $a5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $f3+$ 22. $gxh3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4-$ (Burkhard Treiber).

14... $\mathbb{Q}c8!$

Excellent technique. On 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ decides; however, the text is no improvement.

15. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $g5!$ 16. $g3$

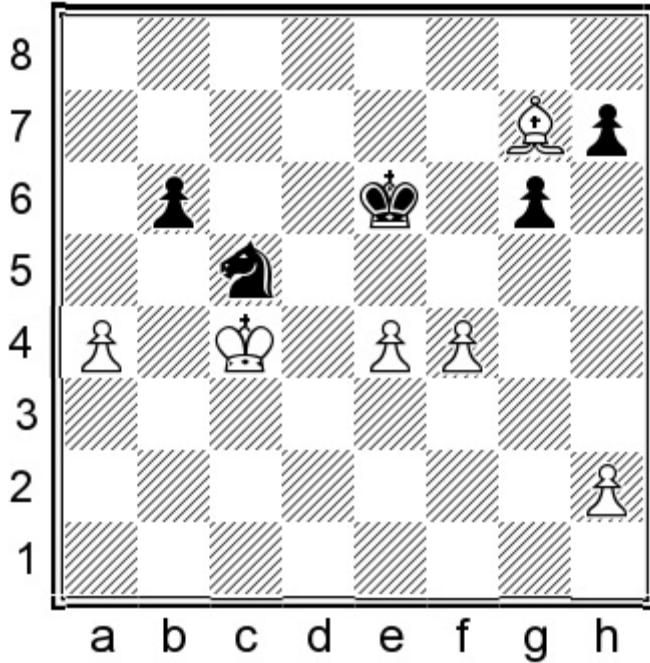
Forced: after 16. $hxg5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ the knight is lost.

16... $gxh4$ 17. $gxh4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 20. $b4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $h4$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $f3!$

Of course not 24... $h3?$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ and 26. $\mathbb{Q}f3$.

25. $b5$ $h3$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $h2$ 27. $b6$ $h1=\mathbb{Q}$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ White resigned.

Karpov – A. Sokolov
Linares cmf(2) 1987



7-31

B?

Which pawn should Black take? In principle, when you have a knight against a bishop, the task is made easier, the narrower the battlefield: all the pawns should be on the same side.

From this point of view, the logical move is 1... $\mathbb{Q}xa4!$ And in fact, this would have led to a draw:
 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ (3.e5+ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4.h4 h6 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ bxc5 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ g5=; 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc5+$ bxc5+ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ g5=) 3... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc5+$ bxc5 (Δ 5...g5) 5.h4 h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7.e5 h5 Θ =

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$

Sokolov probably counted on 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ =

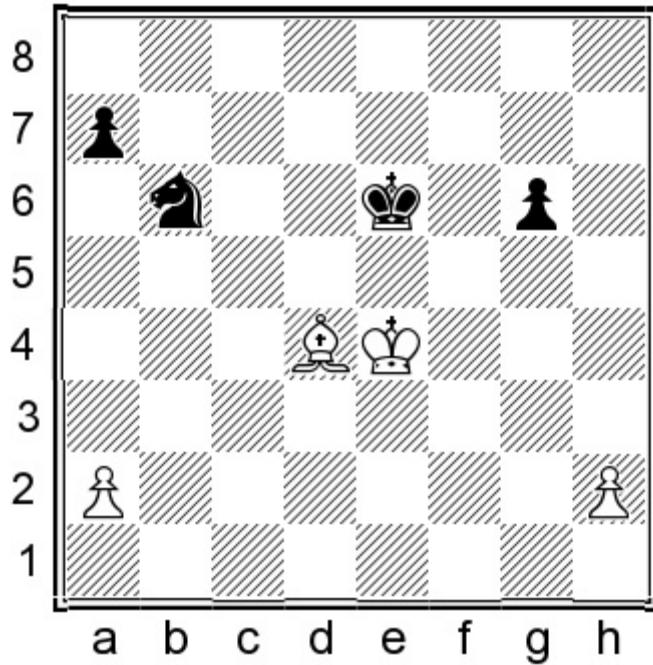
3... $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Now 3... $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ — no longer helps.

4. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Krnic – Flear
Wijk aan Zee 1988



7-32

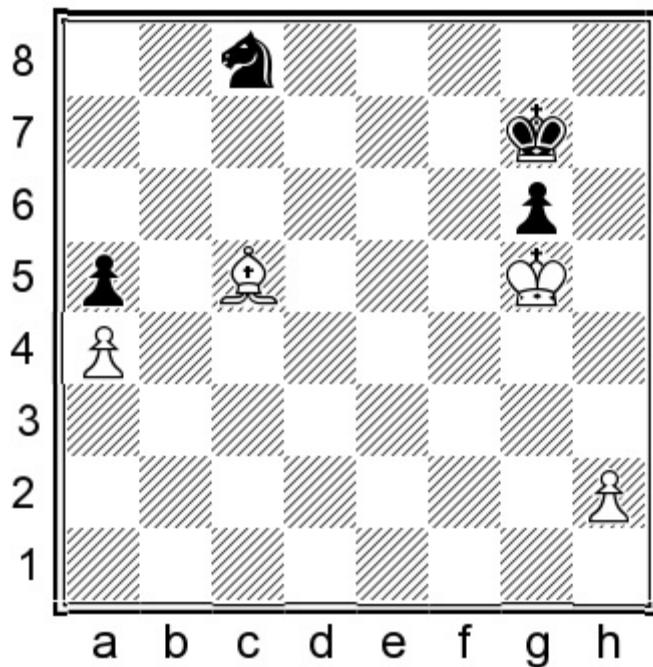
W

A draw was agreed here. Krnic probably just did not realize that the bishop is completely dominating the knight and he would therefore have every reason to expect a win.

1.♗f4 ♜c8 (1...♗f7 2.♗e5 or 2.♗xb6 axb6 3.♗e5 ♗e7 4.a4) **2.♗g5 ♗f7** **3.a4! a5!?**

White has a much simpler task after 3...♝b6 4.a5 or 3...a6 4.♝c5 ♗g7 5.a5.

4.♝c5 (cutting the knight off) **4...♗g7**



7-33

W?

5.h3!

“Steinitz’s Rule” in action! On 5.h4? ♘f7 6.♗h6 ♘f6, it is White who falls into zugzwang.

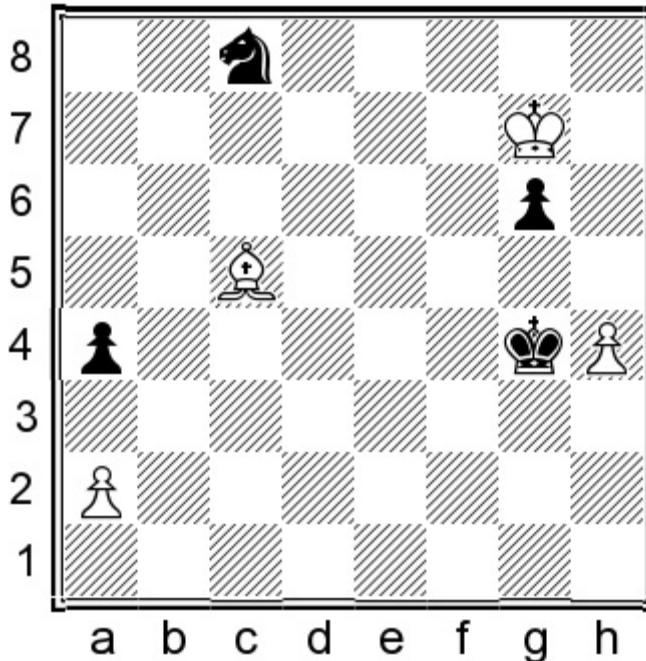
5...♘f7 6.♗h6 ♘f6 7.h4O (White takes the opposition, in order to follow up with an outflanking)
7...♗f5 (7...♘f7 8.♗h7 ♘f6 9.♗g8+–) 8.♗g7 ♘g4 (8...g5 9.h5) 9.♗f6!

On 9.♗xg6? ♘xh4 the black king would get back to the queenside in time: 10.♗f5 ♘g3 11.♗e6 ♘f4 12.♗d7 ♘e5 13.♗xc8 ♘d5 14.♗b6 ♘c4=

9...♘xh4 10.♗e6 ♘g4 11.♗d7 ♘f5 12.♗xc8 ♘e6 13.♗c7 ♘d5 14.♗b6+–

It is odd that Flear recommends 3.♗h6 (instead of 3.a4). The grandmaster even awards this move an exclamation point, although in point of fact it deserves a question mark, and, according to analysis by Zviagintsev and Dvoretsky, it probably lets the win slip.

3.♗h6? a5! (Flear examines only the weaker 3...♗b6 and 3...a6) 4.♗c5 (4.a4 ♗d6 5.♗g5 ♗c4) 4...a4!
5.h3 (5.♗h7 ♘f6 6.♗g8 g5 is no better) 5...♘f6 6.h4O 6...♗f5 7.♗g7 ♘g4

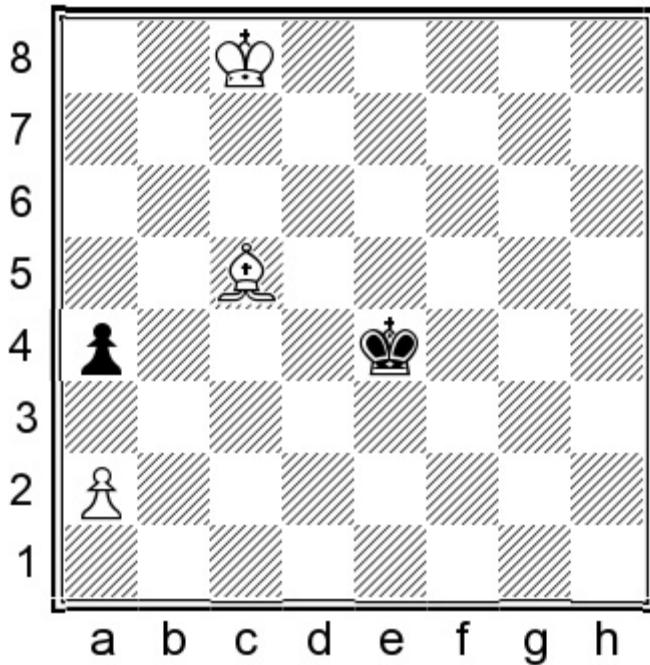


7-34

W

In order to understand what follows, we must recall the conclusions we reached when studying Rauzer’s positions with bishop and pawn vs. bishop (diagrams 4-2 and 4-4). After 8.♗f6 ♘xh4 9.♗e6 ♘g4 10.♗d7 ♘f5 11.♗xc8 ♘e6, Black has no trouble drawing with the white pawn on a3. Here, the pawn is on a2, which would give White a win (although a rather complicated one), if there were not a black g-pawn on the board. That of course changes the evaluation.

8. ♕xg6 ♕xh4 9. ♕f5 ♕g3! 10. ♕e6 ♕f4 11. ♕d7 ♕e4 12. ♕xc8



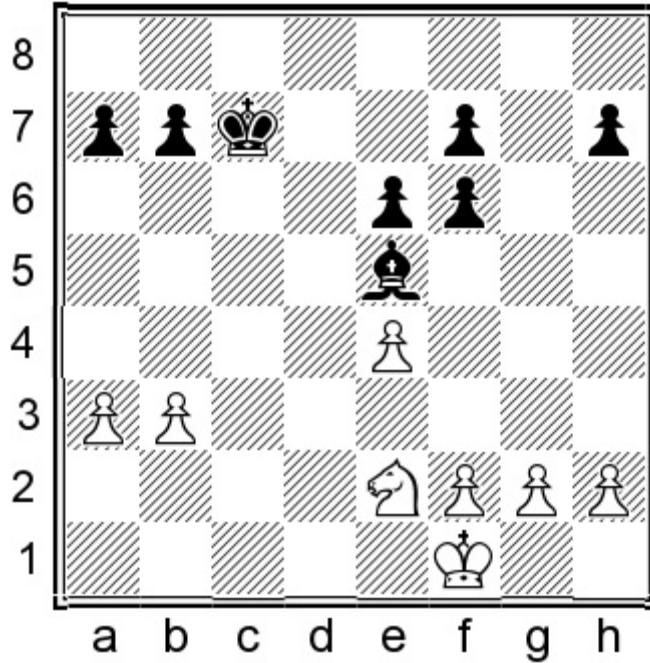
7-35
B?

Does White not win now? Not necessarily – not if his opponent can force the move a2-a3 and then get back with his king.

12... ♕d3! 13. ♕d7 ♕c2 (threatening 14...a3!=) 14.a3 ♕d3 15. ♕e6 ♕e4!

It turns out White cannot prevent the black king from reaching the drawing zone. For example, on 16. ♕e7, Black can play either 16... ♕f4 17. ♕f6 ♕g4! (17... ♕e4? is a mistake, in view of 18. ♕e5! with a theoretically won position) 18. ♕e5 ♕h5 19. ♕f5 ♕h6 20. ♕e5 ♕h7!= (but not 20... ♕h5? 21. ♕g7+–), or 16... ♕d4 17. ♕d6 ♕c4! (17... ♕e4? 18. ♕e5+– or 18. ♕h2+– would be a mistake).

Exercises



7-36
7/8
B?

Show/Hide Solution

7/8. Chekhover-Lasker, Moscow 1935

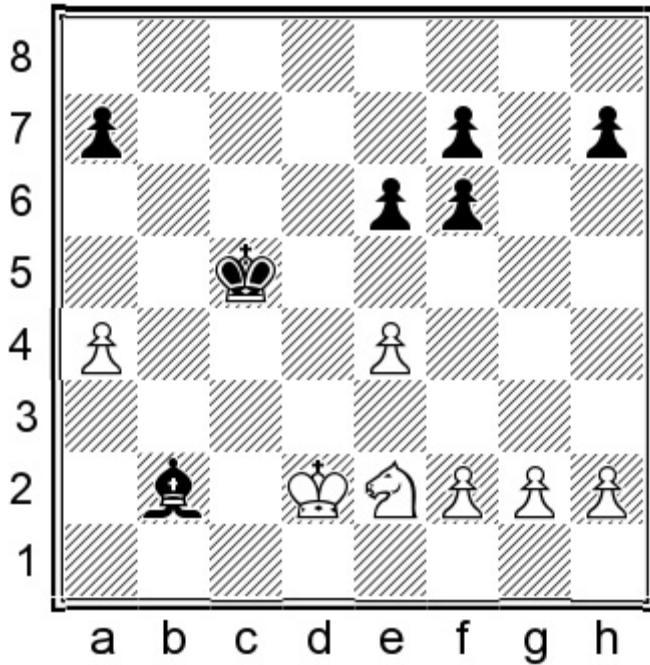
Black stands better (his bishop is obviously better than the knight) but he must play accurately. For example, after 1... $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ 2.a4 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$, White manages to defend his queenside in time.

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}c6?!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ b5 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$, Black must take into account 4.b4! $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ a5 (he has nothing else) 6.bxa5.

1...b5! 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ 3.a4 bxa4 4.bxa4 $\mathbb{Q}c6$

Black cannot eliminate the a4-pawn (4... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}a5?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 7.f4 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b3=$), therefore the king goes to the center.

5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$



16-64

W

If 6. $\hat{Q}c2$, then 6... $\hat{Q}d4!$ 7. $f3$ $\hat{Q}c4!$ 8. $\hat{Q}xd4$ $\hat{Q}xd4$ 9. $\hat{Q}b3$ $a5!-+$

The game continued 6. $\hat{Q}c3$ $\hat{Q}b4$ 7. $\hat{Q}b5$ $a5$

7... $a6!?$ 8. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{Q}xa4$ 9. $\hat{Q}xf7$ (9. $\hat{Q}c2$ $\hat{Q}e5$) 9... $\hat{Q}b3$ was probably more precise. As Müller indicates, White could have answered the text with 8. $\hat{Q}d3!$ because 8... $\hat{Q}xa4$ 9. $\hat{Q}c4$ traps the king on the edge of the board, making it extremely difficult for his opponent to make the most of his advantage.

8. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{Q}xa4$ 9. $\hat{Q}c2$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 10. $\hat{Q}xf7$ $\hat{Q}xh2$ 11. $\hat{Q}d8$ $e5$ 12. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}g1$ 13. $f3$ $\hat{Q}c5$ 14. $\hat{Q}b8$ $\hat{Q}b5$ 15. $g4$ $\hat{Q}e7$ 16. $g5$ $fxg5$ 17. $\hat{Q}d7$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 18. $\hat{Q}f6$ $\hat{Q}c4!$ White resigned in view of 19. $\hat{Q}xh7$ $\hat{Q}e7$.

Defensive Methods with a Knight against a Bishop

Sometimes, an inferior position may be saved by tactical means – using ***knight forks***. But strategic methods are also often used. Let's enumerate the most important ones:

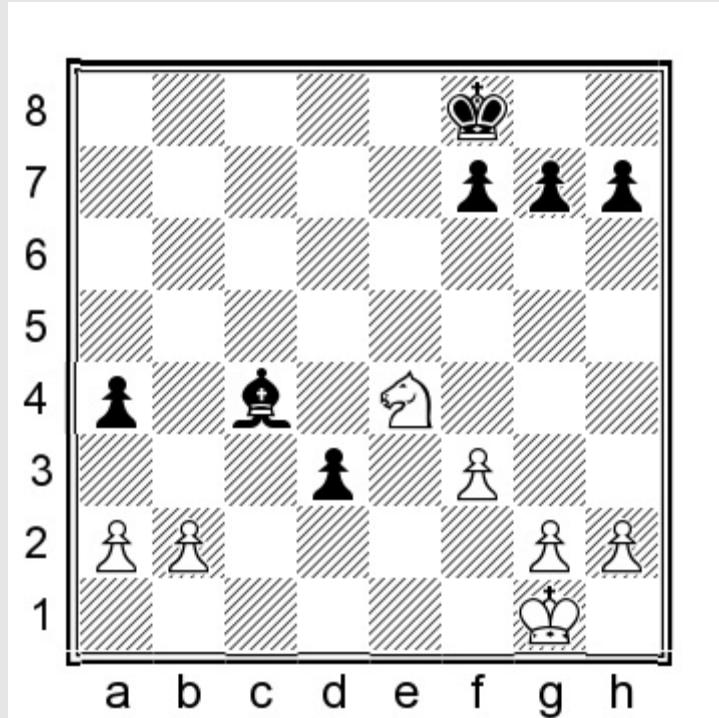
Blockading the passed pawns;

Fixing the enemy pawns on the same color squares as his bishop;

Erecting a barrier – the knight and pawns take control of a complex of important squares, preventing the incursion of the enemy king or at least making that incursion much more difficult;

Erecting a fortress.

These techniques are not usually employed singly, but in combination with each other. How this plays out, we shall see in the examples in this section.



7-37

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\Delta \mathbb{Q}e3$ would lead to a roughly equal position. Yusupov finds the best practical chance.

1...f5! 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3?$

His opponent gets greedy: by maintaining the balance of material, he loses the game. 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ was necessary (blockading the passed pawn) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 3.f4 (fixing the enemy pawn on the same color square as the bishop; on the other hand, 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f4 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ or 5.g3 was good, too) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5.g3 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$, and there appears to be no way to break into the fortress White has constructed.

2...d2 (threatening 3... $\mathbb{Q}e2$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f4!

White's position has become hopeless, since his king is cut off forever from the passed pawn.

4.b3 axb3 5.axb3 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6.g3 g5 7.h4 h6!

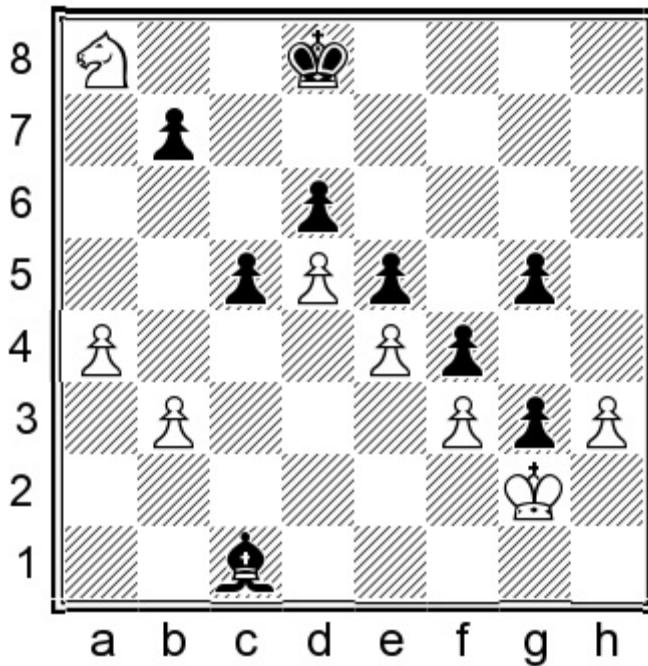
There is no need to calculate the variation

7...fxg3+ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ gxh4+ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$, since the text provides a much simpler resolution.

8.hxg5 hxg5 9.gxf4 gxf4

White resigned, in view of 10. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}b4+$

Nebylitsyn – Galuzin
USSR 1969



7-38

B?

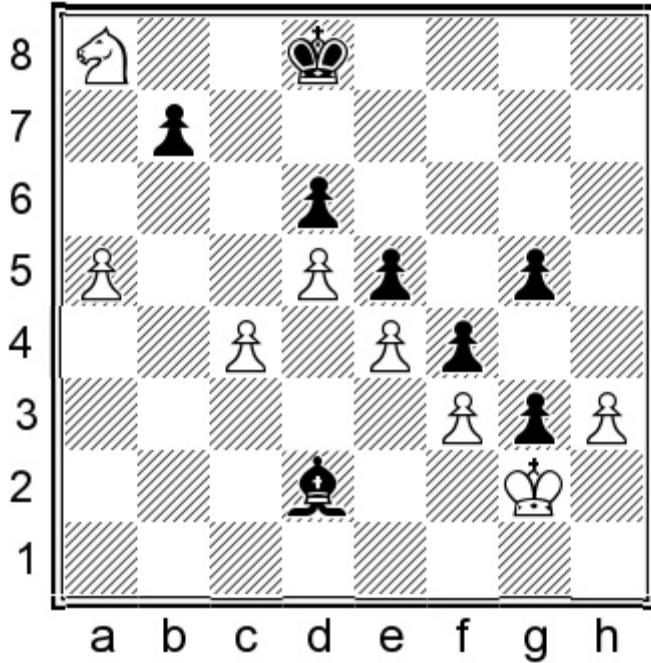
White's king is tied forever to the king's wing. The evaluation of this position hinges on whether the knight and pawns can erect an uncrossable barrier in the path of the enemy king.

1...c4?

A tempting, but incorrect pawn sacrifice. Black's goal is achieved by 1... $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$, when there appears to be nothing that can stop the transfer of the king to a6, followed by ...b7-b5. If 4. $\mathbb{Q}a3$, then 4... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$, followed by ...b7-b6 and ... $\mathbb{Q}b7-a6-a5$.

1...c4? 2.bxc4 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 3.a5 $\mathbb{Q}d2$

Or 3... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$; 6... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $dxc5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1=$ $\mathbb{Q}a6??$ 10. $d6+-$) 7.a6, and we are back in the game continuation.



7-39

W?

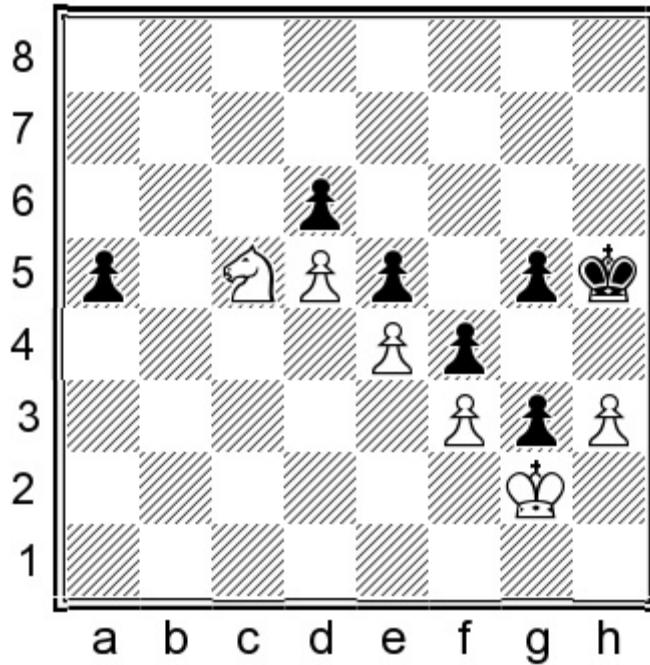
4.a6!!

After 4.♗b6? ♜xa5 5.♗a4 b6 (intending ...♘c7-b7-a6) 6.♗b2 ♘c7 7.♗d3 ♜d2! (it is important to prevent the maneuver ♗c1-b3), White loses.

4...bxa6 (4...♘c8?? 5.a7 ♜e3 6.♗b6+) **5.♗b6 ♜e3 6.♗a4 ♜d4 7.♗f1 ♜e7**

The queenside barrier is erected, and the king can no longer penetrate here. Black therefore tries his last chance: marching his king to h4, in an attempt to place his opponent in zugzwang. True, White will then play the c4-c5 break; but then Black can sacrifice his bishop and return his king to the queenside.

8.♗g2 ♜f6 9.♗f1 ♜g6 10.♗g2 ♜h5 11.♗f1 ♜h4 12.♗g2 a5 13.c5! ♜xc5 14.♗xc5 ♜h5



7-40
W

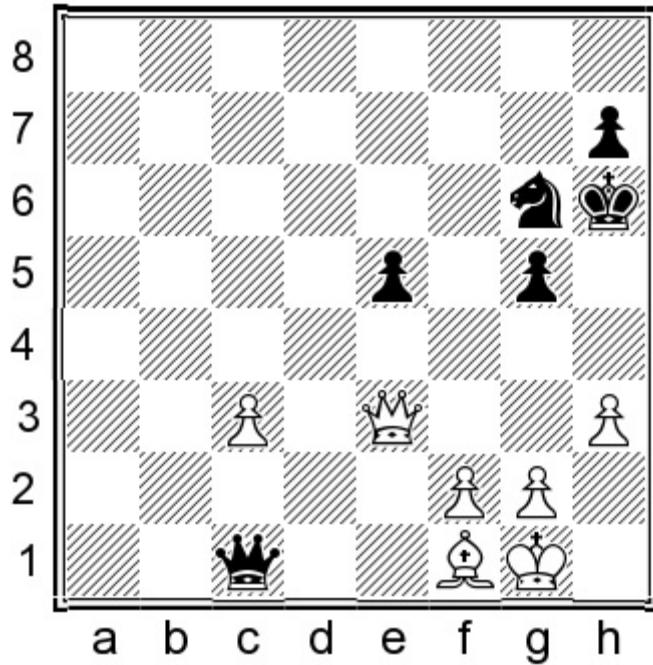
Here 15. $\mathbb{Q}b7?$ $a4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $a3-$ + would be a mistake. White must set up a fresh barrier.

15. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ $a4$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

Draw, since Black's king can advance no further.

Tragicomедies

Balashov – Smyslov
Tilburg 1977



7-41

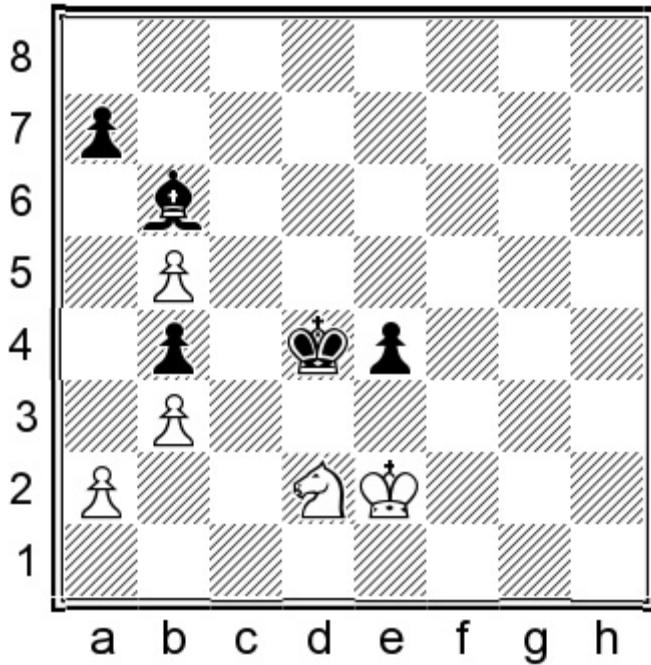
B?

The game continuation was: 1... $\mathbb{W}a1??$ 2.g3 (Δ 3.h4), and White won easily.

Black draws after 1... $\mathbb{W}xe3!$ 2.fxe3 $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ The knight moves inexorably to c5, from where it deprives the enemy king of the important squares d3 and e4 (barrier); after this, Black plays ... $\mathbb{Q}g7-f6$ and ...h7-h6. 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ is not dangerous, since there can be no bishop check from d3. If White's king heads for the b-file, Black defends the knight with his king from d6.

Diagram 7-42 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



7-43
7/9
W?

Show/Hide Solution

7/9. Spassky-Botvinnik, USSR ch tt, Moscow 1966

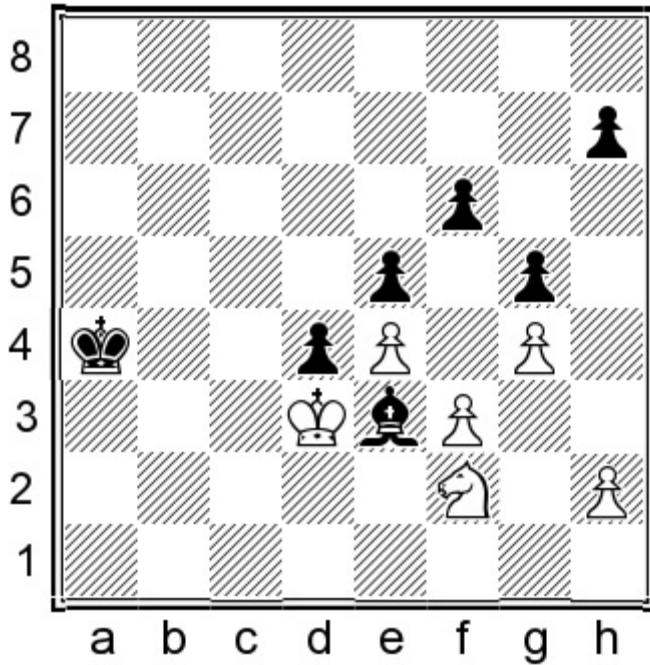
What can White do against a march of the black king to the a2-pawn? Botvinnik indicated the correct defensive plan: White should hold the enemy king on the edge by posting his own king on c2, while the knight must block the passed pawn from e2.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ e3 3. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$, and White has built an indestructible fortress.

Instead of 1... $\mathbb{Q}c3$, Black has a more poisonous possibility: 1... $\mathbb{Q}c7$! creating difficulties for a knight march to e2. But White manages to hold in this case, too: 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$?! $\mathbb{Q}c5$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$! $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ e3 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ =) 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$! $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (analysis by Averbakh).

In the game, however, 1. $\mathbb{Q}c4$? was played. Here the knight is placed too far from e2, thus the defensive plan that we have discussed does not work, and no other plan exists.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (Δ 3... $\mathbb{Q}d3$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ e3 4. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (the pawn ending after 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ is lost) 4... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ White resigned.



7-43a

7/10

W?

Show/Hide Solution

7/10. Petrosian – Fischer, Buenos Aires (m/6) 1971 (variation)

1.♘h1!

1.♘d1? loses to 1...♗b3 2.♘xe3 dxе3 3.♘xe3 ♗c3, and the opposition is decisive, and 1.♘h3? of course is totally hopeless.

1.♘h1! ♗f4 2.♗c2!!

Forming a barrier can sometimes be even more important than material. After 2.h3? ♗b3 3.♗e2 (3.♗f2 ♗e3 is similar) 3...♗e3! 4.♗d3 ♗b2 5.♗g3 ♗c1 6.♗h5 ♗d1 7.♗xf6 ♗e1 8.♗xh7 ♗f2, the black king penetrates, takes the h3- and f3-pawns, and wins the g4-pawn by zugzwang.

2...♗xh2 3.♗f2 ♗g3 4.♗d3 ♗b5

4...♗a3 5.♗c5 ♗b4 6.♗d7 ♗c4 7.♗b6+

5.♗b3

Surprisingly, the white knight and king imprison the black bishop. Black does have one more plan: the king can walk to the kingside and prepare ...h5, but for this, the bishop will need to come back to d8, and White can prevent that.

5...♗c6 6.♗c2! ♗d6 7.♗d1! ♗e7 8.♗b4!

Having taken away the e1-square from the bishop, the knight can move to a more active post.

8... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$

9... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$, stopping the threat of ...d3.

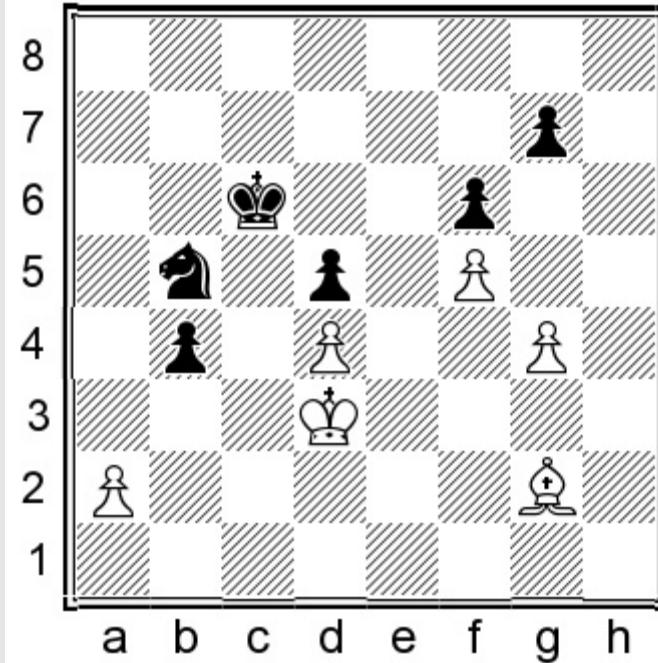
10. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ and Black cannot make progress.

The Knight is Superior to the Bishop

Domination and Knight Forks

Nepomniashchy – Polovodin

Leningrad ch 1988



7-44

B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}c3!$

The key to the position is that on 2.a3 $\mathbb{Q}e2!!$ decides: 3.axb4 (3. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ bxa3) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f4+$. Without this little combination, based upon a knight fork, there would be no win (with the bishop at f3, let's say, the position is drawn).

2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ b3!

Once again, Black has recourse to a fork, in order to advance his passed pawn (4. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5\check{O}$ loses at once). On the other hand, 3... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ b3 is strong, too.

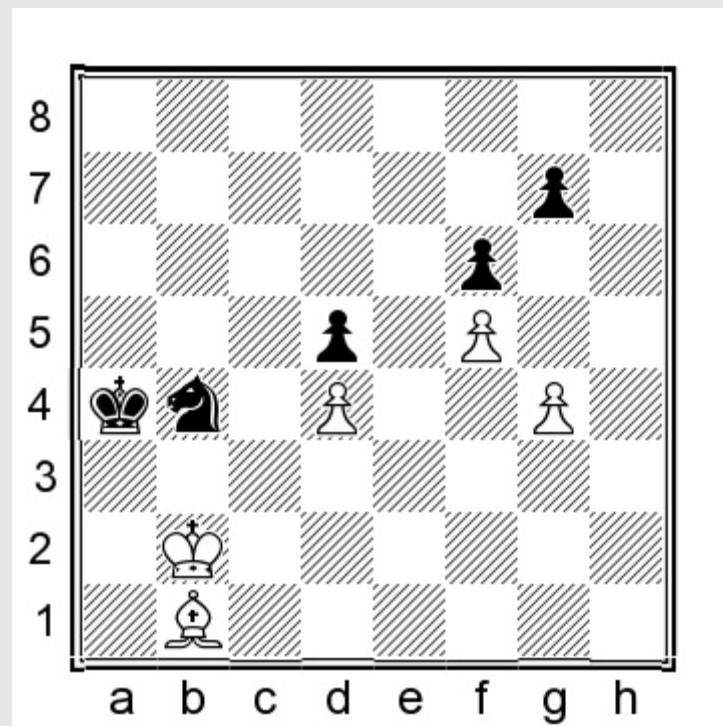
4.♔d2 b2 5.♕c2 (5.♔c2 ♔c3) 5...♗b4 6.♗b1 ♕b6!

An outstanding loss of tempo! The straightforward 6...♔b5? 7.♔c3>O 7...♗c6 (7...♔a4 8.♔xb2=) 8.♔a2 ♔e7 9.♔b3 leads to a draw.

7.♔c3 ♕b5>O 8.♔b3 (8.♔xb2 ♕c4+) 8...♗c6 9.♔c3

9.♔d3+ ♔a5 10.♔xb2 ♕b4+ is no better.

9...♔a4 10.♔xb2 (10.♔a2 ♔a3) 10...♗b4!O (but not 10...♗xd4? 11.♔a2)



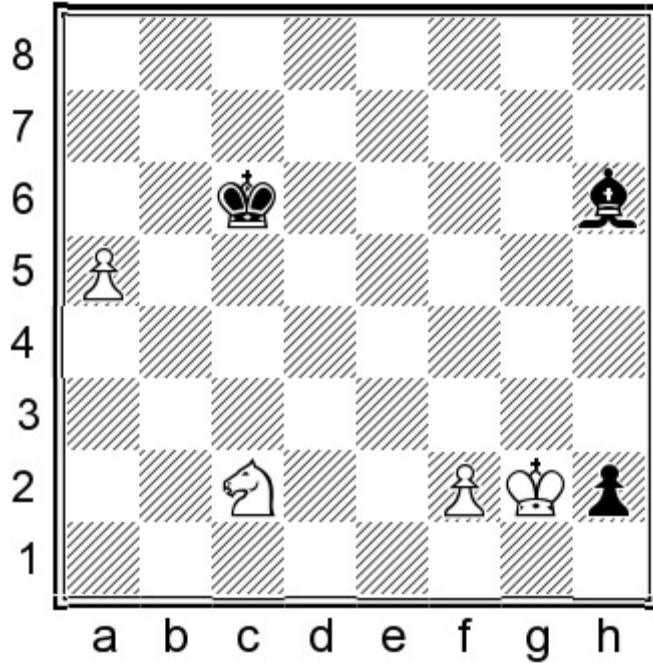
7-45

W

A picturesque domination of the knight over the bishop! Note that the knight takes away only three of the bishop's squares. Another is controlled by the d5-pawn (the pawns' placement on the squares of the same color as the opposing bishop is one of the means of restricting its mobility). But the chief blame for White's helplessness lies with his own kingside pawns, placed on squares the same color as his bishop, and turning it "bad."

11.♔c3 ♔a3>O White resigned.

R.Réti 1922



7-46

W?

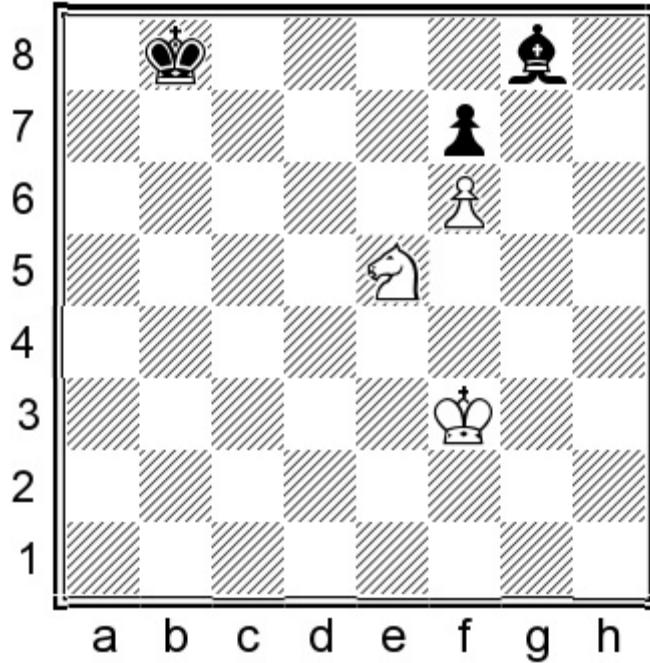
1. ♜d4+! ♜c5

On 1...♜b7 2.♜xh2 ♜a6 3.♜b3 ♜f4+ 4.♜h3 ♜b5 5.♜g4 ♜b8 6.f4 ♜b4 7.f5 (7.♜d4? ♜xf4) 7...♜xb3 8.f6 ♜b4 9.f7 ♜d6 10.a6+– (pants) is decisive. In this line, Black needs just one tempo; therefore, with the king already at c5, this line would not work: 2.♜b3+? ♜b5 3.♜xh2 ♜f4+ 4.♜h3 ♜b8 5.♜g4 ♜b4=, or 2.♜xh2? ♜f4+ 3.♜h3 ♜xd4 4.a6 ♜b8=

2. ♜h1!!○+–

There is not one square for the bishop where it would not be vulnerable to a knight fork.

Exercises



7-47
7/11
W?

Show/Hide Solution

7/11. S.Kozlowski 1931

1. ♜d7+! ♕c7 2. ♜f8!

The only way to imprison the bishop.

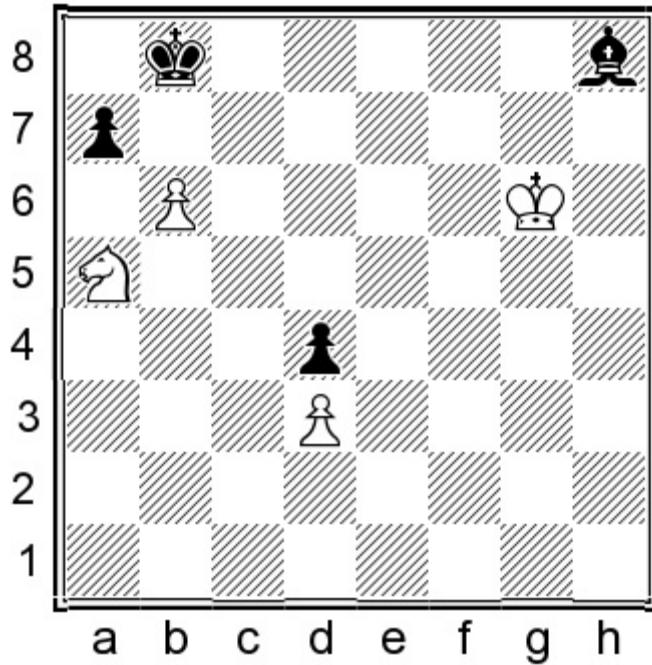
2... ♕d8

2... ♕d6 3. ♜g4! ♕d5 4. ♜h5! (detour around the mined g5-square) 4... ♕e5 5. ♜g5O 5... ♕e4 6. ♜h6+–;

2... ♕c8 3. ♜f4 ♕d8 4. ♜g5 ♕e8 5. ♜h5!+–

3. ♜f4 ♕e8 4. ♜g5 ♕xf8 5. ♜h6O+–

An amazing position: Black is lost in spite of his extra bishop!



7-48

7/12

W?

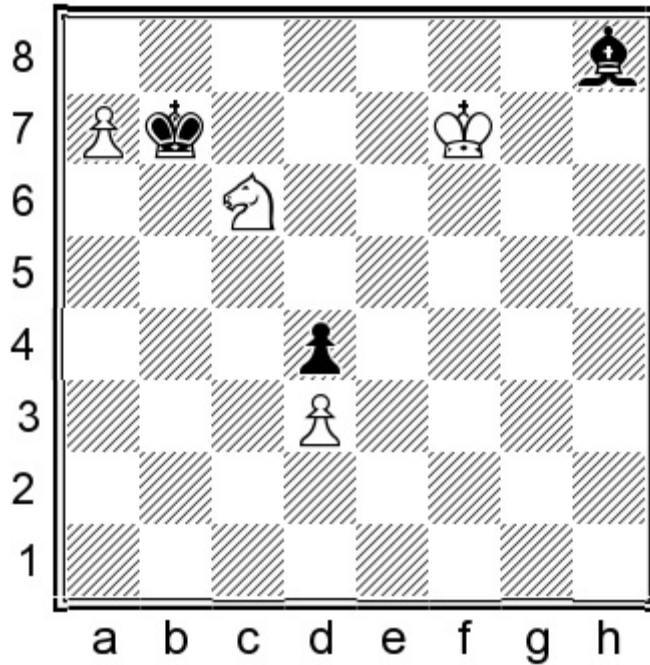
Show/Hide Solution

7/12. M.Liburkin 1947

1. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!$

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 2.bxa7 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7+-$, White's task would have been simpler.

2.bxa7 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$



16-65

W?

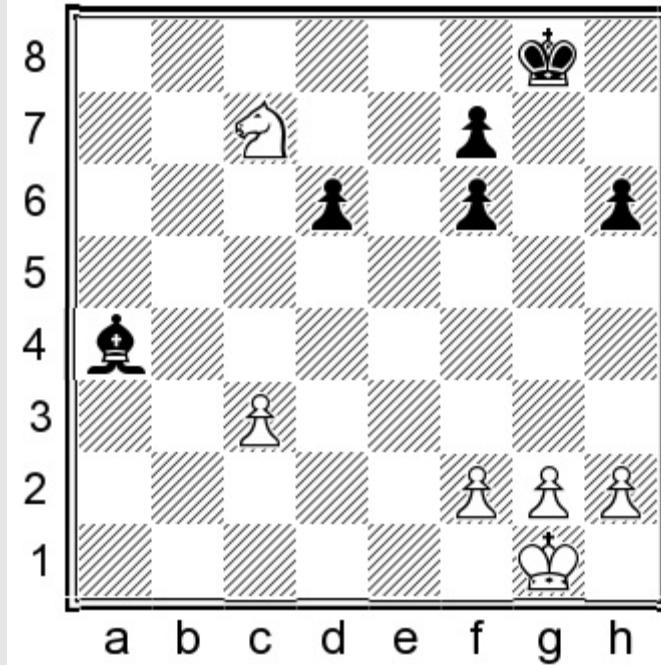
4.a8=♕+!! ♔xa8 5.♗g6 ♠ 5...♔b7 6.♗d8+ ♔b6 7.♗f7 ♔b5 8.♗xh8+–

Fixing the Pawns

We have already pointed out more than once how important it is to fix the enemy pawns on the same color squares as his bishop. Thus, we limit ourselves here to looking at two new examples.

Osnos – Bukhman

Leningrad ch tt 1968



7-49

W

The advantage, of course, is White's, since all his opponent's pawns are isolated and weak. But this might not have been enough to win, had White not found the following maneuver, forcing the dpawn to advance onto a square the same color as his bishop.

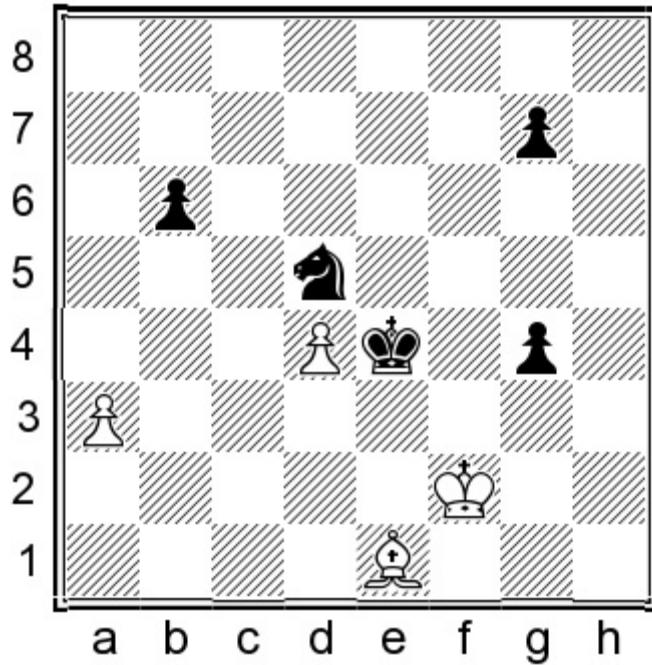
1. ♜d5 ♜g7 2. ♜b6! ♜b3 3. ♜c8! d5 4. ♜e7 h5 5. h4!

One more pawn fixed on a light square.

5... ♜f8 6. ♜f5 ♜c2 7. ♜e3 ♜b3 8. ♜h2 ♜e7 9. ♜f5+ ♜e6?? (a terrible blunder in a hopeless position)
10. ♜d4+ Black resigned.

Diagram 7-50 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



7-50a
7/13
B?

Show/Hide Solution

7/13. Adapted from Gerusel-Kestler, BRD ch, Mannheim 1975

1...b5!

Otherwise White plays 2.a4 and eventually a4-a5. But after this technically perfect solution, he is devoid of any counterchances.

2.♗g3 ♜f6! 3.♗c3 g5 4.♗b2 ♜f5! 5.♗a1 ♜h5+ 6.♗g2 ♜g6!

The king can go around, through h5, because White will not be able to push his d-pawn.

7.♗b2

7.d5 ♜f4+-+

7...♜f4+ 8.♗g3 ♜h5 9.♗a1 ♜d5 10.♗b2 ♜e3 11.♗c3 ♜f5+ 12.♗g2 ♜h4+-

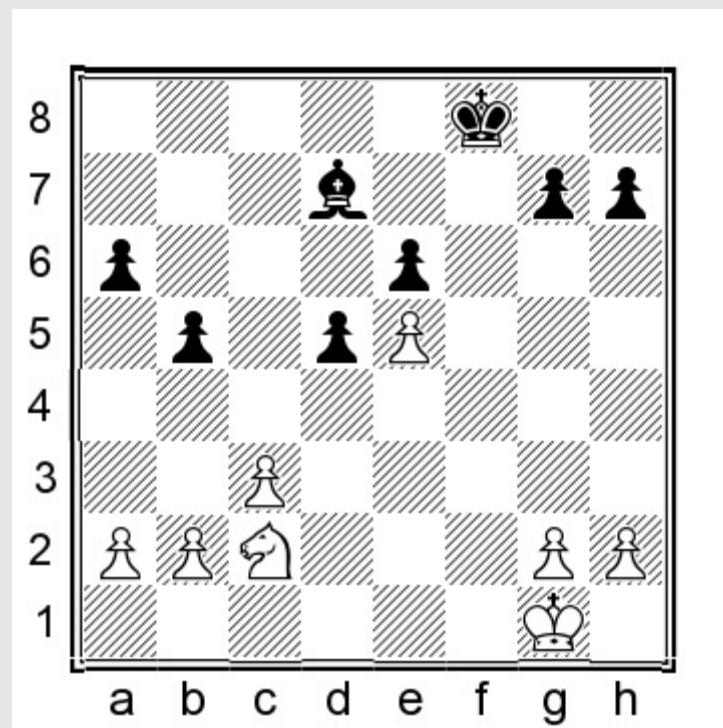
Closed Position, Bad Bishop

In positions with pawn chains, the bishop has limited mobility, and therefore is sometimes weaker than the knight. The chief reason for a bishop being “bad” is that its own pawns are fixed on the same

color squares as the bishop.

Zubarev – Alexandrov

Moscow 1915



7-51

W

The exploitation of the knight's indisputable advantage over the bishop is uncomplicated, but quite instructive. First and foremost, ***the king must be made as active as possible***, and there is an open road for him straight to c5.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$, White neutralizes his opponent's activity on the kingside by erecting a **barrier**: 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. g3!, after which the king continues its march to c5.

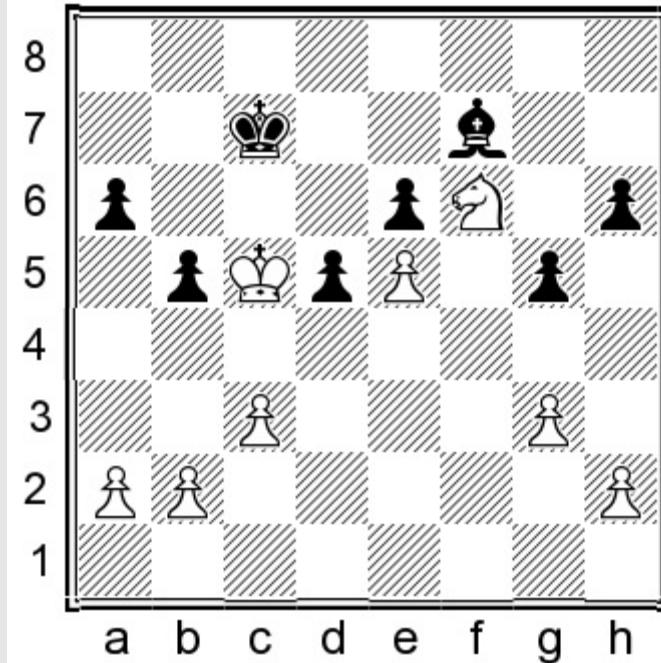
2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$

The next phase flows from the two-weaknesses principle. White cannot yet win on the queenside alone; therefore he sends the knight (via f4) to the kingside, to harry the enemy pawns. These in turn will have to be advanced, which will make them much weaker than they are in their initial positions.

5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 6. g3

It is useful to deprive the opponent of tactical chances (such as ...d5-d4).

6... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (Δ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h5$) 8... g6 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ (Δ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$) 9... h6 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ g5 11. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$



7-52

W?

13.♗g4!

One more black pawn must now be moved to the same color square as its bishop.

13...h5 14.♗e3 ♗g6 (14...h4 15.gxh4 gxh4 16.♗g2; 14...g4 15.♗g2 and 16.♗f4) **15.h4!**

Fixing the pawns!

15...gxh4 16.gxh4 ($\Delta \text{B}g2\text{-f4}$) **16...♝e4 17.♞f1 ♛f3 18.♝d2 ♛e2 19.♝b3 ♛g4 20.♝d4○**

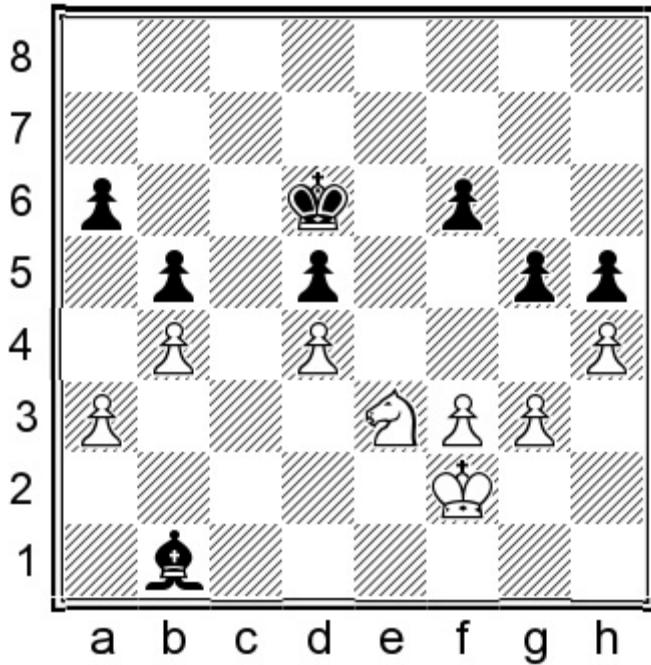
The concluding phase of White's plan is to create a zugzwang position. For this the knight needs to be brought to f4, tying the bishop to the defense of two pawns at once.

20...♛h3 21.♝e2 ♛f5 22.♞f4 ♛g4 23.b4

The end is achieved!

23...♚d7 24.♚b6 ♛f3 25.♚xa6 ♚c6 26.♝xe6 Black resigned.

Karpov – Kasparov
 Moscow wm (9) 1984/85



7-53

B?

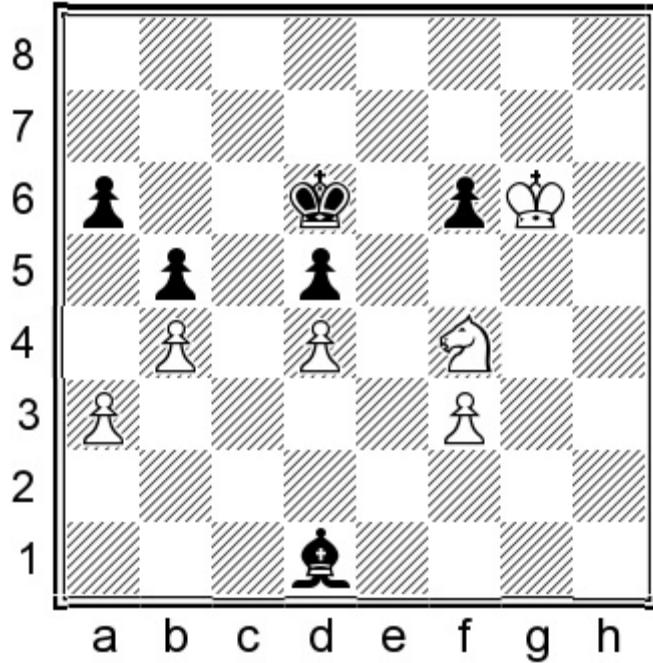
White's task here is considerably more complicated. For the time being, the king has no route into the enemy camp; he must continue by "*widening the beachhead.*" The interfering kingside pawns can be removed in two ways: by g3-g4, or by exchanging on g5, followed by f3-f4.

The best defense was 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ On 2.hxg5 fxg5 3.f4, Black can draw either by 3...gxf4 4.gxf4 $\mathbb{Q}g6$, or by 3...g4!? And after 2.g4 hxg4 3.hxg5, as John Nunn points out, Black must play 3...gxf3! (3...fxg5 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$, followed by $\mathbb{Q}g3$ and f3-f4, would be weaker) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ (4.gxf6 $\mathbb{Q}e4$) 4...fxg5 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6=$. White keeps more practical chances by refraining from 3.hxg4 in favor of 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg4!$? gxh4 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$!. And 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$!? gxh4 3.g4! is also worth looking into.

1...gxh4?

After home analysis, Kasparov decided to alter the pawn structure, judging (correctly) that after 2.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ White could no longer break through. Alas, neither he nor his trainers could foresee White's tremendous retort, securing his king a road into the enemy camp.

2. $\mathbb{Q}g2!!$ hxg3+ (2...h3 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ (threatening $\mathbb{Q}g7-e8-c7$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$



7-54
B?

9...♞e7!

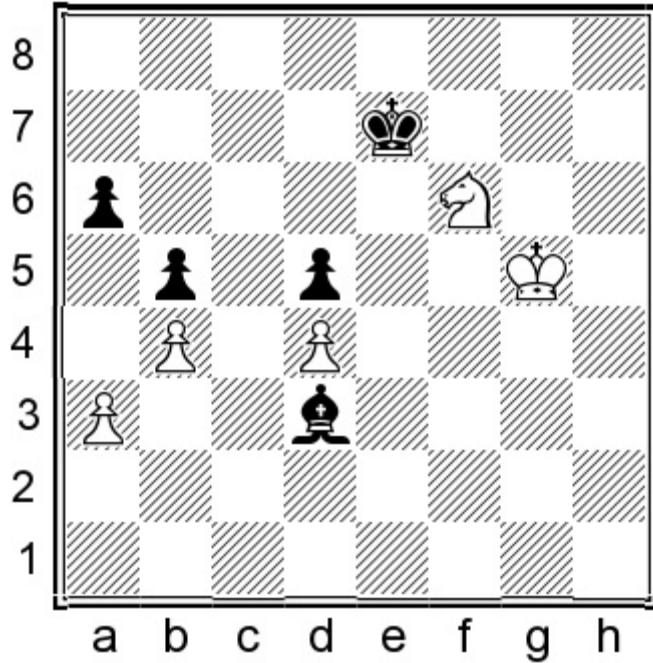
9...♝xf3 10.♝xf6 is absolutely hopeless. In such situations, we employ the *steady driving off of the enemy king*: the knight goes to f5, and after the king's forced retreat (since the pawn endgame is lost), White's king goes to e5 or e7. Then the knight gives check again, etc.

10.♝xd5+?

Unjustified greed – now Black gets the chance to activate his king, via the newly-opened d5-square.

10.♝h5! ♘xf3 11.♝xf6 was far stronger, for instance: 11...♞e6? 12.♝e8 (Δ 13.♝c7+) 12...♞d7 (12...♞e4+ 13.♝g5 ♔d7 14.♝f6+ ♜e6 15.♝xe4 dxе4 16.♝f4 ♜d5 17.♝e3O+-) 13.♝g7 ♜e7 (otherwise 14.♝f6) 14.♝f5, and White wins.

The best defense would be: 11...♞e4+! 12.♝g5 ♘d3!



7-55

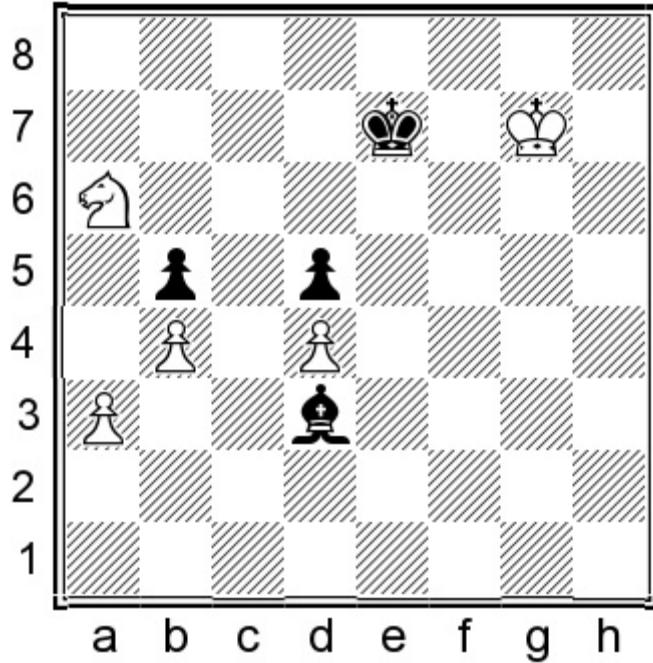
W?

White cannot gain control of the f6- or e5-squares with his king. Capturing the pawn is also unconvincing: 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ (14. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ or 14. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ does not change anything) 14... $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (intending $\mathbb{Q}e4-c5$) 16... $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$, and Black is apparently out of danger.

I thought that the variations I had found were sufficient to demonstrate that the position was drawn. However, grandmaster Mihail Marin suggested an extremely dangerous plan: 13. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ with the idea of continuing $\mathbb{Q}e5-c6-b8$.

I attempted to hold the line by 13... $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$, and now 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (16. $\mathbb{Q}b8??$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ and 17... $\mathbb{Q}c7$) 16... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ is useless, while winning the d-pawn by 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ would lead to the drawn position we already know. But Marin showed that White could play for zugzwang: 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!?$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (16... $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ and 18. $\mathbb{Q}b8$) 17. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g7\Theta$ (but not 20. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$) – Black loses the a6-pawn.

On the other hand, Black's resistance is not yet broken – he can lock the king in at g7 for a while by 20... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$



7-56
W

And White will not have an easy trip back: on $\hat{Q}h6$, there follows ... $\hat{Q}f6$, and Black's king advances. White should continue 22. $\hat{Q}b8$ $\hat{Q}c2$ 23. $\hat{Q}c6+$ $\hat{Q}e6$, when he has two ways to reach the goal:

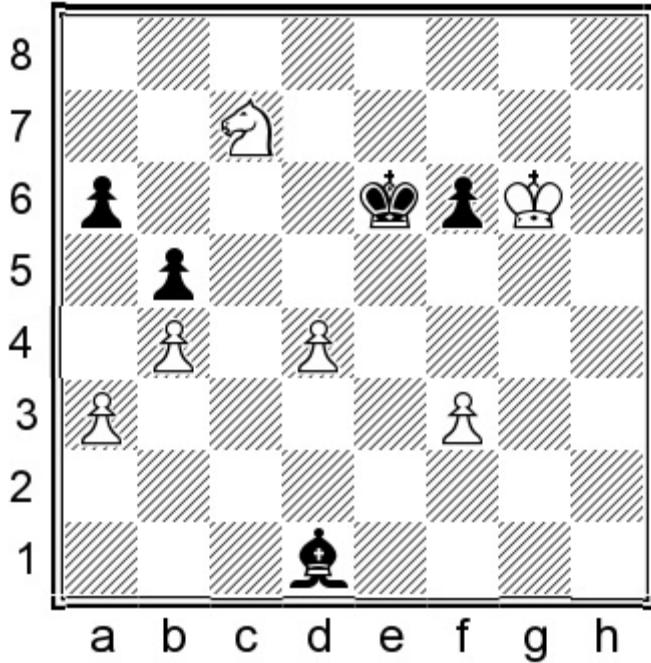
(a) 24. $\hat{Q}f8$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 25. $\hat{Q}a7$ $\hat{Q}d3$ 26. $\hat{Q}e8$ $\hat{Q}e2$ (26... $\hat{Q}f5$ 27. $\hat{Q}d7$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 28. $\hat{Q}c6+-$) 27. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 28. $\hat{Q}e7!$ (28. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 29. $\hat{Q}d8$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 30. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 31. $\hat{Q}c7$ $\hat{Q}d3!$ 32. $\hat{Q}b6$ $\hat{Q}c4$ would be weaker) 28... $\hat{Q}e6$ 29. $\hat{Q}d8$ $\hat{Q}d6$ (29... $\hat{Q}f1$ 30. $\hat{Q}c6$) 30. $\hat{Q}f5+$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 31. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 32. $\hat{Q}c8$ $\hat{Q}c6$ 33. $\hat{Q}b8+-$;

(b) 24. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}f5$ (after the passive 24... $\hat{Q}e7$ 25. $\hat{Q}g4$, White brings the knight to e3, then returns the king unhindered to its own side, and begins preparations for a3-a4, bringing the knight to c3 at the right moment) 25. $\hat{Q}f7$ $\hat{Q}e4$ (25... $\hat{Q}d1$ 26. $\hat{Q}c6!$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 27. $\hat{Q}e6$) 26. $\hat{Q}c6$ $\hat{Q}d1$ 27. $\hat{Q}e6$ (27. $\hat{Q}e7?$ $\hat{Q}d3$ 28. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{Q}c4$ 29. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}f3$ would be inexact) 27... $\hat{Q}h5$ 28. $\hat{Q}d7!$ (but not 28. $\hat{Q}d6?$ $\hat{Q}e8$ 29. $\hat{Q}e7$ $\hat{Q}xd4$ 30. $\hat{Q}xd5$ $\hat{Q}c4=$) 28... $\hat{Q}g6$ (28... $\hat{Q}e2$ 29. $\hat{Q}d6$ and 30. $\hat{Q}c5$; 28... $\hat{Q}d3$ 29.a4!) 29.a4! bxa4 30.b5 a3 31. $\hat{Q}b4+-$

10... $\hat{Q}e6$

10... $\hat{Q}d6!?$ was more precise, leading, after 11. $\hat{Q}c3$ (or 11. $\hat{Q}xf6$ $\hat{Q}xf3$) 11... $\hat{Q}xf3$ 12. $\hat{Q}xf6$ $\hat{Q}g2$, to a position examined in the last note.

11. $\hat{Q}c7+$



7-57

B?

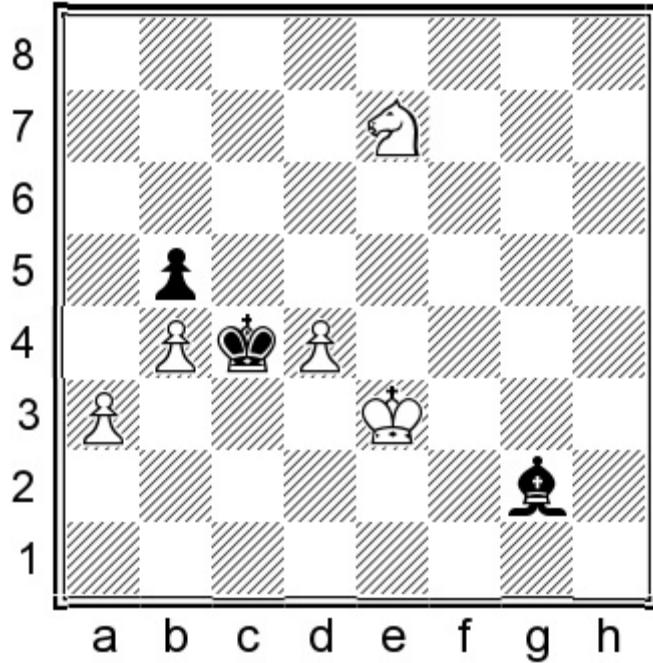
11...♝d7?

Now Black will be two pawns down. 11...♝d6 was stronger. If 12.♞e8+ then 12...♝e7 (12...♝d5 13.f4 is inferior) 13.♝xf6 ♜xf3 14.♝f5 ♜d6 15.♝f4 ♜g2 16.♝e3 ♜h3, leading to roughly the same positions as after 10...♝d6. And on 12.♝xa6 there follows 12...♜xf3 13.♝xf6 ♜d5.

12.♝xa6 ♜xf3 13.♝xf6 ♜d6 14.♝f5 ♜d5 15.♝f4 ♜h1 16.♝e3 ♜c4 17.♝c5 ♜c6 18.♝d3 ♜g2

18...♝e8!? 19.♝e5+ ♜d5 was worth considering. Even with two extra pawns, the outcome is still far from clear – Black's king is too active. He must only be careful not to go after the a3-pawn (when White will lock him in by putting his own king at c3).

19.♝e5+ ♜c3 (19...♝d5!?) 20.♝g6 ♜c4 21.♝e7



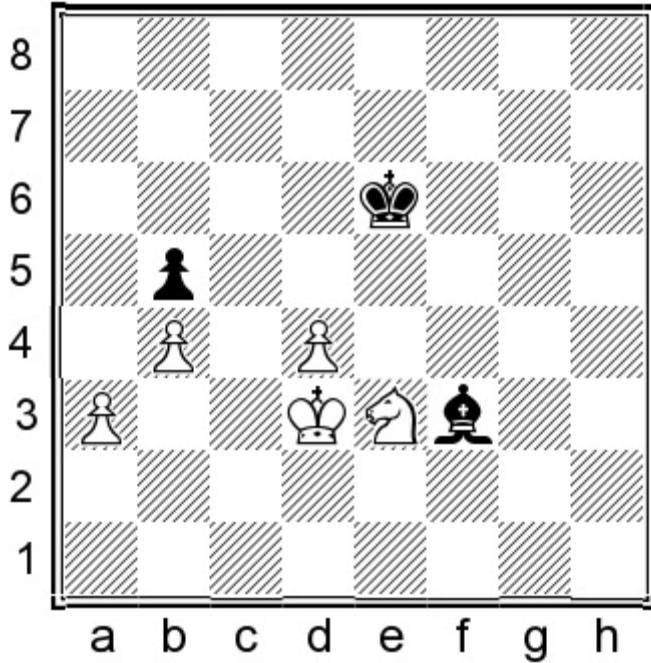
7-58
B?

21...♝b7?

21...♝b3? would not have worked in view of 22.d5 ♛xa3 23.d6 ♜h3 24.♞d5. However, it would be safer to keep the bishop in the lower half of the board: 21...♝h1! 22.♞f5 (22.d5? ♜xd5=) 22...♛d5. In this position, White's advantage is insufficient to win. The move Black actually played is a decisive mistake.

22.♞f5 ♜g2?

As Speelman and Tisdall indicated, neither 22...♝c3? 23.♞f4! ♜b3 24.♝e7 ♛xa3 25.d5, nor 22...♜c6? 23.♞f4 ♜b3 24.♝e5 ♛xa3 25.♞d6 ♜e4 26.♝g3 would save Black. He had to play 22...♛d5! 23.♞d3 ♜e6! For example, 24.♝e3 (24.♝g3 ♜g2 25.♝e4 ♜f1+ 26.♞e3 ♛d5 27.♞c3+ ♜c4) 24...♜f3! (it is important to prevent White's knight from reaching c3).



7-59
W

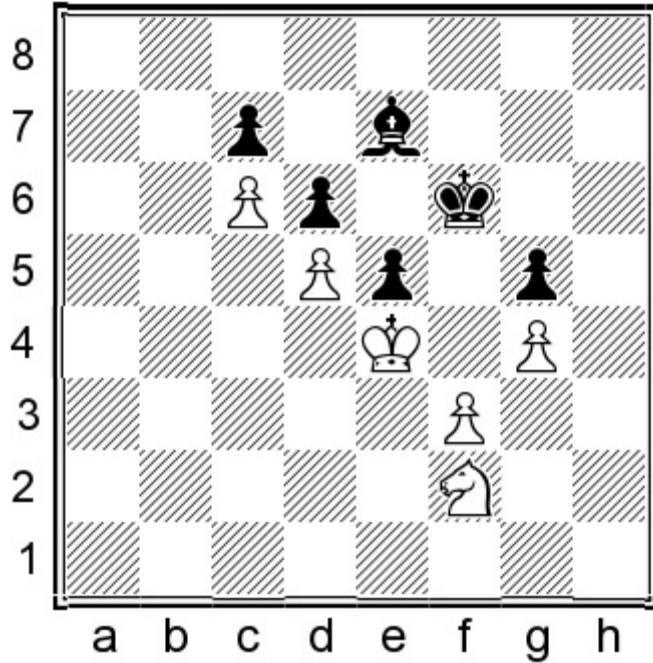
25.d5+ ♜e5! (but not 25...♝xd5? 26.♝d4 Δ 27.♝c5) leads to nothing. On 25.♝d2, intending to march the king into the enemy camp, Black does not respond with 25...♝f6? 26.♝d1! and 27.♝c3 (since Black no longer has 26...♝d5), but simply waits – when White's king reaches the eighth rank, the bishop will cut off its path to the queenside along the h3-c8 diagonal.

One interesting try is 25.♝c3 ♜d6! (otherwise 26.♝b3 followed by 27.a4 – Black cannot reply 26...♝c6, because of 27.d5+!) 26.a4 (26.♝b3 ♜c6 27.d5 ♜e8 28.♝c3 ♜e5=) 26...bxa4 27.♝c4+ ♜d5! (27...♝c7? 28.b5+–) 28.♝b6+ (28.b5 ♜e2 29.b6 ♜c6 30.d5+ ♜b7 31.d6 ♜c6=) 28...♜c6 29.♝a4 ♜b5 (or 29...♝h5). Paradoxically, two extra pawns are insufficient to win here – White has no way to strengthen his position.

And nevertheless, Karsten Müller has found a subtle means of getting the knight to the key c3-square. After 22...♝d5! 23.♝d3 ♜e6!, White plays 24.♝g7+!! ♜d7 (24...♝d6 25.♝e8+) 25.♝h5. On 25...♝d6, there follows, not 26.♝f4? ♜c8! and 27...♝f5+ but instead 26.♝g3(f6)!, and then 27.♝e4+ and 28.♝c3. And on 25...♝g2 (hoping for 26.♝g3? ♜e6! 27.♝e4 ♜f1+ and 28...♝d5), then 26.♝f4! ♜f1+ 27.♝e4 ♜d6 28.♝e3! (zugzwang) 28...♜c4 (28...♜c6 29.d5+ ♜d6 30.♝d4 ♜c4 31.a4+–) 29.♝e2+– (29...♝d5 30.♝c3+ when the c4-square, which is needed by the king, is occupied by the bishop).

23.♝d6+ ♜b3 24.♝xb5 ♜a4 25.♝d6 Black resigned.

Exercises



7-60
7/14
W?

Show/Hide Solution

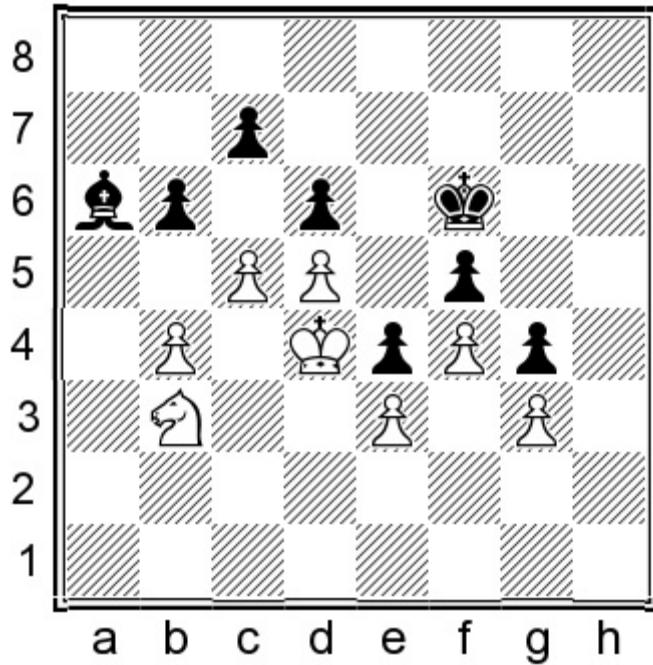
7/14. Popa-Galic, Bucharest 1938

White would have gladly brought his knight to e6, but there is no way to get to that square. If he attacks the c7-pawn, the bishop will protect it. Black is not afraid of zugzwang because he has two squares for his king: f6 and g6.

White cannot do without a king transfer to the queenside. The black king can only reach c8; White places his king on a8 and drives Black away with a knight check from a7.

1.♘d3! ♘f7 2.♘c4 ♘e8 3.♘b5 ♘d8 4.♘a6 ♘c8 5.♘a7! ♘f6 6.♗e4 ♘e7 7.♘a8! ♘d8 8.♗c3 ♘f6 9.♗b5+–

The remainder of the game was 9...e4 10.fxe4 ♘e5 11.♔a7+ ♘d8 12.♘b7 ♘c3 13.♘b5 ♘a5 14.♘xd6 (the simple 14.♘d4 Δ ♘e6+ was good enough, too) 14...cxsd6 15.e5 ♘c7 16.e6 ♘a5 17.e7+ ♘xe7 18.c7 ♘xc7 19.♘xc7 Black resigned.



7-61
7/15
W

Show/Hide Solution

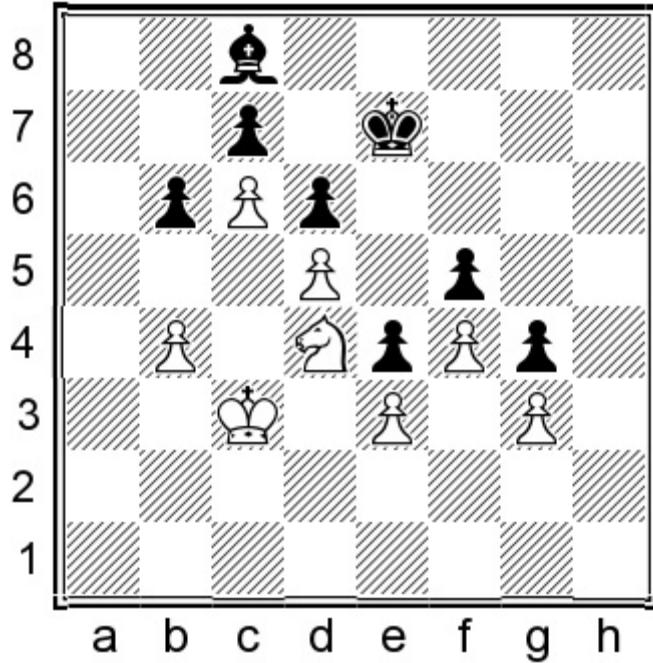
7/15. Botvinnik-Eliskases, Moscow 1936

Generally, it is useful to press Black even more by advancing the pawn to c6. However the immediate 1.c6? was met with 1... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ b5!, and White had to accept the draw because the line 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xc7?$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}d4=$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ is senseless.

After the game, Botvinnik found the correct solution: the advance c5-c6 should have been prepared by means of 1. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$

(a) 1... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ bxc5 (2...b5 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6+-$) 3.bxc5 dxc5 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ c4. The pawn ending that results after 5. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc4?$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7\mathbb{O}$ is drawn (the corresponding squares are c5/d7, d4/d6, c4/e7; the correspondence is favorable for Black now, and White cannot cede the move to him). However 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ wins.

(b) 1... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 2.c6 $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}e6$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$



16-66
W?

A try for zugzwang seems attractive now: 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7?$ Black responds with 5... $\mathbb{Q}a6!$ 6. $b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4\mathcal{O}$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7=$, and it suddenly becomes clear that Black has built a fortress, so the extra knight cannot be utilized.

4. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$

Planning a king transfer to b5 followed by a knight sacrifice on b6. Another winning method was suggested by Inarkiev: 4. $b5!$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ and Black is in zugzwang.

4... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5+-$ $\Delta \mathbb{Q}c2-a3-c4xb6$

Chapter 8

Rook versus Pawns

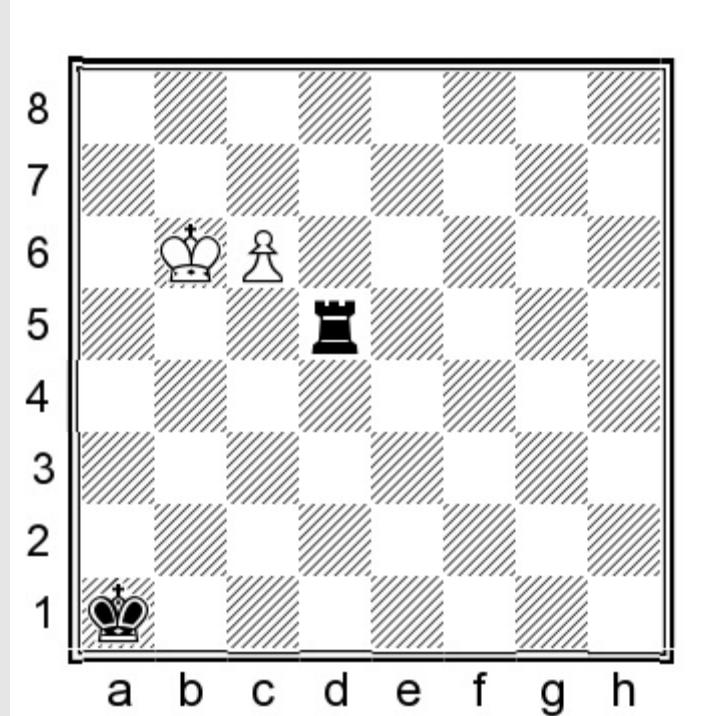
Rook vs. One Pawn

Practically all these endings are “rapid”; the outcome of the fight depends, as a rule, on a single tempo. We shall study typical techniques; mastering them does not free us from the necessity of deep and precise calculations, but makes this job much easier.

“Moving Downstairs”

First let us look at the rarest case, when a pawn is stronger than a rook.

G. Barbier, F. Saavedra 1895



8-1
W

1.c7 ♕d6+ 2.♔b5! (2.♔c5? ♕d1) 2...♕d5+ 3.♔b4 ♕d4+ 4.♔b3 ♕d3+ 5.♔c2

This maneuver, which helps the king to avoid checks, is what we call “moving downstairs.”

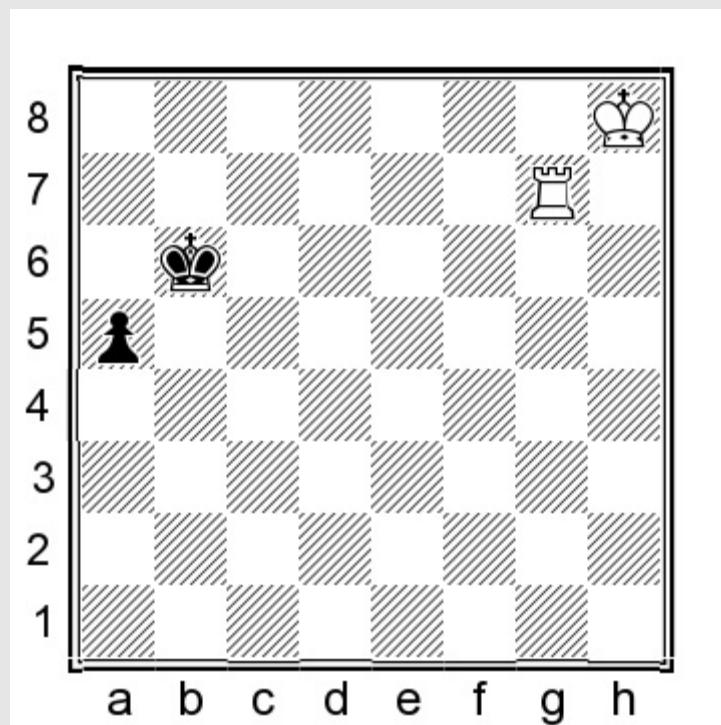
However the fight is not over for the moment.

5... $\mathbb{E}d4$!

If 6.c8= \mathbb{W} ? then 6... $\mathbb{E}c4+$! 7. $\mathbb{W}xc4$ stalemate.

6.c8= \mathbb{E} !! (Δ 7. $\mathbb{E}a8+$) 6... $\mathbb{E}a4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3!+-$

Cutting the King Off



8-2

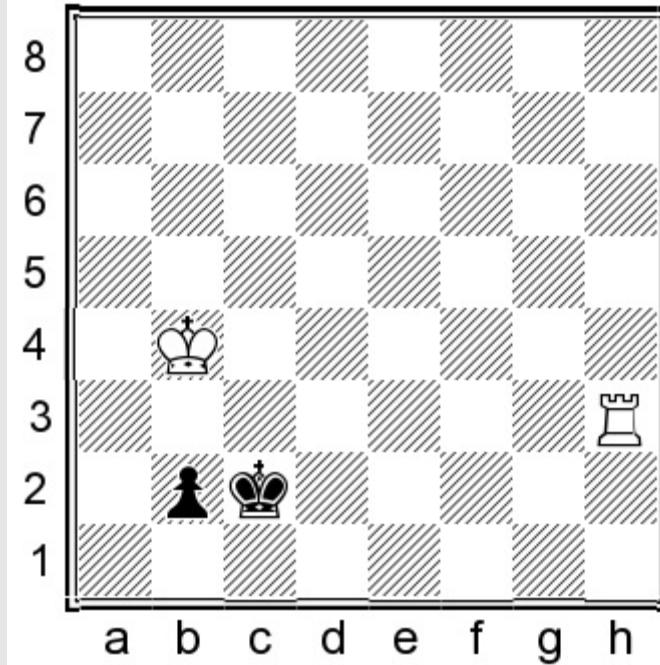
1. $\mathbb{E}g5!+-$

When the black pawn reaches a3 it will be eliminated by means of $\mathbb{E}g3$ (the pawn may even come to a2 and then perish after $\mathbb{E}g1$ followed by $\mathbb{E}a1$).

With Black on move, after 1... $\mathbb{Q}b5(c5)!$, the position is drawn, because cutting the king off along the fourth rank brings nothing.

In the starting position, let us move the black king to c6 and the pawn to b5. The strongest move is still 1. $\mathbb{E}g5!$, but Black can respond with 1... $\mathbb{Q}b6$. However the king transfer to the a-file loses time, and its position is less favorable there than on the c-file (where it “gives a shoulder kick” to the rival king). After 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ White arrives in proper time to stop the pawn.

Pawn Promotion to a Knight



8-3

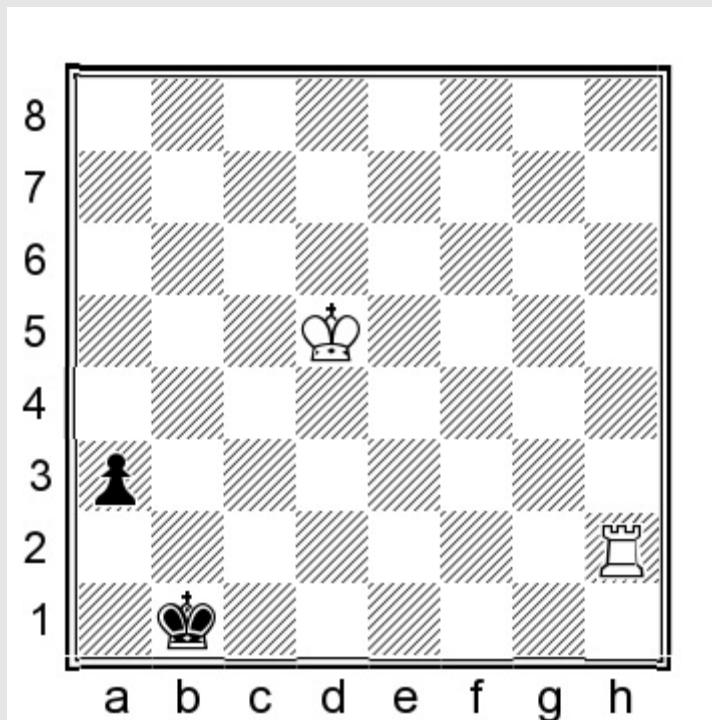
W

1. $\mathbb{R}h2+$ $\mathbb{N}c1$ 2. $\mathbb{N}c3$ $b1=\mathbb{Q}+!$ 3. $\mathbb{N}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 4. $\mathbb{R}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ leads to a draw.

It is worth mentioning that the erroneous 4... $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ loses the knight. ***In rook-versus-knight endings, one should not separate the knight from the king.***

Black can also save himself by stalemate: 1... $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ 2. $\mathbb{N}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a1!$ 3. $\mathbb{R}xb2$. However, with a bishop or a central pawn his only drawing possibility is pawn-to-knight promotion.

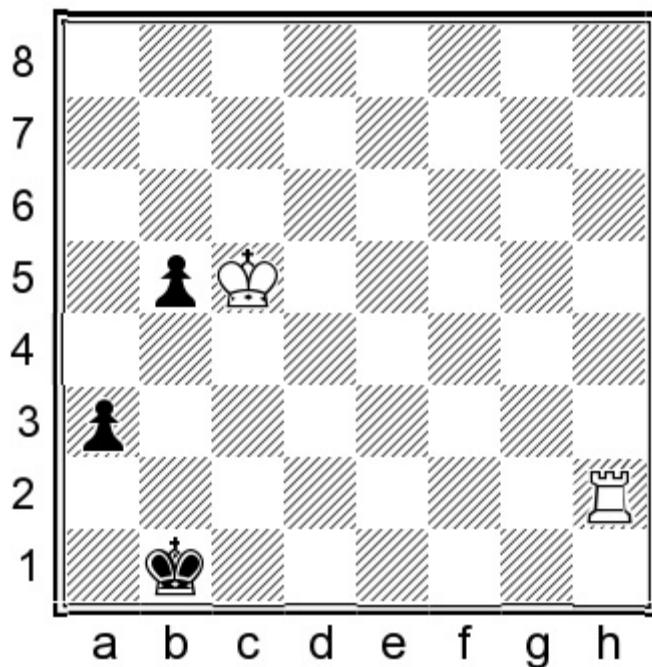
If he has a rook pawn instead, this method does not work.



8-4
W

1.†c4 a2 2.†b3 a1=‡+ 3.†c3 O+-

By the way, an additional pawn at b5 could not have helped Black.

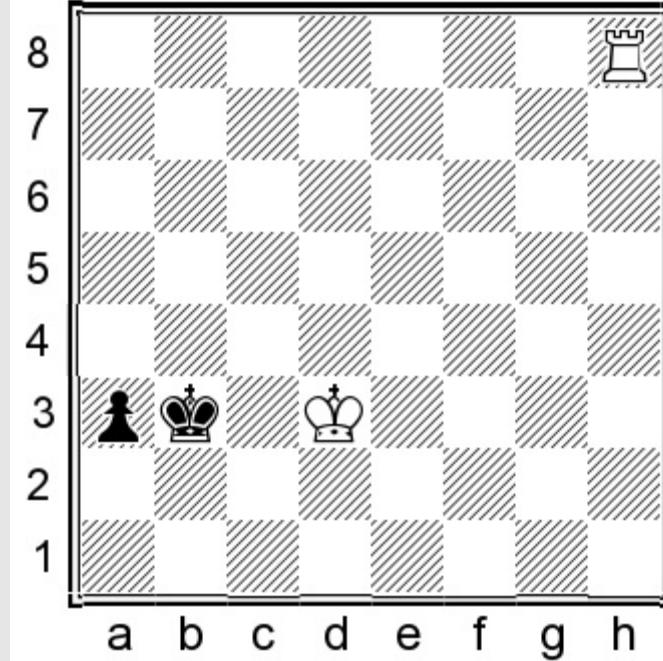


8-5
W

1.†b4 a2 2.†b3 a1=‡+ 3.†c3 b4+ 4.†xb4 ‡c2+ 5.†c3 ‡e3 6.‡h4! (another option is 6.†d3 ‡d5 7.‡h4 †b2 8.‡d4 and the knight, being separated from the king, will die soon) 6...†a2 (6...‡d1+ 7.†d2 ‡b2 8.‡b4 †a2 9.†c2 †a1 10.‡b8; 6...‡d5+ 7.†b3 †c1 8.‡c4+ †b1 9.‡d4) 7.‡a4+ †b1 8.‡e4 ‡f5 9.‡e5 ‡d6 10.†b3 †c1 11.‡c5+ †b1 12.‡d5+-

Stalemate

We have already seen a case of stalemate that has practical value (diagram 8-3). The following position is also worth keeping in mind.



8-6

B?

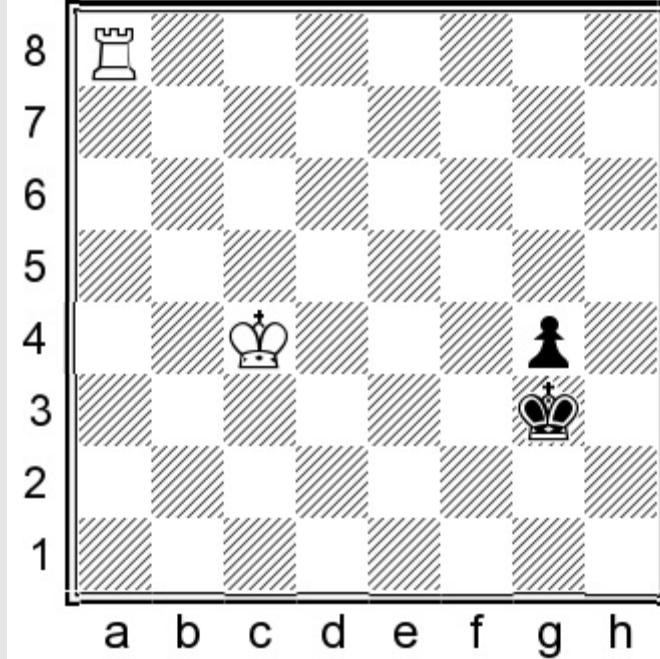
1...a2? 2.♕b8+ ♔a3 3.♔c2! a1=♕+ 4.♔c3 ♔a2 5.♕b7〇 is hopeless.

Correct is 1...♔b2! 2.♕b8+ (2.♕h2+ ♔b3!, rather than 2...♔b1? 3.♔c3) 2...♔c1! 3.♕a8 ♔b2 4.♔d2 a2 5.♕b8+ ♔a1! Draw

An Intermediate Check for Gain of Tempo

Korchnoi – Kengis

Bern 1996



8-7

B

Kengis resigned in this position, depriving his opponent of the opportunity to demonstrate an exemplary winning solution:

1... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$!

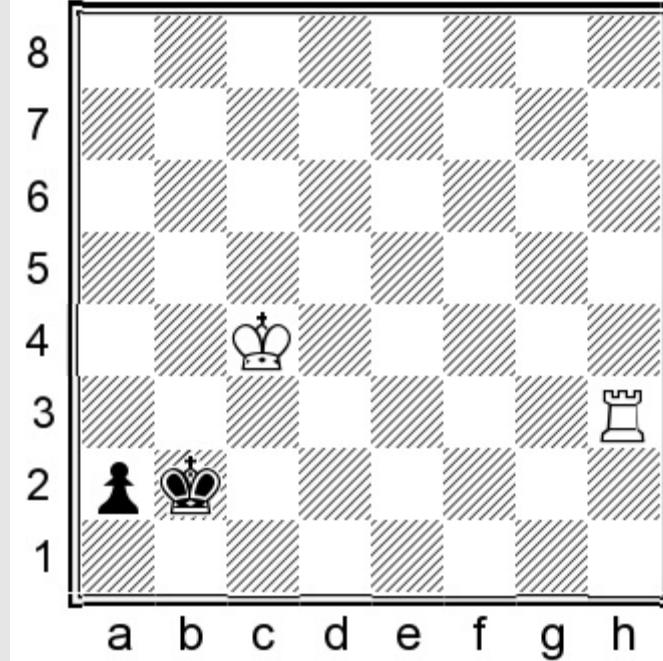
2. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ g3 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}e1!$ leads only to a draw.

2... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$

Because of the intermediate check, White succeeded in driving the opposite king back one square, from f2 to f3.

4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ g3 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}g2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2+-$

Shouldering



8-8

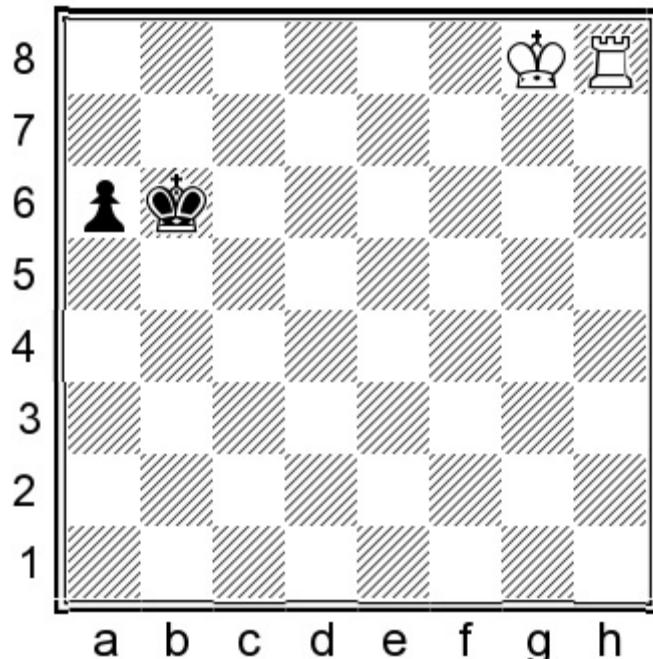
W

1.♔h2+ ♔a3!

Black achieves a draw by not allowing the white king to approach the pawn. 1...♔b1? is erroneous in view of 2.♕b3 a1=♕+ 3.♕c3#—. “Shouldering” is also often called “bodycheck.”

Let us look at a slightly more complicated case in the following diagram.

I.Maizelis 1950



8-9

B?

1...a5? is bad because of 2.♔h5! (cutting the king off).

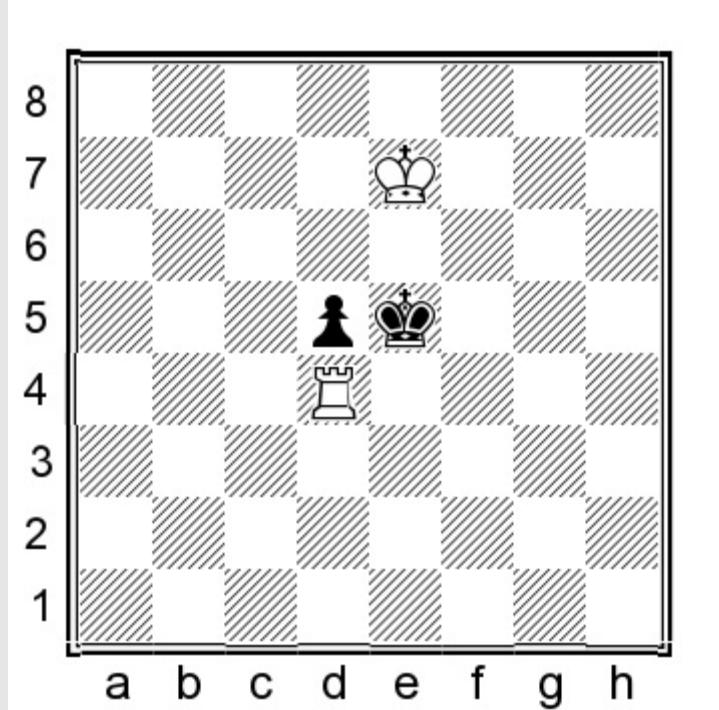
However 1...♝b5? 2.♝f7 a5 3.♝e6 a4 4.♝d5 is no better.

Only 1...♝c5! holds. Black does not allow the white king to approach his pawn.

Outflanking

Shouldering and outflanking ideas are distinctly represented in the following famous endgame study.

R. Réti 1928



8-10

W?

1.♝d2(d3)!! 1...d4 2.♝d1! ♔d5 3.♝d7!

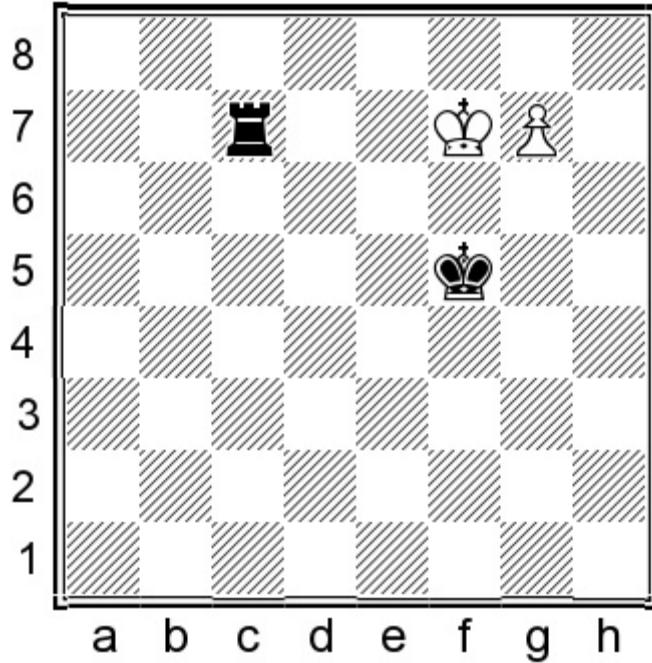
Black is in zugzwang: if 3...♝c4, then 4.♝e6 and if 3...♝e4, 4.♝c6.

1.♝d1? is erroneous: 1...d4 2.♝d7 (2.♝f7 ♔e4 3.♝e6 d3) 2...♔d5! (Black prevents an outflanking) 3.♝c7 ♔c5! (3...♝c4? 4.♝d6! d3 5.♝e5), and it is White who has fallen into zugzwang.

Tragicomедies

Neumann – Steinitz

Baden Baden 1870



8-11
W

1. ♔f8

The simplest way is 1. ♔g8! ♔g6 2. ♔h8=

1. ♔f8 ♔f6 2. g8=♕+! ♔e6 3. ♕h6 ♕h7 4. ♕g4??

As we already know, after 4. ♕g8! the game would have been drawn. Now White is lost.

4... ♕h4

4... ♕h3! could have won immediately.

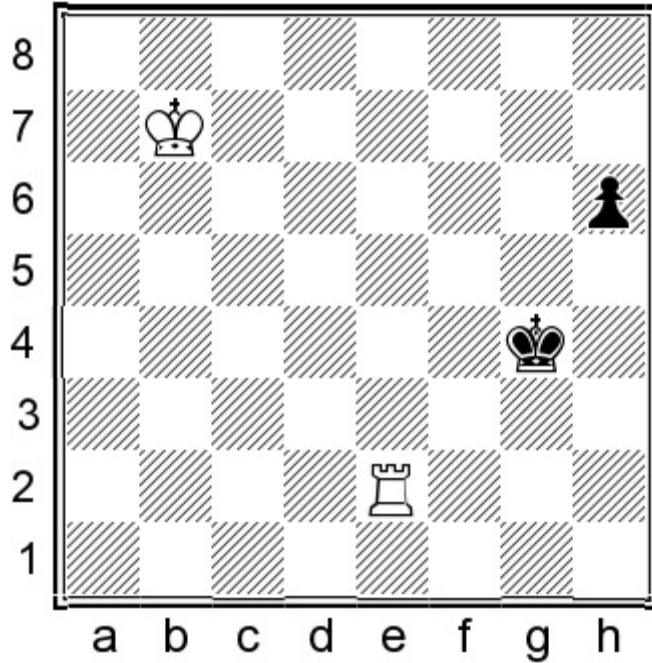
5. ♕e3 (5. ♕f2 ♕f4+) 5... ♕e4 6. ♕d1 ♕f4+ 7. ♔g7 ♕f3 8. ♔g6

8. ♕b2 ♔d5 9. ♕a4 ♕b3 Δ 10... ♔d4 and 11... ♕b4 makes no difference.

8... ♔e5 9. ♕g5 ♔d4 10. ♕g4 ♕f1 11. ♕b2 ♕b1 12. ♕a4 ♕b4 White resigned.

Fries-Nielsen – Plachetka

Rimavska Sobota 1991



8-12

W?

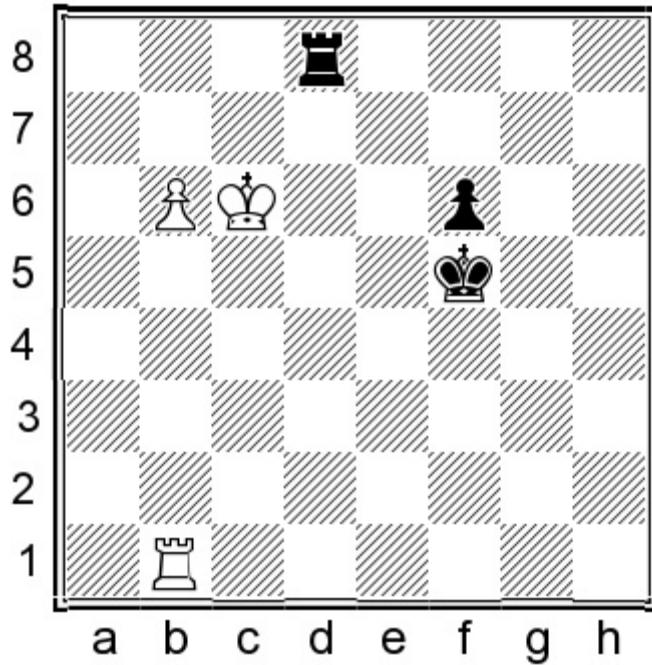
The actual continuation was **1. ♔c6? h5= 2. ♔d5 h4 3. ♔e4 h3 4. ♔e3 ♔g3 5. ♕e1 h2 6. ♔e2 ♔g2 7. ♕h1 ♔xh1 8. ♔f1** Draw.

1. ♕e8? is no better: 1...h5 2. ♕g8+ ♔f3 3. ♕h8 ♔g4 4. ♔c6 h4 5. ♔d5 h3 6. ♔e4 ♔g3 7. ♔e3 ♔g2! (rather than 7...h2?? 8. ♕g8+ ♔h3 9. ♔f2! h1=Q+ 10. ♔f3 ♔h2 11. ♕g7O) 8. ♕g8+ ♔f1!= or 8. ♔e2 h2 9. ♕g8+ ♔h1!=

White should have gained a tempo by means of the intermediate check 1. ♕g2+! ♔f4 (after 1... ♔h3, 2. ♕g8 h5 3. ♔c6 h4 4. ♔d5+– the black king, pressed to the edge of the board, is placed extremely badly) 2. ♕h2! ♔g5 3. ♔c6 h5 4. ♔d5 h4 5. ♔e4 ♔g4 6. ♕g2+ ♔h3 7. ♕g8+–

Alekhine – Bogoljubow

Germany/The Netherlands wm (19) 1929

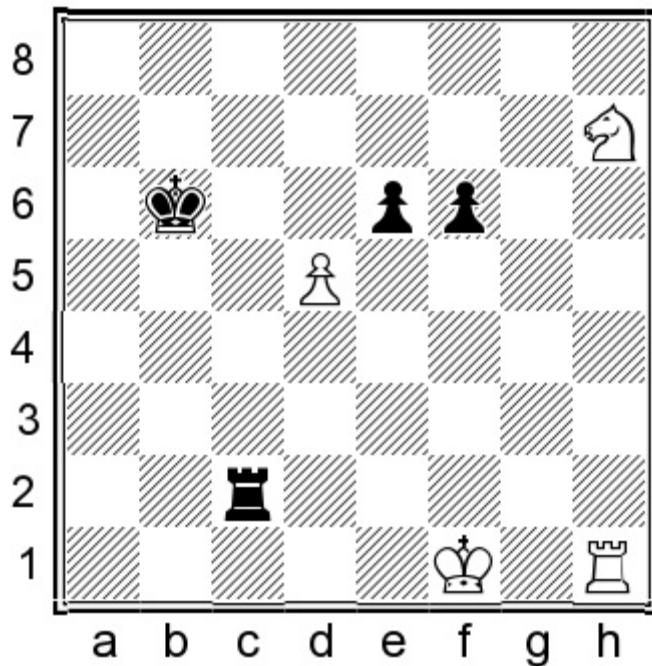


8-13
B?

The world championship challenger played 1... $\mathbb{Q}g4??$ and resigned after 2.b7 f5 3.b8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ f4 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ f3 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f2 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$.

He should have applied the shouldering method: 1... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ It is easy to see that in this case the position would have been drawish: the black king prevents his opponent from getting to the black pawn in time.

Exercises



8-14

Show/Hide Solution

8/1. A.Troitsky 1912

1.dxe6 ♜c1+ 2.♘f2!

Not 2.♘g2? ♜xh1 3.♘xh1 ♜c6, and the knight is unable to protect the e-pawn.

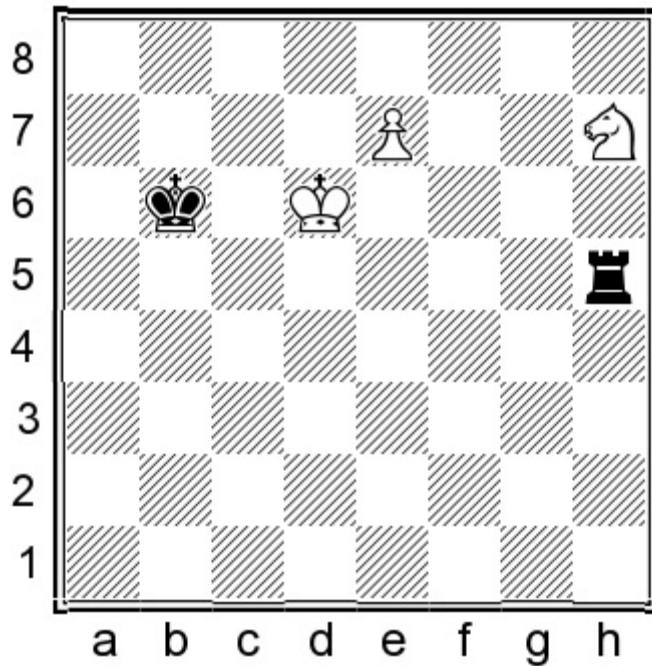
2...♜xh1 3.e7 ♜h2+ 4.♘f3

4.♘e3? is wrong in view of 4...♜h5!= First of all, White should eliminate the f6-pawn.

4...♜h3+ 5.♘f4 ♜h4+ 6.♘f5 ♜h5+ 7.♘xf6 ♜h6+ 8.♘f5!

Rather than 8.♘e5? ♜h1 9.♘f6 ♜h8 10.♘d7+ ♜c7 11.♘f8 ♜h1=

8...♜h5+ 9.♘f4 ♜h4+ 10.♘f3 ♜h3+ 11.♘e2 ♜h2+ 12.♘d3 ♜h3+ 13.♘d4 ♜h4+ 14.♘d5 ♜h5+
15.♘d6



16-67

B

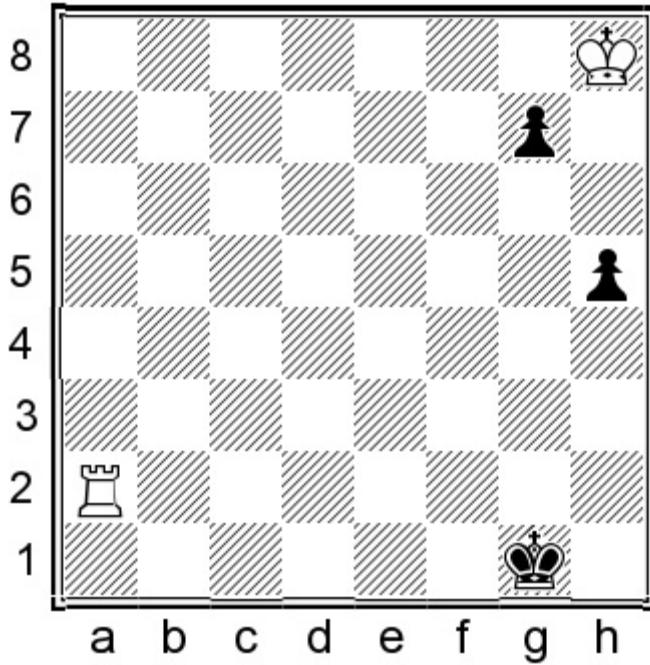
15...♜h6+

If 15...♜h1, then 16.♘f6 ♜e1 17.♘d7+ and 18.♘e5+-

16.♘f6! ♜xf6+

16...♜h8 17.♘d7+ and 18.♘f8+-

17.†d5 f5+ 18.†d4 f4+ 19.†d3 f3+ 20.†e2+– The king had to take two tours – up- and downstairs!



8-15

8/2

W?

Show/Hide Solution

8/2. J.Moravec 1913

1.†h7!!

In case of 1.†xg7? h4 2.†g6 h3 3.†g5 h2 4.†g4 h1=¶, White is forced to play 5.¶a1+ (5.†g3?? ¶h8). Therefore the g7-pawn should be left alone.

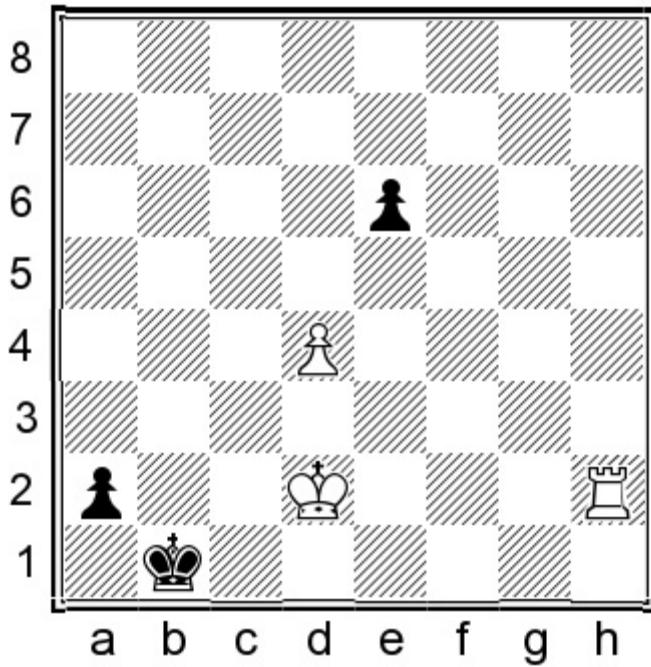
1.†h7!! h4

After 1...g5!? 2.†g6 g4, the primitive 3.†xh5? g3 4.†g4 g2 5.†h3 †h1! leads only to a draw. In order to avoid stalemate, the h5-pawn should not be captured: 3.†g5!!

2.†g6 h3 3.†g5 h2 4.†g4 h1=¶

4...g5!? 5.†g3 h1=¶+ 6.†f3 g4+ 7.†xg4 ¶f2+ 8.†f3 does not help because the knight will be caught soon (see diagram 8-5).

5.†g3+–



8-16

8/3

W?

Show/Hide Solution

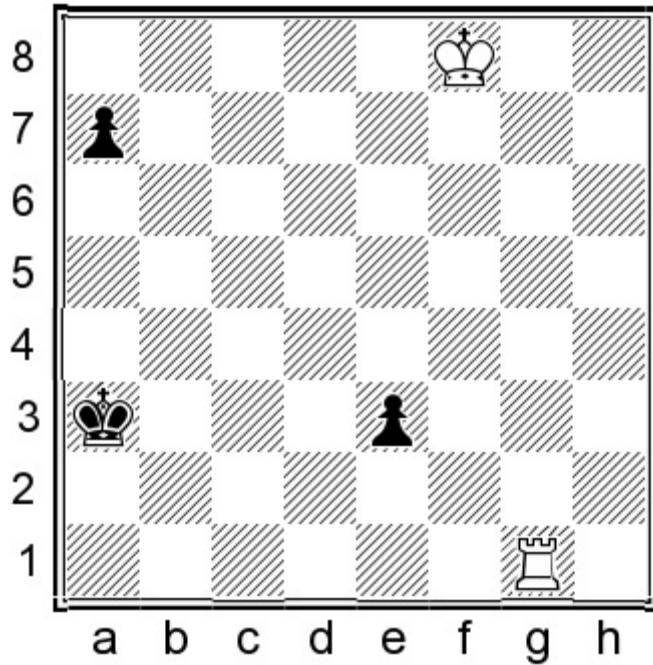
8/3. P.Benko 1980

The line 1.†c3? a1=¶+ 2.†b3 ¶a8!– is clearly unacceptable.

By analogy with the previous exercise, 1.d5? exd5 2.†c3 (2...a1=¶+? 3.†b3+–) seems attractive, inasmuch as after 2...a1=¶? 3.¶h4, the knight is lost: 3...†a2 4.¶d4 †a3 5.¶xd5 ¶b3 6.¶b5+–. But Black manages to hold after 2...d4+! 3.†b3 a1=¶+!=.

The winning method is known from pawn endgame theory – a “half-stalemate.”

1.¶h1+ ¶b2 2.¶a1! ¶xa1 3.†c2! e5 4.d5 e4 5.d6 e3 6.d7 e2 7.d8=¶ e1=¶+ (7...e1=¶ 8.¶d4+) 8.†b3 (8.†c3 ¶d3 9.¶b6) 8...¶d3 9.¶d4+!–



8-17
8/4
W?

Show/Hide Solution

8/4. V.Sokov 1940

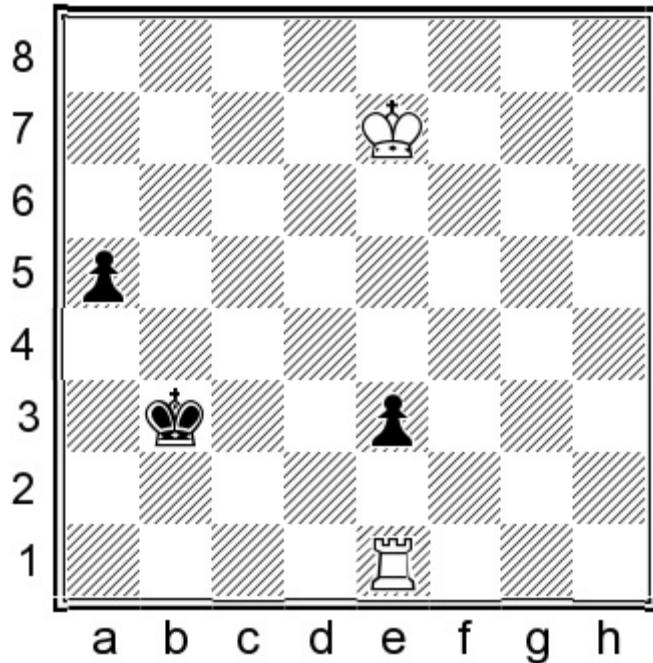
The routine 1.♔e7? misses a win in view of 1...♗b4! 2.♕e1 (otherwise 2...♗c3) 2...a5 3.♗d6 a4, and the black king applies a shoulderering to the white opponent. The move ...♗b4! should be prevented.

1.♕b1!! ♗a2

1...a5 2.♔e7 a4 3.♗d6 ♗a2 4.♕e1 a3 5.♗c5 ♗b2, and here both 6.♕e2+ ♗b1 (6...♗b3 7.♕xe3+) 7.♗b4 a2 8.♗b3+– and 6.♗b4 a2 7.♕e2+ ♗c1 8.♕xa2 ♗d1 9.♗c3+– are strong.

2.♕e1! a5 3.♔e7 ♗b3

We know already what happens after 3...a4 4.♗d6.



16-68

W?

4. ♕d6!

Rather than 4. ♜xe3+? ♔b4 5. ♕d6 a4 6. ♜e4+ ♔b5! with a draw (shouldering again!).

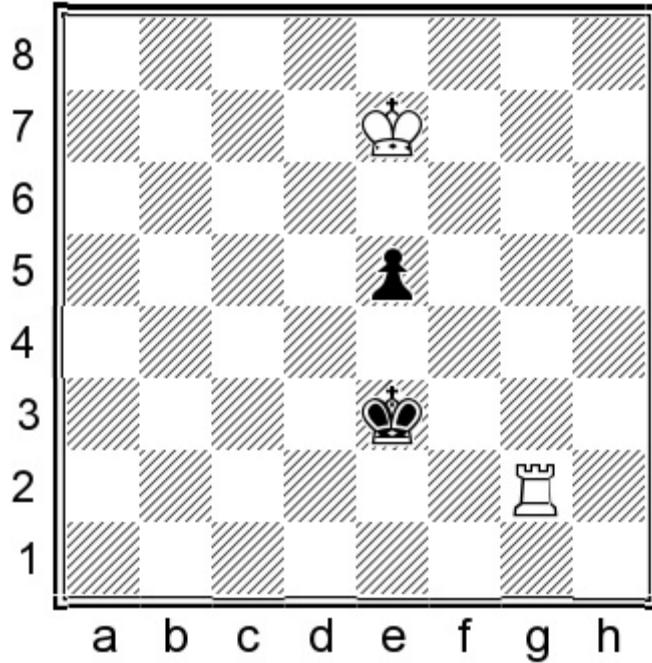
4...a4

4... ♔b4 5. ♕d5 a4 6. ♕d4 a3 7. ♜b1+

5. ♕c5 a3 6. ♜xe3+ ♔a4

6... ♔b2 7. ♔b4 a2 8. ♜e2+ ♔b1 9. ♔b3+—

7. ♕c4 a2 8. ♜e1 ♔a3 9. ♕c3+—



8-18
8/5
W?

Show/Hide Solution

8/5. Y.Averbakh 1980

1.♘e6! e4 2.♗g5!!+–

Only this move wins. White places his rook behind the passed pawn with tempo and, after Black moves his king out of the way, the white king outflanks it from the opposite side.

2...♗d2(d3) 3.♗d5+! ♘c2 4.♗e5! ♘d3 5.♗f5!;

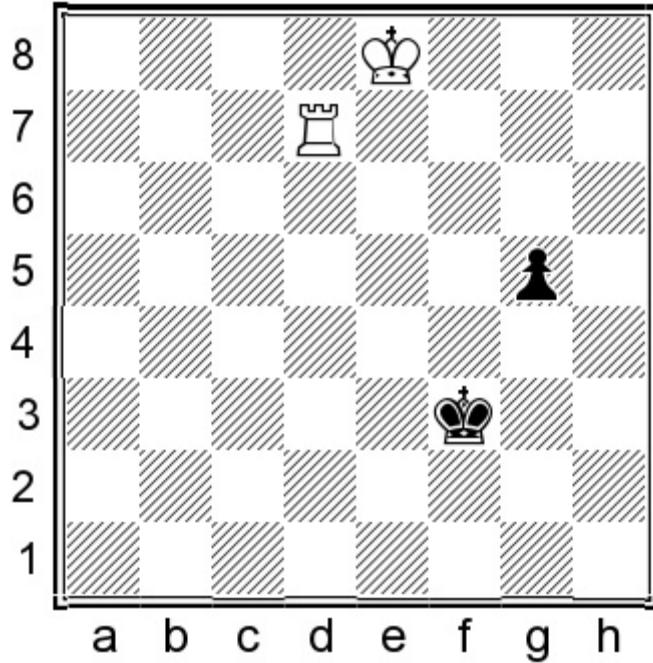
2...♗f2(f3) 3.♗f5+! ♘g2 4.♗e5! ♘f3 5.♗d5!;

2...♗e2 3.♗e5 e3 4.♗e4

The premature 1.♗g5? only leads to a draw after 1...♗f4! 2.♗f6 e4.

1.♗d6? is also incorrect: 1...e4 2.♗g5 ♘d3(d2)!,

as well as 1.♗f6? e4 2.♗g5 ♘f3(f2)!, because the outflanking technique cannot be applied.



8-19

8/6

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

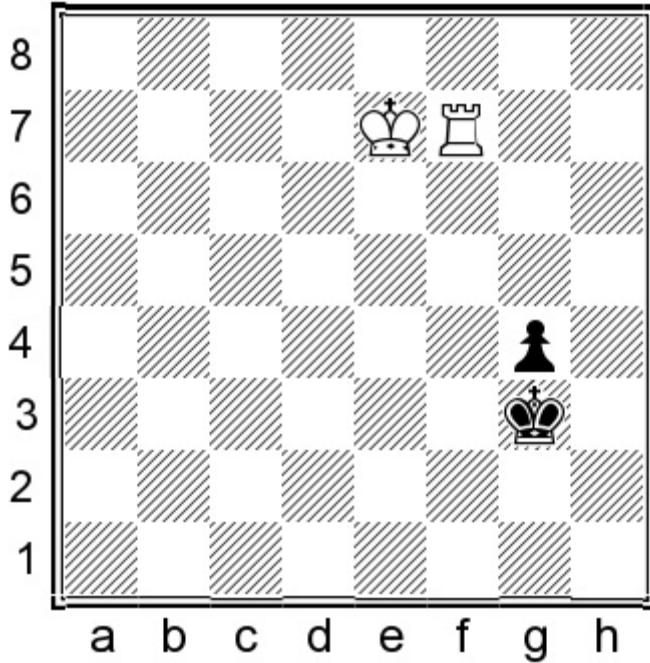
8/6. N.Kopaev 1954

Being well-armed with the experience of previous examples, we can find White's initial move, perhaps almost automatically.

1.♕f7+! ♔g3!?

If 1...♔e3, then 2.♕g7! ♔f4 3.♕f7 g4 4.♕g6! g3 5.♕h5+–

2.♕e7 g4



16-69

W?

3. ♔e6!

3. ♔f6? is bad in view of 3... ♔f4!! (shouldering) 4. ♔g6+ ♔e3!=.

3... ♔h2 4. ♔f5

4. ♔e5 is also playable, while the check 4. ♔h7+?! is premature in view of 4... ♔g2 5. ♔f5? (the only winning method is 5. ♔f7!! g3 6. ♔e5 here) 5... ♔f3! 6. ♔a7 g3 7. ♔a3+ ♔f2 8. ♔f4 g2=

4... g3 5. ♔g4 (5. ♔h7+ and 5. ♔f4 are equivalent) **5... g2 6. ♔h7+ ♔g1 7. ♔g3 ♔f1 8. ♔f7+ ♔g1 9. ♔f8**

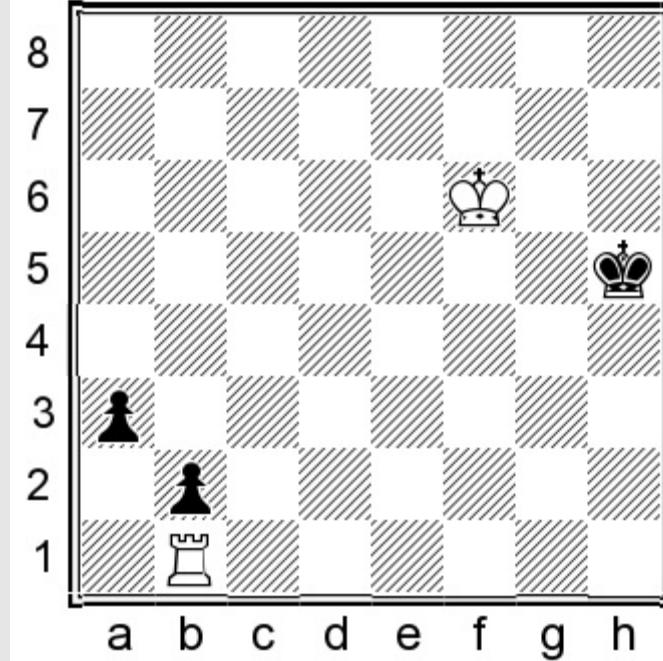
Almost every move is good here, for example 9. ♔a7 or 9. ♔g7, but by no means 9. ♔f2?? ♔h1! and stalemate saves Black.

9... ♔h1 10. ♔h8+ ♔g1 11. ♔h2+-

Rook vs. Connected Pawns

If two black pawns are placed on the third rank, or one pawn has reached the second rank while the other is on the fourth rank, a rook cannot stop them. Sometimes, however, White can save himself by creating checkmate threats, when the black king is pressed to an edge of the board.

B. Horwitz, J. Kling 1851



8-20

W

1. ♔f5 ♔h4 2. ♔f4 ♔h3 3. ♔f3 ♔h2 4. ♔e3! ♔g2

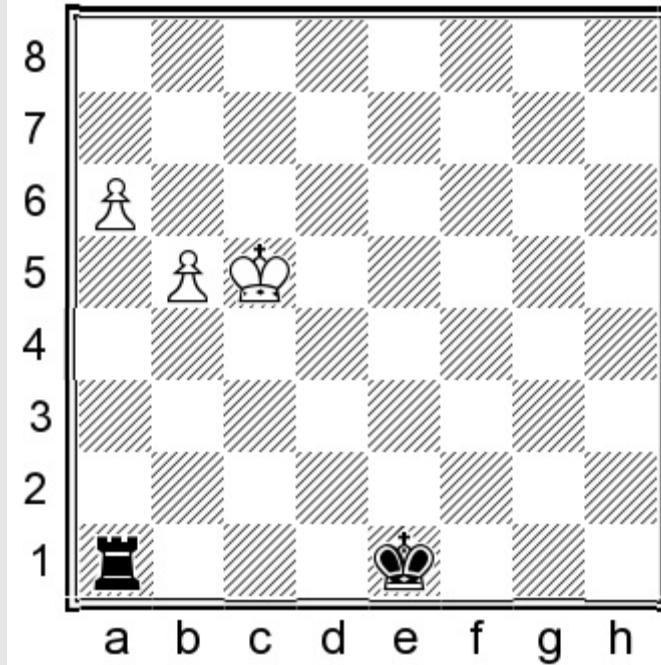
Or 4...♔g3 5.♕g1+ ♔h4 6.♔f4 ♔h3 7.♔f3, and here 7...♔h2?? 8.♕b1 even loses for Black in view of zugzwang.

5. ♔d3 ♔f3 6. ♔c3 a2 7. ♔xb2 (or 7.♕f1+) with a draw.

The following simple example demonstrates several very important practical ideas.

Topalov – Beliavsky

Linares 1995



8-21

W?

After 1.b6? $\mathbb{R}xa6?$ 2.b7 $\mathbb{R}a5+$ 3. $\mathbb{B}c4$ etc., loses (moving downstairs). Black holds with the **intermediate check prior to the capture of the pawn:** 1... $\mathbb{R}a5+!=$

1. $\mathbb{B}b6 \mathbb{B}d2$

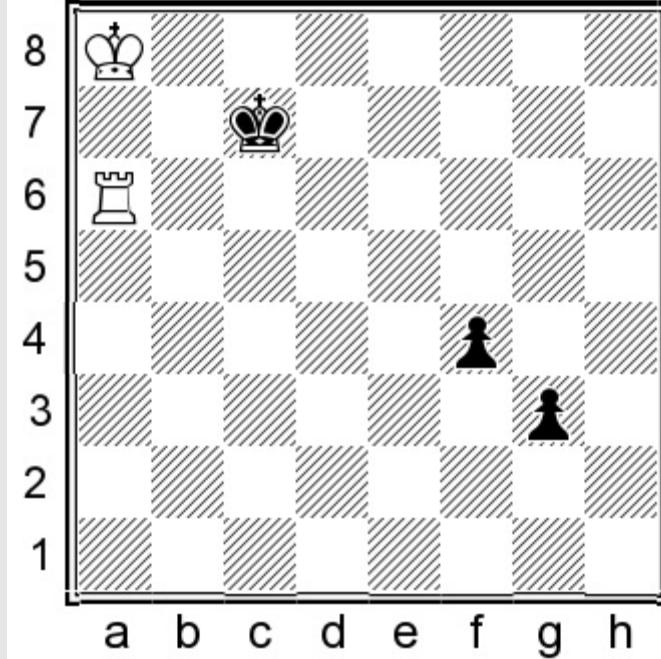
If 2.a7? now, then 2... $\mathbb{B}c3$ 3. $\mathbb{B}b7 \mathbb{B}b4$ 4.b6 $\mathbb{B}b5=$ Here we observe “**the tail-hook**” again; the techniques that we know from bishop versus pawn endings (diagram 4-30).

2. $\mathbb{B}a7!$

Black resigned in view of 2... $\mathbb{B}c3$ 3.b6 $\mathbb{B}c4$ 4.b7 $\mathbb{B}b1$ 5.b8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{R}xb8$ 6. $\mathbb{B}xb8$.

We call this method “**a change of the leader.**” Why does White push the less advanced b-pawn? First of all, because the rook, being placed on another file, does not prevent its advance. In addition, the a-pawn that remains on the board after the win of the rook is more remote from the black king, so its “tail holding” will be more difficult.

In a battle against two connected passed pawns, **the best position for the rook is behind the more advanced pawn.**



8-22

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $g2!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ and White wins because the black king is cut off from the pawn along the fifth rank.

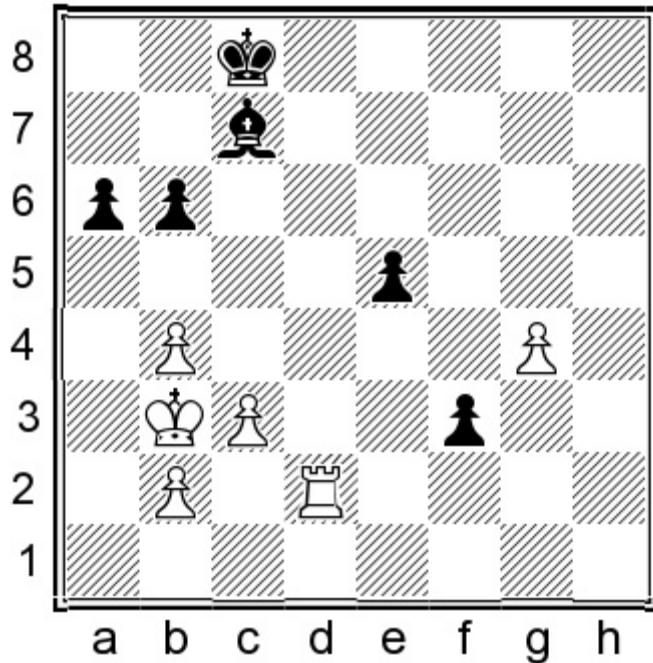
Sozin demonstrated a similar position in 1931, with the only difference that the white king stood on a7. In that case, after 1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$, an alternative solution occurs: 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}xf4+?$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $g2=$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8+-$

This line does not work when the king is placed on a8: 1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7?$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $f3!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $f2=$; 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $f2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}h3=$) 7... $f2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $f1=\mathbb{Q}+!$ with a draw.

It should be noticed that the rook should be placed in the rear of the more advanced pawn similarly, even when other forces conduct the fight.

Alekhine – Tartakower

Vienna 1922



8-23

W?

Alekhine analyzes the natural continuations 1.♔c2, 1.♔c4, 1.g5, 1.♕h2 and shows that all of them are good enough at best for a draw. But his beautiful concept wins:

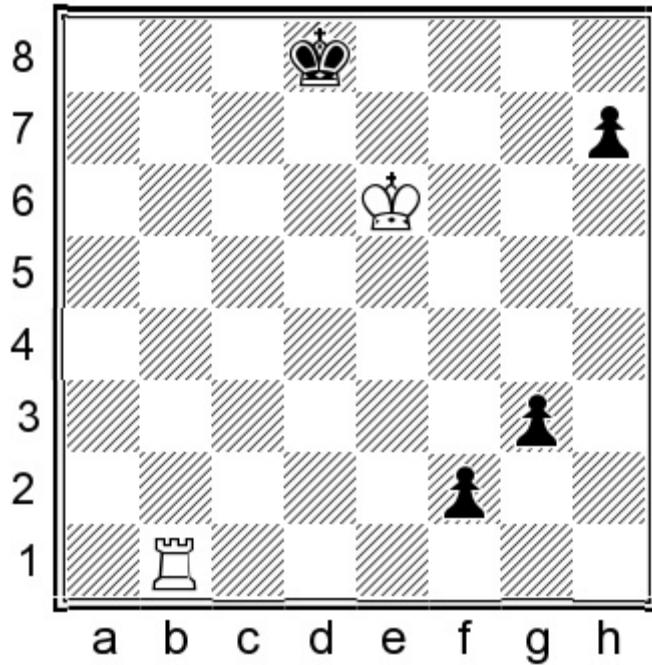
1.♗d5!!

“The variations springing from this rather unlikely move (it attacks one solidly defended pawn and allows the immediate advance of the other) are quite simple when we have described the basic idea – the *black pawns are inoffensive*: (1) *When they occupy squares of the same color as their bishop*, for in that case White’s king can hold them back without difficulty by occupying the appropriate white squares, e.g., 1...f2 2.♗d1 e4 3.♔c2 ♗f4 4.♗f1 followed by 5.♔d1; and (2) *When the rook can be posted behind them, but without loss of time*, e.g., 1...e4 2.♗f5 ♗g3 3.g5 e3 4.♗xf3 e2 5.♗e3” (Alekhine).

Tragicomедies

Arulaid – Gurgenidze

Lugansk tt 1956



8-24

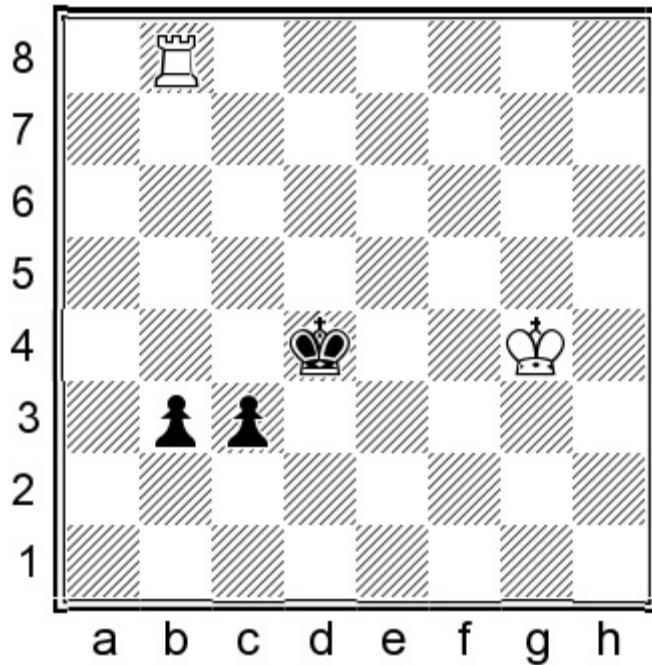
W

The game was adjourned and White resigned without resuming the play. However the adjourned position was drawish; White could have held it by means of mate threats:

1. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6=$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $h5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3=$ Δ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$; 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$

Fridstein – Lutikov

USSR ch tt, Riga 1954



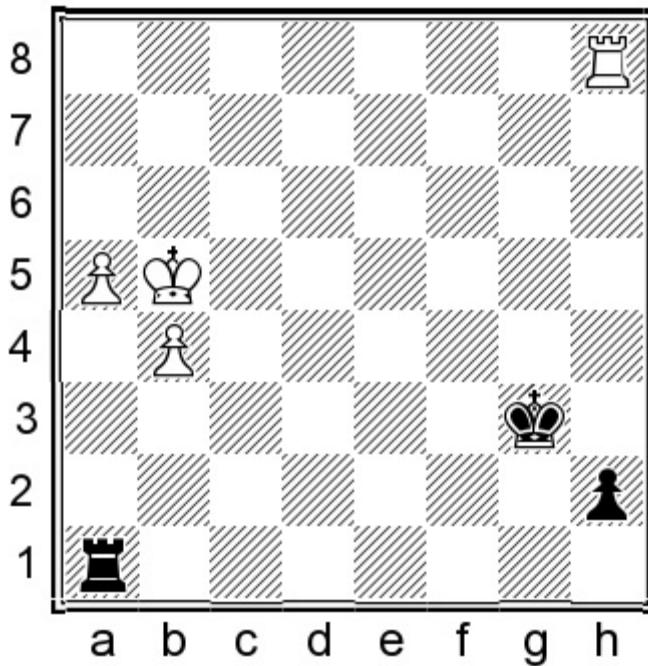
8-25

W?

Another case of a totally groundless capitulation. The intermediate check **1.♗b4+!** led to a draw.

Maróczy – Tarrasch

San Sebastian 1911



8-26

W

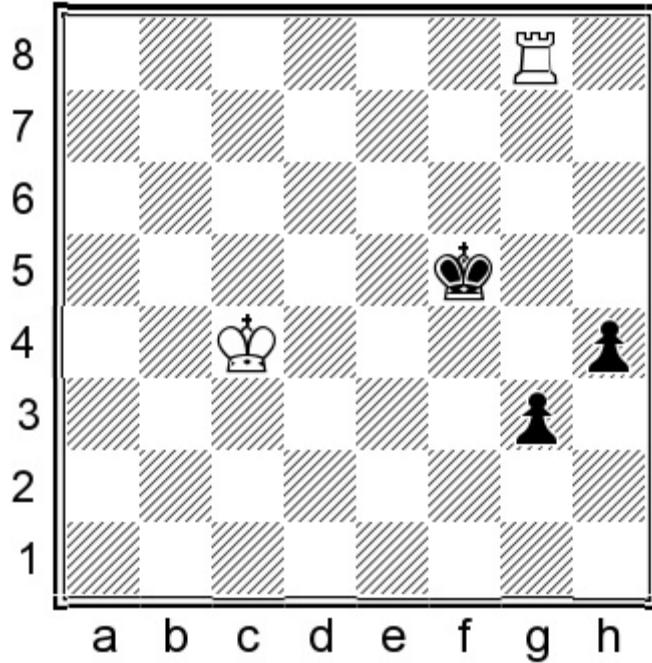
After **1.♗xh2! ♔xh2**, an immediate “change of the leader” wins: **2.♔a6! ♔g3 3.b5 ♔f4 4.b6 ♔e5 5.b7 ♘b1 6.♔a7 ♔d6 7.b8=威+ ♘xb8 8.♔xb8+–** The move **2.a6?** misses the win: **2...♔g3 3.♔b6 ♔f4 4.b5 ♔e5 5.♔a7 (5.a7 ♔d5 6.♔b7 ♔c5=) 5...♔d6 6.b6 ♘b1! 7.♔b7 (7.b7 ♔c7) 7...♔c5=**

White could also have played **1.♔a6! ♘a4 (1...h1=威 2.♗xh1 ♘xh1 3.b5) 2.♗xh2 ♘xb4 3.♗h5 Δ 4.♗b5+–**

The actual continuation was **1.♔c6?? ♘c1+ 2.♔b6 ♘c4! (Δ 3...♗h4) 3.♗xh2 ♘xb4+ 4.♔c5 ♘a4 5.♔b5 ♘xa5+ Draw.**

Penrose – Perkins

Great Britain ch, Brighton 1972



8-27

B?

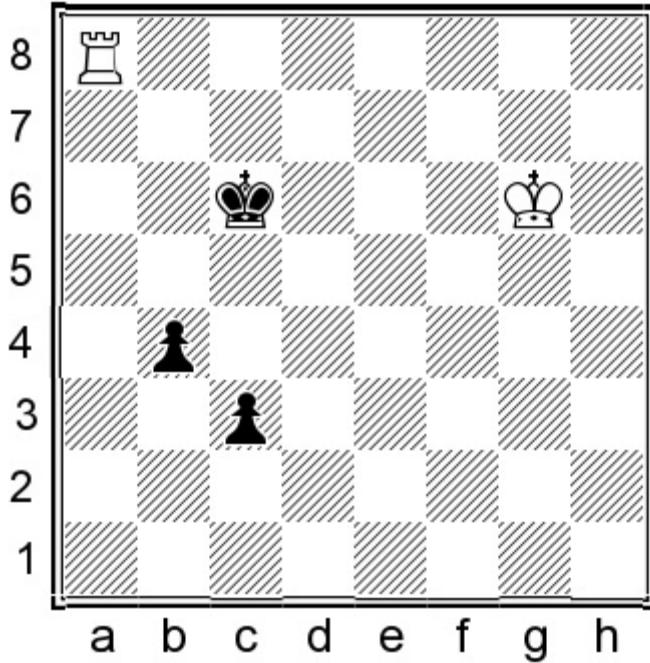
This position is evaluated as drawn in *Encyclopaedia of Chess Endings*. In fact, Black can win it rather simply by means of shouldering followed by moving downstairs.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}f3-$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $g2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7-$

The game continued 1... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}f3$ (2... $h3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $h2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4=$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $h3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h8 \mathbb{Q}h2$ (5... $h2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4=$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ $g2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}h1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $h2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ Draw.

A.Petrosian – Tseshkovsky

USSR ch (1), Minsk 1976



8-28

B?

Black has an elementary win: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ (threatening with 2...c2 or 2...b3) 2. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$, etc. He played less precisely:

1... $\mathbb{Q}d5?!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$

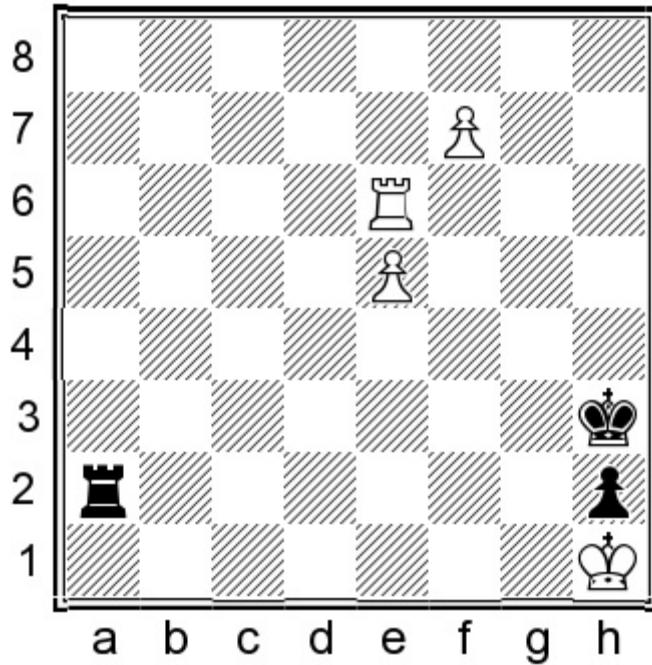
In this position, the game was adjourned. Later in a hotel room, Petrosian demonstrated the following continuation to his rival: 2...b3 (2...c2 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4!=$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$, and showed him a volume of *Chess Endings* edited by Averbakh where the final position is evaluated as drawn in connection with the line 4...b2 5. $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4=$

The opponent's arguments and the authority of the book convinced Tseshkovsky, and he accepted the proposed draw.

It was however an unfounded decision! Black's play can be improved by means of 3... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ (instead of 3... $\mathbb{Q}c4?$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ b2 5. $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6-$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ b2. Curiously enough, the resulting position is examined on the same page of the same book and, as Tarrasch proved in 1912, it is won!

7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ (rather than 7...c2? 8. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4-$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ c2 11. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ c1= $\mathbb{Q}+!$ and 12...b1= \mathbb{W} .

Exercises



8-29

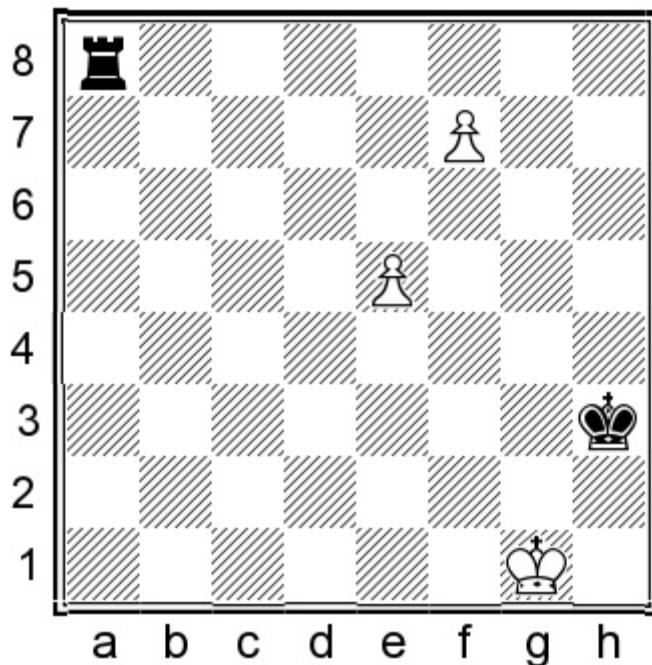
8/7

W?

Show/Hide Solution

8/7. P.Rossi 1961

1. $\mathbb{E}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 2. $\mathbb{E}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{E}g1!$ $hxg1=\mathbb{W}+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ $\mathbb{E}a8$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 5. $f8=\mathbb{W}$ $\mathbb{E}a1+$ 6. $\mathbb{W}f1+-$)



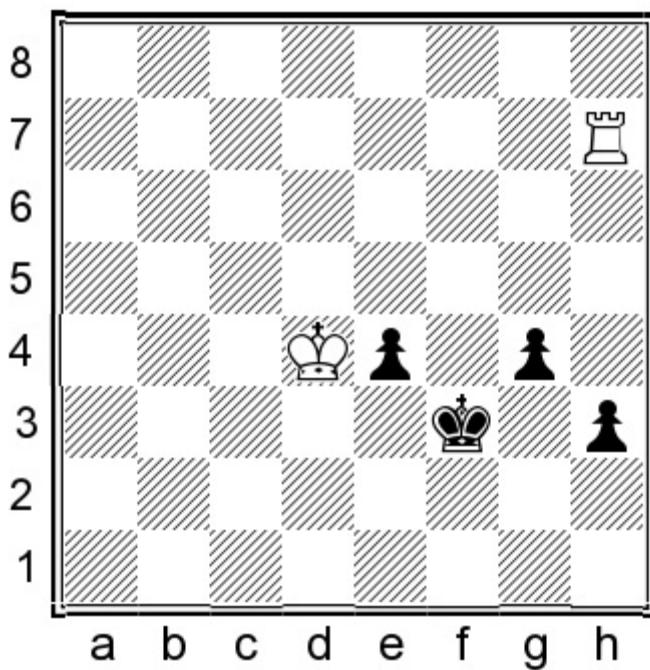
16-70

W?

5.†f2!

The incautious 5.e6? would have allowed Black to draw by means of attacking the white king, pressed to the edge of the board: 5...†g3 6.†f1 †f3 7.†e1 †e3 8.†d1 †d3 9.†c1 †c3 10.†b1 †b8+=.

5...†f8 6.e6 †g4 7.†e3+- Δ 8.e7



8-30

8/8

W?

Show/Hide Solution

8/8. Bowden-Duncan, Britain ch tt 1996/97

The remainder of the game was 1.†f7+? †g2 2.†xe4 g3 3.†h7 (if 3.†f4, Black's reply is the same) 3...†h2!, and White resigned.

White had to make a waiting move.

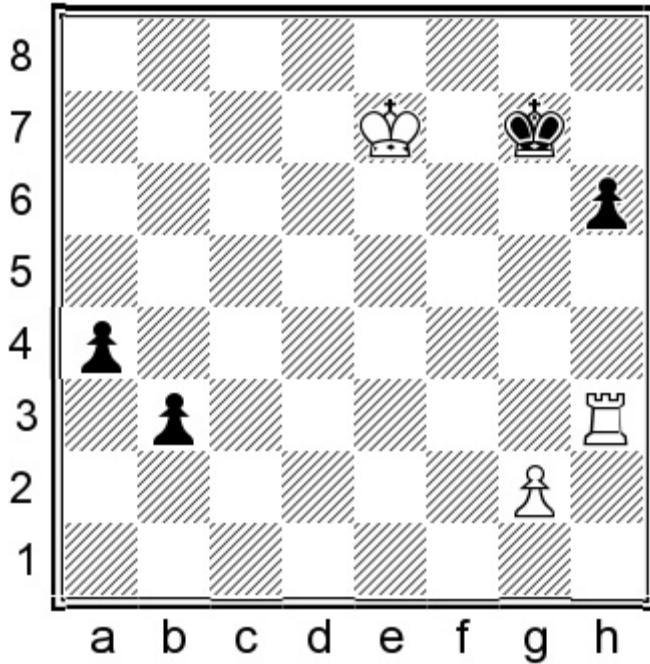
1.†h8! e3 (it will soon be obvious that the same consequences result from 1...†g2 2.†e4 g3 3.†e3)
2.†f8+ †g2

On 2... $\hat{Q}e2$, White has a draw only after 3. $\hat{Q}h8!$ $\hat{Q}d2$ 4. $\hat{Q}a8!$ or 3... $\hat{Q}f2$ 4. $\hat{Q}f8+$ $\hat{Q}g1$ 5. $\hat{Q}xe3$ h2 6. $\hat{Q}a8!$ (6. $\hat{Q}h8?$ g3) 6...g3 (6...h1= \hat{Q} 7. $\hat{Q}a1+$ $\hat{Q}g2$ 8. $\hat{Q}xh1$ $\hat{Q}xh1$ 9. $\hat{Q}f4=$) 7. $\hat{Q}a1+$ $\hat{Q}g2$ 8. $\hat{Q}f4=$

3. $\hat{Q}xe3$ g3

As may be seen, White has gained a tempo rather than lost it, because his king is placed better on e3 than on e4.

4. $\hat{Q}h8!$ $\hat{Q}h2$ (4...h2 5. $\hat{Q}f4=$) 5. $\hat{Q}g8!$ g2 6. $\hat{Q}f2=$



8-31

8/9

W?

Show/Hide Solution

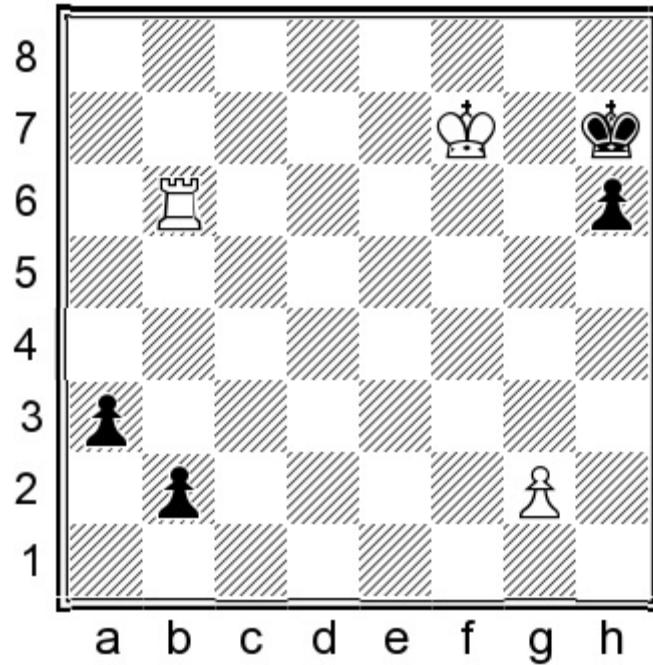
8/9. L.Mitrofanov, B.Lurye 1983

Black's pawns are advanced far enough, but his king is badly placed, so White has at least a draw. The question is whether he can win.

1. $\hat{Q}g3+$ $\hat{Q}h8!$

In case of 1... $\hat{Q}h7$, the solution is simple: 2. $\hat{Q}f6!$ b2 (2... $\hat{Q}h8$ 3. $\hat{Q}g7$) 3. $\hat{Q}g7+$ $\hat{Q}h8$ 4. $\hat{Q}b7$ a3 5. $\hat{Q}g6+-$

2. $\hat{Q}g6!!$ b2 3. $\hat{Q}b6$ a3 4. $\hat{Q}f7$ $\hat{Q}h7$

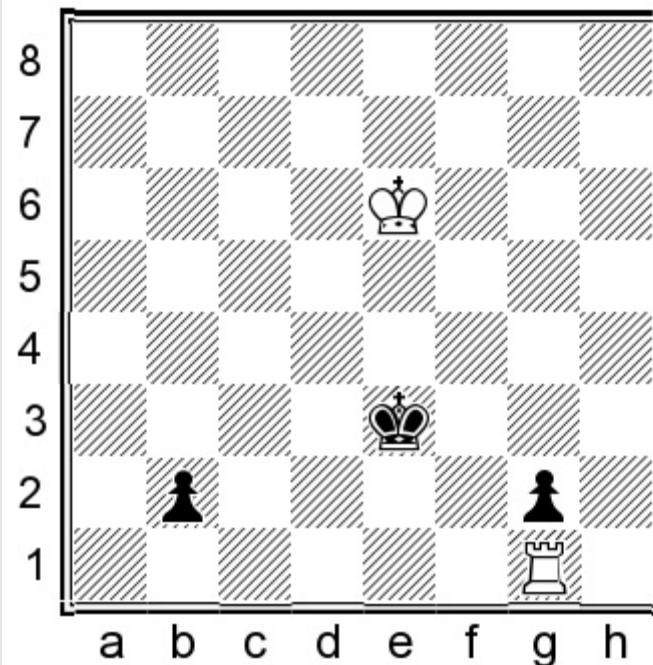


16-71

W?

5.g4!! a2 6.g5! hxg5 7.Qxb2 a1=Q 8.Qh2#

Rook vs. Separated Pawns



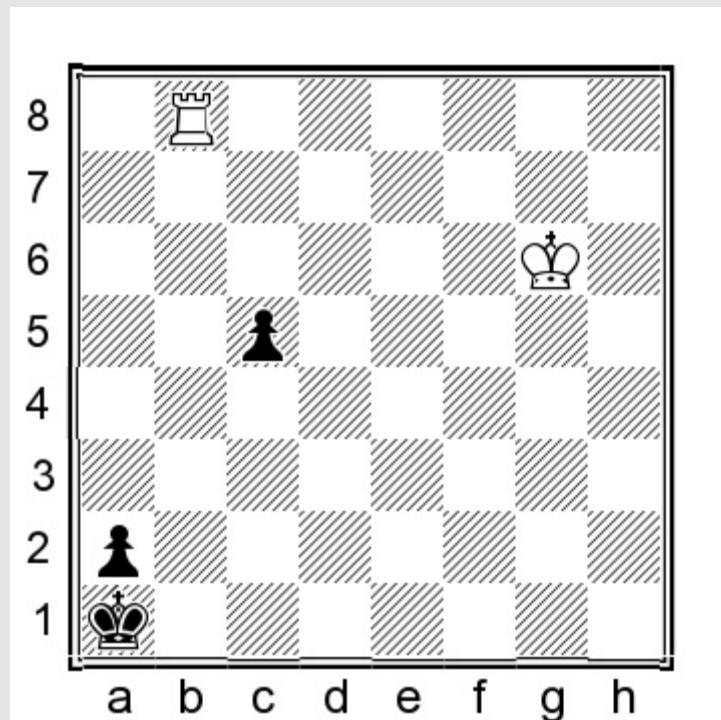
8-32

W

If four files separate the pawns, then the rook can stop them without help of its king.

1. $\mathbb{R}b1!$ (parrying the threat 1... $\mathbb{Q}f2$) 1... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ (Δ 2... $\mathbb{Q}c2$) 2. $\mathbb{R}g1!=$

Move the b2-pawn to c2. Now the position is lost (1. $\mathbb{R}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}d2+$).



8-33

B

1... $c4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$

2. $\mathbb{R}c8$ $c3!$, and if 3. $\mathbb{R}xc3$, then ... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ and the a-pawn promotes.

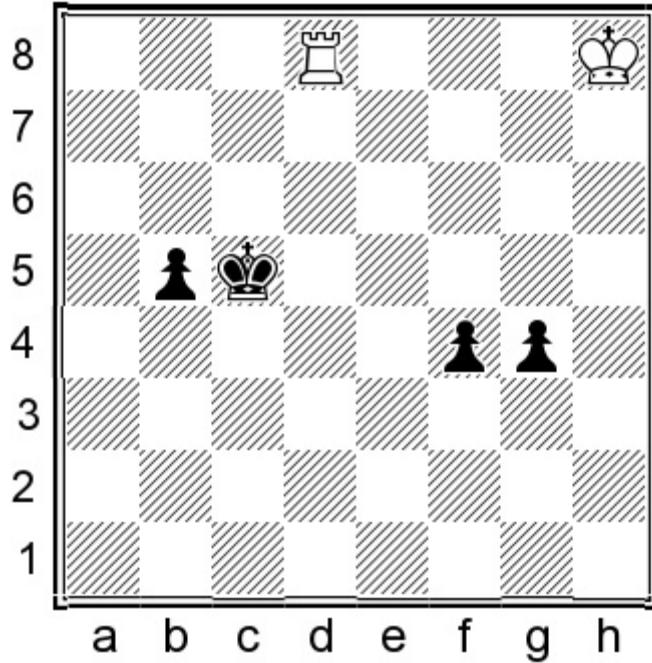
2... $c3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}c8$

After 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $c2$ 4. $\mathbb{R}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{R}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{R}c8+$ both 6... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ and 6... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ win.

3... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 4. $\mathbb{R}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c2(a3)$ 5. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{R}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 7. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $c2+$

This is perhaps all one should remember about this sort of position. Some additional ideas are shown to you in the exercises for this section.

Exercises



8-34

8/10

W?

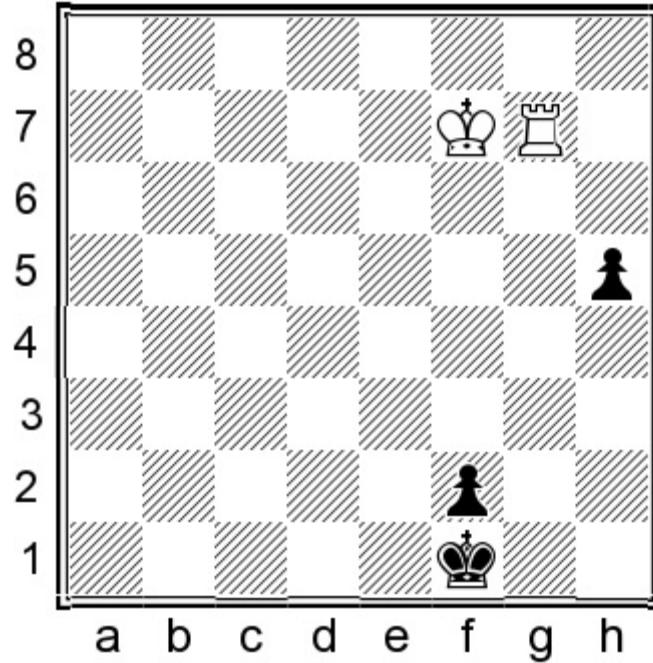
Show/Hide Solution

8/10. R.Réti 1929

The rook should attack a kingside pawn, but which one?

If 1. $\mathbb{R}f8?$ f3 2. $\mathbb{R}f4$ b4 3. $\mathbb{R}xg4$ b3 4. $\mathbb{R}g1$ f2 5. $\mathbb{R}f1$ b2, the black pawns are too close to each other, therefore White loses: 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3-$

1. $\mathbb{R}g8!$ g3 2. $\mathbb{R}g4$ b4 3. $\mathbb{R}xf4$ b3 4. $\mathbb{R}f1$ g2 5. $\mathbb{R}g1$ b2 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 8. $\mathbb{R}b1!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 9. $\mathbb{R}g1!=$



8-35

8/11

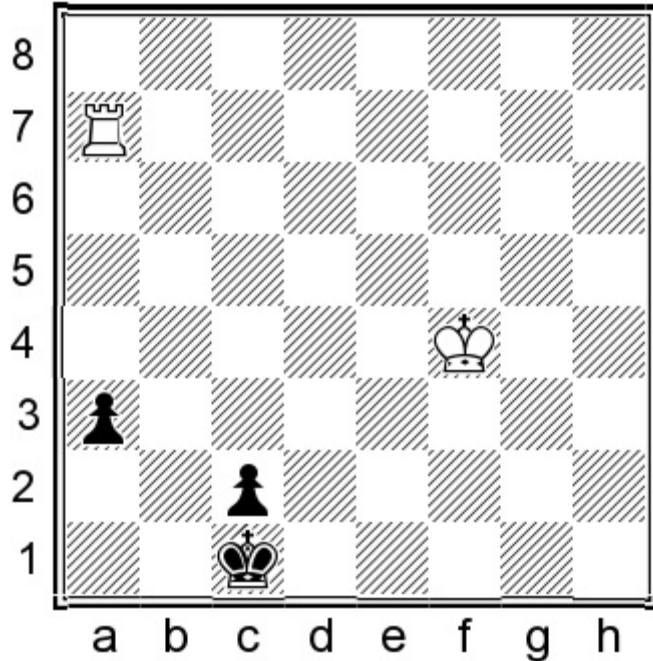
W?

Show/Hide Solution

8/11. V.Chekhover 1949

Certainly one of the pawns will be promoted. 1. $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (2...h4) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ is hopeless. So what is to be done?

1. $\mathbb{Q}g8!!$ h4 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ h3 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ f1= \mathbb{Q} 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ and the black king cannot escape from checks.



8-36

8/12

W?

Show/Hide Solution

8/12. J.Ullmann 1928*

The same problem that we had in the previous exercise. Both 1. $\mathbb{Q}xa3?$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ and 1. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ a2 lose at once.

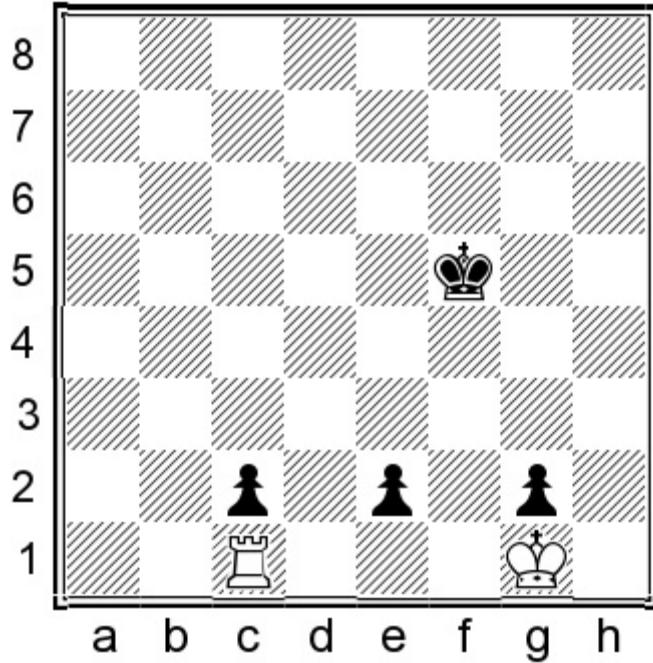
1. $\mathbb{Q}f3!!$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$

2... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ is useless in view of 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h7$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2(e3)$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}b7+?$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ a2+) 4...a2 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$

5...a1= \mathbb{Q} 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xa1=$

6. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (7...c1= \mathbb{Q} 8. $\mathbb{Q}c7+)$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc2!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2=$



8-37
8/13
W?

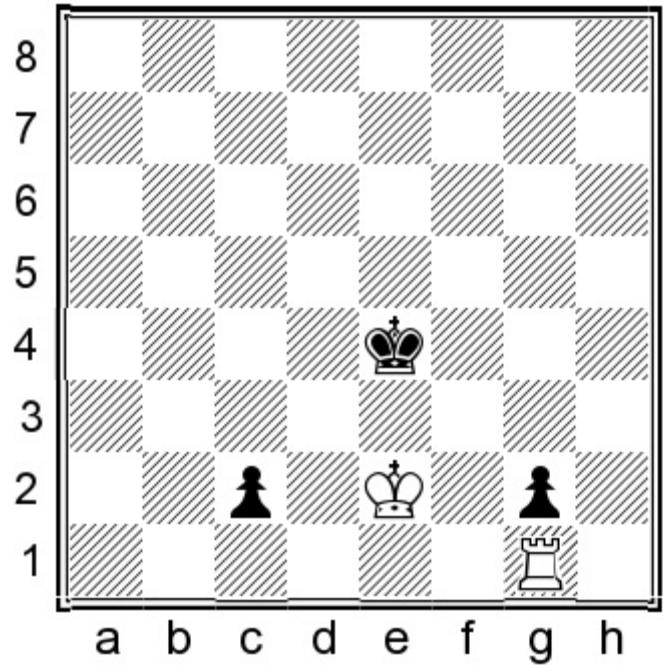
Show/Hide Solution

8/13. R.Réti 1928

1.♔f2!

The standard method 1.♗xg2? ♔e4 2.♔f2 lets Black survive after 2...e1=♕+!! (2...♔d3? 3.♔e1〇+-) 3.♔xe1 ♔d3〇 4.♖a1 ♔c3 (Δ ♔b2) 5.♖c1 ♔d3

1.♔f2! ♔e4 2.♔xe2 ♔d4 3.♖g1! ♔e4 (3...♔c3 4.♔e3+-)



16-72

W?

4. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2+-$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2+-$

Show in Text Mode

Chapter 9

Rook Endgames

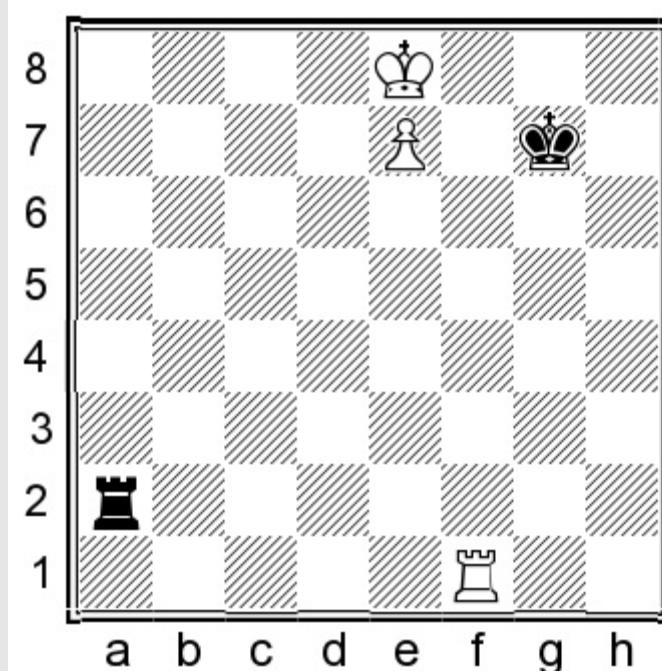
Rook endings are perhaps the most important and most difficult kind of endgame. Most important, because they occur in practice much more often than other endings. Most difficult, because one must absorb and remember a much greater volume of knowledge than in endings with other material relationships.

The reason is that, in other endings, situations with a minimum number of pawns on the board are either elementary or not very important. Therefore one needs only to remember a very limited number of precise positions, as it is highly improbable that one would meet them in practical play. So, mastering the basic ideas and methods is fully sufficient in those cases.

In rook endings, however, a sophisticated theory of positions with reduced material exists (for example, those with $\text{R}+\text{P}$ against R), and these situations occur very often in practice. This means that we cannot omit studying a considerable number of precise positions.

Rook and Pawn vs. Rook

Pawn on the Seventh Rank



9-1

In chess literature, this situation is usually referred to as “*The Lucena Position*” even though the Spaniard Lucena did not examine it in his book published in 1497. The first mention of an analogous position was in the book by Salvio (1634), which referred to Scipione of Genoa.

If White is on move he wins:

1. $\mathbb{R}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g4!$

2. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ is premature in view of 2... $\mathbb{R}f2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}e2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{R}f2+$ and the king has only one way to take refuge from rook checks: by returning to e8. The rook move prepares an interference at e4. This method is called ***building a bridge***, or simply ***bridging***.

2... $\mathbb{R}d2$ (2... $\mathbb{R}a8+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{R}f2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}e2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{R}f2+$

If 5... $\mathbb{R}e1$, then 6. $\mathbb{R}g5$ Δ 7. $\mathbb{R}e5+-$.

6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{R}e2+$ 7. $\mathbb{R}e4+-$

It is worth mentioning that White has other winning options:

1. $\mathbb{R}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}e1!+-$

1. $\mathbb{R}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}d1!+-$ (the immediate 1. $\mathbb{R}d1$ is also good) 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d7$ $\mathbb{R}a7+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}a6+$ 5. $\mathbb{R}d6$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 6. $\mathbb{R}d8+-$

Usually the Lucena Position is given with Black’s rook on d2. Then building a bridge wins by 1. $\mathbb{R}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g4$, as does bringing the rook to d8 starting with 2. $\mathbb{R}a1$.

Now let us see what happens if Black is on move.

1... $\mathbb{R}a8+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{R}a7+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{R}a6+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{R}e6$) 4... $\mathbb{R}a7+$ with a draw.

Let us shift all the pieces except for the black rook a single file to left. Then the side checks do not help anymore because the rook is not far enough from the white pawn: 1... $\mathbb{R}a8+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{R}a7+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{R}a8+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7+-$

Hence we can conclude:

(1) If the pawn is on the seventh rank, multiple winning methods exist. The most important ones are ***building a bridge*** for protection from checks along files and ***a rook maneuver for protection from side checks along ranks***. ***If the attacker has a knight pawn, then only building a bridge wins.***

(2) When the king of the weaker side is cut off from the pawn, the only defensive technique consists in ***side checks***.

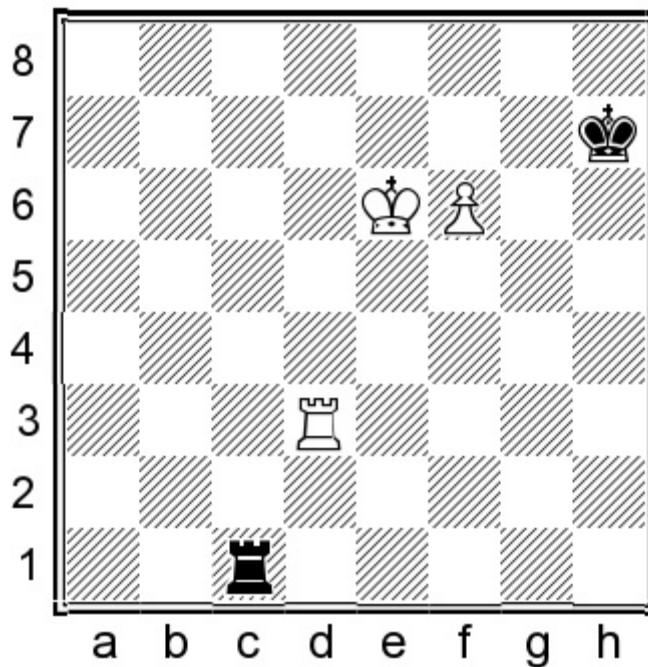
(3) A rook pursuit of the enemy king can only be successful when ***the rook and the pawn are separated at minimum by three lines***. As we shall see later, this rule does not only pertain to side checks.

(4) *A central or a bishop pawn divides the chessboard into two unequal parts: one is “long,” another is “short.” The correct positioning of forces for the weaker side is to keep the king on the short side, and the rook on the long side.*

Tragicomедies

Sax – Tseshkovsky

Rovinj/Zagreb 1975



9-2

W?

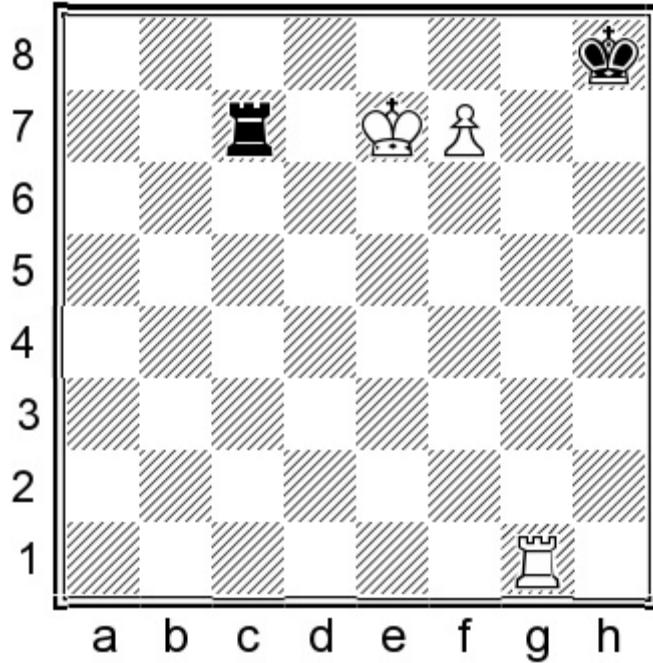
1. $\mathbb{R}h3+$?

He should not move the rook away from the d-file where it was protecting the king from side checks. An easy win was 1.f7! $\mathbb{R}c8$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g3+$; 1... $\mathbb{R}e1+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{R}f1+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{R}e1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 5. $\mathbb{R}h3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8+-$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{R}c7+$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d7+-$

1. $\mathbb{R}h3+?$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g3+$

Black resigned, as he failed to recognize that the position had become drawn: 2... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3.f7 $\mathbb{R}c8!$ (rather than 3... $\mathbb{R}c6+?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7+-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (4. $\mathbb{R}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$) 4... $\mathbb{R}c7+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{R}c8+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{R}a8=$

Exercises



9-3

9/1

W?

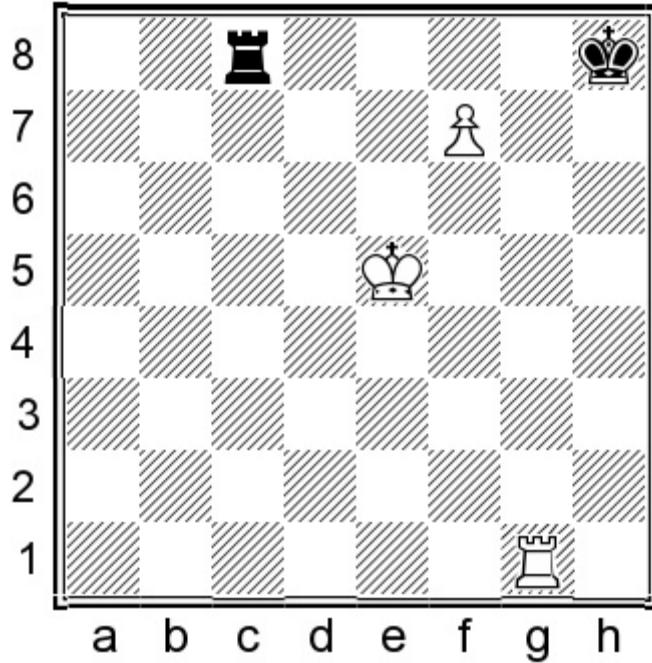
Show/Hide Solution

9/1. N.Kopaev 1953*

The unlucky placement of the king does Black in (with the king on h7 it would have been a draw); in addition, his rook is too close to the f-pawn. But it is by no means easy for White to exploit these disadvantages.

1.†f6! ♜c6+ 2.†e5 ♜c8

If 2...♜c5+ then 3.†d6 ♜c8 4.†e1! †g7 5.†e8+-. With a rook on b8, the saving check 5...♜b6+ exists.



16-73

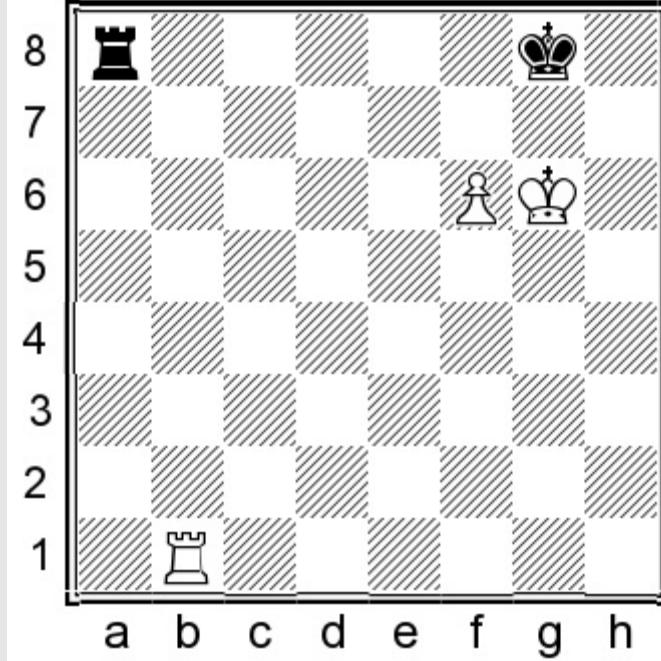
W?

3.Bg6!! Bh7 4.Bc6! Ba8 5.Bf6+-

The rook protects the king from side checks. Black is helpless against the maneuver Be6-e8.

The Pawn on the Sixth Rank

First let us examine the situation when the king of the weaker side is placed in front of the pawn.



9-4

W

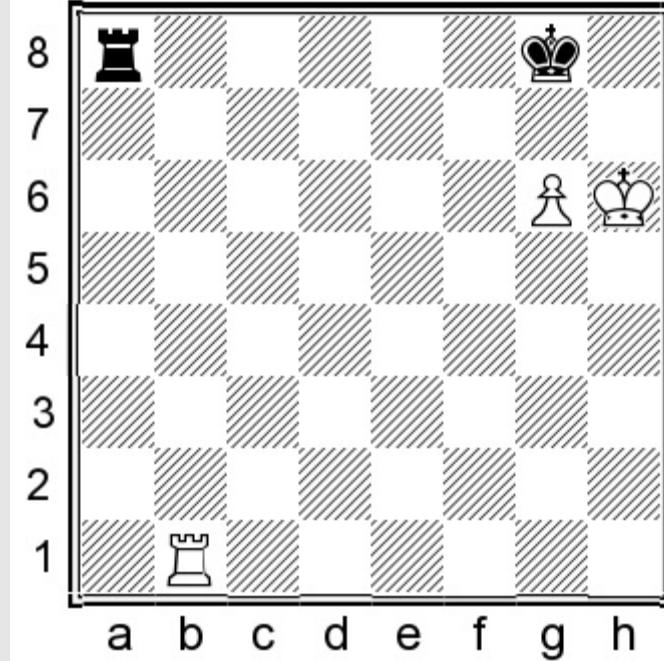
Black's rook must remain passive, staying on the eighth rank. White wins easily by bringing his rook to h7.

1. $\mathbb{R}b7 \mathbb{R}c8$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g7+$! (2. $\mathbb{R}h7 \mathbb{R}c6$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{R}h7 \mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $f7+$

It is worth mentioning that Black can hold the game when he is on move and his rook stands on a7:

1... $\mathbb{R}g7+$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (2. $f \times g7$ stalemate) 2... $\mathbb{R}g2$. Also, White cannot win if his king is placed on the other side of the pawn, at e6:

1. $\mathbb{R}b7 \mathbb{Q}f8$ (there are other possibilities as well) 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{R}a1!=$



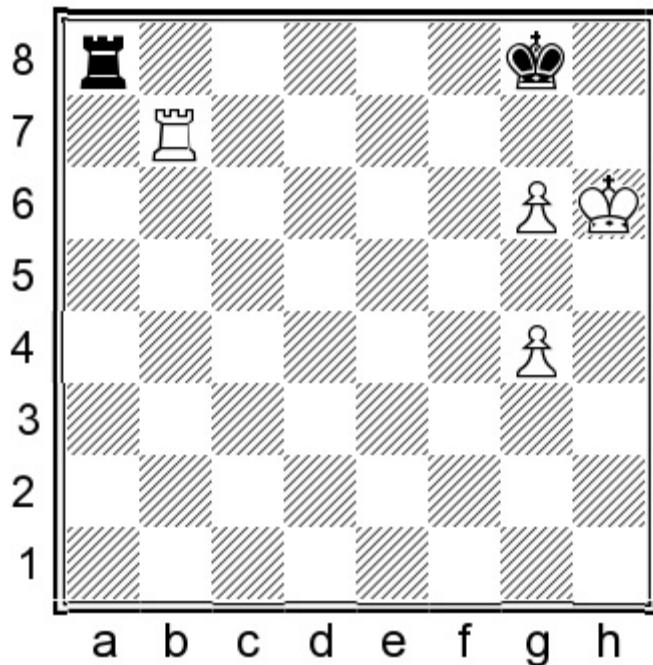
9-5

W

1. $\mathbb{B}b7 \mathbb{B}c8$ 2. $\mathbb{B}g7+ \mathbb{K}h8!$ (2... $\mathbb{K}f8??$ is erroneous in view of 3. $\mathbb{B}h7+-$) 3. $\mathbb{B}h7+ \mathbb{K}g8=$

Conclusion: passive defense holds against a knight pawn but loses against a bishop pawn or a central pawn.

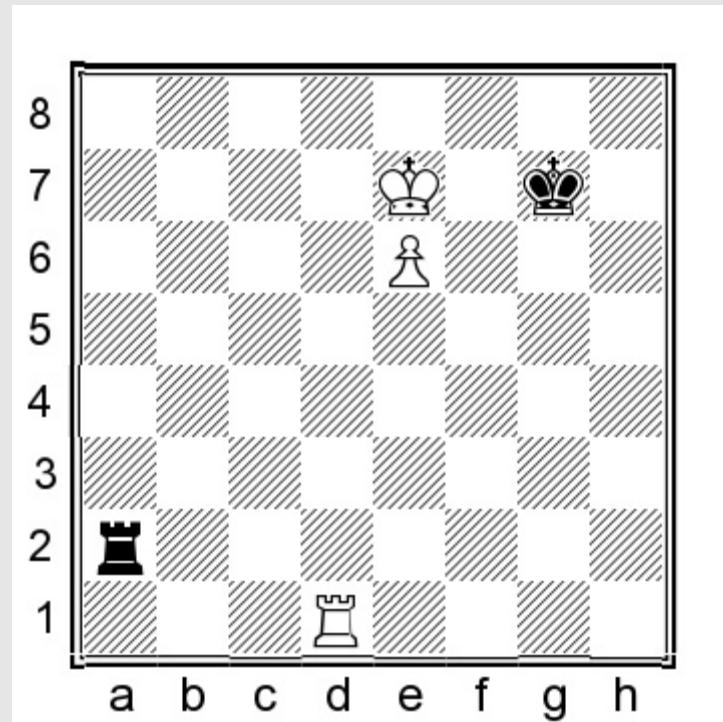
When the stronger side has two knight pawns, then passive defense does not help.



9-6

1. $\mathbb{E}b6!$ $\mathbb{E}f8$ 2. g5 (2. g7?? $\mathbb{E}f6+!$) 2... $\mathbb{E}a8$ 3. g7 $\mathbb{E}c8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}f6+-$ Δ 5. $\mathbb{E}f8+.$

Now we come to positions with the king cut off from the enemy pawn.



9-7

When on move, White wins. The simplest way begins with a check from g1, but 1. $\mathbb{E}e8$ is also possible: we come to the position with the pawn on the seventh rank and the rook on the d-file delivering protection from side checks. For example, 1... $\mathbb{E}f6$ 2. e7 $\mathbb{E}a8+$ 3. $\mathbb{E}d8$ $\mathbb{E}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}d6+$ $\mathbb{E}g7$, and now either 5. $\mathbb{E}d1!+-$ or 5. $\mathbb{E}e6!+-$ (but by no means 5. $\mathbb{E}d8??$ $\mathbb{E}a8+$ 6. $\mathbb{E}d7$ $\mathbb{E}f7=$).

With Black on move, the evaluation changes:

1... $\mathbb{E}a7+\square$ 2. $\mathbb{E}d7$

2. $\mathbb{E}e8$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{E}e1$ $\mathbb{E}e7+$; 2. $\mathbb{E}d6$ $\mathbb{E}f8.$

2... $\mathbb{E}a8!$

The simplest defensive method: Black prevents the position with the pawn on the seventh rank. 2... $\mathbb{E}a6??$ would have been a grave error in view of 3. $\mathbb{E}e8+$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 4. e7, and if 4... $\mathbb{E}e6$, then 5. $\mathbb{E}f8!+-$

However any other rook retreat along the a-file, for example 2... $\mathbb{E}a1$, does not give up the draw because after 3. $\mathbb{E}e8+$ (the only correct reply to 3. $\mathbb{E}d6!?$ is 3... $\mathbb{E}a8!$) 3... $\mathbb{E}f6!$ 4. e7 $\mathbb{E}e6!$ 5. $\mathbb{E}f8$, Black has 5... $\mathbb{E}f1!+$ Here he manages to hold only because of the fact that the white rook is misplaced at d7.

3. $\mathbb{E}d8$

3. $\mathbb{E}d6+$ is useless: 3... $\mathbb{E}f6$ (3... $\mathbb{E}f8$) 4. $\mathbb{E}f7+$ $\mathbb{E}g6=$

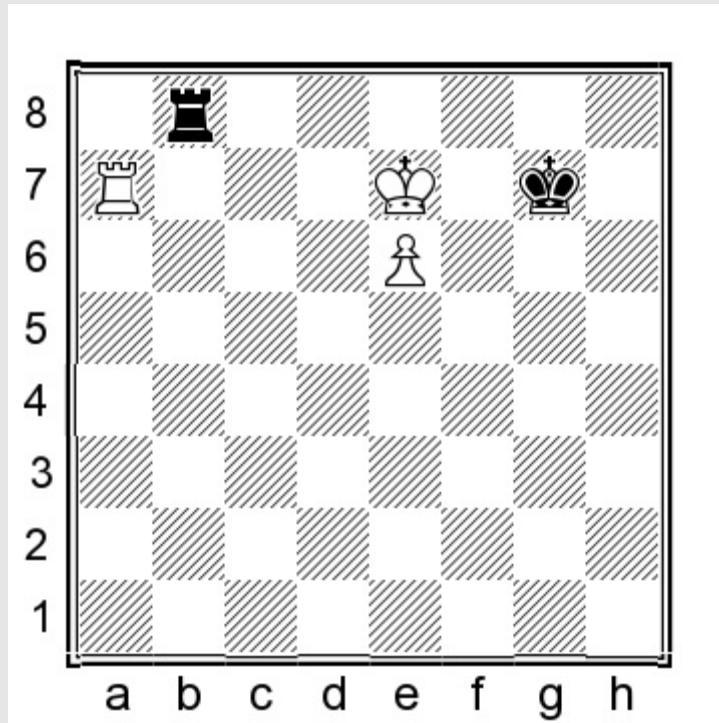
The waiting attempt 3... $\mathbb{B}b7$ can be met either with 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5.e7 $\mathbb{Q}f7=$, or with 3... $\mathbb{B}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{B}a8$ 5.e7 $\mathbb{Q}f7=$ (but not 3... $\mathbb{Q}g8??$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{B}f8+$ 5. $\mathbb{B}f7+-$).

If 3. $\mathbb{B}d6!?$, 3... $\mathbb{B}a1?$ is bad because after 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$, the pawn steps ahead with a check. 3... $\mathbb{B}b8?$ loses to 4. $\mathbb{B}d8!$ $\mathbb{B}b7+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{B}b6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$. The only correct reply is 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6!$

3... $\mathbb{B}a7+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{B}a6+$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f6??$ 5. $\mathbb{B}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6.e7) 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{B}a5+!$ 6. $\mathbb{B}d5$ $\mathbb{B}a8$ (6... $\mathbb{B}a7??$ 7. $\mathbb{B}d7+$; 6... $\mathbb{B}a1!?$) 7. $\mathbb{B}d7+$ (7.e7 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 8. $\mathbb{B}d8$ $\mathbb{B}a5+)$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}g6!=$ (Rather than 7... $\mathbb{Q}f8??$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ because passive defense does not help against a central pawn.)

The reason for the drawn finale was the position of the black rook: it was placed on the long side. Let us shift all the pieces except for the black rook one file to the left. Now when the rook is on the short side, Black, as one can see easily, is lost.

Let us examine another position, not an elementary one, but quite an important one.



9-8

W

Only two files separate the black rook from the pawn, and this circumstance offers White winning chances. However a straightforward attempt 1. $\mathbb{B}a1?$ (Δ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g1+$) misses the win: 1... $\mathbb{B}b7+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{B}b8+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{B}b2$ (Δ 4... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ or 4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$) 4. $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}a2!$ 5.e7 $\mathbb{B}a7+$ with a draw, because the rook managed to deliver long side checks in time.

For a win, White should yield the move to his opponent. As a matter of fact, 1... $\mathbb{B}c8$ loses to 2. $\mathbb{B}a1$; after 1... $\mathbb{B}b1$, the white rook occupies the important a8-square;

1... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{B}f8+$ 3. $\mathbb{B}f7$ is also bad.

Only 1... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ remains for Black but, as we shall see, this move also worsens his position.

1. d6+!

But not 1. $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ $\mathbb{Q}f6\circlearrowleft$ 2. e7 $\mathbb{Q}f7=$

1. ♔d6+! ♔f6 2. ♔d7〇 2...♔g7 (2...♕b1 3.e7; 2...♔g6 3.♕a1) 3. ♔e7!〇

White has achieved his goal by means of triangulation.

3... $\hat{\text{g}}$ 6

After 3... $\mathbb{B}b1$, 4. $\mathbb{A}a8!$ wins: 4... $\mathbb{B}b7+$ (4... $\mathbb{B}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{C}e8$ $\mathbb{H}h2$ 6. $\mathbb{A}a7+$ $\mathbb{C}f6$ 7.e7 $\mathbb{H}h8+$ 8. $\mathbb{C}d7$) 5. $\mathbb{C}d6$ $\mathbb{B}b6+$ (5... $\mathbb{C}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}f8+$ $\mathbb{C}g7$ 7.e7) 6. $\mathbb{C}d7$ $\mathbb{B}b7+$ 7. $\mathbb{C}c6$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{C}d6$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 9.e7.

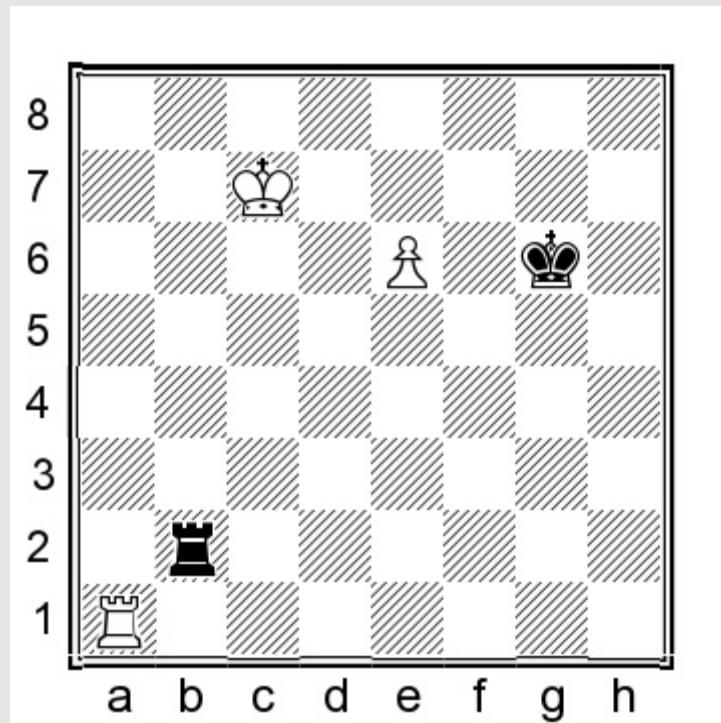
4. $\mathbb{H}a1!$ $\mathbb{H}b7+$ 5. $\mathbb{C}d8$

5. ♔d6 is also good.

5... b8+

After 5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$, White's winning method is instructive: 6.e7! $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f1+$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a1!+-$

6. ♔c7 ♕b2



9-9

W?

7. e1!

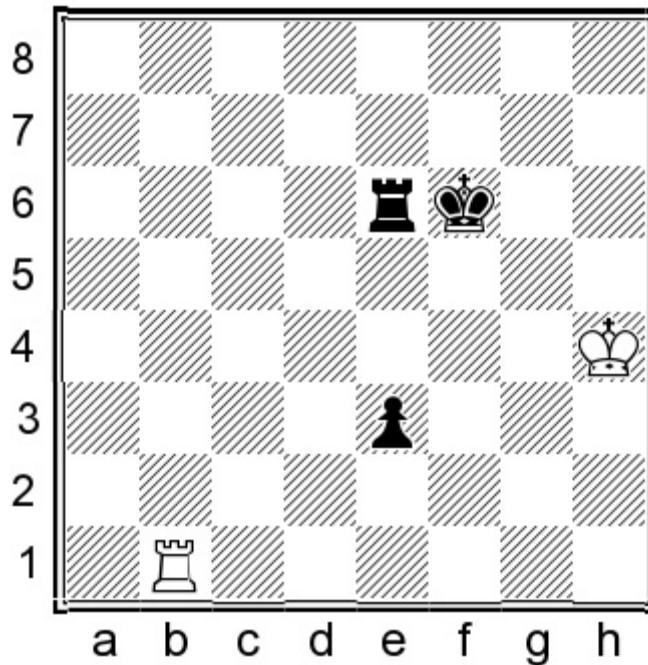
This is the point! With the king at g7, Black could have played 7... $\mathbb{Q}f8$, while now the pawn cannot be stopped.

7... $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 10.e7+–

Tragicomедies

Uhlmann – Gulko

Niksic 1978



9-10

B?

1... ♕f5??

After 1...e2! 2.♕e1 ♜e3! 3.♗g4 ♔e5, White would have had to resign.

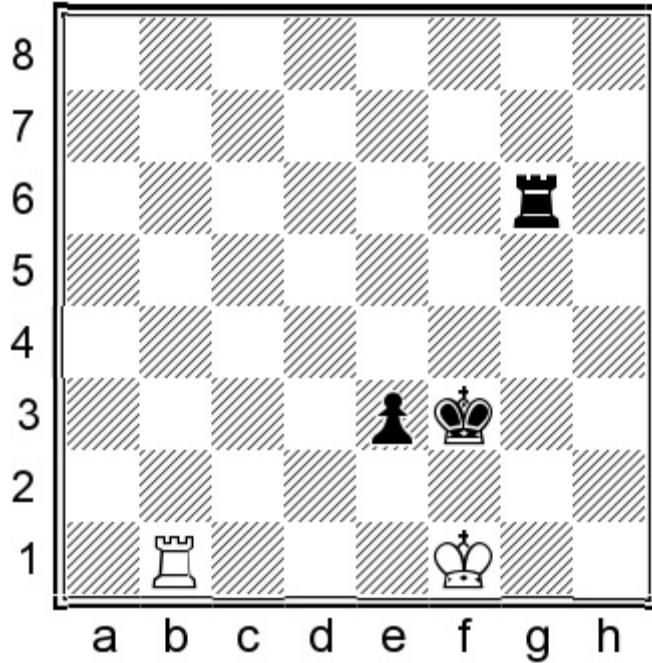
1... ♕f5?? 2.♗g3 ♔e4 3.♗g2!

The only move. Both 3.♗b4+? ♔d3 4.♗b3+ ♔c2 and 3.♗a1? ♜g6+ are erroneous.

3... ♜g6+

After 3...♗f6 4.♗a1! the white rook, occupying the long side, assures an easy draw.

4.♗f1 ♔f3



9-11

W?

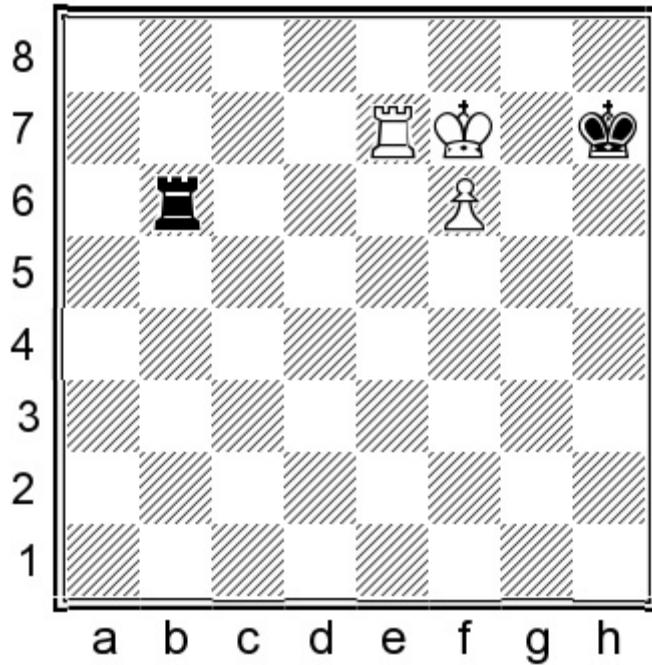
5.♗b3??

And again the position is lost (a passive defense against a central pawn). Necessary was 5.♗b2! ♜a6 6.♗f2+! (we saw this stalemate when discussing diagram 9-4).

5...♜a6 6.♗b1 ♜h6 7.♔g1 ♜g6+ White resigned.

One of the most famous “comedy of errors” occurred in the following endgame.

Capablanca – Menchik
Hastings 1929



9-12

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}a6??$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}b8=;$

1... $\mathbb{Q}b1=)$

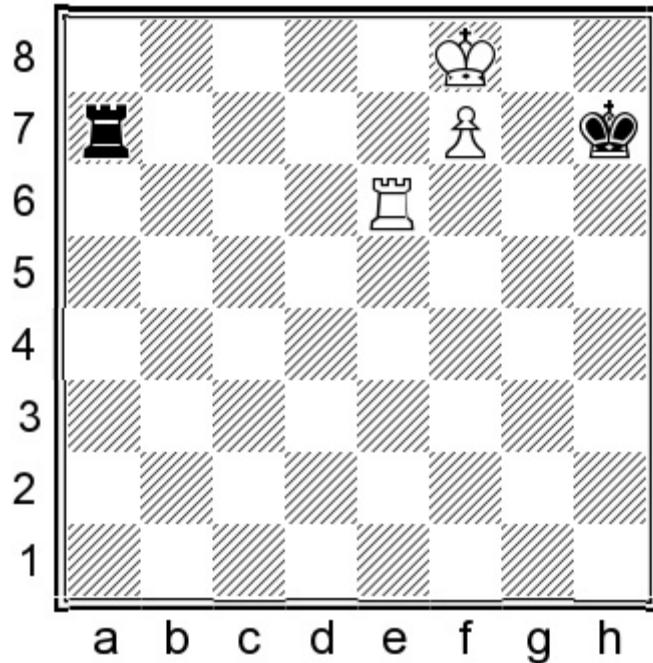
1... $\mathbb{Q}a6??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7??$

Capablanca grants his lady rival “amnesty.” 2. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ wins.

2... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}a6??$

Black repeats the same error.

4. $\mathbb{Q}f8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5.f7 $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8!)$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$



9-13

W

8.♔e8??

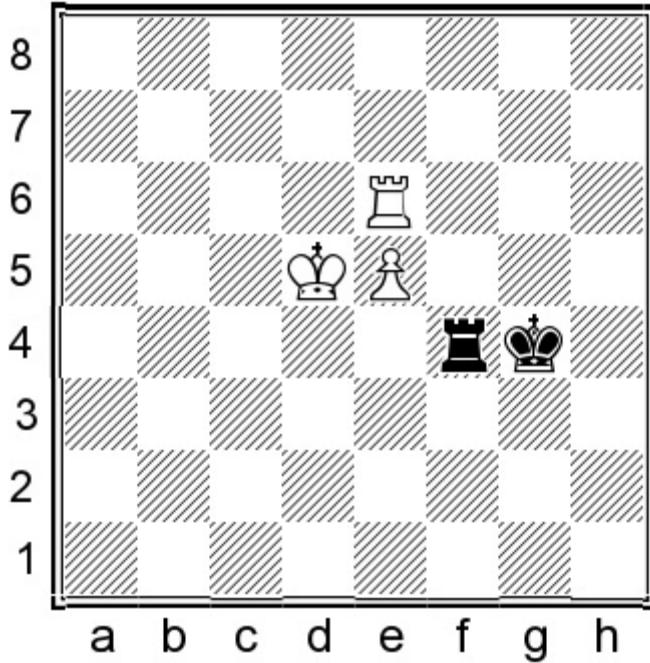
A single step away from reaching the goal, White misses again. Both 8.♕e1 and 8.♕f6 won.

8...♝a8+ 9.♔e7 ♘a7+??

9...♗g7! led to a draw.

10.♔f6 Black resigned.

Albut – Dlugy
USA ch, Los Angeles 1991



9-14
B?

1...♜g5?

Black could have had an easy draw after 1...♜a4!, occupying the long side with his rook.

1...♜g5? 2.♝a6! ♜b4

The game was adjourned in this position. Grandmaster Dlugy, assisted during home analysis by two experienced colleagues, Wolff and Ivanov, failed to understand the essence of the position, and his first move after the resumption of play was a decisive error. What is even more striking is that Dlugy had the classic work by Levenfish and Smyslov on rook endings at his disposal. In that book, naturally, the position in diagram 9-8 is examined. Black had to avoid that position but, after a short while, it arose on the board anyway.

3.♝e6

If 3.♝d6 then 3...♜f5!= (3...♜g6?? 4.♝c5+).

3...♜g6??

After 3...♜b7, we have the above mentioned basic position but shifted one line down, and this circumstance could enable Black to hold. Both 3...♜b8 and 3...♜b1 were also playable.

4.♝e7+ ♜g7 5.♝a7!+-

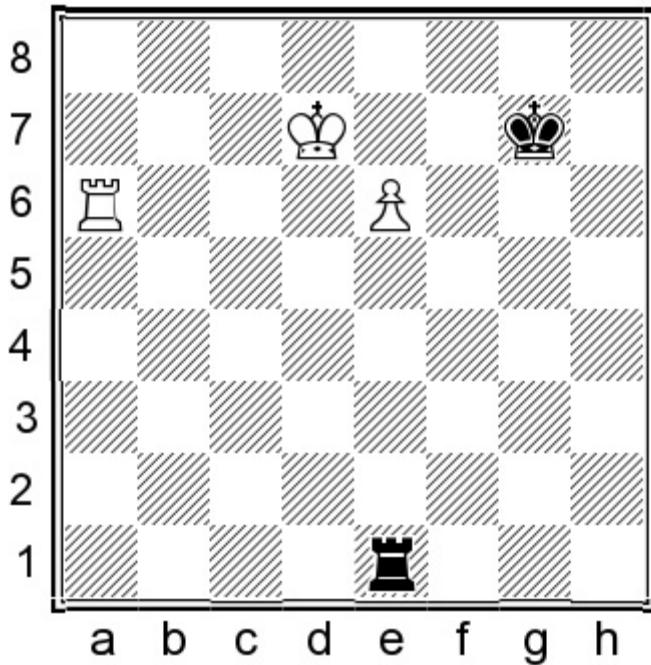
Black had obviously expected only 5.e6? ♜b7+ 6.♝d8 ♜b8+ 7.♝c7 ♜b1=

5...♜b8

5...♜b6!? 6.e6 ♜b8 was more persistent; White had then to employ the triangular maneuver: 7.♝d6+! ♜f6 8.♝d7! 8...♜g7 9.♝e7! 8...♜g7 9.♝e7! 8...♜g7 9.♝e7! 8...♜g7 9.♝e7!

6.e6! 6... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$)
12.e7 Black resigned.

Exercises



9-15

9/2

B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/2. N.Kopaev 1958

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$

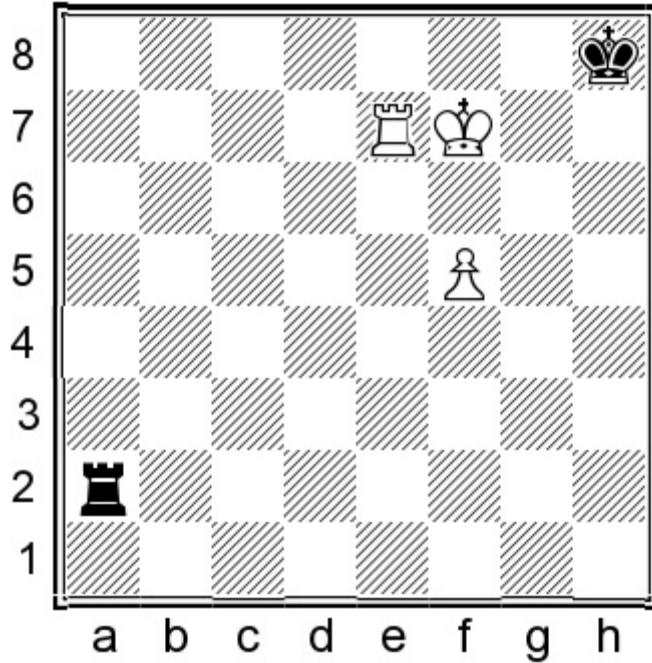
Black should take measures against strengthening White's position after $\mathbb{Q}e8$ and e6-e7. If 2.e7+ now, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7=$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ loses to 2.e7 $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ and 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8+-$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}d1+?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8)$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ (Δ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2+)$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}a1!$

Only now, when the white rook has abandoned both the a-file and the sixth rank, does Black undertake the side attack.

5. $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6.e7 $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ with a draw.



9-16

9/3

B?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

9/3. Hector-Krasenkov, Ostende 1990

Black would have gladly abandoned the corner with his king but 1... $\hat{Q}h7?$ loses by force: 2. $\hat{Q}f8+$ $\hat{Q}h6$ 3. $\hat{Q}e6+!$ $\hat{Q}h7$ (3... $\hat{Q}g5$ 4.f6 $\hat{Q}f5$ 5. $\hat{Q}b6$ $\hat{Q}a8+$ 6. $\hat{Q}g7+-$) 4.f6+-

So he should follow a waiting policy.

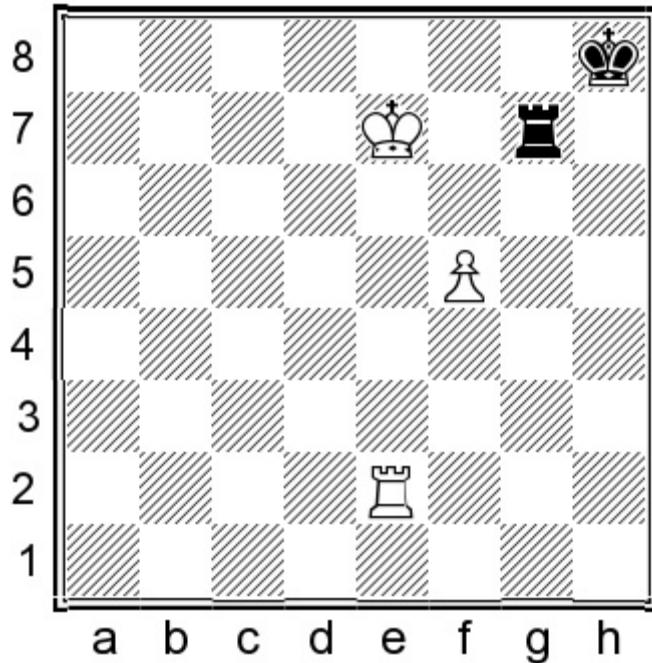
1... $\hat{Q}a1!$ 2. $\hat{Q}e2!$

The game continued 2.f6?! $\hat{Q}h7!$ with a drawn position we already know (3. $\hat{Q}f8+$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 4.f7 $\hat{Q}f6$! 5. $\hat{Q}g8$ $\hat{Q}g1+$). White could have set his opponent much more difficult problems.

2... $\hat{Q}a7+$ 3. $\hat{Q}g6$ $\hat{Q}g7+$ (a passive defense 3... $\hat{Q}a8$ loses) 4. $\hat{Q}f6$ $\hat{Q}g1$

The rook dares not to come back to the long side: 4... $\hat{Q}a7??$ 5. $\hat{Q}e8+$ $\hat{Q}h7$ 6. $\hat{Q}e7+$.

5. $\hat{Q}e7$ $\hat{Q}g7+$



16-74

W

6. ♕e8 ♜a7! 7. ♕f8

If 7.f6, then 7... ♜g8! (7... ♜a8+? 8. ♕f7 ♜a7+ 9. ♕g6+) 8. ♜g2+ ♜h7 9. f7 ♜a8+ and the checks from the long side save Black.

7... ♜a8+ 8. ♕f7 ♜a7+ 9. ♜e7 ♜a1

The initial position has arisen again.

10. ♜e2 ♜a7+ 11. ♕g6 ♜g7+ 12. ♕f6 ♜g1 13. ♕e7 ♜g7+

Having returned to the diagrammed position, White tries another possibility.

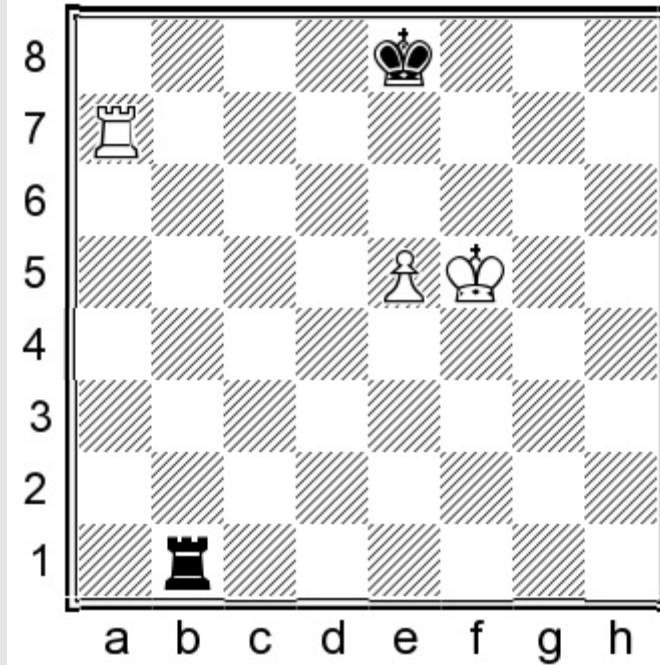
14. ♕d6!? ♜f7!

This subtle defense saves the game. After 14... ♜a7? 15. ♜e8+ ♜h7 16. ♜e7+ or 14... ♜g1? 15. f6 ♜g8 16. ♜e7, Black was lost.

15. ♜e8+ (15. ♕e6 ♜a7=) 15... ♜g7 16. ♜e7 ♕f6=

The Pawn on the Fifth Rank

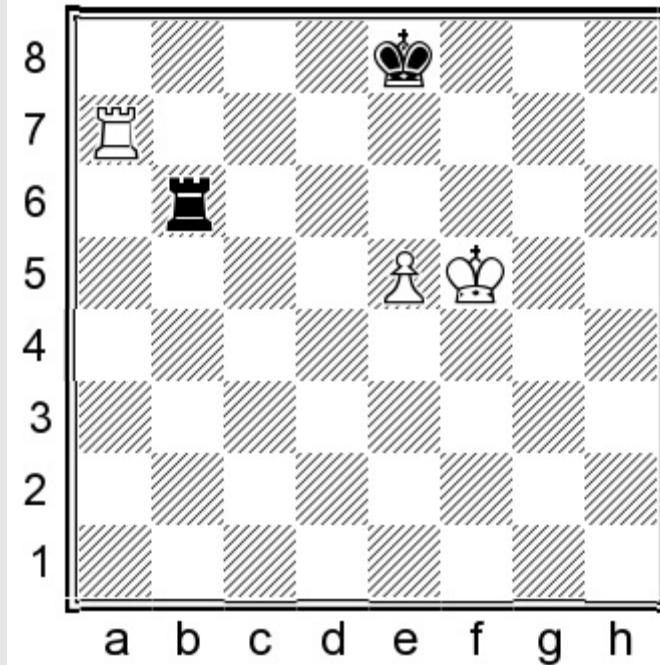
Philidor 1777



9-17

This is the so-called “**Philidor position**.” The famous French chessplayer was the first to demonstrate, as early as the 18th century, the correct method of defense.

1...Qb6!



9-17a

W

This is Philidor’s defensive method. Black prevents a penetration of the white king to the sixth rank.

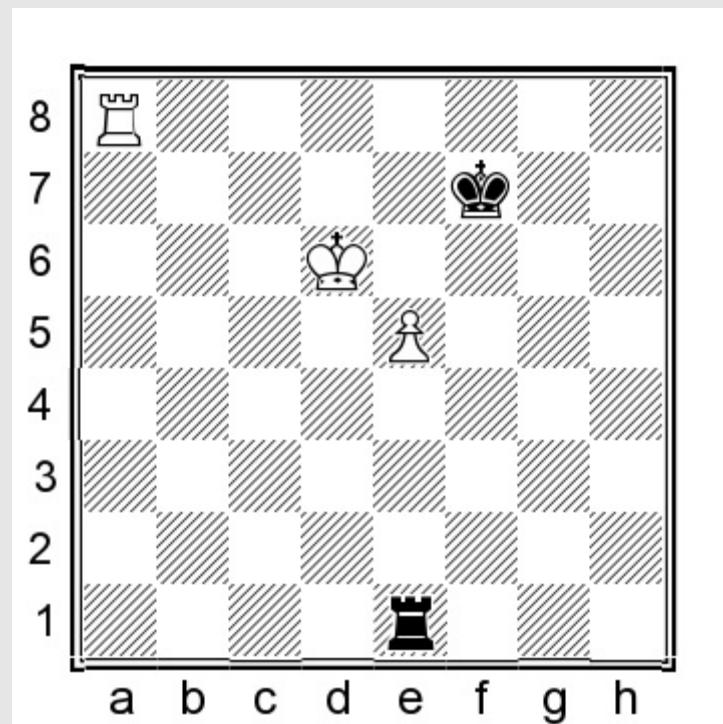
2.e6 $\blacksquare b1=$

If the pawn stood at e5, the white king would have a *refuge* from vertical checks. But, as soon as the pawn has stepped forward, the refuge does not exist anymore.

If White is to move in the initial position, it was once thought that 1. $\hat{\square}f6$ leads to a win as in the line 1... $\blacksquare f1+$ 2. $\hat{\square}e6$ $\hat{\square}f8$ 3. $\blacksquare a8+$ $\hat{\square}g7$ 4. $\hat{\square}e7$ $\blacksquare b1$ 5.e6 (we know this position already: see diagram 9-8) 5... $\blacksquare b7+$ 6. $\hat{\square}d6$ $\blacksquare b6+$ 7. $\hat{\square}d7$ $\blacksquare b7+$ 8. $\hat{\square}c6+-$.

*But in 1897 Max Karstedt discovered “Karstedt’s draw.” We call it **the second defensive method in the Philidor position: an attack from the rear allows Black to hold.***

1... $\blacksquare e1!$ 2. $\hat{\square}e6$ $\hat{\square}f8!$ 3. $\blacksquare a8+$ $\hat{\square}g7$ Now we can evaluate the position of the black rook. It prevents both 4. $\hat{\square}e7$ and 4. $\hat{\square}d7$. In addition, Black can meet 4. $\hat{\square}d6$ with 4... $\hat{\square}f7!$

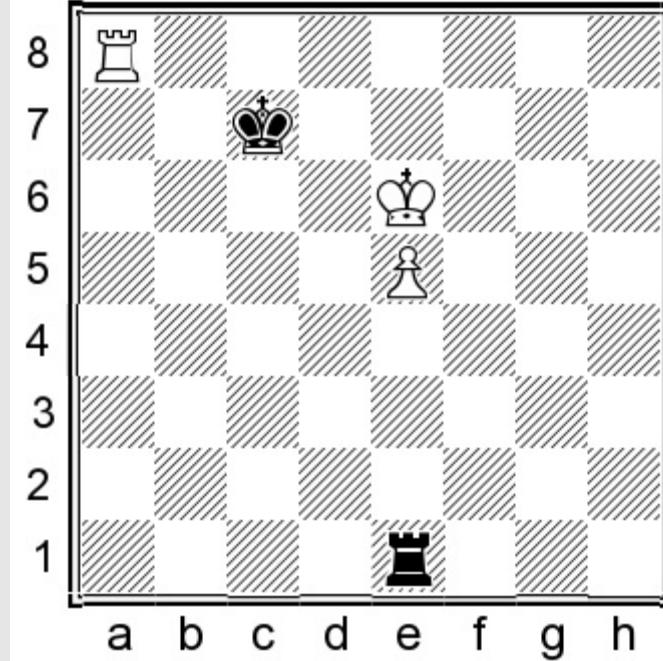


9-17b

W

White must retrace his steps: 5. $\blacksquare a7+$ $\hat{\square}e8$ 6. $\hat{\square}e6$ $\hat{\square}f8!$ 7. $\blacksquare a8+$ $\hat{\square}g7$, etc. If he tries 8. $\blacksquare e8$, preparing 9. $\hat{\square}d7$, the black rook occupies the long side: 8... $\blacksquare a1!=$.

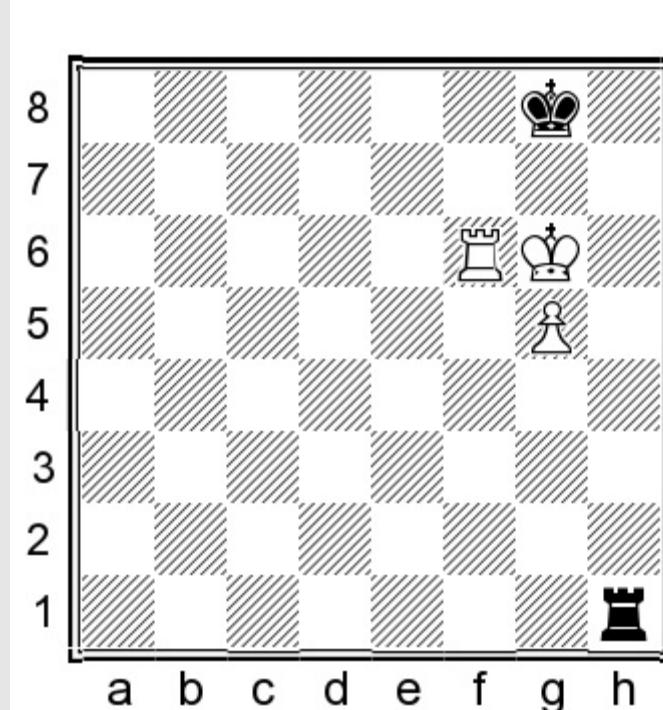
The move 2... $\hat{\square}f8!$ is undoubtedly correct (the king goes to the short side, leaving the long side for the rook), but 2... $\hat{\square}d8?!$ 3. $\blacksquare a8+$ $\hat{\square}c7$ does not lose either.



9-18
W

4. $\mathbb{E}e8$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!$) 4... $\mathbb{E}h1!$ (rather than 4... $\mathbb{E}e2?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{E}h2$ 6. $\mathbb{E}g8!$ $\mathbb{E}h7+$ 7. $\mathbb{E}g7$ $\mathbb{E}h8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 9. $e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 10. $\mathbb{E}g1+-$) 5. $\mathbb{E}g8$ $\mathbb{E}e1!$ 6. $\mathbb{E}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}d8=$

Obviously, such a defense with the king on the long side would have been impossible if the short side were even shorter (in case of an f- or g-pawn).



9-19
B

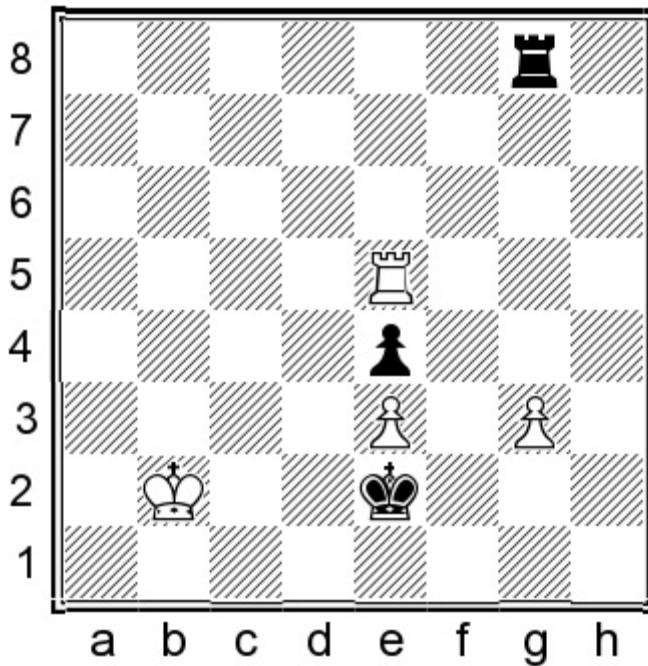
In this position, the attack from the rear does not work anymore: 1... $\mathbb{E}g1?$ 2. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (2... $\mathbb{E}f1$ 3. $\mathbb{E}a8+$ $\mathbb{E}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xf8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h7+-$) 3. $\mathbb{E}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}g8!$ (White prepares 5. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$; the black rook will be unable to disturb the king from the side) 4... $\mathbb{E}g2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{E}a8$ $\mathbb{E}h2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{E}g2$ 9. $g7+-$

But this position is also drawn. Black's rook comes in time for a passive defense along the eighth rank: 1... $\mathbb{E}a1!$ 2. $\mathbb{E}b6$ $\mathbb{E}a8=$

Tragicomедies

Lobron – Knaak

Baden Baden 1992



9-20

B?

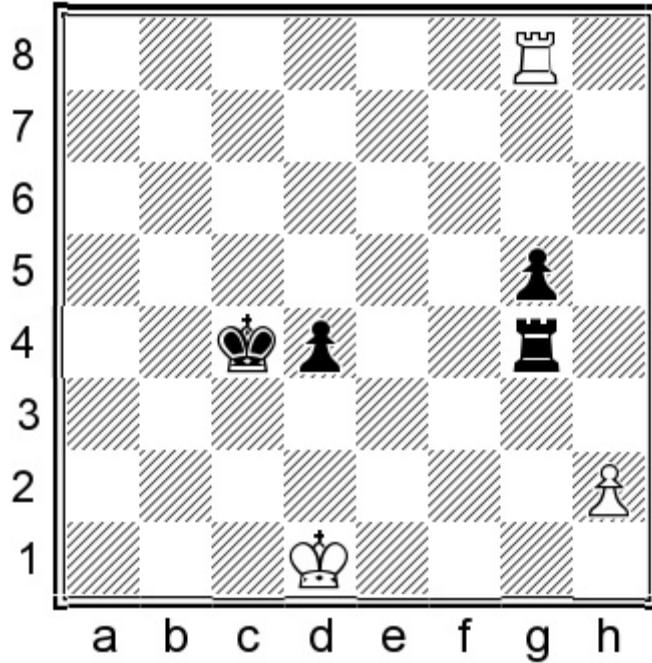
1... $\mathbb{Q}xe3?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 3. $\mathbb{E}e8$ $\mathbb{E}g2+$

Draw, according to the second defensive method in the Philidor position.

To avoid the theoretical draw, Black should have played 1... $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ The white king is placed at the long side, and one cannot see how White can survive, for example 2. $\mathbb{E}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2!?$ (3... $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 4. $\mathbb{E}e5!?$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}e8$ $\mathbb{E}d3!+-$, or 5. $\mathbb{E}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}e5$ $e3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+-$ is also playable) 4. $\mathbb{E}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $\mathbb{E}d7$, and now either 5... $\mathbb{E}f8!?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ 7. $\mathbb{E}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f1+-$ or 5... $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}e7$ $e3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+-$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}f3-f8$.

Dreev – Beliavsky

USSR ch, Odessa 1989



9-21

W

White is in a precarious situation: 1... $\hat{d}d3$ is threatened. Dreev tries his last chance.

1.h4! $\hat{x}xh4??$ 2. $\hat{x}xg5 \hat{d}c3$ 3. $\hat{d}d5!=\hat{x}h1+$ 4. $\hat{e}e2 \hat{x}h2+$ 5. $\hat{d}d1 \hat{d}d3$ 6. $\hat{c}c1 \hat{x}h1+$ 7. $\hat{b}b2 \hat{x}e1$ 8. $\hat{d}d8$ $\hat{x}e4$ 9. $\hat{c}c1 \hat{e}e2$ 10. $\hat{c}c2$ Draw.

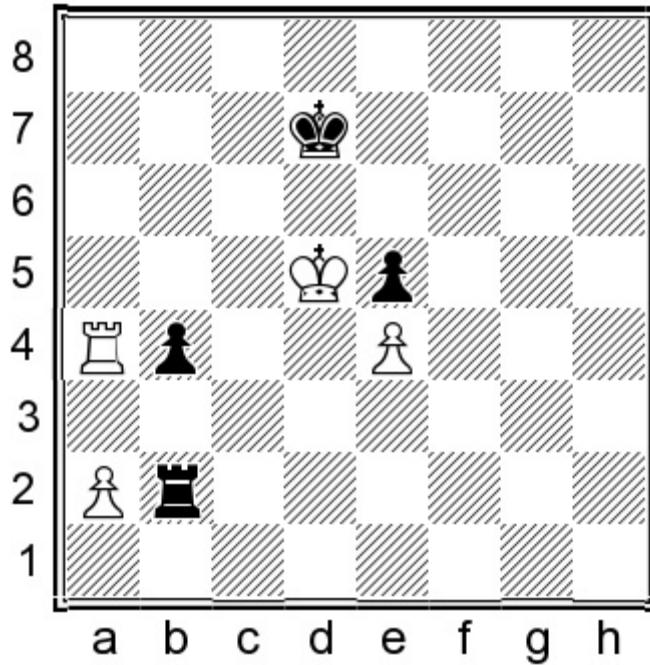
Black should have given a rook check and moved his pawn to g4. Later on, he could either trade kingside pawns, under more favorable circumstances than has actually happened, or move his king to the g-pawn. The eventual consequences of 1... $\hat{g}g1+!$ were:

2. $\hat{d}d2 \hat{x}g2+$ 3. $\hat{e}e1 g4$ 4. $\hat{f}f1$ (4.h5 $\hat{c}c3$ 5.h6 $\hat{x}h2$ 6. $\hat{x}h8 d3$ 7. $\hat{x}c8+\hat{d}d4$ 8. $\hat{x}d8+\hat{e}e3$ 9. $\hat{x}e8+\hat{f}f3-$) 4... $\hat{x}h2$ 5. $\hat{x}xg4 \hat{c}c3$ 6. $\hat{g}g1 \hat{x}c2!$ 7. $\hat{x}g8$ (7.h5 d3-) 7...d3 8. $\hat{x}c8+\hat{b}b2-$;

2. $\hat{e}e2 d3+$ 3. $\hat{d}d2$ (3. $\hat{f}f2 d2$) 3... $\hat{x}g2+$ 4. $\hat{d}d1 g4$ 5.h5 $\hat{x}h2$ 6. $\hat{x}c8+$ (6. $\hat{x}xg4+\hat{c}c3-$) 6... $\hat{d}d4$, etc.

Larsen – Tal

Bled cmsf (9) 1965



9-22

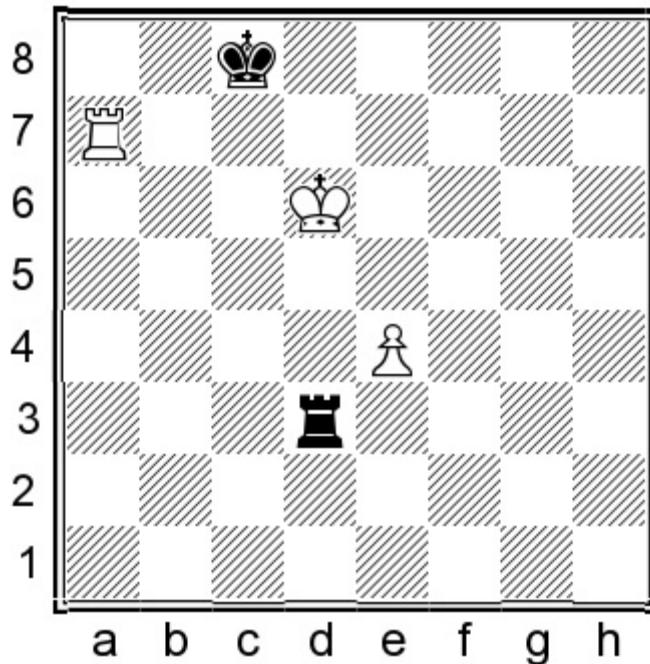
W

The queenside pawns will inevitably be traded, and the Philidor position will probably occur thereafter.

1. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8?$

The black king goes the wrong way: he should have tried for the short side. After 1... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ b3 5.axb3 $\mathbb{Q}xb3$, the draw is obvious.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ b3? (as Müller indicates, after 2... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ the position is still drawn) **3.axb3** $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ **4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3+$**



9-23

W?

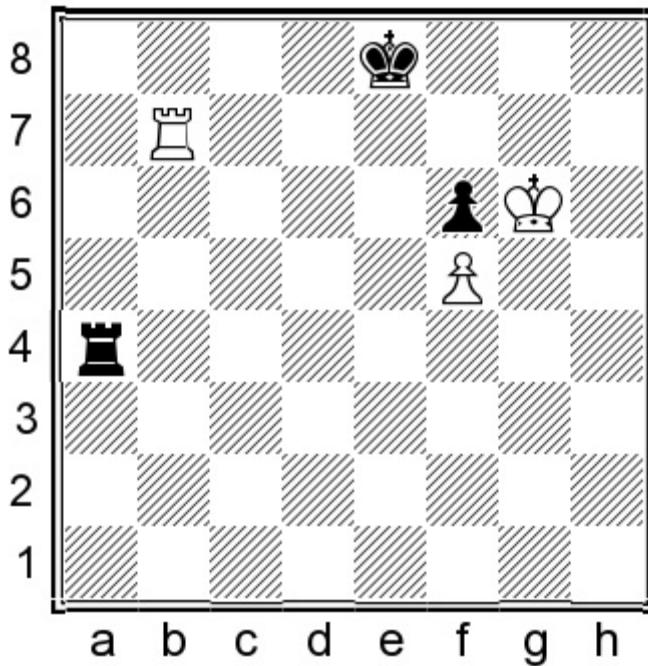
5.♔e6?

Larsen misses his chance to punish his opponent for a grave positional error and allows him to employ the second defensive method in the Philidor position. The winning continuation was 5.♔e7! ♘h3 6.♕a4 (Δ ♘c4+; ♘d4) 6...♘h7+ 7.♔e8 ♘h8+ 8.♔f7+–

5...♘h3 6.♕a8+ (6.♕a4 ♔d8!) 6...♗c7 7.♗f8 ♘e3! 8.e5 ♘e1 9.♗e8 (9.♗f6 ♔d7!) 9...♘h1! 10.♕a8 ♘e1!

White played 18 more moves before he agreed to a peaceful outcome of the game; its result was vitally important for both rivals.

Exercises



9-24

9/4

B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/4. Vukic-Klaus Uwe Müller, Varna 1975

Black holds by means of transferring his king to the short side.

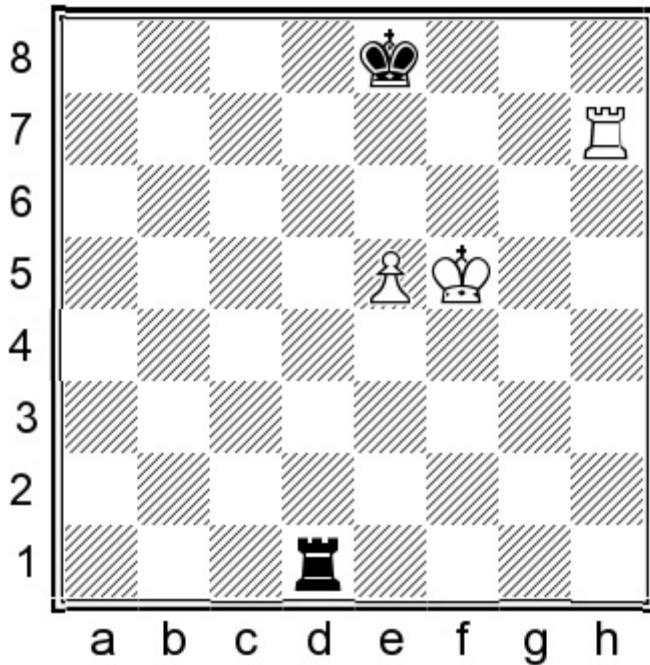
1...♗f8! 2.♗b6 (2.♔xf6 ♘a6+; 2.♗b8+ ♔e7 Δ ...♗g4+) 2...♗f4!

2...♗g4+!? 3.♔xf6 ♔g8 4.♗b8+ ♔h7 is less accurate but still playable. If we shift this position by one file to the left, White would have won. Here, however, Black holds because of the fact that he has two

files (a- and b-) for his rook to stay far away from the white king. The white rook occupies one of them, but Black can use the remaining one: 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}e4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{E}a4=$

3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (5. $\mathbb{E}f8$ $\mathbb{E}a4$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7=$

Black chose the incorrect continuation 1... $\mathbb{E}a6?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7!+-$. The f-pawn will be lost anyway and the king will forever remain on the long side where it only obstructs his own rook. The remainder was 2... $\mathbb{E}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{E}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b1$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 5. $\mathbb{E}e1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{E}d1+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ Black resigned.



9-25
9/5
W?
Play

Show/Hide Solution

9/5. Rohde-Cramling, Innsbruck wch jr 1977

This position was deeply analyzed by Kopaev in 1955. White wins, although with some hard work. When playing it, one should beware of slipping into theoretically drawn endings. Rohde was probably ill-prepared theoretically and failed to avoid an error.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ (of course not 1. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{E}e1!=$)

1. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}d8?$ 2. $\mathbb{E}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7+-$) 2. $\mathbb{E}f7+!$

An important zwischenschach to impair Black's king position. Both 2. $\mathbb{E}a7?$ $\mathbb{E}e1!$ and 2. $\mathbb{E}h8+?$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$

3. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $\mathbb{E}e1!$ draw immediately.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

2... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{R}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{R}b1$ 6. $e6$ is hopeless for Black. When we were discussing diagram 9-8, we stated that the white rook is ideally placed on a8. This is the position White wants in this ending, and he can achieve it – provided that he plays correctly.

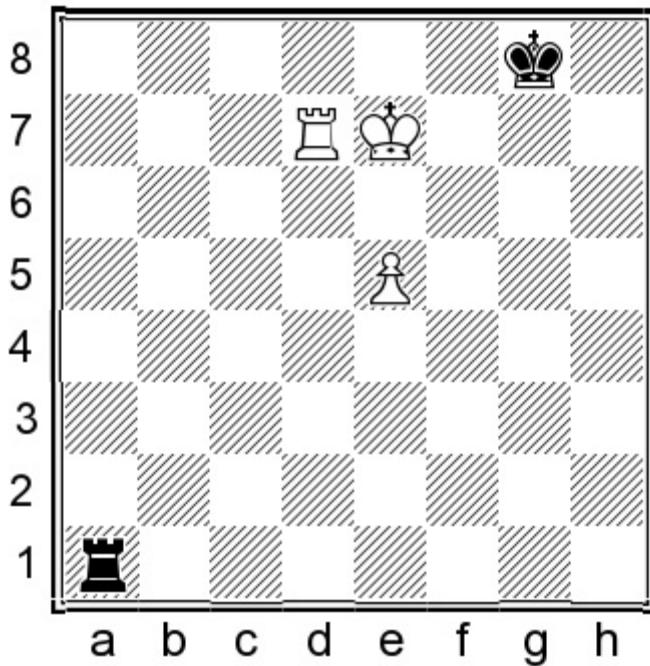
3. $\mathbb{R}d7!$

Rather than 3. $\mathbb{R}a7?$ $\mathbb{E}e1!$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}f8?$ 4. $\mathbb{R}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7+-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8!)$ 4... $\mathbb{R}f1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (unfortunately there is no 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7??$ $\mathbb{R}f7+-$ – this is why the white rook should be placed near the king) 5... $\mathbb{E}e1=$

The move 3. $\mathbb{R}c7?!$ is much less precise, however it does not miss the win after 3... $\mathbb{E}e1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{R}f1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 6. $\mathbb{R}c2$ $\mathbb{R}a7+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{R}f7+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}a7$ 9. $\mathbb{R}d2!$

3... $\mathbb{E}e1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{R}f1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ (the drawbacks of the disadvantageous position of the black king on g8 tell for the first, but not for the last time in this ending) 5... $\mathbb{R}a1!$

The occupation of the long side is the most stubborn defensive method. White's task would have been much easier after 5... $\mathbb{R}f7+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{R}f8$ (6... $\mathbb{R}f1$ 7. $e6$ $\mathbb{R}d1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 9. $\mathbb{R}d2+-$) 7. $e6$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$



16-75
W?

The game continued 6. $e6?$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (see diagram 9-7, the line 2... $\mathbb{R}a1$) 7. $\mathbb{R}d6$ (Δ $\mathbb{Q}e8+-$) 7... $\mathbb{R}a8!$ with a drawn position.

6. $\mathbb{R}d2!$ $\mathbb{R}a7+$ (the threat was 7. $\mathbb{R}g2+$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{R}f7+$ (forced) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}f1$

Unfortunately for Black, the rook must leave the long side because 8... $\mathbb{R}a7$ 9. $\mathbb{R}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{R}d7+$ is bad. White immediately occupies the a-file.

9. $\mathbb{R}a2!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (9... $\mathbb{R}e1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{R}f1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{R}f7+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6+-$; 9... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 10. $\mathbb{R}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d6+-$)

10. $\mathbb{R}a7+$

It is still not too late for a mistake: 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ $\mathbb{R}f7+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{R}b7$ 12.e6 $\mathbb{R}b6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{R}b7+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{R}b1$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{R}a1!=$, or 12. $\mathbb{R}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7=$ (12... $\mathbb{R}b8=$).

10... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 11. $\mathbb{R}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6$) 11. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ is equivalent) 12... $\mathbb{R}f7+$ (12... $\mathbb{R}b1$ 13.e6 $\mathbb{R}b7+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d6$) 13. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{R}b7$ 14.e6 $\mathbb{R}b6+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{R}b7+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{R}e7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d6+-$

The Umbrella

Let us refresh our memory about the methods we have already seen of sheltering the king from rook checks.

(1) The king approaches the rook – an effective method when the rook is not too far away from the king and the pawn.

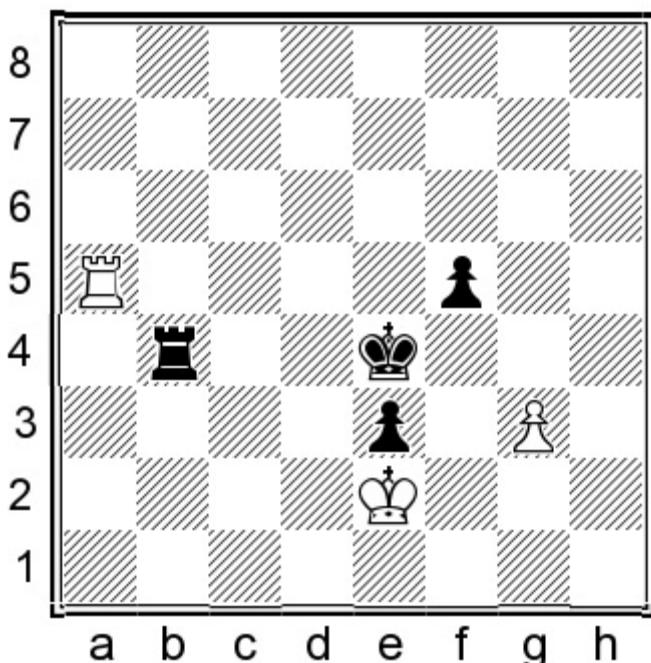
(2) “Bridge” – the rook gives protection to the king.

(3) “Refuge” – the king hides behind its own pawn.

It is a good time to show one more method. Sometimes an enemy pawn can serve as a sort of umbrella that protects the king from checks, as in the next diagram.

Velicka – Polak

Czech ch tt 1995



9-26

B?

1...f4! 2.gxf4 $\mathbb{B}b2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3-$

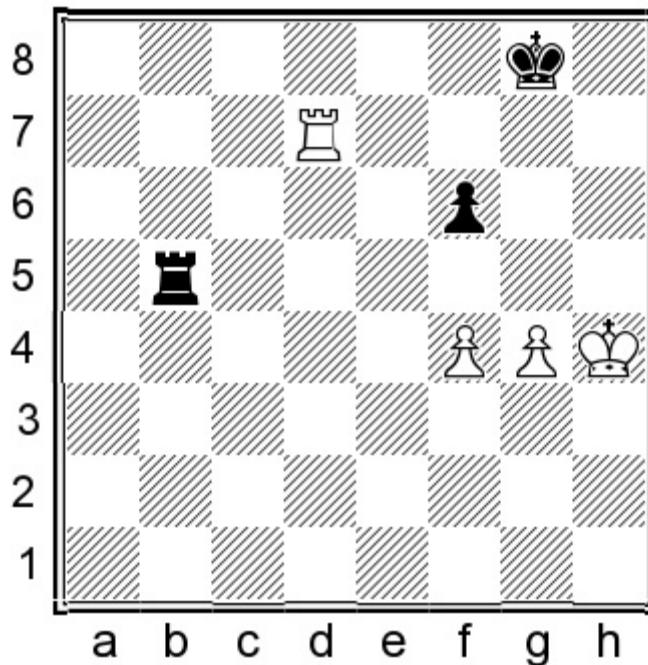
White's own f4-pawn prevents him from saving himself with a check on f5.

4. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ e2 8.f5 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ White resigned.

Tragicomедies

A.Zaitsev – Hübner

Büsum 1969



9-27

B

The game continued 1... $\mathbb{Q}b1??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ (otherwise 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 3.g5 fxg5 4.f5! $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 5.f6 Black resigned.

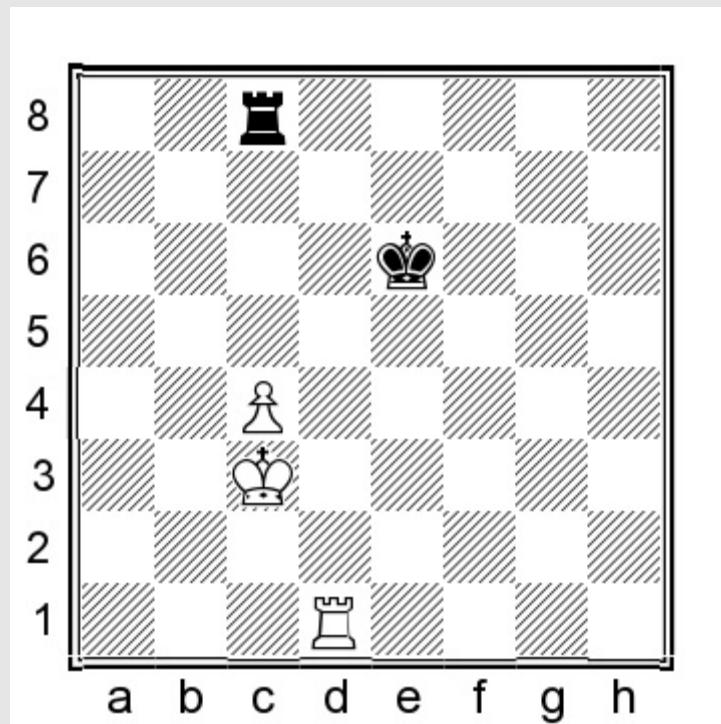
A draw could have been achieved with 1... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 2.f5 $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}g1!$

The waiting tactic with 1... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ was quite good too: after 2.g5 (2.f5 $\mathbb{Q}a1!$) 2...fxg5+ 3.fxg5, Black could defend the position either in the Philidor method (3... $\mathbb{Q}a6$) or passively (3... $\mathbb{Q}a8$).

The Pawn Has Not Crossed the Mid-Line

In this section, we shall learn one more defensive method, the one that is called “***the frontal attack.***”

If, for example, the white pawn stands on b5, it makes no sense for Black to keep his rook on b8 because it is too close to the pawn. However when the pawn has not crossed the middle line, such a rook position is justified, because the rook and the pawn are separated by no less than three rows, and therefore pursuing the king by the rook gives chances for a draw.



9-28

W

This is a typical case of an easy draw due to a frontal attack.

1.♔b4 (Δ 2.c5+–) 1...♜b8+ 2.♔a5 ♜c8!

2...♜a8+? is erroneous in view of 3.♔b6+–

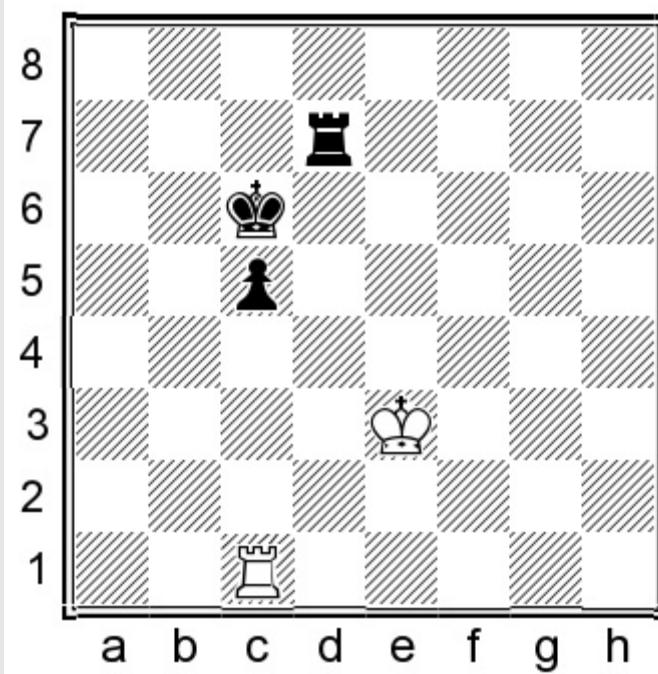
3.♔b5 ♜b8+ 4.♔a6 ♜c8 5.♖d4 ♔e5 6.♖h4 ♔d6=

In the initial position, the rook is placed best at c8 where it prevents a pawn advance. However Black holds with a rook at h8 too. He meets 1.c5 with either 1...♔e7 2.♔c4 ♜d8= or 1...♜h4 (cutting the king off the pawn) 2.c6 ♔e7 3.c7 ♜h8=. ***Horizontally cutting the king off from the pawn is a useful defensive method.***

Another important tip: in this sort of position, the black king should stay on the fifth or sixth rank. If he does not Black usually loses.

Kochiev – Smyslov

L'vov zt 1978



9-29

W

Both 1. ♕e4

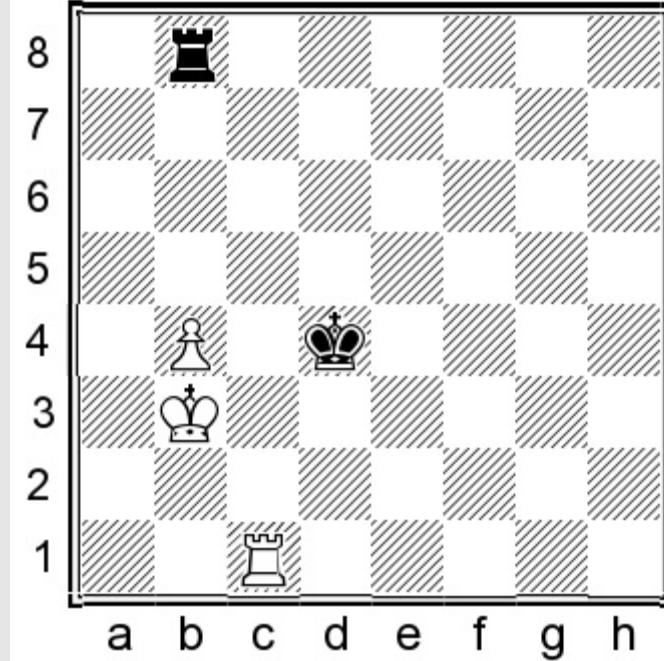
and 1. ♔h1 might lead to a draw. However White carelessly moved the king away from a safe place.

1. ♕e2?? ♖b5 2. ♖b1+ ♖a4 3. ♖c1 ♖b4 4. ♖b1+ ♖a3! 5. ♖c1 ♖d5!

First of all, Smyslov has optimally activated his king (an ideal place for the king is two squares diagonally from the pawn), and now he protects the pawn with the rook. Were the white king at e3, he could attack the rook immediately, while now White cannot do it in time.

6. ♕e3 ♖b2 7. ♖c4 (7. ♕e4 ♖d4+) 7... ♖b3

White resigned. The pawn crosses the middle of the board and, with the white king on the long side, the position is lost.



9-30

With Black on move, this is a draw: 1... \hat{Q} d5! 2. \hat{R} c4!? \hat{Q} d6! 3. \hat{Q} a4 \hat{Q} d5!

White, if on move, wins.

1. \hat{R} c6

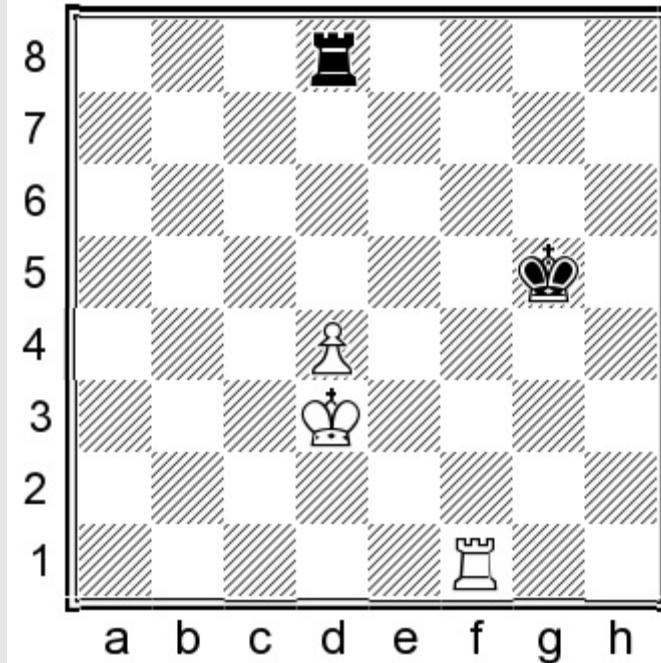
1. \hat{R} c5 Δ 2. \hat{R} h5, 3.b5 is no less strong.

1. \hat{R} c6 \hat{Q} d5 2. \hat{R} a6 \hat{R} b7 (or 2... \hat{Q} d4) 3. \hat{Q} a4 \hat{Q} c4 4. \hat{R} c6+ \hat{Q} d5 5.b5+–

Conclusion: cutting off the king of the weaker side along a rank can often be more effective than the same procedure along a file.

Now let us discuss situations with the black king being cut off from the pawn by more than one file.

A.Chéron 1923



9-31

W

1. ♜c4 ♜c8+ 2. ♜b5 ♜d8 3. ♜c5 ♜c8+ 4. ♜b6! ♜d8

White has placed his king at its most active position. Now it is time to protect the pawn with the rook. Unlike the Kochiev-Smyslov endgame, he cannot do it horizontally. However the rook can be placed behind the pawn here, because the black king fails to help his rook in time.

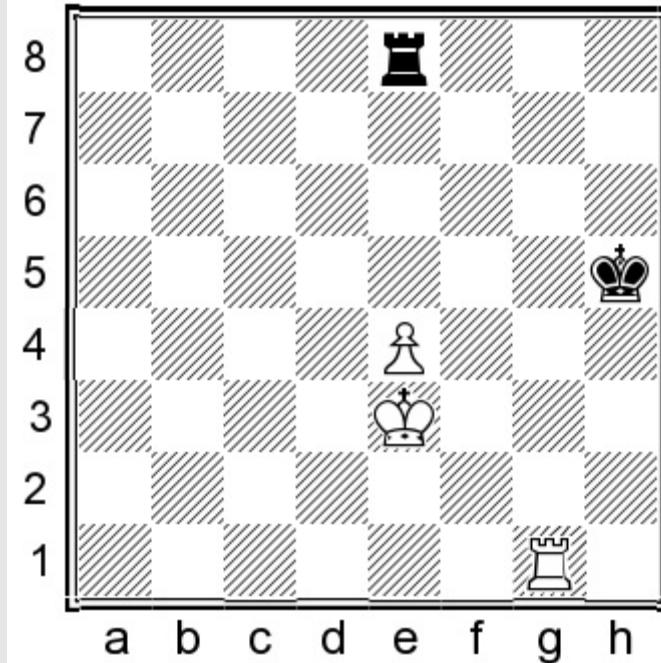
5. ♜d1! ♜f6 6. ♜c7 ♜d5 7. ♜c6 ♜a5

7... ♜d8 8. d5 is also hopeless.

8. ♜e1!

It is important to cut off the king from the pawn again. Now Black loses in view of the unlucky distribution of his pieces: the king stands at the long side while the rook is at the short one. For example, 8... ♜a6+ 9. ♜b5 ♜d6 10. ♜c5 ♜d8(a6) 11. d5, etc.

A.Chéron 1926*



9-32

W?

The method that was applied in the previous example does not work here. After 1.♔d4 ♜d8+ 2.♕c5 ♜e8 3.♔d5 ♜d8+ 4.♕c6 ♜e8 5.♔e1? ♕g6 6.♔d7 ♜a8 (or 6...♜e5 7.♔d6 ♜a5) Black's rook occupies the long side with an obvious draw.

The winning idea is to create mate threats against the black king which is pressed to the edge of the board. Its current position on h5 is optimally suited for defense. Therefore White, utilizing zugzwang, must drive it away from h5:

1.♜g2! ♔h4! 2.♜g7

2.e5? ♜xe5+ 3.♔f4 is premature in view of 3...♔h3!=. 2.♜g6 ♔h5 3.♔d6? ♕g5 4.♔d4 ♜a8= also brings nothing.

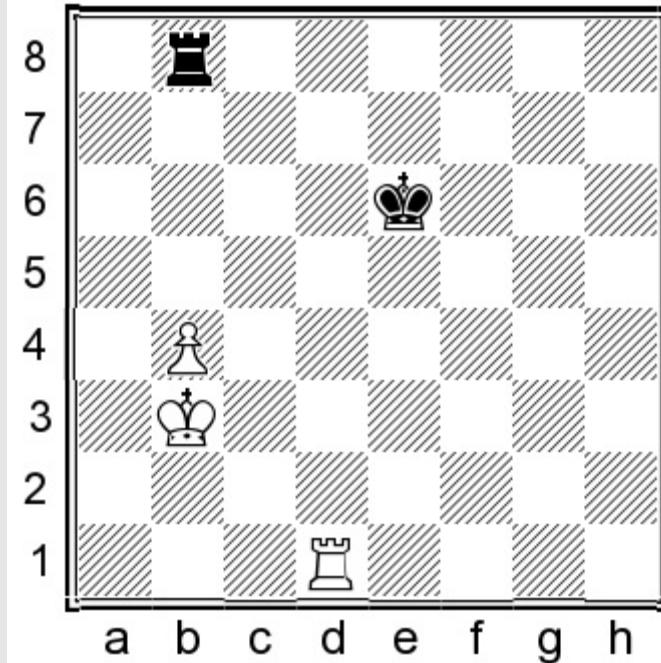
2...♔h5 3.♜g1!○ 3...♔h6

Now 3...♔h4 loses to 4.e5! ♜xe5+ 5.♔f4. The idea of cutting off the white king along the rank also does not help: 3...♜a8 4.e5 ♜a4 5.e6 ♔h6 (5...♜a6 6.♔f4 ♜xe6 7.♔f5+-) 6.e7 ♜a8 7.♔f4 ♜e8 8.♔f5 ♜xe7 9.♔f6+-

4.♔d4 ♜d8+ 5.♕c5 ♜e8 6.♔d5 ♜d8+ 7.♔e6! ♜e8+ 8.♔f6!+-

It is important to remember that in the case of a knight pawn, cutting off the king by two files is not sufficient for a win.

A.Chéron 1923



9-33

W

1. $\mathbb{R}d4$

After 1. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{R}a8+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{R}b8+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{R}a8+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{R}b8+$ the king can avoid checks only by returning to b3. The edge of the board is too close, and there is no comfortable square two steps away from the pawn diagonally.

1. $\mathbb{R}d4 \mathbb{Q}e5!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

If 2. $\mathbb{R}d7$, 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a7 \mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{Q}c6=$ follows.

2... $\mathbb{R}h8$

Another method of defense also deserves attention: 2... $\mathbb{R}c8+$ 3. $\mathbb{R}c4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{R}b8$) 3... $\mathbb{R}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{R}c6 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{R}a6$ (a similar position with the king on b3 would have been winning) 5... $\mathbb{R}c8+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3 \mathbb{R}c6!$ 7. $\mathbb{R}a7 \mathbb{R}b6=$ (Δ 8... $\mathbb{Q}c6$).

3. $\mathbb{R}d7$

3. $b5 \mathbb{R}b8!$ 4. $\mathbb{R}h4 \mathbb{Q}d6!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}c7=$

3... $\mathbb{Q}e6!=$

It should be mentioned that 3... $\mathbb{R}b8?$ loses to 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{R}a7$ (5. $\mathbb{R}d4+-$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $b5 \mathbb{R}c8+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{R}c7$ 8. $b6$. The continuation 3... $\mathbb{R}c8+?$ occurred in Dolmatov-Sorm (Lugano 1986). White won after 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{R}d4 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{R}c4 \mathbb{R}b8$ 7. $\mathbb{R}c6 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{R}a6$.

Until now, we have only considered positions with the pawn on fourth rank. The cases of a less advanced pawn are much more complicated, and they occur much less often, therefore we shall not investigate them. I wish only to mention that the distance between the pawn and the hostile rook is

longer when the pawn stands on the second or third rank, and the defending resources are naturally more significant. Therefore, for example, if the pawn stands on the third rank, the king should be cut off by three files for a win (with only two files it is a draw if, of course, Black's king and rook are placed "in accordance with the rules").

It deserves to be mentioned that a frontal attack is particularly effective against a rook pawn. For example, with a pawn on a4, even cutting the king off by three files is not sufficient for a win.

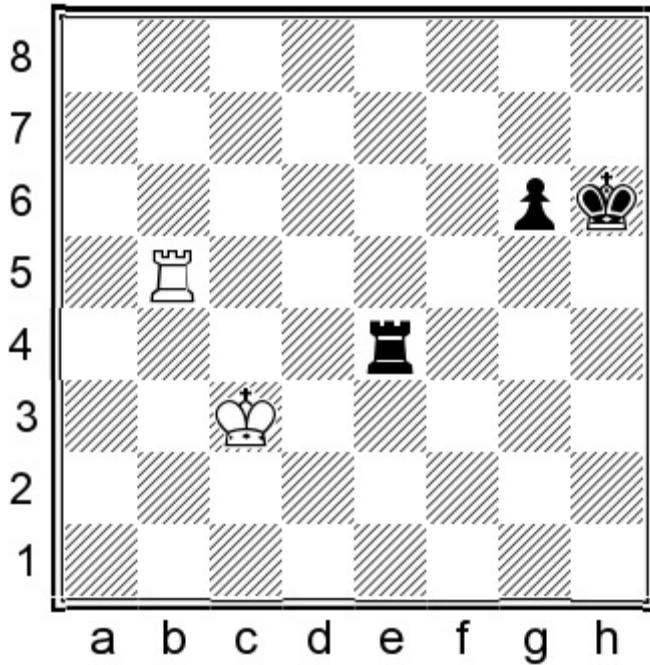
Tragicomедies

We have seen a tragicomedy in a game by Kochiev in which his grave error had fatal consequences. A draw would have maintained excellent chances for his qualifying for the Interzonal tournament. After losing, he failed to qualify, and the whole career of this young talented grandmaster declined steeply thereafter.

Many have erred in similar situations, even the greats of this world.

Tal – I.Zaitsev

USSR ch tt, Riga 1968



9-34

W?

White should play ♔d3 and ♕b1, but which order of moves is correct?

A theoretical draw can be achieved after 1.♕b1! g5 2.♔d3 ♕e5 3.♔d4 ♕e8 4.♕g1 ♔g6 5.♔d3 (see the previous diagram).

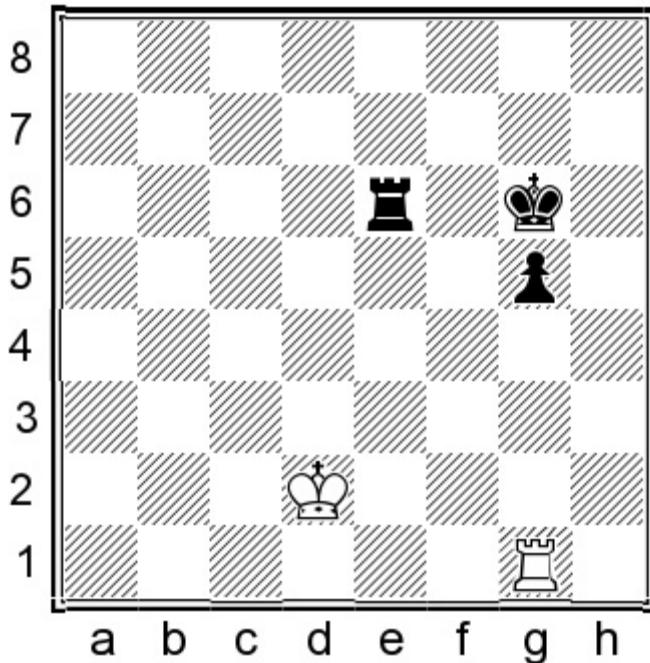
However 1.♔d3?? ♕e1! occurred; the game was adjourned here, and White resigned without further

play. In order to bring the rook to the first rank, White must attack the black rook with his king, but we know that a king is placed badly on the second rank. Here are the eventual consequences if the game were continued:

2.♔d2 ♜e6 3.♕b1 g5 4.♕g1 (4.♔d3 g4 5.♕b5 g3 6.♔d2 g2 7.♕b1 ♜g6 8.♕g1 ♔h5 9.♔e3 ♔h4—+)
4...♔h5! (Δ 5...g4)

It is useful to improve the king's position by bringing it from h6 to g6. The premature 4...♜e5? misses the win: 5.♔d3 ♔h5 6.♔d4 ♜e2 7.♔d3 ♜h2 8.♔e3=

5.♕h1+ ♔g6 6.♕g1 (6.♕e1 ♜xe1 7.♔xe1 ♔h5 8.♔f1 ♔h4!—+)



9-35
\$
B

6...♜e5! 7.♔d3 ♔f5! 8.♔d4

After 8.♔f1+ ♔g4 9.♔d4 (9.♕g1+ ♔f3 10.♔d4 ♜a5—+) both 9...♜a5 10.♔e3 ♜a3+ 11.♔e2 ♜a2+ 12.♔e3 ♔h3—+ and 9...♜e2 10.♔d3 ♜h2 (10...♜g2) are strong.

8...♜e4+ 9.♔d3 g4 10.♔f1+

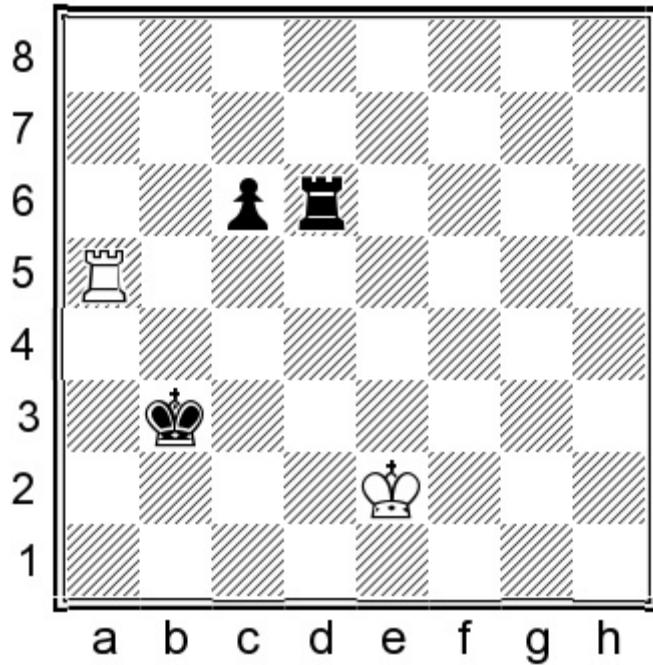
10.♕g2 ♜f4 11.♔e2 ♔g5 12.♔f2 (12.♕g1 ♔h4) 12...g3! leads to the same result.

10...♜f4 11.♔e2

11.♕g1 ♔g5 12.♔e2 ♔h4

11...g3! 12.♕xf4+ ♔xf4 13.♔e1 ♔e3! 14.♔f1 ♔f3○—+

Exercises



9-36
9/6
W?

Show/Hide Solution

9/6. Arencibia-Vladimirov, Leon 1991

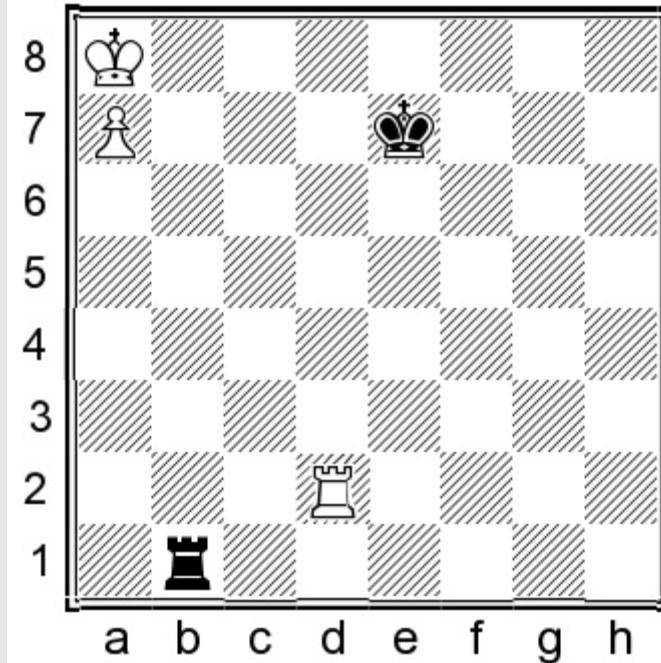
The game continued 1. $\mathbb{R}c5?$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c1$ c5 3. $\mathbb{R}b1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 4. $\mathbb{R}c1$ $\mathbb{R}d5$, and White resigned. The reason for the defeat is the same as in the Kochiev-Smyslov and the Tal-I.Zaitsev endings: the poor position of the king on e2.

Another inaccurate possibility is 1. $\mathbb{R}a6?$ expecting 1... $\mathbb{Q}b4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a1=$ But Black plays 1... $\mathbb{Q}c3!?$, putting White into zugzwang. On 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}e6+$ the white king is driven one more file farther from the pawn. After 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 4. $\mathbb{R}a1$ c5, the king fails to leave the second rank in time. All that remains is 2. $\mathbb{R}b6$, but then 2... $\mathbb{R}d2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ c5+ follows. If the rook were on a6, a check from a3 would have saved the game.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a1$ c5 3. $\mathbb{R}b1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 4. $\mathbb{R}c1=$, and if 4... $\mathbb{R}d5$, then 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$.

A Rook and Rook Pawn vs. a Rook

The King Is in Front of Its Own Pawn



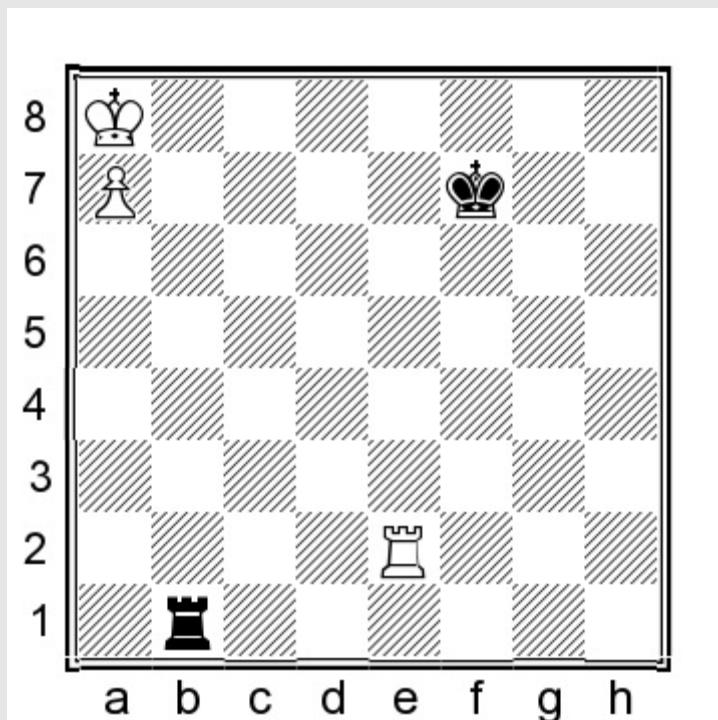
9-37

W

A draw is inevitable. The only possible attempt to free the king from custody is the transfer of the rook to b8, but then Black's king will stand in for the black rook on guard.

1. $\mathbb{R}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}b8$ $\mathbb{R}c1$ (or 3... $\mathbb{R}h1$ 4. $\mathbb{R}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{R}b2$ $\mathbb{R}c1$) **4. $\mathbb{R}b2$ $\mathbb{R}c3$** , and White cannot make progress.

Let us move the black king and the white rook one file away, as in the next diagram.



9-38

W

White wins, because the black king fails to reach c7 in time.

1.♕h2 ♔e7 2.♕h8 ♔d6

If 2...♔d7, then 3.♕b8 ♕a1 4.♕b7 ♕b1+ 5.♕a6 ♕a1+ 6.♕b6 ♕b1+ 7.♕c5. With Black's king on d6, the c5-square is not available for escaping, so White must find another itinerary.

3.♕b8 ♕a1 4.♕b7 ♕b1+ 5.♕c8 ♕c1+ 6.♕d8 ♕h1 7.♕b6+ ♔c5

Both 8.♕e6? ♕a1 and 8.♕a6? ♕h8+ 9.♔d7 ♕h7+ 10.♕e8 ♕h8+ 11.♕f7 ♕a8 are useless now.

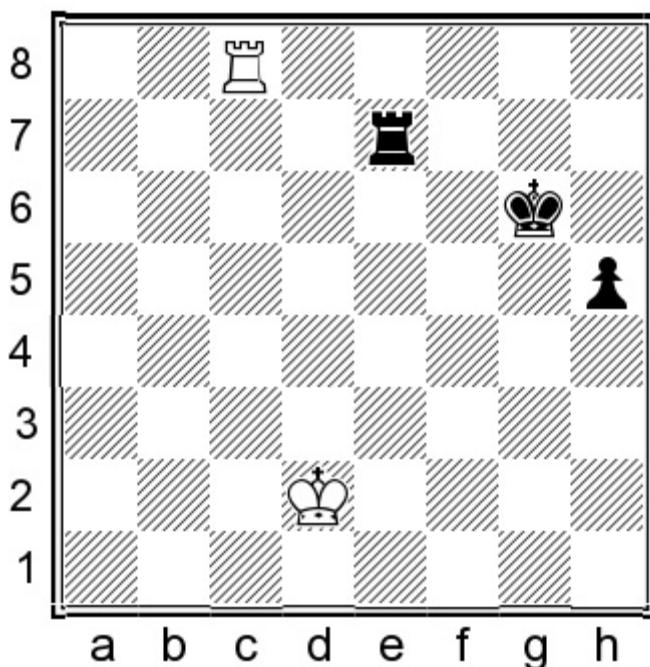
8.♕c6+! ♔b5 (8...♔d5 9.♕a6 ♕h8+ 10.♕c7 ♕h7+ 11.♕b6) 9.♕c8 ♕h8+ 10.♕c7 ♕h7+ 11.♕b8+-

Black to play in diagram 9-38 should opt for 1...♕b3!? as then White must win the queen vs. rook ending which arises after

9.♕c6+ ♔xc6 10.a8=♕+ ♔d6.

Tragicomедies

Vladimirov – Rashkovsky
USSR chsf, Chelyabinsk 1975



9-39

W?

To achieve a draw, White should simply force Black's king to the h-file: 1.♕g8+! ♔f5 2.♕f8+ ♔g4 3.♕g8+ ♔h3 4.♕g5 h4 5.♕g8=

And 1. $\mathbb{E}c1!$ Δ 2. $\mathbb{E}e1=$ is also good.

1. $\mathbb{E}c3?$ h4 2. $\mathbb{E}e3?$

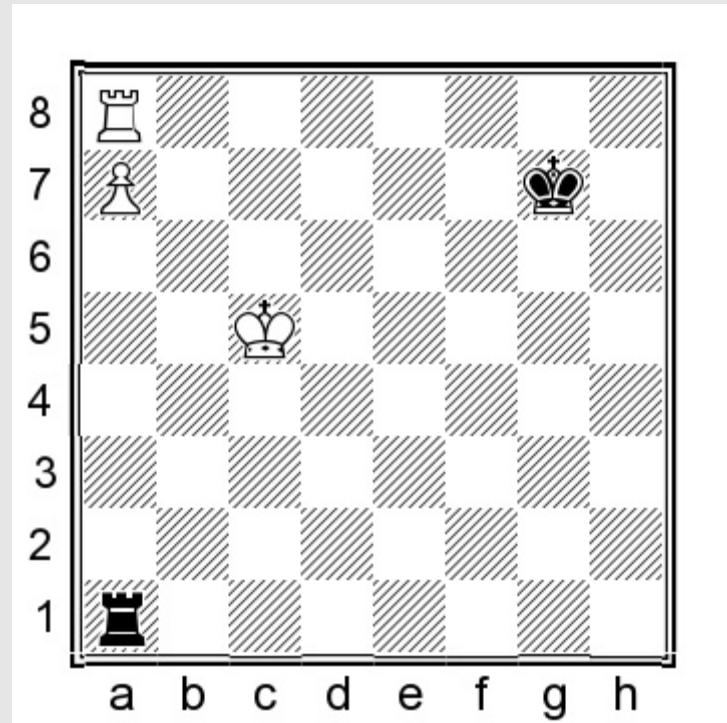
The decisive error! It was still not too late to return to the correct plan by playing 2. $\mathbb{E}c6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{E}c8$ h3 (or 3... $\mathbb{E}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}g8+$) 4. $\mathbb{E}h8$ (4. $\mathbb{E}g8+$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 7. $\mathbb{E}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 8. $\mathbb{E}g6$ h2 9. $\mathbb{E}g8=$

2... $\mathbb{E}h7!$ 3. $\mathbb{E}e1$ (3. $\mathbb{E}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ is also bad) 3... h3 4. $\mathbb{E}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}f7+!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}a7$, planning 8... $\mathbb{E}a2+$ and 9... h2) 7... $\mathbb{E}a7$ White resigned.

If 8. $\mathbb{E}h2$, then 8... $\mathbb{E}a1+$ (but, of course, not 8... $\mathbb{Q}g3??$ 9. $\mathbb{E}g2+!$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$ is decisive.

A similar position (like diagram 9-39, but with the white rook on d4 plus reversed wings and colors) occurred in Dvoiris-Kovalev, USSR ch(1), Simferopol 1988. Curiously enough, Kovalev lost precisely in the same way as Vladimirov: 1. $\mathbb{E}d3?$ h4 2. $\mathbb{E}e3?$

The Rook Is in Front of the Pawn and the Pawn Is on the Seventh Rank



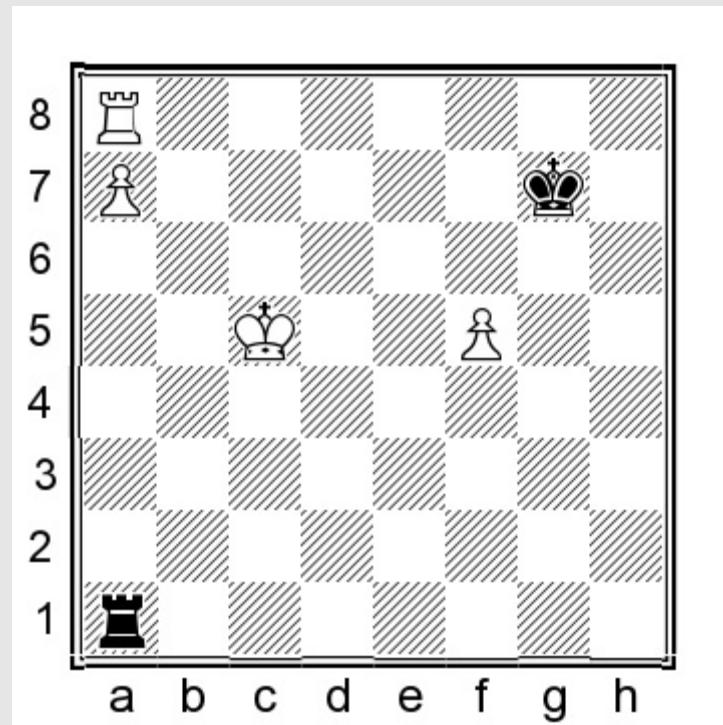
9-40

A standard defensive formation: Black's rook is behind the hostile pawn, while the king is placed on g7 or h7. White's rook is riveted to the pawn and cannot leave a8. If 1. $\mathbb{Q}b6$, then 1... $\mathbb{E}b1+$. The white king cannot escape from vertical checks. Black's rook drives the king away and returns to a1.

Other defensive systems occur much less frequently. The black king can hide in the “shadow” of his opponent, or (with the black rook on the seventh rank) in the “shadow” of his own rook. We just mention these ideas but do not study them here. Sometimes they are sufficient for a draw, and sometimes not. For example, if we move the black king from g7 to c3, the move 1. $\mathbb{E}c8!$ wins. A drawn position is one with the white king on c7 and the black king on c5.

Back to the last diagram; let's add a white pawn on h5. For the outcome, there will be no change: Black simply ignores its existence. The same is valid for a g5-pawn and even for two or three white pawns on the g-file.

However an f5-pawn wins.



9-41

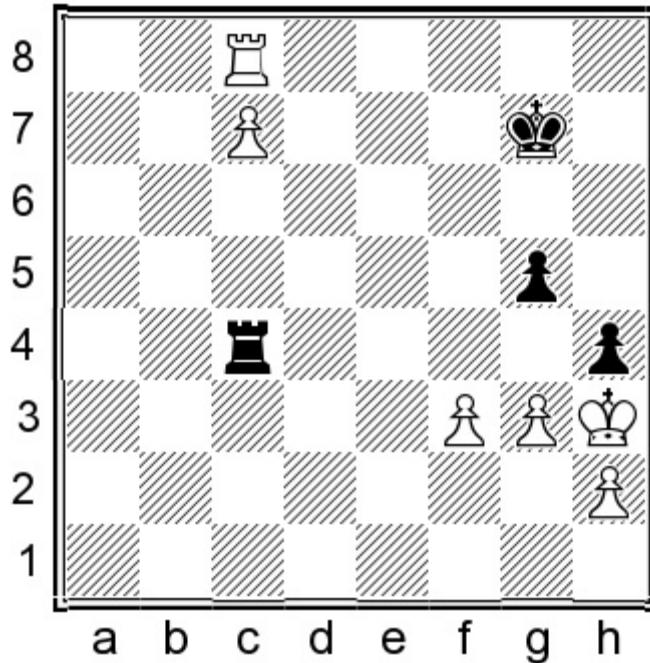
W

1.f6+ ♔f7 (1...♔xf6 2.♕f8+; 1...♔h7 2.f7) **2.♕h8** and Black loses his rook.

Tragomedies

Khaunin – Fridman

Leningrad 1962



9-42

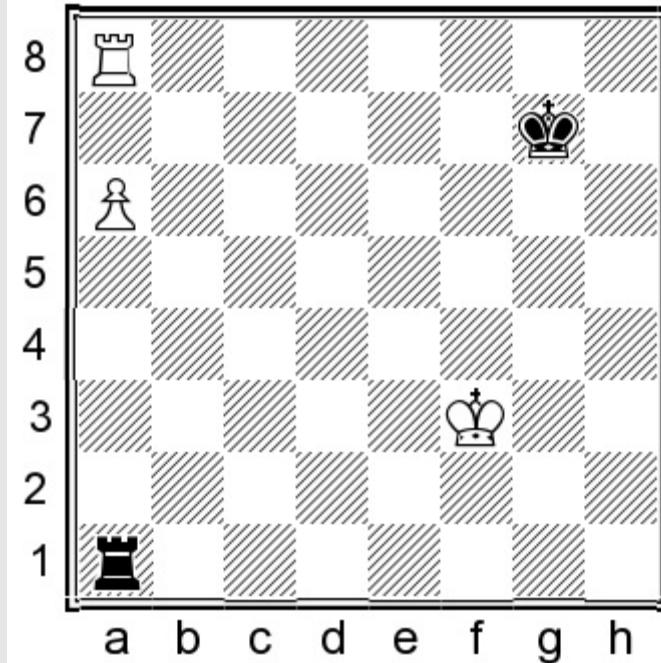
B

1...hxg3 2.hxg3? g4+! 3.fxg4 A draw is inevitable, as White has only g-pawns (regardless of whether one or two).

The winning continuation was 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg3!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3.h4! gxh4+ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5.f4, and the f-pawn goes ahead with decisive effect.

The Rooks Is in Front of the Pawn and the Pawn Is on the Sixth Rank

J.Vancura 1924*



9-43

B

The main difference between this position and those discussed above, is the fact that here White's king has a refuge from vertical checks: the a7-square. The king hides there in order to free his rook from the job of protecting the pawn.

The black king, in contrast, fails to reach the queenside: 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (2.a7? $\mathbb{Q}g7$ would have been premature) 2... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3.a7! $\mathbb{Q}d7(f7)$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h8+-$

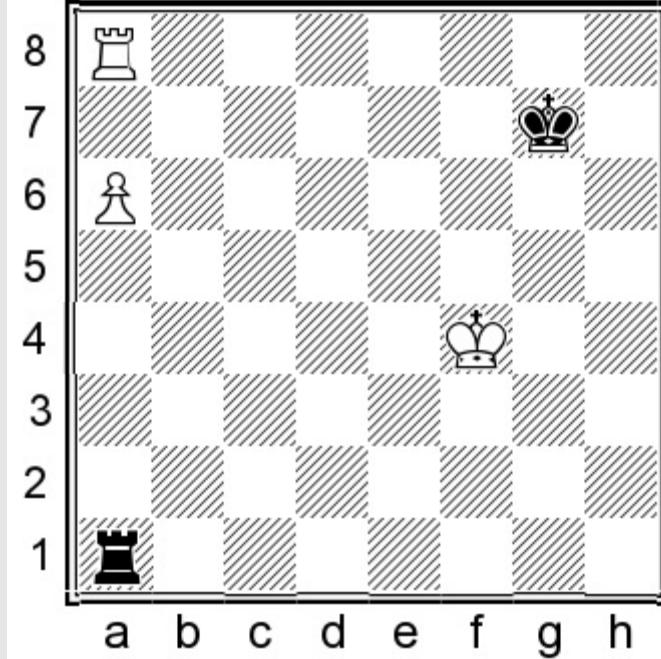
2... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (instead of 2... $\mathbb{Q}e7$) is also hopeless: 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}c1!$? 11. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (rather than 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6?$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$) 11... $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 13.a7+– Black's king fails to reach c7 in time (see diagram 9-38).

Because of this analysis, the diagrammed position had been considered winning for a long time. However a saving plan was finally discovered. This plan is based on the fact that the a6-pawn gives the king a refuge from vertical checks, but cannot hide him from side checks. Therefore Black should bring his rook to f6.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f1+!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ This is the so-called “*Vancura position*.” Black follows the same “pawn in the crosshairs” method found in endings with bishops of opposite colors. The rook attacks the pawn in order to prevent the enemy's rook from leaving a8. What can White do? If a6-a7, Black always has $\mathbb{Q}a6$ (his king will obviously never leave the g7- and h7-squares). If White defends the pawn with his king, a series of checks follows, and then the rook returns to f6. For example, 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ (the best place for the rook!) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+!$, etc.

Now let us move the white king to f4.

P.Romanovsky 1950



9-44

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}f1+?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}f6$ is bad here on account of 3. $\mathbb{Q}g8+!$ However, Black has no other defensive plan than the rook transfer to the sixth rank.

Therefore 1... $\mathbb{Q}c1!$

If 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}c6=$ follows, achieving the Vancura position. White may use the opportunity for removing his rook from the corner.

2. $\mathbb{Q}b8 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}b7+ \mathbb{Q}f6$ 4.a7 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ is weaker)

When the rook stood on a8, the black king was riveted to the kingside; but now the time comes for a march to the pawn. But this should be done carefully: the premature 3... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7+ \mathbb{Q}d8$ 6.a7 loses for Black.

3... $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}f7!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

If 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6$, then 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$, but not 5... $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ 6.a7 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h8!$

5... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}a1$, and the draw is clear.

It is worth mentioning that 1... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ (instead of 1... $\mathbb{Q}c1$) would lose: 2. $\mathbb{Q}a7+! \mathbb{Q}f6$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6+ \mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5+-$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h7! \mathbb{Q}g6$ 5.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7+-$

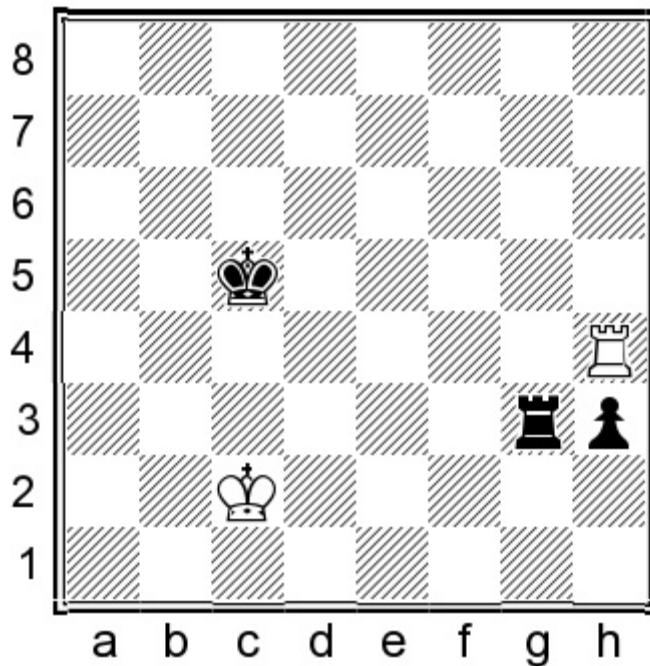
However the first moves might have been transposed: 1... $\mathbb{Q}a5!?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}c5!$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}b5!$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}a7+ \mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}c6=$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}a5=$

In many lines, the kings compete in a race to the queenside. If the white king stood closer to the pawn, then the black one would eventually arrive too late. This means that Black cannot delay the rook transfer to the sixth rank; this plan should be executed as soon as possible.

Tragicomедies

Vyzhmanavin – Lerner

USSR ch, Lvov 1984



9-45

B

In this drawn position, Black uses his last available trap, and unexpectedly succeeds.

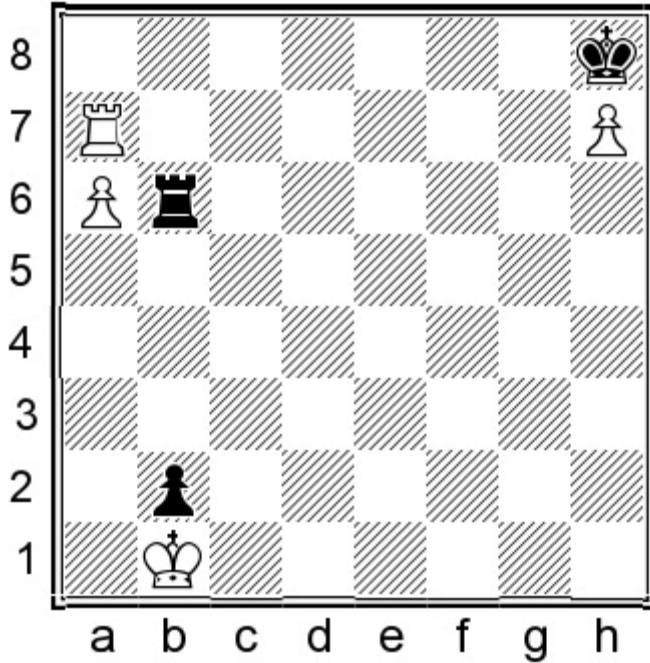
1... $\mathbb{E}a3!?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2??$

Correct was, of course, 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ $\mathbb{E}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2=$

2... $h2!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}a1!$ White resigned.

Ivanchuk – Lautier

Horgen 1995



9-46

B

1...♝b4??

The Vancura position could be achieved through the elementary 1...♝f6! 2.♜a8+ (after 2.♔xb2 Black's rook would become "desperado" because his king is stalemated) 2...♚xh7 3.♔xb2 ♚g7.

1...♝b4?? 2.♜c7 (2.♜b7 is also good) 2...♝a4 3.♜c8+??

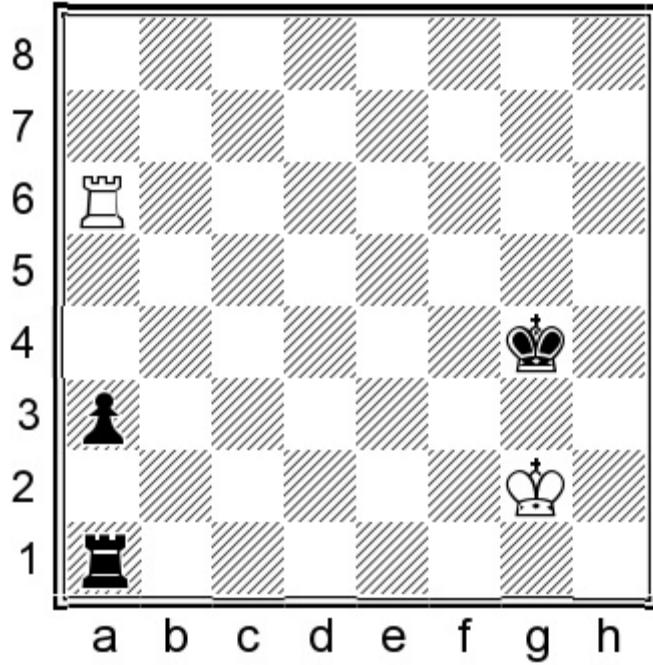
White gives his adversary a nice present: a vitally important tempo 3.a7?? ♜xa7= was obviously erroneous, but the line 3.♜c6! ♚xh7 4.♔xb2 ♚g7 5.♔b3 ♜a1 6.♔b4 ♜f7 7.♔c5(b5) 7...♚e7 8.♔b6 ♚d7 9.♔b7 led to a win.

3...♚xh7 4.♜c6 ♜b4??

A gift in return! After 4...♚g7!, Black's king could have come to the queenside in time: 5.♔xb2 ♜f7 6.♔b3 ♜a1 7.♔b4 ♚e7 8.♔b5 ♚d7=

5.a7 ♜a4 6.♜c7+ ♜g6 7.♔xb2 ♜f6 8.♔b3 ♜a1 9.♔b4 ♜e6 10.♔b5 (10.♔c5) 10...♚d6 11.♜c6+ (11.♜h7) 11...♚d5 12.♜a6 ♜b1+ 13.♔a5 ♜c5 14.♜c6+! ♜xc6 15.a8=♛+ and White won.

Brodsky – Khmelnitsky
Kherson 1989



9-47

W?

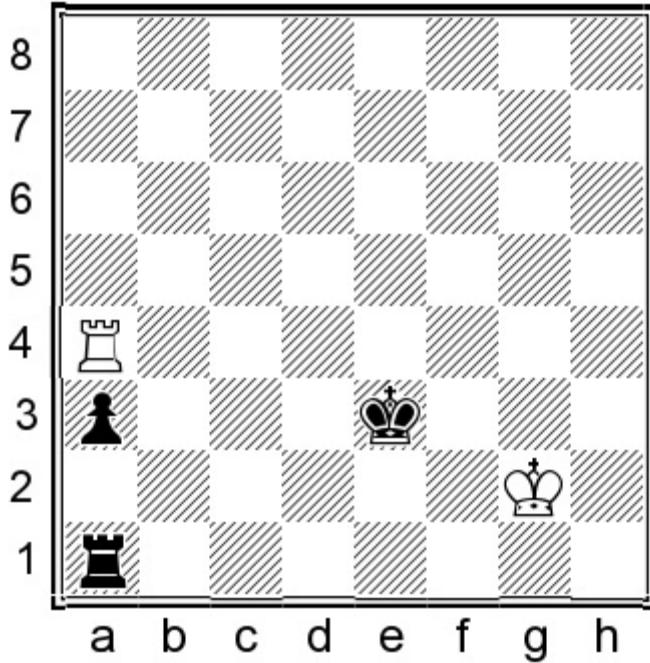
1. $\mathbb{R}a4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c4$ $\mathbb{R}a2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{R}b2$ 4. $\mathbb{R}a4$ would have led to a draw.

1. $\mathbb{R}g6+?$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}f5??$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g3=$ is the Vancura position) **2. $\mathbb{R}a6$**

White does not have 2. $\mathbb{R}g3$ on account of 2... $\mathbb{R}g1+!$; 2. $\mathbb{R}f6+$ can be met by 2... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$, while 2. $\mathbb{R}c6$ by 2... $\mathbb{R}a2+!$

2... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3?$

An absurd move! If the king is going to move ahead, then why not to d3? But 3... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{R}f4$ $\mathbb{R}a2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{R}b2$ would have been a much simpler win.



9-48
\$
W?

Now we have (with reversed wings and colors) the Romanovsky position (1950). Its solution is
 4. $\mathbb{R}h4!! \mathbb{Q}d2$ (4... $\mathbb{R}a2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1! \mathbb{R}f2$ 6. $\mathbb{R}a4 \mathbb{R}a2$ 7. $\mathbb{R}h4=$) 5. $\mathbb{R}h3!$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 6. $\mathbb{R}f3!$ $a2$ 7. $\mathbb{R}f2+!$ (7. $\mathbb{R}a3?? \mathbb{Q}b2$)
 7... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{R}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 9. $\mathbb{R}a3=$

4. $\mathbb{R}g4?$ (a decisive error) 4... $\mathbb{R}a2+!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3$

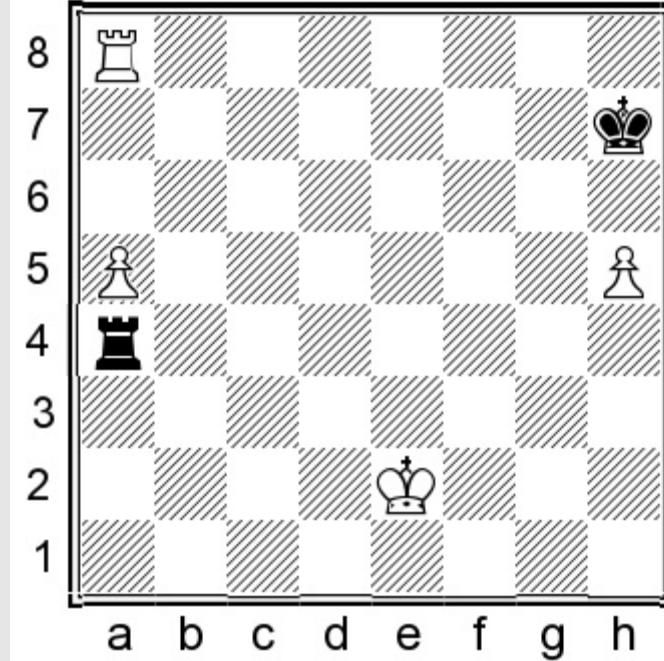
After 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}f3!$ 6. $\mathbb{R}a4$ (6. $\mathbb{R}c4 \mathbb{R}e2$), Black has a pleasant choice between 6... $\mathbb{R}a1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}e2$ and
 6... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{R}a1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2 a2 \Delta$ 9... $\mathbb{R}h1$.

5... $\mathbb{R}f2!$ 6. $\mathbb{R}a4 a2$ 7. $\mathbb{R}a3+ \mathbb{Q}d4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{R}b2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{R}f2+$

White resigned. The aim of the last check was probably to improve the rook position after 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$, bringing it to c2 first, and to push the king thereafter. However the immediate 9... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}b4$ 11. $\mathbb{R}a8 \mathbb{Q}c3-$ was sufficient for a win.

a- and h-Pawns

In the Vancura position, let us add a white pawn on the h-file. It is easy to see that the evaluation remains unchanged. The defensive method is precisely the same as before: the rook maintains the pawn in the crosshairs from the side and does not release the hostile rook from the corner.



9-49

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4+$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}f5!$

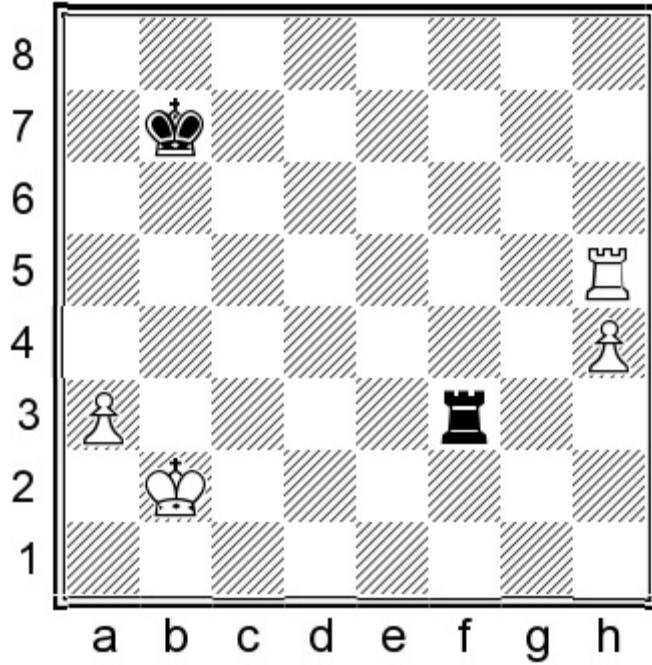
The best policy is to pay no attention to the h-pawn at all. 3... $\mathbb{Q}xh5?$ loses to 4.a6 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}h5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}h6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7$

4.a6 (4. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}f4+$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}f5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}f6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}b6$, etc.

Tragomedies

Suetin – F. Portisch

Belgrade 1977



9-50

W?

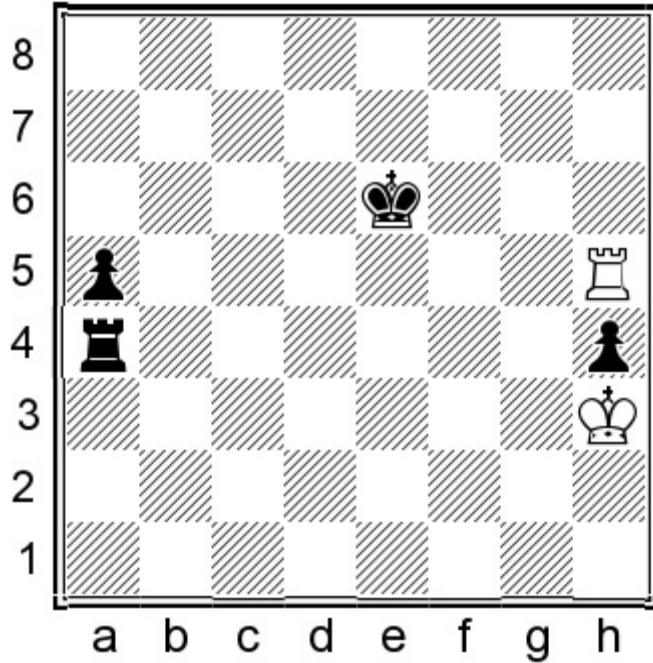
White could move his rook to a more advantageous position: 1. $\mathbb{R}c5!$ (or 1. $\mathbb{R}b5+$) 1... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c3$ $\mathbb{R}f2+$ (2... $\mathbb{R}f4$ 3. $\mathbb{R}h3$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}c2!?$ Δ 4. $\mathbb{R}h2$) 3... $\mathbb{R}h2$ 4. $\mathbb{R}c4$ and 5.a4 with an easy win. However Suetin does not suspect any danger of a draw.

1.a4?? $\mathbb{R}f4!=$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6!$ (the threat was 3. $\mathbb{R}b5+$ followed by 4.h5+–) 3.a5 $\mathbb{R}e4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{R}f4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{R}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}c4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{R}c3+$

The rook is placed best on the c-file. 7... $\mathbb{R}b4?$ loses to 8. $\mathbb{R}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 9.h5 $\mathbb{R}b5$ 10.h6+– 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{R}c4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{R}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}c4$ 11. $\mathbb{R}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 12. $\mathbb{R}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ Draw.

Szabó – Tukmakov

Buenos Aires 1970



9-51
W

White may simply wait and maintain the a-pawn in the crosshairs. For example, 1. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ $a4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $a3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (5... $a2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4+!$, etc.

Szabó, an experienced grandmaster, did not know this defensive system.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g2?!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2?!$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1?$

After 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ the position was still drawn.

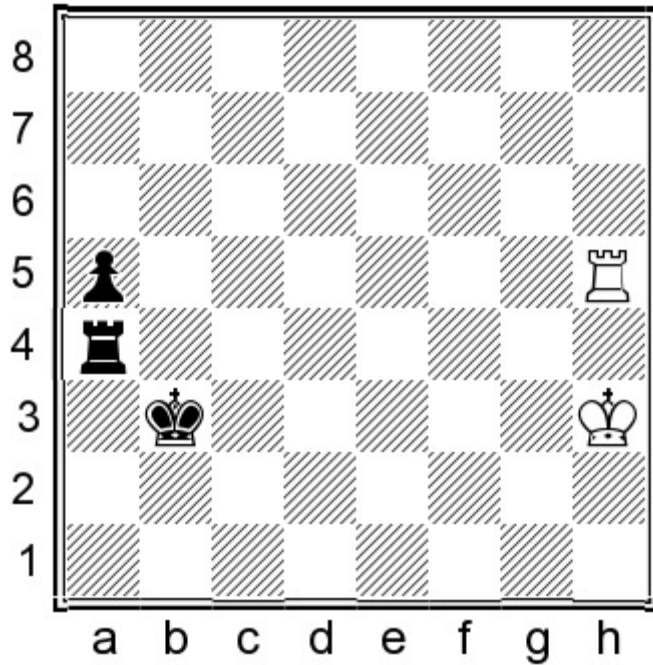
3... $\mathbb{Q}a1+!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

There is no salvation anymore: 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $a4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $a3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+--$) 6... $a2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$, or 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}h1!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $h3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $h2$ Δ 7... $\mathbb{Q}a1+--$

4... $a4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $a3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ White resigned.

Twenty-three years later, precisely the same position occurred in Emms-Riemersma, Gausdal 1993. And again, White did not know the theory of this ending.

1. $\mathbb{Q}h6+?!$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh4+?$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $a4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ with a draw) 3... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5$



9-52

B?

4...♜a1?

White's rook is misplaced, and it is important to keep it on the h-file. Emms demonstrated that this could have been achieved by the subtle move 4...♜a3!, for example, 5.♗h2 (5.♗g5 ♜b4+ 6.♗g2 ♜c3 7.♗g8 a4 8.♗b8+ ♜c4 9.♗f2 a3 10.♗a8 ♜b3 11.♗e2 a2 12.♗d2 ♜c4+) 5...a4! 6.♗h3+ ♜b2 7.♗h4 ♜a2! 8.♗h1 (8.♗g4 ♜b3+ 9.♗h3 ♜c2+) 8...♜a1+ 9.♗g2 a3 10.♗h3 a2+

5.♗g2?

An error in return. A draw was possible through 5.♗g5! a4 6.♗g3+ ♜b4 (6...♜c2 7.♗g2+ ♜d3 8.♗g4 a3 9.♗g3+ ♜c2 10.♗h2=) 7.♗g4+ ♜b5 8.♗g5+ ♜c6 9.♗g6+! (the king should be driven as far away as possible; premature is 9.♗g4? a3 10.♗h2 ♜b1 11.♗a4 ♜b3 12.♗g2 ♜b5 13.♗a8 ♜b4 14.♗f2 ♜c3 15.♗e2 ♜b2+, or 10.♗g2 ♜b5! 11.♗g3 ♜b4 12.♗g4+ ♜b3 13.♗g3+ ♜b2+) 9...♜d5 10.♗g5+ ♜e6 11.♗g2 ♜b1 (11...a3 12.♗g3 Δ ♜f3=) 12.♗a5 ♜b4 13.♗f2 ♜d6 14.♗e2=

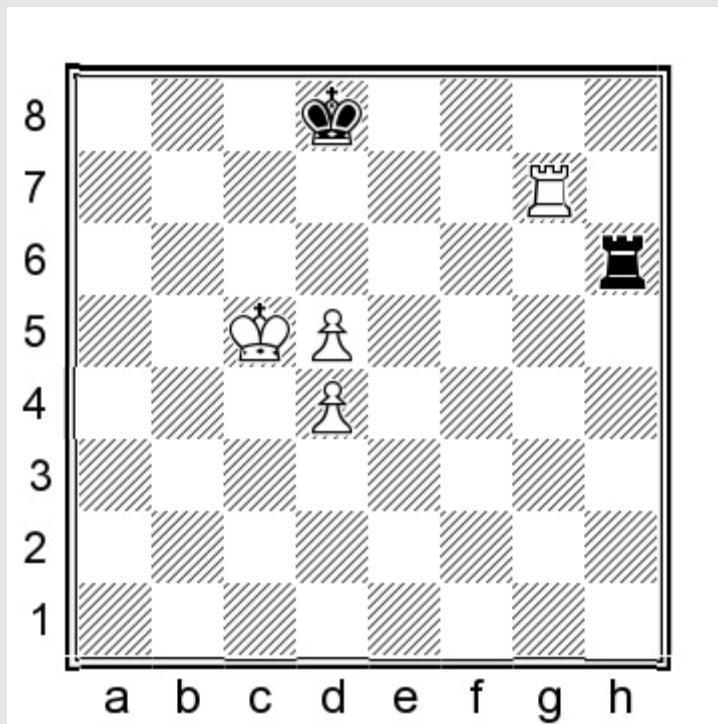
5...a4+ 6.♗f2 (6.♗h3+ ♜b2 7.♗h4 a3+) 6...a3 7.♗b5+ ♜a2 8.♗e2 ♜b1 9.♗d5 (9.♗a5 ♜b2 10.♗b5+ ♜a1 11.♗a5 a2+) 9...♜b2 10.♗d2+ ♜b3 11.♗d3+ ♜a4 12.♗d4+ ♜b4 13.♗d8 a2 14.♗d3 ♜b3 White resigned.

A Rook and Two Pawns vs. a Rook

As Tarrasch once said, “*all rook endings are drawn.*” These endings are rife with drawish tendencies, and even as large a material advantage as two extra pawns is often not sufficient for victory.

Doubled Pawns

If the king of the weaker side stands in front of the pawns, a draw can usually be easily achieved (except for those cases when the rook must stay on the back rank in view of mate threats). The applicable ideas here are familiar to us from the Philidor position (diagram 9-17).



9-53

W

1. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}g6$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}c8!?$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}g4!$

Not the only move, but the safest. Black switches to the second defensive method in the Philidor position (if 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ then 3... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7=$).

3. $d6 \mathbb{Q}g1!$

The rook prepares itself for giving rear checks because the white king has no refuge at d6 anymore.

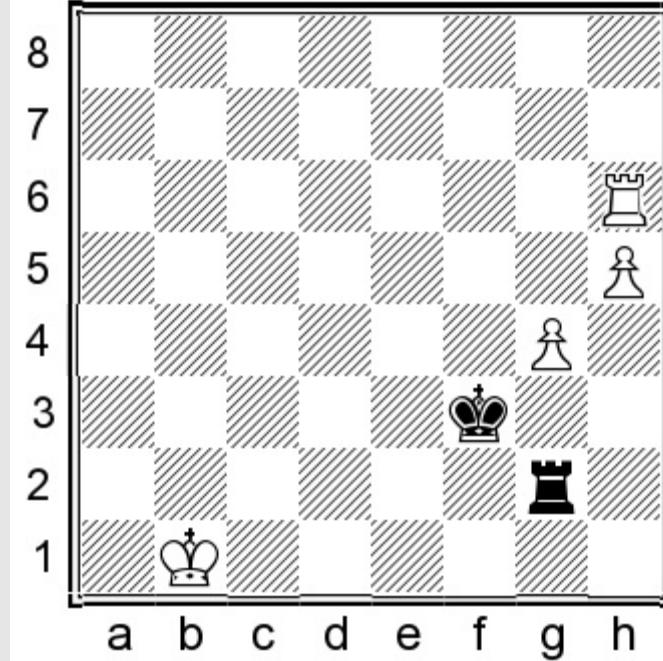
4. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}c1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}h1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8+ \mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7+ \mathbb{Q}d8$ 8. $d7 \mathbb{Q}h5+$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}e7$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}h6+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}h5+$ 11. $d5 \mathbb{Q}h6!=$

And again, Black returns to the defensive method suggested by Philidor.

Connected Pawns

Two extra connected pawns can be most easily exploited if the king supports them. However, sometimes they can advance for queening even when a rook alone supports them, as in the next diagram.

Szabó – Keres
Moscow 1956



9-54

W

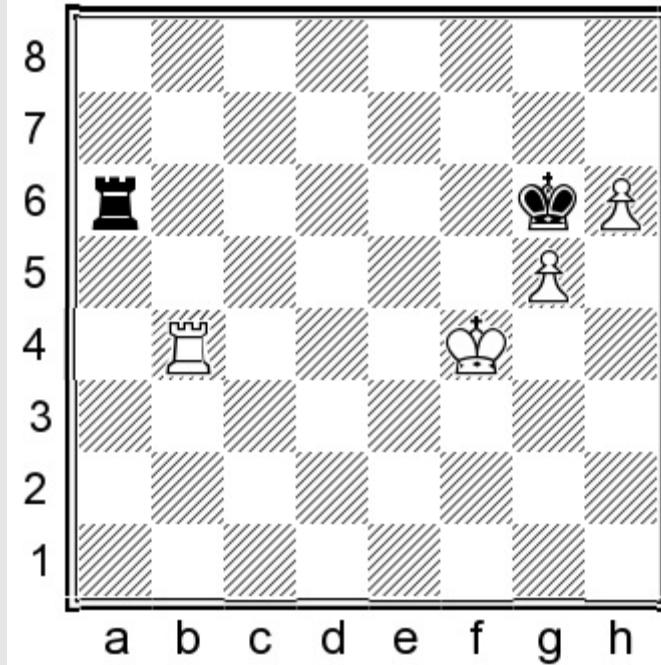
1.♕g6

White is planning 2.h6, 3.g5, 4.♕g7, 5.h7 etc. This simple plan cannot be prevented. Such pawns are sometimes called “*self-propelled*.”

1...♔e4 2.h6 ♘h2 3.g5 ♖d3 4.♕g7 ♔c3 5.h7 (Δ g6, ♘g8) 5...♔b3 6.♕b7+ Black resigned.

The best chances for a successful defense exist when the king blocks the pawns. This is perhaps the most important drawn position:

J.Kling, B.Horwitz 1851



9-55

W

1. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!$

The most precise: Black protects the seventh rank and threatens to take the g-pawn (he cannot of course do it immediately: 3... $\mathbb{Q}xg5??$ 4.h7).

Erroneous is 3... $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5!+-$ (rather than 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7+?!$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5?$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+!$ – a “desperado” rook). The *Encyclopedia of Chess Endings* claims that 3... $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ also loses for Black. But I do not see how White can make any progress after 5... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 8.h7 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h6=$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}a7.$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}b8)$ 8.h7 $\mathbb{Q}b8!=$ is also good.

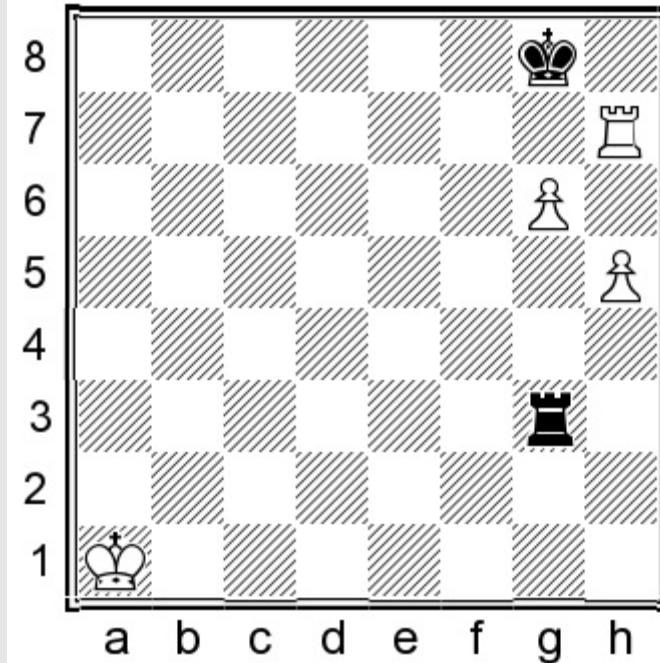
4. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$

Black returns to the initial position of this ending. But he can now force a draw with 5... $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5!=$ (or 6... $\mathbb{Q}f5+!$).

6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6=$

Let us look at a more complicated but quite useful situation that can occur in a practical game.

G.Kasparian 1946



9-56

W

For the time being, let us accept that White wins if he succeeds in transferring his rook to the fifth rank. This means that Black dare not play either 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2. $\mathbb{R}f7+$ $\Delta \mathbb{R}f5$

or 1... $\mathbb{R}d3$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c7$ $\mathbb{R}h3$ (2... $\mathbb{R}d5$ 3.h6) 3. $\mathbb{R}c5$. Therefore his rook must stay on g3 and h3. But what can Black do when the white king comes to the kingside?

It turns out to be difficult for White. If his king comes to g2 when the black rook is on h3, then 1... $\mathbb{R}a3$ is playable, because 2. $\mathbb{R}b7$ $\mathbb{R}a5!$ 3.h6 $\mathbb{R}g5+$ loses a pawn; the same happens after 2. $\mathbb{R}h2$ $\mathbb{R}b3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a7$ $\mathbb{R}b5!$

If White plays 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$, the rook goes back to h3.

By the way here, as in all similar positions, 3.h6 $\mathbb{R}h5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{R}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{R}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{R}f5(g4)+!$ leads nowhere.

However if, with the white king on f2 and the black rook on h3, Black is on move, he comes to be in zugzwang. His rook must leave its comfortable position behind the pawns, and then the white rook has the opportunity to leave h7.

We have come to the conclusion that f2 and h3 are the squares of the reciprocal zugzwang. Obviously enough, another pair of such squares is e2 and g3. Furthermore, when the white king stands on any dark square of the second rank the black rook must move to h3 while, when the king stands on a light square, the rook must move to g3 in order to draw.

1. $\mathbb{Q}a2!!$

A paradoxical move that contradicts the standard approach (“first we move our king to the kingside, and only think thereafter”). It turns out that one should be thinking immediately because any other

initial move misses the win.

After 1.♔b2? ♜h3 2.♔c2 ♜g3 3.♔d2 ♜h3 4.♔e2 ♜g3 5.♔f2 ♜h3 White is in zugzwang: 6.♔g2 ♜a3 7.♔b7 ♜a5=

If 1.♔b7? then 1...♜g5 2.♔h7 ♜g2! 3.♔b1 ♜h2 4.♔c1 ♜g2 5.♔d1 ♜h2 6.♔e1 ♜g2 7.♔f1 ♜h2 (the same zugzwang position, only a rank lower) 8.♔g1 ♜a2 9.♔b7 ♜a5=

On 1.♔b1?, 1...♜g2? is erroneous: 2.♔c1 ♜h2 3.♔d1 ♜g2 4.♔e1 ♜h2 5.♔f1, and Black is in zugzwang: 5...♜a2 6.♔b7+– The correct method is 1...♜b3+! The rook gives checks until the king steps on the second rank, and then goes to a corresponding square. For example 2.♔c2 ♜g3!, or 2.♔c1 ♜c3+! 3.♔d2 (3.♔d1 ♜d3+!) 3...♜h3! 4.♔e2 ♜g3 5.♔f2 ♜h3O=

1.♔a2!! ♜h3 2.♔b2 ♜g3 3.♔c2 ♜h3 4.♔d2 ♜g3 5.♔e2 ♜h3 6.♔f2O 6...♜a3 7.♔d7 ♜h3 8.♔d5 ♔g7 9.♔g2 ♜h4 10.♔g3+–

It remains for us to prove that White wins if he succeeds in bringing his rook to the fifth rank. This fact is not quite obvious because Black blocks the pawns with his king. However his blockade is less efficient than in the Kling and Horwitz position.

1.♔a2!! ♜d3 2.♔b7! (but, of course, not 2.♔b2? ♜h3!O=) 2...♜h3

2...♜g3 can be met by 3.♔b2 ♜g5 4.♔h7 ♜g3 5.♔c2, and it is Black who turns out to be in zugzwang again. This is the simplest way, but another, more universal way also exists: 3.♔b3!? ♜g5 4.♔h3 ♔g7 (otherwise the white king goes ahead) 5.h6+ ♔g8 6.g7! (rather than 6.h7+? ♔h8 7.♔h6 ♜g1 and White's king will not have a refuge from rook checks from the rear) 6...♔h7 7.♔b3, White activates his king and gradually wins (a similar position was analyzed by Kling and Horwitz as long ago as in 1851).

3.♔b5 ♔g7 (3...♜g3 4.♔b3) 4.♔g5!

Now Black has neither 4...♔h6 5.g7! nor 4...♜c3 5.h6+! ♔xh6 6.g7. But this position is winning for White even without this move (when the black king stands on h6).

4...♜h4

If 4...♔g8 5.♔b2 ♜e3, White plays 6.♔c2! ♜a3 7.♔d2 ♜b3 8.♔e2 ♜a3 9.♔f2 ♜b3 10.♔d5+– The hasty 6.h6? ♜h3 7.h7+ ♔g7, on the contrary, leads to a theoretical draw.

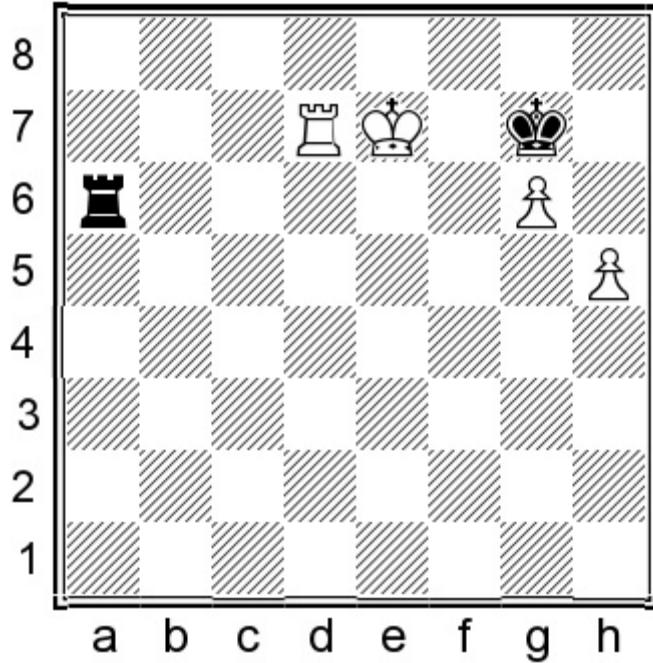
5.♔b3 ♜h1 6.♔c4 ♜c1+ 7.♔d5

The king must go ahead. Nothing can be achieved by 7.♔d3 ♜h1 8.♔e3 ♜h3+ 9.♔f2 ♜h1 (rather than 9...♜h4? 10.♔g2O+–) 10.♔g2 ♜h4O and the rook cannot be forced away from the h-file.

7...♜d1+ 8.♔c6 ♜c1+ 9.♔d6 ♜d1+ 10.♔d5 ♜a1 11.♔e7 ♜a6

White's task is less difficult after 11...♜e1+ 12.♔d8! ♔g8 (12...♜a1 13.♔d7+ ♔g8 14.♔e7+–; 12...♔h6 13.♔d7! ♔xh5 14.g7 ♜g1 15.♔e8 ♔h6 16.♔f8+–) 13.h6! (13.♔f5!? ♜e6 14.♔d7 ♜a6 15.♔c5+–) 13...♜e6 (13...♜h1 14.♔e7!; 13...♜g1 14.♔d6) 14.h7+! (but not 14.♔g5? ♜a6 15.♔e7 ♜b6 16.h7+ ♔g7 17.♔h5 ♜b7+ 18.♔e6 ♜b6+ with a draw) 14...♔h8 15.♔g5 ♔g7 16.♔h5+–

12.♔d7



9-57
\$
B

12...♜b6!?

12...♜a5 13.♕e6+ ♜g8 14.h6+– is quite bad. After 12...♜c6, Kasparian gives 13.♕d8+ ♜g8 14.♖e7 ♜f8 (14...♜d6+ 15.♕c7 ♜a6 16.♕d7 Δ 17.♕e6) 15.♕d7 ♜a6 16.♖e6 ♜a7+ 17.♕d6 ♜a6+ 18.♕e5 ♜a5+ 19.♕f6+–

13.♕d8+ ♜g8

13...♕f8 is met with 14.♕c7! ♜a6 15.h6 (15.♖d6) 15...♜xg6 16.♖d8+ and 17.h7+–

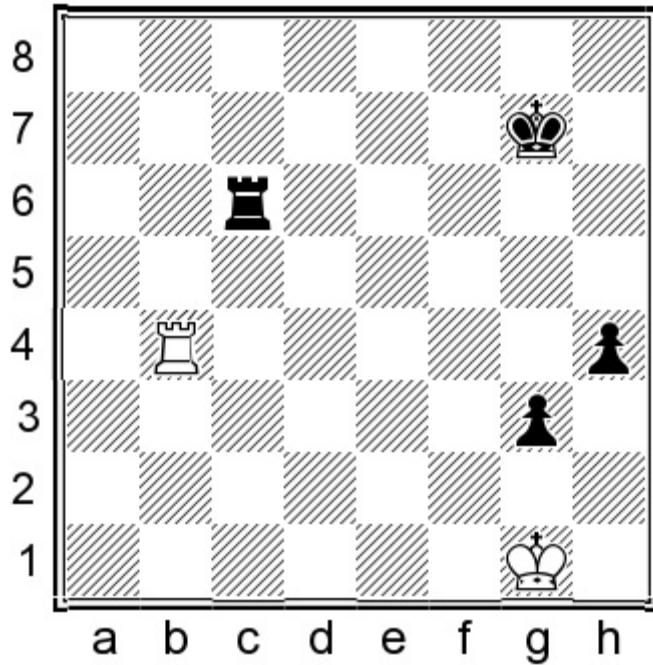
14.♕c7! ♜a6 15.♖d6 Δ h6+–

In *Rook Endings* by Levenfish and Smyslov, at the very end of this line, another road to the win is suggested: 14.♖e7 ♜f8 (14...♜d6+ 15.♕c7 ♜a6 16.♕d7 ♜b6 17.♕e6+–) 15.♖f7+ ♜g8 16.♕e7 ♜a6 17.♖f6 ♜a7+ 18.♕e6 ♜a6+ 19.♕f5 ♜a5+ 20.♕g4 ♜g7 21.♕f7+. But this recommendation is incorrect: instead of 18...♜a6+? Black plays 18...♜g7!, because after 19.♕f7+? ♜xf7 20.gxf7 ♜f8○ he holds a pawn ending despite being two pawns down.

This complicated analysis can hardly be (and certainly should not be) remembered in all its details. To know that the rook transfer to the fifth rank wins is quite enough, yet the proof of this fact turns out to be rather complicated.

Tragicomедies

Glek – Leitao
Wijk aan Zee 1999



9-58

B?

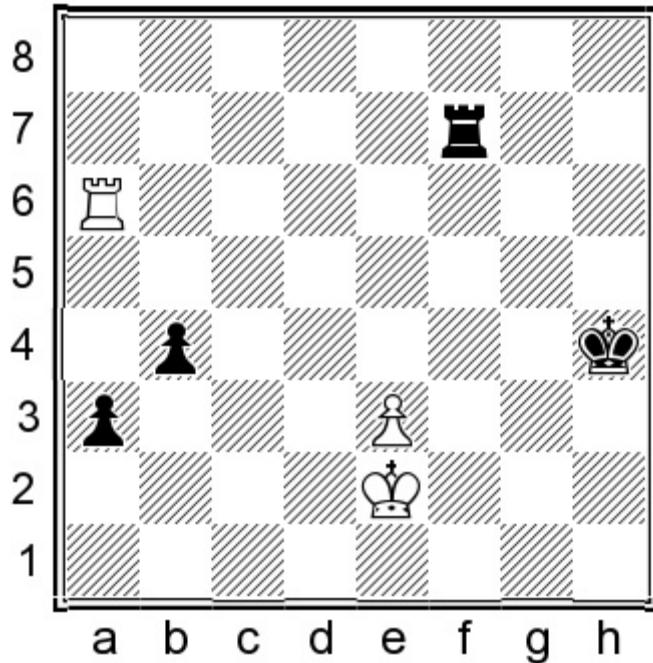
1... $\mathbb{Q}c1+??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}c2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}h2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6$

The Kasparian position – Black has no win.

4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ h3 10. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ Draw.

Black could have won by means of 1...h3! 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ g2) 3...h2+ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g6-$ +) 6... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ h1= $\mathbb{W}+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (Glek).

Exercises



9-59

9/7

W?

Show/Hide Solution

9/7. Spiridonov-Shamkovich, Polanica-Zdroj 1970

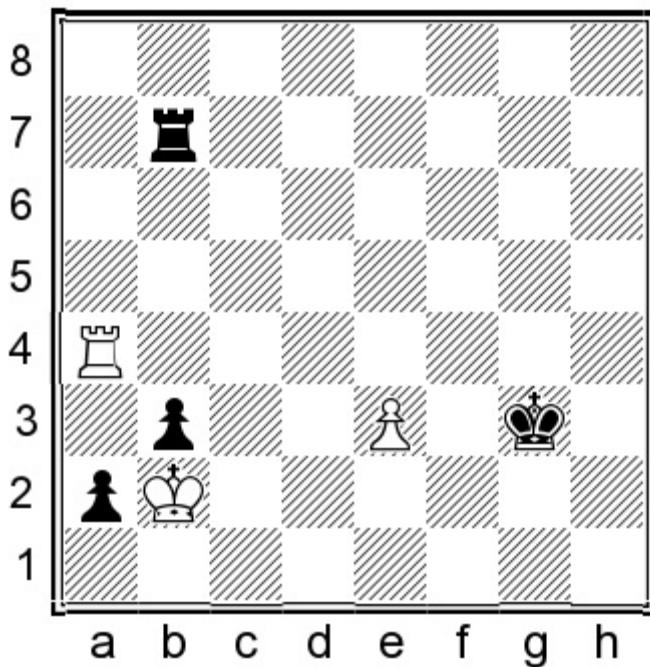
The natural looking 1.♗b6? meets a brilliant refutation: 1...♝f4!! 2.exf4 a2 3.♔f3 ♔h5 4.♗a6 b3=+

The line 1.♔d2? ♜f2+ 2.♔c1 a2 is hopeless;

the same may be said about 1.♔d3? ♜f2 2.♔c4 ♜b2 (“selfpropelled pawns”) 3.e4 a2 4.e5 ♔g5.

Finally, if 1.e4? the simplest is 1...♜b7 2.♔d2 b3 3.♔c1 b2+ 4.♔b1 ♜b3 Δ 5...♜c3=+. Only one possibility remains:

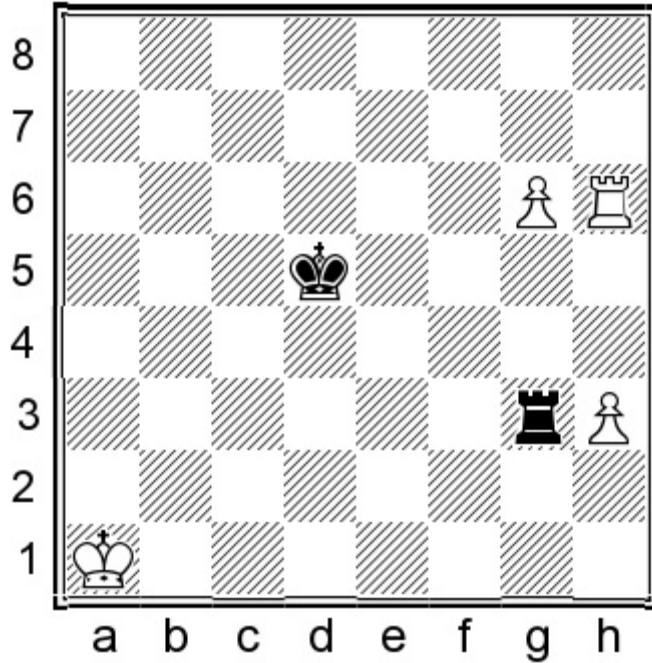
1.♗a4! ♜b7 2.♔d3(d2) 2...♔g3 3.♔c2 (Δ 4.♔b3=) 3...b3+ 4.♔b1 a2+ 5.♔b2=



16-76

B

This is a theoretical draw (even without the e3-pawn) – as we know from our analysis of Kasparian's position.



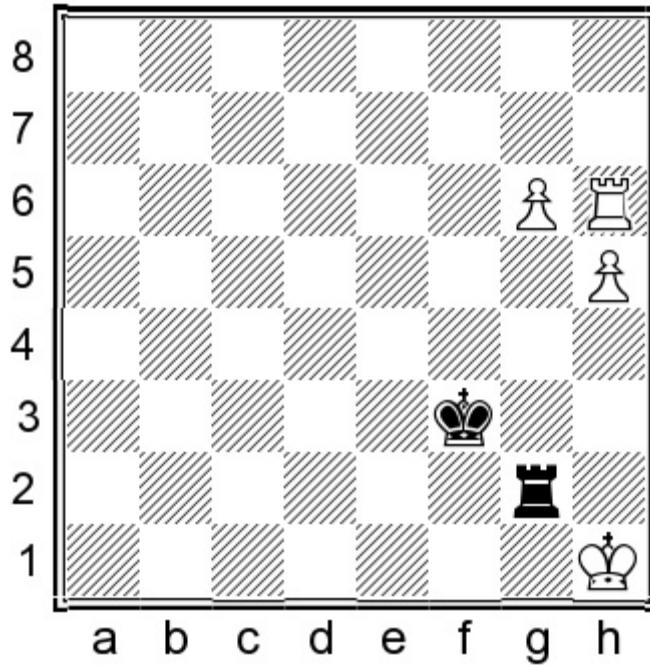
9-60
9/8
B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/8. G.Kasparian 1948

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ 2.h4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3.h5 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (see diagram 9-56) 5. $\mathbb{Q}a2!!$, White wins. Black must redirect his king to the opposite wing in order to utilize the unfavorable position of the white king on the edge.

The tempting 1... $\mathbb{Q}g2?!$ 2.h4 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ is also losing after 3. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 9.h5 $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h1!$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2).$

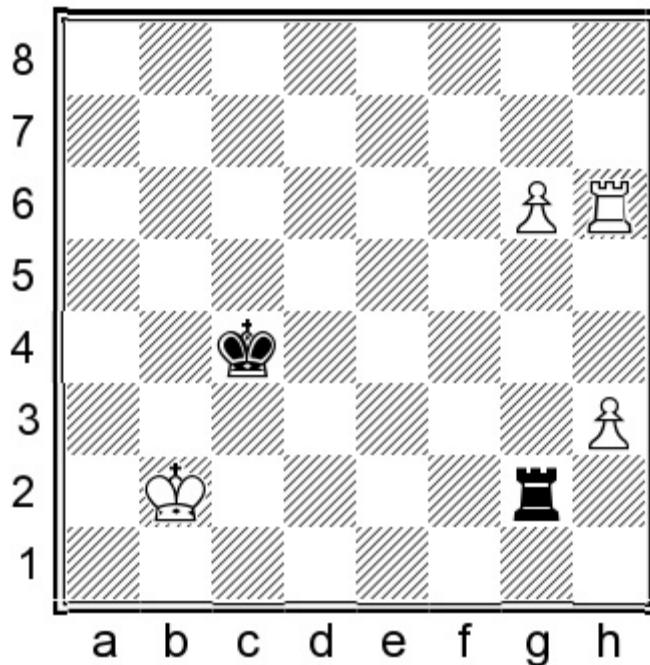


16-77

B

For example, 10... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ (rather than 12.g7? $\mathbb{Q}f2$ Δ 13... $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ (12... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}a1+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ –) 13. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 14.g7 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ –. If 10... $\mathbb{Q}g4$, then White does not play 11. $\mathbb{Q}h7?$! $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ and he is in zugzwang: 12.g7? (12. $\mathbb{Q}h6$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ with perpetual check, but 11. $\mathbb{Q}h8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f8+)$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ instead, and it is Black who is in zugzwang: 12... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ winning (analysis by Leitao and P.H. Nielsen).

1... $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ (Δ 2... $\mathbb{Q}b3$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$



3.†a3

3.†c1 †c3 4.†d1 †d3 5.†e1 †e3 6.†f1 †f3 7.h4 †h2 8.†g1 †g2+ (8...†a2 9.h5 †a1+ 10.†h2
†a2+ 11.†h3 †a1=) 9.†h1 †f2= (9...†g4=).

3...†g3+ 4.†a4 †g1 5.†a5

5.†h4+ †d5 6.†g4 †xg4+ 7.hxg4 †e6=

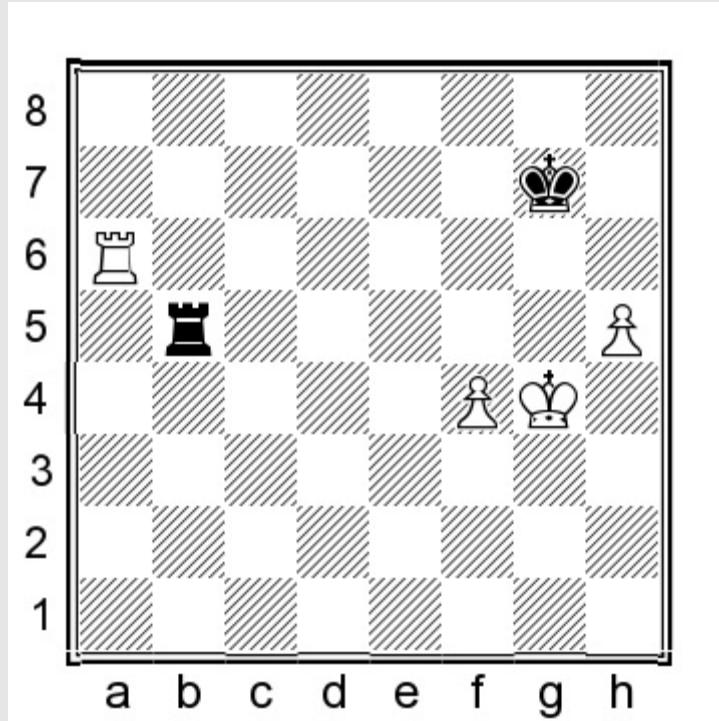
5...†c5 6.†a6 †c6 7.†a7 †c7 8.†a6 (8.†h7+ †d6 9.†b7 †e6=) 8...†c6=

f- and h-Pawns

Endings with these pawns are mostly drawn. Their theory is rather complicated and that is why we will explain only the basic ideas here. The following example from practical play shows how one should defend these positions.

Gligoric – Smyslov

Moscow 1947



9-61

W

The black rook is excellently placed on the fifth rank: it prevents an advance of the hostile king. If 1.f5, then 1... $\mathbb{Q}b1$, threatening a series of checks from the rear.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$

1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ is equally good, but 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ is a more active defense.

2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1!$

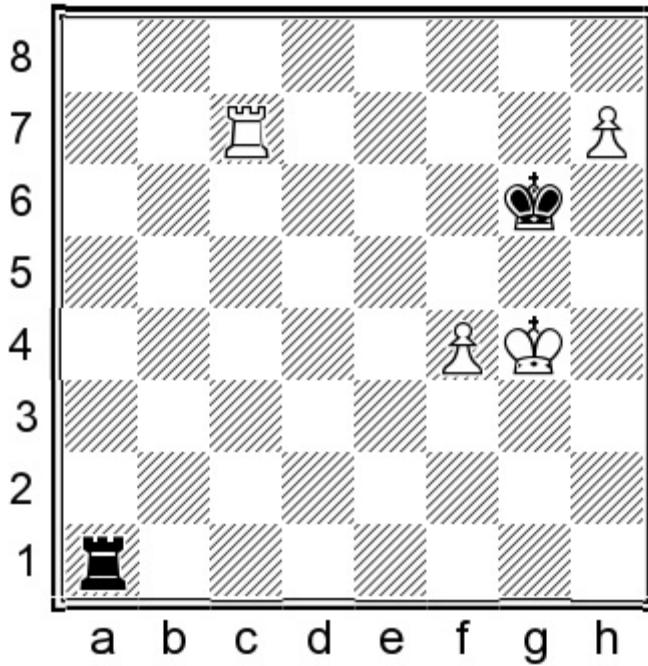
A typical retreat for this sort of situation: the rook maintains opportunities for checks from various directions, both from the side and rear.

3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$

3.h6 is an important try, against which Black must defend accurately. 3... $\mathbb{E}g1+?$ is an error: 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5$
 $\mathbb{E}h1$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{E}g1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ $\mathbb{E}f1$ 8. $\mathbb{E}a7!$ (8. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$) 8... $\mathbb{E}xf4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{E}g4+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{E}f4+$
(10... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 11. $\mathbb{E}g7+!$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}f1$ 12. $\mathbb{E}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 13.h7+-

Black must play a waiting move. For example, 3... $\mathbb{E}a1!$ 4. $\mathbb{E}h5$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}a5+$; 4.h7 $\mathbb{E}g1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}h1)$
4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5.f5 $\mathbb{Q}h7$.

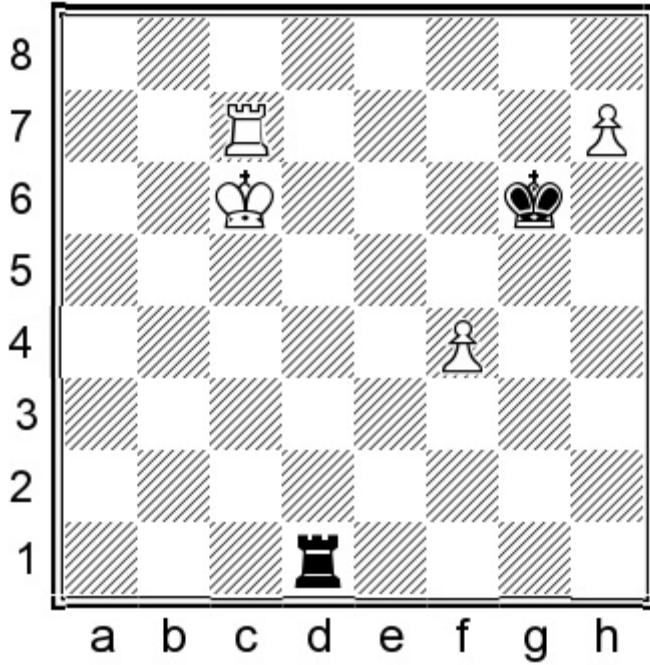
The following attempt is interesting: 4. $\mathbb{E}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{E}c7!?$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (Black can also play 5... $\mathbb{E}g1+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$
 $\mathbb{E}h1)$ 6.h7



9-62
\$
B

I once investigated the position that arises after 6... $\mathbb{E}g1+?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}h1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}h5$ together with grandmaster Gulko. The continuation 9.f5+? $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{E}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ (11... $\mathbb{E}h1!?$ is even simpler) 12. $\mathbb{E}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{E}h1$ 14. $\mathbb{E}c2$ $\mathbb{E}h3!=$ does not promise White any success (see the ending below, Polugaevsky-Ree).

White should cede the right to move to his adversary, with the idea of forcing the black rook away from h5, and then advancing his king, when his rook stands precisely on c7. All this can be achieved in the following way: 9. $\mathbb{E}d7(e7)$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{E}a7$ (10. $\mathbb{E}d8?$ $\mathbb{E}xh7$ 11. $\mathbb{E}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7=$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (10... $\mathbb{E}h1?$ 11. $\mathbb{E}a8!$ $\mathbb{E}xh7$ 12. $\mathbb{E}a6+)$ 11. $\mathbb{E}c7!!\mathbb{O}$ 11... $\mathbb{E}h1$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ 12. $\mathbb{E}c8!+-$) 12. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}e1+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{E}d1+$
(13... $\mathbb{E}h1$ 14. $\mathbb{E}e7!$ Δ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d7)$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$



9-63

B

14... $\mathbb{Q}h1$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ or 15. $\mathbb{Q}d7$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}g8+-$

Later, I discovered the possibility of a more stubborn defense. Instead of 14... $\mathbb{Q}h1$, Black should play 14... $\mathbb{Q}d8!?$

In order for White to win, he need only get his king back to the f-pawn, while keeping the Black rook tied to the eighth rank. But how is this to be accomplished? Black answers 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ with 15... $\mathbb{Q}a8!$, after which 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ is useless: 16... $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (17. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$) 17... $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (Δ 19... $\mathbb{Q}h5$) 19. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8!$, etc.

Before bringing the king back, it is important to bring the rook to d7 first. Then Black's rook maneuver to h3 (as in the variation we just examined) has no point – once again, White brings his king forward, and now the Black rook cannot get to d8. The most exact line is: 16. $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ (not 16. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ at once: 16... $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d4!?$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$, and White must start all over again) 16... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (17... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (threatening $\mathbb{Q}e4-f3-g4$) 18... $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}c8+-$

Instead of 6... $\mathbb{Q}g1+?$ Black must play 6... $\mathbb{Q}h1!$ immediately. If White tries the waiting move 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7$, Black can wait too: 7... $\mathbb{Q}h2$, with no fear of 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8!$ Another good line is 7... $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ because when the white rook stands on b7 the king's route around it is too long: 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c1+!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}h1!$ with a draw.

If 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$, Black can play either 7... $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ or 7... $\mathbb{Q}f6!?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}h1!$ When the black king stands on f6, White has no important move 11. $\mathbb{Q}e7$, while after 11. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (or 11. $\mathbb{Q}b7$) 11... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ the black king abolishes the f4-pawn and returns to g6 in time.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{R}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7!$

The main danger for Black is for his king to be forced to the back rank. This could have happened after 4... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{R}g1+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{R}h1$ 7. $\mathbb{R}c7+$

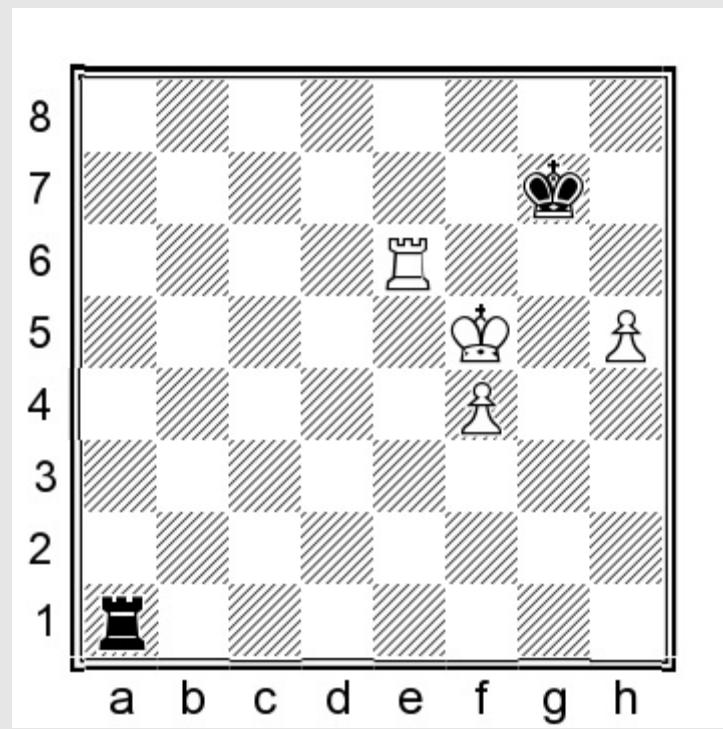
5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{R}g1+!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 7. $\mathbb{R}c7+$ (7. $\mathbb{R}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7)$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e7$ $\mathbb{R}b1$ 9. $\mathbb{R}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{R}e5$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 11. $\mathbb{R}d5$ $\mathbb{R}f1$

Not a bad move, but holding the rook in the corner was quite enough.

12. $\mathbb{R}d4$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 13. $\mathbb{R}d6$ $\mathbb{R}a5+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{R}a1$

14... $\mathbb{R}b5$ is also playable: it leads back to the initial position.

15. $\mathbb{R}e6$ $\mathbb{R}g1+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{R}a1$



9-64

W

17. $h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ 18. $\mathbb{R}d6$ $\mathbb{R}a2$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{R}g2+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 22. $f5$ $\mathbb{R}e2+$ 23. $\mathbb{R}e6$ $\mathbb{R}a2$ 24. $f6$ $\mathbb{R}a8!$

We have discussed this sort of position in the section dedicated to the pawn on sixth rank. The black rook is placed on the long side, so a draw is inevitable.

25. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 26. $\mathbb{R}e1$ $\mathbb{R}a7+$ 27. $\mathbb{R}e7$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 28. $\mathbb{R}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 29. $\mathbb{R}d1$ $\mathbb{R}a7+$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}a6+$ 31. $\mathbb{R}d6$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 32. $\mathbb{R}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 33. $\mathbb{R}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ Draw.

In this example, Black kept his king on f7 until the danger of its being driven to the back rank arose. Thereafter the king went to g7 and later on – to h6, attacking the white pawn. But, strictly speaking, Kopaev's recommendation was to place the king in front of the more advanced pawn.

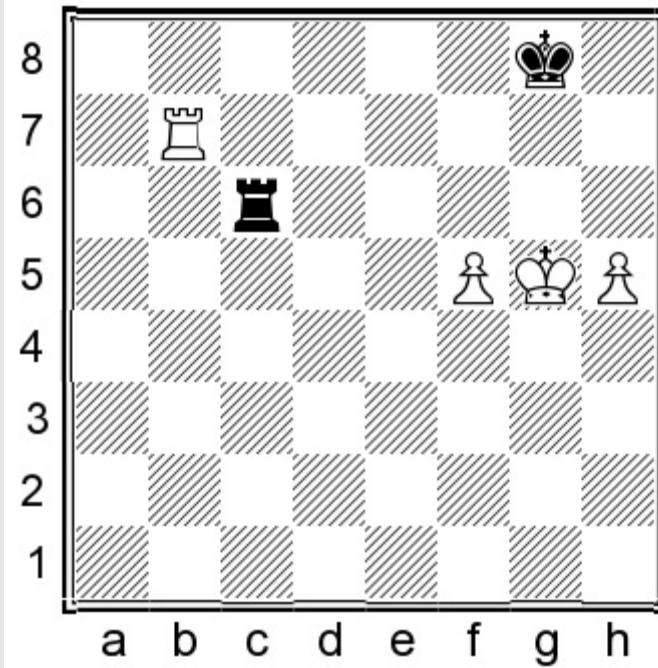
The best position for the rook is on a1; it is ideally suited for giving checks along files as well as

ranks. However, if the pawns are not advanced too far, the rook stands quite well on the fifth rank, and sometimes on f1.

It goes without saying that not all positions with f- and h-pawns are drawn. The most important exception was already mentioned above: *Black usually loses if his king is cut off on the back rank.*

Capablanca – Kostic

Havana m (1) 1919



9-65

W

One does not need to keep the solution in mind because White has many winning ways to choose from.

1.f6

Kopaev suggests 1... $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 2.h6 Δ 3.h7; 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2.f6+! $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3.h6+) 2.f6 $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8.f7+–

1.f6 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$

Belavenets's suggestion is also good: 2.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$. The king is striving to reach the eighth rank. If 4... $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ then 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ (rather than 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6.h7 $\mathbb{Q}h1=$).

2... $\mathbb{Q}f8?!$

This loses at once, but 2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ could postpone the loss only for a little while: 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8$. White's next move will be 8.f7 (the h5-pawn deprives the black king of the important g6-square).

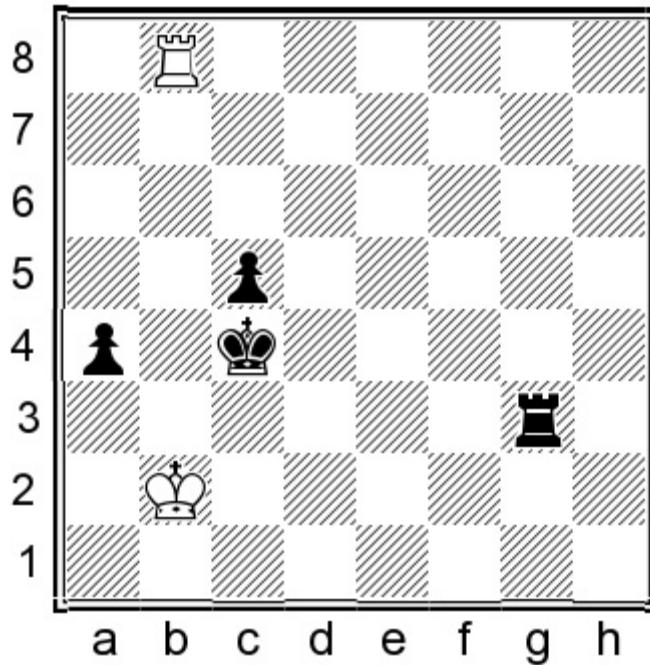
3.h6

Black resigned; he cannot prevent h6-h7.

Tragicae

Polugaevsky – Ree

Amsterdam 1981



9-66

W

1. $\mathbb{R}a8??!$

The simplest way is to keep the rook on h8, in order to profit by the side checks in case of an emergency.

1... $\mathbb{R}g2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}xa4$

It was still not too late to bring the rook to the long side, for example 3. $\mathbb{R}h8!?$ c4 4. $\mathbb{R}h3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4!=$ However this capture does not lose, contrary to comments by Krnic in the *Chess Informant*.

3... c4 4. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $\mathbb{R}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a2??$

This is the decisive error! Now the black king advances while the white rook remains chained to the a-file. He should have followed a waiting policy: 5. $\mathbb{R}a6!$ $\mathbb{R}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $\mathbb{R}d1$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 7. $\mathbb{R}h8!)$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 8. $\mathbb{R}h8$ c3 9. $\mathbb{R}h2+$ with a draw.

5... $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ c3 7. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{R}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{R}a6$ $\mathbb{R}d7$ 9. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ White resigned.

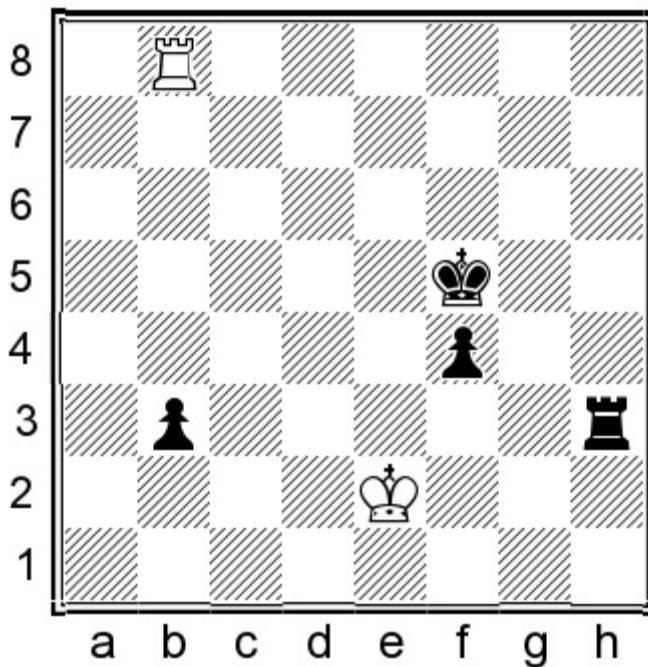
Other Pairs of Disconnected Pawns

As a rule, two extra pawns are sufficient for a win. However, exceptions occur now and then. They are caused either by the stronger side having badly placed pieces while the defender's pieces are active, or by inattention (when the stronger side anticipate a quick win too nonchalantly). This last case is illustrated by all the practical examples that follow.

Tragicomедies

Bernstein – Smyslov

Groningen 1946



9-67

B

1...b2?? (both 1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$

and 1... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ won elementarily)

1...b2?? 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb2!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$

The planned 2... $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ turned out to be ineffective because of the stalemate after 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$

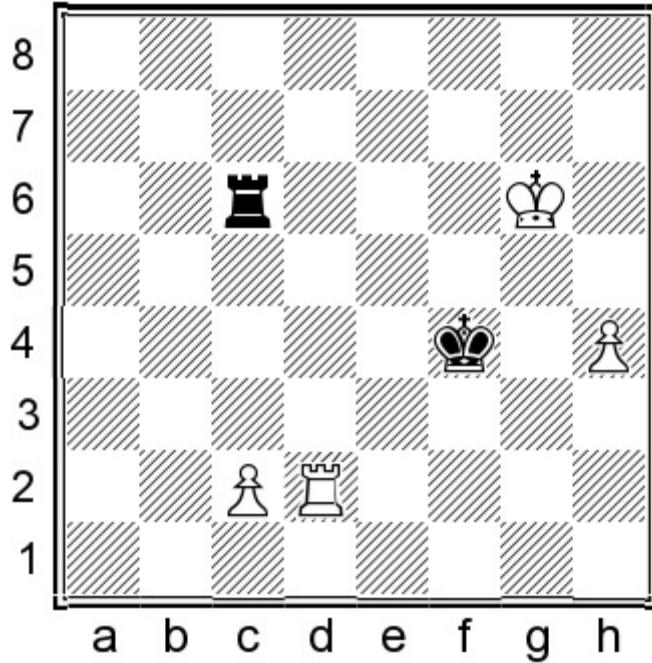
3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

Draw. The Philidor position has arisen.

A similar story happened in the following endgame.

Gufeld – Bronstein

Kislovodsk 1968



9-68

W?

With 1. ♔f7!, White maintains his two extra pawns: 1... ♔g4 (1... ♔e3 2. ♕h2) 2. ♕d4+ ♔f5 3. c4 ♕c7+ (3... ♔e5 4. ♕d5+ ♔e4 5. ♕g5) 4. ♔e8! ♔e5 5. ♕g4 ♔f5 6. ♔d8! with an easy win.

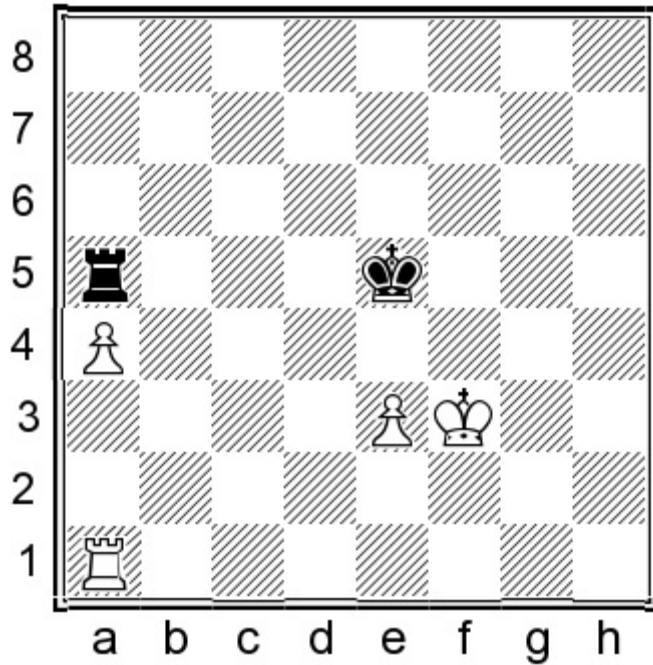
1. ♔g7? ♔g4

Now 2. ♕d4+ ♔h5 3. c4 can be met by 3... ♕xc4! 4. ♕xc4 – stalemate.

2. ♕h2 ♔g3! 3. ♕h1 ♕xc2 4. h5 ♕c7+ 5. ♔f6 ♕c6+ 6. ♔f7 ♕c7+ 7. ♔e6 ♕c6+ 8. ♔d5 ♕h6 9. ♔e4 ♔g2 10. ♕h4 ♔g3 11. ♕h1 ♔g2 Draw.

Kasparov – Short

London m (9) 1993



9-69

W

The rook that blocks a passed pawn cannot, as a rule, leave its post unpunished.

Therefore it would have been wise to play for zugzwang: 1. $\mathbb{Q}a2!$? $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$, and now 3... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$) 4. $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ (or 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$).

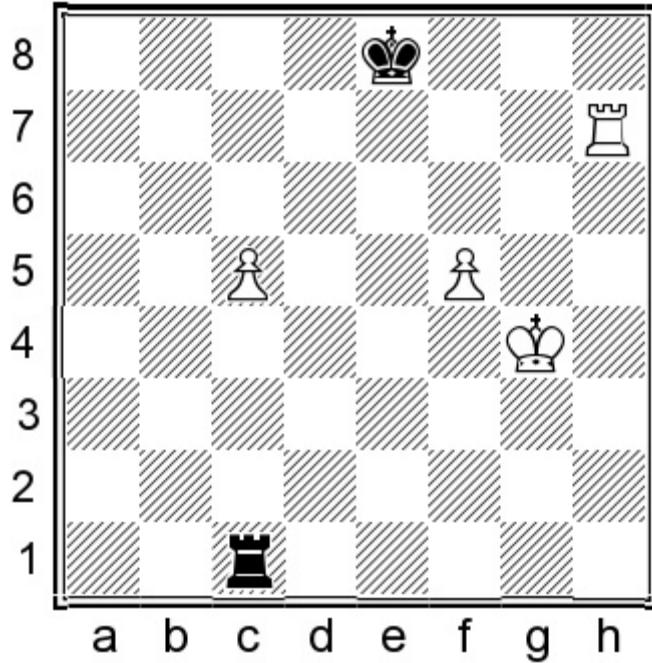
Another winning method was 1. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ ($\Delta \mathbb{Q}d3-c4-b4$) 1... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ $\Delta \mathbb{Q}f4+$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$).

1.e4?? $\mathbb{Q}e6??$

Both opponents are hypnotized by the abovementioned rule. However this was an appropriate moment for neglecting it (there are no absolute rules in chess!) by playing 1... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ Black could then regain a pawn and block the a-pawn again in time, for example, 2. $a5$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 3. $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 4. $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\Delta \mathbb{Q}f8=$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 4. $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c8=$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 4. $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $a7$, and here the most precise defense is 5... $\mathbb{Q}g8+!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$, although 5... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ is also sufficient for a draw (rather than 9... $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b1+!$), e.g., 10. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b1+ \mathbb{Q}c5!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8=$

2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ Black resigned.

Larsen – Torre
Leningrad izt 1973



9-70

W

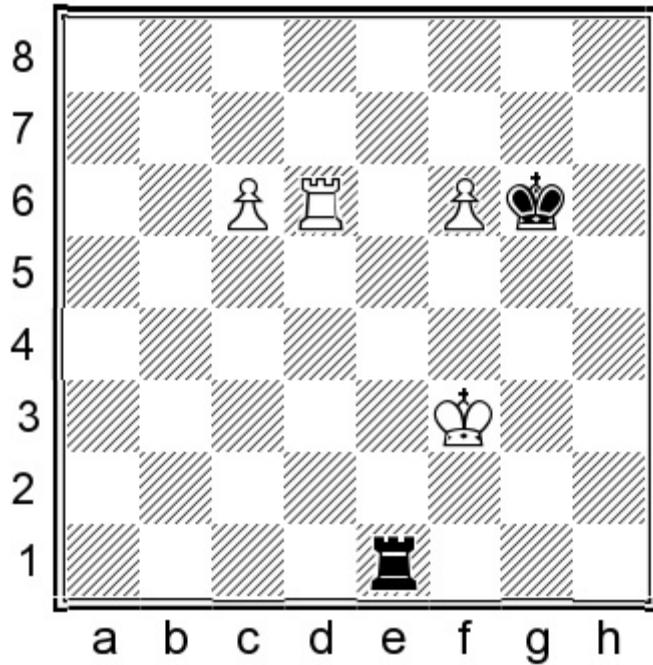
A natural method of exploiting two extra pawns is a transition to theoretically winning positions with one extra pawn.

This method could be applied here: 1. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{B}xc5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \Delta \mathbb{B}h8+$. White has a simple win because the black king is on the long side.

1. $\mathbb{B}c7?!$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 2. $\mathbb{B}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{B}d6+ \mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $f6+??$

After 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $c6$ $\mathbb{B}f1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{B}f2$ 7. $\mathbb{B}d6$, Black would have had no alternative but to resign. 4. $\mathbb{B}d5+-$ was also good.

4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $c6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{B}e1!=$



9-71

W

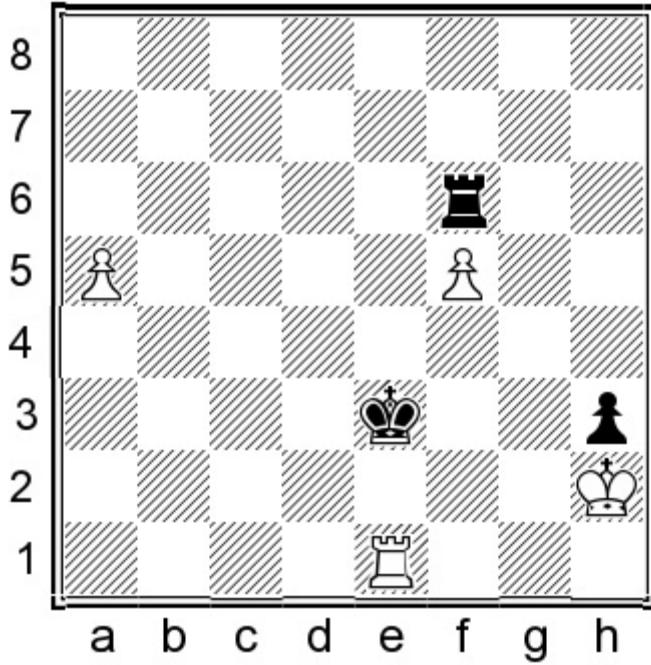
The rook cuts the hostile king off from both pawns. White cannot strengthen his position.

7. ♕f4 ♖e2 8. ♕d5 ♖c2

8... ♕xf6? is erroneous: 9. ♖c5 ♖e8 10. ♖f5+! ♕g6 (10... ♕e7 11. ♖e5+ ♕f7 12. ♖xe8 ♕xe8 13. ♕e5+-) 11. ♖e5! ♖c8 12. ♖e6+ ♕f7 13. ♕e5+-

9. ♕d6 ♖e2 10. f7+ ♕xf7 11. ♕f5 ♕e7 12. ♕d7+ ♕e8 13. ♕f6 ♖e1 14. ♕d5 ♖c1 15. ♕d6 ♖f1+ 16. ♕e6 ♖e1+ 17. ♕d5 ♖d1+ 18. ♕c5 ♖xd6 19. ♕xd6 ♕d8 Draw.

Exercises



9-72
9/9
B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/9. Beliavsky-Azmaiparashvili, Portoroz 1997

Of the six possible king retreats, only one is correct, but which one?

1... $\mathbb{Q}d4$? is quite bad: 2. $\mathbb{R}f1$ followed by 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$.

Or 1... $\mathbb{Q}f4(f3)?$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{R}a6$ 3.f6 (the f-pawn cannot be captured because, after the rook exchange, the king is beyond the square of the a5-pawn).

The game continued 1... $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ 2. $\mathbb{R}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ hoping for 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh3?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4. $\mathbb{R}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4=$. However, Beliavsky responded with 3.a6! $\mathbb{R}xa6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$, and Black was lost: the king is on the long side, and can be cut off from the pawn not only vertically, but horizontally as well. The remainder was 4... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (4... $\mathbb{R}a4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 5. $\mathbb{R}e6$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{R}g8+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{R}a6$ (8. $\mathbb{R}e1$ was also good here – a frontal attack does not help because the pawn has crossed the middle line) 8... $\mathbb{R}g1$ 9.f6 $\mathbb{R}f1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{R}g1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{R}b1$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{R}g1+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15.f7 $\mathbb{R}e1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{R}g1+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ Black resigned.

Let's look at 1... $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ Here 2. $\mathbb{R}e5?$ is no longer good, because after 2... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$, the h3-pawn is protected and White cannot strengthen his position. Therefore, he plays 2. $\mathbb{R}a1!$ $\mathbb{R}xf5$ (2... $\mathbb{R}a6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh3+ -$) 3.a6 $\mathbb{R}f8$ 4.a7 $\mathbb{R}a8$ and cuts the black king off horizontally by 5. $\mathbb{R}a3!$ in order to slow its march to the a7-pawn. The following line shows what happens then: 5... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 9. $\mathbb{R}a6!$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 12. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 13. $\mathbb{R}b1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ $\mathbb{R}xa7+$

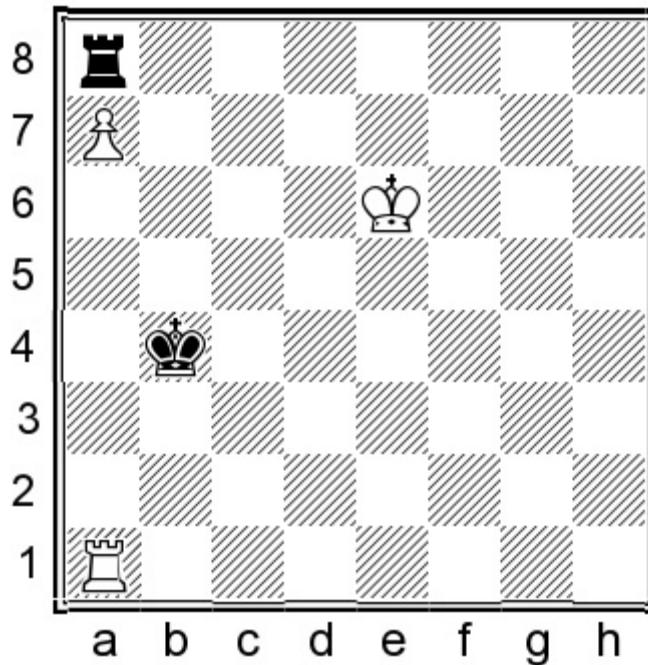
15. ♔c6+–

Now – the correct solution!

1... ♔d3!! 2. ♕f1

If 2. ♕d1+, 2... ♔e4? is bad in view of 3. ♕f1+–. The simplest is 2... ♔e3, but 2... ♔e2 is also playable: 3. ♕d5 ♔f3= or 3. ♕a1 ♕xf5 4. a6 ♕f8 5. a7 ♕a8 6. ♕a3 ♔d2= (here Black has an extra tempo in comparison with 2... ♔f2).

2... ♔e2 3. ♕f4! ♔e3 4. ♕a4 ♕xf5 5. a6 ♕f8 6. a7 ♕a8 7. ♕xh3 ♔d3 8. ♕g4 ♔c3 9. ♕f5 ♔b3 10. ♕a1 ♔b4 11. ♔e6



16-79

\$

B?

11... ♔c5!

This case of shouldering is familiar to us from the analysis of the Kasparov-Short ending. 11... ♔b5? is bad: 12. ♔d6! ♔b6 13. ♕b1+ – this is precisely what results from 1... ♔f2?

12. ♔d7 ♔b6 13. ♕b1+ ♔c5! 14. ♕b7 ♕h8=

A Far-Advanced Passed Pawn

Transition to a Rook vs. Pawn Endgame

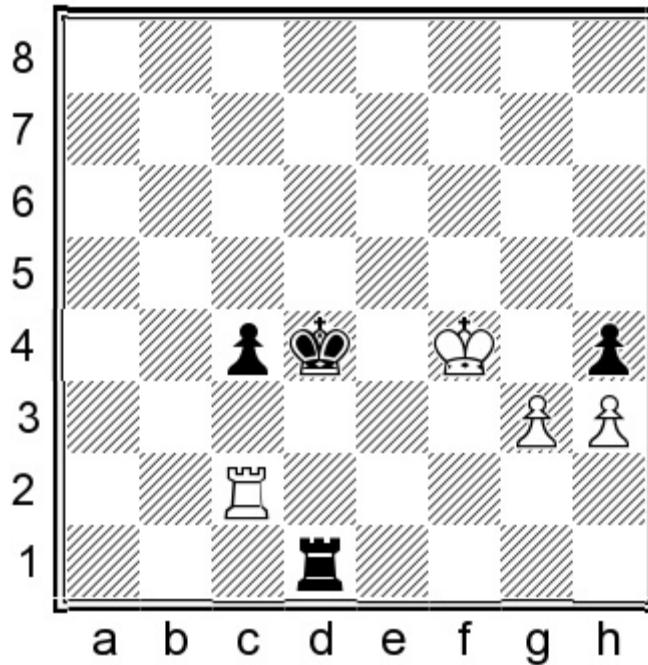
It often happens that a passed pawn is so strong that the opponent must inevitably give a rook away

for it. In such cases, one should take into account and know well the methods we have learned from studying rook versus pawns endgames.

Black's actions in the following endgame were based on two typical methods: shouldering and cutting off the king.

Yusupov – Tseshkovsky

Moscow tt 1981



9-73

B?

On the straightforward 1...hxg3? (1... $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ or 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ has the same consequences)

1...hxg3? 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ c3 4.h4 c2 5. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ White, of course, cannot play 6.h5?? $\mathbb{Q}d4!$, but 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7.h5 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ also loses. It is shouldering that helps here: 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7.h5 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 9.h6 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ (rather than 11.h7? $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 13.h8=+ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}g2O-$) 11... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f8$) 12.h7 $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h8!=$

Deliberating over his next move, Tseshkovsky recognized White's defensive plan and found the way to prevent its realization.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f1+!!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ hxg3

Now, after 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ c3 5.h4 c2 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$, the white king cannot go to f4, and White loses.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6.h4 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ changes nothing.

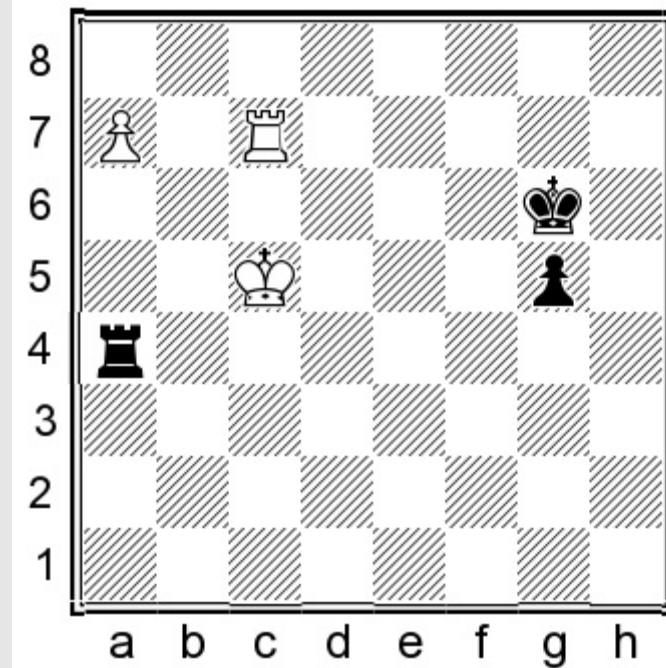
4... $\mathbb{Q}f4+$!

White could hold after 4...c3? 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg3+\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7.h4 (compared with the line 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg3\mathbb{Q}d3$ he would have an extra tempo). Alas, Black wins easily by means of cutting the king off along the fourth rank.

5. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ c3 6.h4 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ c2 9.h5 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ c1= \mathbb{Q} 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc1\mathbb{Q}xc1$! White resigned.

The most important method in sharp endings with a far-advanced passed pawn is *interference* (“building a bridge”). It occurs, together with other useful techniques, in the following example.

Balashov – Dvoretsky
USSR ch tt, Moscow 1967*



9-74

B?

The main threat is by no means $\mathbb{Q}c5$ -b6-b7 – in that case the king will certainly be late when coming back to fight against the black pawn. White is planning 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ followed by the interference: $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ and $\mathbb{Q}a6$.

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5?$ then again 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ g4 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4\mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ g3 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ and 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ and 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4$, or 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ and 5. $\mathbb{Q}a6$.

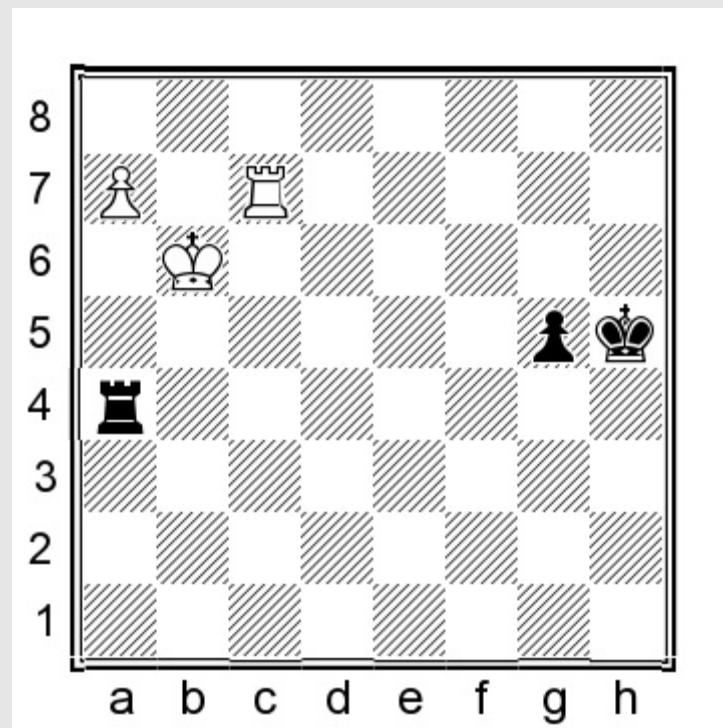
Every tempo counts in such situations. Black holds by means of *driving the king away by vertical checks*. The king should be driven as far as possible from the g-pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Q}a1!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6\mathbb{Q}b1+!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6\mathbb{Q}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7\mathbb{Q}b1+$ (the immediate 4... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ is also sufficient for a draw)
5. $\mathbb{Q}c8\mathbb{Q}a1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8\mathbb{Q}f5=$

Another method of preventing the threat of interference, 1... $\mathbb{Q}h5?$ looks less attractive: the king on

the h-file will be unable to shoulder his counterpart. In reality, this move loses, and its eventual consequences are quite instructive:

2.†b6 (Δ 3.‡c8)



9-75

B

2...‡a1

2...g4 is very bad in view of 3.‡c5+ and 4.‡a5 (a bridge again). The same method decides if 2...‡b4+ 3.†a5 ‡b1 4.‡c4!

After 2...†h4, White can apply another typical method: **deflection** of the rook, namely 3.‡c4+ ‡xc4 4.a8=‡. However, after 4...‡f4, a theoretically drawn position arises (we will study this sort of ending later in the book). Therefore the interference method should also be applied here: 3.†b5! ‡a1 4.‡c4+ and 5.‡a4.

3.‡c8!

3.‡c5? ‡xa7 is erroneous: the rook is placed badly on the fifth rank, and even more, it stands in the way of the white king.

3...‡xa7

Equivalent is 3...g4 (or 3...†g4) 4.a8=‡ ‡xa8 5.‡xa8.

4.†xa7 †g4

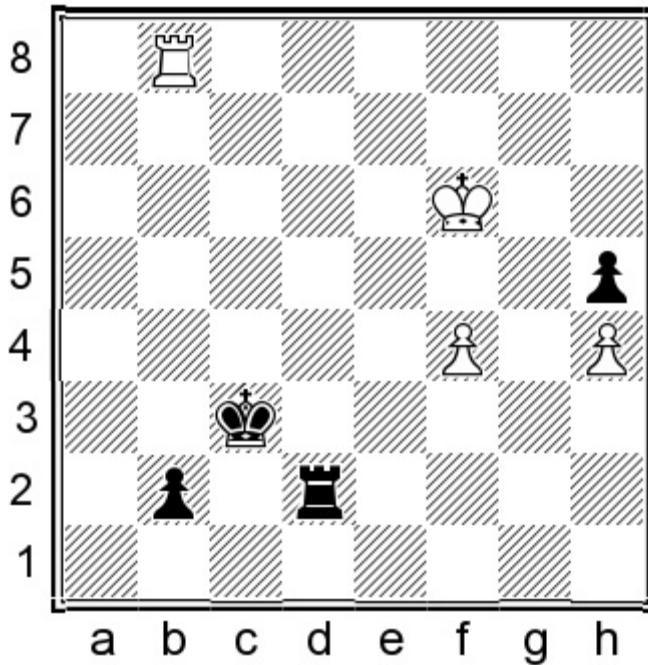
Or 4...g4 5.†b6 g3 6.‡g8! (6.†c5? †g4!=) 6...†h4 7.†c5 †h3 8.†d4 g2 9.†e3 †h2 10.†f2+– 5.†b6 †f3 6.‡f8+!

A familiar method: zwischenschach for gaining a tempo

6... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 7. $\mathbb{E}g8!$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ g4 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ g3 11. $\mathbb{E}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e2+-$

Tragicomедies

Peters – Browne
USA ch, South Bend 1981



9-76

W?

Keeping the previous example in mind, we can easily find the correct solution; it is based upon driving the king away by vertical checks: 1. $\mathbb{E}c8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 2. $\mathbb{E}b8$ (2. $\mathbb{E}d8+$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 3. $\mathbb{E}c8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 5.f5 (5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 5...b1= \mathbb{W} 6. $\mathbb{E}xb1+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6=$

1.f5?

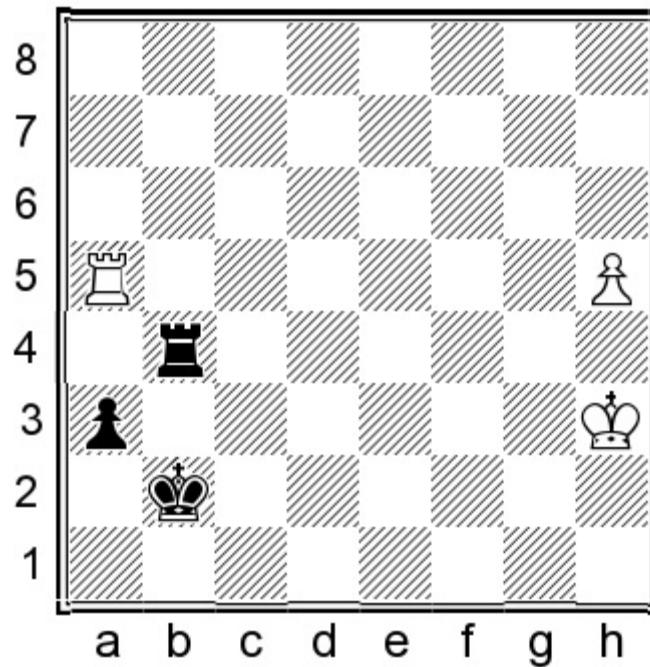
White fails to tackle a relatively simple problem. The attempt to set another pawn in motion also loses: 1. $\mathbb{Q}g6?$ $\mathbb{E}d1$ 2. $\mathbb{E}xb2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5.h5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6.f5 (6.h6 $\mathbb{Q}e6$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7.h6 (7.f6 $\mathbb{Q}e6-$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8.h7 $\mathbb{E}g1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10.h8= $\mathbb{Q}+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6-$

1.f5? $\mathbb{E}d1$ 2. $\mathbb{E}xb2$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ b1= \mathbb{W} 3. $\mathbb{E}xb1$ $\mathbb{E}xb1$ is the same) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$

In the 1. $\mathbb{E}c8+!$ line, the same position occurs, but with the king on b1, one square farther. This tempo turns out to be decisive.

3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6.h5 $\mathbb{E}g1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 8.h6 $\mathbb{E}a1$ 9.h7 $\mathbb{E}a7+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$
White resigned.

Tarrasch – Blümich
Breslau 1925



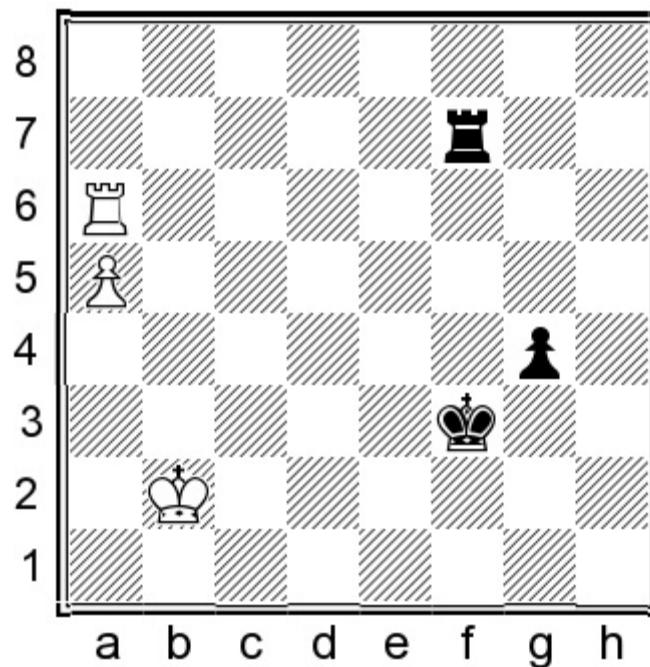
9-77

W

Tarrasch resigned! He saw that his king was cut off from his own pawn along the fourth rank, while the attempt to advance the pawn, **1.h6**, would have been met by **1...Rb6 2.Rh5 a2 3.h7 Rb8** (and, if **4.Ra5**, then **4...a1=Q 5.Rxa1 Qxa1 6.Qg4 Rh8+-**).

The grandmaster had completely forgotten the possibility of deflecting the black rook from the eighth rank: **4.Rb5+! Rx b5 5.h8=Q+=**

Exercises



9-78

9/10

B?

Show/Hide Solution

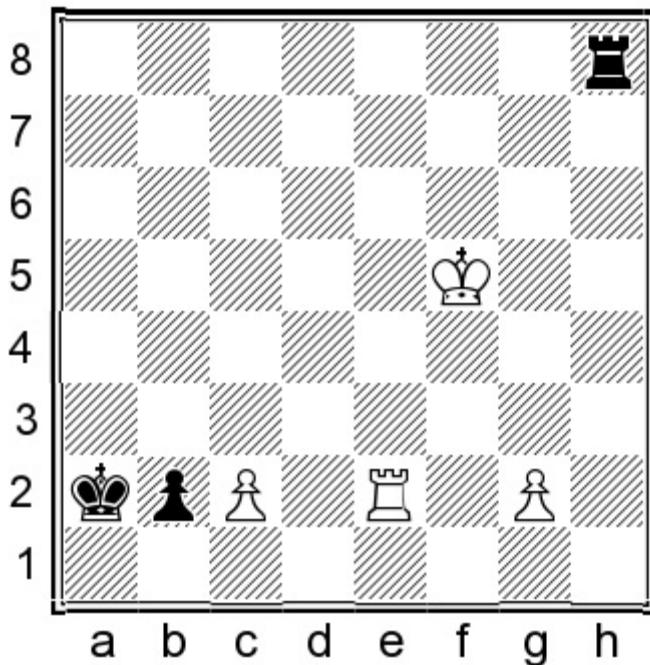
9/10. Beliavsky-Radulov, Leningrad 1977

1...g3? 2.Bg6 g2 3.Bb3 Bf4 (3...Bf2 4.Bb4=) 4.a6 leads to a draw. The white pawn is advanced far enough, so Black has no time either for utilizing the fact that the white king is cut off along the fourth rank (4...Bf2 5.a7) or for interfering by 4...Bg4

1...Bf5!

It is important to chain the white rook to the defense of the pawn. If 2.Bb3 g3 3.Bb4 g2 4.Bg6, the bridge technique is decisive: 4...Bf4+ Δ 5...Bg4

2.Ba8 g3 3.a6 Bf6! 4.a7 Bf7! White resigned.



9-79

9/11

W?

Show/Hide Solution

9/11. D.Gurgenidze 1987

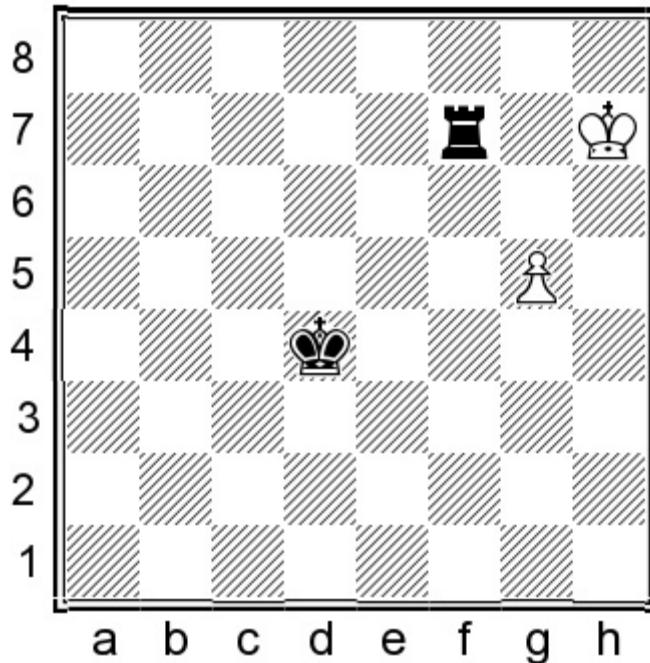
1.c3!!

As soon becomes clear, 1.c4? loses. In the upcoming rook-versus-pawn endgame, White plays for stalemate, and therefore the c-pawn should be left to be captured by the black king.

1.♖e1? is very bad in view of 1...♜f8+!

However, after Inarkiev's suggestion 1.♔e7!? (with the idea of 1...♜f8+ 2.♔e6), Black seems to have no win, for example, 1...♝b8 2.♜a7+ ♔b1 3.g4 ♔xc2 4.♜a2.

1.c3!! ♜f8+! 2.♔g6 ♔b3 3.♜xb2+ (3.♔e1? ♜g8+ Δ ...♜xg2–+) 3...♜xb2 4.g4 ♔xc3 5.g5 ♔d4 6.♔h7! ♜f7+!? (the last trap)



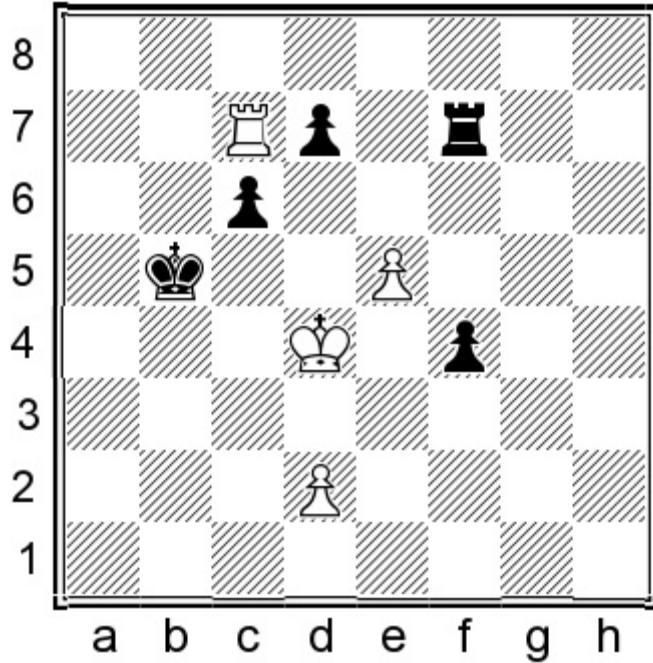
I6-80

W?

7.♔h8!

7.♔h6? is a mistake: 7...♔e5 8.g6 ♜f1 9.g7 ♔f6–+.

7...♔e5 8.g6 ♜f8+ 9.♔h7 ♔f6 10.g7 ♜f7 11.♔h8 ♜xg7 stalemate.



9-80

9/12

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

9/12. V. & M. Platov 1923

1.e6

After 1. $\mathbb{B}b7+?$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 2. e6, Black holds by means of 2...c5+! 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3(d3)$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ d6+) 3... $\mathbb{B}f5+?$.

1.e6 $\mathbb{B}f6$

If 1... $\mathbb{B}f8$, then 2. $\mathbb{B}xd7$ f3 (2... $\mathbb{B}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$) 3. $\mathbb{B}b7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 4. $\mathbb{B}f7$ $\mathbb{B}d8+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$) 4. $\mathbb{B}f7$ $\mathbb{B}d8+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{B}xd2$ 6. e7 $\mathbb{B}e2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ f2 (7... $\mathbb{B}c2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{B}d2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ f2 10. $\mathbb{Q}f8+-$) 8. $\mathbb{B}xf2!$ $\mathbb{B}xe7$ 9. $\mathbb{B}a2\#$

2. $\mathbb{B}b7+!$

This zwischenschach is necessary. The win of a rook for a pawn in the line 2. exd7? $\mathbb{B}d6+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{B}xd2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ f3 5. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{B}e2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{B}d2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ c5= only draws.

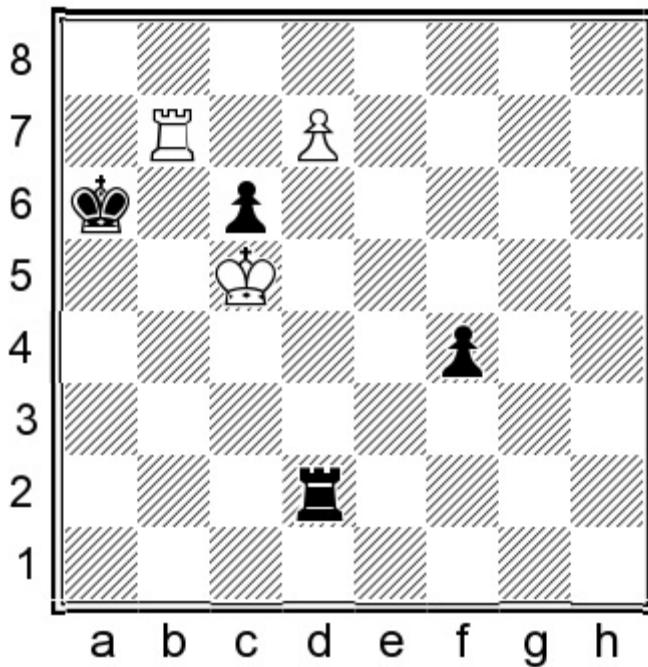
2... $\mathbb{Q}a6$

After 2... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 3. exd7 $\mathbb{B}d6+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{B}xd2$, an interference on the d-file decides: 5. $\mathbb{B}b4+$ Δ 6. $\mathbb{B}d4$.

3. exd7 $\mathbb{B}d6+$

3... $\mathbb{B}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ f3 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ f2 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc6+$ and 8. $\mathbb{Q}c1+-$

4. ♕c5 ♖xd2



I6-81

W?

5. ♖b2!

White improves the position of the rook with tempo, utilizing the fact that 5... ♖xd7 is impossible in view of 6. ♕xc6. 5. ♖b3? is wrong: 5... f3! 6. ♕xc6 (6. ♖xf3 ♕b7=) 6... ♖c2+ with a draw.

5... ♖d3

Black cannot create a fortress with a rook against a queen: 5... ♖xb2 6. d8=♕ ♖c2+ 7. ♕b4 ♖b2+ 8. ♕c4 ♖b5 9. ♕c7+- . 5... ♖d1 is also bad: 6. ♕xc6 ♖c1+ 7. ♕d6 ♖d1+ 8. ♕c7 ♖c1+ 9. ♕d8 f3 10. ♖d2!+-

6. ♖b3!

The rook occupies the third rank in order to prevent the advance of the f-pawn. 6. ♕xc6? is premature: 6... ♖c3+ 7. ♕d6 ♖d3+ 8. ♕c7 ♖c3+ 9. ♕d8 ♖e3! (rather than 9... f3? 10. ♖d2!+-) 10. ♖d2 ♕b7=

6... ♖d2 7. ♕xc6 ♖c2+ 8. ♕d6 ♖d2+ 9. ♕c7 ♖c2+ 10. ♕d8 ♖e2!? (with the idea 11. ♖d3? ♕b7) 11. ♖f3!

Black must protect the pawn, but his rook will be too close to the white king.

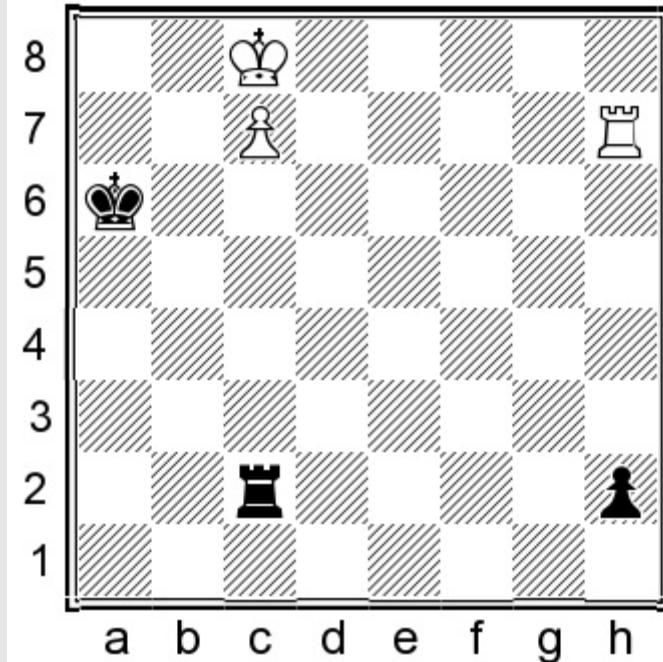
11... ♖e4 12. ♕c7 ♖c4+ 13. ♕d6 ♖d4+ 14. ♕c6! ♖c4+ 15. ♕d5+-

Lasker's Idea

Books on chess endings contain many interesting and instructive rook-and-pawn endings with a

single pawn on each side. We have already studied some typical methods that are characteristic for this material in the previous section of the book. Now we shall discuss one more idea. The second world champion introduced it.

Em.Lasker 1890



9-81
W?

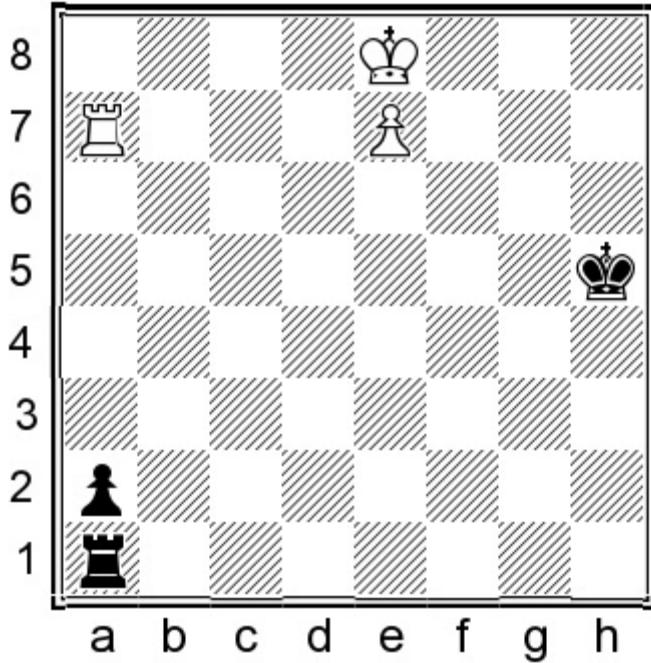
Were Black on move, he could hold the game by playing 1... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$

or 1... $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ But it is White who is on move, and he sets into motion a mechanism that gradually drives the black king as far away as the second rank.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xh2+-$

A slightly more complicated version of the same idea is demonstrated in the following example.

P.Keres 1947*



9-82
\$
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}a3 \mathbb{Q}h4!$

Black prevents the rook transfer to the second rank: 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ and 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}a5! \circlearrowright$

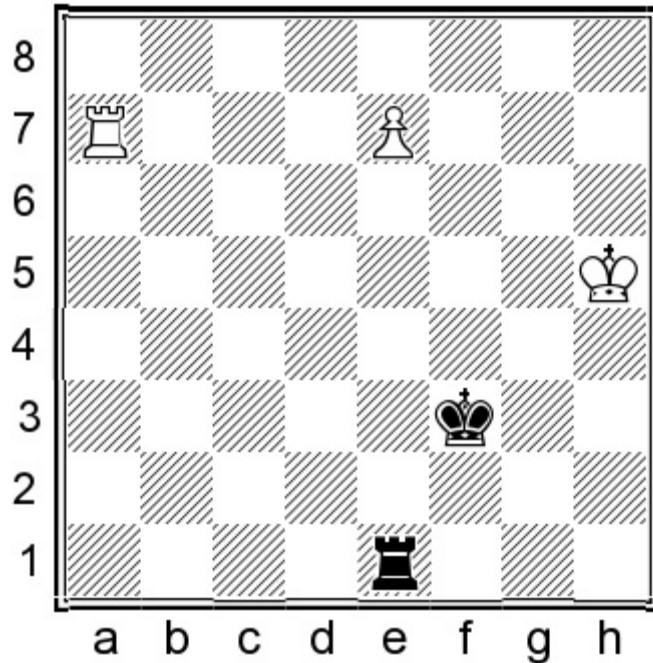
When the black king is placed on h4, 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ has no point – after 2... $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}g1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}e1$, White's king has traveled too far away from the e7-pawn and cannot protect it. Therefore White waits; he realizes that Black's king is placed worse on any square other than h4.

It is worth mentioning that the diagrammed position occurred, with reversed colors, in the game I.Zaitsev-Dvoretsky, Moscow ch 1973. I did not know the endgame study by Keres and, having discovered the same idea, executed it in a slightly different way: 1. $\mathbb{Q}a5+ \mathbb{Q}h4!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a3! \circlearrowright$ The game continued 2... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (or 2... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$, and we transpose into the main line of the Keres' study) 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3+ \mathbb{Q}f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ (Keres suggests 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}d1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}c1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b7 a1=\mathbb{W}$ 9. $e8=\mathbb{W}+$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \circlearrowright$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2+ \mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{Q}xe2$ 9. $e8=\mathbb{W}+$ and my opponent resigned after a few more moves.

**2... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7! \mathbb{Q}f1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}e1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4+ \mathbb{Q}h3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}f1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}g1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h5 \mathbb{Q}e1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a3+ \mathbb{Q}g2$
10. $\mathbb{Q}xa2+$**

In the study by Lasker, this was the termination point; but here the fight goes on.

10... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a7$



9-83

B

11... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b7(c7)!$

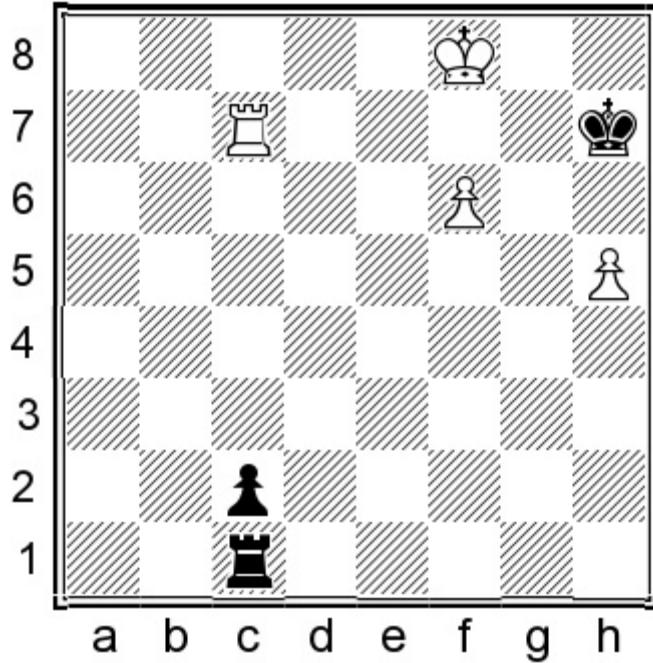
13. $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ is incorrect on account of 13... $\mathbb{Q}e5\Theta=$

13... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f5)$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Now it is Black who has fallen into zugzwang.

14... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f5+-$

Exercises



9-84
9/13
B?

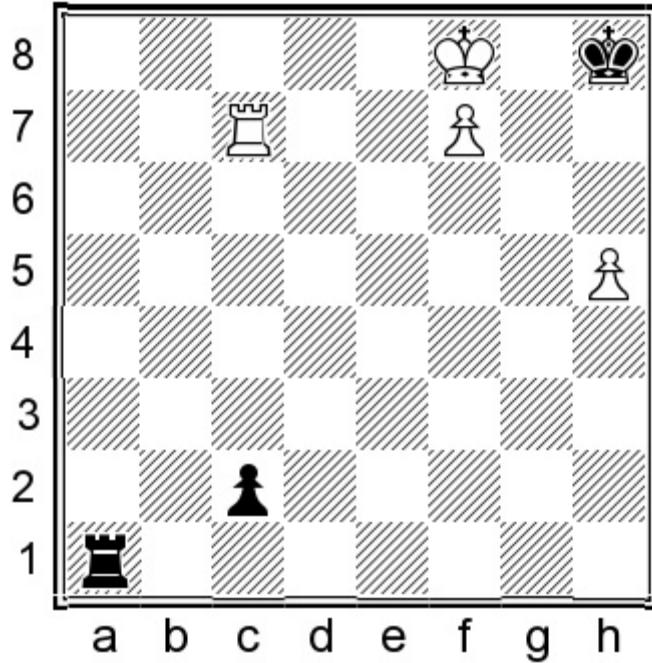
Show/Hide Solution

9/13. Petrosian-Karpov, USSR ch, Moscow 1976

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6$? White wins similarly to Lasker's study: 2.f7 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g8$) 3.h6 $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xc2++-$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h8!$ 2.f7 $\mathbb{Q}a1!$

He must begin the counterattack immediately! Otherwise White plays 3.h6, and the black king is denied the important g7-square.



16-82

W

3.†e7

The king has a refuge from vertical checks: h6. However, Black manages to hold because of a stalemate!

3...‡e1+ 4.†f6 ‡f1+ 5.†g6 ‡g1+ 6.†h6 c1=‡+! 7.‡xc1 ‡g6+!=

In the actual game, 3.‡xc2 was played (instead of 3.†e7). Black forced the white king far from the pawns with a series of side checks: 3...‡a8+ 4.†e7 ‡a7+ 5.†f6 (5.†e6 ‡a6+ 6.†d7 ‡a7+ 7.†c7 ‡xc7+ 8.‡xc7 †g7=) 5...‡a6+ 6.†g5 ‡a5+ 7.†g4 ‡a4+ 8.†g3 ‡a3+ 9.†g2 †g7 10.‡f2 †f8 11.‡f5 ‡a6!

11...‡a7? loses to 12.h6 ‡a6 (12...‡xf7 13.h7) 13.‡h5

12.†g3 ‡h6 13.†g4

Draw, in view of 13...‡h7.

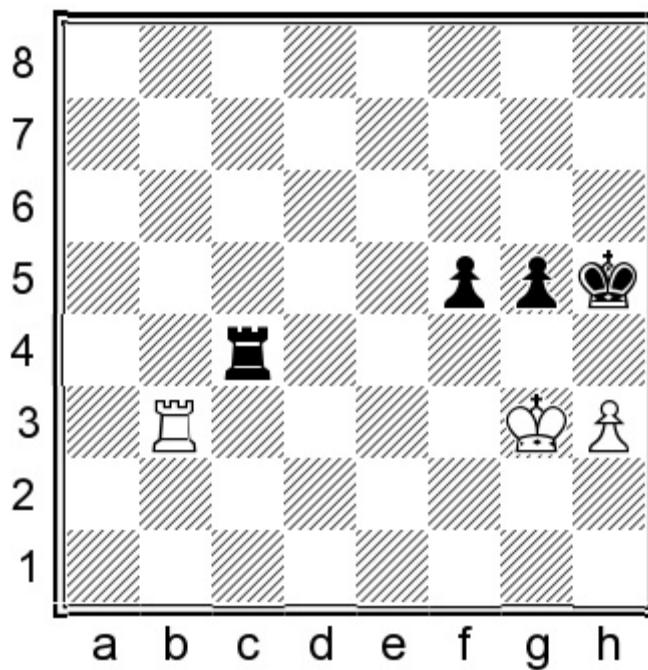
Show in Text Mode

A Rook and Two Pawns vs. a Rook and Pawn

All Pawns Are on the Same Wing

If all the pawns are grouped on the same wing, then a draw is the most probable outcome. Even when there is a passed pawn, the defense is, as a rule, not too difficult.

Smyslov – Keres
USSR ch, Moscow 1949



9-85

W

Black is planning 1...f4+ and 2... \hat{Q} h4. A reliable method of preventing a king invasion is a rook check from h8.

1. \hat{Q} b8! f4+ 2. \hat{Q} g2 \hat{Q} c2+ 3. \hat{Q} f3!

3. \hat{Q} g1? loses to 3... \hat{Q} h4 4. \hat{Q} b3 \hat{Q} e2 Δ 5... \hat{Q} e3.

3... \hat{Q} c3+

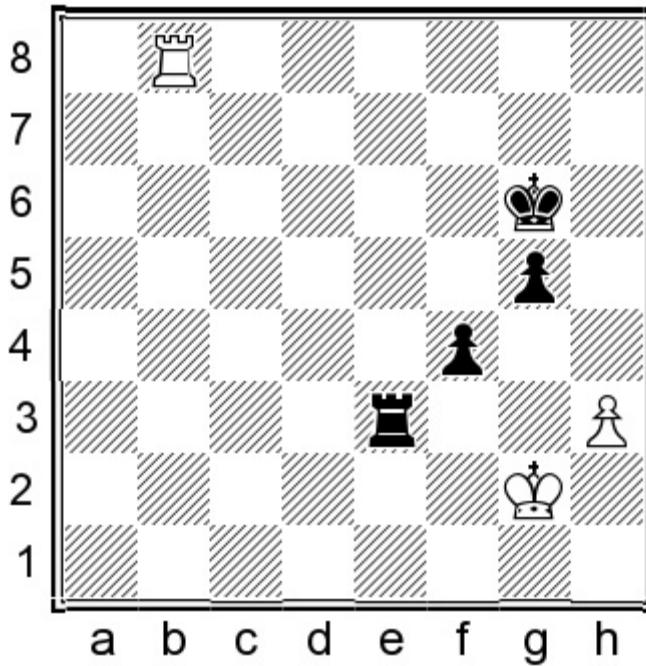
There is no danger for White in 3... \hat{Q} h2 4. \hat{Q} h8+ \hat{Q} g6 5. \hat{Q} g8+ \hat{Q} f6 6. \hat{Q} h8 \hat{Q} g7 7. \hat{Q} h5 \hat{Q} g6 8. \hat{Q} h8 \hat{Q} f6 9. \hat{Q} g4! (9. \hat{Q} h5? \hat{Q} f5 10. \hat{Q} h8 \hat{Q} xh3+!) 9... \hat{Q} g2+ 10. \hat{Q} f3 \hat{Q} g3+ 11. \hat{Q} f2, and 11... \hat{Q} g6 can be met, besides

the waiting 12. $\mathbb{Q}f1$, even with 12.h4 g4 13. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ (or 13. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}f3+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g2$).

4. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}g3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

6. $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 7.h4! g4 8. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h8+$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg4=$

6... $\mathbb{Q}g6$



9-86

W

7. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$

The simplest solution: White cuts the enemy king off from the center of the board.

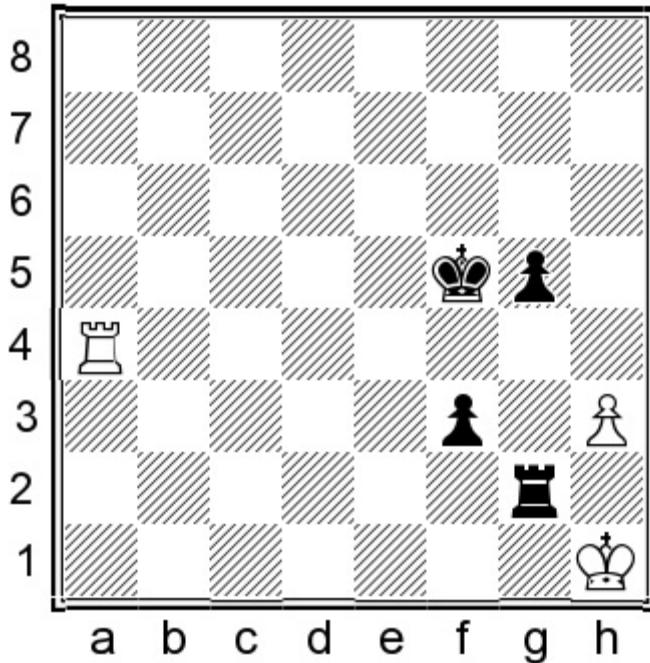
7... $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}h2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h8 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h5 \mathbb{Q}f6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h8 \mathbb{Q}h1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}d1$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}d2+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}d3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}g6$ Draw.

Cutting the king off along the f-file is not obligatory (even more so because Black can overcome it). Instead of 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8$, 7. $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{Q}f5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ is possible. The game Timman-Radulov, Wijk aan Zee 1974 (with reversed colors and wings) went 9... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}d2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}d1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}d2+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}h2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}d2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xg5 \mathbb{Q}e3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ Draw.

If 9... $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ White should play 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}e3+$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f8+!$ followed with $\mathbb{Q}h8$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}g2=$

It is worth mentioning that here again, as on move three, a retreat of the king to the back rank loses.

10. $\mathbb{Q}g1?$ f3 11. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{Q}g2+!$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a2 \mathbb{Q}f4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}e2+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ 15.h4!=) **12. $\mathbb{Q}h1$** (12. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}h2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6-$)



9-87

B?

This position occurred in Schmidt-Plachetka, Decin 1976, with a single unimportant difference: the white rook stood on b4.

12...g4! 13.hxg4+ (13.¤xg4 ¤xg4 14.hxg4+ ♕xg4+) 13...♕g5!

If 13...¤xg4? 14.¤a2 ♕f4 15.¤h2 ¤h4+ 16.¤g1 ♕g3, White holds the endgame because of a stalemate: 17.¤g2+

Now Black threatens 14...¤e2 followed by ...¤h4-g3. As we know, a passive defense with the rook on the first rank does not help against an f-pawn. As for checks from the rear, Black will use the g-pawn as an umbrella against them.

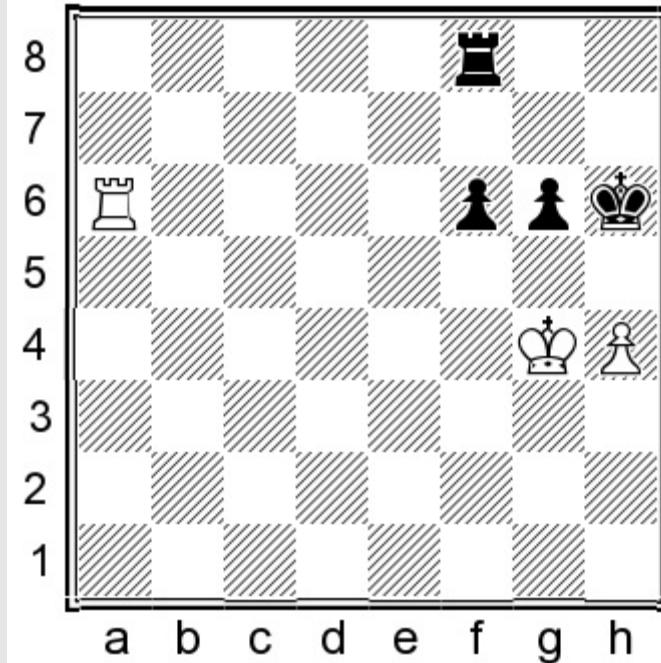
14.¤a1 ¤e2!

In the game, Plachetka choose a mistaken continuation 14...¤h4? and White managed to hold the game by means of 15.¤f1! ¤g3 (if 15...¤g3 16.¤g1 ¤f2 17.¤a1 ¤xg4, a stalemate saves White again: 18.¤a2+ ¤g3 19.¤g1 ¤b4 20.¤g2+!) 16.g5! ¤xg5 17.¤a1.

However a step by the king to the opposite direction would have led to a win: 14...¤f4! 15.g5 (15.¤f1 ¤e2 16.g5 ¤g3 17.¤g1+ ¤h3 18.¤f1 f2, or 15.¤g1 ¤e2) 15...¤g3 (16...¤h2+ 17.¤g1 f2+ is threatened) 16.¤g1 ¤f2 17.¤a1 ¤g4! 18.¤a2+ ¤g3 19.¤g1 ¤b4 (the g-pawn is still on the board, so there is no stalemate possibility) 20.¤a1 ¤b2 21.g6 ¤g2+ 22.¤f1 ¤h2+–

15.¤g1 ¤h4 16.g5 ¤h3 (16...f2) 17.¤a1 ¤h2+ 18.¤g1 f2+–

Vaiser – Djuric
Szirak 1985



9-88

W?

In comparison with the previous ending, the black pawns are less advanced. This circumstance seems to be in White's favor, but actually he is faced with severe problems. His rook cannot reach h8, as with Smyslov's defensive method against a king penetration via the h-file.

For example, if 1. $\mathbb{R}b6?$ then 1... $f5+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{R}a8$ 3. $\mathbb{R}b7 \mathbb{R}a4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{R}a3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{R}h3$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{R}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $\mathbb{R}h6 \mathbb{R}a6-$

In Gliksman-Novak, Stary Smokovec 1976, the same position with reversed colors arose. The game continued 1. $h5?$ $g5!$ (1... $gxh5+$ leads to a drawn endgame with f- and h-pawns) 2. $\mathbb{R}b6 \mathbb{R}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a6 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{R}b7$ 5. $h6+$ (5. $\mathbb{R}a5 \mathbb{Q}h6!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 \mathbb{R}b1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}xh5$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{R}b3$ 8. $\mathbb{R}f1 \mathbb{Q}h4$ 9. $\mathbb{R}h1+$ $\mathbb{R}h3$ and Black won.

Vaiser discovered a new defensive method for this sort of ending, and thus a highly important one:

1. $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$ $f5$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a3!$

The immediate 1. $\mathbb{R}a3 \mathbb{R}b8$ 2. $\mathbb{R}f3 \mathbb{R}b6!$ O 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (3. $\mathbb{R}f1?$ $f5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{R}b3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{R}b4-$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{R}a6?$ 5. $\mathbb{R}f1!$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}g3?$ $f5 \Delta$ 6... $\mathbb{R}a4-$) 5... $\mathbb{R}a3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $f5$ 7. $\mathbb{R}g1=$ was also good enough.

1. $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$ $f5$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a3!$ $\mathbb{R}f7$

2... $\mathbb{R}b8$ was more sensible, because here White, if he wished, could have played 3. $\mathbb{R}a8$ transposing to the plan we already know.

3. $\mathbb{R}b3?!$ $\mathbb{R}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{R}g3!$ $\mathbb{R}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{R}e3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

It becomes clear that the black king cannot go ahead when the white rook is placed on the g-file:
6... $\hat{Q}h5$ 7. $\hat{R}g5+$.

6... $\hat{R}d3$ 7. $\hat{R}g2$ $\hat{R}d6$

If 7...f4, then 8. $\hat{R}g4$ (8. $\hat{R}f2$ $\hat{R}d4$ 9. $\hat{Q}h3$ $\hat{Q}h5$ 10. $\hat{R}d2!=$ is also good) 8... $\hat{R}d2+$ 9. $\hat{Q}g1$ (9. $\hat{Q}h3$) 9...f3
10. $\hat{R}f4$ $\hat{R}d3$ 11. $\hat{R}g4$ $\Delta \hat{Q}f2=$

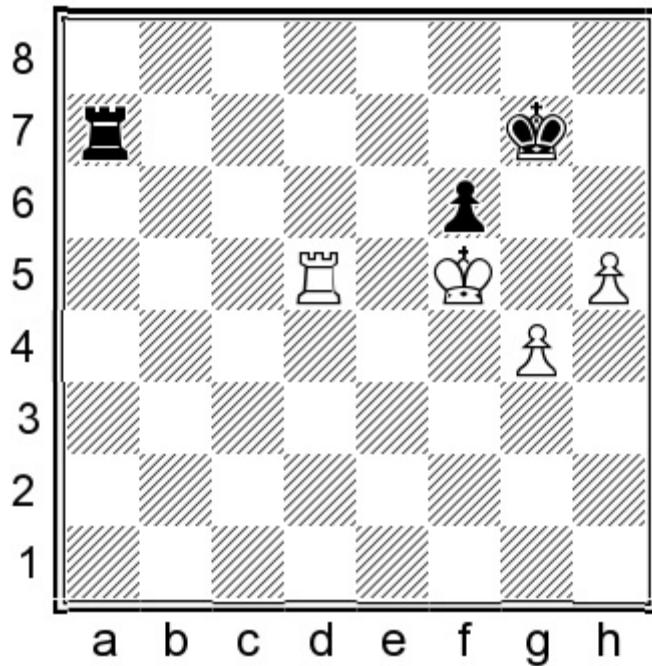
8. $\hat{Q}h3$ $\hat{R}f6$ 9. $\hat{R}g5!$

Draw, in view of 9...f4 10. $\hat{Q}g2$ f3+ 11. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{R}f4$ 12. $\hat{R}g3$ $\hat{Q}h5$ 13. $\hat{R}g5+!$

Tragicomедies

J. Polgar – Short

Monaco bl 1993



9-89

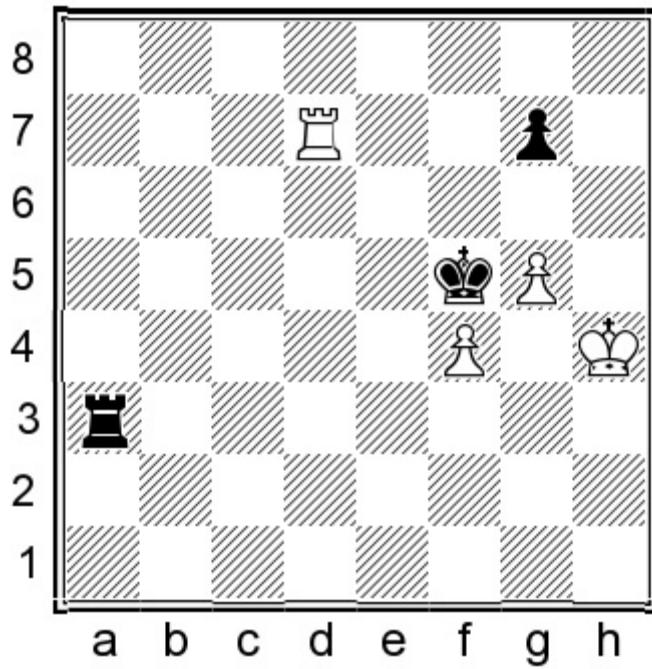
B

After the waiting move 1... $\hat{B}b7$, the position is still drawn: 2. $\hat{Q}e6$ $\hat{B}b4$ (2... $\hat{B}b1$ is equivalent) 3. $\hat{R}d7+$ $\hat{Q}h6$ 4. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{B}b5+$ 5. $\hat{Q}xf6$ $\hat{B}b4!$ 6.g5+ (6. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{R}f4+$ or 6... $\hat{R}xg4$ leads to stalemate) 6... $\hat{Q}xh5$ 7. $\hat{R}h7+$ $\hat{Q}g4$ 8.g6 $\hat{B}b6+$ 9. $\hat{Q}f7$ $\hat{B}b7+$ 10. $\hat{Q}g8$ $\hat{B}b8+$ 11. $\hat{Q}g7$ $\hat{Q}g5=$ (Müller).

Short decided to at least prevent the king from invading at e6, but the cure proved worse than the disease – his resourceful adversary found an elegant forced win.

1... $\hat{B}e7??$ 2.h6+! $\hat{Q}f7$ (2... $\hat{Q}xh6$ 3. $\hat{Q}xf6+-$) 3.g5!! $\hat{R}xg5$ 4. $\hat{R}d8!$ and Black resigned.

Hebden – Wood



9-90

B

1... ♕xf4??

A terrible error! The black king will be cut off along the f-file now, and the g7-pawn will be inevitably lost.

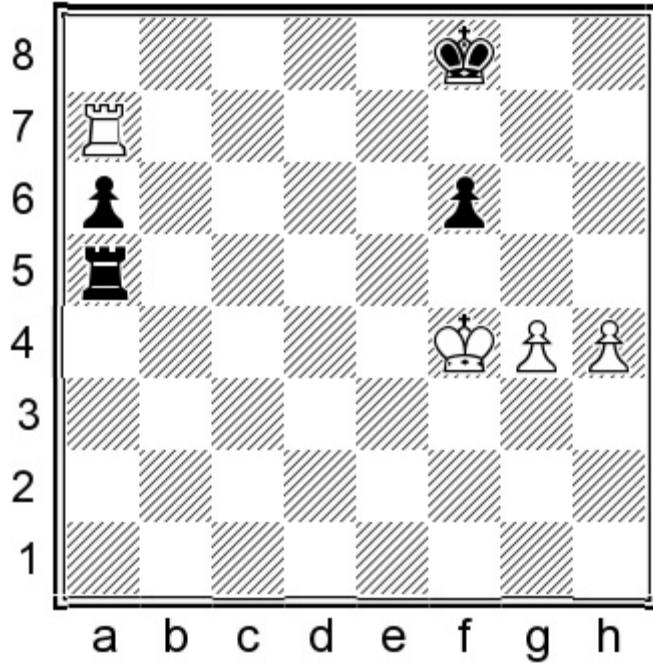
The simplest way to a draw was 1... ♕g6 2. ♕g4 (2.f5+ ♕xf5 3. ♕xg7 ♕a1 4. ♕f7+ ♕g6=) 2... ♕a4 3. ♕d6+ ♕f7

Another way was 1...g6 2. ♕f7+ ♕e4 3. ♕g4 (3. ♕f6 ♕a1 4. ♕g3 ♕g1+ 5. ♕h2 ♕g4; 3.f5 gxf5 4.g6 f4 5.g7 ♕g3) 3... ♕a1 4. ♕e7+ ♕d5 5. ♕g7 ♕e4! 6. ♕xg6 ♕g1+ and if 7. ♕h4?? ♕f3!, White's king will be mated.

1... ♕xf4?? 2. ♕f7+ ♕e5 3. ♕h5!+- ♕a6 4. ♕xg7 ♕a5 5. ♕e7+ ♕f5 6. ♕f7+ ♕e6 7. ♕f1 ♕a8 8. g6 ♕h8+ 9. ♕g5 ♕e7 10. ♕e1+ (10.g7) 10... ♕f8 11. ♕f6 ♕h6 (11... ♕h7?! 12. ♕e8+!) 12. ♕e2 Black resigned.

Chigorin – Tarrasch

Budapest 1896



9-91
B

In the game, Black let the hostile king penetrate into his camp; this caused a rapid loss.

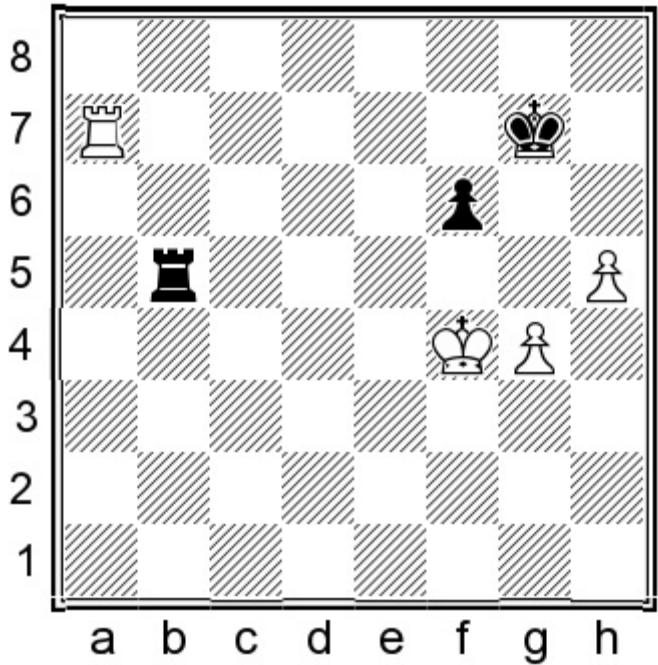
1... $\mathbb{Q}a1??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}f1+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}f4$ 4. $g5!$ $f\times g5$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $g\times f6+$) 5. $h\times g5 \mathbb{Q}a4$

Both 5... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ and 5... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xa6 \mathbb{Q}g1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ are hopeless.

6. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ a5 8.g6 $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 9.g7 $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}g1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h7 \mathbb{Q}h1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g8 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{Q}h1$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h7 \mathbb{Q}h1+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h6)$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xa5 \mathbb{Q}e1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h5 \mathbb{Q}g1$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ Black resigned.

The rook had to watch the fifth rank. The a6-pawn is not necessary for Black: its existence is not essential for a draw.

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ 2.h5, the most solid defense was suggested by Fridstein: 2... $\mathbb{Q}b5!?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa6 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$



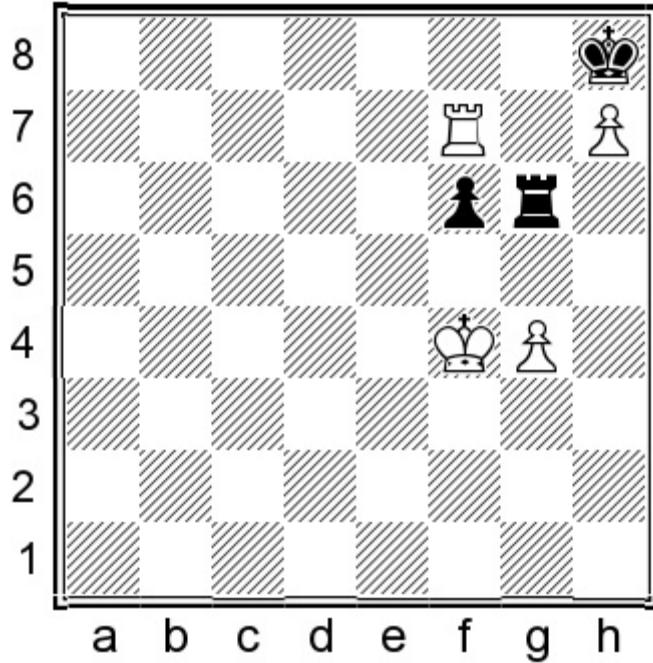
9-92

B

4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5.h6 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5+-$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c1=$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 8.h7 $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a1+-$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ and White cannot strengthen his position, because 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ is met by 11... $\mathbb{Q}a5+$. Moreover, as noted by Vardan Pogosyan, the king is not obliged to retreat to the eighth rank: after 4... $\mathbb{Q}h6!?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}b4+$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4!$, a drawn position has arisen on the board, familiar to us through the analysis of the Polgar-Short ending (9-89).

In the line 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6.h7 $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 9.h8= $\mathbb{Q}+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}a5+?$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5+$ 13.gxf5 $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6!+-$) 12. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ White, according to the *Encyclopedia of Chess Endings*, should win. However it is a mystery to me how he can do it after 12... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (13.g5 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8=$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 14.g5 a5.

Also playable is 2... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ (4.h6+ $\mathbb{Q}g6!=$, but not 4... $\mathbb{Q}xh6?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5!+-$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6.h7+ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$



9-93

B?

Black should not cling to the f6-pawn. He achieves a draw by means of 7... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 \mathbb{Q}a5$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}a7=$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (9. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}a4+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}xg4+$) 9... $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}a5+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{Q}a7=$ or 11... $\mathbb{Q}a1=$ The other way Black can save himself was shown by David Navara: 7...f5! 8.g5 (8.gxf5 $\mathbb{Q}g4+!$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}a6=$

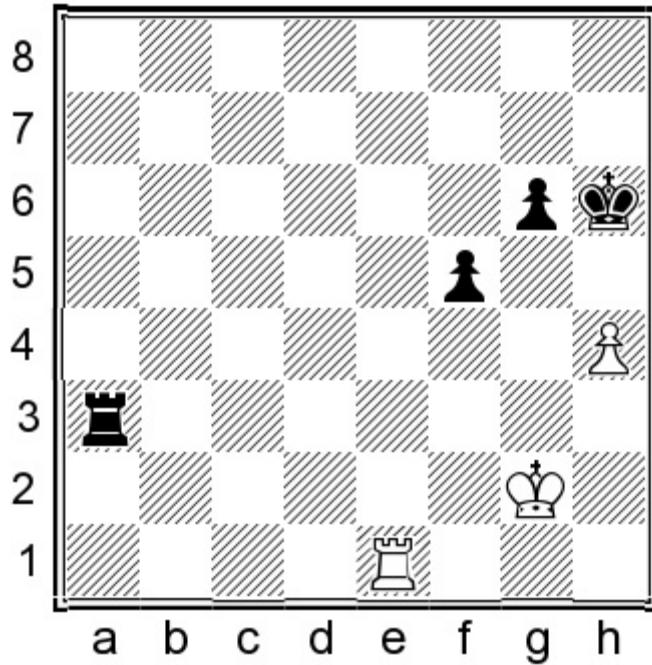
After 7... $\mathbb{Q}h6?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ Black loses. The game Malisauskas-Sandler (USSR 1977) continued 8... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h6+-$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (9. $\mathbb{Q}xf6?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7!=$; 9.g5? fxg5 10. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}f4=$) 9... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (a simpler way is 10. $\mathbb{Q}a7\Theta$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 11.g5! fxg5 12. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 11.g5 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g6??$

A gross error just when a step away from a win. 12. $\mathbb{Q}e8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ was decisive.

12... $\mathbb{Q}xg5+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}e5!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}e8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}d8$ Draw.

Diagram 9-94 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



9-94a

9/14

W?

Show/Hide Solution

9/14. Adapted from Yakovich – Savchenko, Rostov 1993

1.♕g1!!=

1.♔h2? ♜a4 2.♔g3 ♔h5+ is bad.

1.♕g1!!=

Now White impedes Black's king activation in time, for example, 1...♔h5 2.♔h2 ♜a4 3.♕g5+.

1...♜a4 2.♔h3 ♜a8

This position occurred in the game, and we show the remainder of the game; the original position was adapted as an exercise because in the game there was another white pawn on a5, and then, in addition to 1.♕g1 which was played,

1.♔h2

and 1.♖e8 were also good.

3.♕g3 ♜e8 4.♕g1 ♜e6 5.♕g3 ♜f6 6.♕g2 ♜f8

6...f4 7.♔g4 f3 8.♕f2=

7.♕g1

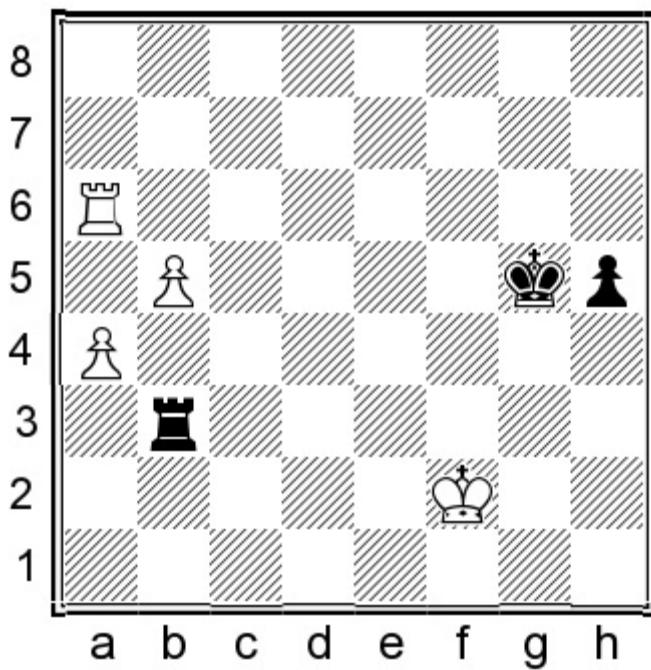
7. $\mathbb{E}g5$

7... $f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $f3+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 11. $\mathbb{E}a4$ Draw.

Pawns on Opposite Wings

A common situation is when one side has two connected passed pawns while the adversary has a far-advanced pawn on the opposite wing. In these endgames, correct placement of one's pieces is highly important.

N.Grigoriev 1936*



9-95

W

White has so-called self-propelled pawns. However, a lot of time is required for promotion, so Black manages to create counterplay in time.

1. $b6$ (Δ 2. $\mathbb{E}a5+$ 3. $\mathbb{E}b5$)

1. $\mathbb{E}d6$ $\mathbb{E}b2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $h4$ does not bring any success either.

1. $b6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 2. $a5$ $\mathbb{E}b2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 3... $h4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}a7$ $h3$ 5. $\mathbb{E}h7$ $h2$ 6. $\mathbb{E}xh2$

6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ is met by 6... $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{E}b5$.

6... $\mathbb{E}xh2$ 7. $b7$

A typical situation: the rook cannot stop the pawns, but Black nevertheless manages to hold by pursuing the hostile king, which is pressed to the edge of the board.

7... $\hat{\square}e3$ 8. $\hat{\square}f1$ (8. $\hat{\square}d1$ $\hat{\square}d3$ 9. $\hat{\square}c1$ $\hat{\square}c3$ 10. $\hat{\square}b1??$ $\hat{\square}b2+$) 8... $\hat{\square}f3$ 9. $\hat{\square}e1=$

The careless 9. $\hat{\square}g1??$ even loses: 9... $\hat{\square}g2+!$ 10. $\hat{\square}h1$ (10. $\hat{\square}f1$ $\hat{\square}b2$) 10... $\hat{\square}b2$ 11.a6 $\hat{\square}g3$.

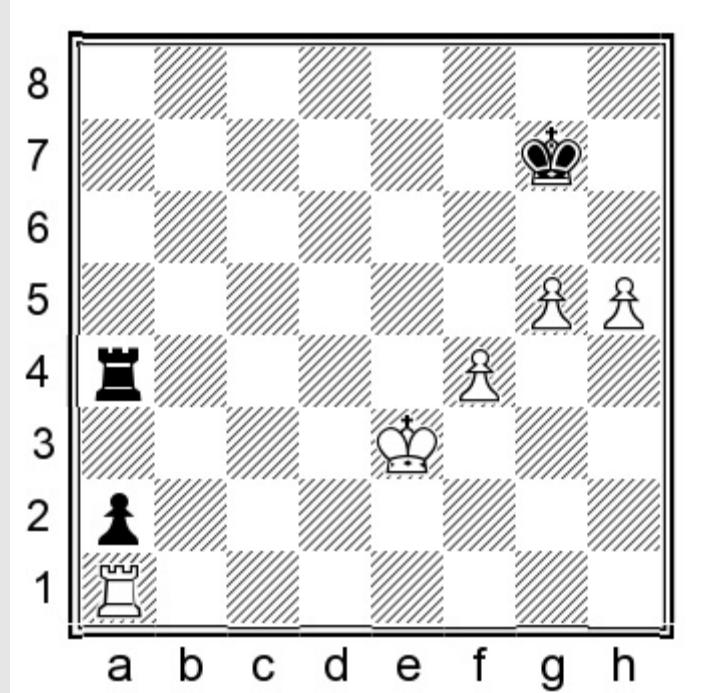
In this example, White's pieces were "engaged in a strange role reversal." As a rule, *the king should support its own connected passed pawns while the rook's mission is to hinder the hostile pawn.*

The rook's placement is extremely important. *If the rook of the stronger side is placed passively (in front of the enemy's pawn) a draw can be achieved simply by placing the king in front of the connected pair of pawns.*

Some time ago I was quite impressed by a discovery that the former world champion produced during our joint analytical work.

Diagram 9-96 has been intentionally omitted.

Adapted from V.Smyslov 1976



9-96a
B

White has three finely placed connected pawns, but the position is drawn!

1... $\hat{\square}a3+$ 2. $\hat{\square}d4$

2. $\hat{\square}d2$ $\hat{\square}a4$ 3.f5 $\hat{\square}a5=$ is no better.

2... $\hat{\square}a4+$ 3. $\hat{\square}c3$ $\hat{\square}xf4$ 4. $\hat{\square}xa2$ $\hat{\square}h4!?$

4... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ also draws.

5. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$

6.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g4=$

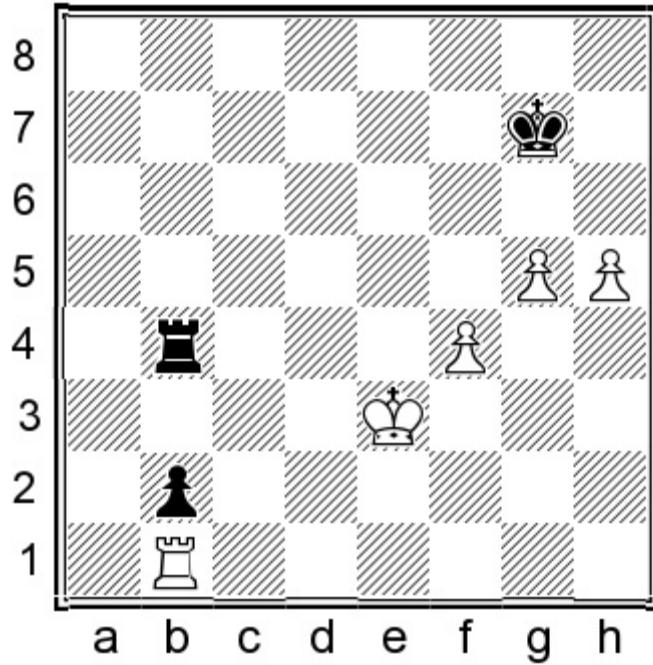
6... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$

But not 6... $\mathbb{Q}h7?$ 7.g6+, coming to a winning Kasparian position (see diagram 9-56).

7.h6+ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6=$

The most White could achieve is the drawn Kling and Horwitz position (diagram 9-55). Smyslov and I actually analyzed the position with the b-pawn rather than the a-pawn. In that position, Karsten Müller, many years later, showed a complicated path to victory:

K.Müller 2014, Smyslov 1976



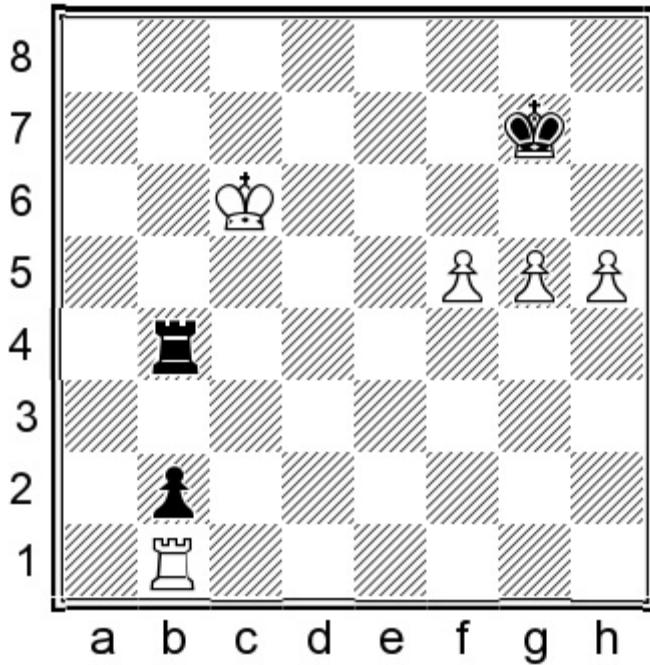
9-96b

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$

4. $\mathbb{Q}g4?!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ is useless.

4... $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 7.f5



9-96c

B

7...Bg4

If Black temporizes, 7...Bb8 8.h6+ Kh7, then the most exact way is 9.Qd5! (but not 9.Qc5? Bg8 [9...Bf8 also draws] 10.g6+ Qxh6 11.Bxb2 Qg5 12.Bf2 Qf6=) 9...Bb4 10.Qe5 (and now, thanks to zugzwang, Black must allow the king back to the lower half of the board) 10...Bb5+ 11.Qf4 Bb4+ 12.Qg3 Bb5 13.Qg4 Bb3 14.Qh4#+-

8.h6+ Kh7 9.Bxb2 Bxg5 10.Bf2!+-

White's king is close enough to the f-pawn, which would not be the case if Black had an a-pawn like in the previous position.

Clearly, the problems with the realization of White's material advantage were obviously caused by the poor position of White's rook. Tarrasch's famous rule is perfectly on point here: ***Place your rook behind the passed pawn, whether it is yours or your adversary's.*** Thereby the rook can retain utmost activity.

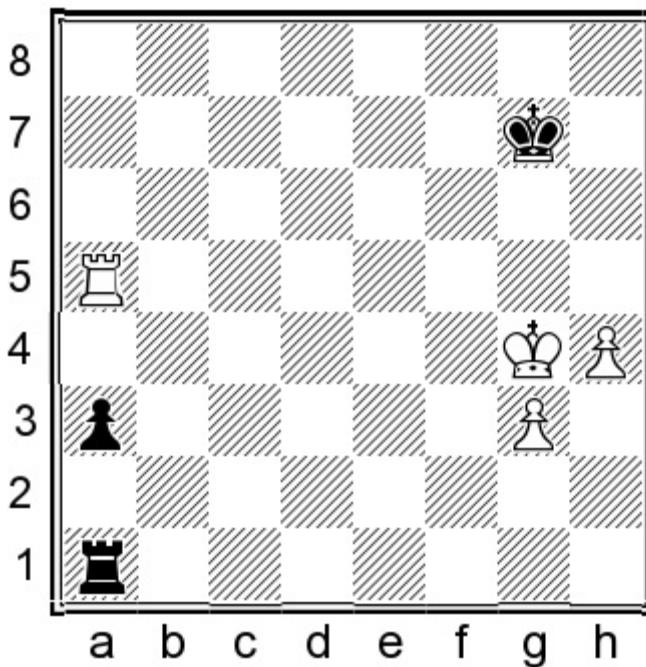
Tarrasch's rule is valid for the overwhelming majority of rook-and-pawn endings but, as it goes without saying, not for absolutely all of them. Generally speaking, there is no rule in chess which does not have an exception.

An amateur followed Tarrasch's rule in a correspondence game and had to resign immediately after receiving his opponent's reply. He wrote an irritated letter to the grandmaster: "I relied upon your authority but lost because of you, with your stupid rule..."

Tarrasch published it in his chess column with the final position of that game, adding the following

annotation: “Especially for this reader and a few similar to him (the majority, as I am sure, do not need it), I supplement my rule. You should always place your rook behind a pawn. Except for the cases when this is unfavorable!”

Diagram 9-97 has been intentionally omitted.



9-98

This is a very important type of position. The black king stands in front of connected passed pawns but the white rook is placed behind Black's passed pawn. In such cases, the chances of the defender are minimal. However, this position can be saved if Black is on move.

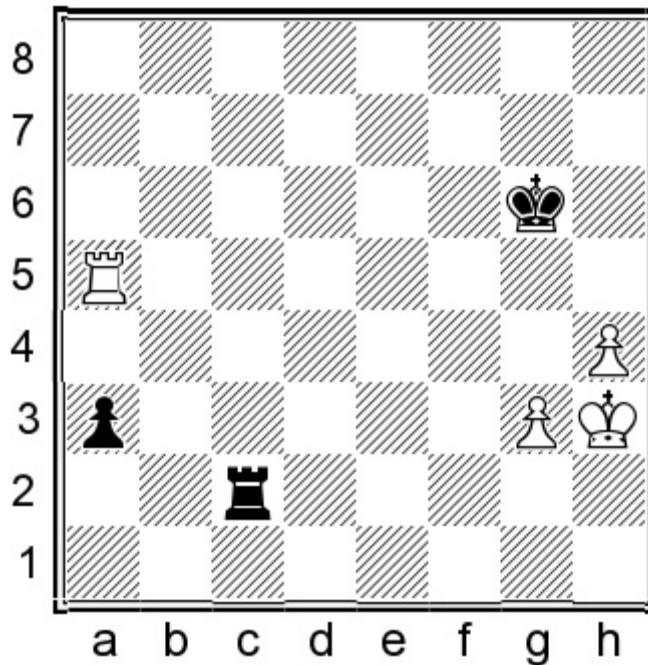
1...a2 2.h5 ♜h7 (but by no means 2...♜h6?? 3.♝a7! O+–) 3.♝g5 ♜g1! 4.♝a7+ ♜g8 5.♝xa2 ♜xg3+

The happy result stemmed from the fact that one of the pawns had been standing on the third rank. If White is on move, he succeeds in advancing the pawn and wins without difficulty: 1.♝g5 a2 2.g4 ♜f7 3.h5 ♜g7 4.♝a7+ ♜f8 5.h6 ♜g8 6.♝g6 – Black has no time for 6...♜g1 on account of the threatened mate.

If the pawn is on g2, White wins no matter who is on move. He simply advances his king and the h-pawn. The riposte ...♜g1 is useless because the white rook, capturing the a2-pawn, will protect the g2-pawn.

Finally, Black has no draw against the following White setup: pawns on h3-g4 and king on h4. After 1...a2 2.♝a6 ♜h7 3.g5 ♜g7 4.♝h5 ♜h1 5.♝a7+ ♜f8(g8) 6.♝xa2 ♜xh3+ 7.♝g6, a winning endgame with a g-pawn arises.

In some cases, the weaker side holds when his rook protects his pawn from the side.



9-99

\$

B?

The game continued 1... $\mathbb{Q}a2?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a6+ \mathbb{Q}f7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5 a2$ 5. $g4!$ (of course, not 5. $h5?? \mathbb{Q}g1=$), and Black soon resigned.

We would like to mention another, much more complicated winning method: 2. $g4 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a6+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $h5 a2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2!!$ Just so, in order to have, after 5... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $g5 \mathbb{Q}b1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7+ \mathbb{Q}g8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xa2 \mathbb{Q}b5$, the protective move 9. $\mathbb{Q}g2!+-$

As Maizelis proved, the diagrammed position is drawn (however against a more favorable setup of White's pawns, at h3 and g4, Black has no chances).

1...a2! 2.h5+

If the pawn stepped ahead without giving a check (e.g., with the black king on f6), the move 2... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ would have led to an immediate draw. Well, let us make use of this idea later, when the white pawns reach a higher rank.

2... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$ (3. $g4 \mathbb{Q}c5!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xa2 \mathbb{Q}g5=$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a6+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}b5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{Q}b2$ 8. $g4$ (9. $h6+$ is threatened) 8... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a4$

9. $h6 \mathbb{Q}b6!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a7+ \mathbb{Q}g6=$ is nonsensical.

9... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$

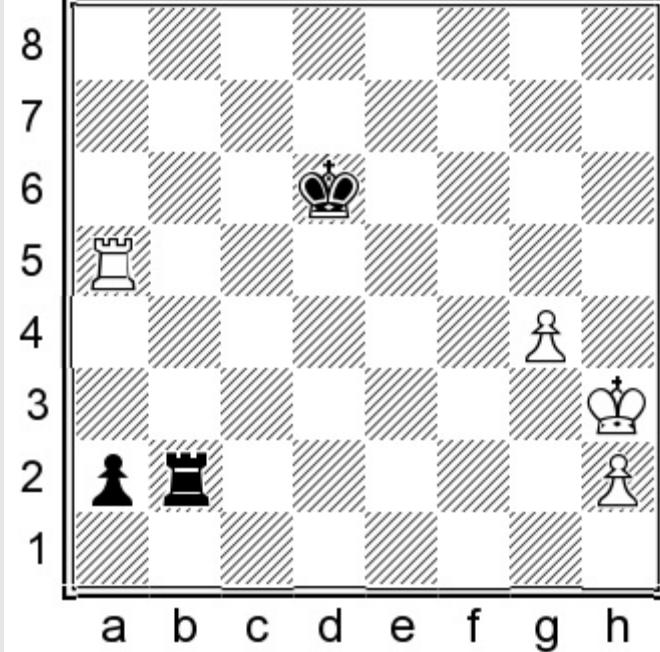
Rather than 9... $\mathbb{Q}c2?$ 10. $h6 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a6+ \mathbb{Q}h7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h5+-$

10. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{Q}f7!$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 11. $g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 12. $h6 \mathbb{Q}h2+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}h1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xa2 \mathbb{Q}xg5=$

Sometimes the weaker side employs another, more active defensive method: the king is advanced to support the passed pawn. As a consequence, this pawn will cost a whole rook for the stronger side, but in the meantime his own pawns, together with the king, will be advanced too far, and the endgame “two connected passed pawn against a rook” turns out to be winning.

Therefore this tactic has practical chances only against less advanced pawns and misplaced pieces of the stronger side. As, for example, in the following case:

Reshevsky – Alekhine
AVRO 1938



9-100
B?

It would have been an easy draw for Black with the white rook on a1: 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$. In our case, however, a passive defense is hopeless: 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$? 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3.h3 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (or 3... $\mathbb{R}c2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{R}h2$ 5. $\mathbb{R}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{R}xh3$ 7. $\mathbb{R}xa2$ $\mathbb{R}h8$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{R}h2$ 5. $\mathbb{R}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6.g5 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ followed by h4, $\mathbb{Q}h5$ etc.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$

If 2.g5, then 2... $\mathbb{R}b5!$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. $\mathbb{R}xa2$ $\mathbb{R}xg5$ 5. $\mathbb{R}c2$ $\mathbb{R}g8=$ The evaluation of the final position of this line is not quite obvious because we have not studied defense by frontal attack against a rook pawn. I think it is pertinent to say here that, with an h2-pawn, White has winning chances only when the black king is cut off on the a-file.

2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 4.h3

After 4.g5, both 4... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ ($\Delta \mathbb{R}b3+$) and the immediate 4... $\mathbb{R}b3+$ are good.

4... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$

The consequences of 5.♔h4 are harder to calculate, but its result is still a draw: 5...♝b3 6.g5 (6.♔g5 ♜b1 7.h4 a1=♛ 8.♜xa1 ♜xa1 9.h5 ♔c4 10.h6 ♔d5 11.♔g6 ♔e5=) 6...♜b1 7.♔h5 a1=♛ 8.♜xa1 ♜xa1 9.g6 ♔c4 10.g7 ♜g1 11.♔h6 ♔d5 12.♔h7 ♔e6 13.g8=♛ ♜xg8 14.♔xg8 ♔f5=

5...♝c2!

As is presumed in endgames with a far advanced passed pawn, Black speculates on the threat of interference, namely 6...♝c4+ 7...♝c5(c3)+ and 8...♝a5(a3).

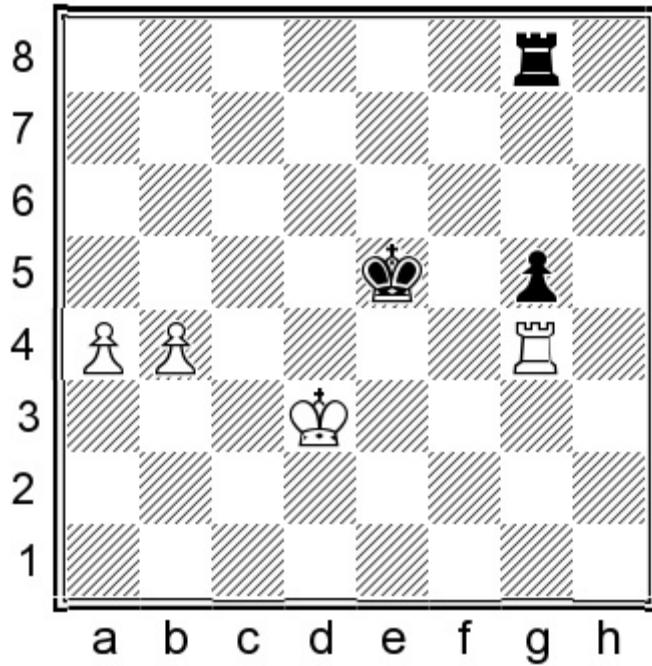
6.♜b8+ ♔c3 7.♜a8 ♔b4! Draw.

Of course, there is no reason for Black to play 7...♝b2, but he seems not to be losing even after that move: 8.h4 a1=♛ 9.♜xa1 ♜xa1 10.h5 ♜h2 11.♔g5 ♔b2 12.♔h6 ♔c3 13.g5 ♔d4 14.g6 ♔e5 15.g7 ♜g2 16.♔h7 ♔f6=

Tragicomедies

Dreev – Ehłvest

USSR chsf, Tallinn 1986



9-101

B?

As we know, when the white rook is passive, the black king should be placed on the queenside. However, after 1...♔d5? 2.a5 Δ ♔c3-b3-a4, Black is lost. At the proper moment, the rook abandons the blockade square g4 in order to create threats to the king. Vulfson analyzed a similar endgame in detail in the book by Dvoretsky and Yusupov, *Technique for the Tournament Player*.

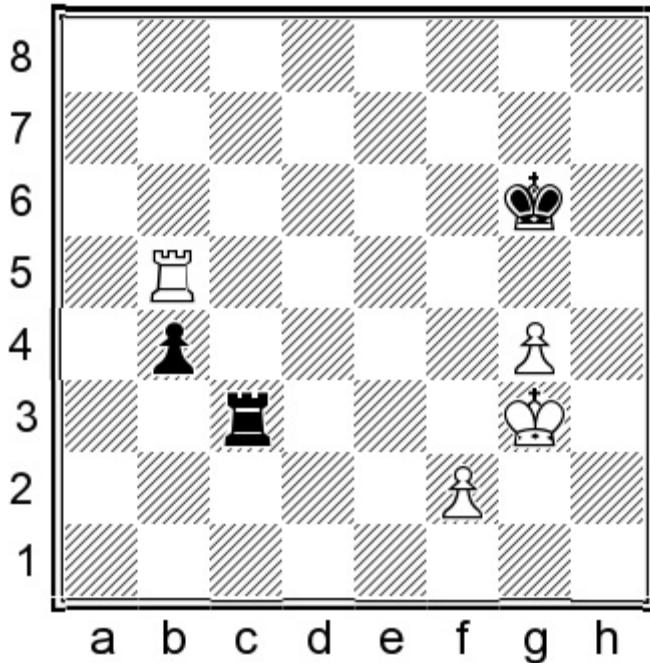
It is important to push the g-pawn at least a single step forward in order to reduce the active possibilities of the white rook.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g1$ g4 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ g3?

But now the king fails to come back to the queenside in time. Black had to play 3... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 4. $\mathbb{R}g3$ (on 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$, he could resort to frontal checks: 4... $\mathbb{R}c8+!?$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5.b5 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 6.a5 $\mathbb{Q}b7=$

4. $\mathbb{Q}d5!+-$ (shouldering!) 4... $\mathbb{R}d8+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{R}c8+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{R}g8$ 7.a5 $\mathbb{R}g7+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9.a6 $\mathbb{R}g6+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ Black resigned.

Ostermeyer – Dueball
BRD ch, Mannheim 1975



9-102

W

1. $\mathbb{Q}g2?$

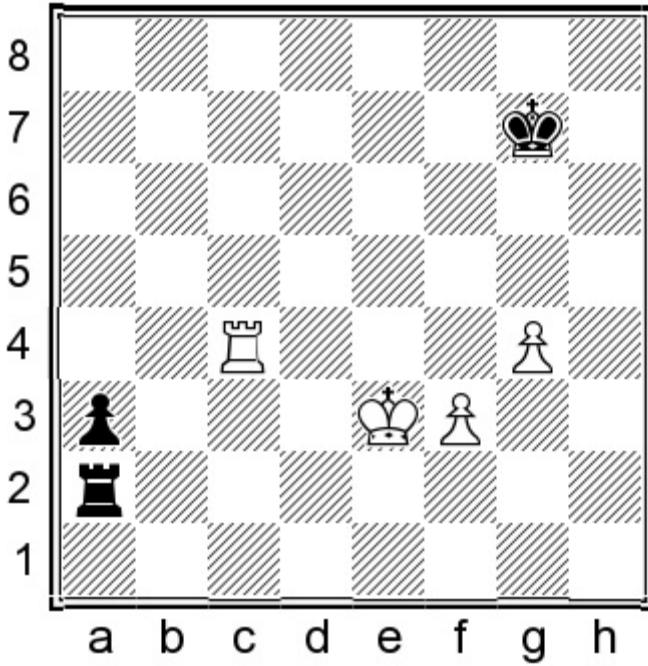
An odd move: in endgames, the king should go forward, not backward. 1.f3 suggested itself, for example, 1...b3 (1... $\mathbb{R}c4$ 2.f4 or 2. $\mathbb{R}b6+$ Δ 3.f4) 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (Δ $\mathbb{R}b6+$) 2... $\mathbb{R}c4+$ (side checks are not efficient because the rook and the f3-pawn are only separated by two files) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}c3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (4... $\mathbb{R}c4+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{R}f4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$) 5.f4 $\mathbb{R}c4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}c3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{R}g3$ 8. $\mathbb{R}b6+$ and 9.g5+– White is playing in accordance with a principle that, in Nimzovitch's opinion, is a cornerstone of correct endgame strategy: ***the collective advance!***

1. $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ b3 2.f4??

A severe positional error: the king will be cut off from the pawns forever. It was still not too late for 2.f3! Δ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3+–$

2... $\mathbb{Q}f6=$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4.g5 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5.f5 $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ Draw. After 7... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8.f6+ Black can play either 8... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ or 8... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$.

Exercises



9-103

9/15

B?

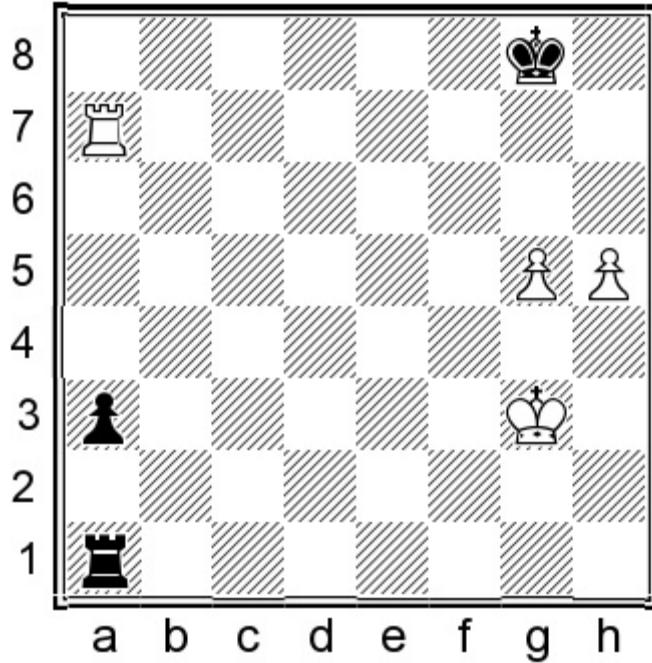
Show/Hide Solution

9/15. G.Levenfish, V.Smyslov 1957

This position resembles the ending Tarrasch-Chigorin, but the solution is completely different.

Black holds with 1... $\mathbb{Q}a1!$ (Δ 2...a2) because White cannot remove the f-pawn from the third rank in time, for example, 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ a2 3. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (or 3... $\mathbb{Q}f7$, but not 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a7! \mathbb{O}$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}g6(e6)$ 5.g5 \ominus -- Pogosyan) 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5.g5+ $\mathbb{Q}g6=$ and White is in zugzwang) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5.g5 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8=$

The attempt 1... $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ loses after 2. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ a2 3. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ (rather than 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4??$ $\mathbb{Q}b4+$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4.f4 or 4.g5 etc.



9-104

9/16

W?

Show/Hide Solution

9/16. Bernstein-Zuckerman, Paris 1929

The main question is which pawn should be advanced first?

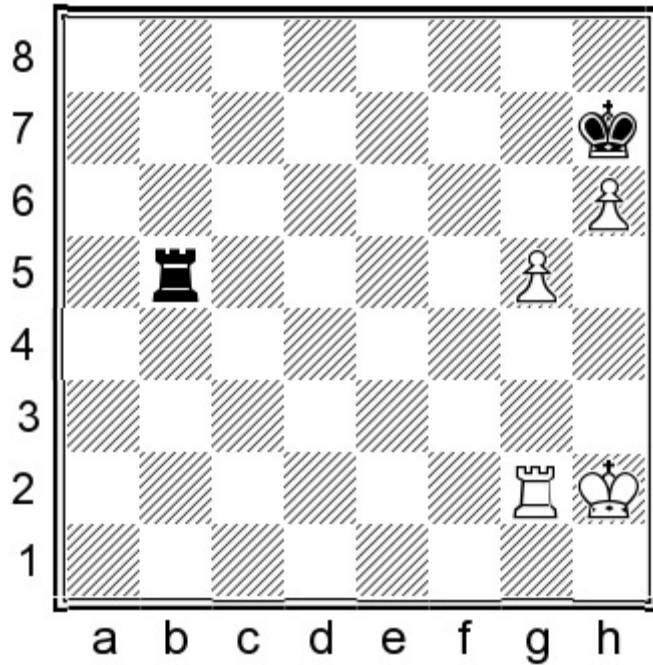
1.h6!

Bernstein played 1.g6? a2 2.♔g2 ♜b1! 3.♕xa2 ♜b5 4.♕a8+ ♔g7 5.♕a7+ ♔g8 6.♕h7, and now 6...♜b3! could have led to a draw à la Kasparian (see diagram 9-56). Instead of this, Black played 6...♜g5+?? and lost.

1.h6! a2

Both 1...♝f8 2.♕a8+ ♚f7 3.h7 and 1...♚h8 2.♔g2 ♜a2+ 3.♔f3 ♜a1 4.g6 are quite bad.

2.♔h2! (2.♔g2? ♜b1 3.♕xa2 ♜b5=) 2...♜b1 3.♕xa2 ♜b5 4.♕g2 ♔h7



16-83

W?

5.g6+!

But surely not 5.♔h3? ♔g6, arriving at the Kling and Horwitz drawn position.

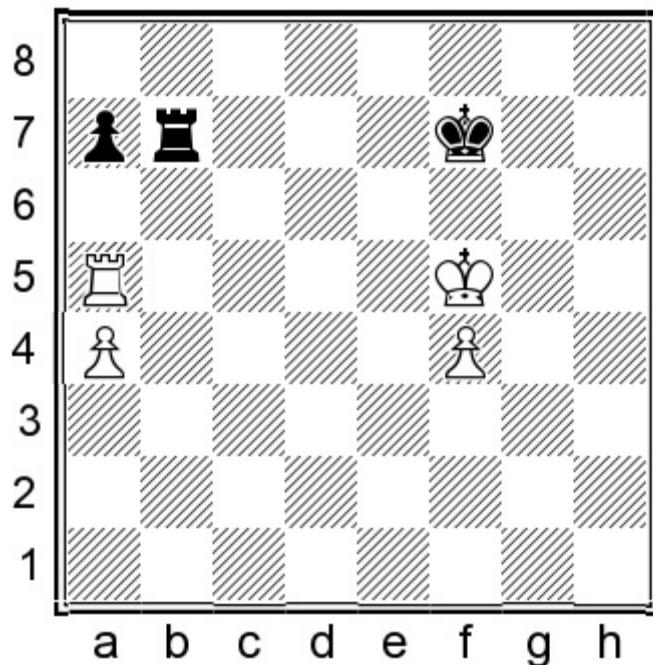
5...♔g8 6.♕g3! ♕a5 7.♕b3 ♕h5+ 8.♕h3 ♕g5 9.h7+ (9.g7 ♔h7 10.♕g3 is equivalent) 9...♔h8 10.♕g3 ♕h5+ 11.♔g2 ♔g7 12.♕h3 ♕g5+ 13.♔f3 ♕f5+ 14.♔g4 ♕f8 15.♔g5+-

Disconnected Pawns, One of Them is Passed

If one or two files separate pawns of the stronger side, the position is most often a draw. We shall analyze cases of more interest and practical value here, when the distance between pawns is great enough.

The defender must aspire for active counterplay. If his rook must merely defend his own pawn or protect the king from checks, his salvation is very problematic.

Miles – Webb
Birmingham 1975



9-105

W

1. $\mathbb{R}a6 \mathbb{R}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $f5 \mathbb{R}d7$ 4. $a5 \mathbb{R}c7$ 5. $\mathbb{R}d6!$

White has improved his position to the maximum degree. Now he has in mind a typical plan for this sort of position, a usurpation of the seventh rank (a5-a6 and $\mathbb{R}d6-d8-b8-b7$).

5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{R}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{R}h8 \mathbb{Q}d6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{R}c1$ 9. $\mathbb{R}a8$

A wise technique: White combines the threat of advancing the f-pawn with an attack against the a-

pawn.

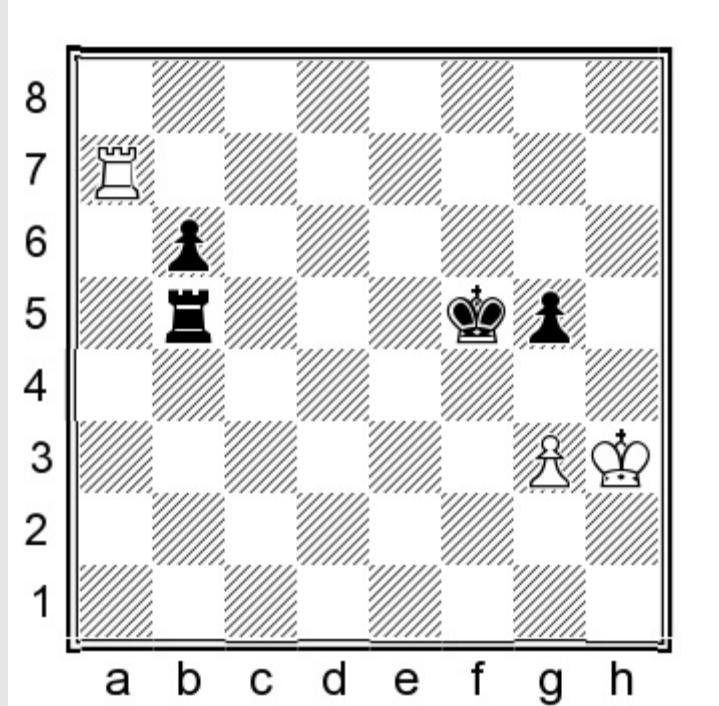
9... $\hat{Q}e5$ 10. $\hat{R}e8+$ $\hat{Q}f4$ (10... $\hat{Q}d6$ 11. $\hat{R}e6+$ $\hat{Q}d7$ 12. $\hat{R}a6+-$) 11. $f6$ $\hat{R}g1+$ 12. $\hat{Q}f7$ $\hat{R}a1$ 13. $\hat{Q}g7$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 14. $f7$ $\hat{R}g1+$ 15. $\hat{Q}f8$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 16. $\hat{R}e6+$ Black resigned.

I would like to draw your attention to the fact that if the queenside pawns were placed not on the same file, but on adjacent files (for example, the white pawn on the b-file), the black rook would have been less passive. It could then combine its defensive mission with a counterattacking one, and the drawing chances would have been considerably greater.

A typical method of bringing home a material advantage is the protection of all of one's pawns by the rook from the side.

Tsouros – Minev

Greece – Bulgaria m tt 1973



9-106

B

1... $\hat{R}d5!+-$

Black wants to play ...b6-b5; thereafter the king, being released from its troubles with the g5-pawn, will set off for the queenside. White is helpless against this simple plan. Other setups are much less efficient.

2. $\hat{R}f7+$ (2. $\hat{R}e7$ b5 3. $\hat{R}e8$ $\hat{R}e5$) 2... $\hat{Q}e4$ 3. $\hat{R}b7$ b5 4. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}d4$ 5. $\hat{Q}f3$

5. $\hat{Q}h5$ $\hat{Q}c4$ 6.g4 b4 7. $\hat{R}c7+$ $\hat{R}c5$ is equally hopeless.

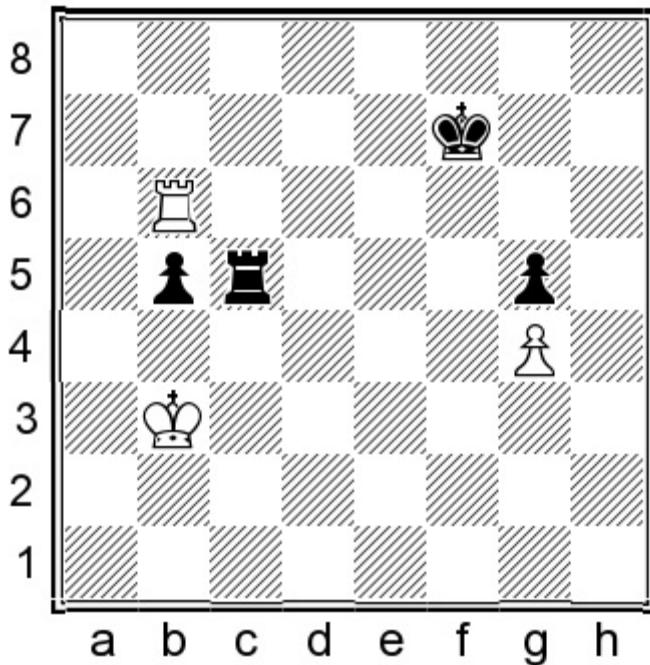
5... $\hat{Q}c4$ 6. $\hat{Q}e4$ $\hat{R}c5$ 7. $\hat{R}d7$ b4 8. $\hat{R}d1$ b3 9. $\hat{R}b1$ $\hat{Q}c3$ 10. $\hat{R}c1+$ $\hat{Q}b4$ 11. $\hat{R}b1$ $\hat{R}c4+$ 12. $\hat{Q}f5$ g4 13. $\hat{Q}g5$

$\text{†c}3$ White resigned.

If the rook protects pawns from the side and the enemy king blocks the passed pawn, then the pieces of the stronger side attack the opponent's pawn on the other wing, while the passed pawn, if necessary, can be sacrificed.

An interesting example of this strategy follows in the next diagram. Studying it, we should refresh our memories about the theory of rook and pawn versus rook endgames, particularly the case of frontal attack.

Rigan – Yandemirov
Budapest 1993



9-107

B?

According to the above-mentioned rule, Black must attack the g4-pawn. But how is he to do this? His king is cut off along the sixth rank, while 1... $\text{‡c}4?$ will be met by 2. $\text{‡xb}5 \text{‡xg}4$ 3. $\text{‡c}3 \text{‡g}6$ 4. $\text{‡d}3 \text{‡f}4$ 5. $\text{‡b}1$ (5. $\text{‡e}3=$) 5...g4 (5... $\text{‡h}5$ 6. $\text{‡e}3=$) 6. $\text{‡e}3!$ (rather than 6. $\text{‡e}2?$ $\text{‡g}5$ 7. $\text{‡f}1$ g3!) 6... $\text{‡f}5$ 7. $\text{‡e}2!$ Δ $\text{‡f}1=$

1... $\text{‡g}7!!$

A superb waiting move that puts White in zugzwang. His rook is placed optimally and cannot abandon its post. If 2. $\text{‡b}2 \text{‡c}4$ 3. $\text{‡xb}5 \text{‡f}6!$ (the only method of crossing the sixth rank with the king) 5. $\text{‡d}5 \text{‡h}6$ 6. $\text{‡b}1 \text{‡g}6$ 7. $\text{‡e}4 \text{‡h}3!$, the king is cut off along the rank, and this fact is decisive.

2. $\text{‡b}2 \text{‡c}4$ 3. $\text{‡xb}5 \text{‡f}6!$

This is why the white king had to be pushed back! The rook is not hanging now, and Black manages to improve his king's position without letting White do the same. If 4. $\mathbb{R}f5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{R}f1$, then 5... $\mathbb{R}xg4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{R}g2!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$

4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{R}xg4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{R}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{R}e8$

In a very similar position from the game Tal-I.Zaitsev (diagram 9-34), 6... $\mathbb{R}e1!$? 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{R}e8$ was played, but in our current case Black can even do without it.

7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

7. $\mathbb{R}b1$ is met by 7... $\mathbb{g}4!$ 8. $\mathbb{R}b5$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5!$) 9. $\mathbb{R}e1$ $\mathbb{R}xe1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$) 8... $\mathbb{g}3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{R}e4!$ 10. $\mathbb{R}b3$ $\mathbb{R}g4$ 11. $\mathbb{R}b1$ $\mathbb{g}2$ 12. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3-$ +

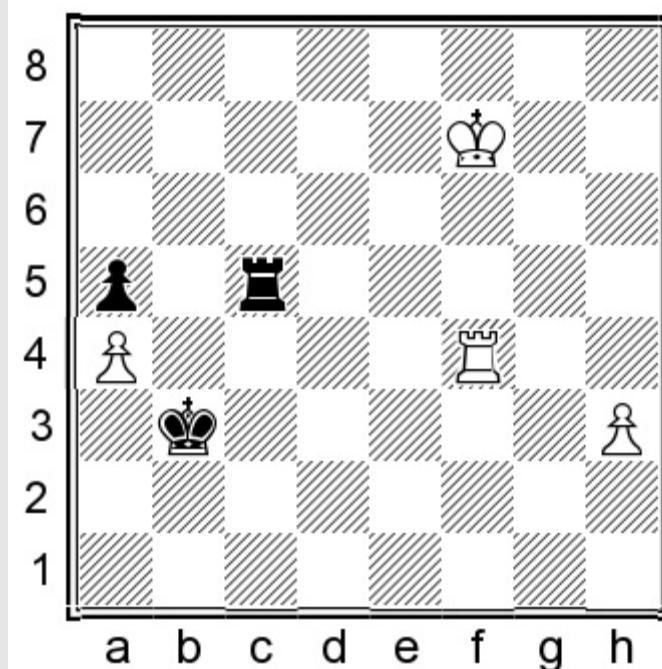
7... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (7... $\mathbb{g}4$ is also good) 8. $\mathbb{R}b1$ $\mathbb{R}e5!$ (8... $\mathbb{g}4??$ 9. $\mathbb{R}e1=$) 9. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}f5!?$) White resigned.

As was said earlier, only an active defense gives the weaker side chances of salvation. We would like to emphasize two of the most important defensive methods:

(1) The king's attack against a pawn. Sometimes one succeeds in giving the rook up for a pawn, eating another pawn with the king and saving the game with a pawn against a rook.

(2) Exchange of rooks. If the eventual pawn endgame is drawn, the weaker side drives away the hostile rook, from the rank where it is protecting both pawns by means of the exchange threat. These methods are often combined.

Marshall-Capablanca
New York (m/9) 1909



9-108
B?

1... $\mathbb{E}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{E}b7$ 3.h4 $\mathbb{E}b4!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$

After 4. $\mathbb{E}xb4+$ axb4! 5.a5 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 6.a6 b3 7.a7 b2 8.a8= \mathbb{W} b1= \mathbb{W} + a drawn queen-and-pawn endgame arises.

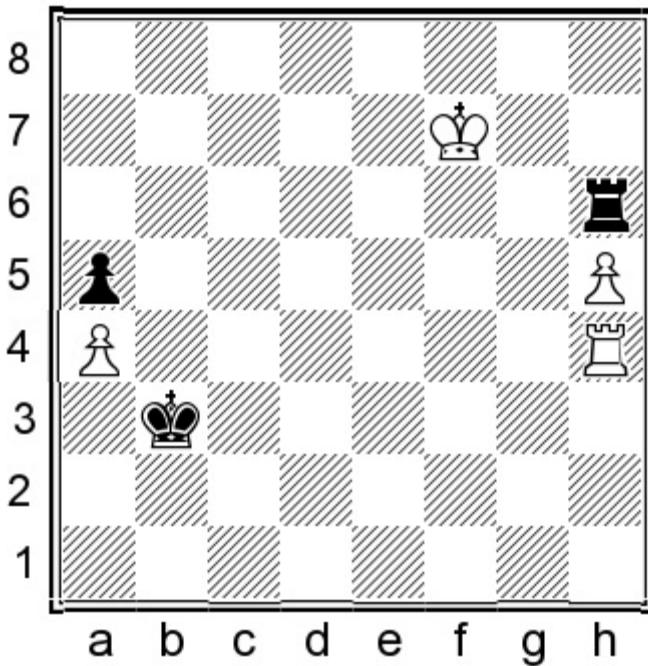
4... $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 5.h5 $\mathbb{Q}a3!$

But, of course, not 5... $\mathbb{Q}b5(b3)??$ 6. $\mathbb{E}xb4+$ axb4 7.h6=–

6.h6 $\mathbb{E}b8$ 7.h7 a4 8. $\mathbb{E}h4$ $\mathbb{E}h8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{E}xh7+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ a3 Draw.

Had Frank Marshall been able to divine his opponent's intent, he could have neutralized it by playing 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6(e6)!$ 2... $\mathbb{E}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ Here Black is in a bad way, as the exchange of rooks does not work: 3... $\mathbb{E}b4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xb4+$ axb4 5.a5 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6.a6 b3 7.a7 b2 8.a8= \mathbb{W} b1= \mathbb{W} 9. $\mathbb{W}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 10. $\mathbb{W}c6+)$ 10. $\mathbb{W}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 11. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ and the queens come off.

The plan of transferring the rook to b4 is nevertheless correct. However, as Igor Zaitsev has noted, it has to be implemented somewhat differently. 1... $\mathbb{E}c6!!$ leads to the draw (preventing the white king from advancing to the center) 2.h4 $\mathbb{E}b6$ (threatening 3... $\mathbb{E}b4=$) 3.h5 $\mathbb{E}h6!$ 4. $\mathbb{E}h4$



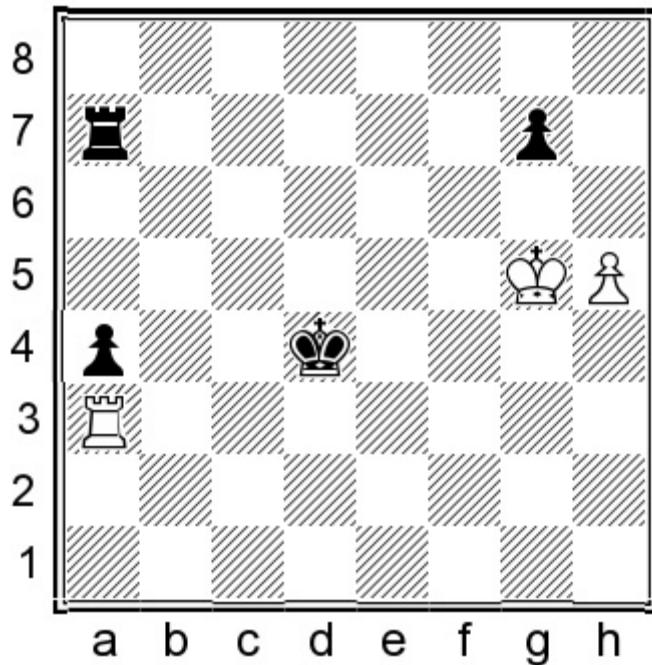
9-109

B?

4... $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{E}xh5$ (the rook sacrifice did not work a move earlier; Black had to wait until the king was on g7) 6. $\mathbb{E}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4=$

The following example, as well as the exercises in this section, show how difficult precise calculation can be in this sort of position.

Taimanov – Averbakh



9-110

B

Deliberating over the natural continuation $1... \mathbb{Q}c4!$ over the board, Black decided that he could get no more than a draw on account of $2. \mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}b4 3. \mathbb{Q}g3 a3 4. \mathbb{Q}g2 a2 5. \mathbb{Q}xa2 \mathbb{Q}xa2 6. \mathbb{Q}xg7=$

Later on, Averbakh found an improvement: $4... \mathbb{Q}c7!$ (instead of $4... a2?$) $5. \mathbb{Q}h7 (5. \mathbb{Q}g4+ \mathbb{Q}b3 6. \mathbb{Q}g3+ \mathbb{Q}b2) 5... \mathbb{Q}c5! 6. \mathbb{Q}g6 (6. \mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}g5 7. \mathbb{Q}h4+ \mathbb{Q}b5) 6... \mathbb{Q}b3 7. \mathbb{Q}g3+ \mathbb{Q}b2 8. \mathbb{Q}g2+ \mathbb{Q}c2$ (this is why the zwischenzug $5... \mathbb{Q}c5!$ was necessary – the king prevents a rook capture on g7) $9. \mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}h2!$ (from here, the rook defends the g7-pawn indirectly and, at the same time, protects the king from checks along files and ranks) $10. \mathbb{Q}g5 a2 11. \mathbb{Q}b5+ \mathbb{Q}c1 12. \mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{Q}g2+ 13. \mathbb{Q}h7 \mathbb{Q}b1 14. \mathbb{Q}b5+ \mathbb{Q}b2 15. \mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{Q}b7+$

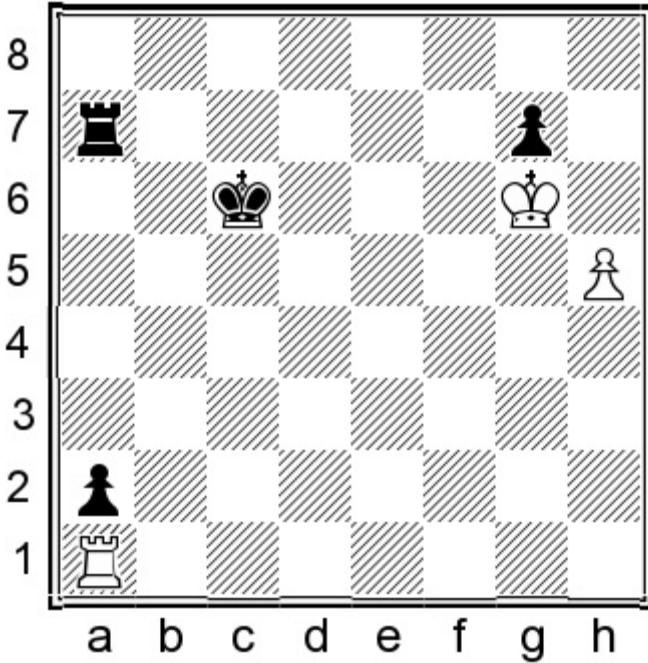
The move $4. \mathbb{Q}g2$ is not forced, but $4. \mathbb{Q}g1 a2 5. \mathbb{Q}a1 \mathbb{Q}b3 6. \mathbb{Q}g1$ is even worse. Curiously enough, Minev, in the *Encyclopedia of Chess Endings*, annotating a similar endgame from Marshall-Duras, San Sebastian 1912, evaluated this position as drawn, although $6... \mathbb{Q}c7!$ is quite a simple win.

The rook is a long-range piece that is capable of driving the enemy king with checks far away from the decisive area.

Therefore let us consider $4. \mathbb{Q}g4+!?$

The line $4... \mathbb{Q}c3 5. \mathbb{Q}g3+ \mathbb{Q}d4? 6. \mathbb{Q}xa3! \mathbb{Q}xa3 7. \mathbb{Q}xg7 \mathbb{Q}e5 (7... \mathbb{Q}g3+ 8. \mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}h3 9. \mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{Q}e5 10. h6 \mathbb{Q}e6 11. \mathbb{Q}g7!=) 8. h6 \mathbb{Q}f5 (8... \mathbb{Q}a7+ 9. \mathbb{Q}g6!) 9. h7 \mathbb{Q}a7+ 10. \mathbb{Q}h6!=$ leads to an immediate draw.

If $4... \mathbb{Q}b5$, then $5. \mathbb{Q}g5+! (5. \mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}c7!) 5... \mathbb{Q}c6 6. \mathbb{Q}g1 a2 7. \mathbb{Q}a1$



9-111

B?

What can Black undertake? On 7... $\mathbb{Q}c5$, both 8. $\mathbb{R}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{R}c7!$ and 8. $\mathbb{R}xa2$ $\mathbb{R}xa2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+!$ (a familiar tool: zwischenschach for gaining a tempo) 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (after 10. $\mathbb{Q}h7$, White will also be too late) 10... $\mathbb{R}h2!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12.h6 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13.h7 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ are bad. Summing up: a rook sacrifice for the a-pawn holds when the black king is on d4, c4, or b5, but not on c5 or c6.

Let us try the waiting move 8. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ Now 8... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 9. $\mathbb{R}xa2!=$ is useless; 8... $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 11.h7 $\mathbb{R}xh7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ is not dangerous for White either, because the black pawns are too far away from each other (look at diagram 8-32 again).

8... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ is the strongest. After 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$, Black does not play 9... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 10. $\mathbb{R}e1+!$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}h7?$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 11. $\mathbb{R}a1!$ Δ 12. $\mathbb{R}xa2$ (the king is too late approaching the pawn). Instead, he has 9... $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ This position could have been reached two moves earlier, if Black had played 7... $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ (instead of 7... $\mathbb{Q}c5$).

At first I did not see any danger for White here either: 10. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ (10. $\mathbb{R}d1+?$ is bad because of 10... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 11. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ followed by ... $\mathbb{R}a6+$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$. However, grandmaster Müller finally discovered a winning continuation. Black suddenly sacrifices his g-pawn: 11... $\mathbb{R}a6+!!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (13.h6 $\mathbb{R}a7+$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ and, as can easily be seen, his king comes to the queenside in time.

1... $\mathbb{R}a6+?$ (The attempt to cut the king off from the g7-pawn does not work, although it does not spoil anything either). **2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 3. $\mathbb{R}g3!$**

This is the point! The line 3...a3 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ a2 5. $\mathbb{R}g1$ leads only to a draw.

3... $\mathbb{R}f6+$

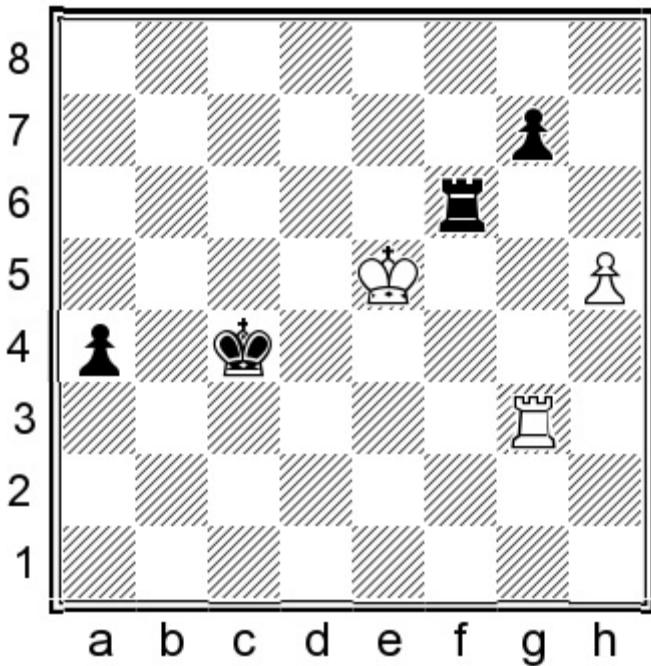
Black should have played 3... $\mathbb{R}a7!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ (rather than 4...a3? 5. $\mathbb{R}xa3$) 5. $\mathbb{R}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}b5$

6. $\mathbb{E}g3!$) 6. $\mathbb{E}g5+$ (6. $\mathbb{E}xa4$ $\mathbb{E}xa4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{E}g4+!$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (d6), transposing into situations that are already familiar to us. For example, 7. $\mathbb{E}g2$ (7. $\mathbb{E}g1$ a3) 7... a3 8. $\mathbb{E}a2$ (8. $\mathbb{E}c2+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 9. $\mathbb{E}g2$ $\mathbb{E}c7!$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 9. $\mathbb{E}a1$ a2 10. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6!$, etc. “à la Müller.”

4. $\mathbb{Q}e5?$

In spite of Averbakh’s opinion, 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ does not draw. Black should simply return with his rook to a6 (see the previous annotation).

Averbakh’s line, 4... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3?!$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ 6. $\mathbb{E}g3$ a6 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ a7 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{E}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!-$ +) 6. $\mathbb{E}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c2?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2+?$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$ $\mathbb{E}f7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ a7 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ a3 11. $\mathbb{E}xg7=$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 8. $\mathbb{E}g3$ a6? (8... $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ 9. $\mathbb{E}g2+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 10. $\mathbb{E}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 11. $\mathbb{E}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5-$ +) 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ a7, actually leads to a draw: 10. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$, and now 11. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ a3 12. $\mathbb{E}xg7=$ rather than 11. $\mathbb{Q}g2+?$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$, etc.



9-112

B

4... $\mathbb{E}h6??$

As is known, the one who wins errs next to last (White’s decisive error is still to come). Black should have played 4... $\mathbb{E}f7!$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 6. $\mathbb{E}g3$ a7 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ a3 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ a2 9. $\mathbb{E}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ etc.

5. $\mathbb{E}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 7. $\mathbb{E}g2+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{E}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 9. $\mathbb{E}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 10. $\mathbb{E}xg7??$

The elementary 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ led to an immediate draw. The capture is much weaker because Black maintains the possibility of interference with his rook along the sixth rank.

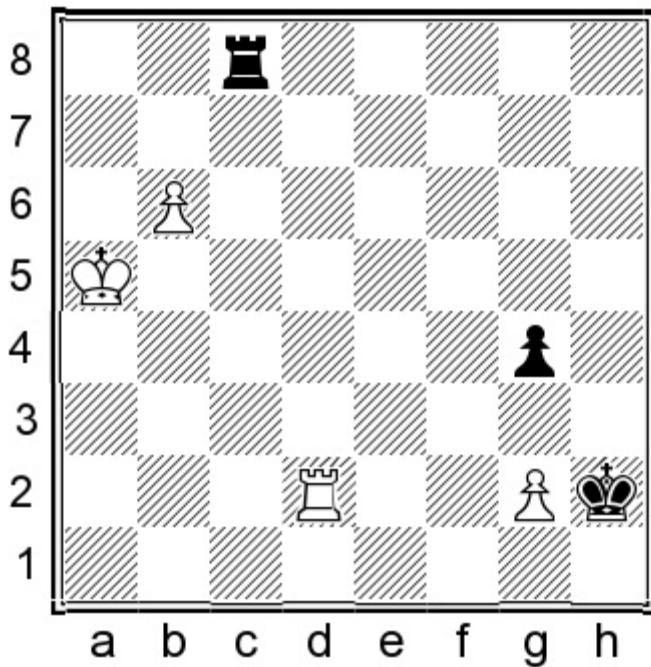
10...a3! 11. $\mathbb{E}a7$ (11. $\mathbb{E}g1$ $\mathbb{E}xh5+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 13. $\mathbb{E}b1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ a2 15. $\mathbb{E}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}a3-$ +) 11... $\mathbb{E}a6$ 12. $\mathbb{E}b7+$

12. $\mathbb{E}g7$ a2 13. $\mathbb{E}g1$ did not help: 13... $\mathbb{E}h6!$ 14. $\mathbb{E}a1$ (14. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$) 14... $\mathbb{E}xh5+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}h2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}a4-$ +

12... $\hat{Q}a4$ 13. $\hat{Q}g7$ $\hat{Q}a5+$ 14. $\hat{Q}f6$ a2 15. $\hat{Q}g4+$ $\hat{Q}b3$ (15... $\hat{Q}b5??$ 16. $\hat{Q}g1=$) 16. $\hat{Q}g3+$ $\hat{Q}c4!$ 17. $\hat{Q}g4+$ $\hat{Q}d3$ 18. $\hat{Q}g3+$ $\hat{Q}e4$ 19. $\hat{Q}g4+$ $\hat{Q}e3$ (19... $\hat{Q}f3$) 20. $\hat{Q}g1$ $\hat{Q}xh5$ 21. $\hat{Q}g3+$ $\hat{Q}d4$ 22. $\hat{Q}a3$ $\hat{Q}h2$ 23. $\hat{Q}f5$ $\hat{Q}f2+$ 24. $\hat{Q}g4$ $\hat{Q}c4$, and White resigned soon.

Exercises

In both cases, your task is to find whether Black can achieve a draw.



9-113

9/17

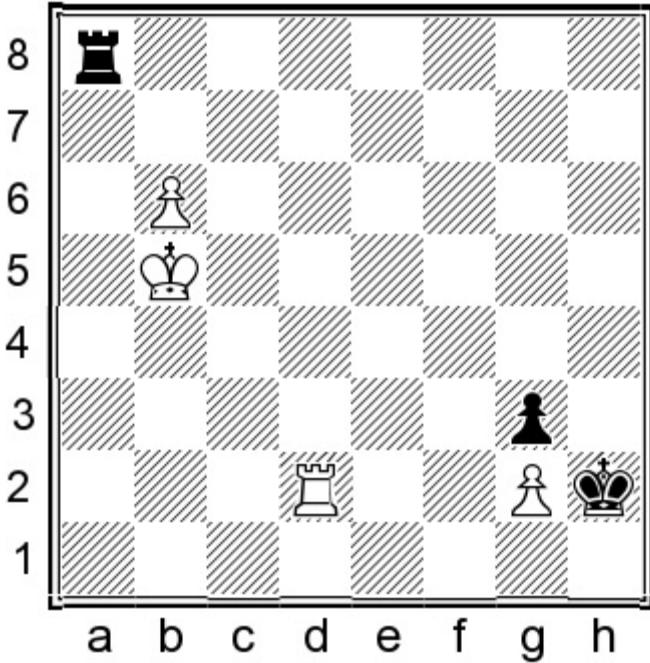
B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/17. Mednis-Djukic, Nis 1977

1... $\hat{Q}a8+!$ (an important zwischenschach that entices the white king to reach the b-file; 1... $g3?!$ 2. $b7$ $\hat{Q}f8$ 3. $\hat{Q}b2!$ and $\hat{Q}a6-a7$ is bad for Black)

1... $\hat{Q}a8+!$ 2. $\hat{Q}b5$ g3



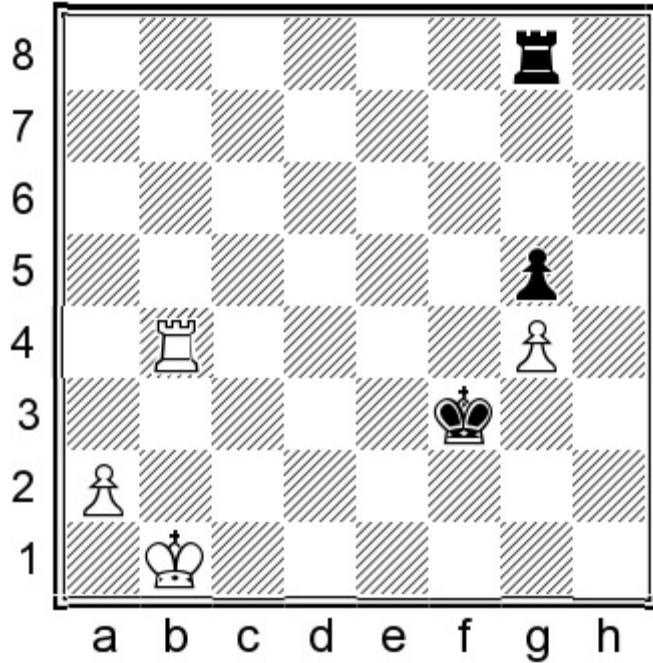
16-84

W

As grandmaster Pal Benko demonstrated, White could win after 3. $\mathbb{E}b2 \mathbb{E}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ $\mathbb{E}f2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{E}f7$ 6. $b7 \mathbb{E}xb7$ 7. $\mathbb{E}xb7 \mathbb{Q}xg2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 9. $\mathbb{E}f7+$ and the king cannot go to e1). Black can try 5... $\mathbb{E}f8!?$ (instead of 5... $\mathbb{E}f7$) 6. $b7 \mathbb{E}b8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}g1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}h2$ (8... $\mathbb{E}xb7$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xb7 \mathbb{Q}xg2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{E}f8!$, hoping for 10. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{E}f7+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6?$ (11. $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ $\mathbb{E}xb7=$) 11... $\mathbb{E}f2!=$ However, after 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$, he is in zugzwang, for example, 10... $\mathbb{Q}g1$ (10... $\mathbb{E}g8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{E}g7+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}g8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a7+-$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{E}f7+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}f2$ 13. $\mathbb{E}b1+$ (or 13. $\mathbb{E}b3$), winning.

Mednis chose 3. $b7$, which also wins, but after 3... $\mathbb{E}f8$ he erred with 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2?$ (if 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6?$, the same reply follows) 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2?$ $\mathbb{E}f2!$ Amusingly, the standard exchange offer saves Black even in such an apparently hopeless situation. After 5. $b8=\mathbb{W}$ $\mathbb{E}xc2$ 6. $\mathbb{W}a8$, the simplest is 6... $\mathbb{E}xg2=$. A waiting tactic is also possible: 6... $\mathbb{E}f2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}g1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}h2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}g1$ 10. $\mathbb{W}d5 \mathbb{Q}h1=$ (rather than 10... $\mathbb{Q}h2?$ in view of the zugzwang after 11. $\mathbb{W}f3!$). 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{E}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{E}f2$ 7. $b8=\mathbb{W}$ $\mathbb{E}b2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{E}xb8$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xb8 \mathbb{Q}xg2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}f2$ 11. $\mathbb{E}f8+ \mathbb{Q}e1!$ Draw.

Grandmaster Karsten Müller has proven that even after 3. $b7 \mathbb{E}f8$ White still can win: instead of 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2?$ he should play 4. $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ $\mathbb{E}f2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{E}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}xg2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{E}f6+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{E}f5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{E}f4+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{E}f3+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{E}b3$ 12. $b8=\mathbb{W}+-$



9-114

9/18

B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/18. Yusupov-Malaniuk, USSR ch, Moscow 1983

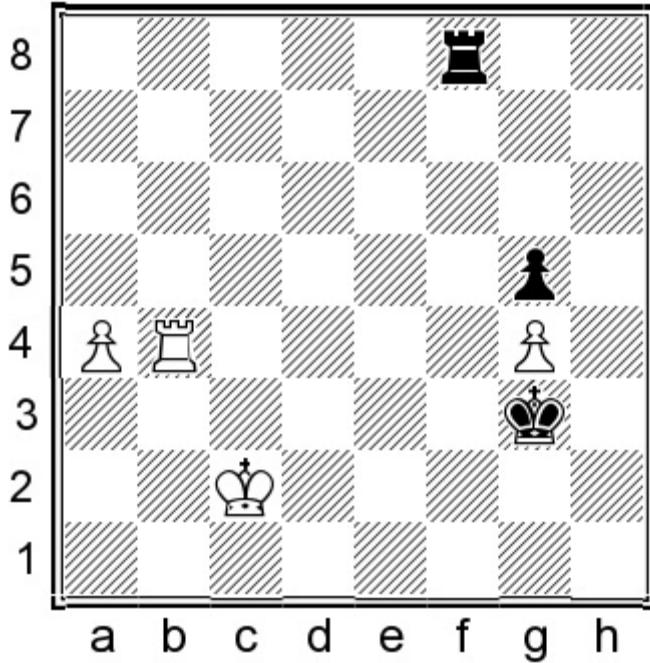
1...♝f8! (Δ ♜f4) 2.♔c2!

Yusupov ably prevents Black's plans. If 2...♝f4? then 3.♜xf4 gxf4 4.g5 ♔e2 (4...♔e3 5.♔d1!) 5.g6 f3 6.g7 f2 7.g8=♛ f1=♛ 8.♛c4+ is decisive.

2...♔g3!

The king clears the way for the future of the upcoming passed f-pawn.

3.a4



16-85

B?

The game continued 3... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $gxf4$ 5. $g5$ $f3$ 6. $g6$ $f2$ 7. $g7$ $f1=\mathbb{W}$ 8. $g8=\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 9. $\mathbb{W}d8+!$ Black resigned because he could not prevent a queen exchange: 9... $\mathbb{Q}g4(h5)$ 10. $\mathbb{W}d1+$ or 9... $\mathbb{Q}g3(h3)$ 10. $\mathbb{W}d3+.$ As can be easily seen, after 8... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ or 8... $\mathbb{Q}h3,$ the white queen gives a pair of checks and enters the d-file with a forced exchange to follow.

After the game, Malaniuk expressed the opinion that a frontal attack could have saved him: 3... $\mathbb{Q}a8!?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 12. $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (13. $\mathbb{Q}a7?$ $\mathbb{Q}b1=)$ 13... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4.$ Of course, this would not work: in the final position, both 16. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and 16. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $g4$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $g3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ win for White.

Black's play can be improved in this line if he abandons his frontal attack in a timely fashion, for the basic plan in such positions, repositioning the rook to f4, 10... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ (instead of 10... $\mathbb{Q}a5?)$ 11. $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4=$ (as given by Müller).

Salov and Ionov discovered the same idea in a different setting: they proposed giving a series of checks from the side (similar to the Taimanov-Averbakh endgame), to drive White's king into an inferior position, before offering the exchange of rooks on f4.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f2+!?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2) 5... \mathbb{Q}f4! 6.\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $gxf4$ 7. $g5$ $f3$ 8. $g6$ $f2$ 9. $g7$ $f1=\mathbb{W}$ 10. $g8=\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$

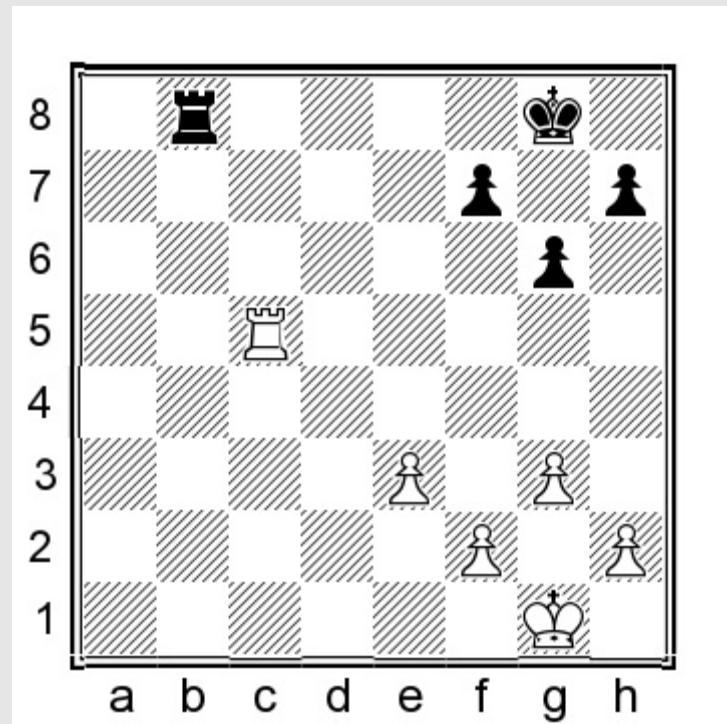
White can no longer trade queens, so the game should end in a draw.

Four Pawns vs. Three on the Same Wing

If all pawns are on the same wing, bringing the advantage home is frequently impossible (it is more precise to say, it should not be possible against correct defense). The fewer pawns, the easier the defense is.

For example, with three pawns against two or even with four against three, with standard pawn structures, the task of the defender is not too difficult (once in a blitz tournament I managed to hold two such endings, one against Tal and the other against Vasiukov). As for the case of five pawns against four, the probability of losing is much greater.

Petrosian – Keres
USSR ch, Moscow 1951



9-115

B

1...h5!

In this way Black makes his task of reaching a draw considerably easier. The defender should advance his h-pawn. The stronger side, whenever possible should prevent this by means of g3-g4!

The explanation consists in the fact that White's most logical plan is an advance of his e- and f-pawns in order to create a passed pawn. To accomplish this plan, he must sooner or later play g3-g4, allowing a pawn exchange on g4. But, as we know, **pawn exchanges are usually favorable for the weaker side, and improve the drawing chances**. Without ...h7-h5, the h-pawns would have stayed on the board.

In this game, Petrosian gradually carried out another plan: h2-h4 followed with f2-f3 and g3-g4, but also could not obtain victory.

2.¤c2 ¤g7 3.¤g2 ¤b5 4.¤f3 ¤f6 5.h4 ¤f5+ 6.¤g2 ¤a5 7.¤h3 ¤a4 8.¤d2 ¤e5 9.¤b2 ¤f6 10.¤b5 ¤a2 11.¤g2 ¤a4 12.¤f3 ¤a3 13.¤f4 ¤a2 14.f3 ¤e2 15.e4 ¤e1 16.¤b6+ ¤g7 17.¤a6 ¤b1 18.¤c6 ¤g1 19.¤c2 ¤f6 20.¤a2 ¤g7 21.¤e2 ¤f6 22.¤e3 ¤g7 23.e5 ¤f8 24.g4

If 24.¤g5, the simplest is 24...¤g7, although 24...¤xg3+ 25.¤f6 ¤g8 26.¤d3 ¤h3 27.e6 fxe6 28.¤xg6 ¤g3+ 29.¤xh5 ¤g7=, or 27.¤d8+ ¤h7 28.¤xf7 ¤xf3+ 29.¤e7 g5 30.hxg5 h4 31.e6 h3 32.¤d2 ¤g6= is also playable.

24...hxg4 25.fxg4 ¤g7 26.¤g5 ¤f1 27.¤e4 ¤f3 28.h5 (28.e6?? f6#) 28...gxh5 29.gxh5 f6+ 30.¤g4

Or 30.exf6+ ¤xf6 31.¤e7+ ¤f7 32.h6+ ¤g8=

30...¤f1 31.h6+

A little trap before the curtain falls. 31...¤xh6? loses to 32.e6 f5+ (if 32...¤g1+ then either 33.¤f4 ¤g8 34.¤f5 or 33.¤f5 ¤f1+ 34.¤f4 ¤xf4+ 35.¤xf4 ¤g6 36.¤e4) 33.¤h3! fxe4 34.e7.

31...¤g6! Draw.

As can be seen, Black did not have serious problems.

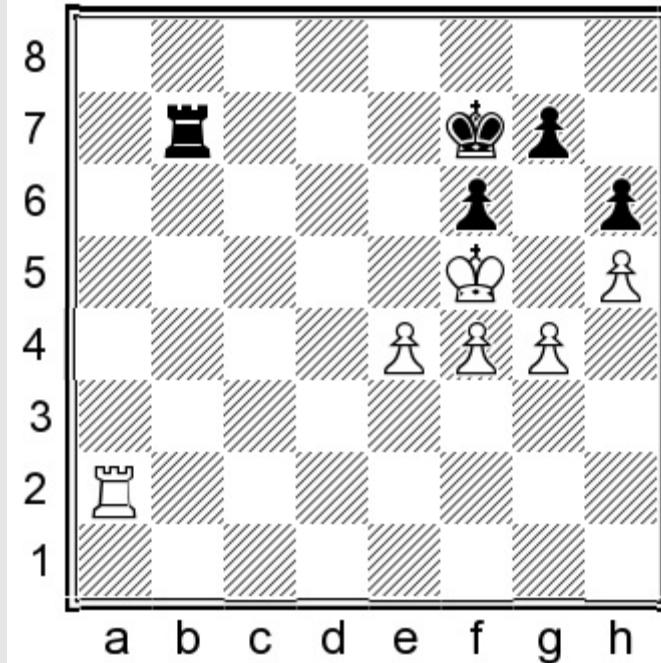
It should be mentioned that, when the white pawns had been set into motion, Keres used a typical strategic policy for this sort of position: *attacking the pawns from behind*.

What if Black could not play ...h7-h5 in time? We shall analyze two important endings that may serve as landmarks for both sides: the stronger side may pursue them while the weaker side should avoid these situations.

These endings are thoroughly analyzed in endgame handbooks. We skip some less important lines, limiting ourselves to the conclusions.

Botvinnik – Najdorf

Moscow ol 1956



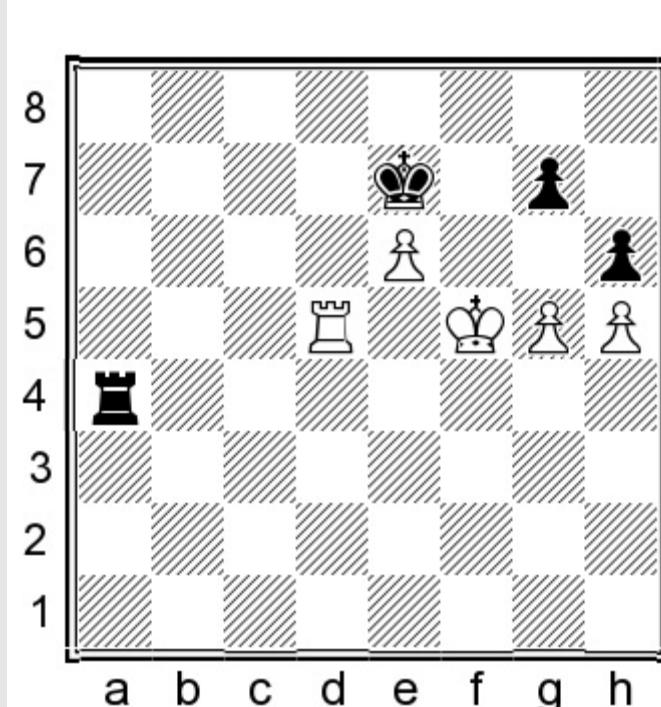
9-116
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}a7$ 3. $e5 fxe5$ 4. $f xe5$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}d7+!$ is threatened) 4... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $e6 \mathbb{Q}a4!$

5... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7+ \mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ is quite bad for Black.

6.g5!

6. $\mathbb{Q}d7+ \mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7+ \mathbb{Q}g8$ 8. $g5?$ fails in view of 8... $\mathbb{Q}a5+!$ (8... $hxg5?$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}a6=$



9-117
B?

6...♜a7!

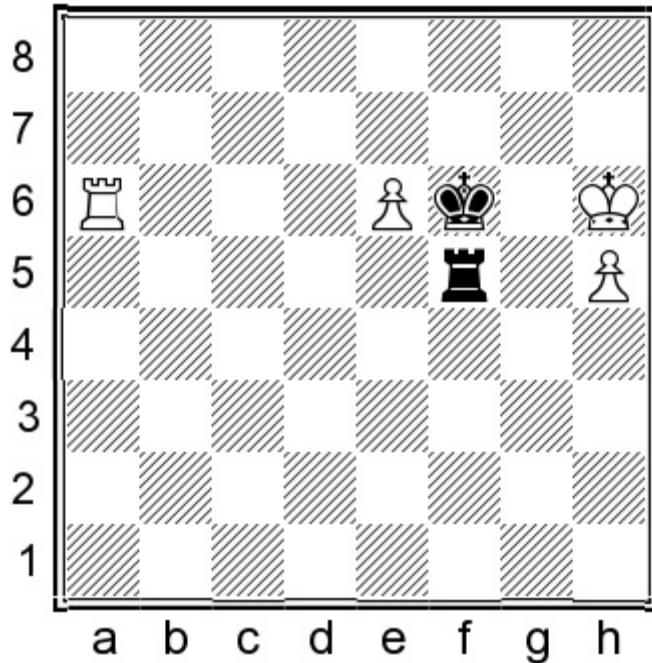
The best defense, as suggested by Aronin. The rook may return because there is no danger of trading the rooks any longer: 7.♝d7+? ♜xd7 8.exd7 ♔xd7 9.♔g6 hxg5 10.♔xg7 g4=

The actual continuation was 6...hxg5?! 7.♝d7+ ♔f8 8.♝f7+ ♔g8 9.♔g6 g4 10.h6! (the shortest way to a win) 10...gxh6 11.e7 ♜a8 12.♝f6 (Δ♝d6-d8) Black resigned.

7.♝e5!

A key move! White protects the pawn and prepares a king invasion.

An anticipatory pawn exchange is wrong: 7.gxh6? gxh6 8.♝b5 (Δ♝b6) 8...♜c7! 9.♝b6 ♜c5+! 10.♔g6 ♜e5! 11.♔xh6 ♔f6! 12.♝a6! ♜f5!



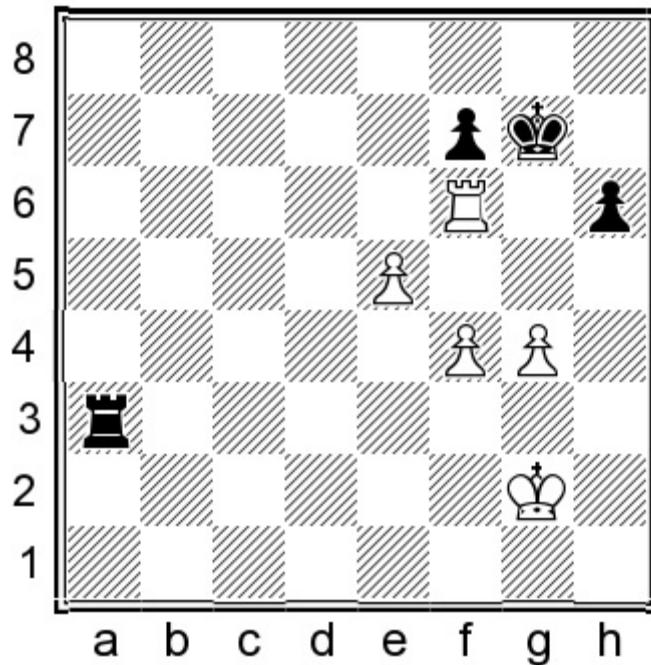
9-118

W

In this position, Black must play very precisely in order to achieve a draw, but theory says that this goal is within his reach.

7...hxg5

7...♔d6 8.gxh6 gxh6 9.♔f6; 7...♜a6 8.♔g6 ♔f8 9.♔h7 hxg5 10.e7+ ♔e8 11.♔xg7 g4 12.h6+ 8.♔xg5 (8.♔g6 ♔d6 9.♝e1 g4 10.h6! gxh6 11.♔f6 is also strong) 8...♜a1 9.♔g6 ♜f1 (9...♜g1+ 10.♜g5) 10.♔xg7 ♜g1+ 11.♔h6! ♜g2 12.♔g5+-



9-119

W

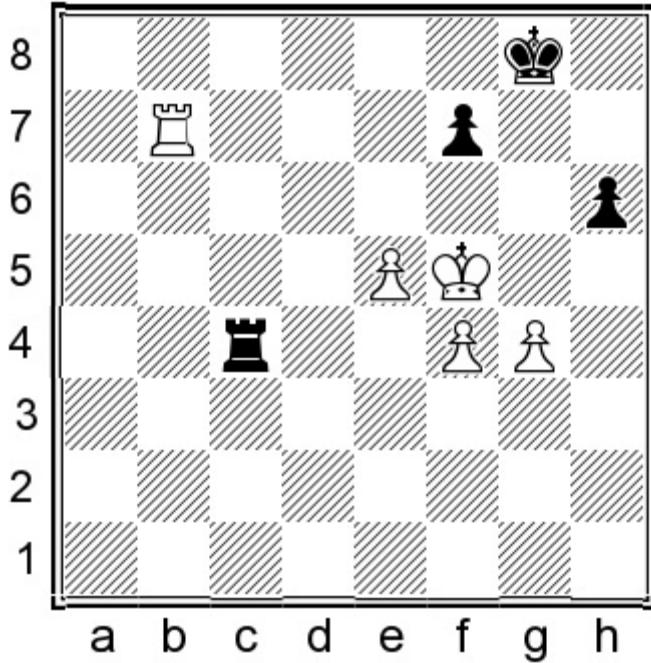
White's position is winning (the same evaluation is valid with the black pawn on h7 and the white pawn on g5). The winning plan is a rook transfer to the eighth rank followed by f4-f5-f6+. If the black rook takes aim at the e5-pawn, White defends it with the rook from e8.

Capablanca carried this plan through; however, as renowned rook endgame expert Kopaev demonstrated, both sides made errors along the way.

1.♖b6?!

White should have played 1.♖d6! in order to use the rook to protect against checks from the side.

Now after 1.♖b6?! Black could reply 1...♜a4! 2.♗f3 (2.♔g3 ♜a3+ 3.♔h4 ♜a4 4.f5 ♜a5 5.e6 fxe6 6.fxe6 ♔f6=) 2...♜a3+ 3.♗e4 ♜a4+ 4.♗f5 ♜c4 5.♗b7 (Δ 6.e6) 5...♗g8! (if 5...♜c5, then 6.♗d7 and 7.♗e4).



9-120

W?

Kopaev had considered 5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$, after which the Armenian Vardan Pogosyan suggested 6.e6! $f \times e6 +$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$, and came to the conclusion that Black must inevitably lose one of his pawns. The endgame that has arisen is lost for him.

With the king on g8, this idea is less effective in view of (6.e6! $f \times e6 +$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$) 7... $\mathbb{R}c5 +$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (if the king were on f8, this move would win) 8... $\mathbb{R}c4 =$, or 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ $\mathbb{R}c6 +$ and this version of the “two-pawns-versus-onepawn” ending is drawn. Let me remind you that we have already dealt with a similar position in the game Smyslov-Keres (diagram 9-85).

6.g5 $h \times g5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{R}c5 !$ is not dangerous (with the king on f8, the simplest would be Kopaev’s recommendation 7... $f6 + !$, which is not possible here because of 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6 + -$). (5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6.g5 $h \times g5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $f6 +$)

Having occupied the f5-square with his king, White makes the implementation of the strongest plan – the preparation of f4-f5 – more difficult. Now he should have revisited this idea by playing 6. $\mathbb{R}b3 !$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{R}e3$ $\mathbb{R}c6$ (7... $\mathbb{R}a4$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e4$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 9. $\mathbb{R}d4$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{R}c4 +$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{R}c6$

To this point, we have been following Kopaev’s line which demonstrates that 10.f5 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 11. $\mathbb{R}a3$ $\mathbb{R}c1$ 12. $\mathbb{R}a8 +$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13.f6+ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14. $\mathbb{R}e8 +$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 15.e6 $\mathbb{R}c6$ leads to a draw. But White’s play can be strengthened. For example, after 10. $\mathbb{R}a3$ f6 11. $\mathbb{R}a7 +$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$, White does not play 12. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $f \times e5$ 13. $f \times e5$ $\mathbb{R}c1$ (Averbakh), but 12. $e \times f6 !$ $\mathbb{R}xf6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 14. $\mathbb{R}a4$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}h4-h5$ (the only way to prevent the seizing of the key h5-square – the transfer of the rook to h1 – is too late here). A similar continuation was suggested by Jonathan Speelman, 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{R}a6$ 11. $\mathbb{R}b3$: we are already familiar with the follow-up 11...f6 12. $\mathbb{R}b7 +$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 13. $e \times f6$, while on 11... $\mathbb{R}c6$ there follows 12. $\mathbb{R}b8$ $\mathbb{R}c3 +$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{R}e3$ 14. $\mathbb{R}e8 + -$ and f4-f5 is inevitable.

1. $\mathbb{E}b6$?! $\mathbb{E}e3$?! 2. $\mathbb{E}b4$

2. $\mathbb{E}b8$ suggested itself. However, after 2... $\mathbb{E}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}e1$, the straightforward 4. $\mathbb{E}e8$? allows salvation by 4... $h5$! 5. $g5$ (5. $gxh5$ $\mathbb{E}f1+$! 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}e1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}h1$) 5... $\mathbb{E}f1+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $h4$.

The most precise is 2. $\mathbb{E}b1$! (temporarily denying the black rook the first rank). Black is in zugzwang. He must either worsen his king's position or move his rook off the e-file where it is best placed. In both cases, the invasion of the white rook becomes more effective. For example, 2... $\mathbb{E}e4$ (2... $\mathbb{E}e2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}h2$ 4. $f5$ $h5$ 5. $\mathbb{E}b7$ $hxg4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}h5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{E}h1$ 8. $e6+-$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}a4$, and now time has come for the main plan: 4. $\mathbb{E}b8!$ $\mathbb{E}a3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}e8!$ $\mathbb{E}e2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}e1$ 8. $f5$ $\mathbb{E}f1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}f4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}xg4$ 11. $f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 12. $e6+-$

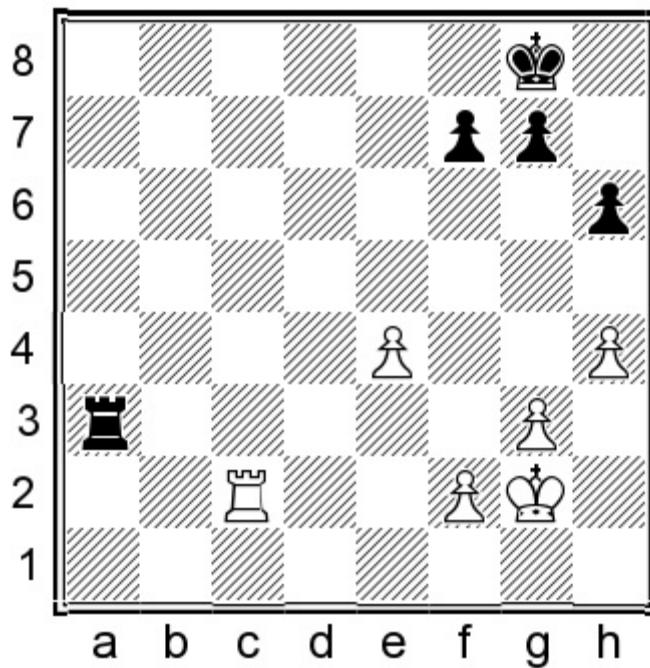
2... $\mathbb{E}c3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$? (3. $\mathbb{E}b8$) 3... $\mathbb{E}a3$?

Both adversaries missed the fact that after 3... $h5$!, Black either trades a pair of pawns (4. $gxh5$ $\mathbb{E}h3$) or obtains enough counterplay to save the game (4. $g5$ $h4$).

4. $\mathbb{E}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$?! (4... $\mathbb{E}a2+$!?) 5. $\mathbb{E}b8+$! $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $f5$ ($\Delta 7. f6+$), and White won.

Korchnoi – Antoshin

USSR ch, Erevan 1954



9-121

W?

1. $h5$!

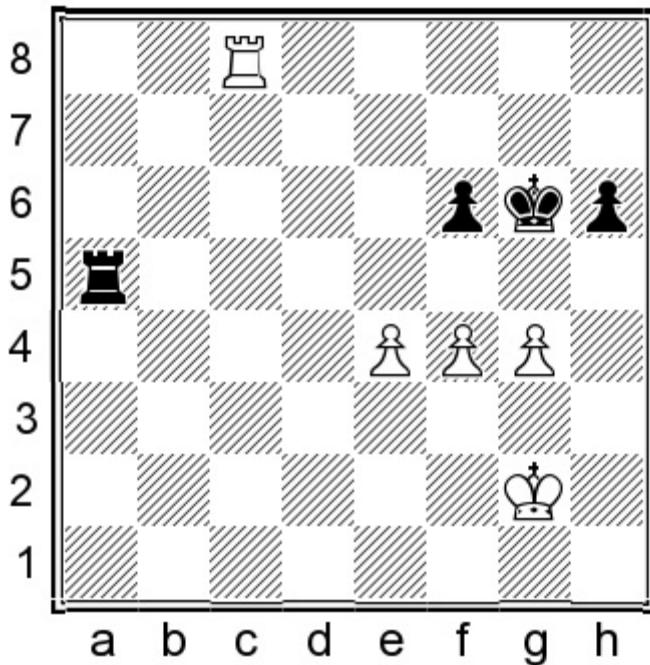
Black, if he was on move, could have considerably simplified his task by advancing his own pawn to $h5$. If 1. $g4$?!, then all the same 1... $h5$!

1. $h5$! $\mathbb{E}a5$!

As Korchnoi noted in his exceptionally deep and far-reaching comments to this endgame, it is useful for Black to force the advance g3-g4.

2.g4

2.♖c8+ ♖h7 3.g4 is not dangerous yet because of 3...g5! 4.hxg6+ ♖xg6 (Δ 5...h5) 5.f4 f6!



9-122

W

The last move is worth special attention. ***It is vitally important for Black to prevent the pressing advance e4-e5*** that leads to the setup from the Capablanca-Yates game. By the way, in that game the white pawn stood on e4 a few moves before the position of the diagram 9-119 arose, and Yates could have had an easy draw by means of ...f7-f6.

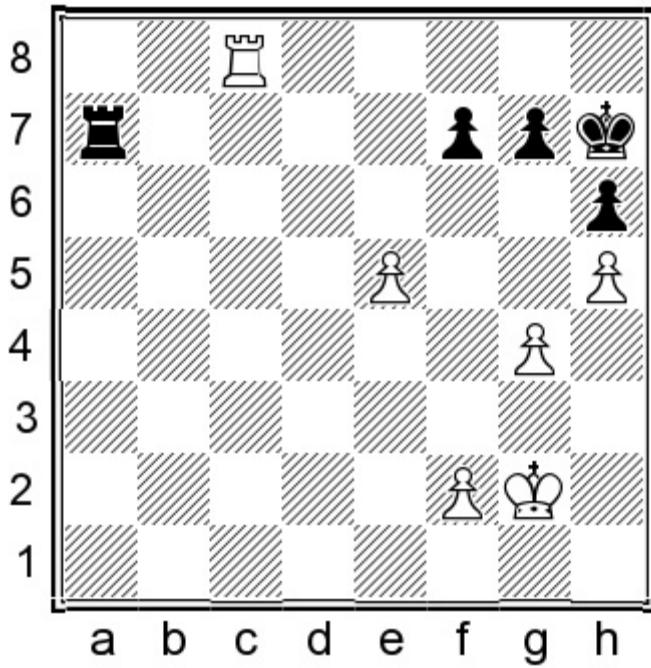
2...♜a7?!

Antoshin had to keep in mind the danger of a check along the eighth rank: his king, when standing on h7, is too far removed from a passed e-pawn if White manages to create it. Therefore here, as well as later on, he should have played f7-f6! Black could then parry the threat of transposition into the winning position from the Botvinnik-Najdorf game by means of catching the white pawns from behind. A characteristic variation was demonstrated by Korchnoi: 2...f6! 3.♖c8+ ♖f7 4.♖c7+ ♖g8! 5.♗f3 (5.f4 ♜a3 – White's king is cut off from its pawns) 5...♜a3+ 6.♗f4 ♜a2 7.♗f5 ♖h7! (this is why the black king pulled back to g8) 8.f4 ♜f2!=, as White fails to create the passed e-pawn.

It is time to explain why the move 1...♜a5 was given an exclamation mark. With a pawn on g3, this defensive plan does not work: the f4-pawn is protected, so White can play ♖e6, while Black can hardly prevent the penetration of the white king to f5 (via g4) at an earlier stage.

3.♖c6?!

After 3.♗c8+!? ♖h7 4.e5! ($\Delta \hat{\square}g3, f4, f5+-$), Black would have been faced with problems one can hardly tackle over the board, but objectively it should be defendable.



9-123

B

As Korchnoi showed, almost all defensive methods are doomed to lose: White either creates a dangerous passed e-pawn or transposes to positions from the game Capablanca-Yates. For example, 4...g5? 5.hxg6+ ♖xg6 6.f4+-, or 4...♝a4? 5.♗g3 ♜e4 6.♝e8 g5 (6...♝a4 7.♝f8 ♜a7 8.f4+-; 6...f6 7.e6 g5 8.hxg6+ ♖xg6 9.f3 ♜e1 10.♗f2 ♜e5 11.f4+-) 7.hxg6+ ♖xg6 8.f3!+- (8.f4? is not precise; Black holds after 8...h5!). Of course, only basic results are shown here, as a detailed explanation would have been rather complicated and too vast.

4...♝e7! (the only defense) 5.f4 f6! 6.♝c5 fxe5 7.fxe5, and now Black must prevent the white king's march to the center, that would transpose to the Botvinnik-Najdorf ending, by 7...♝f7! Here Korchnoi gives 8.♗g3 g6!= and 8.e6 ♜e7 9.♝c6 g6 10.♝d6 ($\Delta 11.♝d7$) 10...♜e8 11.♗f3 gxh5 12.gxh5 ♗g7 13.♗e4 ♗f6 14.♗d5 ♜e7=

The prophylactic move 8.♝d5! is more dangerous for Black. He cannot play 8...g6? on account of 9.e6 ♜f8 (9...♜e7 10.♝d7) 10.♝d7+ ♗g8 11.e7 ♜e8 12.♝d8 ♗f7 13.♝xe8 ♗xe8 14.g5!+-, and 8...g5? 9.e6 ♜f8 10.e7 ♜e8 11.♝e5 ♗g7 12.♝e6+- are also bad. Black also loses in the line 8...♜f8 9.♗g3 ♜f1 10.♝d7! (10.♝d3 g5!) 10...♜f8 (on 10...♗g8 the same reply follows) 11.♝d3 g5 12.♝f3 ♜e8 13.♝f5 followed by 14.♗f3. Nevertheless, as Pogosyan has shown, he manages to save himself by continuing either 9...g5! (instead of 9...♜f1?) 10.♝d3 ♗g7 11.♝f3 ♜e8 12.♝f5 ♜a8, or 8...♝f4!? 9.♗g3 ♜a4 10.♗f3 ♗g8.

3...♝a3? (3...f6!=) 4.f3?

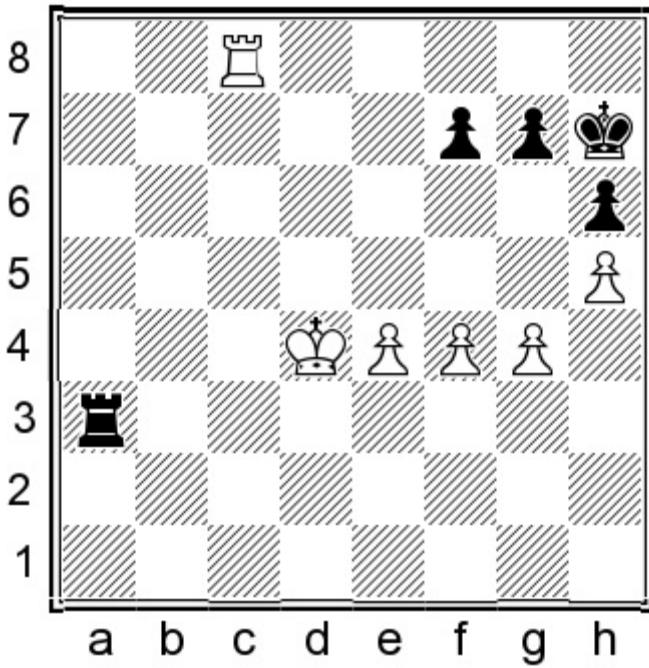
4.e5! was winning.

4... $\mathbb{E}a5!?$ (4...f6!)

Now White can gradually strengthen his position by means of $\mathbb{E}c8-d8$, $\mathbb{Q}g3-f4$ or f3-f4, but, as his pawn cannot get to e5, the game will be drawn if Black defends precisely.

Korchnoi decided to force matters and was successful, but only as a result of a new mistake by Black.

5. $\mathbb{E}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6.f4?! (Δ 7.e5+–) 6... $\mathbb{E}a2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}a3+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}a2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}a3+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$



9-124

B?

Black can hold the game rather simply: 10... $\mathbb{E}f3!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (11.f5 f6=) 11...f6+ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}f1$, achieving the position from the note to Black's second move.

10... $\mathbb{E}g3?$

He chases after material gain but lets White create a passed pawn that will cost him a rook.

11. $\mathbb{E}f8!$ f6 12.e5! $\mathbb{E}xg4$

12...fxe5+ 13.fxe5 $\mathbb{E}xg4+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{E}g1$ 15.e6 $\mathbb{E}d1+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}e1$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{E}d1+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e8+–$ is no better.

13.e6 $\mathbb{E}xf4+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{E}f5+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{E}xh5$ 16.e7 $\mathbb{E}e5$ 17.e8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{E}xe8$ 18. $\mathbb{E}xe8$

The fight is almost over. When the white king comes back to his home side of the board, the rook will be stronger than three pawns.

18... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!?$ 20. $\mathbb{E}e1$

20. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 22. $\mathbb{E}g8$ g5 23. $\mathbb{E}f8+–$ is also strong.

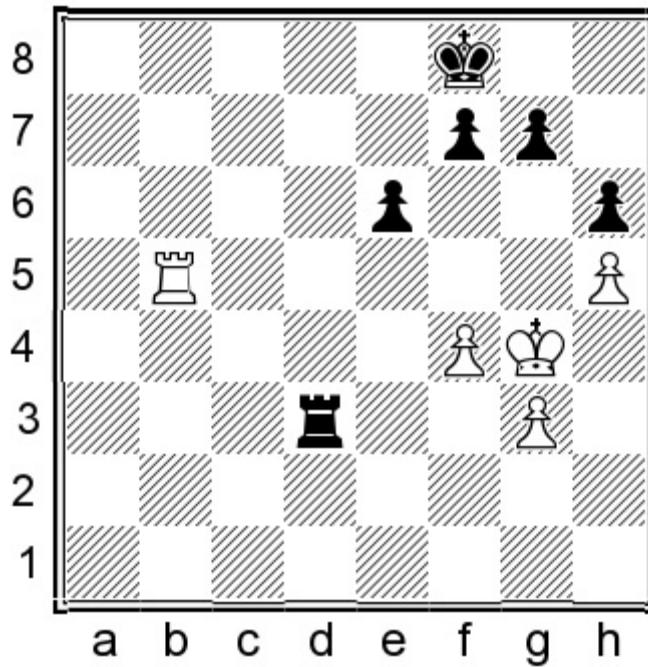
20...h5 21. $\mathbb{E}f1+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ g5 23. $\mathbb{E}xf6$ h4 24. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ g4 26. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 27. $\mathbb{E}f4$ h3 28. $\mathbb{E}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h2 30. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Capablanca-Yates above fully fits this category, but I would like to add some new examples, the last of which has some theoretical value.

Bellón – Chekhov

Barcelona 1984



9-125

W

The waiting policy (1. $\mathbb{R}a5$

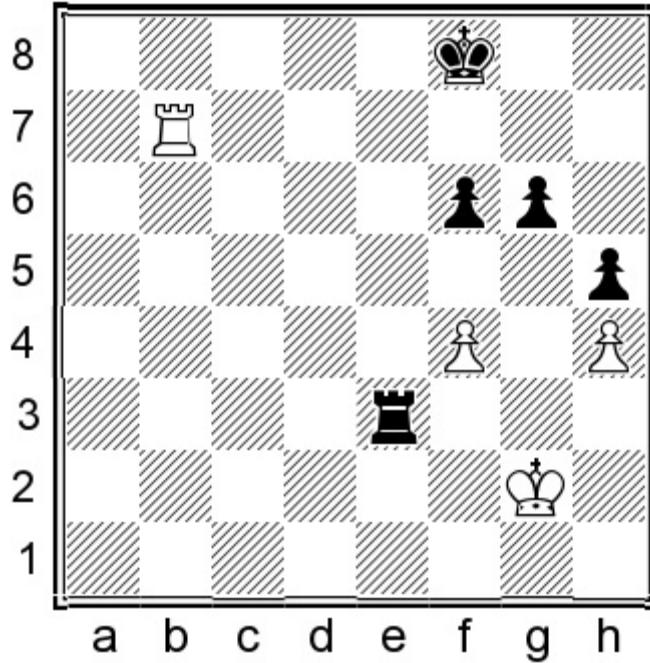
or 1. $\mathbb{R}b7$) gave a rather easy draw, but Bellón decided to chase after the g7-pawn.

1. $\mathbb{R}b8+$ $\mathbb{K}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g8??$ $\mathbb{R}d8!$

White resigned. The pawn endgame is quite hopeless for him, while after 3. $\mathbb{R}xg7$, his rook is lost:
3... $\mathbb{R}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{R}h7$ $\mathbb{R}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{R}xh6$ $\mathbb{R}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{R}g5$ $\mathbb{R}d5+$

Norri – Svidler

Erevan ol 1996



9-126

W

Here again White did not have enough patience and made an analogous error.

1.f5? (1.Qa7=)

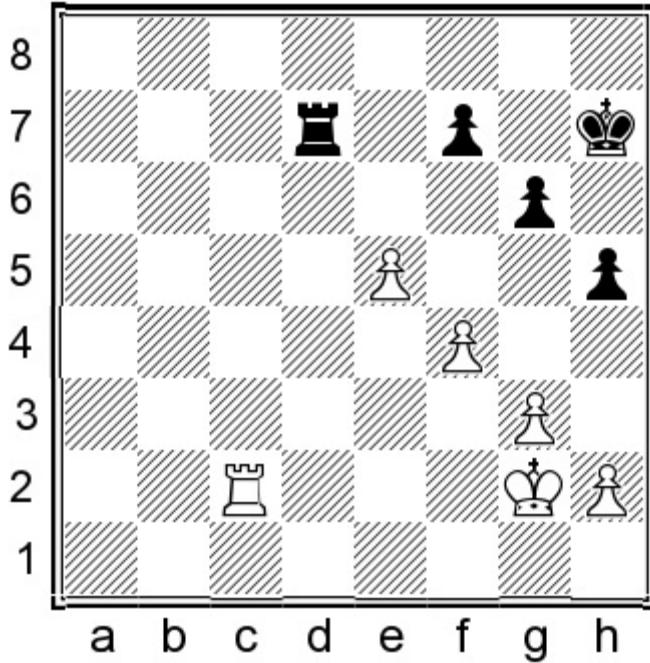
1.f5? gxf5 2.Qh7 Qg8 3.Qxh5??

3.Qa7 could still hold the game.

3...Qe5 4.Qf3 f4! White resigned.

Piket – Kasparov

Internet Tournament 2000



9-127
\$
B

White has succeeded in bringing his pawn to e5 (generally speaking, it would have been favorable for Black if he had prevented this by playing ...f7-f at an earlier stage). On the other hand, ...h6-h5 has already been played, so reaching a draw should not be a very difficult problem.

Kasparov had to decide how to react should the white king march to g5 via h3 and h4. The simplest method was to play ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ at the proper moment. For example, 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6!$, and one cannot see how White could make any progress.

Moreover, a king invasion to g5 is not too dangerous. Even with the white rook on the seventh rank Black can survive. Averbakh analyzes 3... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ (instead of 3... $\mathbb{Q}h6$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (6.e6 $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6=$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ (as Bologan says, even 6... $\mathbb{Q}b6!$? 7.e6 $\mathbb{Q}b5+!$ or 7.f5 gxf5 does not lose) 7.f5 gxf5 8.e6 (8. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8 \Delta$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$) 8...f4+! 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6=$

1... $\mathbb{Q}d3$

In many similar situations, to place the rook behind the e-pawn makes some sense. In particular, such a maneuver is not bad when h-pawns are absent. But here this transfer is wrong. Its slightly modified version does not work either: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}h4?$ $\mathbb{Q}h6 \Delta$ 4...g5+) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$, and we come to situations that have actually occurred in the game.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3?$

2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6=$ draws, but after the text move there is no turning back.

3. $\mathbb{Q}h4?$

Playing 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$, Piket could have chained the hostile rook to the e-file and, as we shall

see, this was a winning method.

3... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$

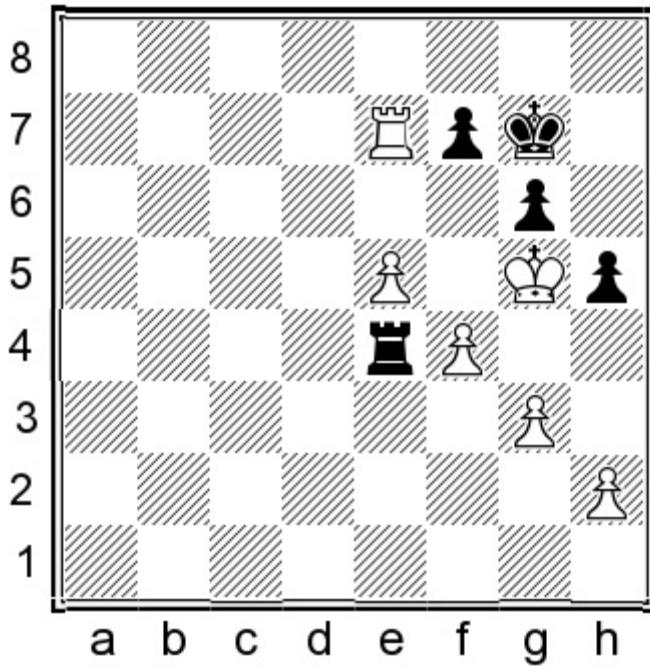
He should play 3... $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ 4. $\mathbb{R}c7 \mathbb{E}e2!$ If 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3$, then 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (5... $g5!?$ is also playable) 6. $\mathbb{R}b7 g5!$ 7. $f\text{gx}g5 \mathbb{Q}g6$. The line 5. $g4 h\text{gx}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{R}xf7 \mathbb{E}xh2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ is more dangerous for Black, but after 7... $\mathbb{E}e2$, he survives.

4. $\mathbb{Q}g5?$

An erroneous order of moves; again 4. $\mathbb{R}c7! \mathbb{E}e2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ is correct. Now Black could return to Averbakh's plan: 4... $\mathbb{R}a3!$ 5. $\mathbb{R}c7 \mathbb{R}a5=$. However Piket could hardly expect his opponent would suddenly change his mind and move the rook back.

4... $\mathbb{E}e1?$ 5. $\mathbb{R}c7 \mathbb{E}e2$ 6. $\mathbb{R}e7!$ $\mathbb{R}a2$ 7. $f5!$ $g\text{fx}f5$ 8. $e6 h4$ 9. $\mathbb{R}xf7+ \mathbb{Q}g8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ Black resigned.

Let us look at 6... $\mathbb{R}e4$ (instead of 6... $\mathbb{R}a2$).



9-128

\$

W?

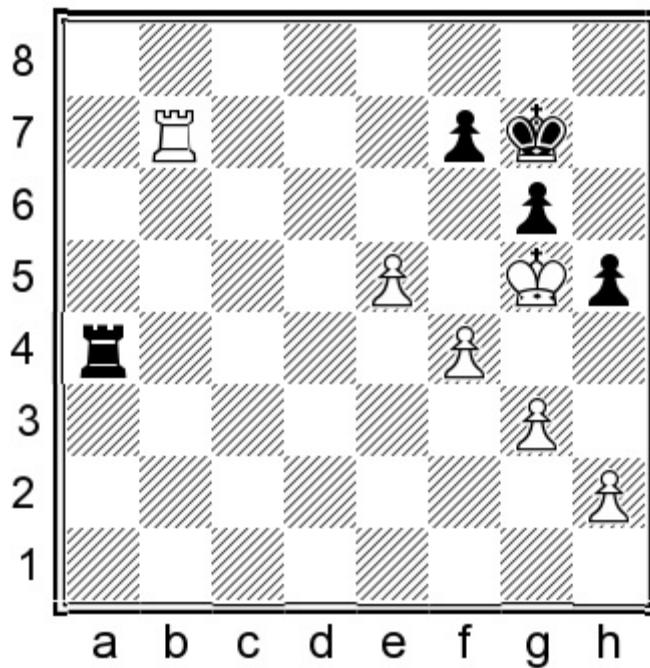
This position has occurred in the following games: Stean-Hartston (Great Britain ch, Brighton 1972), Ionov-Karasev (Leningrad 1983) and Matveeva-Rapoport (Baku 1983). In all these games, White found a forced win.

7. $e6!$ $\mathbb{R}xe6$ 8. $\mathbb{R}xe6 f\text{xe}6$ 9. $h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}f6$ 11. $g4 h4$ (11... $h\text{gx}g4$ 12. $h\text{gx}g4\Theta+-$) 12. $g5+$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}h7? g5$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}xf4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xg6 e5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $e4$ 16. $g6 e3$ 17. $g7 e2$ 18. $g8=\mathbb{W} e1=\mathbb{W}$ 19. $\mathbb{W}g4+ \mathbb{Q}e3$ 20. $\mathbb{W}e6+ \mathbb{Q}f2$ 21. $\mathbb{W}xe1+ \mathbb{Q}xe1$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}g5+-$

Finally, instead of 5... $\mathbb{E}e2$, Black could have played 5... $\mathbb{E}e4!?$ at once. The point is to meet 6. $\mathbb{E}e7$ with 6... $\mathbb{R}a4!$, and 7. $f5$, as was played by Piket, is not possible anymore, while if 7. $e6$, then 7... $\mathbb{R}a5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h4$

Qf6 9. Bxf7+ Qxe6=

White must wait: 6. Bb7!O 6... Ba4 (6... Be2 7. Bxg7! transposes to the actual course of the game).



9-129

W?

And here Bologan discovered a brilliant solution: a double pawn sacrifice 7. g4!! hxg4 (7... Be4 8. gxh5 gxh5 9. h4 is hopeless) 8. f5! gxf5 9. e6+-

Winning another pawn is much weaker: 7. e6 Ba5+ 8. Qh4 Qf6 9. exf7 Qg7 10. Be7 Qf8! 11. Be5 Ba2 , or 10. h3 Qf8 11. g4 hxg4 12. hxg4 Bc5 13. f5 Bc6! (rather than 13... gxf5? 14. g5+-). It looks like Black holds in both these lines.

Show in Text Mode

Balance on One Wing and an Extra Pawn on Another

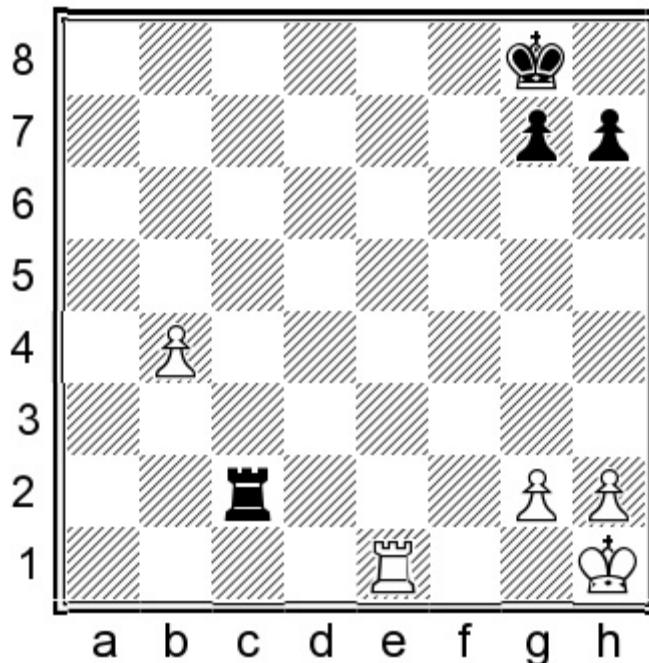
Situations with an extra distant passed pawn occur now and then, therefore it is very important to learn their correct evaluation and handling. The decisive factor in this sort of endgame is the position of the rook of the stronger side. In the majority of cases, the rook is placed best “à la Tarrasch,” behind its own passed pawn; sometimes its sideways position is preferable.

Quite often, however, we lack free choice, so the rook mostly stands in front of the pawn in practical games. Therefore we shall pay more attention to these cases.

The Rook Behind Its Own Pawn

Botvinnik – Boleslavsky

Leningrad/Moscow 1941



9-130

W?

1. $\mathbb{R}b1!$

The rook has occupied its correct position, behind the pawn. After 1.h3? $\mathbb{R}b2!$ 2. $\mathbb{R}e4$, Black could have achieved a draw.

1. $\mathbb{R}b1!$ $\mathbb{Q}f7?$

The passed pawn should be blocked as soon as possible. Black had to play 1... $\mathbb{R}c6!$ 2.b5 $\mathbb{R}b6$. I do not think this was enough for a draw but, anyway, his opponent would have then been faced with more complicated problems. After a king's march to the queenside, Black removes his rook from b6 either for protecting his own pawns or for attacking the hostile ones.

2.b5 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3.b6 $\mathbb{R}c8$ 4.h3

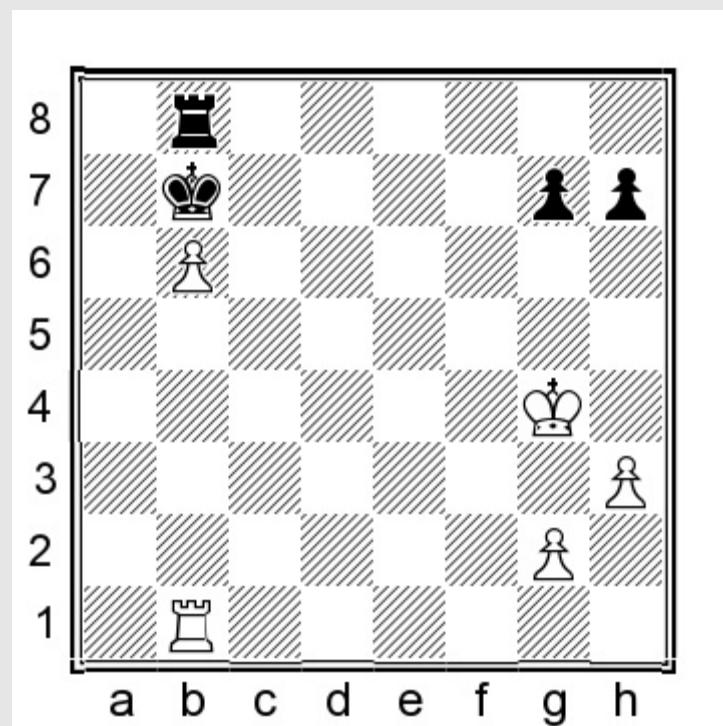
4.b7? $\mathbb{R}b8$ is wrong because it allows Black to eliminate the b-pawn and thereafter to bring his king back to the kingside in time. For example, 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}xb7$ 8. $\mathbb{R}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7=$

4... $\mathbb{R}b8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$

If the black king remains with his pawns, his adversary heads to the b-pawn. Black cannot prevent this by means of the opposition because White can make a waiting rook move. Black will then be obliged to give way to the white king because his rook has no waiting moves. This clearly demonstrates the difference between the rook positions.

6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$

A capture on b6 is impossible now. Therefore, **Black blocks the pawn with his king, releasing the rook from its duty**. A standard and often quite useful method, but alas, it does not bring any relief to Black in this particular case.



9-131
W?

8. $\mathbb{R}e1!$

Excellently played! While the rook was pinning the black rook down it was superbly placed on b1,

but now it will be more active when placed sideways. Or 8... $\hat{Q}xb6$ 9. $\hat{E}b1+$ and Black loses the pawn endgame.

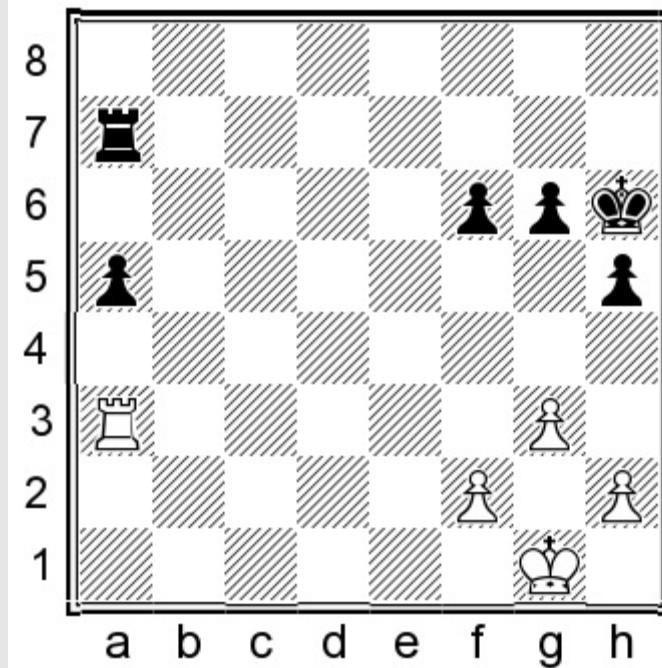
8... $\hat{E}g8$ 9. $\hat{E}e6$ $\hat{Q}a6$ 10. $\hat{Q}g5$ $\hat{Q}b7$ 11.h4

The rest is simple. White attacks on the kingside, having an extra piece there.

11... $\hat{Q}a6$ 12.h5 $\hat{Q}b7$ 13.g4 $\hat{Q}a6$ 14. $\hat{Q}h4$ $\hat{Q}b7$ 15.h6 gxh6 16. $\hat{E}xh6$ $\hat{E}g7$ 17. $\hat{Q}h5$ (Δ g5, $\hat{E}e6$, $\hat{Q}h6+-$) 17... $\hat{Q}a6$ 18. $\hat{E}c6$ $\hat{E}e7$ 19. $\hat{E}c7$ $\hat{E}e5+$ 20.g5 $\hat{Q}xb6$ 21. $\hat{E}xh7$ $\hat{Q}c6$ 22. $\hat{Q}h6$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 23.g6 $\hat{E}e1$ 24. $\hat{E}f7$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 25. $\hat{E}f2$ $\hat{Q}a1$ 26.g7 $\hat{E}h1+$ 27. $\hat{Q}g6$ $\hat{E}g1+$ 28. $\hat{Q}h7$ $\hat{E}h1+$ 29. $\hat{Q}g8$ $\hat{Q}e7$ 30. $\hat{E}e2+$ $\hat{Q}d7$ 31. $\hat{E}e4$ (“bridging”) 31... $\hat{E}h2$ 32. $\hat{Q}f7$ Black resigned.

Botvinnik – Borisenco

USSR ch, Moscow 1955



9-132

W

1. $\hat{E}a4!$

Botvinnik blocks the pawn immediately. If he had allowed ...a5-a4, he would have had no chances at all. Alekhine won a similar ending from Capablanca in the last, 34th, game of their match for the world championship in 1927: it can be found in almost every book on endgames.

1... $\hat{Q}g5$

The king heads for the queenside, but a safer road was via g7. The text move was regarded as an error by all the commentators. Why? The point is that *the best chance for a successful defense in this sort of position is counterplay on the kingside by creating a passed pawn or weakening the*

opponent's position. And the position of the king in front of the pawns makes it easier to create counterplay.

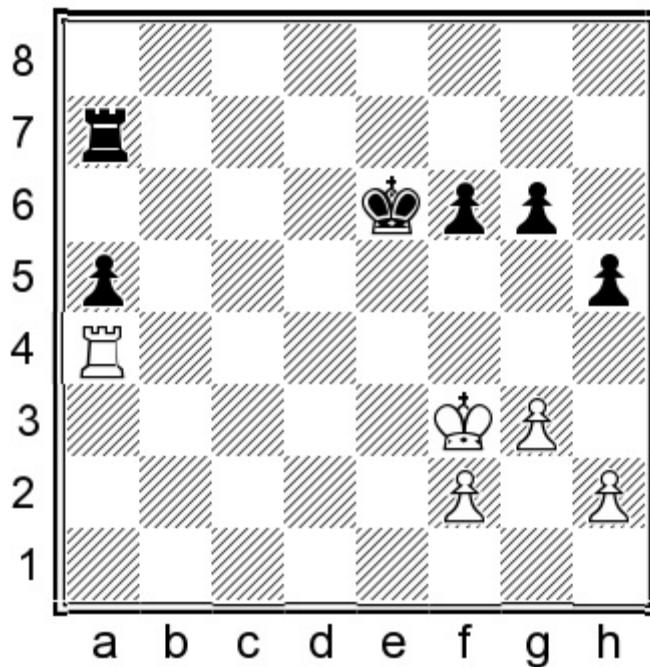
Let's see how the fight takes shape after 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7!?$:

(a) 2.f3 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3.g4 h4+;

(b) 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ a4+ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 9.h4 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ g5+ (Marin);

(c) 2.h4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ (5.g4 hxg4 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ a4 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ a3 8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ a2 9. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$) 5...f5! (wrong is 5... $\mathbb{Q}c6$? 6.g4 $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ f5 9.gxh5 gxh5 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4=$) 6.f3 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7.g4 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ a4 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ a3 10. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ hxg4 12. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ gxf3+ (Kopaev);

(d) 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$



9-133

W?

4.h4 (4.g4 h4 5.g5 fxg5 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7.h3 $\mathbb{Q}a8+$) 4...f5 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 7.f3 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 8.g4 fxg4 9.fxg4 hxg4 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ a4+ (Levenfish, Smyslov).

The conclusion that 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ won was refuted by Vardan Pogosyan. He found an improvement in Levenfish and Smyslov's line. After 4.g4! h4, White, instead of the pawn sacrifice 5.g5? simply plays 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ Now 5...g5+ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (intending 7.f4) is not dangerous, while 6... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ leads to a drawn ending, with two pawns versus three on one flank. And if 5... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6.g5 f5 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2(d3)=$, the h4-pawn, stripped of its support, becomes an object of attack.

As we see, counterplay on the kingside is sometimes connected with Black's plan in the previous

example, of blockading the passed pawn with the king.

2.f3! ♖f5

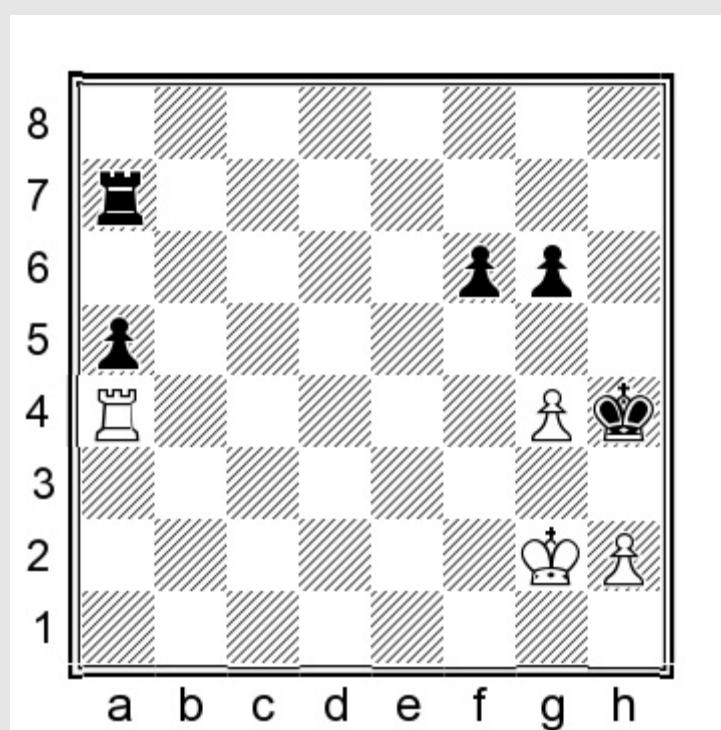
Also possible was 2...f5!? but then after 3.♖f2 ♖f6 4.h4 ♖e5 5.♖e3 ♖d5 6.g4! fxg4 7.fxg4 ♖c5 8.♖d3 ♖b5 9.♖e4 ♖c7 10.gxh5 gxh5 11.♖e8! (Levenfish, Smyslov), White would manage to stave off defeat.

3.g4+ hxg4?

The exchange of pawns makes White's task easier. By playing 3...♖e6!, Black could have placed much more complicated problems before his opponent. And yet, as subsequent analysis demonstrated, the position remained objectively drawn.

4.fxg4+ ♖e5

The other attempt is 4...♖g5!? 5.♖g2 ♖h4.



9-134

W?

Kopaev, as well as Levenfish and Smyslov, examined 6.♖g1 ♖h3 7.♖h1 ♖e7 (7...f5 8.gxf5 gxf5 9.♖g1 f4 10.♖f2=) 8.♗a3+ ♖xg4 9.♗xa5, evaluating this position as drawn. But this is not so: after 9...♖f3!, White is in trouble. Instead of 6.♖g1? Botvinnik recommended 6.h3, and Marin continued this line: 6...g5 7.♖h2 ♖b7 8.♗xa5 ♖b2+ 9.♖g1 ♖xh3 10.♗a6 ♖xg4 11.♗xf6 ♖g3 12.♗f1!=

5.h4 ♖d5 6.h5 gxh5 7.gxh5

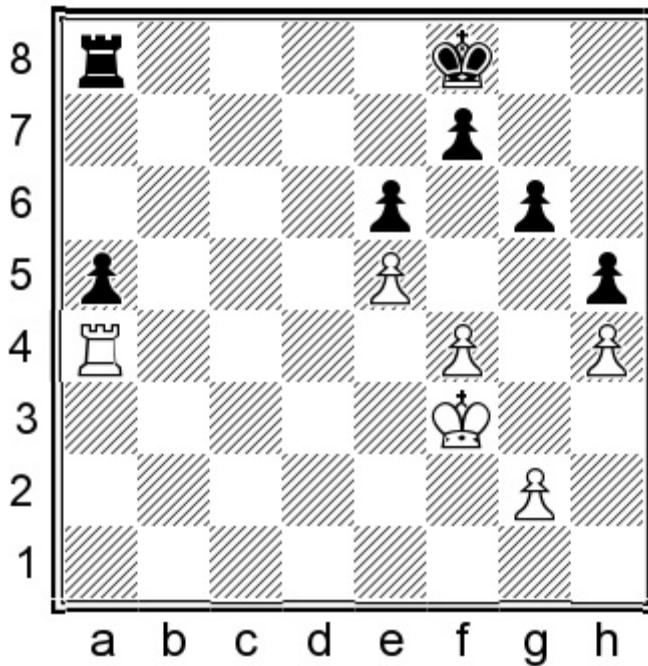
The goal is reached; White has created a passed pawn. Black cannot win any longer, for example, 7...♖c5 8.h6 ♖b5 9.♖h4 ♖h7 10.♖h5+ ♖b4 11.♖h4+ ♖b3 12.♖h3+ ♖b2 13.♖h4=

7... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 8.h6 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ a4 14. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ Draw.

Diagram 9-135 has been intentionally omitted.

Em.Lasker – Levenfish

Moscow 1925



9-136

W

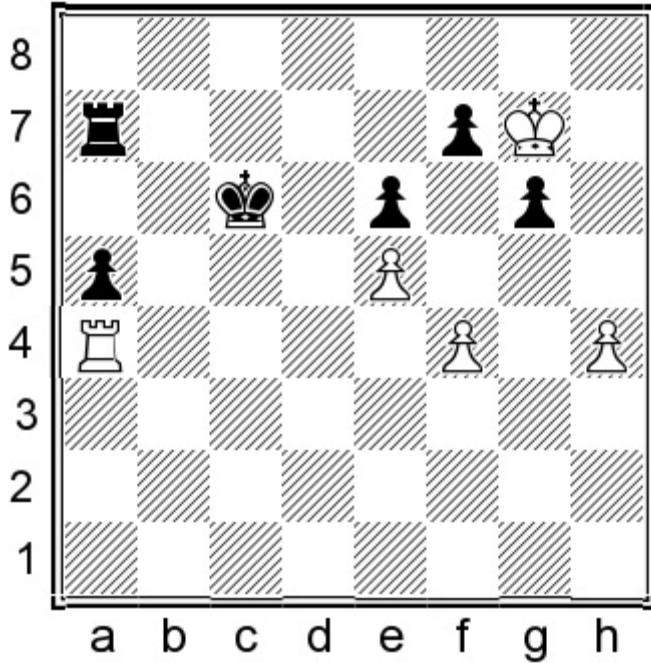
1.g4

Lasker aspires for counterplay on the kingside. An alternative method was 1. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4$, trying to prevent the black king from joining his pawn. However 2... $\mathbb{Q}d8+!$ was strong then.

1.g4 hxg4+?

Levenfish lets the white king go ahead for no reason whatsoever. An easy win was 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2.gxh5 gxh5, for example, 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4.f5 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5.f6 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ a4 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8-$ +, or 3.f5 exf5 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ with inevitable mate.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$



9-137

W?

6. ♕f6?

A decisive loss of a tempo! Lasker saw the correct way but, as he explained after the game, he wanted instinctively to avoid a discovered check along the seventh rank.

He should have performed the breakthrough that gave him a passed pawn immediately: 6.f5! exf5 (6...gxf5 7.h5) 7.e6 fxe6+ 8.♕xg6. After 8...♗b5 9.♖a1 f4 10.h5, both 10...f3 11.♖f1 a4 12.♖xf3 a3 13.♖f1 a2 14.♖a1 ♔c4 15.h6 ♔b3 16.h7 ♕a8 17.♕e1! e5 (17...♗b2 18.♕e2+) 18.♕g7 e4 19.h8=♕ ♕xh8 20.♕xh8 (the black pawn cannot reach e2, so there is no win), and 10...e5 11.♕e1! ♔c4 (11...a4 12.♕xe5+ ♔c6 13.♕e4 a3 14.♕xf4 a2 15.♕f1=) 12.♕xe5 ♔d3 13.h6 f3 14.h7 ♕xh7 (14...♕a8 15.♕xa5) 15.♕xh7 f2 16.♕f5 ♔e3 17.♕f8 (or 17.♕e5+ ♔f4 18.♕e8) 17...a4 18.♕e8+ ♔f3 19.♕f8+ ♔g2 20.♕g8+ ♔h3 21.♕f8= lead to a draw.

6... ♗b5 7.♖a1 a4 8.f5 exf5 9.e6 fxe6 10.♕xg6 f4! 11.h5 f3! 12.h6 (12.♖f1 a3=+) 12...e5! 13.♕e1

Neither 13.h7 ♕xh7 (13...♕a8) 14.♕xh7 e4 15.♖f1 a3 16.♕g6 a2 17.♕f5 e3 18.♕e4 e2=+ nor 13.♕f5 ♕h7 14.♕h1 f2 15.♕xe5 ♕xh6=+ can help White.

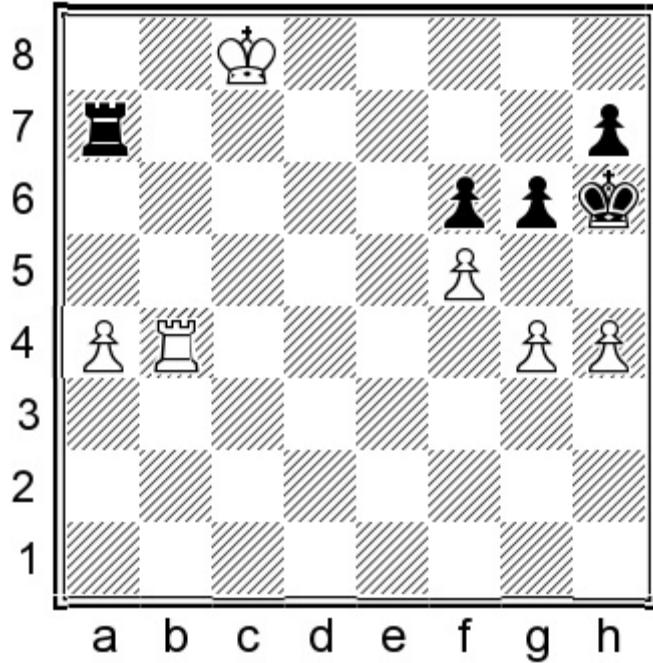
13...a3 14.♕xe5+ ♔c4 15.♕e1 a2 16.h7 ♕a8!

The pawns are separated by four files. Therefore 16...♕xh7? 17.♕xh7 f2 18.♕f1 ♔d3 19.♕a1! ♔c3 20.♕f1! would have enabled White to reach a draw.

17.♕g7 f2 18.♕f1 (18.♕a1 ♔b3) 18...a1=♕+ 19.♕xa1 ♕xa1 20.h8=♕ ♕g1+ White resigned.

Diagram 9-138 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



9-138a

9/19

B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/19. Stein – Vaganian (variation), Vrnjacka Banya 1971

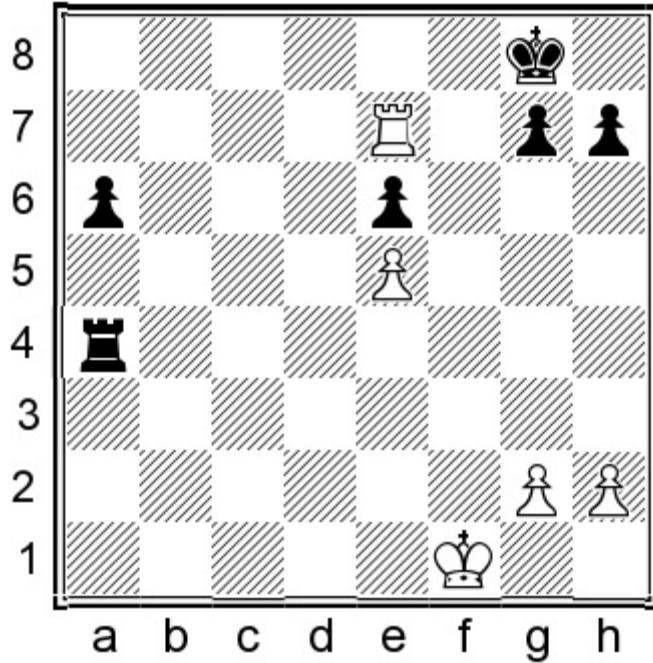
It looks like things are hopeless for Black, as the white king is about to come in and kick the black rook away from the position in front of the pawn. But Black has one last chance: stalemate!

1...gxf5 2.gxf5 ♖h5! 3.♖b8 h6!

3...♜a5 first also draws.

4.♖xa7 Stalemate. This idea was found by WGM Irina Kryukova.

Diagrams 16-86 and 16-87 have been intentionally omitted.



9-139

9/20

B?

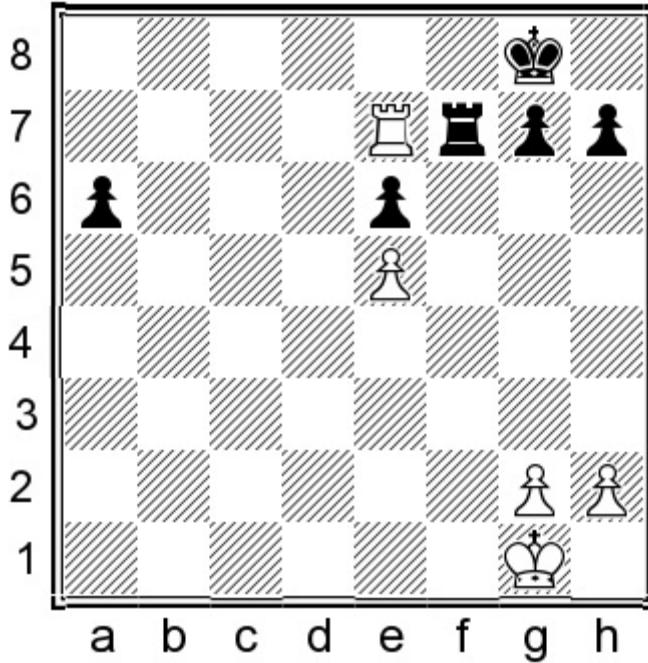
What is the outcome with correct play?

Show/Hide Solution

9/20. Eliseevic-Pytel, Trstenik 1979

After 1...a5? 2.♖xe6 ♖e4 ($\Delta \dots \hat{Q}f7$) 3.♖e7 ♔f8 4.♖a7 ♖xe5 5.♔f2, Black's extra pawn does not offer him any real winning chances. The only promising possibility is to place the rook behind the distant passed pawn.

1...♖f4+! 2.♔g1 (2.♔e2 ♖e4+ and 3...♖xe5) 2...♖f7! (rather than 2...♖f8 3.♖a7!=).



16-88

W?

In the game, Black's plan was completely successful.

3. $\mathbb{E}xe6$ $\mathbb{E}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}d6$ a5 5. e6 $\mathbb{E}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{E}d3$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{E}f2$ $\mathbb{E}xe6$ 8. $\mathbb{E}e3$ a4 9. $\mathbb{E}a3$ $\mathbb{E}d5$ 10. $\mathbb{E}d3$ $\mathbb{E}c5$ 11. $\mathbb{E}c3$ $\mathbb{E}b5$ 12. $\mathbb{E}b2$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ 13. $\mathbb{E}g3$ a3+! 14. $\mathbb{E}a2$ $\mathbb{E}d4$ 15. $\mathbb{E}h3$ h6 16. $\mathbb{E}g3$ g5 White resigned. 17. h4 is met with 17... $\mathbb{E}a5$, and if 18. $\mathbb{E}b3$, then 18... $\mathbb{E}e4$ 19. $\mathbb{E}b6$ $\mathbb{E}f4$ 20. $\mathbb{E}xh6$ g4 Δ 21... $\mathbb{E}g3$ –+

White should have defended his position more actively. Prior to blocking the passed pawn with his rook, he had enough time to win one of the kingside pawns.

3. $\mathbb{E}e8+!$ $\mathbb{E}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xe6$ $\mathbb{E}a8$ 5. $\mathbb{E}e7$ (5. $\mathbb{E}d6$ is worse in view of 5... $\mathbb{E}a7$!?) 5... a5 6. e6 a4 7. $\mathbb{E}d7$ $\mathbb{E}f8$ (7... a3 8. e7) 8. $\mathbb{E}f7+$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xg7$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 10. $\mathbb{E}c7$ a3 11. $\mathbb{E}c1$ a2 12. $\mathbb{E}a1$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 13. $\mathbb{E}f2$ $\mathbb{E}xe6$ 14. $\mathbb{E}e3$ Black still stands better, but a draw seems very likely.

The Rook in Front of the Pawn, with the Pawn on the Seventh Rank

We have seen a section with an identical title in the theory of “a rook and a rook pawn versus a rook” endgames. The ideas from that section will be useful for our current considerations.

A pawn advance to the seventh rank absolutely shackles the opponent's forces. However, if there are no vulnerable points in his camp, the game is still drawn because a king march to the pawn is useless: no refuge from rook checks from behind is provided.

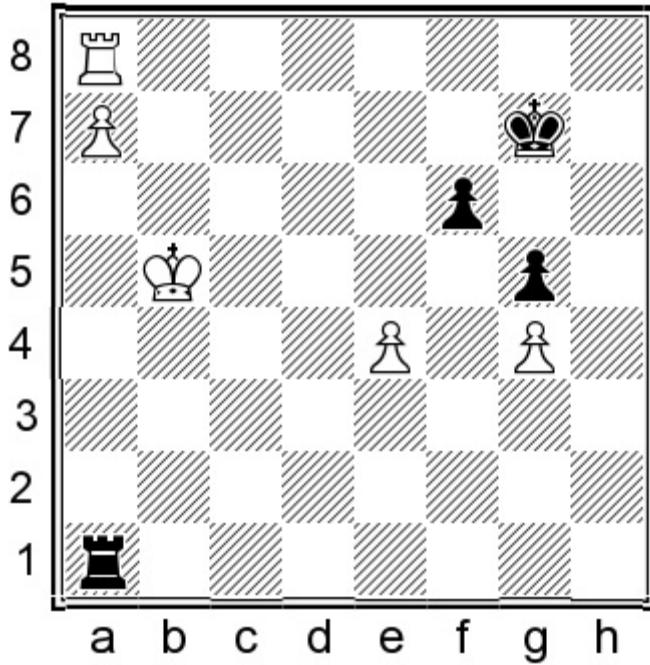
Pushing the pawn to the seventh rank makes sense, and offers winning chances when one of the following three plans is possible:

Plan 1

It is sometimes possible to sacrifice the passed pawn, in order to exchange rooks by means of a seventh-rank check, transposing into a won pawn endgame.

Benko – Gereben

Budapest 1951



9-140

W

If the pawn stood on a6, then after 1.♔b6, the king could escape the checks at a7. But here, the king has no shelter, so White's only hope lies in the exchange of rooks.

1.♕b6 ♜b1+ 2.♕c6 ♜c1+ 3.♕d6 ♜a1?

The key question in a pawn endgame will be: Who controls the opposition? After this mistake, it turns out to be White. Black had to continue 3...♜d1+! 4.♕e6 ♜a1 5.♜d8 (5.♜e8 ♜a6+! 6.♕f5 ♜xa7=) 5...♜xa7 6.♜d7+ ♜xd7 7.♕xd7 ♔h7!= Note that Black must have the distant opposition, not the close one: 7...♕f7? 8.♕d6+= We examined very nearly the same situation in the pawn endings chapter (Neishtadt's study, diagram 1-8).

4.♜c8! (of course not 4.♜e8? ♜a6+!) 4...♜a6+ 5.♜c6 ♜xa7 6.♜c7+ ♜xc7 7.♕xc7

Now White has the distant opposition! There followed: 7...♔h7 8.♕d7! ♔g6 9.♕e6 ♔g7 10.♕e7 ♔g6 11.♕f8 Black resigned.

Plan 2

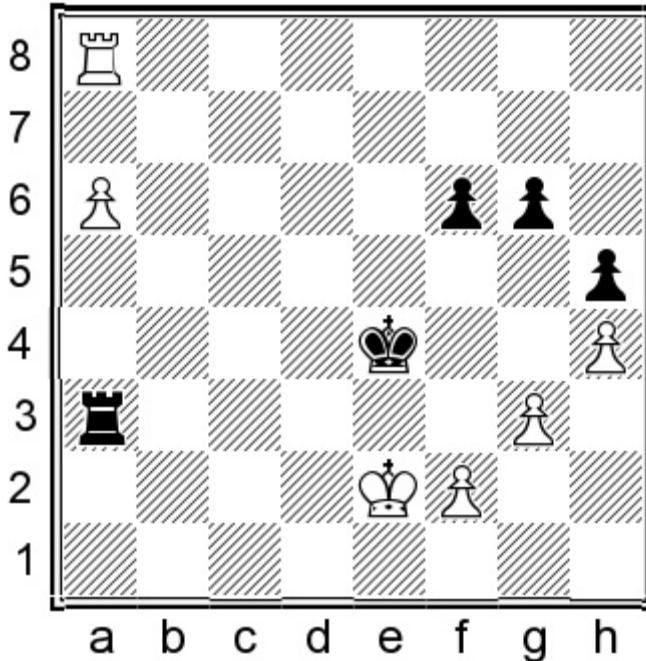
Sometimes the passed pawn can be exchanged for some of the enemy pawns, leading to a winning

endgame with the pawns all on the same side.

The following endgame is very important: we shall find ourselves referring to it again and again.

Unzicker – Lundin

Amsterdam ol 1954



9-141

W?

1.f3+! (1.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ Δ 2... $\mathbb{Q}f3$)

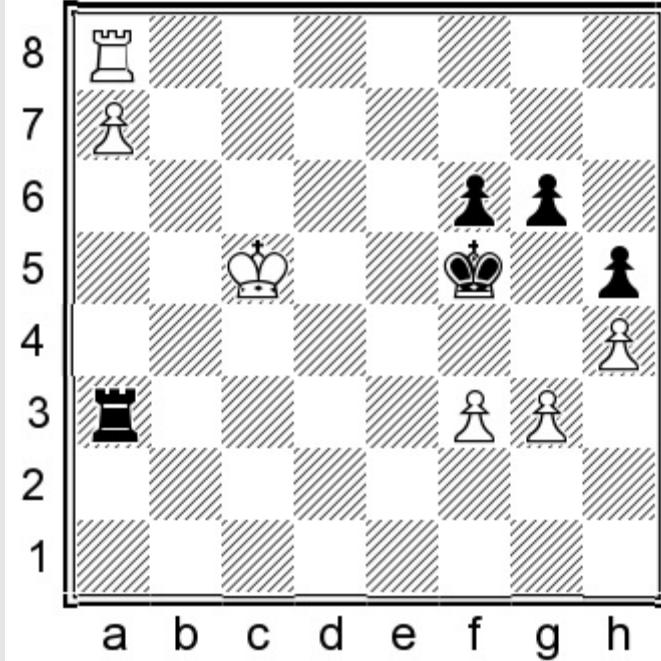
1.f3+! $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2.a7! $\mathbb{Q}a2+$

2... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ changes nothing: 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

Observe the following tactical trick: 4.g4+ hxg4 5.fxg4+ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 6.h5! But Black draws with 6... $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7=$. In addition, in this particular position it also fails because 4.g4+? can be met with 4... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$

4... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$



9-142

B

When Black's pawn stands on f7, his king can return to f6 or g7 with an absolutely drawn position. Here, however, White has a clear plan: the transfer of the king to h6 followed by an exchange of the a7-pawn for Black's kingside pawns. Black has nothing to oppose this plan.

If 6... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 8.a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$, the simplest solution is 10. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ g5 11.hxg5 fxg5 12. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ h4 13.gxh4 gxh4 14. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a8$.

6... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$?! (7... $\mathbb{Q}a6$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7$??!

White follows his plan, missing an immediate winning opportunity: 8. $\mathbb{Q}c8$! Δ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ #

8... $\mathbb{Q}a6$

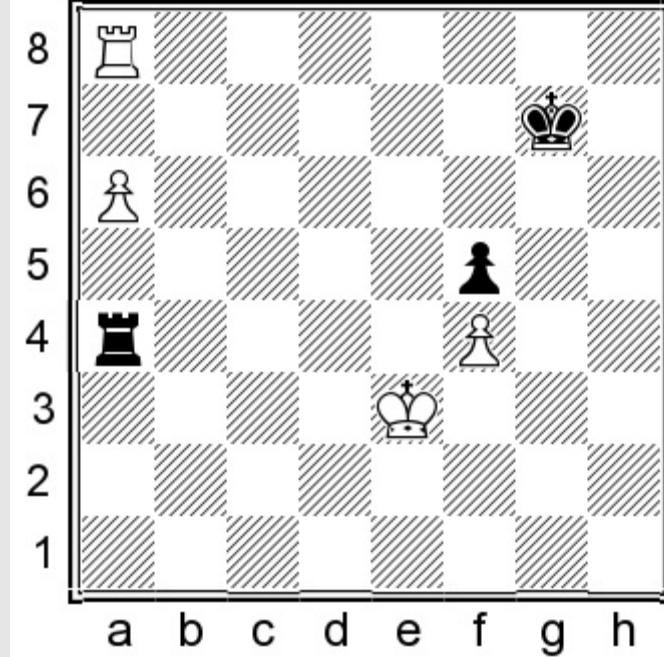
8... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ is slightly more clever; the point is 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7$?! $\mathbb{Q}a6$! 10. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ g5 11.hxg5 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13.g4+? hxg4 14.fxg4+ $\mathbb{Q}f4$, with an important difference: the f6-pawn is protected by the rook. The squares a6 and f7 are corresponding; the simplest way for White to circumvent the mined square is by playing 9. $\mathbb{Q}f8$! $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7$! \mathbb{O} 10... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g7$, and 11...g5 is absolutely hopeless here.

9. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h6$! $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ + $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 16.g4 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ + 17. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ Black resigned.

Plan 3

The most important method of playing for the win with the pawn on the seventh rank is to try to win the rook for the passed pawn. For this to work, the enemy king must be decoyed into the path of a rook check (as, for instance, we tried to do in the Unzicker-Lundin endgame, in the 4.g4+? variation). Most often, the stronger side will try to create a kingside passed pawn, which will knock the king out of his

safe g7-square. An important point to remember is that this end can be achieved by advancing a bishop's pawn, but a knight's or rook's pawn is generally useless.



9-143

W

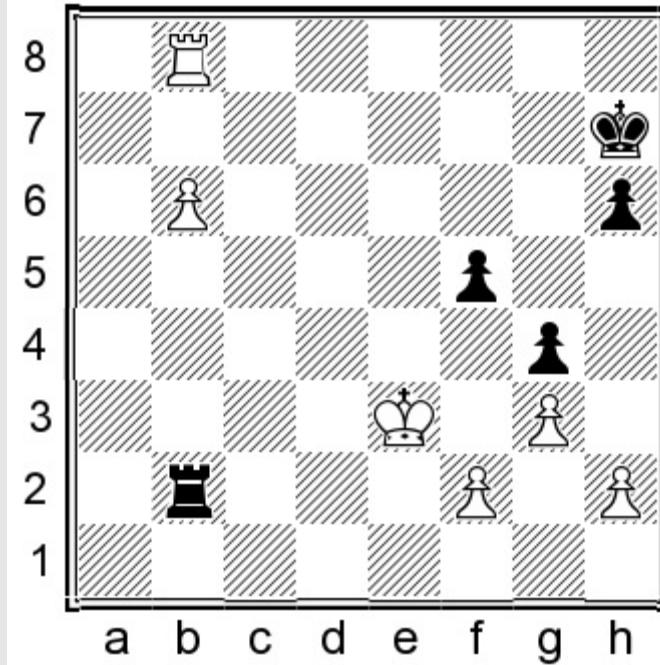
1.a7!

This renders the f4-pawn untouchable; now the king goes after the black pawn, which must fall, because of zugzwang.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6\mathcal{O}$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6\mathcal{O}+-$

It should be noted that the inexact 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6?!$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ leaves White, not Black, in zugzwang (9. $\mathbb{Q}d8??$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ leads to a drawn pawn endgame). But he can easily give his opponent the move by playing 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$, and now either 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f7\mathcal{O}$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6$, or 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (threatening 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e6\mathcal{O}+-$

Rovner – Shchipunov
Kiev 1938 (sides reversed)



9-144

W

1.b7

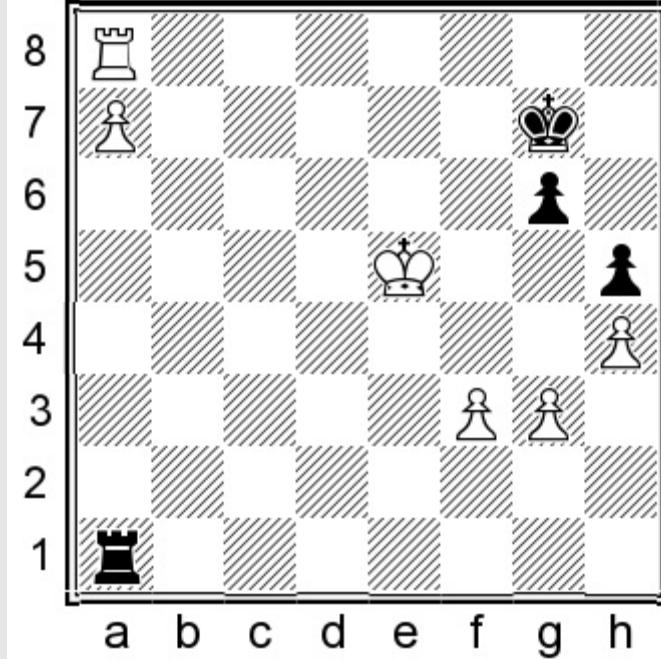
As we have just seen, Black inevitably loses his f-pawn. But, in contrast to the previous example, White fails to get a passed f-pawn. 1.♔d4 is not met by 1...♝xf2? but by 1...h5=

1.b7 ♔g7 2.♔d4 ♜b5 3.♔c4 ♜b2 4.♔d5 ♜d2+! 5.♔e5 ♜e2+ 6.♔xf5 ♜xf2+ 7.♔xg4 ♜b2

Even two extra pawns cannot bring the advantage home. The game was drawn.

A slightly more complicated example of the same theme.

R. Kholmov 1983



9-145
W

Here again, two extra pawns are not sufficient for a win. Black can easily prevent creation of a passed f-pawn.

1. ♕f4

The threat is 2.g4 ♜a4+ (2...hxg4 3. ♔xg4 Δ h4-h5+-) 3. ♔g3 hxg4 4.f4!, followed by h4-h5.

The immediate 1.g4 hxg4 2.fxg4 leads to an obvious draw. Black need only remember to harass his opponent with checks from the rear when the white king comes to the sixth rank, otherwise a winning pawn endgame can arise.

1. ♕f4 ♜a4+! 2. ♔e3 ♜a3+ 3. ♔f2 ♜a2+ 4. ♔g1 ♜a1+! (the simplest, although 4...♜a3 5.g4 hxg4 6.f4! ♔h7! also holds) **5. ♔g2 ♜a2+ 6. ♔h3 ♜a3**

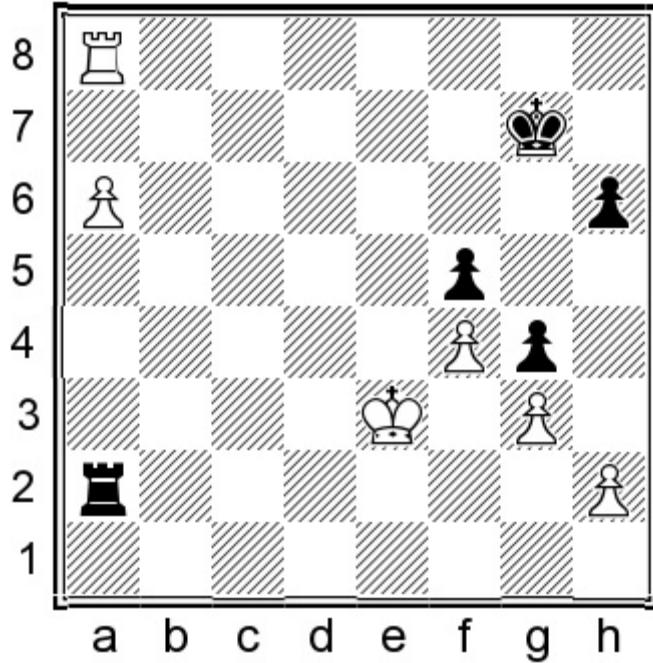
6...♜a4 7.f4 ♜a3 is also good.

7.f4 ♜a2 8.g4 ♜a3+

The king can only escape from the checks by approaching the rook, but this is too dangerous: Black takes on g4 and his g-pawn rushes to the promotion square.

Let us examine two considerably more complex and eventful examples.

M. Dvoretsky 2003



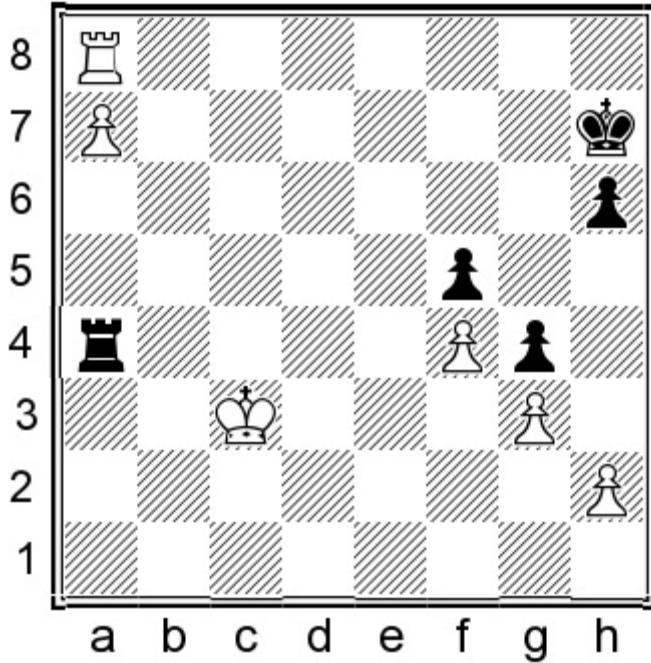
9-146
\$
W?

1.a7!

White's plan is clear: his king will go after the f5-pawn. If the Black h-pawn were at h5, White would win without the slightest difficulty – just as he does in diagram 9-143. However, with the pawn at h6 instead, Black has counter-chances involving the attempt to zip the king up in the stalemate haven at h5. With this configuration, this stalemate defense is well-known from pawn endgames; it does not appear to have been employed before in a rook endgame.

After 1. $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ $\mathbb{R}xh2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5$, Black saves himself by playing for stalemate: 2... $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 3.a7 $\mathbb{R}a2$ 4. $\mathbb{R}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 5.a8=+= $\mathbb{R}a5(e2)+$ – the rook has become a desperado, or 3. $\mathbb{R}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 4. $\mathbb{R}f8$ $\mathbb{R}e2+!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{R}a2=$) 5... $\mathbb{R}e8!=$

1.a7! $\mathbb{R}a4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$



9-147
B

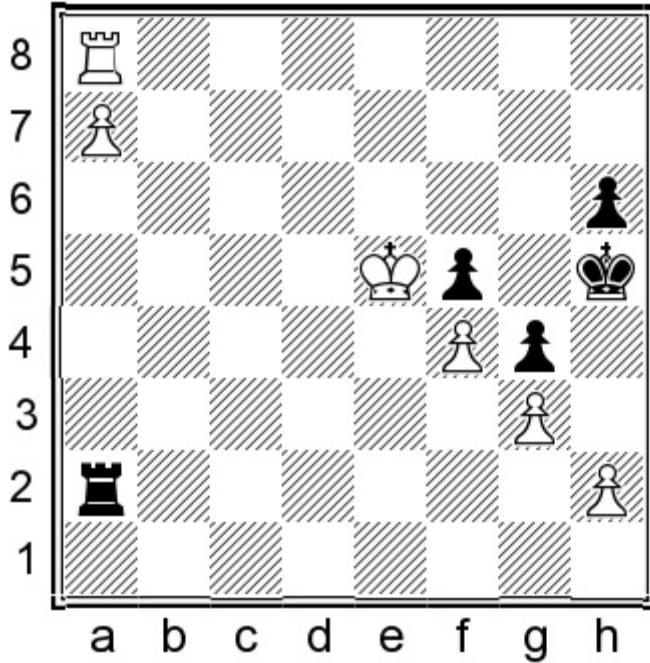
3... $\mathbb{Q}g7$

The clever attempt $3...\mathbb{Q}g6!?$ suggested by Gansäuer, is refuted by means of $4.h3!! \mathbb{Q}xh3$ ($4...\mathbb{Q}h5$ $5.\mathbb{Q}xg4+\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $6.\mathbb{Q}g8+\mathbb{Q}h5$ $7.g4+!)$ $5.\mathbb{Q}g8+\mathbb{Q}h5$ $6.a8=\mathbb{W}$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $7.\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $8.\mathbb{Q}d4$ $h2$ $9.\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $10.\mathbb{Q}e5+-$ Note that White wins only because his king can get to e5 in time. If White's king had been cut off on the second rank in the starting position, then as soon as it gets to c2 (or even d2), Black plays ... $\mathbb{Q}g6!$, and the move h2-h3 no longer works.

But what would happen if Black's king could reach h5? We shall see about this in the next annotation.

4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

$5.\mathbb{Q}b4!?$ is not precise because of $5...\mathbb{Q}g6!$, as the move $6.h3?$ no longer works since the white king is too far away from the f5-pawn. Interesting lines arise after $6.\mathbb{Q}c5?$ $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $7.\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $8.\mathbb{Q}e5$



9-148

B?

The obvious 8... $\mathbb{E}a5+?$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{E}a6+$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 10.h3!!) 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{E}xa7$ would lose to 11.h3!! $\mathbb{E}f7+$ (mate was threatened) 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{E}b7$ 13.hxg4+ (13. $\mathbb{E}a5+ \mathbb{Q}g6$ 14.hxg4 $\mathbb{E}b3$ is less convincing) 13... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 14. $\mathbb{E}g8+ \mathbb{Q}h5$ 15.g4+ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 16.f5

8... $\mathbb{E}e2+!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{E}e7!!$ (but not 9... $\mathbb{E}e8?$ 10.h3!!+–) is much stronger. It is reciprocal zugzwang! If 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ Black can already sacrifice his rook: 10... $\mathbb{E}e8!=$ So White must give up his a-pawn: 10. $\mathbb{E}d8 \mathbb{E}xa7$, but here I do not see a clear way to win. For example, 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 12.f5+ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 13. $\mathbb{E}g8+ \mathbb{Q}h5=$ or 11. $\mathbb{E}d5 \mathbb{E}a6.$

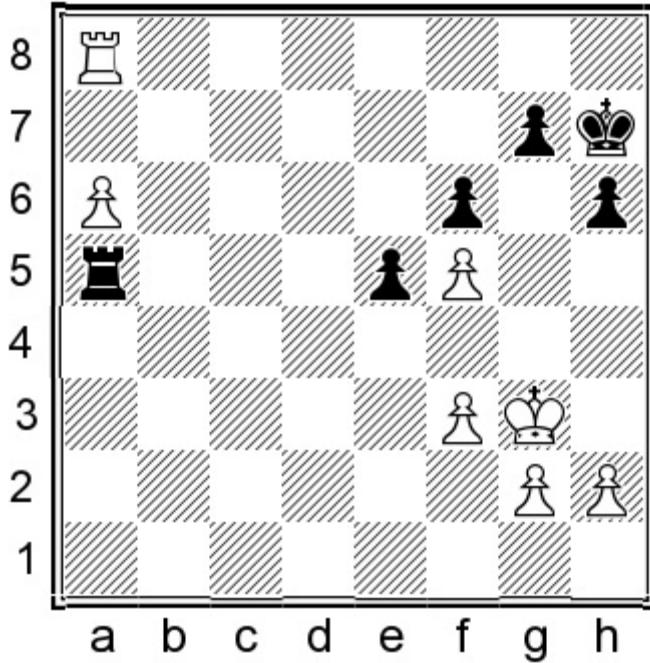
5... $\mathbb{E}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{E}a1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{E}a6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{E}a1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{E}a5+ 10.\mathbb{Q}e6\mathbb{O}$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}g6!?$

On 10... $\mathbb{Q}h7$, the simplest reply is 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6\mathbb{O}$ Also possible is 11. $\mathbb{E}d8 \mathbb{E}xa7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$, obtaining a won ending with all the pawns on the same side – though not, of course, 12. $\mathbb{E}d7+?$ $\mathbb{E}xd7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd7 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}h5!=$

11.h3!! $\mathbb{E}a6+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ gxh3 13. $\mathbb{E}g8+ \mathbb{Q}h5$ 14.a8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{E}xa8$ 15. $\mathbb{E}xa8 \mathbb{Q}g4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f6+–$

Zurakhov – Vaisman

USSR 1966



9-149

W

1.a7?!

Leaving the pawn on a6 made more sense. White could then have played h2-h4-h5 and $\mathbb{Q}a7$, after which his king goes to the queenside at the cost of the g-pawn (or the f3-pawn if he could not avoid g2-g4). The win would be rather easy because the black king would be forever locked on h7.

With his actual move, White plans h2-h4 and g2-g4-g5. After a forced double capture on g5, he wants to take the g5 and e5 pawns with his king and to play f5-f6 thereafter.

1... $\mathbb{Q}a2$

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}a3$? ($\Delta 2...e4!=$), then both 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ and 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ are good. Black only postpones an advance of the white kingside pawns for a while but cannot prevent it.

2.h4 $\mathbb{Q}a3$

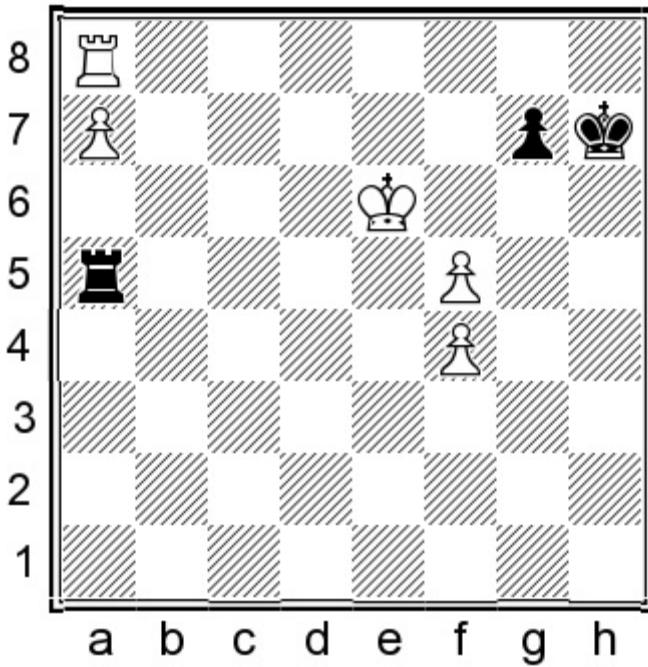
2...h5? loses immediately. After 3. $\mathbb{Q}h3$, Black has no defense against g2-g4-g5-g6+.

3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

This is correct. White's task is simpler when the king hides behind the pawns. 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ is also playable, but then White has to show more attention and accuracy. Black would respond with 4... $\mathbb{Q}a5$? and on the indecisive 5.g3? Would save the game by means of 5...e4! 6.fxe4 g6+ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ gxf5+ (rather than 7...h5+? 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ gxf5 9. $\mathbb{Q}f8$! $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 12.e5) 8.exf5 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ h5=

After 5.g4!, however, both 5...g6+? 6.fxg6+ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7.g5 hxg5 8.hxg5 fxg5 (8...e4 9. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$! O+- and 5...e4? 6.g5 (6.fxe4?? g6#) 6...hxg5 7.hxg5 g6+ 8.fxg6+ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e8$!+- (or 9.f4!? f5 10. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ +-) fail. Black has to play 5... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 6.g5 hxg5 7.hxg5 fxg5, transposing to the game continuation.

3... $\mathbb{E}a2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}a3$ 5.g3O 5... $\mathbb{E}a2$ 6.g4 $\mathbb{E}a3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}a2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 9.g5 hxg5 10.hxg5 fxg5 11. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}h4+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g3O$ 13... $\mathbb{E}a1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}g1+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}a3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h4O$ 18... $\mathbb{E}a4+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g3O$ 20... $\mathbb{E}a5$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}a3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 30.f4 $\mathbb{E}a5+$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}e6$



9-150

B

31... $\mathbb{E}a1!$

31... $\mathbb{E}a6?$ loses to 32. $\mathbb{Q}e7!O$ 32... $\mathbb{E}a4$ 33.f6! gxf6 34. $\mathbb{Q}f7!O$ 34... $\mathbb{E}a6$ (34...f5 35. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}f6O$ +-) 35.f5. The same zugzwang position (with Black on move) arises after 31... $\mathbb{E}a4?$ 32. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}e7$.

Now 32.f6 does not bring an easy win in view of 32... $\mathbb{E}a6+$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (33. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{E}xf6+$) 33...gxf6 34. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (34.f5 $\mathbb{Q}g7$) 34... $\mathbb{E}a4!$ 35.f5 $\mathbb{E}a6$.

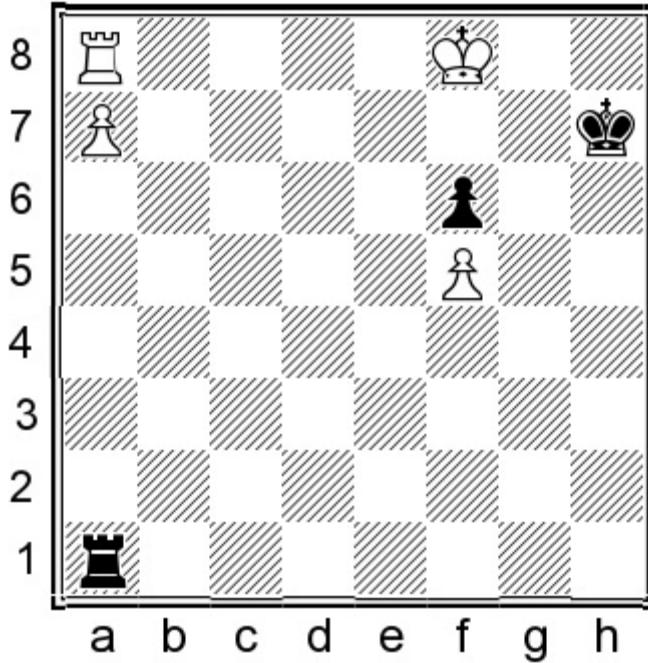
32. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{E}a6!$

Only this prevents the menacing advance f5-f6. 32... $\mathbb{E}a4?$ 33.f6 gxf6 34. $\mathbb{Q}f7O$ is an error. We may come to the conclusion that the squares f7/a4 and e7/a6 are corresponding; this is a case of reciprocal zugzwang. And if Black defends himself correctly, he does not fall into the zugzwang.

33. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{E}a4!$

On 33... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ White could have passed the move to his adversary by means of triangulation: 34. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}e7O+-$

34. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (34.f6 gxf6 35.f5 $\mathbb{E}a6O$) 34... $\mathbb{E}a5$ (34... $\mathbb{E}a6?$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}e7O+-$) 35.f6 (he has nothing else) 35...gxf6 36.f5 $\mathbb{E}a1$ (36... $\mathbb{E}a6?$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}f7!O+-$)



9-151

W?

37.♕e8?

This natural move (White intends a transition to a winning pawn endgame) is wrong. Black has a defense based upon stalemate! Dolmatov suggested the correct procedure:

37.♔f7! (it is important to drive the rook to a6) 37...♜a6 38.♔e7! (by the way, after the immediate 37.♔e7? ♔g7, there is no longer a win) 38...♔g7 (White could of course have had this position earlier) 39.♔d8! (39.♔e8?! ♔g8!) 39...♜a1 (both 39...♔g8 40.♔c7+ ♔g7 41.♔b7 and 39...♔h6 40.♔c7 ♔g5 41.♔g8+ ♔xf5 42.a8=♛ ♜xa8 43.♜xa8 are hopeless) 40.♔c8! ♜xa7 41.♔c7+ ♜xc7 42.♔xc7 ♔h6 43.♔d7 ♔h5 44.♔e7! ♔g5 45.♔e6○+-

37...♜xa7 38.♔e7+ ♔h8! 39.♔f7

White cannot take the rook because of stalemate. Hence he goes for the f6-pawn.

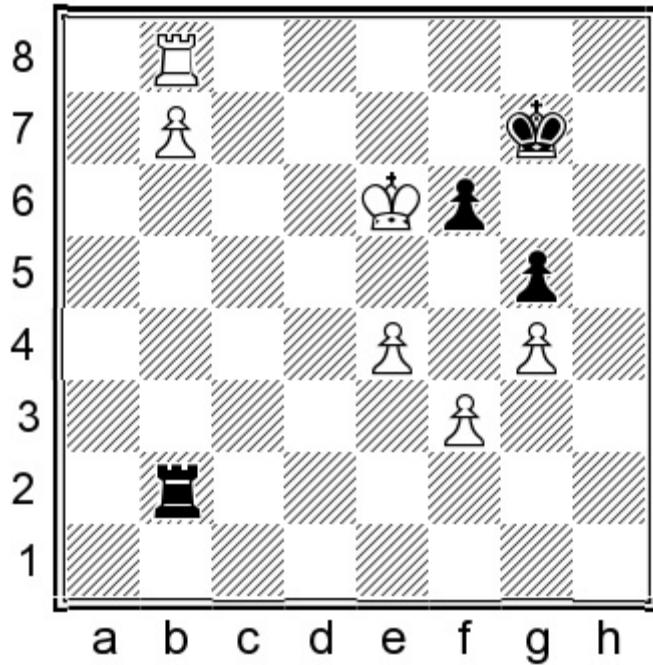
39...♜a6 (39...♜a1 is also good) **40.♔g6 ♜a8 41.♔xf6 ♔g8??**

A serious mistake when the goal was within reach. The draw could be achieved by means of 41...♜a6+ (41...♜a1) 42.♔e6 (42.♔f7 ♔h7 43.f6 ♜a8, or 43...♜a1, but not 43...♜b6??) 42...♜a1! 43.♔g6 ♜g1+ 44.♔f7 ♔h7 (44...♜g7+) 45.f6 ♜g7+! 46.♔e8 (46.fxg7 – stalemate) 46...♜g8+ and the rook returns to the long side.

42.♔g6 Black resigned.

Tragomedies

Pähtz – Kosteniuk
Mainz m (5) 2002



9-152

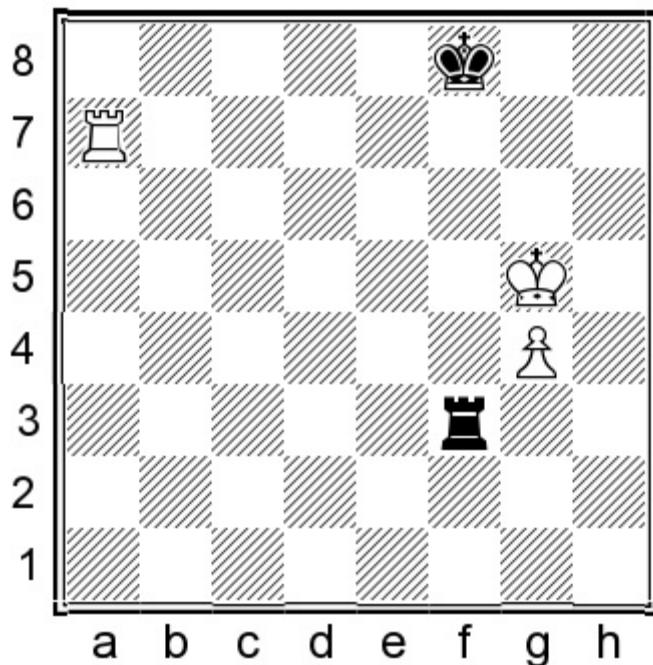
W?

The main distinction between this position and the very similar endgame Benko-Gereben (diagram 9-140), is that here White has a pawn at f3, thanks to which every possible pawn endgame is won. An elementary path to victory lay in 1. $\mathbb{R}d8!$ $\mathbb{R}b6+$ 2. $\mathbb{R}d6$ $\mathbb{R}xb7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d7+$ $\mathbb{R}xd7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$.

1. $\mathbb{R}e8??$ $\mathbb{R}b6+!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{R}xb7$

The position has now become drawn – but the adventures have not ended yet.

3. e5 fxe5 4. $\mathbb{R}xe5$ $\mathbb{R}f7+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{R}xf3$ 6. $\mathbb{R}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{R}a7$



9-153

B?

7... $\mathbb{E}c3??$

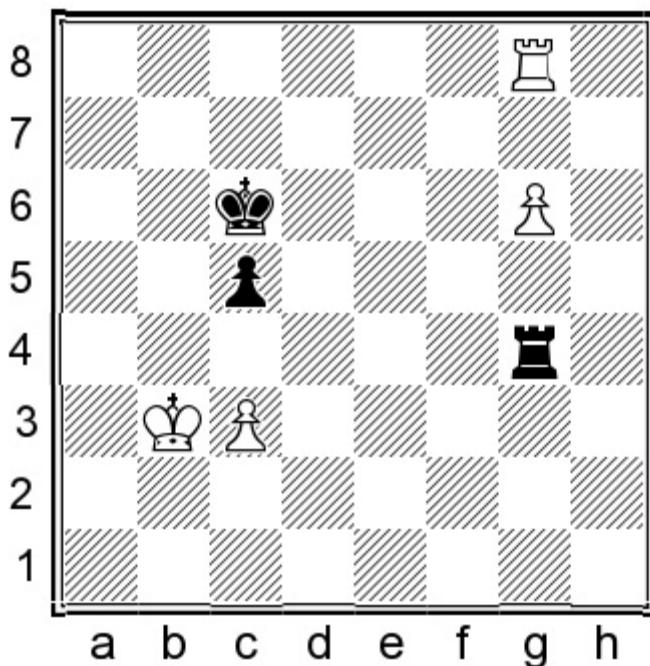
7... $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{E}f8=$ was necessary. As we know, against a knight pawn, passive defense by the rook on the eighth rank guarantees a draw.

8. $\mathbb{Q}h5??$ After 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ White must reach the “Lucena Position,” for example, 8... $\mathbb{E}c6+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h7 \mathbb{E}c5$ 10. $\mathbb{E}g7$.

8... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{E}d7 \mathbb{E}c6$ And now we have reached “Philidor’s Position.” The game was eventually drawn.

Ljubojevic – Gligoric

Belgrade m (9) 1979



9-154

W

1.g7 $\mathbb{Q}b7??$

1...c4+! 2. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}a7$ led to a draw. White’s king cannot stop both the rook and the king at the same time. After 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$, the rook is released from the burden of protecting the pawn.

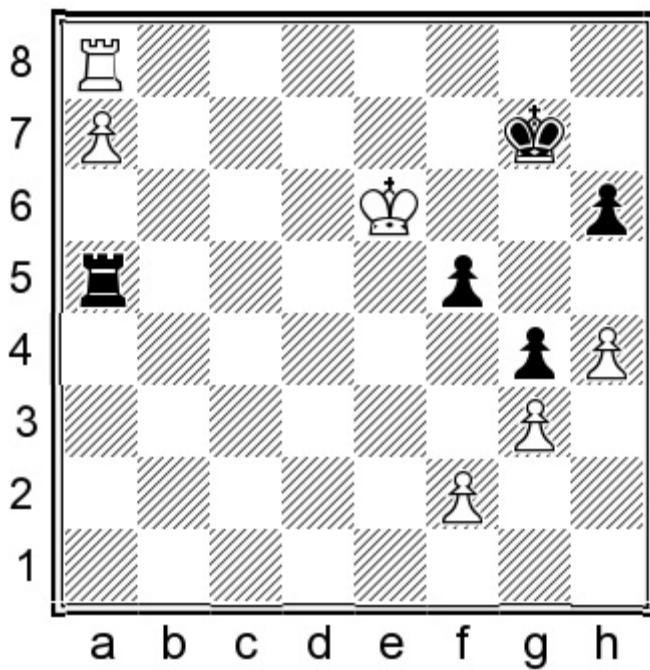
2.c4! $\mathbb{E}g2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

Black resigned. The white king goes through the center to the c5-pawn and wins it by means of zugzwang.

Milic and Bozic annotated this endgame for *Chess Informant* 27. In their opinion, White could have won after 1.c4 $\mathbb{E}g3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2$. But they are obviously wrong: 2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3.g7 $\mathbb{Q}e6(e7)$ leads to a drawn pawn endgame, while after 2. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 3.g7 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{E}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{E}g3!$, White’s king cannot break

loose.

Y.Averbakh



9-155

B

This example is taken from Averbakh's endgame handbook. It is amusing not only in itself, but also because of several grave errors committed by this famous connoisseur of endgame theory. Averbakh believes the position is drawn on account of 1... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}a2=$. Black applied this defensive method in a similar situation in Rovner-Shchipunov (diagram 9-144). But there, first of all, White's king was less active and he was unable to force the exchange of rooks. Second, White's pawn was at h2, which means the pawn endgame would still have been a draw. But here, with the pawn at h4, the pawn endgame is won!

2. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ (instead of 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf5?$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (Black's last hope is a chance for stalemate) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6! \mathbb{O}$ 6... $f4$ 7. $gxf4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$ (or 8. $f5+-$).

Another try is 1... $h5!?$ Levenfish and Smyslov analyze this in their book on rook-and-pawn endings. They convincingly prove that the outcome depends on whose turn it is to move.

Black, if on move, achieves a draw as follows: 2... $\mathbb{Q}a6+!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ or 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}a3?$ is wrong in view of 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$, but 3... $\mathbb{Q}a4!=$ is also playable) 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $f4!=$

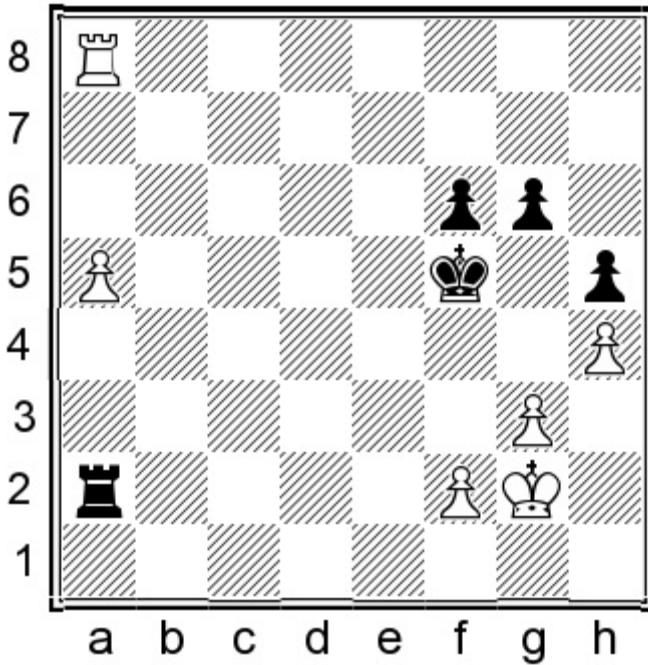
If White is on move, he wins by 2. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ (Averbakh only examines 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a2=$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (otherwise 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ (Δ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f8\mathbb{O}$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f5+-$

Averbakh's evaluations are the opposite: he suggests passing the move to the adversary. Therefore almost all his analysis is erroneous!

2.†d6? (! Averbakh) **2...†h7?** (2...†a6+!) **3.†e7?** (3.†c6! †a2 4.†d8! †xa7 5.†d7+ †xd7 6.†xd7 and 3.†e6! †g7 4.†e8! or 3...†a6+ 4.†e5! †g7 5.†f4! are winning) **3...†g7 4.†e6 †a2?** (4...†a6+!) **5.†xf5?** (5.†e8!+-) **5...†a5+** (5...†xf2+? 6.†g5 †a2 7.†xh5 †a4 8.†e8 †xa7 9.†xg4) **6.†f4 †h7??** (6...†a4+ is a draw) **7.†f8!** †xa7 **8.†g5 †a5+ 9.†f5+-**

Exercises

These two exercises are not complicated; in fact, they could have been included in the previous “Tragedies.”



9-156

9/21

B?

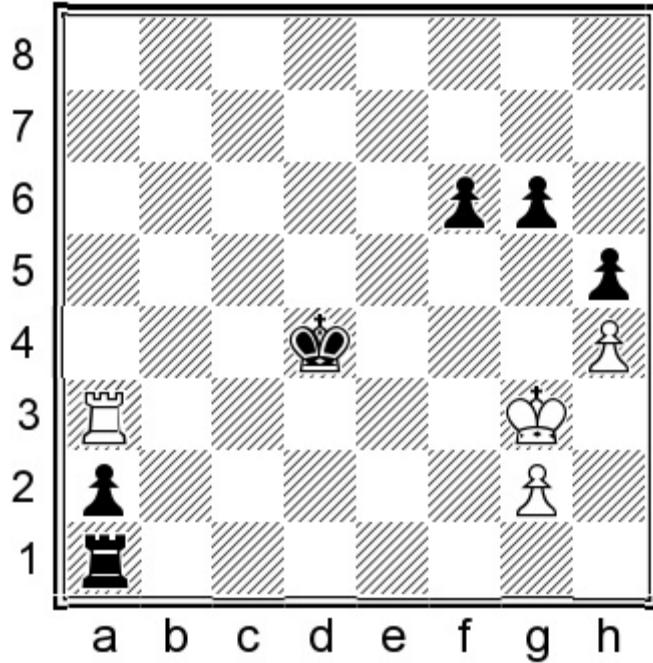
Show/Hide Solution

9/21. Fernandez Garcia-Kotronias, Dubai ol 1986

The game continued 1...†a3?? 2.a6 †a2 3.a7 †a3 (3...†g4 4.†f8 †xa7 5.†xf6+–) 4.f3!+-, and we already know the rest from the ending Unzicker-Lundin.

A draw could be reached after 1...g5! 2.hxg5 fxg5 3.a6 †g6 4.†f1 (Δ 5.a7 †g7 6.f4+–) 4...g4=.

1...†e6!? 2.a6 †f7 3.†f3 (3.†a7+ †e6) 3...†g7 was also playable.



9-157
9/22
W?

Show/Hide Solution

9/22. Kholmov-Timoshchenko, USSR chsf, Pavlodar 1982

As Kholmov discovered after the game, he could have obtained a draw after 1. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ Δ 2. g3 (see diagram 9-145).

However, he actually played 1. $\mathbb{Q}a4+?$ $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ was threatened) 2. $\mathbb{Q}a8$, and after 2... f5!, his position became lost. Black's winning plan is simple: the pawn comes to f4, the king attacks the h4-pawn and, when this pawn is eliminated, Black gets a passed f-pawn.

3. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ f4) 3... f4+ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ h4 11. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ h3! 13. gxh3 f3 14. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ White resigned.

The Rook in Front of the Pawn, with the Pawn on the Sixth Rank

If a pawn advance to a7 makes no sense, White leaves the pawn on a6 and brings his king to the queenside where it has a refuge against vertical checks. But it is a long way to go, leaving the black rook enough time to capture one or two pawns, before it must be sacrificed for the a-pawn. This leads to a sharp “Rook vs. Pawns” endgame, the outcome of which will depend on whether White’s king can get back to the kingside in time.

For many years, it was believed that with correct defense, the draw was an easy matter, something Black could achieve with a couple of tempi to spare. This point of view was espoused in, among other places, the first edition of my *Endgame Manual*.

In the latter half of 2003, the theory of this portion of the endgame underwent some revolutionary changes. Black’s position, it turned out, was far more dangerous than it had seemed.

Johannes Steckner, a German player originally from Hamburg and now living in Switzerland, while checking the analysis of one of the basic positions which had been considered drawn, found a tremendous improvement for White, leading to a win. And his discovery led, in turn, to new researches that were conducted by Steckner, grandmasters Karsten Müller and Rustem Dautov, along with other endgame connoisseurs. The results of that research were reflected in the Russian edition of the *Endgame Manual*, as well as the second and third releases of the American edition and the second, third, and fourth releases of the German edition.

The development of this theory has not remained static. In late 2011, an Armenian chess aficionado, Vardan Pogosyan, found a new method of defense and showed that the position under consideration was nevertheless drawn. Pogosyan also made substantial refinements in the analysis of other endings in this section, and his work was published in the fourth American edition of the *Endgame Manual*.

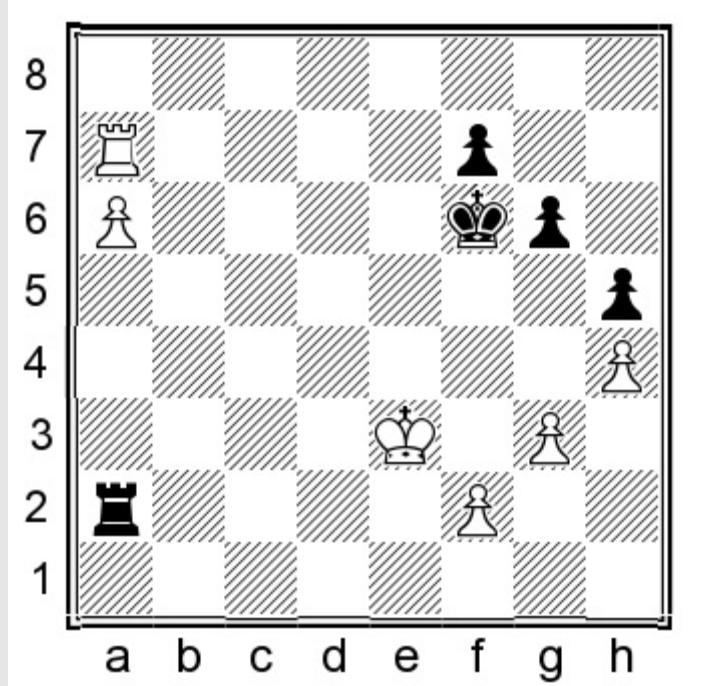
More ideas have been found since. This fifth edition of the *Endgame Manual* brings a new defensive method found by grandmaster Jacob Aagaard, who published it in a Quality Chess blogpost in 2014, and a new drawing method in Pogosyan’s main line, found even more recently by grandmaster Erwin L’Ami.

Here I shall present only the most important and interesting variations, omitting many of the analytical details. For those who seek more detailed information, I would recommend visiting www.chesscafe.com and looking for my articles published in October/November 2003, as well as articles by Karsten Müller, the last of which, dedicated to Pogosyan’s discoveries, was published in March 2012.

Nevertheless, even in edited form, the material I offer you for your consideration is so large and complex, that it clearly exceeds the boundaries I tried to maintain when I wrote this *Endgame Manual*. The excuse I offer is its newness and enormous practical significance to the theory of this sort of endgame. Also, computers have recently begun to correctly analyze many of these variations, making the truth more accessible to today’s grandmasters who know where to look. We don’t want our readers to be left behind.

Even so, nothing could be further from my mind than to label the analysis presented below as the “last word of theory,” for long, complicated variations do not always turn out to be error-free. But in any case, they go a long way to correct and develop the pre-existing conclusions, and may in turn serve as a starting point for additional theoretical research.

V.Kantorovich 1989/J.Steckner 2003, et al.



9-158

W

In 1989, Vadim Kantorovich, of Moscow, published an interesting article titled, *The Outside Passed Pawn*. The article opened with the diagrammed position. It showed how Black quickly captures two pawns on the kingside, and the conclusion was: Black draws with two tempi to spare. But in fact, this method does not work, and a much more refined plan is required.

We present this important position in several stages. First, let's see how White wins if Black chooses the old, and now refuted, recipe of capturing the pawn on f2.

I. Johannes Steckner's Amazing Discovery

1.♔d4!

The pawn must be sacrificed precisely with the rook on a7! 1.♖a8?! ♔f5 would be weaker. Please note that **Black's pieces are optimally placed: the rook holds the f-pawn in the crosshairs, while the king occupies the most active available square.**

Black would have an easy draw after 2.♔d4 ♕xf2 3.♕f8 ♕a2 4.♕xf7+ ♔g4= (Kantorovich), or 2.f3 ♕a3+ 3.♔d4 ♕xf3 4.♕f8 ♕a3 5.♕xf7+ ♔g4 6.♕f6 ♔xg3 7.♕xg6+ ♔xh4 8.♔c5 ♔h3 9.♔b6 h4= (Fine).

On 2.♕a7?!, the king should not pull back with 2...♔e6 or 2...♔f6, but Black can immediately begin

counterplay with 2...f6!? (2... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ does not lose either). After 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g5! 4.hxg5 fxg5 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ g4+ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$, the king gets back to g7, so White plays 3. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ instead, threatening to obtain a winning position with the pawn on the seventh, known to us from the Unzicker-Lundin game (diagram 9-141), by 4.f3 $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 7.a7.¹ But Black draws by playing 3... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4.a7 f5!? (4... $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f5+ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3=$ is also good) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ f4+! 6.gxf4 $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4=$ (analysis by Dvoretsky).

¹ Unzicker-Lundin game (diagram 9-141), by 4.f3 $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 7.a7.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2?$

In the next subsection, we will show the correct defense.

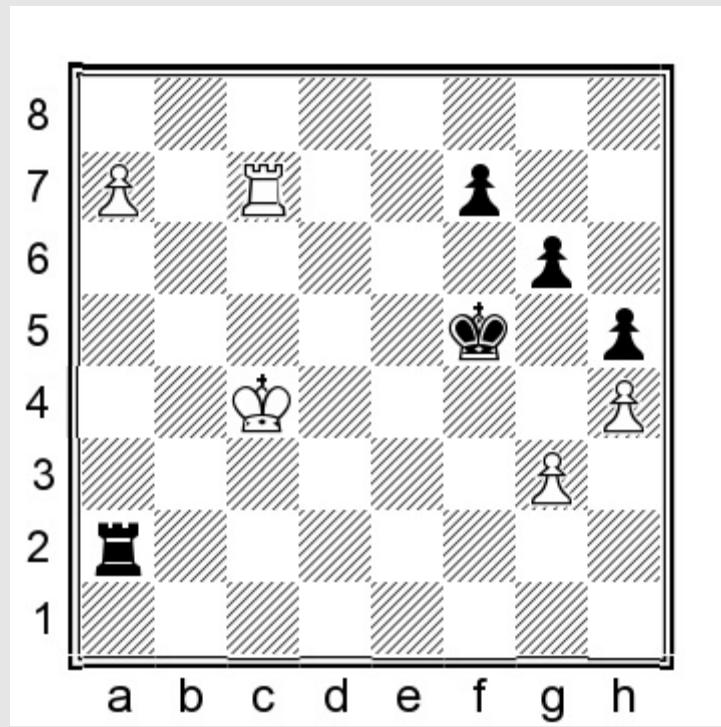
2. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$

The rook needs to go precisely here, to the c-file. The king is aiming for the b-file, where it can help the rook engineer an interference on the a-file. 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7?$ would only draw.

2... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 3.a7 $\mathbb{Q}f5$

Kantorovich's analysis continued 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7+=$ and the draw is obvious.

It was Steckner who offered the powerful improvement **4. $\mathbb{Q}c4!!$**



9-159
B

His idea becomes clear in the variation 4... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$

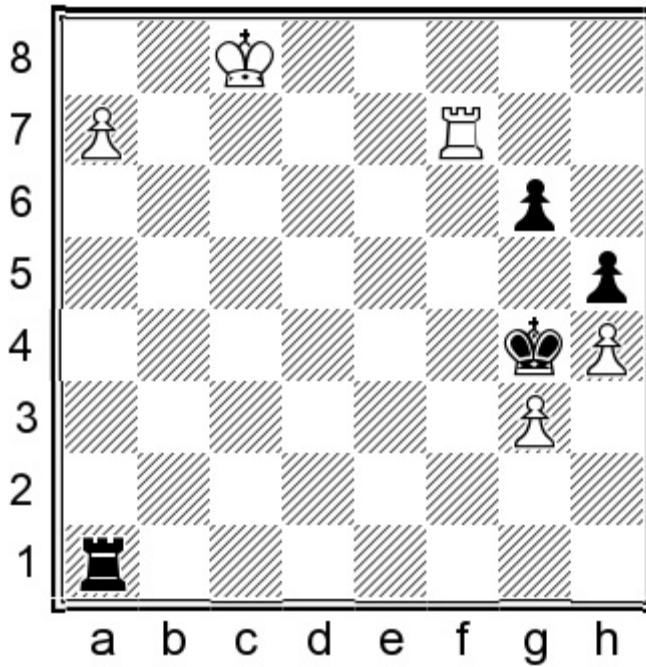
Now White forces the sacrifice of Black's rook without wasting time on the king's long march to a7, and wins move-on-move ("Chess is the tragedy of a single tempo!").

7... $\mathbb{E}xa7$ 8. $\mathbb{E}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ (there is no time to take the pawn: 9. $\mathbb{E}xf7?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 9... $\mathbb{Q}g3$

9...f5 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ g5 does not help: the rook can deal with all three pawns.

10. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ h4 11. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (11...h3 12. $\mathbb{Q}f1+-$) 12. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ h3 13. $\mathbb{E}f2+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 14. $\mathbb{E}f6+-$

Let's try a different defense, such as 4... $\mathbb{E}a1$, getting the rook away from the tempo-gaining $\mathbb{Q}b3$. After 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ however, the only way to forestall the threat of closing off the a-file is by a series of checks which drive the white king forward: 5... $\mathbb{E}b1+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{E}b1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$



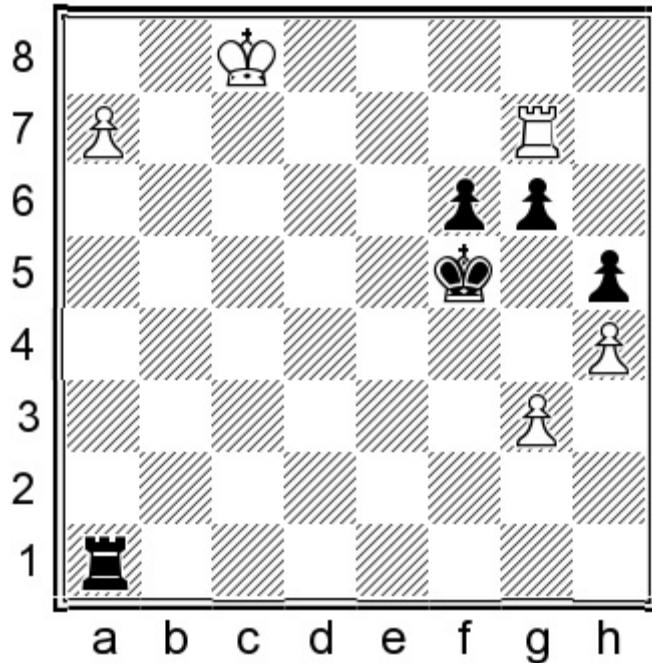
9-160

W?

and now 10. $\mathbb{E}g7!$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}b8?$ loses a critical tempo: 10... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 11. $\mathbb{E}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 12. $\mathbb{E}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{E}xa7+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ h4) 10... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 11. $\mathbb{E}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ with the deadly threat of $\mathbb{E}a6$, which forces Black to capture the pawn when he will be one move too late: 12... $\mathbb{E}xa7+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ h4 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ h3 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f3+-$

The only thing left to try is 4...f6. Here 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4?$ does not work because after 5... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 8. $\mathbb{E}a4$ $\mathbb{E}xa7$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xa7$, Black's pawn on f6 enables 9...g5 (which he did not have in the 4... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ line), leading to a draw.

Now comes a series of forced moves: 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{E}a2$, but here White also wins with 9. $\mathbb{E}g7!$



9-161

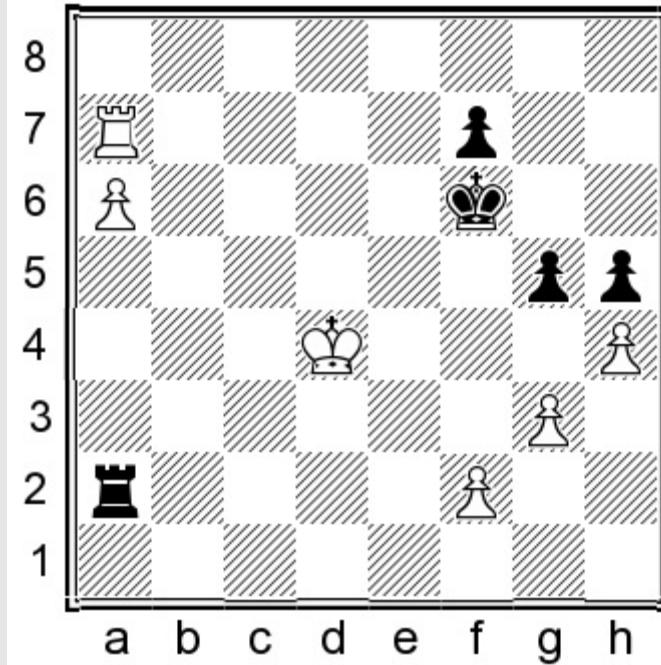
B

9...g5 10.♔b8 ♔g4 11.a8=♕ (but not 11.hxg5? fxg5 12.a8=♕ ♕xa8+ 13.♔xa8 h4 14.gxh4 ♔xh4 15.♔b7 g4 16.♔c6 ♔g3! 17.♔d5 ♔f3=) 11...♕xa8+ 12.♔xa8 ♔xg3 13.hxg5 fxg5 14.♕xg5+ ♔h4 15.♕g8 ♔h3 16.♔b7, and the king gets back to f3 in time.

At the start of this section, I presented a formula in the most general terms for how play might develop in this kind of ending. Now we can more precisely restate White's most dangerous plan. *The pawn advances to a6; the rook stands on a7, and at the first opportunity will move aside to c7, clearing the path of the pawn. White's king selects a path to advance which will allow him to execute the interference idea as quickly as possible – that is, moving the rook with tempo to the a-file.*

II. The Pogosyan/Aagaard Defense

Let's return to diagram 9-158. As Pogosyan found, Black can only save himself if, in reply to 1.♔d4!, he refrains from the immediate capture of the f2-pawn in favor of 1...g5!!



9-162

W

2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$

This move was considered particularly dangerous until grandmaster Jacob Aagaard found a very solid defense against it in 2014. After 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5$, the Aagaard method cannot be applied, but other methods work, as we show in the following subsections.

For now, let's examine two other tries for White:

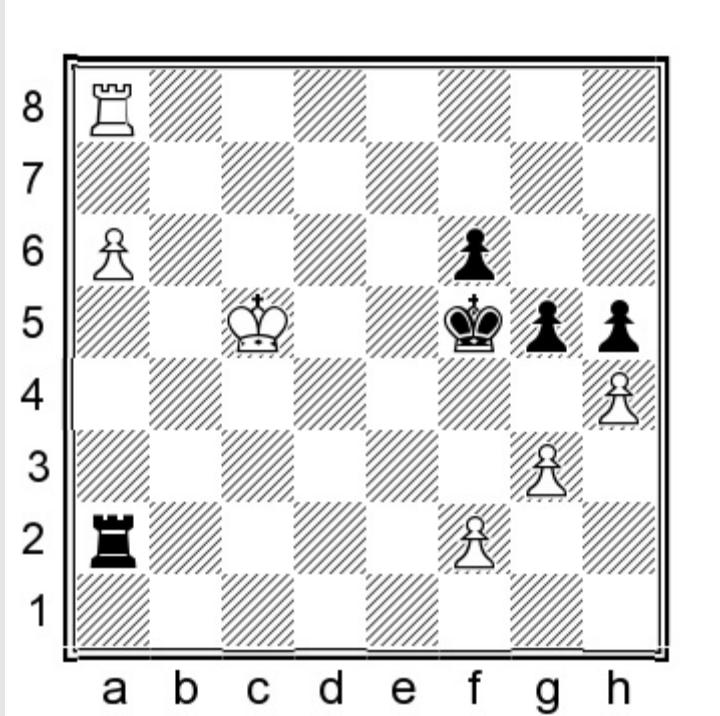
2. $h \times g5 + \mathbb{Q}xg5$ is not dangerous. For example, 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (there is also nothing in 3. $f3$ $h4!$ 4. $f4 + \mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $g \times h4 \mathbb{Q}xh4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}g4 =$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}xf2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{Q}b2 +$ (only not 5... $\mathbb{Q}xg3?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8 + \mathbb{Q}f3$ 7. $a7 \mathbb{Q}a2$ 8. $a8 = \mathbb{Q} + \mathbb{Q}xa8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $h4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h8 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4 + -$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}a2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g8 + \mathbb{Q}f3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}b2 +$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}a2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}b2 +$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a8 f5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g5 f4$ 13. $g \times f4$ $h4$ 14. $f5 \mathbb{Q}f4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h5 \mathbb{Q}g4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h8 \mathbb{Q}xf5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xh4 \mathbb{Q}e6$, and a well-known theoretical position has been reached: if the white rook tries to get to b8 to free the king from its imprisonment, the black king will have time to get on c7.

On 2. $f3$, there follows 2... $g \times h4$ 3. $g \times h4 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (Black's task is easier after 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{Q}f4$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}b2 + !$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}a2 !$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}c2 + ?$ loses to 7. $\mathbb{Q}d8 ! f5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h7 \mathbb{Q}a2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h6 ! \mathbb{Q}f4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}xf3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 12. $a7 \mathbb{Q}xa7 +$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xa7 \mathbb{Q}xh4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b6 + -$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}b8 f6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7 + \mathbb{Q}d6 !$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a7 \mathbb{Q}f5(e5) =$ (analysis by Wilbert Micawber).

2... $\mathbb{Q}g6 !$

This is Aagaard's discovery. By threatening ... $f7-f6$ and ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$, and not yet trading on $h4$, Black renders White's plans harmless. In the next subsections, we examine 2... $g \times h4 ?$ which loses, and 2... $g4$, which is another way to draw.

Now White has a choice after 3.♔c5 f6! 4.♕a8 ♔f5!



9-162a
W

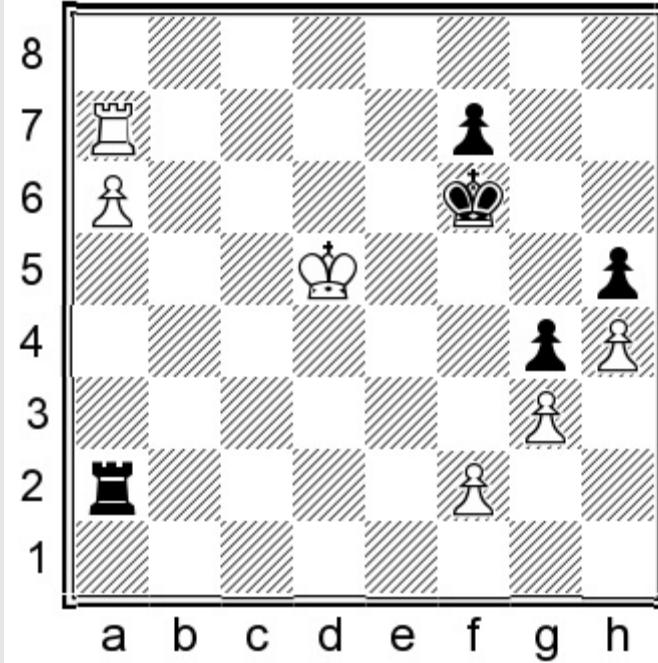
If he plays 5.♔b6 (5.hxg5 fxg5 6.a7 ♔g4= is not dangerous), it is important for Black to keep on resisting the pawn exchange on h4, because the object of counterattack is the g3-pawn which is still left on the board, for example, 5...♜xf2 6.♜b8 ♜b2+ 7.♚a7 ♜g2 8.♜b5+ ♔g4 9.♚b6 ♜e2= or 6.hxg5 ♜b2+ 7.♚c5 fxg5 8.a7 ♜a2 9.♜f8+ ♔g4 10.a8=♛ ♜xa8 11.♜xa8 ♔xg3 12.♚d4 h4!=

However, after 5.f3, the pawn exchange becomes possible (just like after 2.f3), as the f-pawn is closer to the king and the monarch has time to eliminate it: 5...gxh4! 6.gxh4 ♔f4 7.♚b6 ♜xf3= or 7...♜b2+ 8.♚a7 ♜xf3=

III. The Pogosyan-L'Ami Defense

After the moves 1.♔d4! g5!! 2.♔d5, which are already familiar to us, Pogosyan had discovered the drawing move 2...g4!

Diagrams 9-163, 9-164, 9-165, 9-166 and 9-167 have been intentionally omitted.



9-168

W

In fact, this was considered to be the only saving move until Aagaard found 2... $\mathbb{Q}g6$. The 2.... $g4$ method is also important, and **it works against both 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5$.**

White can direct his king to the passed pawn, to the enemy rook, or even to the eighth rank on the kingside. But none of these plans leads to a win if Black defends precisely. He checks and captures the f2-pawn at the appropriate moment, or, in the main line, can also save himself with a Vancura-like defense, found by GM Erwin L'Ami in 2019.

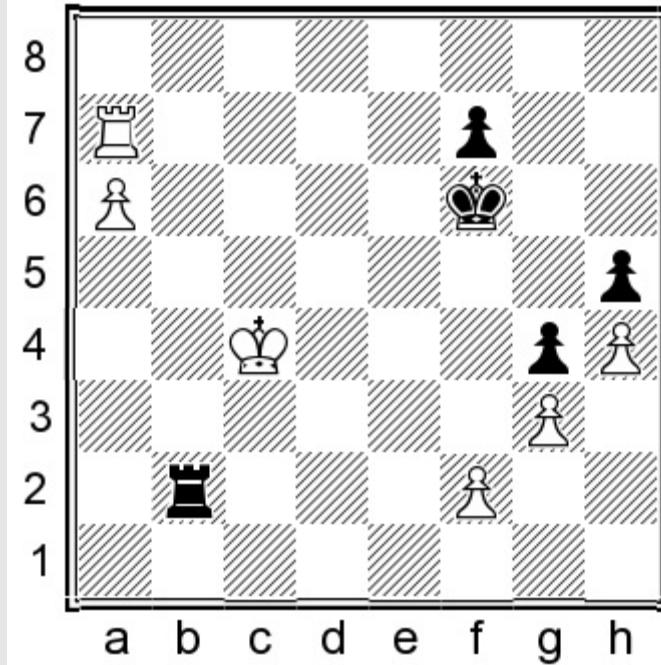
3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$

If 3. $\mathbb{Q}a8$, 3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is also good) 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ draws.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b5$

Going to the eighth rank is interesting but does not win: 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}xf2?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 7. $a7+-$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ is also good enough to draw) 8. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ 9. $a7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+=$

5... $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$



9-168a

B

Now Black cannot take the pawn, which would release the white rook, and 7... $\mathbb{B}b7$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ 8.a7 would win.

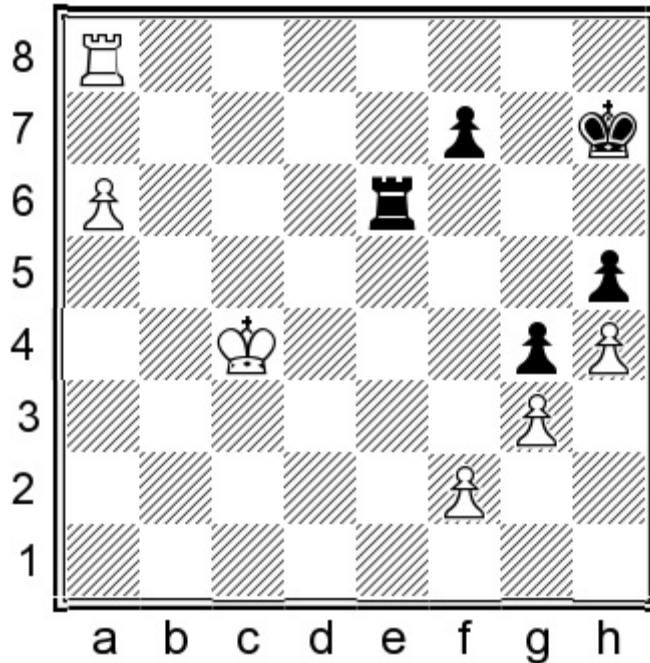
6... $\mathbb{B}b6!$

An instructive defense, based on the Vancura idea (see 9-43). Black pins down the white rook by attacking the pawn from the side. He has enough distance to check away the white king. Let's also examine the previously found, but more complicated, drawing method:

6... $\mathbb{B}a2$ 7. $\mathbb{B}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!!$ (this is John Hull's improved version of the Pogosyan solution 7... $\mathbb{Q}e6$, which is inaccurate as we shall see) 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{B}b2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{B}c2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{B}b2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{B}xf2$ 12. $\mathbb{B}b8$ $\mathbb{B}f3$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xh5$ $\mathbb{B}xg3$ is drawn, but here we see why the king had to go to e7: if the king were on e6 here (7... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{B}b2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{B}c2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{B}b2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{B}xf2$ 12. $\mathbb{B}h8$ $\mathbb{B}f3$), White would win with 13. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ $\mathbb{B}b3+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{B}a3$ 15. $\mathbb{B}e8+!$, asking the black king to step aside; 15... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ and now 16. $\mathbb{Q}b5+-$ 12... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ (the king neutralizes the dangerous passed pawn; 12... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ also draws) 13. $\mathbb{B}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 14. $\mathbb{B}xh5$ $\mathbb{B}f3!$ and White cannot win.

7. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{B}e6$ and Black only needs to make sure not to let the white rook out:

8. $\mathbb{B}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{B}e5+!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{B}e6+!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{B}e5+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{B}e6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ (13... $\mathbb{B}b6?$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{B}e6$ 15.a7 $\mathbb{B}e7+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{B}e6+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{B}e5+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{B}e4+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b3+-$) 14. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{B}e7+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{B}e6+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{B}e5+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{B}e6$

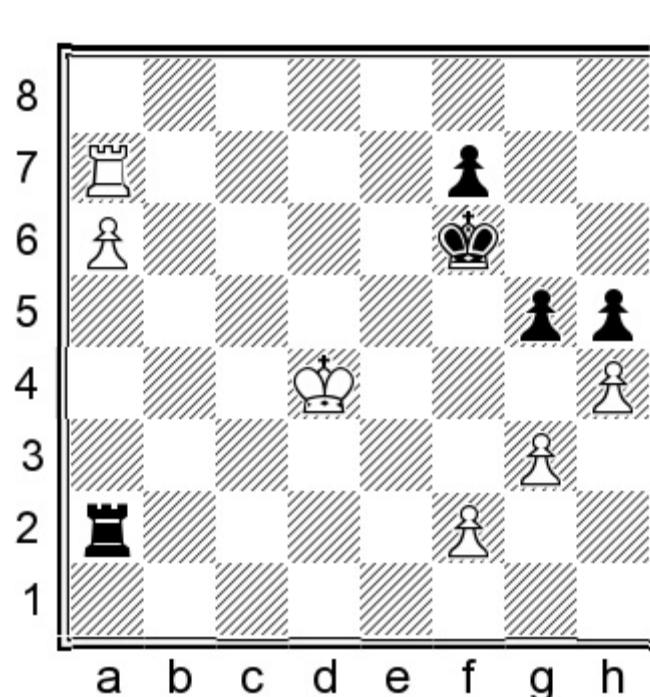


9-168b
W

with a draw just like in the Vancura ending.

IV. The lines 2.†c5 gxh4= and 2.†d5 gxh4?+–

In this subsection we look at the pawn exchange ...gxh4. After the moves **1.†d4! g5!!**

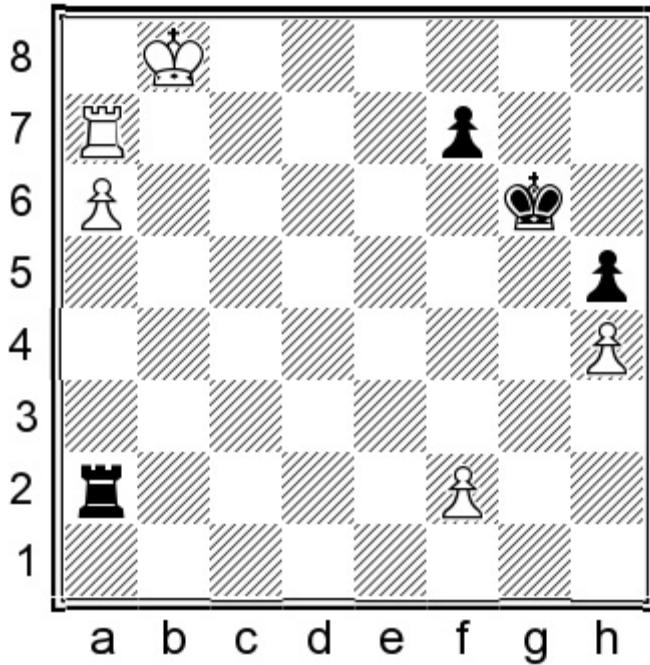


9-168c
W

we have examined two drawing methods after 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$. Here we illustrate why 2...gxh4? loses against that. This will be useful to you if you are the attacking side. We also show that after 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5!?$, 2...gxh4 is another drawing method, in addition to Pogosyan's 2...g4. You can keep this in mind if you are the defending side.

First, let's look at the move 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and show why 2...gxh4? 3.gxh4 loses for Black. As 3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5.a7 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ is completely hopeless, and 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 5.a7 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ leads to the Steckner idea again, Black has two main defensive tries:

(a) Let's try to clear the way for the f-pawn with 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6$. White continues with 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ (4...f6 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ leads to almost the same position, with the same result after 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$

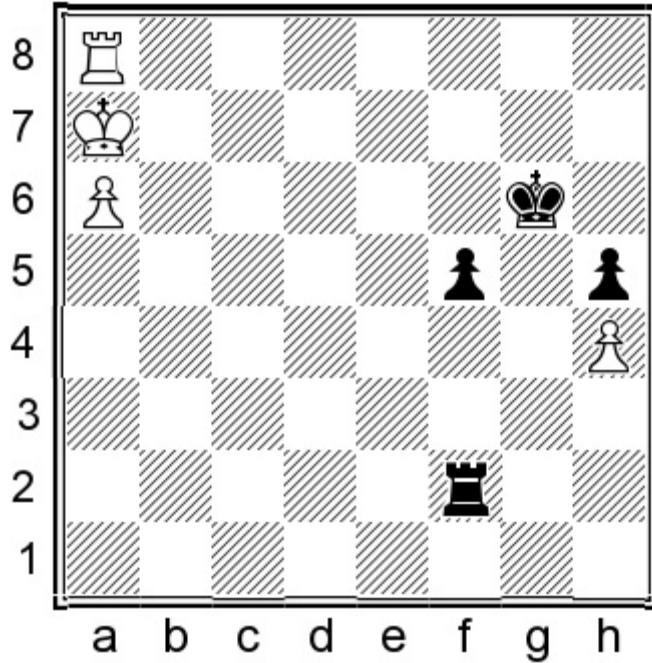


9-168d

W

8. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$ and Black cannot save the game after either

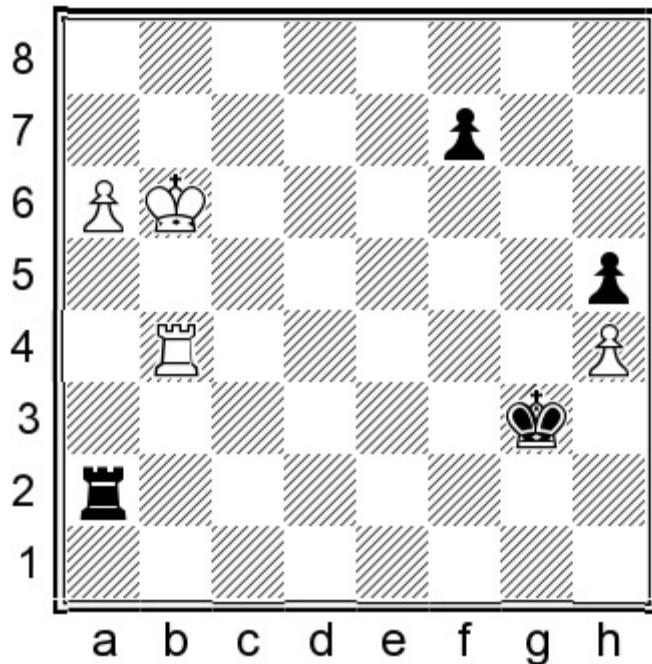
(a1) 8... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ (not 9. $\mathbb{Q}b7?$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}b4!=)$ 9...f5



9-168e
W?

and now only the precise **10.♖f8!**, shown by Pogosyan, wins. For example, 10...f4 (or 10...♔g7 11.♕b8 f4 12.♕b4! f3 13.♕b3!+–) 11.♔b7 ♕b2+ 12.♔a8 ♕b4 13.a7 f3 14.♖xf3 ♕xh4 15.♕b3! ♕a4 16.♕b5! – familiar to us from the “rook-versus-pawns ending” – the rook cuts off the king along the fifth rank; or

(a2) 8...♗f5 9.♔b7 ♕b2+ 10.♔a7 ♕xf2 11.♕b8 ♔g4 12.♕b4+ ♔g3 13.♔b6! ♕a2

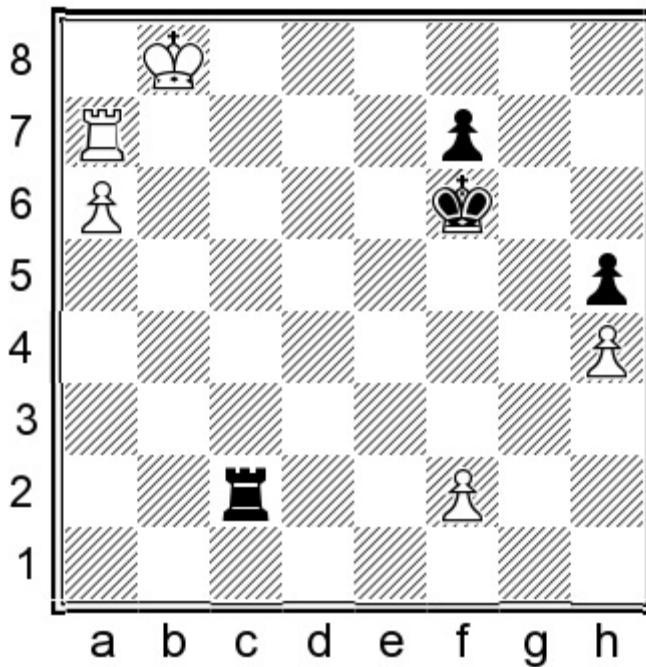


9-168f

W?

and now White must play **14.♔b5! f5 15.♕a4 ♕b2+ 16.♔c6 ♕b8 17.a7 ♕a8 18.♔b7 ♕e8 19.a8=♕ ♕xa8 20.♕xa8!+–**

(b) Let's leave the king on f6 and try **3...♝d2+ 4.♔c6 ♝c2+ 5.♔b6 ♝b2+ 6.♔c7 ♝c2+ 7.♔b8**

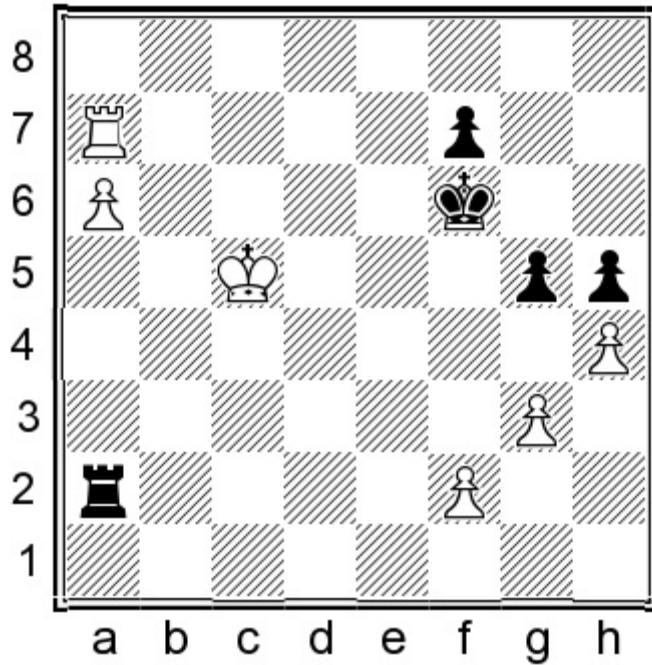


9-168g
B

If now **7...♝c6 8.♔b7 ♕e6**, then **9.f4!** is very strong, taking the e5-square away from the rook and thereby neutralizing the threat of checks from the side. On **9...♔f5** or **9...♝e1**, there follows **10.♕a8**, and Black's counterplay comes too late.

However, **7...♝a2** leads to the position in diagram 9-168d, but with the king having moved from g6 to f6. In several lines this difference is significant. For example, after **8.♕a8 ♜xf2 9.♔a7 ♜h2** White, as noted by Pogosyan, takes advantage of the h5-pawn's vulnerability by playing **10.♜h8! ♔e5** (**10...♔g6 11.♔b7 ♜b2+ 12.♔a8 ♜b4 13.a7+–** is too slow, and **10...♜xh4 11.♔b6** is hopeless) **11.♜xh5+ f5 12.♔b7 ♜b2+ 13.♔a8 ♔e4** (**13...♔f6 14.a7 f4 15.♜h8!+–**) **14.♜h8 f4 15.h5 f3 16.h6 f2**, and now both **17.♜f8 ♜d2 18.♔b7** (**18.h7? ♜d8+–**) **18...♜d7+ 19.♔c6**, and **17.♜e8+ followed by 18.♜f8** decide matters.

Now, let's look at **2.♔c5**



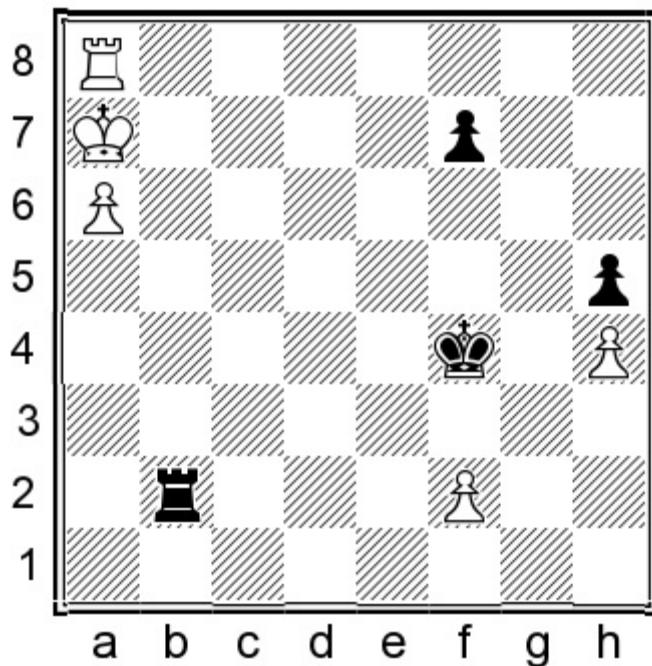
9-168h
B

2...gxh4!?

Black can also follow the Pogosyan/L'Ami method with 2...g4, but if 3.♖a8, then the only move is 3...♔e7! 4.♔b6 ♕b2+! 5.♔a7 ♖xf2 with a draw. But the Aagaard defense does not work here: with the king already on c5, Black cannot afford the luxury of ...♔g6 and ...f6.

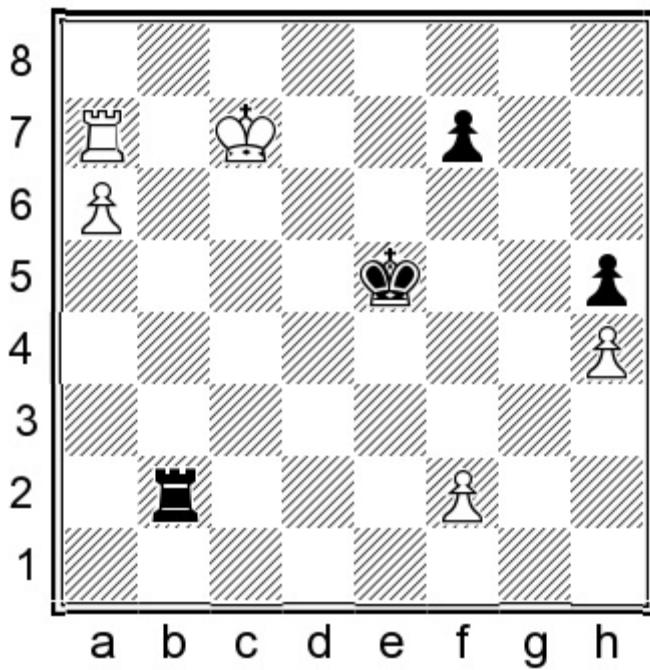
3.gxh4 ♔e5! 4.♖a8 ♔f4 5.♔b6 ♕b2+! 6.♔a7

Diagrams 9-169 and 9-170 have been intentionally omitted.



Now Steckner showed the simplest way to save the ending: 6...f5 7.♔g8!? (7.♕b8 ♕xf2 8.♕b4+ ♔g3 9.♔b7 ♕a2=) 7...♔f3 (taking the f2-pawn immediately on this or the previous move was also good enough to draw) 8.♕g5 f4 9.♕xh5 ♔xf2= or 8.♕b8 ♕xf2 9.♕b5 ♕e2! (but not 9...♔g4? 10.♔b6+–) 10.♔b6 (10.♕xf5+ ♔g4) 10...♕e6+ 11.♔a5 ♕e7!=

In addition to 4.♕a8, Black must also reckon with 4.♔b6 ♕b2+ 5.♔c7.



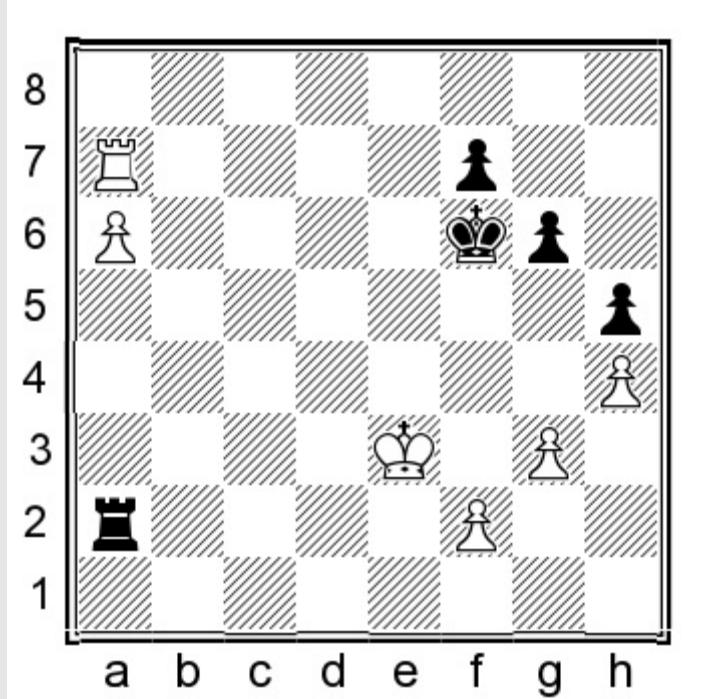
In the variation 5...♕c2+? 6.♔d8! ♕xf2 7.♔e7+ ♔f6 8.♕c7 ♕a2 9.a7 ♔f5 10.♔c8 ♔g4 11.♔c4+ ♔g3 12.♔b7 he does not manage to save himself: 12...♕b2+ (12...f5 13.♕c6! ♕xa7+ 14.♔xa7 ♔xh4 15.♔b6+–) 13.♔c6 ♕a2 14.♔b6 f5 15.♔c8!+–.

5...♕a2! 6.♔b8 is necessary, and now not 6...f5? 7.♔e7+ ♔f6 (7...♔d6 8.♔h7+–) 8.♔h7! ♔g6 9.a7! ♔xh7 10.a8=♕ ♕xa8+ 11.♔xa8 f4 12.f3!+–, but 6...f6! 7.♔b7 ♕xf2 8.♕a8 ♕b2+ 9.♔a7 ♔d6 10.♔h8 ♔c6 11.♔xh5 ♕e2 12.♔h7 f5 13.h5 f4 14.♔h6+ ♔c7 15.♔f6 ♕e7!= – the pawn capture will allow his opponent to force perpetual check.

Conclusion: After 1.♔d4, Black must play 1...g5. If the white king goes to d5, he can choose between the Aagaard method with ...♔g6 followed by ...f7-f6 and ...♔g6-f5, or the method with ...g5-g4, where the simplest solution is the L'Ami defense. If the white king goes to c5, then the Aagaard method does not work, but ...g5-g4 still works, as does ...gh (which would lose after ♔d4-d5).

V. Position with Black to move. Let us return once more to the starting position so that we may evaluate how Black should defend if it is his move. It turns out that in this case, Black can also only

generate counterplay with the move ...g6-g5! Other plans lose.



9-172a
B

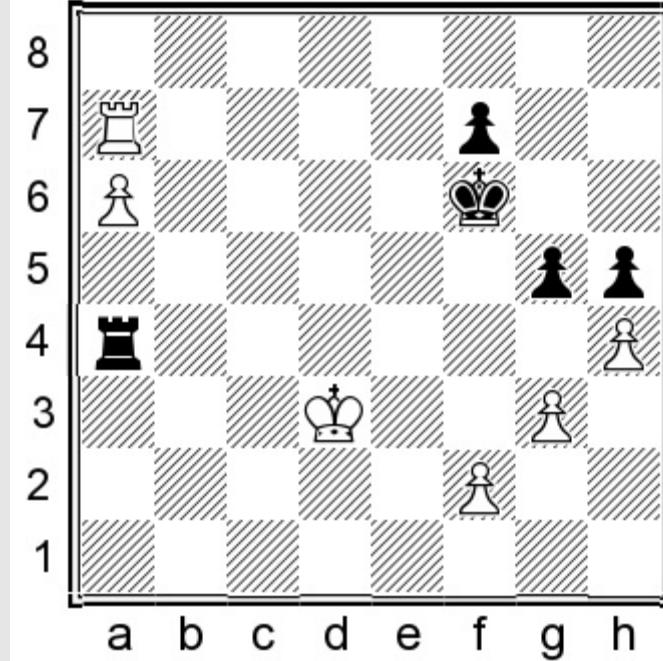
Grandmaster Dautov demonstrated the safest line. Before playing ...g6-g5, it makes sense to limit the mobility of the white king.

1...♜a4! 2.♝d3

On 2.♜a8, the simplest is 2...♝f5!.

2.f4 ♜e6! 3.♝d3 f6 4.♝c3 ♜f5 5.♝b3 ♜a1 6.♝b4 ♜g4= is also not dangerous.

2...g5!

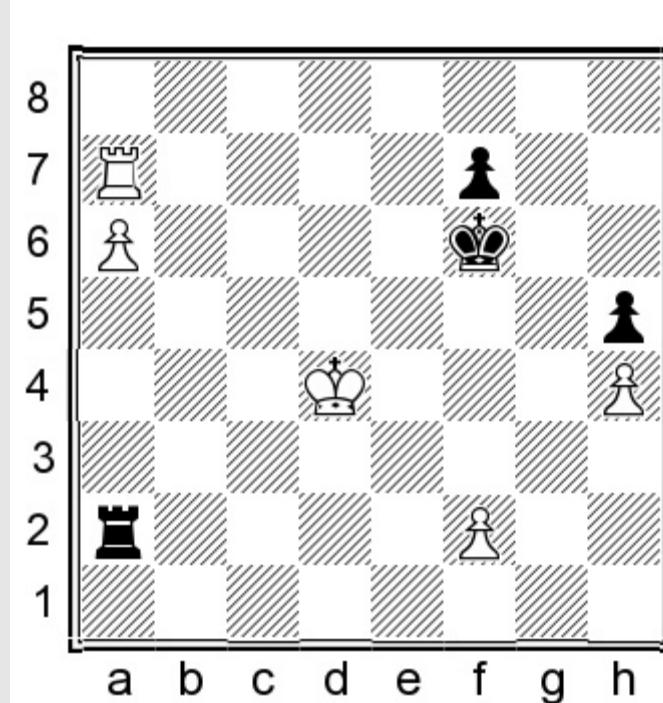


9-173

W

The exchange of the g5-pawn leads to roughly the same drawn position we examined in the variation 1. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ g5!! 2. hxg5+ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$. In case of 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ gxh4 4. gxh4, the pawn may be captured with impunity: 4... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 6. a7 h4=

The immediate 1...g5! is also possible, after which White replies 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4$! Black can then make use of one of our two defensive methods from subsections 2 and 3, 2.... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ or 2...g4. The exchange 2...gxh4 3. gxh4 is also not bad.



But now it is important to resist the temptation to win one of the pawns:

(a) 3... $\mathbb{E}xf2?$ 4. $\mathbb{E}c7 \mathbb{E}a2$ 5.a7 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b5$, winning using the Steckner method.

(b) 3... $\mathbb{E}a4+?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{E}xh4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}b7 \mathbb{E}a4$ 6.a7 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (6...h4 7. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{E}a1$ 8. $\mathbb{E}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 9. $\mathbb{E}a6$; 6... $\mathbb{E}a1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6+-$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}b5!+-$

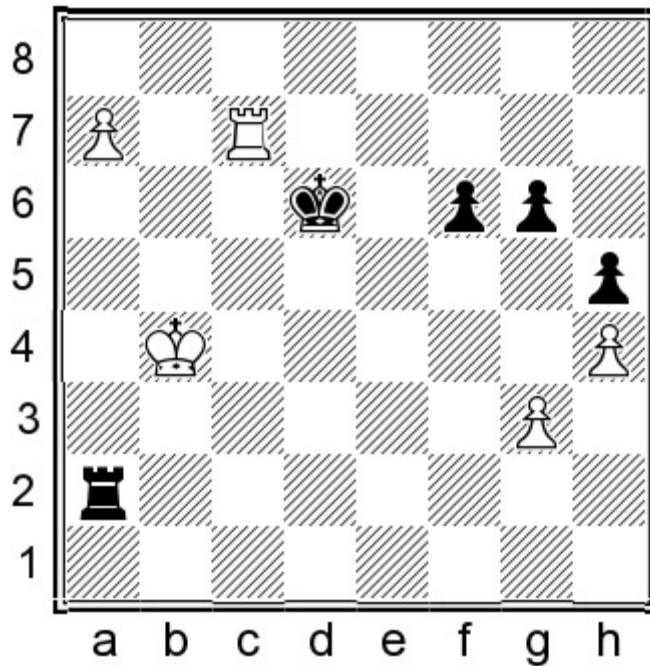
It is best to follow the recommendation of Dautov and Anand, 3... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}e5!$, leading to the drawing line we saw in the previous subsection,

1. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ g5!! 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5 gxh4$ 3.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}e5!$

Finally, we want to show how White wins against the other defensive plans.

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}d5$ (2... $\mathbb{E}xf2$ 3. $\mathbb{E}c7$ [but not to b7: then the king on b5 will be in the way of the rook] 3... $\mathbb{E}a2$ 4.a7 f6 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ is again the Steckner method) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{E}xf2$ 4. $\mathbb{E}c7 \mathbb{E}a2$ 5.a7 f6 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}d6$

Diagram 9-175 has been intentionally omitted.



9-176

W?

and now the strongest line is 7. $\mathbb{E}g7!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (after 7... $\mathbb{Q}e6$, 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}f5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b6 g5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ wins) 8. $\mathbb{E}f7!$ (but not 8. $\mathbb{E}xg6?$ $\mathbb{E}xa7$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 10. $\mathbb{E}f5+ \mathbb{Q}e4$ 11. $\mathbb{E}xh5 \mathbb{E}g7=$) 8...f5 9. $\mathbb{E}g7 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ and White will win.

There is one more defensive try: 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ f6 (We already know the consequences of 2... $\mathbb{E}xf2$ and want to again remind the reader that the rook should go not to the b-file, but to the c-file with

3. $\mathbb{E}c7!$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ 4. a7+–) 3. $\mathbb{E}a8!$ (3. $\mathbb{E}c5?$ $\mathbb{E}f5$ 4. f3 g5! 5. $\mathbb{E}a8$ gxh4 6. gxh4 $\mathbb{E}f4!=$, as the black king attacks the white pawn on f3) 3... $\mathbb{E}f5$ (3... $\mathbb{E}f7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}c5$ is hopeless) 4. f3 and now if 4...g5, then 5. hgx5+–; on anything else, White plays 5. a7, transposing into the ending of the game Unzicker-Lundin, where White wins by marching his king to h6.

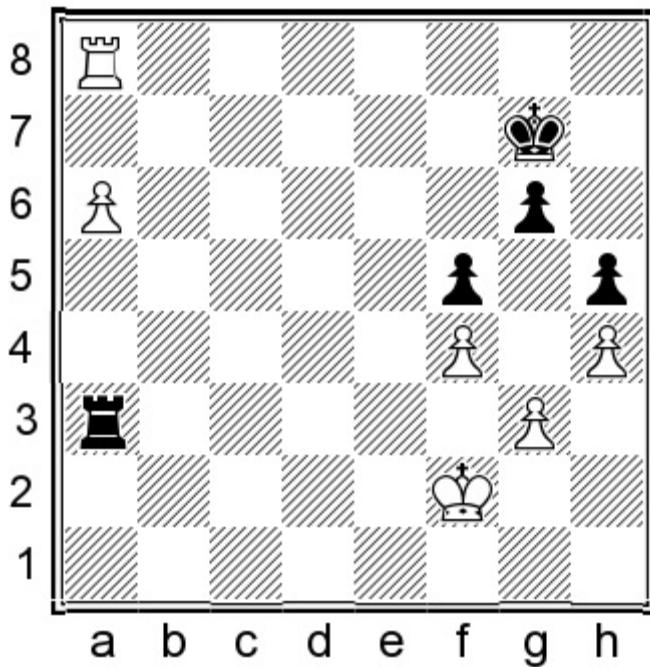
So even with Black to move, there is only one saving way, the one with ...g6-g5.

Our analysis of the Kantorovich/Steckner position acquaints us with the most important contemporary ideas for playing this endgame with the standard pawn structure f7-g6-h5 versus f2-g3-h4.

Now we proceed to an endgame with a different structure.

Diagram 9-177 has been intentionally omitted.

G.Levenfish, V.Smyslov 1957



9-178

B?

Here Black is faced with quite unpleasant problems: even after winning the g3-pawn he cannot activate his king, and creating a passed pawn is difficult, too. In addition, each initial move harms his position in some way, so he has to choose the least of the evils.

An attempt to force the matters loses: 1... $\mathbb{E}a2+?$ 2. $\mathbb{E}e3$ $\mathbb{E}a3+$ 3. $\mathbb{E}d4$ $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 4. $\mathbb{E}c8$ $\mathbb{E}a3$ 5. $\mathbb{E}c7+$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 6. a7 $\mathbb{E}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{E}c5$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 8. $\mathbb{E}b6$ $\mathbb{E}b1+$ (8... $\mathbb{E}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{E}c5+$ $\mathbb{E}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{E}a5$) 9. $\mathbb{E}c6$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 10. $\mathbb{E}b7$ $\mathbb{E}d5$ 11. a8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{E}xa8$ 12. $\mathbb{E}xa8$ $\mathbb{E}e4$ 13. $\mathbb{E}g7$ $\mathbb{E}xf4$ 14. $\mathbb{E}xg6$ $\mathbb{E}e3$ 15. $\mathbb{E}g5$. Obviously, the king should be cut off along the third rank.

1... $\mathbb{E}h7?$ also loses, as after 2. $\mathbb{E}a7+!$ $\mathbb{E}h6$ 3. $\mathbb{E}e2$ $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b7$ $\mathbb{E}a3$ 5. a7, the black king is poorly placed on h6.

But with correct defense, Black nevertheless manages to hold.

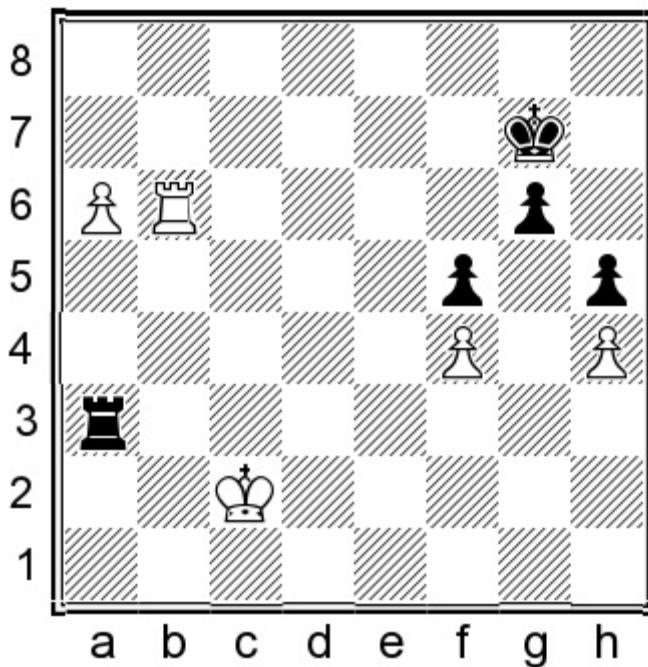
1... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (2.a7? $\mathbb{Q}g7=$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$

He has to lose a tempo, because 2... $\mathbb{Q}xg3??$ 3.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ is bad.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6+$

On 6.a7, the black king breaks loose: 6... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$, and if 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b3$, then 9... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$, obstructing the path of the white king.

6... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$



9-179

B?

7...g5!

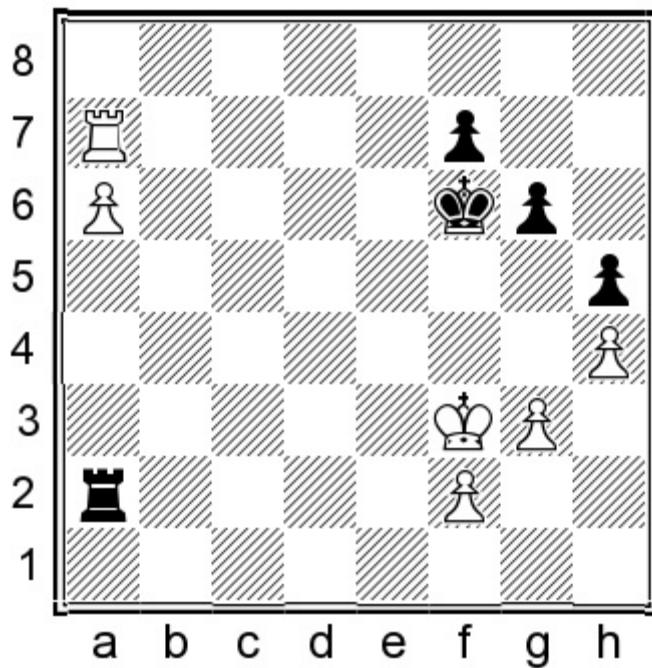
A pawn sacrifice for creating a passed pawn, Black's only resource, but a sufficient one.

8.fxg5 f4 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ f3 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ (13. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2=$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7=$

If 15. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h6$, then 16... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6!$, forever imprisoning the white rook, is the simplest.

Tragicomедies

Let us now look at a few examples from current practice, and make use of our knowledge of theory to determine why strong grandmasters should suffer misfortune in drawn positions. We shall also learn some new ideas, which will enrich our theoretical understanding. In order to do this, however, we shall have to dive again and again into the analytical maze.



9-180

B

This is the Kantorovich/Steckner position, with the white king slightly less well-placed. In some lines, obviously, Black will have an extra tempo, which enlarges the sphere of drawing possibilities at his disposal.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$

With the king at e3 this move would have lost; here, I believe it is not bad. He might also have played in “Dautov style”: 1... $\mathbb{Q}a4!$? 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ g5, for example, 3.hxg5+ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5(d5)$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}f3=$

The immediate 1...g5 would not have been any worse (the only move that could have been dangerous in reply would have been 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ – even though this would not have been fatal, either – but White cannot play that here.)

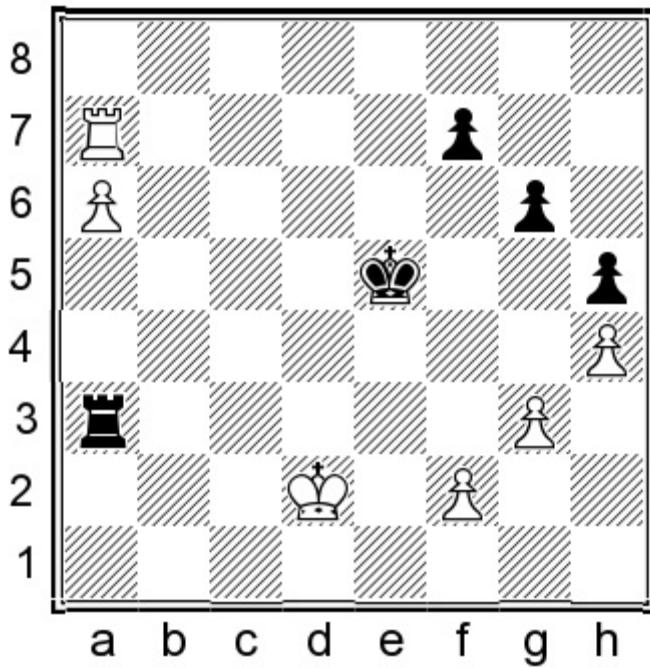
1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$

In *Informant* 85, Svidler recommends 2...f6 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 5.a7 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7=$. Our attentive readers may possibly recall the analysis of the Kantorovich/Steckner position (with White to move). In the line 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4!!$ f6 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4?$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$, we reached precisely the same position, and concluded that it would be won with Black’s pawn at f7, but with the pawn at f6, it was drawn.

Nevertheless, 2...f6? is still a bad move in view of 3. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$, when Black will have a hard time avoiding transposition to the won position from the Unzicker-Lundin game (after f2-f3 and a6-a7)

without substantial losses.

3.♔d2



9-181

B?

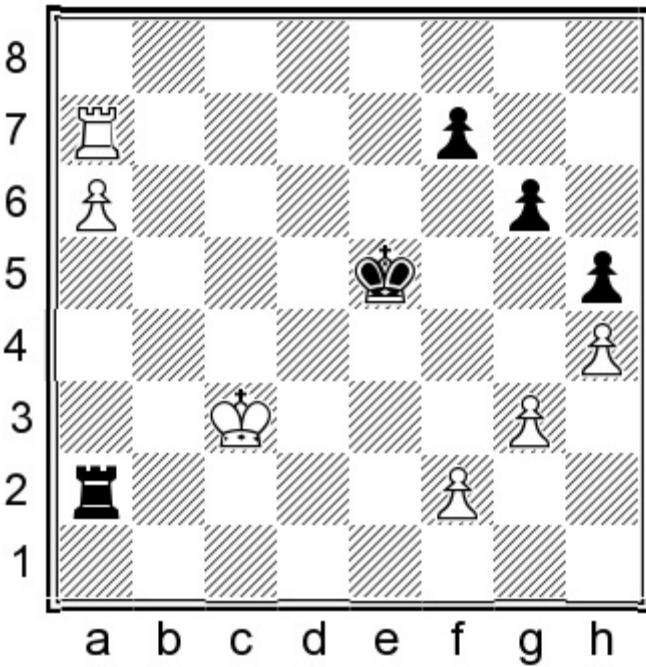
3...♜a2+?

A fatal error! In this situation, the proper defensive plan involves the advance of the f-pawn. Here are a few sample variations: 3...f5! 4.♔c2 (4.f3 f4 5.g4 hxg4 6.fxg4 ♜a2+ and 7...f3=; 4.♜a8 ♔e4 5.♕e8+ ♔d5!=) 4...f4 (but not 4...♔e4? in view of 5.♕e7+!, when the king cannot enter f3 because of 6.♕e3+) 5.♔b2 ♜a5 6.♔b3 (6.♜a8 fxg3 7.fxg3 ♔f5 and 8...♔g4=) 6...fxg3 (or 6...f3!? 7.♔b4 ♜a2 8.♜a8 ♜xf2 9.a7 ♜a2 10.♕e8+ ♔d4=, or 7.♜a8 ♔f5 8.a7 ♔g4=) 7.fxg3 ♔f5 8.♔b4 (8.♕f7+ ♔e6!=, but not 8...♔g4?) 9.♕f4+ ♔xg3 10.♜a4 ♜b5+ 11.♔c4 ♜b8 12.a7 ♜a8 13.♔d5+–) 8...♜a1 9.♔b5 ♜b1+ 10.♔c6 ♜c1+ 11.♔b6 ♜b1+ 12.♔c7 ♜a1 13.♜a8 ♔g4 with a draw (Dvoretsky's analysis). It had seemed to me that 9...♔g4? (instead of 9...♜b1+) 10.♔c7 ♜b1+ 11.♔c6 ♔xg3 12.a7 ♜a1= was a direct equivalent, however Pogosyan improved White's play with the precise move 10.♕d7!+, with the idea of defending the h4-pawn by ♜d4.

Steckner noted that if White had played 3.♔e2, the aforementioned plan would not work: 3...f5? 4.♜a8! ♔e4 5.f3+ ♔d5 6.a7+– And 3...f6? is also a mistake: 4.♜a8!; while after 3...♜a2+? 4.♔d3 ♜xf2, White wins as in the main line of the analysis of diagram 9-158 (5.♕e7+ ♔f6 6.a7 ♜a2 7.♔c7 ♔f5 8.♔c4!). The draw is reached by 3...♔e6! 4.♔d2 f6 5.♔c2 (here 5.♜a8 ♔f5, is useless: White does not have f2-f3, and if he cannot play that, the black king gets to g4) 5...♔f5 6.♔b2 ♜a5 7.f3 (7.♔b3 ♔g4) 7...g5 8.♔b3 gxh4 9.gxh4 ♔f4 10.♔b4 ♜a1 11.♔b5 ♜b1+ etc.

4.♔c3?

White must play 4.♔d3! to stop Black's counterattack via e4.



9-181a
B

4...♝xf2?

This position was previously regarded as losing for Black, but Karsten Müller found a very subtle way to draw:

4...f6! 5.♔b3 ♜a1

Black cannot take the f2-pawn; instead he must counterattack with his king.

6.♔b4 ♔f5! (6...♔e4? 7.♜e7+ ♔f3 8.♜e3+ ♔xf2 9.♜a3+-) 7.♜a8 ♔g4! 8.♔b5 ♜b1+ 9.♔a5 ♜a1+ 10.♔b6 ♜b1+ 11.♔a7 ♜f1!

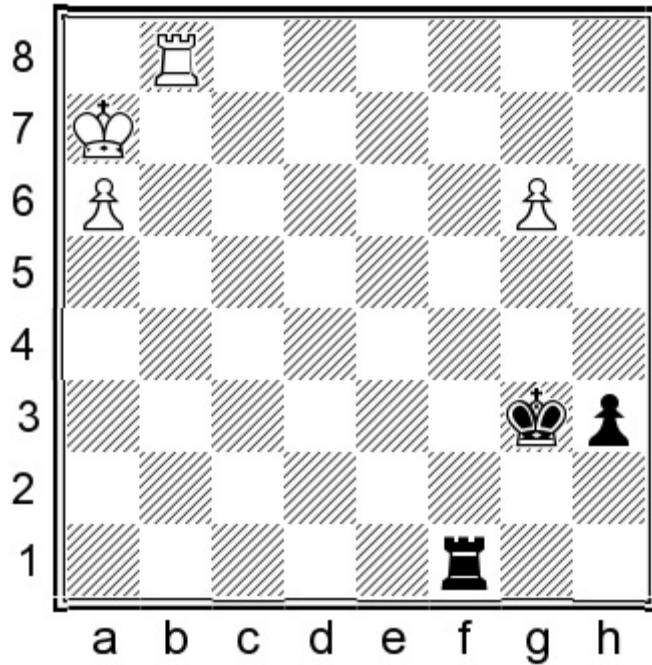
It is important to attack from here and not from b2, because the rook is more active on the f-file.

12.♜g8 g5 13.f4 ♔xg3 14.hxg5 fxg5 15.fxg5

15.♜xg5+ ♔h4=, thanks to the rook attacking the f4-pawn.

15...h4 16.g6 h3 17.♜b8!?

17.g7 ♜f7+=



9-181b
B?

17... $\mathbb{Q}e1!$

The only move. The rook must be prepared to check on the seventh rank, and this is the only square that works. Not 17... $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ 19.g7+–; 17...h2? also loses quickly to 18.g7 $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b7$.

18. $\mathbb{Q}b1$

But now on 18.g7 $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b7$, Black has 19... $\mathbb{Q}e8$.

18... $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ 20.g7 h2 21.g8=威 h1=威 and the queen ending is drawn; analysis by Müller and Fishbein, 2019.

5. $\mathbb{Q}b7?$

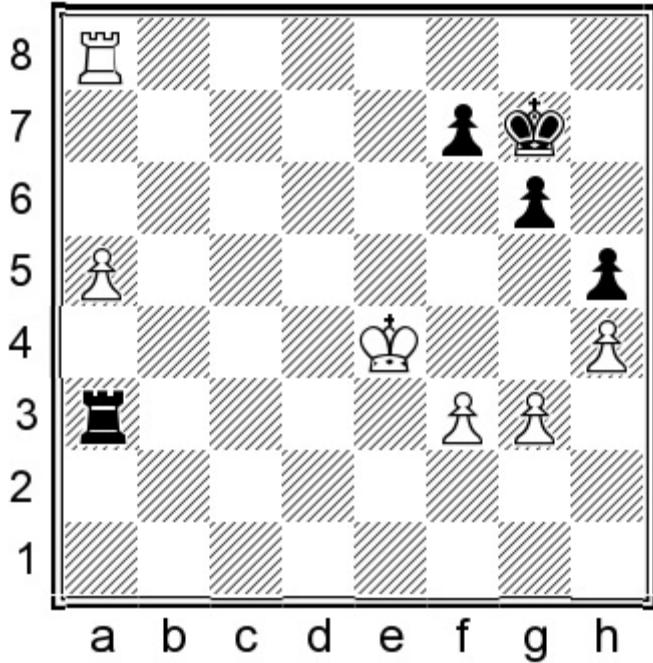
White must play 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6.a7 $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 8.a8=威 $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ and White is winning, but it is by no means easy to prevail over the rook.

5... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 6.a7 $\mathbb{Q}f6?$

6...f6! 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}a1!$ draws, and if 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$, then 8... $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1+$.

7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ Black resigned.

Lerner – Dorfman
USSR ch(1), Tashkent 1980



9-182

B?

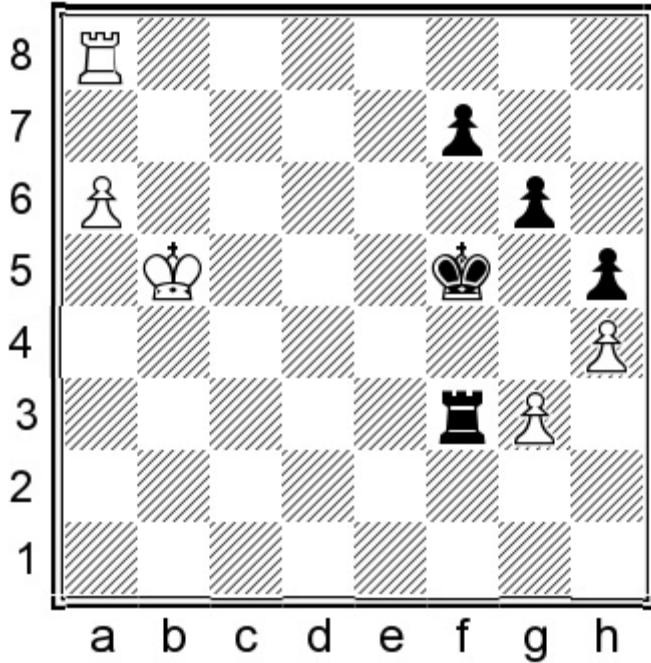
1...♜a4+?

The rook was placed ideally (targeting the white pawns), but the king could and should have been activated. After 1...♝f6! 2.a6 (2.♜a6+ ♚g7 3.♝d5 ♜xf3 is harmless) 2...♝e6 3.♝d4 ♚f5!, Black is saved. For example, 4.♝c4 ♜xf3 5.♜d8 (5.♝b4 ♜f1 6.♜c8 ♜b1+) 5...♜a3 6.♝b5 ♜g4 7.♜d4+ ♜xg3 8.♜a4 ♜b3+ 9.♝c6 ♜b8 10.a7 ♜a8 11.♝b7 ♜xa7+ (11...♜e8) 12.♝xa7 f6 13.♝b6 g5=

1...♜a4+? 2.♝d5 ♜a3 3.a6 ♜xf3

Now the black king is cut off along the sixth rank. However, 3...♚f6 did not offer real saving chances either: 4.♝c6 (Vladimir Vulfson recommended 4.♝c5!? having in mind, after 4...♚f5, to drive the rook from the third rank with the move 5.♝b4, and only after 5...♜a1 to play 6.♝b5) 4...♜xf3 5.♜d8! (the most precise) 5...♜a3 6.♝b5 (threatening 7.♜d4) 6...♝e5 7.♜d7 f6 8.a7 (Vulfson) – it is not clear what can be done against the threat of 9.♜c7 followed by the interference maneuver 10.♜c5+ 11.♜c4(c6)+ and 12.♜a4(a6). Less precise is 5.♜b8, and while it does not let the win slip, it is important to note that after 5...♜a3, the only reply is 6.♝b6! (but not 6.♝b6? ♚f5 7.♝b7 ♜g4 8.a7 ♜xa7+ 9.♝xa7 ♜xg3 10.♜b4 f6 and 11...g5=).

Let's try 4...♚f5 (instead of 4...♜xf3) 5.♝b5 ♜xf3.



9-183

W

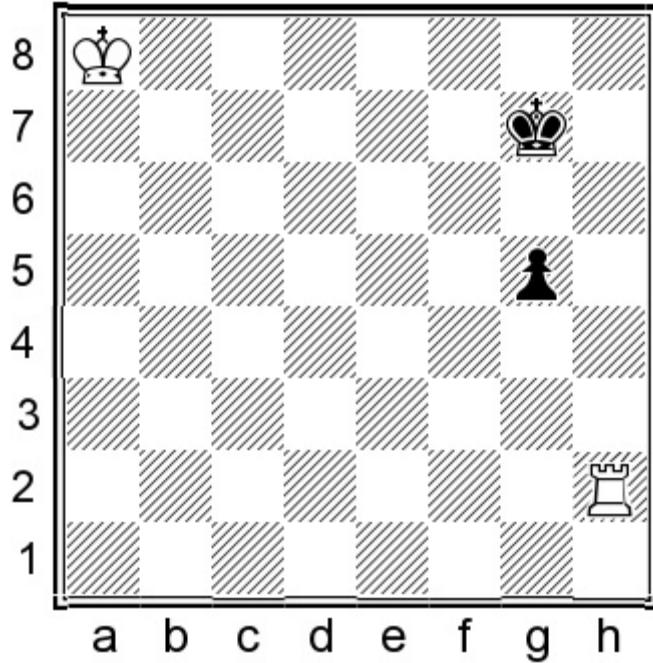
Steckner suggested the following way to achieve the goal: 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{B}b3+$ (other replies are no better: 6... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+ \mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4+ \mathbb{Q}xg3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a4+-$ or 6... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $a7 \mathbb{Q}a3$ 8. $a8=\mathbb{W} \mathbb{Q}xa8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xa8 \mathbb{Q}xg3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a4 f6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4! \mathbb{Q}xh4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ and the rook can deal with the three pawns) 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{B}b1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+ \mathbb{Q}g4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4+ \mathbb{Q}xg3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{E}e1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3+! \mathbb{Q}xh4$ 12. $a7 \mathbb{E}e8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b8 \mathbb{E}e1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (14. $\mathbb{Q}b4+ \mathbb{Q}g5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{E}e8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b8 \mathbb{E}e1$ 17. $a8=\mathbb{W}+-$ is the same) 14... $\mathbb{E}e3+$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ and 16. $\mathbb{Q}a4+-$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}a3$ 16. $a8=\mathbb{W} \mathbb{Q}xa8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xa8 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g8 h4$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+ \mathbb{Q}f2$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}h6! \mathbb{Q}g3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d2+-$

6. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{B}b3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4 \mathbb{B}b1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{B}b8$ is no less strong, and now, not 9. $\mathbb{Q}a5? \mathbb{Q}g4!$ 10. $a7 \mathbb{E}e8!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6 f6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b7 g5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{E}e7+$ with a draw (Dvoretsky), but 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4! f6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a5 g5$ 11. $a7 \mathbb{E}e8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6+-$ (Pogosyan).

4. $\mathbb{Q}b8 \mathbb{Q}a3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}xg3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}a3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7 g5$

Or 7... $f6$ 8. $a7 \mathbb{Q}xa7+ 9. \mathbb{Q}xa7 g5 10. \mathbb{Q}b4!?$ $\mathbb{Q}g6 11. \mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}f5$ (11... $gxh4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xh4 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h1 h4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}g4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d4 h3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g1+-$ Anikaev) 12. $\mathbb{Q}c5 g4 13. \mathbb{Q}d4$ (13. $\mathbb{Q}b1 g3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f1+ \mathbb{Q}g4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 \mathbb{Q}xh4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}h3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3+-$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}f4 14. \mathbb{Q}d3+$

8. $hxg5 h4$ 9. $a7 h3$ 10. $a8=\mathbb{W}$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}a6?$ $h2$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xa8 h2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h6 f6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xh2 fxg5$



9-184

W?

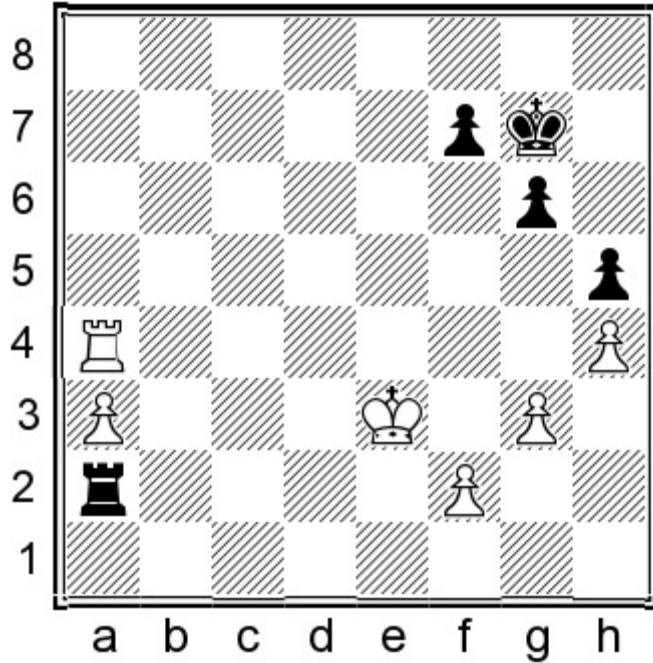
14. Kg2!!

Excellent! The rook prevents the shoulderering maneuver that was possible after 14. Kb7? Kf6 15. Kc6 Ke5!= For the sake of restricting the enemy king, White does not begrudge a vital tempo.

14... Kg6 15. Kb7 g4 16. Kc6 Kg5 17. Kd5 g3 18. Kf8! Kg4 19. Ke4 Black resigned.

Akopian - Kir. Georgiev

Las Vegas wch, 1999



9-185

B

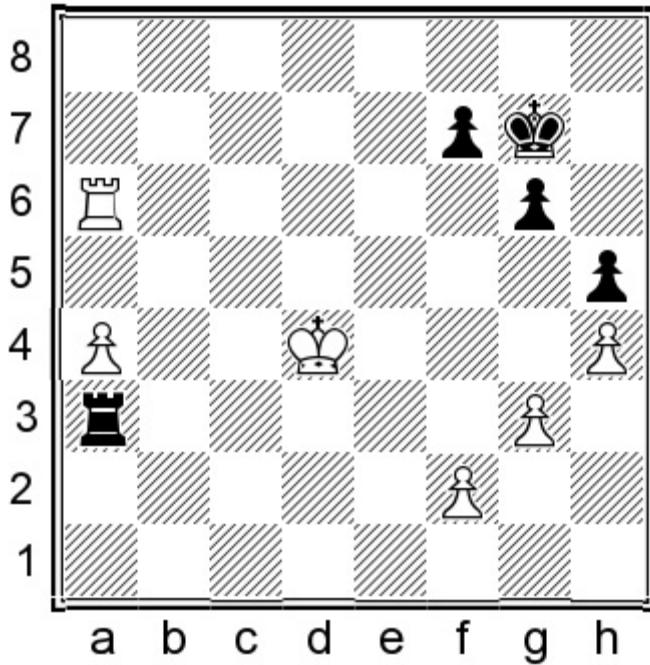
1...♜a1?!

As in the previous example, Black does not care about the activation of his king. Perhaps Georgiev rejected 1...♝f6! in view of 2.♜f4+ ♚e6 3.a4, but he could play 3...f6! then, followed by ...g6-g5, driving the rook back from its comfortable position on f4 where it has been protecting all the white pawns.

1...♜a1?! 2.♜a6! ♜a2 3.a4 ♜a3+?!

The same pernicious strategy that was fatal for Dorfman. In our current case, the a-pawn is still two steps away from a6, but White does not need extra time for bringing his rook from the eighth rank to the sixth. Black should have carried out the useful pawn advance 3...f6! followed by 4...g5. Then a draw could have been achieved relatively easily.

4.♚d4



9-185a
B

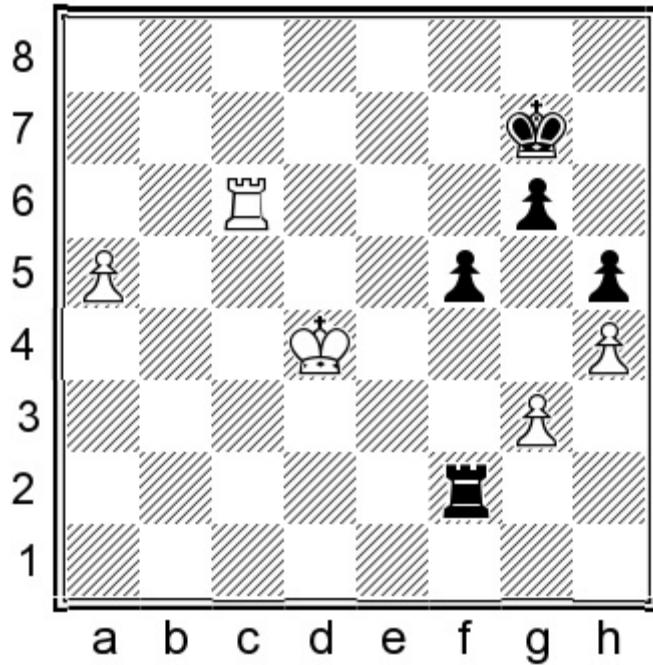
4...f6!

Better late than never! Black arrives at the aforementioned plan after all, albeit under much worse conditions, having helped the white king to the queenside and released the pressure on the f2-pawn.

In the fourth edition of this book, we also examined two other alternatives, 4... $\mathbb{R}f3$ and 4... $\mathbb{R}a2$, and concluded that they both lost, as did the text move. However, in light of Aagaard's new defensive method in the Kantorovich/Steckner position, we have re-evaluated this ending. It turned out that two of these three moves draw.

We will analyze the three moves in order of worst to best. The variations are quite complicated, but they are worth going over, as they not only encapsulate the modern practical concepts in this type of ending, but show useful rook ending ideas in general.

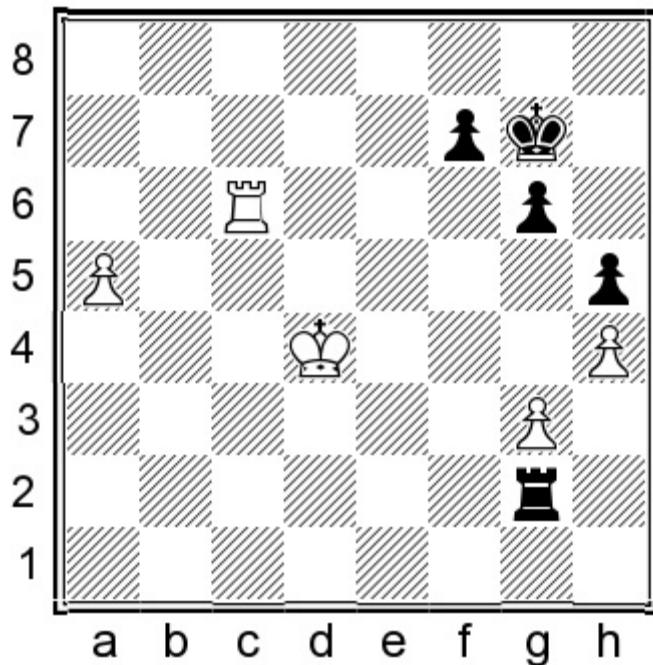
(1) 4... $\mathbb{R}f3$? The plan of immediately capturing the f2-pawn fails. Let's see how: 5.a5 $\mathbb{R}xf2$ 6. $\mathbb{R}c6$!
Now if Black tries the pawn advance, 6...f5



9-185b
W

White arrives first: 7.a6 f4 8.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10.gxf4 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ (we see the Steckner idea again) 11... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ with 13. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ and 14. $\mathbb{Q}a4+-$) 12.f5!, opening the line for the rook check, and Black loses no matter how he takes: 12... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5!+-$) 14. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a3+-$, or 12...gxf5 13. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ f4 15. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c3+-$.

Therefore, the main line is 6... $\mathbb{Q}g2$.



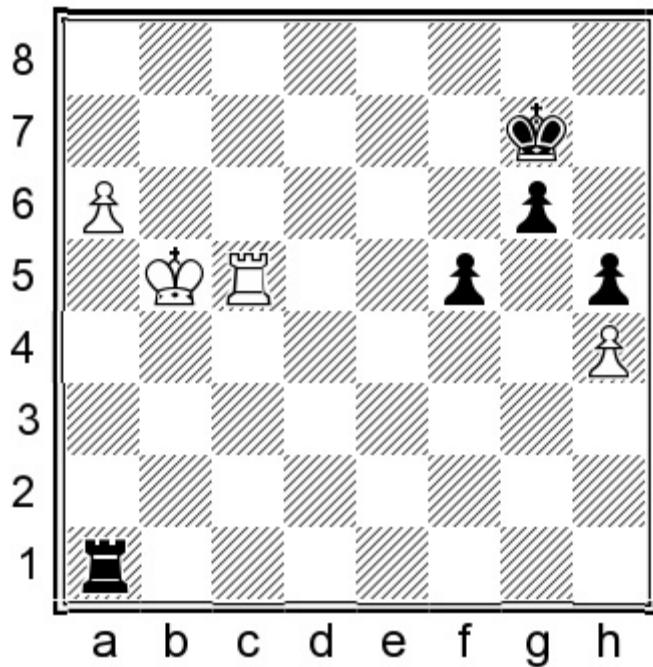
9-185c

W

7.a6 (but not 7.♕c3? ♜a2 8.♕c5 ♜a3 9.♔c4 f5!! [found by Pogosyan] 10.♕c7+ ♔f6 11.♕c6+ ♔g7 12.a6 ♜xg3 13.♕c7+ ♔h6 14.♔b4 ♜e3 15.♕c8 ♜e7! 16.♕a8 ♔g7 17.a7 ♔h7 and although White queens, Black creates a fortress in the ensuing ending: 18.♕h8+ ♔xh8 19.a8=♕+ ♔g7=) 7...♜xg3 and now:

(a) not 8.♔c5? ♜a3 9.♔b6 g5! 10.hxg5 (10.♕c5 also does not win: 10...gxh4 11.♕xh5 h3 12.a7 ♜a1 13.♕xh3 ♜b1+ 14.♔c7 ♜c1+ 15.♔b7 ♜b1+ 16.♔a8 f5=) 10...h4 11.a7 h3 12.♕c3 ♜xc3! (again, Black allows White to queen and makes a fortress) 13.a8=♕ ♜g3= White can eliminate the h-pawn only at the cost of his g5-pawn, after which the black rook will be placed on g6 with an easy draw (see Chapter 13).

(b) but only 8.♕c3!! ♜g4+ (8...♜g1 9.♕a3) 9.♔c5 ♜a4 (9...♜xh4 10.♕a3 ♜e4 11.a7 ♜e8 12.a8=♕+-) 10.♔b5 ♜a1 11.♕c5! (but not 11.♕c4? g5; in fact, White must transfer the rook to the fifth rank, preventing the move g6-g5. This idea was found by Rustem Dautov, with the move order refined by Pogosyan) 11...f5! (11...f6 is much less challenging: 12.♔b6 ♔h6 13.♕a5 ♜b1+ 14.♔c7 ♜c1+ 15.♔d7 ♜d1+ 16.♔e7 ♜e1+ 17.♔f7+-)



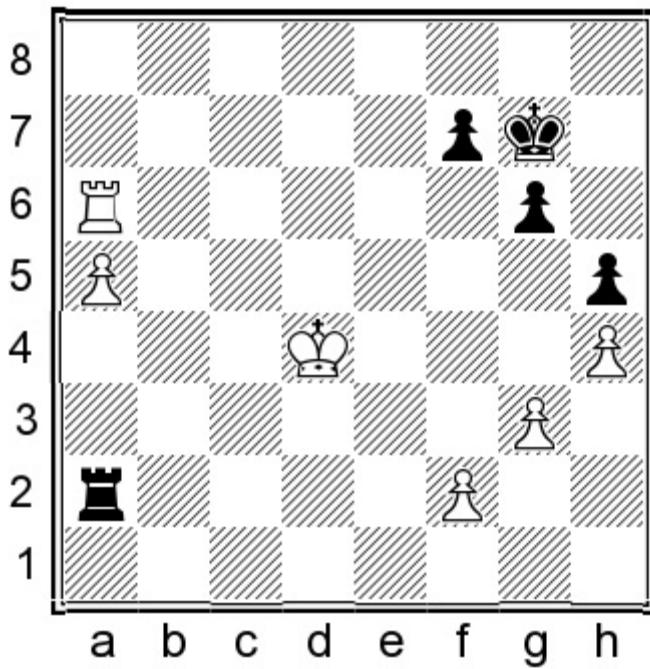
9-185d

W?

12.♕c7+!! (a critical in-between check and the star move of Grandmaster Dautov's brilliant analysis) 12...♔h6 (12...♔f6 13.a7, threatening ♜c6-a6 and winning immediately) 13.♕c4! g5 14.♕a4 ♜b1+ 15.♔c6 ♜b8 (15...♜c1+ 16.♔d7 ♜d1+ 17.♔e7 ♜e1+ 18.♔f7 is why the check was needed; with the black king on g7, White would not make any progress) 16.a7 ♜a8 17.♕a6! (not 17.♔b7? ♜xa7+ 18.♕xa7 gxh4) 17...♜xa7 (17...gxh4 18.♔b7+) 18.hxg5+ ♜xg5 19.♕xa7 h4 20.♔d5 ♔f4 21.♔d4 h3 22.♔h7 ♔g3 23.♔e3 is decisive.

The conclusion is that the plan to quickly capture the f2-pawn with 4... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ does not save Black. But now let's see what happens if Black attacks that pawn from a more active square:

(2) 4... $\mathbb{Q}a2!?$ 5.a5



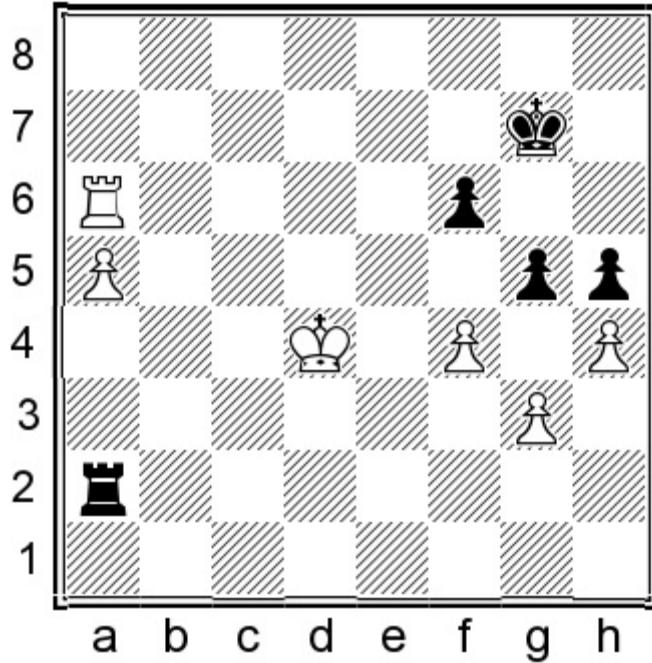
9-185e

B

This position arose (with reversed colors) in the game Krakops-Dautov, Batumi ech tt 1999. Krakops correctly declined the pawn with 5...f6!, but lost anyway. For a long time, this outcome was considered natural. However, Hull proved that, assuming precise defense, it was possible for Black to escape.

If White immediately pushes the passed pawn with 6. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 7.a6 g5 8. $\mathbb{Q}a8$, then the ideas that we discussed while analyzing the variation 1. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ g5!! 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$! in the Kantorovich/Steckner position (see diagram 9-162a) become pertinent. Let me remind you of the main conclusion: Black can exchange pawns on h4 only on the condition that the white pawn will be on the f3-square. In other words, 8...gxh4? 9.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ loses, leaving the only correct continuation 8... $\mathbb{Q}g6$! 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (9.a7 $\mathbb{Q}g7=$; 9.f3 gxh4! 10.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}f5=$) 9... $\mathbb{Q}f5!=$

In the game, Rustem Dautov chose 6.f4, after which, as was proved by Hull, Black could have drawn with 6...g5!



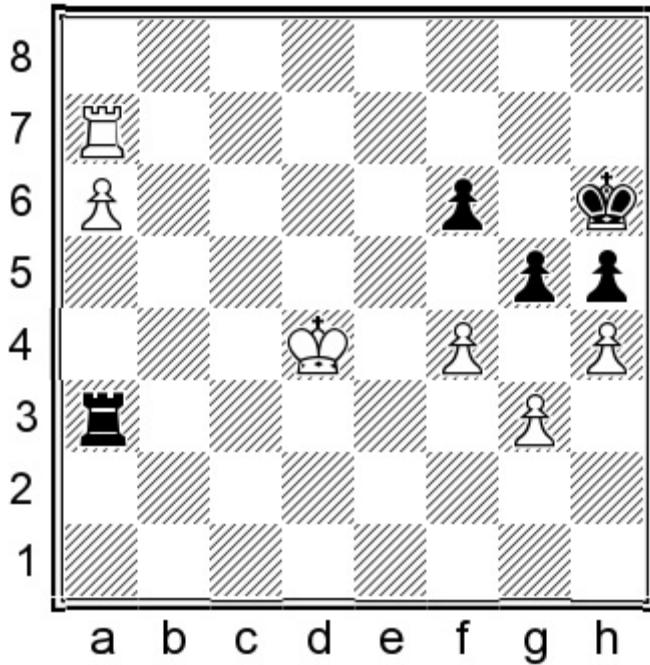
9-185f
W

(a) 7.hxg5 fxg5 8.fxg5 (8.f5 h4=) 8... $\mathbb{Q}a3! =$;

(b) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ gxh4 (also playable is 7... $\mathbb{Q}a3$) 8.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (or 9. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+=$; the rook goes to a7, and the passed h-pawn saves Black) 9... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 12.a6 $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ (only to this rank, so that the rook can help its pawn later) 13. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ (14. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$) 14... $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ h4 17.a7 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ h3=;

(c) 7.f5 $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ 8.hxg5 (the position after 8. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 9.a6, which actually arose in the game, is discussed below) 8...fxg5 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}a3!=$

Krakops was late with the advance g6-g5, having chosen 6... $\mathbb{Q}a3?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8.a6 g5.



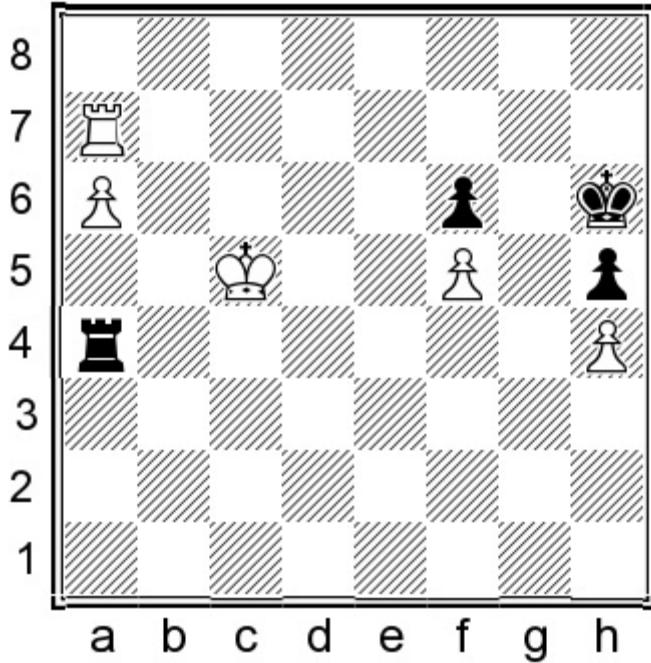
9-185g
W?

Now it was White's turn to err. He could have won with 9. $\mathbb{E}a8!$ $gxh4$ 10. $gxh4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ (but not 13. $\mathbb{Q}a7?$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ The only move. The e-file became accessible to the black rook, which has enough checking distance from there, and this is a draw) 13... $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h8!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ f5 18. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}a1+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 20. h5 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 21. h6 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 22. h7 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}xf5+-$.

But the tempting 9. f5?, as played in the game, presented his opponent with two ways to save the game, neither of which he used.

(a) 9... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 11. a7 $\mathbb{Q}a4+!$, driving the king to the queenside with lateral checks: 12. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5+!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $gxh4!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 15. a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ h3!= (Pogosyan)

(b) 9... $gxh4$ 10. $gxh4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$



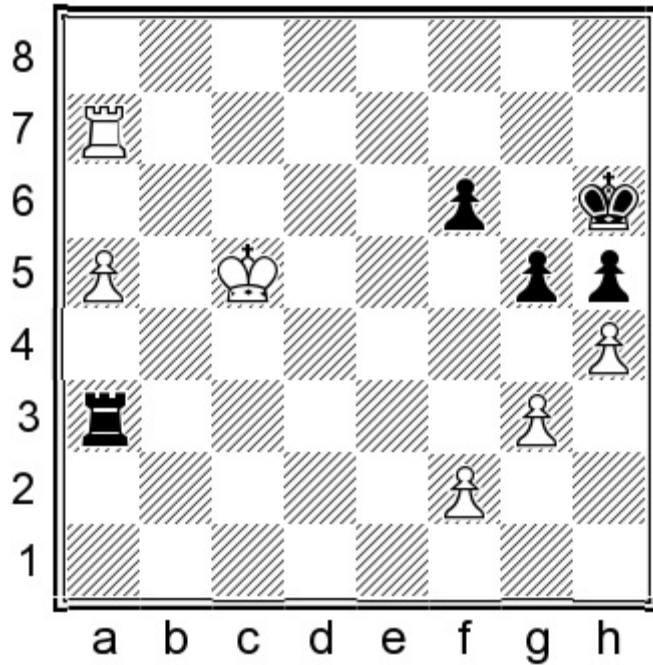
9-185h
B

Now 11... $\mathbb{R}xh4?$ was played in the game, and after 12. $\mathbb{R}a8 \mathbb{R}a4$ 13.a7 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{R}b4+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a5$) 14. $\mathbb{R}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 15.a8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{R}xa8$ 16. $\mathbb{R}xa8$ h4 17. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}f4$ 18. $\mathbb{R}h8 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ f5 20. $\mathbb{R}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ Black resigned.

But on the 11th move, Black should have inserted 11... $\mathbb{R}c4+!$ The rook is taboo because of stalemate. After 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6$, the “mad rook” theme no longer works (the king easily escapes harassment), but then, taking the pawn by 12... $\mathbb{R}xh4$ saves Black, as after 13. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{R}a4!$ (found by Thomas Stark; I had only considered 13... $\mathbb{R}b4$ which does not work) 14. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ h4 15. $\mathbb{R}a8 \mathbb{Q}h7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h3 draws.

The conclusion is that if Black plays 4... $\mathbb{R}a2$, he cannot take that pawn next move, but must return to the pawn counterplay plan with ...f6 and ...g5. But then, why not play it immediately? Indeed, 4...f6 is still the best solution, and it was played in the game.

5. $\mathbb{R}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 6.a5 g5! 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5$

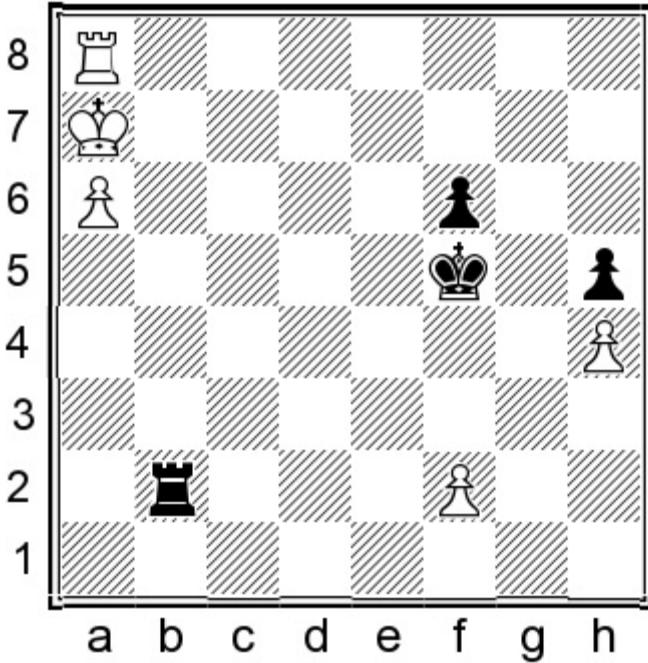


9-185i
B

7...gxh4? The decisive error! It is now time to remember Aagaard's defensive plan in the Kantorovich/Steckner position (diagram 9-162a) once again. It is necessary to refrain from exchanging pawns and play 7... $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ (but not 7... $\mathbb{Q}g6?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}a2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7+-$) 8.a6 $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{Q}f5!$ We have already seen this position, in the 4... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ variation. It is a draw. On 10.f3, there follows 10...gxh4 11.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}f4$, and 10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ is met with either 10... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ or with the preliminary 10... $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ (pointed out by Hull).

8.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}a4??$

An illogical move, as it makes sense only in connection with the capture on h4, but Black cannot take this pawn. Both 8... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ and 8... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ would have been better. But, even with the saved tempo, it is too late now for Black to save the game. For example, 8... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 9.a6 $\mathbb{Q}a2$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}c7$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}b2+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a7$



9-185j
B

We have again arrived at the situation discussed in the Kantorovich/Steckner analysis. On 12... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 13. $\mathbb{R}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 14. $\mathbb{R}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6+-$; 13... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 14. $\mathbb{R}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 18.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}a6+-$) 14. $\mathbb{R}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ we reach diagram 9-168f, with the difference that the pawn is on f6; 16. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ wins (as does the more complicated 16. $\mathbb{Q}b5!?$).

But after 12... $\mathbb{Q}f4$, there is the position in diagram 9-171, but with an extra tempo for White. There the pawn had time to get to f5, and 13. $\mathbb{R}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ led to a draw, but with the pawn on f6, 14. $\mathbb{R}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ wins.

9.a6 $\mathbb{Q}a2$

Black loses at once after 9... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 11.a7 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a5+-$

10. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 16.a7 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ h4 18.a8= $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ h3 21. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ h2 25. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h1= $\mathbb{Q}+$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ Black resigned.

The last two examples prompt us to make the following useful conclusions:

Quick activation of the king is a high priority for the weaker side.

In a standard pawn structure, posting the rook on a6, with the idea of confining the black king to g7, is no less dangerous in a practical sense than a pawn advance to a6.

The defender has a good counter-plan at his disposal: ...f7-f6 followed by ...g6-g5.

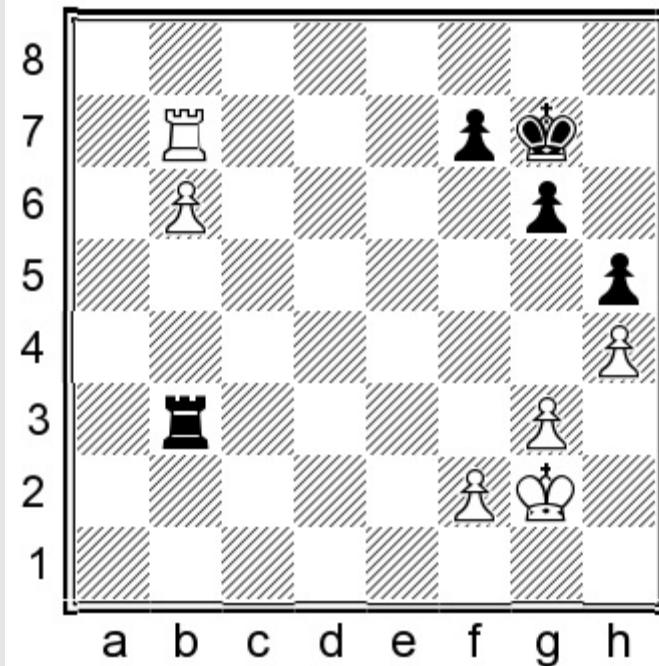
Show in Text Mode

A Knight Pawn

If a passed pawn stands on the b-file, the king saves a tempo when heading towards it – and another tempo when returning after winning a rook for the pawn. Therefore the stronger side is almost always successful in practical endings. But a detailed postmortem analysis usually shows that the defense could have been improved and the defender's claims of a missed draw are not groundless.

Diagrams 9-186, 9-187, 9-188, 9-189, 9-190, 9-191, 9-192 and 9-193 have been intentionally omitted.

Hollis – Flórián
ol cr 1972

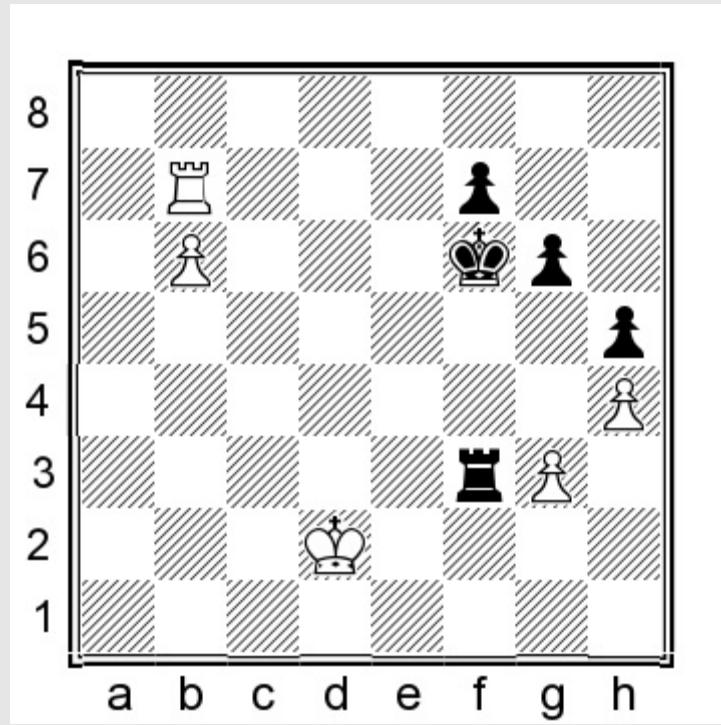


9-194
W

Deep analysis of this example will help us understand the basic patterns of endings with a knight's pawn. According to Adrian Hollis' comments, his victory was legitimate...

1. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{B}b2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. f3 $\mathbb{B}b3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{B}xf3?$

Although this capture looks natural, as no counterplay on the kingside may be generated without it, nevertheless, as will become clear later, this is the decisive mistake.



9-195

W?

(a) 5.♔c2?

The threat is 6.♕xf7+ ♔xf7 7.b7.

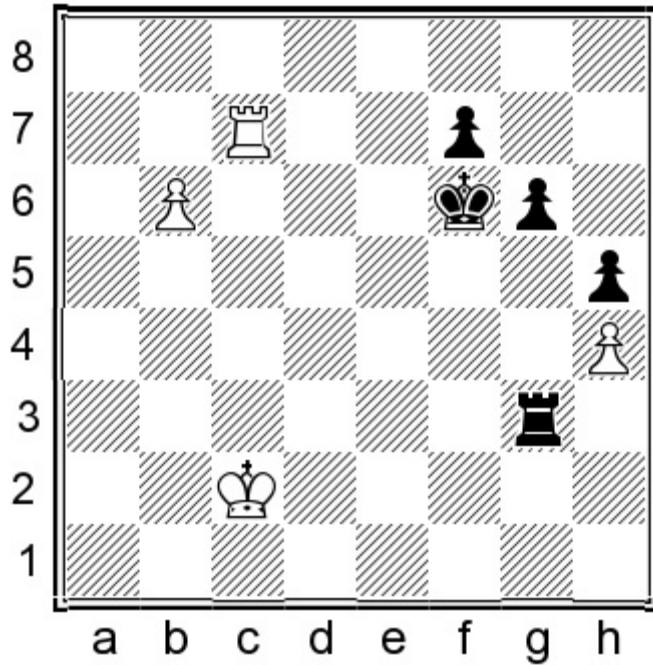
5...♜e3!

The only way to survive. After bringing the rook to the eighth rank, Black will not be afraid of any interference along the b-file, and his king can advance quickly. All other plans lead to a loss.

The game in question continued as follows: 5...♝f5? 6.♝c7 ♜b5 7.b7 ♔e6 8.♔c3 f6 9.♔c4 ♜b1 10.♔c5 ♔f5 11.♕d7! ♜c1+ (11...♝g4 12.♕d4+ and 13.♕b4+–) 12.♔d6 ♜b1 13.♔c7 ♜c1+ 14.♔d8 ♜b1 15.♔c8 ♔g4 16.♕d6 g5 17.♕xf6 gxh4 18.gxh4 ♔xh4 19.♕g6! ♔h3 20.♔c7. Black resigned in view of 20...♜xb7+ (20...h4 21.♕b6) 21.♔xb7 h4 22.♔c6 ♔h2 23.♔d5 h3 24.♔e4 ♔h1 25.♔f3+–

The principled continuation 5...♜xg3? does not help. The idea behind it is 6.♕xf7+? ♔xf7 7.b7 ♜g2+ 8.♔c3 ♜g3+ 9.♔c4 ♜g4+ 10.♔c5 ♜f4! (10...♜xh4 11.b8=♛ ♜e4 also deserves attention) 11.b8=♛ ♜f5+ 12.♔d6 ♔g7!, and White cannot breach the black fortress (Averbakh).

The move 6.♝c7!, suggested by Hollis and analyzed by Averbakh, is much stronger than the rook sacrifice.



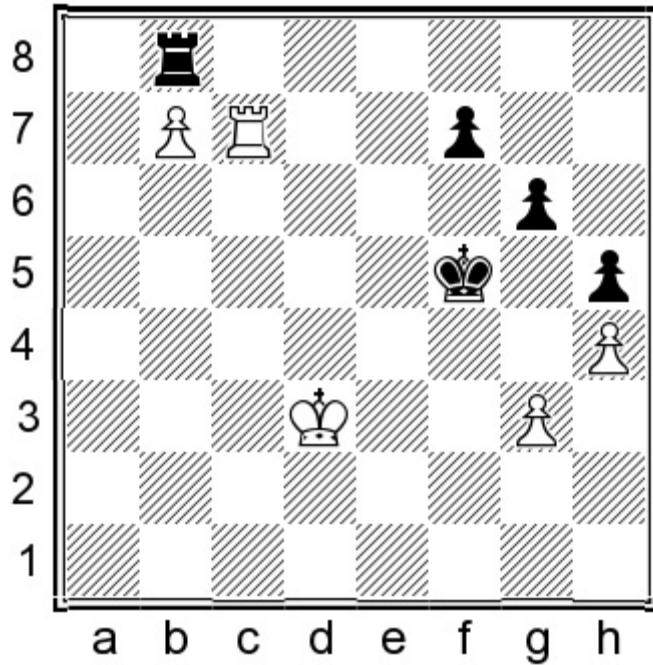
9-196

B

For example, 6... $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 12.b7+–; 10... $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3+–$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 12.b7 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 17.b8= $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f2+–$

Trying for an intermediary series of checks prior to the pawn capture – 5... $\mathbb{Q}f2+?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+–$ could have been justified after 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5(c4)$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ However it is refuted by 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5!+–$ (Yusupov, Dvoretsky).

6. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 7.b7 (7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6=)$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$



9-197

W

9. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$

Or 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f6 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ g5 13. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (15. $hxg5$ $fxg5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6=$) 15... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $gxh4$ 17. $gxh4$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c7=$

9... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ g5! 12. $hxg5$ h4 13. g6 h3 14. g7 h2 15. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}g2=$ (analysis by Averbakh).

(b) 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$

6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ was threatened, while 5... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ leads by a transposition of moves to the variation 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2?$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ examined above, shown to be winning for White. On 5... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ or 5... $\mathbb{Q}a3$, the move 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ is no longer dangerous, but the simple 6. b7 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$, followed by bringing the king up, is sufficient for White to win.

6. b7 $\mathbb{Q}f5$

No better is 6... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$.

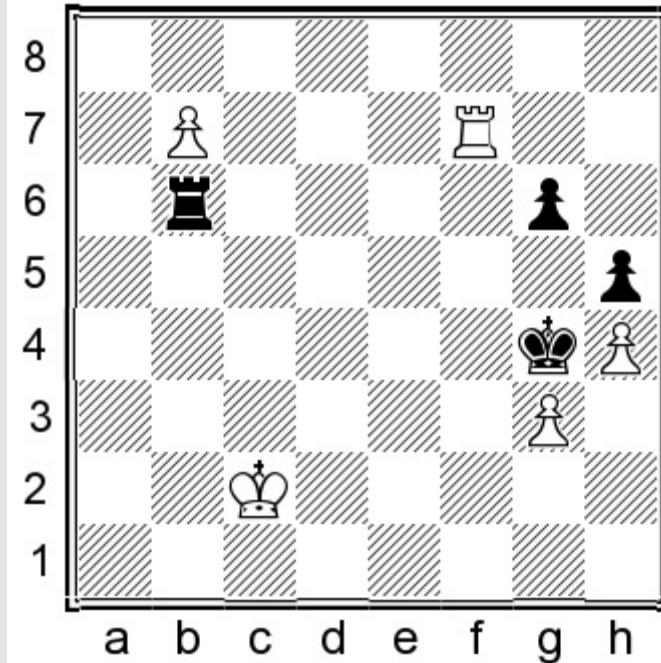
7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$

After 7... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (8... f6 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ (or 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3$) the rook and king can easily cope with the pawns.

8. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$

Weaker is 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ f6! 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6=$

8... $\mathbb{Q}g4$



9-198

W?

Kantorovich had analyzed to this position, believing that White wins by 9. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$. However, Black may decline the immediate capture of the pawn with 9... $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ For example, 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3!$ (now this is possible!) 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $h4=$. I therefore did not consider the move 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ particularly dangerous for Black (my main line was 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$), and the verdict of endgame theory on the sufficiency of the capture of the f3-pawn to draw seemed correct. This viewpoint was reflected in earlier editions of my *Endgame Manual*.

In 2008, master Igor Yanvarjov published analysis strengthening White's play. The Dutch analyst Wilbert Micawber had independently come to the same conclusion.

9. $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ (incidentally, this move is also strong after 9. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$) **9... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$.** And here it turns out that Black is defenseless.

10... $\mathbb{Q}b1$

Not 10... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ because of the rook deflection 11. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ If 10... $\mathbb{Q}b5$, then 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (also not bad is 12. $\mathbb{Q}d7$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xb7+-$

11. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$

Now the idea behind the zwischenzug 9. $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ becomes clear. The black rook is now situated not on b6, as in my line, but on b1, and 11... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ is no longer possible in view of the interference on b4 or b2 after 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3+!$

11... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$

No better is 12... $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ and 14. $\mathbb{Q}b4$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c1+$

16.†d7 ♜b1 17.†c7 ♜c1+ 18.†b8 ♜b1 19.†a3(c3)+-

13.†d3+ ♜xh4 14.†b3 ♜xb7 15.†xb7+-

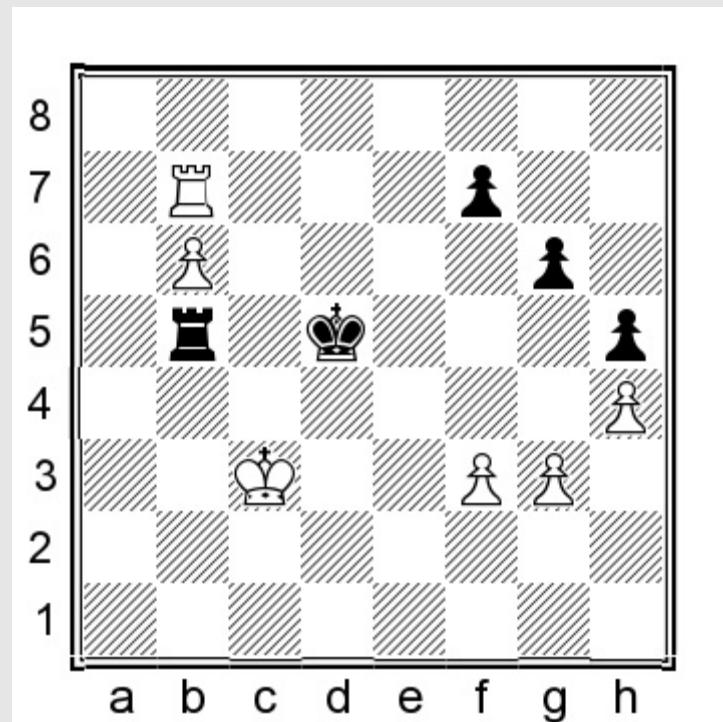
We come to the most interesting point. The fact the b-pawn is nearer the kingside in comparison with a rook's pawn has its sunny side for Black. He can abandon the idea of a race and apply another, somewhat surprising, strategy: his king is able to prevent the invasion of the enemy king.

The remarkable defensive plan of creating a barrier against the opponent's king was suggested many years ago by Vadim Kantorovich. He did not subject his idea to analysis and was not even sure that it would be sufficient to draw.

I examined the position, focusing on the piece placement proposed by Kantorovich: with the rook on b7, the king remains on e6, and in reply to the move ♜b8, removing the attack on the f7-pawn, †d6 is played. In the ensuing complicated variations, Black, it seemed to me, has every right to look forward to saving himself.

In 2011, Vardan Pogosyan made some significant theoretical corrections. First of all, he found the subtle road to victory in one of the lines which I had examined. Second, he established that Black achieves a draw much more easily than in my lines, if the king occupies d5, something that is both possible and necessary, even with the rook on b7!

4...†e6! (also good is 4...†e5!) 5.†c2 ♜b5 6.†c3 (6.g4 hxg4 7.fxg4 f5 8.gxf5+ †xf5 or 8.h5 fxg4! is not dangerous) 6...†d5!



On 7.†d3, simplest is 7...♜b3+ 8.†e2 ♜e5!? while on 7.♜b8 – 7...†c6 8.†d4 ♜b4+ and it useless for the king to move forward: 9.†e5 ♜b5+ 10.†f6 ♜f5+ and 11...♜xf3.

I came upon the position after 7.♕xf7 ♕xb6 8.♕e7, after analyzing quite a different line. Cutting the opponent's king off along the e-file, White intends to return his king to the right flank and then begin to set his pawns in motion. Black draws by playing 8...♗f6! 9.♕e3 (9.f4 ♗e6!=), and now:

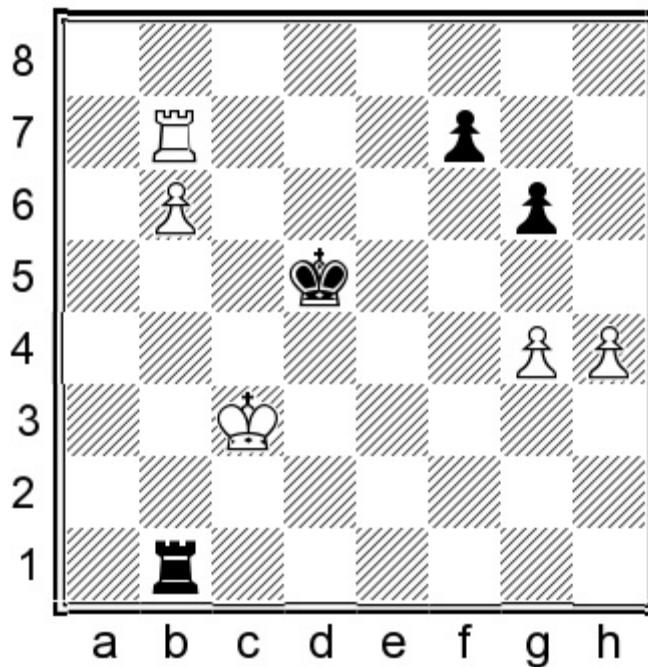
(a) 9...♗a6!? 10.♔d3 ♗a2 11.♔e4 (11.f4 ♔d6) 11...♗g2 12.♔e3 ♗xg3 13.♔f2 ♗g4! 14.♗xg4 hxg4 15.fxg4 ♗e4! 16.♔g3 ♗e5! 17.♔f3 ♗f6!= (we saw this endgame in the game Yusupov-Ljubojevic, in diagram 1-13);

(b) 9...♗f5!? 10.f4 (10.♔d3 g5=) 10...♔d6 (but not 10...♗f6 11.♔d3 ♗e6? 12.♗xe6 ♗xe6 13.♔e4 ♔f6 14.f5! gxg5+ 15.♔f4+-) 11.♔d3 ♗a5 12.♔e2 (12.♔e4 ♗e6=) 12...♔d7 (Black cannot do without this move: the rook would have to defend the g6-pawn along the sixth rank) 13.♔f3 ♗a1!? (not allowing 14.g4) 14.♗e5 ♗a3+ 15.♗g2 ♗a2+ 16.♔h3 ♗a6 17.f5 gxg5 18.♗xf5 ♗h6 19.♔g2 ♗e6 20.♗g5 ♗f7=

It is worth noting that these variations are not forced – there are other similar defensive set-ups. Moreover, White could sidestep them if, instead of 6.♔c3, he played 6.♔d3 ♔d5 7.♕xf7 ♕xb6 8.♕e7. But even here, after 8...♗b3+ 9.♔e2 ♗a3, Black can still count on drawing.

7.g4 hxg4 8.fxg4

Now, premature is 8...f5 9.g5! (9.gxf5 gxf5 10.h5 ♔c6=) 9...f4 10.♗b8!, for example, 10...f3 11.♔d2 ♗b4 (11...♗b2+ 12.♔e1 ♔c6 13.♗g8 ♗e2+ 14.♗f1 ♗e6 15.♗f2 ♗xb6 16.♗xf3 ♔c7 17.h5! gxh5 18.g6+-) 12.h5 gxh5 13.g6 ♗b2+ 14.♔e1 ♗e2+ 15.♗f1 ♗e7 16.♗h8 ♗g7 17.♗xh5+ ♔c6 18.♗g5 ♗xb6 19.♗f2+- (Dvoretsky). But after 8...♗b1!, White does not have a win.



9-200
W

- (a) 9.h5 gxh5 10.gxh5 ♔c6 11.♗xf7 ♗xb6=;
- (b) 9.♗b8 ♔c6 10.b7 (10.♗c8+ ♔d6) 10...♗f1= or 10...♗h1=;

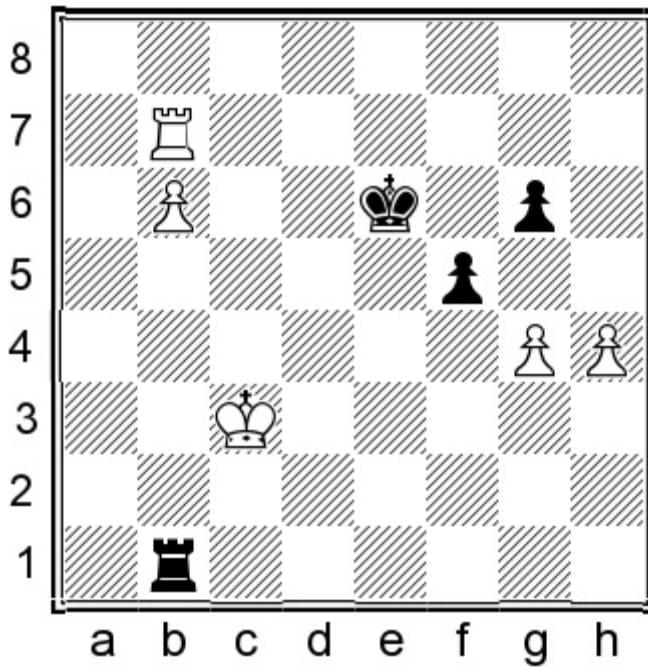
(c) 9.†c2 †b4 (also possible is 9...†b5) 10.h5 gxh5 11.gxh5 †c5! 12.†b8 †h4=;

(d) 9.†d3 f5!? (9...†b5 is also not bad, or 9...†b3+ 10.†e2 †e6) 10.gxf5 gxf5 11.h5 †c6 12.†b8 †h1= (analysis by Pogosyan).

We could, in principle, confine ourselves to this. But I wanted to show what dangers might await Black if he defends less precisely, especially since the variations which arise are rather interesting.

Instead of 6...†d5!, I examined 6...†b1, which, while not losing, does give his opponent additional possibilities.

(a) I had made a real mistake in the analysis of the line 7.g4 hxg4 8.fxg4 f5? (necessary is 8...†d5!, arriving, by a transposition of moves, to the drawn position which we just examined).



9-201

W?

9.g5 f4 is not dangerous, or 9.gxf5+ †xf5 10.†b8 †g4 11.b7 †h3! (11...†b6? 12.h5! gxh5 13.†g8+ †f3 14.b8=† †xb8 15.†xb8 h4 16.†h8! †g3 17.†d3 h3 18.†e2!+-) 12.†d4 †b2 13.†c5 †b1 14.†c6 †c1+ 15.†d6 †b1 16.†e5 (16.†e6 †g4 17.†f6 †b6+ 18.†g7 †g3=) 16...†b6! 17.†f4 †b5!= On 9.†c2 †b5 10.h5, there follows 10...fxg4!=

9.h5! gxh5 (9...fxg4 10.hxg6 g3 11.g7 †c1+ 12.†d2 †c8 13.†e2+-)

I further examined 10.gxh5 f4! (10...†f6? 11.h6+-; 10...†d6? 11.†g7+-; 10...†h1? 11.†c7! †d6 12.†h7 †b1 13.b7 †e5 14.h6 †f6 15.†d7+-) 11.†d3 †h1! 12.†h7 (12.†c7 †xh5 13.b7 †b5) 12...†b1 13.b7 (13.†e4 †b4+ 14.†f3 †f5) 13...†f6 (13...†f5? 14.†g7; 13...f3=) 14.†e4 †b4+ 15.†f3 †g5=

Pogosyan found the powerful zwischenzug **10.†c2!!**, expelling the rook from b1. On 10...†h1, 11.†c7 †d6 12.†c8 is decisive, and after 10...†g1, the most precise is 11.†g7+- After 10...†b5 (or 10...†b4) 11.gxh5, achieving a draw is not possible, inasmuch as 11...f4 12.h6 is not that effective: the

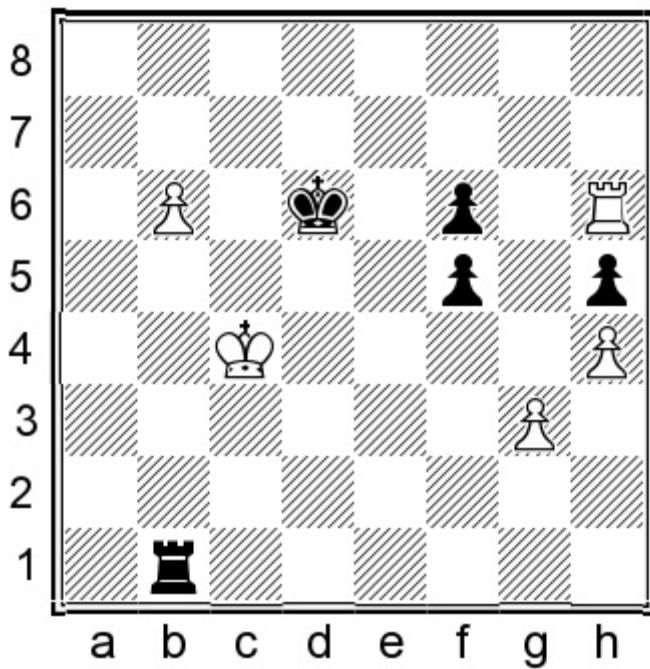
f-pawn, without any support from the rook on the first rank, is easily held back by the king. 10... $\mathbb{B}b4$ 11.gxh5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{B}b1$ 13.h6 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 14. $\mathbb{B}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 15.h7 $\mathbb{B}h1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ — also does not help.

(b) On 7. $\mathbb{B}b8$, necessary is 7... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ 8.g4 hxg4 9.fxg4 $\mathbb{Q}c6=$, or 8.b7 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{B}g1$ 10. $\mathbb{B}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 11. $\mathbb{B}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{B}xg3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{B}g1=$, or 8. $\mathbb{B}b7$ $\mathbb{B}b5=$

The alternative, 7... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$, allows White to improve his king position with 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{B}b2$ 9. $\mathbb{B}b7!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ $\mathbb{B}c2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{B}b2$ and only now 12.g4 hxg4 13.fxg4 $\mathbb{B}b1$ 14. $\mathbb{B}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 15.b7 $\mathbb{Q}c6$, and we see why 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ was important. White gained a tempo to put his king on d4. With the king on c4, this would be a draw, but here 16. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ wins.

I had previously noted the choice between 7... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and 7... $\mathbb{Q}d6$, but preferred to focus on the latter, to demonstrate an interesting attempt for White instead of the correct 9. $\mathbb{B}b7!$ I will nevertheless provide it, although it has lost its practical significance:

9.f4 (?) 9... $\mathbb{B}b1$ 10.f5 gxf5 (otherwise 11.fxg6 fxg6 12. $\mathbb{B}g8$) 11. $\mathbb{B}h8$ f6! 12. $\mathbb{B}h6!$



9-202

B?

Now the natural 12... $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ leads to a loss after 13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{B}b3$ 14. $\mathbb{B}g6$ f4 15.gxf4+ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c6$.

12... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{B}c1+!$

Before attacking g3, it is useful to drive the king to b7 where it will impede its own pawn. Incidentally, with the king on e5, the white king can be protected from checks on b8, not b7.

14. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{B}b1+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{B}c1+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{B}c3$

And here is the main advantage of the king on e6: White cannot defend the g3-pawn with the rook (17. $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7!)$.

17. $\mathbb{E}xh5$ $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c7!?$ $\mathbb{E}c3+$ (18... $\mathbb{E}g7+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}c6$) 19. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{E}b3!?$ (19... $f4$ 20. $\mathbb{E}b5$ $f3$) 20. $b7$ $\mathbb{E}b1!$ and, as shown in subsequent analysis, Black saves the game.

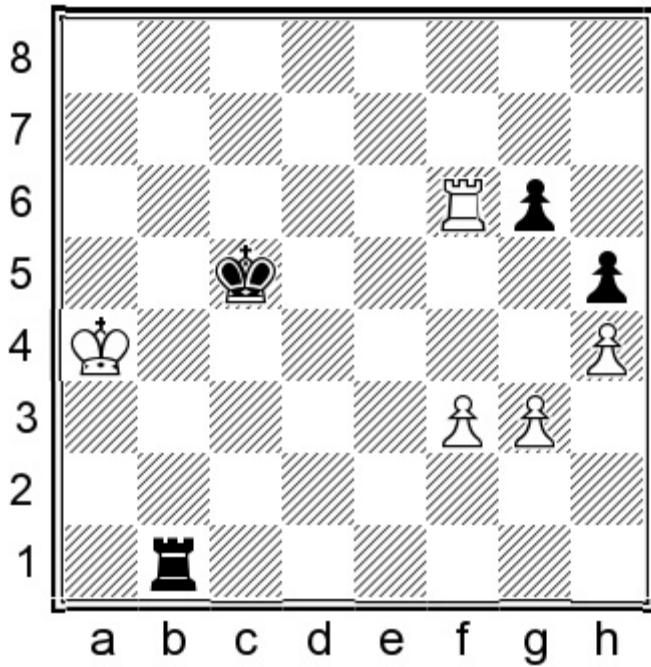
(c) 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}c1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}b1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a2!?$ White plans $\mathbb{E}b8$ followed by a king advance. He could not break through to the pawn along the c-file, but the a-file lies open.

If 9. $\mathbb{Q}a3$, Black parries the threat by 9... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ (both 9... $\mathbb{E}b5?$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{E}b1$ 11. $\mathbb{E}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ and 9... $\mathbb{E}a1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 12. $\mathbb{E}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 14. $\mathbb{E}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 15. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ are bad). White responds with 10. $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ (10. $\mathbb{E}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{E}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ or 11. $\mathbb{E}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 12. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5=$) 10... $\mathbb{E}a1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}b1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{E}b5$ 13. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$, and a drawn position, which we have already discussed, has arisen (cf. diagram 9-199, the variation 7. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$), only with the insignificant difference that here the king is on c2 instead of c3.

9... $\mathbb{E}b5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{E}b1$

A quicker draw can be achieved in a pawn endgame with a pawn less: 10... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!?$ 12. $\mathbb{E}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 13. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ $\mathbb{E}f5!$ 14. $\mathbb{E}xf5$ $gxf5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6=$ (reciprocal zugzwang!).

11. $\mathbb{E}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 13. $\mathbb{E}c8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}xb6??$ 14. $\mathbb{E}b8+$; 13... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a5)$ 14. $\mathbb{E}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 15. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 16. $\mathbb{E}f6$



9-203

B?

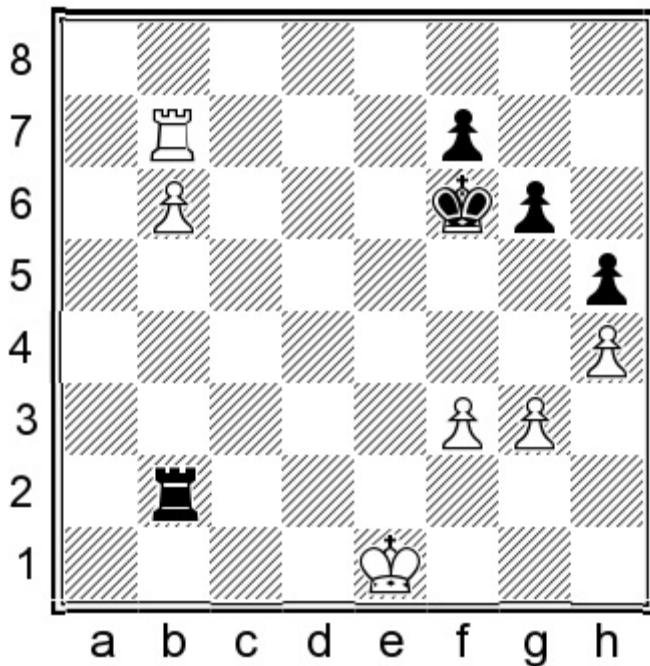
How should Black proceed? 16... $\mathbb{E}f1?$ 17. $f4 \Delta$ $\mathbb{E}xg6$ is hopeless, while 16... $\mathbb{E}a1+?$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}f1$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ leads to a lost pawn endgame.

16... $g5!!$ (suggested by Zviagintsev) 17. $hxg5$ (17. $\mathbb{E}f5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$; 17. $\mathbb{E}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$) 17... $\mathbb{E}g1$ 18. $f4$ $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 19. $g6$ $h4$ 20. $f5$ $h3$ 21. $\mathbb{E}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}d5=$

I would like to add that even with the white pawn on f2 (instead of f3) it is still a draw: 16... $\mathbb{E}b4+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{E}g4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (18... $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ loses to 19. $\mathbb{E}a6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 20.f4+ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 21. $\mathbb{E}a3$, the same is 19... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 20. $\mathbb{E}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 21.f4 – because of the tragicomic rook position on g4) 19. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (19. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ 20. $\mathbb{E}a3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 21.f4 $\mathbb{Q}f2$; 19. $\mathbb{E}e6$ g5 or 19... $\mathbb{E}e4$) 19... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 20. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5=$

As can be seen, this endgame is extremely complicated. One can hardly remember all its intricacies, but after all, one should not. Understanding the basic ideas is enough.

Speaking about ideas... Let's return to the very beginning of this ending.



9-204

B

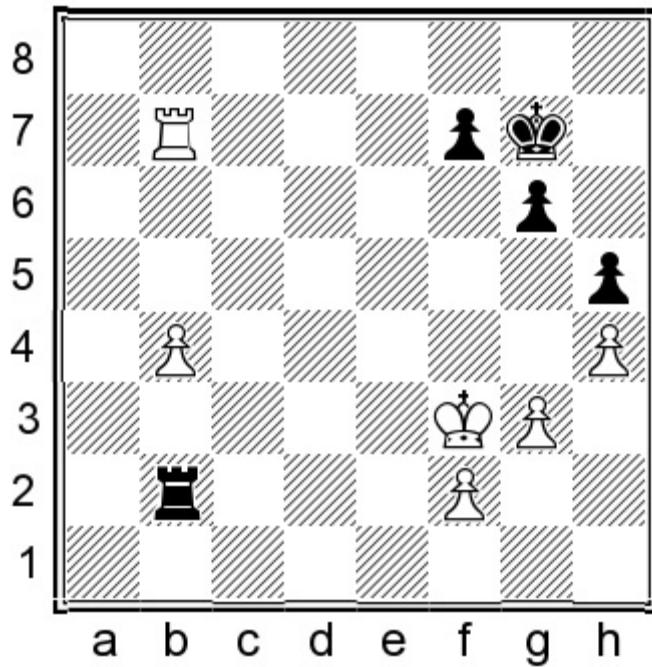
We now have the right to question the natural move 3... $\mathbb{E}b3$!?

The idea was to tie down the king to the f3-pawn. But since the king is not going to protect it, and since Black, as has become clear, cannot justify capturing it, why waste a tempo withdrawing the rook? Stefan Bücker correctly noted that there is a relatively simple draw after 3... $\mathbb{Q}e6$!? 4. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ f6 5. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{E}b5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2(c2)$ 6...g5

He even proposed another way to conduct the defense: the immediate activation of the king by 3... $\mathbb{Q}e5$!? 4. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{E}b5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 7.b7 f5! (but not 7... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$? 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$, with the threat of transferring the rook to the b-file). The draw is also still attainable here, but the lines are much more intense. Here is one of them: 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 9.f4 $\mathbb{E}b6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$! 12. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ and the white king has nowhere to hide from the checks.

Finally, analogous to the basic defensive idea in the Kantorovich/Steckner position (diagram 9-158), 3...g5!? 4.hxg5+ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 5. $\mathbb{E}b8$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ h4=) 5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is worth serious attention.

Portisch – Petrosian



9-205

B

1...♔h6

Petrosian prepares ...f7-f6 and ...g6-g5. The positional defense method (à la Kantorovich), starting with 1...♗f6 had not yet been discovered and still is not widely known.

1...♔h6 2.♗e3?!

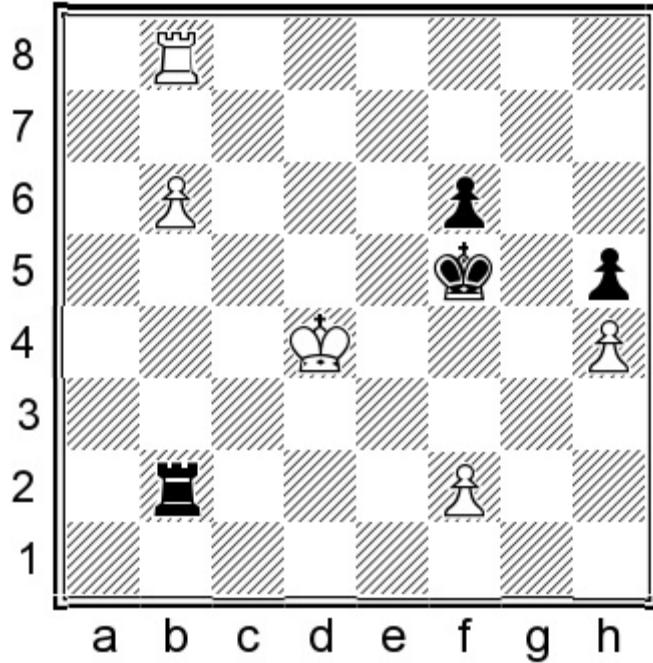
Portisch suggests a more energetic approach: 2.b5!? f6 3.b6 g5 4.♗b8 gxh4 5.gxh4 ♔g6 6.♗e4+– The evaluation of the final position is correct, but the defense can be improved. As Pogosyan established, Black draws by continuing 5...♗b4 (instead of 5...♔g6?) 6.♗e3 ♔g7! 7.♗d3 ♗xh4 8.♗c3 ♗h1. White may try 4.♗e4!? but here Black saves himself by playing 4...♗xf2 (and, most importantly, without exchanging pawns on h4). However, to avoid the pitfalls of complicated calculations, the move order can be changed: 3...♗b4! 4.♗b8 g5 5.♗e3 ♔g7!= (or 5...gxh4 6.gxh4 ♔g7!=).

2...f6 3.♗b6 ♔g7 4.♗b7+ ♔h6 5.♗b8?!

In Kantorovich's opinion, the correct line is 5.b5 g5 6.♗d4 gxh4 7.gxh4 ♔g6 (7...♗b4+ 8.♗c5 ♗xh4 9.♗a7 ♗h1 10.♗a4 h4 11.b6 h3 12.b7 ♗b1 13.♗b4 ♗c1+ 14.♗b6+–) 8.b6 ♗xf2 9.♗a7 ♗b2 10.♗c5 ♗c2+ 11.♗d6 ♗b2 12.♗c6 ♔f5 13.♗a4+– However, 8...♔f5! (instead of 8...♗xf2) improves the defense and leads to a draw.

5...g5 6.b5 gxh4 7.gxh4 ♔g6 8.b6 ♔f5 9.♗d4

9.b7 does not win in view of 9...♗b4! 10.♗d3 ♔f4 11.♗c3 ♗b1 12.♗d4 ♔f3 13.♗d5 ♗xf2 14.♗e6 ♗b6+ 15.♗f5 ♔f3 16.♗g6 ♔g4= (Kantorovich).



9-206

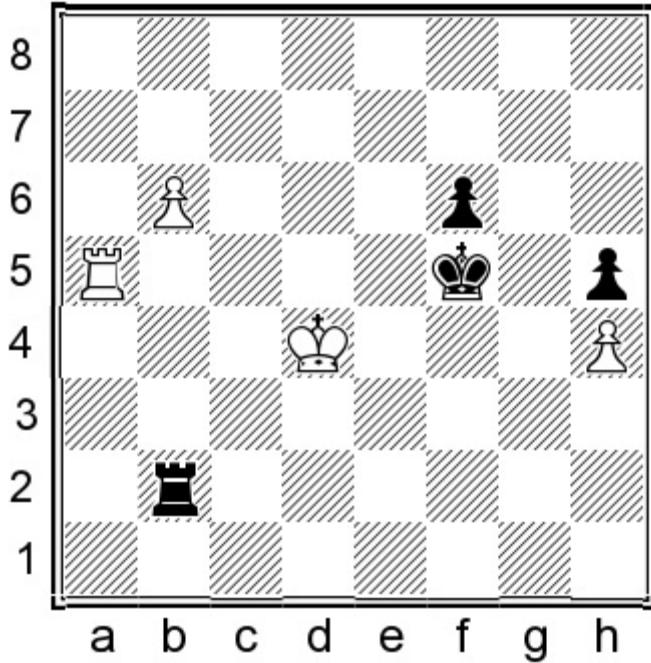
B?

9...Rxf2?

A draw could be achieved rather simply: 9...Qg4! 10.Rg8+ Qxh4 11.Qc5 Rc2+! (a standard method: the king is driven back with checks so that it is forced to stand in front of the pawn) 12.Qd6 Rb2 13.Qc7 Rc2+ 14.Qb8 Rxf2 15.b7 Rb2 16.Qc7 f5= (Averbakh).

10.Ra8 Rb2 11.Qc5 (Δ 12.Ra4+-) 11...Rc2+ (11...Qg4 12.Ra4+ Qg3 13.Rb4 Rc2+ 14.Qd6 Rc8 15.Qe6 is hopeless) 12.Qd4?! Rb2 13.Ra5+?

As noted by Pogosyan, White had to repeat moves: 13.Qc5 Rc2+ and now play 14.Qb5! Rb2+ 15.Qa6 Ra2+ 16.Qb7+- (after the rook withdraws, 17.Ra4 decides matters) or 15...Qg4 16.b7 Qxh4 17.b8=Q+-



9-207

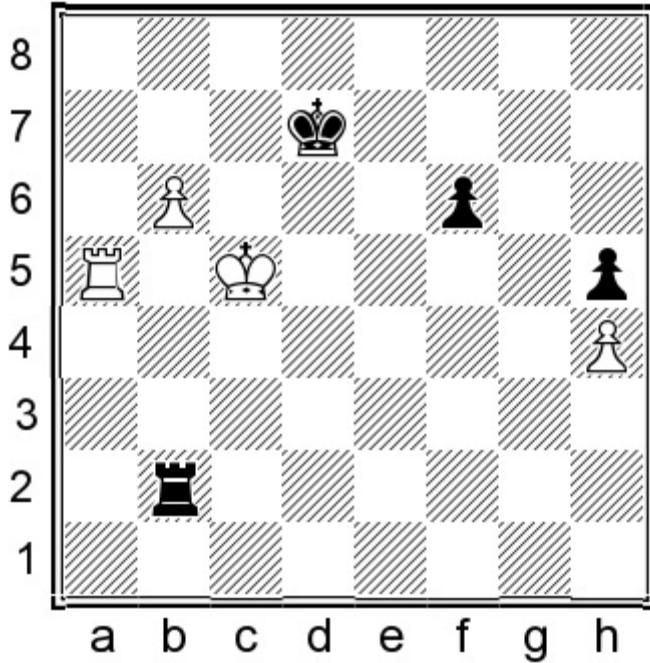
B?

Should the king go forward or backwards? Of course, 13... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ suggests itself (and works after 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}xh4=$). However White has the strong reply 14. $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ with the threat 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$. Let us look further: 14... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ f5 16. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}c2+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}c8$ 18.b7 $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}h8$ 20.b8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ (21...f4 22. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ f3 23. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ f2 24. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}xh4$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$) 22. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}g4$ (22... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ f4 24. $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$ or 23...h4 24. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ h3 25. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ h2 27. $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}g3+-$) 23. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ h4 24. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (24. $\mathbb{Q}b4+?$ f4!) 24...h3 (24...f4 25. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}f3$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}h8!$ or 25. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}g8+)$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ h2 26. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h1=Q+ 28. $\mathbb{Q}f3+-$

Yet Black can survive even after 14. $\mathbb{Q}a4$, as Igor Zaitsev has shown! He discovered 14... $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$ (instead of 14... $\mathbb{Q}g3?$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ f5 16. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}xb4!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ f4 18.b7 f3 19.b8= \mathbb{W} f2=: a queen does not win against a bishop pawn!

13... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}c2+?$

An error that leads to a rapid loss. He should have played 14... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$



9-208

W

Neither 15. $\mathbb{R}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 16. $\mathbb{R}h7$ $\mathbb{R}c2+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{R}b2$ nor 17. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{R}c4!$ 18. $\mathbb{R}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 19. $\mathbb{R}h8$ f5 is dangerous.

At first I thought that White would win by continuing 15. $\mathbb{R}a8!$ f5 16. $\mathbb{R}h8$ (16. $\mathbb{R}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!$) 16... f4 17. $\mathbb{R}xh5$ f3 18. $\mathbb{R}f5$ f2 (18... $\mathbb{R}h2$ 19. $\mathbb{R}f8!$) 19. $\mathbb{R}f8$ (19. h5 $\mathbb{R}e2!?$ Δ 20... $\mathbb{R}e5+$). However, Black has a way to draw with an attack on the b-pawn: 19... $\mathbb{R}c2+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{R}b2+$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ 22. $\mathbb{R}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5=$

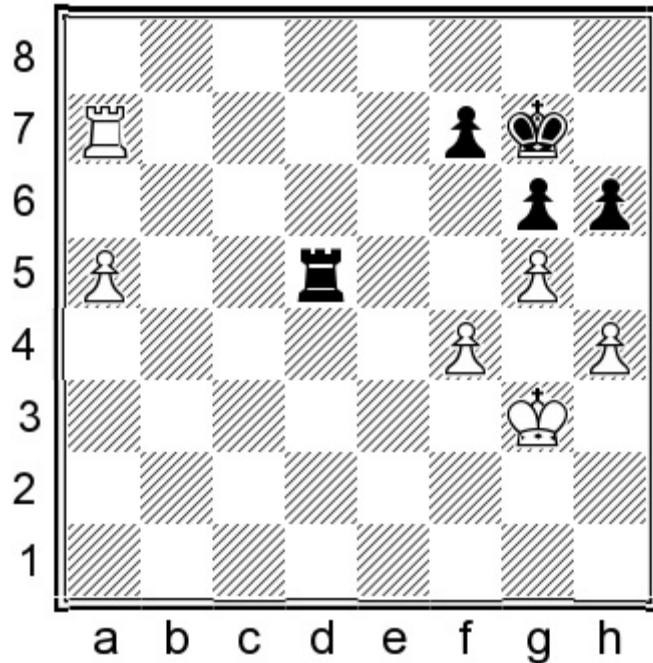
15. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 17. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{R}c4$ 18. b7 $\mathbb{R}b4$ 19. $\mathbb{R}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 20. $\mathbb{R}c8$ Black resigned.

When the Attacker Achieves g3-g4

In many of the positions we have examined, Black has aimed for an f7-g6-h5 pawn configuration, which is often regarded as the safest for the defending player when down a pawn in a rook ending. There are times when Black is unable to reach this structure, and White tries to prevent it by playing g4 and g5, thereby gaining space on the kingside. In this case, Black has a defensive scheme which was not well known until recently, and although it uses an idea dating back almost 100 years, to Vancura. Former US Champion Alexander Onischuk employed this scheme in 2017, and it immediately became topical:

Urkedal – Onischuk

WchT 2017

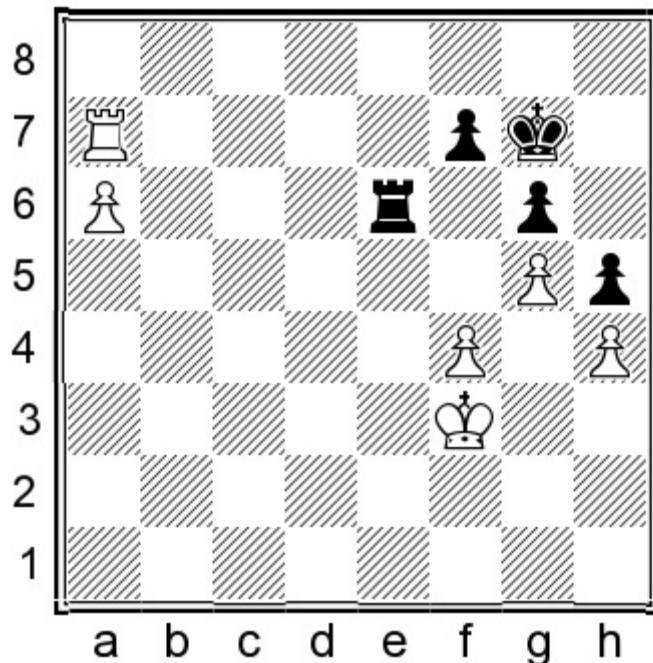


9-208a

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ h5 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$

3.a6 $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!$



9-208b

W

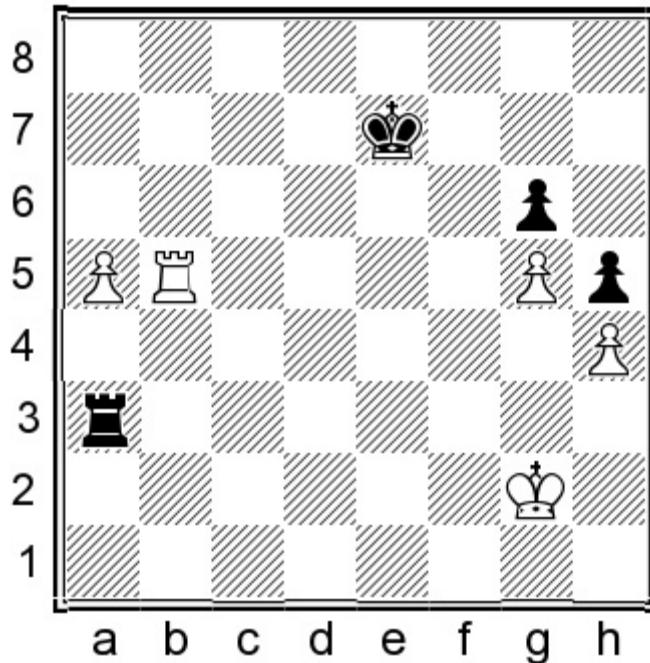
This is the Vancura idea, which we discussed in the section, “A Rook and a Rook’s Pawn vs. a

Rook.” Note that the white king is cut off, and f4-f5 is not effective, as he cannot keep his f-pawn. Therefore, this is a relatively simple draw, although modern engines show a “+3” or even “+4” at first. Also note that L’Ami’s new Vancura defense in the Kantorovich/Steckner position is similar. 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}g8$, but not 5... $\mathbb{E}e4?$ 6. $\mathbb{E}c7$, and White will win.) 5... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (5... $f5!?$ also draws: 6. $gxf6+\mathbb{E}xf6!$ with a Vancura-like defense) 6.f5 (after 6.a7 $\mathbb{E}a6$, White’s king has no shelter on the queenside anymore) 6... $gxf5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{E}e1$ (keeping the king cut off; 8... $\mathbb{E}d6$ also draws) 9. $\mathbb{E}c8 \mathbb{E}a1$ 10. $\mathbb{E}c6 \mathbb{E}a4!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{E}xh4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{E}a4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c7 h4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b7 h3$ 15. $\mathbb{E}h6 \mathbb{E}b4+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{E}b3$ 17.a7 f6=

3... $\mathbb{E}a3$ 4. $\mathbb{E}c5 \mathbb{Q}f8$ 5. $\mathbb{E}e5 f6!?$

5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ holds as well, but Onischuk uses the opportunity to activate his king and avoid an eternal cut-off.

6. $\mathbb{E}b5 f\mathbf{x}g5$ 7. $f\mathbf{x}g5 \mathbb{Q}e7$



9-208c

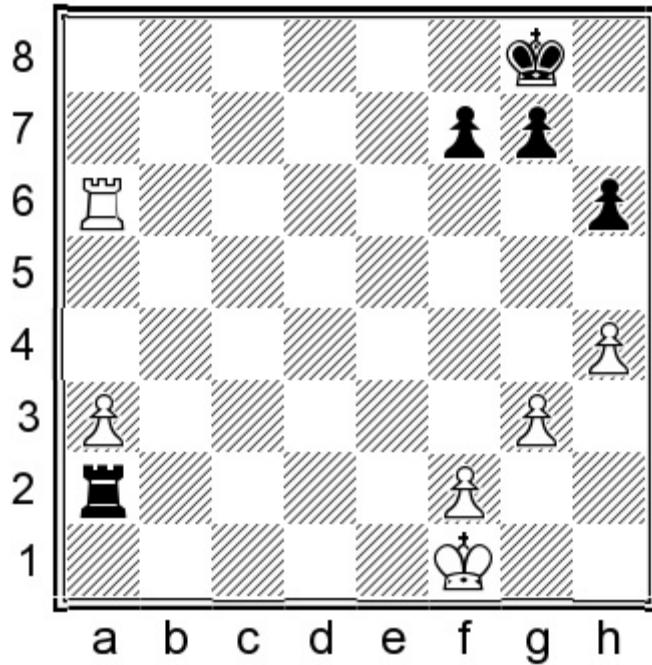
W

With the king moving up to the sixth rank and the h4-pawn a target, White can no longer try to win.

8. $\mathbb{E}b6 \mathbb{E}a2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{E}a3+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{E}a2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ Draw

Tragicomедies

Heinemann-Zelbel
German Bundesliga 2014



**9-208d
B**

1...g6?!

Slightly passive and the source of Black's problems. 1...h5 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ f6 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ g5= is much easier.

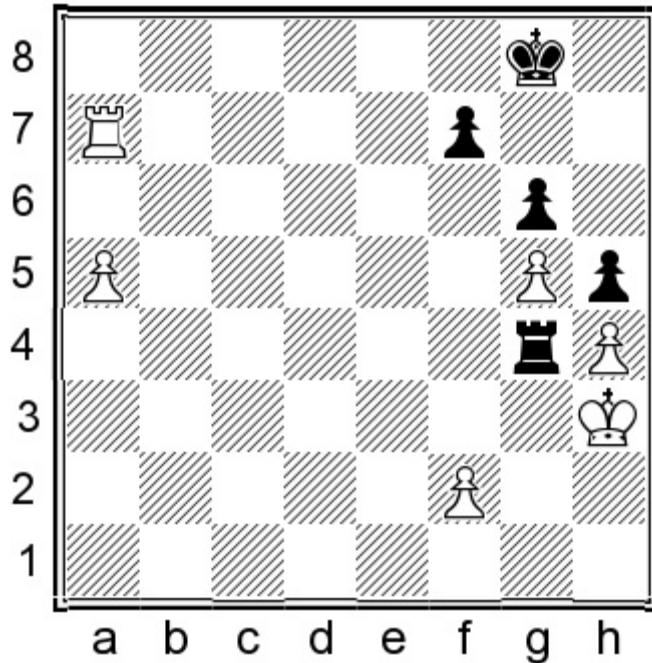
1...g6?! 2.g4

White holds back Black's h- and f-pawns in typical style.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 4.a4 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 5.g5

In the next section, we will see a position where White keeps the pawns on g4 and h4 and improves the king position first. We shall see that Black needs to play ...h5 anyway. On the other hand, if 5.h5 gxh5, then 6.gxh5 f5! 7.f4 $\mathbb{Q}a2+$! 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$! is a draw.

5...h5 6. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7.a5 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3$



9-208e

B?

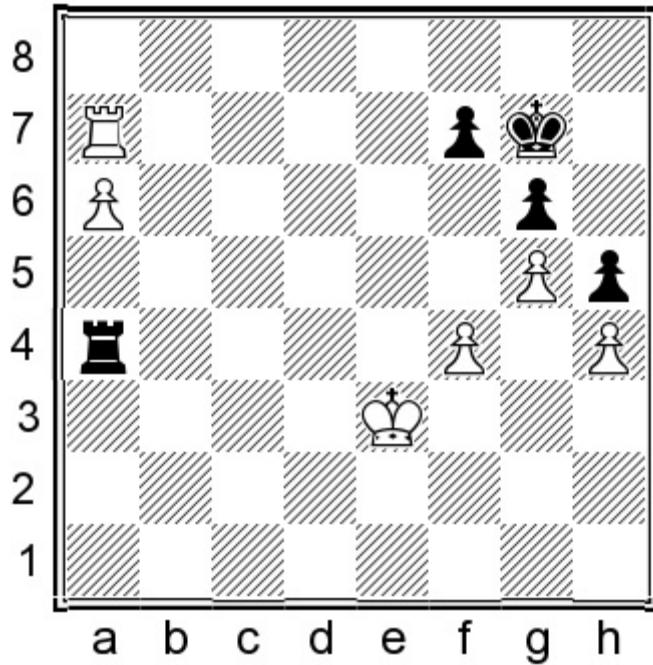
9...♜a4?

A typical mistake! The rook moves behind the rook pawn, when in fact it should be flexible. The configuration with the white pawn on g5 was not covered well in the literature. But we already know that Black should prepare the Vancura defense with 9...♜c4! (or to b4/d4) 10.a6 (10.♜b7 ♜a4 11.♜b5 is not dangerous and Black can choose whether to activate the king via f8 and e7 or go for...f6 counterplay, as in the Onischuk game) 10...♜c6 11.♗g3 ♗g7 12.♗f4 ♜e6 13.♜a8 ♗h7 14.a7 ♜a6=

10.a6 ♗g7 11.f4 ♜a3+ 12.♗g2 ♜a2+

12...♜a4 does not help, because after 13.♗f3 ♗f8, White plays 14.♗e2!! (but not the direct 14.♜a8+ ♗g7 15.♗e3 ♗h7 16.♗d3? ♜xf4 17.♗f8 ♗g7 18.a7 ♗xf8 19.a8=♛+ ♗g7 20.♛a1+ ♗g8 21.♛e1 ♜g4 which is a fortress) 14...♗g7 15.♗e3! with the same zugzwang position as in the game. This triangulation idea of 14.♗e2 was found by Anish Giri during a training session with Karsten Müller in August 2018.

13.♗f3 ♜a4 14.♗e3



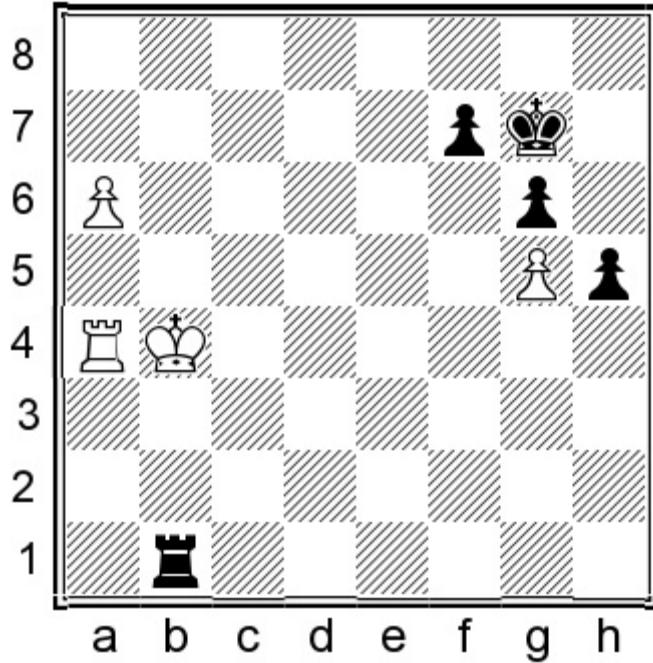
9-208f
B

Black is in a fatal zugzwang. He must move his king to the back rank, after which White gains a crucial tempo, because Black cannot take the pawn on f4.

14... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$

15... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ (16... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 17.a7 and Black is paralyzed while White brings the king to b8)
17.a7 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ is why White needed to force the king to go to g8.

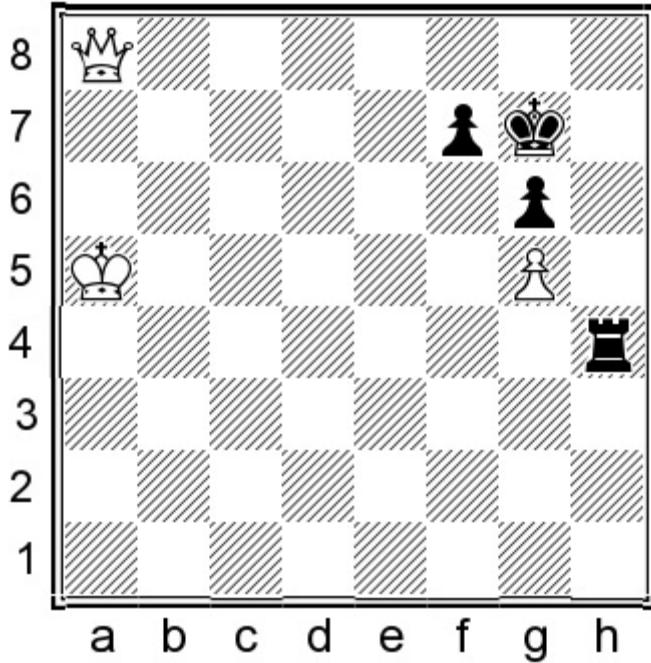
16. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ $\mathbb{Q}a1+$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b1+$



9-208g
W?

25.♔c5?

White returns the favor, giving the defending rook a check at the decisive moment. The king had to hide in the shadows with 25.♔a5! ♜b8 26.♕c4 and now 26...♜h8! (the only defensive attempt: White will have to give up the rook rather than queening the pawn cleanly. Instead, if 26...h4 27.♖xh4 f6 28.♗b4! and with the king on a5 Black has no check, so White wins immediately) 27.a7 h4 28.♖xh4 (28.♗b4? allows a miraculous escape with 28...♜a8 29.♔a6 h3 30.♗b2 ♜c8!! 31.♖b8 h2 32.♖xc8 h1=♕ 33.a8=♕ ♜a1+= when despite being a rook up White cannot stop the perpetual, as his heavy pieces are too deep in the opponent's territory.) 28...♜xh4 29.a8=♕



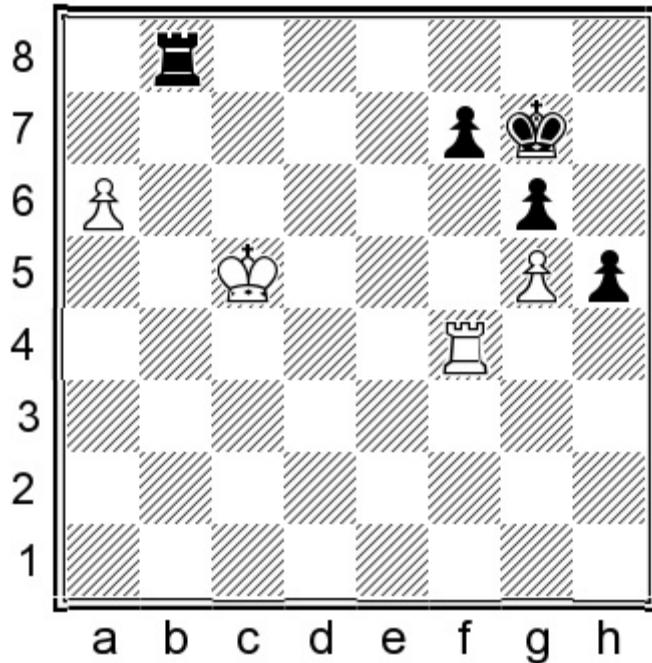
9-208h

B

reaching a position that looks like a fortress. In the 2004 Endgame Corner 37 in chesscafe.com, Karsten Müller and Spanish IM Arizmendi concluded it was a draw, but in 2014 Müller found a win, which was later confirmed by the seven-piece tablebase: mate in 52! 29... $\mathbb{E}c4$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{E}c1$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{E}c2$ 32. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}c1$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{E}c5$ 34. $\mathbb{W}d8$ $\mathbb{E}c6$ 35. $\mathbb{W}d7$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ 36. $\mathbb{W}b5$ $\mathbb{E}c8$ (Black's only hope is to cut off the king on the c-file, but he does not have enough squares) 37. $\mathbb{W}a6!$ $\mathbb{E}c5$ 38. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 39. $\mathbb{W}d8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (39... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 40. $\mathbb{W}d4+!$) 40. $\mathbb{W}e7$ and Black is forced to let the white king cross the c-file and eventually reach f8, winning.

25... $\mathbb{E}b8$ 26. $\mathbb{E}f4$

26. $\mathbb{E}d4$ h4! 27. $\mathbb{E}xh4$ f6! 28. $\mathbb{E}b4$ $\mathbb{E}c8+!$ is why the king should not have gone to c5: Black now creates a passed pawn on the kingside which saves the day.



9-208i
B

26...♝b1?

Giving White another chance, when 26...h4 draws like in the previous note.

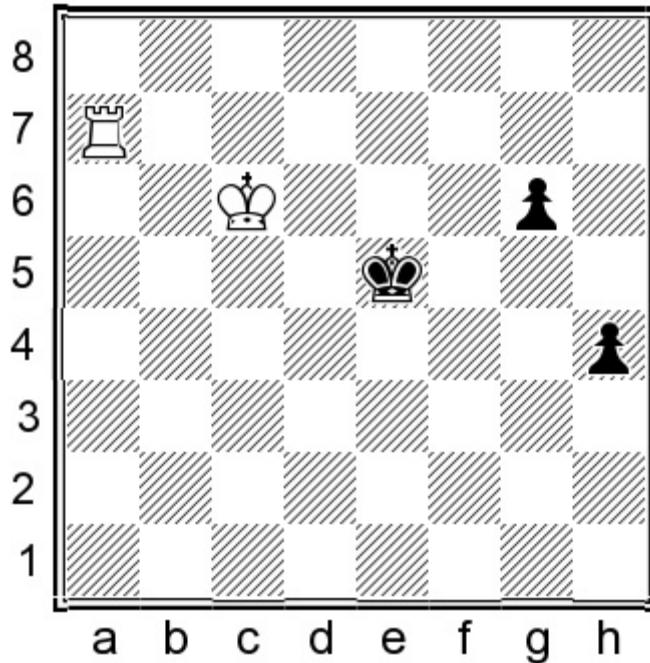
27.♝a4?

Missing the opportunity with 27.a7 (also winning is 27.♝d4, preventing counterplay with ...f6, as White can check on the seventh rank) 27.a7 ♜a1 28.♝b6 and Black is a tempo too slow after 28...h4 29.♝xh4 f6 30.gxf6+ ♜xf6 31.♝h8 ♜xa7 32.♝xa7 g5 33.♝b6 ♜e5 34.♝c5 g4 35.♝e8+ ♜f4 36.♝d4 ♜f3 37.♝d3 g3 38.♝f8++—

27...♝b8 28.a7 ♜a8 29.♝a6

Not an effective way to stop the f6-break because Black is in time with his counterplay.

29...h4 30.♝b6 f6 31.gxf6+ ♜f7 32.♝b7 ♜xa7+ 33.♝xa7 ♜xf6 34.♝c6 ♜e5



9-208j
W

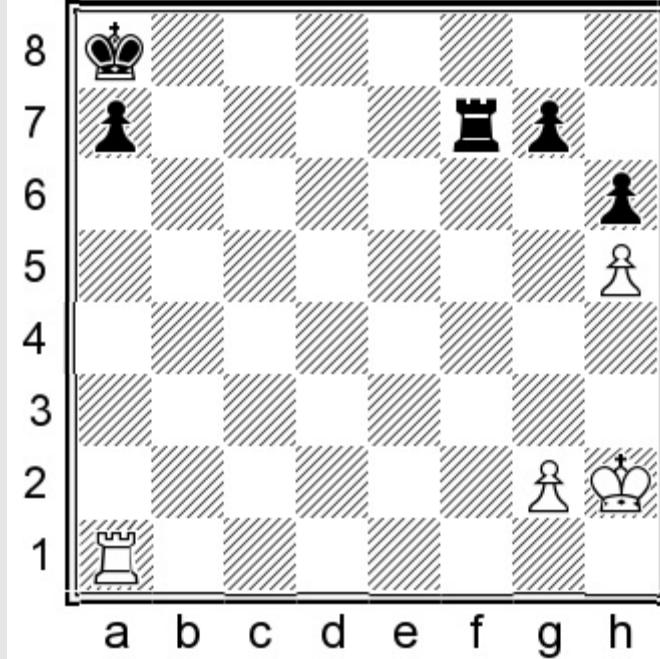
A good bodycheck, although it was not the only way to draw.

35. $\mathbb{R}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 36. $\mathbb{R}xg6$ $h3$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $h2$ 38. $\mathbb{R}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 39. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 40. $\mathbb{R}xh2+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ Draw.

The Rook at the Side of the Pawn

As we have already seen, putting the rook to one side of the passed pawn makes sense if the pawn is far advanced, and also when it is blockaded by the king. Here we shall be discussing one more case: the rook should go to the side of the pawn, when it is simultaneously defending the pawns on the other wing.

I.Rabinovich – Ragozin
USSR ch, Tbilisi 1937



9-209

B?

1... $\mathbb{R}f5!$ 2. $\mathbb{R}g4$ $\mathbb{R}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ a5+

After this maneuver, the king goes to the passed pawn in order to support its advance to the promotion square. His adversary lacks counterplay because the rook securely protects all the pawns.

4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{R}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}d5!$

It is important to cut the king off from the queenside. After 6... $\mathbb{Q}b5$?! 7. $\mathbb{R}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$, winning would have been more complicated.

7. $\mathbb{R}f4$

If 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$, then 7... $\mathbb{R}b5$! (Δ 8... $\mathbb{R}b4+$) 8. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{R}g5$ (driving the king back) 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$. Defense by frontal attack is useless here.

7... $\mathbb{R}d7$ (Δ 8... $\mathbb{Q}b5$) 8. $\mathbb{R}f5$ a4 9.g5 hxg5 10. $\mathbb{R}xg5$ a3 11. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ a2 12. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 13. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

On 14. $\mathbb{Q}f5$, the simplest reply is 14... $\mathbb{R}a6$!, but 14... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 16. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$! is also strong enough (as in Taimanov-Averbakh, diagram 9-110).

14... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 16. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ White resigned.

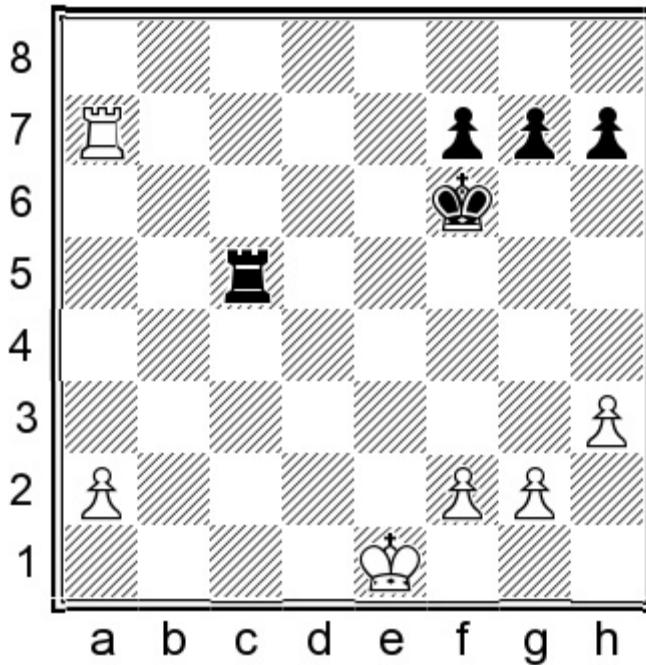
It is almost always sensible to go to the defense from the side, when the passed pawn has not advanced further than the second or third rank, because in that case, the rook is usually protecting its other pawns as well.

This sort of position occurs quite often in practical play but still does not have any definite

evaluation.

In the above example, the passed pawn was on the fourth rank, and the rook, defending it from the side, occupied an active position and defended its own pawns. This is often a winning strategy. However, if the passed pawn is only on the second or third rank, the rook defending it from the side is usually too passive. In the following example, Anatoly Karpov chose this strategy, but it only succeeded as a result of an error by the opponent.

Karpov – Knaak
Baden Baden 1992



9-210
W

1. $\mathbb{R}a3$

If 1. $\mathbb{R}d2$ $\mathbb{R}d5+$, the king can hardly escape from the rook checks because it must watch the second rank,

while 1. $a4?!$ $\mathbb{R}c2$ leads to a standard position with the black rook behind the passed pawn. Karpov brings the rook to the second or third rank where it will protect everything.

1. $\mathbb{R}a3$ g5

An unfavorable setup, particularly in conjunction with Black's next move (the king should have been kept in the center, to fight against the passed pawn if necessary). A more clever idea was 1...h5, with possibly an eventual ...h5-h4 and ... $\mathbb{R}g5$. But the move played does not harm anything.

2. $\mathbb{R}d2$ $\mathbb{R}g6?$

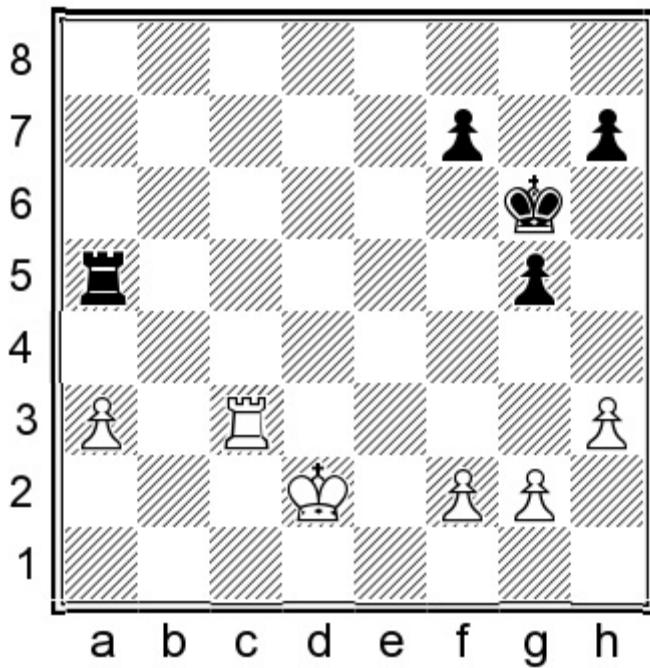
This move makes things difficult for Black. The immediate 2...h5 was called for.

3. $\mathbb{E}c3??$

The twelfth world champion had a unique sense for moves which were not always the best, but which caused his opponents practical problems. Awarding “?!” to 3. $\mathbb{E}c3$ here, after which he gets a winning position very quickly, is therefore not something we take lightly. However, it can be shown conclusively that now the position is drawn, whereas after the best move here we cannot reach a verdict as to what the outcome should be.

3. $\mathbb{E}a6+!?$ offers better winning chances. For example: 3...f6 4.a4 $\mathbb{E}c4!$ (4...h5? allows the rook to regroup with 5. $\mathbb{E}b6!$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{E}b4$) 5.a5 $\mathbb{E}f4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 7. $\mathbb{E}a8$ and Black's defense remains very difficult.

3... $\mathbb{E}a5$ 4.a3



9-210a

B?

4...h5?

A far from obvious, but decisive, mistake. Necessary was 4...f5, for example 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ g4! 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (6.hxg4 fxg4 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}b5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{E}f5$ 9. $\mathbb{E}c2$ h5=) 6... $\mathbb{E}b5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 8. $\mathbb{E}c4$ gxh3 9.gxh3 $\mathbb{E}d5$ and Black has enough counterplay.

5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{E}a8??$

5...g4 is not as effective here, because after 6.hxg4 hxg4 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}b5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{E}f5$ 9. $\mathbb{E}c2$, White safely defends everything. Therefore, the more asymmetrical ...f5 and ...g4, with a potential passed h-pawn, was necessary on the previous move. 5...f5 here may still offer a fighting chance, while after the move played, Karpov convincingly marches to victory.

6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}b8+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{E}a8$

7... $\mathbb{E}d8$ will not help after 8. $\mathbb{E}c2$ $\mathbb{E}d3$ 9.a4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10.a5 $\mathbb{E}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{E}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 12.a6+–

8.♕c4! f5

8...♝e8 9.♝b4 ♜e2+ 10.♝b2 ♜e4 11.♝b3+–

9.a4 ♜f6 10.♗a3 ♜e5 11.♗c5+ ♜e4 12.a5 h4 13.♗a4 ♜f4 14.♗c4+

14.♗b5 is also strong. After 14...♝b8+, 15.♗c6 ♜b2 16.♗c4+ wins quickly. 16.a6 ♜xf2 17.♔a5 ♜c2+ 18.♔b6 ♜c8 19.♔b7 ♜h8 20.♔a3! is also good.

14...♜e5 15.♝b4 ♜d5 16.♝b5+ ♜e4 17.♝b6 ♜f4 18.a6 g4 19.♗a5 g3

19...gxh3 20.♝b4+! ♜e5 21.gxh3+–

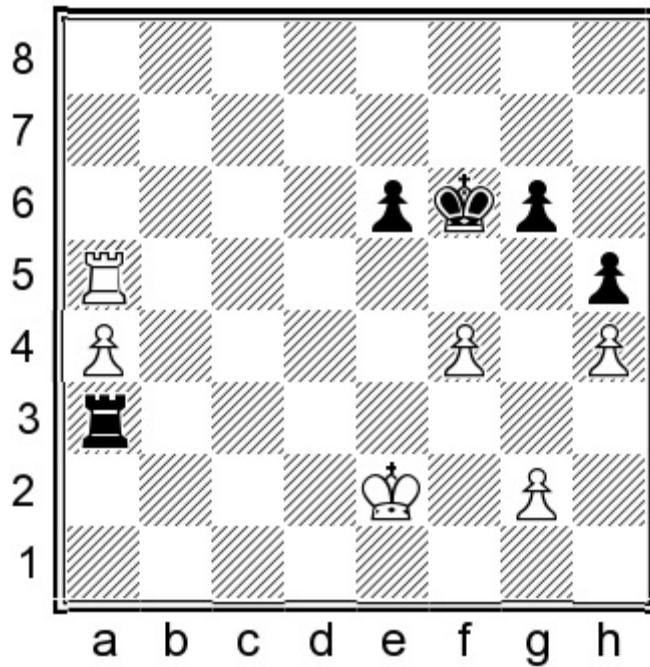
20.♝b4+ ♜e5 21.f3 f4 22.♝e4+ ♜f5 23.♝e2 ♜f6 24.♗b6 Black resigned.

Diagram 9-211 has been intentionally omitted.

Tragicomедies

Averbakh – Euwe

Switzerland ct 1953



9-212

B

1...♝g3??

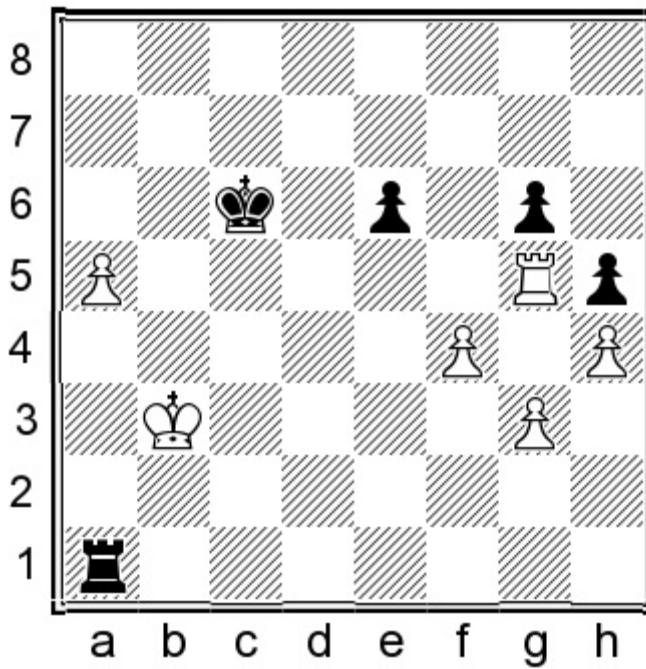
A grave mistake as Euwe allows his opponent to bring his rook to g5 with tempo. White's rook will safely protect all his pawns there (after g2-g3 and a4-a5). After 1...♜a2+!, a draw was quite obvious.

1...♝g3?? 2.♝g5! ♜a3 3.a5 ♜f7

Sometimes in similar situations, one succeeds in preventing the king's approach to the passed pawn by cutting the king off along a file, e.g., 3...♝c3 4.♗d2 ♜c4 5.g3 ♜c6. This method does not work in our

case: White plays 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{B}c1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{B}c2$ 8. $\mathbb{B}c5$ $\mathbb{B}g2$ 9. $a6$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ (9... $\mathbb{B}xg3$ 10. $\mathbb{B}a5$) 10. $\mathbb{B}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$, obviously outrunning his opponent.

4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{B}a4$ 7. $g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{B}a1$



9-213

W

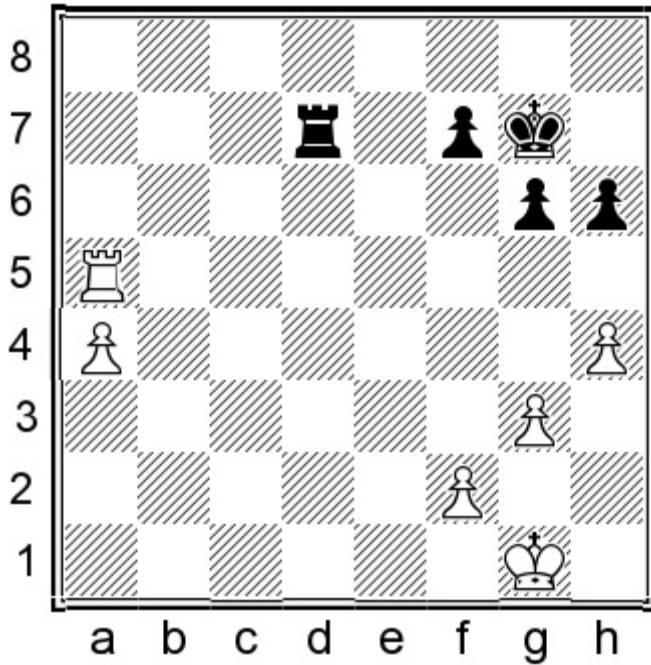
The simple 9. $\mathbb{B}xg6$ is strong enough for a win, but Averbakh finds a more accurate solution: a triangular maneuver with his king, putting Black in zugzwang.

9. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{B}b1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{B}a1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ \mathbb{O} Black resigned.

Every king move opens the road for the white counterpart, while 11... $\mathbb{B}b1+$ is met with 12. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{B}b4$ (12... $\mathbb{B}b5$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c4+-$) 13. $\mathbb{Q}a3$, and Black's g-pawn will be captured without losing the passed pawn.

Leko – Anand

Linares 2003



9-214

B?

1...♜d1+

Viswanathan Anand undoubtedly knew that such endgames, as a rule, are drawn. So it is hard to understand why he decided not to set up the standard pawn structure with 1...h5. After 2.♔g2 ♜d3! and 3...♜a3, the rook gets behind the passed pawn, while also restricting the enemy king, and Black would draw without any particular difficulty. There was no need to fear 2.♗c5 and 3.a5 (or 3.♗c4). He would have to concern himself with the flank defense of the pawn if the a-pawn had already reached the sixth or seventh rank.

1...♜d1+ 2.♔g2 ♜a1

It was still not too late to play 2...h5, returning to a familiar position. “When the engineer starts looking for new paths, the train goes off the rails.” Objectively, the move Anand chose is just as good, but takes the game off the path of known theory (at least, at that time).

3.g4

With this structure, Black has a much harder time getting counterplay on the kingside. Black is now in a new situation and must find a drawing path which was only discovered more than a decade later! But we already know it from the earlier section “When the Attacker Achieves g3-g4.”

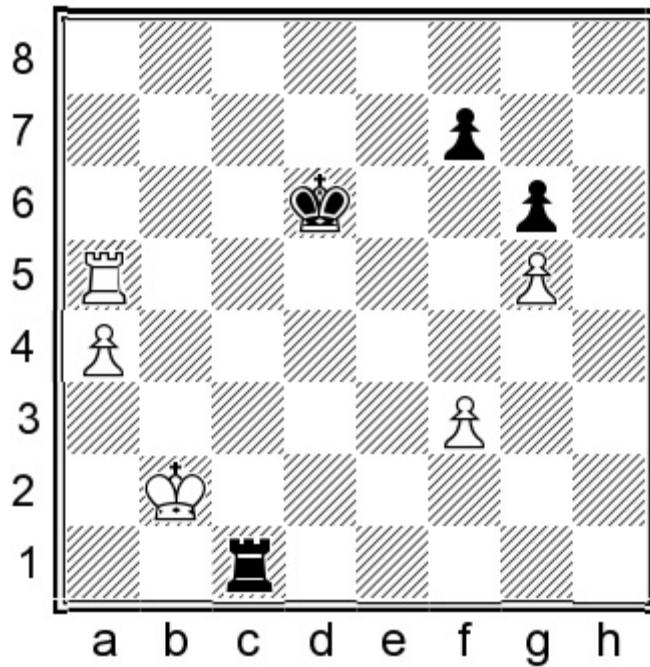
3...♝f6

3...h5 4.g5 ♜c1 5.f3 ♜c4 6.♔g3 ♜d4 gets us to the structures we previously discussed (Urkedal-Onischuk and Heinemann-Zelbel) which are drawn. But the text does not spoil anything, either.

4.♔g3

4.g5+ hxg5 5.hxg5+ ♔e6 6.♔g3 also does not win. Black has more than one drawing plan here. Here

is a variation in which Black takes advantage of the fact that the white rook, while on the fifth rank, cannot defend all the kingside pawns: 6... $\mathbb{E}a2$ 7.f3 $\mathbb{E}a1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}e1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}d1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}c1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b2$



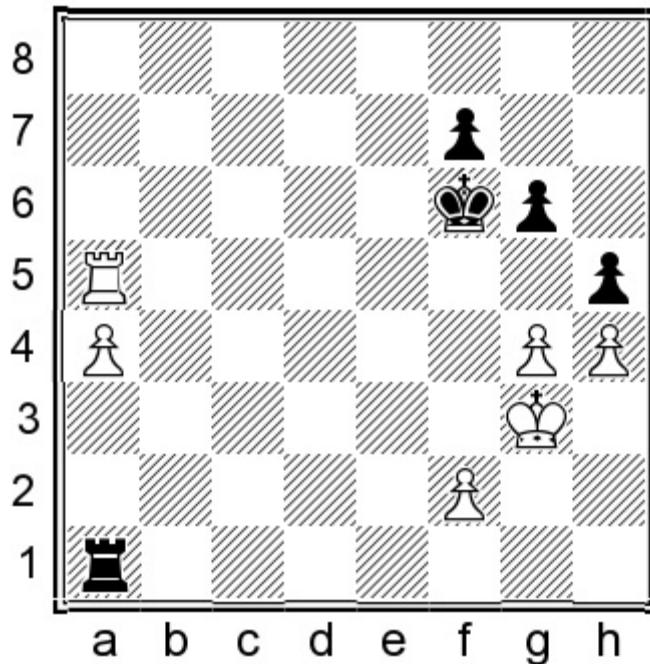
9-214a

B

12... $\mathbb{E}g1!$ 13. $\mathbb{E}b5$ $\mathbb{E}g2+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}g3!$ winning the pawn on f3 with a draw.

4... $\mathbb{E}c1?$

The decisive mistake! This was the last chance for 4...h5!



9-214b

W

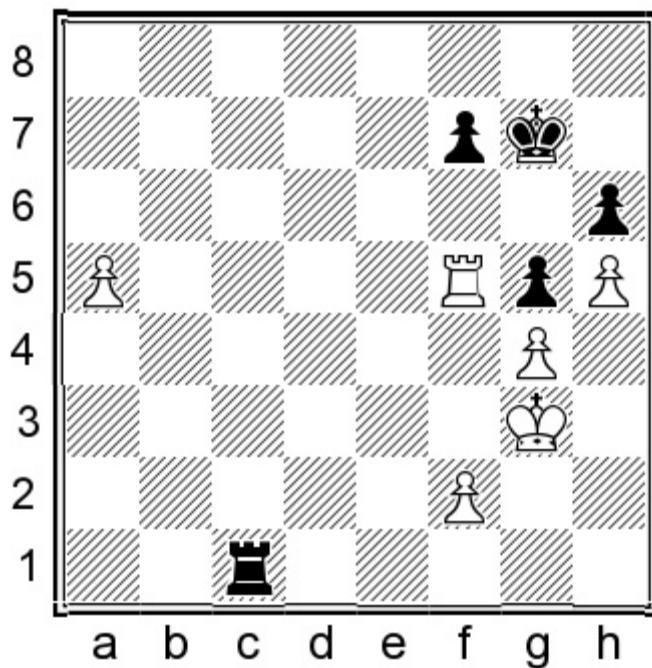
5.g5+ (5.gxh5 gxh5 6.f3 $\mathbb{R}a2=$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{R}a6+$ (6.f3 $\mathbb{R}g1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{R}h1$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 7.a5 $\mathbb{R}a4$ 8. $\mathbb{R}a8 \mathbb{R}g4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{R}a4=$

5. $\mathbb{R}b5$

After Anand released the a-pawn from the attack by the rook, Leko is able to immediately change to the sidelong defense of his passed pawn.

5...g5 6. $\mathbb{R}f5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 7.h5+ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8.a5

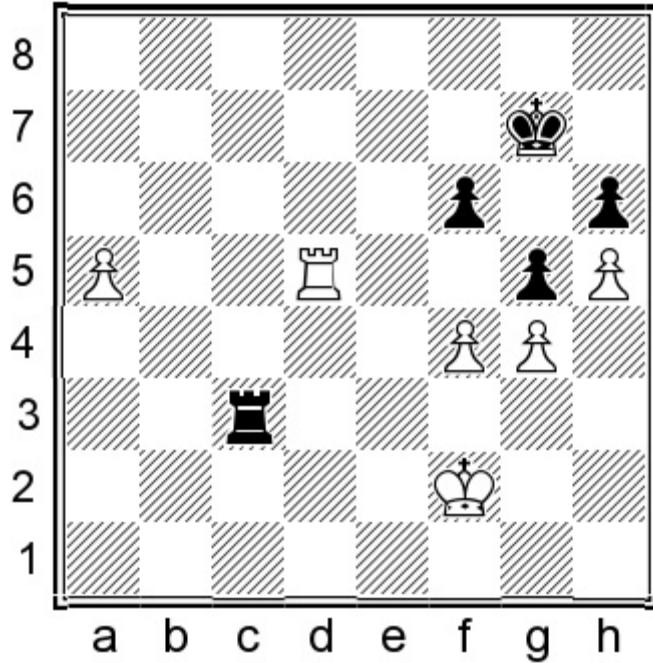
Diagrams 9-215, 9-216, 9-217 and 9-218 have been intentionally omitted.

**9-219**

B

8... $\mathbb{R}a1?$

This loses without a fight, as White sets up the ideal configuration in which the rook securely defends all the pawns, while the king gets ready to set out for the queenside. A better try is 8... $\mathbb{R}c4!$, which it makes it much harder, but in the end still does not save Black: 9.f3! (9.f4? f6!=) 9... $\mathbb{R}c2$ 10.f4! (otherwise 10... $\mathbb{R}a2$, and the king can never get out of g3) 10... $\mathbb{R}c3+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f6 (11...gxf4 12. $\mathbb{R}xf4 \mathbb{R}a3$ 13. $\mathbb{R}f5$ f6 14. $\mathbb{R}b5 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 16. $\mathbb{R}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 17.a6 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 18. $\mathbb{R}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 19. $\mathbb{R}xh6 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 20. $\mathbb{R}b6 \mathbb{Q}xh5$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}f5$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{R}a5$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}b3 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{R}a1$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}c5+-$, just in time) 12. $\mathbb{R}d5!!$



9-219a
B

(12. $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 14. $f \times g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+!$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 14. $f \times g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ (14... $f \times g5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ is hopeless) 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d4+-$. This is why 12. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ was the only move; it was found by Karsten Müller in 2019).

9. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$

Of course, not 9. $f3??$ $\mathbb{Q}a2=$

9... $\mathbb{Q}e1$

Equally hopeless is 9... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 10. $f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c1$, etc.

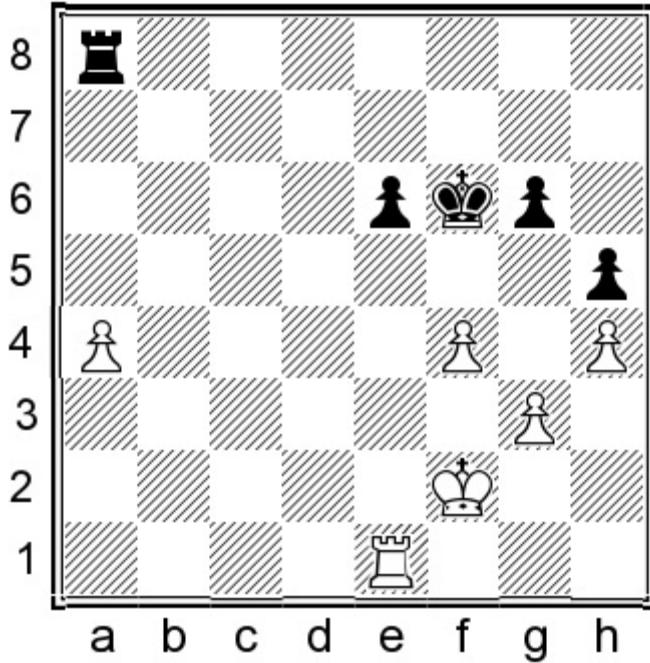
10. $f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$

12... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ and 14. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ decide. Here Leko could have brought his rook around the passed pawn by 13. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a3$, with an easy win. But he preferred to maneuver a bit first, hoping Black would worsen his king's position.

13. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 17. $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 18. $a7$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $f6$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$, and Black resigned.

Diagrams 9-220 and 9-221 have been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



9-222
9/23
W?

Show/Hide Solution

9/23. Yusupov-Timman, Linares cmsf (7) 1992

Where should White place his rook, at the side of his passed pawn or behind it?

The winning move was 1. $\mathbb{R}e4!$ Here the rook protects only one pawn but at the first appropriate opportunity it will go to the fifth rank where it holds everything. For example, 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{R}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. $a5+-$, or 1... $\mathbb{R}a5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{R}e5!$ Black has no arguments against a king march to the queenside.

The actual continuation was 1. $\mathbb{R}a1??$ $\mathbb{R}a5!$ (he should block the pawn as early as possible) 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $e5!$

This is the point: one pair of pawns is exchanged immediately, another will be exchanged soon (...g6-g5), and too few pawns remain on the board.

3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (3. $fxe5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{R}e5=$) 3... $exf4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ (after 4. $gxf4$ the white pawns are vulnerable) 4... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$

He probably should have tried 5. $\mathbb{R}e1+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{R}e4$ $g5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$, but this position is also drawn.

5... $g5!$ 6. $hxg5$ $\mathbb{R}xg5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{R}a5$, and a draw was soon agreed.

Common Observations about Endgames with Many Pawns

The Rook's Activity

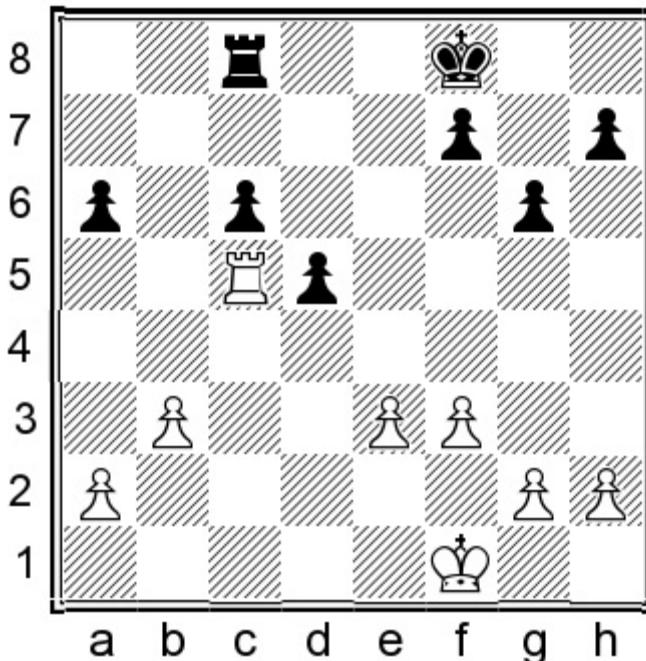
The rook's activity is the main principle for evaluation and practical play in rook-and-pawn endgames. It can take various forms: attacking the enemy's pawns, supporting its own passed pawns, cutting the opponent's king off, or pursuing the king.

It also happens that the rook must sometimes behave passively, its functions being limited purely to defense. But in these cases one should relentlessly seek opportunities to activate the rook, even at cost of pawn sacrifices or a deteriorated king's position.

The following classic ending illustrates this principle excellently.

Flohr – Vidmar

Nottingham 1936



9-223

W?

White has an obvious positional advantage, but as for a win, it is surely a long way off. The outcome of the game depends on the endgame artistry of the players.

1.♔e2!

First of all, centralize the king. After 1.♖a5? Black sacrifices a pawn to activate his rook: 1...c5! 2.♕xa6 c4 with excellent chances for a draw.

1.b4? is also not precise: 1...♔e7 2.♔e2 ♔d6 3.♔d3 ♕b8!? (3...♔c7) 4.a3 ♕b5.

1.♔e2! ♔e7 2.♔d3 ♔d6 3.♕a5!

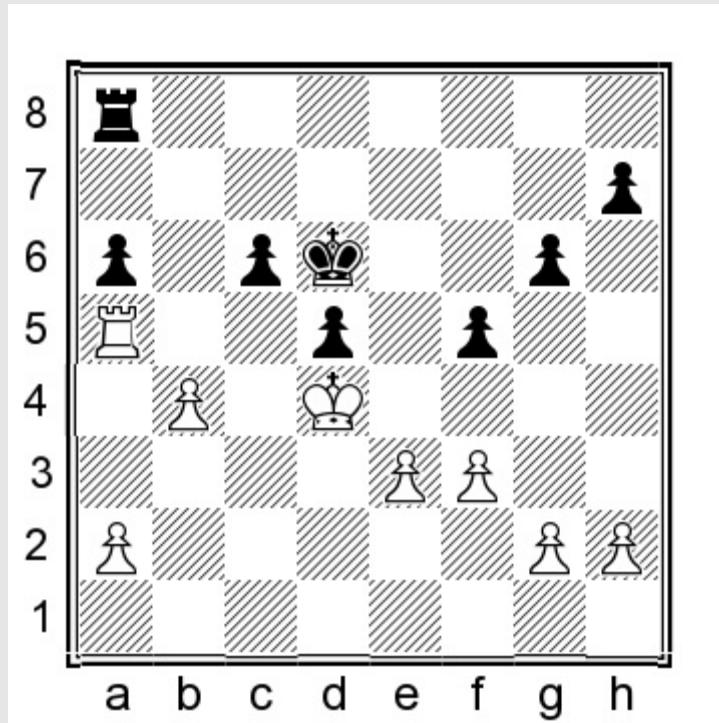
Rather than 3.♔d4? in view of 3...♕b8 4.♕a5 c5+! 5.♔d3 ♕b6.

3...♕a8 4.♔d4

Black must reckon with e3-e4 now.

4...f5!? 5.b4

Flohr strengthens his control over weak squares on the queenside. Black is faced with a problem: which defensive plan to choose.



9-224

B?

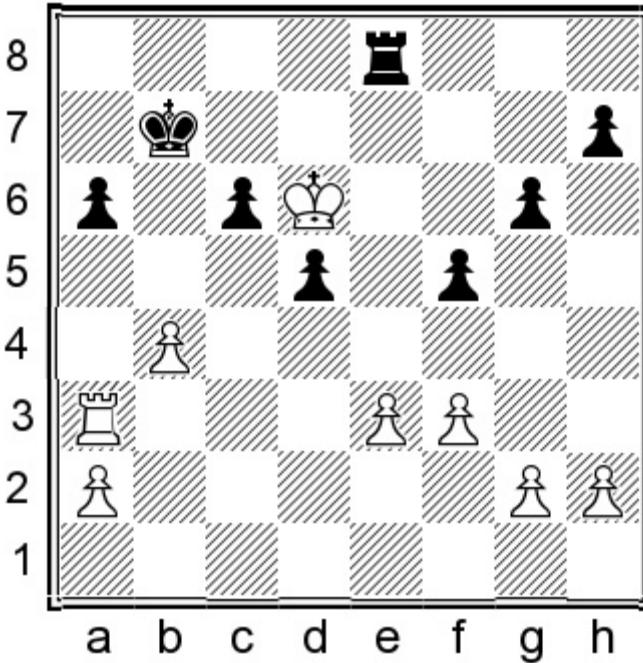
5...♕b8?

Too passive. The rook will be forced back to the unenviable role of bodyguard to the a-pawn as early as the next move.

He should have protected the pawn with the king: 5...♔c7! ($\Delta \dots \hat{q}b6$). Oh yes, the king would have gone away from the center, the white king, in contrast, would have had an open road for invasion, but the rook could enjoy freedom. And, as we have said, the rook's activity in rook-and-pawn endings is paramount!

White would very probably have played 6.♔c5 ♕b7 7.♔d6. After 7...♕e8 (also worth consideration is 7...f4!? with the idea 8.exf4 d4, or 7...♔b6!? having the same shot f5-f4! in mind) 8.♕a3 ($\Delta \hat{q}c3$),

Black should pave the way to the second rank for his rook.



9-225

B?

(a) 8...f4? is entirely bad in view of 9.exf4 $\mathbb{E}e2$ 10.g4 with f4-f5+– to follow. Black cannot fight against the passed f-pawn because another pawn, on f3, is blocking the file from rook attacks.

(b) Levenfish and Smyslov suggest 8...d4?! 9.exd4 $\mathbb{E}e2$ 10. $\mathbb{E}c3$ $\mathbb{E}xg2$ (10... $\mathbb{E}d2$ 11. $\mathbb{E}c4$) 11. $\mathbb{E}xc6$ $\mathbb{E}xh2$ 12.a4 g5 (Δ ...g4; ... $\mathbb{E}h6+$). However, White maintains the advantage by placing the rook behind the g-pawn, 13. $\mathbb{E}c7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 14. $\mathbb{E}g7!$, because his own passed pawn is quite dangerous.

Such an alternative (with consequences that can hardly be calculated and evaluated over the board) is still practically better than the passive defense with the rook on a8. Moreover, it can be improved: a third way exists, although endgame treatises do not mention it.

(c) 8...g5! 9.g3

After 9. $\mathbb{E}c3$ f4 10.exf4 gxf4, Black maintains enough counterplay, for example, 11. $\mathbb{E}xc6$ $\mathbb{E}d8+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ d4 13. $\mathbb{E}e6$ d3 14. $\mathbb{E}e1$ $\mathbb{E}g8=$

9...g4!

Again, 9...d4?! 10.exd4 $\mathbb{E}e2$ is dubious here in view of 11. $\mathbb{E}a5!$ (11. $\mathbb{E}c3$ $\mathbb{E}xh2$ and the c6-pawn is inviolable) 11...h6! 12.a4! (12. $\mathbb{E}xf5$ $\mathbb{E}xa2$ 13. $\mathbb{E}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 14. $\mathbb{E}c7$ $\mathbb{E}xh2$ 15. $\mathbb{E}xc6+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$) 12... $\mathbb{E}b2$ 13. $\mathbb{E}xf5$ $\mathbb{E}xb4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}xa4$ 15. $\mathbb{E}f7+$ and Black's position is difficult.

10.f4 (10.fxg4 fxg4 11. $\mathbb{E}c3$ $\mathbb{E}f8=$) 10... $\mathbb{E}e4$ 11. $\mathbb{E}c3$ $\mathbb{E}c4\infty$.

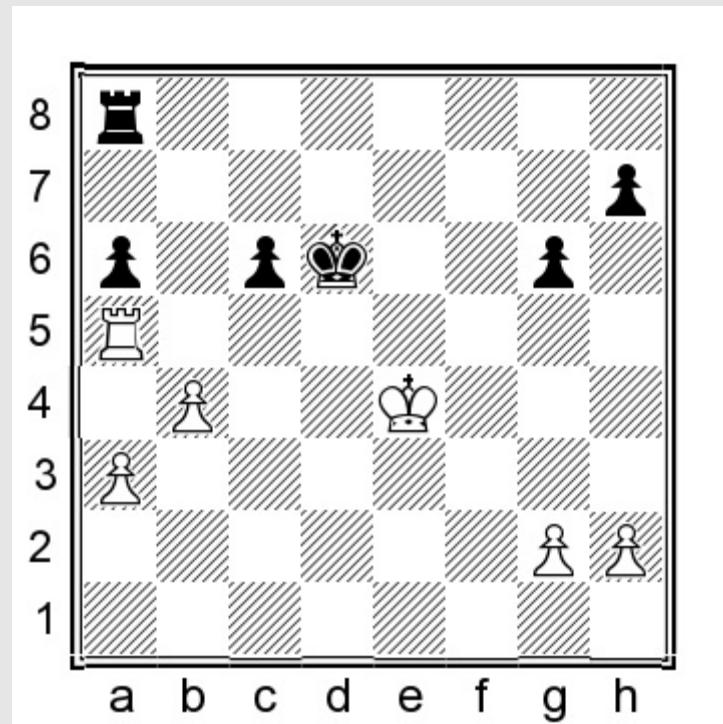
6.a3 $\mathbb{E}a8$

The b6-square is perhaps even a worse place for the rook than a8.

7.e4!

White has achieved the maximum on the queenside and cannot improve his position in this sector anymore (7.a4? $\mathbb{E}b8$). Therefore he applies a standard method: widening the beachhead! After the exchange of the central pawns, the white king attacks the kingside while the rook gets full control over the fifth rank.

7...fxe4 8.fxe4 dxe4 9. \mathbb{Q} xe4



9-226

B?

9... $\mathbb{E}a7??$

Black follows the same fatal policy of passively marking time. He still should have done what we have said: to release the rook from its mission (guarding the a-pawn) by bringing the king to b6: 9... $\mathbb{Q}c7$! Now 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$? gives nothing in view of 10... $\mathbb{E}f8+$! 11. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}b6=$. Levenfish and Smyslov give the following line: 10. $\mathbb{E}e5$!? $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 11. $\mathbb{E}e7$ a5! 12. $\mathbb{E}xh7$ axb4 13.axb4 $\mathbb{E}a4$ 14. $\mathbb{E}g7$ $\mathbb{E}xb4+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}h4$! 16.h3 $\mathbb{E}h6$ (this is only a short-term passivity: the rook heads for the eighth rank, to take a position behind the passed pawn) 17. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ c5 18. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}h8$ 19. $\mathbb{E}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 20. $\mathbb{E}g7$ c4 $\Delta \dots \mathbb{E}c8\rightleftharpoons$

I think that White should not force matters. The restraining method 10.h4!? $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 11.g4 (11. $\mathbb{Q}f4$?) 11... $\mathbb{E}f8$ 12.h5 maintains an indisputable advantage; the question is solely whether it is sufficient for a win.

10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ h6

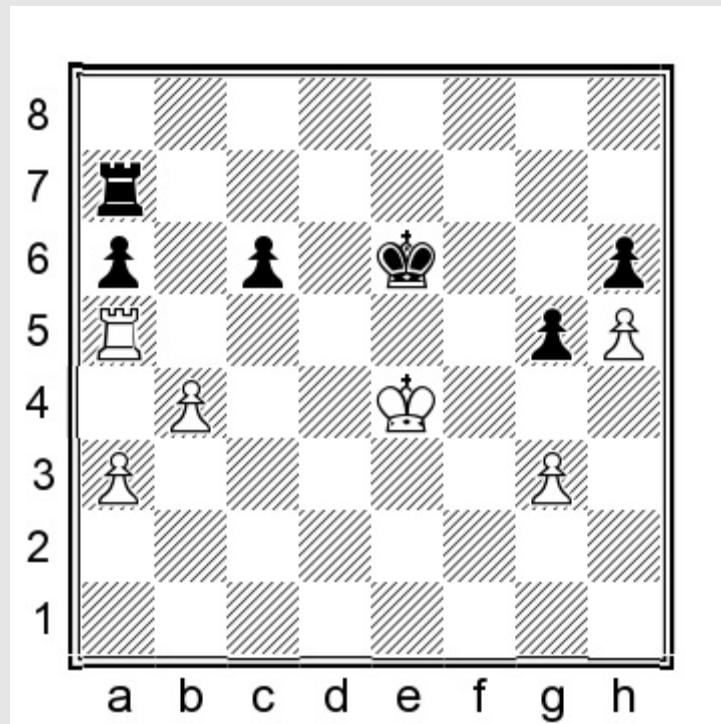
Otherwise the king passes to h6 with decisive effect: 10... $\mathbb{E}a8$? 11. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}a7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 13.g4 Δ h4-h5+–

11.h4 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}a8$ 13.h5! g5? (13...gxh5+? 14. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 15.g4+–; 13... $\mathbb{E}g8$!! was the last

chance to activate the rook, with good drawing chances) 14.g3!

White has created and fixed a new weakness in Black's camp: the h6-pawn. Prior to returning his king to the center, he takes control over the f4-square. 14.♔f3 is less accurate in view of 14...♜f8+ 15.♔e4 ♜f4+.

14...♜a7 15.♔f3! ♜a8 16.♔e4 ♜a7 17.♔d4 ♔d6 18.♔e4 ♔e6



9-227

W

19.♜e5+! ♔d6

If 19...♔f6, then 20.♝c5 ♜c7 21.♝a5 ♜a7 22.♔d4 ♔e6 23.♔c5+–

20.♜e8 c5

The pawn endgame after 20...♜e7+ 21.♜xe7 ♔xe7 22.♔e5 is absolutely hopeless.

21.♜d8+!

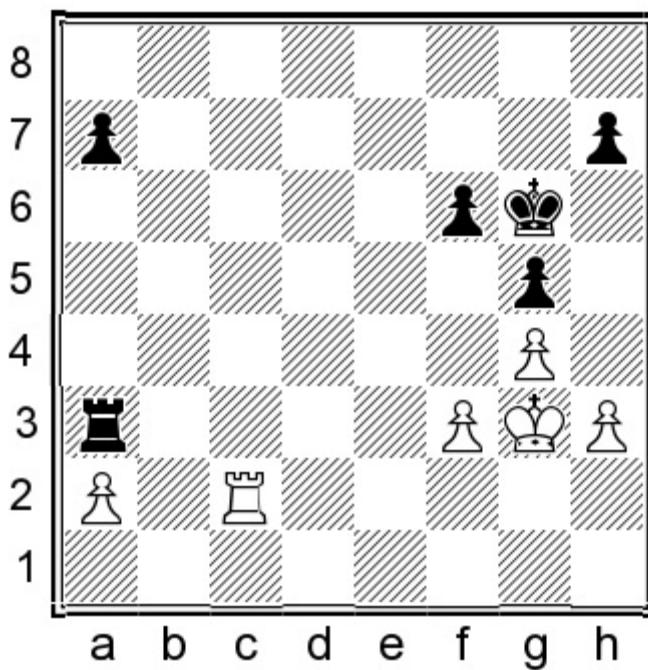
Perfect endgame technique. Flohr had calculated the following line: 21...♔c7 22.♜h8 cxb4 23.♜h7+ (23.axb4, of course, also wins) 23...♔b8 24.♜xa7 ♔xa7 25.axb4 ♔b6 26.♔f5 ♔b5 27.♔g6 ♔xb4 28.♔xh6 a5 29.♔xg5 a4 30.h6+–. Other king retreats lose the c5-pawn.

21...♔c6 22.♜c8+ ♔b6 23.♜xc5 ♜h7

The rook has changed its parking space, but the new one is as unattractive as the previous.

24.♜e5 ♔c6 25.♜e6+ ♔b5 26.♔f5 ♜f7+ 27.♔f6 Black resigned.

Ilivitsky – Taimanov
USSR ch, Moscow 1955



9-228

W?

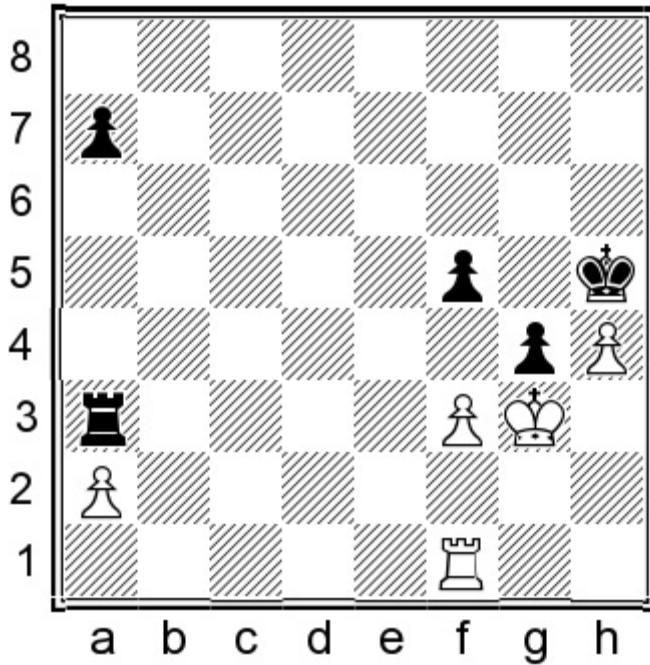
Material is balanced, but Black stands better because his rook is more active. At this moment, both sides would like to improve the structure on the kingside by means of an h-pawn advance, but Black is ready to do it while White is not (because he then loses his f3-pawn).

As was noted by Grigory Levenfish, with the pawn sacrifice 1. $\mathbb{E}c6!$ $\mathbb{E}xa2$ (1... $h5$ 2. $gxh5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xf6$) 2. $h4$ $gxh4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$, White could solve two problems at once: he activates his rook and improves the kingside situation. Then the draw is an easy matter.

1. $\mathbb{E}h2?$ $h5!$ 2. $\mathbb{E}c2$

If 2. $gxh5+?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ ($\Delta \dots f6-f5-f4+$) 3. $h4$, then 3... $g4$. 2. $h4?$ could have been a logical continuation but, as Levenfish demonstrated, Black maintains a considerable advantage after 2... $hxg4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ (3. $hxg5$ $f5$ 4. $\mathbb{E}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5-$ +) 3... $f5+!$ (3... $\mathbb{E}a4+?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $gxh4+$ 5. $\mathbb{E}xh4$ $\mathbb{E}xa2$ leads to a drawn position) 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $g4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$, and if 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$, then 6... $\mathbb{E}a4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $g3-$ +

The waiting move 6. $\mathbb{E}f1$ is more stubborn.



9-229

B?

It is appropriate to recall that very important principle of endgame play, “Do not rush,” and, without forcing matters (by 6... $\mathbb{R}a4?$), make the move 6...a5!, strengthening the position. On 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$, 7... $\mathbb{R}a4+?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ g3 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1!=$ does not work, but the simple 7... $\mathbb{R}xa2!$ leads to a win. And if 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$, then 7... $\mathbb{R}a4!$ (Δ 8...f4+) 8.fxg4+ $\mathbb{R}xg4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ is as good, since 10. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ fxg4+ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ a4! wins for Black, while the pawn ending with the pawn on a7 would be drawn) 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$

Marking time, 11. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{R}a4$, is bad: this is almost the same position we saw in the game Miles-Webb (diagram 9-105). And in the sharp line 11. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ (also possible is the immediate 11... $\mathbb{R}a4$) 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{R}a4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{R}xa2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ (or 18. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$) 18... $\mathbb{Q}d5$, Black gets there just in time and wins. Were the pawn on a7, his opponent would manage to save himself.

2...h4+

This pawn is very strong: it presses on the white king and fixes the weakness at h3. White’s defensive mission is quite hard. In the remainder of the game, however, Taimanov was not precise enough, but his opponent missed his chance to save the game.

3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ a6

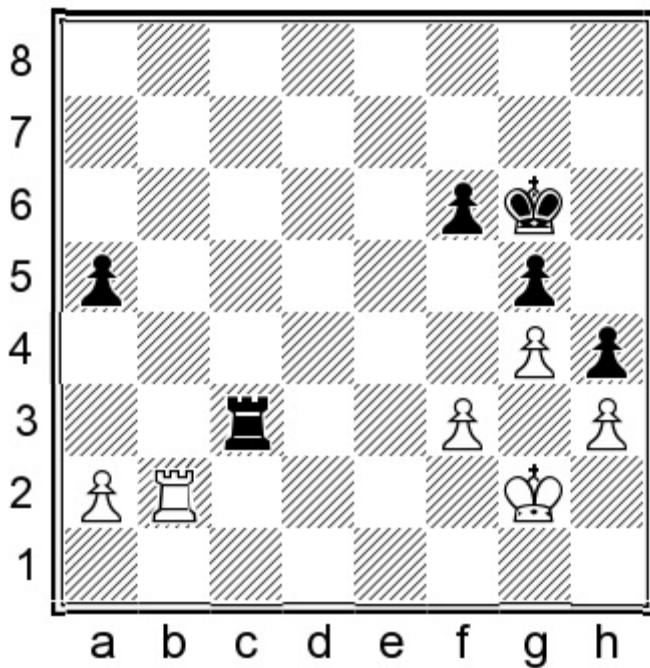
An incomprehensible move. As will soon become clear, it made sense for Black to play 3... $\mathbb{Q}f7!?$ preparing the future activation of the king.

4. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{R}c3?$

The rook should have stayed on a3 until Black both moved the a-pawn well ahead and also improved his king’s position. White would probably still expect a draw after placing his rook on e2 to prevent the

black king's appearance in the center.

5.♔g2 a5? (more precise was 5...♜a3 followed by ...♚f7)



9-230

W?

6.♜f2?

The same passive policy (by the way, the game was annotated by many, yet no one revealed the errors that were committed by the players at this stage). Again, White should have taken the opportunity to activate his rook: 6.♜b7! ♜c2+ 7.♔g1 ♜xa2 8.♜a7.

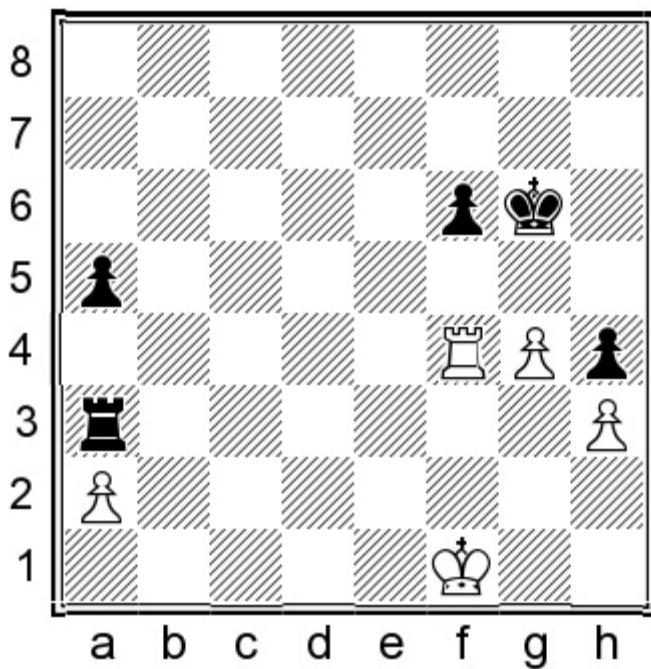
Grandmaster Krogius evaluates the resulting position as lost for White "because of the bad position of White's pawns, and especially that of his king – cut off on the first rank." But what about Black's king? It will stay offside forever, because ...f6-f5 can be always met with ♜a6+ followed by gxf5. White's rook stays on a7, the king calmly waits on g1-h1; Black pushes his pawn ahead, it comes to a3, what then?

As grandmaster Vugar Gashimov has correctly noted, the same idea, albeit in somewhat more complicated form, could have arisen earlier. For example, after 3...a6, 4.♜c7! leads to a draw: 4...♜xa2+ 5.♔f1! (less accurate is 5.♔g1 ♜e2! 6.♜c6 a5 and on 7.♜c5 there is 7...♜e5) 5...♜b2 6.♜c6! a5 ♜c5! a4 8.♜a5 ♜b4 (on 8...♜a2 the same response follows) 9.♜a7! ♜f4 10.♔f2 f5 (how else to strengthen the position?) 11.♜a6+ ♔f7 12.gxf5=

6...♜a3 7.♔f1 ♔f7?!

Black probably rejected 7...f5 because of 8.f4! A good idea could be 7...♜a4!? preventing the opponent's activity on the kingside, although White could then cut off the black king by means of 8.♔g2 ♔f7 9.♜e2.

8.f4! gxf4 9.♕xf4 (Δ 10.g5) 9...♔g6



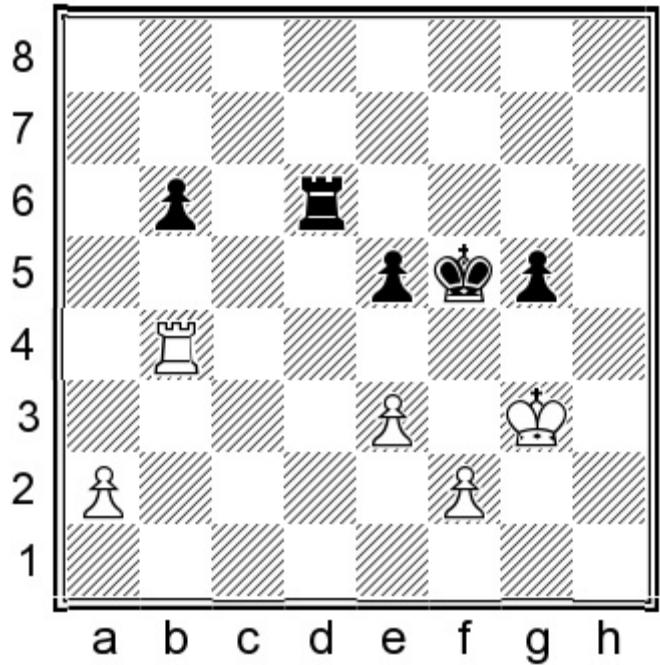
9-231

W?

10.♕f2?

White made this passive move and resigned, realizing that his position is absolutely hopeless after 10...♕xh3. Meanwhile he could hold after 10.♕f5! ♕xa2. He has no time for capturing the h-pawn: 10...♕xa2 11.♕h5?! a4 12.♕xh4? a3 13.♕h8 ♕b2+; 12.♕a5 ♔f7! 13.♕a6? a3 is also hopeless. But he can employ the Vancura idea (see diagram 9-43): 11.♔g1! a4 12.♕f4! Even if Black's king manages to leave the kingside by means of zugzwang: 12...♔a3 13.♔h2 ♔g7! (13...♔f7 14.g5) 14.♔b4 (14.♔g2? ♕g3+ and 15...a3) 14...♔f7 15.♔e4 ♔f8! (16.♔f4 ♔e7), no more progress can be made: the king has no refuge from checks from the side near the passed pawn, therefore the rook cannot abandon the a-file.

Exercises



9-232
9/24
B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/24. Taimanov-Chekhov, Kishinev 1976

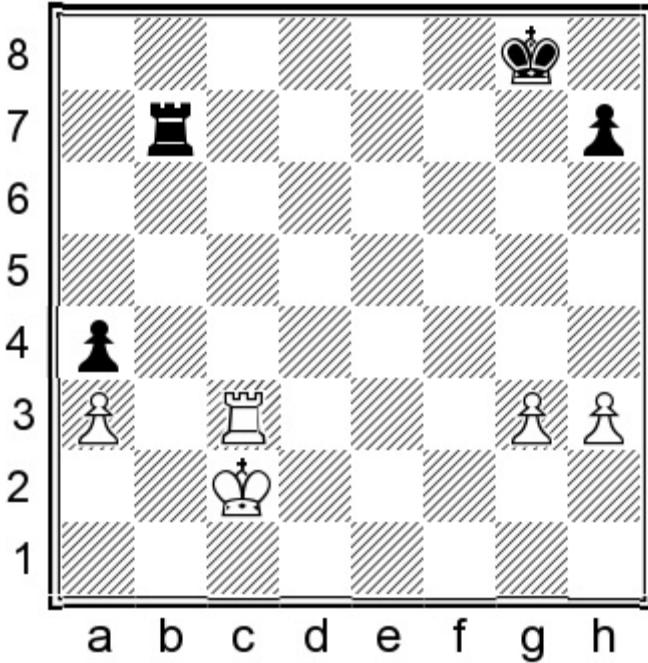
White wants to play e3-e4+ and then slowly improve his position with a2-a4, f2-f3, ♖g4, ♖b5 etc. And although objectively White's advantage is insufficient to win, Black should still avoid passive defense.

1...♜d3! 2.♜xb6

White could have tried 2.a4!? ♜a3 3.♖f3, but after 3...g4+! 4.♖xg4 b5! 5.axb5 ♜b3, a drawn endgame with two pawns versus one would have arisen.

2...♜a3=

The white rook must occupy a passive position. After 3.♖b2 ♜a4, a draw was agreed. I worked with Valery Chekhov as his coach from 1973 until 1975, and our collaboration was crowned with his victory in the World Junior Chess Championship. All of my students firmly absorbed the most important principles of playing endgames. Therefore, for Chekhov, the utilization of the pawn sacrifice to activate the rook was just a simple technical device.



9-233

9/25

B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/25. Larsen-Kavalek, Solingen m (7) 1970

Kavalek chose 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7??$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c4 \mathbb{Q}a7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa4 \mathbb{Q}xg3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4+$). Against such a passively placed rook, White wins without trouble, and the remainder of the game confirms this generalization.

3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ h5 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}h6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ ($\Delta \mathbb{R}c4$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xa4 \mathbb{Q}e3$ 9.g4 hxg4 10.hxg4 $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}xg4$ 12.a4 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 13.a5 $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}b1+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}f1$ 17.a6 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b6+ \mathbb{Q}g5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}f1$ 21.a7 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}b6+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ Black resigned.

He had to keep the rook active, responding to $\mathbb{R}c4$ with the counterattack ... $\mathbb{Q}b3!$, for this purpose Black should take measures against a rook check from g4.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ seems natural, as the king approaches the center. White could respond with 2.g4, intending 3.h4 and 4. $\mathbb{R}c4$. If 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3.h4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$, then 4.g5! Δ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ followed by either 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (attacking the a4-pawn) or 6.h5 (the rook behind the passed pawn). However, Black seems to escape by playing 4... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}f4$ 6.h5 $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 7.g6 (7. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}f7\pm$) 7...hxg6 8.hxg6 $\mathbb{Q}c4+!$ (it is important to cut the king off from the a-pawn) 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}c8$ 10.g7 $\mathbb{Q}f7$. Karsten Müller has demonstrated another way to draw: 2...h5! 3.gxh5 (3.g5 h4; 3. $\mathbb{R}c4 \mathbb{Q}b3$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4.h4 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{R}c4 \mathbb{Q}b3!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xa4 \mathbb{Q}f3$. This is the standard drawing situation with a- and h-pawns: the king blockades one of the pawns (or in this case – both at once, which is unimportant), while the rook attacks the other from the side, not letting the enemy rook off the a-file.

White's play can be strengthened by the inbetween check 2. $\mathbb{E}f3+$! If 2... $\mathbb{Q}g6?$ then 3. $\mathbb{E}f4$ (now that Black cannot play 3... $\mathbb{E}b3$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xa4$ $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g4+$), and on 2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$, there comes 3. g4 followed by 4. h4, retaining the advantage – with the king in the center, the ...h7-h5 pawn sacrifice would be ineffective.

1...h5!!

The only safe defense. 2. $\mathbb{E}c4$ is useless now: 2... $\mathbb{E}b3!$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xa4$ $\mathbb{E}xg3=$. If 2. h4, then 2... $\mathbb{E}g7!$ Δ ... $\mathbb{E}g4=$, and from g4 the rook attacks the g3-pawn, protects the a4-pawn and prevents White's king march across the fourth rank.

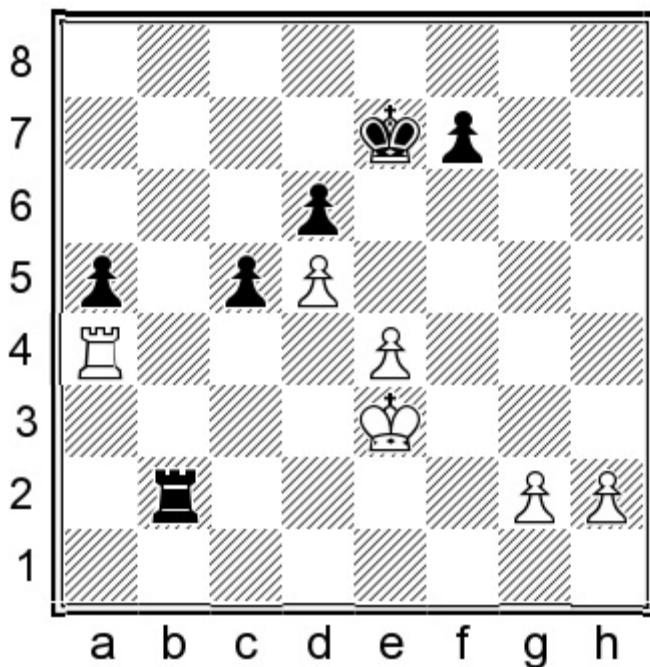
2. g4 can be met by 2... h4!=, fixing a target for counterattack (the h3-pawn): 3. $\mathbb{E}c4$ $\mathbb{E}b3\rightleftarrows$. But 2... $\mathbb{E}hxg4$ 3. $\mathbb{E}hxg4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ does not lose either: 4. $\mathbb{E}c4$ $\mathbb{E}b3!$ (activity at any price!) 5. $\mathbb{E}xa4$ $\mathbb{E}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{E}g2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}g3+$.

As can be seen, after 1...h5!, Black's rook remains active in all lines, and this is what saves him.

The King's Activity

The importance of an active king's position does not require detailed explanations. A few practical examples are enough.

Flear – Legky
Le Touquet 1991



9-234
B?

1... $\hat{\square}f6!$

King activity is more important than material gain! 1... $\hat{\square}b5$?! 2. $\hat{\square}f4$ $\hat{\square}f6$ 3.g4 is too passive.

1... $\hat{\square}xg2$?! 2. $\hat{\square}xa5$ $\hat{\square}xh2$ 3. $\hat{\square}a7+$ $\hat{\square}f6$ 4. $\hat{\square}d7$ $\hat{\square}e5$ 5. $\hat{\square}e7+$ leads to an immediate draw.

1... $\hat{\square}f6!$ 2. $\hat{\square}xa5$

As Legky wrote, White could deny the king access to e5 by 2. $\hat{\square}f4!$ $\hat{\square}f2+$ 3. $\hat{\square}e3!$ (3. $\hat{\square}g3$?! $\hat{\square}f1!$ Δ 4... $\hat{\square}e5$) 3... $\hat{\square}xg2$ 4. $\hat{\square}xa5$, and after 4... $\hat{\square}e5$ 5. $\hat{\square}a7$, Black, in contrast to the game continuation, has no check along the third rank. If 4... $\hat{\square}xh2$, then 5. $\hat{\square}a7$ $\hat{\square}h6$ 6. $\hat{\square}d7$ $\hat{\square}g7$ 7.e5!? dxe5 8. $\hat{\square}e4$, and White's activity compensates for the two missing pawns.

2... $\hat{\square}e5!$ 3. $\hat{\square}a7?$!

Oleg Chebotarev suggested a safer defense, 3. $\hat{\square}a4!$ As before, 3... $\hat{\square}xg2$ is useless because of 4. $\hat{\square}a7$, while if Black tries the temporizing 3...f6, then 4.g3.

3... $\hat{\square}b3+$ 4. $\hat{\square}f2?$

This loses. Correct was 4. $\hat{\square}e2$ $\hat{\square}xe4$ 5. $\hat{\square}e7+$ $\hat{\square}xd5$ 6. $\hat{\square}xf7+$.

4... $\hat{\square}xe4$ 5. $\hat{\square}xf7$

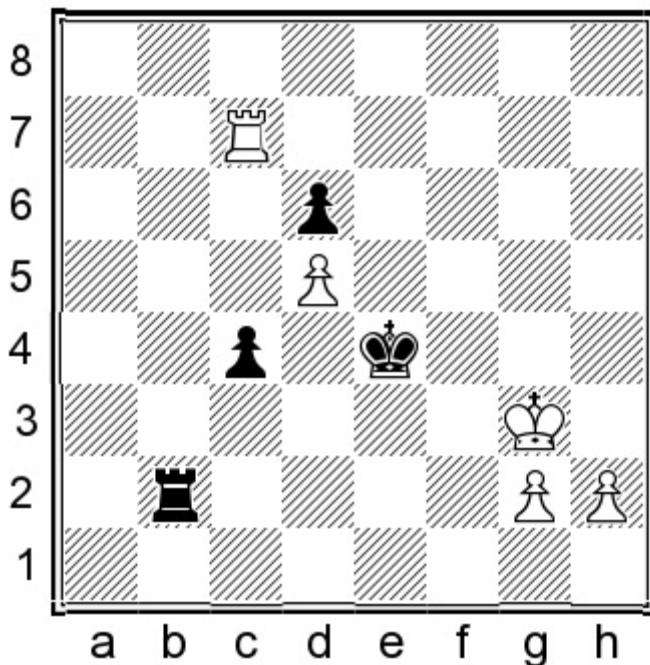
5.h4 loses to 5... $\hat{\square}b2+$ 6. $\hat{\square}g3$ c4 7.h5 c3 8. $\hat{\square}c7$ $\hat{\square}d3!$ 9.h6 c2 10.h7 $\hat{\square}b8$.

5... $\hat{\square}b2+?$

Black returns the favor by letting the white king out. 5...c4 6. $\hat{\square}c7$ c3 7.h4 $\hat{\square}d3$ 8.h5 c2 9.h6 $\hat{\square}b1$ wins.

6. $\hat{\square}g3$ c4! 7. $\hat{\square}c7$

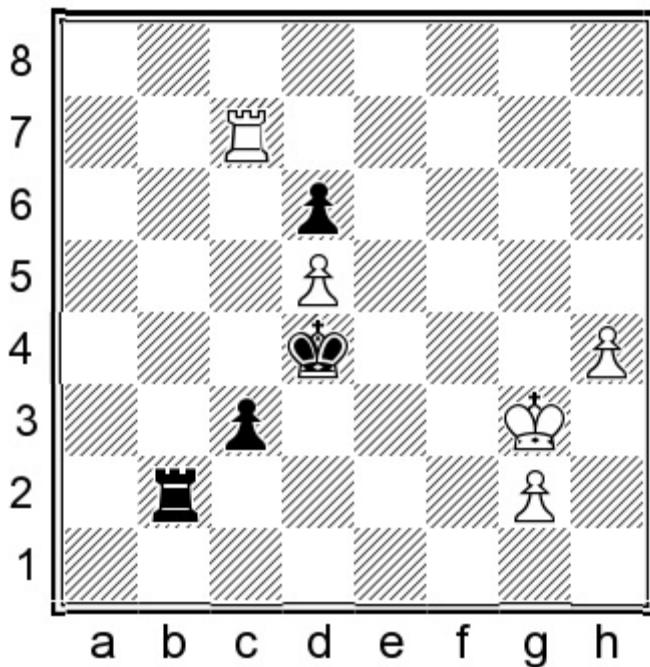
There is no sense in capturing the d5-pawn; the rapid advance of his own passed pawn is more important.



7... $\mathbb{Q}d3$?! 8.h4?

The decisive error. 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6$! was necessary. Legky continues the line with 8...c3 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$! 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 11.h4 c2 12. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ —+ As a matter of fact, the final position is won because of the poor position of the white king. However, Flear could achieve a draw by sending his king ahead: 12. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$! $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (or 13. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 14.h5 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 15.h6) 13... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 14.g4.

Black should have played 7... $\mathbb{Q}d4$!! on his previous move, in order to protect indirectly his d6-pawn (8. $\mathbb{Q}c6$? c3 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ c2 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ + and 11... $\mathbb{Q}c3$). 8.h4 c3



After 9.h5 $\mathbb{Q}d3$! (9...c2? is not precise, White saves himself by an immediate activation of his king: 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$! $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 10.h6 (10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$! 12.h6 c2 13.h7 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ —+) 10...c2 11. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 12.g4 (12.h7 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 13.g4 $\mathbb{Q}xh7$) 12...c1=— 13. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 15.g5 $\mathbb{Q}h1$! 16. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (16. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ —+) 16... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ —+, and the black king arrives just in time!

But Müller indicated that White could hold this endgame by means of 9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$!! (instead of 9.h5) 9...c2 (9... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10.g4 c2 11.g5=) 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$! $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$, for example, 11... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 14.g4 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 15.g5 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 16.g6 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ + 17. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ + 18. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ =

Is this not a bizarre endgame? In a sharp position, White twice had a good reason for granting a tempo to his opponent (2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$! and 9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$!!), while Black's best try also involved a loss of a tempo (7... $\mathbb{Q}d4$!!).

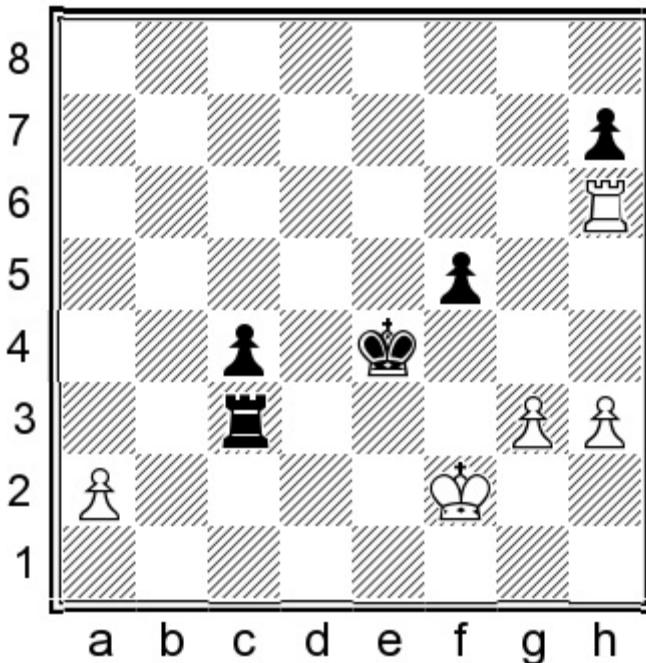
8...c3—+ 9.h5 c2 10.h6 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (11.h7 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ —+) 11...c1=—+ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ 13.g4

$\mathbb{E}f1+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{E}g1$ White resigned.

Tragomedies

Bogatyrchuk – Mazel

USSR ch, Moscow 1931



9-237

W?

1. $\mathbb{E}xh7?$

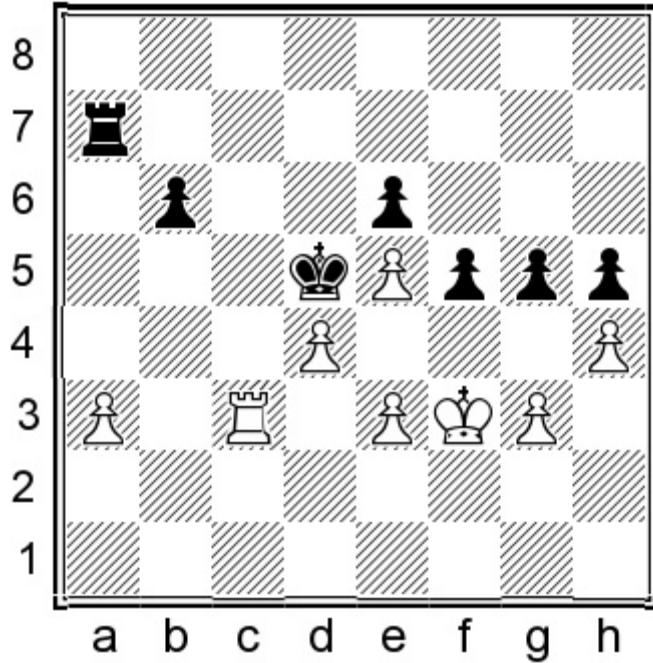
A positional error that allows the white king to be driven to the back rank. After 1. $\mathbb{E}h4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 2. $\mathbb{E}xh7$, the draw is obvious (2... $\mathbb{E}c2+$ can be met with 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$).

1. $\mathbb{E}xh7?$ $\mathbb{E}c2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{E}xa2$ 3. $\mathbb{E}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. $\mathbb{E}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{E}d5?$

The decisive error. It is still not too late for the king to walk free with 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$, and Black cannot win.

5... $c3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ 7. $\mathbb{E}f1$ $\mathbb{E}h2$ White resigned.

Exercises



9-238

9/26

B?

Show/Hide Solution

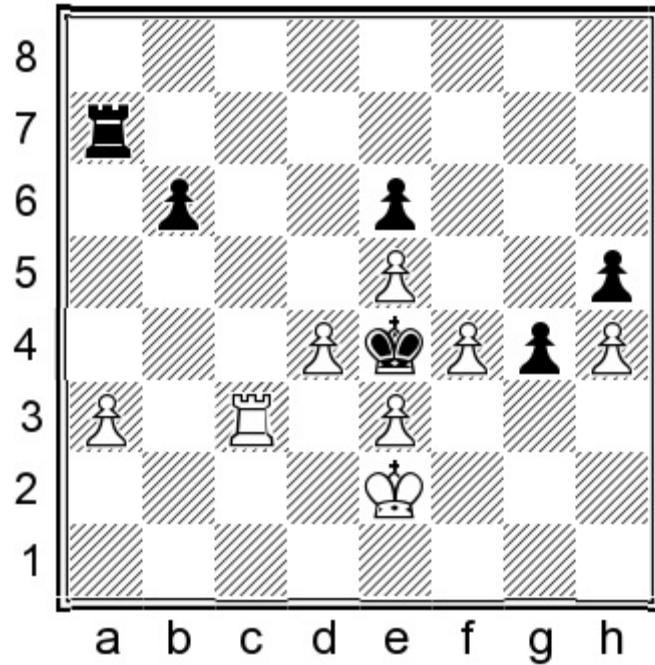
9/26. Kovacevic-Rajkovic, Yugoslavia 1983

1...g4+? 2.♔f4 is hopeless. In the game,

Black resigned after a single move: 1...gxh4? 2.gxh4, in view of 2...♝g7 3.a4 (Δ 4.a5 bxa5 5.♝c5#) or 2...♜a8 3.♜c7 ♜xa3 4.♜d7+.

Instead of being persecuted, the black king could have become a dangerous attacking piece!

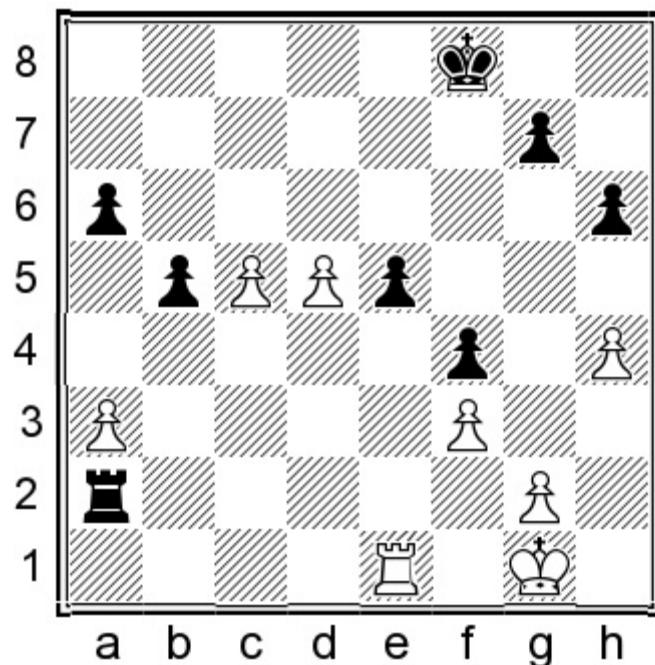
1...f4!! 2.gxf4 (2.exf4 ♔xd4; 2.hxg5 fxe3 3.♔xe3 ♘g7 4.♗b3 ♘xg5 5.♗xb6 ♘xg3+ 6.♔f2 ♘xa3=)
2...g4+! 3.♔e2 ♔e4=



16-89

W

The king's activity fully compensates Black for his deficit of two pawns.



9-239

9/27

B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/27. Kozlovskaya-Carvajal, Rio de Janeiro izt 1979

The king must take part in the fight against the passed pawns.

1... $\mathbb{E}c2!$ 2.c6 $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xe5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6\bar{=}$

The king has arrived at the center and firmly blocked the pawns. White should play carefully to avoid grave problems.

In the actual game, however, Black was too greedy.

1... $\mathbb{E}xa3?$ 2. $\mathbb{E}c1!$

The rook goes behind the passed pawn that is farthest from the black king and therefore the most dangerous.

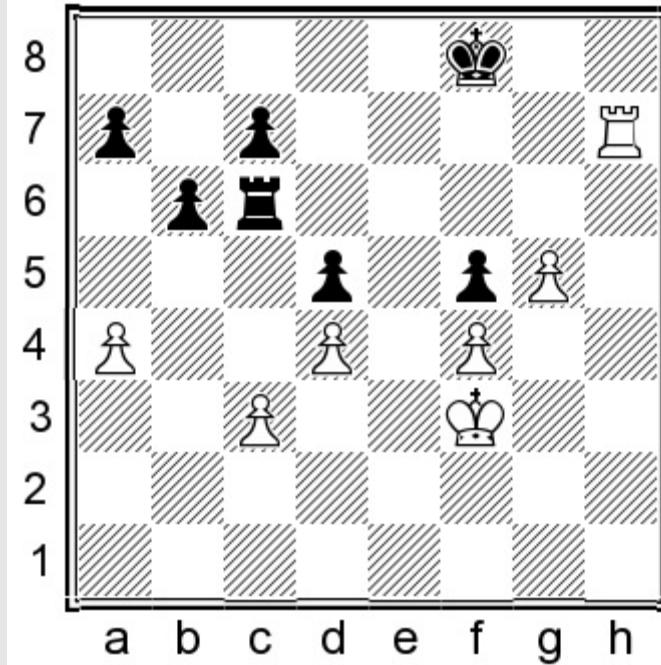
2... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3.c6 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 4.c7+ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5.d6. Black resigned in view of 5... $\mathbb{E}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}c6 \Delta$ 7. $\mathbb{E}b6$ or 7. $\mathbb{E}xa6$.

The King on the Edge

A king on the edge of the board is unfavorably placed and not only because the king is far away from the focal point of events. Quite often the opponent creates mate threats by sending his own king to attack. This strategy can enable him to bring home an advantage or save a difficult position.

Capablanca – Tartakower

New York 1924



9-240

W?

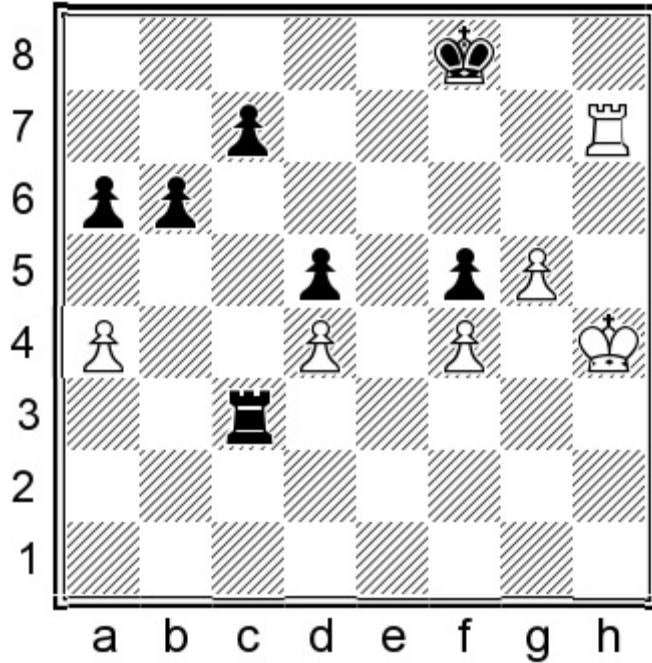
1.♕g3!

White can exploit the poor position of the black king only by implementing Nimzovitch's principle of the collective advance. The white king must take part in the attack, and one should not begrudge a few pawns for this purpose. An unclear position arises after the primitive 1.♖d7? ♖xc3+ 2.♔e2 ♖a3 3.♖xd5 ♖xa4 4.♖xf5+ ♔g7

1.♕g3! ♖xc3+ 2.♔h4 ♖f3?

This simplifies White's task. Nor is 2...♖c1 any better: 3.♔h5! c5 (3...♖h1+ 4.♔g6) 4.♖d7! cxd4 (4...c4 5.♔g6) 5.♖xd5 ♖d1 6.♔g6 d3 7.♔f6 ♔e8 8.g6 (Fine).

Goldin suggested the toughest defense, which is 2...a6! There was a lively analytical discussion on this subject in Russian chess magazines.

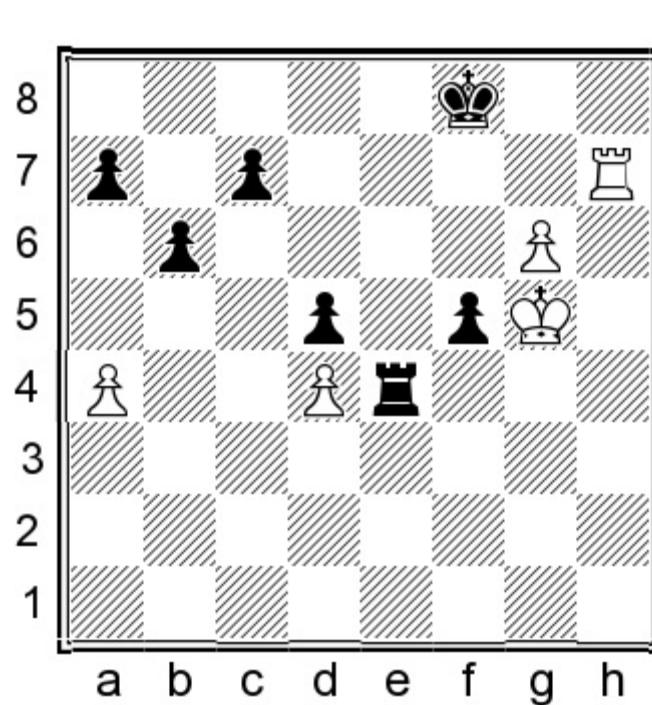


9-241

W

Here, some blind alleys await White; for example, 3.g6? b5 4.axb5 axb5 5.♔g5 b4 6.♕f7+ ♔g8 is a draw. Igor Zaitsev found the most convincing solution: 3.♗h5! b5 4.♗g6! ♔g8 (nor does 4...bxa4 5.♗xf5 a3 6.♕h6 save him) 5.♕g7+! ♔f8 6.♕f7+ ♔g8 7.♕f6!, with the unstoppable threat of 8.♕xa6. Had White exchanged pawns earlier on b5, his opponent could have parried the threat by (4.axb5 axb5 5.♗g6 ♔g8 6.♕g7+ ♔f8 7.♕f7+ ♔g8 8.♕f6) 8...b4 9.♕a6 ♕a3! 10.♕c6 ♕c3=.

3.g6! ♘xf4+ 4.♗g5 ♘e4 (4...♘xd4 5.♗f6 is also hopeless)



9-242

W?

5.♔f6! (the f5-pawn is useful for the time being – it serves as an umbrella)

5...♕g8 6.♖g7+!

Good endgame technique: prior to capturing the pawn, it is useful to worsen the position of the black king just a little.

6...♗h8 7.♖xc7 ♕e8 8.♗xf5!

It is time to eliminate the f5-pawn, otherwise it could move ahead (8.♔f7 ♕d8 Δ ...f4↗). As we know, a knight pawn, unlike a bishop pawn, cannot be promoted against a passive defense with a rook on the back rank.

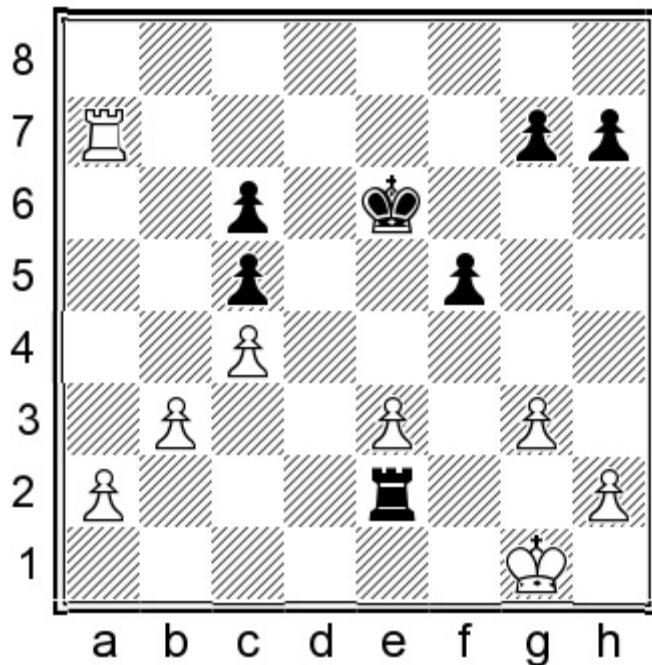
8...♗e4 9.♔f6 ♕f4+ 10.♔e5 ♕g4 11.g7+!

This is where the zwischenschach on move six tells: White brings his pawn under the protection of the rook with a tempo (11...♖xg7 12.♖xg7 ♔xg7 13.♔xd5+–).

11...♕g8 12.♖xa7 ♕g1 13.♔xd5 ♕c1 14.♔d6 ♕c2 15.d5 ♕c1 16.♖c7 ♕a1 17.♔c6 ♕xa4 18.d6 Black resigned.

Lilienthal – Smyslov

Leningrad/Moscow 1941



9-243

B

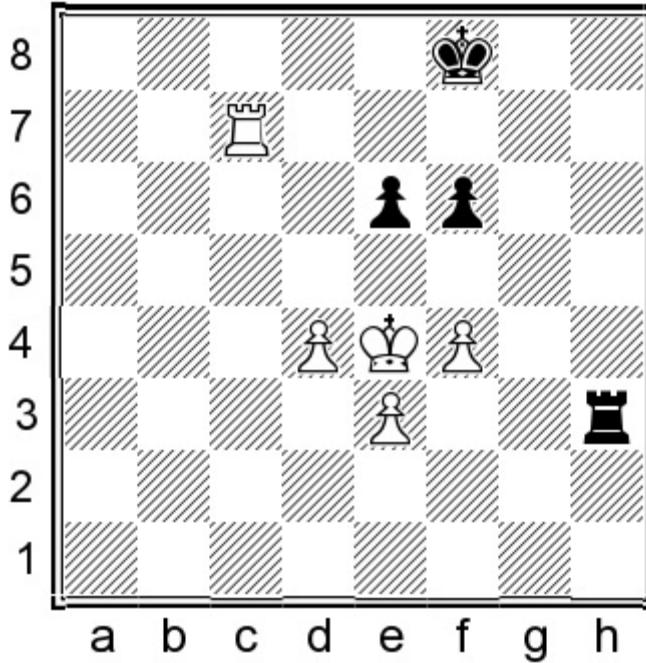
Almost all Black's pawns are vulnerable but Smyslov easily compensates for the missing material by means of an attack against the white king.

1...g5! 2.♗xh7 ♗xa2 3.♗h6+ ♔e5 4.♗xc6 ♔e4 5.♗xc5 f4! (preparing an umbrella against checks along the f-file) **6.exf4 ♔f3 7.h3 ♗a1+** Draw.

White has four (!) extra pawns in the final position.

Gelfand – Wang Hao

London 2012



9-244

B

Black is not threatened by anything. He can calmly mark time, for example, 1...♔e8 or 1...♗h5.

1...f5+? 2.♔e5 ♗xe3+ 3.♔f6

But now there is trouble. The unfortunate position of the king, trapped against the edge of the board, leads to the inevitable loss of the e6-pawn.

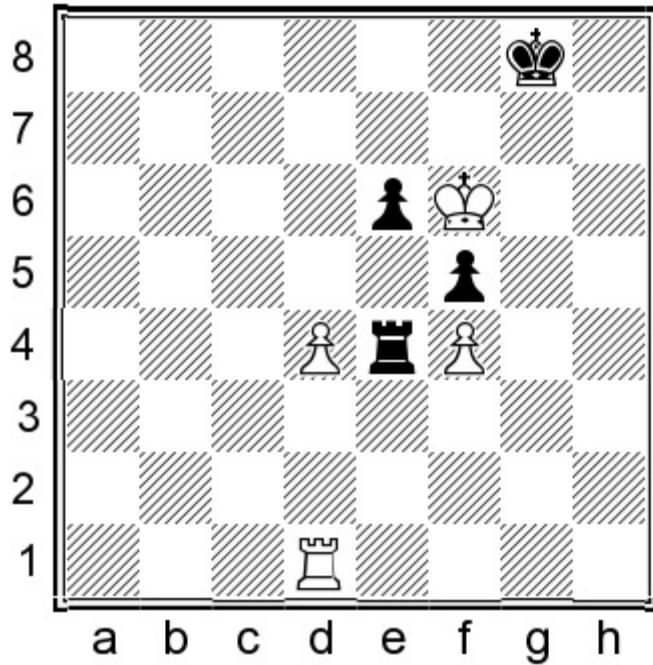
3...♔g8 (3...♔e8 4.♗e7+ ♔d8 5.♗xe6+–) 4.♗g7+

4.♗c8+ ♔h7 5.♔f7 ♗a3 (5...♗e1 6.♗c3 ♗h1 7.♔xe6) 6.♔xe6 won easily.

4...♔f8 5.♗h7 ♔g8 6.♗h1?

It was necessary to return to the aforementioned plan by playing 6.♗g7+! ♔f8 7.♗a7.

6...♗e4 7.♗d1



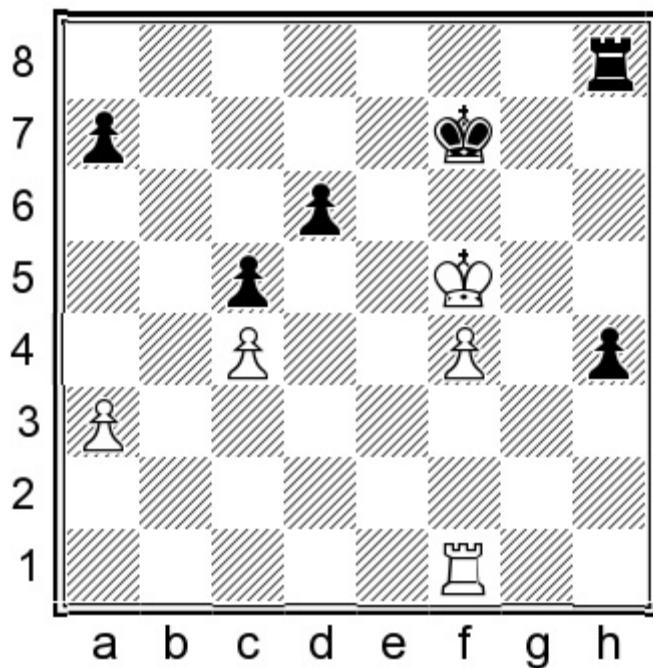
9-245

B

The position is drawn, both after 7... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$, and the waiting move 7... $\mathbb{Q}f8$. But then there occurred an incomprehensible blunder – the Chinese grandmaster again forgot about the danger to his king on the edge.

7... $\mathbb{Q}h7??$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ Black resigned.

Exercises



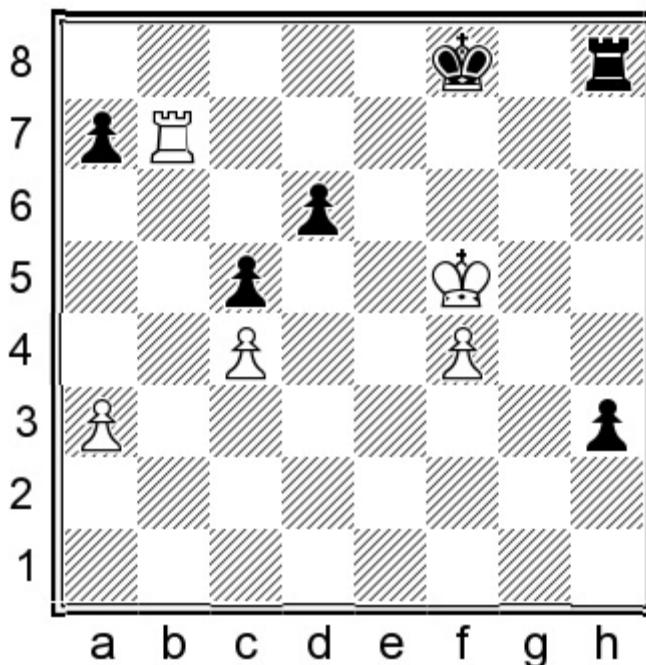
9-246

Show/Hide Solution**9/28. Obukhov-Ibragimov, USSR 1991**

White's passivity, 1.♕h1?, caused a quick loss: 1...h3 2.♕h2 a6O 3.♔g4 (3.♔g5 ♜g8+ 4.♔f5 ♜g3) 3...♔f6 4.♕xh3 ♜xh3 5.♔xh3 d5! White resigned.

His only correct plan was to activate the rook!

1.♖b1! h3 2.♖b7+ ♔f8□

**16-90**

W?

White had undoubtedly considered this line, but failed to discover how it should have been continued. In fact, 3.♖b8+? fails to 3...♔g7 4.♖b7+ ♔h6–+ and 3.♔f6? to 3...♜h6+ 4.♔g5 h2–+. If 3.♔g6? then 3...♜h4! decides: 4.f5 h2 5.♖b8+ (5.f6 ♜g4+ or 5...♜h6+) 5...♔e7 6.f6+ ♔d7 7.f7 h1=威–+. But one more possibility exists:

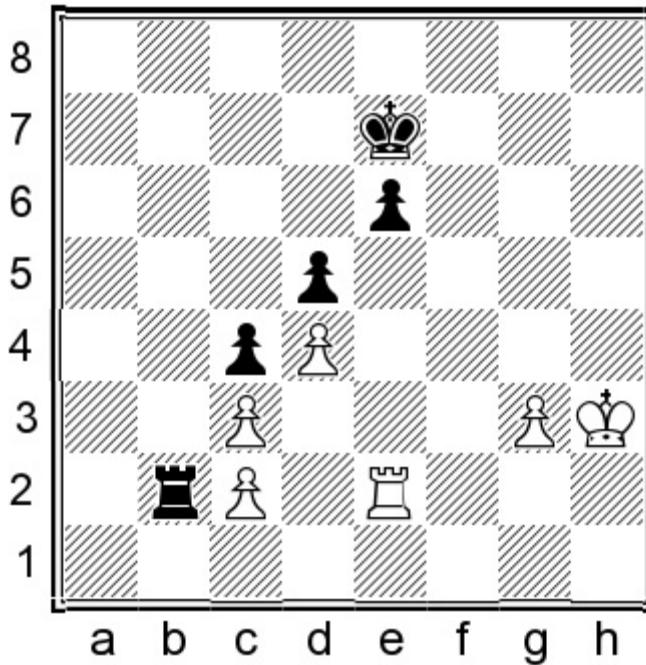
3.♔g5!! h2 (3...♜g8+?? 4.♔f6+–) 4.♖b8+ ♔g7 5.♖b7+ with perpetual check.

Cutting the King Off

An important technique in rook-and-pawn endings is cutting the hostile king off from strategically important areas. From his own pawns that need protection, from our pawns that he could attack, from our passed pawn that could otherwise be stopped by him, or from his passed pawn that could be assisted by the king.

Janetschek – U. Geller

Skopje ol 1972



9-247

W?

1.♖f2!

Cutting the king off from the passed pawn, White considerably aggravates the threat of its advance.

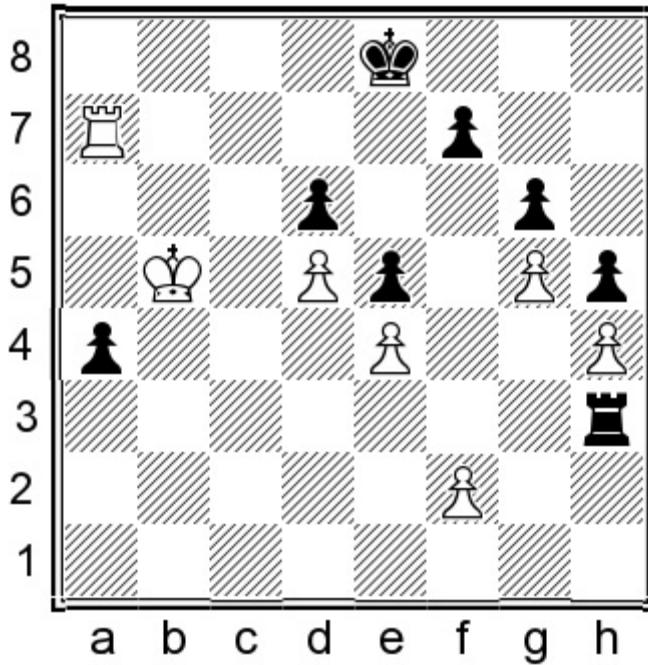
1...♜a2?

Black wants to snap up one of White's queenside pawns but ignores his fundamental problem. Only a defense by frontal checks could give him chances for salvation: 1...♜b8! 2.g4 ♜h8+ 3.♔g3 ♜g8. To achieve progress, White would have to play ♜h2, but then the black king comes to the f-file. Only then the rook might go ahead against White's pawns.

2.g4 ♜a3 3.♔h4? (3.g5+–) 3...♜xc3? (3...e5 4.dxe5 ♜xc3 5.g5 ♜e3 6.g6 ♜e1=) 4.g5 ♜e3 5.g6 ♜e1 6.♗f7+ ♔d6 7.g7 ♜g1 8.♔h5 ♜g2 9.c3 ♜g3 10.♗a7 ♔c6 11.♔h6 ♔d6 12.♗a8 ♜h3+ 13.♔g6 ♜g3+ 14.♔f7 ♜f3+ 15.♔e8 ♜g3 16.♗a6+ Black resigned.

Savon – Zheliandinov

Riga 1964



9-248

B?

The actual continuation was 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}xe4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd6 \mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7+-$ (the d-pawn will cost Black a rook) 5... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6.d6 e4 (6...h4 7.d7 h3 8.d8= $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ h2 10. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ a3 11. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ a2 12.f3 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$) 7.d7 e3 8.fxe3 $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}xe3$ 10.d8= $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ Black resigned.

Black should have cut the king off from the d6-pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa4 \mathbb{Q}c5+$

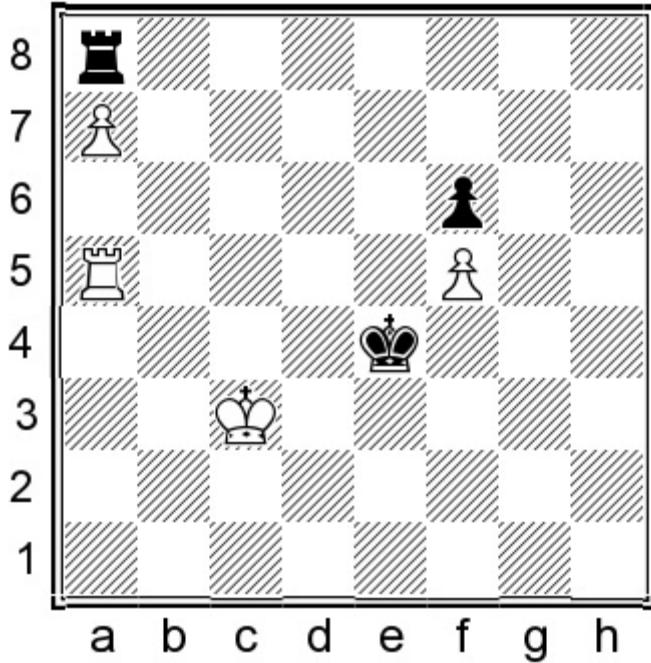
The pawn endgame that arises after 2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7?$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ is lost. This evaluation is not quite obvious because Black has a chance for a pawn breakthrough: ...f7-f6 and, after g5xf6, ...g6-g5. However, White wins the race that happens thereafter (doubters may check this fact for themselves).

But there is no sense in calculating sharp lines because we have a fortress after this check. The white king cannot cross the c-file.

3. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}c1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}a1!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}a6+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}a1=$

Tragicomедies

Timoshchenko-K.Grigorian
USSR ch(1), Frunze 1979



9-249

B

One single move was actually made in the game:

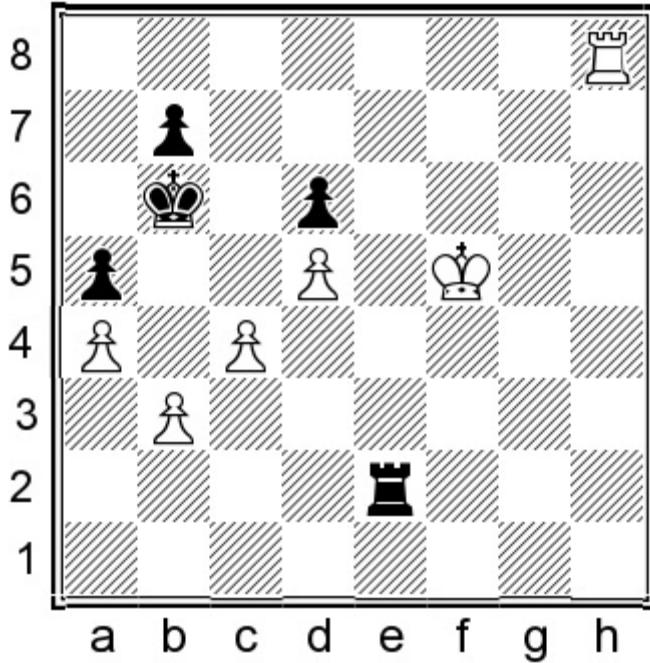
1...♔e3? 2.♕a4!

Black resigned. Now when his king is cut off from the f5-pawn, he will be inevitably put into zugzwang: 2...♔f3 3.♔d3 ♔g3 4.♔e3(O) 4...♕e8+ (4...♔h3 5.♔f3(O)) 5.♔d4 ♕a8 6.♔c5+-

The best defense is 1...♔f4 2.♔d4 ♔g4. In *Chess Informant*, Timoshchenko evaluated the position that arises as drawn, despite the extreme passivity of the black rook. 3.♔e4 is met with 3...♕e8+!, and White does not have 4.♔d5?? in view of 4...♕e5+ while an attempt to cross the fifth rank with the king loses the f5-pawn: 3.♔d5 ♔xf5 4.♔c6+ ♔e4 5.♔b7 ♕xa7+ 6.♕xa7 f5=.

However one can easily improve this line for White. After the capture on f5, it is enough to win if the black king is temporarily cut off from the approach to the lower half of the board: 4.♕a4! (instead of 4.♔c6+?) 4...♔g5 5.♔c6 f5 6.♔b7 ♕e8 7.a8=♕ ♕xa8 8.♕xa8+-

Exercises



9-250
9/29
B?

Show/Hide Solution

9/29. Browne-Biyiasas, USA ch, Greenville 1980

The way to a draw is to activate the king.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ b6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xb6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4=$

Another way, suggested by Benko, also exists: 1... $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ b6 4. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ (precisely the same defensive idea as in Savon-Zheliandinov, diagram 9-248).

Black played 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ instead, allowing 2. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$, so that his king was locked in on the queenside. If 2... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$, then 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ is decisive.

2... $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4.c5+! dxc5 5.d6 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d8$

Black resigned in view of 7... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 8.d7 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ Δ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c8+-$.

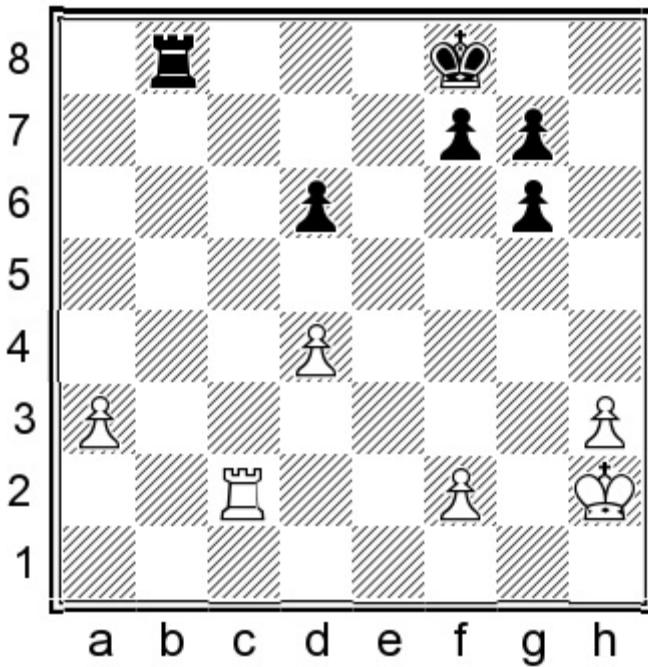
Akiba Rubinstein's Masterpiece

As Tartakower wrote, “Rubinstein is a rook ending of a chess game that was started by God a

thousand years ago.” I want to conclude the chapter on rook-and-pawn endings with an example from the creative work of the outstanding Polish grandmaster. It is rumored that after the game finished (the final stage of which we shall study) Rubinstein’s respected opponent, grandmaster Spielmann, shouted: “Akiba, if you lived in the Middle Ages you would have been burned at the stake: what you do in rook endgames can only be called witchcraft!”

Spielmann – Rubinstein

St Petersburg 1909



9-251

B

A positional disadvantage that occurs often is an abundance of “pawn islands.”

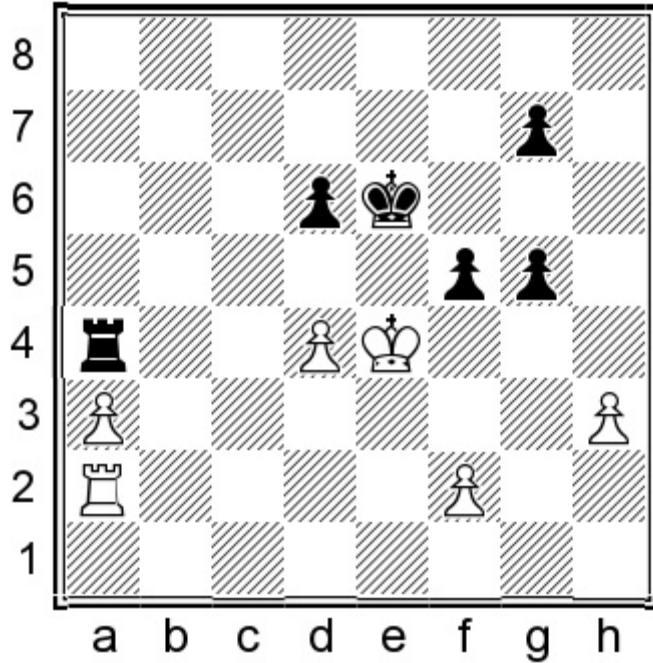
White now has four islands against two; this means that White has more vulnerable pawns that cannot protect each other. Therefore his position is inferior.

1...♜a8!

The first stage of Black’s plan is to attack White’s pawns so that the white rook will be chained to their protection. Chasing after material gain with 1...♝b3? would have been a grave error, because after 2.♜a2 ♜d3 3.a4 ♜xd4 4.a5 ♜c4 5.a6, the white rook is actively placed behind a passed pawn while the black rook must stand passively on a8.

1...♜a8! 2.♜c3

2.♜a2 is a passive placement for the rook, for example: 2...♜a4 3.♝g3 ♜e7 (not 3...♜xd4? 4.a4=; but 3...g5 comes strongly into consideration as it fixes the weak white kingside pawns) 4.♝f3 (4.h4! is more precise) 4...♝e6 5.♝e4 g5! 6.♜a1 f6 7.♜a2 f5+



9-251a

W

8. $\hat{\square}e3!$ (an improvement over Levenfish and Smyslov's 8. $\hat{\square}d3?$ $\hat{\square}d5$ 9. $\hat{\square}c3$ $g6!$ [Müller 2019] 10. $\hat{\square}b3$ $\hat{\square}xd4$ 11. $a4$ $\hat{\square}h4+$) 8... $\hat{\square}d5$ 9. $f3$, and White still has a difficult defense but should probably hold. After the move played, the rook's position on the third rank offers counterchances that, however, Spielmann fails to exploit.

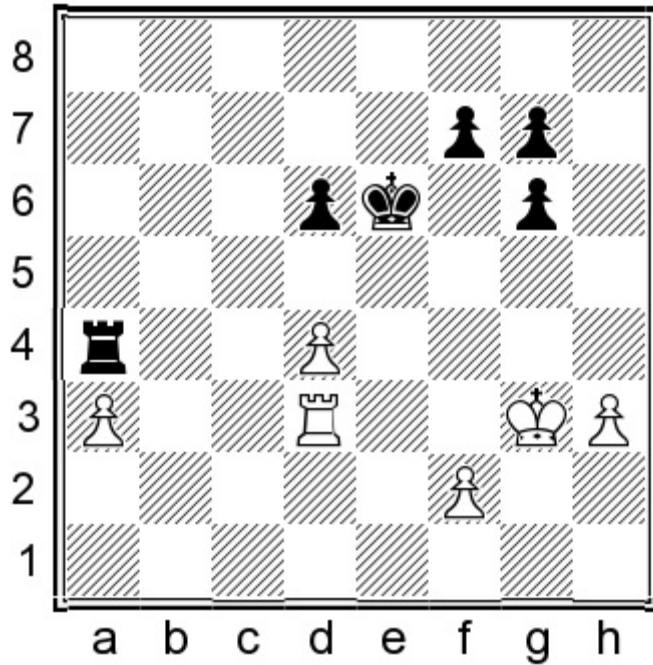
2... $\hat{\square}a4$ 3. $\hat{\square}d3$ $\hat{\square}e7$

The second stage: the king goes to the center.

4. $\hat{\square}g3$

4. $d5$ is met with 4... $g5!$ (4... $\hat{\square}f6$ 5. $\hat{\square}f3+$) 5. $\hat{\square}g2$ $\hat{\square}f6$ 6. $\hat{\square}f3+$ $\hat{\square}g6$ 7. $\hat{\square}d3$ $f6$ with the idea of ... $\hat{\square}f5$, although White should not lose here either.

4... $\hat{\square}e6$



9-251b
W

5.♔f3?

An obvious positional error. Letting the black king pass to d5, White condemns himself to a passive defense that, as we know, forebodes gloom in rook-and-pawn endings. He could draw with 5.♕e3+ ♔d7 (5...♔d5 6.♕e7) 6.♕f3!? (or 6.♕d3 ♔c6 7.♕c3+! ♔d5 8.♕c7 ♕xa3+ 9.♔g2 ♔e6 10.d5+! ♔f6 11.♕d7 ♕a6 12.h4) 6...f6 7.d5! ♕d4 8.♕b3=

5...♔d5 6.♔e2?

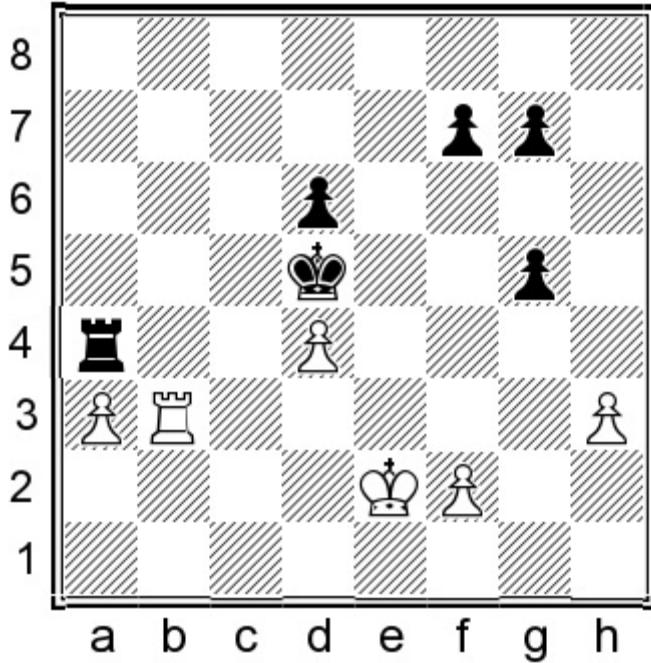
Another mistake, and a fatal one now (although demonstrating that in a game requires the highest degree of mastery). It was necessary to restrain Black's pawns on the kingside by means of 6.h4!. It is worth mentioning that here, as well as later on, White is not afraid of 6...♕xd4, because he has a distant passed pawn in the ensuing pawn endgame after 7.♔e3.

6...g5!

The third stage of the plan: it is important to improve the pawn structure on the kingside.

7.♕b3

Diagrams 9-252 and 9-253 have been intentionally omitted.



9-254

B?

7...f6!

Another precise move! After 7... $\mathbb{Q}xd4?$ (not 7... $\mathbb{B}d4?$ 8. $\mathbb{B}d3$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}xd4?$ 8. $\mathbb{B}g3!$ (8. $\mathbb{B}b7?$ loses to 8...f6! 9. $\mathbb{B}xg7 \mathbb{B}xa3$ 10.h4 gxh4 11. $\mathbb{B}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 12. $\mathbb{B}xh4 \mathbb{B}a2+$ and Kasparov correctly evaluated this as winning for Black) 8... $\mathbb{B}a5$ 9. $\mathbb{B}g4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 10. $\mathbb{B}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 11.f4 draws. The player fighting for a win should avoid pawn exchanges. Rubinstein's move keeps White in a bind.

8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$

8. $\mathbb{B}b7?$ can be met with 8... $\mathbb{B}xa3$ 9. $\mathbb{B}xg7 \mathbb{B}xh3$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ transposes to an above-mentioned variation which also wins) 10. $\mathbb{B}g6 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 11. $\mathbb{B}g8 \mathbb{B}h4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}d5$, winning a second pawn and soon the game.

8... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 9. $\mathbb{B}d3$

9. $\mathbb{B}b7 \mathbb{B}xa3+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ d5+ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{B}xh3$ 12. $\mathbb{B}xg7 \mathbb{B}f3+-$ is hopeless.

9...d5

Black has improved his pawn structure and optimally placed his king. Now it is time for the rook. It has completed its mission on a4 and may find a new application for its talents.

10. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{B}a8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c2$

11. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ would lose quickly to 11... $\mathbb{B}b8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{B}b2+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{B}b3!$ (or 13... $\mathbb{B}xf2!$).

11... $\mathbb{B}a7!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{B}e7?$

Rubinstein has hit upon the right idea of placing his opponent in zugzwang, but he implements it inaccurately. As Karsten Müller discovered in 2019, Black should first play 12... $\mathbb{B}b7!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (13.a4 $\mathbb{B}b2+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{B}a2-$; 13. $\mathbb{B}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 14.a4 $\mathbb{B}b2+!$ 15. $\mathbb{B}c2 \mathbb{B}b3)$ 13... $\mathbb{B}e7!$ (now Black is threatening the

check on e2) 14.♔d2 ♔e4 15.a4 ♔b4+ and White's pieces are much more passive compared to the game. This single mistake by Rubinstein, not detected by analysts, including world champions, for 110 years after the game was played, and found with the help of modern technology, in no way detracts from this game. On the contrary, it helps establish a level of endgame virtuosity that we, as humans, can hope to approach.

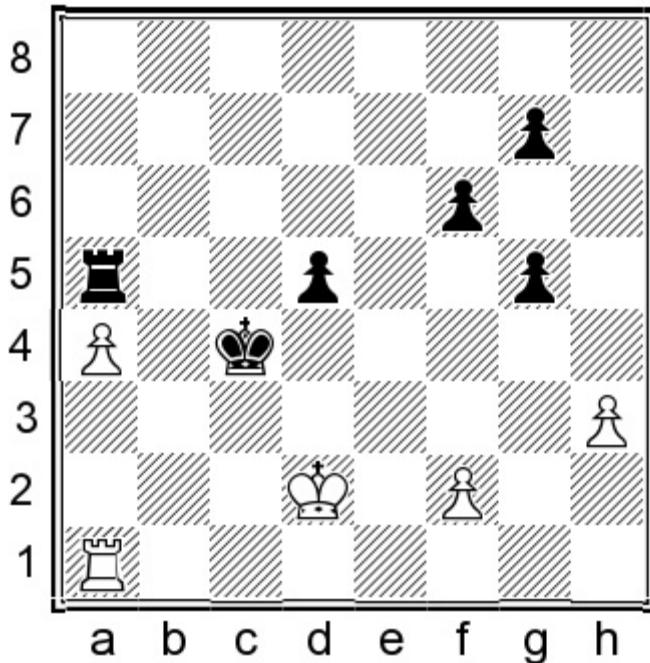
13.♖c3+!

White must take this opportunity to activate his rook. To that end, perhaps even simpler is 13.a4! ♕a7 14.♕a3 ♔b4 15.♖c3 ♕xa4 (15...♕xa4 16.♖c5 ♕a5 17.♖c7 ♔b4 18.♔e3 ♕a3+ 19.♔e2 ♕xh3 20.♖c5) 16.♖c7 ♕a3 17.♔e2 ♕xh3 and now 18.f3 or 18.♖c5 with a draw, but not 18.♖xg7?, letting the black king back in with 18...♔c3! But a continued passive policy would have led to an inglorious demise: 13.♔c2? ♕e2+ 14.♖d2 ♕xd2+ 15.♔xd2 ♔b3!, or 13.♔e3? ♕xe3! 14.fxe3 (14.♔xe3 ♔b3) 14...f5 15.♔c2 g6O 16.♔d2 (16.♔b2 g4+) 16...♔b3+–

13...♔xd4 14.a4! ♕a7 15.♖a3 ♕a5!

The pawn needs to be stopped as soon as possible. Black intends to approach it with his king, either simply to win or block it, releasing the rook from its passive position.

16.♖a1 ♔c4



9-255

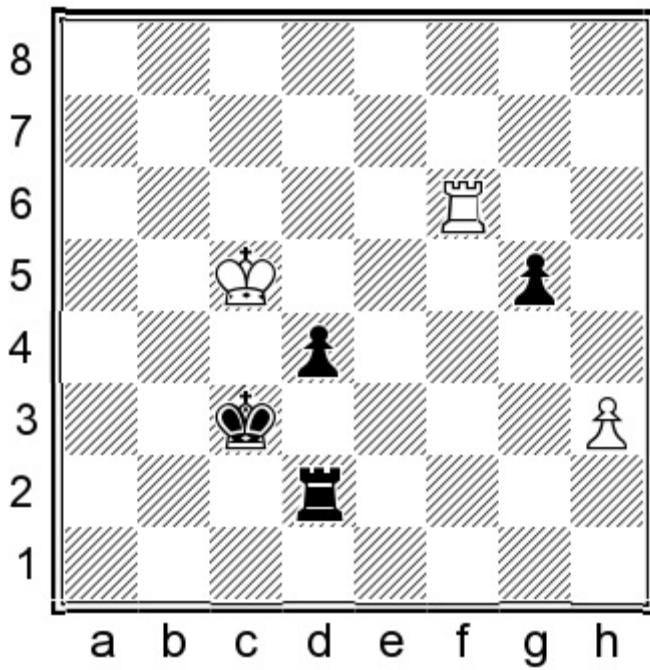
W?

17.♔e3?

White had another opportunity, at the cost of a pawn, to push the black king to the edge while making his own pieces more active.

Levenfish and Smyslov correctly recommended 17.♖c1+! ♔b4 18.♖b1+! ♕xa4 19.♔d3. This position

is drawn with correct defense: 19... $\mathbb{E}c5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (20. $\mathbb{E}b7?$ $\mathbb{E}c4!$ 21. $\mathbb{E}xg7 \mathbb{Q}b5)$ 20... $\mathbb{E}c2$ 21. $\mathbb{E}b7!$ $\mathbb{E}xf2$ 22. $\mathbb{E}xg7 \mathbb{E}d2+$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 24. $\mathbb{E}f7!$ (24. $\mathbb{E}g6?$ f5! 25. $\mathbb{E}xg5 d4$ 26. $\mathbb{E}xf5 \mathbb{Q}c3!-+)$ 24... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 25. $\mathbb{E}xf6 d4$



9-256

W?

Now White saves himself with 26. $\mathbb{E}a6!$ d3 (26... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}e3$ 28. $\mathbb{E}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 29. $\mathbb{E}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 30. $\mathbb{E}g6=)$ 27. $\mathbb{E}a3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{E}d1$ 29. $\mathbb{E}b3+$ (or 29. $\mathbb{E}c3$) 29... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}c4 d2$ 31. $\mathbb{E}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 32. $\mathbb{E}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}c3=.$ But after White's mistake, Black is again winning.

17...d4+ 18. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{E}f5!$

Black's precise 15th move tells: the rook may leave the blockade position.

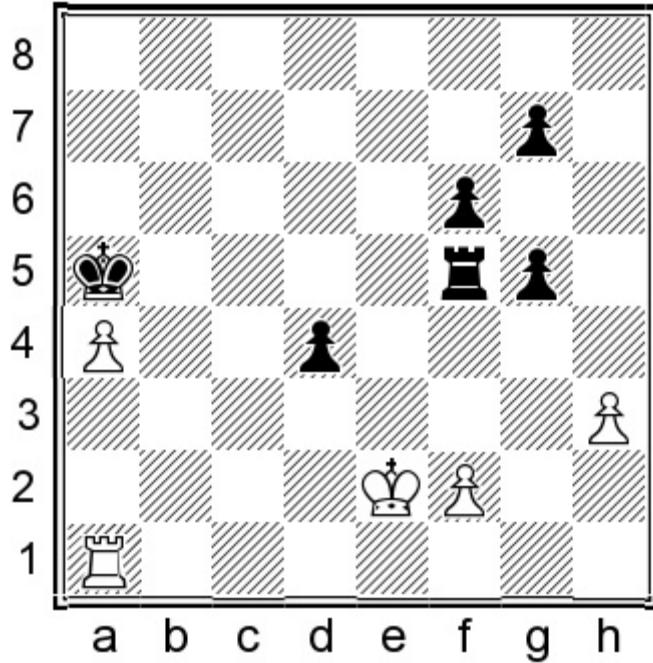
19. $\mathbb{Q}e1$

If 19.a5, then 19... $\mathbb{E}xf2+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{E}b2$ (rather than 20... $\mathbb{E}h2?$ 21. $\mathbb{E}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 22.a6!) 21.a6 $\mathbb{E}b8$ 22.a7 $\mathbb{E}a8$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{Q}c5$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 25. $\mathbb{E}b1+$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{E}h8!$ 27. $\mathbb{E}b3 \mathbb{E}h4+$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}c5 g4-$ +

19... $\mathbb{Q}b4?!$

More forceful is 19... $\mathbb{E}f3!$ Letting the White passed pawn advance looks scary, but the black rook can capture the h-pawn and return home in time: 20.a5 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 21.a6 $\mathbb{E}xh3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{E}h8$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{E}a8$ 24. $\mathbb{E}b1+$ $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{E}e8!$, cutting off the white king and quickly winning.

20. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}a5$



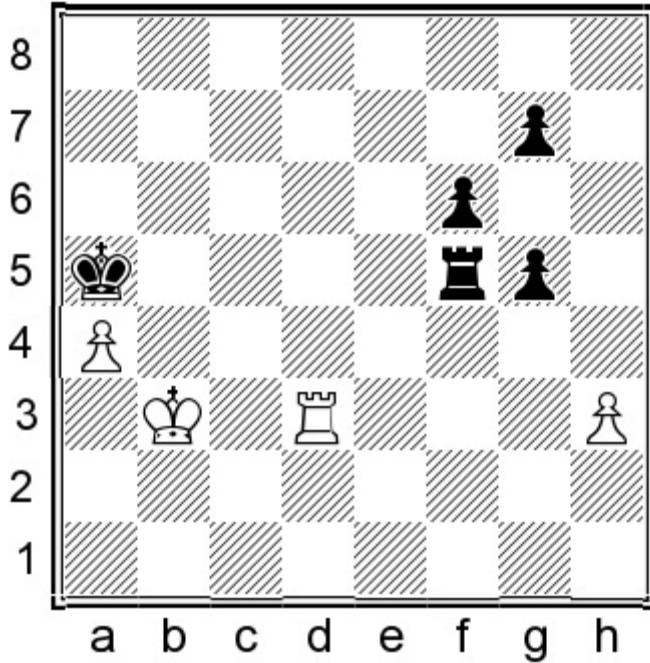
9-257

W

White now has a trick whereby he can cut off the black king without immediately losing a pawn.

21.♕a3?!

Missing a good practical chance. After 21.♕c1!, while Black is still winning, perhaps only Akiba could win this in an actual game. We continue with 21...d3+ (21...♔xa4? 22.♕c4+=) 22.♔e3 d2! 23.♖d1 ♔e5+ 24.♔d3 ♖d5+ 25.♔c3! (25.♔e3 ♔xa4 26.♖xd2 ♖xd2 27.♖xd2 ♔b4 28.♔e3 ♔c4 29.♔e4 g6!—+) 25...♖f5! (returning to the f2-pawn after the white king had to abandon it. 25...♖d7? 26.♖xd2 ♖xd2 27.♔xd2 ♔xa4 28.♔e3, and now, unlike the previous line, White is in time to draw the pawn ending. 25...♔xa4?? loses to 26.♔c4! with mate coming.) 26.♖xd2 ♖f3+ 27.♔d3 ♖xf2 28.♔b3 ♖f5!



9-257a
W

More work is still required to win here, but it can be done (analysis by Müller and Fishbein, 2019).

21...♝f4 22.♝a2

If 22.♔f1, 22...♔b4! 23.♜a1 ♜e4 24.a5 d3! 25.a6 d2 26.a7 ♜e8! and Black wins.

22...♝h4 23.♔d3

23.♜a3 ♔b4

23...♝xh3+ 24.♔xd4 ♘h4+ 25.♔d3

25.♔e3 ♜xa4 26.♜d2 ♔b6! and if 27.♜d7, then 27...♜a7.

25...♜xa4 26.♜e2

With the idea of ♜e7.

26...♝f4

26...♔b6? is wrong: 27.♜e6+! and 28.♜e7.

27.♔e3 ♔b6 28.♜c2 ♔b7!

Another accurate move. Black prevents the maneuver ♜c8-g8 and prepares to cross the c-file with his king after ...♜a4-a6-c6.

29.♜c1 ♜a4 30.♜h1 ♔c6 31.♜h7 ♜a7 32.♔e4 ♔d6 33.♔f5 g6+! 34.♔xg6 ♜xh7 35.♔xh7 ♔e5 36.♔g6 g4 White resigned.

Show in Text Mode

Chapter 10

Rook versus Knight

The Lone Knight

In the chapter, “Rook vs. Pawns” (the portion devoted to “Promoting the Pawn to a Knight”), we were introduced to the most important knight-versus-rook positions for the practical player. Let’s revisit the basic conclusions:

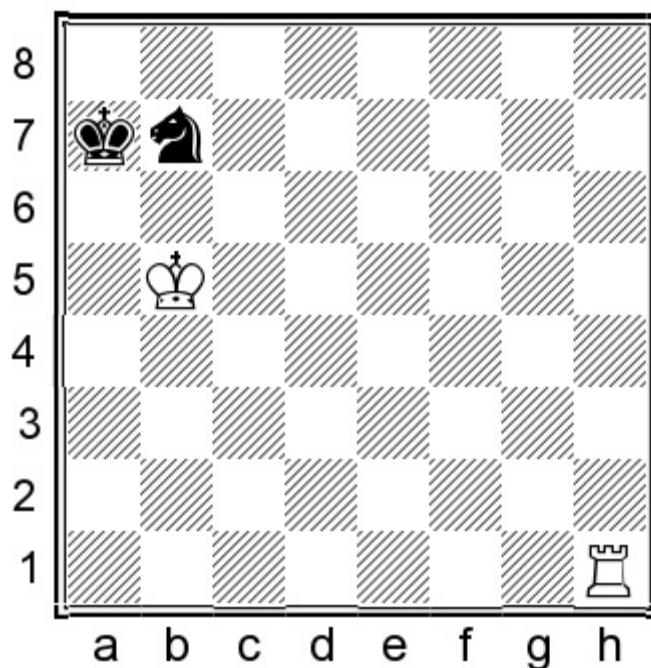
Usually, a knight draws easily against a rook. But there are exceptions:

When the knight becomes separated from the king, then it can often be trapped;

When the knight is in the corner, it will be lost through zugzwang.

We should also note that the knight stands poorly at g7 (or b7).

Al'Adli
IX Century



Several such endings were discovered in Arab manuscripts from the Middle Ages. At that time, the game was *shatranj*, a game which differed markedly from contemporary chess, although the kings, rooks and knights in fact moved the same as they do today.

White can win in several different ways.

1. $\mathbb{R}d1!$ (Averbakh says this is the simplest) **1... $\mathbb{Q}b8$** **2. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+$**

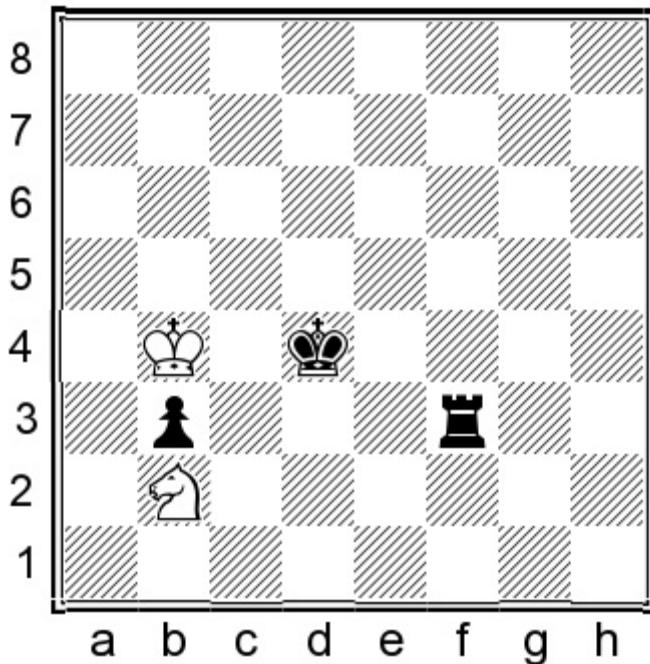
No better is **2... $\mathbb{Q}c8$** **3. $\mathbb{R}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$** **4. $\mathbb{R}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$** **5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$** (**5... $\mathbb{Q}b8$** **6. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$** **7. $\mathbb{Q}c7$**) **6. $\mathbb{R}d1+-$**

3. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ (**3... $\mathbb{Q}b7$** **4. $\mathbb{R}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$** **5. $\mathbb{R}h7$**) **4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$** **5. $\mathbb{R}e1$,** and the knight is soon lost.

There are times when a lone knight can hold even against rook and pawn – and not just in those cases where the pawn may be attacked and captured. It can be enough just to prevent the enemy king from reaching its pawn.

Em.Lasker – Ed.Lasker

New York 1924



10-2

\$

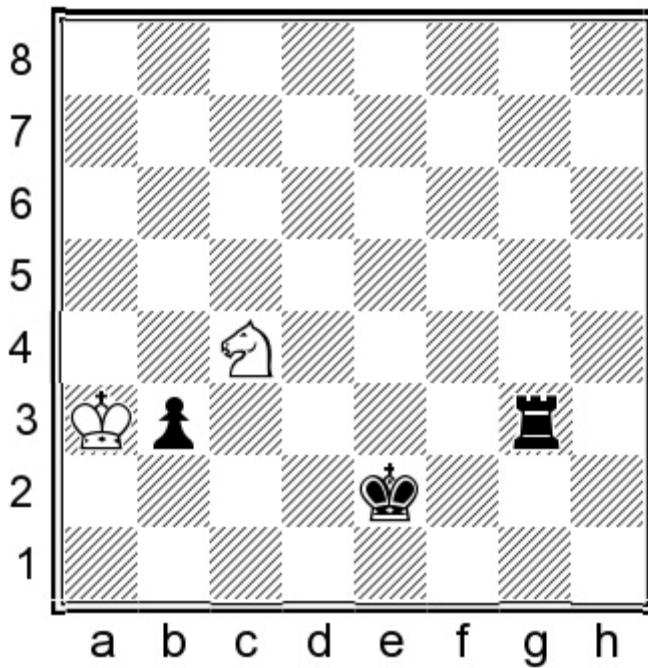
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{R}e3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$

Black can only improve his position if he can get his king over to the pawn. And the only way to get there is by bringing it around the rook. White must take measures against ... $\mathbb{Q}e2-d2-c2-$ +

4. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$

Averbakh believes White can also play 4. $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c1-$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$, followed by 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$.



10-3

B?

However, Black in fact wins here with 6... $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6!$; 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e4$

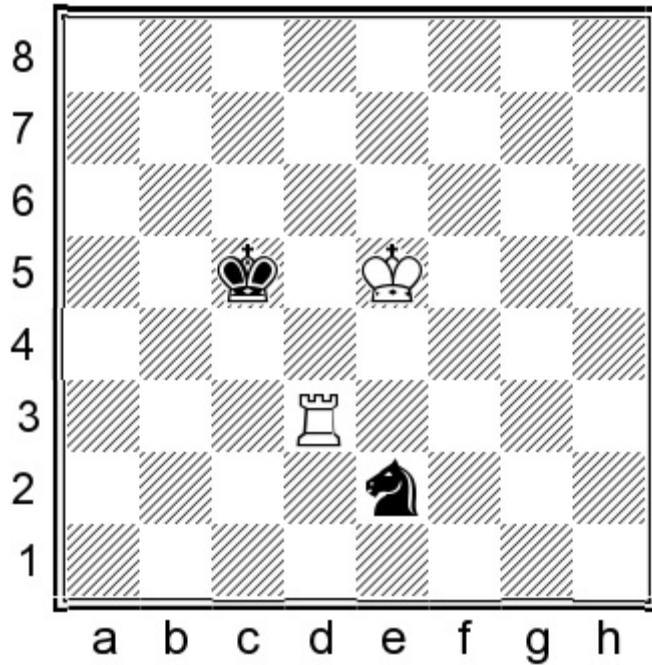
If 4... $\mathbb{Q}e2$, then 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$, and the pawn goes.

5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$

Of course not 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5+??$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4-$

5... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ Draw.

Exercises



10-4
10/1
W?

Show/Hide Solution

10/1. Zahrab IX century

1. $\mathbb{E}e3 \mathbb{Q}g1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$

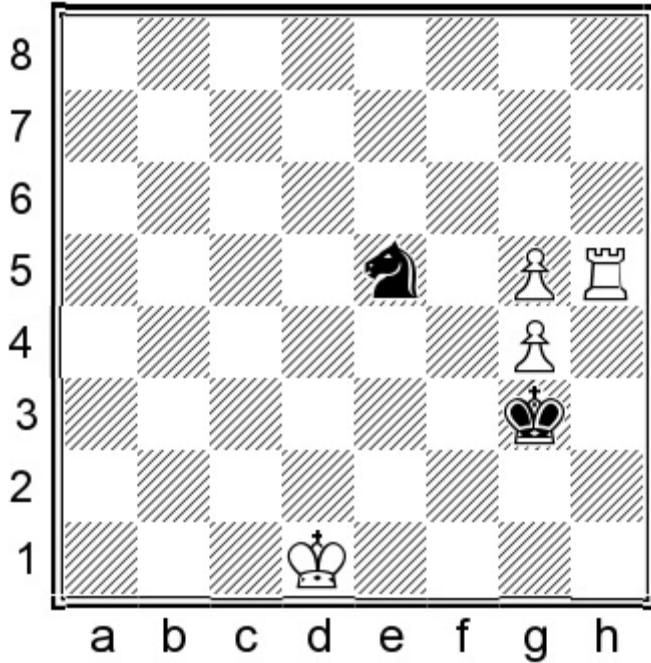
The mined squares for the kings are f4 and d4.

The premature 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4\mathbb{O}$ misses the win: 3. $\mathbb{E}e1 \mathbb{Q}h3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}h3+$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (otherwise 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$

It is Black who is in zugzwang now!

3... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}e1+-$



10-5
10/2
W?

Show/Hide Solution

10/2. Duz-Khotimirsky-Allakhverdian, Erevan 1938

1.g6! ♜xg6 2.♖h6!

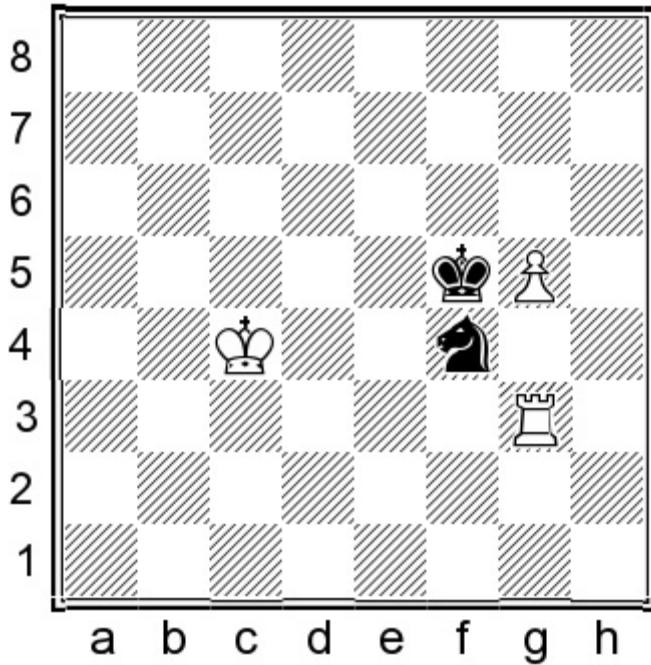
The game continued 2.♖g5? ♜f4 3.♖g8 ♜e6! ($\Delta \dots \ddot{\text{f}}4, \dots \ddot{\text{g}}5 =$) 4.♖g6 ♜f4 5.♖g8 ♜e6 Draw.

2...♜e5 3.g5 ♜f7 4.♖h5! (4.♖g6? ♕g4=) 4...♜e5 (4...♕g4 5.g6) 5.g6!+– (Kromsky, Osanov).

A good idea is to study White's alternatives and discover new positions where a rook and a pawn cannot beat a knight.

After 1.♖h6 ♜f7! 2.♖a6? (2.♖h5!) 2...♜xg5 3.♖a4 ♕f3 4.♕c2 ♜e6 5.♕c3 ♜g5, the white king cannot come closer to the pawn. If White plays 6.♖c4 and directs the king around the rook along the fifth rank, Black brings his king to h4 and attacks the pawn in time. For example, 6...♔g3 7.♔b4 ♔h4 8.♔c5 ♔h3 9.♔d5 ♔f2 10.♔e5 ♔g5=

Another attempt can be 1.♖h1? ♕xg4 2.♖g1+ ♔f5 3.♔e2 ♜g6 4.♔e3 ♜h4 5.♖g3 ♜g6 6.♔d4 ♜f4 7.♔c4.



16-91

B

Now the simplest defensive plan is to force the pawn advance to the seventh rank. The edge of the board will then be an obstacle to an invasion by the white king.

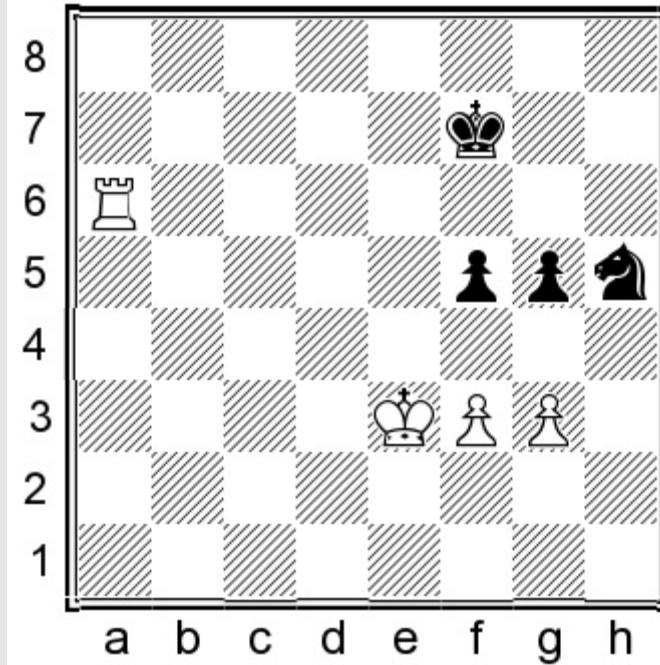
7... $\mathbb{Q}e6$!? 8.g6 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$! (rather than 11... $\mathbb{Q}g7$? 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ or 11... $\mathbb{Q}g7$? 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6$! $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e6$!) 12.g7 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$, and White cannot make any progress.

A waiting policy is also good: 7... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$! 11. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3=$. In this line, 10... $\mathbb{Q}f4$? (instead of 10... $\mathbb{Q}h4$!) loses: 11. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d6$! (14. $\mathbb{Q}g1$? $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ and 16... $\mathbb{Q}f3=$) 14... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e5+-$

Rook and Pawn vs. Knight and Pawn

Now let's look at the situation where the pawns are on the same or adjacent files (that is, when neither pawn is passed). In order to win, it will be necessary for the stronger side to attack the pawn with his king – which the weaker side may sometimes be able to prevent by proper piece placement. ***The best position for the knight is one from which it controls the invasion square, while simultaneously attacking the enemy pawn.***

de Firmian – Alburt
USA ch 1983



10-6

W?

1.g4? fxg4 2.fxg4 ♜f6 leads to the ideal defensive setup for Black in which the knight guards important squares, while simultaneously attacking the g4-pawn – an effortless draw.

There are two things to keep in mind in situations of this type. The first is that if the whole position were moved one rank higher, White would win by sacrificing the exchange. And second, White would prefer the pawns not to be blocking one another – that is, it would be better to have his pawn on g2, than g4, because then he would not have to defend it.

1.f4! gxf4+

No better is 1...g4 2.♔d4! ♜xg3 3.♔e5+–

2.gxf4

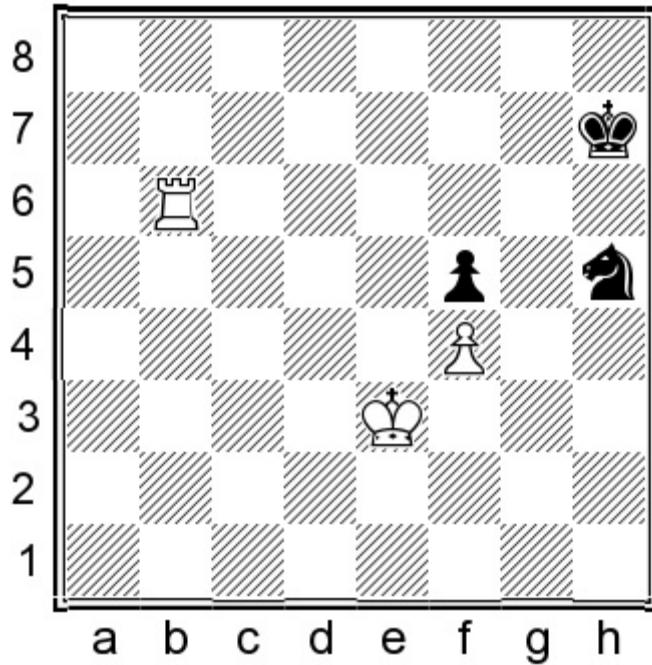
Black could draw if his knight were at e6 or g6. From h5, although the knight is attacking the pawn, it does not control the invasion squares d4 or e5.

2...♗g7 3.♘b6

The immediate 3.♘a1 ♔f6 (intending ...♗g7-e6) 4.♘h1 ♜g7 5.♘h6+ followed by 6.♔d4+– was also possible.

3...♗h7

After 3...♗f7 4.♘h6 ♜f6 5.♔d4 ♜g4 6.♘a6 ♔e7 7.♔d5 ♗f7, we reach a position examined in 1941 by Reuben Fine. His analysis: 8.♔d6 ♜f6 9.♘a8 ♜f7 10.♘d8O 10...♗f6 11.♘f8+ ♔g6 12.♘e6 ♜e3 (12...♗h6 13.♘f6+ ♔g7 14.♘xh6) 13.♘f7O 13...♗c2 14.♘f6+ ♔g7 15.♔xf5+–



10-7

W

4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$

As Müller indicates, the immediate 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$? also wins: 4... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ (after 5... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ we come to the Al'Adli position: see diagram 10-1) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ For example, 6... $f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ \mathbb{Q} (rather than the hasty 8. $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ in view of 10... $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}h5=$) 8... $f3$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d8$), and only now 9. $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f7+-$

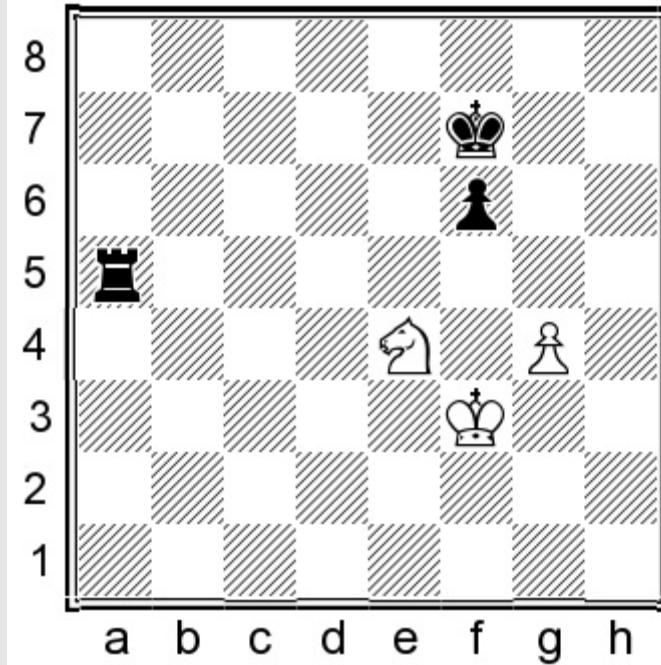
4... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

The same reply wins after 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ or 5... $\mathbb{Q}h6$.

6. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8+?!$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}c5+$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ Black resigned.

Larsen – Tal

Bled, cmsf (7) 1965



10-8

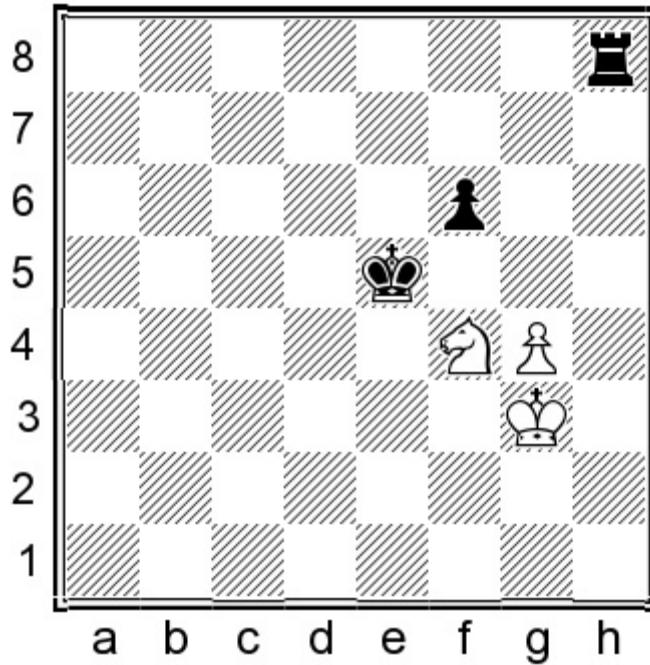
W

The knight at e4 prevents the king's invasion of the kingside, but it will be vulnerable to attack by ... $\mathbb{Q}e6-e5$. In this case, its place is on h5. In his detailed study of these kinds of positions, Averbakh showed that White can obtain a draw.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}e6$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}a4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $\mathbb{Q}a8!?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3!=$

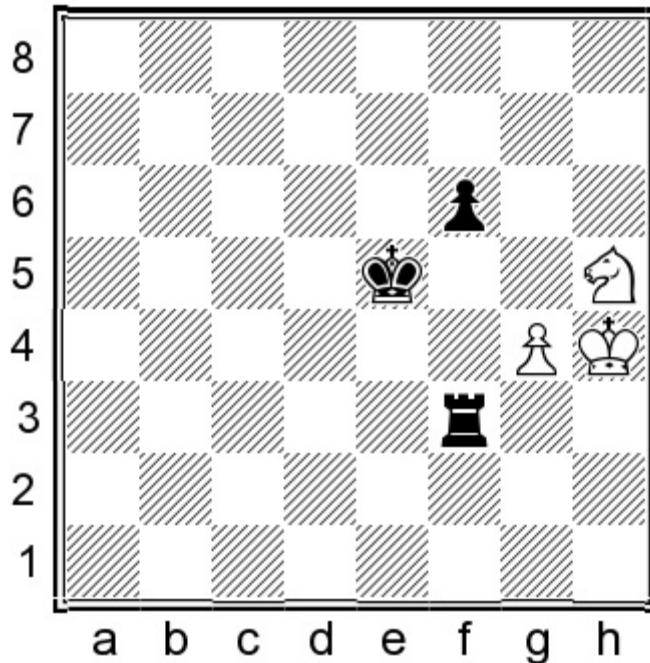
Bent Larsen is not afraid of a check along the third rank and brings his king to the center. Here 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3?$ would lose after 5... $\mathbb{Q}h8!$, threatening 6...f5.

The best reply is 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$.



10-9
B

(a) The computer gives the following complicated route to victory: 6... $\mathbb{E}h1!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (with the white king on e3, Black would have to pull back from the center) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}f1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}f3!$) 10... $\mathbb{E}f2!$ (but not 10... $\mathbb{E}f3?$ 11.g5!=) 11. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}f3+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$



10-10
W

If now 13.g5, then 13...f5 14.g6 $\mathbb{E}a3$ 15.g7 $\mathbb{E}a4+!$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}g4+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ and 18... $\mathbb{Q}f7-$

+) 16... $\mathbb{E}g4+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$? $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f3\text{O}$ 18... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6\text{O}$ (Black gives his opponent the move, triangulating with the king) 21. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}g5-$

Waiting tactics also do not help: 13. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}a3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}b3$ and White is in zugzwang.

On 15. $\mathbb{Q}g3$, decisive is 15... $\mathbb{E}b4!$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (16. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ f5-+; 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}b5!-$ followed by the inevitable 18... $\mathbb{E}xf5$) 16... $\mathbb{E}b8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (17. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{E}h8+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ f5-+; 17. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}g8-$ +) 17... $\mathbb{E}g8+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}h8+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{E}h4$ 20.g5 $\mathbb{E}g4-$

And if 15. $\mathbb{Q}g7$, then 15... $\mathbb{E}b7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}h7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h3!?$ f5 18. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}h8!$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (19. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ f4-+) 19... $\mathbb{E}g8$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (there is nothing else) 24... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 25.gxf5 $\mathbb{E}f8$ and White loses because of zugzwang, already familiar to us through Réti's study (diagram 8-10).

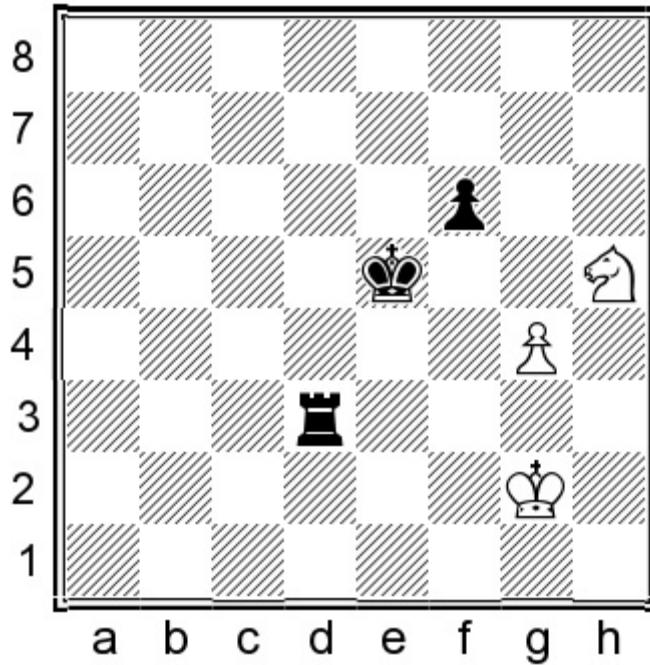
(b) In home analysis, Tal studied the natural 6... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (after 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$, this square is not available to the black king). Alas, he was under the mistaken assumption that 7. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ is refuted by 7...f5. Actually, after 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ White does save himself: 9... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b6!$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$ Black therefore has to return with the king, 7... $\mathbb{Q}e5!$, then proceed as in line (a).

Let me give a somewhat refined version of the variation found by Tal. 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}d8!$ (in some lines it is useful to deprive the white knight of the d1-square; Tal had considered the slightly less accurate 7... $\mathbb{E}c8$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (9.g5 f5-+) 9... $\mathbb{E}d4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}d7!$ (why the rook takes up position on the seventh and not the eighth rank will soon become clear) 11. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f5 13. $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ f4+ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 16.g5.

Once again we have the same situation before us as in the Réti study. With the rook on g8 and Black to move, he would be in zugzwang and there would be no win. But here, Black gives the move to his opponent by 16... $\mathbb{E}g8!\text{O}$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2!\text{O}$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}h3-$ or 18. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3-$

Let's return to the game, where Tal, despite lengthy maneuvering, was unable to refute Averbakh's evaluation.

5... $\mathbb{E}b8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}e1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}e3+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}b3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}b7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}b8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}h8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}h7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}h8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}h2$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}b2$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}b3+$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}d3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g2$



10-11

B

23... ♕e4 24. ♔xf6+ ♕f4 25. ♔f2

After 25.g5?? Black wins either by 25... ♜g3+ Δ 26... ♜xg5; or by 25... ♕xg5 26. ♔e4+ ♕f4 27. ♔f2 ♜d2Ω. And 25. ♔h2? is a mistake, in view of 25... ♜d6 26.g5 ♜d8!—

25... ♜d2+ 26. ♕e1 ♜d6 27.g5

If it were not for the g-pawn, the knight, cut off from its king, would be lost.

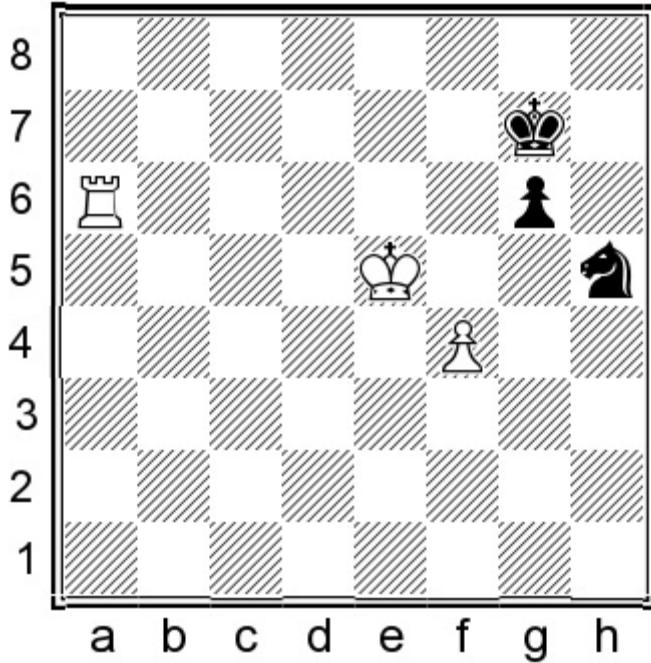
27... ♔f3 28. ♔h7□ 28... ♕e3 29. ♔f6 ♔f3 30. ♔h7 ♜d5

Or 30... ♜g6 31. ♔d2 ♜g7 32. ♔f6 (32. ♔f8) 32... ♜xg5 33. ♔c3=

31.g6 ♜d7 32. ♔g5+ ♕e3 33. ♔e6 ♜d2 34. ♔f4 ♜h2 35. ♔d5+ ♔f3 36. ♔d1 ♜g2 37.g7 Draw.

In the next diagram we have the same position as in the previous example, except that it has been shifted slightly. As Averbakh and Bronstein's joint analysis showed, this tiny difference changes the evaluation of the position.

Taimanov – Bronstein
USSR chsf, Leningrad 1946



10-12
\$
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$

1... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ is refuted by 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7\Theta$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $f6+-$

The retreat to the eighth rank should also not have saved Black. However Taimanov was unable to find the winning line; after 2. $f5?$ $gxf5$, the game ended in a draw.

White needs to sacrifice the f4-pawn, not exchange it. However, the immediate 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ would not work: 3... $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}e8$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (the drawing position we saw several times in the “Rook vs. Pawns” chapter) 6... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8!=$ (but not 7... $\mathbb{Q}g4??+-$).

2. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $f5+-$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4+$

3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ does not help: 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ or 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+-$

4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}h5+$

Also hopeless are 4... $g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$, and 4... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $g4$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7$.

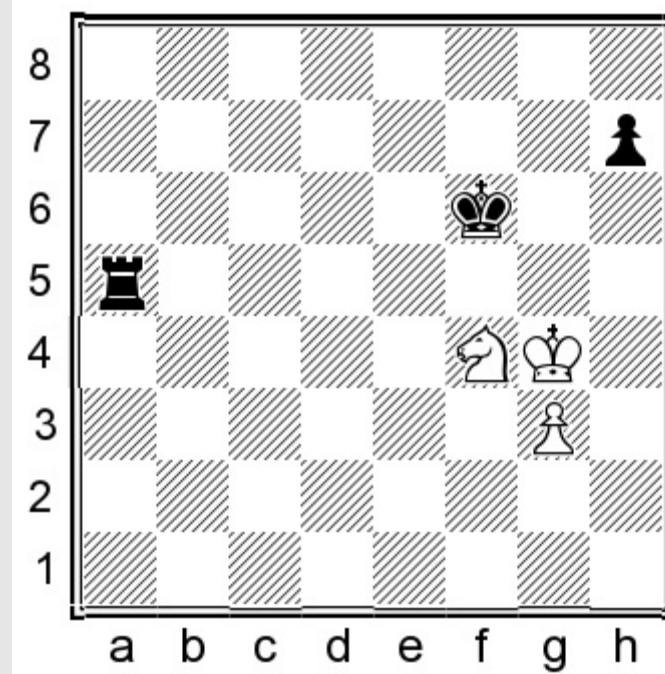
5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d8\Theta$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$

Now that the knight has been cut off, the rest is simple.

9. $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$) 11... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f2+-$

Sturua – Yusupov

Baku jr 1979



10-13

W?

When Artur Yusupov showed me this ending he had just played, I suggested that it made sense to keep the knight on h3 and the pawn on g4. Why? From h3, the knight not only impedes the approach of the black king, but is also prepared to hit the h7-pawn with ♜g5. If Black advances that pawn to h6, then he will have to consider White's possible g4-g5.

After further detailed analysis, Yusupov showed that indeed, White can draw by retreating the knight.

Thus, 1. ♜h3! (intending ♜h4, g4) 1... ♕a4+ (1... ♜e5 2. ♜h5 or 2. ♜g5) 2. ♜h5 ♕a3

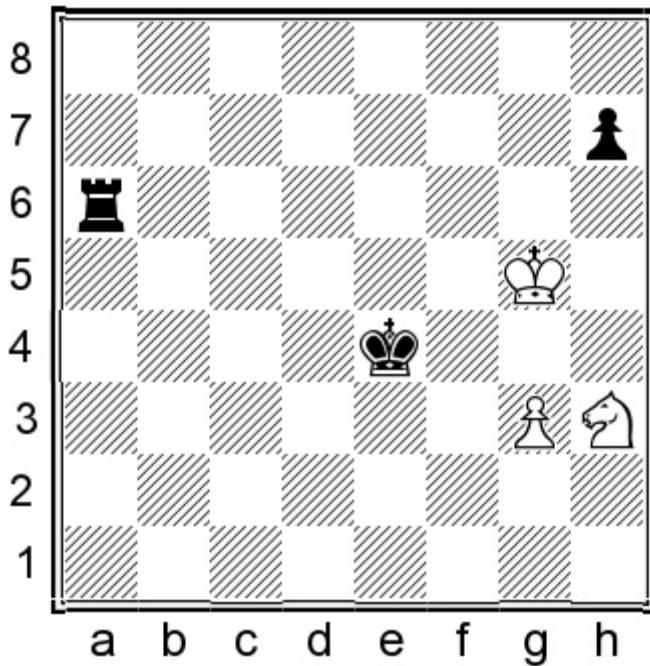
2... ♜f5 3. ♜g5 ♕a1 4. g4+ ♜f6! is another try. Now 5. ♜xh7+?? ♜g7 6. ♜g5 ♕h1+ or 5. ♜f3?? ♕h1+ 6. ♜h4 h6〇 is bad; but 5. ♜h3! ♕h1 6. ♜h4 is sufficient.

3. ♜h4 ♜e5 4. g4 ♕a1 (4... h6 5. ♜f2 or 5. ♜g1, but not 5. g5? h5! 6. ♜g1 ♜f5!) 5. ♜g3 h6 (5... ♕h1 6. ♜g2) 6. ♜h4 ♕h1 (6... ♜e4 7. g5) 7. ♜g3 ♜d4 8. g5=

White has a good deal of leeway in these lines; the majority of moves are not "only" moves. On the other hand, after the game continuation, it is much more difficult to defend. Both Yusupov and I thought that in the game White's position had become lost immediately, and this view was reflected in the first editions of the *Endgame Manual*. However a new computer examination demonstrated that in fact the draw was only missed much later.

1. $\mathbb{Q}h5+?!$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

4. $\mathbb{Q}h3?$ was also worth a look here.



10-14

B?

On 4... $\mathbb{Q}f3?$ White saves himself with 5. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $h6$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5=$) 6. $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 7. $g5=$

But Black wins with 4... $\mathbb{E}g6+!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ (but not 5... $\mathbb{Q}f3?$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h6=$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{E}h6+!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}g4O$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{E}xg3+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{E}g6.$

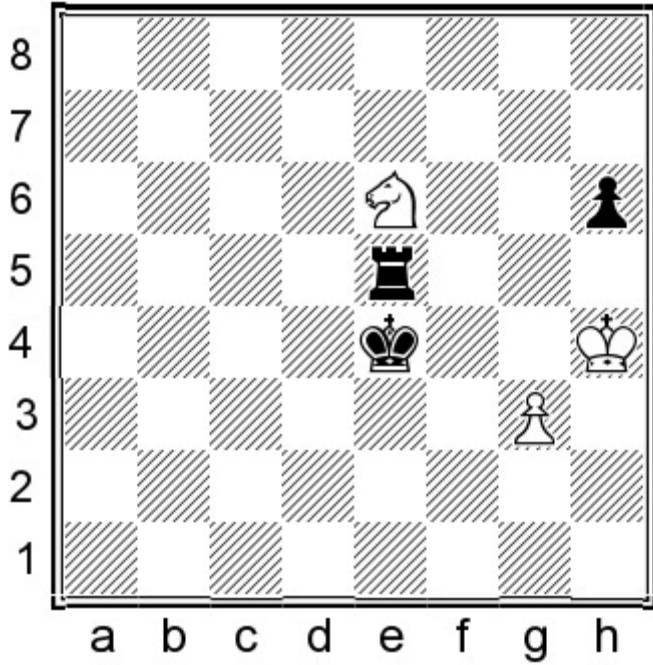
4... $\mathbb{E}a5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$

Wrong is 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3?$ $h6!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ (7. $g4$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$, and wins by zugzwang) 7... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}e5!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}e1-$) 8... $\mathbb{E}a1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ (9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $h5+!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{E}h1-$) 9... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3-$

5... $h6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$

Much weaker is 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ $\mathbb{E}g5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}g4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4-$

6... $\mathbb{E}e5$



10-15

W?

7.♘d8?

This is the little-noticed error! Also not good is 7.♘f4? ♖f3 8.♘h3 ♕e1—+, while on 7.♘f8? only 7...♗g5! 8.♘e6 ♗g8! leads to the win.

The only correct knight retreat is 7.♘g7!! For example, 7...♔f3 8.g4! ♕e1 9.♔h5 ♕h1+ 10.♔g6 ♔xg4 11.♔e8!= or 7...♗g5 8.♘h5 ♔f3 9.♘f6 ♗g6 10.♘h7!! (10.♘h5 ♗g4+ 11.♔h3 ♘d4 12.♘f6 ♘d1 13.♔h2 ♘d6—+) 10...♗xg3 11.♔h5 ♕h3+ 12.♔g6= It goes without saying that it is practically impossible to find this kind of concept associated with the sacrifice (not the exchange) of the last pawn over the board.

7...♔f5!?

Black has achieved a great deal in driving the knight away from the pawn. Here, he could win by 7...♗e7!? (threatening 8...♘d5 and 9...♘d7) 8.♘h5! ♔f5 (but not 8...♘d5? 9.♔g6=) 9.g4+ (9.♘c6 ♕e4 10.♘d8 ♔f6 11.♔xh6 ♕e8—+ or 11.♘c6 ♕c4—+ does not change much) 9...♔f6! 10.♔xh6 (10.♘c6 ♕e4 or 10...♗e1 11.♔h4 ♕e4) 10...♗g7 11.♘e6 ♗g8 12.♘h7 ♕xg4 13.♘f8 ♔f7. On the other hand, the move played is no worse.

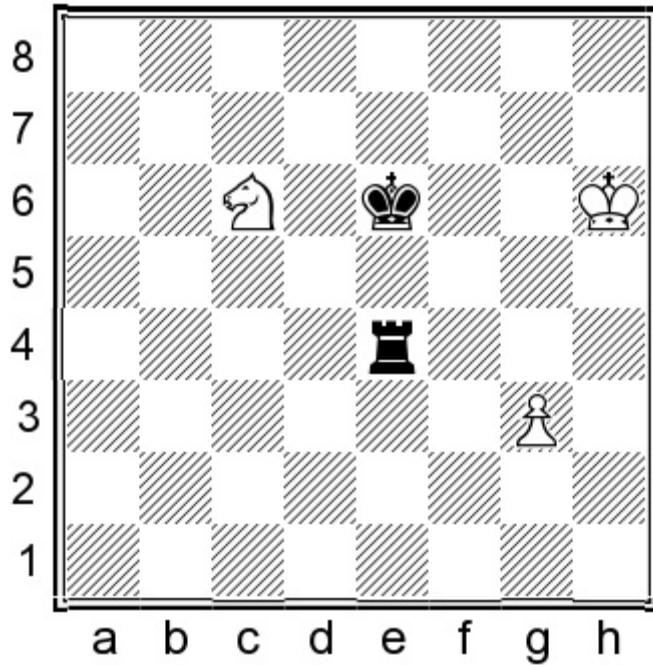
8.♘c6

8.♘f7 is met by 8...♗d5! (but not 8...♗e1? 9.g4+! ♔f6 10.♘d6=) 9.♘xh6+ (9.♔h5 ♔f6+) 9...♔g6 10.♘g8 (10.♘g4 ♕h5#) 10...♗d7—+

8...♗e4+! 9.♔h5 ♔e6

9...♔f6 was simpler: 10.♔xh6 ♕c4 11.♘b8 (11.♘a5 ♕g4 or 11...♕c1 12.♔h7 ♕c5) 11...♔e6, intending 12...♔d6, and the knight is caught.

10.♔xh6



10-16
B?

10... ♔d7?!

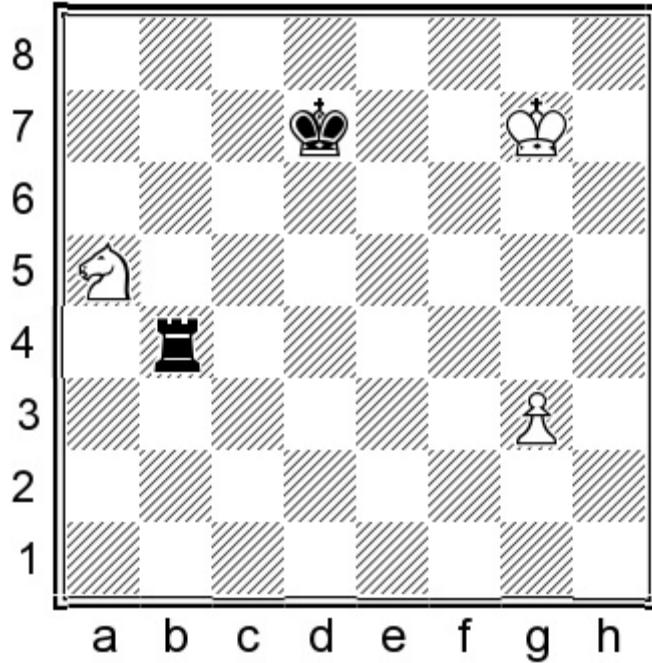
Black had the time to take the g3-pawn: 10... ♕g4! 11. ♔h5 (11. ♔d8+ ♔f6) 11... ♕xg3 (11... ♕c4!? keeps the knight out of a5) 12. ♔d4+ ♔e5 13. ♔h4 (13. ♔e2 ♕g2) 13... ♕e3–+

Yusupov believed that it was here he let slip the win; however, that came later.

11. ♔a5! ♕b4!

11... ♕g4? 12. ♔b3! ♔e6 (12... ♕xg3 13. ♔d4; 12... ♔d6 13. ♔d2) 13. ♔d2! ♕xg3 14. ♔e4 and 15. ♔g5+.

12. ♔g7!



10-17

B?

12... $\mathbb{Q}c7?$

Here is the fatal error! 12... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ would not have won either, in view of 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ (13. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ 14.g4 $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8!+$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14.g4 $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e6=$. The only right way was 12... $\mathbb{Q}e6!!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$, for example, 14. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$, or 14. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3!+$

13. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$

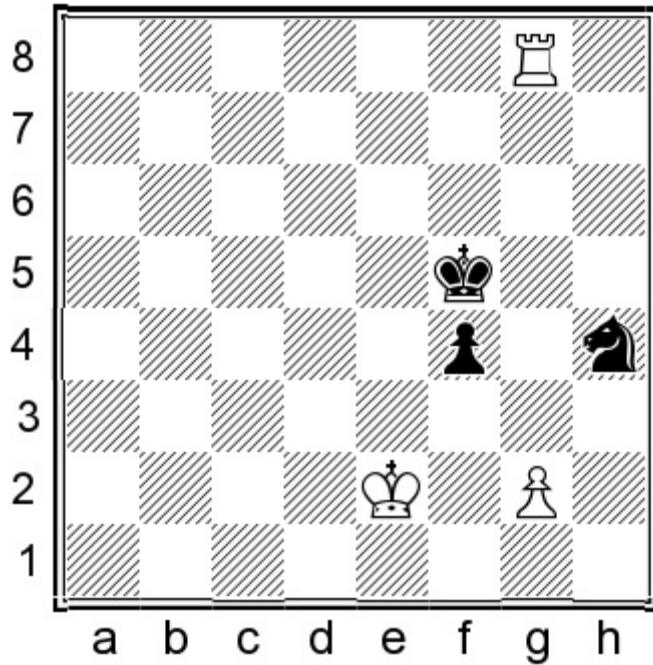
13... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 14.g4! $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ (15... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5) 16.\mathbb{Q}c1!=$

14.g4 (14. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 15.g4=) **14... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$** **15. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$** **16. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$** **17. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$** **18. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$** **19. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$** **20. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$** Draw.

Tragicomедies

Suba – Chiburdanidze

Dortmund 1983



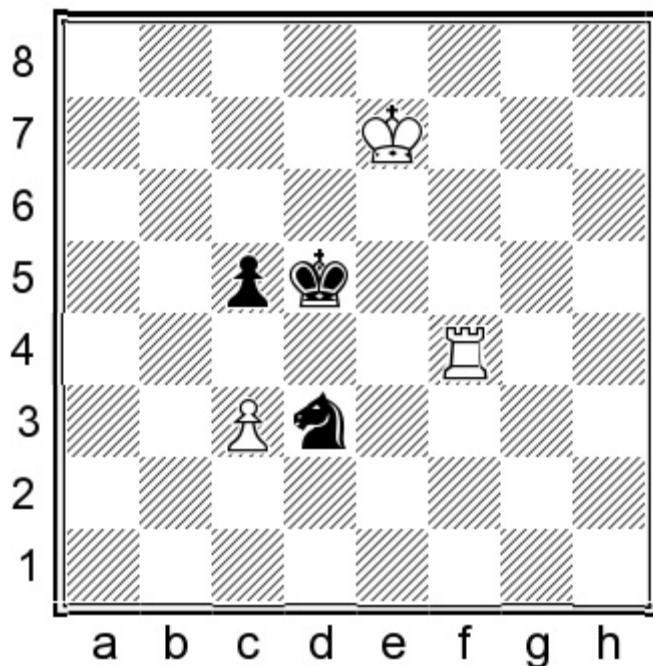
10-18

B?

It is a draw after 1... $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $f3!?$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ is also possible) 4. $\mathbb{R}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $fxg2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$

But in the game, Black played 1... $\mathbb{Q}e4??$ 2. $g3!+-\mathbb{Q}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $gxf4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 6. $f5+$ and Black resigned.

Exercises



10-19

10/3

W?

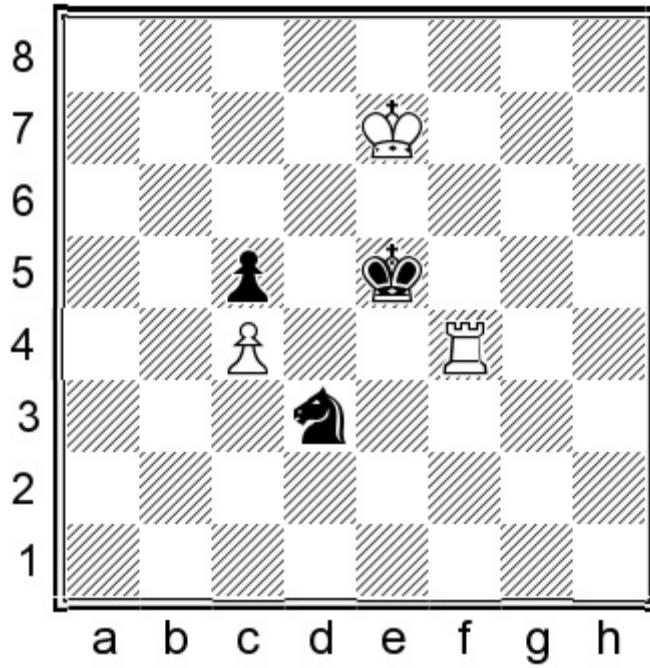
Play

Show/Hide Solution

10/3. P.Benko 1986

The white king has already invaded the black camp, therefore Black's idea is to attack the pawn rather than to create a fortress. He will even readily sacrifice his knight for the pawn.

On 1. $\mathbb{E}h4?$ $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ c4 3. $\mathbb{E}h5+$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3!=$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$, Black holds by means of 4... $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ 5. $\mathbb{E}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$, driving the rook back from the fourth rank. White should take this idea into consideration in all lines.

1.c4+! $\mathbb{Q}e5$ **16-92**

W?

2. $\mathbb{E}g4!!$

The apparently natural 2. $\mathbb{E}h4?$ could, after 2... $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$, lead to the position from the famous study by Réti (diagram 8-10), where White wins: 5. $\mathbb{E}c2(c3)!!$ 5... c4 6. $\mathbb{E}c1!$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7\mathbb{O}$ However, Black has an adequate defense: 2... $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 4. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5=$

2... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ is already useless here: 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7+-$

3. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$

Rather than 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5=$

3... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6+-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c1!$ c4 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7\Theta$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!=$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6+-$

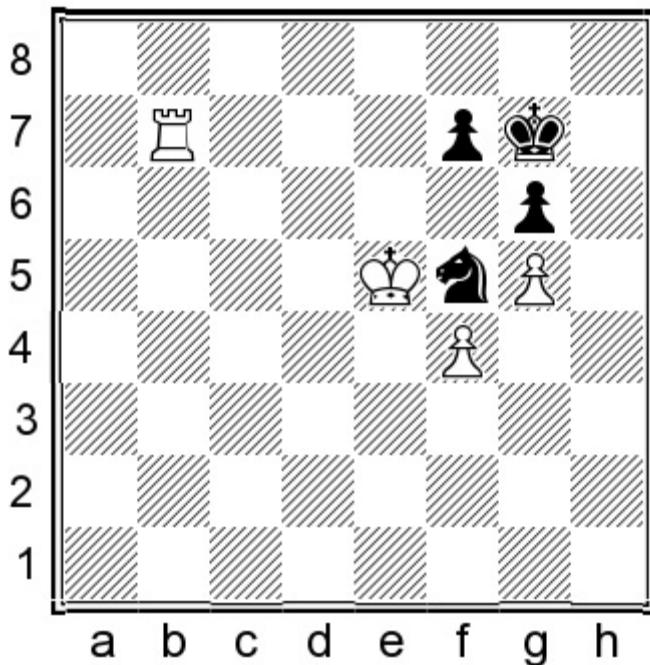
Multi-Pawn Endgames

Pawns on One Side of the Board

When there are three pawns against three, or even two pawns against two pawns, all on the same side of the board, the rook will, in the overwhelming majority of cases, win against the knight. But if the weaker side has an extra pawn, then he has real chances to draw.

Fridstein – Kraman

USSR ch tt, Riga 1954



10-20

W

White's plan is a routine and simple one: attack the f7-pawn; the king gets to e8 and then forces its way into f6.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b8\Theta$ 1... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$

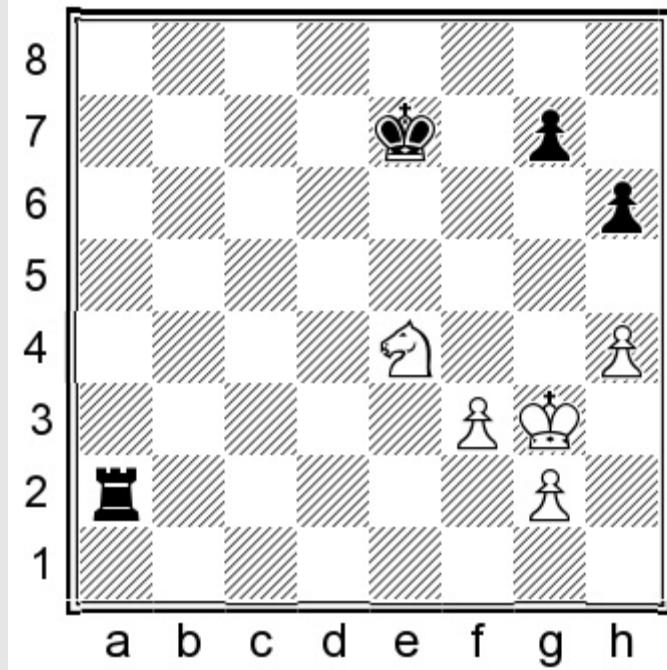
2... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ does not help: 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ wins by zugzwang.

Note that zugzwang is used again and again to bring home the advantage.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7O$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ Black resigned.

Vidmar – Alekhine

San Remo 1930



10-21

W

Alekhine considered the position won based on the outcome of the game. Afterwards, however, safe defensive methods were discovered.

One of these was proposed by Leykin in 1940. He held that White would do well to place his pawn at g4. Afterwards, his knight could combine threats against the enemy pawns with control over the access routes into his camp (the same strategy we saw in the preceding section). The best move is 1. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ (intending 2. g4).

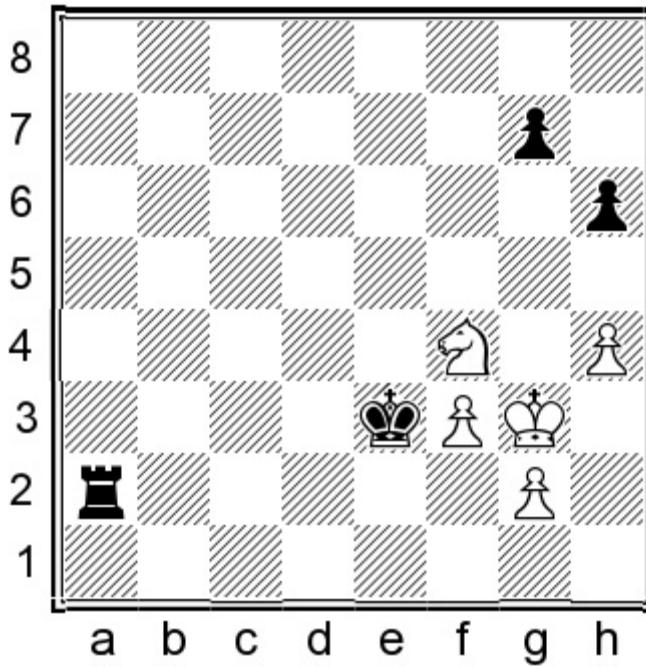
(a) 1... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (3... g6 4. g4) 4. h5 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 9. g4 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ is met by 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ or even by 11. $\mathbb{Q}h4$). In the final position of this variation, the knight would be just as favorably posted, were it to stand anywhere in contact with the f4-square – on e6 or g2, for instance.

(b) 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 2. g4! $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ g6 (3... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4. h5! $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6=$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$, and the knight occupies its ideal square – f4) 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$. Here, 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ is bad, but

White has 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$!, without fear of 6...h5 (6... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$) in view of 7. gxh5! $\mathbb{x}xh4$ 8. hxg6!=

1. $\mathbb{Q}f2$?! $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 7. h5?

Alekhine correctly considered this a bad move, since the h5-pawn, unsupported by its neighboring g-pawn, now comes under attack by the black rook. White had to play 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$.



10-22

W

Now Alekhine gave 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$! 14. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ as winning for Black (16. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ fails to 16... $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ and 16.h5 is met by 16... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3-$), but here 16. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ still defends.

Even after 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$, it is not yet too late to play 13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$!, or 13. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ intending $\mathbb{Q}c5-e4=$.

There is another method of defense. If we leave the king at h2 and the knight at e4, the incursion of the black king is not dangerous; it will be driven off the f1 - and f2-squares by checks at g3 and e4. This plan was successfully employed in the game Kuzmin-Miles (Bath, ech tt 1973), in which the same position arose, but with the black rook at a4.

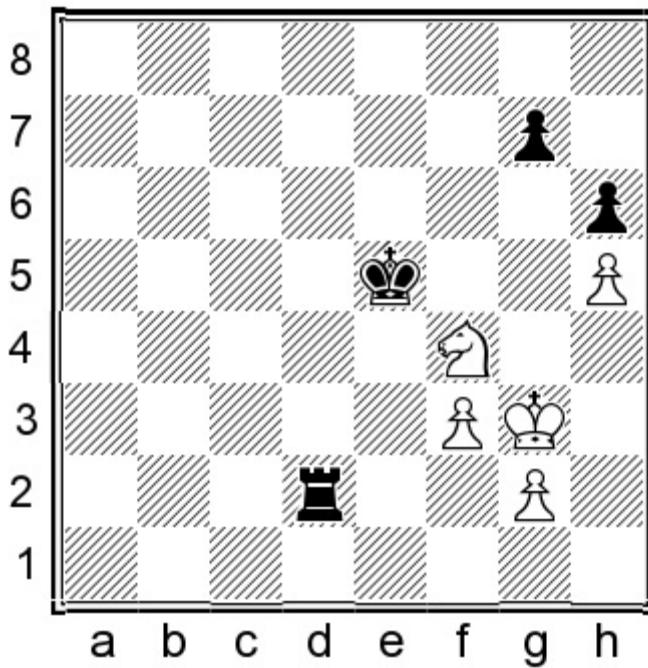
12. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ g6 22. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ Draw.

7... $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$

8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4-$) 10... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5-$

8... $\mathbb{Q}d2?$

Allowing White to regroup effectively. As Müller found in 2019, Black wins with 8... $\mathbb{Q}f5!$, for example, 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}e5+$



10-23

W?

9. $\mathbb{Q}h3?$

Returning the favor. As Miles pointed out, White missed an opportunity to transpose into one of the drawn Leykin positions, with the pawn of g4, by playing 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ intending $g4+\mathbb{Q}g3$, $\mathbb{Q}f4=$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5+$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 12.g4 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$

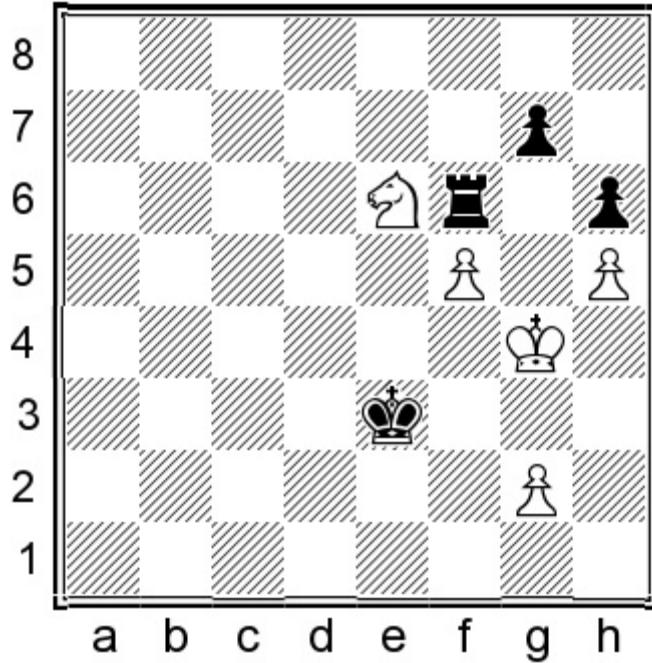
9... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6$

Also hopeless are 11. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{E}a5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}e5$, and 11. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}d4$ 12.g3 $\mathbb{E}a4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ (but not Fine's suggestion 13... $\mathbb{E}a5+?$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{E}g5+$ in view of 15. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}xh5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$, with a drawn position).

11... $\mathbb{E}d5!$ 12.f4

12. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{E}e5!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{E}g5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}xg2-$ + (Alekhine).

12... $\mathbb{E}f5!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}f6!$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ 14.g3) 14.f5 (14. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{E}xf4+)$



10-24

B?

14...♝f7?!

A bit of dawdling – which does not spoil anything. The strongest continuation was 14...♚e4! 15.♛xg7 (15.♛c5+ ♚d5 16.♛d3 ♚d4 17.♛f4 ♚e4) 15...♝f7 16.♛e6 (16.♛e8 ♚e5! 17.f6 ♜f8 18.♛c7 ♜xf6+) 16...♜xf5, and White is in a bad way. For example:

17.g3 ♜e5 18.♛d8 (18.♛f4 ♜g5+ 19.♚h4 ♜f3+) 18...♜g5+ 19.♚h4 ♜f3 20.♛f7 ♜g4+ 21.♚h3 ♜xg3+ 22.♚h4 ♜f4! 23.♛xh6 ♜g7! 24.♚h3 ♜h7+;

17.♚h4 ♜e5 18.♛c5 ♜f4+ 19.♚h3 ♜d4 20.g3 ♜d6! 21.♛b3 (21.♛a6 ♜a4) 21...♜d1 22.♚h4 ♜d5 23.g4 ♜d3 24.g5 (24.♛c1 ♜e3 25.g5 ♜e4+) 24...♜xb3 25.gxh6 ♜e6 26.h7 ♜b8 27.♛g5 ♜f7+ (analysis by Fine).

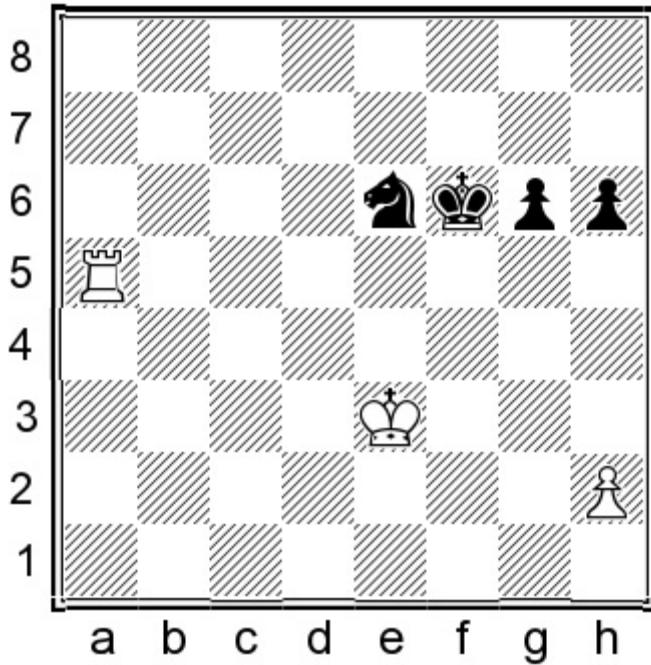
15.g3??

After 15.♛d8! Alekhine would have had to return to the above-cited variation, 15...♜f6 16.♛e6 ♜e4!

15...♚e4 16.♛c5+ ♚d4! 17.♛b3+ ♚e5 White resigned.

Tragomedies

Romanishin – Rodriguez
Moscow 1985



10-25
B

1...h5

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$, intending 2... $\mathbb{Q}f5$, was simpler; but the text does not spoil anything.

1...h5 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$

White triangulates with his king, in order to give the move back to his opponent.

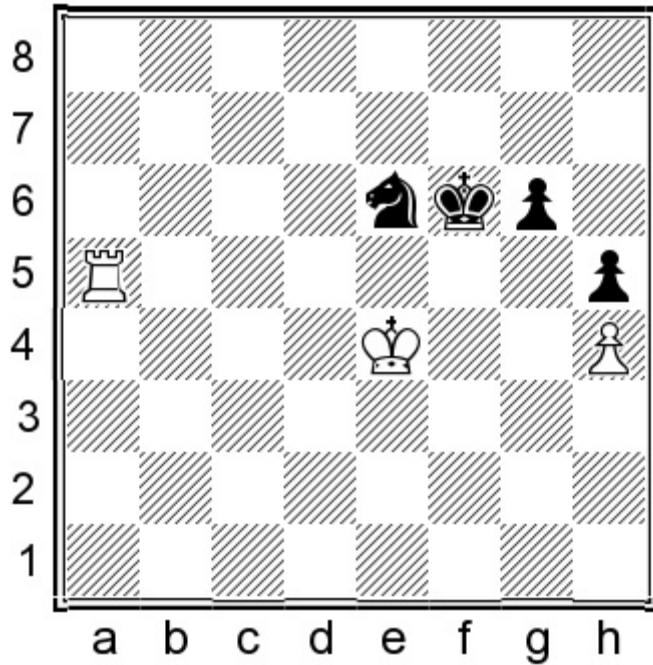
4... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5.h4

5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$

5... $\mathbb{Q}e6?$!

An unfortunate retreat. The draw was available with 5... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ (intending 6...g5) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (as Rodriguez and Vera noted, 6... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ was also possible, for example: 7. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ g5=) 7. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ g5 (the simplest; after 11... $\mathbb{Q}h6?$! 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6$, 12... $\mathbb{Q}f5?$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ loses, but 12... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ avoids defeat) 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ gxh4 (12... $\mathbb{Q}d8+$; 12... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$) 13. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ h3=.

6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$



10-26

B

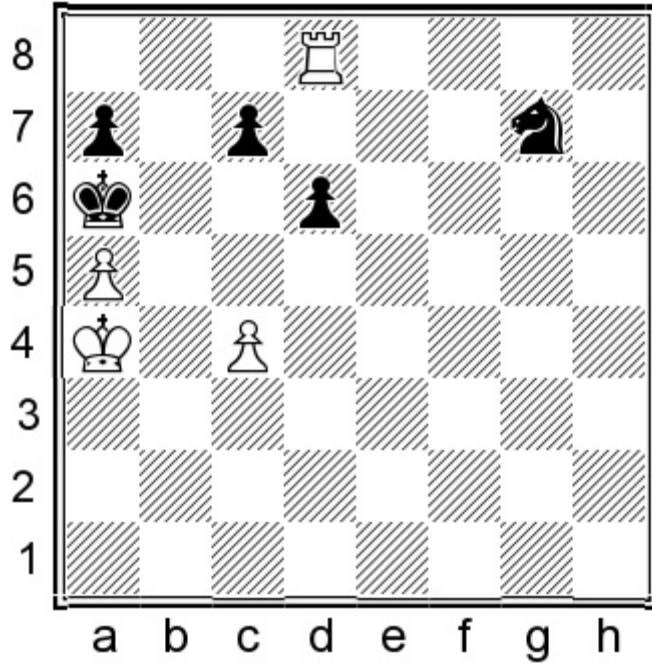
6...g5?

The decisive error! It was still not too late to send the knight to f7 by playing 6... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ (also not bad is 6... $\mathbb{Q}f8$). For example, 7. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8+!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ g5! (but not 10... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a7!+-$) 11. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ gxh4 12. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ h3=. In the game a very similar position has arisen by force, but in a version slightly more favorable to White.

7. $\mathbb{Q}f5!+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ gxh4 9. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ h3 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ h2 11. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ h4 14. $\mathbb{Q}g2+!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a2$

Black resigned in view of 15...h3 (15... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}a3+ \mathbb{Q}g2$ (17... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ h2 19. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f3$) 18. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ h2 19. $\mathbb{Q}a2+ \mathbb{Q}g1$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ h1=Q+ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f3+-$

Exercises



10-27

10/4

W?

Show/Hide Solution

10/4. A.Seleznev 1920

On 1. $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$, Black has a comfortable draw. To achieve success, some combinational spirit is necessary!

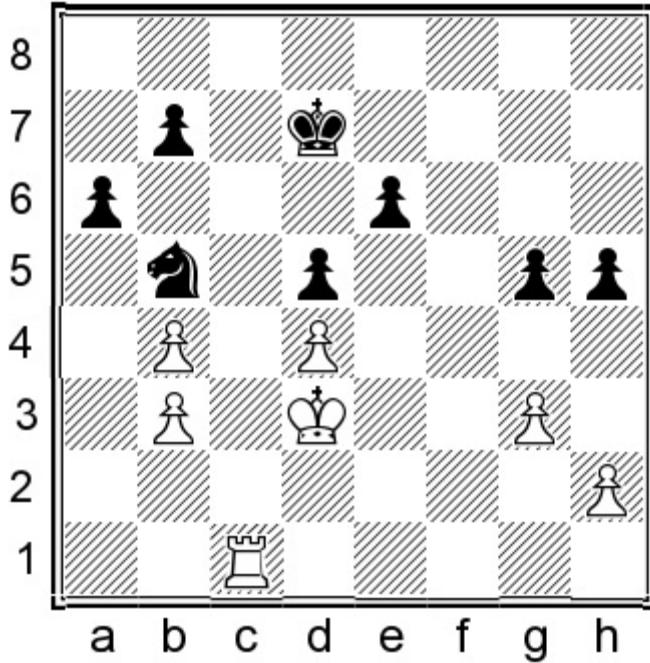
**1.c5! $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (1...dxc5 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7+-$) 2.cxd6! $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 3.dxc7 $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ 4.c8= \mathbb{Q} ! (4.c8= \mathbb{W} ? – stalemate)
4... $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$**

Pawns on Both Sides

The rook is a much more mobile piece than the knight. When the battle takes place on both sides of the board, especially when there are passed pawns involved, the rook is usually stronger.

Matanovic – Larsen

Portoroz izt 1958



10-28

W

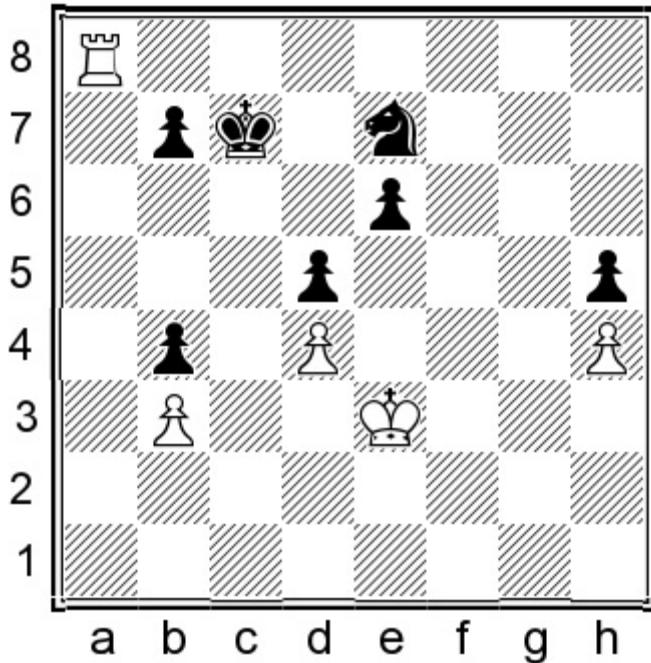
Black's position looks solid. His king can defend the invasion squares on both open files, "c" and "f." But White shatters his defenses by alternating threats to various parts of the board.

1. $\mathbb{E}e1$ ($\Delta 2. \mathbb{E}e5$) 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 2. $b5!$

White gets nothing from 2. $\mathbb{E}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $h3$ $g4!$ But now, after 2... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$, White will play 3. $\mathbb{E}e5+-$, while taking on b5 with a pawn opens up the a-file.

2...axb5 3. $\mathbb{E}a1$ $h4$

If 3... $b4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$, then 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 6. $h4!$ $gxh4$ 7. $gxh4$ ($\Delta \mathbb{Q}f4$). On 7... $\mathbb{Q}d6$, the most precise way is 8. $\mathbb{E}f8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xf5!$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10. $\mathbb{E}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 12. $\mathbb{E}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xe6+-$. 7... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ is better for Black – from here, the knight is ready to go not just to f5, but also to c6.



10-29

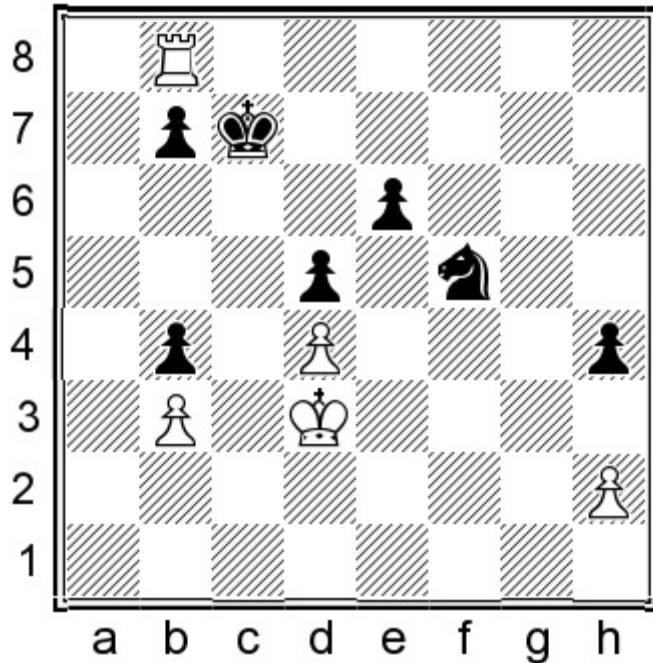
W?

This would force White to play the sharp 8. $\hat{Q}f4!$ allowing Black to capture White's queenside pawns, e.g. 8... $\hat{Q}c6$ (8... $\hat{Q}f5$ 9. $\hat{Q}e5$) 9. $\hat{R}h8$ $\hat{Q}xd4$ 10. $\hat{R}xh5$ $\hat{Q}xb3$ 11. $\hat{R}g5$. Observe the resulting position. White has only one pawn, against four of Black's; nevertheless, it is White who holds the advantage. The rook slings itself instantly from wing to wing, and can stop the enemy passed pawn in one move. The knight, on the other hand, is a short-stepping piece; even if it could get to the kingside, it would leave the b-pawn undefended.

4. $gxh4$ $gxh4$ 5. $\hat{R}a8$ $b4$ 6. $\hat{R}a4??$

Unnecessary dawdling – the pawn cannot be taken anyway. 6. $\hat{R}f8!$ was right.

6... $\hat{Q}c7$ 7. $\hat{Q}e2$ (7. $\hat{R}xb4??$ $b5-+$) 7... $\hat{Q}c6$ 8. $\hat{R}a8$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 9. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}d7$ 10. $\hat{R}b8$ $\hat{Q}c7$



10-30

W

11. $\mathbb{R}f8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{R}f7$ b6 13. h3 \odot 13... $\mathbb{Q}h6$

13... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 14. $\mathbb{R}xf5!$ exf5 15. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5+-$

14. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

After the rook protects the d4-pawn, the king can advance, creating the unstoppable threat of sacrificing the exchange.

15... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 18. $\mathbb{R}xf5!$ exf5+ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$

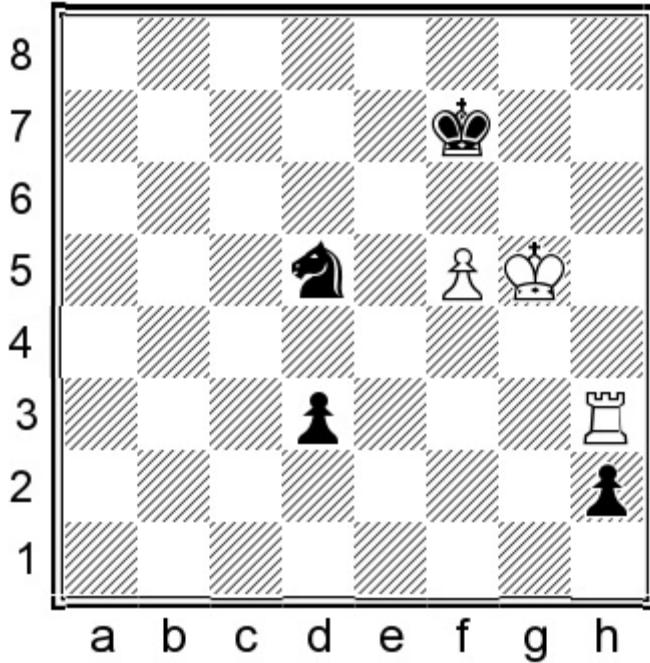
The outside passed h-pawn decides the game.

19... b5 20. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 21. h4+ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Minev – White

Vancouver 1985



10-31

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh2?!$

Not very precise! A zwischenschach would have cleared a square on the sixth rank for White's king thus: 1. $\mathbb{Q}h7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 3. $f6+-$

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh2?!$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ (threatening 2...d2) 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7+?$

White could still have won by means of 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ d2 4. $\mathbb{Q}h7+ \mathbb{Q}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (Müller).

2... $\mathbb{Q}f8??$

Returning the favor. Black draws by 2... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ d2 4. $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ d1= \mathbb{Q} 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ 7. f6 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 8. f7 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+)$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}e4+!$ (3... d2? 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6+-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ d2 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3=$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$

Black has no time for 3...d2, since 4.f6 creates the threat of mate.

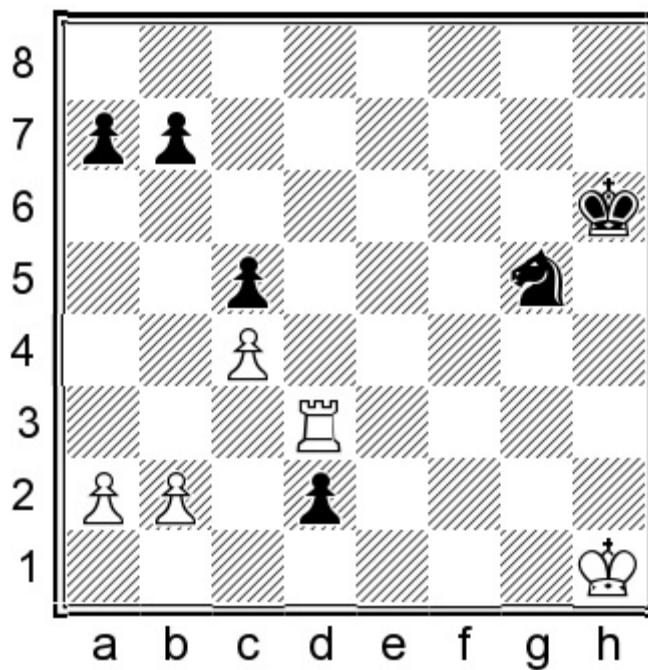
When the Knight Is Stronger than the Rook

The knight is no weaker, and sometimes even stronger, than the rook when the board is strewn with pawn chains and the rook has nowhere to break into the enemy camp.

Another possibility: sometimes, the rook has a hard time dealing with a far-advanced enemy passed pawn supported by the knight. In such situations, the knight's tactical abilities come to the fore. It can create forks, win tempi by checking the enemy king, or cut the rook off from the pawn.

Sternberg – Pawelczak

Berlin 1964



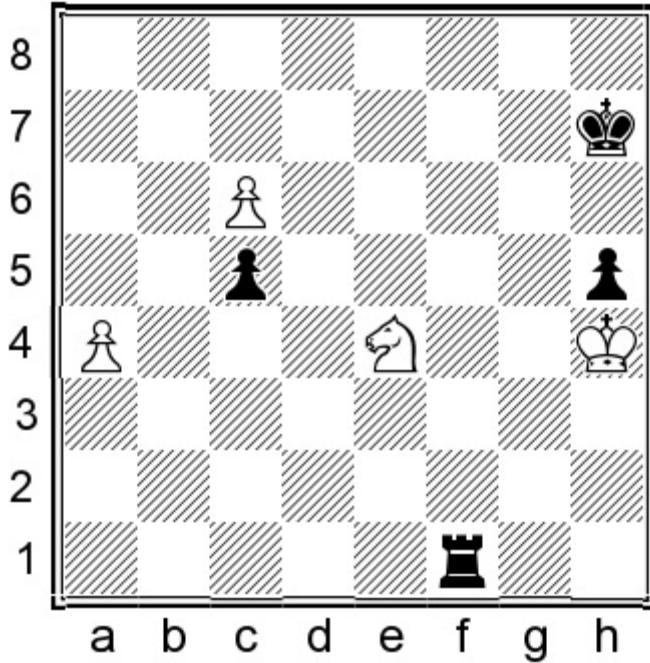
10-32

B?

1... ♜f3! ($\Delta \text{Qg5-f4-e4}$)

White resigned, owing to his utter helplessness. He cannot play 2. Qg2 , because of the fork 2... Qe1+ . After 2. Qd6+ Qg5 , Black threatens the interference 3... Qd4 . And on 2. b4 , simply 2... b6! (but not 2... $\text{cxb4? 3.Qd5} \Delta 4.\text{Qg2} 3.\text{bxc5 bxc5--}$).

H. Mattison 1913



10-33

W?

1.c7? $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ fails against 2...c4.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g6(g8)$

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2.c7 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ is completely bad. If 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6(h8)$, then 2.c7 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ and 4. $\mathbb{Q}d8$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{R}a1$

The a-file is the only way for the rook to reach the eighth rank.

3.c7

White only gets a draw from 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4+?$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4.c7 $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{R}a2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{R}a1$.

3... $\mathbb{R}xa4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4!!$ $\mathbb{R}a8$

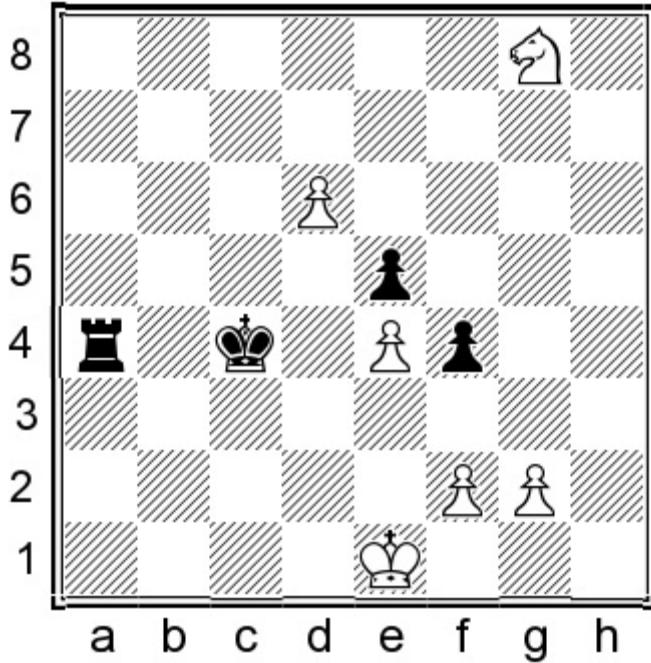
Either 4... $\mathbb{R}xd4+$ or 4... $cxd4$ lets the pawn queen. Black's hope of creating a fortress with the rook on g4 is illusory: theory holds that such positions are won without difficulty.

5. $\mathbb{Q}c6$

Threatening the interference 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8$, and 5... $\mathbb{R}e8$ fails against 6. $\mathbb{Q}d8$.

5... $\mathbb{R}c8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ (a fork), followed by 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc8+-$

Exercises



10-34
10/5
W?

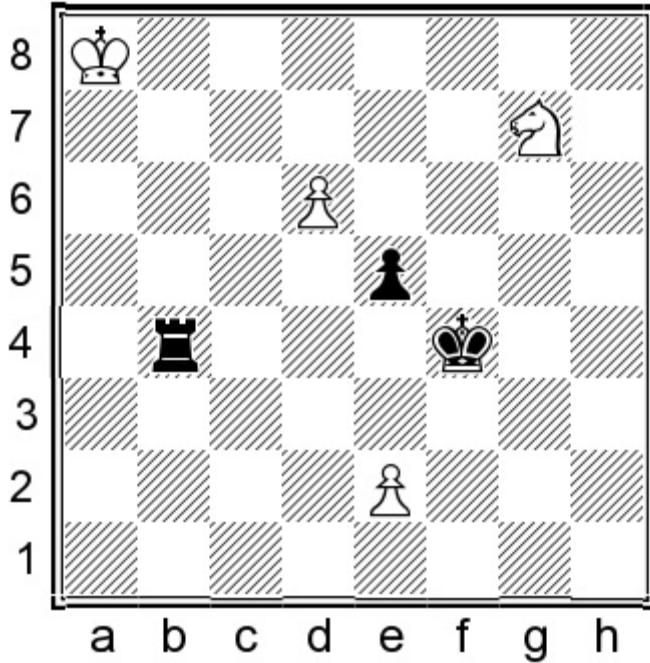
Show/Hide Solution

10/5. L.Kubbel 1925 (corrected by A. Chéron)

1.d7 ♜a8!

Hopeless is 1...♜a1+ 2.♝e2 ♜a2+ 3.♝f3 ♜d2 4.♝f6 (Δ 5.♝d5) 4...♜d6 5.♝g4 followed by 6.♝f5 and 7.♝xe5, and if the pawn is defended by the king from d4, then 7.g4 or 7.♝g6.

2.♝h6! (but not 2.♝e7? ♜c5 3.♝c8 ♜a1+ 4.♝e2 ♜a2+) **2...♝d3!** (2...♜d8 3.♝f7 ♜xd7 4.♝xe5+) **3.f3** (3.♝f7?? ♜a1#) **3...♝e3** 4.♝f5+ ♜d3 **5.♝e7!** ♜e3 (5...♜d8 6.♝c6 ♜xd7 7.♝xe5+) **6.♝d5+!** ♜d3 **7.♝c7!** ♜d8 **8.♝e6** ♜xd7 **9.♝c5++-**



10-35

10/6

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

10/6. S.Tkachenko, N.Rezvov 1997

1.d7!

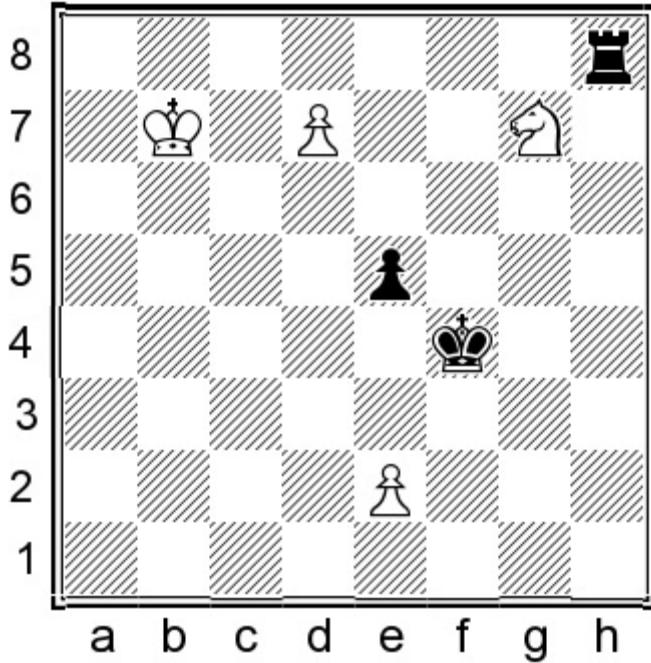
1.♕e6+? is wrong: 1...♝e3 2.d7 ♜a4+ 3.♗b7 ♜b4+ 4.♗c7 ♜c4+ 5.♗d6 ♜c1 6.♗c5 ♜d1+ 7.♗d3 ♛xe2=

1.d7! ♜a4+ (1...♜d4? 2.♗e6+) 2.♗b7 ♜b4+ 3.♗c6!

3.♗c7 is useless, as after 3...♜c4+ White must go back to the b-file (4.♗d6? ♜d4+).

3...♜b8 (3...♜c4+? 4.♗b5 ♜d4 5.♗e6+) 4.♗c7! ♜a8! 5.♗b7 ♜h8!

There is no other square on the eighth rank for the rook: 5...♜d8? 6.♗e6+ or 5...♜g8? 6.♗e8.



16-93

W?

6.e4!!

A difficult move to find! Nothing can be gained by 6.Qe8? Bh7 7.Qc6 Bxd7 8.Qxd7 Qe3=.

6...Qf3!?

The pawn cannot be captured in view of the knight fork: 6...Qxe4 7.Qe8 Bh7 8.Qf6+ If 6...Qg5, then 7.Qe8 Bh7 8.Qc6 Bxd7 9.Qxd7 Qf4 10.Qd6(f6). Finally, 6...Qe3 (Δ 7...Bd8) fails to 7.Qc7 Ba8 8.Qf5+! Qxe4 9.Qd6+ and 10.Qc8.

7.Qc6! (7.Qc7? Ba8! 8.Qf5 Ba7+ 9.Qc6 Bxd7) **7...Bd8**

If 7...Ba8, then 8.Qf5 Qxe4 9.Qd6+ Δ Qc8.

8.Qe6 Bxd7 9.Qg5+! Qg4 10.Qxd7 Qxg5 11.Qe6! (11.Qd6? Qf6=) **11...Qf4 12.Qd5** 0+-

Chapter 11

Rook versus Bishop

The Lone Bishop

This chapter is dedicated solely to static situations, with all pawn on the same wing, in which the weaker side tries, successfully or not, to build a fortress.

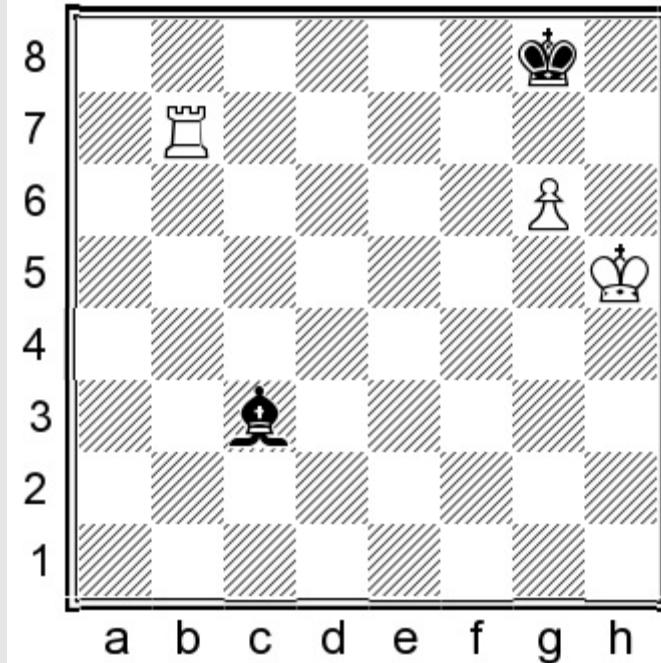
In rook-versus-knight duels, precise positions which need to be remembered are rare. However, the case in question is characterized by frequent motifs of “elementary fortresses” which should be included in our endgame arsenal.

The Dangerous Corner

If there are no pawns on the board, a bishop can usually achieve an easy draw. Even squeezing the king to the edge of the board is not dangerous for the defender provided that *the king is driven to the safe corner (opposite to the bishop's color; the dangerous corner, on the contrary, is that of the bishop's color)*.

When the king is imprisoned in the dangerous corner, the endgame is lost.

B.Horwitz, J.Kling 1851*



11-1

W

The g6-pawn is by no means a precious fighting unit for White. If it stood on g5, its value would have been much greater; here it only robs its own king of the important square g6. White should get rid of it.

1.g7! ♖h7

The capture 1...♜xg7 leads to an even more rapid finale: 2.♕g6 ♜e5 3.♖e7 ♜d6 4.♖e8+ ♜f8 5.♖d8○. But when similar events occur in the safe corner (♖h8, ♜g8), the final position is a stalemate rather than a zugzwang!

2.♖f7!

It is important to prevent the king's flight from the dangerous corner.

2...♜d4 3.g8=♛+ ♜xg8 4.♕g6

If there were no rook on f7, Black could hold by means of 4...♝f8. Now White intends 5.♖d7 Δ 6.♖xd4 and 6.♖d8+

4...♝g1!?

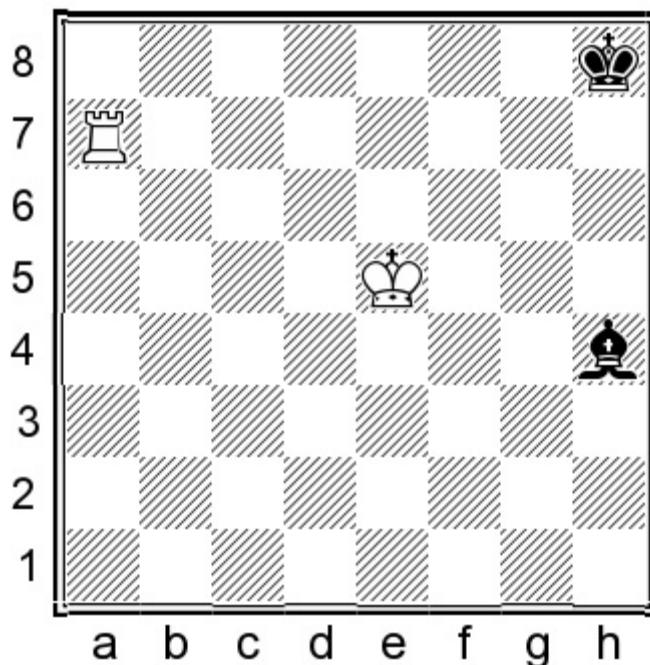
The only defensive chance: the bishop hides in the “shadow” of the white king. Unfortunately, the shadow is too short.

5.♖f1 ♜h2 6.♖f2

6.♖h1 ♜g3 7.♖h3 ♜f4 8.♖a3 ♜f8 9.♖f3 is also good.

6...♝g3 7.♖g2! ♜d6 (7...♝h4 8.♝h5+; 7...♝e5 8.♖e2) 8.♖d2 ♜e7 9.♖c2+-

Exercises



11-2

11/1

W?

Show/Hide Solution

11/1. V.Platov 1925

1. ♕f5! ♔g8 2. ♜a4!!

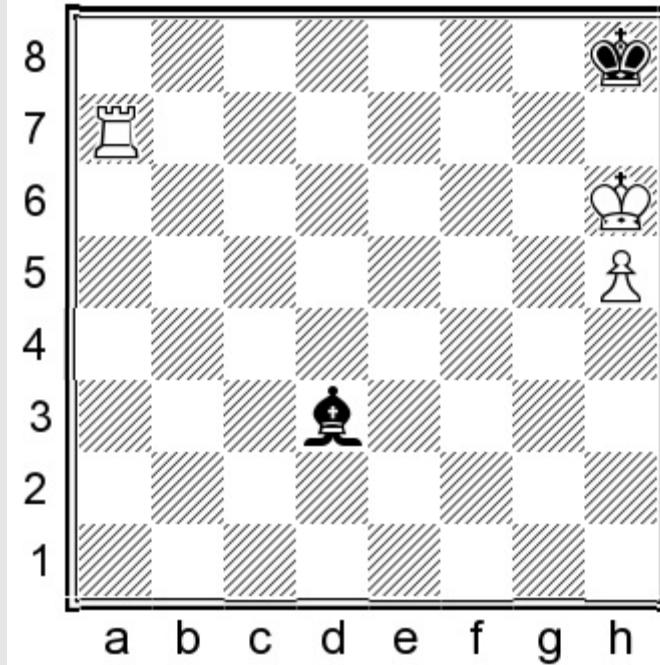
The only way to victory is to utilize the bad position of the bishop. After 2. ♔g6? ♕f8, the black king slips away from the dangerous corner.

2... ♜e1 (2... ♜g3 3. ♜g4+; 2... ♜f2 3. ♔g6 ♕f8 4. ♜f4+; 2... ♜d8 3. ♜a8; 2... ♜e7 3. ♔g6) 3. ♔g6 ♕f8

4. ♜f4+! Δ 5. ♜e4+-

The Safe Corner

E.Lequesne, J.Berger*



11-3

B

Without the h5-pawn, both 1... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

and 1... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ lead to a draw.

If the pawn stands on h6 and the white king on g5 (Cozio, 1766), the draw is also quite elementary. All that is needed is for the black bishop to keep the b1-h7 diagonal under control.

The diagrammed position is more complicated as some accuracy is required. As Lequesne has shown, playing for a stalemate with 1... $\mathbb{Q}c4?$ can be refuted because the bishop loses control over the important diagonal b1-h7:

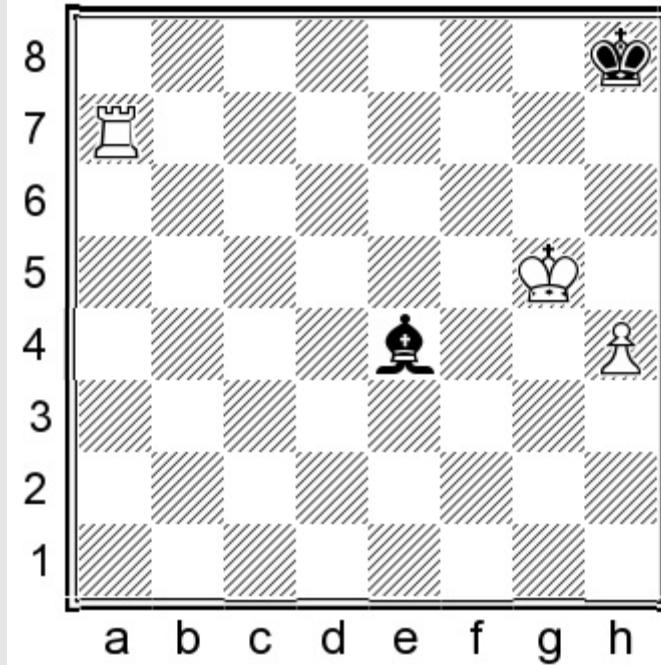
2. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ (or 4.h6+ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 9.h6 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 10.h7+ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 8.h6 $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 9.h7 $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h6+-$

Berger suggested the correct defense method: the black king should temporarily leave the corner.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8=$

Hence when the black king is placed in the safe corner, a pawn on h6 or h5 does not bring a win. A position is winning only when the pawn has not crossed the middle line.

B.Guretzky-Cornitz 1863*



11-4

W

1. ♕h6 ♕g8

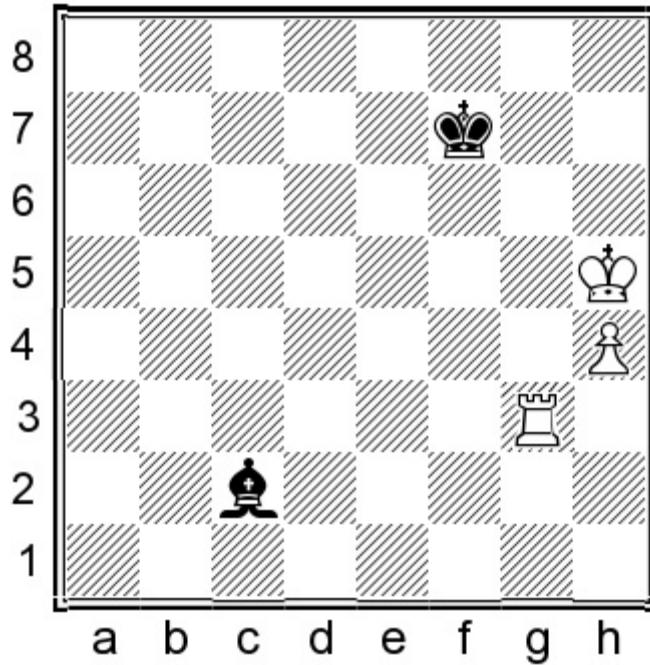
The winning technique after 1... ♕d5 is already familiar to us: 2. ♕d7 ♕e6 3. ♕d8+ ♕g8 4. ♕g5 ♕g7 5. ♕d7+ ♕h8 6. ♕g6 ♕b3 7. ♕h7+! ♕g8 8. ♕c7! ♕h8 (8... ♕f8 9. ♕g7) 9. h5 ♕d5 10. ♕h7+! ♕g8 11. ♕e7!, etc.

2. ♕g7+ ♕f8 (2... ♕h8 3. ♕e7!)

White's forthcoming strategy can be described as follows: he creates the threat of the king retreat via h5 to g4 while his rook stands on g5 (this is why he should not advance the pawn to h5). If he succeeds, then the black king will be cut off from the pawn. If the black bishop tries to prevent this, it will lose control over the b1-h7 diagonal and White wins à la Lequesne. And, if the black king comes to f6, then a check along the f-file can push him away from the pawn even farther.

The following lines illustrate how this plan can be carried out.

3. ♕g5 ♕f7 4. ♕g3 (4. ♕h5 ♕f3+) 4... ♕c2 5. ♕h5



11-5
B

An important position worth knowing. Black is in zugzwang.

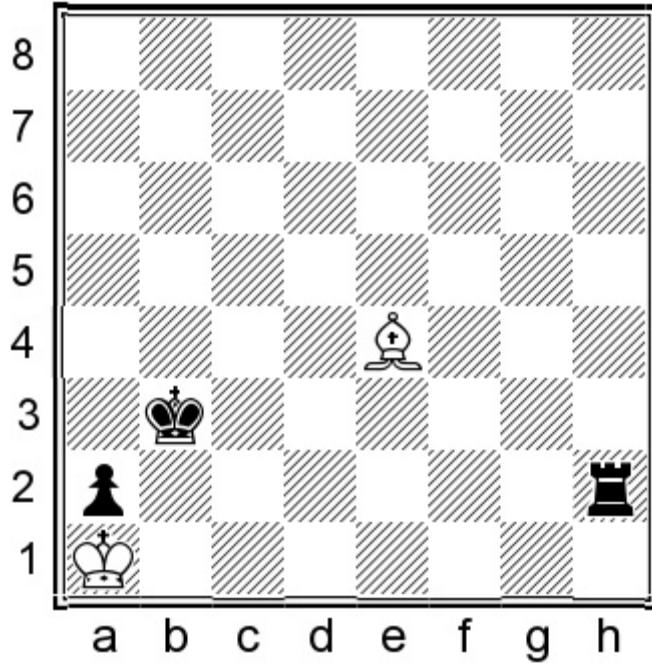
5...†f6

5...†d1+ (or 5...†a4) 6.†g5 †g7 (6...†c2 7.†f4) 7.†c3!+–; 5...†b1 6.†g5! (Δ 7.†g4) 6...†f6 7.†g4
†g6 8.h5 †h7 9.h6 †g6 10.†f4 †h7 11.†g7 †d3 12.†a7 Δ 13.h7+–

6.†g5 (Δ †g4) 6...†d1+ (6...†f5 7.†h6 †c2 8.†g2! Δ †f2+) 7.†h6 †f7 (7...†f3 8.†g1 Δ †f1)
8.†g7+ †f6 (8...†f8 9.†g6 Δ †f6) 9.†g1 †e2 10.†g2 †d3 11.†f2+–

N.Gusev – Zhukhovitsky

Alma Ata 1958



11-6

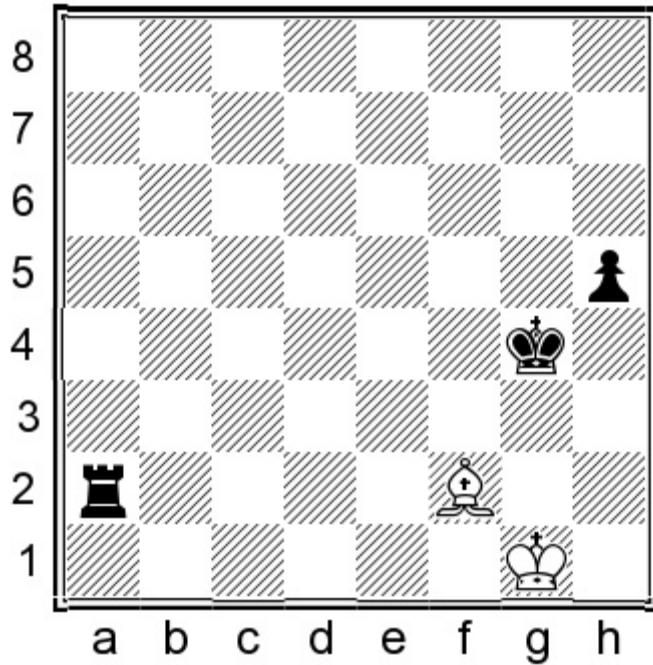
W?

If the rook stands on some other file (e.g., on f2 or d2) the position is totally hopeless. But here White can save himself by means of 1. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$! $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ \mathbb{O} 2... $\mathbb{E}h5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ ($\Delta \mathbb{Q}xa2$) 3... $\mathbb{E}h2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2!=$ However, the game continued 1. $\mathbb{Q}g2??$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$. Now it was White who was put into zugzwang; after 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{E}c2$, he had to resign.

Tragomedies

Euwe – Hromádka

Pistyan 1922



11-7
B

1...h4?

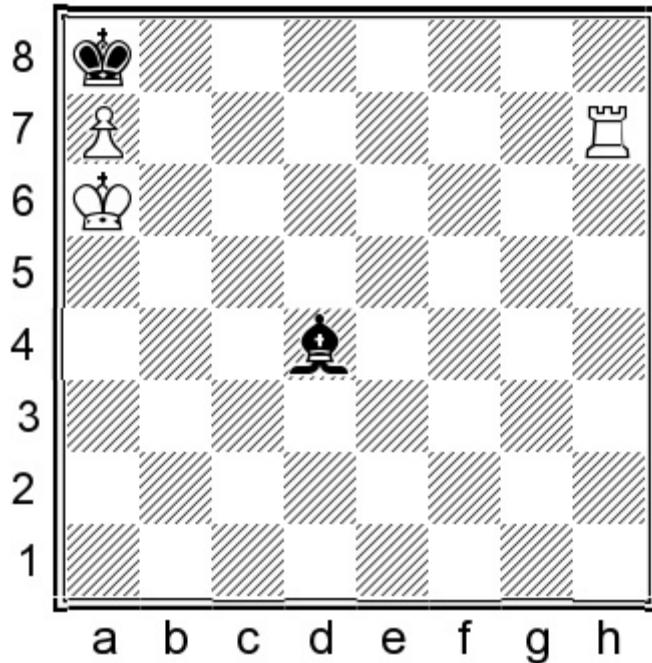
Black could have won quite easily: 1... $\hat{Q}h3!$ 2. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{R}g2+$ 3. $\hat{Q}f1$ (3. $\hat{Q}h1$ $\hat{R}d2$ etc.) 3... $\hat{Q}g3!$ 4. $\hat{Q}e5+$ $\hat{Q}f3$ 5. $\hat{Q}f6$ $\hat{R}g4-$ +

1...h4? 2. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{Q}h3?$

Now the bishop comes to the h2-b8 diagonal, and the position becomes drawn. A win, although rather complicated, was still possible: 2... $\hat{R}e2!$ 3. $\hat{Q}a7$ $\hat{R}e8$ (3... $\hat{R}b2$) 4. $\hat{Q}b6$ $\hat{R}e7$ 5. $\hat{Q}c5$ $\hat{R}d7$. The rook gradually deprives the bishop of important squares prior to decisive action on the kingside.

3. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{R}g2+$ 4. $\hat{Q}f1!$ Draw.

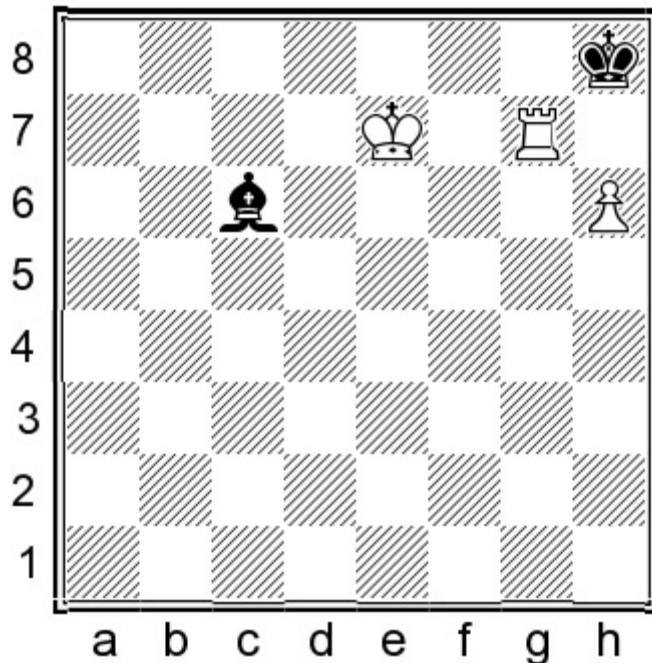
Hedge – Palatnik
Calcutta 1988



11-8
B

Grandmaster Semyon Palatnik resigned in this well-known theoretically drawn position ($1\dots \mathbb{Q}g7!$
 $2.\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{Q}d4!=$).

Exercises



11-9
11/2
W?

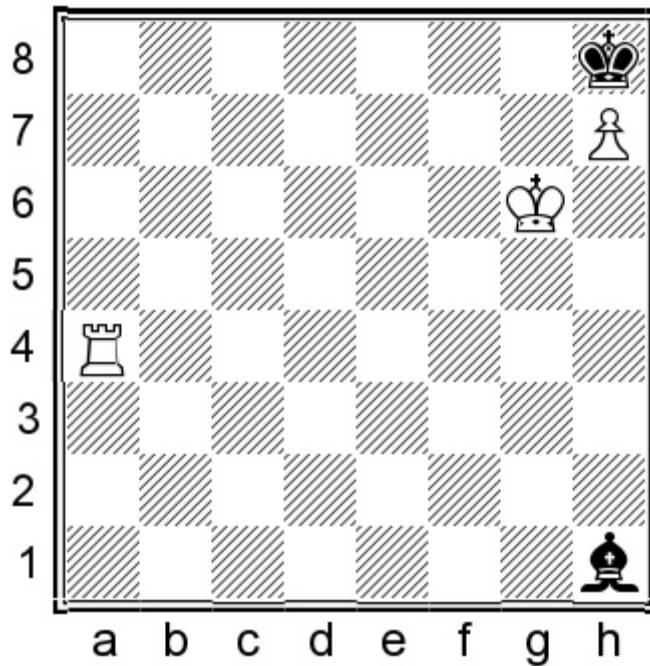
Show/Hide Solution

11/2. J.Vancura 1924

1. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ leads to the Cozio drawing position. White wins if he prevents the black bishop's entering the b1-h7 diagonal.

1. $\mathbb{R}g4!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ ($\Delta \dots \mathbb{Q}d3$) 2. $\mathbb{R}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$

The rook completely dominates the bishop. The rest is simple: 3... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 5. $\mathbb{R}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6. $\mathbb{R}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 7. $\mathbb{R}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 8. h7) 5. $\mathbb{R}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{R}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{R}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 10. h7+–



11-10

11/3

W?

Show/Hide Solution

11/3. J. Vancura, 1924

1. $\mathbb{Q}g5!!$

But of course not 1. $\mathbb{Q}h6?$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!=$

and not 1. $\mathbb{R}a7?$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+!$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}b7??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h6\Theta$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!=$.

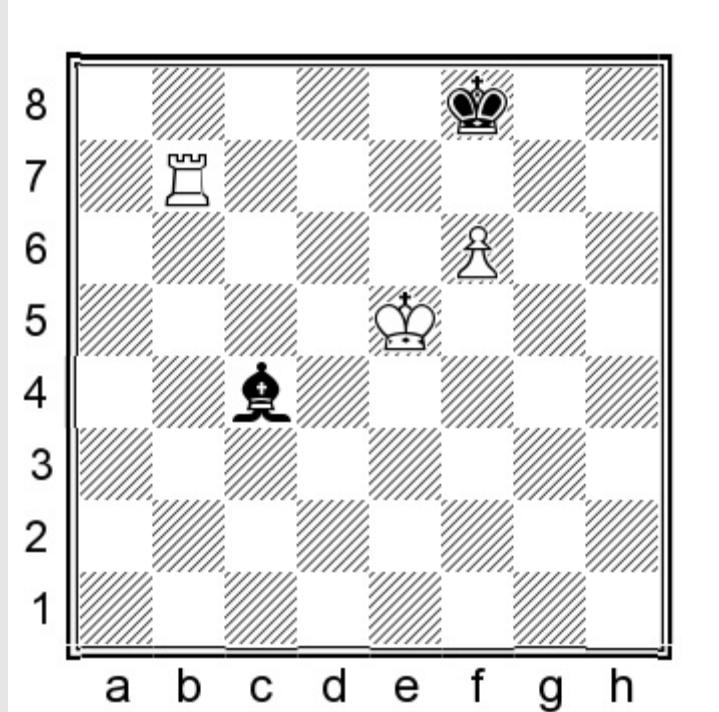
1. $\mathbb{Q}g5!!$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h4+$; 1... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ Δ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ or 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4+-$

The rook has abandoned the a-file, so the king may come back to h6.

A Bishop Pawn

Szabó – Botvinnik

Budapest 1952



11-11

W

In the middle of the 18th century, Ercole del Rio proved that this position is drawn. Two centuries later, Botvinnik followed his analysis and saved a difficult endgame against Szabó.

When the pawn is still on f5, White has no problem, but here the pawn occupies the important f6-square. If 1. f7 (hoping for 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$), then 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7!=$ All attempts to prepare an invasion by the king to g6 or e6 can be parried by Black if he defends correctly.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5\Box$

2... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$

3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. f7 $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

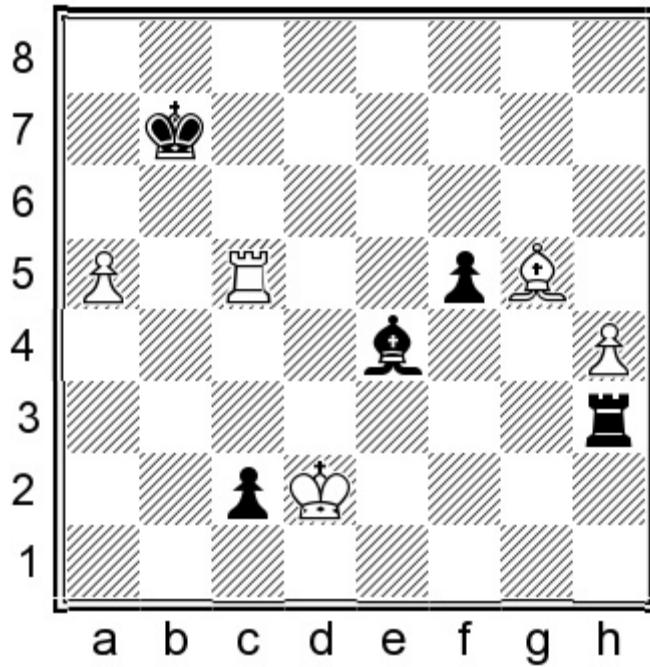
But of course not 9... $\mathbb{Q}c2+??$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g7+-$

10. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 11. f8= $\mathbb{Q}+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ Draw.

We should add that, if all the pieces are shifted down by a rank, a similar defense does not work. As Centurini proved in 1865, White wins, although it can take some effort. All similar situations are lost also against a central or a knight pawn, so the del Rio position is the only successful elementary fortress of this kind.

Dolmatov – Georgadze

Erevan zt 1982



11-12

B?

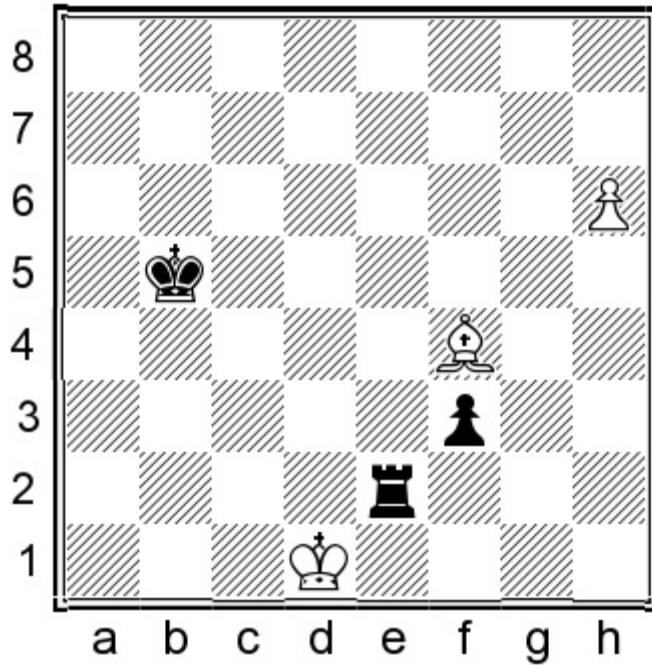
Dolmatov knew the del Rio position and built his defense upon it. The game continued: 1... $\mathbb{E}f3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ f4?! 3. $\mathbb{E}xc2!$ $\mathbb{E}e3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{E}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ f3 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}xh4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e5$, and White achieved a draw.

Georgadze did not exploit his chances fully. It is obvious that Black has no other plan than ... $\mathbb{E}f3$ and ...f5-f4, only he had to carry it out after first bringing his king to a6

1... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6\ominus$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2\Box$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ f4; 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1?$ $\mathbb{E}h2)$ 3... $\mathbb{E}f3$

White would now hold after 4. $\mathbb{E}c3!$ $\mathbb{E}f1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{E}h1$ 6. $\mathbb{E}c5$. The idea of the exchange sacrifice, successfully implemented in the game does not work here since Black's having an extra tempo decisively impacts the evaluation of the position.

4. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ f4 5. $\mathbb{E}xc2$ $\mathbb{E}e3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{E}e2+!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ f3+) 8... $\mathbb{F}3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4\Box$ (9.h5? $\mathbb{E}e4!$; 9. $\mathbb{Q}d8?$ $\mathbb{E}e3!$; 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{E}d8+)$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 10.h5 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 11.h6



11-13

B?

The tempting 11... $\mathbb{Q}c4?$ allows White to transpose to the del Rio position with 12.h7 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e3!!$ (but not 13.h8= $\mathbb{W}?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ Black does not let the bishop get to the key g1-a7 diagonal and eventually wins) 13... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e1=$

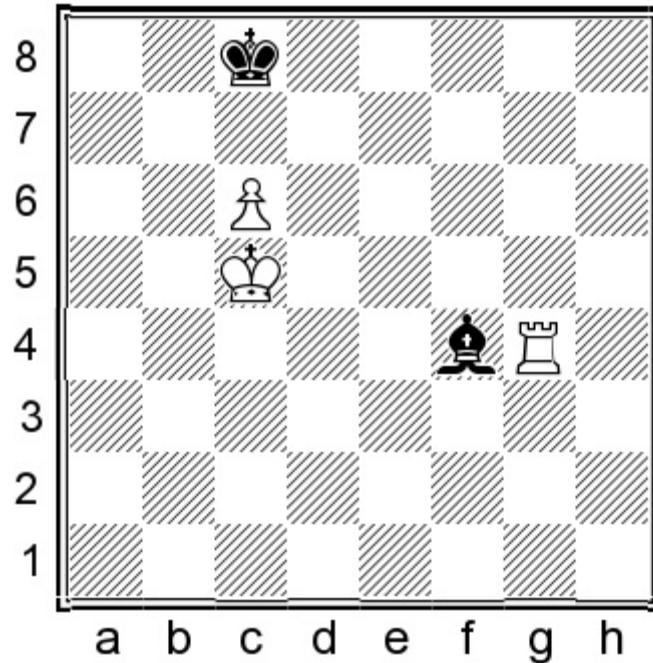
Much stronger is 11... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ (threatening 12...f2) 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ and only now 12... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 13.h7 $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ A theoretical fortress now cannot be created in view of the unfavorable position of the bishop (bad is 14. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$). The game could continue 14. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ f2 21. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2\Theta$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ (23. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6-$) 23... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (one more zugzwang) 25. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ f1= $\mathbb{W}+$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3-$ (Dvoretsky).

This sort of **a rook's domination over a bishop** is typical for many endings with an extra exchange. We have already seen it in some examples and exercises and will see more of it in the future.

Tragicomедies

Levitina – Gaprindashvili

Tshaltubo ct 1988



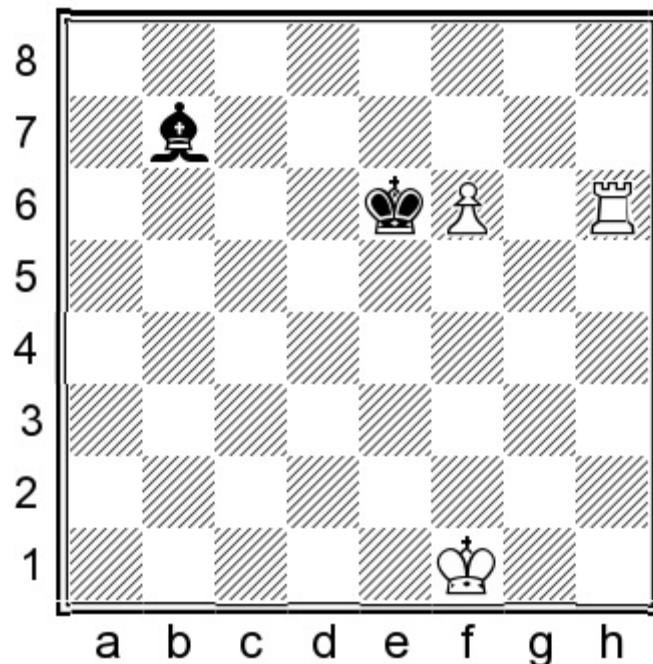
11-14

B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}h2??$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}e5=$)

1... $\mathbb{Q}h2??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ and Black resigned in view of 3... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6+-$

Exercises



11-15

11/4

W?

11/4. Y. Roslov, 1996*

If 1.♗f2? ♜d5 2.♗e3 ♗f7 3.♗d4 ♜b3, the game arrives at the del Rio position. To avoid this, only tactical measures will do.

1.f7+! ♜e7 2.♝d6!! (rather than 2.♝h8? ♜a6+! 3.♗f2 ♗xf7) **2...♜h1**

Amazingly enough, the bishop cannot find refuge from rook attacks: 2...♗f8 3.♝d8+ ♗xf7 4.♝d7+; 2....♜c8 3.f8=威+ ♗xf8 4.♝d8+; 2...♝f3 3.f8=威+ (or 3.♝f6).

3.♝g1 ♜e4 (3...♜b7 4.♝d7+!) **4.♝e6+!**

Rook and Pawn vs. Bishop and Pawn

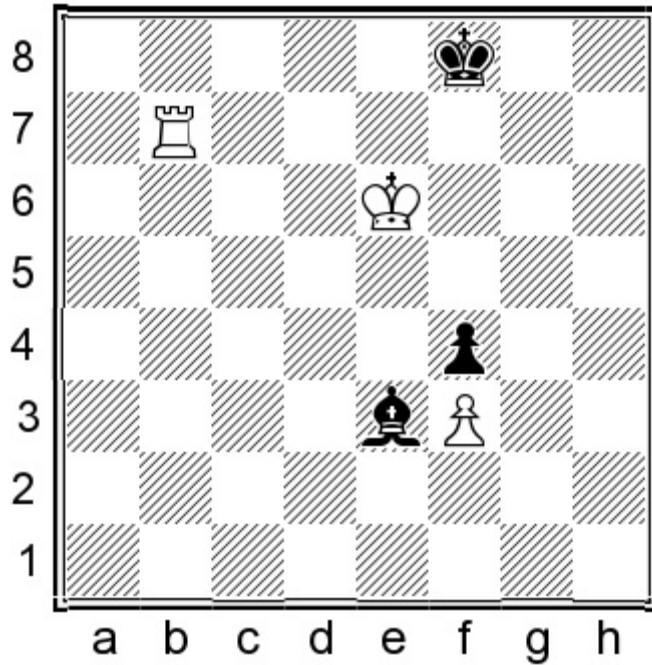
The Pawns are on the Same File or on Adjacent Files

One should not protect the pawn by placing it on a square of the bishop's color. Almost all these positions are lost. The adversary advances along squares of the opposite color, drives the king away from the pawn, and finally wins by means of an exchange sacrifice.

I confine myself to a single illustration of the above-mentioned technique.

Rohácek – Stoltz

Munich 1942



11-16

W

1. $\mathbb{R}f7+$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 2. $\mathbb{R}f5!$ $\mathbb{B}d2$ 3. $\mathbb{B}f6$

3. $\mathbb{R}c5$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{B}f6$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{R}e5+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{R}d5$ $\mathbb{B}c3+$ 7. $\mathbb{B}f5+-$ is no worse.

3... $\mathbb{B}f8$

3... $\mathbb{B}c3+$ 4. $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{B}d2$ 5. $\mathbb{B}g7$ $\mathbb{B}c3+$ 6. $\mathbb{B}g8!$ $\mathbb{B}d2$ 7. $\mathbb{B}e5+$.

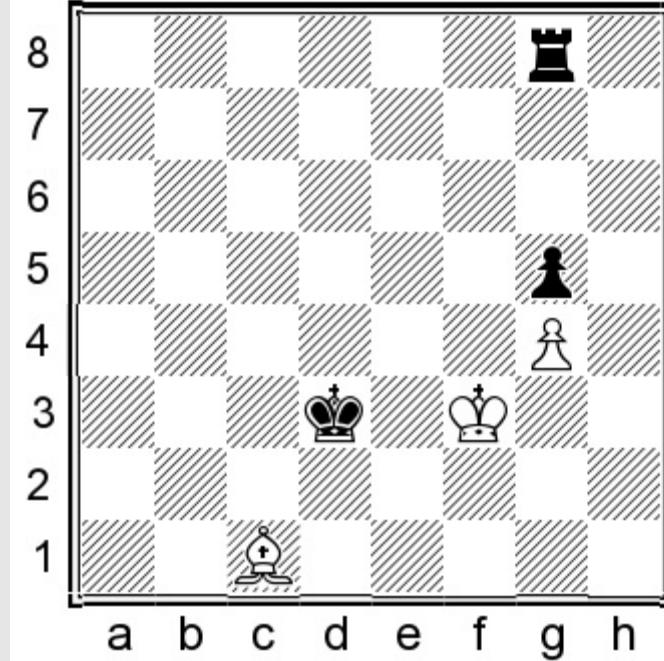
4. $\mathbb{B}c5$ (4. $\mathbb{R}d5!$ $\mathbb{B}c3+$ 5. $\mathbb{B}f5$ is simpler) 4... $\mathbb{B}g8$ (on 4... $\mathbb{B}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{R}e5+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ and now 6. $\mathbb{R}d5!$) 5. $\mathbb{B}c8+$ $\mathbb{B}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{B}f7$ Black resigned.

White plays $\mathbb{R}g8-g4$, approaches the pawn with his king, and takes it with his rook.

Chances of salvation can result from either ***an active defense*** (an attack against the hostile pawn by the bishop or king), or ***building a barrier*** that prevents an invasion of the hostile king (squares of one color are controlled by the bishop, squares of the other color – by the pawn).

Rubinstein – Tartakower

Vienna 1922



11-17

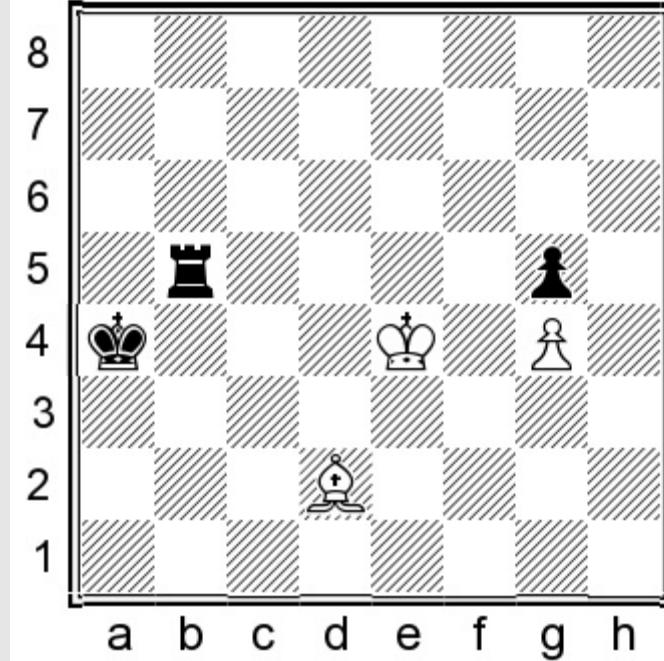
B

Black must protect his pawn with the king, bring the rook to the fifth rank, and finally move his king ahead again by going around the rook. This plan has no alternatives, but is not sufficient for a win.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$

White continues to keep the pawn in the crosshairs. Another equally good defensive method consists in building a barrier: 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{R}c8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$

5... $\mathbb{R}b8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{R}b5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (9... $\mathbb{R}e5+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{R}e6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d2=)$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$



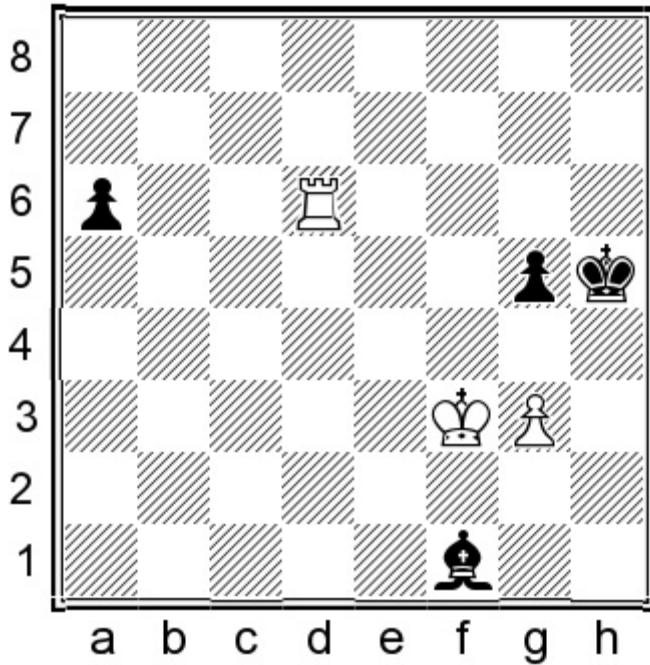
11-18
W

14.♗e3

The bishop sacrifice on g5 is already in the air, but it does not work right now: 14.♗xg5? ♕xg5 15.♔f4 ♕g8 16.g5 ♔b5 17.♔f5 ♔c6 18.g6 ♔d7 19.♔f6 ♕f8+.

14...♔b3 15.♔c1 ♔c2 16.♗xg5! (it is time!) **16...♕xg5 17.♔f4 ♕g8 18.g5 ♔d3 19.♔f5 ♔d4 20.g6 ♔d5 21.♔f6** Draw.

Chistiakov – Dvoretsky
Moscow ch 1966



11-19

B?

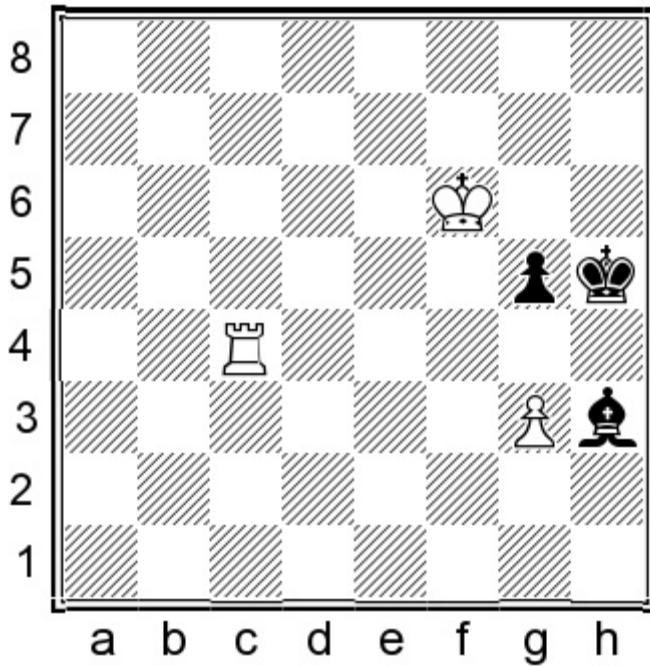
1...♝h3!

1...g4+? 2.♗f4 ♛e2 3.♗f5 is hopeless.

1...♝h3! 2.♜xa6 ♜d7 3.♜d6 ♜g4+ 4.♝e3 ♜c8 5.♜d8 ♜e6 6.♜d4 ♜c8

The only winning attempt is the transfer of the king to f6 followed by ♜d5. Black responds with a counter-attack against the g3-pawn.

7.♝d3 ♜f5+ 8.♝c4 ♜e6+ 9.♝c5 ♜c8 10.♝d6 ♜f5 11.♝c4 ♜h3 12.♝e5 ♜d7 13.♝f6 ♜h3



11-20

\$

W

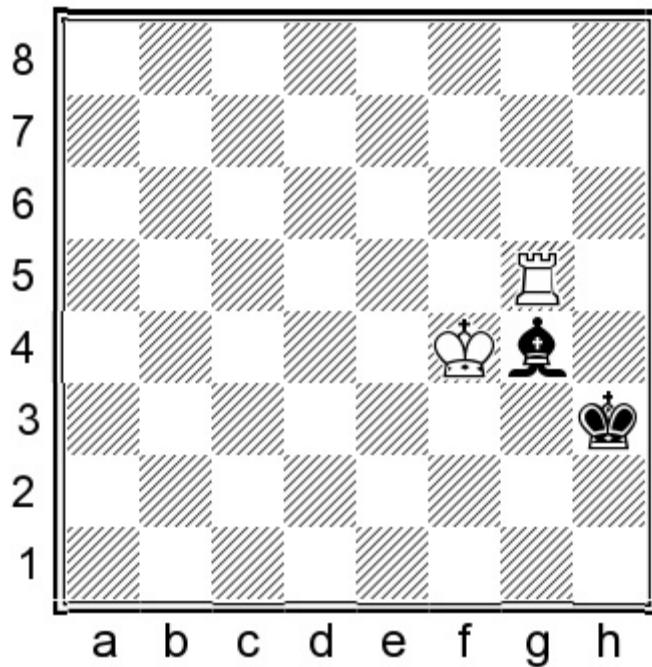
14.♗c5

After 14.♗d4 ♜c8 15.♗d5, a position from the game Romanovsky-I.Rabinovich arises (from Leningrad 1924, with reversed colors). Romanovsky drew the game after 15...♝g4! 16.♗xg5+ ♚f3 17.♗c5 ♜h3! (17...♜b7? is incorrect in view of 18.♗c3+! ♚g4 19.♗c7 Δ ♜g7+) 18.♗c3+ ♚g4 followed by ...♜g2-f3

14...♝g4! 15.♗xg5+ ♚f3 16.♗e5 ♜g4 17.♗d4 ♜xg3 (17...♜h3! is perhaps simpler) **18.♗e3 ♜h3**

It would have been nice to stay farther from the dangerous corner (h1), but 18...♝h4? loses to 19.♗f4+-

19.♗f4



11-21

B?

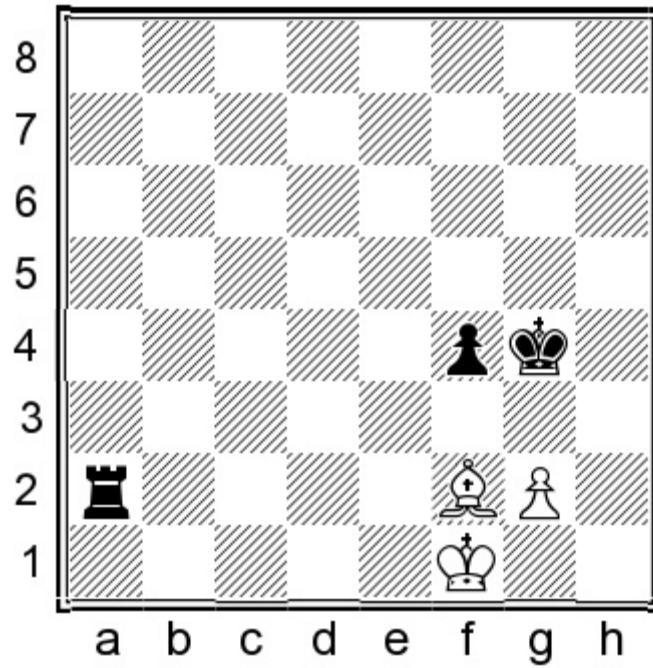
19...♝d7??

A serious blunder in a drawn position. Black should have kept the f3-square under control: 19...♝d1 or 19...♝e2

20.♗g3+ ♚h2 21.♗f3+-

The black king stays locked in the dangerous corner.

21...♝a4 22.♗g2+ ♚h3 23.♗g3+ ♚h2 24.♗f2 ♜c2 25.♗c3 ♜d1 26.♗c1 ♜b3 27.♗c6 Black resigned.



11-22

\$

W?

White's position looks perilous but he still holds, as Black cannot breach the barrier. Two factors help White: his king is close to the safe corner h1, and Black has a bishop pawn.

1.♔e1!

Both 1.♗e1? f3! 2.g3 ♜a1 3.♗f2 ♜xe1 4.♗xe1 ♜xg3

and 1.♗g1? ♜a1+ 2.♗h2 ♜c1O 3.♗d4 ♜c2 (Δ f3) 4.♗g1 ♜g3 or 3.♗g1 ♜c2 4.♗h1 ♜e2O 5.♗h2 ♜e8 6.♗g1 (6.♗g1 ♜e1+) 6...♜h8+ 7.♗h2 ♜f5 8.♗g1 ♜e4 9.♗h1 ♜e3 10.♗g1 ♜h7O 11.♗h1 ♜f2 are bad.

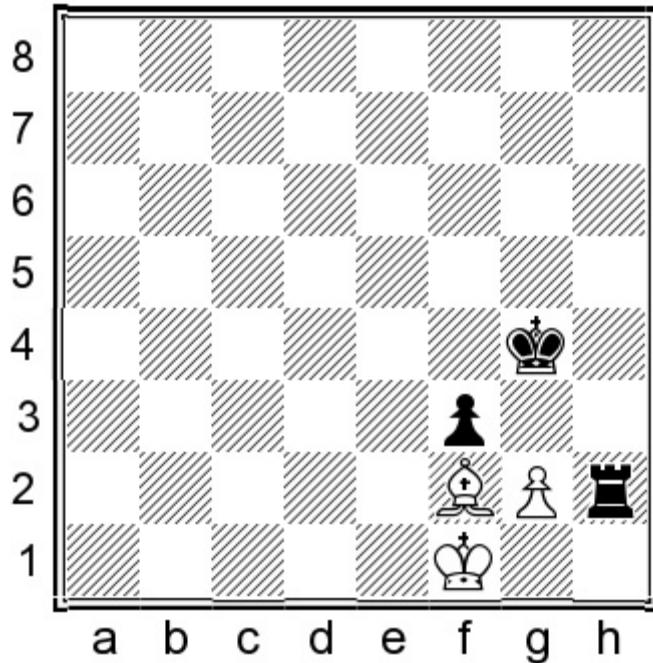
1.♔e1! ♜a1+

1...♜b2 2.♗f1 f3 leads to nowhere in view of 3.♗g1! ♜b1+ 4.♗h2=

2.♗e2 ♜c1

2...♜h1 3.♗e1! ♜h2 4.♗f1 f3 5.gxf3+ ♜xf3 6.♗g1 ♜g2+ 7.♗h1!=

3.♗d2! (3.♗e1? ♜c2+ 4.♗f1 f3-+) 3...♜h1 4.♗e2 ♜h2 5.♗f1 f3



11-23

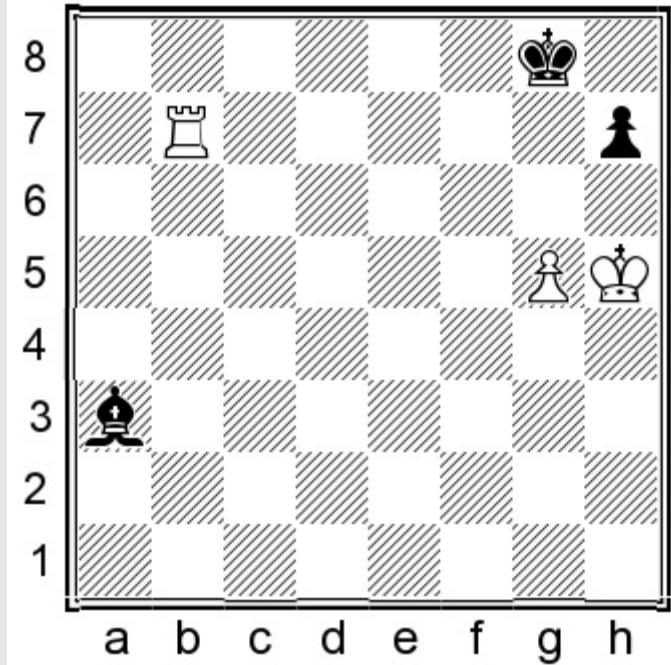
W?

It seems like the defense is broken, but White saves the game by means of a pawn sacrifice that leads to the del Rio position.

6.♘g1! ♘xg2+ 7.♘f1=

Incidentally, Averbakh has analyzed a similar situation, shifting all the kingside pieces one file to the left. In his opinion, the position has remained a draw. This evaluation is wrong; readers may verify this independently with the help of computer endgame databases.

N.Elkies 1993



11-24
W

Keres evaluated the diagrammed position as drawn, and numerous authors reproduced this judgment. Yet Noam Elkies, an American mathematician and endgame study composer, discovered a subtle winning method many years later.

Its idea can be briefly described as follows: the king retreats to g4, the rook goes to b5 or d5, denying the bishop important squares. Thereafter, depending on the bishop's position, the white king breaks through to f6 or h6, while if the bishop is on f8 or g7, the advance g5-g6 is very strong.

1. $\mathbb{B}b3!$

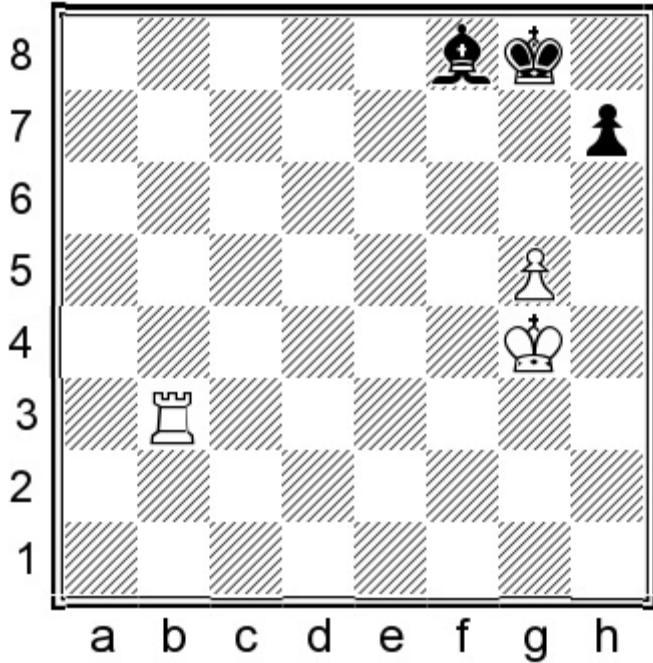
Also possible is 1. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}c1!?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}d2$ (2... $h6?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$) 3. $\mathbb{B}b2$ (3. $\mathbb{B}b3 \mathbb{Q}g7$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{B}b3 \mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$.

1. $\mathbb{B}b3! \mathbb{Q}d6$

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ loses rapidly: 2. $\mathbb{B}b8 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{B}b7+ \mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $g6$. If 1... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}d6$, then 3. $\mathbb{B}b5 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{B}d5!$ and the king is ready for a march.

2. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}f8!$

2... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ is met with 3. $\mathbb{B}b5!$, and the bishop cannot prevent an invasion by the king. For example, 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ ($\Delta \mathbb{B}b8+$, $\mathbb{B}b7+$, $\mathbb{Q}h6$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $g6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}b8+ \mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{B}xf8+ \mathbb{Q}xf8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$, or 3... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ ($\Delta 5. \mathbb{Q}f6$), or 3... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 5. $\mathbb{B}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 6. $\mathbb{B}d8+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}d7+$ and 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}d7 \mathbb{Q}a5$ 8. $\mathbb{B}g7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7$, or 3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5 h6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $g6!$ $h6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}b8+ \mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$; 4... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $g6$ (5. $gxh6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{B}b6 \mathbb{Q}xh6$ 7. $\mathbb{B}b7+$ is also good) 5... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6$) 6. $\mathbb{B}b8+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}b7+$ —



11-25
W

3.♗f5!

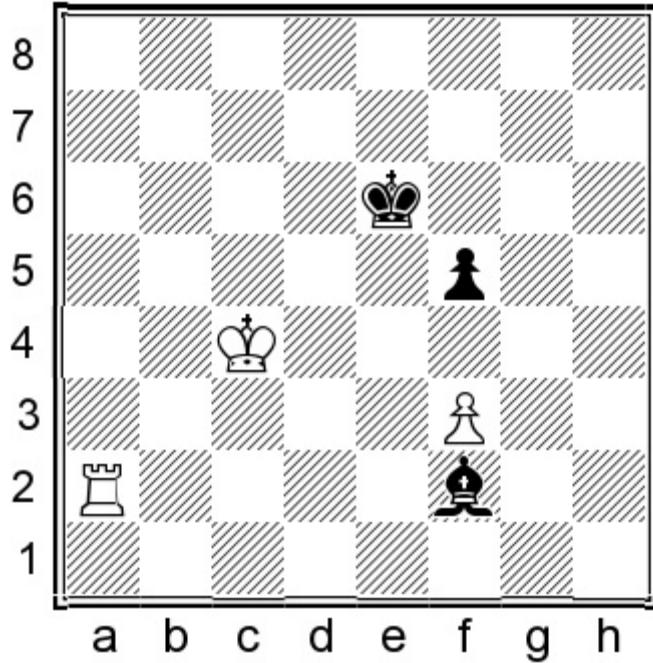
Less precise is 3.♗b5?! because of 3...h6!?, 4.g6 ♜d6 5.♗f5 ♜g3!. Black saves himself if the bishop can get to the c1-h6 diagonal, for example, 6.♘a5? ♜h4 7.♘a8+ ♜g7 8.♘a7+ ♜g8 9.g7 ♜h7 10.♗e6 (nor does 10.♗f7 ♜g5 11.g8=♛+ ♜xg8 12.♗g6 ♜d2 13.♗d7 ♜g5 achieve anything) 10...♗g8=. The bishop's access to the necessary squares is prevented by 6.♗b4! ♜c7 7.♗d4 ♜a5 8.♗g4! ♜b6 9.♗d3, and there is no satisfactory defense to the threat of 10.♗h5.

3...♜c5 4.♗d3! ♜b4

If 4...♜e7, then 5.♗c3! ♜b4 6.♗c8+ ♜f7 7.♗c7+ ♜e7 (7...♗g8 8.♗f6) 8.♗g4 and ♜h5-h6 is irresistible.

5.♗f6 ♜a5 6.♗b3 ♜d8+ (6...♜c7 7.♗b5 ♜d8+ 8.♗e6! ♜g7 9.♗d7) 7.♗f5 ♜a5 (7...♜c7 8.♗b5) 8.♗g4 ♜c7 9.♗b5! ♜d6 10.♗f5 ♜c7 11.♗d5+-

Exercises



11-26

11/5

B?

Show/Hide Solution

11/5. Stoliar-Bobotsov, Albena 1973

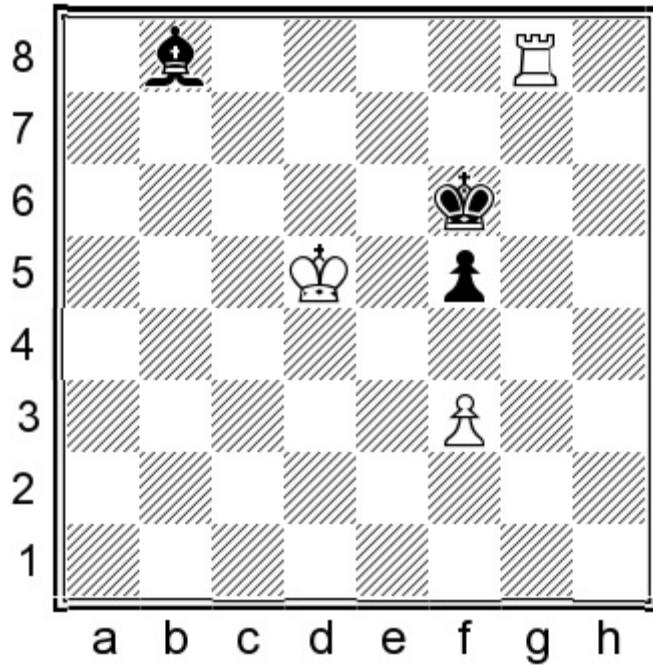
The position after 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ f4, like all similar situations with the pawn on a square of the bishop's color, is lost.

The game continuation 1... $\mathbb{Q}g1?$ is also incorrect: 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3.f4! Δ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$, 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 5.f4! Black resigned.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ (also possible is 1... $\mathbb{Q}h4$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

Timman showed that 2... $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (or 3... $\mathbb{Q}h4 \Delta \dots \mathbb{Q}f6+$) is also sufficient to hold the draw. However, White can just transpose moves and force the king to retreat to f6: 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4!?$ $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \Delta$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ (Müller).

3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8$



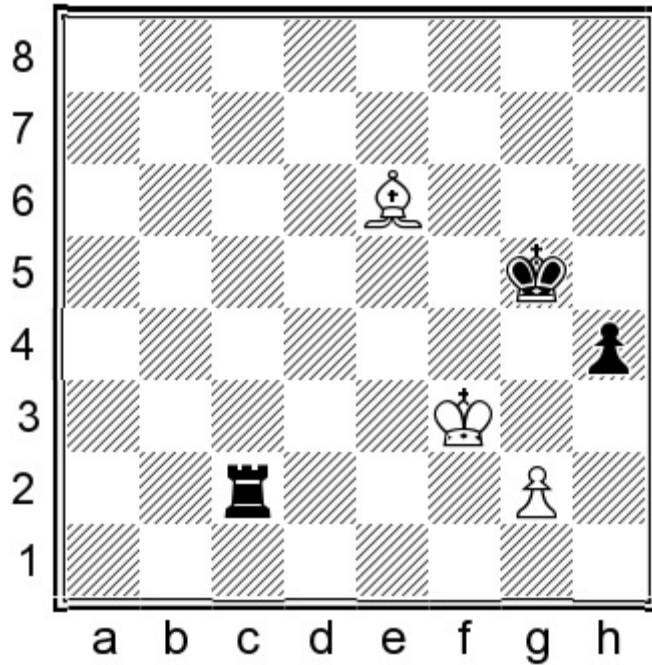
16-94

B?

5...♝h2!

Black's last move was given by Pfrommer. Timman had examined 5...♝c7? 6.♝f8+ ♞g5 7.♝e6 ♜f4 8.♝f7! (rather than 8.♝xf5+? ♞e3 9.♝c5 ♜g3! 10.♝c3+ ♜f4 11.♝d5 ♜f2 Δ ♜e3=) 8...♜b6 (8...♜b8 9.♝b7) 9.♝xf5+ ♞e3 10.♝f7 Δ 11.f4+-.

6.♝f8+ (6.♝h8 ♜g3!) 6...♞g5 7.♝e6 ♜f4 8.♝xf5+ ♞e3= (Δ 9...♞f4).



11-27

11/6

B?

Show/Hide Solution

11/6. Moiseev-Botvinnik, USSR ch, Moscow 1952

Black's position is won. The challenge is to find the clearest and most convincing way to bring it home. If 1... $\mathbb{E}c3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}f4-$) 2... $\mathbb{E}g3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h3$, Black is in zugzwang. The solution will be clear if we realize that the zugzwang is reciprocal.

1... $\mathbb{E}c7!!\mathbb{O}$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3$

2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}e8\mathbb{O}$ is also bad. The remainder of the game was 2.g4 $\mathbb{E}c3+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ h3+ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 5.g5 $\mathbb{E}c2+$ and White resigned.

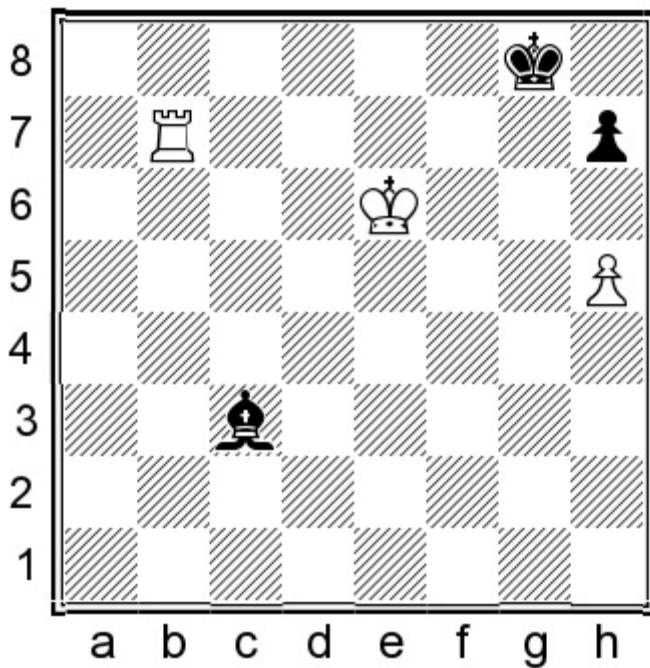
2... $\mathbb{E}c3+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}g3!\mathbb{O}$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}e3+$

The black king takes the key f4-square under control, invades on g3, and an exchange sacrifice decides.

Rook Pawns

Positions with rook pawns are quite difficult; even top grandmasters cannot avoid errors when playing them. Nevertheless, knowledge of their basic ideas makes certain practical sense.

J.Enevoldsen 1949*



11-28

B

This is perhaps the most favorable situation for the stronger side. The pawn has crossed the middle line and the black king is in the dangerous corner. White forces ...h7-h6, then drives the black king farther away and cuts it off along a file. Finally White comes back to the pawn with his king and sacrifices his rook for the bishop.

However, there is an important caveat. This plan is only feasible because the black king is cut off on the eighth rank. If the king is on g7, the position is drawn. White cannot force the king to the edge of the board, carry out h5-h6 or force his opponent to play h7-h6.

1...h6

Black cannot do without this move. On 1...Rd2, there could follow 2.Qf6 Rc3+ 3.Qf5 Rd2 4.Qd7

$\mathbb{Q}c1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6$.

1... $h6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$

If Black keeps his king in the corner he is put into zugzwang very quickly: 4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2\Theta$ 6.... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2+-$

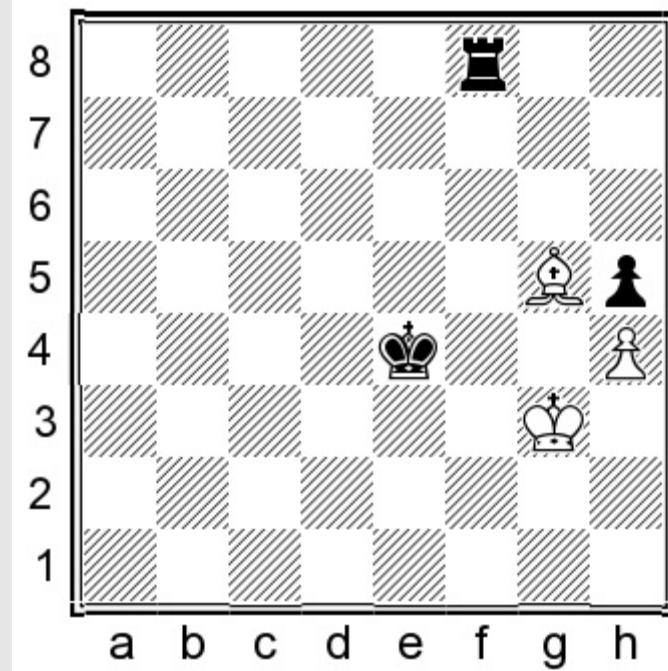
5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ (zugzwang again) 9... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (Δ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (14. $\mathbb{Q}g8$) 14... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Endgame handbooks suggest 17. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ followed by driving the black king back one more file, but this is already superfluous: he may go after the $h6$ -pawn immediately.

17... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xh6+-$

Salwe – Rubinstein

Prague 1908



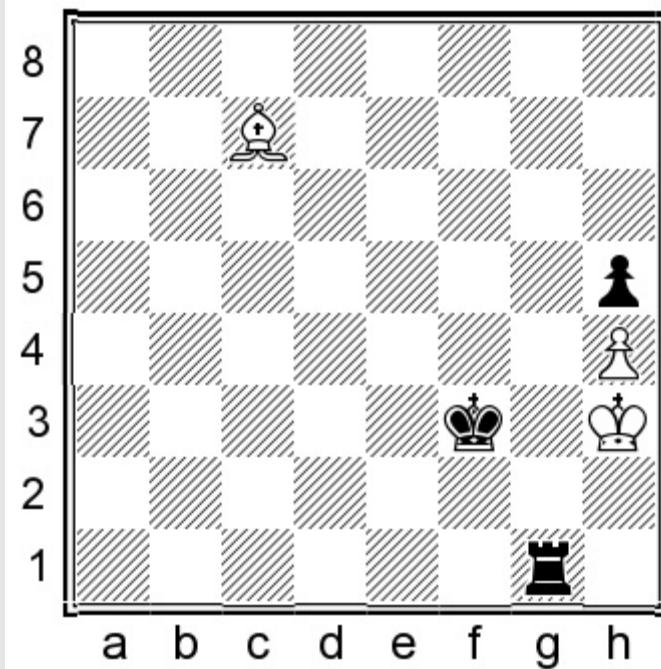
11-29

B

Rubinstein carried out the same plan of driving the king off from the pawn that we have seen in the previous example, and was successful with it. However it was later proven that White could have held the position with a precise defense.

Maizelis found the answer to this endgame puzzle in 1963. It turned out that Black should not drive the white king away from the corner. On the contrary, Black should imprison the white king in the corner, with the idea of putting White in zugzwang. Let us study the analysis by Maizelis.

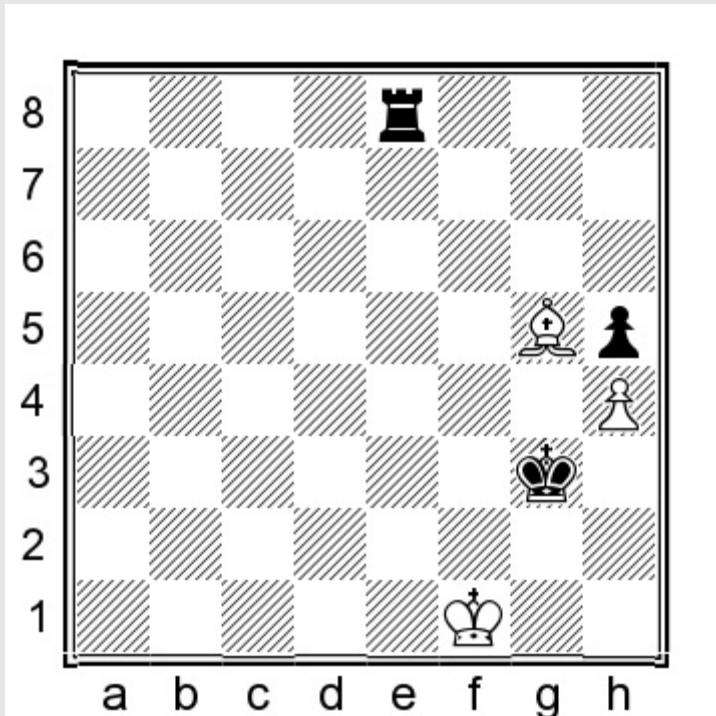
1... $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$



11-30
W

9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

If 9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$, then 9... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8!O$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e8!O-$



11-31
W

This is the decisive zugzwang – Black's goal in all the lines. White cannot maintain the h4-pawn. The resulting position is lost for him in spite of the safe corner, because the black pawn has not crossed the middle line.

9... $\mathbb{E}f1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}h1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}d1!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c7$

The same is 13. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{E}e1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}e2+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{E}e8!O-$; 13. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}d3+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{E}b3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}b2$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ is also hopeless.

13... $\mathbb{E}d7!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (14. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}d3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 14... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{E}f7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{E}f5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}f8!O$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}e2+$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{E}e8!O-$

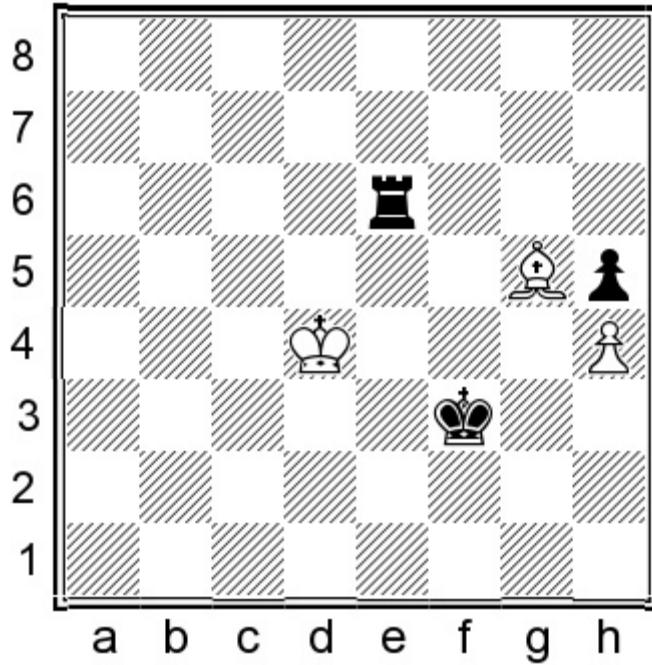
Now let us look at what actually happened in the game.

1... $\mathbb{E}f7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{E}f3+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}d3?$ (3... $\mathbb{E}f7!$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}d3-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}f5?$

He had to move the rook back: 4... $\mathbb{E}f3!$ Now the white king breaks loose and the position becomes drawn.

5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{E}f3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}f8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}e8+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}e6$

11... $\mathbb{E}e4+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{E}g4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e1$; White defended against the exchange sacrifice in time.



11-32

W?

12. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$

The decisive error! As Baranov proved in 1954, White should not be afraid of having his king driven back one more file; therefore he had to play 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{E}d6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c3$. Subsequent attempts to drive it

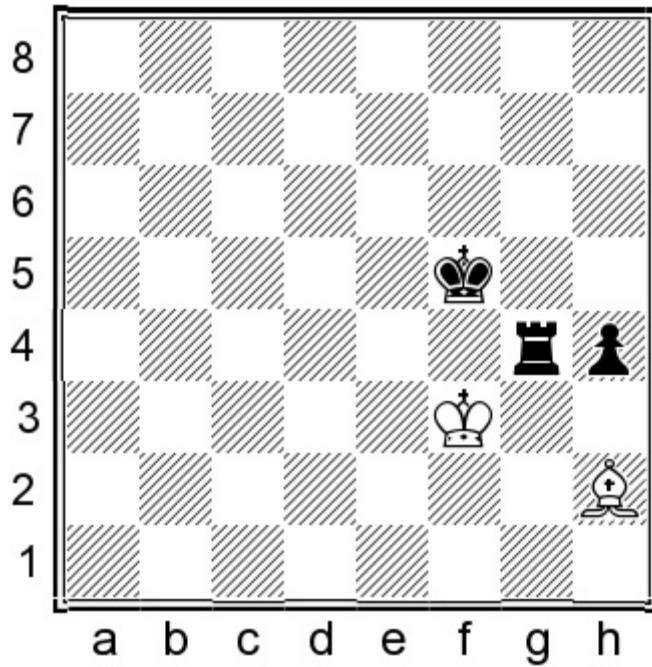
back will not succeed if White simply avoids placing the kings on the same rank. After 13... $\mathbb{E}d7$, both 14. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ and 14. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ are possible.

For example, 14. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ there follows 14... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}d3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ (rather than 16. $\mathbb{Q}c2?$ $\mathbb{E}g3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d1!$). Or 14. $\mathbb{Q}c4$, then 14... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}d1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{E}h1$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{E}xh4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xh4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f1=$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}d3+$ and now 16. $\mathbb{Q}c2!=$, rather than 16. $\mathbb{Q}c4?$ $\mathbb{E}g3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (17. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{E}xg5!$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 17... $\mathbb{E}g6$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{E}c6+$

12... $\mathbb{E}e4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}g4$ (Δ ... $\mathbb{E}xg5$) 16. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{E}d7+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (18. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 18... $\mathbb{E}d4$ (a simpler way was 18... $\mathbb{E}f7!$ followed by 19... $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 19. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (19... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}d3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}h3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}xh4$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}h2$) 20. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}d5+$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}f5!$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (23. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}xg5$) 23... $\mathbb{E}f4+$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{E}xh4$

The outcome seems to be clear after the loss of the pawn, but both sides err in the remainder of the game.

25. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}g4$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ h4 29. $\mathbb{Q}h2$



11-33
B

29... $\mathbb{E}b4??$

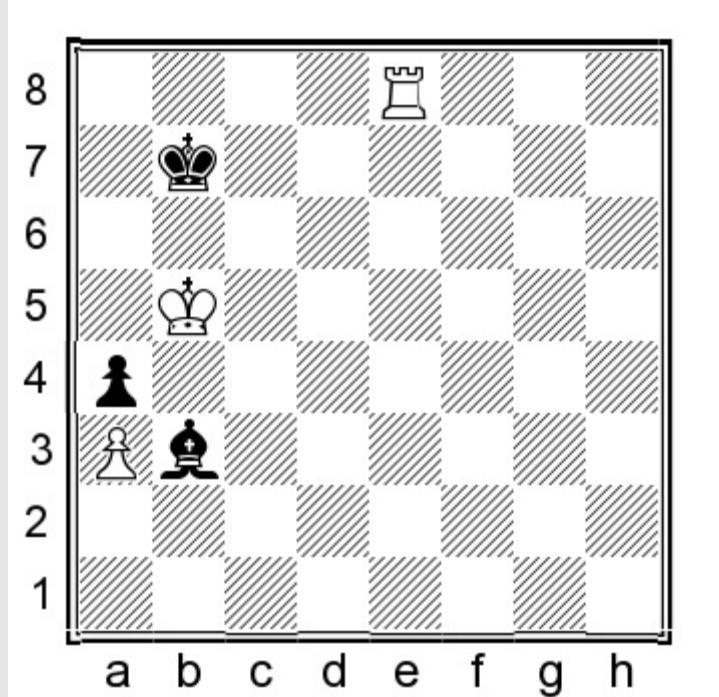
Correct was 29...h3 Δ ... $\mathbb{E}g2-$ +

30. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 32. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{E}a2+$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}c5??$

As we know, 34. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$ $\mathbb{E}g2+$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ would have led to a draw.

34... $\mathbb{E}a1+$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{E}a2+$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 38. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}h2+$ 39. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{E}d2!$ 40. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ h3 White resigned.

Kasparov – Yusupov
Linares 1993



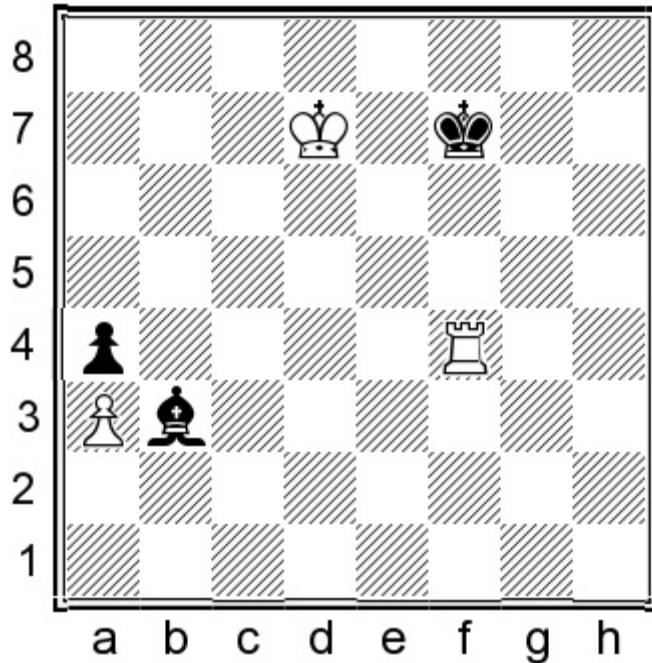
11-34
W?

The logic of the previous example can be applied here: the correct plan is to play for zugzwang rather than driving the king off.

1. $\mathbb{R}d8!$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}d4\circlearrowleft$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{R}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6+-$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6\circlearrowleft+-$

Kasparov did not find this plan, and the game ended in a draw.

1. $\mathbb{R}e7+?$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ 3. $\mathbb{R}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{R}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{R}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$
9. $\mathbb{R}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$



11-35

B?

11... $\mathbb{Q}g6!$

It is important to come nearer to the rook as 11... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ loses to 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$.

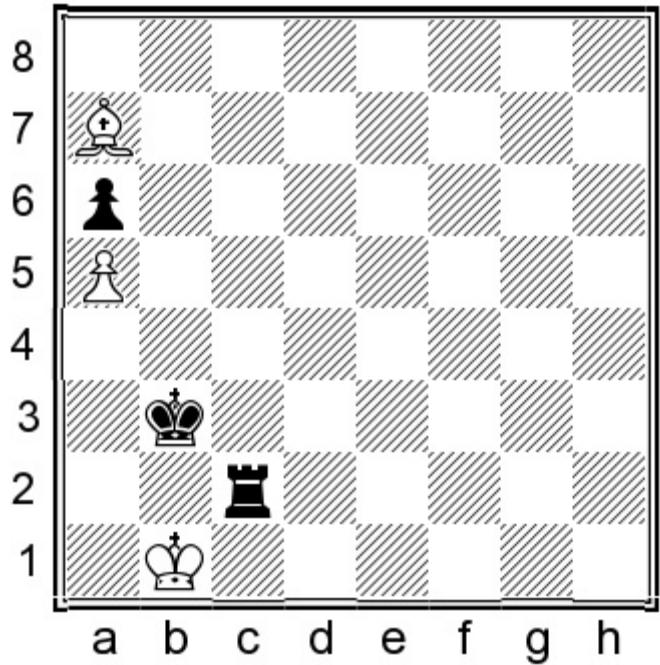
12. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}c4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}c2$ Draw.

The position with the black pawn on a3 and the bishop on b2 arose in the game Timman-Velimirovic (Rio de Janeiro izt 1979). Its assessment, as established by the Dutch grandmaster, depends on the placement of the black king. The probability of its occurrence in a practical game is rather low, while the lines are quite complicated, so we will not consider analyzing it.

Tragicomедies

Bellón – Tatai

Rome 1977



11-36
\$
B?

Recalling the Kasparov-Yusupov endgame, we can find the solution easily: 1... $\mathbb{E}c6!$ (or 1... $\mathbb{E}c7!$)
2. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}b8 \mathbb{E}c5$; 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{E}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{E}f6$) 2... $\mathbb{E}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1 \mathbb{E}d5!$ O—+

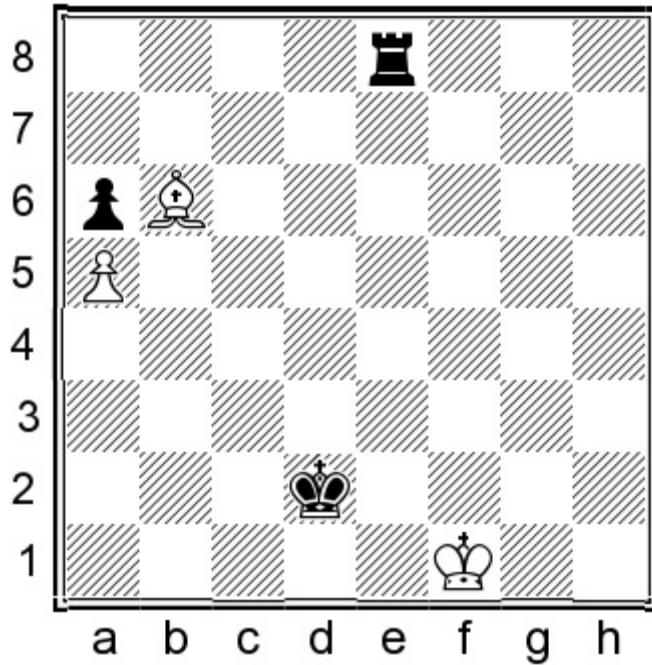
1... $\mathbb{E}h2$??

In *Chess Informant 25*, Milic awarded this move an exclamation mark.

2. $\mathbb{Q}c1 \mathbb{Q}c3$?

It was still not too late to return to the correct plan, 2... $\mathbb{E}h5!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}d5!$

3. $\mathbb{Q}d1=\mathbb{E}d2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}d3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}h2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{E}h1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{E}h8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}e8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}d2$



11-37

W?

10.♗c5?

A mistake in return, unnoticed by both *Chess Informant* and *Encyclopedia of Chess Endings*. The correct defensive method, as demonstrated by Yusupov against Kasparov, was 10.♔g2(f2)! 10....♝f8 11.♔g3 ♗c3 12.♔g4 ♗b4 13.♔g5! (or 13.♗c7! – it is important not to let the rook to f5) 13...♝f1 14.♔g4 ♜a1 15.♔f3 ♜xa5 16.♔xa5+ ♗xa5 17.♔e2=

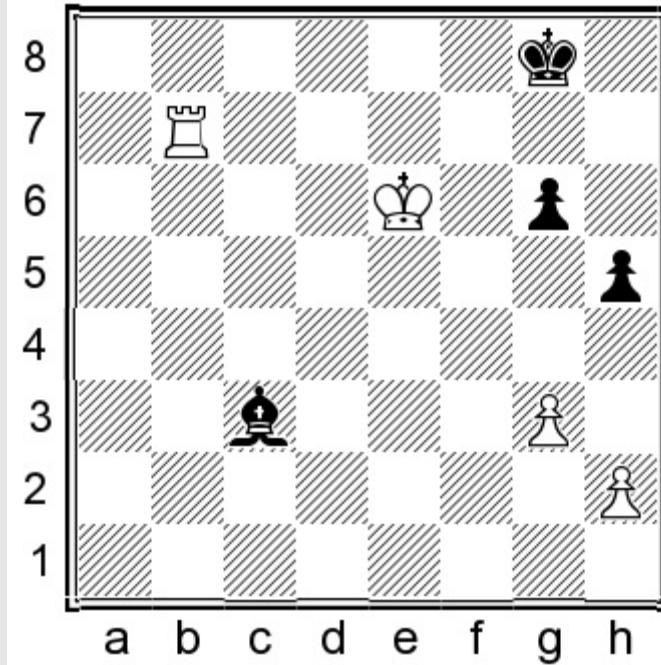
10...♝e5! 11.♗b4+

Or 11.♗b6 ♜f5+! 12.♔g2 ♗c3 13.♔g3 ♗b4 14.♔g4 ♜xa5+=

11...♝d3 12.♔f2 ♜b5 13.♗e1 ♜f5+ (13...♝b1!, winning the bishop) **14.♔g3 ♗e2 15.♔g4** (15.♗b4 ♜b5 16.♗c3 ♜b3) **15...♝c5!** White resigned.

Two Pawns vs. Two on the Same Wing

First the most important position that everybody should know:



11-38

W

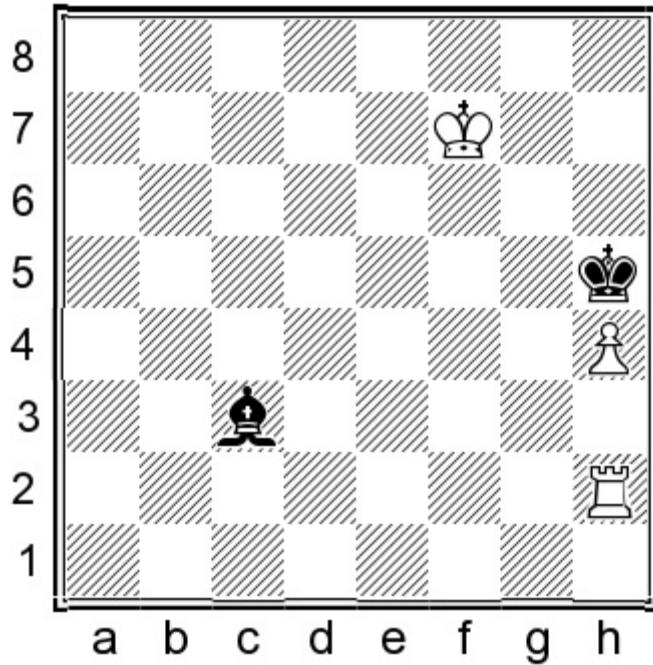
This is an elementary fortress; White cannot breach the barrier. If the king returns to f4, Black takes g5 under control by means of ♜f6. An advance of pawns brings no change.

Why is this position so important? It is rather simple but delivers plenty of useful information. For example, it tells us what to do when the black pawn stands on h7. Then h7-h5! is essential, while White, when he is on move, should prevent this advance by means of g3-g4!. Moreover, the evaluation of the diagrammed position extends automatically to a number of related situations that occur after a pawn exchange on g4, when Black remains with a g6-pawn against White's g- or h-pawn. The position with the white g5- and h4-pawns against Black's g6- and h5-pawns is also drawn.

The only possible attempt to set problems for Black, a rook transfer to the g-file after an exchange of pawns (g3 against h5), can be parried by correct defense.

1.h4!? ♜a1! 2.♗b4 ♜g7! 3.g4 hxg4 4.♗xg4 ♜h6 5.♗g5 (5.♗f7 ♜h5) 5...♜d4 6.♗f7 ♜f2 7.♗xg6+ ♜h5=

On 1...♜d4?, White plays 2.♗b4 with tempo, and this fact turns out to be decisive. After 2...♜c3 3.♗c4 ♜b2 (3...♜e1 4.♗f6 ♜h7 5.♗c6! ♜xg3 6.♗g5+-) 4.g4 hxg4 5.♗xg4 ♜h7 (5...♜g7 6.h5) 6.♗f7 ♜h6 7.♗xg6+ ♜h5 8.♗g2! ♜c3 9.♗h2

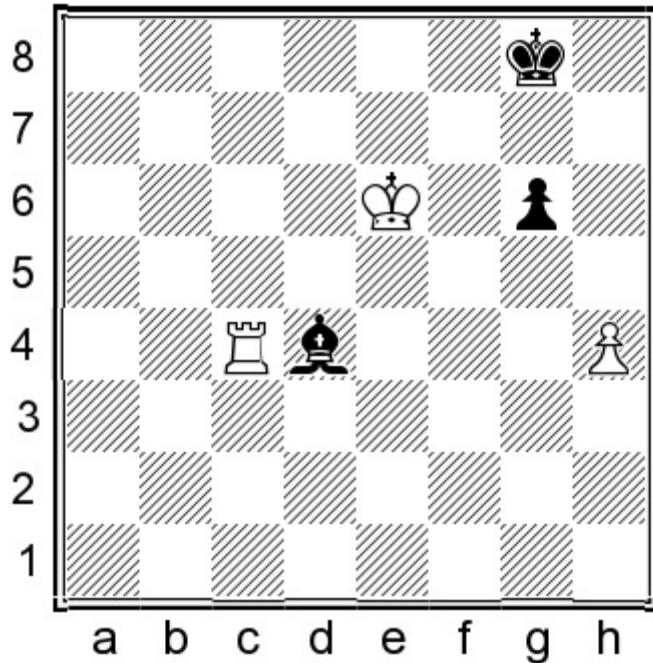


11-39
B

9... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5\mathbb{O}$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$, we come to a theoretical position that is won for White, although the proof is very complicated: the main line lasts some twenty moves!

Let us check another method of exploiting the same idea; a frontal rook attack against the g6-pawn.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4.g4!? $\mathbb{Q}hxg4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6.h3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 12.h4 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c4$



11-40

\$

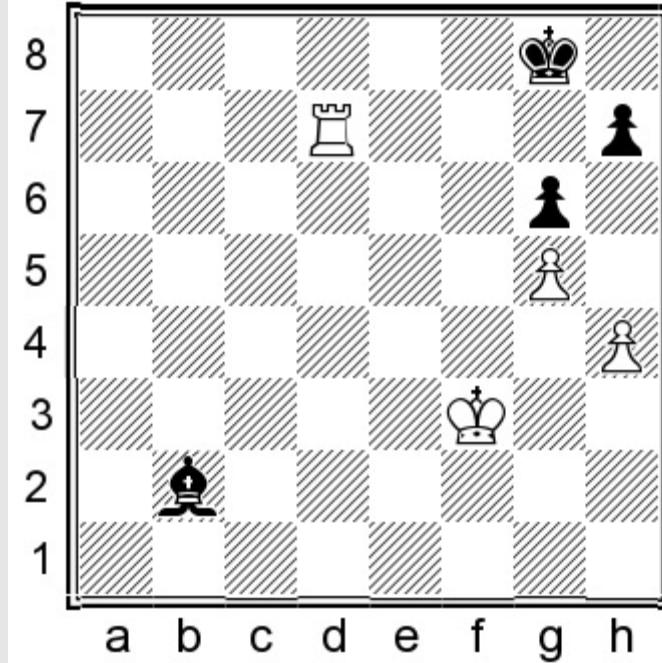
B?

A key moment; this position (with reversed colors) happened in a grandmaster duel at a 1987 tournament in New York. Ftacnik played against Murey as follows: 13... $\mathbb{Q}b2$? 14. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f7$, and White won (see the line 1.h4 $\mathbb{Q}d4$?). 13... $\mathbb{Q}f2$? 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 15. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 16. $\mathbb{E}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 17. $\mathbb{E}g2+$ – is no better.

Black should have played 13... $\mathbb{Q}e3$! 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (14. $\mathbb{E}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 15. $\mathbb{E}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$) 14... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 15. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 16. $\mathbb{E}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 17. $\mathbb{E}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$!! 18. $\mathbb{E}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$! 19. $\mathbb{E}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ with a draw.

Khalifman – Leko

Budapest m (3), 2000



11-41

B

This pawn structure has occurred many times in practice and, until recently, was always evaluated as drawn. In fact, White wins by means of h4-h5, transposing to the Elkies position (diagram 11-24), although everything is not so simple – there are many subtle points in this ending.

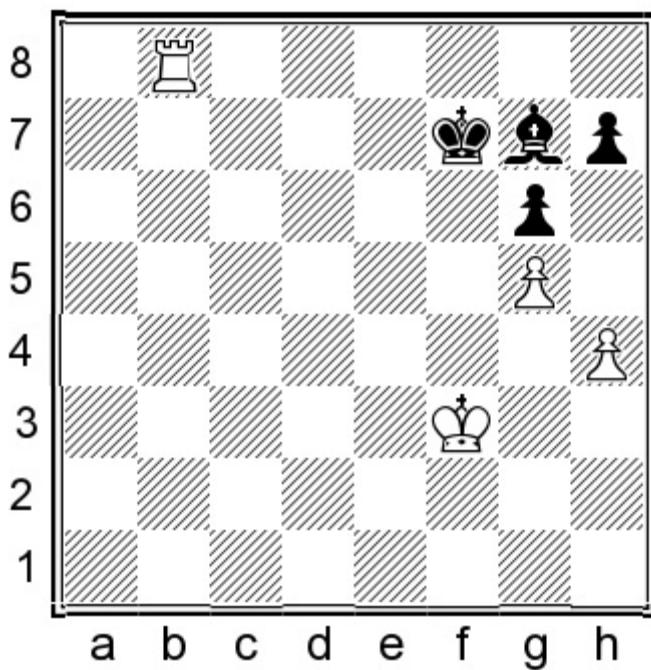
1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$!

Leko is trying to oppose White's plan. If 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$?, then 2...h5+! 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ or 3.gxh6 $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ with an obvious draw.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c1$, with the same idea, is worse on account of 2. $\mathbb{E}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 3. $\mathbb{E}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$

This is not a bad move, however the most direct way to a victory starts with 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8+!$? $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b8$.



11-42

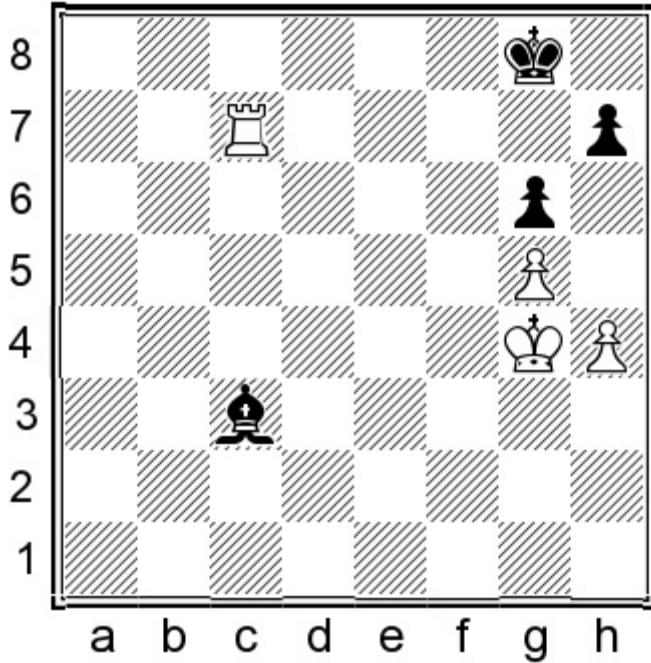
B

- (a) 3...h5 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5+-$;
- (b) 3...h6 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+?$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ is premature in view of 6... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$! 8. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7=$ or 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ h5=) 5...hxg5 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 7.hxg5 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5+-$;
- (c) 3... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ Δ 6.h5+-;
- (d) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4.h5! gxh5 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}h4xh5+-$;
- (e) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ (4.h5? gxh5 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ fails on account of 5... $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ h6! 7.gxh6 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}d2=$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ (Δ 6.h5+-) 5...h5+ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ (rather than 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$). Black could have held this position if he had been able to bring the bishop to the a1-h8 diagonal, but all the roads to it are cut off: 6... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg7+!$; 6... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6$; 6... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}e5-f6$; 6... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$

2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$

If 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$, then 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b8$

2... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ is met by 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$. Now 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ only accelerates the loss: 4.h5 gxh5+ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h6$; 5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6.g6) 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7\Theta$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7.g6. On 3... $\mathbb{Q}c3$, White can play 4.h5 right away, but let us look at a somewhat abstract move, 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$, that leads to a position from Wolff-Browne, USA ch, Durango 1992.



11-43

B

Where should the bishop go? We know from the previous note that 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ 5.h5 is bad; 4... $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ 5.h5 $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ (Δ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h6$) is no better, because the bishop fails to enter the a3-f8 diagonal. The toughest resistance can be rendered by 4... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5.h5 $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$, and White has to demonstrate a truly complicated winning procedure that, by the way, had not yet been discovered when the game was played.

Browne played 4... $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ and Wolff managed to carry out h4-h5 in a more favorable situation, avoiding the Elkies position. The main motif is making the access of the bishop to the a3-f8 diagonal most difficult.

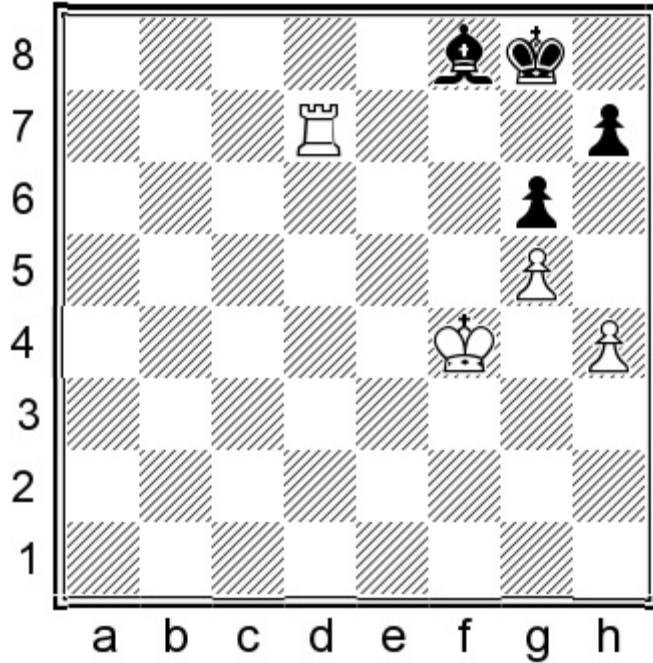
5. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ does not change anything) 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 10.h5) 8.h5! $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$

In the game, Black allowed h5-h6 and, of course, lost rapidly: 8... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 9.h6 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ Black resigned.

9. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$

The bishop has finally managed to reach the key diagonal, but it stands badly on d6. White carries g5-g6 out while the black king's refuge in the dangerous corner fails.

10. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 12.g6 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (here the bad placement of the bishop tells: after 14... $\mathbb{Q}e8$, White plays 15. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ with a tempo) 14... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ (15... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d7$) 16. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$



11-44

W

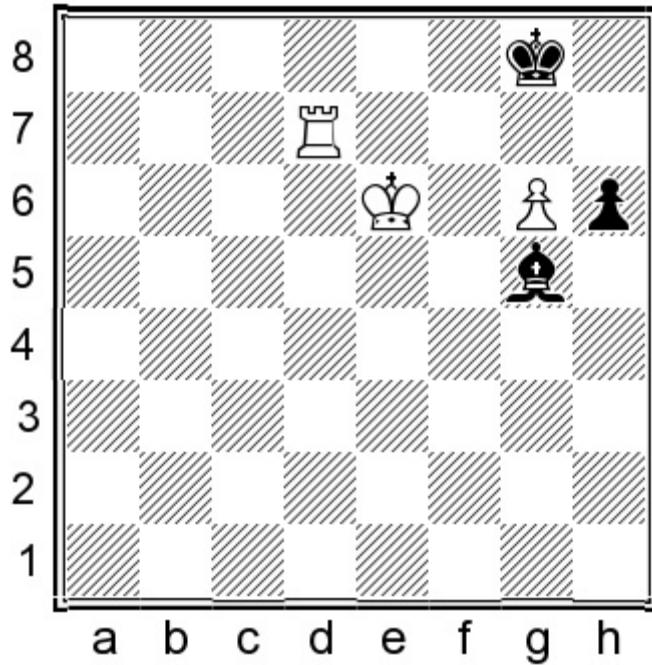
3.h5?

White advances the pawn at the most inappropriate moment. The simplest solution was 3.♗a7!? ♗g7 4.♗b7! ♗f8 5.♔g4 h5+ 6.♔f3+– (see line (e) in the annotation to White's second move). As Shipov noted, the immediate 3.♔g4 also wins, but after 3...h5+ White should play 4.♔f3! ♗b4 (4...♗g7 5.♗xg7+; 4...♔a3 5.♗b7 ♗d6 6.♗b6) 5.♗c7! (preventing 5...♔c3) 5...♔e1 6.♗c4 ♔f7 7.♔e2 Δ ♔d3, ♗e4, ♔c4-d5+– rather than 4.♔f4? ♗a3 (Δ 5...♔b2=) 5.♗b7 ♗d6+ 6.♔e4 ♗g3 7.♗b3 ♗xh4 8.♔f4 ♔f7 9.♗b7+ ♔g8=

3...gxh5 4.♔g3 h6! 5.g6 ♗a3 6.♔h4 ♗c1

As we know from Elkies' analysis, this position is drawn.

7.♔xh5 ♗g5 8.♔g4 ♗c1 9.♔f5 ♗g5 10.♔e6 (10.g7 ♗h7 11.♔e6 ♗g8)



11-45
\$
B

10...♝h4?!

10...♝e3 is simpler; if 11.♜h7 ♜d2 12.g7, then 12...♝c3 or 12...♝g5.

11.♜h7 ♜g5 12.g7?! h5□

A study-like salvation! All other moves lose: 12...♝xh7? 13.♝f7; 12...♝d8? 13.♜h8+; 12...♝h4? 13.♜xh6; 12...♝e3? 13.♝f6

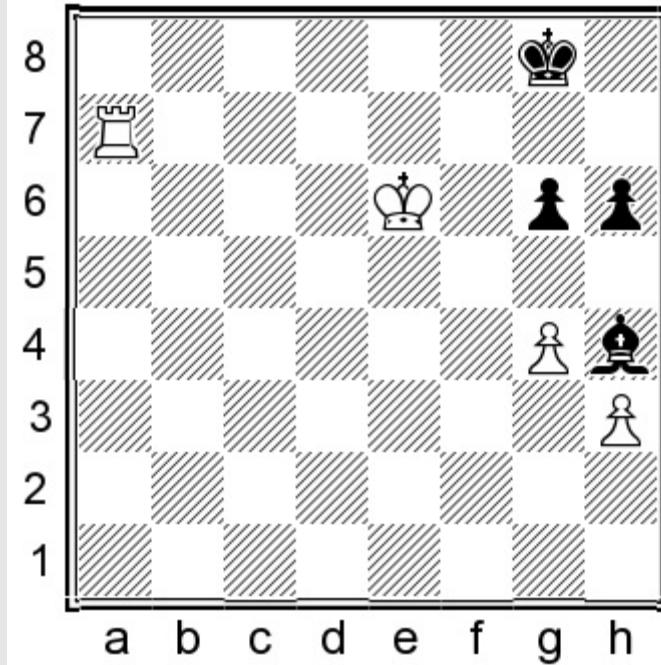
13.♜xh5 ♜f6!

The bishop is taboo in view of stalemate. The g7-pawn will be lost, and White cannot reach the basic winning position with the king in the dangerous corner.

14.♜h3 ♜xg7 15.♝e7 ♜b2 16.♜b3 ♜d4 17.♜d3 ♜b2 18.♜g3+ ♜h7 19.♝e6 ♜h6 20.♝f5 ♜h7 21.♜g6 ♜c3 22.♝g5 ♜b2 23.♝h5 ♜c3 24.♜g2 ♜d4 25.♜d2 ♜c3 26.♜c2 ♜a1 27.♜c7+ ♜g8 28.♜d7 Draw.

Even if White succeeds in preventing a fortress such as in diagram 11-29 by playing g2-g4 at the proper moment, Black still can hold if he builds another elementary fortress.

Olafsson – Larsen
Las Palmas 1974



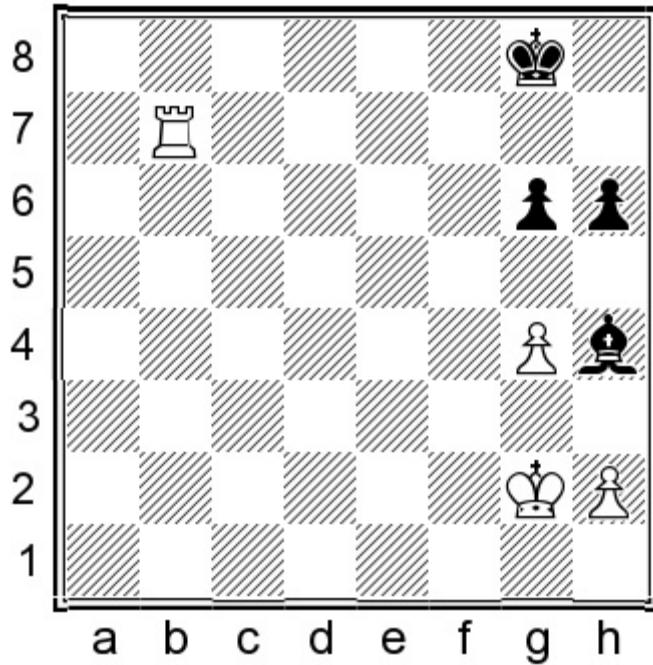
11-46

B

This barrier is also not to be breached.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 2. $\mathbb{B}a5 \mathbb{Q}h4$ (but surely not 2... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xg5 hxg5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e7+-$) 3. $\mathbb{B}a1 \mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. $\mathbb{B}a4$ (4. $\mathbb{B}h1 \mathbb{Q}h4!$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{B}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{B}f7 \mathbb{Q}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (7. $\mathbb{B}f6 \mathbb{Q}g7$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}g8$, and the game ended in a draw.

Would the evaluation of the position be changed with the white pawn on h2 instead of h3? In such cases, White has the following way to play for a win: the king comes to h3 and drives the bishop away from h4, then $\mathbb{Q}g3$ and h2-h4-h5 follow. I have seen analysis of this situation only in a two-volume endgame treatise by Villeneuve (in French, 1984).



11-47

\$
W

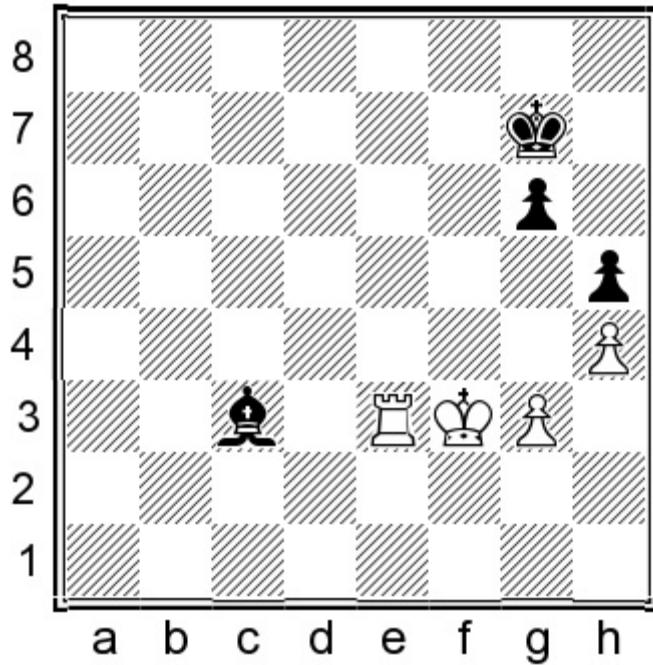
1. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{Q}f2$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}f6!?$) **2.** $\mathbb{E}b2 \mathbb{Q}d4$ **3.** $\mathbb{E}e2 \mathbb{Q}f6$ (or 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}f6!$) **4.** $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}g7$ **5.** $h4$ (5. $\mathbb{E}e6 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $\mathbb{E}a6 \mathbb{Q}e5+$) **5...** $h5!$ **6.** $gxh5$ (6. $g5 \mathbb{Q}c3$, transposing to the main fortress as in diagram 11-38) **6...** $gxh5$

This position is drawn. For example, 7. $\mathbb{E}e4 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}f5$ 9. $\mathbb{E}f4+ \mathbb{Q}e5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}d8$ etc.

Tragicomедies

Smyslov – Chiburdanidze

Monaco 1994



11-48

B

1...♝d2?

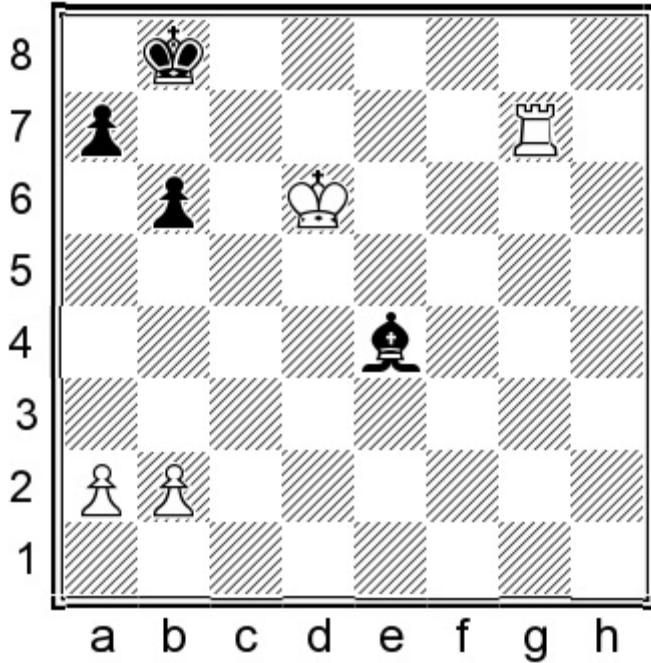
Chiburdanidze obviously did not know the basic drawn position, otherwise she would have kept the bishop on the long diagonal: 1...♝f6=

1...♝d2? 2.♜d3 ♛e1?

2...♝c1! (Δ 3...♝b2) 3.♜b3 g5 would have held out longer; but as Karsten Müller indicated, White would still win by continuing 4.♜b1 ♛d2 5.♜b7+ ♜g6 6.♜b6+ ♜g7 7.♜e2 ♜a5 8.♜b5 ♛d8 9.♜d5 ♛f6 10.hxg5, etc.

3.♝f4+– ♜f6 4.♜d6+ ♜f7 5.♝g5 ♜xg3 6.♜f6+ ♜e7 7.♜xg6 ♜e1 8.♝xh5 ♜f7 9.♜g2 ♜f6 10.♜e2 ♜g3 11.♜e4 Black resigned.

Exercises



11-49

11/7

W?

Show/Hide Solution

11/7. A Theoretical Position

This example can be found in many theoretical treatises, given with a wrong or, at least, an imprecise evaluation.

1.b4!

1...a5= should be prevented. Now this move loses a pawn: 2.bxa5 bxa5 3.♔c5 a4 4.♔b6 ♔c8 5.♕g4+–.

1...♗f3 2.a4 ♗e4 3.a5 bxa5 4.bxa5 is also hopeless for Black (see diagram 11-28).

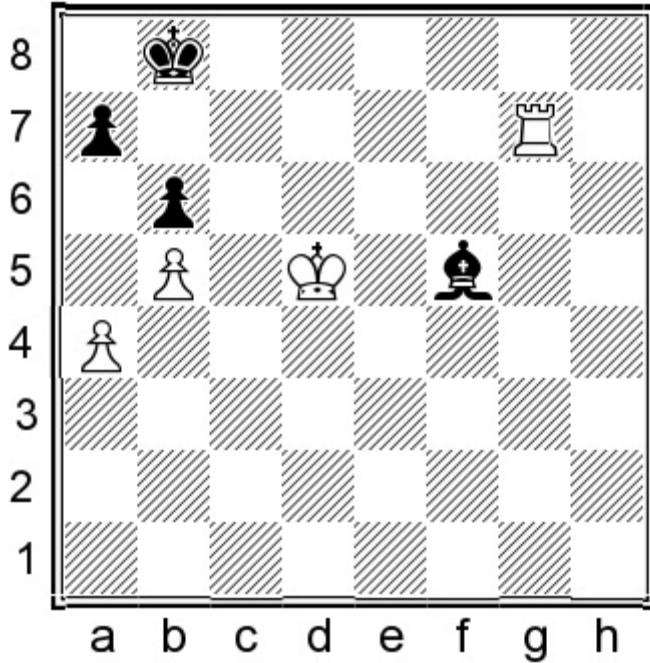
Another continuation, 1.♕g4!? also deserves attention: 1...♗f3 (1...♗b1 2.♔c6! ♗xa2 3.♕g7+–) 2.♕f4, and if 2...♗g2, then 3.b4, planning a2-a4-a5.

1.b4! ♔c2!?

If Black manages to place his bishop on a4, he achieves a draw. The same outcome results from 2.♔c6 ♗e4+ 3.♔b5 ♗d3+ 4.♔a4 ♗c2+ 5.♔a3? a6!= (diagram 11-47). This means that White's next move is obligatory.

2.b5!+–

2...♗e4 3.a4 ♗d3 (3...♗f3 is equivalent) 4.♔d5! ♗f5



16-95

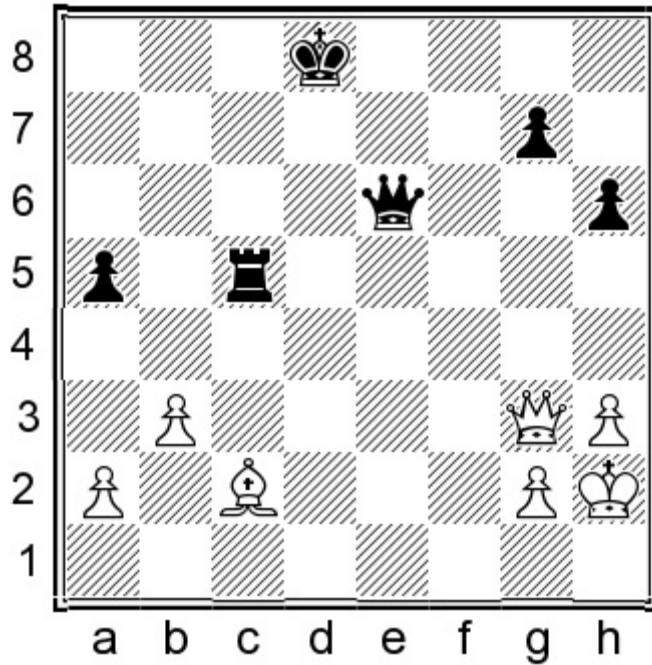
W

The diagrammed position is known from Ljubojevic-Keene, Palma de Mallorca 1972 (with reversed colors and wings). Books on theory say it is a draw. We know from the Khalifman-Leko ending that this is not so. The winning plan is simple: White brings his king to b4 and plays a4-a5, arriving at the Elkies position, so the most rapid progress can be achieved after 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

The players and the annotators ignored this plan because they did not know that the Elkies position is winning. Keene tried to invade with his king to c6, failed to do so, and a draw was agreed.

5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ a6 9. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5=$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6)$ 8... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ Draw.

After 12... $\mathbb{Q}b8$, White still could have played 13. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$) 14. $\mathbb{Q}c4+-$



11-50

11/8

W?

Show/Hide Solution

11/8. Georgadze-Yusupov, USSR ch, Vilnius 1980

After the inevitable exchange of queens, it is very important for White to also exchange the a5-pawn. Thereafter he will be able to build a fortified camp on the kingside, following one of the models: diagram 11-38 or diagram 11-46.

This aim could be achieved by means of 1.a3!! $\mathbb{W}e5$ (1... $\mathbb{B}xc2?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d3+$) 2. $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathbb{B}xe5$ 3.b4 with a high probability of a draw.

The game continued 1. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ $\mathbb{W}e5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathbb{B}xe5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{B}e3!$, and 4.a3 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5.b4 did not make sense any longer in view of 5...a4! Black has a winning position.

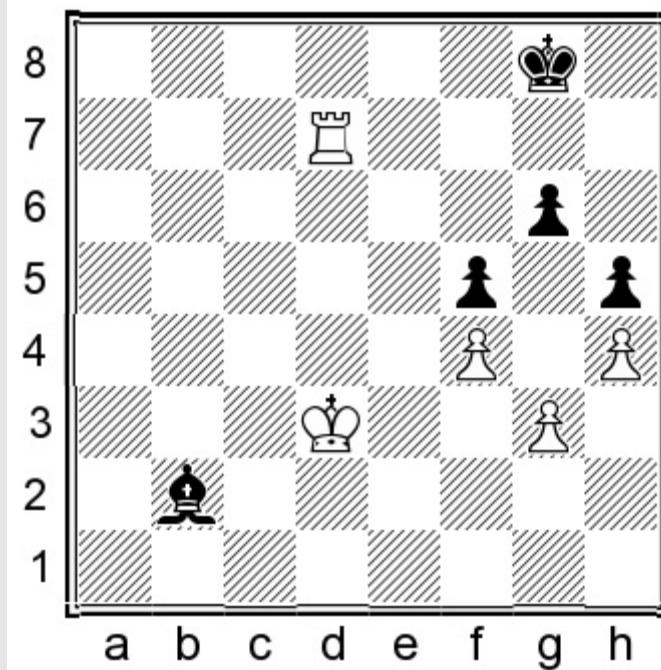
4.a4 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5.h4 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6.g3 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{B}xb3!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (Δ 10... $\mathbb{B}xb5$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ g6 White resigned.

Three Pawns vs. Three on the Same Wing

With three pawns on each side, a fortress, as a rule, cannot be built. Salvation is possible only in exceptional cases, when the pawn structure of the stronger side has flaws.

Radev – Pribyl

Tbilisi 1971



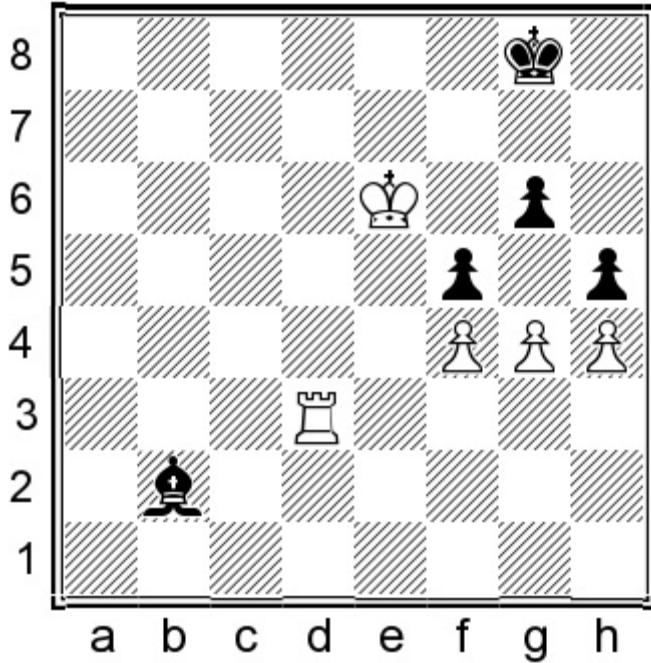
11-51

W

This situation resembles diagram 11-38, only the f-pawns are added. It again seems as if White cannot overcome the barrier, but in fact he can by means of a spectacular pawn breakthrough.

Two years later, a similar endgame occurred in a game Kholmov-Tseshkovsky, USSR chsf 1973. Grandmaster Kholmov wrote a detailed analysis, which was published in a periodical, and I reproduce it here in a slightly abridged and corrected form.

1. ♕c4 ♔f8 2. ♕d5 ♔g8 3. ♕e6 ♔c3 4. ♕d3! ♔b2 5. g4!!+



11-52

B

The game continued:

5...hxg4?! 6.h5 ♕g7

Or 6...gxh5 7.♕xf5 ♔g7 (7...♔c1 8.♕g6 ♔f8 9.f5) 8.♖d7+ ♔h6 (8...♔g8 9.♕g6; 8...♔f8 9.♕h7) 9.♖d6+ ♔h7 (9...♔g7 10.♖g6+ ♔h7 11.♕g5 ♔c1 12.♖h6+ ♔g7 13.♖xh5 g3 14.♖h3) 10.♕g5 ♔c1 11.♖d7+ ♔g8 12.♕g6 ♔f8 13.f5 g3 14.f6+–

7.hxg6 ♕xg6 8.♖d5 ♔c1

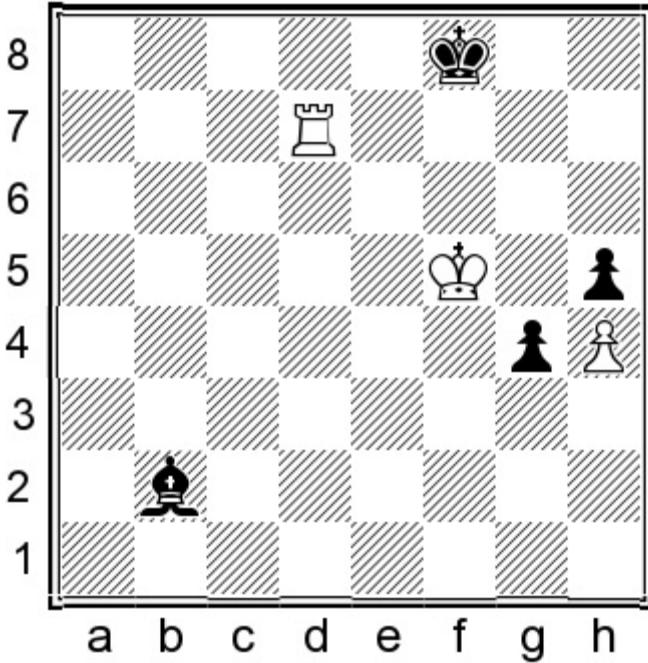
Black still follows the path of least resistance. However a rapid finale also occurs after 8...♔h5: 9.♕xf5 ♔h4 (9...g3 10.♖d1) 10.♖d6! ♔c1 (10...♔h3 11.♖h6+ ♔g3 12.♖g6) 11.♖g6+–

9.♖xf5 ♕xf4 (9...♔h6 10.♕e5 Δ 11.♖g5) 10.♖xf4 ♕g5 11.♕e5 g3 12.♕e4 g2 13.♖f8 ♔h4 14.♖g8
Black resigned.

More stubborn is 5...fxg4!? 6.f5 gxf5 7.♕xf5 (Δ 8.♕g6) 7...♔f7 8.♕g5

An alternative is 8.♖d7+ for example 8...♔e8 9.♖h7 g3 10.♖xh5 ♔c1 11.♕f6! (rather than 11.♖h7? in view of the pretty response 11...♔g5!=) 11...♔d7 (11...g2 12.♖h8+ ♔d7 13.♖g8; 11...♔b2+ 12.♕e6) 12.♖d5+ ♔e8 (12...♔c6 13.♖d8 Δ 14.♖g8) 13.♖e5+ ♔d7 (13...♔f8 14.♖c5 ♔b2+ 15.♕g6) 14.♖e4 and 15.♖g4+–

Black can also try 8...♔f8!?



11-53

W

Now Nunn's suggestion 9. $\mathbb{B}h7?$ $g3$ 10. $\mathbb{B}xh5$ $\mathbb{B}c1$ 11. $\mathbb{B}f6$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ (11... $\mathbb{B}b2+?$ 12. $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{B}c1$ 13. $\mathbb{B}f5+$ and 14. $\mathbb{B}f3$) 12. $\mathbb{B}c5$ $\mathbb{B}e3$ 13. $\mathbb{B}c7$ does not work in view of 13... $\mathbb{B}b6!$ (Nunn examined 13... $\mathbb{B}d4+$ 14. $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 15. $\mathbb{B}c2$) 14. $\mathbb{B}g7+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 15. $\mathbb{B}xg3$ $\mathbb{B}d8+$ and 16... $\mathbb{B}xh4=$, or 14. $\mathbb{B}c2$ $\mathbb{B}h7!$ followed by $\mathbb{B}f2=$. White should play 9. $\mathbb{B}g6!$ $g3$ 10. $\mathbb{B}d5$ (10. $\mathbb{B}f7+!?$) 10... $\mathbb{B}c1$ 11. $\mathbb{B}d8+!$

An important intermediate check that prevents the bishop from accessing e3 in the future. Kholmov analyzed solely 11. $\mathbb{B}d3$, but after 11... $\mathbb{B}f4$, White has neither 12. $\mathbb{B}f3?$ $g2$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xf4+$ $\mathbb{B}g8=$ nor 12. $\mathbb{B}d1?$ $\mathbb{B}e3=$ (however 12. $\mathbb{B}d8+$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 13. $\mathbb{B}d1$ is still playable).

11... $\mathbb{B}e7$ 12. $\mathbb{B}d1$ $\mathbb{B}a3$ (12... $\mathbb{B}e3??$ 13. $\mathbb{B}e1$; 12... $\mathbb{B}f4!?$) 13. $\mathbb{B}g1$ (13. $\mathbb{B}xh5?$ $\mathbb{B}c5=$) 13... $\mathbb{B}d6$ 14. $\mathbb{B}xh5$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 15. $\mathbb{B}g4+-$ This position can be achieved much more rapidly after 8. $\mathbb{B}g5$, and we now return to this move.

8... $\mathbb{B}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{B}xh5$ $g3$ 10. $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 11. $\mathbb{B}g4$ $\mathbb{B}g6$ 12. $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ 13. $h5+$ $\mathbb{B}h6$ 14. $\mathbb{B}e6+$ $\mathbb{B}h7$ 15. $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 16. $\mathbb{B}f5$ $\mathbb{B}b8$

Kholmov proceeds with 17. $h6$ and demonstrates a win after 10 more moves. But **17. $\mathbb{B}b6!$** wins immediately.

If the pawns are still not in contact (for example, Black's pawns f7, g6, and h5; White's pawns on their initial squares), the winning procedure is easier. If Black has a white-square bishop that protects the f7-pawn, White comes with his king to e7, places the rook on f6, and advances the pawns (h2-h3, g2-g4, f2-f4-f5).

In the case of a dark-square bishop, the white king goes to e8 and attacks the f7-pawn in order to force its advance. After ...f7-f5, White can build the position that we have just seen; but a simpler way is to come back to e6 with the king, bring all the pawns to the third rank and the rook to g2, and finally

carry out the advance g3-g4.

Show in Text Mode

Chapter 12

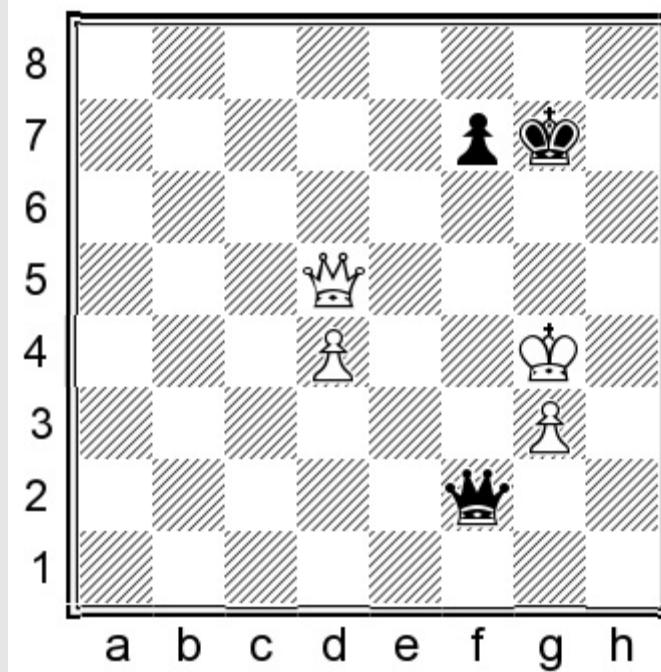
Queen Endgames

Queen and Pawn vs. Queen

If the defender's king stands in front of the pawn, the draw is usually an easy matter.

Botvinnik – Tal

Moscow wm (12) 1960



12-1

B?

1...f5+! 2.♔g5

After 2.♕xf5 ♕xd4+ Black's defense is even simpler because his king is already standing in front of the pawn and almost every instance of a queen exchange is acceptable for him.

2...♕xg3+ 3.♔xf5 ♕g6+ 4.♔f4 ♕f6+ 5.♔e3 ♔f8! 6.♔d3

If Tal had played 6...♔e7 here, there would have been no doubt about a draw. What he did instead made his task more complicated.

6... $\mathbb{W}f1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{W}g2+?!$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}e7!=$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{W}g5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{W}e7+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f5$

If 10... $\mathbb{W}f7(h7)+$ then 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$. After 11... $\mathbb{W}h5+?$ (11... $\mathbb{W}e7+$ is better) 12. $\mathbb{Q}d6$, Black cannot trade queens, the checks will soon expire, and his king will be forced to the g-file, farther from the pawn. According to the tablebase, it is mate in 70 moves.

10... $\mathbb{W}c7!$

“However strange it may seem, Black evidently has secured the draw only with this move ... Now White’s pieces are ideally placed; any move will just worsen his position.” (Tal).

11. $\mathbb{W}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 13. $\mathbb{W}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 14. $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 15. $\mathbb{W}e5$ $\mathbb{W}f7+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{W}g6+$ 17. $\mathbb{W}f5$ $\mathbb{W}d6!$

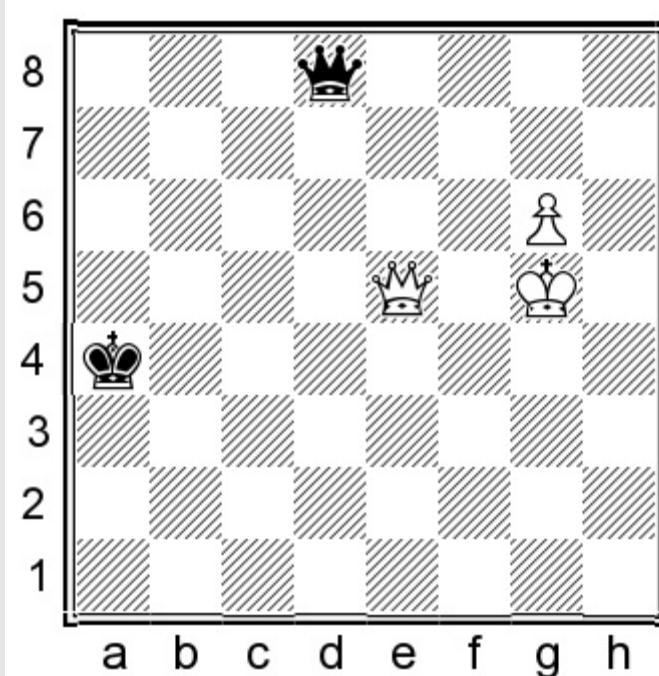
18. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 19. $\mathbb{W}f5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 20. $\mathbb{W}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 21.d5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 22. $\mathbb{W}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 23. $\mathbb{W}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

Draw.

Now we come to those exceptionally complicated cases when the king of the weaker side is placed far away from the pawn. Computers have proved that a win, when it exists, can often be achieved (when both sides play correctly) only after more than 50 moves! Practical players should not delve too deeply into this jungle, for these endings occur quite seldom. We shall confine ourselves to basic theoretical statements and the most important practical methods.

Botvinnik was the first to find the correct method for the stronger side, during an analysis of the following adjourned game:

Botvinnik – Minev
Amsterdam ol 1954



12-2

W

1. $\mathbb{W}f6$

1. $\mathbb{Q}h6?$ $\mathbb{W}h4+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}a3!=$ is much weaker, as Botvinnik played in a similar position against Ravinsky ten years earlier. ***The attacker should not place his king in front of his pawn.***

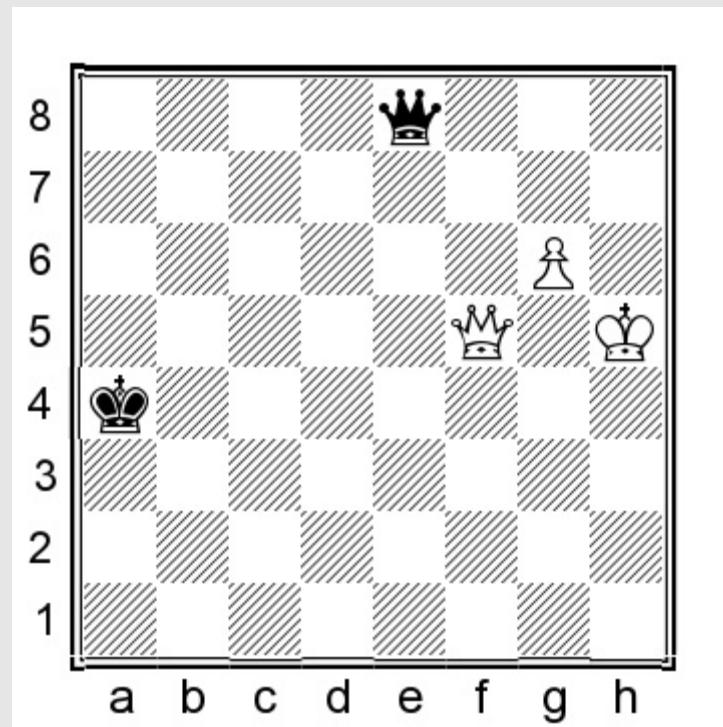
According to computer analysis, 1. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ is more precise; if 1... $\mathbb{W}c8+$ (this position had already occurred on a previous move), then 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{W}c1+$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e3 \mathbb{W}c7+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{W}d7+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{W}d8+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (there are no checks anymore; 6... $\mathbb{W}d6+$ loses to 7. $\mathbb{W}f4+$), or 5... $\mathbb{W}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ etc. (this “etc.” by the way, lasts more than 20 moves at least).

1. $\mathbb{W}f6 \mathbb{W}d5+$ 2. $\mathbb{W}f5 \mathbb{W}d8+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5$

The stronger side should place the king on the same file or rank where the defender's king is standing, or an adjacent file or rank (this rule is also valid when more pawns are present on the board).

This tactic often enables counter-checks when the queen provides protection from a defender's check by interference. For example, now Black cannot play 3... $\mathbb{W}d1+$ in view of 4. $\mathbb{W}g4+$ or 3... $\mathbb{W}h8+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$, and Black cannot play 4... $\mathbb{W}d4+$ because of 5. $\mathbb{W}f4$, as 4... $\mathbb{W}g7$ loses to 5. $\mathbb{W}f7!$ $\mathbb{W}c3$ 6. $g7!$

3... $\mathbb{W}e8$



12-3
W

4. $\mathbb{W}f4+?$

An error that was left unnoticed by Botvinnik. The computer analysis shows that the correct winning process is 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $\mathbb{W}e2+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{W}d2+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{W}b2+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{W}b8+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{W}b4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{W}b7+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{W}b6+$ 11. $\mathbb{W}e6$ (this is only an introduction: a lot of precise moves are still required for achieving

success).

But why is the move actually played wrong? Because, when dealing with a knight or rook pawn, the defender's king is best placed near the corner that is diametrically opposite to the pawn promotion square. Then, when the stronger side defends his king from checks with a queen interference, a counter-check is less probable.

Black could have played 4... $\hat{Q}a3$! here and theory says that it is a draw, although it is a long way from a theoretical evaluation to a half-point in the tournament table, because these positions are very difficult to defend.

We should add that *the indicated drawing zone does not exist in case of a bishop or central pawn*. One can only expect that the opponent's play will not be precise (although defender's errors are more probable in these situations) or ... that the king manages to reach the area in front of the pawn like in the Botvinnik-Tal endgame.

By the way, the drawing zone, near the pawn, is considerably larger with a rook pawn, compared with other pawns, because the defender can go for a queen exchange much more often.

Having arrived at general considerations about various pawn cases, I add two more remarks:

- (a) The farther the pawn is advanced, the less the defender's chance for a draw;
- (b) The closer the pawn is to the edge of the board, the greater the drawing chances. With central and bishop pawns, practically all positions with a remote king are lost. With a knight pawn, winning positions occur very often. With a rook pawn, a draw can be reached in a majority of positions, although the defense is not simple.

4... $\hat{Q}a5$?

The wrong way! But this choice was not made purely by chance. The above-mentioned game Botvinnik-Ravinsky had been thoroughly annotated by Keres, and the Estonian grandmaster erroneously suggested keeping the king on a5 and a4.

5. $\hat{W}d2+$ $\hat{Q}a4$ 6. $\hat{W}d4+$ $\hat{Q}a5$ 7. $\hat{Q}g5$

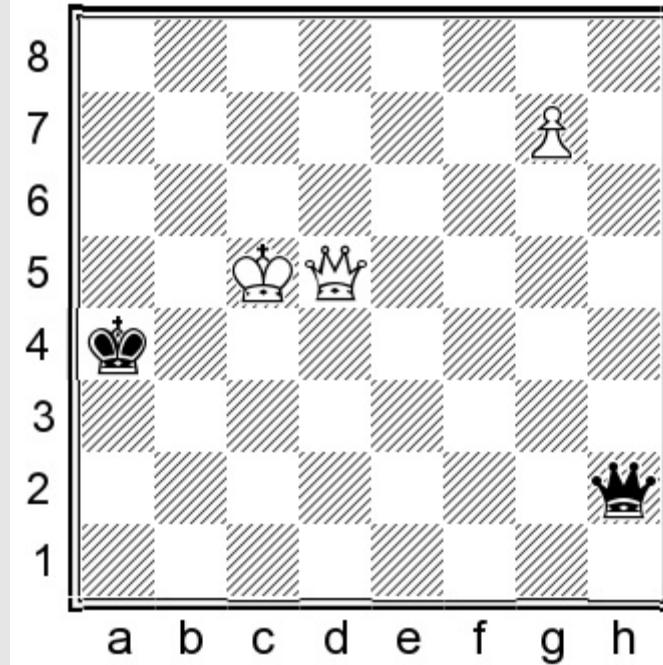
Take notice of White's last moves. The queen is placed best on the central squares (this is usually valid for the defender's queen as well). The closer the queen is to the edge of the board, the winning process is more difficult and the probability of a perpetual check is higher.

By the way, now we can easily explain why Botvinnik's 1. $\hat{W}f6$ was less accurate than 1. $\hat{Q}f5$! His queen should not leave the center unless it is an emergency.

7... $\hat{W}e7+$ 8. $\hat{Q}f5!$ $\hat{W}f8+$ 9. $\hat{Q}e4$ $\hat{W}h6$ 10. $\hat{W}e5+$ $\hat{Q}a4$ 11.g7

Finally the pawn succeeds in moving forward, and the finale is near. The finish is also very instructive: White approaches the black king with his monarch in order to create a situation when every check can be met with a counter-check. This method (*king-to-king*) is characteristic for queen-and-pawn endings.

11... $\hat{W}h1+$ 12. $\hat{Q}d4$ $\hat{W}d1+$ 13. $\hat{Q}c5$ $\hat{W}c1+$ 14. $\hat{Q}d6$ (14. $\hat{Q}d5?$! $\hat{W}c8$) 14... $\hat{W}d2+$ (14... $\hat{W}h6+$ 15. $\hat{Q}d5!$) 15. $\hat{Q}e6$ $\hat{W}a2+$ 16. $\hat{W}d5$ $\hat{W}e2+$ 17. $\hat{Q}d6$ $\hat{W}h2+$ 18. $\hat{Q}c5!$



12-4

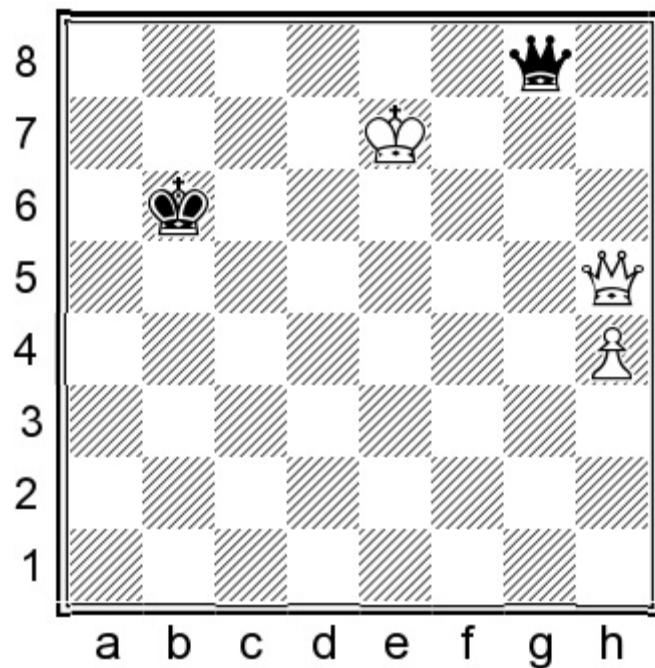
B

Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Shamkovich – Wirthensohn

Biel 1980



We shall not go deeply into intricate lines. Instead, we merely want to match the computer evaluations of the actual moves with the general considerations that are already known to us from the annotations to the previous example. Because of the rook pawn, Black can hope for a successful defense. And, as a matter of fact, the position was still drawn after 1... $\mathbb{W}g3$

or 1... $\mathbb{W}c4$.

1... $\mathbb{W}g7?$

This move would have made sense if the series of checks could continue. However, the white king is superbly placed on the rank adjacent to its adversary, and not even one single check will be possible after White's reply. Hence Black's move is bad. It allows White to rescue his queen from boredom with tempo.

2. $\mathbb{W}f7!+-\mathbb{W}g3$ (2... $\mathbb{W}e5+?$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e6+$) 3. $\mathbb{W}f6+\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}g5?$

Shamkovich only worsens the position of his queen, moving it closer to the edge. He should have pushed his pawn in order to obtain a position that can be won in ... 69 moves (!).

4... $\mathbb{W}a3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{W}b3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{W}c3+?$

A drawn position (not a draw as such – Black would have spent a good deal of sweat for it) could be maintained after a check from b2. It is difficult to explain the choice by general principles, but the black king will get in the queen's way in some lines now.

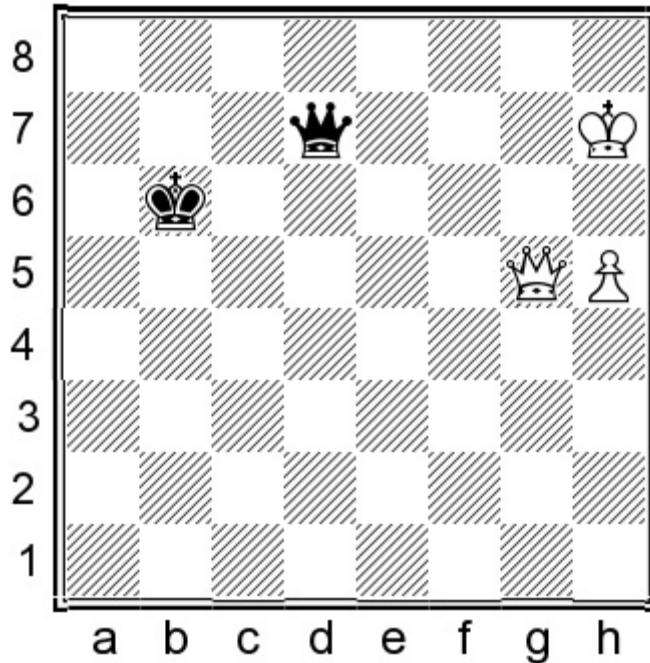
7. $\mathbb{W}f6$ $\mathbb{W}g3+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h7?$

But this is not merely an error; this is neglect of principles. As we have stated, the king should not seek exile in front of the pawn. Both 8. $\mathbb{W}g5$ and 8. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ are winning, but 8. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ is the most precise.

8... $\mathbb{W}h3$ 9. $\mathbb{W}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}b6?$

This counter-error is also very instructive. As we know, there is a drawing zone near a rook pawn, and this zone is rather spacious (its precise borders depend on the placement of the pieces, and most importantly on how far advanced the pawn is; we shall not give precise definitions here). The king was already standing in the zone, therefore many queen moves were not losing, but the most logical decision was to go towards the pawn: 9... $\mathbb{Q}d7(d6)!=$

10.h5 $\mathbb{W}d7+$



12-6

W

11.♕g7?

White worsens his queen's position. All king moves were winning.

11...♔h3?

The black queen had to guard the central squares. 11...♕d5! was good enough for a draw.

12.♕e5!+–

The white queen has finally arrived in the center, Black's king is out of the drawing zone – White's position is winning!

**12...♕d7+ 13.♔g6 ♕d3+ 14.♕f5 ♕g3+ 15.♔f7 ♕c7+ 16.♔g8 ♕b8+ 17.♔g7 ♕c7+ 18.♕f7 ♕h2
19.h6 ♔a5 20.h7 ♕e5+ 21.♕f6 ♕g3+ 22.♔h6!**

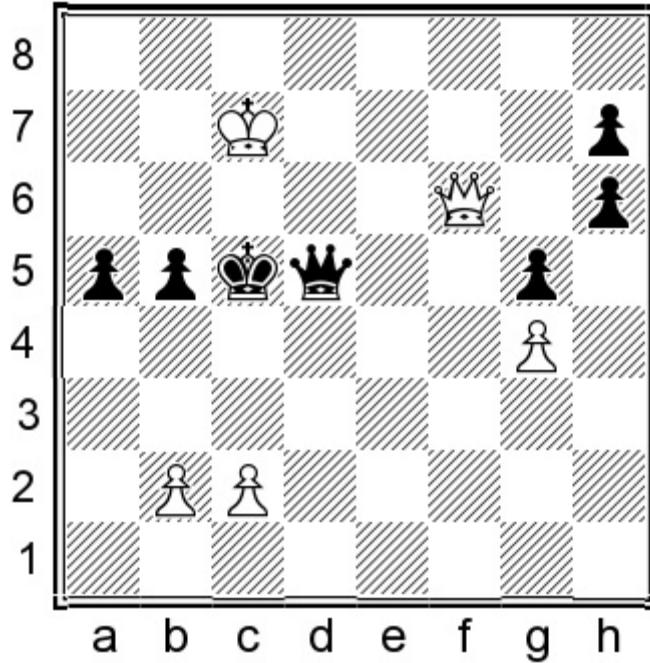
Black resigned in view of 22...♕h2+ 23.♔g6! and the checks expire because of the correct position of the white king (on a rank adjacent to his black counterpart).

Winning Tactical Tricks

The queen is the strongest piece; therefore ***playing for mate*** occurs in queen endgames more often than in other kinds of endings. Among other techniques, ***winning the queen*** (usually by means of a skewer check) and ***exchange of queens*** should be mentioned.

These three tools can all be seen in the next example.

K.Eucken 1947*



12-7

W?

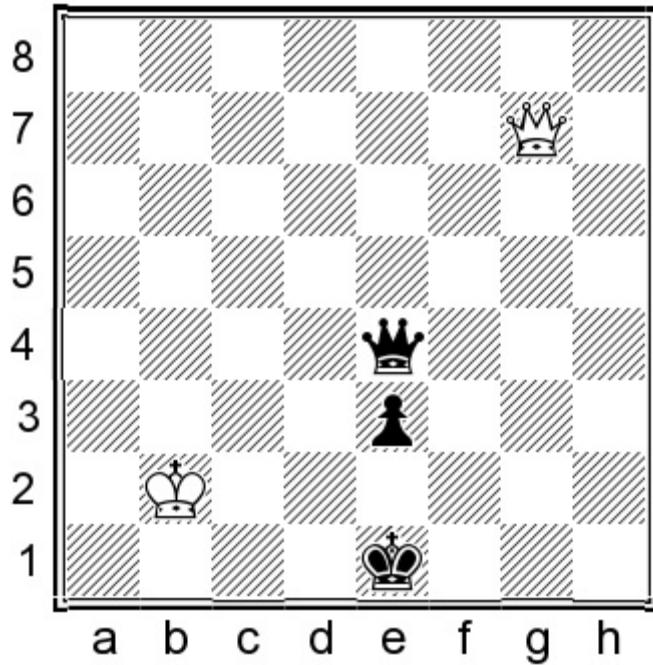
1.c4!!

Every capture of the pawn leads to a mate in one. After 1... $\mathbb{W}d3$, White forces an exchange of the queens by means of 2. $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xd3+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 5. $cxb5$; 1... $\mathbb{W}e4$ has the same consequences after 2. $\mathbb{W}f5+!$ $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 3. $gxf5+-$ Finally, every other retreat of the queen leads to its loss, for example:

- (a) 1... $\mathbb{W}a8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f3+;$
- (b) 1... $\mathbb{W}h1$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c6+;$
- (c) 1... $\mathbb{W}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b3+$

Tragicomедies

Batuev – Simagin
Riga 1954



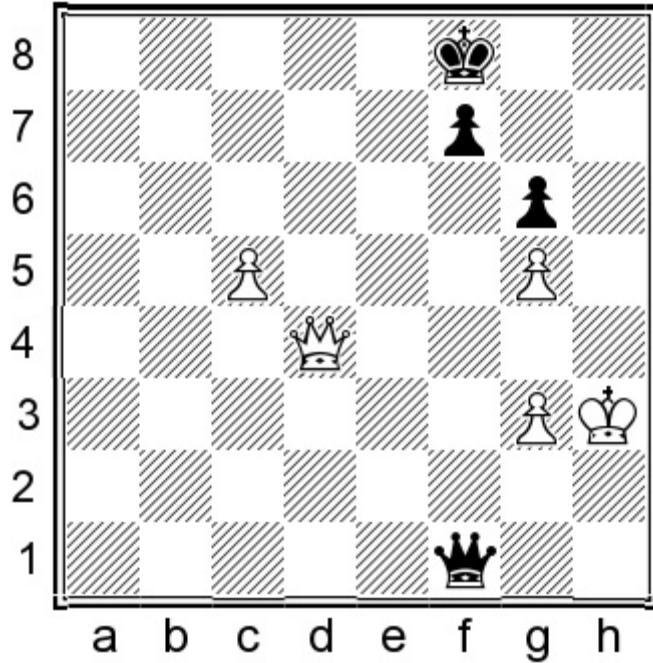
**12-8
B**

As we know, defending against a central pawn is practically always a hopeless matter. The simplest winning process here is 1... $\mathbb{W}b4+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{W}c4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ (king-to-king!). But miracles happen from time to time.

1...e2?? 2. $\mathbb{W}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c3\#$

A year later, Simagin got a gift in return.

**Borisenko – Simagin
USSR ch, Moscow 1955**



12-9

W

Contrary to the previous example, the extra pawn cannot be exploited here. If 1.♔h4, 1...♕e2! is strong,

while 1.♔h2 is met by 1...♕e2+ 2.♔g1 ♕e1+ 3.♔g2 ♕e2+ 4.♕f2 ♕d3(c4)!=

Winning chances can only be obtained by a king march to the passed pawn, so Borisenko pushed his king ahead.

1.♔g4??

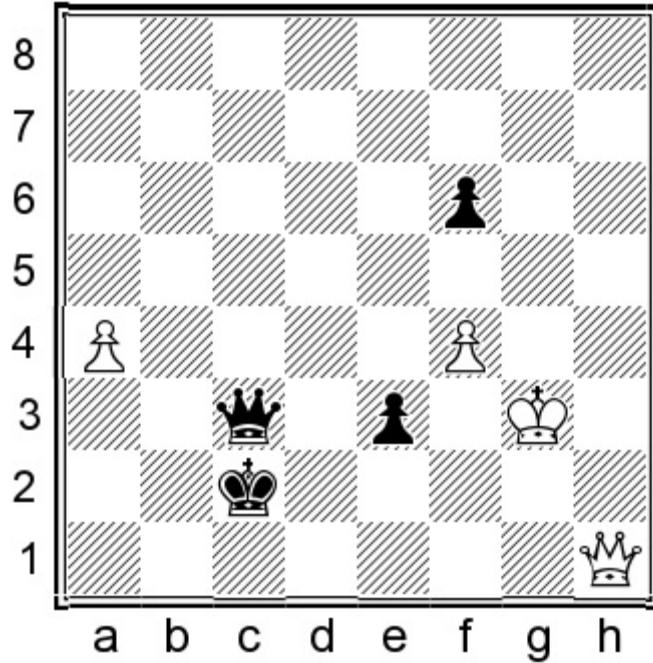
White had only expected 1...♕e2+? 2.♔f4 or 1...♕f5+? 2.♔h4, and 2...♕f3? fails to 3.♕d8+ ♔g7 4.♕f6!=

1...f5+!

White resigned because he cannot avoid mate:

2.♔h4 ♘h1# or 2.gxf6 ♘f5+ 3.♔h4 ♘h5#

Exercises



12-10

12/1

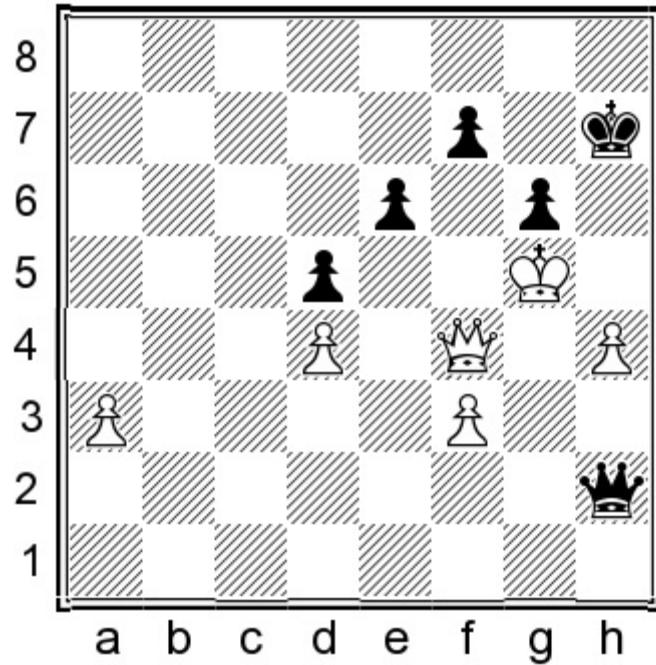
B?

Show/Hide Solution

12/1. Shmirin-Novikov, USSR 1982

1...f5! 2.a5 (White has nothing else) **2...Bg7+!**

White resigned because his queen will either be lost ($3.\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{B}b7+$) or traded.



12-11

12/2

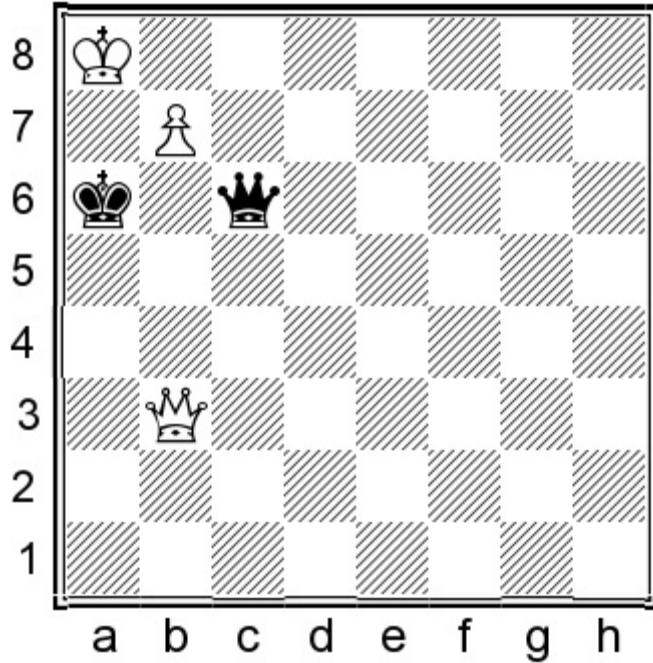
B?

Show/Hide Solution

12/2. Matokhin-G. Kuzmin, USSR 1970

1...f6+! 2.♗g4 (2.♕xf6 ♕g3#) 2...♕g2+ 3.♕g3 f5+ 4.♗f4 e5+!

White resigned in view of 5.dxe5 ♕d2#



12-12

12/3

W?

Show/Hide Solution

12/3. L.van Vliet 1888

1. $\mathbb{W}b4!$ O 1... $\mathbb{W}h1$

1... $\mathbb{W}d5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b3+!$ $\mathbb{W}xb3$ 4. $b8=\mathbb{W}+$;

1... $\mathbb{W}f3$ 2. $\mathbb{W}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b3+!$;

1... $\mathbb{W}g2$ 2. $\mathbb{W}a3+ \mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b2+!$

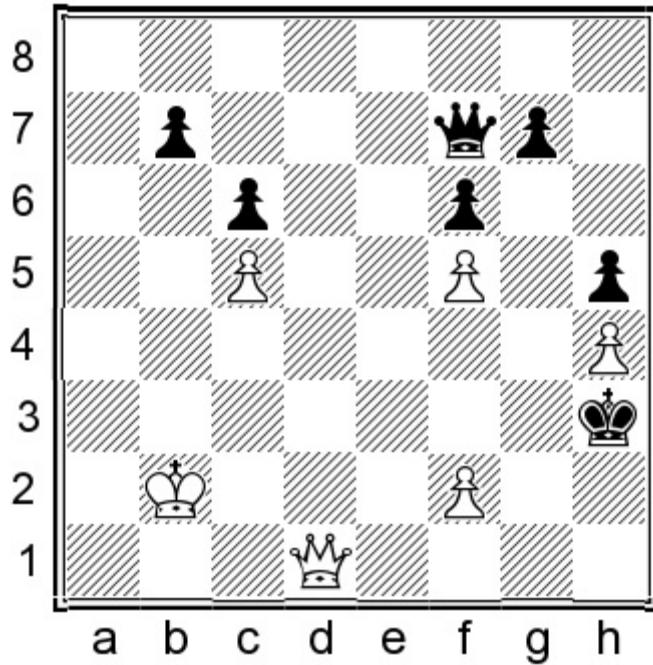
2. $\mathbb{W}a3+ \mathbb{Q}b6$

Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b2+ \mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a7+-$

3. $\mathbb{W}b2+ \mathbb{Q}c7$

If 3... $\mathbb{Q}c5$, then 4. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{W}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}b6+$ and 6. $\mathbb{Q}a6+-$. After 3... $\mathbb{Q}a6$, the following familiar tactical device decides: 4. $\mathbb{W}a2+ \mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}b1+!$ When the black king is on c7, the same idea of winning the queen works diagonally.

4. $\mathbb{W}h2+!!$ $\mathbb{W}xh2$ 5. $b8=\mathbb{W}++-$



12-13

12/4

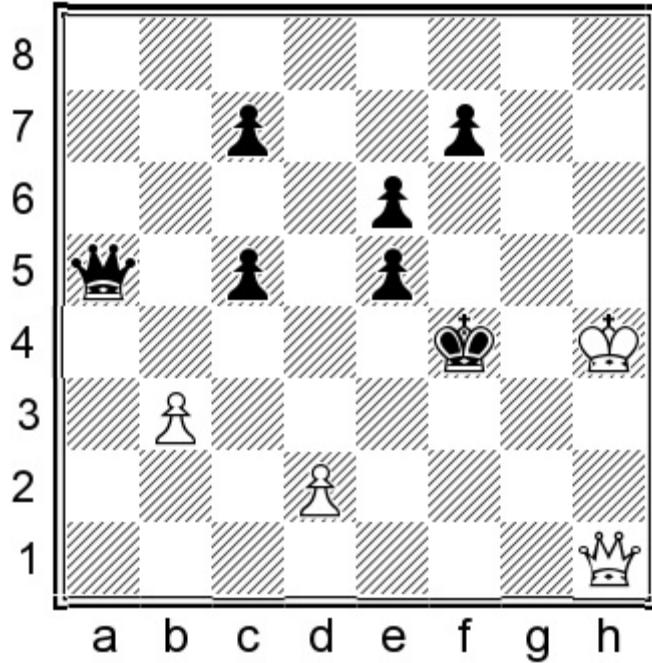
W?

Show/Hide Solution

12/4. L.Kubbel 1936

1. $\mathbb{W}h1+!$ (1. $\mathbb{W}g1?$ $\mathbb{W}c7!$)

1. $\mathbb{W}h1+!$ $\mathbb{K}g4$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{K}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e6!$ $\mathbb{W}c7(f8)$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d6!+-$



12-14

12/5

W?

Show/Hide Solution

12/5. L.Kubbel 1929

Both 1. $\mathbb{W}g1?? \mathbb{Q}e4$

and 1. $\mathbb{W}f1+? \mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c4+ \mathbb{Q}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d3+ \mathbb{Q}f4!$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e3+ \mathbb{Q}f1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3+-$) 4. $\mathbb{W}e2?$ $e4$ give nothing.

1. $\mathbb{W}g2!$ (Δ 2. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$) 1... $f5$

1... $e4$ is quite bad: 2. $\mathbb{W}g3+ \mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$

2. $\mathbb{W}e2!$ (Δ 3. $\mathbb{W}e3\#$)

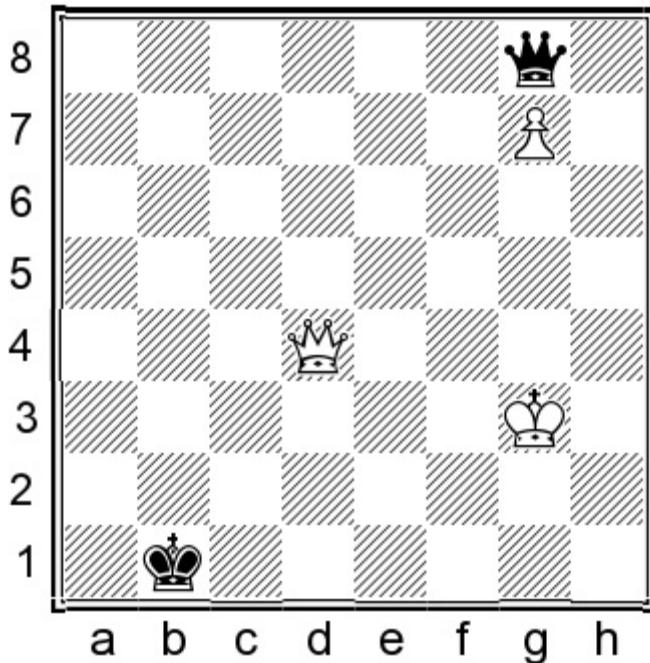
Rather than 2. $\mathbb{W}f1+? \mathbb{Q}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c4+ \mathbb{Q}f3$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d3+ \mathbb{Q}f2!$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ 5. $\mathbb{W}e3\#$) 5. $\mathbb{W}e3+ \mathbb{Q}f1$, and 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3??$ loses to 6... $f4+$

2... $e4$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e1!$ (Δ 4. $\mathbb{W}g3\#$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $d4+!$ and 5. $\mathbb{W}xa5$.

Chasing after the king has suddenly resulted in catching the queen.

The main tactical tools which can save a difficult queen-and-pawn endgame are *stalemate* and *perpetual check*.

Y.Averbakh 1962



12-15

\$

W

A straightforward implementation of the king-to-king process does not bring any success here.

1. ♕f2?! ♜f7+ 2. ♕e1 ♜e6+ 3. ♕d1 ♜b3+ 4. ♕d2 ♜a2+! 5. ♕e3 (the checks seem to be exhausted)
5... ♜b3+! 6. ♜d3+? ♔a1!=

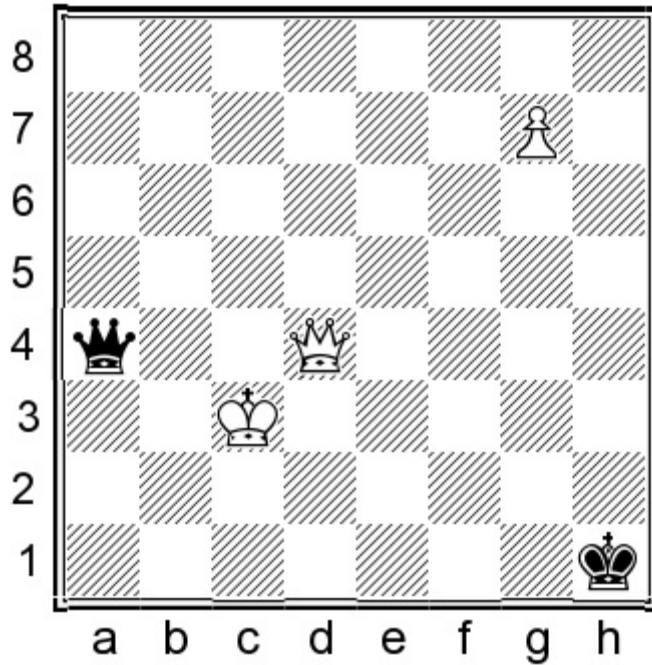
The queen cannot be captured because of stalemate, while a king's retreat loses the pawn: 7. ♕d4 ♜b4+! 8. ♜c4 (8. ♜d5 ♜b7+; 8. ♜e5 ♜e7+) 8... ♜d2+ 9. ♜c5 ♜g5+.

Both 1. ♜e4+

and 1. ♜g4 win, but the simplest winning procedure is moving the king downstairs to g1 (where the black queen cannot reach it) followed by a queen transfer to f8.

1. ♜g1+! ♔a2 2. ♜g2+ ♔a1 (2... ♔a3 is the same) 3. ♜h2! ♜b8+ (3... ♜h7+ 4. ♜g1) 4. ♜h1 ♜g8 5. ♜g1!
♔b1 6. ♜f1+ ♔b2 7. ♜f8+-

J.Speelman



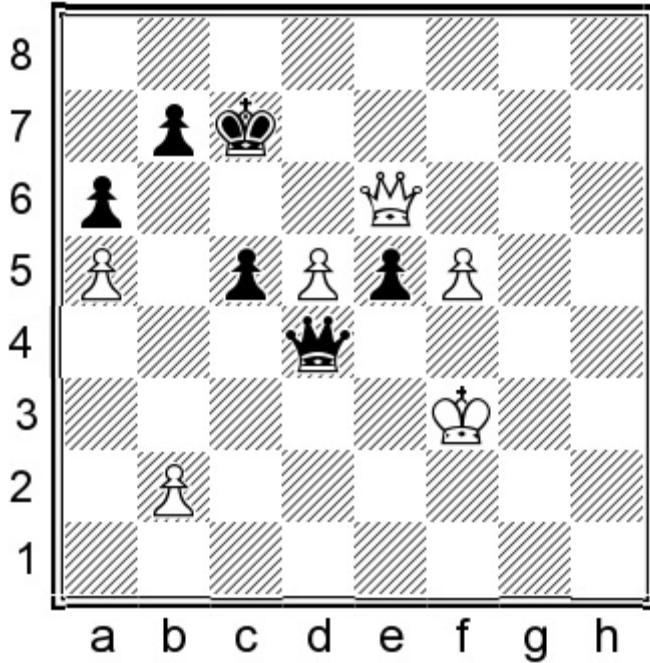
12-16
B

This is a standard configuration of a perpetual check, when the king cannot abandon its queen.

1... $\mathbb{W}a1+$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{W}d1+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{W}g1+$! 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{W}g4+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{W}d7+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{W}a7+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{W}a4+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{W}a1+$ etc. This is sometimes called a “wheel check” because it rotates like a wheel.

The following example demonstrates an interesting maneuver by the white king. After the threat of perpetual check had been eliminated, White exploited his advantage in an instructive way.

Tukmakov – Agzamov
Erevan zt 1982



12-17

W?

1.♔g3!

The premature advance 1.f6? leads to a draw: 1...♕f4+ 2.♔g2 ♕g5+ 3.♔h3 ♕h5+

1.♔g3!

Therefore Tukmakov brings his king to h3 first, and only then does he intend to push the f-pawn. For example, 1...c4?! 2.♔h3! (2.f6? is still wrong; 2.♕b6+? also does not win in view of 2...♗xb6 3.axb6+ ♔d7! 4.f6 a5 5.♔g4 e4!=) 2...♗xb2 3.f6!±.

1...♕f4+ 2.♔h3 c4

While the white queen protects the h6-square, Black has no perpetual check.

3.♕e7+ ♔c8

3...♔b8 4.♕f8+ ♔a7 was more tenacious, although after 5.d6! e4 6.d7 or 5...♕g5 6.♕f7, Black's situation still would have been difficult.

4.♕f8+ ♔d7 5.f6+– ♕f3+ 6.♔h4 ♕f4+ 7.♔h5 ♕f3+ 8.♔g6 ♕e4+ 9.♔g7 ♕g2+ 10.♔h7 ♕e4+ 11.♔g8

The king, as usual, has found an exile from the checks on an adjacent rank to his adversary.

11...♗xd5+ 12.f7 ♔c6

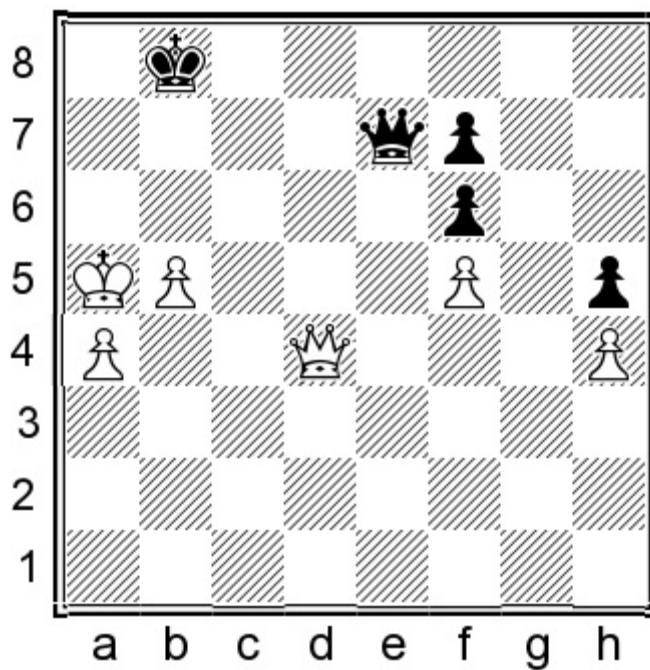
12...♕e6 13.♕g7 e4 14.♔h8+–

13.♕c8+ ♔b5 14.♔g7 ♕g2+ 15.♔f6 ♕f3+ 16.♔e7 Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Chigorin – Schlechter

Ostende 1905



12-18

B

1... $\mathbb{W}c7+!$

The last trap in this totally hopeless position.

2. $\mathbb{W}b6+??$

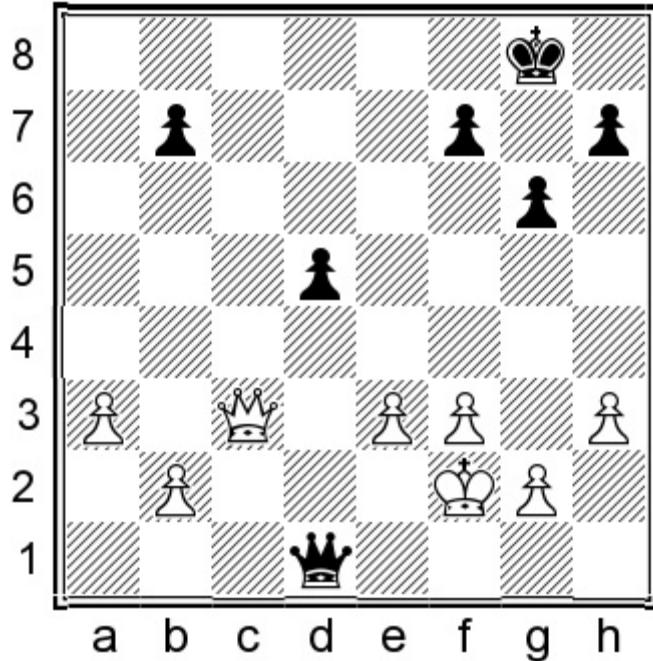
After 2.b6 or 2. $\mathbb{Q}b4$, Black would have had only one option – to capitulate.

2... $\mathbb{Q}a8!$

Draw. If White takes the queen Black is stalemated, otherwise a sort of perpetual check happens:
3. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{W}c8+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{W}c7!$

Alekhine – Maróczy

New York 1924



12-19

W

White's extra pawn must bring him a relatively easy win. Alekhine recommends 1. $\mathbb{W}d4!$ $\mathbb{W}c2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (Δ 2....-- 3. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}xb2$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d4+$) 2... $\mathbb{W}c6$ 3. a4.

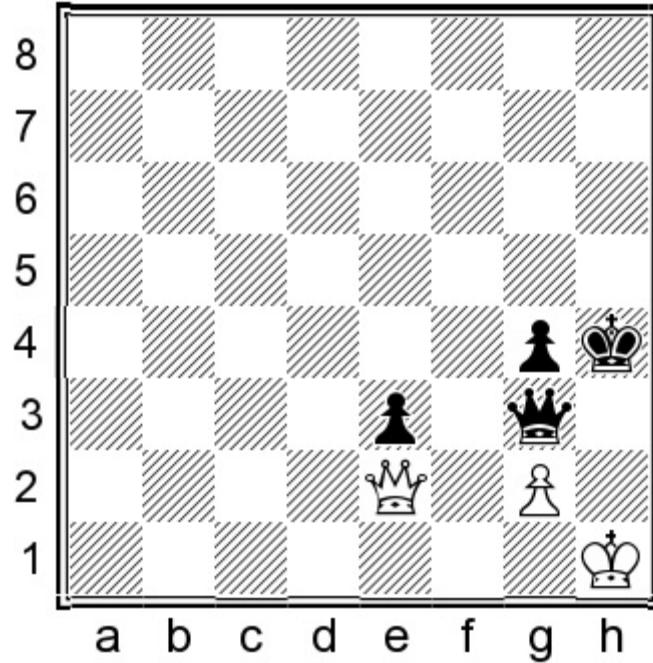
1. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$, planning 2. $\mathbb{Q}h2$, was also strong.

However, White greedily went after the b7-pawn.

1. $\mathbb{W}c8+??$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xb7??$ (it was not too late to retreat: 2. $\mathbb{W}c3+$) 2... $\mathbb{W}d2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ d4! 4. exd4 $\mathbb{W}g5+$

Draw. The king cannot escape the checks.

Exercises



12-20

12/6

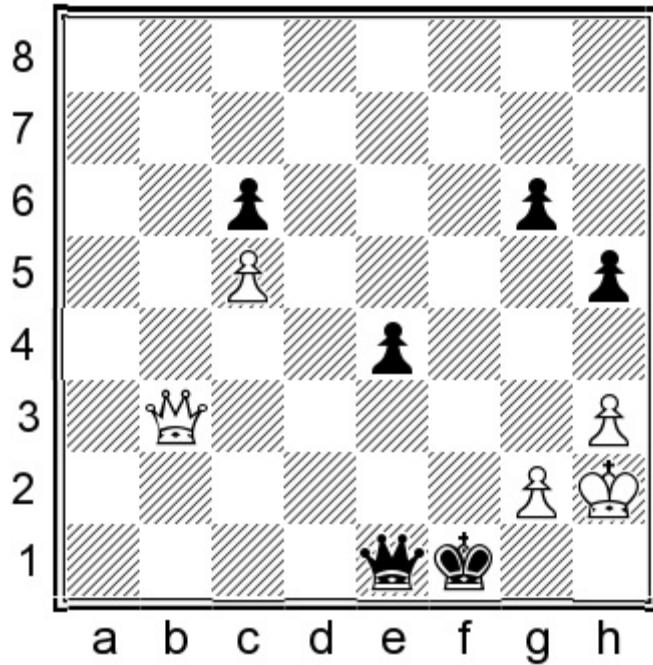
W?

Show/Hide Solution

12/6. Ermolin-Petriaev, USSR 1971*

After 1.♔g1? ♔e5 White is in serious trouble. A nice combination helps him.

1.♕f2!! ♕xf2 (1...exf2 – stalemate) 2.g3+ and Black cannot avoid stalemate.



12-21

12/7

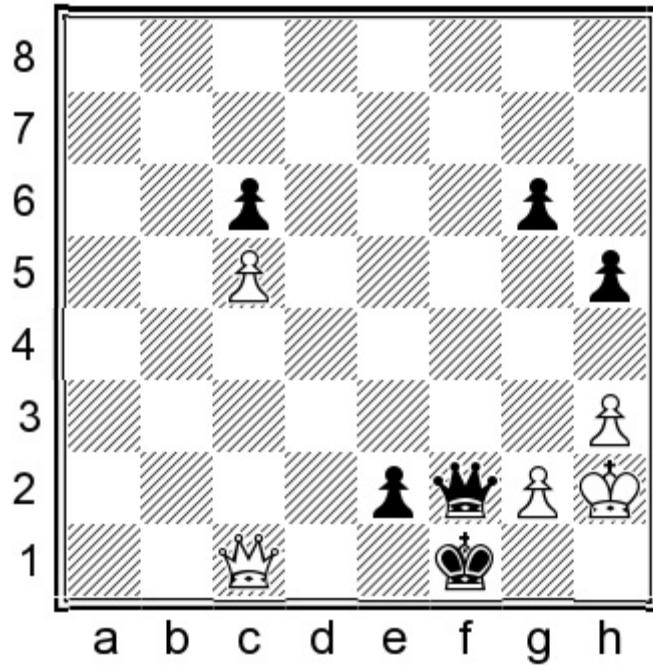
B?

Show/Hide Solution

12/7. Szily-Ozsváth, Hungary ch 1954

The game continued: 1... $\mathbb{W}c1?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ (if 2... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xg6 \mathbb{W}f4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{W}e5$, then 5. $\mathbb{W}d6!=$, rather than 5. $\mathbb{W}xc6?$ $\mathbb{W}a1+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{Q}f2$ with an inevitable mate) 3. $\mathbb{W}xg6 \mathbb{W}f4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{W}f1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{W}c4$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xc6$ e3 7. $\mathbb{W}d6$, and the game is equal.

Why did Black not push his passed pawn? Presumably, he calculated the line 1...e3! 2. $\mathbb{W}c4+$ (2. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{W}f2$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xg6 \mathbb{W}f4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ e2 5. $\mathbb{W}d3 \mathbb{Q}f2$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c2 \mathbb{W}g5-$) 2...e2 3. $\mathbb{W}f4+$ $\mathbb{W}f2$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c1+$



16-96

B?

...and came to the conclusion that it leads to perpetual check: 4...e1=Q 5.Qc4+ Qf2 6.Qf4+ Q1f2 7.Qc1+ etc.

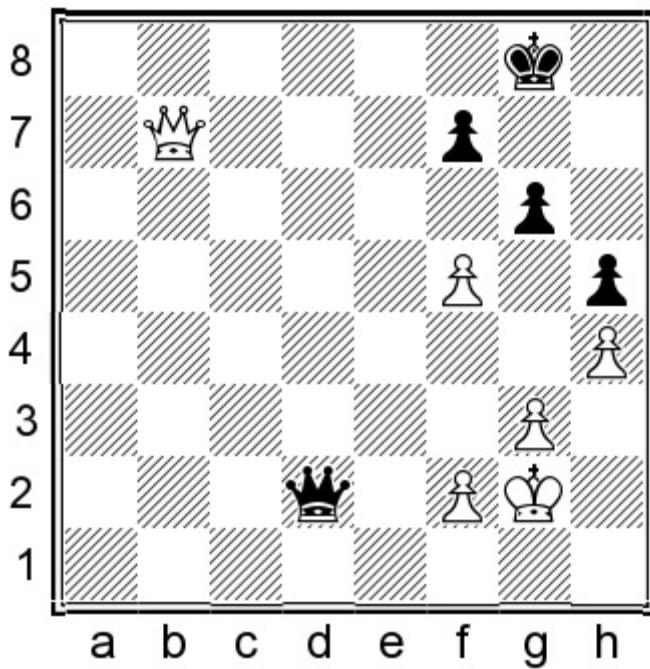
However, underpromotion to a knight could prevent the perpetual check: 4...e1=N!! 5.Qc4+ Qe2 6.Qf4+ Nf3+! 7.Qxf3+ Qxf3 8.gxf3 Nf2+–

Show in Text Mode

Pawns on the Same Wing

With a normal pawn structure, endgames of “one pawn versus two,” “two pawns versus three,” and “three pawns versus four” on the same wing are drawn.

Larsen – Keres
San Antonio 1972



12-22
W

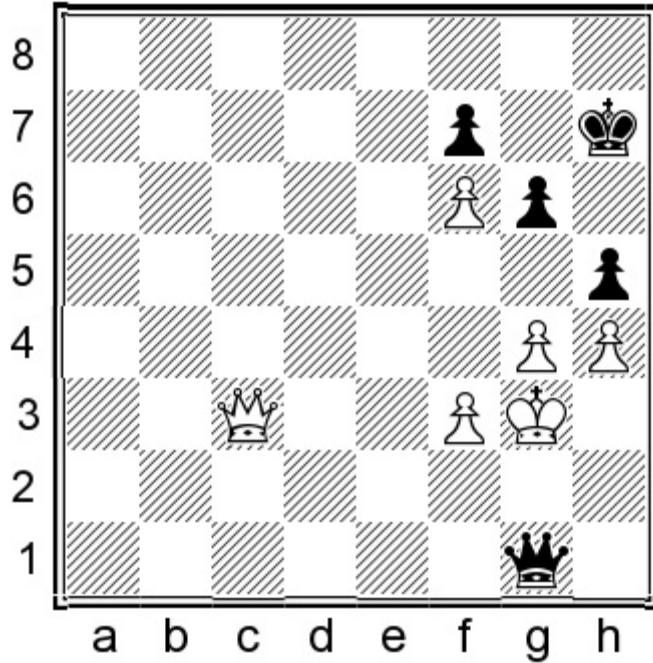
1.f6

An alternative was 1.fxg6 fxg6 2.♔e4±. The basic defensive principle is simple: Black should prevent an invasion by the white king.

1.f6

The move actually played also does not promise any winning chances. Even with the f5-pawn moved to the e-file, there would have been no win.

1...♕d8 2.♕c6 ♔h7 3.♕c3 ♕d5+ 4.f3 ♕a2+ 5.♔h3 ♕b1 6.♔g2 ♕a2+ 7.♔f1 ♕a6+ 8.♔e1 ♕e6+
9.♔f2 ♕a2+ 10.♔g1 ♕b1+ 11.♔g2 ♕a2+ 12.♔h3 ♕b1 13.g4 ♕h1+ 14.♔g3 ♕g1+



12-23

W

15.†f4?!

White should have accepted a drawn outcome: 15.†h3. The attempt to play for a win turns out to be playing for a loss.

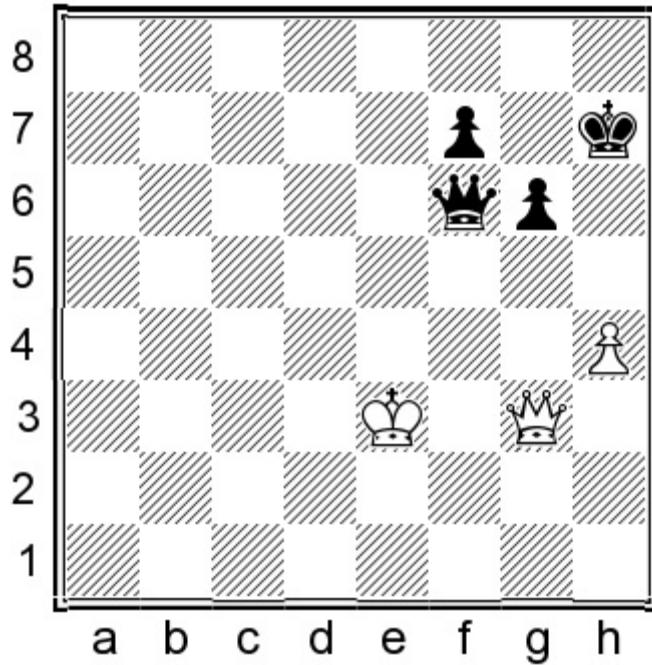
15...†h2+ 16.†g5??

16.†e3 is still sufficient to draw.

16...†g3!

There is no satisfactory defense from 17...hxg4.

17.†e3 hxg4 18.†f4 †xf3 19.†xg4 †e3+ 20.†f4 †e2 21.†g3 †b5+ 22.†f4 †f5+ 23.†e3 †xf6+–



12-24

W

In this case, two pawns win against one. Firstly, because one of them is passed; second, because the white king is cut off from the kingside and the h4-pawn is therefore vulnerable.

24. $\mathbb{W}g5 \mathbb{W}f1$ 25. $\mathbb{W}g4$ (25. $\mathbb{W}d8 \mathbb{Q}g7 \Delta \mathbb{W}f6$) 25... $\mathbb{W}e1+$ (the king is driven away even more) 26. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{W}e6$ 27. $\mathbb{W}f4 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 28. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $f6$ 29. $\mathbb{W}b4$ (29. $\mathbb{W}f4 \mathbb{W}e5$ 30. $\mathbb{W}g4 \mathbb{Q}h6$) 29... $\mathbb{W}f5+$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

If 30. $\mathbb{Q}e3$, Black wins by means of 30... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 31. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 32. $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 33. $\mathbb{W}h6 \mathbb{W}f3+!$, forcing a queen exchange.

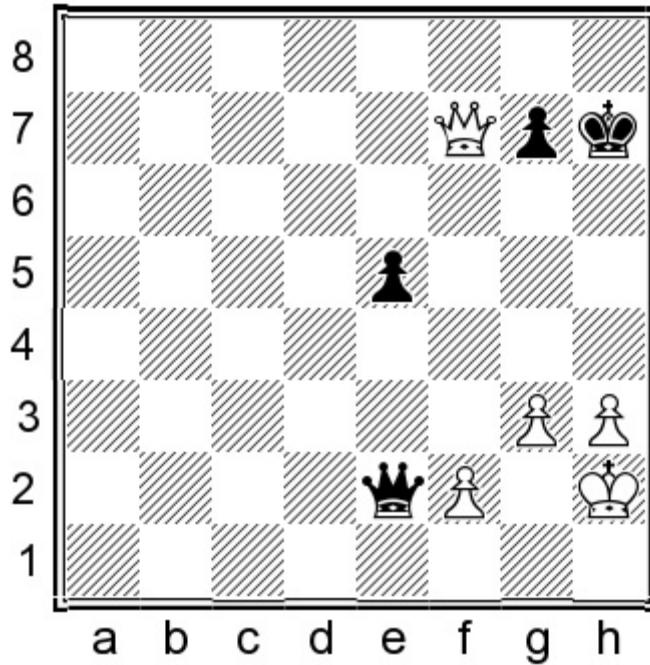
30... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}e1$

After 31. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 32. $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 33. $\mathbb{W}h6$, the check from f3 is weaker because of 34. $\mathbb{Q}e1$, but Black has 33... $\mathbb{W}h5!$, and every queen retreat will be met with ... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ resulting in a discovered check. Quicker success can be achieved by means of 33... $\mathbb{W}c2+!$ and 34... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ – a mating attack.

31... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 32. $\mathbb{W}c4 \mathbb{W}g4$ 33. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 34. $\mathbb{W}e7 \mathbb{W}f5$ 35. $\mathbb{W}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 36. $\mathbb{W}c4 g5$ 37. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 38. $\mathbb{W}f8 \mathbb{Q}g3$ 39. $\mathbb{W}a3+ \mathbb{W}f3$ 40. $\mathbb{W}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 41. $\mathbb{W}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 42. $\mathbb{W}d7+ f5$ 43. $\mathbb{W}g7 g4$ 44. $\mathbb{W}h8+ \mathbb{Q}g3$ 45. $\mathbb{W}e5+ f4$ 46. $\mathbb{W}b8 \mathbb{W}e3+$ 47. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{Q}g2$ White resigned.

Averbakh – Suetin

USSR ch, Kiev 1954



12-25

W?

White's plan is a king attack and it must be successful because Black's pawn structure is destroyed.

1.g4! ♕d2

1...e4 2.♔g3 e3? fails to 3.♕h5+ ♔g8 4.♕e8+ ♔h7 5.♕xe3.

2.♔g3 ♕c3+ 3.♔h4 ♕d4 4.♕f5+ g6

Or 4...♔g8 5.♔h5! and g4-g5-g6.

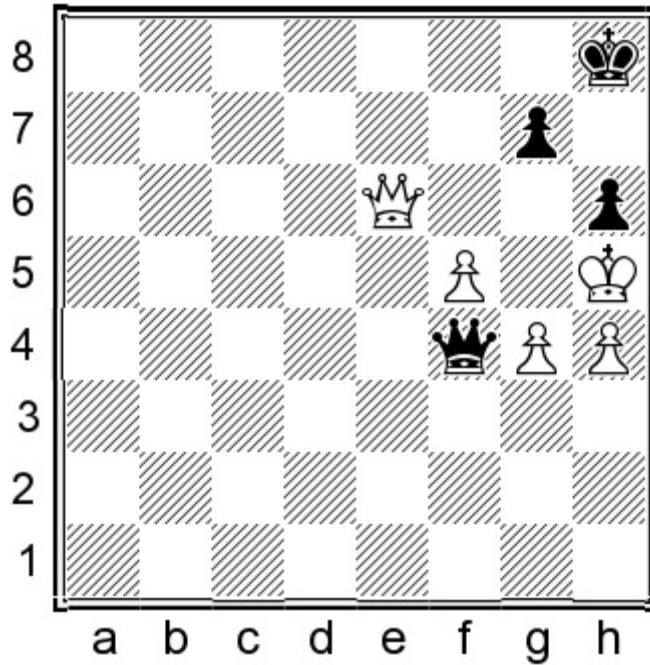
5.♕f7+ ♔h6 6.♕f6 ♔h7 7.♔g5 ♕d2+ 8.f4! exf4 9.♕f7+ ♔h8 10.♔h6 Black resigned.

Please pay attention to the fact that White exploits Black's pawns as *an umbrella* giving protection from queen checks. We learned this technique when studying rook-and-pawn endings; it is no less important for queen endgames too.

Tragicomедies

Shcherbakov – Arlazarov

USSR 1972



12-26

W

1.f6!

The game Mackenzie-Sergeant (Edinburgh 1920), where the same position occurred, continued 1.♔g6? ♔xg4+ 2.♔f7 ♔h5+?? (2...♔h7!=) 3.♔f8, and Black resigned because of an inevitable mate.

But 1.g5 hxg5 2.♔g6 ♔b8 3.hxg5 (V. Keymer) wins as well.

1.f6! ♔h7!? (1...gxf6 2.♔g6) **2.fxg7??**

White overlooks a queen sacrifice that forces a stalemate. Both 2.♔f5+! ♔xf5+ 3.gxf5 gxf6 4.♔g4 ♔g7 5.♔f4 ♔f7 6.♔e4 ♔e7 7.♔d5 ♔d7 8.h5# and the more spectacular 2.f7! ♔e5+! 3.g5! (3.♔xe5?? g6#) 3...♔xe6 4.f8=♕+! were winning.

2...♔f7+! Draw.

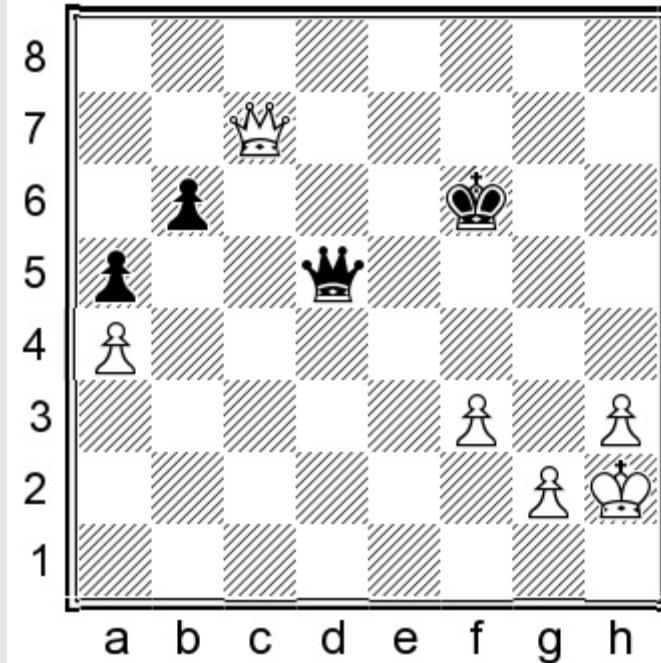
A Passed Pawn

A passed pawn supported by a queen is a powerful instrument. To stop it, the combined efforts of a king and a queen are required; a queen alone cannot manage it.

When the passed pawn is well advanced, it can outweigh an opponent's huge material advantage on another wing.

Averbakh – Zurakhov

Minsk 1952



12-27

B

1...b5! **2.axb5** (2. $\mathbb{W}xa5?$ $\mathbb{W}e5+$) **2... $\mathbb{W}xb5$**

2... $\mathbb{W}e5+?$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xe5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ fails because of 4.h4! a4 5.h5 a3 6.h6 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7.b6+–

3. $\mathbb{W}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}g7!?$) 4.h4

If the a-pawn were a bit more advanced, the peaceful outcome would not be in doubt: White would have to settle for a perpetual at some point. But, under current conditions, he still has winning chances.

The point is that if the black king stands in the way of the white pawns, their advance (and, eventually, a king intervention) can create mating threats. On the other hand, if Black holds his king aside, then the h-pawn balances Black's passed pawn, while their exchange still leaves White his two extra pawns.

4...a4 5. $\mathbb{W}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7?$

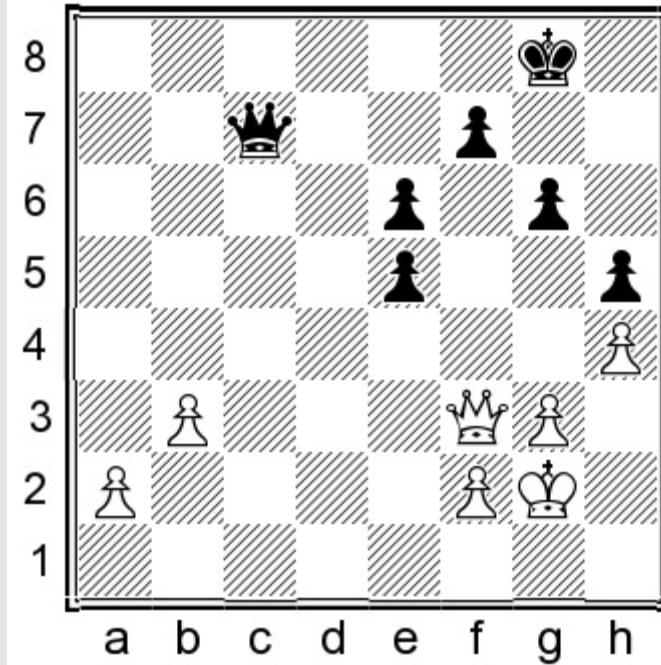
7... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ draws because of the counterplay with the a-pawn.

8.h5 $\mathbb{W}e5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3$

Black resigned in view of 9...a3 10.h6 a2 11. $\mathbb{W}g7+$ $\mathbb{W}xg7$ 12.hxg7 a1= \mathbb{W} 13.g8= \mathbb{W} +–

Euwe – Reshevsky

Nottingham 1936



12-28

W?

In this sort of position, White's standard plan is to place his queen on a8 and then to push the a-pawn to the promotion square. The queen not only supports the pawn advance; it also protects the king from checks along the long diagonal. The only constructive idea for the weaker side is to achieve a perpetual check; to this end, he must destroy the position of the white king.

1. $\mathbb{Q}a8+$!

1.b4? $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 2.a3 e4 is not good;

1.a4? $\mathbb{Q}a5$ is also erroneous.

1. $\mathbb{Q}a8+! \mathbb{Q}g7$ 2.a4 $\mathbb{Q}b6?$

Alekhine indicated that 2... $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ was much more tenacious, but in the long run it should also lose after 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ e4 5.b4 e3 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a8+-$.

3.a5!+– $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 4.a6 $\mathbb{Q}a3$

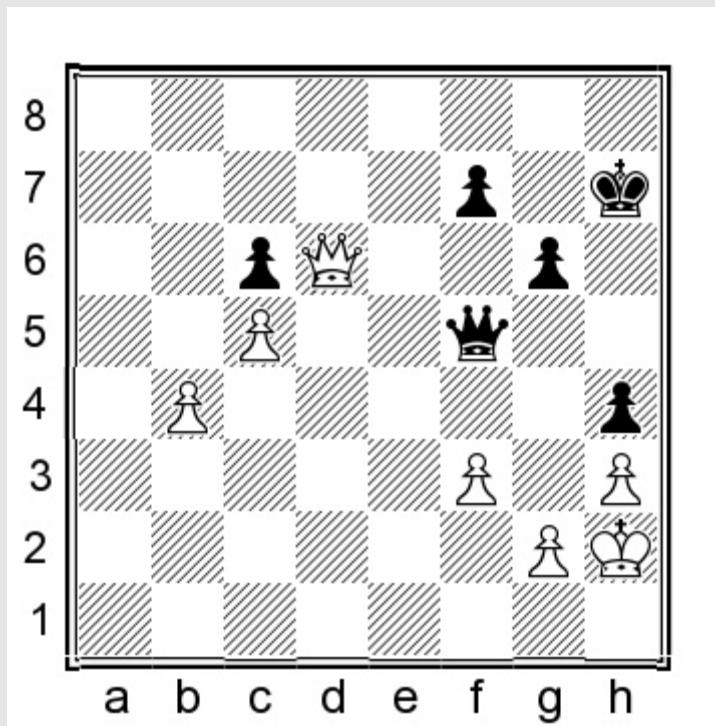
After 4... $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 5.a7 e4 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ e3 7.a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h3$, Black has no perpetual check.

5.a7 e4 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}d1+$

7...e3 8.a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h1+–$

8. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$

Black resigned (9... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$).



12-29

W

1.b5! cxb5 2.c6

The same strategy that we have seen in the previous example, but there is a cardinal difference between these two endings: White's queen will be obliged to abandon the h2-b8 diagonal in order to take control over the promotion square, giving Black opportunities for checks. The question is whether there will be a perpetual check.

2... \mathbb{Q} c2??!

As will be seen, it would have been better for Black to jettison the b-pawn: 2...b4 3. \mathbb{Q} xb4 \mathbb{Q} e5+ 4.f4 \mathbb{Q} c7. Nevertheless, with 5. \mathbb{Q} c4, White still wins in the long run.

3. \mathbb{Q} d5

Simpler was 3. \mathbb{Q} d7! (but not 3.c7? \mathbb{Q} c3!, the consequences of which we shall study later) 3... \mathbb{Q} c4 4.c7, coming directly to a position that will occur later in the game.

3... \mathbb{Q} h6

Black does not allow a capture on f7 with check. 3... \mathbb{Q} g7?, with the same purpose, is weaker in view of 4. \mathbb{Q} d4+!

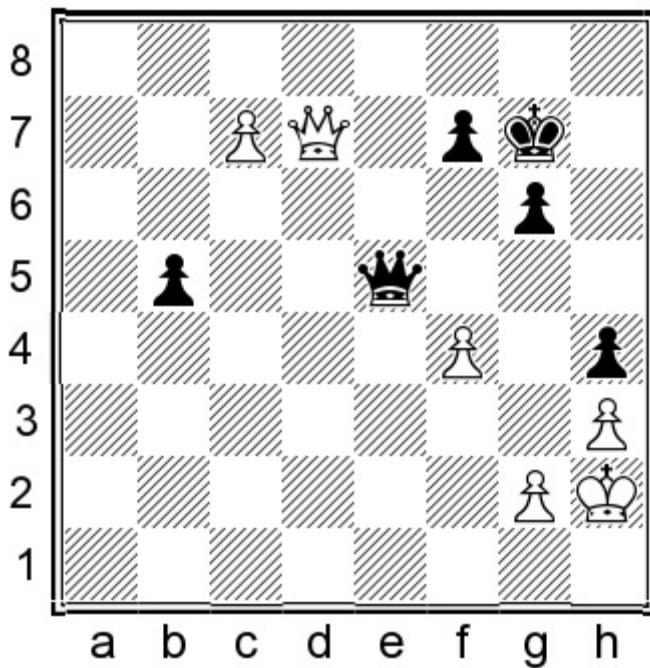
4. \mathbb{Q} d6?

Maróczy, a recognized expert in queen endings, leaves the b5-pawn alive, hoping that it will eventually serve as an "umbrella" for his king. However, in this instance Black has a subtle defense.

Correct was 4. $\mathbb{W}xb5$ $\mathbb{W}c1$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d5!$, winning.

4... $\mathbb{W}c4?$

4... $\mathbb{Q}h7?$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d7!$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 6. c7 leads to a transposition of moves; if 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$, then the same check, 5. $\mathbb{W}d4+!$, is again very strong. Finally, 4... b4? is quite bad because of 5. c7, with threats of 6. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ and 6. $\mathbb{W}d7$. The only defense is 4... $\mathbb{W}c3!$ The queen must seek to check from e5 rather than f4. 5. c7 (5. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xf7$ $\mathbb{W}xc6$ 7. f4 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 9. $\mathbb{W}xh4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ is a position similar to that from the Averbakh-Zhuravlev game, but the g6-pawn is present here; it gives the king protection, and therefore a draw is obvious) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 6. $\mathbb{W}d7$ $\mathbb{W}e5+$ 7. f4



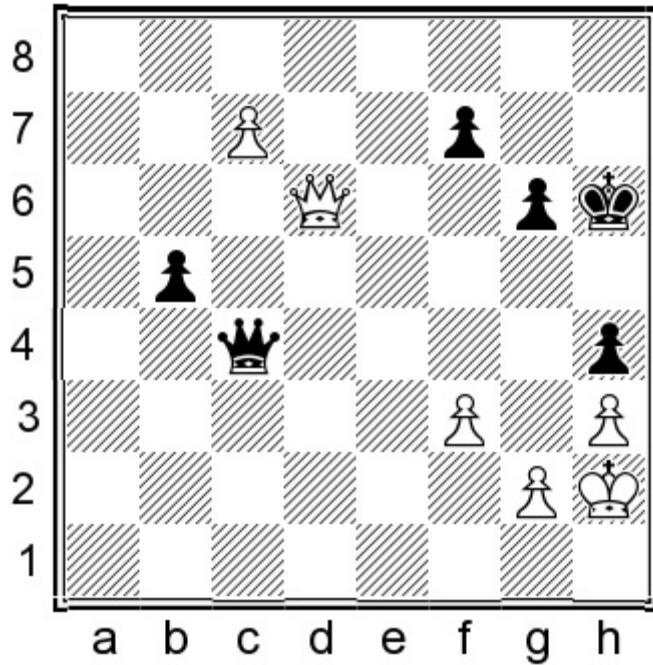
12-29a

B?

7... $\mathbb{W}c3!!$ This is the key saving resource. The white queen cannot both help the pawn promote and prevent the perpetual check through e1-g3. Therefore, this is a draw, for example: 8. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ (8... $\mathbb{W}g3+??$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$) 9. $\mathbb{W}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 10. f5 g5 or 10... b4 11. fxg6+ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$.

Now let us see what happened in the game:

5. c7



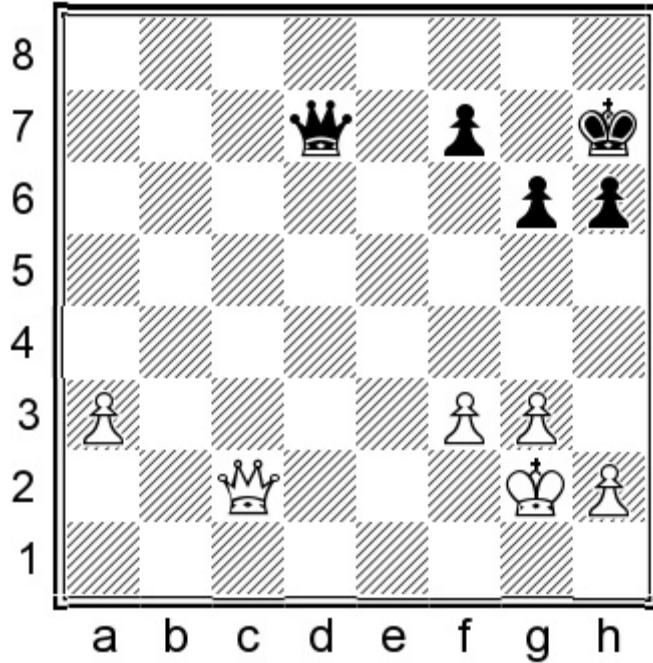
12-29b
B

5... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}d7!$ $\mathbb{W}f4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}c1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{W}c5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{W}c2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{W}c5+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ Black resigned.

On 11... $\mathbb{W}c2+$ (with the idea of 12. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{W}a2+$), White continues 12. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{W}c3+$ (12... $\mathbb{W}b2+$ 13. $\mathbb{W}d4!$) 13. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{W}c4+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{W}b4+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{W}c3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b7$. Maróczy's plan to use the b5-pawn as an umbrella succeeds after all.

Diagrams 12-30 and 12-31 have been intentionally omitted.

Alekhine – Reshevsky
Amsterdam 1938



12-32

W

1. $\mathbb{W}a2 \mathbb{Q}g8$ 2. $a4 \mathbb{W}c6$ 3. $a5 \mathbb{W}a6$

White could have had chances for success with his pawn on f2, although the winning process would have required much effort. In the actual position, his king is too exposed and a win is therefore beyond his reach.

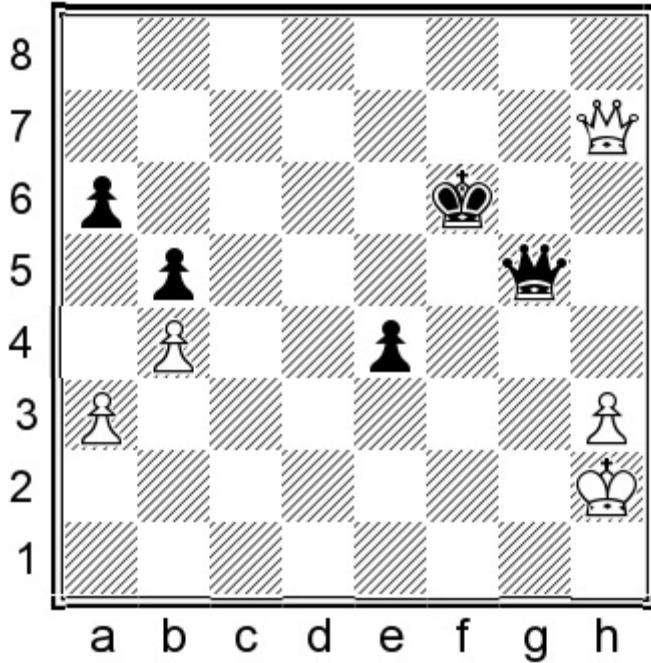
4. $g4$ $g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{W}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{W}a6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}b2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{W}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{W}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{W}a7+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{W}a6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{W}c4!$

Reshevsky prevents the white king from drawing near the pawn.

14. $\mathbb{W}f5 \mathbb{W}d4+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{W}b2+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{W}b3+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{W}b2+$ Draw.

Prandstetter – Gheorghiu

Warsaw zt 1979



12-33

B?

Black obviously stands better because his passed pawn is far more advanced than White's. But can he exploit this advantage? Black could achieve success by means of a king invasion to support his pawn, but this is not easy to do. Let us study a few of possible attempts.

1...e3? is harmless in view of 2.♔e4!= or 2.♕c7!=

The try to activate the king immediately by 1...♔e5? is tempting. The variation 2.♕c7+ ♔d4 3.♕c5+? ♕xc5 4.bxc5 leads to a pawn endgame which quickly converts to a queen ending won for Black: 4...♔xc5! (4...e3? 5.♔g2=) 5.h4 (5.♔g2 ♔d4 6.♔f2? ♔d3 7.♔e1 a5+) 5...♔d4! 6.h5 e3 (6...♔e5? 7.♔g3 a5 8.h6 ♔f6 9.♔f4 b4 10.axb4 a4 11.b5=) 7.♔g2 (7.h6 e2 8.h7 e1=♕ 9.h8=♕+ ♕e5+) 7...♔d3 8.h6 e2 9.h7 e1=♕ 10.h8=♕ ♕d2+ and 11...♔c2++

However, instead of the exchange of queens, 3.♕d6+! draws: 3...♔c4 4.♕e6+! ♔d3 5.♕b3+ Even a move earlier 2.♕h8+ can be played: 2...♔d5 (on 2...♔f4 3.♕f8+ ♔e3 4.♕c5+ the pawn ending is drawn) 3.♕c3!, and the king cannot make any progress.

After 1...♕d2+! 2.♔g3 e3? Black threatens a further pawn advance as well as 3...♔e5. However, White has 3.♕h4+! (control over the f2-square is vital) 3...♔e5 4.♔f3!=

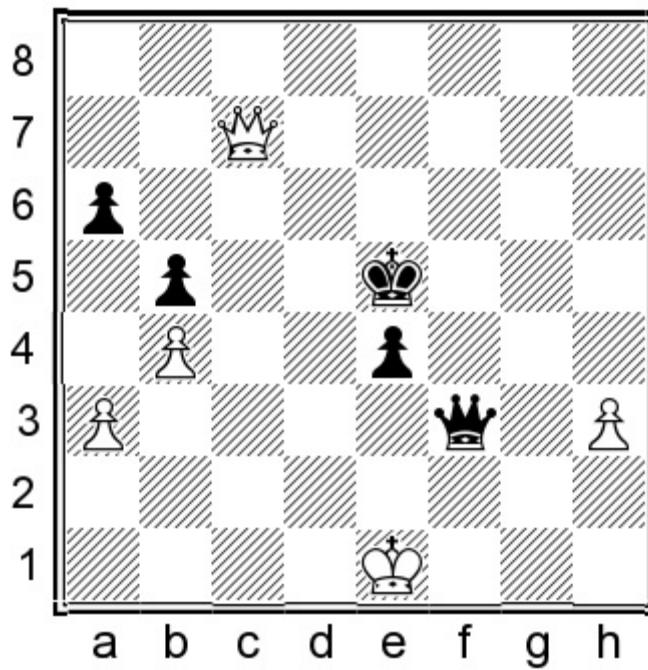
However, 2...♕e3+ (instead of 2...e3?) 3.♔g2 ♕e2+! 4.♔g3 ♔e5! puts White in an extremely difficult position. He can neither exchange queens on c5 nor impede the forward progress of the enemy king.

1...♕f4+ 2.♔g1 ♕g3+? (Black still wins with 2...♕c1+! 3.♔g2 ♕d2+ 4.♔f1 e3!) **3.♔f1 ♕f3+ 4.♔e1=**

The white king has managed to stand in front of the black pawn, so it is a simple draw. What happens now resembles the Larsen-Keres ending: Black, in search of winning chances, forgets all caution and

allows an exchange of queens when it is already winning for White.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c7+$



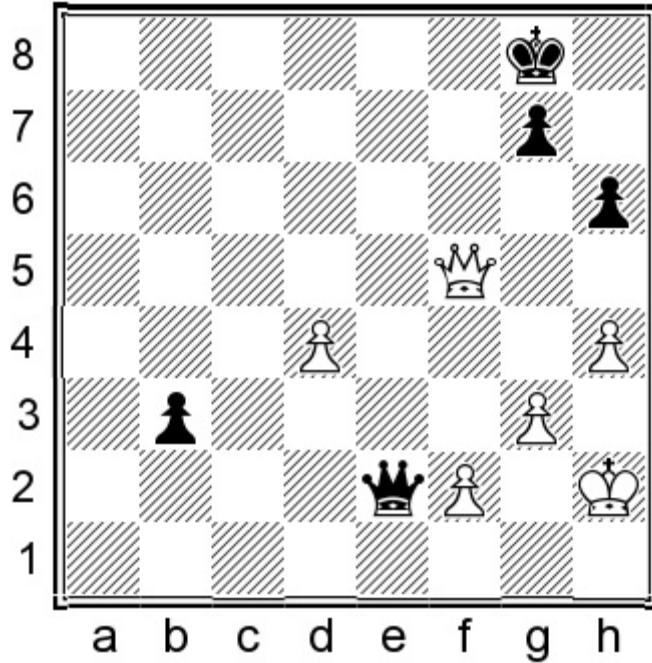
12-34

B

5... $\mathbb{Q}d4??$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 8. $\mathbb{W}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 9. $\mathbb{W}d1+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xf3+$ $exf3$ 11. $h4$ Black resigned.

Tragicomедies

Karpov – Agdestein
Gjovik m (1) 1991



12-35

W

White should have accepted that there is no win, playing either 1. $\mathbb{W}c8+$ or 1. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xb3$ $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}xd4$.

1.d5??

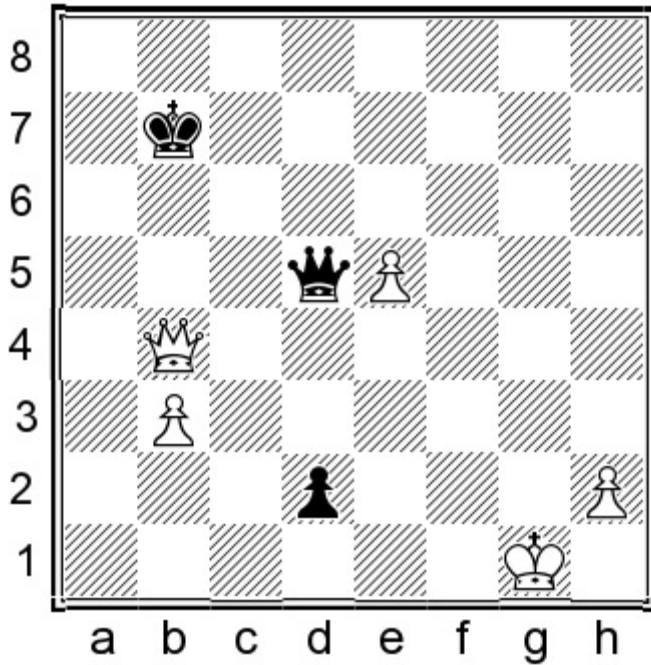
Karpov expected only 1...b2? 2.d6 $\mathbb{W}d1$ (2...b1= \mathbb{W} 3. $\mathbb{W}xb1$ $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h3$) 3.d7 b1= \mathbb{W} 4. $\mathbb{W}xb1$ $\mathbb{W}xd7$ and wished to torment his opponent some more in a drawn endgame, a delusion that was very unpleasant.

1... $\mathbb{W}c2!-$

By taking control over the b1-h7 diagonal Black assures both the safety of his king and the promotion of his pawn.

2. $\mathbb{W}f3$ b2 3. d6 b1= \mathbb{W} 4. d7 $\mathbb{W}bd1$ 5. $\mathbb{W}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ White resigned.

Exercises



12-36

12/8

B?

Show/Hide Solution

12/8. Ehvest-Topalov, Novgorod 1995

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}c8??$ 2. $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$, a draw was agreed, in view of 3. $\mathbb{W}d1=$

1... $\mathbb{Q}c7!$

1... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ is less precise: after 2. $\mathbb{W}a4+$ he should go back (2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7!$) because 2... $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ 3. $\mathbb{W}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}a8+$ leads to perpetual check. The outcome of the complicated duel between the king and queen in the line 2... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}a7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ is hard to foresee.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ (2. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8)$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$

The king has broken through into the opposite camp where it can both find a refuge from checks and support its passed pawn.

An Active Queen

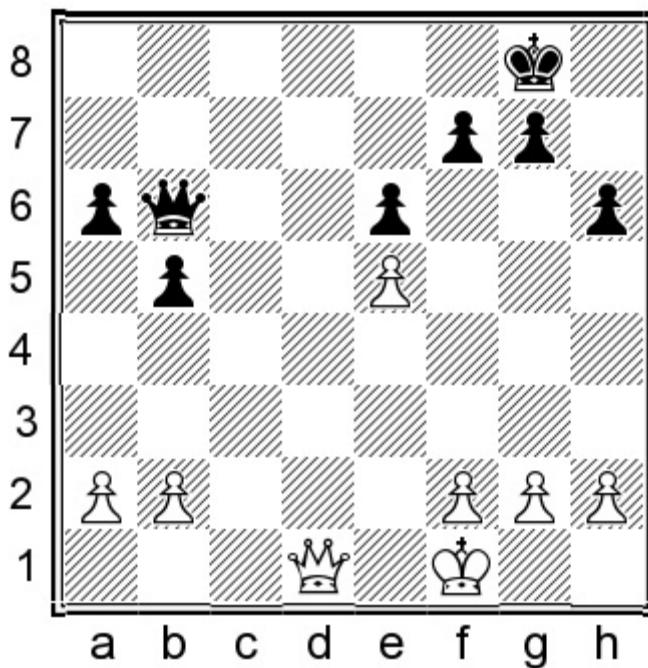
The queen is a very mobile piece that can rapidly reach any part of the board. Therefore a more active position of the queen (compared with the opponent's queen) is usually only a temporary advantage which should be exploited immediately. But this advantage can be lasting, too: such is the

case when the enemy's queen is chained to its own weak pawns.

This advantage is particularly tangible when the opponent's king is exposed. The stronger side's resources are dramatically rich in such cases: from a queen transfer (with checks) to a more favorable position or a double attack, to a queen exchange and even a mating attack.

Marshall – Maróczy

Ostende 1905



12-37

B

1... $\mathbb{W}c5$

The e5-pawn is White's main weakness. If it were standing on e3, the position would be even.

2. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ (2.f4? $\mathbb{W}c4+$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d3+$ $g6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{W}d5!$ 5.a3

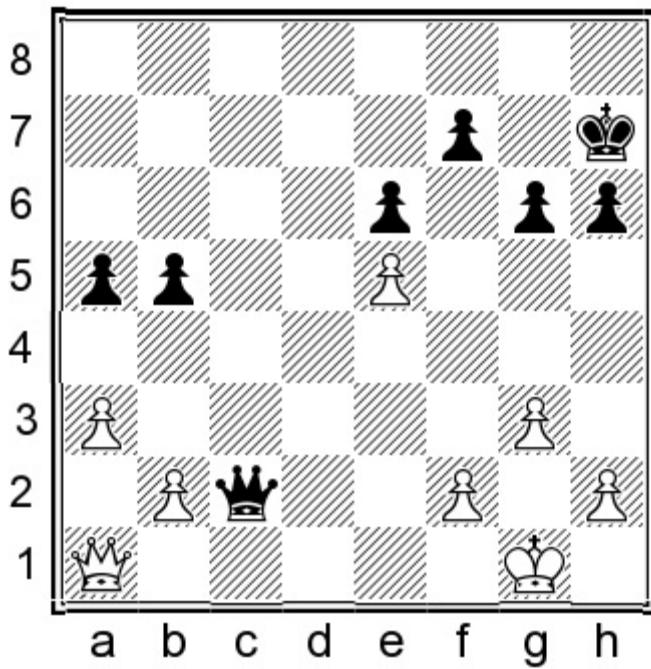
5.b3 is no better. Villeneuve gives the following line: 5... $\mathbb{W}d1+$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e1$ $\mathbb{W}d3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}c2$ 8. $\mathbb{W}a1$ b4! 9.f4 (9. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ g5) 9... $\mathbb{W}c3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}f1$ $\mathbb{W}d4+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{W}b2-$

5... $\mathbb{W}d1+!$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e1$ $\mathbb{W}d3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}c2$ 8. $\mathbb{W}a1$

By means of threats to one pawn or another, and sometimes to the king, Black has precisely driven the white queen away to a corner. The pawn sacrifice 8.b4? $\mathbb{W}b2$ 9.h4, suggested by Panchenko, brings White no relief: 9... $\mathbb{W}xa3$ (9...h5 10. $\mathbb{W}e3$ is weaker) 10.h5 (10. $\mathbb{W}e4$ $\mathbb{W}c1+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}c4-$) 10... $\mathbb{W}d3$ (after 10...gxh5 11. $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}f4$ $\mathbb{W}d3$ 13. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 14. $\mathbb{W}xh6$ White obtains counterplay) 11.hxg6+ $\mathbb{Q}xg6-$

8...a5! 9.g3

9.b4? axb4 10.axb4 $\mathbb{W}e4$ is hopeless.



I2-38
B

9...a4

Maróczy fixes the queenside pawns while the white queen still occupies a miserable position. 9...g5? would have been less precise in view of 10.b4 a4 11. $\mathbb{W}e1$ with drawing chances.

10.f4? (10.h3 is more tenacious) **10... $\mathbb{Q}g8!$**

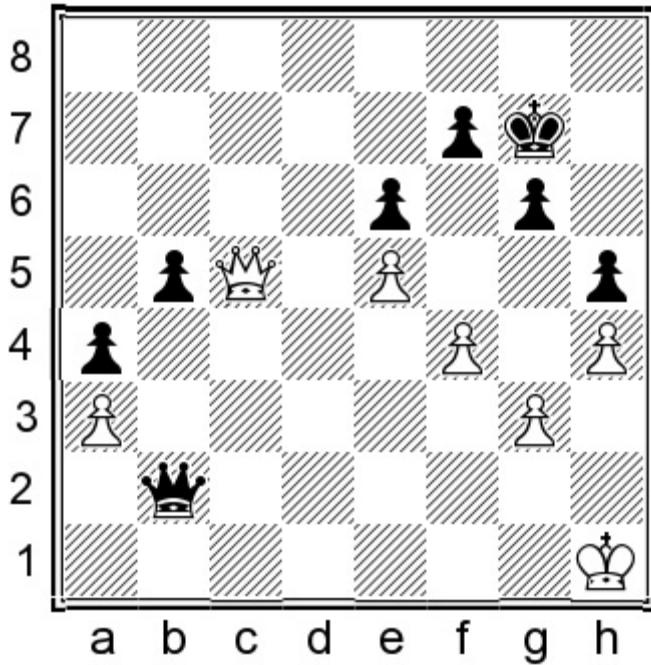
Zugzwang! If 11. $\mathbb{Q}h1$, then 11... $\mathbb{W}f2$ and ...h6-h5-h4.

11.h3 h5 12.h4 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (zugzwang again) **13. $\mathbb{Q}h1$**

13. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ loses right away to 13... $\mathbb{W}h2$. If 13. $\mathbb{W}a2$, then 13... $\mathbb{W}d1+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$, and the white queen is arrested.

13... $\mathbb{W}f2!$ 14. $\mathbb{W}g1$ $\mathbb{W}xb2$ 15. $\mathbb{W}c5$

White lunges in a desperate counterattack but his hopes for perpetual check are not realized.



12-39

B

15...b4! 16.f5!?

After 16. $\mathbb{W}e7$ bxa3?! 17. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{\dot{g}}g8$ 18. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{\dot{h}}h7$ 19. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 20. $\mathbb{\dot{h}}h2$ $\mathbb{W}f5$ 21. $\mathbb{W}xa3$, White still could have had some hopes. However, Black plays 16...b3! 17. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{\dot{g}}g8$ 18. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{\dot{h}}h7$ 19. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 20. $\mathbb{\dot{h}}h2$ $\mathbb{W}f5$ 21. $\mathbb{W}b7$ $\mathbb{\dot{g}}g7$ with an easy win.

16...exf5 17.e6 bxa3 18.exf7

18.e7 a2 19.e8=Q+ $\mathbb{\dot{g}}g8(h7)$ makes no sense.

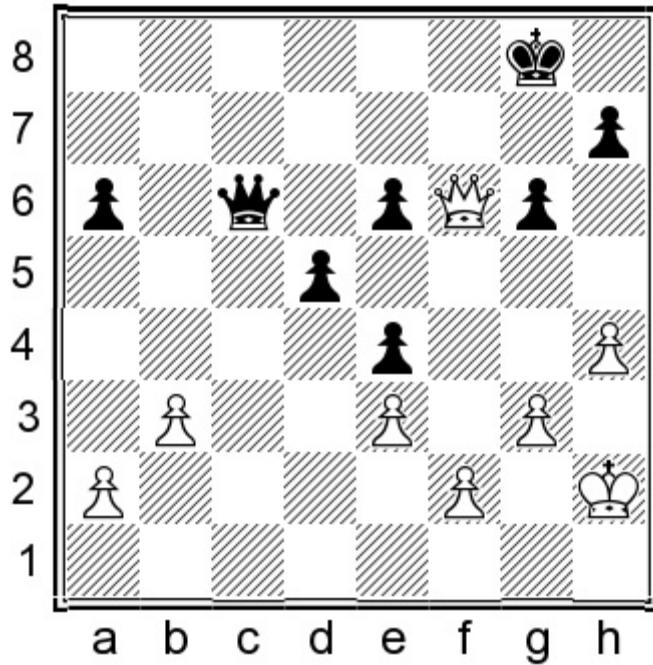
18... $\mathbb{\dot{Q}}xf7$

The black king easily escapes from the checks in White's territory.

19. $\mathbb{W}c7+$ $\mathbb{\dot{e}}e6$ 20. $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{\dot{e}}e5$ 21. $\mathbb{W}xa4$ a2 22. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{\dot{d}}d5$ 23. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{\dot{e}}e4$ 24. $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{\dot{e}}e3$ 25. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{W}d4$ 26. $\mathbb{W}a3+$ $\mathbb{W}d3$ White resigned.

Diagram 12-41 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



12-40

12/9

W?

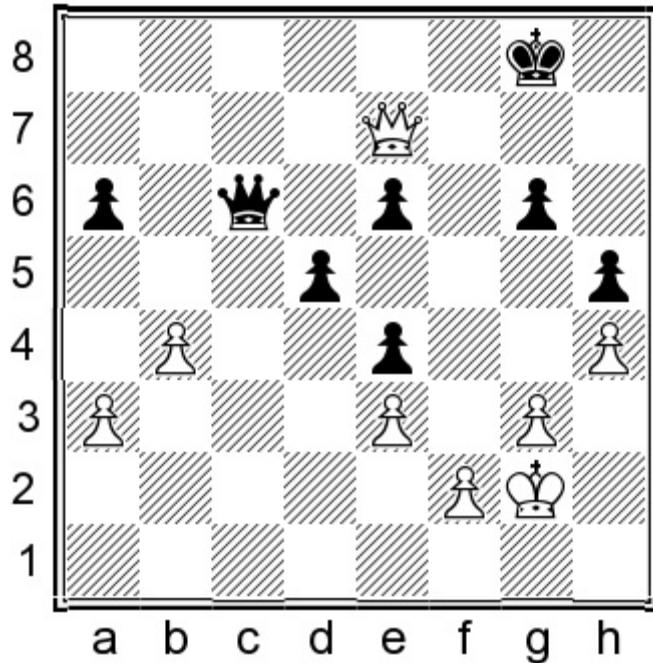
Show/Hide Solution

12/9. Kharitonov-Ivanchuk, Frunze 1988

1.♕e7!+–

White has completely tied down his opponent, having deprived the black queen of the e8- and d7-squares. Now he plans to combine threats to the king with an advance of his queenside pawns.

1...h5 (otherwise g3-g4 and h4-h5-h6) **2.♔g2 ♕c8** (2...♔h8 3.♕f8+ ♔h7 4.♕f7+ ♔h6 5.♕g8 ♕c3 6.♕xe6) **3.b4 ♕c6 4.a3**○



16-97
B

4... $\mathbb{W}c8$ 5.a4 $\mathbb{W}c6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}f6!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (6... $\mathbb{W}e8$ 7.b5) 7. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}g8$ $\mathbb{W}c3$ 9.b5 $\mathbb{W}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g1?!$

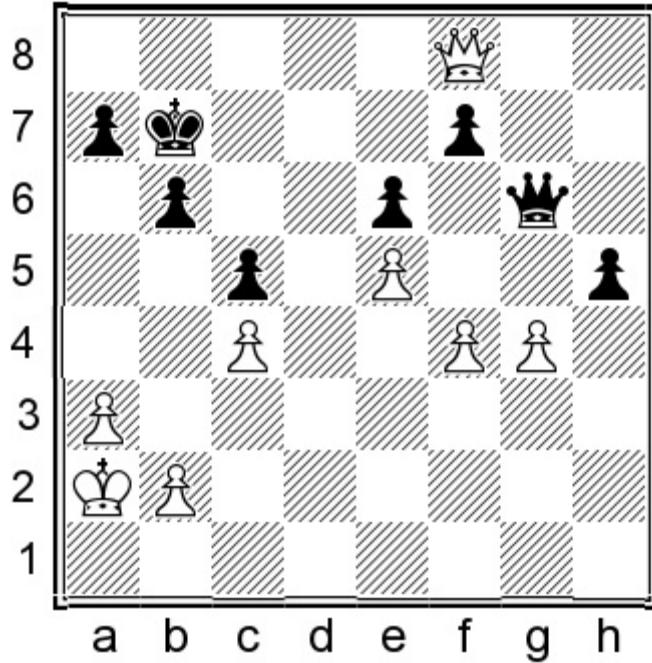
Quicker progress could be achieved with 10.bxa6 $\mathbb{W}f3+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}d1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h2$.

10...axb5 11.axb5 d4 12.exd4 $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 13. $\mathbb{W}xe6$ $\mathbb{W}d1+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}f3$

If 14... $\mathbb{W}e2$, White does not play 15. $\mathbb{W}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ (Δ 16...e3). He has 15. $\mathbb{W}f6!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 16.b6!, and if 16...e3, then 17. $\mathbb{W}e7+$.

15. $\mathbb{W}b6$ Black resigned.

Diagram 16-98 has been intentionally omitted.



12-41a

12/10

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

12/10. Adorján-Orsó, Hungary ch, Budapest 1977

Hungary ch, Budapest 1977

White has an active queen and generates a mating attack.

1.f5! exf5

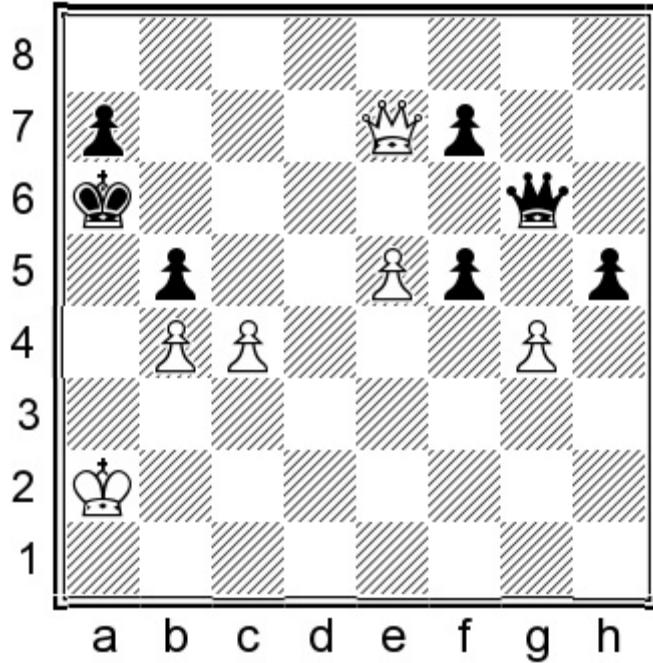
1... $\mathbb{W}xg4$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xe6$ is also winning for White.

2. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$

Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4.gxh5! $\mathbb{W}xh5$ 5.e6+–

3.b4! cxb4 4.axb4 b5

The only defense against mate.



16-99

W?

5.e6!!

In the game, White went astray with 5. $\mathbb{W}d6+?$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!$, and there was no win. The remainder of the game was 6. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xb5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 8. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 10.g5 f4 11. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 13. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 14. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}xg5$ 16. $\mathbb{W}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$, Draw agreed.

5... $\mathbb{W}xg4$

5...fxe6 6. $\mathbb{W}d7!;$ 5... $\mathbb{W}xe6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xe6+$ fxe6 7.gxh5 f4 8.h6 f3 9.h7 f2 10.h8= \mathbb{W} f1= \mathbb{W} 11. $\mathbb{W}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 12.c5#

6. $\mathbb{W}d6+$

6.cxb5+ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 9.exf7 is equivalent.

6... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$

Otherwise he will be mated.

8. $\mathbb{W}xb5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 10. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 11. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 12.exf7+-

Chapter 13

Queen versus Rook

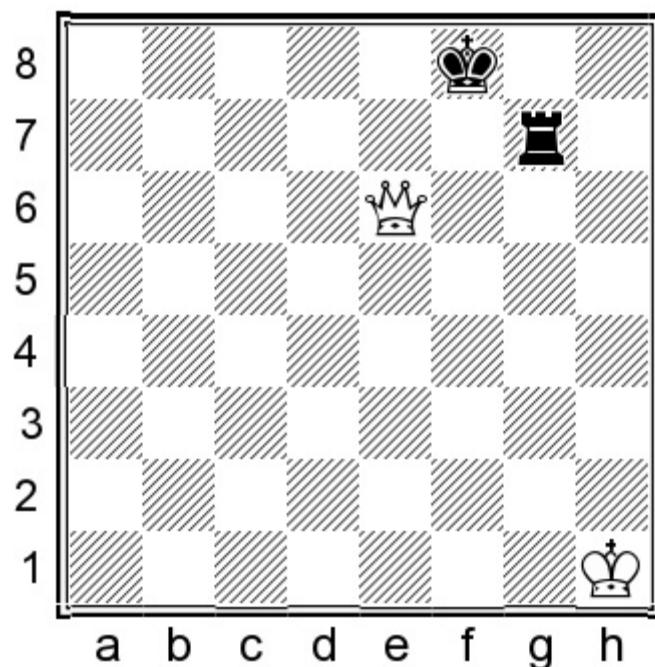
A Solitary Rook

The side that has a rook will try, except in very rare cases, to build a fortress.

We shall study the most important theoretical positions here, both drawn and winning. Sometimes one must play dozens of precise moves in a row in order to destroy the opponent's line of defense. However, the winning plans that we should know are mostly standard, even when they are quite complicated tactically. Master Khenkin has greatly contributed to the theory of this sort of endgame; he wrote the corresponding section for Averbakh's endgame treatise and, for this purpose, analyzed a huge number of new positions.

A queen wins against a solitary rook. The cases when a king cannot escape from checks in view of a stalemate or a loss of a queen are exceptions.

D. Ponziani 1782



13-1

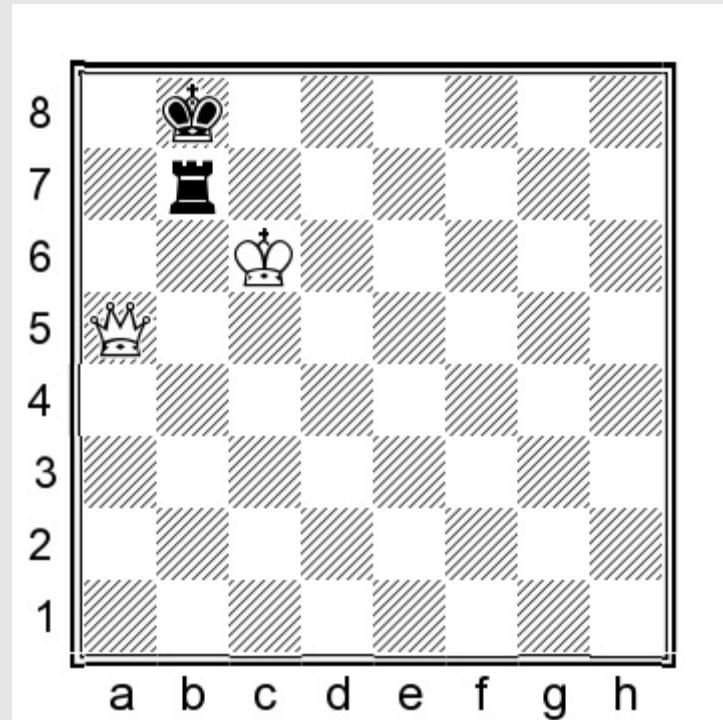
\$

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h6$
(7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}h7+=$

A standard winning method is shown in the following classical endgame.

Philidor 1777



13-2

W

White's pieces are ideally placed. Now he should cede the necessity to move to his opponent by means of a triangular maneuver by the queen.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7(a8)$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a1+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a5!$

Zugzwang! The rook must abandon the black king. As a result, it inevitably becomes a victim of a double attack.

3... $\mathbb{Q}b1$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a1+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b1+$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$
7. $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ and 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb1+-$

The methods in this elementary example (*zugzwang, triangulation as a tool for passing the obligation to move, and double attack*) are standard for almost all queen-versus-rook endings, with or without pawns.

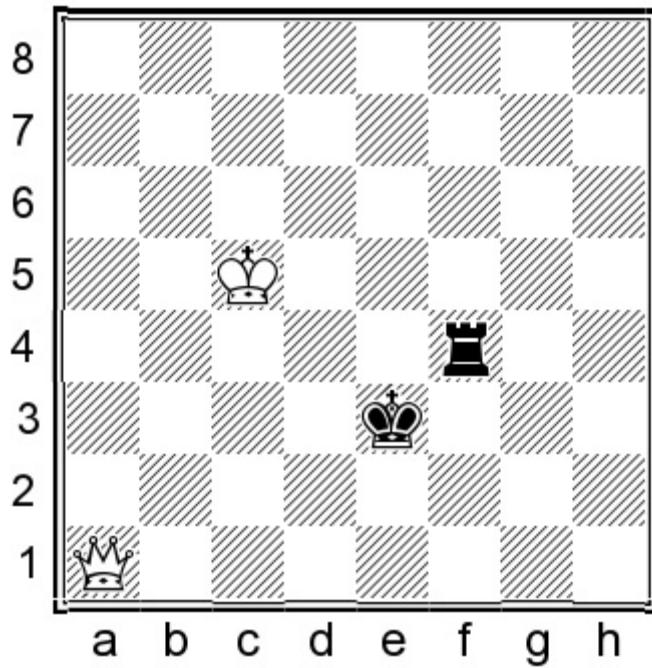
If the defender's king is standing in the center, the stronger side gradually drives him to the edge of the board to create mating threats. However this mission is not elementary, since the rook may

sometimes be placed far away from the king without fear of being lost immediately.

Under time controls that are characteristic for modern chess, queen-versus-rook endings usually occur when both sides are suffering from time shortage. For example, grandmaster Svidler, playing against Gelfand at the 2001 world championship in Moscow, had a few minutes (plus an additional 10 seconds after every move) and failed to outplay his opponent over 50 moves; thereafter the arbiters duly declared a draw.

In order to avoid such an unpleasant occurrence, one can practice with a computer program; it defends against the queen in a most tenacious way.

The study of the following position is based upon computer-generated lines that indicate the best moves for both sides (of course, these are not the only moves one can play). Naturally, there is no sense in remembering these lines by heart; typical ideas behind the moves are much more important.



13-3
B

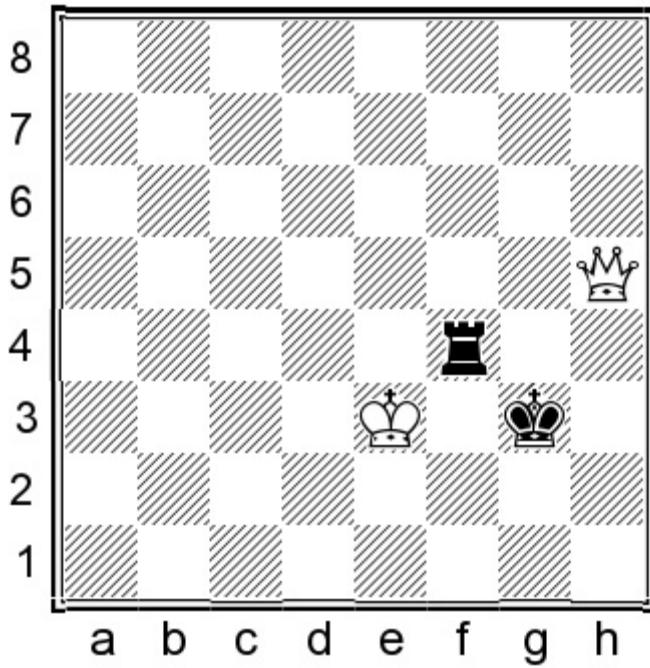
1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}c6+$

If White had played this two moves earlier, Black could have replied with 5... $\mathbb{Q}e3$. Now, 7... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ is impossible in view of the double attack 8. $\mathbb{W}c5+$.

7... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{W}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 9. $\mathbb{W}h5+!$

An excellent square for the queen. Black's king is forced to the g-file. After 9... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$, 9... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ or 9... $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ the rook is lost immediately. 9... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$ is also bad in view of 10. $\mathbb{W}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{W}c4+$. In addition, the queen takes control over the important squares e8 and f3, thereby helping the king to come closer to its counterpart.

9... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ (10... $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8+?$ is impossible) 11. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (and 12... $\mathbb{Q}f3+?$ is also impossible.)



13-4

B

12... $\mathbb{Q}g4$

Another possibility is 12... $\mathbb{Q}a4$. White cannot win the rook by force. He must drive the black king away to an edge, place his queen optimally and then move his king closer to its counterpart. The main line is 13. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ (from d6 the queen prevents a rook check from a3) 17... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (the rook is finally unable to escape now from a double attack) 18. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$.

13. $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e2\odot$ 14... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d5\odot$

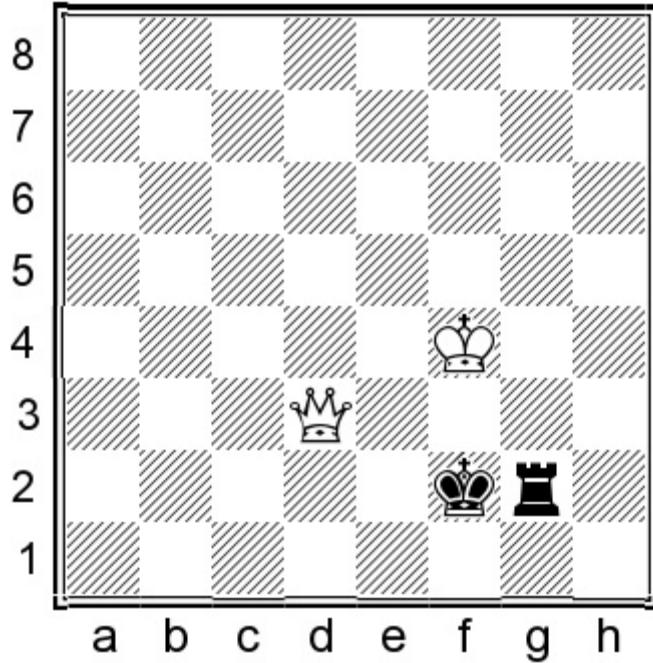
Quiet moves that limit the mobility of enemy pieces or create a zugzwang situation are often much more effective than checks.

16... $\mathbb{Q}g6$

On 16... $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h4\odot$, we come to the Philidor position that is already familiar to us. The main line brings us the same result.

17. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}h4\odot+-$

Now we return to an earlier moment and study 4... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ (instead of 4... $\mathbb{Q}f3$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$. With Black's king on f3, White could have played 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$, while now this is weaker in view of 6... $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$. The computer suggests 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (zugzwang) 8... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (the same zugzwang again, but this time closer to the edge) 11... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$.



13-5
B

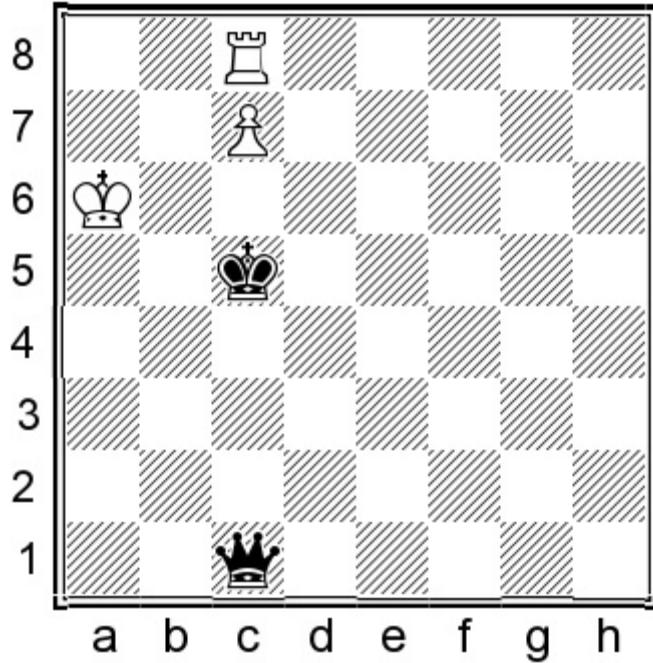
If Black plays 13... $\mathbb{Q}g1$ now, then 14. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}g3+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}g2+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f1+-$ Examine the final position closely: the rook cannot proceed with checks because the queen controls the g1-square. *This is the method the stronger side uses for approaching with the king: first the queen takes control of one of the adjacent squares.*

13... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 14. $\mathbb{W}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 15. $\mathbb{W}c6!$

The natural looking 15. $\mathbb{W}e4$ leads to a reciprocal zugzwang position after 15... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}f2+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}d2!$; this position should be reached with the adversary on move. If 15... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ now, 16. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}f2+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}d2$ 18. $\mathbb{W}e4!O+-$ is decisive.

15... $\mathbb{E}h2$ 16. $\mathbb{W}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 17. $\mathbb{W}d5!$ (but, of course, not 17. $\mathbb{Q}g3??$ $\mathbb{E}h3+!$) 17... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 18. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}g4O$ 19... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}g2+$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f3+-$ (the queen guards the f2-square).

Exercises



13-6
13/1
W?

Show/Hide Solution

13/1. L.Prokeš 1938

1. $\mathbb{E}h8?$ loses after 1... $\mathbb{W}a3+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{W}b2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{W}b6+!$ (but surely not 3... $\mathbb{W}xh8?$ 4. $c8=\mathbb{W}+\mathbb{W}xc8$ stalemate) 4. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{W}xc7$ 5. $\mathbb{E}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 6. $\mathbb{E}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 7. $\mathbb{E}h3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$, and the checks are exhausted.

1. $\mathbb{E}d8!$ $\mathbb{W}h6+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{W}b6+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$ $\mathbb{W}xc7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$

The king can be forced to go to the sixth rank only when the white rook is on the d-file (there is no use in 4... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}d4+$ etc.).

5. $\mathbb{E}b5+$ (5. $\mathbb{E}d6+$ is also good) 5... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{E}b6+!$ with stalemate or perpetual check.

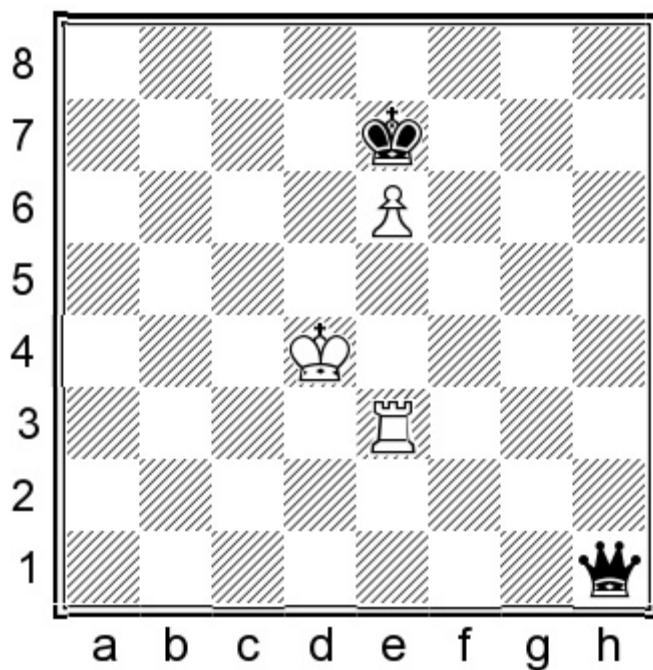
Queen vs. Rook and Pawn

The Rook behind the Pawn

The farther the pawn is advanced, the greater are the chances for a draw. For instance, Black wins in all cases when his king blocks a white pawn that has not crossed the middle line. Almost all positions with the pawn on the fifth rank are won. However if the pawn has reached sixth or seventh rank, a draw

is quite probable.

N.Grigoriev 1933



13-7

\$

It is good for White to keep his king on the lower ranks. He would have had no problems if his king were standing on e2; then Black could not create zugzwang.

With White on move, a draw can be achieved by means of 1. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{W}d1+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3!\odot$

An important position of reciprocal zugzwang. After 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (2... $\mathbb{W}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ is useless) 3. $e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4. $\mathbb{R}e4$ $\mathbb{W}f3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{R}e3$ $\mathbb{W}c2$ 7. $\mathbb{R}e4$, White is out of danger.

However with Black on move, the evaluation differs. He manages to press White's pieces, by means of zugzwang, closer to the pawn, which means closer to the black king. The king then joins the queen at an appropriate moment with decisive effect.

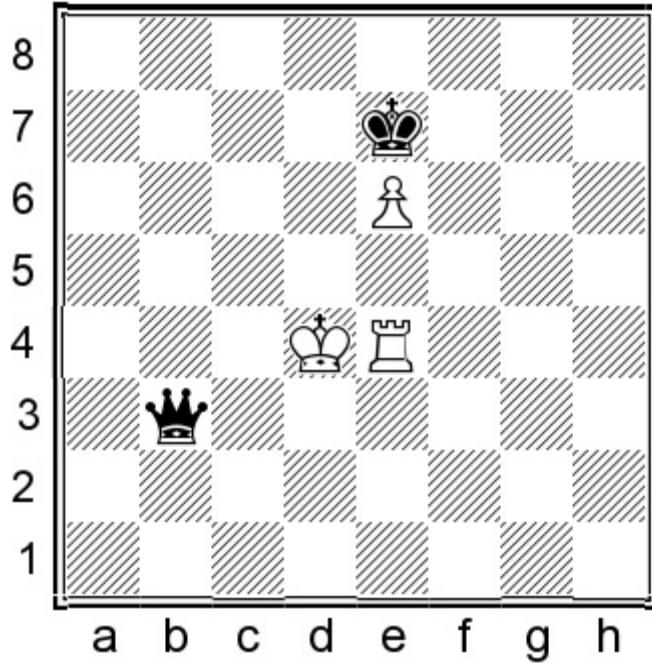
1... $\mathbb{W}b1!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{W}a2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{W}b2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{W}f2+$ loses even faster.

2... $\mathbb{W}d1!\odot$

The familiar zugzwang position has arisen, but this time with White on move.

3. $\mathbb{R}e4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{W}c2+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}d2+)$ 3... $\mathbb{W}f3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}b3\odot$



13-8
W

5. ♕e5

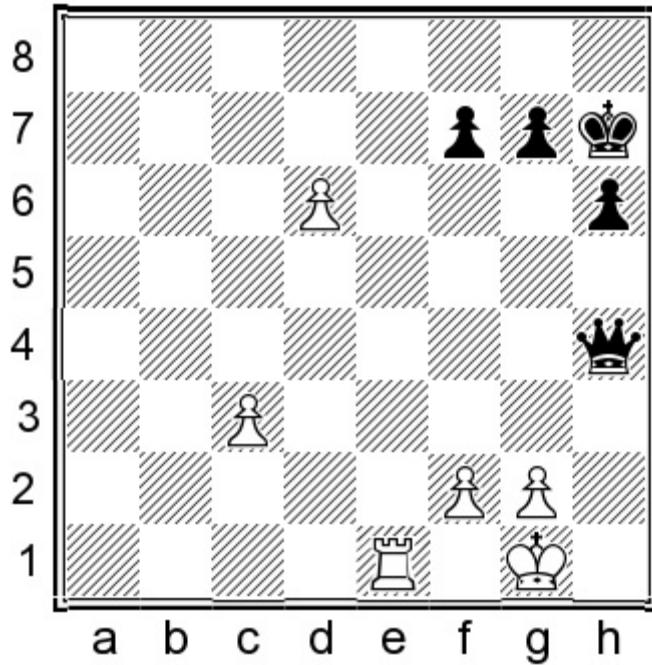
If 5. ♔e3, then 5... ♕c2! 6. ♔e4 ♔d6! 7. ♔e3 (7.e7 ♕d2+ 8. ♔c4 ♕d5+) 7... ♔d5!—+ After the king move, a similar finale happens on the other wing.

5... ♕b2+ 6. ♔f4 (6. ♔d5 ♕c3! O 7. ♔e5 ♕d3+ 8. ♔c5 ♕d6+) 6... ♕f2+ 7. ♔g4 (7. ♔e5 ♕f6+ 8. ♔d5 ♕c3! O) 7... ♕g2+ 8. ♔f4 ♔f6! 9. ♔e3 (9.e7 ♕f2+ 10. ♔g4 ♕f5+) 9... ♔f5!—+

I would like to mention here that in multi-pawn endings with a far-advanced passed pawn being supported by the rook from behind, a queen, when it must block the pawn, can be even weaker than a rook.

Bron – Ordel

Kharkov 1936

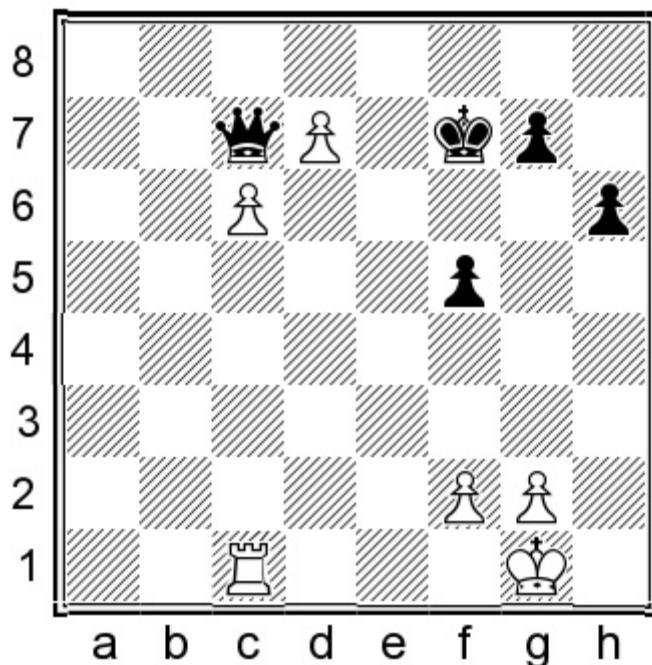


13-9
W

1.d7 ♜d8 2.¤d1 ♜g8 3.c4 ♜f8 4.c5 ♜e7 5.c6 f5?

Black could probably save the game after 5...♜a5! (Δ 6...♜d8). The transition to the pawn endgame via 6.d8=♜+ is unfavorable for White, the rook has no e1-square, while 6.¤d3 is met by 6...♜e1+ 7.¤h2 ♜e5+ 8.g3 ♜d8 9.¤e3 ♜h5+ 10.¤g1 ♜d1+ with perpetual check.

6.¤e1+ ♜f7 7.¤c1! ♜c7



13-10

W?

8.g3!

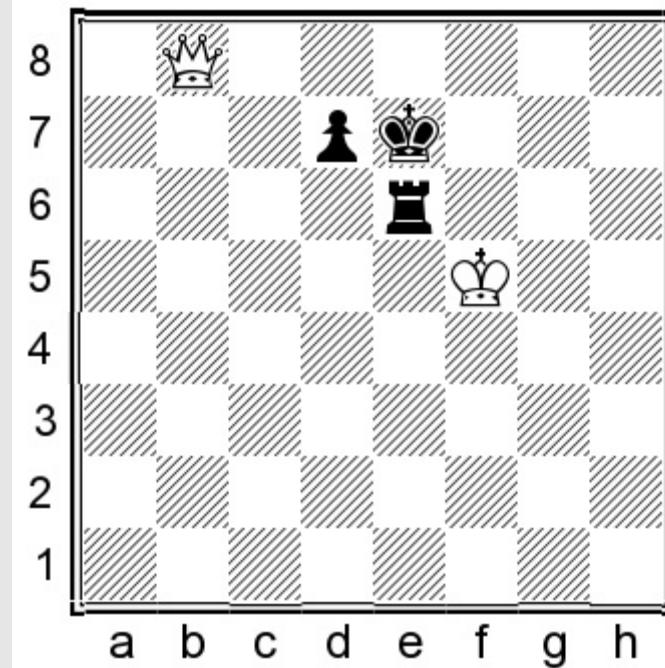
8.♔f1! is equivalent. 8.♕d1? ♔e7 9.♕e1+ ♔f7 10.♕e8 (10.g3 ♕d6!) is premature in view of 10...♕f4! 11.d8=♕ (11.♕e1 ♕d2; 11.g3 ♕c1+ 12.♔h2 ♕f1) 11...♕c1+ 12.♕e1 (12.♔h2 ♕f4+) 12...♕xe1+ 13.♔h2 ♕xf2 and White cannot escape from checks (Dvoretsky).

8...f4 9.♕d1 ♔e7 (9...♕d8 10.c7) 10.♕e1+ ♔f7 11.♕e8 ♕xc6 12.d8=♕+! Black resigned.

Now we come to the most important class of positions: the king protects the pawn while the rook tries to keep hostile pieces away from it.

The Pawn on the Seventh Rank

Philidor 1777



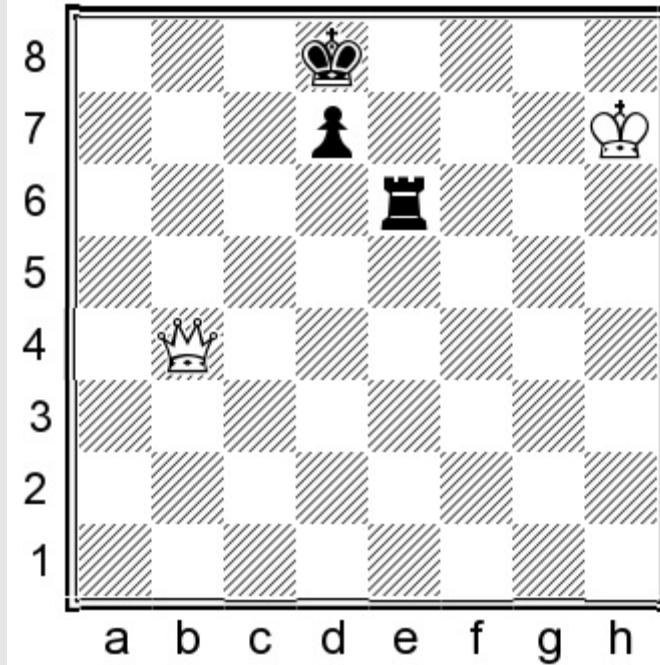
13-11

W

1.♕h8 ♕c6=

Black holds his king on the seventh and eighth ranks, preventing the white queen from entering the important d8-square. The rook has two protected squares at its disposal (e6 and c6); therefore a zugzwang cannot be created.

V.Khenkin 1981*



13-12

\$

If the white king has crossed the sixth rank, Black's position is no longer foolproof. For example, this case depends on who is on move.

Black on move achieves a draw after 1... $\mathbb{Q}c7(c8)!$

He should keep a distance between the kings in order to avoid mate threats.

White to move wins.

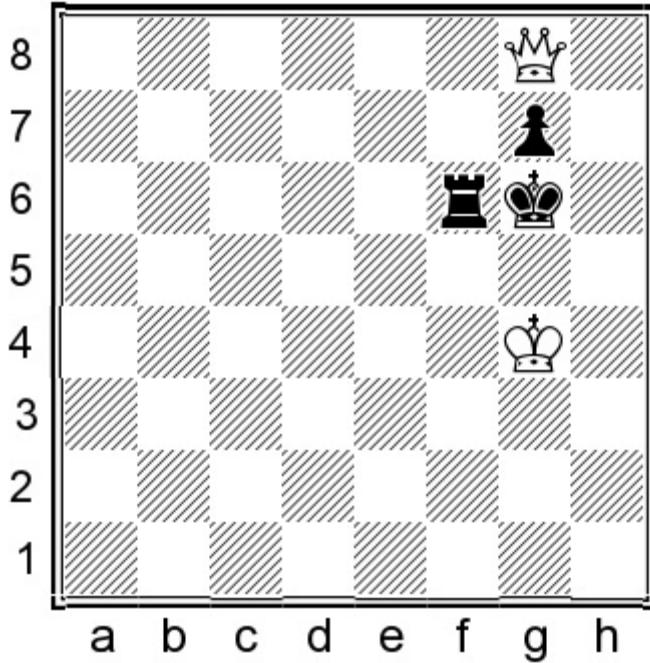
1. $\mathbb{W}b8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (Δ 3. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$) 2... $\mathbb{E}c6$ (2... $\mathbb{E}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b4$) 3. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b4!O$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{W}c7$ is also good (Dvoretsky).

4... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f7$

The queen has occupied the important d8-square, and now the king can attack the pawn. His opponent, forced to stand in front of the pawn, only hinders his own rook.

6... $\mathbb{E}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}b6+$ $\mathbb{E}c6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e7-$

V.Khenkin 1981



13-13
\$
B

The closer the pawn is to the edge, the greater the defensive resources. This sort of position (with the king in front of the pawn) is lost when the pawn is central. With a bishop pawn, the outcome depends on specifics of piece placement. Here (with a knight pawn) Black holds a draw easily; the same is valid against a white king on e5, but not if the king gets to e7. Khenkin analyzed 1... $\mathbb{E}f1$ (but of course not 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6??$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$)

1... $\mathbb{E}f1$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d5$ $\mathbb{E}g1+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}f1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}f6=$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$, and White cannot make any progress. If his queen abandons the a8-h1 diagonal, Black transposes into the drawn Philidor position after ... $\mathbb{E}h1-h6$.

However, White wins if he, instead of 2. $\mathbb{W}d5?$ plays 2. $\mathbb{W}e8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (2... $\mathbb{E}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5$) 3. $\mathbb{W}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}d3+)$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c4+$ $\mathbb{E}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g5$.

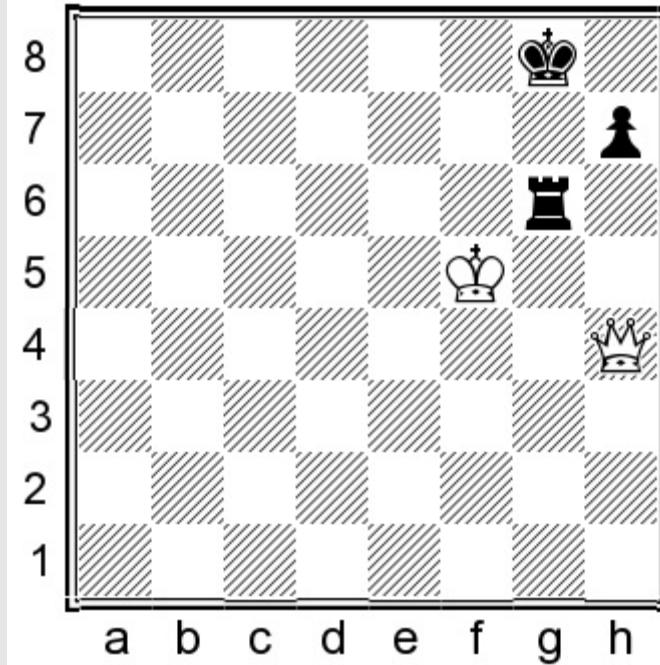
To avoid the double attack, Black should place his rook on a dark square. 1... $\mathbb{E}f2!$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ is an easy draw;

1... $\mathbb{E}d6!$

and 1... $\mathbb{E}b6!$ are also good.

With the rook pawn on the seventh rank, Black is lost because the rook has only one protected square at its disposal.

J.Berger 1921*



13-14
W

1. $\mathbb{W}e7$

Black is in zugzwang! Any move drastically worsens his position.

(a) 1... $\mathbb{E}g2$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c3+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}b7++-$;

(b) 1... $\mathbb{E}g1$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}a7+$;

(c) 1... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ (4. $\mathbb{W}e5?$ $h6!=$ is wrong: you can find the situation with the rook pawn on the sixth rank in the next section) 4... $h5$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h6+$;

(d) 1... $\mathbb{E}h6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ (3... $\mathbb{E}a6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c7+)$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h6+-$

1... $\mathbb{E}a6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b7$ $\mathbb{E}d6$ (4... $\mathbb{E}a3$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}d7+)$ 5. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{E}g6$

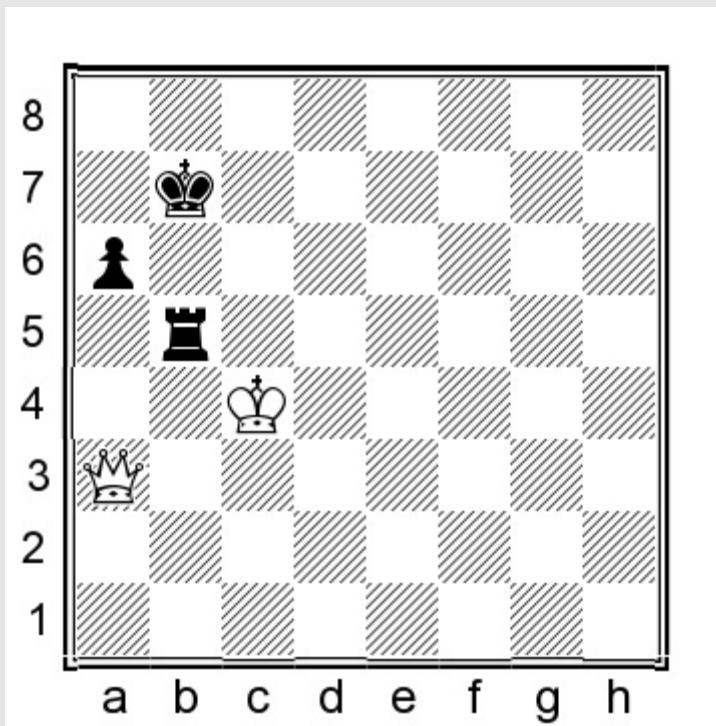
Now White triangulates with the queen and puts his opponent in zugzwang.

I would like to make a comment here: White could have obtained this position with Black to move by playing 4. $\mathbb{W}c7!O$ 4... $\mathbb{E}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}e7!$ at once.

6. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}e7!O$ 8... $\mathbb{E}g2$ 9. $\mathbb{W}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10. $\mathbb{W}c3+ \mathbb{Q}f7$ 11. $\mathbb{W}c7+ \mathbb{Q}g8$ 12. $\mathbb{W}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13. $\mathbb{W}b7+$

The Pawn on the Sixth Rank

Our survey starts with a rook pawn. If it stands on its initial position then, as we already know, the stronger side wins. With the black pawn on the sixth rank, the position is drawn.



13-15

W

The rook has only one protected square (b5), therefore the white king breaks through using a zugzwang technique. However White's achievements end with that: he can neither force a win of the rook nor smoke the king out from the corner.

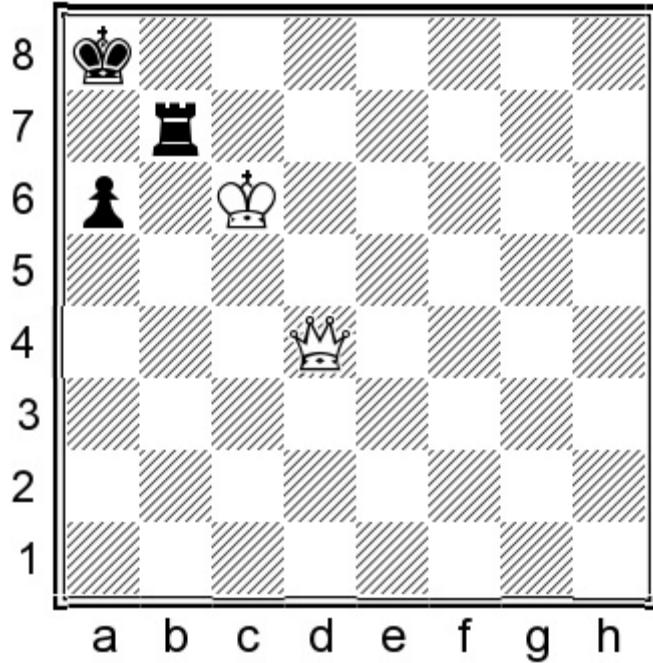
1. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c8$ $\mathbb{E}b7!$

Black should by no means abandon the corner. 4... $\mathbb{Q}b6?$ loses after 5. $\mathbb{W}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 7. $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 8. $\mathbb{W}d6+)$ 6. $\mathbb{W}a7$ $\mathbb{E}b6$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{E}b5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{E}b6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a5$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ (7... $\mathbb{E}b4+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}b6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4O$) 8. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{W}c7$ $\mathbb{E}h6$ 10. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 11. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c5$.

5. $\mathbb{W}c5+$

This is stronger than 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}b5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}b6+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{E}b5$ 8. $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{E}b7+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}b6+$.

5... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$



13-16

W

10. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{E}b8$ 11. $\mathbb{W}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 13. $\mathbb{W}f4$ $\mathbb{E}b7!=$

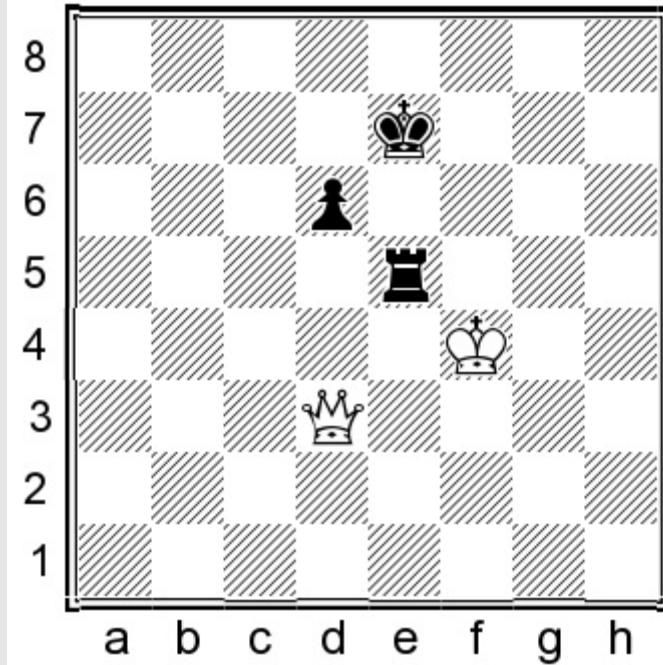
This precise defensive move prevents occupation of the important c7- and c8-squares by the white king. 13... $\mathbb{E}b5?$ is not correct in view of 14. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ (14... $\mathbb{E}b7+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{E}b5$ 16. $\mathbb{W}c7$) 15. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{E}b8$ 16. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 17. $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 18. $\mathbb{W}d6!$ (decisive zugzwang) 18... $\mathbb{E}b7+$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{E}b5$ 20. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 21. $\mathbb{W}c7\Theta$ 21... $\mathbb{E}b1$ 22. $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 23. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 24. $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 25. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 26. $\mathbb{W}e4++-$

We should add that if we shift the starting position one or two ranks lower, Black loses. Too many squares demand protection behind the pawn in this case, and the pieces cannot successfully tackle this problem.

As Khenkin stated, White wins against the pawn on a6, too, if his king is standing on the a-file. He prepares $\mathbb{Q}a5$ by means of resolute queen actions, pushing the black king away from the seventh rank and the rook away from b5.

If the black pawn is a central or a bishop pawn and stands on the fifth or sixth rank, Black is lost.

Philidor 1777



13-17

W

White's plan consists of the following stages:

- (a) To occupy squares behind the pawn, with the help of zugzwang, and drive the black king to d5 where it will obstruct its own rook.
- (b) To cross the fifth rank with his king.
- (c) To break through with the king via the e-file to the d6-pawn.

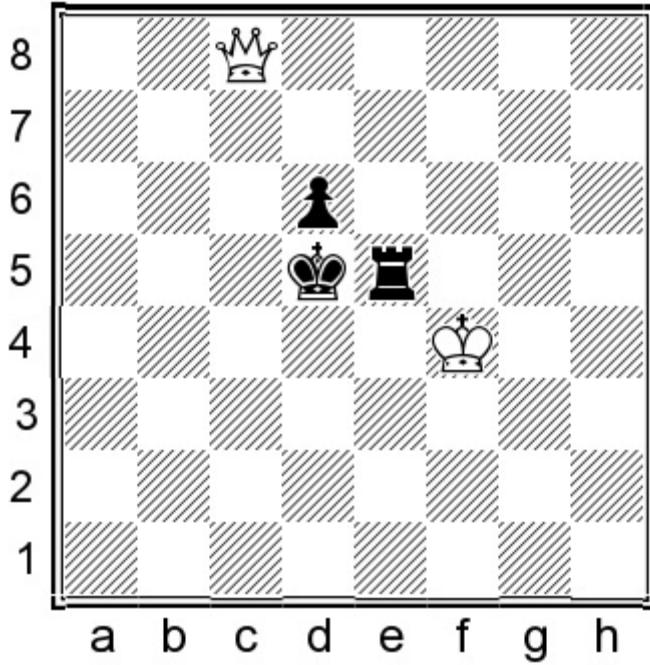
1. $\mathbb{W}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$

Both 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d7$ and 1... $\mathbb{Q}e8?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c7$ are hopeless. If 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6?!$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d8$, White's mission becomes easier than after the text move.

2. $\mathbb{W}f7! \text{O } 2 \dots \mathbb{Q}c8$

This is better than 2... $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5$; 2... $\mathbb{Q}c5?!$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{W}c8!$ transposes into the main line.

3. $\mathbb{W}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e7)$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (the same is 8... $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 10. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11. $\mathbb{W}c8) 9. $\mathbb{W}c8!?$ (Chéron recommended 9. $\mathbb{W}d7!?$)$



13-18

B

The first stage ends successfully. Black is in zugzwang and he is forced to give way to the white king because 9... $\mathbb{E}h5?$ loses immediately: 10. $\mathbb{W}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 11. $\mathbb{W}a4+$. If 9... $\mathbb{Q}d4$, then 10. $\mathbb{W}c6$ $\mathbb{E}d5$ and, according to Salvioli, 11. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (11... $\mathbb{E}f5+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}d5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$) 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}c5\#$ 13. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 14. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 15. $\mathbb{W}e7+)$ 14. $\mathbb{W}d7$ $\mathbb{E}d5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$

9... $\mathbb{E}e4+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}e5+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$

The second stage is also fulfilled.

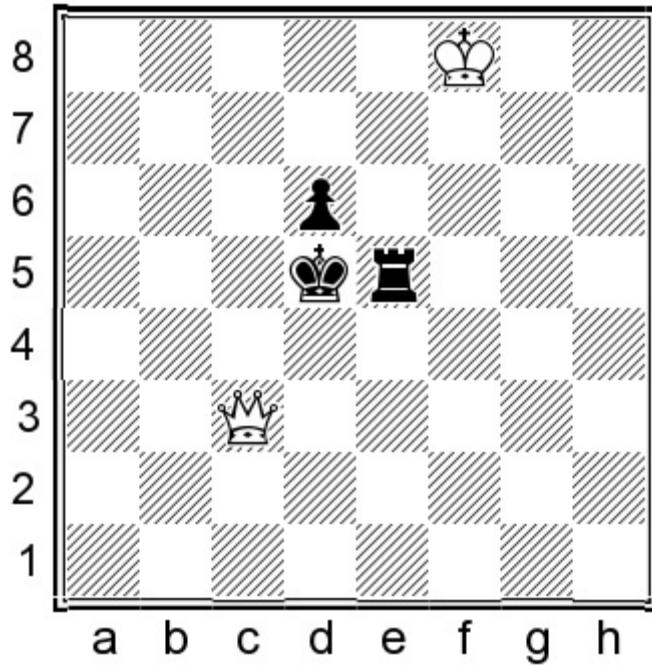
11... $\mathbb{E}e4$

Both 11... $\mathbb{E}e1$ 12. $\mathbb{W}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 13. $\mathbb{W}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14. $\mathbb{W}a5+$ and 11... $\mathbb{E}e2$ 12. $\mathbb{W}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 13. $\mathbb{W}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 14. $\mathbb{W}a3+$ lose rapidly.

12. $\mathbb{W}c3!$

A neat method that stems from Guretzky-Cornitz (1864). Philidor analyzed a slightly slower process: 12. $\mathbb{W}f5+$ $\mathbb{E}e5$ 13. $\mathbb{W}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 14. $\mathbb{W}d2!$, while the computer prefers 12. $\mathbb{W}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 13. $\mathbb{W}c6$ $d5$ 14. $\mathbb{W}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$) 15. $\mathbb{W}c5$ $d4$ 16. $\mathbb{W}a3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (16... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 17. $\mathbb{W}c1+$; 16... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 17. $\mathbb{W}b4)$ 17. $\mathbb{W}b2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 18. $\mathbb{W}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 19. $\mathbb{W}c2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}f4+$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $d3$ 22. $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 23. $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 24. $\mathbb{W}h6$.

12... $\mathbb{E}e6+$ (12... $\mathbb{E}e5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$) 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{E}e5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$



13-19

B

Zugzwang again. Black must let the white king cross the e-file.

14...♝e4

14...♝e4 15.♛c4+ ♜f5 16.♛d3+ ♜e6 17.♛e8+– or 14...♝e6 15.♛b3+ ♜e5 16.♛f7 ♜f6+ 17.♛e7+–

15.♛d3+ ♜d4

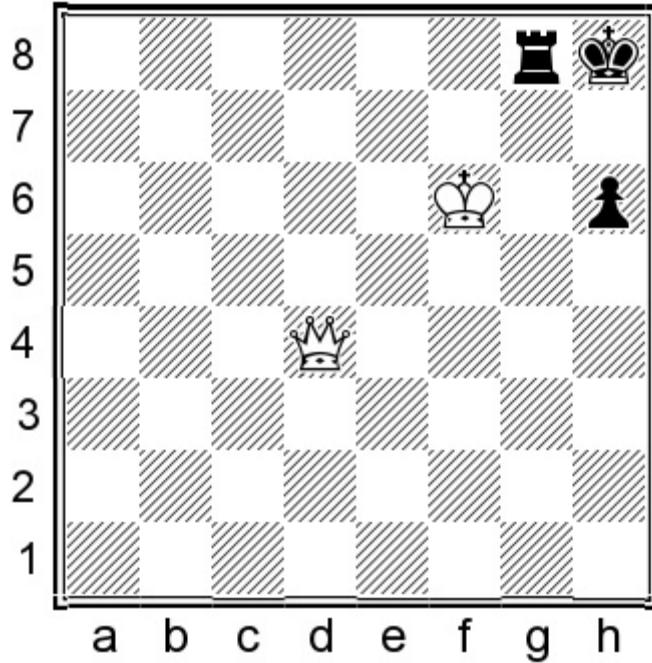
Or 15...♜e5 16.♝e7 d5 17.♛g3+ ♜f4 (17...♜d4+ 18.♝d6 ♜c4 19.♛g2 ♜d4 20.♛c2+; 17...♝f5+ 18.♝d6 d4 19.♛d3 ♜f4 20.♝d5) 18.♛e3+ ♜e4 19.♛g5+ ♜d4+ 20.♝d6.

**16.♛f5+ ♜c4 17.♛c2+ ♜d5 18.♛e7 ♜e5 19.♛d7 ♜d5 20.♛e2+ ♜f4 21.♛c6 ♜d4 22.♛b5 ♜f5
23.♛e3 ♜e4 24.♛d3 ♜e5 25.♛c6 ♜d4 26.♛e3+ ♜e4 27.♛g5+ ♜e6 28.♛d5++–**

An analogous plan succeeds against a black pawn on d5. With the pawn on d4, Black also loses. If the pawn stands on c6 or c5, White wins too, although his task is even more complicated.

Tragicomедies

Penrose – Hartston
England ch, Coventry 1970



13-20

B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}h7??$

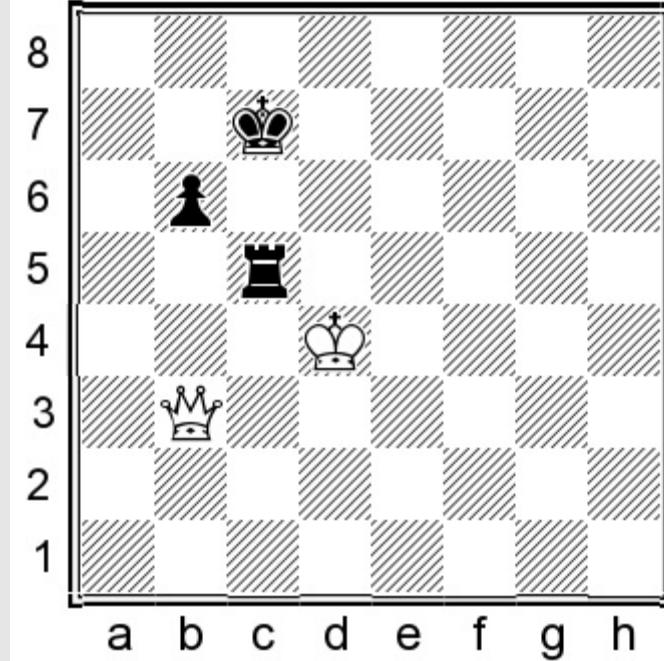
Black should not let the white king settle on the f7- and f8-squares. 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ led to a draw.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h7??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7+- \mathbb{Q}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{W}f6 \mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e6\circlearrowleft$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ h5 6. $\mathbb{W}f7+ \mathbb{Q}h6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}f6+ \mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}f4+ \mathbb{Q}h7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ h4 11. $\mathbb{W}e4$ Black resigned.

A Knight Pawn on the Fifth or Sixth Rank

A draw still can be achieved when a knight pawn has left the seventh rank. If it is standing on the sixth rank, Black should keep his king behind it; if the pawn has reached the fourth or fifth rank; the king may be placed in front of it as well.

B.Guretzky-Cornitz 1864

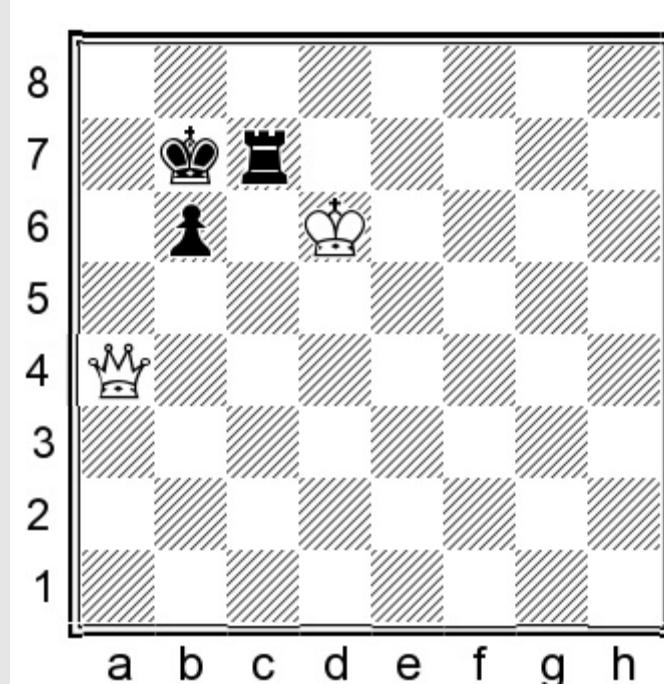


13-21

W

1. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{K}b8!$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e6$ $\mathbb{K}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{K}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{K}e4$ $\mathbb{K}a8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}a4+$ $\mathbb{K}b7$ 6. $\mathbb{K}d4$ $\mathbb{E}c7!$ Black lets the white king go ahead in order to keep his own king behind the pawn.

7. $\mathbb{K}d5$ $\mathbb{E}c5+$ 8. $\mathbb{K}d6$ $\mathbb{E}c7$



13-22

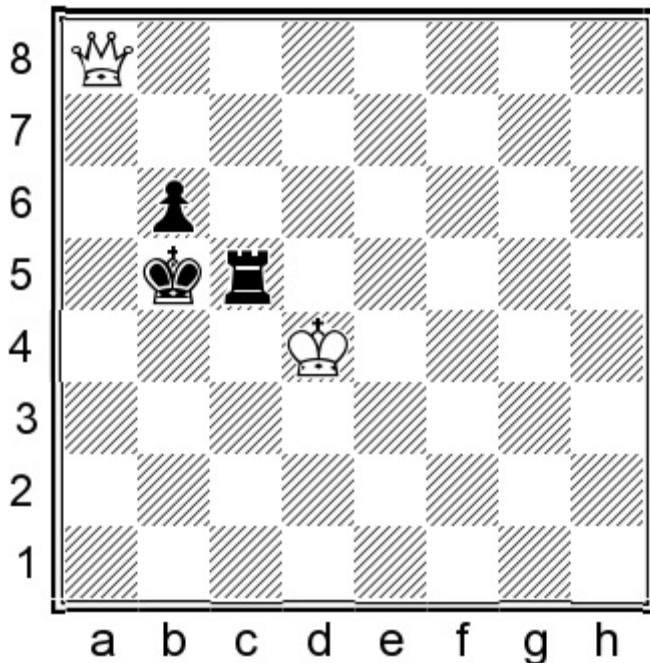
W

The main difference in this position from those with a bishop pawn or a central pawn, is the impossibility of queen attacks against the king from the left. The defensive method is similar to that with the a6-pawn (diagram 13-12).

And, as Khenkin noted, even with the white king on d8 (while the queen is standing on e6 and the rook on c5) there is no win: unlike the case of a rook pawn (won for White), Black holds here thanks to the waiting move ♜a7.

9.♕b5 ♜c5 10.♗d7+ ♜b8 11.♕g4 ♜c7 12.♗e2 (Δ 13.♕a6) 12...♜b7!=

Now let us investigate 6...♜a5? (instead of the correct continuation 6...♜c7!) 7.♗d7+ ♜b8 8.♕c6 ♜a7 9.♕c7+ ♜a6 10.♗b8 ♜c5 11.♕a8+ ♜b5



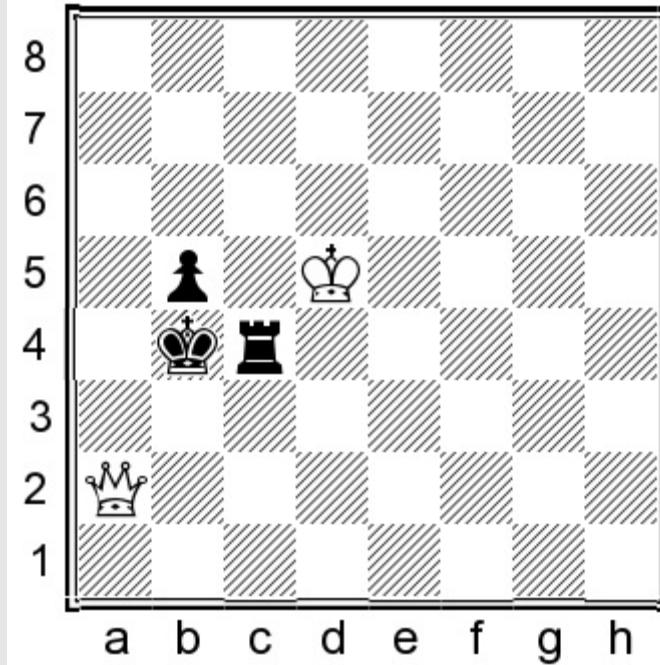
13-23

\$

W

Guretzky-Cornitz evaluated this position as drawn. However Chéron proved in 1950 that White wins, although in a very complicated way. (First of all White should pass the move, for example 12.♕b7! ♜a5 13.♕a7+ ♜b5 14.♕a8!). Let us accept this as fact and anyone who wants to know more may look in endgame handbooks.

B.Guretzky-Cornitz 1864



13-24

B

Another important case of a draw. If shifted down or with the black king on b6, it remains drawn.

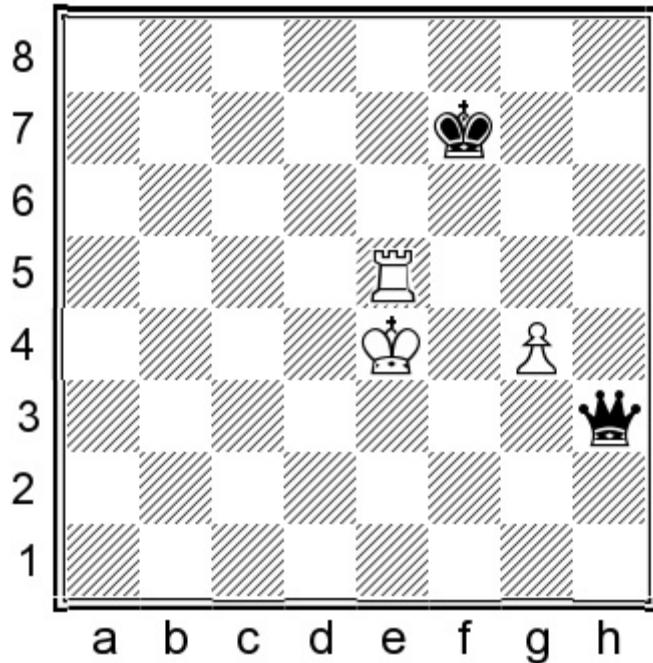
1...Rc5+ 2.Qd6 Rc8!

The rook is safe here, as opposed to similar situations with a central pawn.

3.Qd7 Rc4 4.Qd8 Rc5 5.Qb2+ Qa4! (but not 5....Qc4? 6.Qd7+-) **6.Qd7 Rc4=** (or 6...b4=).

Piket – McShane

Germany tt 1997



13-25

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}f5+$!

Surely not 1. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$, and as White's king is cut off from the pawn, he loses.

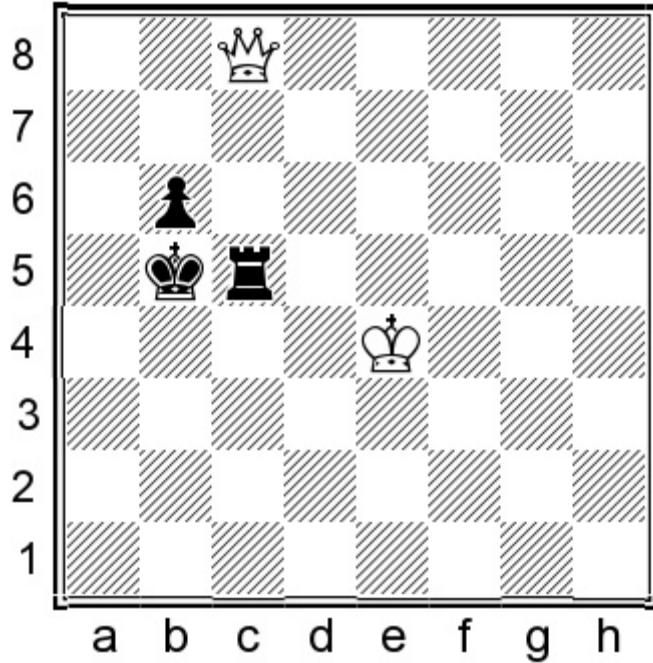
1. $\mathbb{Q}f5+! \mathbb{Q}g6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}h2+$

If 2... $\mathbb{Q}g2$, then 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5+! \mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5+ \mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5=$ (see diagram 13-24).

3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$

Draw

Exercises



13-26
13/2
W?

Show/Hide Solution

13/2. A.Chéron 1950

After 1. $\mathbb{W}a8?$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$, White cannot prevent the Guretzky-Cornitz drawing position (diagram 13-24). For example, 2. $\mathbb{W}f8$ (2. $\mathbb{W}a6$ $\mathbb{E}c4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $b5=$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b8$ (3. $\mathbb{W}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4 \Delta$ 4... $\mathbb{E}c4+$ and 5... $b5=$; 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{E}c3+ \Delta$ 4... $b5=$) 3... $b5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}c4+$.

The correct method is 1. $\mathbb{W}b7!$, holding the black pawn on the sixth rank. After 1... $\mathbb{E}g5$, Chéron analyzed 2. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c8+$. A quicker alternative is 2. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{E}c5$ (2... $\mathbb{E}g4+$ makes White's task easier because his king crosses the fifth rank immediately: 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}g5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{E}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$) 3. $\mathbb{W}a8!$, achieving the winning position from diagram 13-23.

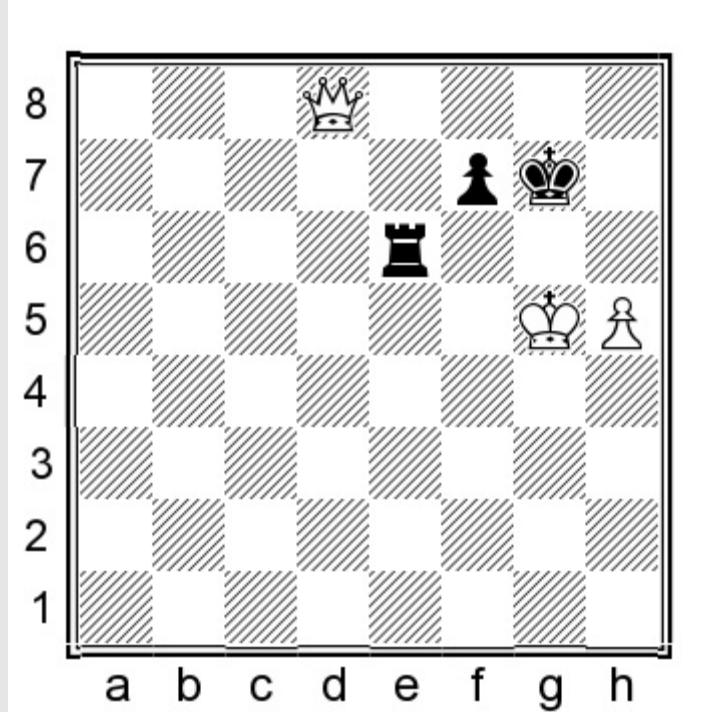
Show in Text Mode

Queen and Pawn vs. Rook and Pawn

Passed Pawns

If the pawns are passed, a queen usually wins with ease, but a single important exception exists.

N.Grigoriev 1917



13-27

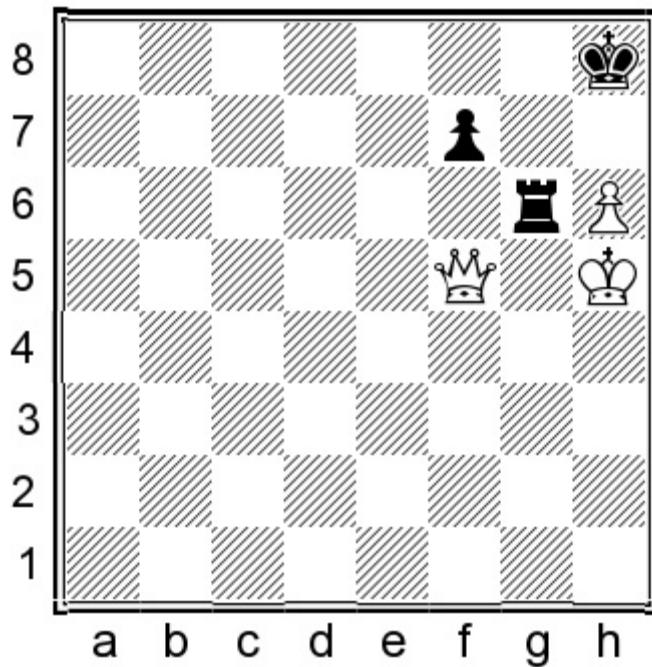
W

Grigoriev did an analysis of the diagrammed position, but it was only discovered among his archives in 1954. Independently, Kasparian published an analysis in 1948. He did not know Grigoriev's conclusions and managed to discover the truth independently when he checked one of his endgame studies for correctness.

The rook has two safe squares, e6 and h6; therefore White cannot create a zugzwang position. The defense is rather simple: Black should not give the f8-square to the white queen and should not permit a safe advance of the h-pawn.

1. $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{E}h6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b4$ (threatening 4. $\mathbb{W}f8$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h3$ $\mathbb{E}h6!$ (preventing 6. $\mathbb{W}h1$) 6. $\mathbb{W}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}h7!=$

If 5... $\mathbb{E}c6?$, White wins by means of 6.h6+! $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}f5+$ $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$



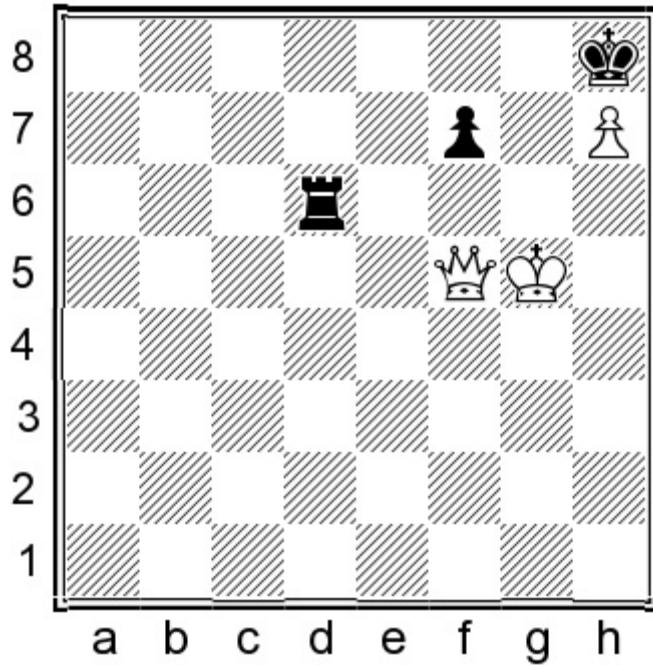
I3-28

\$

W

The f7-pawn is obviously invulnerable: 9. $\mathbb{W}xf7??$ $\mathbb{E}g5+$ (or 9... $\mathbb{E}xh6+$), and the rook becomes a desperado. However White wins rapidly by means of 9. $\mathbb{W}c8+!$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 10. $\mathbb{W}f8$) 10. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 11. $\mathbb{W}f6+-$

In the game Andric-Rogulj, where this position occurred (with reversed colors and wings), White played 9.h7? His opponent resigned right away, although he could have made White's task truly difficult by playing 9... $\mathbb{E}e6!$ (rather than 9... $\mathbb{E}g7?$ 10. $\mathbb{W}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 11. $\mathbb{W}f8\mathbb{O}$ or 9... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xf7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 11. $h8=\mathbb{W}$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (10. $\mathbb{W}xf7?$ $\mathbb{E}h6+$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}g6+!$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}g5+)$ 10... $\mathbb{E}d6$



13-29

W

If White chooses 11. $\mathbb{W}c8+?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}f8$ $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f5$, Black manages to hold after 13... $\mathbb{E}f6+!$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (or 14. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}e6+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{E}f6=$) 14... $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}f6!$ 16. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{E}h6+$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$

The winning continuation is 11. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f3\text{O}$ (12. $\mathbb{W}xf7?$ $\mathbb{E}e4+$) 12... $\mathbb{E}g6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ (13... $\mathbb{E}e6+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}g6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ 16. $\mathbb{W}xf7+-$), and only now 14. $\mathbb{W}c8+ \mathbb{Q}xh7$ 15. $\mathbb{W}f8 \mathbb{Q}g6$ (15... $\mathbb{E}g4+$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 17. $\mathbb{W}e8!\text{O}$) 16. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}h7$ 17. $\mathbb{W}g8+$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 18. $\mathbb{W}h8\text{O}$.

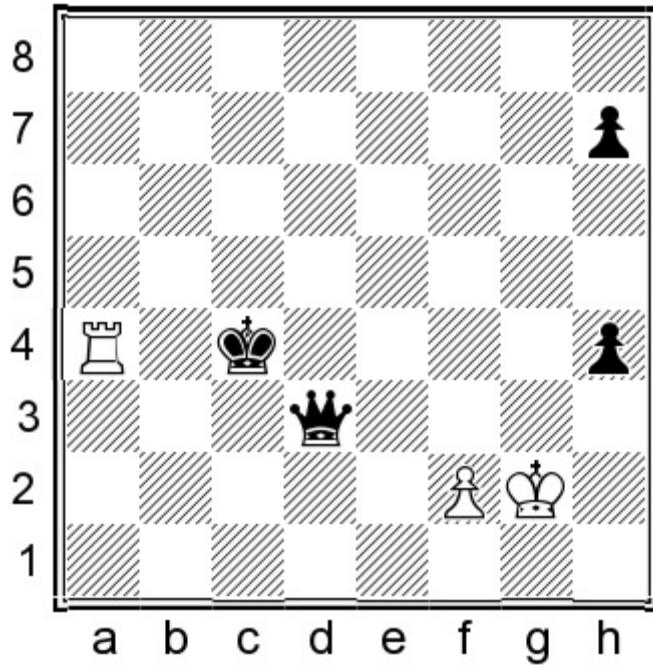
Returning to diagram 13-27, we should add that the *evaluation of this position would be changed if the white king were standing on the seventh or the eighth rank*. For example, if the king is on d7 then 1. $\mathbb{W}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $h6$ wins.

A draw also cannot be reached if all the pieces are shifted to the left or downwards.

As Grigoriev proved, Black loses if he has an additional pawn on h6. The reason is obvious: the pawn deprives the rook of the second protected square.

Tragomedies

Averbakh – Bondarevsky
USSR ch, Moscow 1948



13-30

B?

Averbakh, in contrast to his opponent, knew Kasparian's freshly published analysis; this fact enabled him to hold this apparently hopeless position.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d5?$

1... $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ was an easy win.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6?$

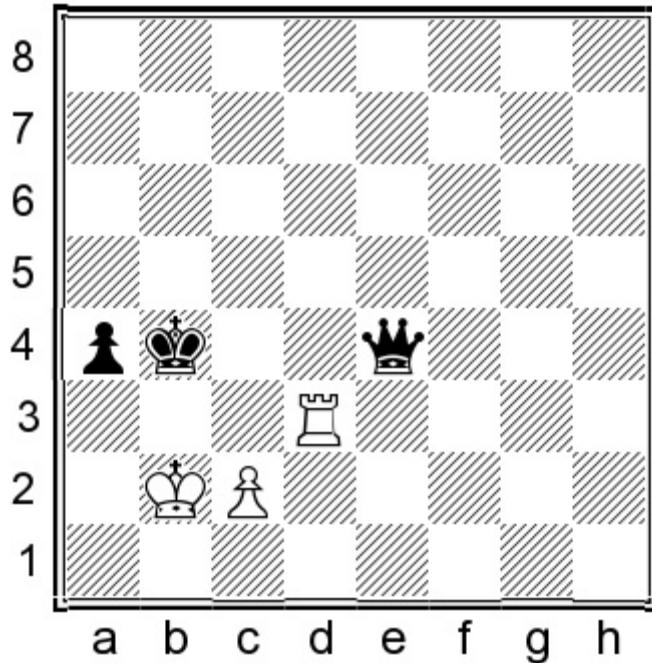
As Abramov demonstrated, Black could avoid Grigoriev's drawn position by playing 2... $\mathbb{W}g6+!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}e5+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}g5+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}g1-+$; 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $h5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{W}g5-+$) 5... $\mathbb{W}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}d5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{W}h1-+$

3. $\mathbb{Q}h3!=$

A draw has become inevitable.

3... $\mathbb{W}e4+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{W}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $h5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $h4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}b7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}b1$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ $\mathbb{W}h7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ $\mathbb{W}c7+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}c2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ Draw.

Timman – Nunn
Wijk aan Zee 1982



13-31

W?

1.†a2?? (1.‡a3! †e5+ 2.†a2 led to a draw)

1.†a2?? a3!

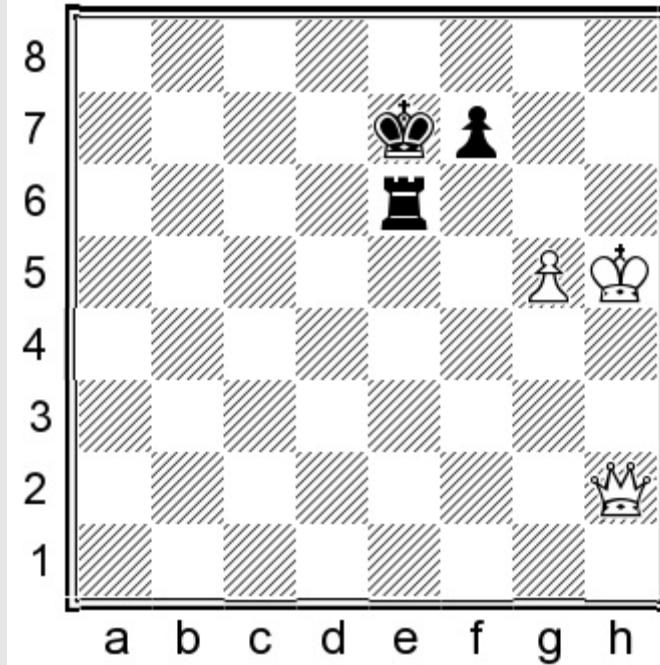
The pawn has crept in at a3, and White's position is lost now. He resigned in view of rather simple variations: 2.†b1 †e1+ 3.†a2 †c1 4.‡b3+ †a4 and 2.‡b3+ †c4 3.†xa3 †xc2.

Pawns on Adjacent Files

Almost all positions with the pawns on the same files are lost. Positions with the pawns on adjacent files, however, are sometimes tenable, but only if the weaker side's pawn stands on its initial square.

In the next diagram, if Black is on move he holds by means of transferring his king to g7.

F.Dedrle 1925*



13-32

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b2+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$

White cannot do anything as 5. $\mathbb{W}f6$ leads to a drawn pawn endgame.

If White is on move in the initial position, he wins by preparing a sacrifice of his queen for the rook.

1. $\mathbb{W}b8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xg6!$) 4. $\mathbb{W}xe6+!$ $fxe6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6+-$

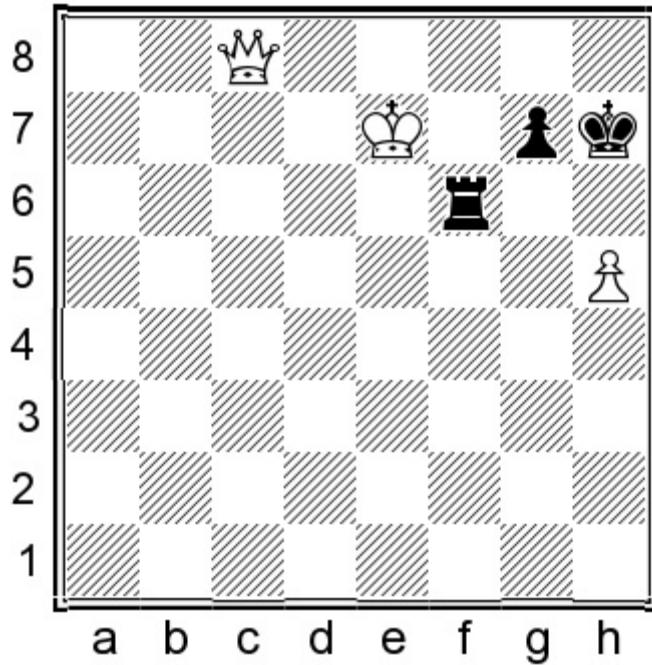
From this example, the following conclusions can be drawn:

(1) An important technique of exploiting an advantage can be a queen sacrifice that results in a winning pawn endgame.

(2) The weaker side should keep his king in front of the opponent's pawn; this can often (but by no means always!) neutralize the threat of the queen sacrifice. If the pawn stands on e5 (instead of g5) the king should stay on e7.

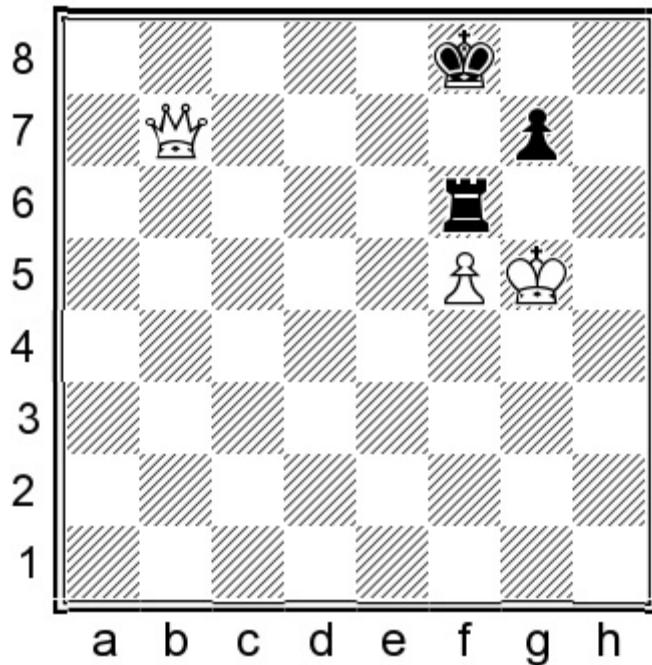
(3) With the white king on the seventh rank, Black's position is most often lost.

One should not accept these rules absolutely, exceptions sometimes happen.



13-33
\$
W

1. $\mathbb{W}c2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8=$ (rather than 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6??$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e4\Theta+-$). Although the white king has reached the seventh rank, there is still no win. The reason is that any pawn endgame with a rook pawn is drawn.



13-34
\$
B

Black loses in spite of the fact that his king occupies a “regular” position in front of the pawn.

1... $\mathbb{E}h6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d7$

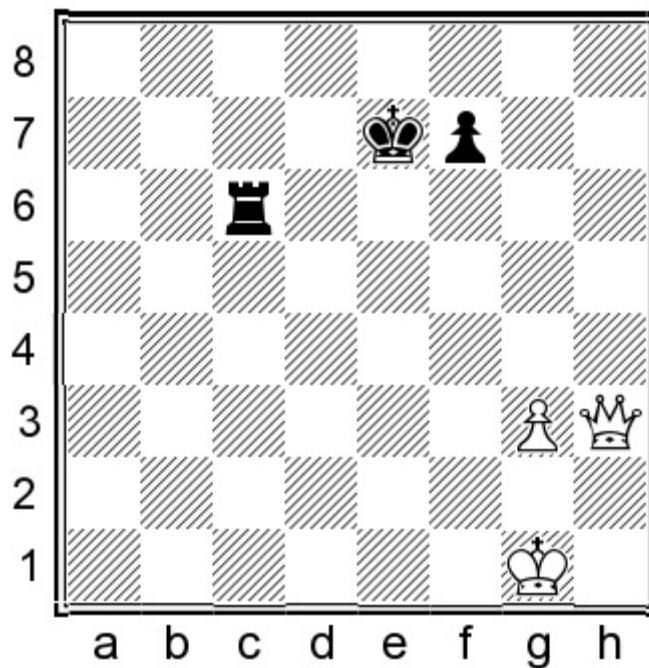
Zugzwang. If 2... $\mathbb{E}f6$, then 3. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xf6+$ $gxf6+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ is decisive. 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ does not help. The king has abandoned the position in front of the pawn, and a queen sacrifice cannot be avoided any longer: 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e6!+-$

Now let us move the entire position after 2. $\mathbb{W}d7$ to the left by one file (Black’s pawn on f7, rook on g6, etc.). There is no zugzwang any longer because Black has the waiting move 2... $\mathbb{E}h6!$; therefore White cannot win.

Tragicomедies

Sämisch – Prins

Hastings 1938/39



13-35

W

Sämisch agreed to a draw without any knowledge that he had a winning position. He had only to prevent the black king from coming to g7.

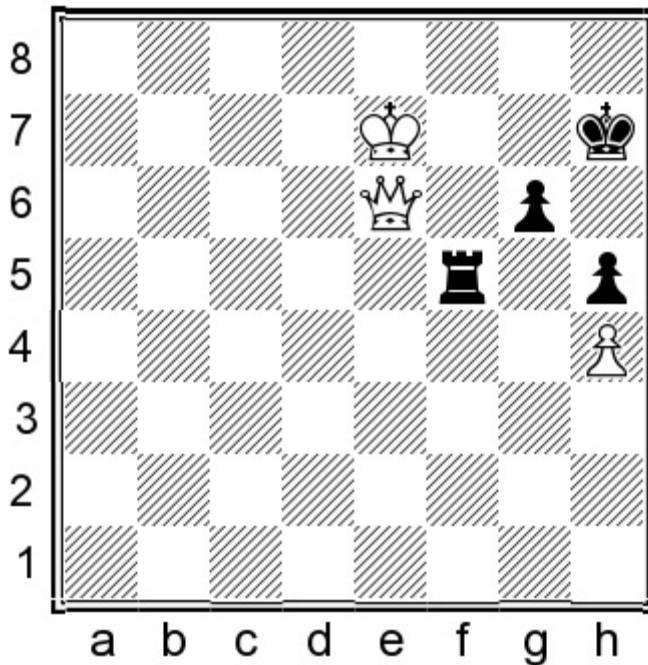
Here is Keres’ analysis:

1. $\mathbb{W}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ 7.g4 $\mathbb{E}g6$ 8.g5 $\mathbb{E}e6$ 9. $\mathbb{W}b8$ (Dedrle’s position) 9... $\mathbb{E}g6$ 10. $\mathbb{W}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 11. $\mathbb{W}e4+$ followed by a queen sacrifice.

A Fortress with Multiple Pawns

From the multitude of theoretically known positions where a rook opposes a queen more or less successfully, we select several of the most important and characteristic cases.

V.Khenkin 1962



13-36

\$

B

1... \hat{Q} h8!?

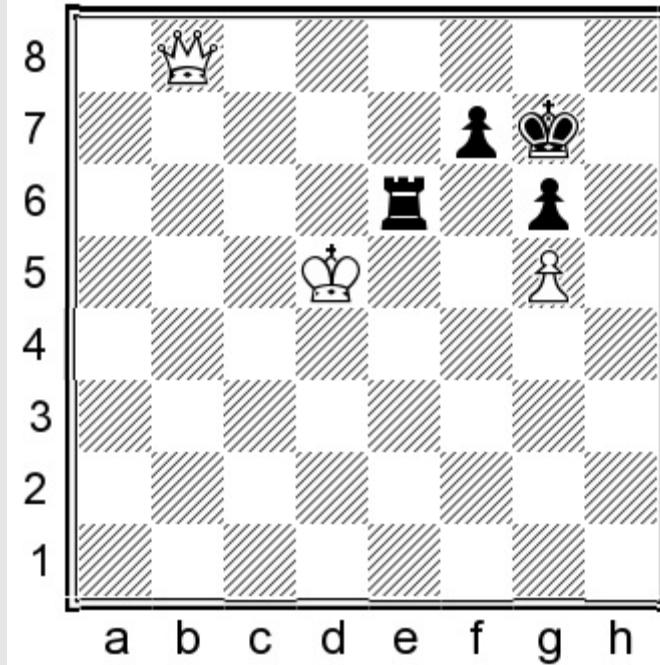
Both 1... \hat{Q} g7

and 1... \hat{Q} f1 are not by any means worse than this.

1... \hat{Q} h8!? 2. $\hat{W}xg6$ $\hat{Q}f7+$ (2... $\hat{Q}e5+$) 3. $\hat{Q}e6$ $\hat{Q}e7+$ with a draw by a stalemate or perpetual check.

With a shift up, the position is still drawn. But when shifted down, it is lost: White wins by means of a queen attack along the last rank.

V.Khenkin 1966



13-37
W

As we know, a similar position, without the g6-pawn, is drawn. But here, when this pawn deprives the rook of the second protected square, White wins: he gradually approaches the black pawn with his king using the zugzwang technique.

It is worth mentioning that White is helpless in making any progress if his king is cut off in the lower right corner, be it in the diagrammed position or in many similar situations.

1. $\mathbb{W}c7! \text{O } 1... \mathbb{E}e3$

Other moves are no better:

1... $\mathbb{E}a6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c3 + \mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}c4!$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ (3... $\mathbb{E}a5 +$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{E}xg5$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xf7 + \mathbb{Q}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}f4 \mathbb{Q}h5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}h2 + \mathbb{Q}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{W}h6 +$ —; 3... $\mathbb{E}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c7 \mathbb{E}b5 +$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{E}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7 +$ —) 4. $\mathbb{W}c8$ (threatening 5. $\mathbb{W}xe6$) 4... $\mathbb{E}e1$ 5. $\mathbb{W}f8 \mathbb{E}f1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ with 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ and 8. $\mathbb{W}xf7 +$ to follow;

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c8 + \mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b8! \text{O}$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f8 \mathbb{E}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}g8 \mathbb{Q}c7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}a8 \mathbb{E}d7 +$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}f8 \text{O}$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5 +$ —

2. $\mathbb{W}c2! \mathbb{Q}g8$

If 2... $\mathbb{E}a3$ or 2... $\mathbb{E}g3$, 3. $\mathbb{W}b2 +$ decides immediately; if 2... $\mathbb{E}e6$, then 3. $\mathbb{W}c3 + \mathbb{Q}g8$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}h3 +$; 3... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}c8 + \mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}b8! \text{O}$) 4. $\mathbb{W}c8 +$ and 5. $\mathbb{W}xe6$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{E}e6 +$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{E}e3$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c4! +$ —) 5. $\mathbb{W}c4!$

The rook must leave the e-file because 5... $\mathbb{E}e1$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c8 +$ is bad.

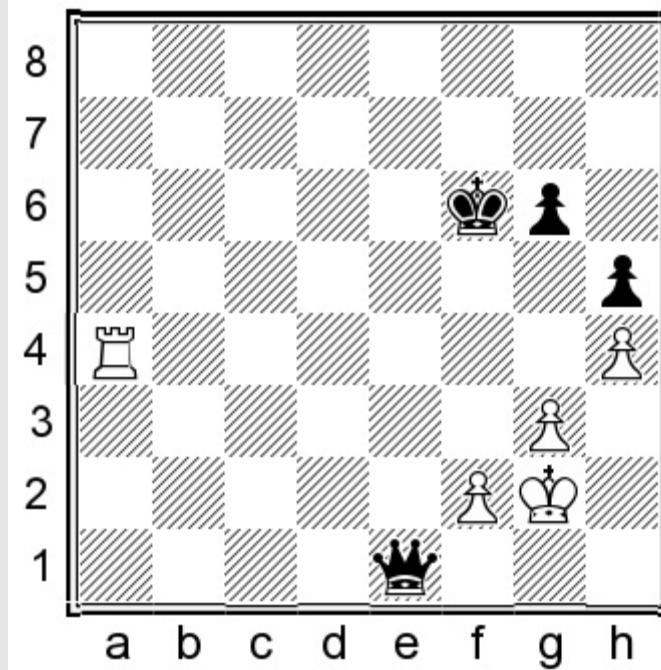
5... $\mathbb{E}a3$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e4 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}e5 +$

This decides a bit more rapidly than Khenkin's suggestion, 7.†e7 †a7+ 8.†e8.

7...†g8 8.†b8+ †h7 (8...†g7 9.†b2+) 9.†e7+-

Dorfman – Beliavsky

Lvov zt 1978



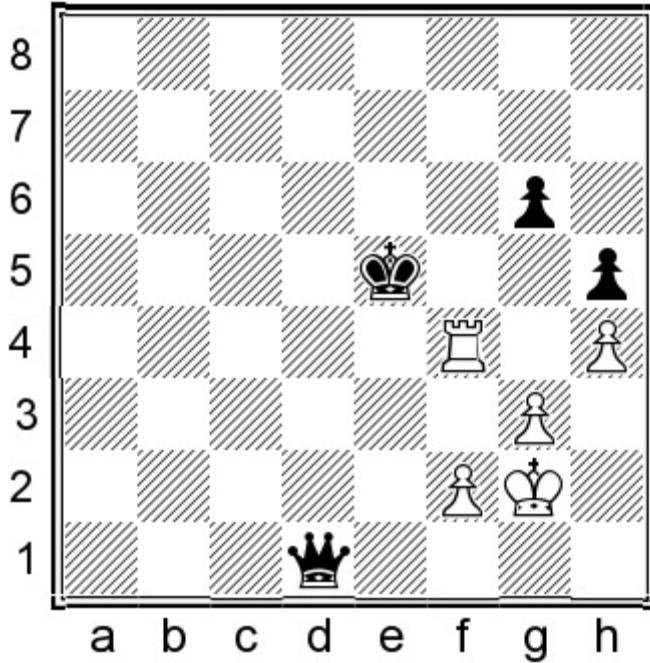
13-38

W

Khenkin supplied a detailed analysis for this ending.

Where does the rook belong, on e3 or f4? It turns out that both squares are good when the black king is on d5; but the rook should stand on f4 (to protect g4) while the black king remains on the kingside.

A draw could be reached by means of 1.†f4+! †e5 2.†f8 (2.†a4 is also good) 2...†e4+ 3.†g1 †c6 4.†f4 †c1+ 5.†g2 †d1



13-39
\$
W

If the rook remains on the fourth rank – 6. $\mathbb{R}b4$ – then after 6... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{R}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$, as theory says, 8. $\mathbb{R}e4$? loses to 8... $\mathbb{W}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$! 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{W}d3$! 11. $\mathbb{R}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$! 12. $\mathbb{R}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 13. $\mathbb{R}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7\Theta$) 10... $\mathbb{W}d1$! Therefore White should play 8. $\mathbb{R}f8$!, giving way to the black king and planning a rook transfer to e3.

This maneuver can even be started immediately – 6. $\mathbb{R}f8$!? $\mathbb{W}d5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 9. $\mathbb{R}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}g4$?! 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}d2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g2$! $g5\Box$ 12. $hxg5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 13. $\mathbb{R}f4=$ followed by $\mathbb{R}h4-f4-h4$) 10. $\mathbb{R}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 11. $\mathbb{R}e3$!= Black cannot make any progress.

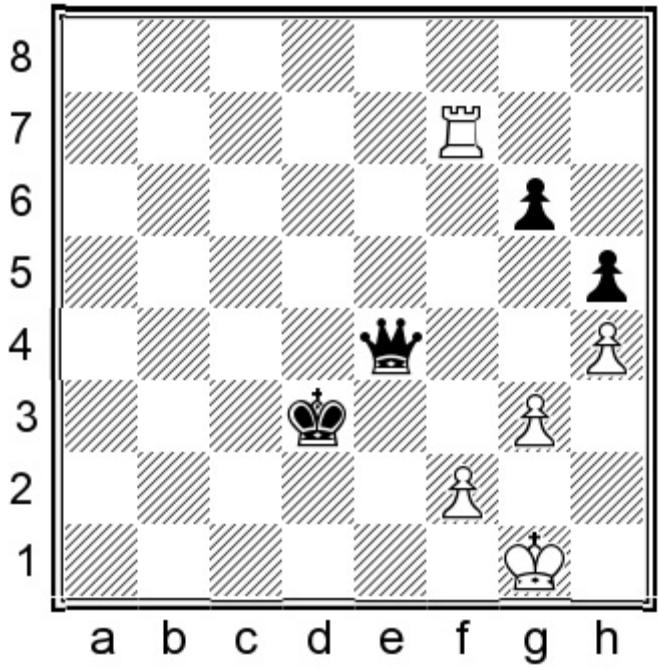
In the actual game, Dorfman undertook a premature transfer to e3.

1. $\mathbb{R}a3$? $\mathbb{W}e4+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{R}e3$??

White loses rapidly after 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}b7+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$! (of course, not 5... $\mathbb{W}b2$? 6. $\mathbb{R}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. $\mathbb{R}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g2=$) 6. $\mathbb{R}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 7. $\mathbb{R}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2-$.

However after 3. $\mathbb{R}a7$!, the winning process would have been very complicated. In case of even the slightest inaccuracy, White could have reached one of the drawn positions that have been mentioned above (with the rook on f4 or e3).

3... $\mathbb{W}c6$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}g4$?? 4. $\mathbb{R}f7$!+) 4. $\mathbb{R}f7+$ (4. $\mathbb{R}e7$ $\mathbb{W}f6$! Δ 5... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ -+) 4... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$! $\mathbb{W}d6$! (5... $\mathbb{Q}d3$? 6. $\mathbb{R}e7$! Δ $\mathbb{R}e3$ =) 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (6. $\mathbb{R}f4+$ $\mathbb{W}xf4$; 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$) 6... $\mathbb{W}d5$! (6... $\mathbb{Q}d3$? 7. $\mathbb{R}f3+$ and 8. $\mathbb{R}e3$ =; 6... $\mathbb{W}e6$? 7. $\mathbb{R}f4$ +) 7. $\mathbb{R}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}c6$! 9. $\mathbb{R}f7$! (10. $\mathbb{R}e7$ = is threatened) 9... $\mathbb{W}e4$!



13-40

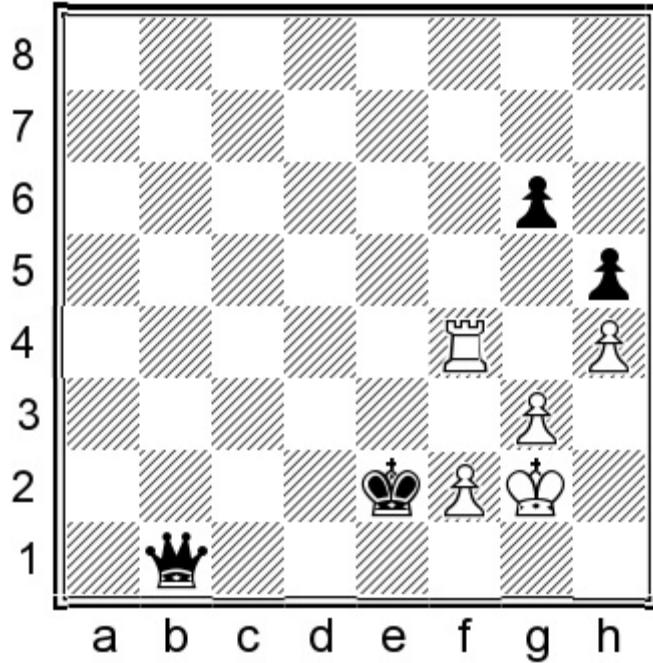
W

10. $\mathbb{E}f4$ $\mathbb{W}e2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (11. $\mathbb{E}f8$ $\mathbb{W}e1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}e4!$ 13. $\mathbb{E}f4$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e2-$) 11... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 12. $\mathbb{E}a4$ $\mathbb{W}e6!$ 13. $\mathbb{E}b4$ (13. $\mathbb{E}a3$ $\mathbb{W}c6+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$) 13... $\mathbb{W}d5+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 15. $\mathbb{E}b2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3-$;

10. $\mathbb{E}a7$ $\mathbb{W}b4!$ (Δ 11... $\mathbb{Q}e2$) 11. $\mathbb{E}a6(a8)$ 11... $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}b7+$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}e2-$; or 11. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}c5!$ 12. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{W}d5+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 14. $\mathbb{E}xg6$ $\mathbb{W}d1+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ (rather than 15... $\mathbb{Q}xf2?$ 16. $\mathbb{E}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 17. $\mathbb{E}f4$, arriving at the drawn position from diagram 13-36) 16. $\mathbb{E}b6$ (16. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{W}d4$) 16... $\mathbb{W}c2$ 17. $\mathbb{E}f6$ $\mathbb{W}e4-$

In the last line, Khenkin does not investigate the most stubborn defense, 11. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$, preventing the king invasion to e2. Black responds with 11... $\mathbb{W}d6!$, planning to bring his king to g4. For example, 12. $\mathbb{E}a1$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}c5!$; 12. $\mathbb{E}a2$ $\mathbb{W}c6!$) 12... $\mathbb{W}c6!$ 13. $\mathbb{E}a3+$ (13. $\mathbb{E}d1+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$) 13... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 14. $\mathbb{E}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ etc.

3... $\mathbb{W}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ (4. $\mathbb{E}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$; 4. $\mathbb{E}e8$ $\mathbb{W}f7!$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (threatening 5... $\mathbb{Q}h3$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}c6!$ 6. $\mathbb{E}a3$ (6. $\mathbb{E}b3$ $\mathbb{W}c2$) 6... $\mathbb{W}c1!$ 7. $\mathbb{E}e3$ $\mathbb{W}f1$ 8. $\mathbb{E}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 9. $\mathbb{E}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 10. $\mathbb{E}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 11. $\mathbb{E}f4$ $\mathbb{W}b1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$



13-41

W

13.♘f6?

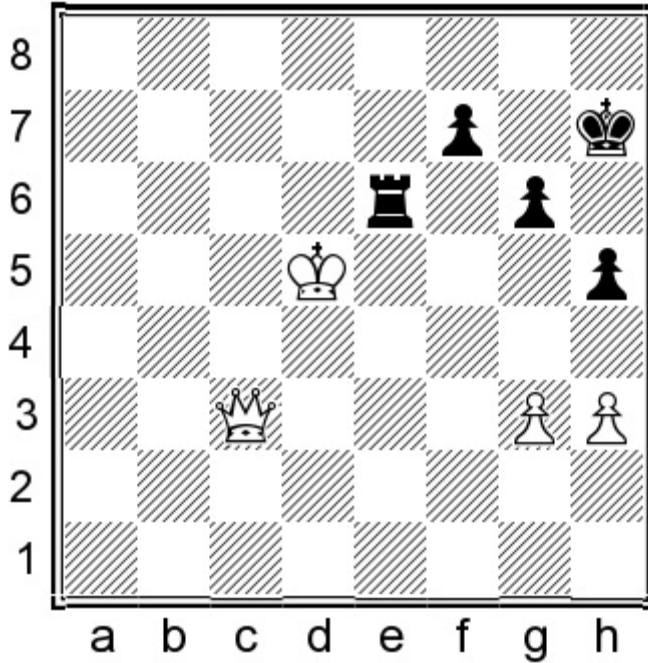
This leads to an immediate collapse. However, the best choice, 13.♘f8, was good enough only for postponing the deadly end for a while: 13...♗b7+ 14.♔g1 ♗c6! 15.♘f4 ♗a8! (the rook is forced to occupy a light square) 16.♘f7 ♗a1+ 17.♔g2 ♗f1+ 18.♔h2 ♗d1! 19.♘f4 (19.♔g2 ♗d5+) 19...♔f1+

13...♗f1+ 14.♔h2 ♗a1!

White resigned in view of the inevitable 15...♔f1.

To fully understand the following endgame, we should refresh our memories with the evaluations of several already known positions.

V.Khenkin 1966



13-42
\$
W?

As we know from the previous example, it would have been an easy draw if the white pawn had been standing on h4. Here, on the contrary, White has a clear plan: to push his pawn to g5, obtaining Khenkin's winning position from diagram 13-37.

However, the immediate 1.g4? hxg4 2.hxg4 meets a strong response, 2...g5!= When White wins the g5-pawn, the drawn position of Dederle arises (diagram 13-32).

When analyzing it, we have mentioned that White wins if his king is on the seventh rank. From this, we come to the correct plan: first White should cross the fifth rank with his king and only then may he push the g-pawn.

1.♔c5! ♔g8 2.♕d4 ♔h7 3.♕d8 ♔g7 4.♔b5O 4...♜e1

Nothing else helps, viz.:

(a) 4...♔h7 5.♕f8+–;

(b) 4...♜f6 5.♕d4 g5 6.♕d8! ♜g6 7.♔c5 h4 (7...g4 8.h4+–) 8.g4!+–;

(c) 4...♜e4 5.♔c6 ♜c4+ 6.♔d5 ♜c3 7.♕b8 ♜d3+ 8.♔e4 ♜d1 9.♕b2+ ♔g8 10.♕c3 ♜d6 11.♔e5 ♜e6+ 12.♔f4 ♔h7 13.♔g5+–

5.♕d4+ ♔g8 6.♔c6 ♜e6+

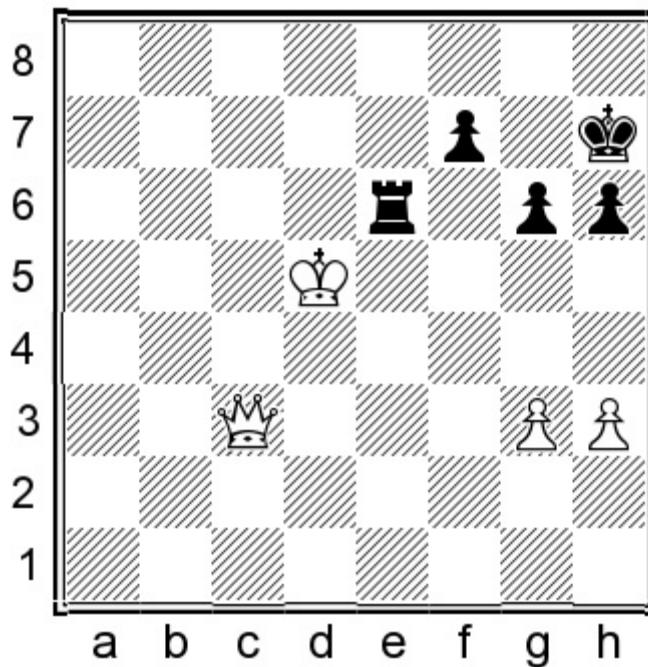
6...♜h1 7.♔d7! ♜xh3 8.♔e7 ♜xg3 9.♕f4 ♜a3 10.♕xf7+ ♔h8 11.♕xg6 is hopeless.

7.♔d7 ♜e1 8.g4! hxg4 9.hxg4

After 9...g5 10.♕d2 ♜e6 11.♕xg5+ or 9...♜e6 10.g5!, we come to one of the aforementioned

positions.

In the last diagram, move the h5-pawn to h6. The evaluation then changes.



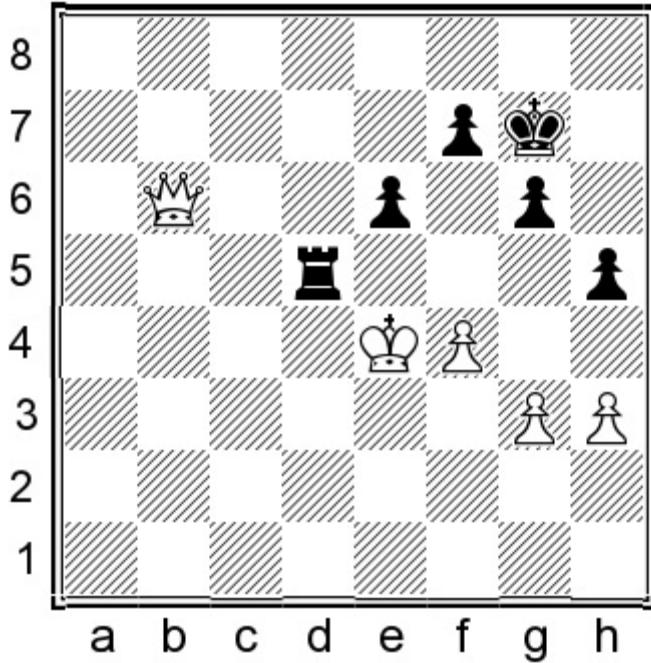
13-43

\$

Black, if on move, plays **1...g5**, getting another protected square for the rook (g6). After **2.h4 gxh4 3.gxh4**, he comes to the drawn position of Grigoriev (diagram 13-27) by means of the pawn sacrifice **3...h5!** He must sacrifice; otherwise White advances his pawn to h5 and wins.

If White is on move, he can prevent ...g6-g5 solely by playing **1.h4**, but then **1...h5!=** follows.

M.Botvinnik 1952



13-44
\$
W

Botvinnik investigated this position (with reversed colors) when he analyzed his adjourned game versus Troianescu (1952). He proved that the inevitable queen sacrifice on d5 leads to a winning pawn endgame.

1.g4 hxg4 2.hxg4 ♔g8 3.♔c7 ♔g7 4.♔c6 ♔f8

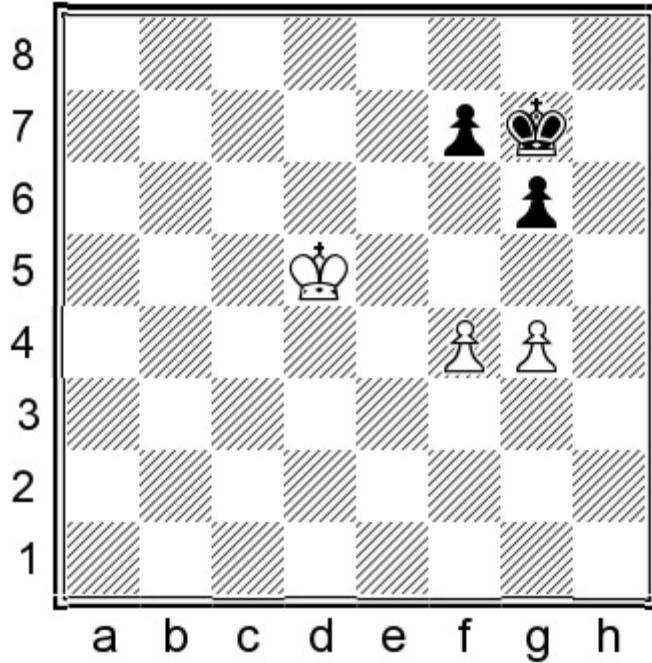
Otherwise the white king breaks through: 4...♚d8 5.♗c3+ ♔g8 6.♔e5 ♔g7 7.f5! exf5 8.gxf5 ♜e8+ (8...gxf5 9.♗g3+ ♔f8 10.♔f6) 9.♔f4+ ♔g8 10.fxg6 fxg6 11.♔g5 ♜e6 12.♗c7 ♔f8 13.♗d7+– (Khenkin). 8...f6+!? 9.♔f4 ♜d5 is more tenacious; it leads to a theoretical position with a bishop pawn on the sixth rank that is winning for White, although not easily.

4...♜d1 5.♗c3+ ♔g8 6.♔e5 ♔g7 (6...♜f1 7.♗c4 ♜g1 8.♗f6 ♜xg4 9.♗c7) 7.f5! exf5 8.gxf5 ♜f1 (8...gxf5 9.♗g3+ ♔f8 10.♔f6) 9.fxg6 fxg6 10.♔e6+ ♔g8. This line is given a strange verdict in endgame books: 11.♗d3 ♜g1 12.♔f6+– However after 11...♜f5!, we come to a known drawn position. Therefore, instead of 11.♗d3? White should play 11.♗h3!, threatening to invade on h6.

5.♗a8+!

Prior to the queen sacrifice, White should drive the black king back. It cannot go to the center: 5...♔e7 6.♗a3+ ♔e8 7.♗b4+–

5...♔g7 6.♗xd5! exd5+ (6...f5+ 7.♔e5 exd5 8.g5+–) 7.♔xd5



13-45

B

7... $\mathbb{Q}f8$

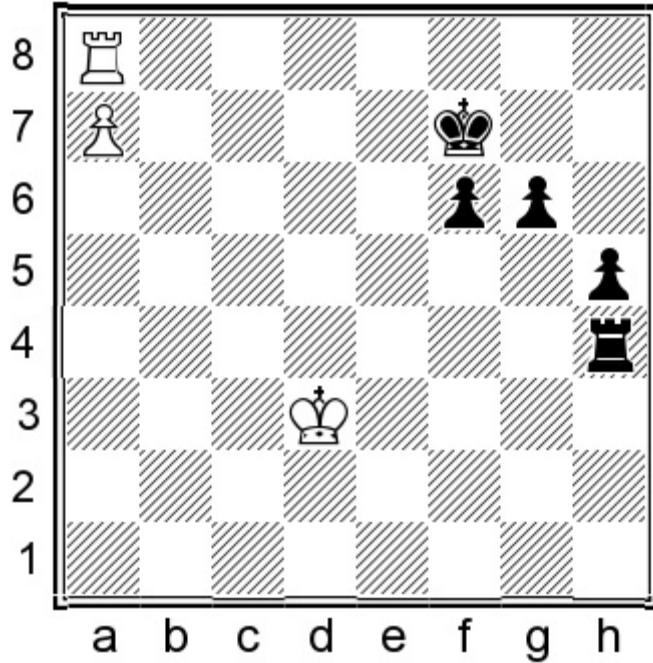
7... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$! makes no difference: 10. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d8$! (11. $\mathbb{Q}e7$? $\mathbb{Q}g8$!) 11... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 12.f5) 12. $\mathbb{Q}e8$! (an opposition is required when the pawn stands on f5, but not in this case) 12... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 14.f5 g5 15. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ –

8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 9.f5! g5 10. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ f6 14. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ +–

Tragicomедies

Ambroz – Ciocaltea

Baile Herculane zt 1982



13-46

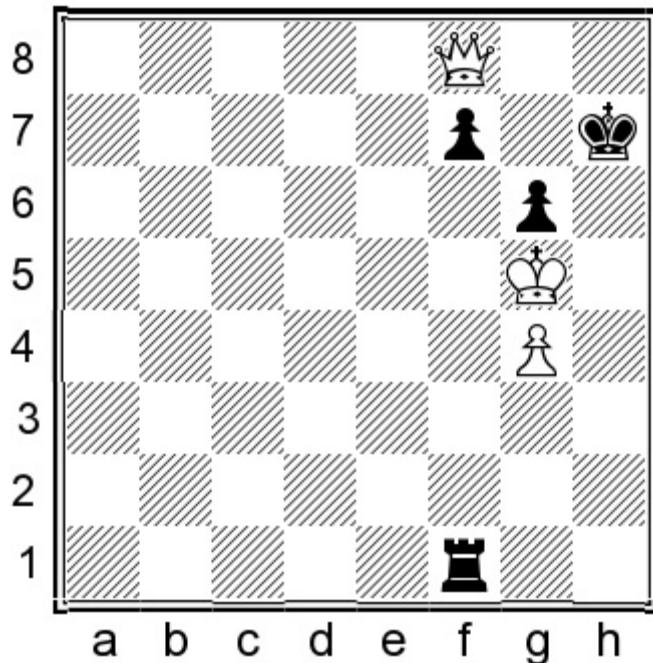
W?

After 1. $\mathbb{R}b8$ $\mathbb{R}a4$ 2. $a8=\mathbb{W}$ $\mathbb{R}xa8$ 3. $\mathbb{R}xa8$, the rook would easily get the upper hand against the three pawns.

1. $\mathbb{R}f8+??$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 2. $a8=\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b7+$ Draw. Black should just bring his rook to g4, f5 or e5.

Diagram 13-47 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



13-48

13/3

B?

Show/Hide Solution

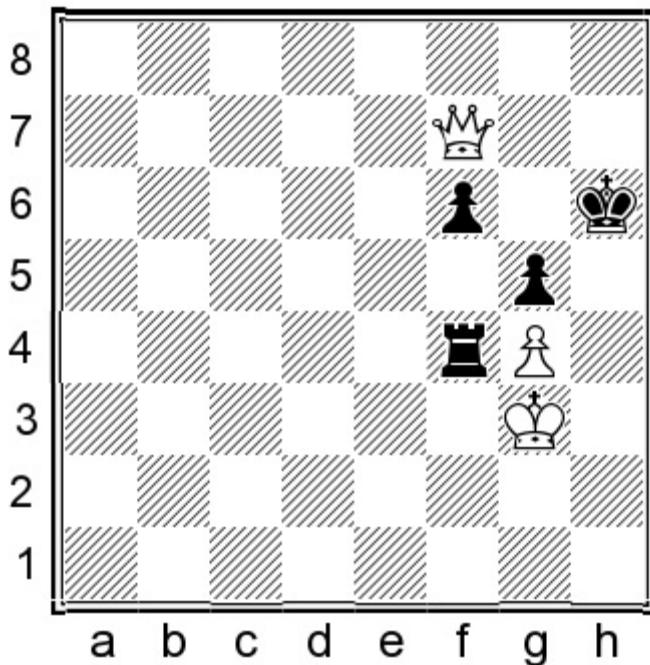
13/3. V. Khenkin, 1982

All rook retreats lose: 1... $\mathbb{E}f2?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h4$ $\mathbb{E}e2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6+ -$,

or 1... $\mathbb{E}f3?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h1!$ $\mathbb{E}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6+ -$.

After 1... $f6+!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h4$, 2... $\mathbb{E}f3$ is tempting, because Black, after the forced continuation 3. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 4. $g5+$ $fxg5+$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xg5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$, is close to the drawn Guretzky-Cornitz position (diagram 13-21): all he needs is to play $\mathbb{E}f5$ when the king is on the seventh or eighth rank. However, he fails to reach it: White plays 6. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{W}e7! \ominus$ 10... $\mathbb{E}h5$ 11. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 13. $\mathbb{W}g8$ $\mathbb{E}g5+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{E}f5+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}e4$, forcing the black king ahead and achieving the winning position from diagram 13-23 (Dvoretsky).

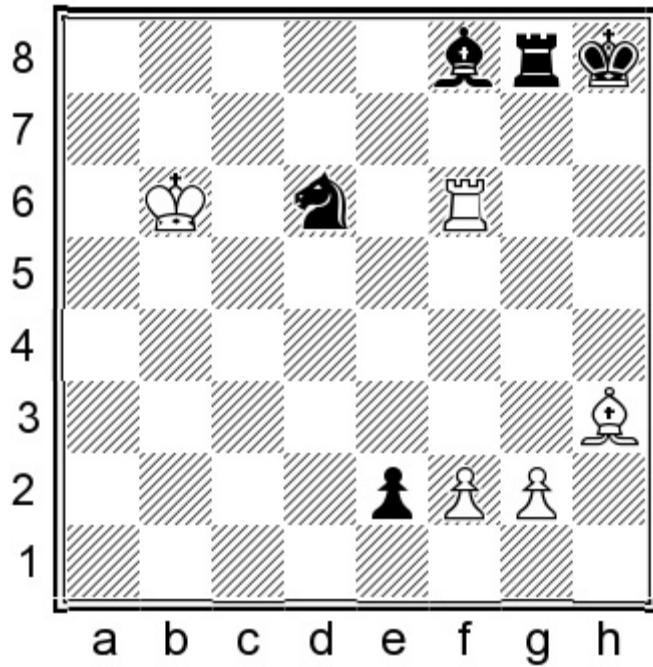
2... $g5+!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}f4$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$



16-100

W

His unfavorably placed king betrays White. 5. $\mathbb{W}g8$ $\mathbb{E}f1$ is useless. The king can break through to freedom only by 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2!?$ but after 5... $\mathbb{E}xg4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}f4+$ (6... $f5!?$ Dvoretsky) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}h4!$ 8. $\mathbb{W}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 9. $\mathbb{W}g7$ (9. $\mathbb{W}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6 \Delta$ 10... $\mathbb{E}f4$) 9... $\mathbb{E}f4$ the Guretzky-Cornitz drawing position (diagram 13-24) arises.



13-49

13/4

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

13/4. L.Katsnelson 1971

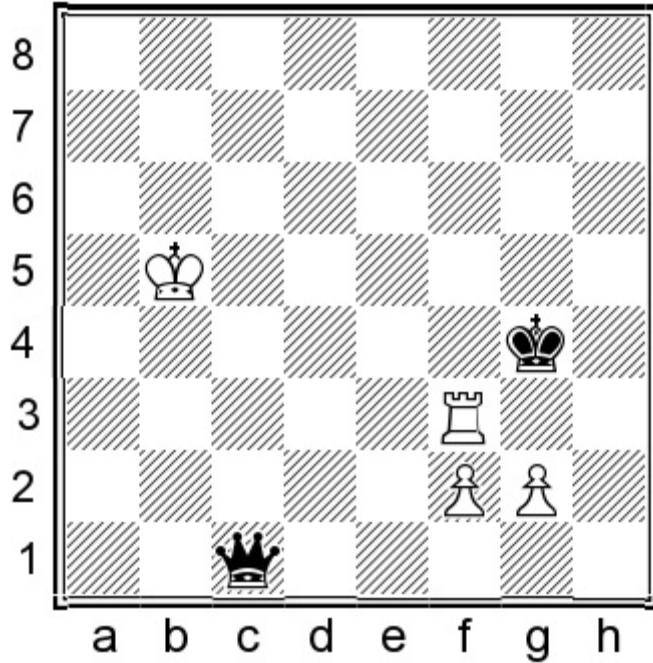
1.♕e6 ♜c4+ 2.♔b5!

Both 2.♔b7? ♕g7+ Δ 3...♕e7--+ and 2.♔a6? ♕g6!--+ are inaccurate.

2...♜e5! 3.♕xe5 ♕g5! 4.♖f5! ♕xf5! 5.♕xf5 e1=♕ 6.♕xf8+ ♔h7 7.♕f7+!

7.♕f3? is premature in view of 7...♛f1+ Δ 8...♛xg2. He should decoy the king to the g-file first.

7...♔h6 8.♕f6+ ♔h5 9.♕f5+ ♔g4 10.♕f3 (the g2-pawn is indirectly protected) 10...♛c1



16-101
W?

The outcome of the fight now depends on whether Black succeeds in stalemating the white king, putting him in zugzwang. This danger is quite real as the following analysis shows:

11. $\mathbb{Q}a4?$ $\mathbb{W}b2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{W}b7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}b5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{W}b4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{W}d2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}g5!$
18. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{W}c2\ominus-$

11. $\mathbb{Q}b6?$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{W}c5+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ etc.

11. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (14... $\mathbb{W}e2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ with perpetual check: the king cannot step onto the e-file) 15. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h3+!$ (16. $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ $\mathbb{W}f1+$) 16... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f3!=$

Chapter 14

Other Material Relations

In this chapter we shall discuss various types of endgames with non-standard material relations. We will be brief because their consequent theory is not yet fully developed. Often one can find a variety (rich or poor) of endgame studies and examples from practical play which are not systematized nor coordinated well enough. And even when the theory of a certain type of ending is developed, there is no sense in going deeply into it because the analyses are mostly complicated and perplexing, while the probability of their practical use is utterly unlikely.

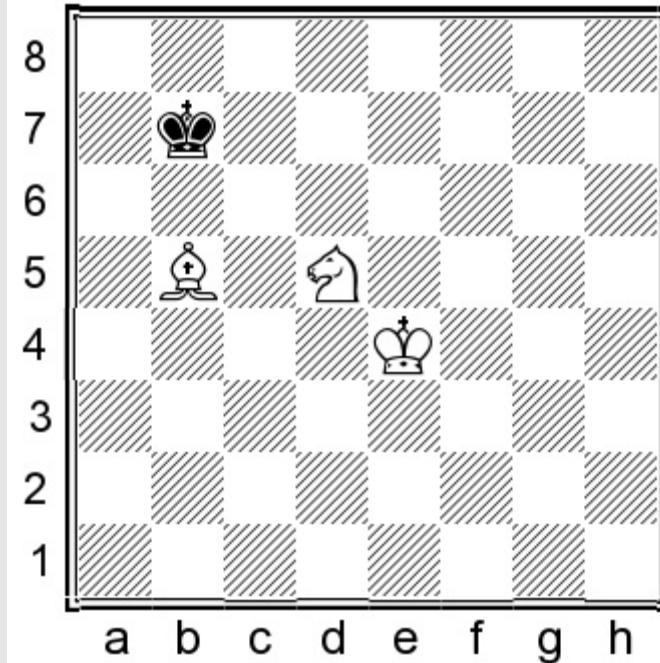
Two Extra Pieces

Checkmating with Bishop and Knight

I was unsure whether this subject should be included in the book, because the mating technique with a bishop and a knight against a lone king is explained in every tutorial for beginners. However, my experience as a chess trainer finally put an end to these doubts because I have seen how many chessplayers, including very strong ones, either missed learning this technique at an appropriate time or had already forgotten it.

Therefore they risk presenting their opponents with a half-point (and this has happened more than once), particularly under modern time controls when checkmating must often be performed in severe time trouble.

The king can be checkmated only in a corner of the bishop's color. The plan for the stronger side is obvious: first the enemy king is driven to an edge (this stage is simple but the king naturally aims to reach a safe corner). Thereafter the king is forced to a “proper” corner where mate is possible.



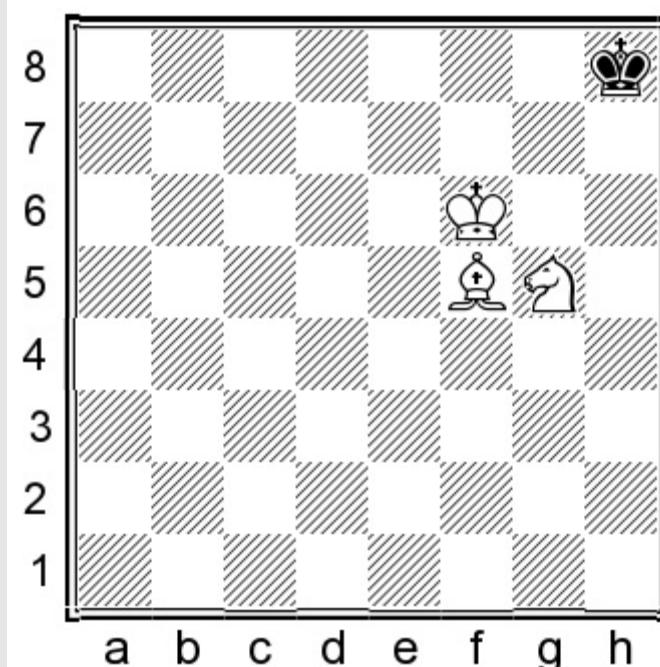
14-1

W

This is the type of position that the stronger side aims for. Notice that White's pieces have built a **barrier** that holds the black king in the corner. What remains is only to drive the king into the corner.

1. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}c8$ 2. $\hat{Q}e6$ $\hat{Q}d8$ 3. $\hat{Q}d6$ O 3... $\hat{Q}c8$ 4. $\hat{Q}e7$ $\hat{Q}b7$ 5. $\hat{Q}d7$ $\hat{Q}b8$ 6. $\hat{Q}a6!$ $\hat{Q}a7$ 7. $\hat{Q}c8$ $\hat{Q}b8$ 8. $\hat{Q}d8$ $\hat{Q}a7$ 9. $\hat{Q}c7$ $\hat{Q}a8$ 10. $\hat{Q}e7$ $\hat{Q}a7$ 11. $\hat{Q}c6+$ $\hat{Q}a8$ 12. $\hat{Q}b7\#$

And this is how the king is driven from one corner to the other.



1. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$

4... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ makes White's task easier: 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c6$, etc.

5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$

The king has broken loose from the edge of the board, but only for a while. White, with two accurate moves, creates a barrier, and locks the king in the corner.

6. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5+)$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}c5!?$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6)$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d5$, and we have built the barrier shown in the previous diagram.

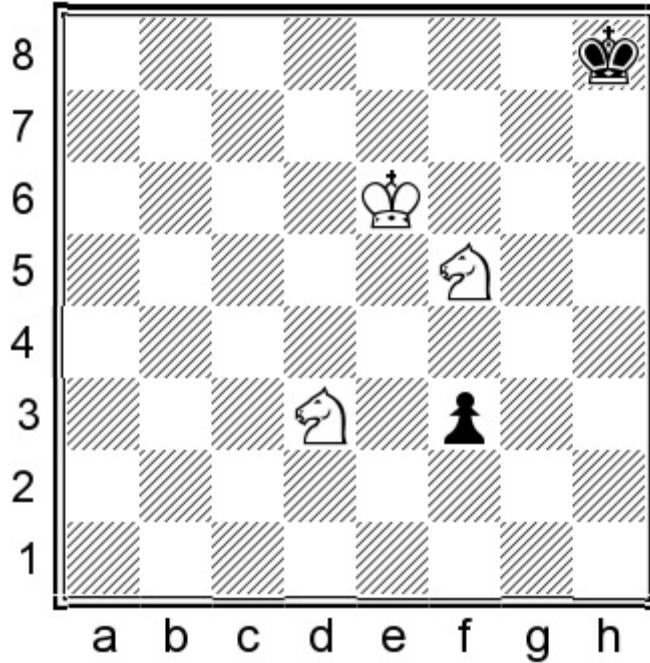
Checkmating with Two Knights

Driving the king to the edge of the board is an easy task. Alas, you can only stalemate it thereafter, not checkmate, but three knights will win against a single knight.

However if the defender has a pawn, and this pawn is not too advanced, and it is blocked with one of the knights, an eventual win is quite possible, although the winning process is very difficult; it may require dozens of precise moves.

As the Russian study composer Troitsky proved at the beginning of the 20th century, a knight together with a king can drive the solitary king either to a corner or towards the “spare” knight (the one that is blocking the pawn). Thereafter, the spare knight joins the hunt, and mate is delivered with its help.

A.Troitsky



14-3
W

From this diagram, play begins: 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f2 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ f1= \mathbb{Q} 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7!$

Troitsky's standard maneuver that enables the knight's transfer to e6, where this piece will be more dangerous for the black king.

5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ f2 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ f1= \mathbb{Q} 13. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$) 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ f2 12. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ f1= \mathbb{Q} 14. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$

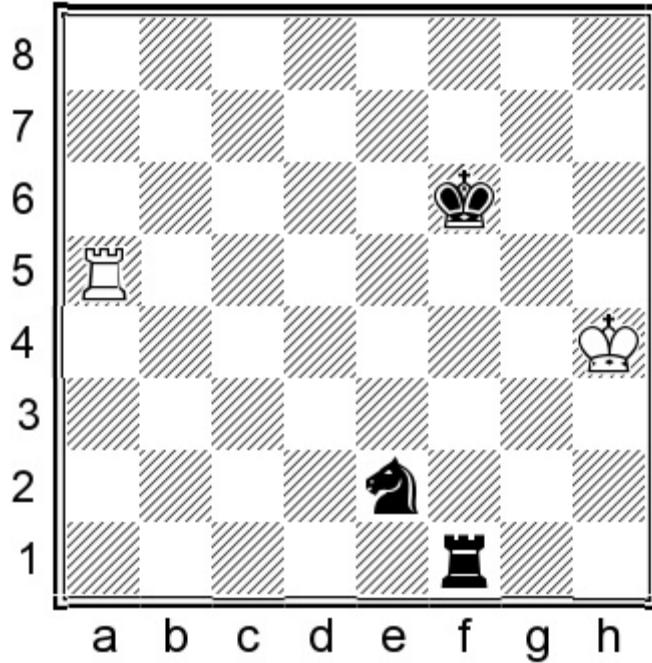
The pawn was very far advanced; therefore, White managed to deliver checkmate because the black monarch was already imprisoned in a corner close to f2-knight. If the king had more freedom it would run to a8, and White's knight cannot reach that corner in time.

Rook and Knight vs. Rook

A draw with a rook against a rook and a knight is not a difficult procedure. Even when your king is confined to the edge of the board, you can usually slip away from mating threats (sometimes with the help of stalemate).

The following endgame is taken from practical play; it illustrates various defensive resources (alas, not exploited by White) and the dangers that can punish the careless defender.

J.Polgar – Kasparov
Dos Hermanas 1996



14-4

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}a8?$

Why does Polgar not flee from the edge with her king? 1. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \Delta$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2=$ suggests itself.

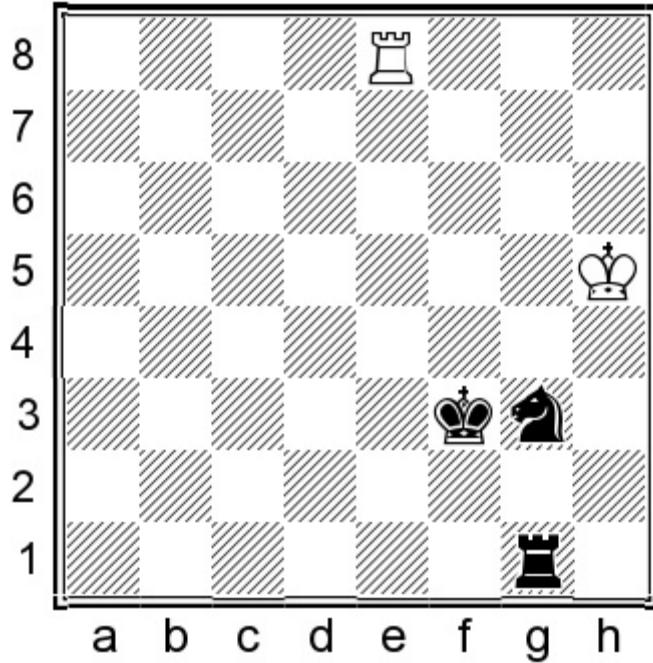
1. $\mathbb{Q}a8?$ $\mathbb{Q}g1!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8+ \mathbb{Q}f4$

The knight is taboo in view of mate.

4. $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e8+ \mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$

She could try playing for a stalemate: 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8+!?$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ For example, 7... $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$ $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ (the only method of holding the white king on the edge) 11. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ pushing the black king somewhat away and thereby reducing the danger of a mating attack.

6... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$



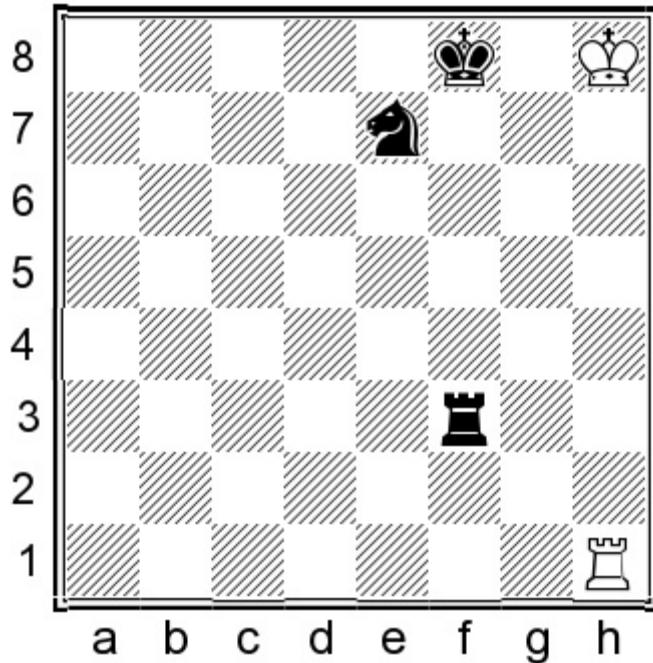
14-5
W

7.♘h6?!

Stronger was 7.♘g6! ♗e4+ 8.♘h6 (unfortunately, in view of knight forks, other squares are not available). From e4, the knight cannot protect the king from the inevitable 9.♗f8+.

7...♗f5+ 8.♘h7 ♘f4 9.♗b8 ♗g7+ 10.♘h8 ♗d7 11.♗e8

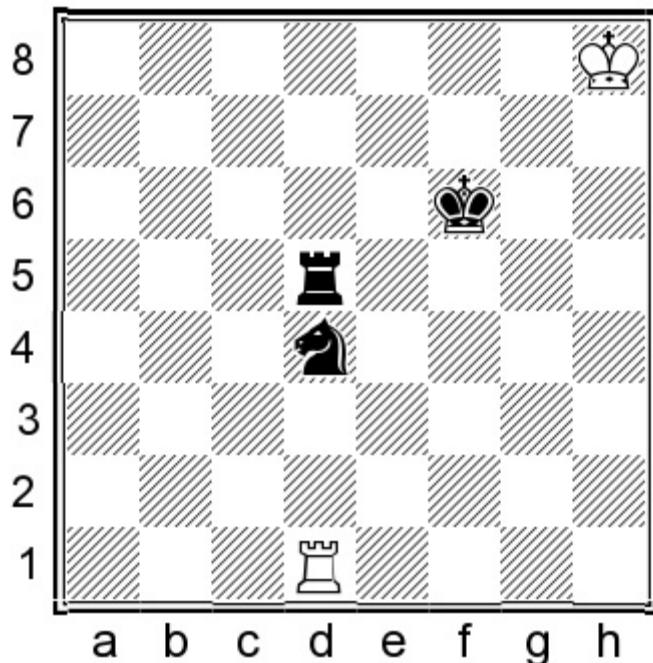
The king in the corner is in real danger. A line suggested by Nunn illustrates this: 11.♗f8? ♘g5 12.♗a8 ♘g6 13.♗g8+ ♘h6 14.♗g1 ♗d8+ 15.♗g8 ♗d3 (15...♗d2 is less precise in view of 16.♗g2!) 16.♗g1 ♗f3 17.♗g4 ♗e7 18.♗h4+ ♘g6 19.♗h6+ ♘f7 20.♗h7+ ♘f8 21.♗h1



14-6
B?

21... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}f6+$. Notice how the final construction looks: with the knight on f6, White cannot avoid mate, while a rook sacrifice for the sake of a stalemate cannot be arranged.

11... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$! (14. $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g8$) 14... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$



14-7
W?

15.¤a1??

The decisive error! 15.¤f1+! ¤f5 16.¤f2 (16.¤g8) 16...¤d4 17.¤g8!= was still good enough for a draw.

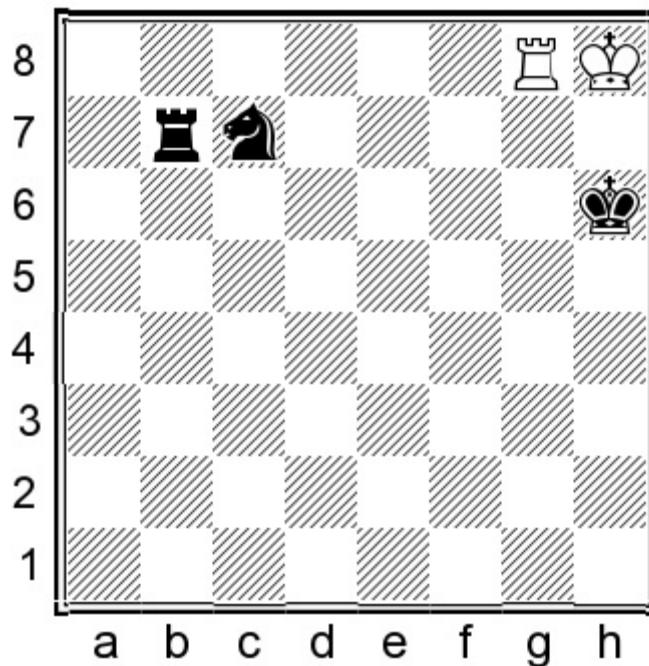
15...¤e6!—+ 16.¤a6 ¤f7 17.¤a7+ ¤g6 18.¤a8 ¤d7

Here and later on, Kasparov fails to find the proper grouping for his pieces (similar to that from the notes to the 11th move): 18...¤d6! 19.¤g8 ¤g5 20.¤f8 ¤e6 21.¤g8 ¤h7 22.¤b8 ¤e7 followed by 23...¤f6+. However his position remains winning, as the white king cannot escape from the corner.

19.¤b8 ¤c7 20.¤g8 ¤c5 21.¤a8 ¤b5 22.¤h8 ¤b7 (22...¤b6) 23.¤c8 ¤c7?!

23...¤b6!—+ Δ ...¤g5, ...¤e6, ...¤h7-f6.

24.¤g8+ ¤h6



14-8

W

25.¤g1?

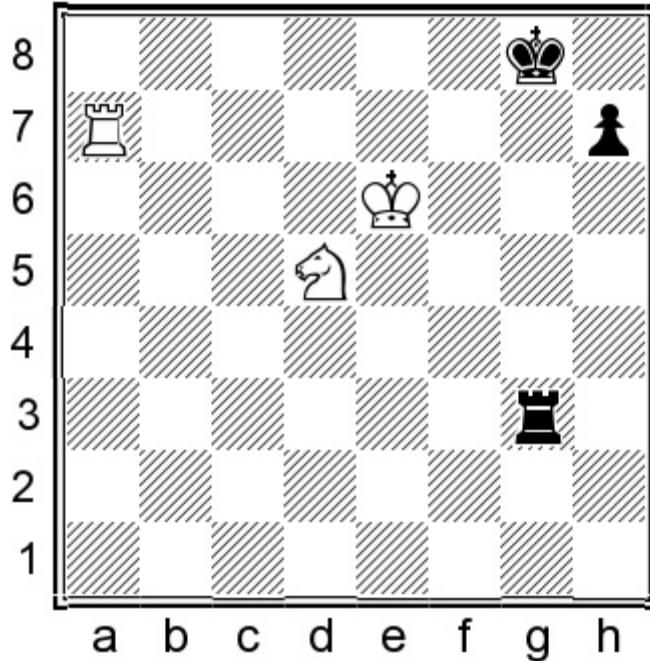
This error makes Black's task easier. 25.¤f8!? would have been more tenacious. White sets a trap (25...¤d5? 26.¤f6+!) and waits as to whether Black finds the winning plan (25...¤b6!).

25...¤b8+ 26.¤g8 ¤e8

White resigned on account of 27.¤f8 ¤g6 28.¤g8+ ¤f7—+.

Tragicomедии

Yudovich (jr.) – Bebchuk
Moscow ch 1964



14-9
B

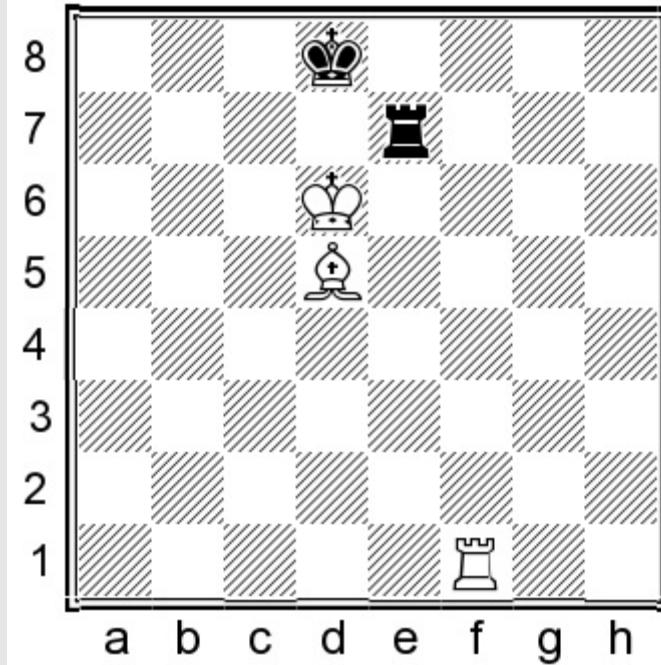
Black resigned without reason, for he could easily parry any mating threats: 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$
 $\mathbb{Q}e3+$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8=$

Rook and Bishop vs. Rook

Without Pawns

An illustration of the dangers fatal to the defender when his king is pressed to the edge of the board is the following position that was known as early as the 18th century.

Philidor 1749



14-10
\$
W

1. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$! $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (Δ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a7$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}e2!$

2... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ loses rapidly: 3. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7$.

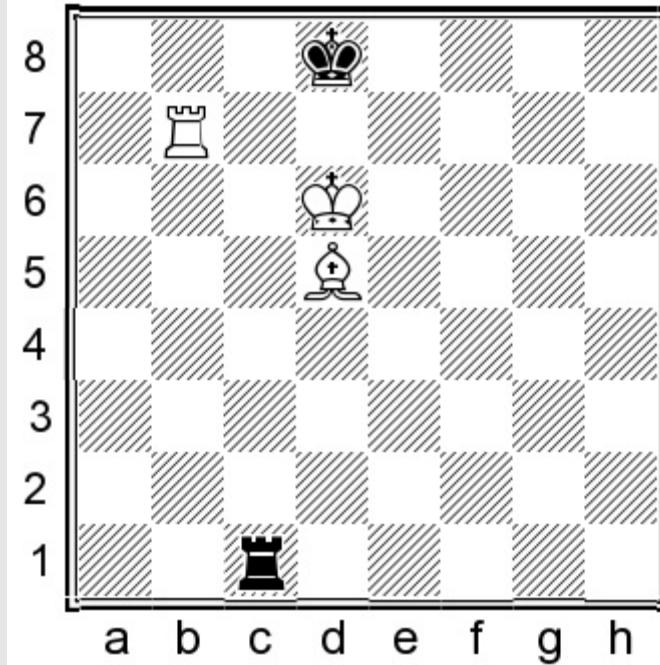
3. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ ⊙

An important waiting move. The black rook must leave the second rank where it stands best. The following line proves that the third rank is worse for the rook: 3... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ is threatened) 7... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ (the point – Black has no check along the d-file) 8... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b7$

These alternate threats from both wings are typical for this sort of position. If 4... $\mathbb{Q}c8$, 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ is decisive.

4... $\mathbb{Q}c1$



14-11

W?

5. Kb3!

The key move! If the black rook were standing on the second rank, a check from d2 could follow, while now Black must place his rook on the unfavorable third rank.

5...Rc3

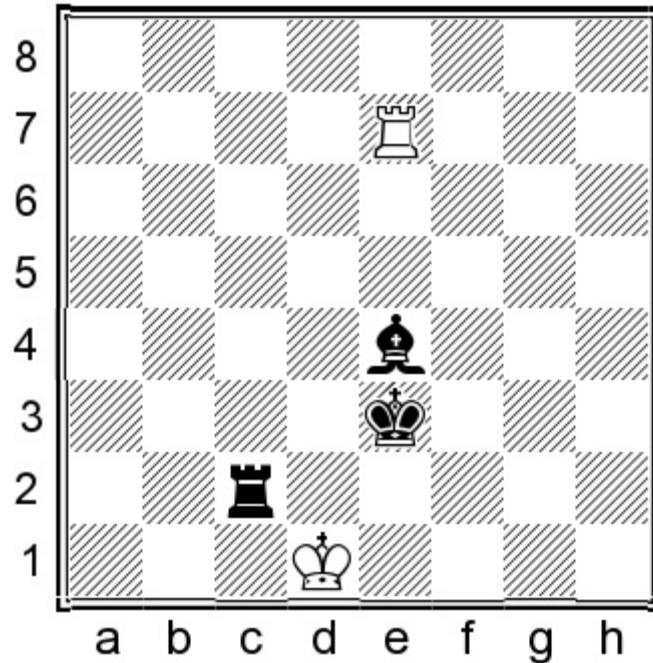
If 5...Qc8, then 6.Qb4 Qd8 7.Qh4 Re1 (7...Qc8 8.Qd5) 8.Qa4 (there is no saving check along the d-file again) 8...Qc8 and now the fastest win is 9.Qb4+– (9.Qc6 Rd1+ 10.Qd5 Qb8 11.Qa4 wins also).

6.Qe6 Rd3+ 7.Qd5 Rc3 8.Qd7+ Qc8 (8...Qe8 9.Qg7) 9.Qh7 Qb8 10.Qb7+ Qc8 11.Qb4 Qd8 12.Qc4! Qc8 13.Qe6+ and mate in two.

Not all positions with the king on the edge are of course lost. But the line between a draw and a loss is quite narrow; it can be easily crossed.

van der Weide – Marovic

Amsterdam 1967

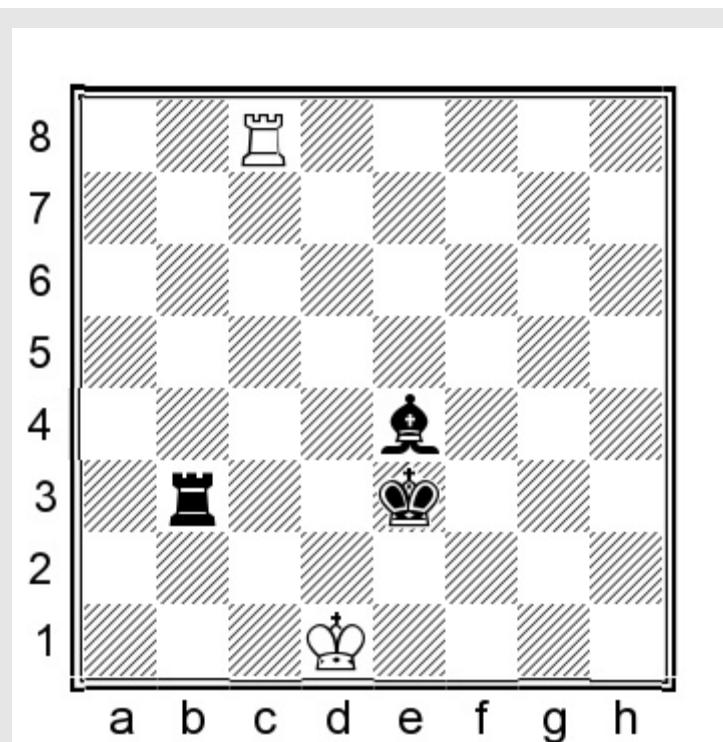


14-12

B

Black would instantly resolve the struggle's outcome by retreating the rook along the c-file: 1... $\mathbb{R}c8$ 2. $\mathbb{R}e5$ $\mathbb{R}d8+$ and 3... $\mathbb{R}b8$. The move made changes the evaluation of the position.

1... $\mathbb{R}b2?$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c7$ $\mathbb{R}b3$ 3. $\mathbb{R}c8$



14-13

B

The defensive scheme when the kings are not on the same file, as in Philidor's position, but on neighboring files, was examined in the first half of the 19th century by József Szen. You should direct your attention to it when your king is cut off along a rank or file on the edge.

It is useful to know that the position is drawn if the pieces are moved one or two files to the right, while moving them further to the left loses because they are too near the edge of the board.

3...♝b7 4.♝c5

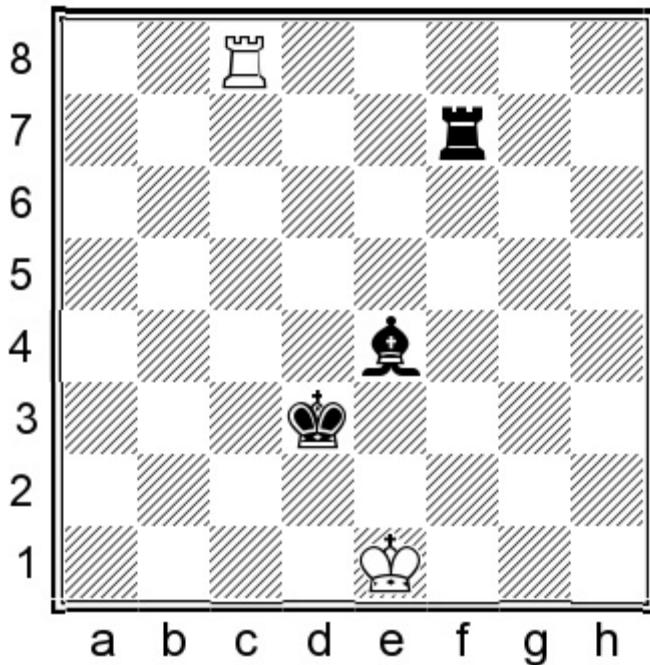
Safer is 4.♝c3+! ♜d3 5.♝c8, and if 5...♝h7, then 6.♝c1

4...♝d3 5.♝e1?!

Not there! After 5.♝c1 it is not obvious how Black is going to make any progress.

5...♝f7 6.♝c8?

Only 6.♝a5(b5)! avoids defeat.



14-14

B?

Dražen Marovic finds the only road to victory:

6...♜g2!! 7.♝d8+ ♜e3 8.♝e8+ ♜e4

The matter has been reduced to Philidor's position.

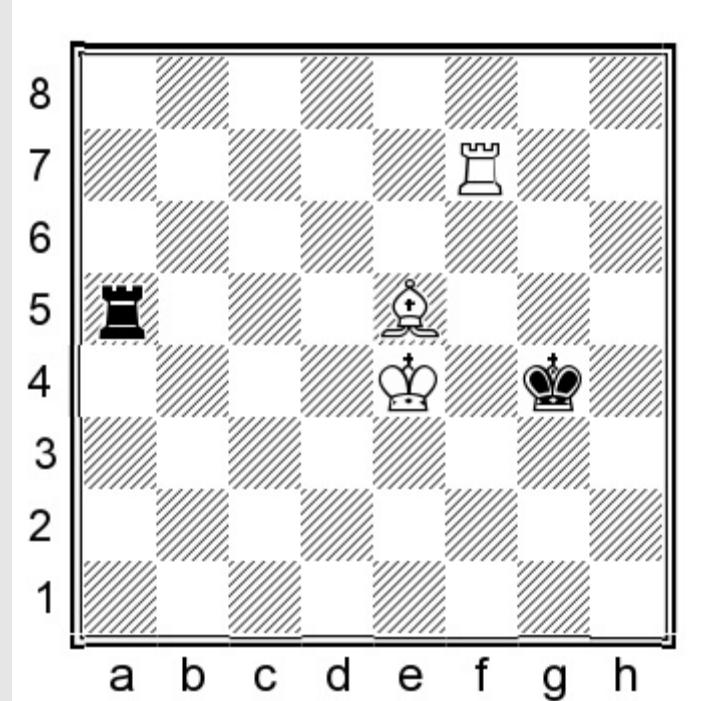
9.♝g8 ♜c7 10.♝d8 ♜c1+ 11.♝d1 ♜c2 12.♝d8 (somewhat more stubborn, as we know, is 12.♝d7)
 12...♜g2 13.♝f8 ♜g6! 14.♝f6 ♜d3 15.♝e6+ ♜e4 16.♝f6 ♜e2+ 17.♝f1 ♜c2 18.♝g1 ♜g2+ 19.♝f1 ♜g5
 20.♝e1 ♜f5 White resigned.

In a practical game one can usually avoid danger by means of orientation at the “Cochrane position” or by using “a defense along the seventh rank.”

Both these techniques can be seen from the following instructive example.

Timman – Lutz

Wijk aan Zee 1995



14-15

B

1...♜a4+ 2.♝d4 ♜g5 3.♝g7+ ♜h4 (rather than 3...♜h5? 4.♝f5)

This is called the Cochrane position – the safest defensive method when the king is already pressed to the edge. The rook pins the bishop and does not allow the hostile king to come closer. If 4.♝d7 ($\Delta 5$ ♜f4), then 4...♜g4. In case of the waiting attempt 4.♝g8, Black follows the same policy with 4...♜b4.

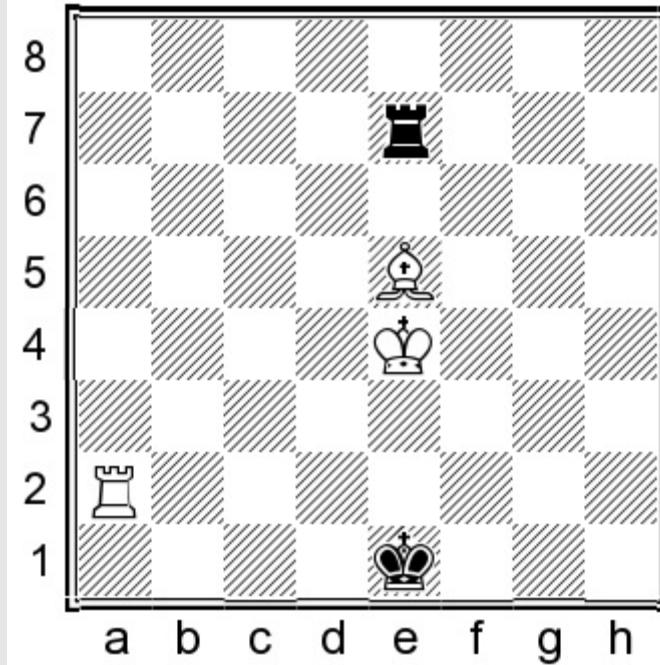
4.♝e5 ♜h3!

The king escapes from a bishop check in advance, and moves in the opposite direction from the white king. If White had played 4.♝e3, the reply would have been 4...♜h5!

5.♝g1 ♜b4 6.♝e3 ♜g4!

This is the point! In order to bring his king closer, White had to move his bishop away, and Black takes advantage of this circumstance immediately. By offering the rook exchange, he releases his king from the edge.

7.♜a1 ♜g2 8.♝f4 ♜g8 9.♜a2+ ♜f3 10.♜a3+ ♜e2 11.♝e4 ♜e8+ 12.♝e5 ♜e7 13.♜a2+ ♜e1!



14-16

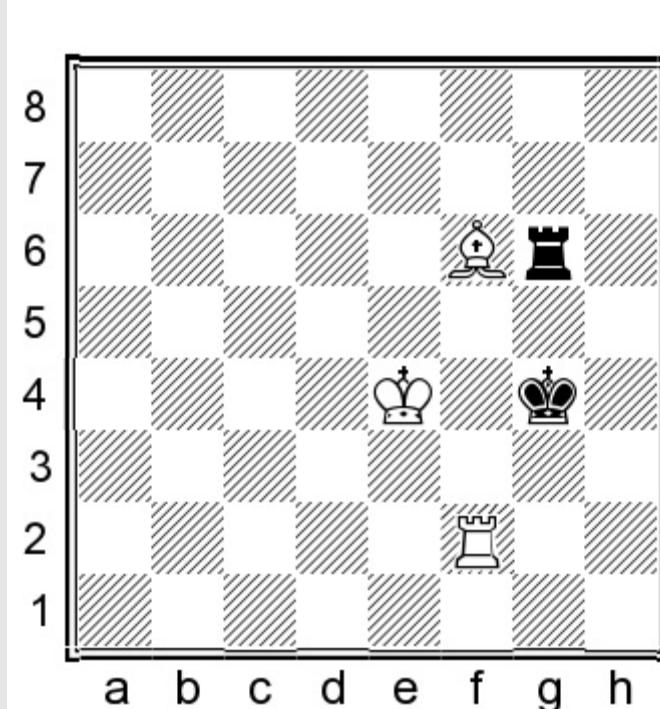
W

The Cochrane position has arisen again only rotated by 90 degrees.

14.♗d4 ♗f1! 15.♗f4 ♜e2! 16.♖a8 ♜e7 17.♗d3 ♗g2 18.♗f8 ♜e6 19.♗f7 ♜e8 20.♗e3 ♜a8 21.♗c5 ♜a4 22.♗e3 ♜g4

Black changes his defensive setup. After 22...♗g3!? 23.♗g7+ ♔h4 24.♗d4 ♔h5!, he could reach the Cochrane position for the third time.

23.♗d6 ♜g6 24.♗f2+ ♔h3 25.♗e5 ♗g4 26.♗e4 ♔h5 27.♗f6 ♗g4



14-17

W

We are observing “the defense along the seventh rank” that prevents pressing the king to the edge of the board. The rook is placed two squares away from the king, so that after 28. $\mathbb{E}g2+$ $\mathbb{K}h5$, White has no time for 29. $\mathbb{K}f5$. It may seem that the waiting move 28. $\mathbb{E}f1$ puts Black in zugzwang, but here a stalemate bails him out: 28... $\mathbb{K}h5$ 29. $\mathbb{K}f5$ $\mathbb{E}g5+!$ (this is why this technique works only on the seventh rank or the knight file). The rook cannot be captured, while after 30. $\mathbb{K}e6$ $\mathbb{E}g2$ 31. $\mathbb{E}f4$ $\mathbb{K}g6$ 32. $\mathbb{E}h4$ $\mathbb{E}e2+$ 33. $\mathbb{E}e5$ $\mathbb{E}g2$ 34. $\mathbb{E}h8$ $\mathbb{E}g4$, the defense along the seventh rank is recreated.

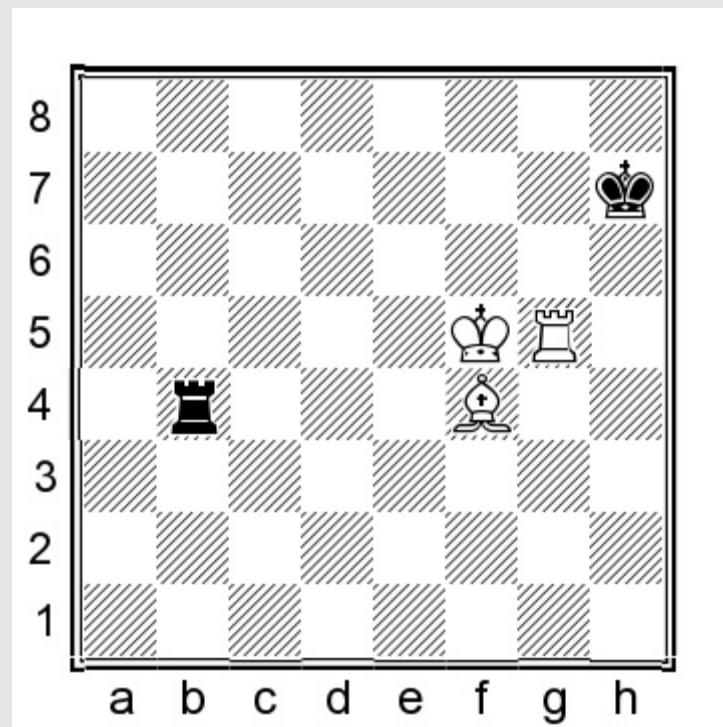
28. $\mathbb{E}f4+$ $\mathbb{K}g3$ 29. $\mathbb{K}e3$ $\mathbb{K}h3$ (29... $\mathbb{E}g8$) 30. $\mathbb{E}f5$ $\mathbb{E}g3+$ (30... $\mathbb{K}g4$) 31. $\mathbb{K}f2$ $\mathbb{E}g2+$ 32. $\mathbb{K}f1$ $\mathbb{E}c2$

A retreat of the rook to g6, preparing 33... $\mathbb{K}g4$ or 33... $\mathbb{K}g3$, was simpler.

33. $\mathbb{E}g5$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ 34. $\mathbb{K}e5$ $\mathbb{K}h4$ 35. $\mathbb{E}g8$ $\mathbb{E}e4$ (35... $\mathbb{E}g4!$) 36. $\mathbb{K}g3+$ $\mathbb{K}h5$ 37. $\mathbb{K}f2$ $\mathbb{E}a4??!$

After 37... $\mathbb{E}a4!!$, Timman would have probably offered a draw because the black king leaves the edge.

38. $\mathbb{K}f3$ $\mathbb{K}h6$ 39. $\mathbb{K}e5$ $\mathbb{E}b4$ 40. $\mathbb{K}f4+$ $\mathbb{K}h7$ 41. $\mathbb{E}g5$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 42. $\mathbb{K}g4$ $\mathbb{E}b4$ 43. $\mathbb{K}f5$



14-18

B

After a few nonchalant moves Black's position has become suspect. However, as Lutz pointed out, a draw could be still reached by means of 43... $\mathbb{E}b1$ 44. $\mathbb{K}e5$ $\mathbb{E}f1+$ or 43... $\mathbb{E}b6$ 44. $\mathbb{K}e5$ $\mathbb{E}g6!$ 45. $\mathbb{E}h5+$ $\mathbb{E}h6$ 46. $\mathbb{E}g5$ $\mathbb{E}g6!=$

43... $\mathbb{E}b5+?$

A decisive error that caused ... an immediate agreement to a draw! The point is that the last pawn

had been captured 53 moves ago, and “the rule of 50 moves” was duly applied.

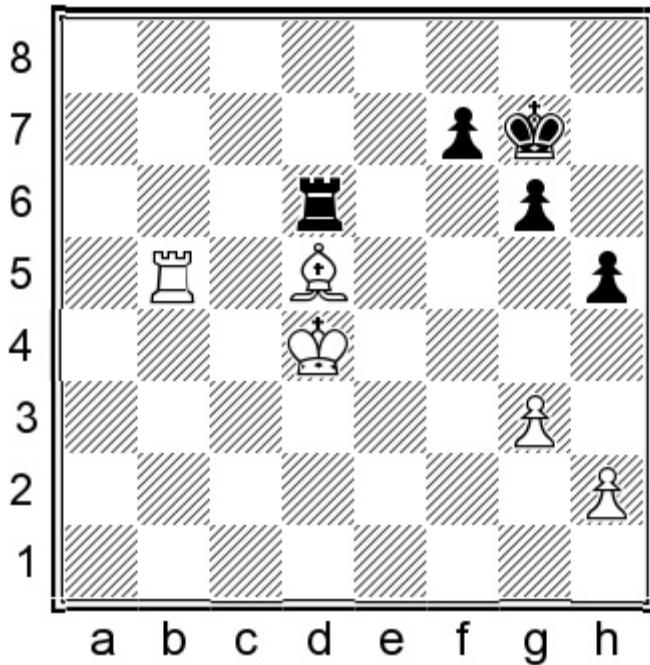
After 44.♗e5 ♜b6 (44...♜a5 45.♗h5+ ♔g8 46.♗g6; 44...♜b7 45.♗h5+ ♔g8 46.♗h8+ ♔f7 47.♗h7+; 44...♔h6 45.♗g8 ♜b7 46.♗g1) 45.♗g7+ ♔h6 46.♗g8 ♔h5, the Philidor position, rotated by 90 degrees, could have arisen. The winning procedure is already known: 47.♗g2 ♜b4 48.♗g1! (zugzwang, the rook is forced away from the b-file) etc.

With Pawns

Let us analyze a case with an extra bishop that has occurred a number of times in tournament practice.

Suba – D. Gurevich

Eksjo 1982



14-19

\$

W

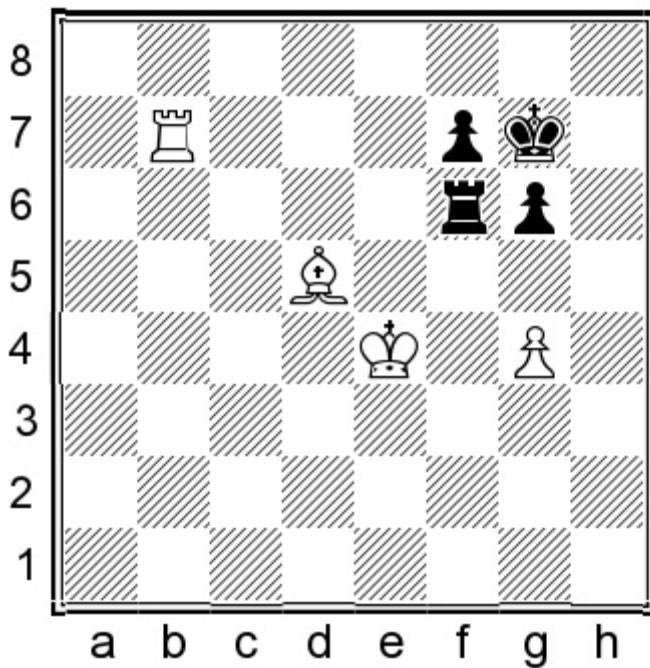
White must be accurate in view of the reduced material on the board. By the way, we should emphasize that he may exchange rooks, although his bishop and the h8-square are of different colors.

It is obvious that he should attack the f7-pawn, but from which direction – along the file or along the rank?

The game continued 1.♗b3?! ♜a6 2.♗f3 ♜a7 3.♗f2 ♜d7 4.♔c5 ♜a7 5.♔c6 f5 (against 5...♜e7, White had probably planned 6.♔d6 ♜a7 7.♗a2, forcing the exchange of rooks) 6.♔d6 ♔f6 7.♗e2. The forced advance of the f-pawn had weakened Black’s position, and White gradually exploited his advantage, but objectively it is still not completely clear.

As Suba stated, the occupation of the seventh rank would be a more convincing winning method.

1. $\mathbb{E}b7$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 2. h3 $\mathbb{E}f1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 4. g4 hxg4 5. hxg4



14-20

B

5... $\mathbb{E}f1$

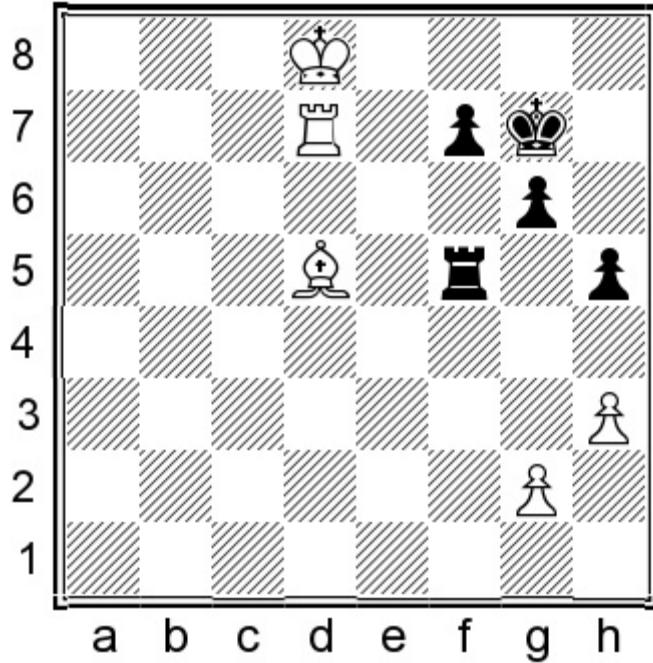
If 5...g5!? Ch. Lutz suggests 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{E}f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}a6$ 9. $\mathbb{E}b5!$ $\mathbb{E}c6$ (9... $\mathbb{E}a4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}d4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b1$; 9... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 10. $\mathbb{E}c5$ Δ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e4$; 9... $\mathbb{E}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{E}c5$ $\mathbb{E}b6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ Δ 12. $\mathbb{E}c6$) 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 12. $\mathbb{E}f5$ $\mathbb{E}d6+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}d7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}a7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{E}a7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 19... $\mathbb{E}a6+$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{E}a7+$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ O 21...f6 (White has finally forced this weakening) 22. $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$ etc.

6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}f6$ 7. g5 $\mathbb{E}f5$ 8. $\mathbb{E}xf7+!$ $\mathbb{E}xf7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5+-$

Tragicomедies

Gufeld – Rahman

Calcutta 1994



14-21

W

1.g4?

Curiously enough, precisely this position (with reversed colors) happened in Gufeld's earlier game versus Honfi (Kislovodsk 1968). In that game Gufeld found the correct idea; he realized that the advance g2-g4 is premature and chose another plan – a rook transfer to the f-file.

That game continued 1.♗e7 ♜e5+ 2.♗d6 ♜f5 3.♗a7 ♜f6+ 4.♗c5 ♜f2 5.♗a2 (5.♗a3 ♗h6 6.♗f3? ♜xg2) 5...♜f1 6.♗a3 ♜e1 (6...♗h6 7.♗f3 ♜xf3 8.♗xf3 ♗g5 9.♗d5 f5 10.♗f7 ♗f4 11.♗xg6 ♗g3 12.♗xf5 ♗xg2 13.♗d5 ♗g3 14.♗e5 ♗h4 15.♗f6+) 7.♗d6 ♜e2 8.♗f3 and Black, like in the Suba-Gurevich endgame, had to push his f-pawn; gradually, this fact caused his loss. After 25 years, Gufeld had forgotten his conclusions drawn during that earlier game; he pushed his g-pawn prematurely and missed a win.

The plan with g2-g4 is nevertheless good, only White should bring his king back beforehand. For example, 3.♗c7 (instead of 3.♗a7) 3...♜f6+ 4.♗e5 ♜f5+ 5.♗e4 ♜f2 6.♗e3 ♜f5 7.♗c4! (from here the bishop denies the black rook the important f1-square) 7...♗f8 (7...♜e5+ 8.♗d4 ♜f5 9.♗e4 ♜f2 10.g4) 8.g4 hxg4 9.hxg4 ♜f6 (9...♜e5+ does not help, either: 10.♗d4 ♜e7 11.♗xe7 ♗xe7 12.♗e5 f6+ 13.♗d5 ♗f7 14.♗d6+ and 15.♗e6) 10.♗e4 (the threat is 11.g5 and 12.♗xf7+) 10...g5 11.♗e5 ♜f4 12.♗d3! ♜xg4 13.♗f6+– (the final part of this line was suggested by Yanvarjov).

In Gufeld's opinion, the move 1.g3?! wins even more rapidly because of zugzwang: if 1...♜f2, then 2.♗e8 ♜e2+ 3.♗e7+–. Neither 1...♗f8 2.g4 hxg4 3.hxg4 ♜f4 4.g5 ♜f5 5.♗xf7+ ♜xf7 6.♗xf7, nor 1...♗g8 2.g4 hxg4 3.hxg4 ♜f4 4.♗xf7! ♜xf7 5.♗e8+– helps. However, he did not take into consideration the strongest reply, 1...♗g5!, which makes White's task considerably more difficult, and perhaps even impossible: 2.♗xf7+ ♗h6 3.♗e6 ♜xg3 4.♗e7 (4.h4 ♜d3+ 5.♗e7 ♜d4=) 4...♗g5.

1.g4? hxg4 2.hxg4 ♜f4 3.g5

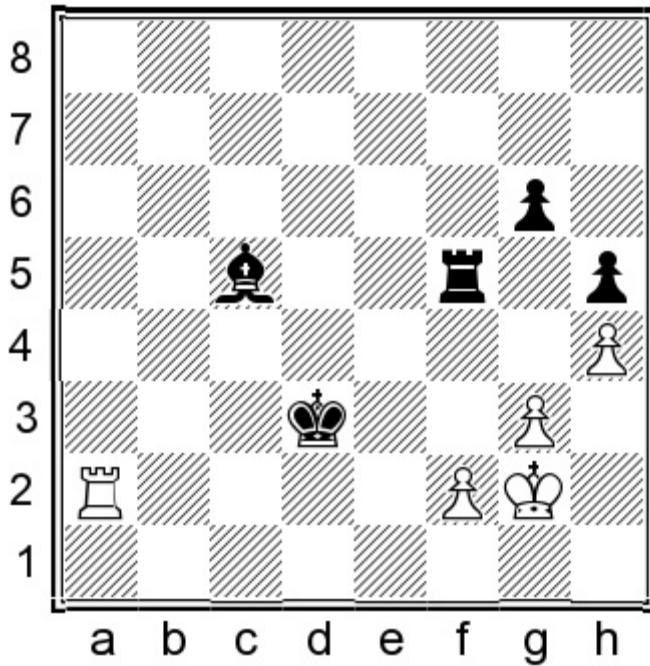
It seems that a general exchange on f7 is inevitable. In reality, Black has two possibilities to avoid it:

3... $\mathbb{B}g4!=$

White's last pawn must perish. Another good method was 3... $\mathbb{B}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{B}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8!$ 5. $\mathbb{B}xf5$ $gxf5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $f3=$

Mark Tseitlin – Finkel

Beersheba 1996



14-22

W?

In this position, the characteristic difference (in comparison with those we have seen previously) is the position of the black h-pawn – here it is far less favorable. First, Black does not have the familiar plan with g6-g5-g4 followed by a transition to a pawn endgame. Second, after an exchange of rooks, White will be able to exchange a pair of pawns without any problem, and Black's remaining h-pawn will be quite useless against the king in the safe corner h1.

White could achieve a draw by playing 1. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$, for example 1... $\mathbb{B}d4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{B}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{B}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{B}xb2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 6.g4 hxg4 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 9.f4 and 10.h5= (Ch. Lutz).

1. $\mathbb{Q}f1??$ $\mathbb{B}xf2!+$

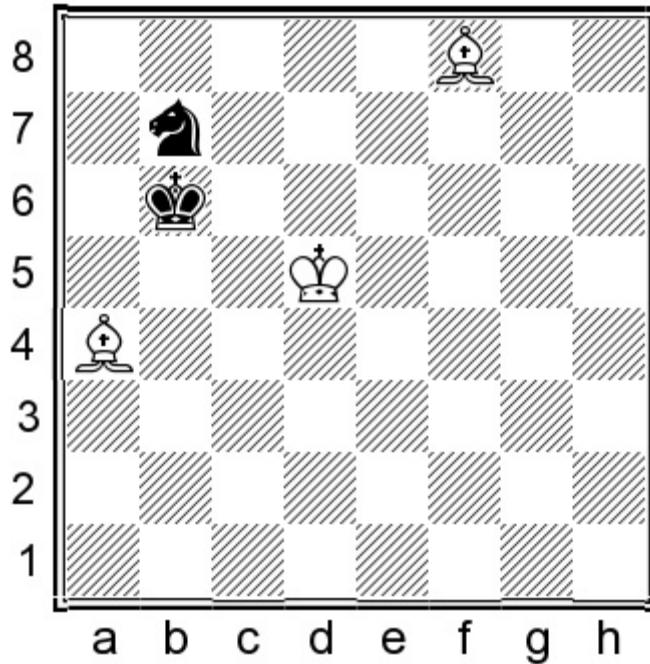
All of a sudden, it becomes obvious that 2. $\mathbb{B}xf2$ is bad in view of 2... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xf5$ $gxf5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{B}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4. $\mathbb{B}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{B}e2+$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{B}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{B}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 9. $\mathbb{B}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ White resigned.

An Extra Bishop or Knight with Queens or Minor Pieces

Let us first discuss positions without pawns.

A bishop and a knight can win against a knight only in exceptional cases, and all the more so against a bishop.

But two bishops can practically always cope with a knight.



14-23

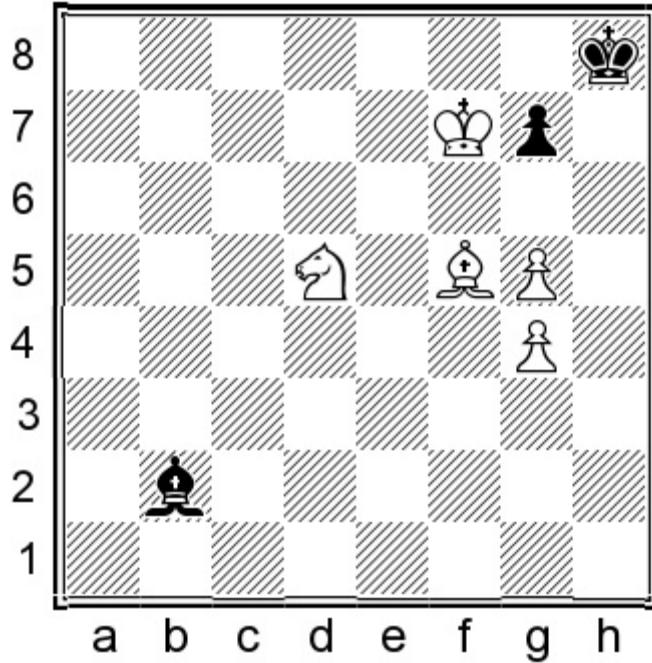
Kling and Horwitz (1851) thought that this position was drawn. As a matter of fact, the knight is quite favorably placed on b7 for defensive purposes. Only in 1983 did computer analysis show that this defensive setup could be destroyed without permitting its restoration in another corner. If both sides play this endgame perfectly, the winning process lasts more than 50 moves; it is too complicated to reproduce it here.

A queen and a minor piece cannot, generally speaking, win against a queen. But exceptions are not so rare with this material: an attack against the king can lead to mate or to a win of the queen.

From the wide variety of positions with pawns, I would like to distinguish those with bishops of opposite colors. It turns out that the drawish tendencies typical in “pure” cases of such bishops (ie., with bishops of opposite color and no other pieces), are valid here too, helping the weaker side to survive even when a piece down. Two examples of this sort follow.

A.Sokolov – Yusupov

Riga cmf (7) 1986*



14-24

\$

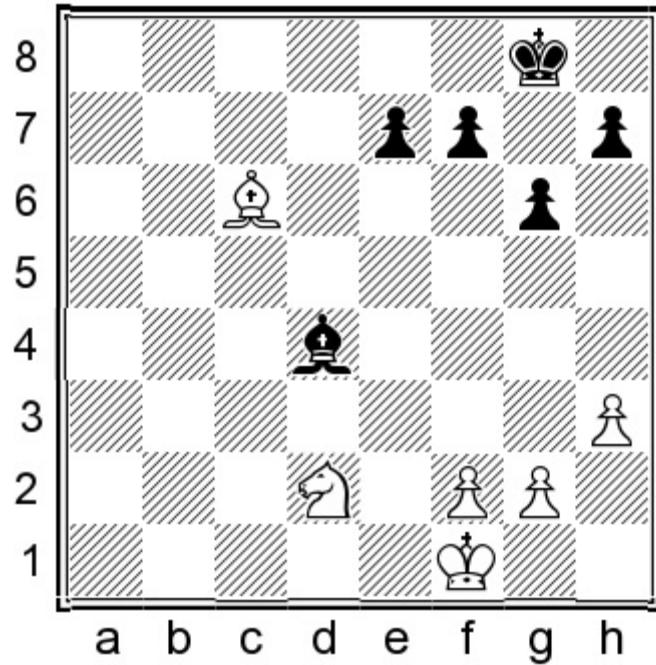
W

White has no win despite his extra piece and pawn. The black king cannot be driven away from the corner ($\mathbb{Q}g6+$ will be met with ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$, and $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ with ... $\mathbb{Q}g8$). The attempt to bring the bishop to g8 to create a mating net is easily parried.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}c1!$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7$) **2. $\mathbb{Q}h5$** (2. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $gxf6$ 3. $g6$ $\mathbb{Q}h6=$) **2... $\mathbb{Q}b2$** **3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$** (threatening 3...--
4. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h7$) **3... $\mathbb{Q}a3!$** etc.

Yachmennik – Belov

Smolensk 1989



14-25

\$

B

1...h5 2.Qe2 Qg7 3.f3 e6

To achieve success, White must attack the f7-pawn with two pieces, but this is very difficult to do against a precise defense. All his attempts were in vain; the game ended in a draw.

Show in Text Mode

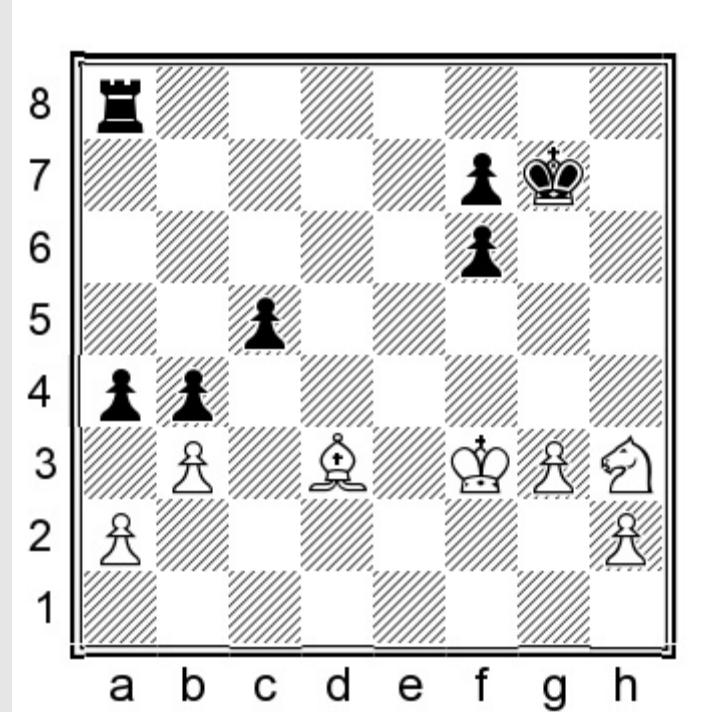
Rook vs. Two Minor Pieces

In the middlegame, two minor pieces are usually much stronger than a rook. In an endgame this advantage is much less significant; sometimes a rook can even gain the upper hand. The reason is that pawn chains in the middlegame restrict the rook's mobility. In an endgame, on the contrary, the rook enjoys full mobility.

A rook is especially dangerous when it attacks pawns (usually placed along the seventh rank) that cannot be protected by the king and cannot be defended comfortably with the pieces; another case of a dangerous rook is when it supports a distant passed pawn.

Beliavsky – Dolmatov

USSR ch, Minsk 1979



14-26

B?

After the natural-looking 1... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $a \times b3$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 3. $b \times a4$) 3. $a \times b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$, the position would remain static; it is usually favorable for the side with two pieces. White would then have had winning chances.

Dolmatov found an amazing resource.

1...c4!! 2.♗xc4 (if 2.bxc4, then 2...♝b8!?) **2...♝c8!**

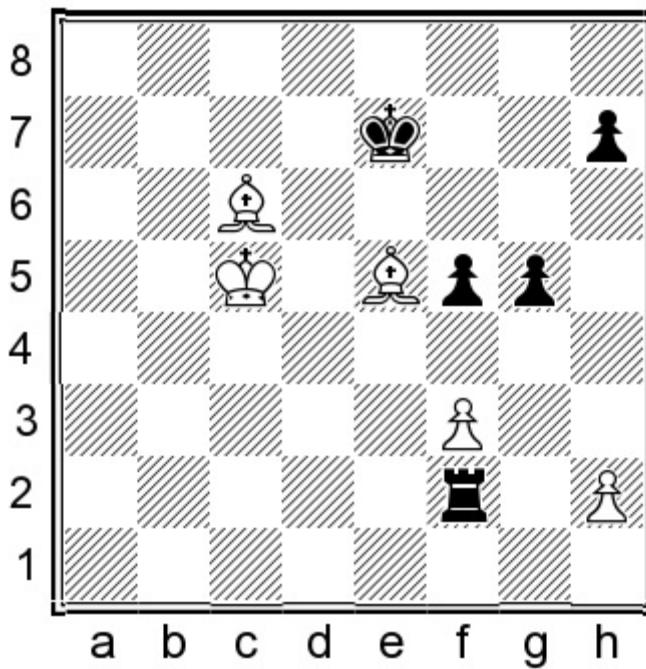
The threat 3.-- 3...♝xc4! 4.bxc4 b3 5.axb3 a3 forces White to remove his bishop from c4.

3.♗d3 a3!

White must now beware of both 4...♝c1 Δ 5...♝a1 and 4...♝c3 Δ 5...♝xb3. Black has seized the initiative.

Miles – Kindermann

1983



14-27

B

The rook, fighting inside the hostile camp, is again stronger than two minor pieces.

1...♚e6

Black rejected the immediate 1...f4, probably in view of 2.♗d4!? ♘xh2 3.♗e4 with the idea of ♗f5.

1...♚e6 2.♗c3?

This makes White's task more difficult. Better was 2.♗c7! ♘c2+ (if 2...f4 3.h3 ♘h2 4.♗d4 ♘xh3 5.♗e4 and White is well placed) 3.♗b6 h6!? 4.h3, and White should hold with precise defense. Instead, Miles gives away the h2-pawn, pinning his hopes on the cooperation of the bishops and the centralized king, but his wishes do not come true.

2...♝xh2 3.♗d5+ ♚e7 4.♗d4 ♗f6 5.♗e3+?

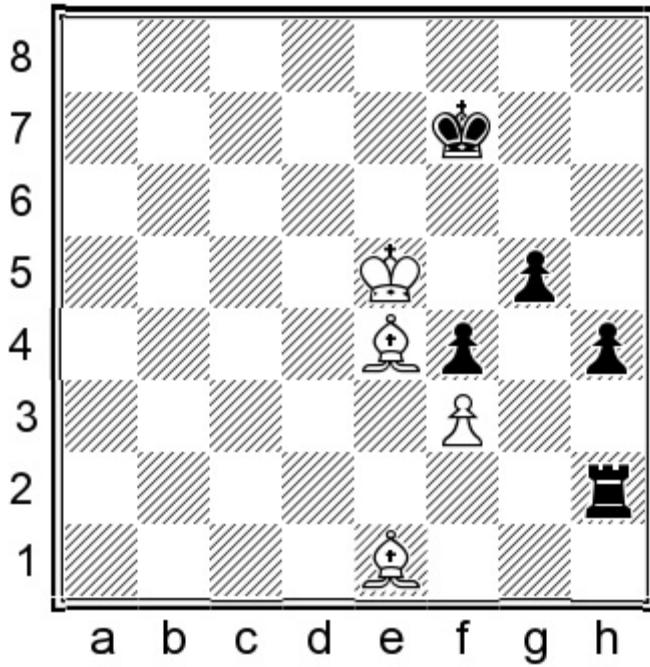
After this mistake, Black gets in ...f4+ with tempo and White's position quickly deteriorates. White

had to play 5.♔d3+! ♔g6 6.♕e5! ♜h1 (6...f4 7.♔e4+ ♔f7 8.♔d5+ either gives perpetual check or displaces the black king) 7.♔c6 and he can probably still hold with best play.

5...♔g6 6.♕e1

Now if 6.♕e5, 6...f4+ 7.♔d3 h5 8.♔e4+ ♔h6 9.♔d6 h4 and the pawn goes through.

6...f4+ 7.♔d4 h5 8.♔e5 h4 9.♔e4+ ♔f7?!



14-28

W?

As Stefan Kindermann pointed out, an easy win could have been achieved by 9...♔h6 10.♔f6 (10.♔f5 ♜g2 11.♔b4 h3 12.♔f6 ♔h5 13.♔g6+ ♔h4 14.♔e1+ ♜g3) 10...h3 11.♔b4 ♜e2 12.♔g6 ♜e6+! 13.♔xe6 ♔xg6. Now White finds a clever method to stubbornly resist.

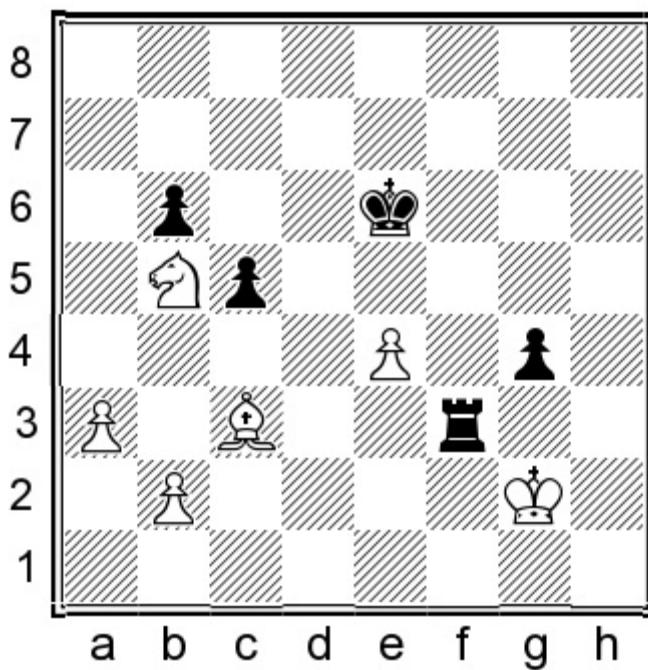
10.♔xh4! gxh4

10...♜xh4? 11.♔f5 ♜h6 12.♔xg5 ♜f6 13.♔f5=

11.♔xf4 ♜g2 12.♔f5 ♔f6 13.♔h3 ♜g1 14.♔g4

There were opinions (before tablebases) that this position is drawish. However, Dolmatov suggested an uncomplicated plan that could bring Black victory. With 14...♜g3!, he chained the white king to the f4-square (if the king retreats, then h4-h3 wins at once). Thereafter, the black king marches into the hostile camp: ...♔e7-d6-d5-d4, etc.

14...♜b1 15.♔h3 ♜b4+ 16.♔e3 ♔e5 17.♔g4 ♜b3+ 18.♔f2 ♔f4 19.♔g2 ♜b2+ 20.♔h3 ♔g5 21.♔c8 ♜b1 22.♔g2 ♔f4 23.♔g4 ♜c1 24.♔h2 ♜c7 25.♔h3 ♜c2 26.♔d7 ♜c3 27.♔g4 ♔g5 28.♔g2, and now Black could still win easily with 28...♜c2+ 29.♔h3 ♜f2, zugzwang, but he did not find the winning plan and the game soon ended in a draw.



14-29

B?

The game was adjourned in this position. The minor pieces are stronger than the rook here, but, as analysis has showed, White's advantage is not sufficient for a win against a precise defense.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$

An excellent maneuver that emphasizes the unfortunate position of the white knight. Black will use the time that must be wasted on bringing it into play to set up counterplay on the queenside by means of ...b6-b5. Black's main goal is to exchange as many pawns as possible.

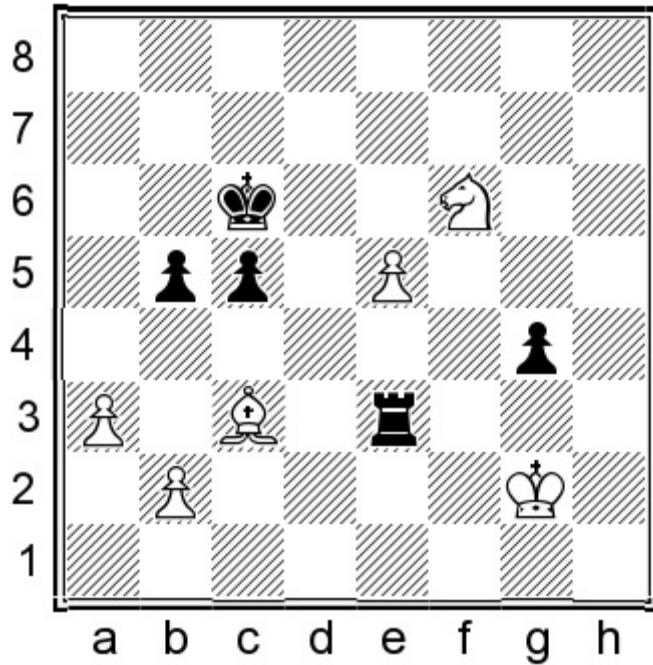
An immediate attack against the e-pawn was much weaker. After 1... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ 2.e5 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h4$, Black loses because of zugzwang: 5... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ b5 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ b4 11.e6!, or 5... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8.e6 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 9.a4! c4 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 12.e7.

If Black plays 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$, then 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5.e5!) 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ with excellent winning chances.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 2.e5 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ b5! 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$

A clever trap. The natural looking 4... $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ (Δ 5..b4) would be refuted by 5.e6!! $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5+!$

4... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ b4! 7.axb4 cxb4 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (rather than 6... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$! 7. $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$



14-30

B?

8...b4! 9.axb4 cxb4 10.Qd4!?

After 10.Qxb4 Qxe5 11.Qc3 Qf5!? (11...Qc5!?) 12.Qxg4 Qb5, White would have no time to safely preserve his last remaining pawn.

10...Qe1!

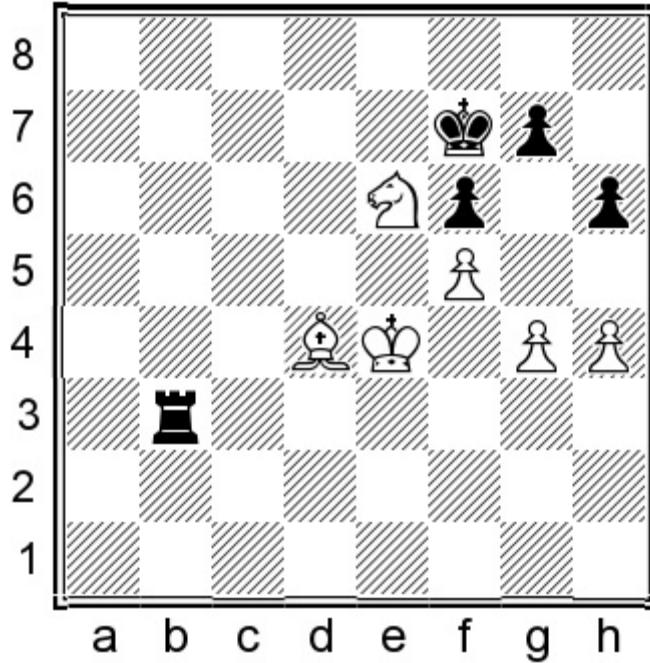
A final point. 10...Qd3? would have been wrong in view of 11.e6! Qd6 12.Qe4+! Qxe6 (12...Qe7 13.Qf6+) 13.Qc5+ Qd5 14.Qxd3 Qxd4, and now White employs the familiar technique of protecting the pawn with the knight: 15.Qc1! Qe3 16.Qb3! Qd3 17.Qa5 b3 18.Qg3 Qc2 19.Qc4 Qd3 20.Qa3+–

11.Qg3 Qd1 12.Qe3 Qb1 13.Qd4 Qd1 14.Qe3 Draw.

If both sides have three pawns placed on the same wing, the defender may hope for a draw (only if, of course, his pawn structure is devoid of grave flaws).

Capablanca – Lasker

St. Petersburg 1914



14-31

B

1... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 3. $g5$ (White has no better plan to follow) 3... $hxg5$ 4. $hxg5$ $fxg5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$

8. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ could be met with 8... $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f1=$

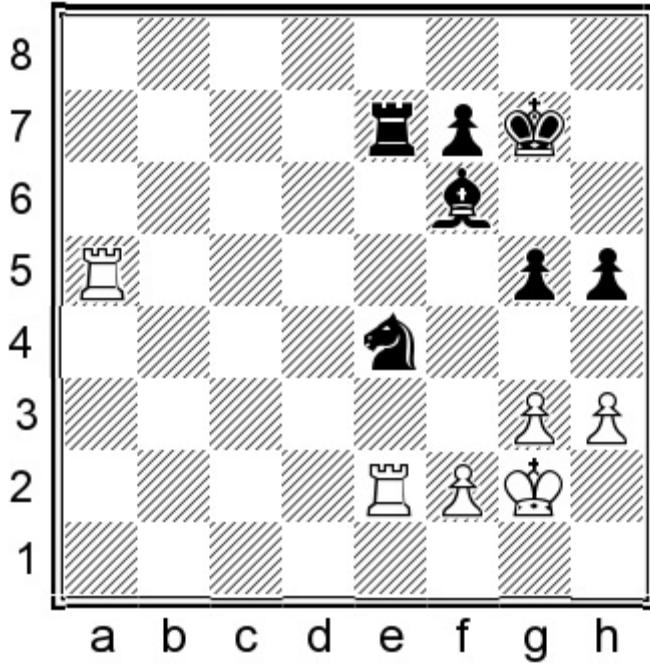
8... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+$

Capablanca made 20 more moves trying to win, but finally agreed to a draw.

Tragicomедies

Timman – Karpov

Bugojno 1980



14-32

W?

One pair of rooks will certainly be exchanged, but how can White do it favorably?

1.f3?

A grave positional error based on a tactical oversight. Timman planned to exchange pawns after 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 3.h4! gxh4 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ immediately also draws. If 4...f5 5.g4 or 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3$, but not 5.gxh4? $\mathbb{Q}f6$, trapping the rook with 6... $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh5=$, but underestimated Black's strong reply.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a7$

After 3.f4 gxf4 4.gxf4 f5 (Δ ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$, ... $\mathbb{Q}d6$, ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$), the f4-pawn is lost.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d6$

The erroneous advance of the f-pawn has weakened the dark squares, and White's position is hopeless now.

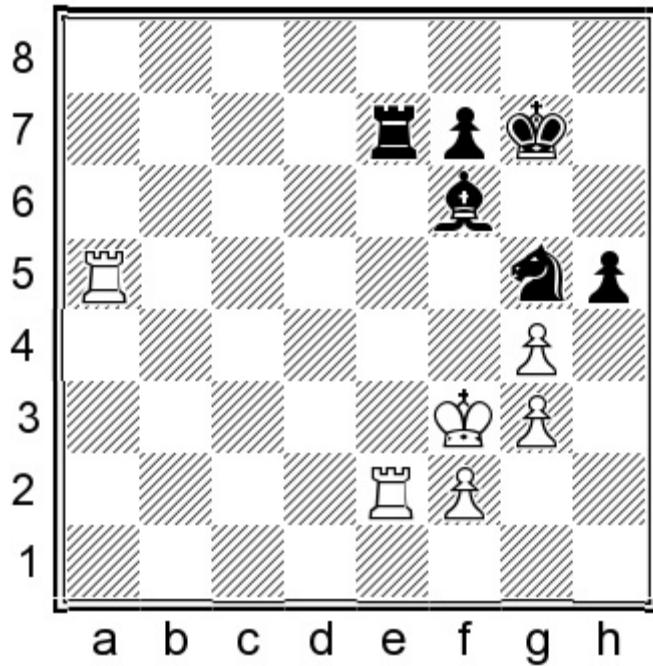
4. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ h4 5.gxh4 gxh4 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (of course, not 14... $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3??$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}e2$)
White resigned.

Let us try to improve White's defense. The attempt to force pawn exchanges by means of 1.h4? gxh4 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ should be rejected at once in view of the counterstroke 2... $\mathbb{Q}xg3!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$. The choice should be made between 1. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ and 1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$.

Timman recommends 1. $\mathbb{Q}a4$! and if 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$, then 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 3.f4! (3...g4 is met by 4.hxg4 hxg4 5.f5). 1... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ is better: 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6$. This position is certainly better for White than that from the actual game, but still not completely safe. Timman demonstrates that the following disposition of Black's forces can be successful against

White's passive defense: the pawn goes to f6, bishop to e5, knight to f5, and thereafter ...h5-h4 follows. It is not clear whether White can prevent this setup by active measures.

Timman condemns 1.♔f3!?, but after 1...g4+! he only analyzes 2.hxg4, which is a mistake as we shall see. 2...♝g5+



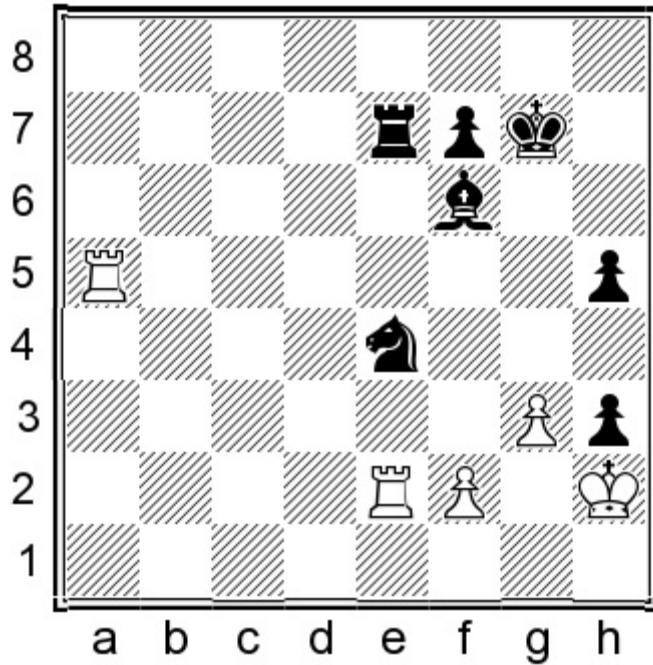
14-33

W

First, let's look at 3.♜xg5+ ♜xg5 4.gxh5 ♔h6? 5.♜a2! ♜xh5. Can Black convert his extra bishop to a win? We looked at a similar situation with Black's pawn on the g-file – then Black retained real winning chances – among other things, there is the idea of pushing the pawn to g4, followed by the exchange of all the pieces at f2. With an f-pawn instead, Black has fewer resources, so the position looks drawn.

However, as pointed out by Karsten Müller, the immediate exchange of rooks would lead to victory: 4...♜xe2! 5.♔xe2, and now not 5...♔h6? 6.f4 Δ 7.g4=, but 5...♝c1! followed by 6...♔h6. The attempt to avoid the exchange of rooks by 4.♜a2 (instead of 4.gxh5) would allow Black, by means of 4...h4!, to execute the exchange of pawns in a more favorable way. White's setup grows flimsier, and probably will not last.

But now, let us offer an improvement for the defense. A move earlier, instead of 2.hxg4?, White should play 2.♔g2! gxh3+ 3.♔h2!

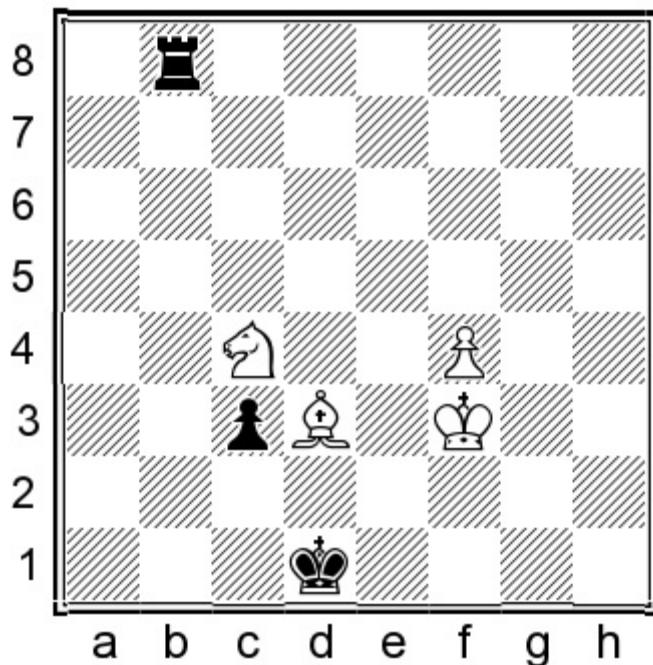


14-34

B

Here is an approximate line: 3...h4 4.gxh4 (4.g4? ♔g5! 5.♔xe7 ♔xe7 6.f4 ♔e6+) 4...♔xh4 5.♔aa2! (5.♔f5? is bad: 5...♔f6 6.f3 ♔g5 7.♔xe7 ♔xe7 8.f4 ♔e6 9.♔xh3 ♔g6 10.♔g4 ♔d6+) 5...♔xf2 (otherwise ♔xh3) 6.♔xf2 ♔xf2 7.♔xf2, with a drawn “rook plus f- and h-pawns” endgame.

Exercises



14-35

14/1

B?

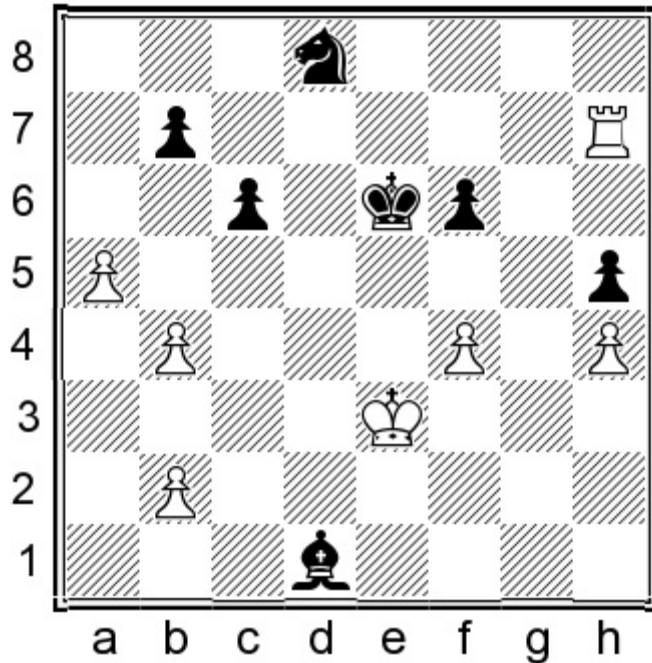
Show/Hide Solution

14/1. Beliavsky-Miles, Thessaloniki ol 1984

A draw is reached by force after 1... $\mathbb{c}2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!$, and 4... $\mathbb{Q}c3=$ is inevitable, with a draw.

In the game, Black played 1... $\mathbb{Q}h8?!$ Although the position remained drawn, the defense has become more complicated, and this eventually led to the decisive error.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}h1!?$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}e3!?$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}d1$ (Karsten Müller recommended 3... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 4.f5 $\mathbb{Q}h4!?$ or 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d1!?$) 4.f5 $\mathbb{Q}h7?$ (necessary was 4... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ or 5... $\mathbb{Q}b2$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ – White has been able to coordinate his pieces and won easily.



14-36

14/2

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

14/2. H. Aloni, 1968

The active rook on the seventh rank ensures White's advantage. However, he must play energetically, otherwise Black limits the mobility of the rook with ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$.

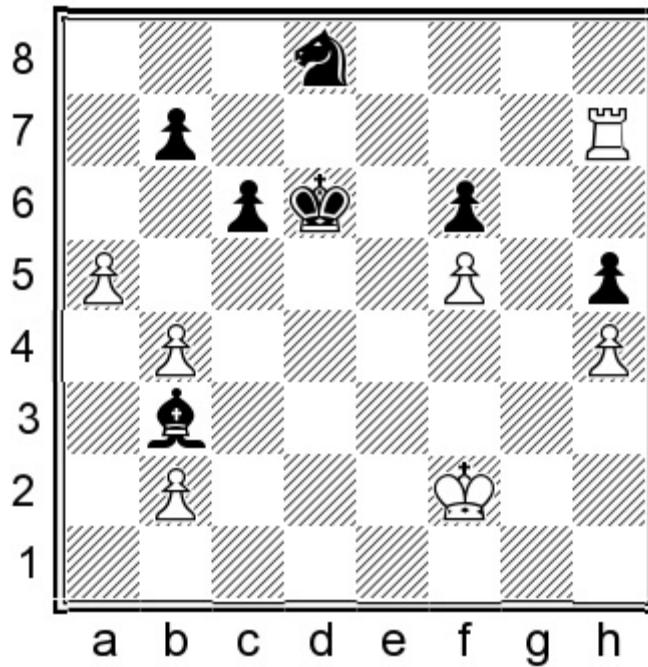
The idea of the rook sacrifice on b7 comes instantly as we have seen this idea already; see diagrams 2-9 and 2-14. However, the immediate 1. $\mathbb{R}xb7?$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 2.a6 is refuted by 2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3.a7 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ and 4... $\mathbb{Q}b6$.

If 1. $\mathbb{Q}d4?!$, then 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \Delta \mathbb{Q}b6$) 2.f5 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}f3$), and 3. $\mathbb{R}xb7?$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 4.a6 is still wrong, this time because of 4... $c5!?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}a5!?$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}c6! \Delta$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}d6+.$

1.f5+! $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}xf5?$ 2. $\mathbb{R}d7)$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!!$

The rook sacrifice is still premature: 2. $\mathbb{R}xb7?$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 3.a6 $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ 4.bxa5 (4.a7 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}c7$. The subtle king move makes it inevitable. The chosen square for the king is determined by the necessity to control e2 and f3 (2. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ $\mathbb{Q}e2!?$).

2... $\mathbb{Q}b3$



16-102

W?

3. $\mathbb{R}xb7!$

The other pawn is less valuable: 3. $\mathbb{R}xh5?$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4. $\mathbb{R}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7 \Delta$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ or 5... $\mathbb{Q}c2$

3... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 4.a6+–) 4. $\mathbb{R}h7!?$

From this point, there are many ways to win. 4. $\mathbb{R}a7!?$ c5 5.a6 is also strong, for example 5...cxb4 6. $\mathbb{R}b7!$ (rather than 6. $\mathbb{R}a8!?$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7.a7 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ and the pawn cannot be promoted) 6... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 7.a7) 7. $\mathbb{R}xb4$ or 7. $\mathbb{R}b6+$ with a decisive advantage.

4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$

Both 4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5.a6 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 6.a7 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ and 4... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ are hopeless.

5. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}e3!?$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}e5$

Or 5... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ –

6.b3! $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 8.h5 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g7)$ 9.h6 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 12.a6+–

Queen vs. Various Pieces

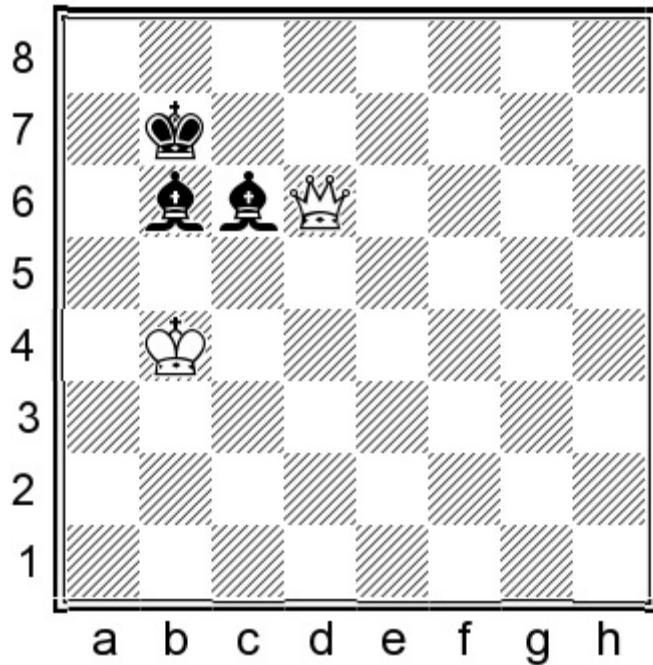
A rook and a bishop or a rook and a knight (without pawns) draw easily against a queen if, of course, they are not so disunited that the opponent can rapidly win one of pieces.

Two knights can resist a queen successfully. They are best placed on squares adjacent to the king.

Two bishops, curiously enough, are almost never able to draw against a queen, although the winning process is often complicated and requires many dozens of moves.

The only drawing position was discovered as early as the 18th century.

G.Lolli 1763



14-37

\$

W

1. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{B}c8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e6+$

If 2. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{B}c4$, Black should play 3... $\mathbb{B}a7!$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ (with the idea 5... $\mathbb{B}b6=$) or even 4... $\mathbb{B}b6=$, as 3... $\mathbb{B}c7?$ loses to 4. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{B}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}b4+$ $\mathbb{B}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}c5$.

2... $\mathbb{B}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{B}a7$

3... $\mathbb{B}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e7$ $\mathbb{B}b6$ is also playable; White does not have 5. $\mathbb{W}b4+$.

4. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{B}b6!$ (rather than 4... $\mathbb{B}b8?$ 5. $\mathbb{B}a5+-$) 5. $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 6. $\mathbb{B}a5$ $\mathbb{B}c5!$

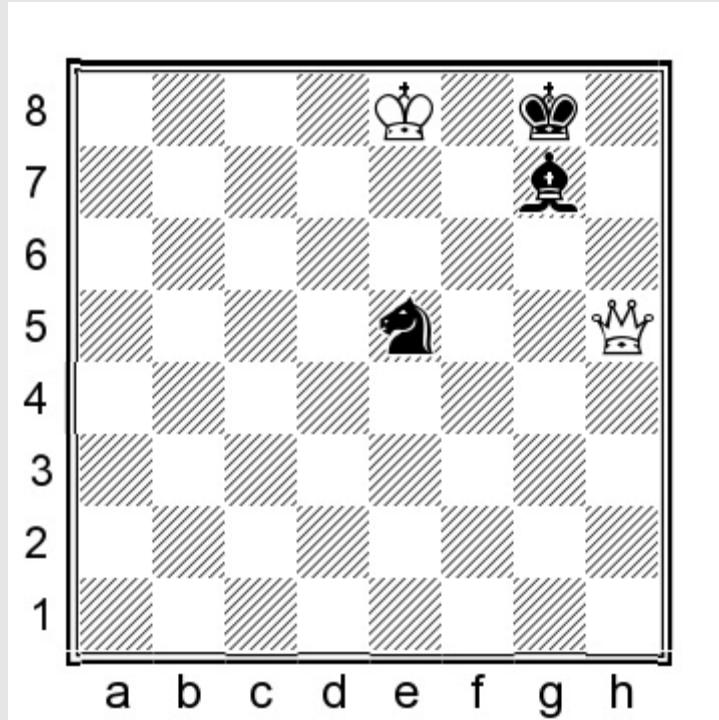
White is in zugzwang; every possible move allows the black bishop to return to b6.

If White brings his king to e7, the bishop occupies the c7-square, with the same position. This defensive method saves Black only when his king is on b7 (or symmetrically on g7, b2, and g2).

A bishop and a knight usually lose, but some very rare exceptions exist; one of them should be remembered.

In the next diagram, Black's pieces protect his king from all of White's attempts to approach; this setup cannot be destroyed.

M.Karstedt 1903



14-38

W

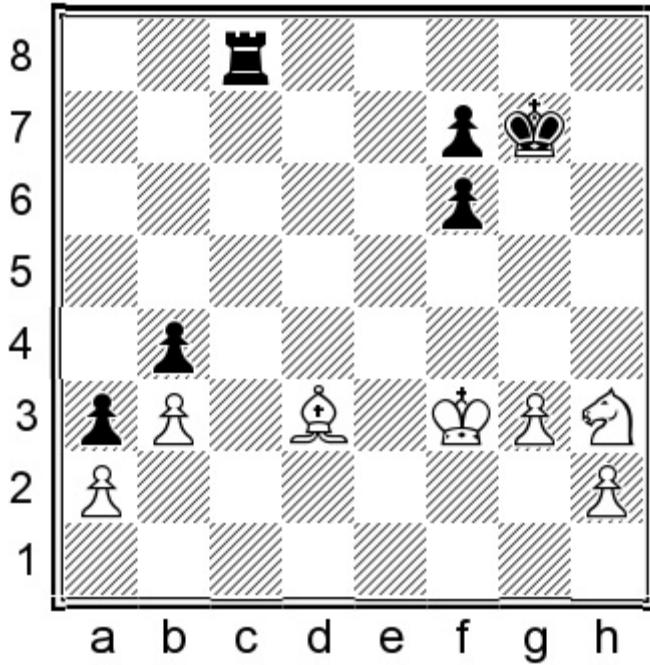
1. $\mathbb{B}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2. $\mathbb{B}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{B}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{B}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{B}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$

In practical situations (with pawns on the board), one can often save a difficult position by means of a queen sacrifice or by letting an enemy pawn queen for the sake of building a fortress.

Let us come back to the position where we took a break when analyzing the Beliavsky-Dolmatov endgame (in the section “Rook versus Two Minor Pieces”).

Beliavsky – Dolmatov

USSR ch, Minsk 1979



14-39

W?

White stands worse and has to fight for a draw. The most reliable method is:

1. ♜f2! ♕c1

1... ♕c3 is weaker because after 2. ♜e3, the sacrifice 2... ♕xb3? fails to 3. ♜d1! ♕b2? (3... ♕h6 still draws) 4. ♜xb2 b3 5. ♜b1!+-. If 2... ♕c1, then 3. ♜d2 ♕a1 4. ♜c2 ♕xa2 5. ♜d3=.

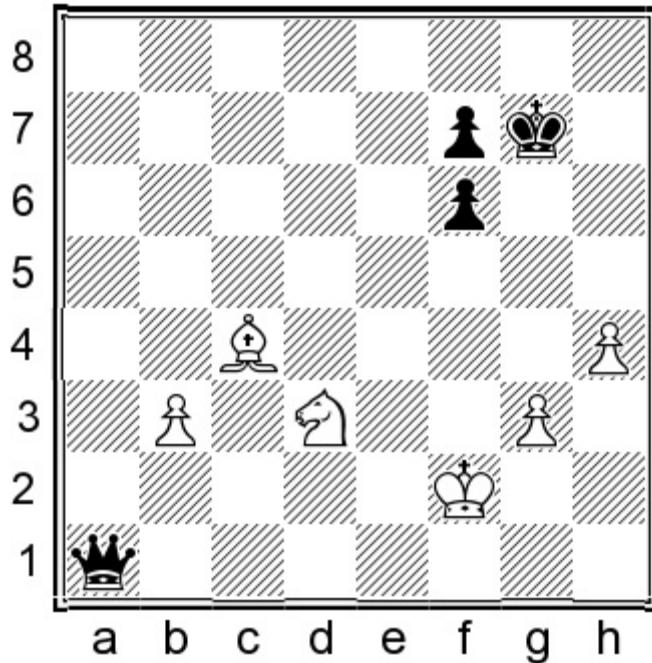
2. h4!! (the pawn should leave the second rank) **2... ♕a1**

2... f5 is useless: 3. ♜xf5 ♕a1 (3... ♕c3+ 4. ♜f4 ♕xb3 5. ♜d1!) 4. ♜d3 ♕xa2 5. ♜xb4 ♕b2 6. ♜c2=

3. ♜c4 ♕xa2 4. ♜d3 ♕f2+

Or 4... ♕d2 5. ♜xb4 a2 6. ♜xa2 with a draw. The idea behind h2-h4 is clear now – the endgame would have been hopeless without the h-pawn.

5. ♜xf2 a2 6. ♜xb4 a1=威 7. ♜d3



14-40

B

White has the following setup in mind: ♔f4, ♕d5, ♔g2, and Black can neither create mating threats nor attack the g3-pawn with his king and queen simultaneously.

Moreover, analysis shows that this position is drawn even when Black maintains his b4-pawn, as could happen in the line 1.♔f4 ♜c3! (1...♜c1? 2.♕d5) 2.h4!? (2.♔e3 draws as well) 2...♜xb3 3.axb3 a2 4.♕c4 a1=♛ 5.♔g2.

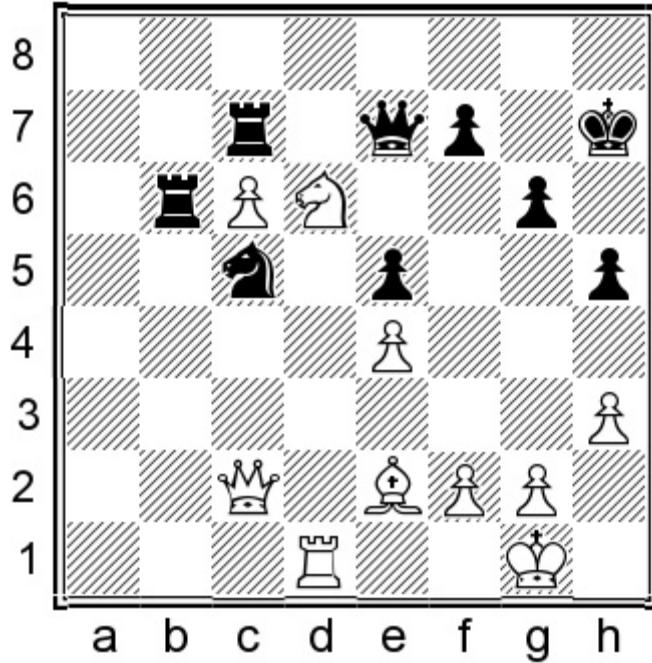
Beliavsky, despite considering the matter for a long time, failed to find the idea of a fortress with two minor pieces. He played 1.♔e3?! ♜c1 (1...♜c3 2.♔f2! ♜xb3? 3.♔d1!+) 2.♔f4 ♜a1 3.♔d5 ♜xa2 4.♔xb4 ♜xh2+

Readers may learn how Dolmatov managed to win this captivating endgame in brilliant fashion from my book *School of Chess Excellence 1 – Endgame Analysis*, in the chapter “The Strongest Piece is the Rook!”

Diagrams 14-41 and 14-42 have been intentionally omitted.

Bronstein – Keres

Amsterdam ct 1956



14-43

W?

White lost this position rapidly:

1. ♕b5? ♔e6 2. ♕a4??!

2. ♖c4 ♔d4 3. ♖xd4! (3. ♖d5 ♔xb5 4. ♔xb5 ♖cxc6+) 3... exd4 4. ♖xd4 would have been more tenacious, but the game could hardly have been held anyway.

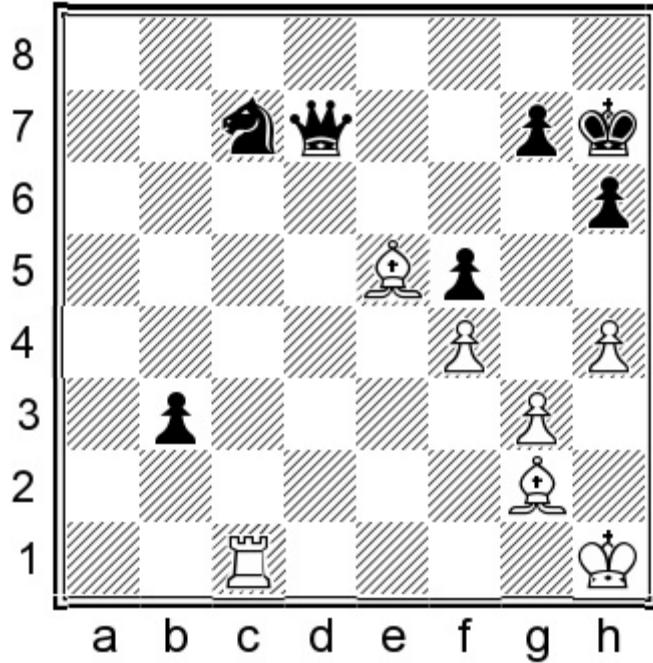
2... ♔d4 3. ♖c5 ♖bxc6! 4. ♕xc6 ♖xc6 White resigned.

White missed a rather simple combination that would have led to a drawn position with a rook and a bishop against a queen:

1. ♖xc5!! ♖cxc6 2. ♖xb6! ♖xb6 3. ♖c8 ♖c5 4. ♖xb6 ♖xb6†

Sveshnikov – Psakhis

Erevan zt, 1982



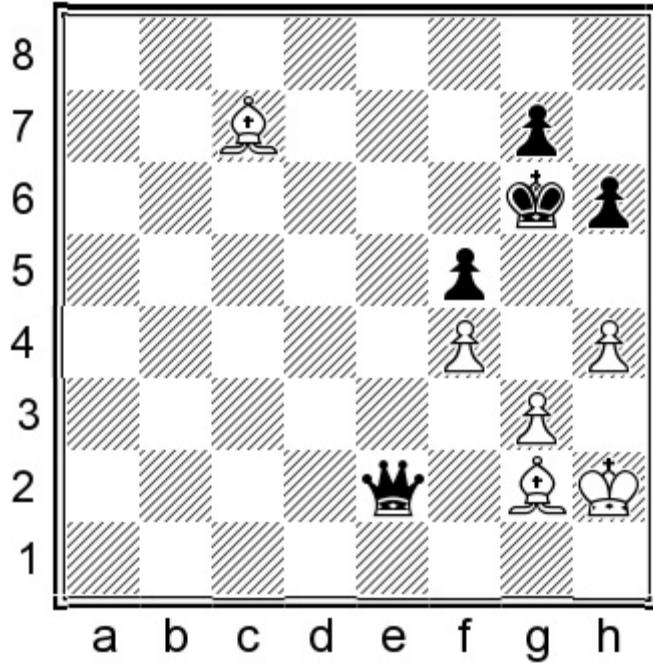
14-43a
W

Nevertheless, the queen is a powerful piece and can sometimes break fortresses. This endgame was considered a fortress for a long time until Karsten Müller found the win in 2019.

1. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $b2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $b1=\mathbb{Q}$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$

The queen enjoys unlimited freedom of action but cannot destroy the enemy defense without the king's support. The king cannot break through the two adjacent diagonals controlled by the bishops. Hence, the way to the queenside is closed. However, the king can walk to h5 and penetrate on the kingside with the help of g7-g5.

4... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2$



14-43b
B

Now the right plan is to force $\hat{Q}h3$, occupy g1 with the queen, bring the king back into the center, and finally to push the g-pawn to g5 in order to exploit the unsafe position of the white king. Eventually, the queen, roaming the board, will create threats which cannot be parried.

10... $\hat{Q}e1$

10... $\hat{Q}h7?!$ was played in the game.

11. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}f2$ 12. $\hat{Q}c7$

White can try 12. $\hat{Q}c3$ to keep attacking the g7-pawn, but then 12... $\hat{Q}h5$ 13. $\hat{Q}h3$ $\hat{Q}e2!$ wins, for example: 14. $\hat{Q}e5$ g5 15.hxg5 $\hat{Q}g6!$ (threatening mate) 16. $\hat{Q}h2$ h5 17. $\hat{Q}h3$ $\hat{Q}g4+$ 18. $\hat{Q}h2$ h4 19.gxh4 $\hat{Q}xh4+$ 20. $\hat{Q}g1$ $\hat{Q}e1+$ 21. $\hat{Q}h2$ $\hat{Q}h5$ 22. $\hat{Q}f3+$ $\hat{Q}h4$ and the king's penetration is decisive.

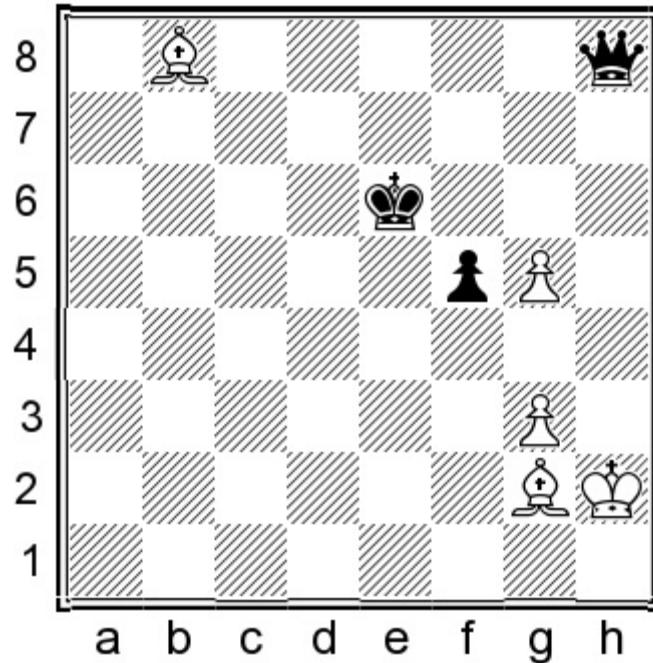
12... $\hat{Q}h5$ 13. $\hat{Q}h3$ $\hat{Q}g1!$ 14. $\hat{Q}e5$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 15. $\hat{Q}d5$ $\hat{Q}h7$ 16. $\hat{Q}b8$ g6 17. $\hat{Q}g2$

17. $\hat{Q}e5$ g5 18.hxg5 hxg5 19.fxg5 $\hat{Q}c5-$

17... $\hat{Q}g7$ 18. $\hat{Q}e5+$ $\hat{Q}f7$ 19. $\hat{Q}d5+$ $\hat{Q}e7$ 20. $\hat{Q}g2$ $\hat{Q}e6$ 21. $\hat{Q}b8$

Or 21. $\hat{Q}c7$ g5 22.hxg5 hxg5 23.fxg5 $\hat{Q}a7! \ominus$

21...g5 22.hxg5 hxg5 23.fxg5 $\hat{Q}d4$ 24. $\hat{Q}h2$ $\hat{Q}h8+-+$

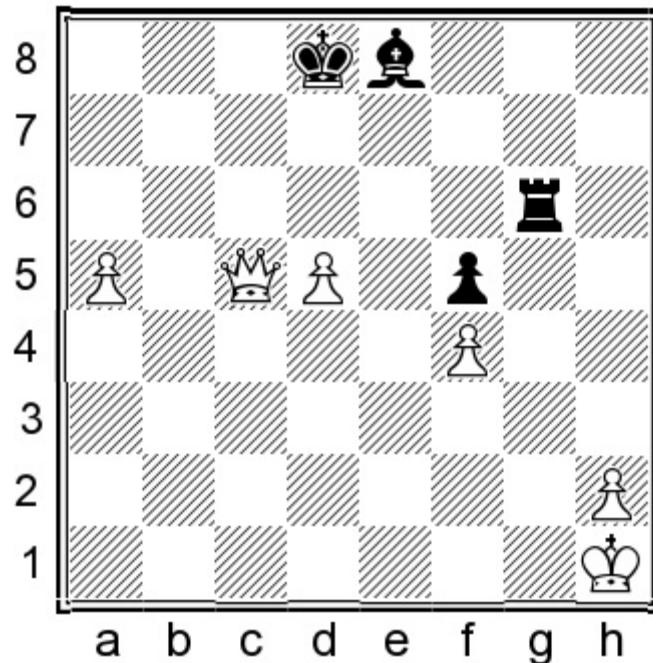


14-43c
W

In the game, Psakhis did not find this plan and the result was a draw.

Tragomedies

Fichtl – Blatný
Bratislava 1956



14-44

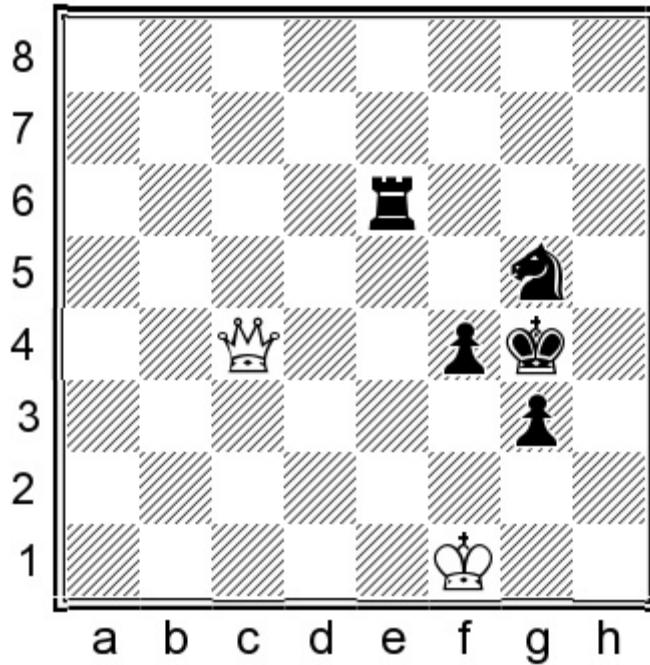
W

White, in this completely winning position, let down his guard for a moment.

1.d6?? ♜c6+! 2.♕xc6 ♜g1+ 3.♔xg1 stalemate.

Zagoriansky – Tolush

Moscow tt 1945



14-45

B?

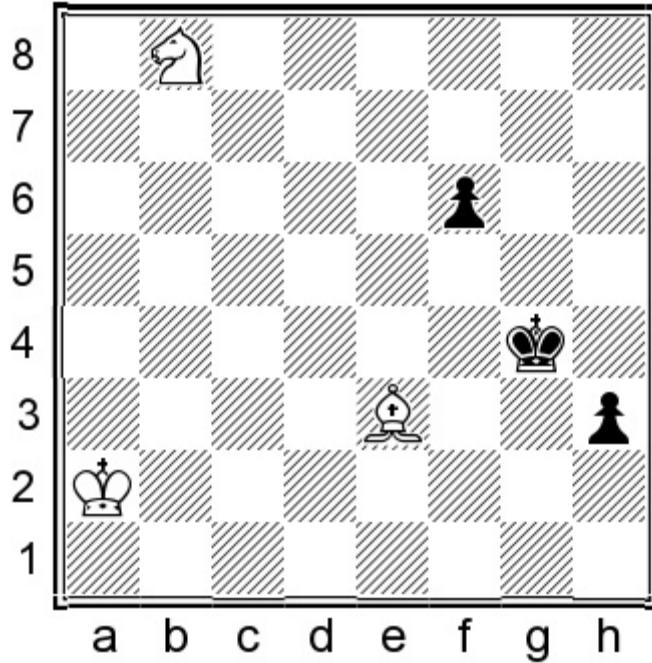
Black has an obvious advantage. He can win, for example, by means of 1...♜e8! 2.♕a4 (2.♕d4 ♜e1+!; 2.♕b4 ♜f3; 2.♕b5 f3! 3.♕xe8 g2+ 4.♔f2 ♜h3+; 2.♔g2 ♜e2+! 3.♕xe2+ f3+) 2...♜e4 3.♕d7+ ♔h4, and the threat 4...f3 cannot be parried. However Tolush decided to produce a “brilliant” win.

1...♝h3? 2.♕xf4 g2+ 3.♔f2 (3.♔g1? ♜e1+) 3...♜f6

Black had only expected 4.♕xf6? ♜e4+.

4.♔g1! ♜xf4 stalemate.

Exercises



14-46

14/3

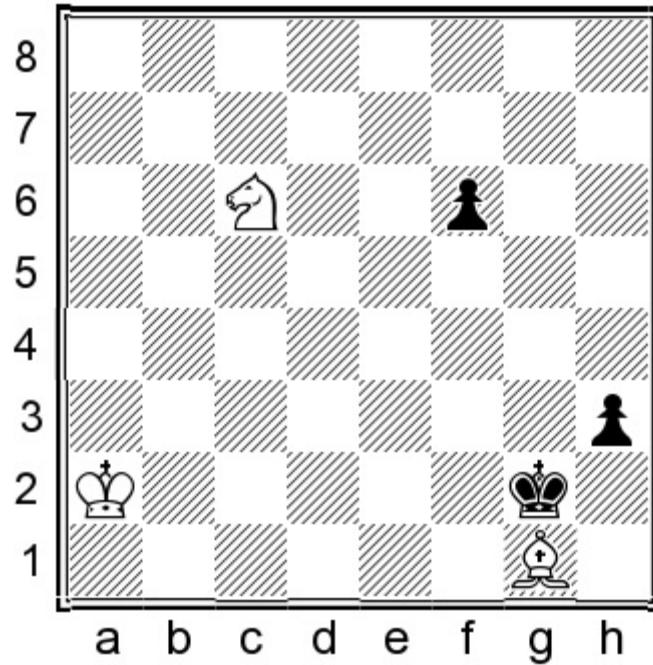
W?

Show/Hide Solution

14/3. G.Nadareishvili 1954

1. Kg1 Qg3 2. Qc6! Qg2

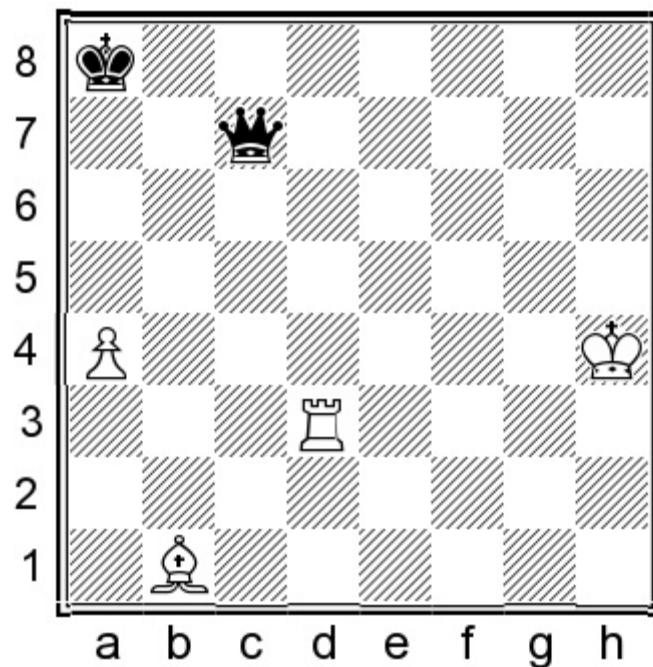
White survives after 2...f5 3.Qd4 Qg2 (3...f4 4.Qe2+) 4.Qe2 (rather than 4.Qxf5? Qxg1 5.Qd4 Qf2+) 4...Qf1 (4...Qf3 5.Qd4+) 5.Qf4=



16-103
W?

The black pawn will inevitably be promoted; White's only way to salvation is to reach the Karstedt position.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $h2$ (3... $f5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5=$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $h1=\mathbb{W}$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ $\mathbb{W}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}a5+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ (rather than 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3?$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{W}a2!-+$) 7... $\mathbb{W}a4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a1=$



Show/Hide Solution

14/4. G.Kasparian 1969

Materially, it is a draw, but White's pieces are divided and one can hardly see how he can avoid the loss of a piece:

1. $\mathbb{E}g3?$ $\mathbb{W}f4+$ 2. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{W}h6+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}e3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}e2+$) 4... $\mathbb{W}f2+$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g2$ $\mathbb{W}h4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}e1+$ and 7... $\mathbb{W}xb1$;

1. $\mathbb{E}f3?$ $\mathbb{W}h2+$ 2. $\mathbb{E}h3$ $\mathbb{W}f2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (3. $\mathbb{E}g3$ $\mathbb{W}f4+)$ 3... $\mathbb{W}c5+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{W}b4+$; 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{W}b6+)$ 4... $\mathbb{W}c1+$;

1. $\mathbb{Q}h3?$ $\mathbb{W}c8+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{W}f8!-$.

However, there is an unusual way to save the game:

1. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $\mathbb{W}c8+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3!!$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}h5?$ $\mathbb{W}c5+$; 2. $\mathbb{Q}h4?$ $\mathbb{W}f8!-$) 2... $\mathbb{W}b7+$ 3. $\mathbb{E}d5!!=$

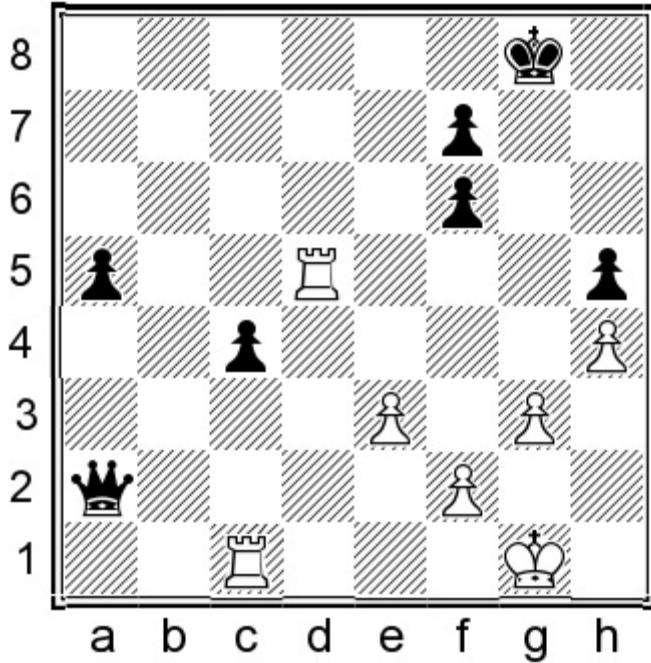
White's pieces cooperate now, a capture of any piece will cost Black the queen.

Queen vs. Two Rooks

Rooks are powerful when they act together. A standard method is doubling the rooks to ***win, or at least stop, an enemy pawn***. Rooks can also create mating threats, particularly when the opponent's king is cut off along an edge.

Chernin – Marjanovic

Subotica izt 1987



14-48

W

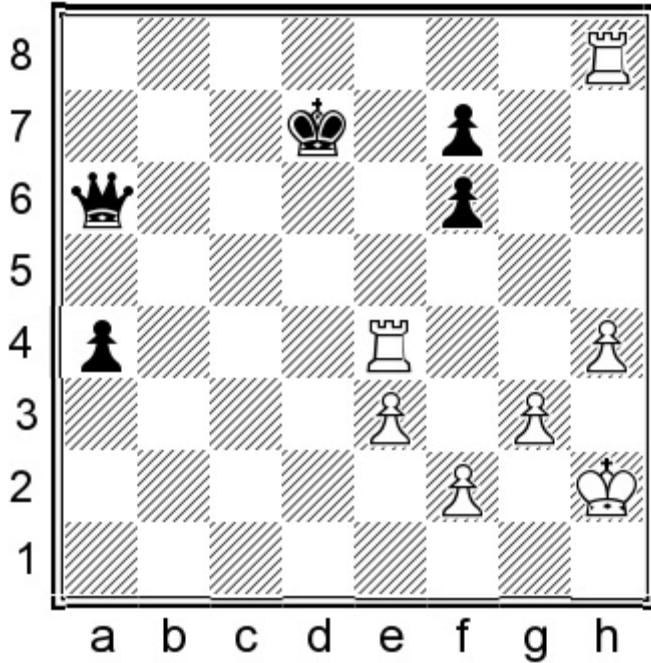
It was the last round of the Interzonal tournament; grandmaster Chernin followed my recommendation and employed a sharp line of the Queen's Gambit that would lead to the diagrammed position if Black, as had been the case, made a slight inaccuracy. I evaluated this position as winning for White when it was reached in analysis. Black's pawns are isolated and weak; White consequently eliminates them by doubling the rooks and switches to a kingside attack thereafter.

1. $\mathbb{R}c5!$

If 1. $\mathbb{R}xh5?$ $\mathbb{W}d2!$, the separation of the rooks tells: 2. $\mathbb{R}xc4??$ $\mathbb{W}d1+$

1. $\mathbb{R}c5!$ a4 2. $\mathbb{R}1xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}b4$

Chernin hastens to double the rooks against the a-pawn. The sharper continuation 3. $\mathbb{R}f4!?$ merited attention. The advance 3...a3, as on the previous move, is still not favorable for Black: 4. $\mathbb{R}a5$ $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (Δ 6. $\mathbb{R}fa4$) 5... $\mathbb{W}b7+$ 6. e4 $\mathbb{W}b4$ 7. $\mathbb{R}a6$ Δ $\mathbb{R}f3$. After 3... $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$, 4... $\mathbb{W}b2$ is useless in view of 5. $\mathbb{R}a5$ a3 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2+-$. If 4... $\mathbb{W}b6$ instead, then 5. $\mathbb{R}xh5!$ $\mathbb{W}a6$ 6. $\mathbb{R}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{R}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$.



14-49

W

Now White can bring his rook back to defend: 9. $\mathbb{R}d4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10. $\mathbb{R}d2$ a3 11. $\mathbb{R}a2$. The attack against the king is, however, even stronger: 9. $\mathbb{R}f8!$ a3 (9... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 10. $\mathbb{R}xf7+-$) 10. $\mathbb{R}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 11. $\mathbb{R}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (11... $\mathbb{W}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{R}a4$) 12. $\mathbb{R}g4$ with inevitable mate or win of the queen. A rather standard attack with two rooks!

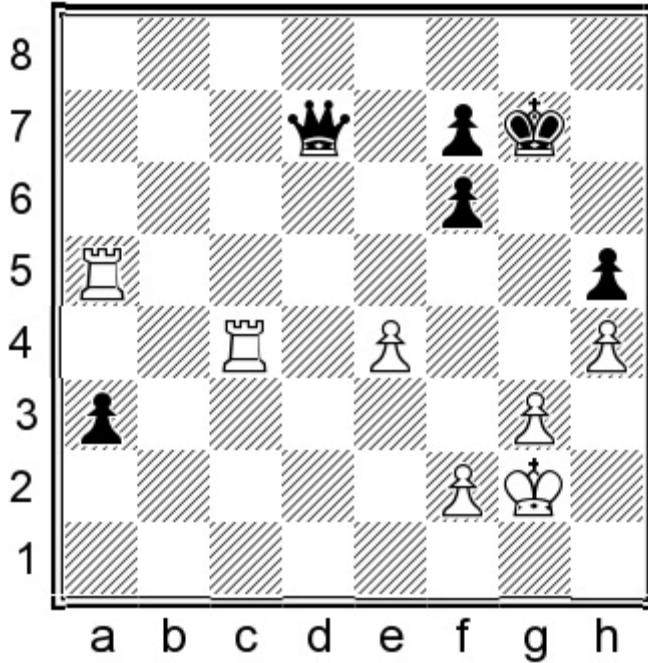
3... $\mathbb{W}a3$ (3...a3 4. $\mathbb{R}a5+-$) 4. $\mathbb{R}cc4$ $\mathbb{W}a1+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ a3 6. $\mathbb{R}c5$ $\mathbb{W}d1$ 7. $\mathbb{R}a5$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 8. $\mathbb{R}c4!?$

Chernin is not satisfied with the position after 8. $\mathbb{R}ba4$ $\mathbb{W}c6+$ 9. e4 f5 10. $\mathbb{R}xa3$ fxe4, so he tries to get more.

8... $\mathbb{W}d7!$

8...f5 is quite bad: 9. $\mathbb{R}c3$ a2 10. $\mathbb{R}ca3$.

9.e4



14-50

B

9... $\mathbb{W}d3??!$

9...f5!? makes it harder, but it also loses to 10. $\mathbb{R}cc5!$

10. $\mathbb{R}ca4$ $\mathbb{W}c2$ 11. $\mathbb{R}xa3$ $\mathbb{W}xe4+$ 12. $\mathbb{R}f3$

This is the position Chernin had aimed for from the very beginning. The win is an elementary matter because of Black's pawn weaknesses. However even with a regular pawn structure (the f6-pawn is moved to g6), as happened in Gurgenidze-Averbakh (USSR ch, Baku 1961), White won by means of a double rook attack against the f7-pawn.

12... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 13. $\mathbb{R}a6$ $\mathbb{W}d4$ 14. $\mathbb{R}f4$

The immediate 14. $\mathbb{R}axf6+$ was also playable, but this delay of the capture does no harm to White.

14... $\mathbb{W}d5+$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 16. $\mathbb{R}c6$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 17. $\mathbb{R}a6$

Another way was 17.g4!? hxg4 18. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ (planning 19. $\mathbb{R}cxsf6+$) 18... $\mathbb{W}a3+$ (18... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 19. $\mathbb{R}f5+$) 19. $\mathbb{Q}xg4+-$

17... $\mathbb{W}d8$ 18. $\mathbb{R}axf6+$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 19. $\mathbb{R}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 21.f3 f6 22. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$

22.g4+? hxg4+ 23.fxg4+ $\mathbb{Q}f4\text{O}=$ was premature.

22... $\mathbb{Q}g6$

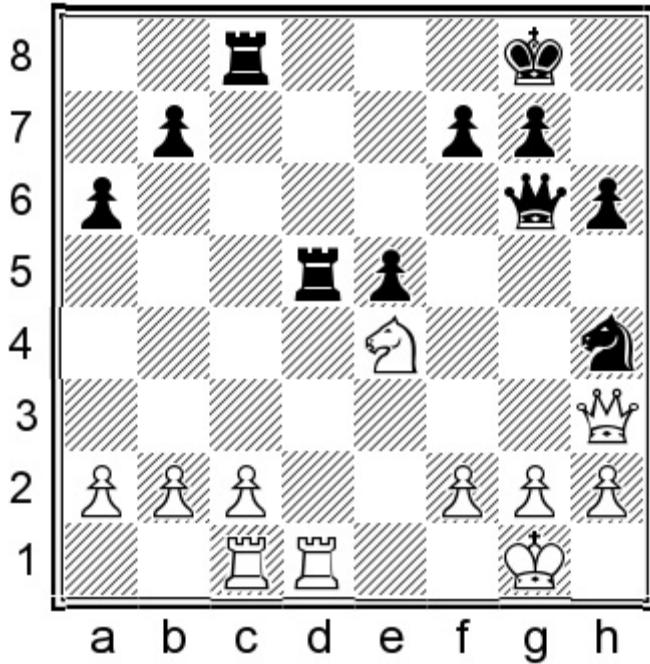
Or 22... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 23.g4 hxg4 24.fxg4 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}h3\text{O}+-$

23.g4 Black resigned.

The queen has the upper hand when the rooks are disconnected or doomed to passivity because of

the need to stop an opponent's passed pawns or to defend their own pawns.

Evans – Rossolimo
USA ch, New York 1965/66



14-51

B?

I do not want to deny my readers the pleasure of enjoying the nice combination that resulted in the balance of material being discussed here.

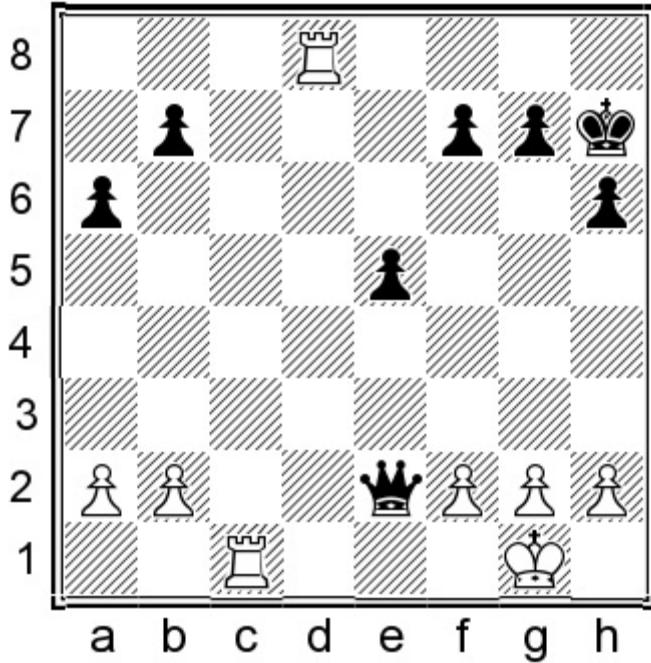
1...♝xc2!! 2.♛xh4 ♜d4!

Rather than 2...♝xc1? 3.♝xc1 ♜d4, in view of 4.f3! f5 5.♛g3!

3.♛d8+!

3.f3?? fails now to 3...♛xg2#

3...♜xd8 4.♜xd8+ ♔h7 5.♜xc2 ♛xe4 6.♜c1 ♛e2!



14-52

W

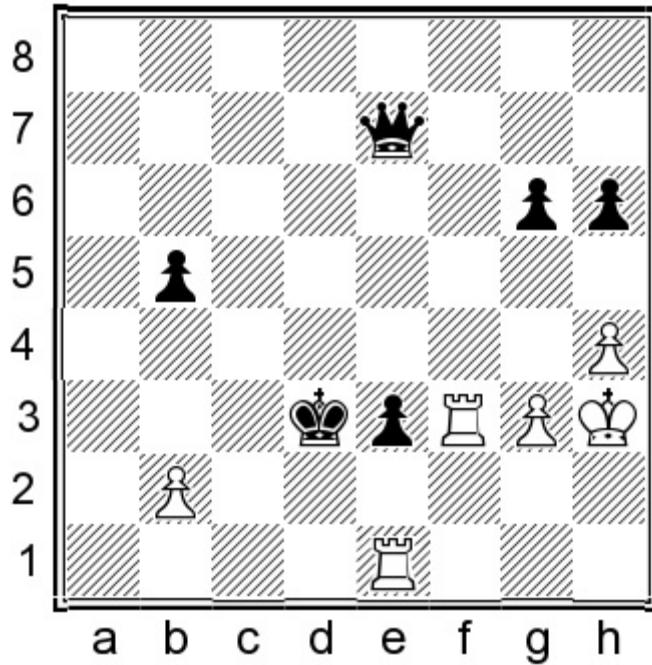
7.♗b1

Larry Evans chooses passive defense, which is the best policy for now.

7...f5! 8.♗dd1 e4 9.♗e1 ♗c4 10.a3 ♗a2! (it is important not to allow 11.♗bc1) **11.g3 ♘g6 12.♗g2?**

But here Evans should have seized the opportunity to activate his position, as shown by Yuri Averbakh: **12.♗bc1! ♗xb2 13.♗b1 ♗xa3 14.♗xb7 or 13...♗d2 14.♗b6+ ♔g5 15.♗e3.**

12...♗b3 13.♗g1 ♗a2 14.♗g2 ♘f6 15.f3 ♘e5 (15...e3!?) 16.fxe4 fxe4 17.h4 ♗b3 18.♗h3 ♗c2 19.♗ec1 ♗f2 20.♗f1 ♗b6?! (20...♗e2 was more precise) **21.♗g2??!** (21.♗f8 offered better drawing chances) **21...g6 22.♗f8 ♗b5! 23.♗f2 e3 24.♗e1 ♘e4 25.a4 ♗c5 26.♗h3 (26.b4!?) 26...b5! 27.axb5 axb5 28.♗f6 ♗e5 (28...♔d3!) 29.♗f8 ♗e7 30.♗f4+ ♘d3 31.♗f3**



14-53

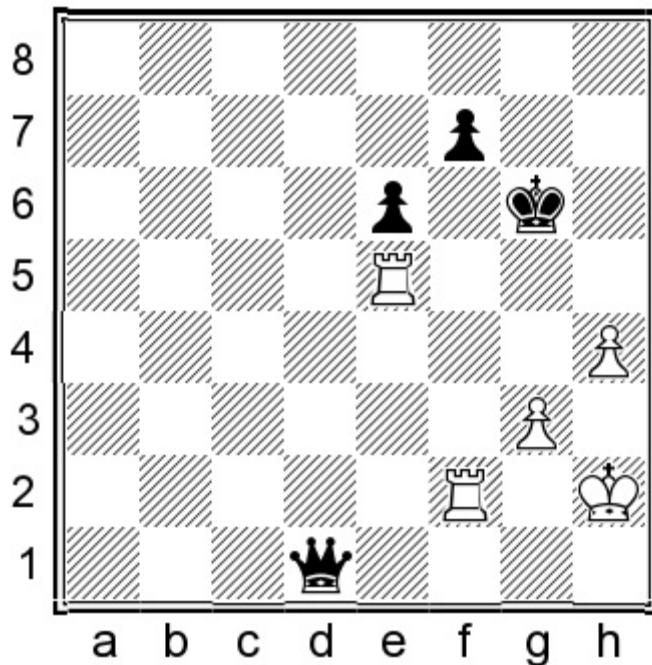
B

31... $\mathbb{Q}d2?!$

Technically better is 31...h5! or 31...b4!, but the text does not let the win slip.

32. $\mathbb{Q}fxe3$ $\mathbb{W}xe3$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 35.b4 $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (37. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!$, but not 37... $\mathbb{Q}c4?$ 38.h5=) 37... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 38.g4 $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 39.g5 h5 40. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 41. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ b4 42. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ b3 43. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ b2 44.g6 b1= \mathbb{W} 45.g7 $\mathbb{W}b3$ 46. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 47.g8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{W}xg8+$ 48. $\mathbb{Q}xg8$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 49. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ White resigned.

Exercises



14-54

14/5

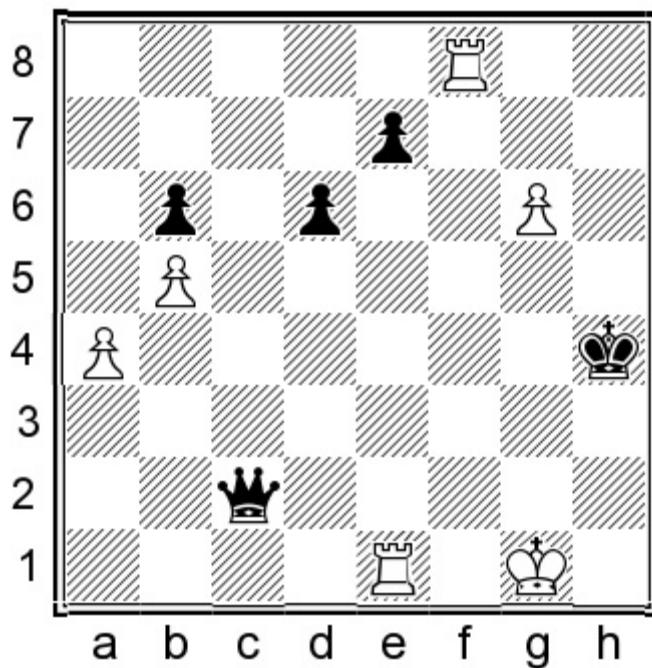
B?

Show/Hide Solution

14/5. Yermolinsky-Kaidanov, USA ch, Long Beach 1993

The threat $\mathbb{E}g5+$ should be neutralized. Black played 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ because he failed to see the killing reply: after 2. $\mathbb{E}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$, White has 3. $\mathbb{E}g6!$ with a decisive doubling of the rooks in the f-file. The game continued 3...e5 4. $\mathbb{E}gf6$ e4 5. $\mathbb{E}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{E}e7$ (having won a pawn, the rooks regroup for attacking another pawn) 6... $\mathbb{W}d3$ 7. $\mathbb{E}f4$ e3 8. $\mathbb{E}fe4$ $\mathbb{W}c2+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}c8+$ 10.g4 $\mathbb{W}c1$ 11. $\mathbb{E}xe3$ $\mathbb{W}h1+$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}g1+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{W}f2+$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{W}d2$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ Black resigned.

The correct defense was 1... $\mathbb{W}d7!$ 2. $\mathbb{E}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7! \pm$ (rather than 2... $\mathbb{Q}h6?$ 3. $\mathbb{E}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}g4$ e5 5. $\mathbb{E}g5+ -$). White cannot win a pawn: if 3. $\mathbb{E}f6$, then 3... $\mathbb{W}e7$.



14-55

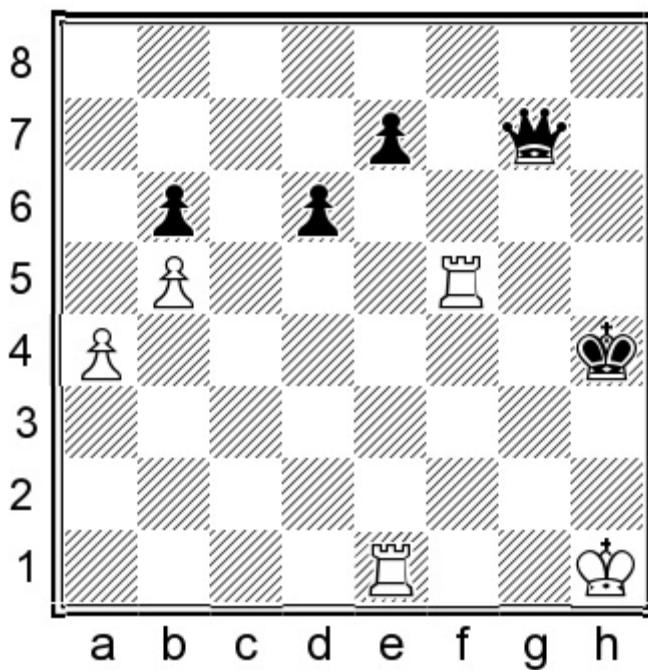
14/6

W?

Show/Hide Solution

14/6. G.Zakhodiakin 1967

1.g7! ♕g6+ 2.♔h1 ♕xg7 3.♕f4+ ♔h5 4.♕f5+ ♔h4 (if 4...♔h6, the same reply follows)



16-104

W?

5.♕ee5!! dxе5 6.♕f2!+-

White picks up the queen for the rook and wins by means of the breakthrough a4-a5.

Inarkiev noticed that the quiet move 1.♔h1!? is also strong enough for a win, for example, 1...♕c3 (1...♕b3 2.♕f2+-) 2.♕e2 ♔h5 3.♕g2 ♕e1+ 4.♔h2 ♕e5+ 5.♔g1 ♕d4+ 6.♕ff2+-.

Chapter 15

General Endgame Ideas

Along with the many techniques that apply to specific material relationships, this book also deals with more general principles and methods of playing the endgame which are used in a wide variety of circumstances. In this chapter we will reiterate the most important endgame ideas, and refine our impressions of them here and there.

“There are three things that give the endgame its characteristic features: the active power of the king, the passed pawn and the need to make a move, changing the dynamic on the board, the so-called *zugzwang*,” wrote Emanuel Lasker in *Common Sense in Chess* (Russian edition, 1924).

Having studied the preceding chapters, I hope you are now convinced that skillful endgame play does not merely consist of automatically following some prescribed formula of dry and dull rules. In endgames, just as in other stages of the struggle, complex variations must be calculated and beautiful hidden combinations must be discovered. Theory only aids our search for the proper solution. Some of the practical endgames and studies that we have examined are by no means aesthetically inferior to the finest creative examples from the opening and middlegame.

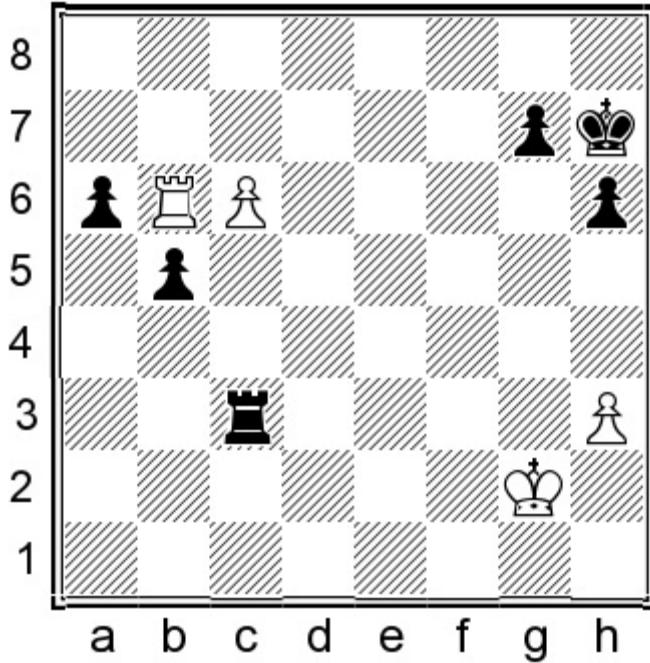
Here I would like to acquaint the readers with some new and spectacular examples that were not included earlier. Thus, this chapter is devoted not only to endgame strategy, but also to endgame tactics, especially in the exercises at the end of each section.

King’s Activity

“In the middlegame the king is a mere spectator; in the endgame on the other hand – one of the major participants,” Nimzovitch wrote in *My System*. **Make use of every available moment to improve your king’s placement – its active position is often decisive for the outcome of the fight.**

Tondivar – Lutz

Leeuwarden 1994



15-1

B?

1...b4? 2.♖xa6 b3 3.♖b6 followed with 4.c7 results in a draw,

while 1...♜a3 can be met, say, with 2.♜b8, and the black rook must go back to c3. Black can win only through a king advance!

1...♝g6! 2.♜xa6 ♝h5 3.♜b6

3.♜a7 fails after 3...♜xc6 4.♜xg7 ♜g6+.

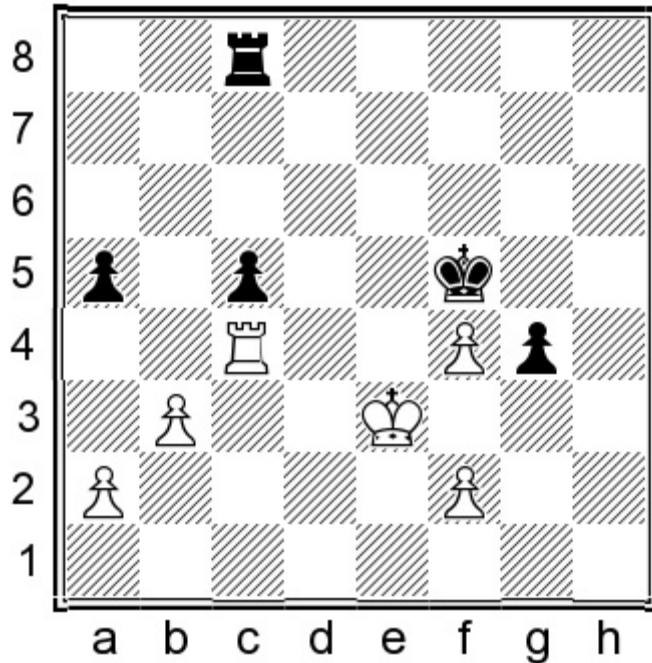
3...♝h4 4.♜xb5 ♜c2+ 5.♝g1 ♜xh3 (rather than 5...♜xc6? 6.♜b3=) **6.♜b7**

6.♜b3+ ♜h4 7.♜b4+ ♜h5 8.♜b6 does not help in view of 8...g5 9.♝f1 g4 followed by ...♝g5, ...h5, ...♝h4.

6...g5 7.c7 g4 8.♜b6 h5 White resigned.

A king's advance is mostly directed to the center of the board, from which both wings are equally accessible. However this should not become a strict rule to follow blindly: in principle, a king's place is wherever the position requires.

Taimanov – Ree
Wijk aan Zee 1981



15-2

W?

White has an extra pawn and his rook is more active than Black's, but how does he bring the advantage home? The straightforward 1. $\mathbb{R}e4$?! $\mathbb{Q}f6$! 2. $\mathbb{R}e5$? lets Black create enough counterplay to save the game after 2...a4! 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ axb3 4. axb3 $\mathbb{R}b8$ (4... $\mathbb{R}d8+$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{R}b4$.

The winning plan involves the king's march to g3 in order to attack the g4-pawn, regardless of how far the king moves from the center.

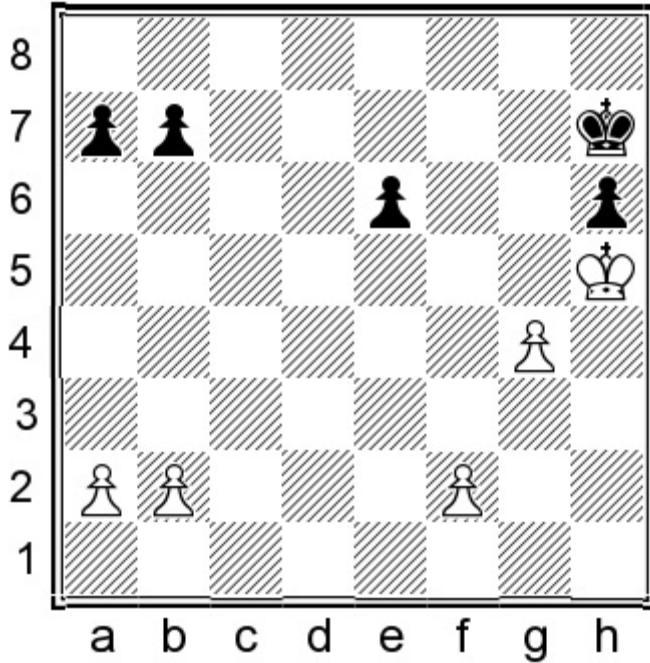
1. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{R}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{R}d7$

Otherwise $\mathbb{Q}g2$ -g3 followed by either $\mathbb{R}c3$ -e3-e5+ or a2-a3 and b3-b4.

3. $\mathbb{R}xc5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{R}d2$ 5. $\mathbb{R}xa5$ $\mathbb{R}c2$ (5...g3 6. $\mathbb{R}a4+$) 6. $\mathbb{R}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 7. $\mathbb{R}c4$ $\mathbb{R}xa2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ Black resigned.

Sometimes the route for a king's march should be prepared by means of pawn exchanges. This technique is called "*widening the beachhead*."

A.Yusupov 1995



15-3
W?

White has two active possibilities:

(a) to create a distant passed pawn by means of f2-f4, g4-g5, and f4xg5; and

(b) to widen the beachhead: the move g4-g5 is made when the f-pawn is still on f2, then the king goes to the e-pawn and, eventually, to the queenside.

However, both these plans fail if started immediately:

1.f4? ♕g7 2.g5 hxg5 3.fxg5 e5 4.♔h4 ♕g6 5.♔g4 e4 6.♔f4 e3 7.♔xe3 ♕xg5 8.♔e4 ♔f6 9.♔d5 ♔e7=

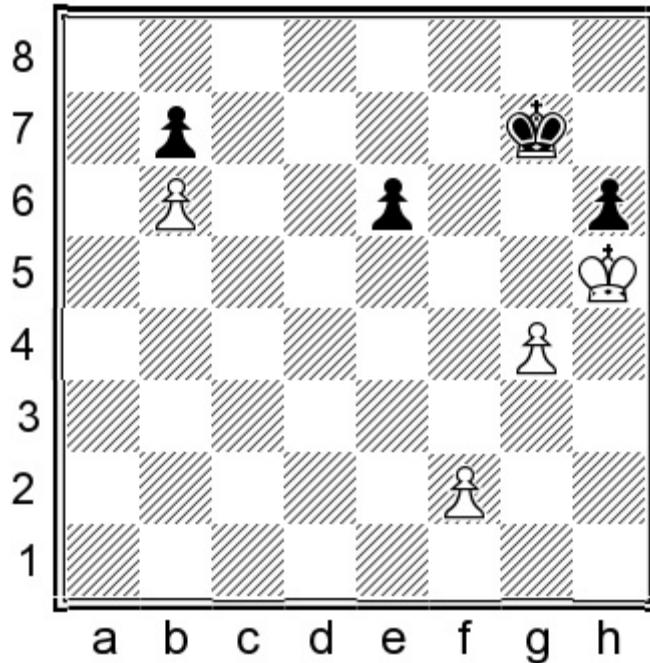
1.g5? hxg5 2.♔xg5 ♕g7 3.♔f4 ♔f6 4.♔e4 e5 5.♔d5 ♔f5 6.b4 (if 6.f3, both 6...♔f6 and 6...♔f4 7.♔e6 ♔xf3 8.♔xe5 ♕e3 9.♔d6 ♔d3= are good) 6...b5 7.♔c5 a6 8.♔d5 e4 9.a3 ♔f4 10.♔e6 ♔g4! 11.♔e5 ♔f3= (12.♔f5? e3).

Before White clarifies the situation on the kingside, he should strengthen his position on the queenside to the utmost by means of a pawn advance.

1.b4! ♕g7

Black has to wait. If 1...b5?! the plan with the distant passed pawn decides: 2.f4! ♕g7 3.g5 hxg5 4.fxg5 e5 5.♔h4! ♔f7 6.♔g3! (the king detours around the mined g4-square) 6...♔g6 7.♔g4O 7...e4 8.♔f4 e3 9.♔xe3 ♕xg5 10.♔d4 and Black's queenside pawns perish as a consequence of the weakening advance ...b7-b5.

2.b5 ♔h7 3.a4 ♕g7 4.a5 ♔h7 5.b6 axb6 6.axb6 ♕g7



15-4

W?

From the point of view of the first plan, the situation has not changed. But the widening of the beachhead has become much more effective than in the initial position.

7.g5! hxg5 8.♔xg5 ♔f7 9.♔f4 ♔f6 10.♔e4 ♔f7

10...e5 is impossible here in view of 11.♔d5 ♔f5 12.♔d6 ♔f4 13.♔c7 ♔f3 14.♔xb7 ♔xf2 15.♔c6 e4 16.b7 with the winning endgame (a queen versus a central pawn).

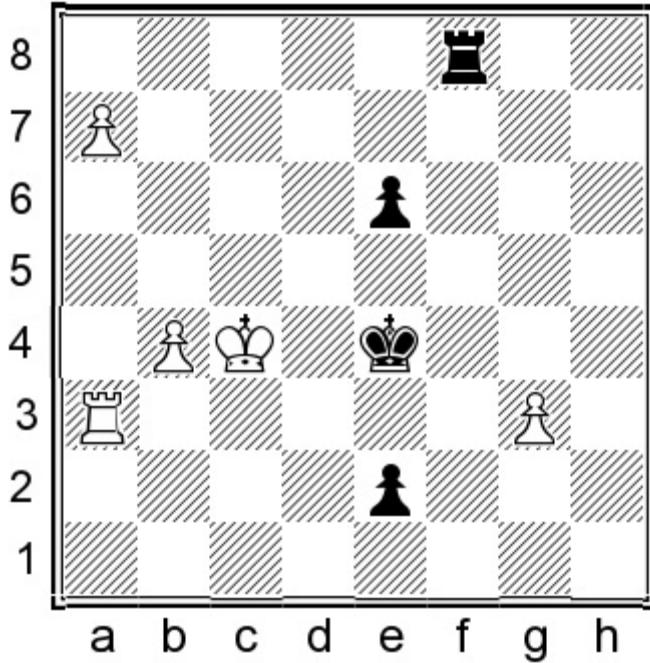
11.♔e5 ♔e7 12.f3! (White should preserve his second spare tempo for the future) **12...♔d7 13.♔f6 ♔d6**

13...♔c6 14.♔xe6 ♔xb6 15.f4 transposes into the main line.

14.f4 ♔d7 15.♔f7 ♔d6 16.♔e8! (a routine technique: the opposition is utilized by means of an outflanking) **16...♔c6 17.♔e7 ♔xb6** (17...♔d5 18.♔d7) **18.♔xe6 ♔c7 19.f5 ♔d8 20.♔f7! b5 21.f6 b4 22.♔g7 b3 23.f7 b2 24.f8=♕++-**

Böhm – Timman

Amsterdam 1977



15-5

W?

1. $\mathbb{R}a1?$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 2. $\mathbb{R}e1$ $\mathbb{K}e3$ followed by 3... $\mathbb{R}xa7$ is quite hopeless for White.

1. $\mathbb{R}a6!!$ e5 2. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 3. $\mathbb{R}e1$ $\mathbb{K}f3$ 4. $\mathbb{K}d5!$

This is the reason for 1. $\mathbb{R}a6!$ The white king has enough time to eliminate the e5-pawn (if 4...e4, then 5. $\mathbb{R}xe2$).

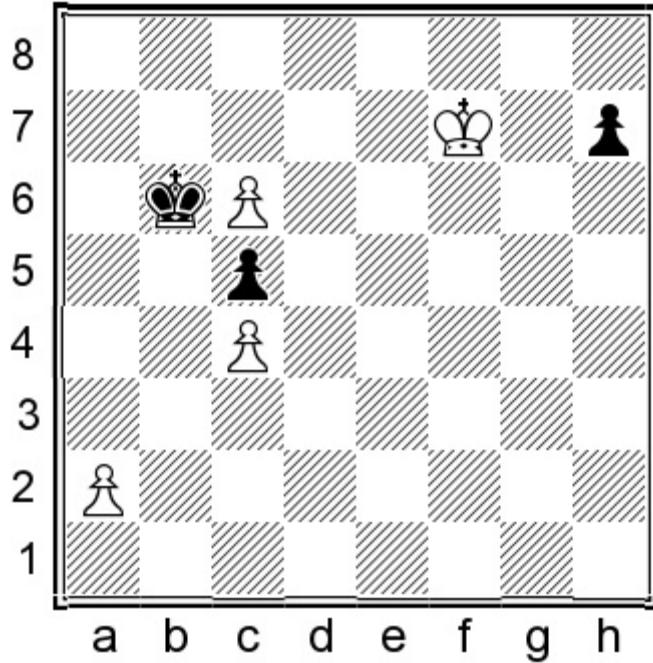
4... $\mathbb{R}xa7$ 5. $\mathbb{K}xe5$

The white king is looking at both wings. The black rook can attack any one of the pawns but then the king will support the remaining pawn.

5... $\mathbb{R}b7$ 6. $g4!$ $\mathbb{K}xg4$ 7. $\mathbb{K}e4$ (7. $\mathbb{R}xe2$ $\mathbb{R}e7+$ 8. $\mathbb{K}d6$ $\mathbb{R}xe2$ 9. $b5=$ is also possible) 7... $\mathbb{R}e7+$ 8. $\mathbb{K}d5$ Draw.

The most characteristic case of “chasing after two birds” is **Réti’s Idea**: the king overtakes the hostile passed pawn after initially being out of its square. The necessary tempi are gained by counterthreats (supporting one’s own passed pawn or attacking enemy’s pieces).

M. Zinar 1982



15-6

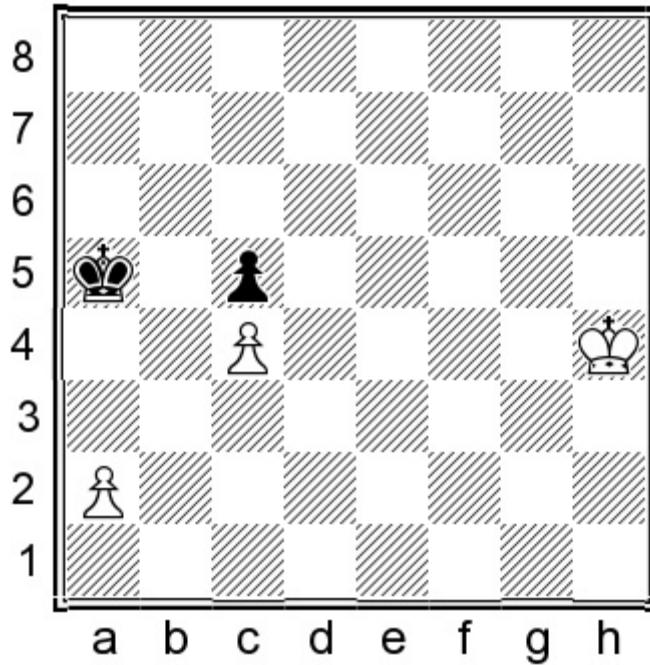
W?

The trivial continuation 1. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ loses. The simplest is 6... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ c4 8. a4 $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ here, but 6... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (7. a4 c4 8. a5 c3 9. a6 $\mathbb{Q}c6$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (“shouldering”) is also strong: 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (after 8. a4 c4 9. a5 c3, Black promotes with a check) 8... $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ (9. a4 c4 10. a5 c3 11. a6 c2 12. a7 c1= \mathbb{Q} 13. a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}h1+$) 9... c4 10. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ 11. a4 c3 12. a5 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 13. a6 c2 14. a7 c1= $\mathbb{Q}+ +$.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g7!!$ h5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ h4 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$

Réti's maneuver! If 3... h3, then 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ h2 5. c7=

3... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$



15-7

B

White has neither gained nor lost a tempo compared with the 1. $\hat{Q}f6?$ line, but the black pawn, because of its provoked advance, was captured on h4 rather than h7. From there the white king has an easier way back to defend.

6... $\hat{Q}b4$ 7. $\hat{Q}g3!$ $\hat{Q}xc4$ 8. $\hat{Q}f2!$

8. $\hat{Q}f3(f4)?$ is wrong because of the shoulderering 8... $\hat{Q}d3!$, similar to the 1. $\hat{Q}f6?$ line.

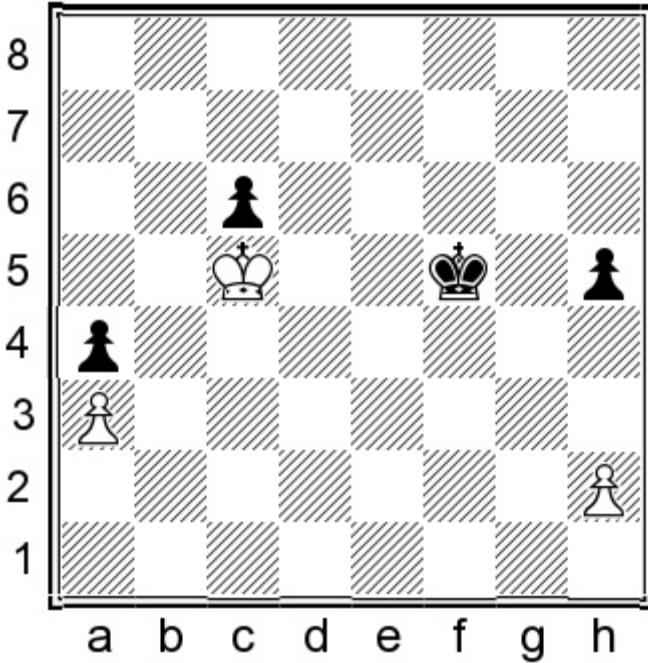
8... $\hat{Q}c3!?$ 9. $\hat{Q}e2!$

The only move! 9.a4? is premature in view of 9... $\hat{Q}b4$, while after 9. $\hat{Q}e3(e1)?$ 9...c4, the c-pawn promotes with a check.

9...c4 10.a4=

It is obvious that correct endgame strategy involves not only an activation of one's own king, but the prevention of the activation of the hostile king as well. We have already seen one of standard techniques – **shouldering** – in the previous example. Another instructive case follows:

Velea – Vidoniak
Romania 1992



15-8
B?

1... $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ leads only to a draw: 2. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ h4 5.a4 h3 6.a5 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 7.a6= Black's own pawn on c6 turns out to be an obstacle.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

A move with a double purpose! Generally, the king intends to go to the queenside, but after 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ it will change direction: 2... $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ h4 4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h3-$ – Black wins because his a-pawn has already entered the hostile half of the board) 3...h4 4. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 6.a4 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 7.a5 h3, and White fails to queen his pawn because the c6-pawn does not exist anymore.

As Bologan has shown, 1...h4! also wins: 2. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (2...c5+) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ c5 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5.a4 c4 6.a5 c3 7.a6 c2 8.a7 c1= \mathbb{W} , and after 9.a8= \mathbb{W} , almost every check forces a queen exchange. Or 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ (the defensive technique that we call “pendulum” does not help here) 5...c4 6. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3-$ + (the same situation as in the 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ line, but with reversed wings).

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 2.h4!? $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$

3. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4-$ + (shouldering), rather than 3... $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3=$

3... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$

Shouldering again; the white king is being squeezed to the edge of the board. 4...c5? is wrong in view of 5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ (6...c4 7. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 8.a4 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2=$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3-$ (a pendulum).

5. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ c5 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 7.a4 c4 8.a5 c3 9.a6 c2 10.a7 c1= \mathbb{W} 11.a8= \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{Q}c5+$

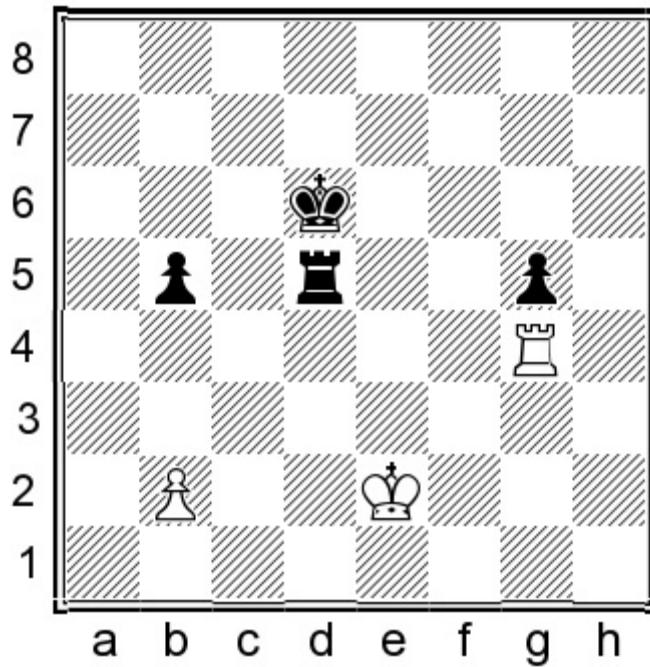
White resigned. After the inevitable queen exchange, his king is too far away from the kingside.

A king can be kept out of strategically important areas not only by the hostile king but by other

pieces as well. A rook can *cut the king off*, while other pieces can *create a barrier* (usually together with pawns).

Ljubojevic – Xie Jun

Novi Sad ol 1990



15-9

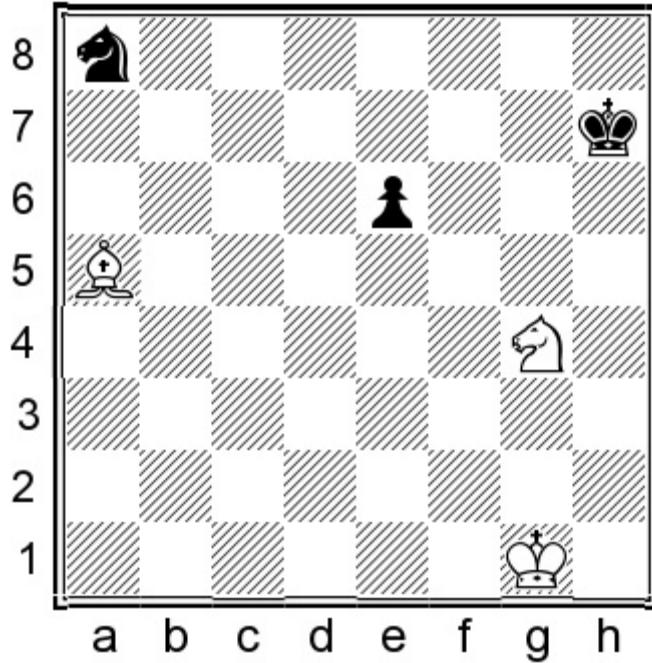
B?

1... $\mathbb{R}f5!+$

The most precise, as the white king will be unable to help his rook in its fight against the passed pawn, which will soon march unstoppably ahead with support from its own king.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3.b3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{R}f4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{R}b4$ 7. $\mathbb{R}g3$ g4 (the king is cut off from the pawn along the rank now) 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{R}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ b4 10. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 11. $\mathbb{R}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 12. $\mathbb{R}h1+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ White resigned.

A.& K. Sarychev 1930



15-10

W?

The a8-knight is under arrest, but the black king hopes to release it, for example, after 1. $\hat{Q}f2?$ $\hat{Q}g6$ 2. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}f5$ 3. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}e5$ 4. $\hat{Q}d3$ $\hat{Q}d6$ and 5... $\hat{Q}c7=$

1. $\hat{Q}e5!$ $\hat{Q}g7$ (Δ 2... $\hat{Q}f6$) 2. $\hat{Q}d8!$

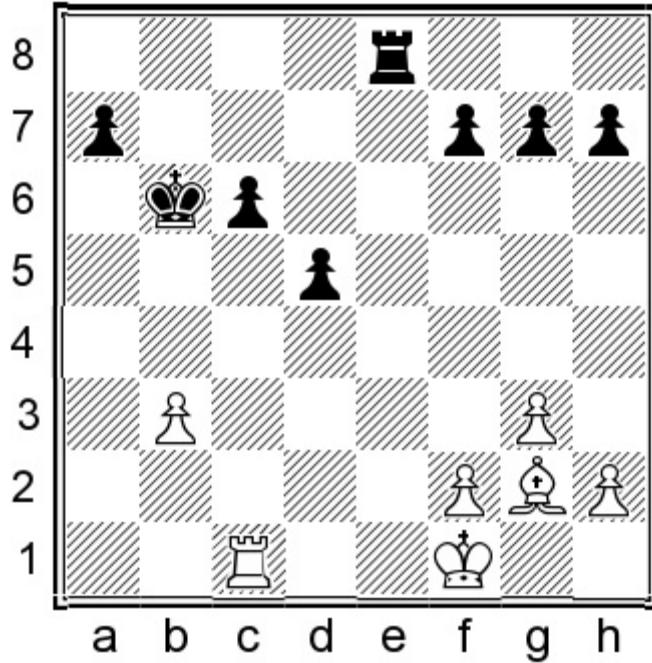
White has built a barrier. The black king can still overcome it, but only at a cost of time and this loss of time turns out to be decisive.

2... $\hat{Q}f8$ 3. $\hat{Q}f2$ $\hat{Q}e8$ 4. $\hat{Q}a5$ $\hat{Q}e7$ 5. $\hat{Q}e3$ $\hat{Q}d6$ 6. $\hat{Q}d4\ominus$ 6... $\hat{Q}c7$ (6... $\hat{Q}e7$ 7. $\hat{Q}c5+-$) 7. $\hat{Q}b4\#$

Another technique of immobilization is *pawns in the crosshairs*: the king is compelled to defend its own pawns.

Tukmakov – Veingold

USSR 1979



15-11

W?

Black has only two pawns for a bishop, but for White to capitalize on his advantage is by no means simple. How should he proceed? His king is out of play; therefore 1.♗e1 looks quite natural, but after 1...♝xe1+ 2.♔xe1 ♕c5 3.♗d2 ♔d4, followed by ...a7-a5 and ...c6-c5, Black's king is active. The corner square h8 is of the "wrong" color and this fact will be important in the event of massive pawn exchanges.

Sofia Polgar suggested a promising plan: 1.b4!? followed by ♜a1 (or ♜c5-a5), ♜f3-e2, ♜a6+ and b4-b5. Tukmakov has found another plan: he still exchanged the rooks but in a more favorable way.

1.♗h3! (2.♗d7 is threatened) **1...♝e7**

The advance 1...c5?! just weakens Black's position, offering new possibilities to the white bishop: 2.♗g2 d4 (2...♝e5 3.f4; 2...♝d8 3.♗e2) 3.♗d5+–

2.♜e1! ♜xe1+

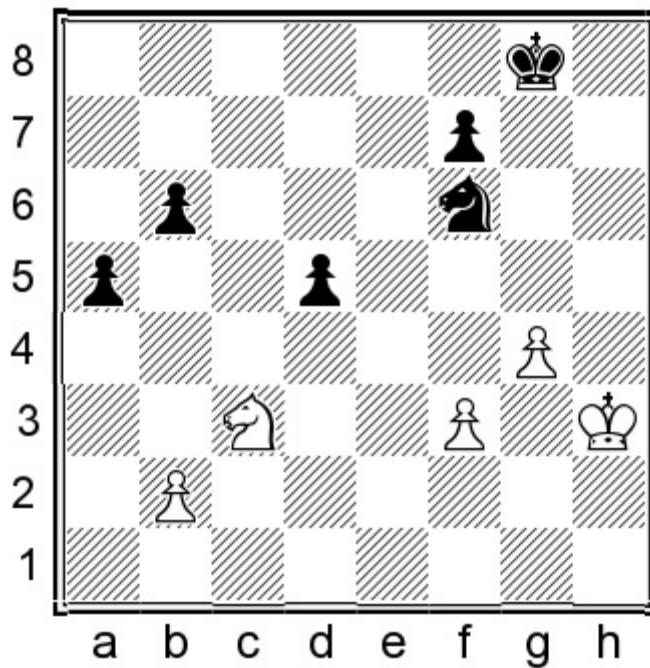
Tougher resistance was possible after 2...♝b7 3.♗e2 ♕c5(c7); White probably should have then played the sharp 4.♜a1 or 4.♗d2.

3.♗xe1 ♕c5 4.♗d7!+–

This is the point! By keeping the c-pawn in the crosshairs, White has prevented the activation of the black king. The rest is a rather simple process.

4...a5 5.♗d2 ♕d6 6.♗e8 f6 7.h4 c5 8.♗f7 ♕e5 9.♗e3 h6 10.f4+ ♕d6 11.h5 c4 (otherwise the white king goes to the a5-pawn) **12.bxc4 a4 13.♗d4 dxc4 14.♗xc4** Black resigned.

Tragicomедies



15-12

W?

White could easily equalize by activating his king, in spite of his pawn minus: 1. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ d4 (1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \Delta \mathbb{Q}e5$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ d3 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$

Bronstein was an outstanding grandmaster, but his Achilles' heel was always his endgame technique. For example, when he drew the world championship match against Botvinnik in 1951 (12:12), he lost five games – three of them from absolutely drawn endgames.

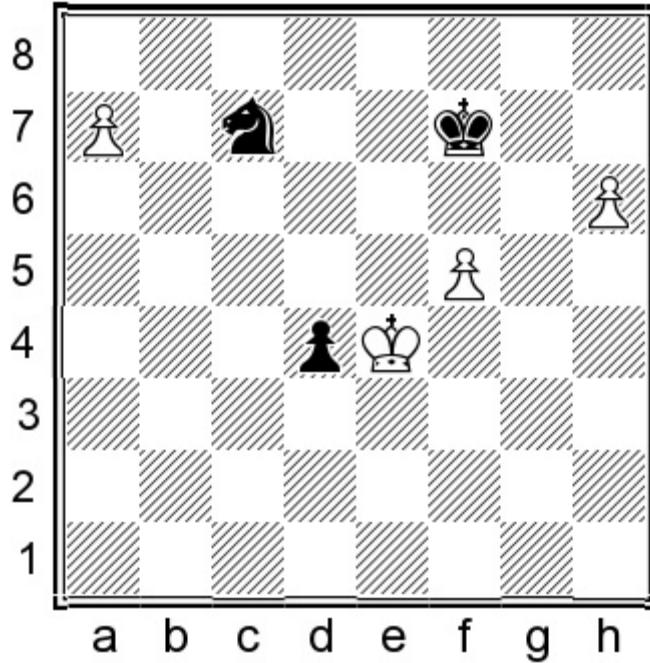
Here he also commits an elementary technical error, forgetting to centralize his king at the proper moment.

1.g5?! d4! 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ (even here it is not too late to allow the knight to safely stop the pawn and centralize the king with 2. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$, which still draws) **2...d3! 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$**

After 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ d2 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ b5! 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ b4 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ a4 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ a3, the a-pawn promotes.

3...d2

White resigned. The finish could be 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. f4 (6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$, and Black has an extra pawn and the much more active king) 6...b5 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6+$



15-13

W?

In this position a draw was agreed. Meanwhile, White had a forced win:

1. ♕xd4! ♔b5+ 2. ♕c5 ♔xa7 3. ♕b6!

Chasing after two birds! By pursuing the knight, White wants to bring the king closer to his pawns.

3... ♔c8+ 4. ♕c7 ♔a7

If 4... ♔e7, then 5.h7 ♔g7 6.f6+!

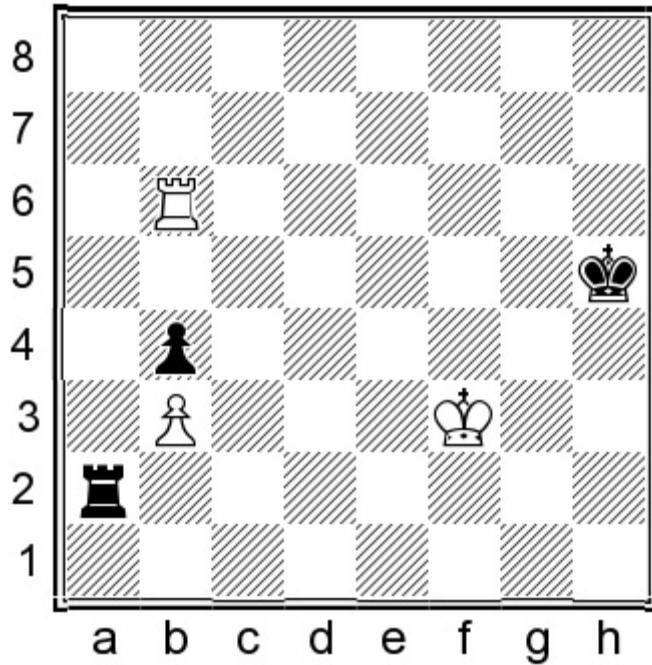
5. ♕d7! ♔b5

Or 5... ♕f6 6.h7 ♔g7 7.f6+ ♔xh7 8.f7 ♔g7 9. ♕e8!+–

6.h7 ♔g7 7.f6+ ♔xh7 8.f7 ♔g7 9. ♕e7!+–

Ricardi – Valerga

San Martin 1995



15-14

B?

1...†g5??

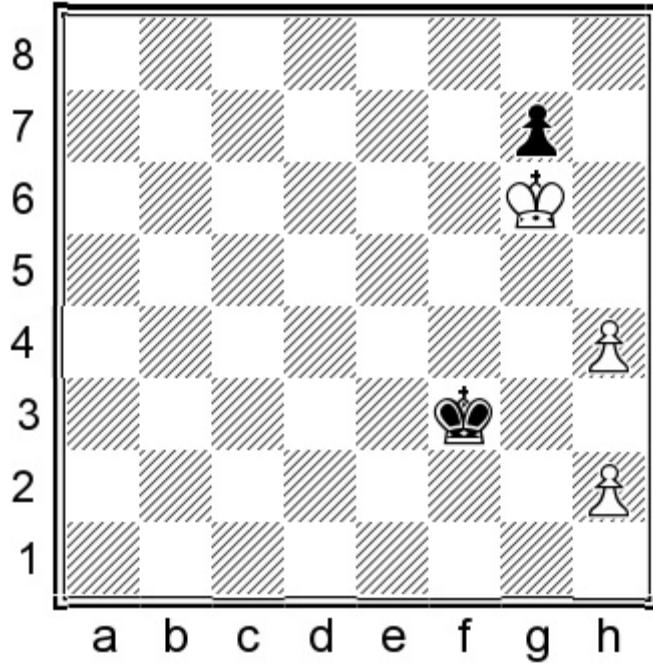
Apparently logical – the king goes to the queenside. However, in this case restricting the hostile king was much more important. This could have been achieved by 1...†h2! 2.†xb4 (2.†e4 †h3! and White cannot take the pawn) 2...†h3+ 3.†e2 †g5 (only now, when the white king is cut off along the third rank, has the time come to bring the king closer) 4.†d2 †f5 5.†c2 †e5 6.†c4 †h8 (in order to apply the frontal attack technique) with an easy draw.

1...†g5?? 2.†e4 †h2 3.†d5! †f5 (3...†h4 4.†c5 †f5 5.†xb4 is no better) **4.†xb4**

White's king is comfortably placed in the center and prevents its counterpart from coming closer.

4...†h3 (4...†h8 5.†b6+–) **5.†b7 †d3+ 6.†c4 †d8 7.b4 †e6 8.†c5 †c8+ 9.†b6** Black resigned.

Exercises



15-15

15/1

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/1. N. Grigoriev 1932

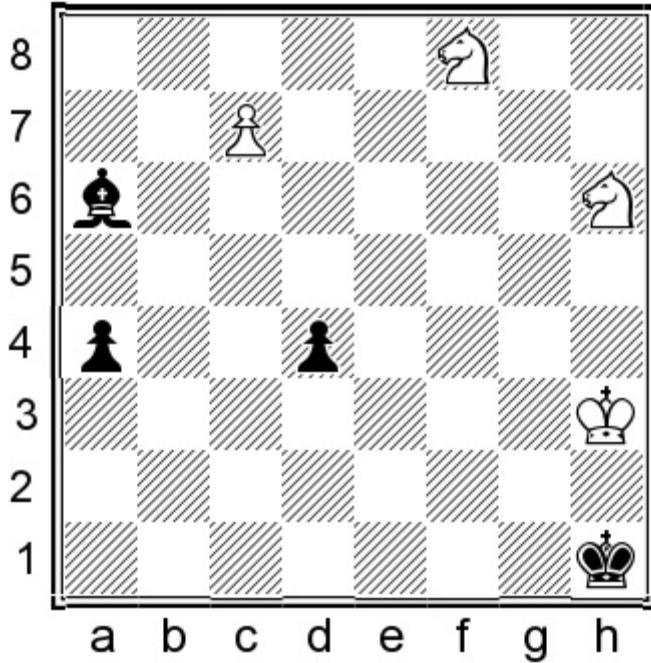
1. ♔f5!

Shouldering! 1.h5? is wrong in view of 1... ♔g4 2.h3+ ♔h4○.

The same holds for both 1.h3? ♔g3 2.h5 ♔h4○=

and 1.♔g5? ♔g2 2.h5 ♔h3○ 3.♔g6 ♔g4!=.

1. ♔f5! ♔g2 2.h5 ♔h3 (if 2... ♔f3, the same reply follows) **3. ♔g5!○ 3... ♔xh2 4. ♔g6+-**



15-16

15/2

W?

Show/Hide Solution

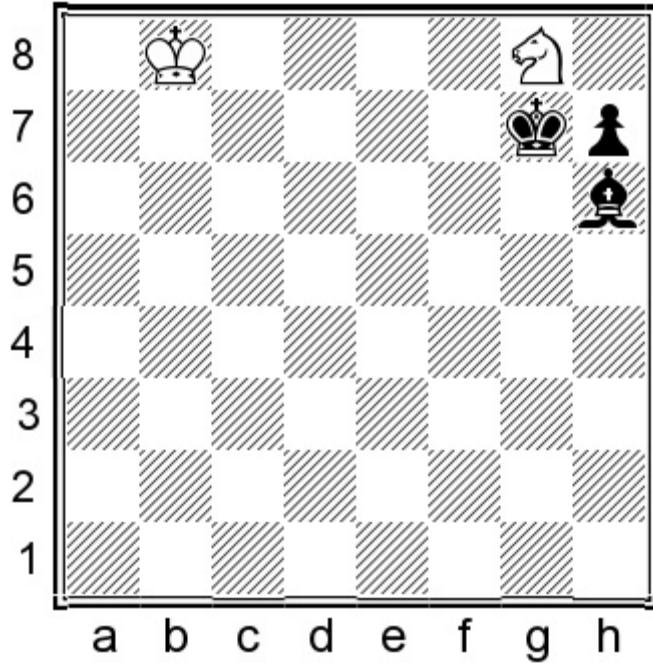
15/2. B. Breider, 1950

How to fight against the distant passed pawn (a4)? The knights cannot cross the h3-c8 diagonal, which will be occupied by the black bishop, while the king is placed hopelessly far away. However, it comes to the opposite wing in time, utilizing the Réti idea.

1. ♜f5! ♖c8 2. ♜g3! ♖xf5

If 2...d3, White has 3. ♜e6! (rather than 3. ♜f2? ♖xf5+ or 3. ♜e3? a3+) 3...d2 (3...♖xe6 4. ♜d4! ♖c8 5. ♜f2=; 3...a3 4. ♜ed4=) 4. ♜e3 ♖xe6 5. ♜f2 a3 6. ♜e2 a2 7. ♜c2=. Another resource is 3. ♜d6! d2 4. ♜e4!, forcing 4...d1=♕!=

3. ♜f4! ♖c8 4. ♜e6! ♖xe6 (4...d3 5. ♜e3 ♖xe6 6. ♜xd3=) 5. ♜e5! ♖c8 6. ♜xd4=



15-17

15/3

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/3. N.Rezvov V.Chernous 1991

1.♔c7!

After 1.♕e7? ♔f4+ 2.♔b7 ♔f6, an attempt to bring the king to h1 fails because of shoulderering: 3.♔c6 ♔e5! 4.♔c5 ♔g5 5.♕d5 h5 with a winning endgame.

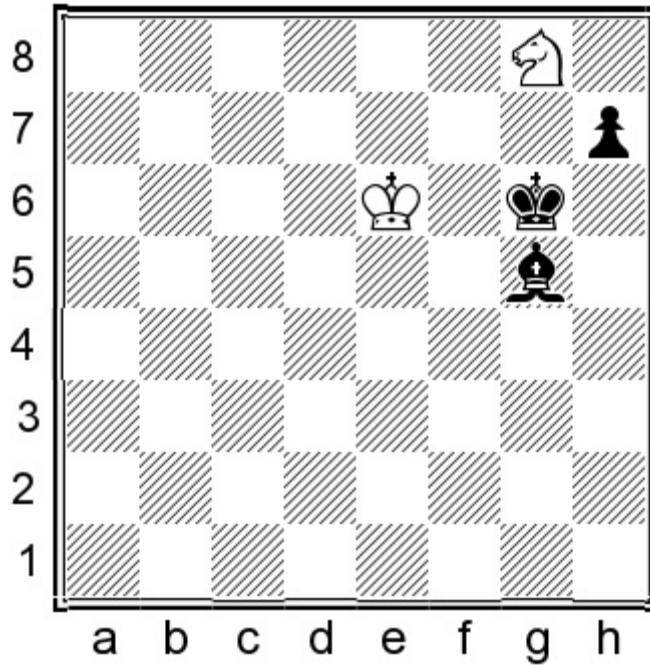
1.♔c7! ♔g5!

The line 1...♔f4+ 2.♔c6 ♔g6 3.♔d5 ♔f5 4.♕f6! h6 5.♔d4 ♔e5+ 6.♔e3= is not dangerous for White.

2.♔d6 ♔g6

3.♔e5? loses now to 3...♔h5! 4.♔f5 ♔h4 5.♔e4 ♔g4!

3.♔e6!!○



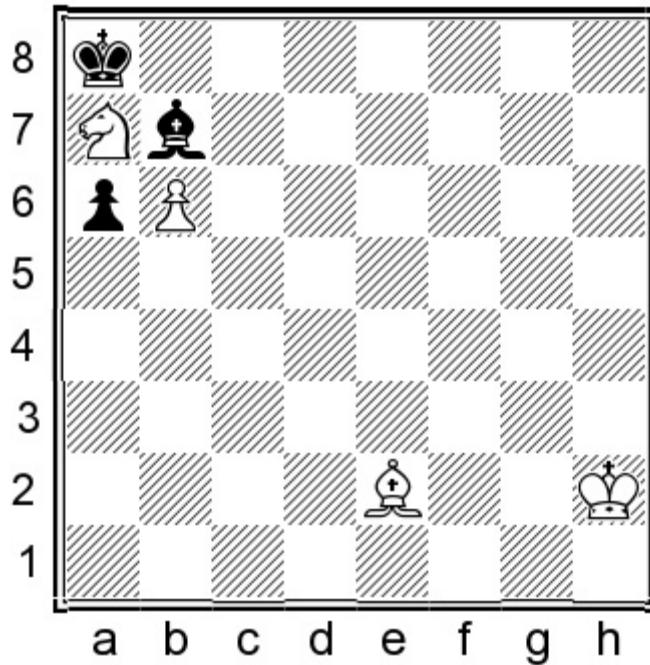
16-105
B

White saves himself by chasing two birds at once. If 3...h5, 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$, and his king arrives at h1 safely.

3... $\mathbb{Q}h5$

But now he runs in the opposite direction.

4. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8=$



15-18

15/4

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/4. O.Pervakov 1991

The king must hasten to help the b6-pawn.

1.♔g1!!

We have already mentioned that the laws of Euclidean geometry are not valid on the chessboard: the king's path to c5 along the fractured line (via g1) is by no means longer than the direct route via g3.

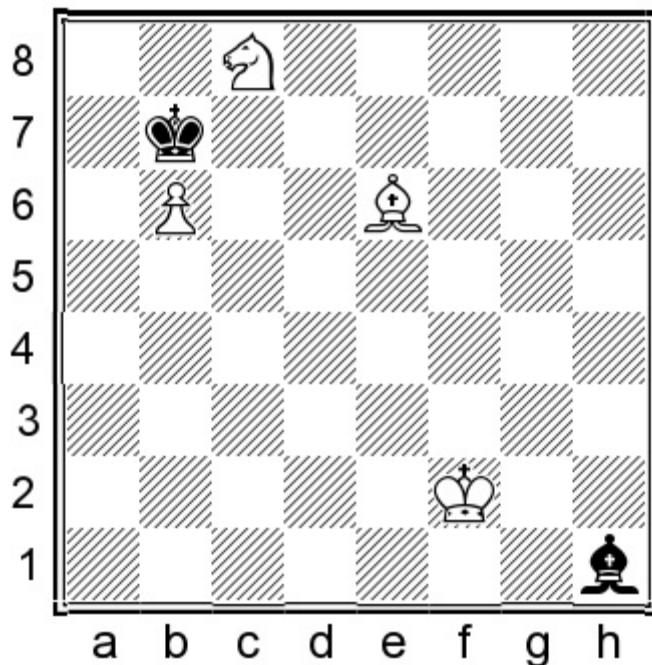
On 1.♔g3? ♔d5 (Δ 2...♔b7) 2.♗xa6 (2.♗c8 ♔b7 3.♗g4 a5 4.♗f4 a4=) 2...♔b7 3.♗c4! ♔h1!, Black holds. For example, 4.♗c8 (or 4.♔h2 ♔f3! 5.♔g3 ♔h1!) 4...♔b7 5.♗e6 ♔a6! 6.♗f4 ♔b7 7.♗c4 (7.♗e5 ♔xc8) 7...♔a5=

The cunning concept behind White's initial move is becoming clear: the black bishop is now denied the important h1-square.

1.♔g1!! ♔d5

1...a5 2.♗b5 is absolutely bad. If 1...♔b8 2.♔f2 a5, then the simplest reply is 3.♗e3, but 3.♗b5 ♔d5 (3...♔a6 4.♗d6) 4.♗c3 ♔b3 5.♗f3 a4 6.♗b1 ♔e6 7.♗e3 ♔c8 8.♗d4 is also playable.

2.♗xa6 ♔b7 3.♗c4! (3.♔d3 ♔d5!) 3...♔f3 (3...♔e4 4.♗b5!+–) 4.♔f2 (the crucial tempo!) 4...♔h1 5.♗e6 (or 5.♗c8 ♔b7 6.♗e6) 5...♔b7 6.♗c8



16-106

B

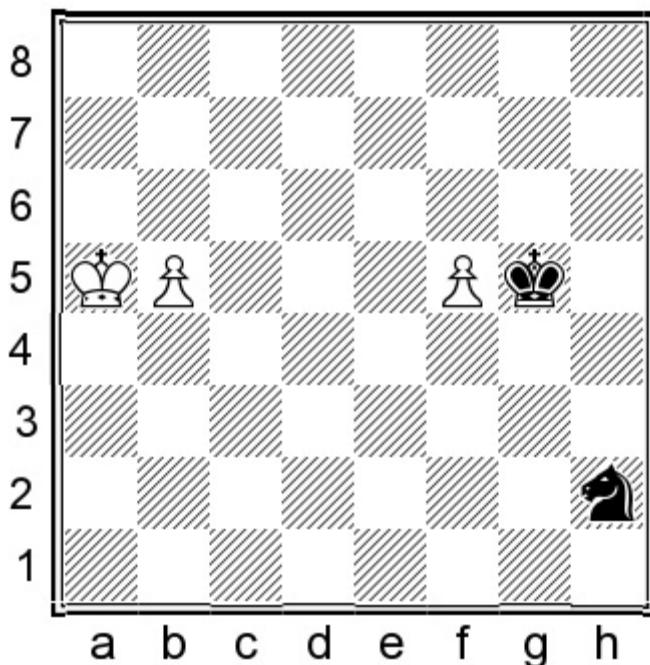
6... $\mathbb{Q}a6$

If 6... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$? (hoping for 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}c5 \Delta 8...\mathbb{Q}b7=$), then 7. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 13.b7+–

7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c5$

The rest is simple. The king goes to c7 and Black loses because the a6-c8 diagonal is too short.

10... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ (12... $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f1\Theta$) 13. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f1\Theta+–$

**15-19**

15/5

W?

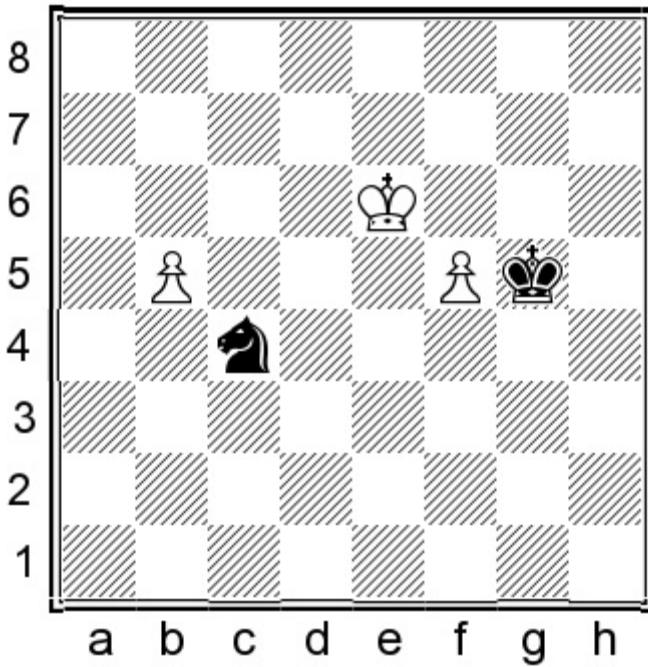
Play

15/5. P.Benko 1981**1. $\mathbb{Q}b6!!$**

1.b6? $\mathbb{Q}f3(g4)$ 2.b7 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ leads to an immediate draw. Therefore White applies sharper tactics; his

king will fight on two fronts simultaneously, supporting both passed pawns.

1.♔b6!! ♔g4! (1...♔xf5 2.♔c7+–) **2.♔c7! ♔e3!** (2...♔f6 3.♔c6+–) **3.♔d7!** (rather than 3.♔d6? ♔xf5=) **3...♔c4** (3...♔d5 4.♔d6 ♔b6 5.♔e6+–) **4.♔e6**



16-107

B

This position resembles the ending Svidler-Anand (diagram 15-13), does it not? But while in that case the fight was over when the king joined the f-pawn, here it only enters the most crucial phase.

4...♔b6 5.f6 ♔g6 6.♔e7!

6.f7? is not correct: after 6...♔g7 7.♔e7 ♔d5+!, there is no win. Therefore White triangulates to cede Black the turn to move.

6...♔d5+ 7.♔d6! ♔b6 (7...♔xf6 8.b6+–) **8.♔e6!○ 8...♔h7**

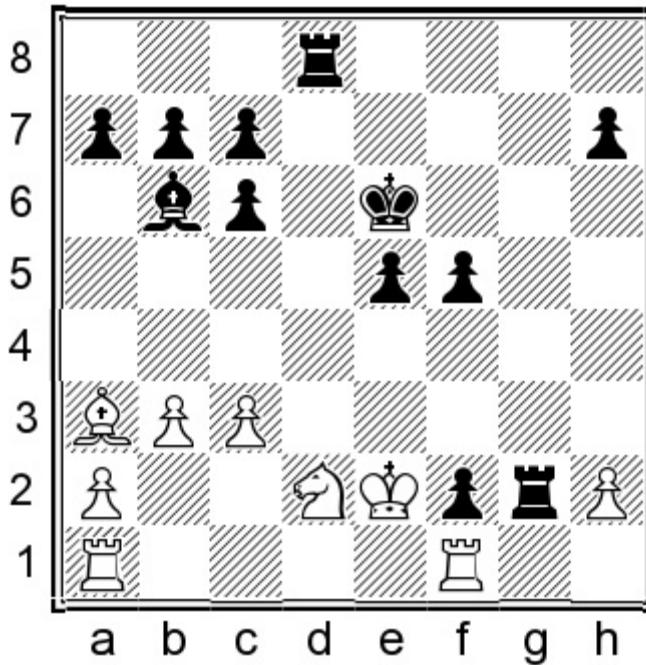
A weaker reply is 8...♔c8 9.f7 ♔g7 10.♔d7 ♔b6+ 11.♔e8+–, while now immediate attempts to promote the f-pawn will fail. So the king first goes to the other wing and only then returns to the kingside.

9.♔e7! ♔d5+ 10.♔d6 ♔b6 11.♔c6! ♔c4 12.♔d7! ♔g6 (12...♔b6+ 13.♔e8!+–) **13.♔e7!** (13.♔e6? ♔b6) **13...♔e5** (13...♔b6 14.f7+–) **14.b6+–** (or 14.♔e6+–)

Generally, a knight is a faster runner than the king, but one can get the opposite impression from this ending.

In middlegames, with many pieces in play, pawns can seldom be promoted. In endgames, however, the main issue is usually the creation of passed pawns and their advancement to promotion. Therefore, the importance of pawns increases in endgames; they become more valuable fighting units, sometimes as strong as pieces or even much stronger.

Gufeld – Kavalek
Mariánské Lázně tt jr 1962



15-20

B

Black obviously stands better but he must be aware of the move $\mathbb{Q}c4$. After an exchange of the b6-bishop, the important f2-pawn will be lost. To maintain it, Kavalek decides on an exchange sacrifice, intuitively sensing that his pawns will be stronger than the white rook.

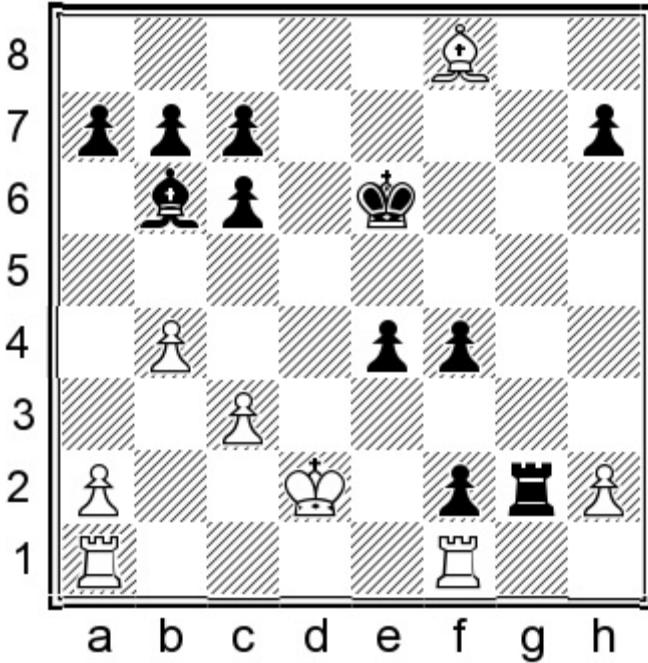
1... $\mathbb{E}xd2+$!

Emms suggested another solution to the problem: 1...e4! 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (2. $\mathbb{E}ad1$ $\mathbb{E}d3!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}g1$ is no better) 2...f4 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ f3+ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ (this zwischenzug is the point: 5... $\mathbb{E}d3\#$ is threatened) 5. $\mathbb{E}ad1$ $\mathbb{E}xd1$ 6. $\mathbb{E}xd1$ $\mathbb{E}g1!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{E}xd1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ with an easy win.

1... $\mathbb{E}xd2+$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ e4 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8$

The following curious line, also by Emms, shows the mighty energy of connected passed pawns: 3.h4 f4 4.c4 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}ad1$ f3 6. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ e3 7. $\mathbb{E}xd4$ e2 8. $\mathbb{E}dd1$ $\mathbb{E}g1!$ 9. $\mathbb{E}xg1$ fxg1= \mathbb{W} 10. $\mathbb{E}xg1$ f2—

3...f4 4.b4!



15-21

B

4...Bg5!

White has prepared 5.Qc5 in order to interfere with the powerful b6-bishop. To prevent this, Kavalek sacrifices another exchange. This is a very aesthetic solution, but not the only way, as 4...e3+ also wins: 5.Qe2 Qf5 (Δ 6...Qe4) 6.Qf3 Qxh2 (Δ 7...Qh3+) 7.Qh1 e2! 8.Qxe2 f1=Q+! 9.Qxf1 Qxh1+ (Bologan); or 5.Qd3 Qe5 6.Qc5 Qxc5 7.bxc5 b6 (Müller) and White cannot keep the black passed pawns from advancing.

5.Qc5 Qxc5! 6.bxc5 Qxc5 7.Qab1 f3

An amazing position! A bishop with pawns turns out to be stronger than a pair of rooks. For example, if 8.Qh1, then 8...Qe5 9.Qxb7 e3+ 10.Qd3 e2 11.Qbb1 Qe7! 12.Qe3 Qh4 and 13...e1=Q.

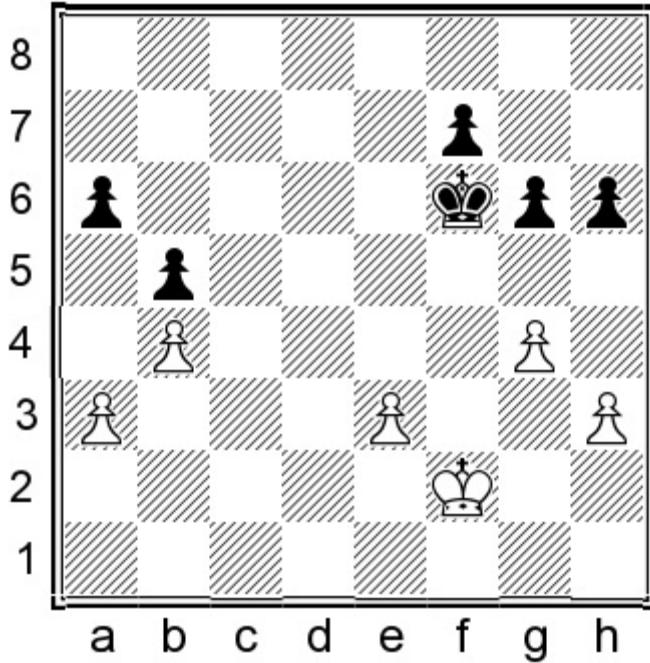
8.Qb4 Qf5 9.Qd4

The bishop is finally neutralized, but now the black king enters with decisive effect.

9...Qxd4 10.cxd4 Qf4! White resigned.

This example demonstrates how dangerous ***connected passed pawns*** can be. In many endings, a ***distant passed pawn*** can be also very important. Fighting against it can be a difficult matter, and even if one succeeds in stopping it, one often loses control of events on the opposite wing. The possibility of creating a distant passed pawn can often be of decisive importance in evaluating a position.

Lutikov – Gulko
Moscow 1982



15-22

W?

White's only way to a draw was 1.e4! ♕e5 (1... ♔g5 2.♔g3 Δ 3.h4+) 2.♔f3! (rather than 2.♔e3? g5 3.♔d3 ♔f4 4.♔d4 ♔g3 5.♔e5 ♔xh3 6.♔f6 ♔xg4+) 2...g5 (2... ♔d4 3.♔f4=; 2...h5 3.gxh5 gxh5 4.♔e3=) 3.♔e3 f6 4.♔d3 ♔f4 5.♔d4 ♔g3 6.♔d5 ♔xh3 7.♔e6 ♔xg4 8.♔xf6=

This variation is probably rather hard to calculate. An easier task is to come to the conclusion that nothing else is promising. For example, after 1.h4? ♕e5 2.♔f3 both 2...g5 and 2...f5!? win for Black, e.g., 3.gxf5 (3.g5 h5+) 3...♔xf5, creating a distant passed pawn.

1.♔f3? ♕g5!

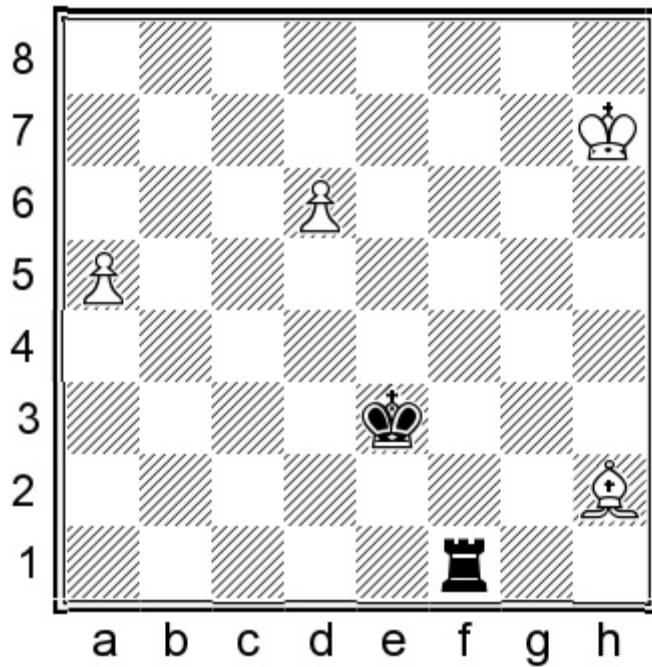
Again, the evaluation is rather obvious. After 2.♔g3 f5! 3.gxf5 ♔xf5 or 3.h4+ ♔f6, Black gets a distant passed pawn; otherwise he brings his king to h4, and thereafter widens the beachhead with decisive effect.

2.e4 ♔h4 3.♔g2 f6!

3...g5? is erroneous in view of 4.e5=. As Naumann has discovered, 3...h5!? 4.gxh5 ♔xh5 also wins, although the process is more complicated than in the actual game: 5.♔g3 f6 6.h4 g5 7.hxg5 fxg5 (Black has got a distant passed pawn) 8.e5 ♔h6! (the g6- and g4-squares are mined) 9.♔f3 ♔g7 10.♔e4 ♔g6! 11.♔d5 ♔f7!+.

4.♔h2 h5 5.gxh5 ♔xh5 6.♔g3 g5○ 7.♔h2 ♔h4 (7...g4? 8.♔g3=) 8.♔g2 g4 White resigned.

Far-advanced passed pawns are preconditions for brilliant combinations based on the promotion idea.



15-23

W?

1.a6! ♜a1!

1...♜f8 meets an easier refutation: 2.a7 ♔e4 (2...♜a8 3.d7 ♜xa7 4.♔g1+) 3.d7 ♜d8 4.♔g6 (or 4.♔c7 ♜xd7+ 5.♔g6). But what should White do now? 2.d7? ♜d1= is useless.

2.♔g1+!! ♜xg1 3.♔h8!!

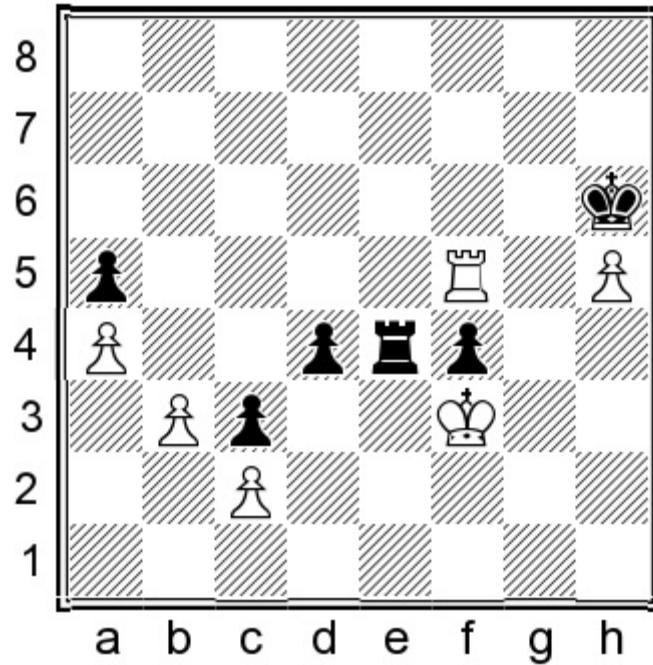
An amazing, quiet move. If 3...♜a1(c1), 4.d7 decides; if 3...♜d1(b1), then 4.a7; and if 3...♜f1, then 4.♔g8!

3...♜h1+ 4.♔g8! ♜g1+ 5.♔f8 ♜h1 (5...♜f1+ 6.♔e8) 6.d7+–

Interference and deflection are standard tactical tools that are helpful for pawn promotion.

Muñoz – Salazar

Novi Sad ol 1990

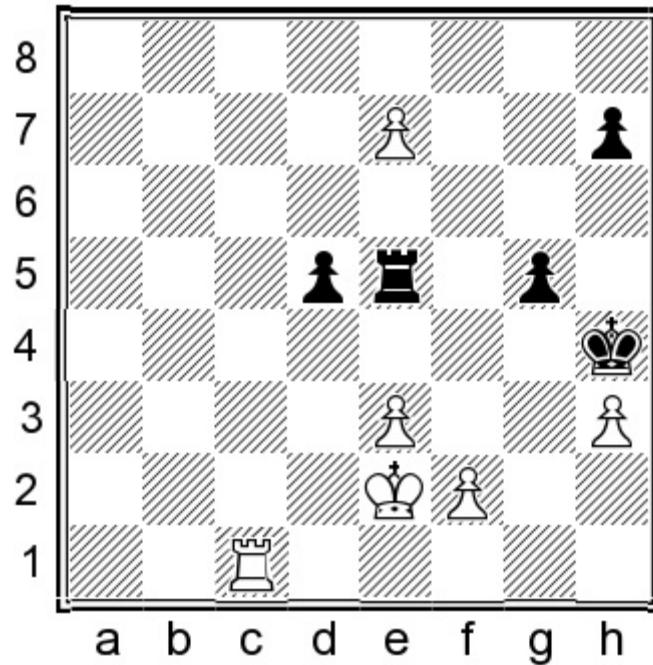


15-24

B?

1...d3! 2.cxd3 (2. \mathbb{Q} xe4 dx c 2+) 2... \mathbb{Q} c4!! (an interference) 3.bxc4 c2 4. \mathbb{Q} xf4 c1= \mathbb{W} + 5. \mathbb{Q} e4 \mathbb{W} d1
White resigned.

L.Katsnelson, A.Maksimovskikh 1983



15-25

W?

Play

1.♕c7

With the threat 2.e8=♛ ♜xe8 3.♕xh7#. After 1...h5 2.♔d3 ♜e4 (otherwise 3.♔d4 wins easily), both 3.f3 ♜e6 4.f4! gxf4 5.exf4 ♜e4 6.♗b7O 6...♔xh3 7.f5 and 3.♗c4!! are decisive. The nice deflection is the main theme of this study; we shall meet it more than once below.

1...♔xh3

2.♔d3? gives nothing now: 2...♜e4 3.f3 ♜e6=, and a king advance will cost White the important e3-pawn.

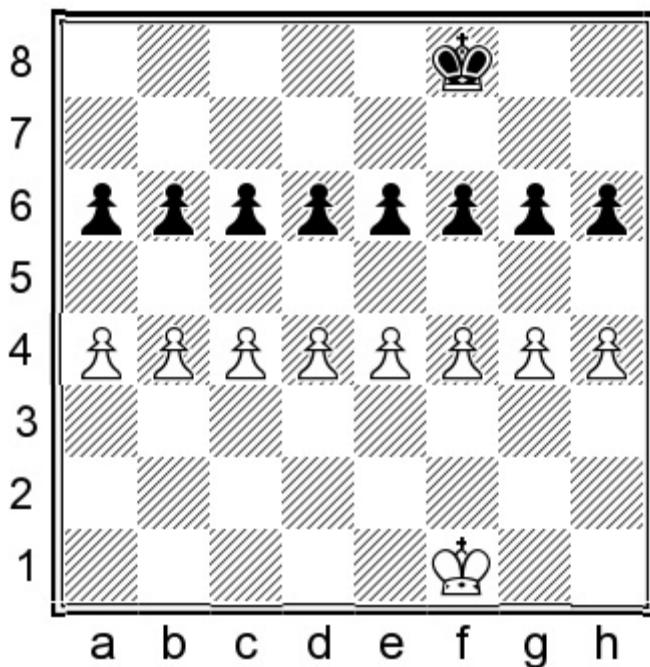
2.f4!! gxf4 3.♔f3 ♜xe3+ (3...fxe3 4.e8=♛! ♜xe8 5.♕xh7#) **4.♔xf4 ♜e4+**

If 4...d4, then 5.♗c3!! ♜xc3 6.e8=♛+-. On 4...♜e1, White applies the interference 5.♗c3+ and 6.♗e3.

5.♔f3! h5 (5...♔h2 6.♗c2+ and 7.♗e2+-) **6.♗c1! ♔h4** (6...♔h2 7.♗c2+) **7.♗c4!!+-**

If there is no passed pawn, one can often create it by means of a pawn **breakthrough**. The following joke illustrates one of the standard breakthrough techniques.

P.Cathignol 1981



15-26

W?

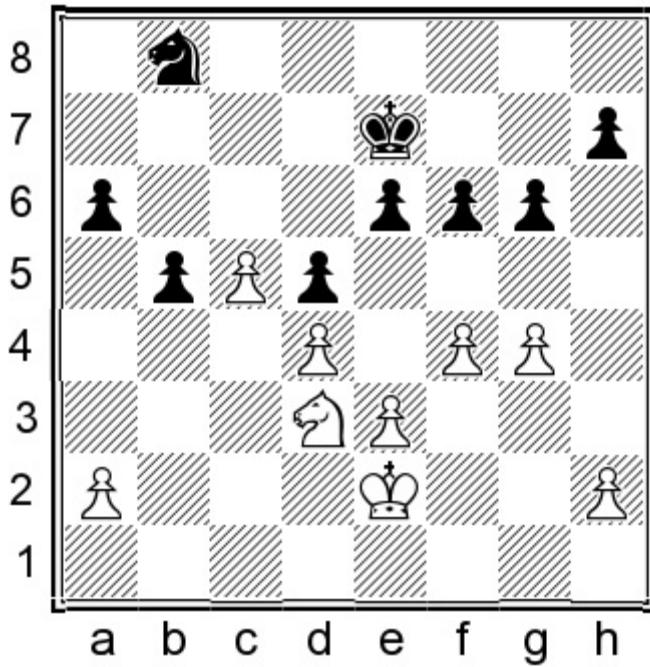
1.d5! exd5 2.exd5 cxd5

No different is 2...c5 3.a5 bxa5 4.b5! axb5 5.cxb5 etc., as in the main line.

3.a5! bxa5 4.b5! axb5 5.cxb5 ♔e7 6.b6 ♔d7 7.b7 ♔c7 8.g5! fxg5 9.h5! gxh5 10.f5 a4 11.f6 a3 12.f7 a2 13.b8=♛+! ♔xb8 14.f8=♛++-

Sometimes a pawn breakthrough is an elementary tactical tool which is immediately decisive. But this is not a fixed rule; sometimes a breakthrough results in sharp positions that require deep and precise calculation.

Pillsbury – Gunsberg
Hastings 1895



I5-27

W?

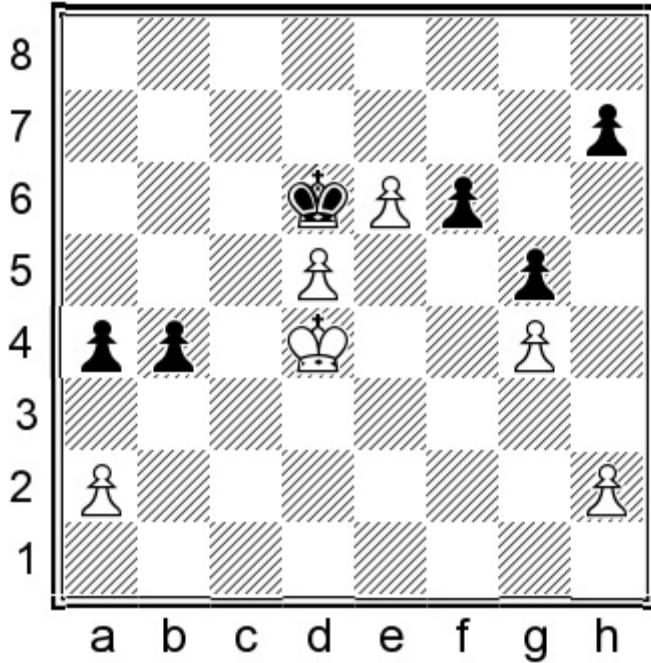
1.f5! (this is not a breakthrough, but an undermining of Black's central pawns) **1...g5!**

Forced, in view of the murderous threat **2.Qf4**. A very promising breakthrough can be found without much effort now, but to calculate it accurately is much harder work. The main line is more than 20 moves long! An additional question, for those who would like to try finding the solution independently: does White's combination work, if the h2-pawn is moved to h3?

2.Qb4!! a5 3.c6! Qd6! 4.fxe6! Qxc6

Of course, not **4...axb4?** **5.e7 Qxe7 6.c7+–**

5.Qxc6 Qxc6 6.e4! dxe4 7.d5+ Qd6 8.Qe3 b4 9.Qxe4 a4 10.Qd4



15-28
B

10... $\hat{\Delta}e7!$

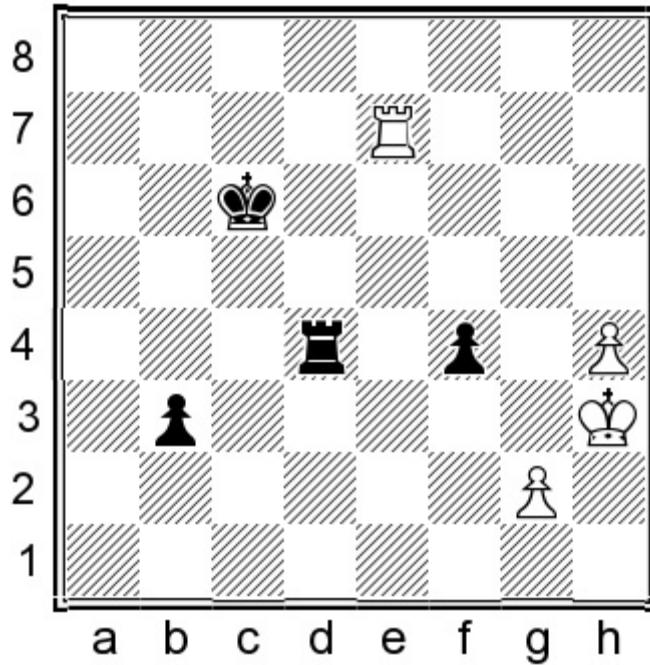
The best defense: Black prepares his own breakthrough on the kingside. The continuation in the actual game was much weaker: 10...h5?? 11.gxh5 a3 12. $\hat{\Delta}c4$ f5 13.h6 f4 14.h7 and Black resigned.

11. $\hat{\Delta}c4$ b3 12.axb3 a3 13. $\hat{\Delta}c3$ f5! 14.gxf5 h5 15.b4 a2 16. $\hat{\Delta}b2$ g4 17.b5 h4 18.b6 g3 19.hxg3 hxg3 20.d6+! $\hat{\Delta}xd6$ 21.b7 $\hat{\Delta}c7$ 22.e7 g2 23.b8=+=! $\hat{\Delta}xb8$ 24.e8=+=-

If the pawn had stood on h3, Black would have created the passed pawn a move earlier; hence White would have lost the game rather than won it.

Tragicomедies

Morozevich – van Wely
Tilburg 1993



15-29

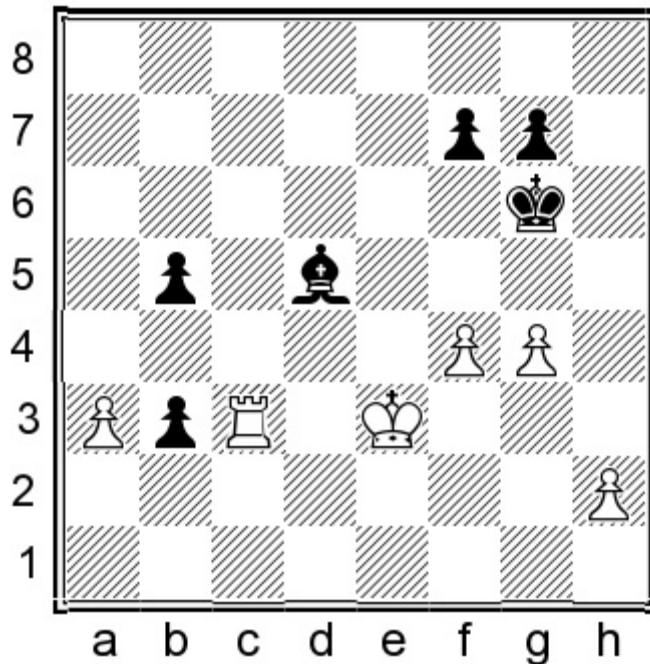
B?

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}d3+$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}e3!$, the b-pawn would have inevitably promoted, which White's rook could not have prevented.

The actual continuation was 1...b2? 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}b4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ Draw.

Gelfand – Lautier

Belgrade 1997



15-30

W

White could have won easily after 1.♔d2

or 1.♕c1.

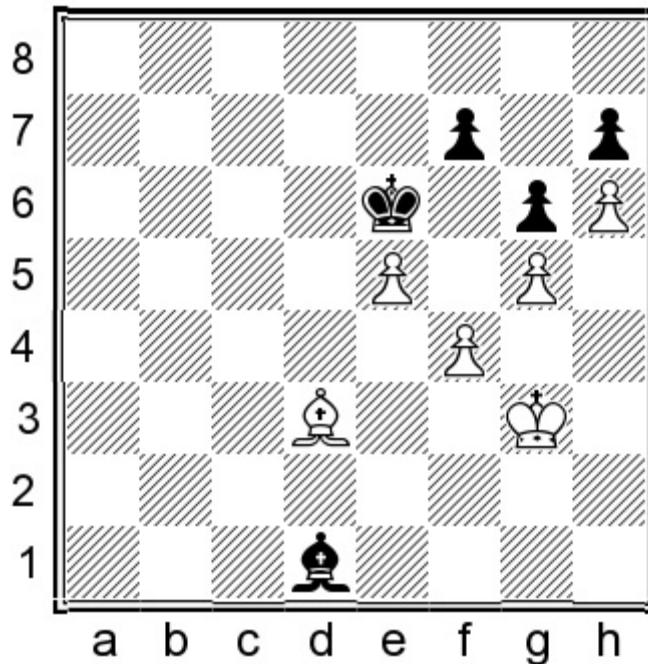
1.♗c5??

An extremely grave error. White is on the losing side now: 1...b4!! 2.♗xd5 (2.axb4 b2; 2.♔d2 bxa3 3.♔c1 b2+) 2...bxa3 3.♔d2 a2–+

1...♗c4?? 2.♔d2 Black resigned.

Timoshchenko – Stephenson

Hastings 1966

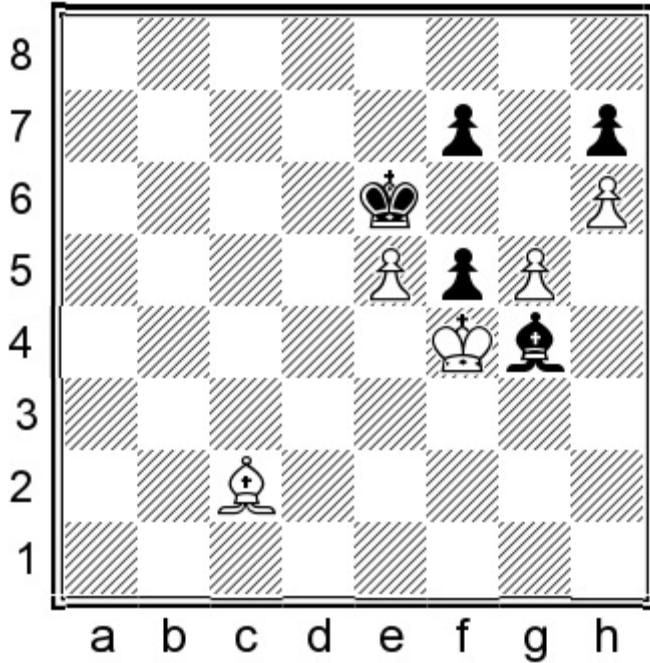


15-31

W?

1.f5+! ♖xf5 (1...♗xe5 2.fxg6 fxg6 3.♗xg6+–) 2.♗f4 ♗g4 3.♗c2??

Timoshchenko planned a bishop sacrifice on f7 followed by a breakthrough by one of his pawns to the promotion square. He saw that the immediate 3.♗c4+ ♗e7 4.♗xf7? ♗xf7 5.e6+ fails to 5...♔g8! 6.g6 ♗h5!=, and decided to play for a zugzwang, making a waiting move. His idea worked successfully in the actual game:



15-32

B?

3... $\mathbb{Q}h3?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 6.e6+ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7.e7! $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 8.g6+) 7.g6 (7.e7+) 7...hxg6 8.e7+ Black resigned.

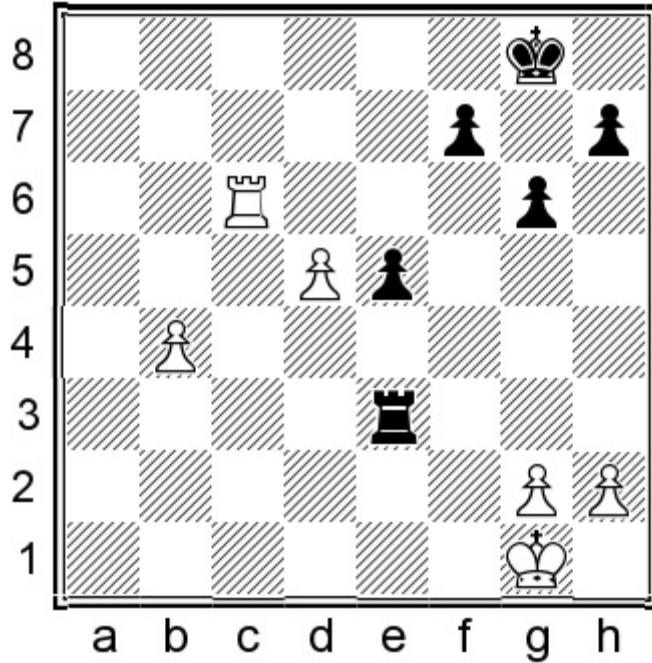
However Black could have saved the game by means of 3... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ The pawn ending is then drawn: 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7.g6 (the only possible attempt) 7...fxg6 8.e6 g5! 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 12.e7+ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7=$. 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ is met with 4... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ (or 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6!$) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}b1=$

Another drawing continuation is 4.g6 fxg6 5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ f4 8.e6 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ f3 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ f2 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ f1= \mathbb{W} + 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{Q}g8=$) 7... $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ (rather than 7... $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ or 8... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 10.e6 f4 11.e7+-) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ f4 9. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ f3 11. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ f2 12. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8=$

This last line offers a clue to the correct solution: the breakthrough g5-g6 should be played immediately, when the black king is farther from the f8-square.

3.g6!! (or 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4.g6!!) 3...fxg6 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8$. Black is helpless, for example: 5... $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 9.e6+) 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7+!$) 12. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 13.e6 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 16.e7 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ followed with $\mathbb{Q}e5-d6-c7-d8$, $\mathbb{Q}f5-d7$ (Dvoretsky).

Exercises



15-33

15/6

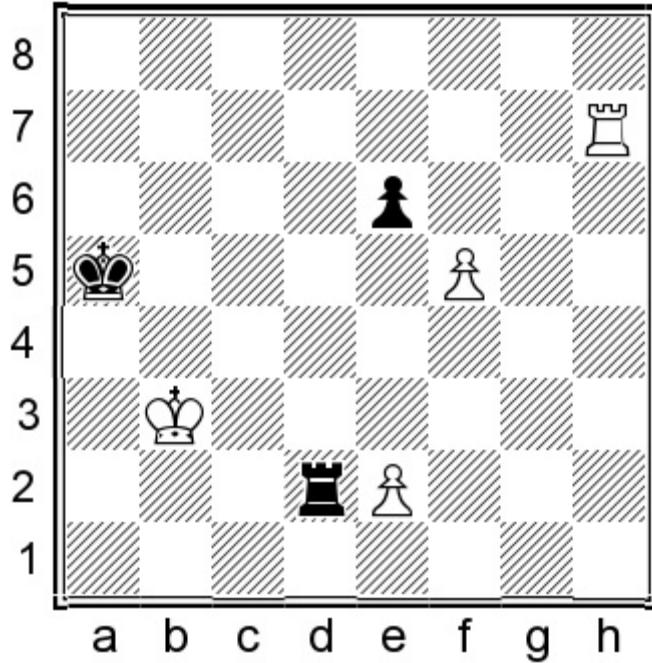
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/6. Yudasin-Kramnik, Wijk aan Zee cm(3) 1994

A winning line was 1. $\mathbb{Q}c8+$! $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. b5 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ (cutting the king off), and one of the pawns promotes: 3... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 4. d6, or 3... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. b6.

The zwischenschach is necessary: after the immediate 1. b5? Black holds by means of 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ Yudasin's 1. d6? was also weak: 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 2. b5 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. d7+ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ led to a draw.



15-34

15/7

W?

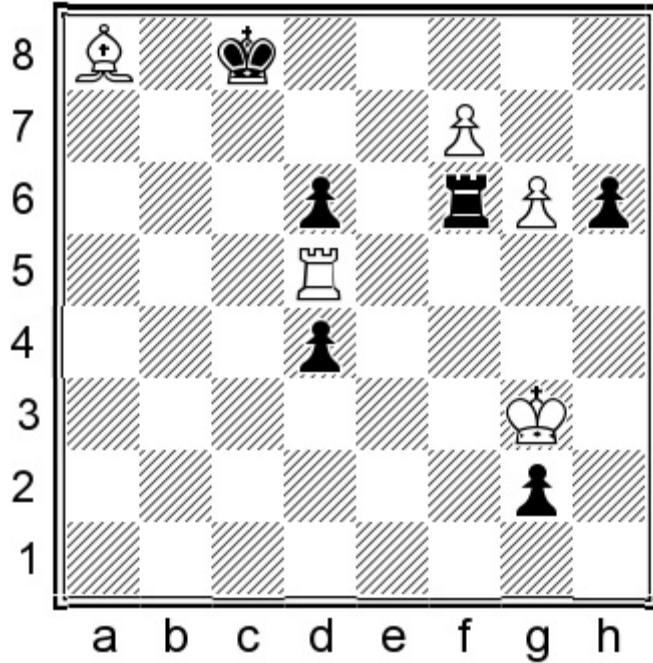
Show/Hide Solution

15/7. H.Rinck 1906

1.f6 ♜xe2

Both 1... ♔b5 2. ♜h8 ♜d7 3. ♜e8 and 1... ♜d4 2. ♜e7 ♜e4 3. ♜e8 are hopeless. But now 2. ♜h8? ♜f2 3. ♜f8 ♔b6 4.f7 ♔b7 5. ♔c4 ♜f5= does nothing. An interference decides in White's favor.

2. ♜h5+! ♔b6 3. ♜f5!+-



15-35

15/8

W?

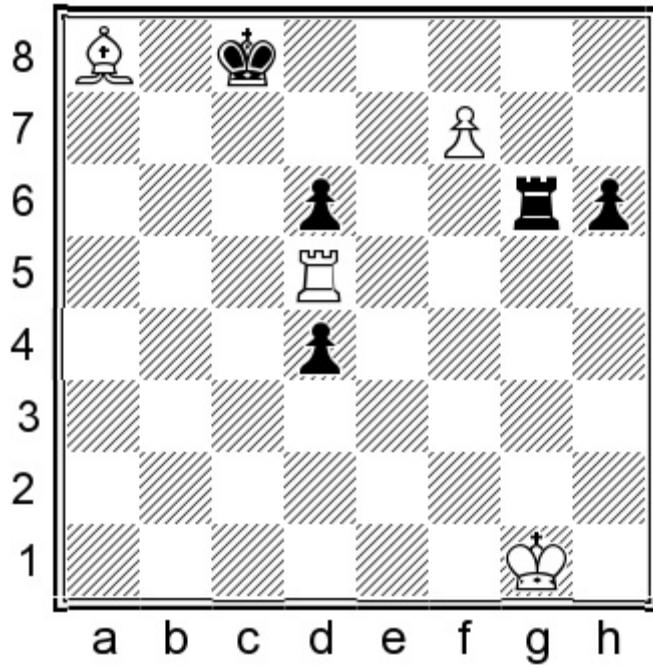
Show/Hide Solution

15/8. A.Maksimovskikh 1977

Simple ideas do not work: 1. $\mathbb{Q}xg2?$ $\mathbb{B}xg6+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xd6$ $\mathbb{B}xf7=$,

or 1. $f8=\mathbb{W}+?$ $\mathbb{B}xf8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{B}f6=$

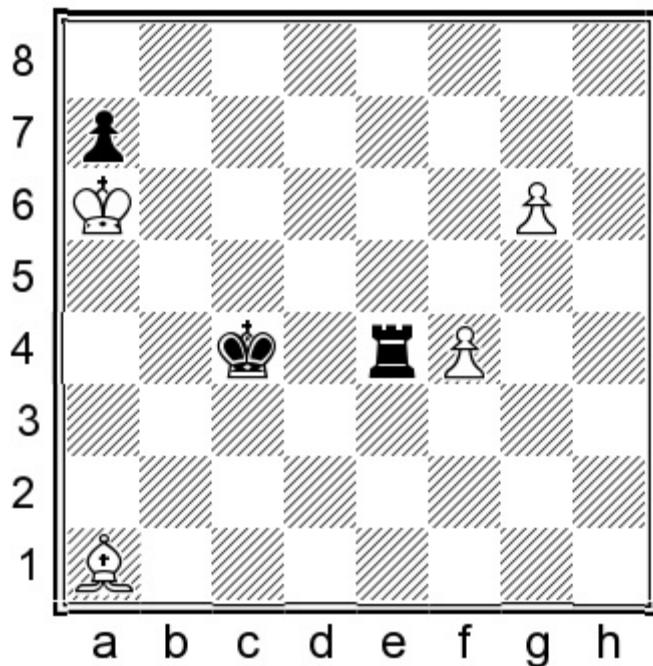
1. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ $g1=\mathbb{W}+!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ $\mathbb{B}xg6+$



16-108
W?

3. $\mathbb{B}g5!! \mathbb{B}xg5+$ (3... $\mathbb{B}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{B}g8+$) 4. $\mathbb{B}g2!$ $\mathbb{B}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{B}h3$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{B}xf5$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}g6!+-$

Rather than 7. $\mathbb{B}e6?$ $h5=.$ The bishop protects its own pawn and holds the h6-pawn along the same h5-e8 diagonal, while the king will take care of Black's central pawns.



15-36

15/9

W?

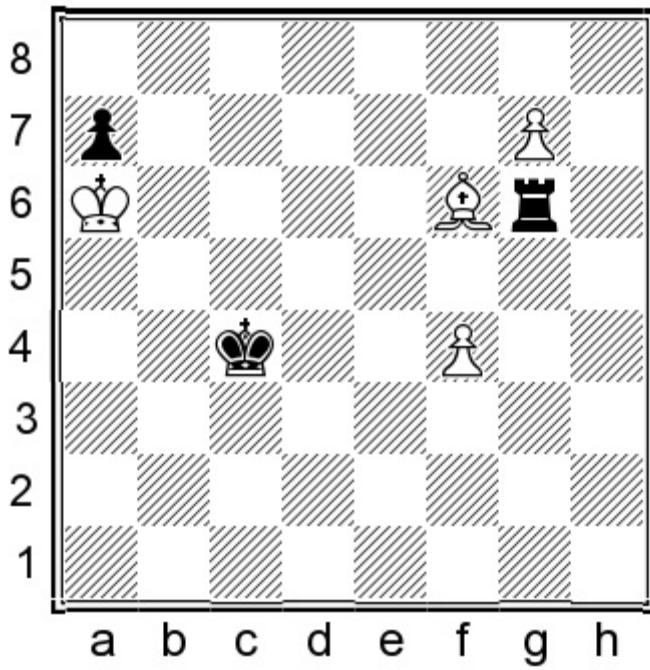
Play

Show/Hide Solution

15/9. H. Mattison, 1927**1.♔e5!**

Both 1.f5? ♔d5 2.f6 ♔e6 Δ 3...♝f4=

and 1.g7? ♜e8 2.f5 ♔d5 3.♔xa7 ♔d6 4.♔f6 ♔d7 Δ ...♝g8, ...♔e8-f7= are incorrect.

1.♔e5! ♜e2 2.g7 ♜g2 3.♔f6 (4.♔g5 is threatened) 3...♝g6**16-109**

W?

4.♔b7!!

He cannot lose time capturing the pawn: 4.♔xa7? ♔d5 5.f5 ♜g2 6.♔b8 ♔d6! 7.♔c8 ♜a2! 8.♔b7 ♜g2=. 4.♔a5? ♔d5 5.f5 ♜g2 6.♔a6 ♔d6= is also useless.

4...♔d5 5.f5 ♜g2 6.♔c8!

The king should leave the seventh rank. White is not afraid of 6...♔d6 7.♔d8+- . An advance of the a-pawn does not bother him either: 6...a5 7.♔d8 a4 8.♔e7 a3 (8...♔e4 9.♔e6) 9.♔a1 a2 10.f6+-

6...♔e4 7.♔g5! ♜xg5 8.f6+-

If the king is on c7, the bishop sacrifice does not work: 8... $\mathbb{B}f5$ 9.f7 $\mathbb{B}xg7+$

Zugzwang

Zugzwang is a situation in which each possible move worsens one's position.

Zugzwang is one of the most important endgame tools. It is applicable everywhere: in elementary endgames such as “king and pawn versus king” or “king and rook versus king” (in the latter case, the checkmating process cannot be successful without a zugzwang technique), as well as in the most complicated situations which require deep and precise calculation, where the pros and cons of every move may not be quite evident.

Zugzwang is very often reciprocal; both sides try to come to a certain position with the opponent on move. *Squares of the reciprocal zugzwang are called “corresponding squares.”*

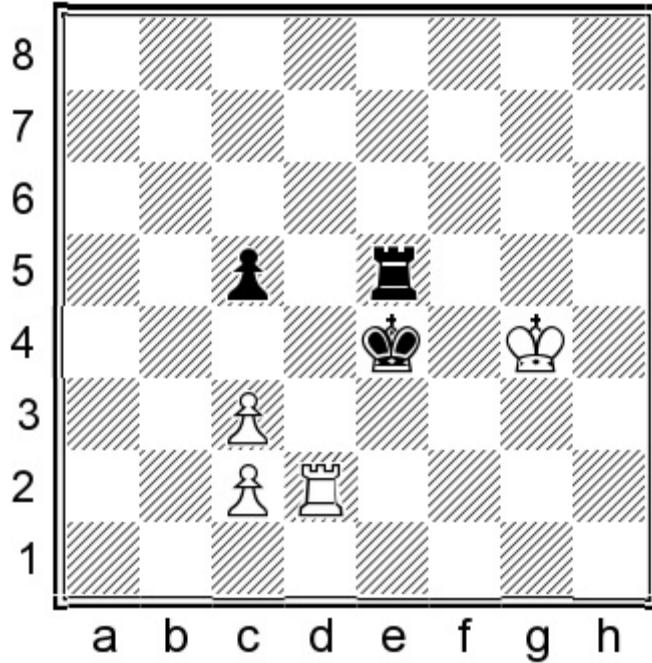
The simplest cases of corresponding squares are: *opposition* (a correspondence of kings on a file, or rank, or sometimes a diagonal; *mined squares* (a pair of corresponding squares); *triangle* – a maneuver with the purpose ceding the move to the opponent.

In creating and handling zugzwang situations, *spare tempi* can be vitally important. To this end, it is often useful to keep pawns on their initial positions, in order to have a choice between moving one or two squares when a critical situation arises (*the “Steinitz Rule”*).

All this is undoubtedly well-known to you from the previous chapters. Here we will only take some practical exercise with these ideas.

Zugzwang, whether it has already occurred or can occur soon, is not always evident. Therefore, when seeking a way to your objective, you should *remember to ask yourself: how would your opponent play if he were on move?* This question should be addressed not only to the actual position, but also to positions that arise in calculated lines.

A.Seleznev 1923



15-37

W?

Let us first try the rook exchange: 1. $\mathbb{Q}e2+?$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $c4+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ – a draw, because Black maintains the opposition.

The consequences of 1. $c4?$ are harder to calculate. Black plays 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ is threatened) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$. So how do we strengthen the position? White can get the d5-square for his king by means of 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$, but after 7... $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$, his last pawn is lost.

But what if Black is on move? He will naturally play 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3$, but White can easily prevent it by moving his rook away. All Black's other moves will only worsen his position.

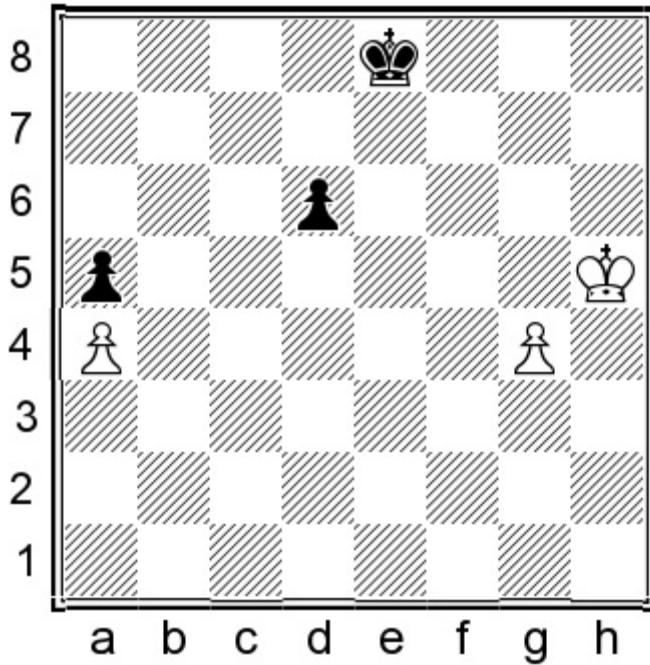
1. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ O 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$

He cannot play 1... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ while after 1... $c4$, White wins by means of 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ (flank opposition) 4... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$ (outflanking).

2. $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $c4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $c3O+-$

Finally, the decisive factor was White's spare tempo that had arisen during the earlier fight.

R. Réti 1923



15-38

W?

One should discover the mined squares here: these are g6 and e7. Actually, on 1.♔g6? ♔e7! O 2.♔f5 ♔f7 O, White would win if the d6-pawn did not exist, or if it stood on d5. In the chapter on pawn endings, we learned to evaluate these situations instantaneously: the queenside pawns are in the “normal” position while the kingside gives White an extra tempo because his king stands in front of the pawn. But with the pawn on d6 it is a draw because White must spend a tempo capturing it: 3.♕e4 ♔g6 4.♔d5 ♔g5 5.♔xd6 ♔xg4 6.♔c6 ♔f5 7.♔b6 ♔e6 8.♔xa5 ♔d7 9.♔b6 ♔c8=. Or 2.g5 d5 3.♔h7 (3.♔f5 ♔f7= leads to the “normal” position – the white king stands aside the pawn) 3...d4 4.g6 d3 5.g7 d2 6.g8=WWW d1=WWW=.

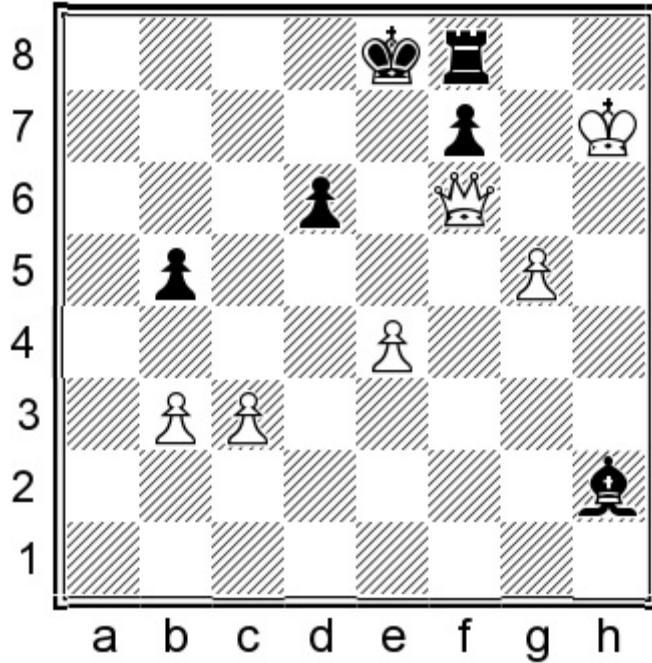
1.♔h6? does not win either: 1...♔f7 2.♔h7 ♔f6 3.♔h6 ♔f7 (“pendulum”) 4.g5 (4.♔g5 ♔g7 5.♔f5 ♔f7=) 4...♔g8 5.♔g6 d5 6.♔f5 ♔g7= (the “normal” position again).

1.♔g5! ♔f7 (1...d5 2.♔f5+-) 2.♔f5 O 2...♔e7 3.♔g6!

The decisive zugzwang! If 3...♔e6, then 4.g5 d5 5.♔h7 d4 6.g6+-.

3...d5 4.♔f5 ♔f7 (4...♔d6 5.g5+-) 5.♔e5+-

R. Réti 1928



15-39

W?

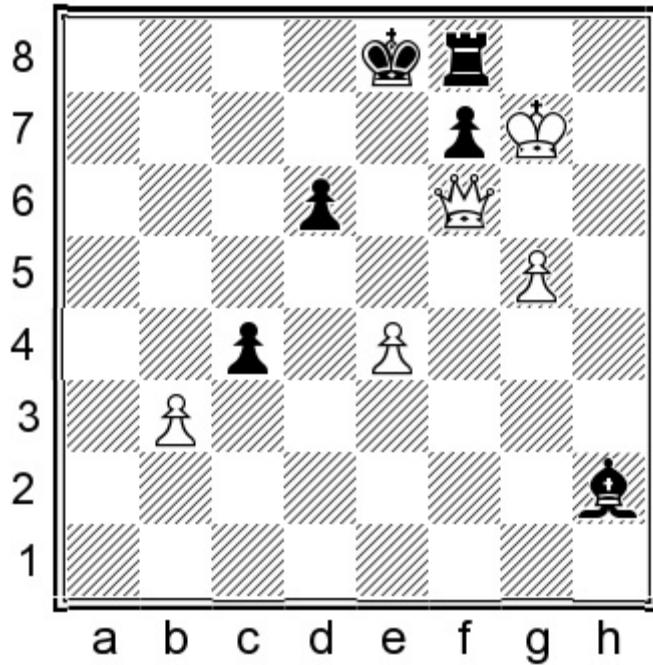
White has a material advantage but his king is badly placed. 1.g6? is wrong in view of 1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$.

After 1. $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$, White is in zugzwang: 2.c4? $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ 3.gxf6 b4O-+; if 2.b4, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}h2(g3)$. The same position would be reached, but with Black on move, so White adopts a triangulating maneuver with his king.

1. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ ($\mathbb{Q}h5-g4$ is threatened) 1... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$

After 2... $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ 3.gxf6, Black is in zugzwang; he loses in spite of his extra rook.

3.c4 bxc4 (3...b4 4.c5+-)



15-40

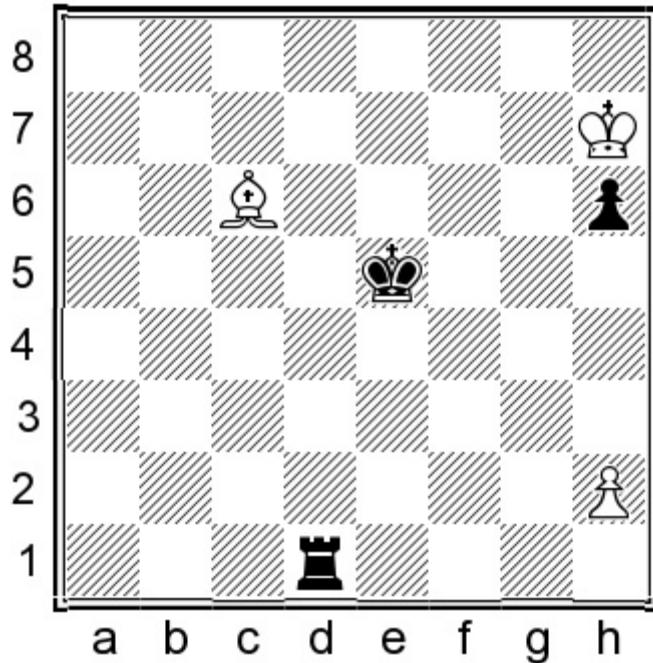
W?

4.e5!!

The decisive argument in the fight for the turn to move in the main zugzwang position. 4.bxc4? ♖e5 O–+ is bad.

4... ♖xe5 5.bxc4 O 5... ♖xf6+ (5... ♖h2 6.c5 ♖e5 7.cxd6) 6.gxf6 O 6... ♖h8 7.♖xh8 ♖d7 (the mined squares are g7 and e6) 8.♔g8! ♖e6 9.♔g7+–

G.Kasparian 1961



15-41

W?

1. Kg8!

The h6-pawn cannot be captured now: 1...Qxh6?? Kd6+.

1.Kf3? also loses: 1...Qd3! (rather than 1...Qd6? 2.h4! Qf4 3.Kh5 Qg3 4.Kg6= or 2...Qf5 3.Qe2!=) 2.Qg4 (otherwise 2...Qh3) 2...Qf4.

1. Kg8! Qd8

1...Qd6 2.Qg6 Qf6 3.Qxh6 Qd4 4.Qh5= is not dangerous for White.

2.Qg6! Qf6 3.Qxh6

If 3.h4?, Black wins by means of either 3...Qd4 4.h5 Qg5 or 3...Qh8+ 4.Qxh8 Qxg6 5.Qg8 h5.

3...Qh8+ 4.Qh7 Qf7 5.h3!

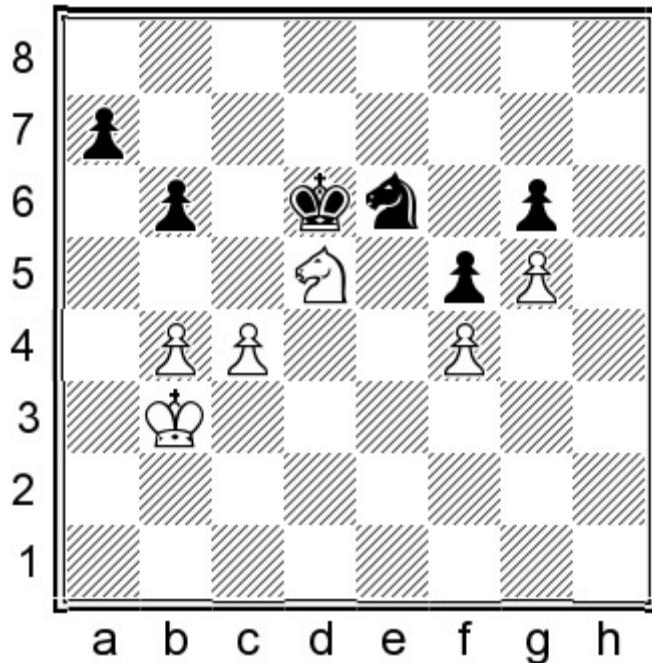
“The Steinitz rule” saves White: he can choose between a single or a double pawn move. After 5.h4? Qf6 6.h5 Qf7, he would have been in zugzwang, while now the fight ends in stalemate.

5...Qf6 6.h4 Qf7 7.h5○ 7...Qf6 stalemate.

Tragicomедies

Petrosian – Schmid

Bamberg 1968

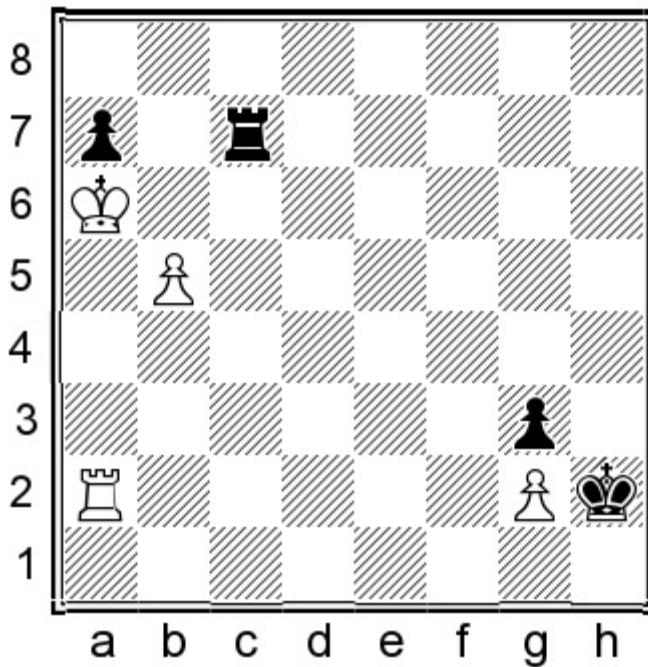


15-42

B?

Black could win easily by means of zugzwang: 1...b5! 2.♔c3 (2.♕e3 ♕xf4+; 2.♕c3 ♕d4+ 3.♔a3 bxc4+) 2...bxc4 3.♔xc4 a6! Instead of this, Schmid accepted the draw proposal of the world champion.

Zhuravlev – Vasiukov
USSR ch tt, Riga 1968



15-43
B?

1...♔g1?

Black could win by means of 1...♕f7! (zugzwang) 2.♔a5 (2.♕b2 ♕f2 3.♕b1 ♕a2+ 4.♔b7 ♔xg2+) 2...♕f2 3.♕a4 ♔xg2 4.♔a6 ♕f7+–

1...♔g1? 2.♕b2?

White does not exploit his opponent's error. He had to leave the a-file with his king: 2.♔a5! ♕f7 (2...♕c4 3.♔a6) 3.♔b4 with a draw, because now ♕f2 can be always met with ♕xa7.

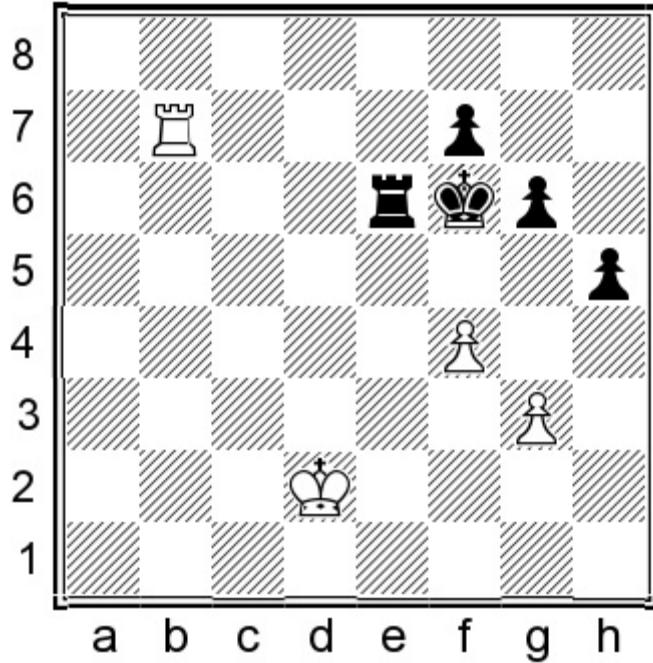
2...♕f7! 3.♕c2 ♔h2 (3...♕f2? 4.♕c1+) 4.♕a2 ♕f5!○

When the black rook is on f5 or f7, all White's moves can only worsen his position.

5.♕a5 ♔xg2 6.♕xa7 ♔h3!

White resigned in view of 7.♔a6 g2 8.♕a1 ♕f1+–

Šahovic – Liberzon
Lone Pine 1979



15-44

W?

White is in a very dangerous situation. His rook must stand on the seventh or fifth rank to prevent Black's ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$, and his king cannot go to d3 in view of Black's maneuver $\mathbb{R}e1-g1$. Meanwhile Black plans ... $\mathbb{R}e4$ and ... $h5-h4$.

The key to this position is reciprocal zugzwang that arises when the black rook stands on e4 and the white rook on a5. The reason can be seen from the following line: 1. $\mathbb{R}b5!$ $\mathbb{R}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c5$ (rather than 2. $\mathbb{R}a5?$) 2... $\mathbb{R}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{R}a5!$ $h4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{R}b4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ (5. $gxh4?$ loses to 5... $\mathbb{R}xf4$ 6. $h5$ $g5$) 5... $\mathbb{R}b1$ 6. $gxh4$ $\mathbb{R}f1$ 7. $h5$ $\mathbb{R}xf4$ 8. $hxg6$ $fxg6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{R}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{R}e5$ 11. $\mathbb{R}f1+$ (or 11. $\mathbb{R}g1$) with a draw. If the black rook could occupy the a4-square, White could not have saved this ending.

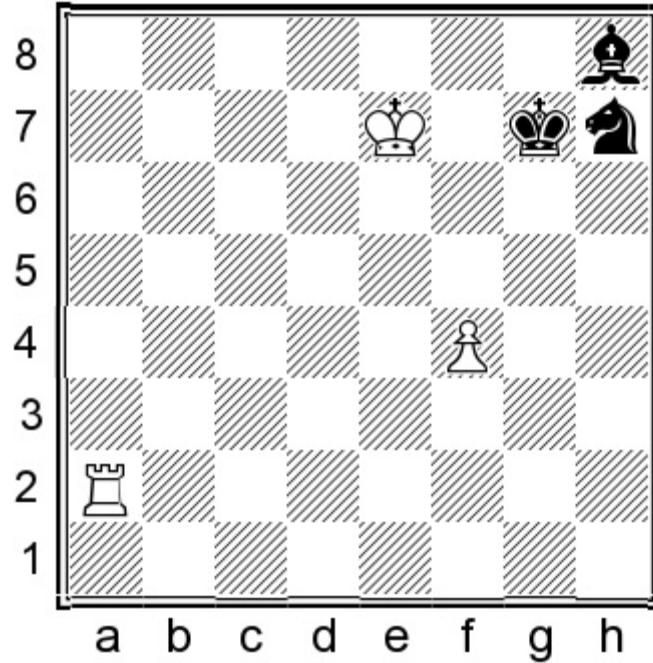
The actual remainder of the game was:

1. $\mathbb{R}a7?$ $\mathbb{R}e4?$

Neither opponent sees the correspondence between the a5- and e4-squares. After 1... $\mathbb{R}e7!$ 2. $\mathbb{R}a5$ $\mathbb{R}e4!$, White is in zugzwang: 3. $\mathbb{R}b5$ $h4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{R}a4$ 5. $gxh4$ $\mathbb{R}xf4$ 6. $h5$ $g5-$, or 3. $\mathbb{R}a7$ $h4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{R}b4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{R}b1$ 6. $gxh4$ $\mathbb{R}f1$ 7. $\mathbb{R}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5-$

2. $\mathbb{R}a5=$ $h4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{R}b4$ 4. $gxh4??$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{R}b1$ 5. $gxh4=$) 4... $\mathbb{R}xf4-$ + 5. $h5$ $g5$ 6. $\mathbb{R}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $f6$ White resigned.

Exercises



15-45

15/10

W?

Show/Hide Solution

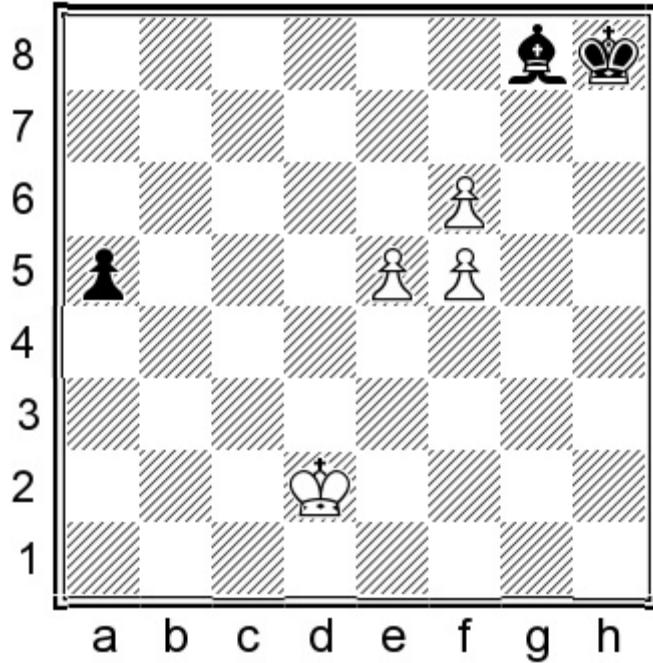
15/10. G.Zakhodiakin 1930

1. $\mathbb{E}g2+?$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 3. $\mathbb{E}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ leads to a draw.

1. $\mathbb{E}a6!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2. $f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{E}g6\#$) 3. $\mathbb{E}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $f6+-$

2. $\mathbb{E}a8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xh8!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#+-$



15-46

15/11

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/11. M. Liburkin, 1947

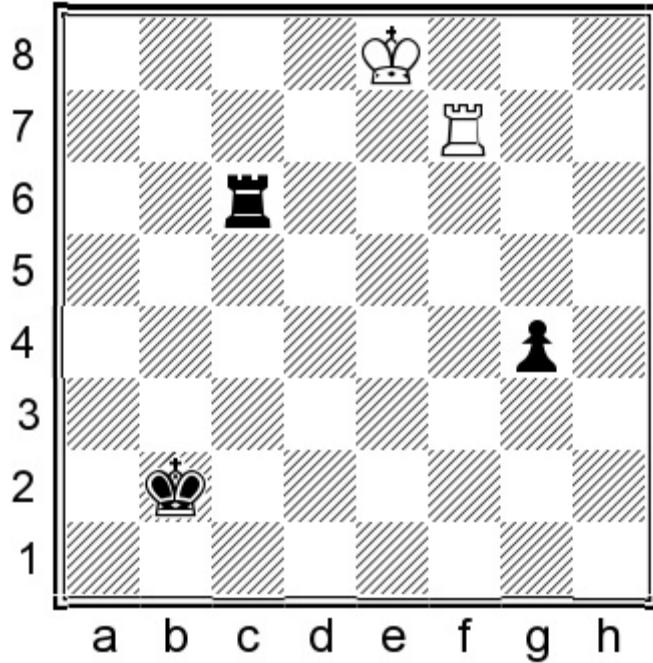
1.e6 a4 2.♗d1!

After 2.♗c3? a3, White is in zugzwang: 3.♗b3 (3.♗c2 ♜h7) 3...♜h7 4.e7 ♜g8+ 5.♗xa3 ♜f7=. The same zugzwang results from 2.♗c1? a3 (3.♗b1 ♜h7=).

2...a3 3.♗c1!○ 3...♜h7 4.♗b1

Only now, when the black king has deprived its own bishop of the h7-square, may White move his king closer to the pawn. Equally good is 4.♗c2 ♜h6 5.♗c3○+-

4...♜h6 5.♗a1!○ 5...a2 6.♗b2!○ 6...♜h7 7.♗xa2+-



15-47
15/12
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/12. N.Grigoriev 1937

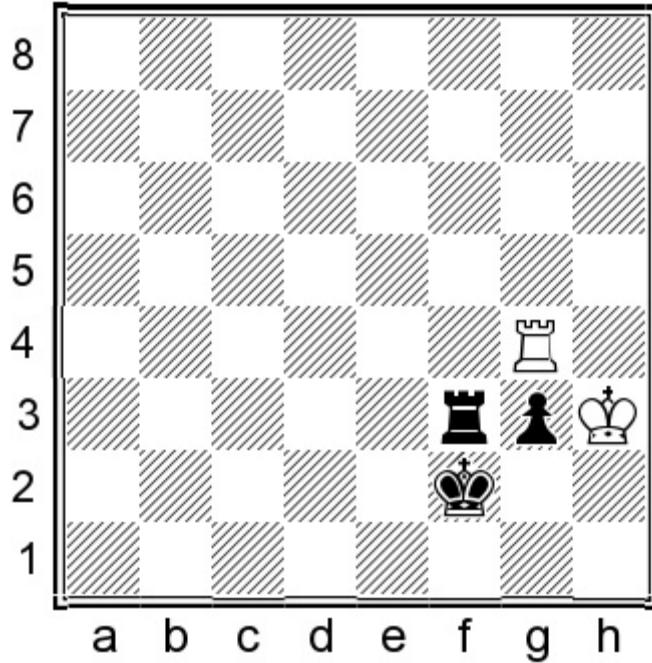
1.♕f5!!

A deep and a difficult introduction; White foresees the reciprocal zugzwang position that soon arises.

1...g3

1...♗c3 2.♗g5 ♗c4 3.♗f7 ♗d3 4.♗g6 ♗e3 5.♗h5 ♗f3 6.♗h4 ♗f4 7.♗a5 g3+ 8.♗h3=

2.♗g5 ♗c3 3.♗f7 ♗c2 4.♗g6 ♗d2 5.♗h5 ♗e2 6.♗h4 ♗f2 7.♗h3 ♗f3 (the threat is 8...♗f8–+)
8.♗g4!



16-110
B

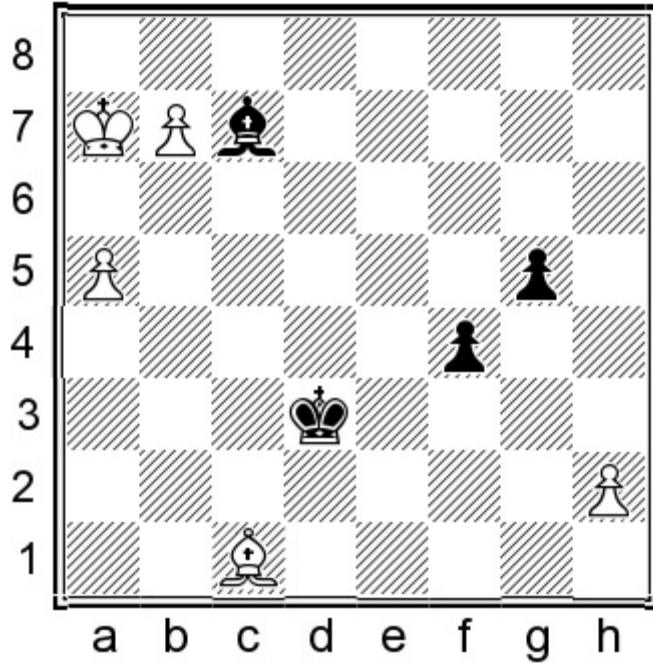
The aforementioned zugzwang position! If White were on move he would be lost.

8...♝f8 (8...♝a3 9.♝g8 ♜f3 10.♝g4!) **9.♝f4+!** ♜xf4 stalemate.

After 1.♝f4? g3 2.♝g4 ♜c3 3.♝f7 ♜c2 4.♝g6 ♜d2 5.♝h5 ♜e2 6.♝h4 ♜f2 7.♝h3 ♜f3, it was White who would be in zugzwang: 8.♝g5 ♜f8+ or 8.♝a4 g2+.

Also bad is 1.♝g7? ♜c4, because the king cannot go to either f7 or e7, and will be cut off from the pawn: 2.♝g5 ♜f4!+ or 2.♝d7 ♜e4! 3.♝d6 ♜c3 4.♝d5 ♜d3+.

1.♝f1? loses to 1...g3 2.♝g1 (2.♝f7 ♜c1) 2...♜c3 3.♝f7 ♜c2 4.♝g6 ♜d2 5.♝g5 ♜e2 6.♝h4 ♜f2.



15-48

15/13

W?

Play

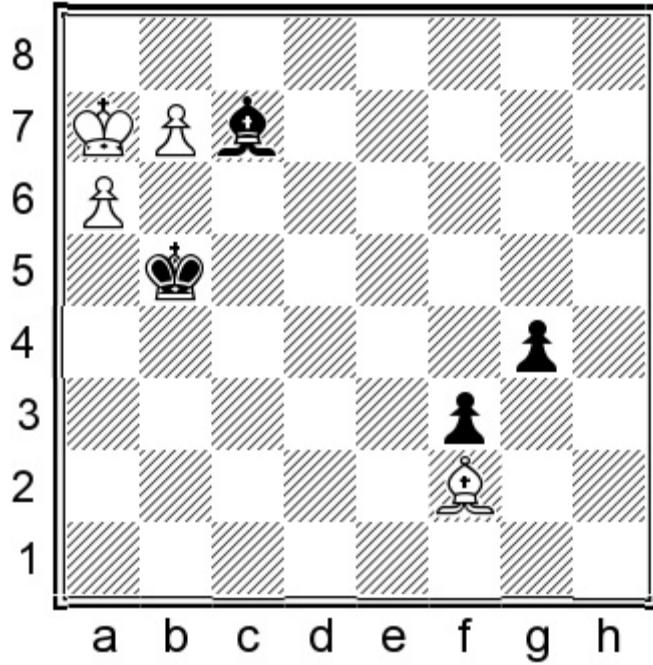
Show/Hide Solution

15/13. O. Duras, 1906

1.♗a3! (2.♗c5 is threatened) 1...♝c4 2.♗e7! f3 3.♗d8! ♝xh2 (3...f2 4.♗xc7 f1=♛ 5.b8=♛+) 4.♗b6

The bishop has successfully stopped the f-pawn, but Black has also succeeded in stopping White's pawns.

4...♝b5 (4...g4 5.a6 ♘b5 leads to a transposition of moves) **5.a6 g4 6.♗f2 ♘c7**

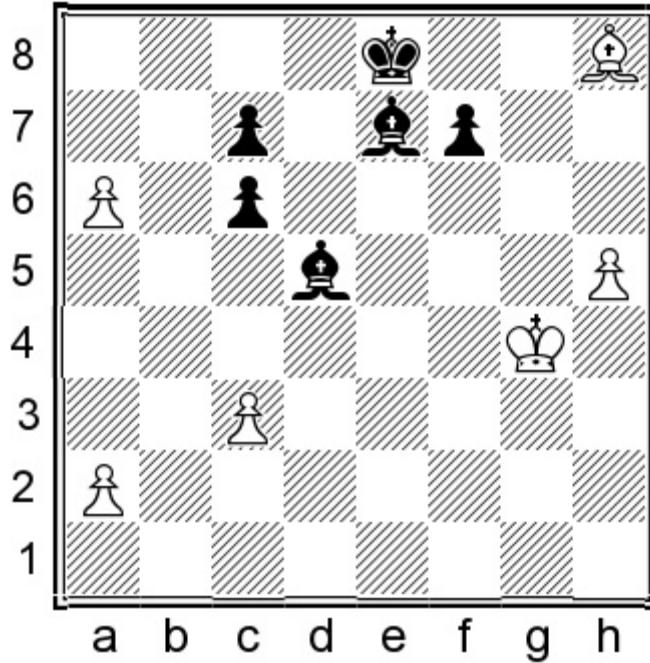


16-111
W?

7.b8=威+! ♜xb8+ 8.♔b7! ♔a5

The black bishop cannot be moved. To put Black in zugzwang, White needs to deprive the black king of the a5-square.

9.♔h4 (or 9.♔g3) 9...♗b5 10.♔e1 Δ 10...g3 11.♕xg3 ♕xg3 (11...♗a5 12.♔h4 ♗b5 13.♔e1〇) 12.a7 f2 13.a8=威 f1=威 14.威a6+ and the black queen is lost.



15-49

15/14

W?

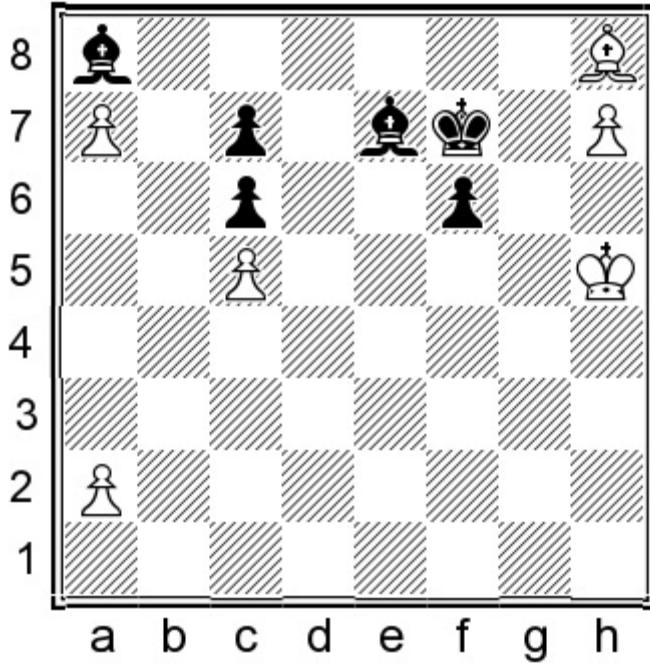
Play

Show/Hide Solution

15/14. N.Riabinin, E.Markov 1993

White should first completely tie down his opponent. Neither 1.a7? c5 nor 1.c4? ♜e6+ is strong enough.

1.h6! f6! 2.h7 ♔f7 3.c4! ♜e6+ 4.♔h5 ♜c8 (4...♜c5? 5.♜xf6+-) 5.a7 ♜b7 6.c5! ♜a8



16-112
W?

White must now decide whether the a-pawn should make a single or a double step forward. Generally, it wants to go to a6 in order to deprive the light-square bishop of moves and to put Black in zugzwang. But deeper insight shows that White should get rid of his a7-pawn in order to free this square. This consideration explains the next move.

7.a3!!

7.a4? leads only to a draw: 7... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8.a5 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 9.a6 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7=$

7... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8.a4 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 9.a5 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 10.a8= \mathbb{W} ! $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 11.a6 \odot 11... $\mathbb{Q}f8\Box$ (11... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ Δ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g7+-$)
12. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d7(d8)$ 17... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$

White should not take the pawn: 18. $\mathbb{Q}xc7?$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7=$

18... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 21.a7 $\odot+-$ (or 21. $\mathbb{Q}a7\odot+-$).

Fortresses

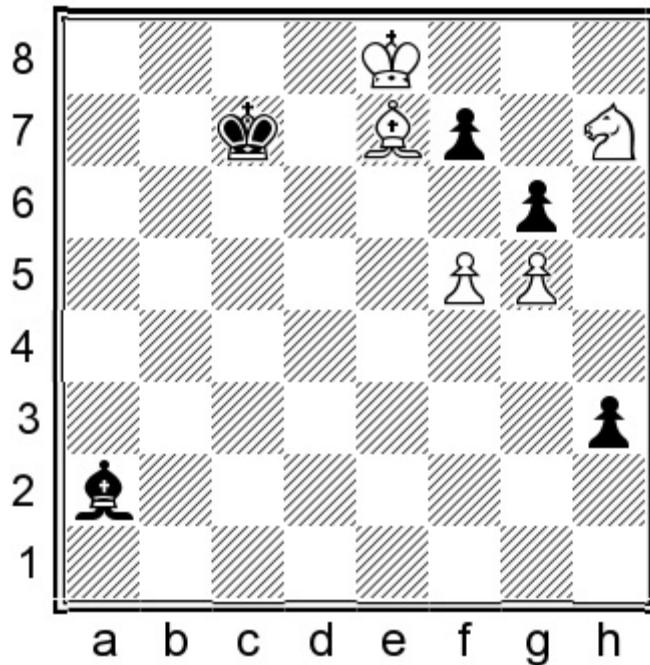
We have discussed the construction of a fortress in several chapters (opposite-color bishops, a rook versus a minor piece, a queen versus a rook, a bishop versus pawns). These fortresses were mainly elementary and known to theory. Here we shall look at the problem more broadly. You will discover new types of fortresses, together with my own simple classification.

A Fortified Camp

We define this as a situation in which a king, with or without the assistance of pieces or pawns, successfully defends a small territory (as a rule, in a corner) and cannot be ousted. Almost all the theoretical fortresses that are already known to you belong in this category.

I add only a single, more complicated example here.

F.Simkhovich 1926



15-50

W?

The h3-pawn will inevitably be promoted. White's only chance for a successful defense consists of building a fortress: f5-f6 and ♜f8-g7. But to build a reliable fortress he needs to place his bishop on h6. Otherwise Black brings his king to f5, takes the knight with his queen and captures the g5-pawn, winning. The question is whether White can perform this task in time.

The natural 1.f6? loses: 1...h2 2.♗f8 h1=♛ 3.♔g7 (3.♔g8 ♔d7 4.♗f8 ♛a8! Δ ...♔e6-f5+) 3...♔c6 4.♗f8 ♛h4 5.♗h7 ♔d5 6.♔a3 ♔e4 7.♔b4 ♔f5 8.♔d2 ♛f2 9.♔c1 ♛e1 10.♔a3 ♛h1, followed by 11...♛xh7+.

1.♗f6! ♔d6 (1...h2? 2.♔e5+) 2.♔e7+ ♔c6

The king has been forced to occupy a square on the h1-a8 diagonal. This is precisely what White wanted. Simkhovich included the moves 2...♔e5 3.♔d8 ♔d6 4.♔e7+ and only now 4...♔c6. But after 2...♔e5? White has a simpler draw: 3.fxg6 fxg6 4.♔d7=

3.f6! h2 4.♗f8! (rather than 4.♗f8? h1=♛ 5.♔g7 ♛h2 6.♗f8 ♛b8! 7.♔g7 ♔d7 etc.) 4...h1=♛ 5.♔h6=

The queen cannot deliver a check from a8, and the white king comes to g7 safely. White has successfully built an impregnable fortress.

A Pawn Barrier

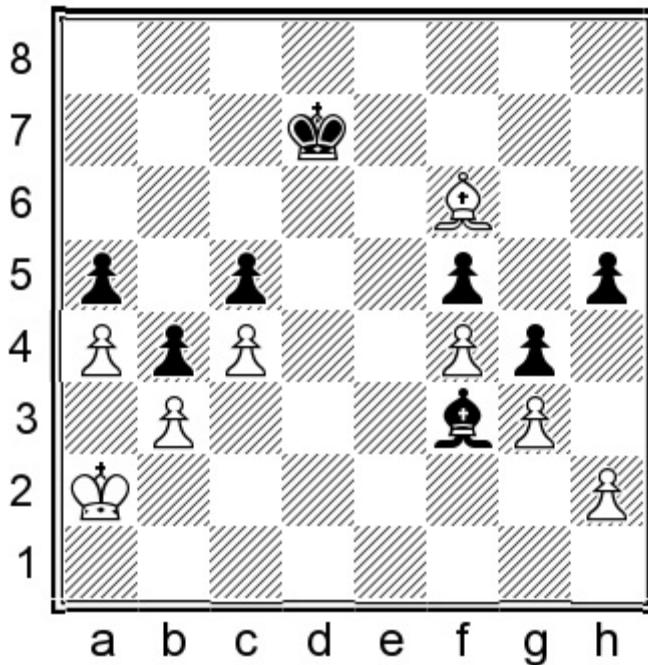
Even a huge material advantage sometimes cannot be exploited when a pawn barrier lies across the chessboard. A king (or, as it may happen in exceptional cases, a king and other pieces) cannot overcome the barrier, and therefore there is no win.

We saw this situation in the exercise 7/15 (in the chapter on bishop versus knight), in the annotation to 4.♔b3! The alternative possibility led to the win of a piece and to ... an obvious draw caused by erecting a pawn barrier that the king could not breach.

The following curious example is taken from a game between two leading chessplayers of their time.

Chigorin – Tarrasch

Vienna 1898



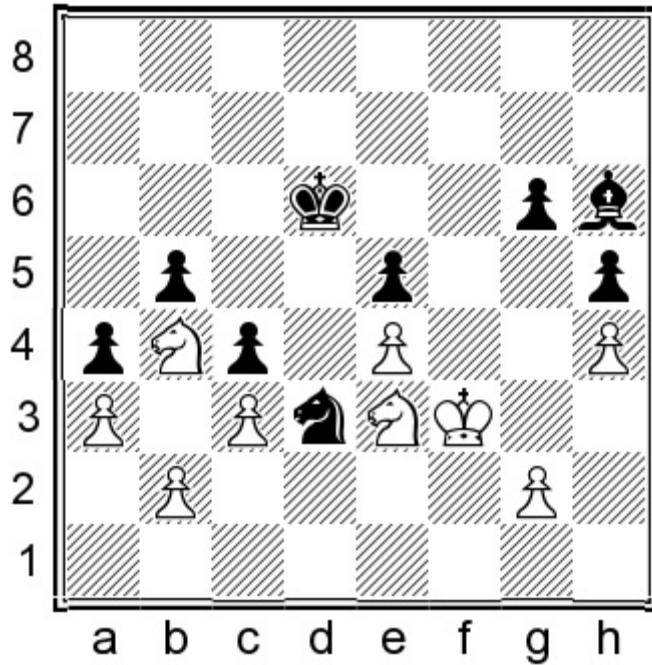
15-51

W

Chigorin offered a draw, and Tarrasch unexpectedly rejected this offer. Then Chigorin took his bishop away from the board and suggested his opponent to try to win with an extra piece. Tarrasch immediately accepted the draw proposal. Actually, his king cannot invade White's position, while his bishop alone cannot accomplish anything.

Keres – Portisch

Moscow 1967



15-52

W?

The b2-pawn is attacked. If there is an exchange on d3, the black king gets an open road into White's camp along the white squares: 1. $\mathbb{Q}xd3?$ cxd3 2. g3 (2. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{Q}c1\mathbb{O}$... $\mathbb{Q}c5-c4-b3-$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b3-$

1. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$

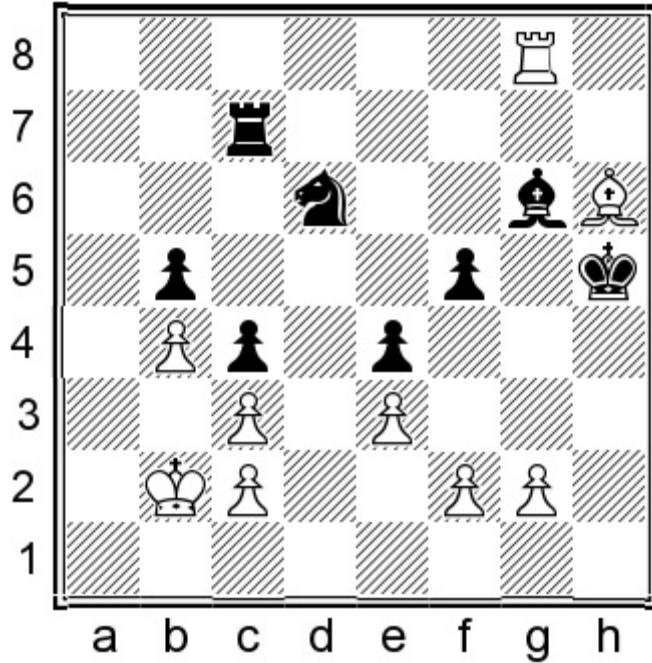
Obviously 2... $\mathbb{Q}xb2?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2=$ yields nothing, but why is Black not able to take the pawn with his knight? This was Keres' idea.

2... $\mathbb{Q}xb2?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$

How does one exploit two extra pawns? Black's bishop is locked, White intends to move his king from c2 to b1 and back. If 5...g5, then 6.g3! If Black brings his king to c5 or a5, White gives a knight check from a6 (resp. c6) and plays back to b4. Finally, if Black exchanges his bishop for the knight, his king will be unable to cross the barrier, so both passed pawns at a4 and c4 will be useless. Portisch recognized this clever trap and chose

2... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g5!; this allowed him to subsequently exploit his positional advantage.

L.Pachman 1953



15-53

W

1. ♜f4 ♜c8! 2. g4+! fxg4 3. ♜xd6!!

After 3. ♜xg6? ♜xg6 4. ♜xd6 g3!, Black wins by invading with his king along the white squares. However, 3. ♜xc8!? ♜xc8 4. ♜g3= is an alternative solution that the author has not observed. Black may win the c3-pawn with his knight, but then ♜d2 and c2-c3 follows, and no further progress can be achieved. The two black pieces, the king and bishop, cannot breach the pawn barrier.

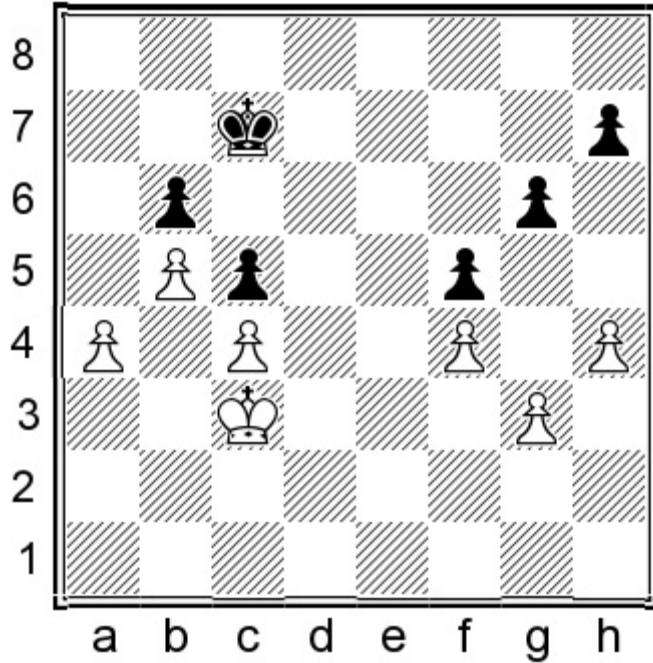
With the rook, it is precisely the same.

3... ♜xg8 4. ♜g3!=

Tragicomедии

Kengis – Yuneev

USSR 1989



15-54

B?

Black had to complete the building of his barrier with 1...h5!= However, Yuneev thought that this could be postponed.

1... $\mathbb{Q}b7??$ 2.h5! gxh5 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ h4

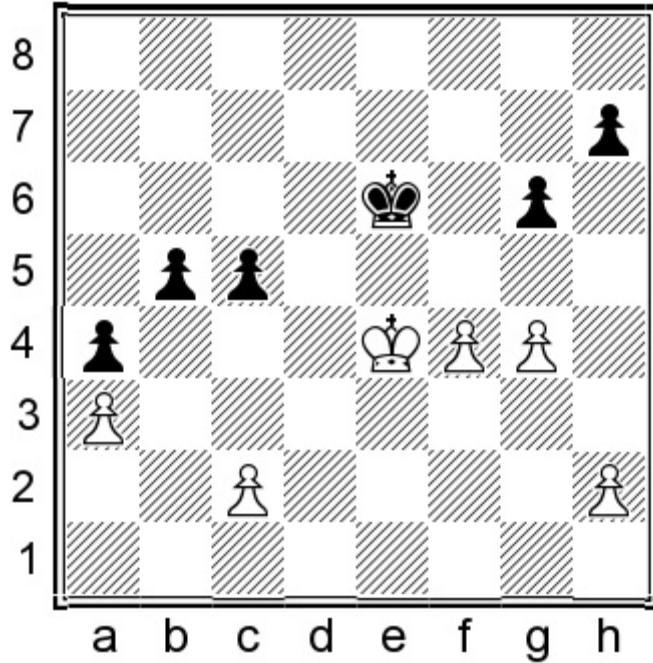
Black obviously counted only on 4.gxh4? h5=.

4. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ hxg3 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ Black resigned.

Diagram 15-55 has been intentionally omitted.

So. Polgar – Smyslov

London 1996



15-56
W

White's king is more active but still White stands worse as her king is forced out of the center in the face of Black's threat to create a passed pawn.

1. ♔d3 b4

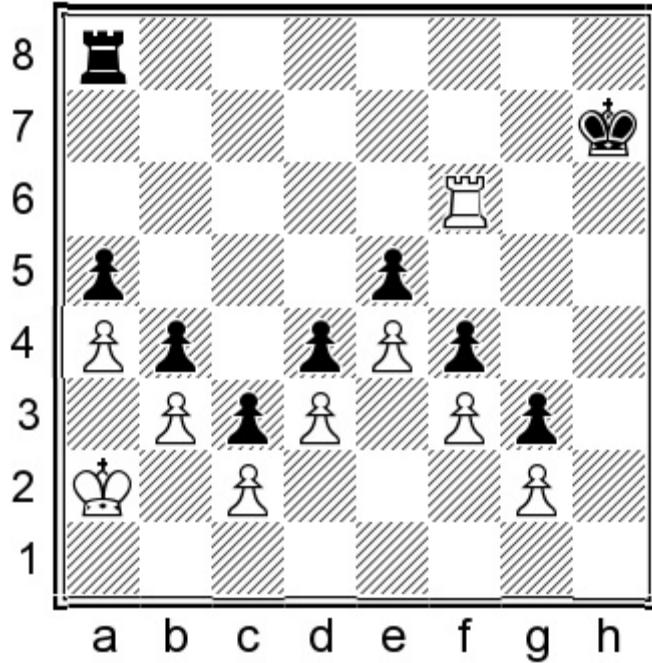
1... ♔d5 2. c4+! (or 2. c3) 2... bxc4+ 3. ♔c3=

2. axb4??

An error. After 2. c4!! b3 (2... bxc3 3. ♔xc3=) 3. ♔c3 h5 4. h3, White could have drawn since the black king could not invade White's camp.

2... a3 3. ♔c3 cxb4+ 4. ♔b3 ♔d5 White resigned.

Exercises



15-57
15/15
W?

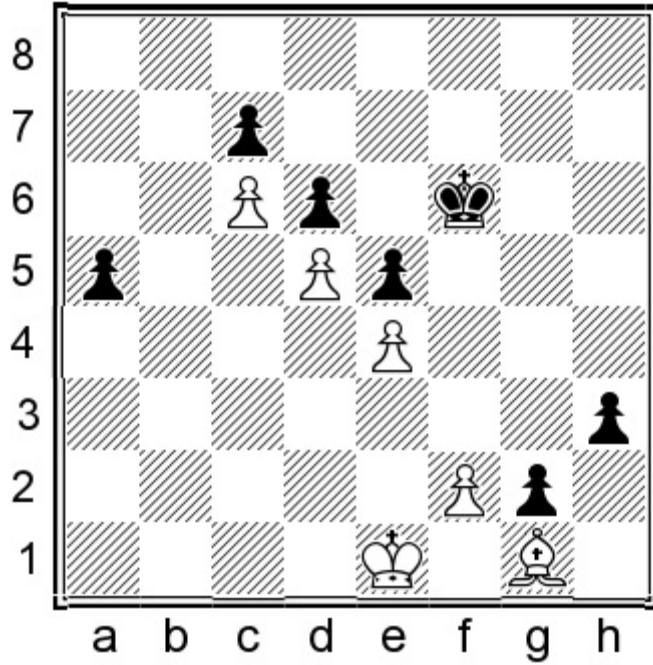
Show/Hide Solution

15/15. J.Hašek 1937

How to defend the position against the threat of the rook invasion along the h-file? 1. $\mathbb{E}e6?$ $\mathbb{E}h8$ 2. $\mathbb{E}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ is hopeless.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{E}h6!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{E}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}h2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{E}h1+$ (6... $\mathbb{E}xg2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $g2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g1=$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$, and the rook cannot remain on the first rank in view of stalemate.

If Black plays 1... $\mathbb{E}h8$, then 2. $\mathbb{E}f8!!$ $\mathbb{E}xf8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ leads to the same drawn position.



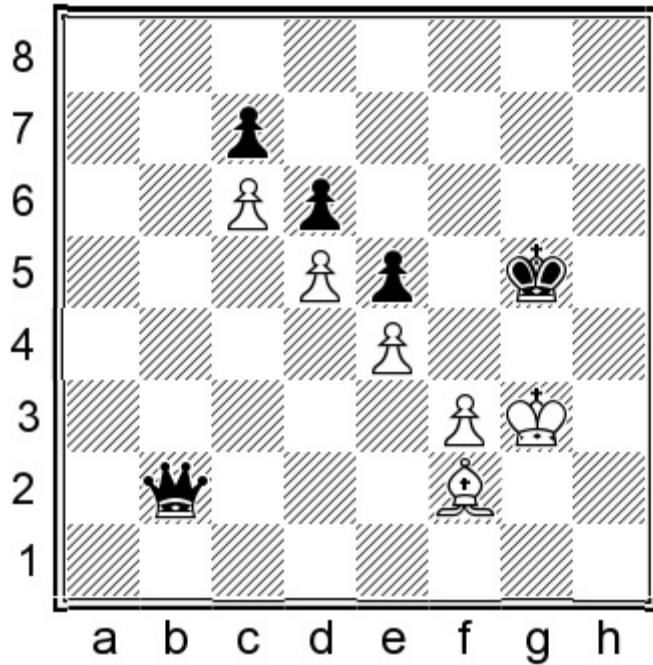
15-58
15/16
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/16. V.Chekhover 1948

1. $\mathbb{Q}h2?$ loses to 1...a4 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ a3 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. f3 (4. f4+ exf4 5. e5 a2 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ f3 7. exd6 f2+) 4...a2 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ g1= \mathbb{Q} 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ (8. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ dxe5 9. d6 h2+) 8... $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$ (rather than 8... $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xe5=)$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$. The solution is quite unexpected: White should build a fortified camp with a bishop against a queen!

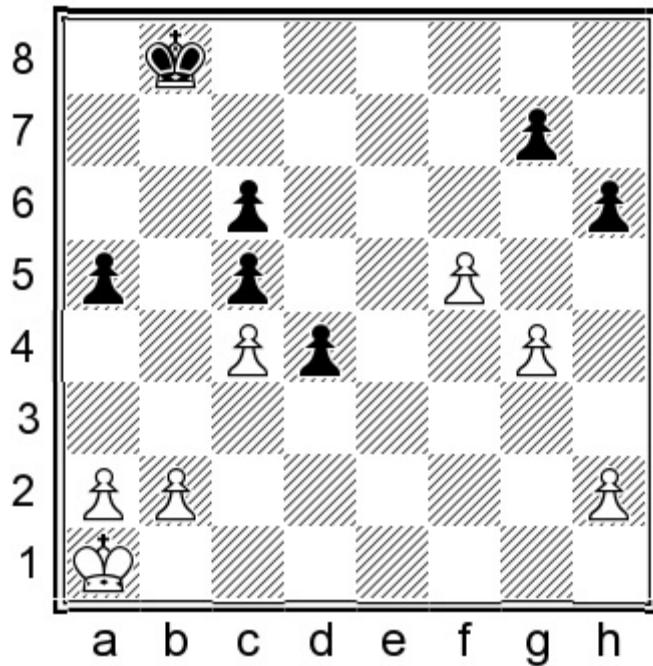
1.f3! a4 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!!$ a3 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ a2 4. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ a1= \mathbb{Q} 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}b2+$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2+)$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$



16-113
B

It becomes clear that a breakthrough on the kingside is a difficult matter. A king march to the queenside is pointless because the a7-square is not available: the white bishop controls it.

7... $\mathbb{W}c1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ (the only square for the bishop) 8... $\mathbb{W}f4+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}d2+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3!=$



15-59

Show/Hide Solution

15/17. Kozlov-Nevmerzhitsky, USSR 1964

A pawn breakthrough does not work: 1.h4? ♜c7 2.g5 hxg5 3.hxg5 (3.f6 gxf6 4.h5 g4 and the white king will be mated) 3...♜d6 4.f6 gxf6 5.g6 ♜e7–+.

1.♗b1? ♜c7 2.♗c2 ♜d6 3.♗d3 ♜e5 is quite bad;

if 1.a3? ♜c7 2.b4, then 2...cxb4 3.axb4 d3! 4.♗b2 a4! 5.h4 d2 6.♗c2 a3–+

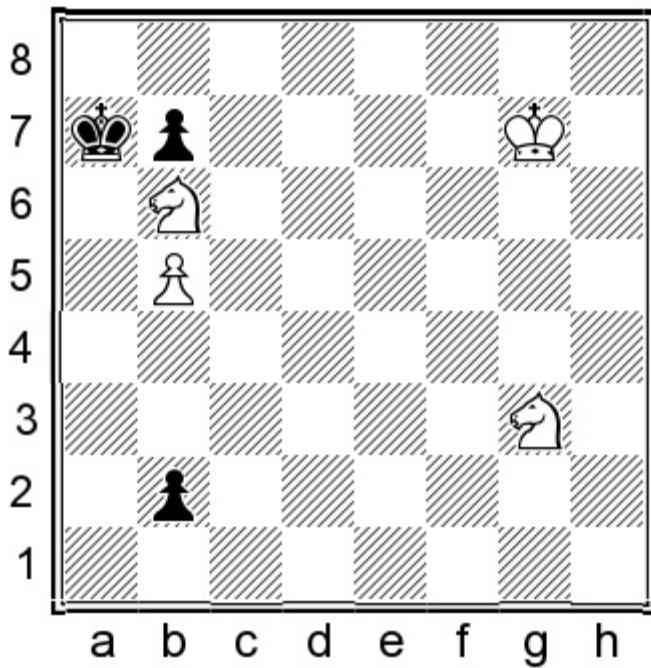
1.a4!! ♜c7 2.b4!! cxb4 (2...axb4? even loses) **3.c5! ♜d7 4.h4 ♜e7 5.g5 hxg5 6.hxg5=**

The pawn barrier is built; the b- and d-pawns cannot promote without support from the king.

An Imprisoned King

Sometimes the hostile king can be “caged” on an edge of the board. Without its participation, the remaining pieces may be unable to achieve any success.

V.Smyslov 1998



15-60

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $b1=\mathbb{W}$ 2. $b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$

If 2... $\mathbb{Q}a6$, then 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ and 4. $\mathbb{Q}ec3=$. The black king is locked on a6 and a5, while the queen cannot mate alone. Black could have won if he had managed to put White in zugzwang by stale mating his king. For example, 3... $\mathbb{W}f1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}ec3$ $\mathbb{W}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6??$ $\mathbb{W}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{W}g5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{W}g6+$, but after 5. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$, he cannot manage this. The queen is denied the important f6-square, or after 5... $\mathbb{W}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}h8??$ $\mathbb{W}f7+$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g8$, the e7-square. 5... $\mathbb{W}g6+$ also gives nothing: 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ $\mathbb{W}h7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c8=$.

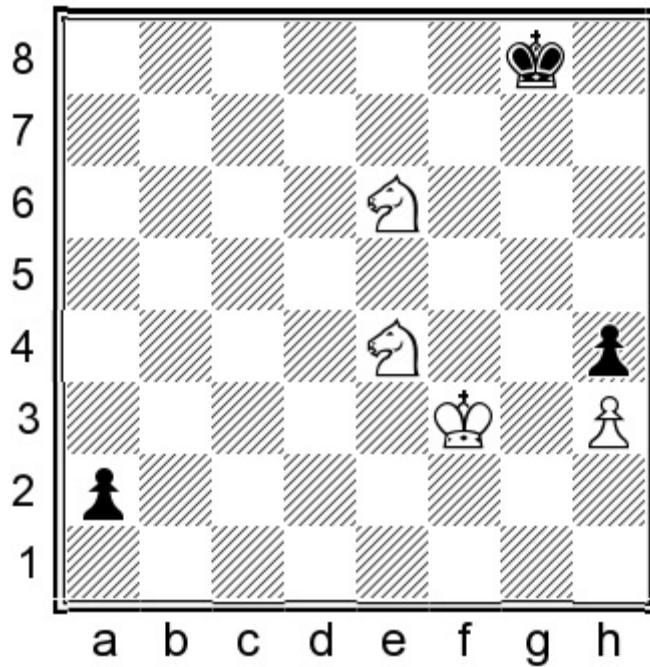
3. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $\mathbb{W}g1+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}hf6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6!=$

Here again the draw is obvious because the black king cannot leave the edge. After 6. $\mathbb{Q}f8?$ $\mathbb{W}g6! \mathbb{O}$

however, White would be forced to release the king. Zugzwang is the main danger in that and all similar situations, but it can usually be avoided in practice.

Even a knight alone can arrest a king. If Black played his king to a8 on move two while the white knight was on d7 and his king on an adjacent square, the second knight would not have been needed.

P.Pechenkin 1953*



15-61

B

After 1...a1= 2. $\mathbb{Q}4g5$, the black king would have been caged as in the previous example.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f7!?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}6g5+ \mathbb{Q}g6$

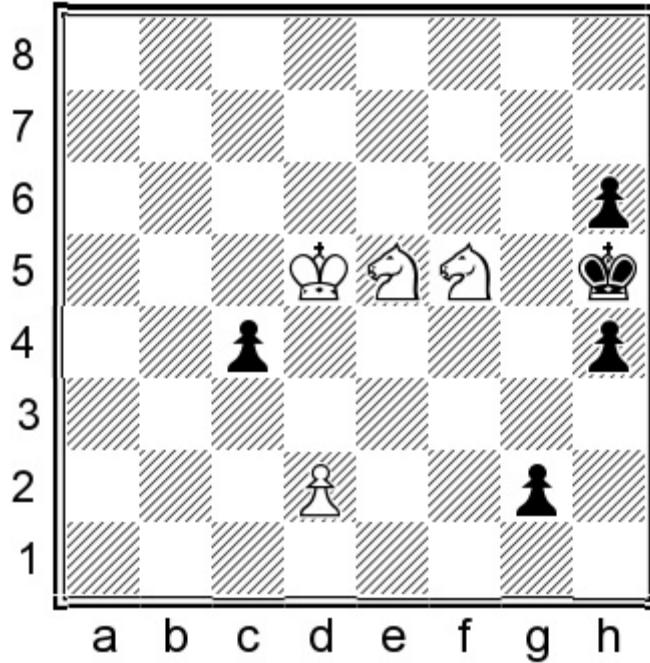
The king is free, but White manages to save himself by creating a fortified camp around his own king.

3. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ a1= 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}fd2=$

The black king cannot go farther than f4 and e2, while the queen cannot come close enough to the white king to deny it the free squares in the corner; therefore the draw is inevitable.

Here is another example of this theme, a much more difficult and impressive one.

K.Behting 1906



15-62

W

White cannot stop the pawns:

- (a) 1. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$ $h3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $h2+$;
- (b) 1. $\mathbb{Q}xh4?$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $h5+$;
- (c) 1. $\mathbb{Q}g7+?$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $h3+$

Hence his only hope is to create a fortress. The process of building it starts with an apparently senseless king move.

1. $\mathbb{Q}c6!!$ $g1=\mathbb{W}$

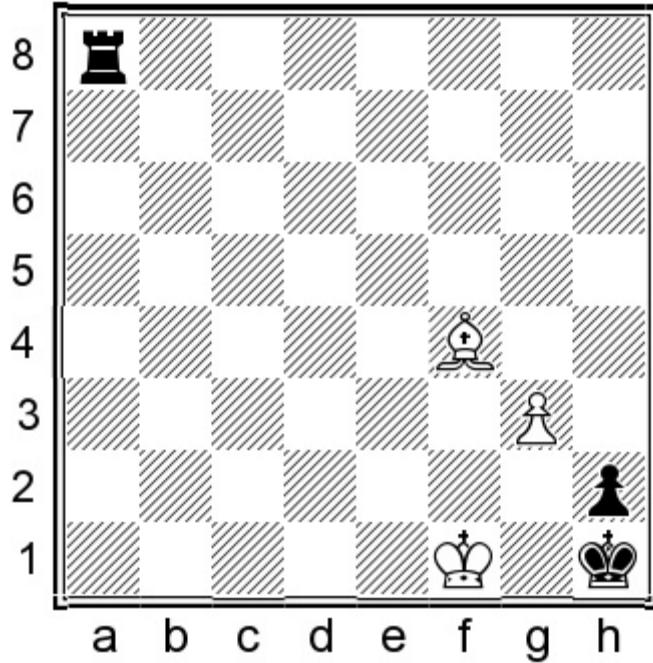
If 1... $h3$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3+$), then 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $h2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $g1=\mathbb{W}+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc4=$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xh4!$ $\mathbb{W}h1+$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3+$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}hf3=$, and the black king is locked in on the edge of the board.

Both 1. $\mathbb{Q}xc4?$ and 1. $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ would have made this plan impossible because Black could give a zwischenschach on move 2, so that his queen was brought away from any knight fork.

Locking in with knights is just one of several methods of immobilizing the hostile king.

Reshevsky – Fischer
Los Angeles m (11) 1961*



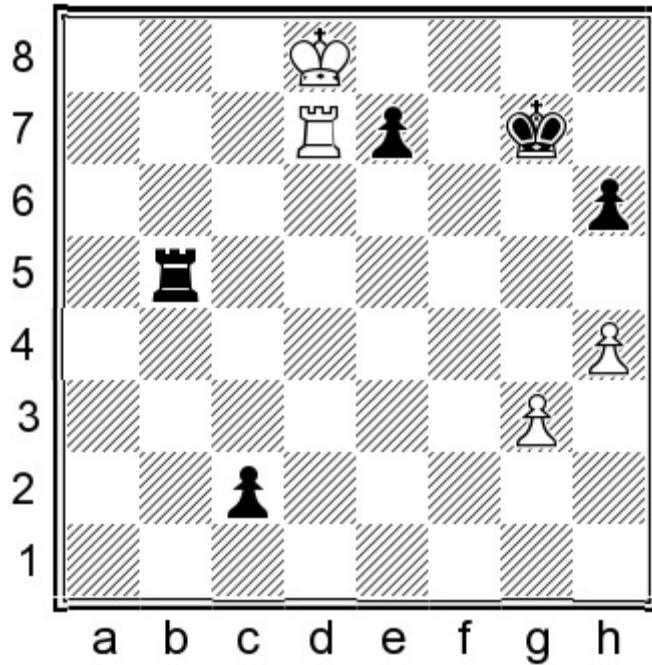
15-63

W?

Fischer, in his annotations to the game, wrote that White loses in view of 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f1-$. However Murey demonstrated a rather simple way to a draw, based on locking in the king.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e3!!$ $\mathbb{Q}a1+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}f3??$ $\mathbb{Q}a3-$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$, and the king cannot get away from the corner. Kling and Horwitz found the final position as long ago as the middle of the 19th century.

Exercises



15-64

15/18

W?

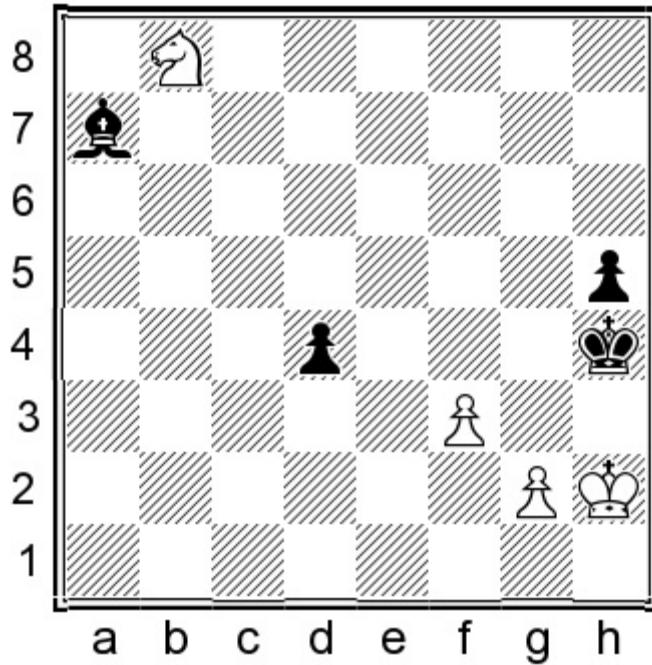
Show/Hide Solution

15/18. G.Zakhodiakin 1949

The c-pawn cannot be halted in view of a decoying rook sacrifice, for example, 1. $\mathbb{Q}xe7+?$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!-$

1. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $c1=\mathbb{Q}$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7+)$ 5. $h5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ (the threat is 7... $\mathbb{Q}f8-+$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7!=$

The black king is padlocked and cannot be released.



15-65

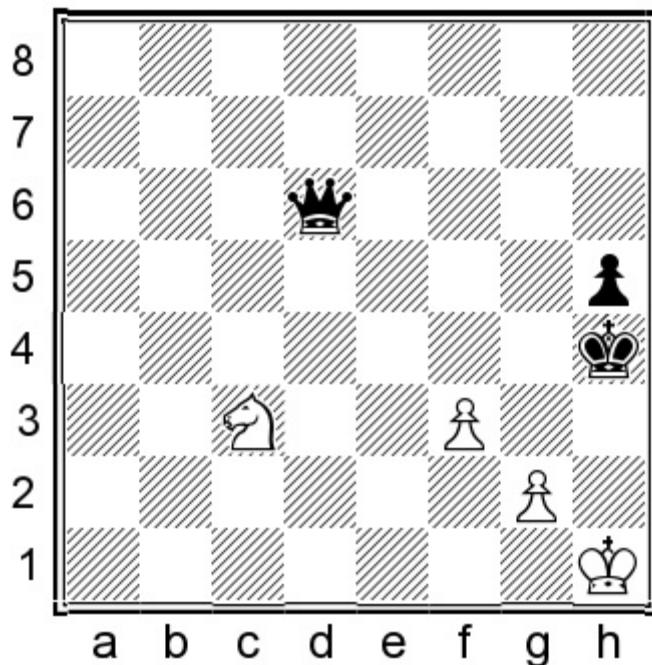
15/19

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/19. A.Troitsky 1910

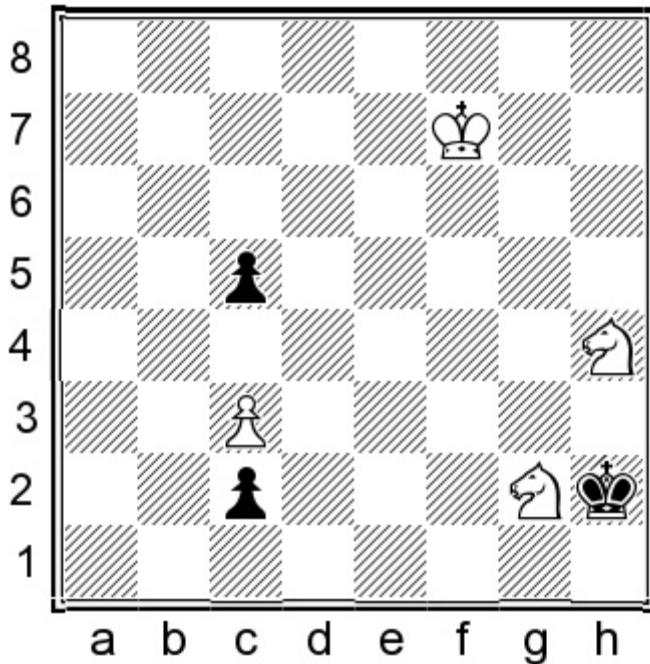
1. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ d3 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa7!!$ d2 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ d1= \mathbb{W} 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{W}d6+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1=$



16-114

B

The knight inevitably goes to e4 and immobilizes the black king ($5\diamond g3?$ is impossible because of $6.\diamond e4+$ and $7.\diamond x d6$).

**15-66**

15/20

W?

15/20. E.Zakon 1953**1. $\diamond f3+!$ $\diamond h1!$ 2. $\diamond g1!!$ $c1=\diamond$**

Whichever knight Black takes, his c-pawn will be stopped: $2\diamond xg2$ $3.\diamond e2=$ or $2\diamond xg1$ $3.\diamond f4 \diamond f1$ $4.\diamond d3 \diamond e2$ $5.\diamond c1+ \diamond d2$ $6.\diamond a2=$

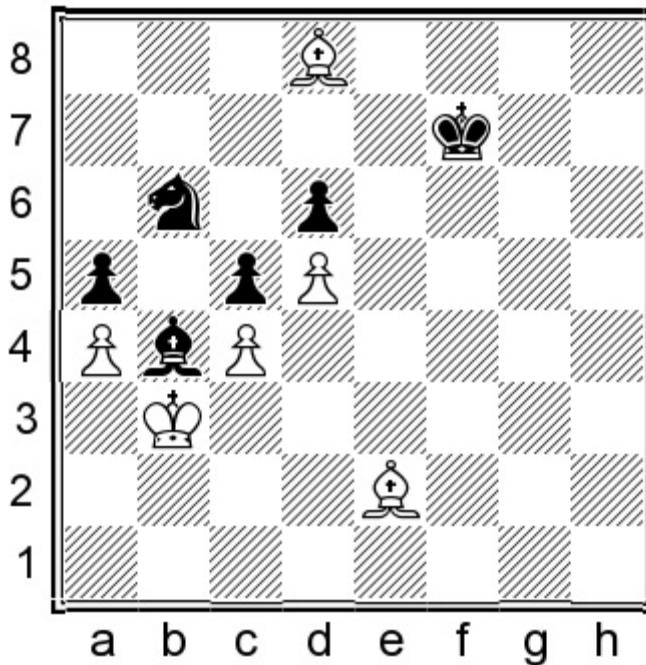
3. $\diamond e2 \diamond f1+$ 4. $\diamond g4=$ *An Imprisoned Piece*

Any piece, not just a king, can be “imprisoned.”

Chess composers, by the way, use the word “blockade” for such cases. I prefer to avoid it because this word has a different sense when referring to practical chess.

Kobaidze – Tsereteli

USSR 1970



15-67

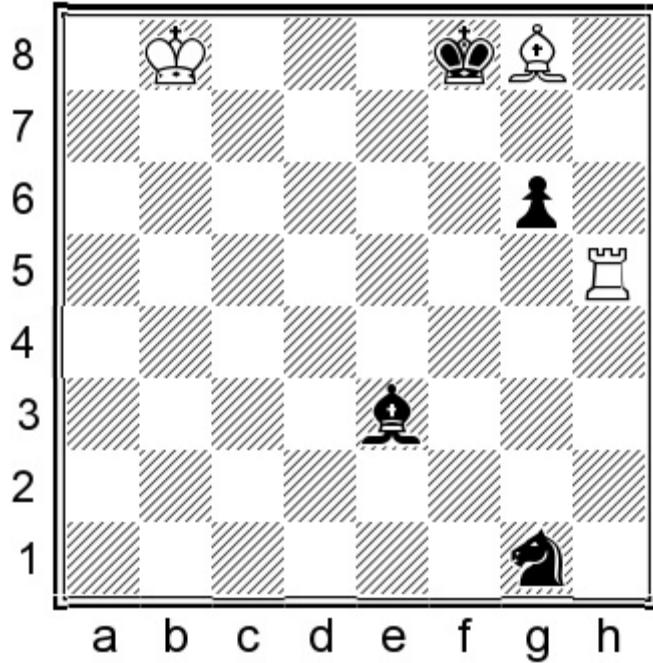
B

1... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ Draw.

The white bishop is locked in forever; it can only be given away for a pawn. Without its support, White's king and light-square bishop are unable to do anything.

On 1... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$, Black would have played ... $\mathbb{Q}b6!$ sooner or later anyway in order to parry the threat of White's king coming to e6.

A.Gurvich 1952



15-68

W?

1. $\mathbb{E}h4?$ $\mathbb{Q}xg8$ 2. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (2... $g5?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \Delta$ 4. $\mathbb{E}g3=$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ is seemingly strong. If 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ White holds by means of permanently pursuing the bishop: 4. $\mathbb{E}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g2$, 4... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 6. $\mathbb{E}f4+$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7=$. But 3... $\mathbb{Q}h6!!$ is much stronger: 4. $\mathbb{E}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ 6. $\mathbb{E}g4$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a7-$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ 7. $\mathbb{E}f4$ (without a check!) 7... $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g1!$, and Black manages to move the pieces away from attacks: 9. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}h2-$ or 9. $\mathbb{E}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 10. $\mathbb{E}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4-$

The correct method is to keep the bishop rather than the rook, in order to use it for locking in the black knight on g1.

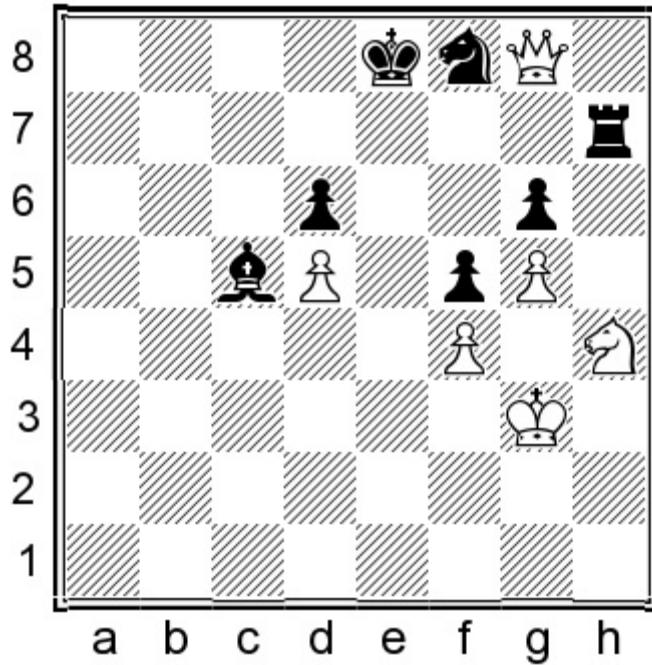
1. $\mathbb{E}h8!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ $g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e4(d4)$ 8... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d5=$

Unfortunately for Black his king, as well as the knight, is also locked in.

Even as strong a piece as a queen can sometimes be immobilized.

Ree – Hort

Wijk aan Zee 1986



15-69

B?

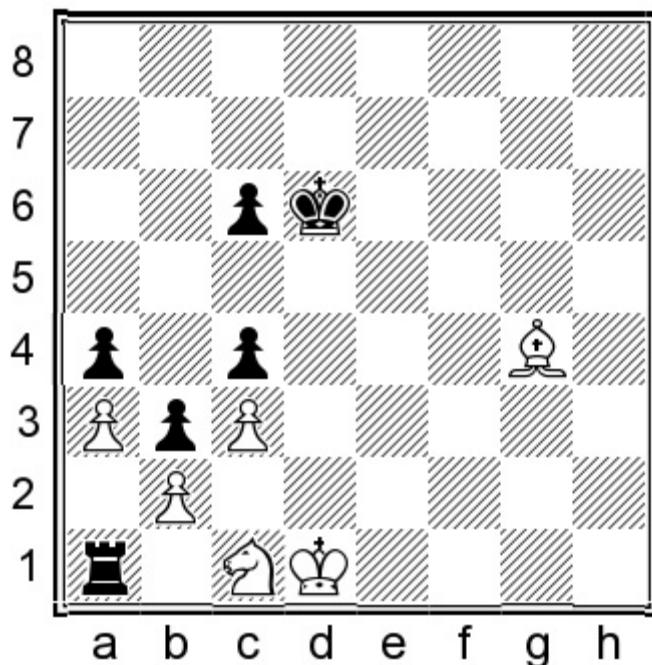
After 1... $\mathbb{Q}f2+?$! Black can still defend, but matters are much more difficult than in the game.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh4!!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$

Draw. The queen has no square to which to go.

Diagram 15-70 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercises



15-70a

15/21

W?

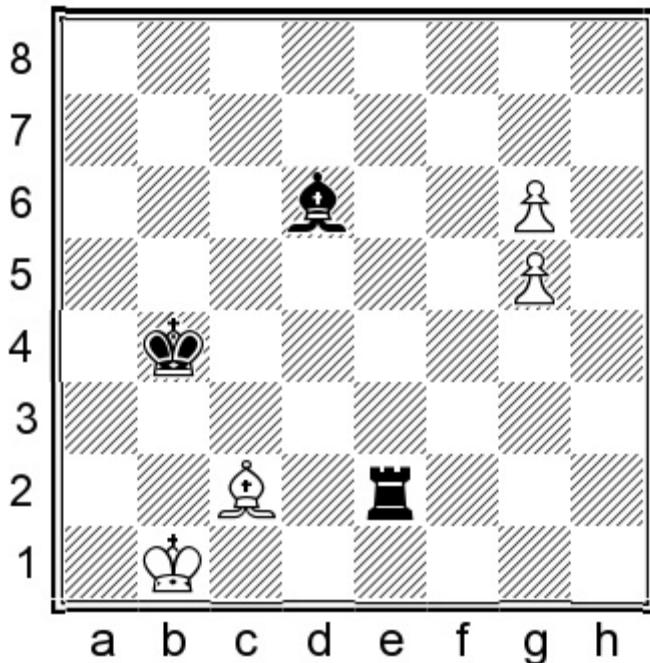
Show/Hide Solution

15/21. Simkhovich 1927(corrected)

1... $\mathbb{E}b1$

and 1... $\mathbb{E}a2$ are threatened.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ $\mathbb{E}a2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa2!!$ bxa2 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ a1= $\mathbb{W}+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b1=$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}c2-c1-c2$.



15-71

15/22

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/22. C.de Feijter 1941

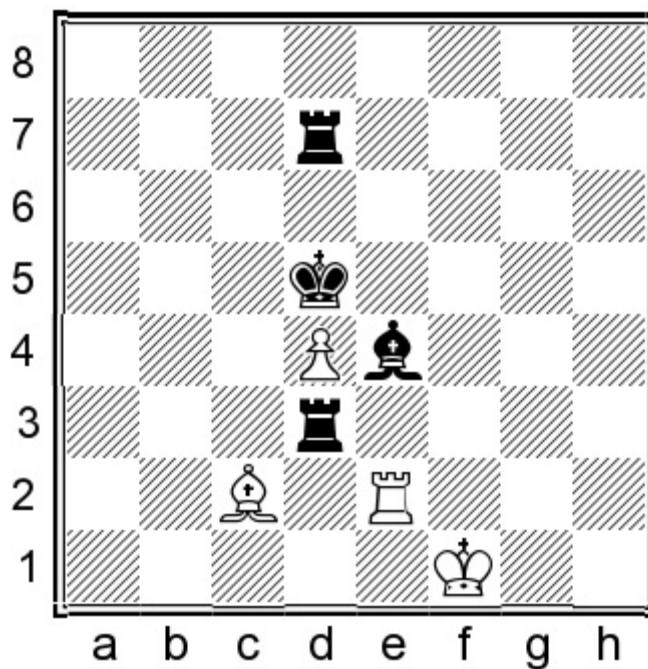
1.g7 $\mathbb{E}e1+!$ (1... $\mathbb{E}e8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h7=$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ (but not 2. $\mathbb{Q}a2?$ $\mathbb{Q}e5-$)

2... $\mathbb{E}e8$ (2... $\mathbb{E}xd1+?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{E}xg7$ 5.g6=

Binding

Utilization of a material advantage can sometimes be impossible because one piece of the stronger side is pinned or must protect an important square (another piece, or pawn).

Deutsche Schachzeitung 1889



15-72

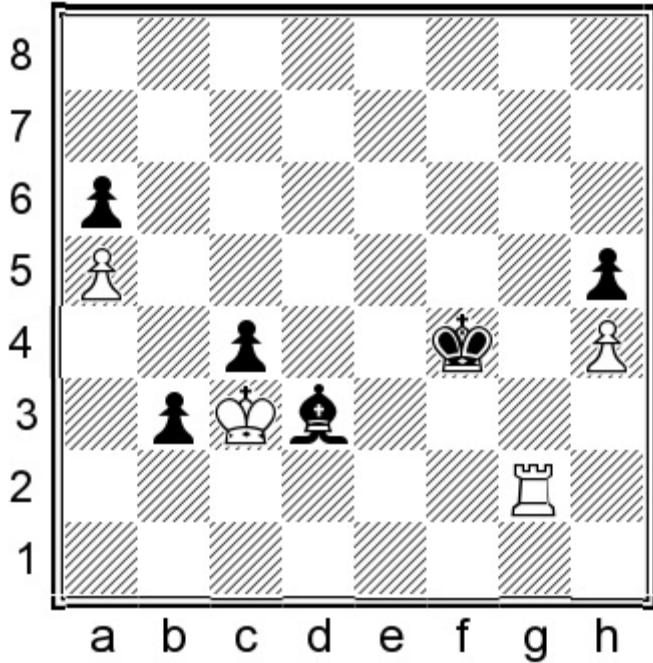
W

1. $\mathbb{R}xe4!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 2. $\mathbb{N}e2$ $\mathbb{R}7xd4$ 3. $\mathbb{R}b1=$

One of Black's rooks is pinned; another rook together with the king must protect it. Therefore Black has no win in spite of his huge material advantage.

Vaganian – Georgadze

Erevan zt 1982



15-73

B?

It is not easy for Black to find an acceptable move. Both 1... $\hat{Q}f3?$ 2. $\hat{R}g5$ and 1... $\hat{Q}c2?$ 2. $\hat{R}g5$ $\hat{Q}d1$ 3. $\hat{R}g6$ lose a pawn.

1... $\hat{Q}e4?$ is not much better in view of 2. $\hat{R}g5$ $\hat{Q}e2$ 3. $\hat{R}g6$ (with the threat 4. $\hat{R}xa6$ b2 5. $\hat{R}b6+-$) 3... $\hat{Q}d3$ 4. $\hat{R}h6+-$

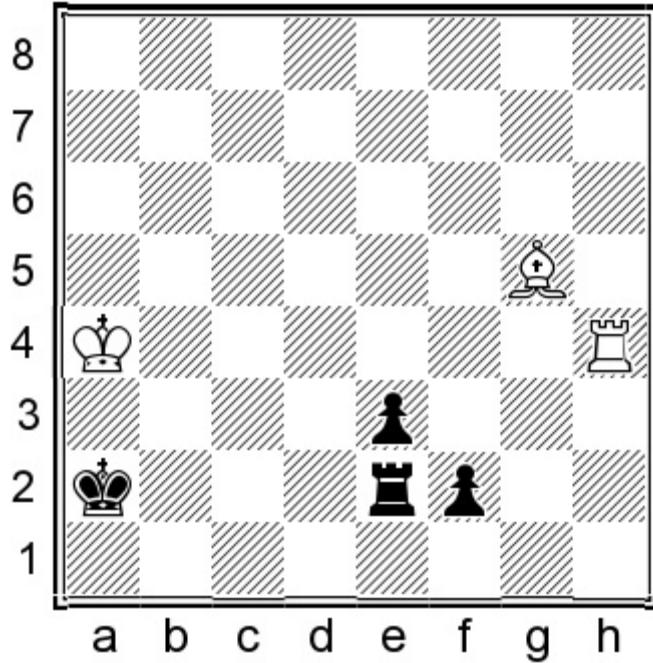
Georgadze finds the only good possibility: he drives his king forward to help his passed pawns.

1... $\hat{Q}e3!$ 2. $\hat{R}g5$ b2! 3. $\hat{Q}xb2$ $\hat{Q}d2$ 4. $\hat{R}c5$ (4. $\hat{R}g2+$ $\hat{Q}e2$) Draw.

After 4... $\hat{Q}e2$, White cannot make progress because his rook must watch the passed c-pawn.

On 2. $\hat{R}g3+$ (instead of 2. $\hat{R}g5$), the simplest reply is 2... $\hat{Q}f4!$ 3. $\hat{R}g5$ $\hat{Q}e2$ 4. $\hat{R}g6$ $\hat{Q}d3=$, and White can play neither 5. $\hat{R}xa6?$ b2 nor 5. $\hat{R}h6?$ $\hat{Q}g4$. However, 2... $\hat{Q}e2$ does not lose either: 3. $\hat{R}g5$ $\hat{Q}d1!$ (3...b2? 4. $\hat{R}g2+$) 4. $\hat{R}xh5$ $\hat{Q}c1$ 5. $\hat{R}g5$ $\hat{Q}e2$ 6. $\hat{R}g1+$ $\hat{Q}d1$ 7. $\hat{R}g2$ $\hat{Q}f3!$ (the squares h5 and h2 are mined: 7... $\hat{Q}h5?$ 8. $\hat{R}h2+-\Theta$) 8. $\hat{R}h2$ $\hat{Q}h5\Theta=$

Exercises



15-74

15/23

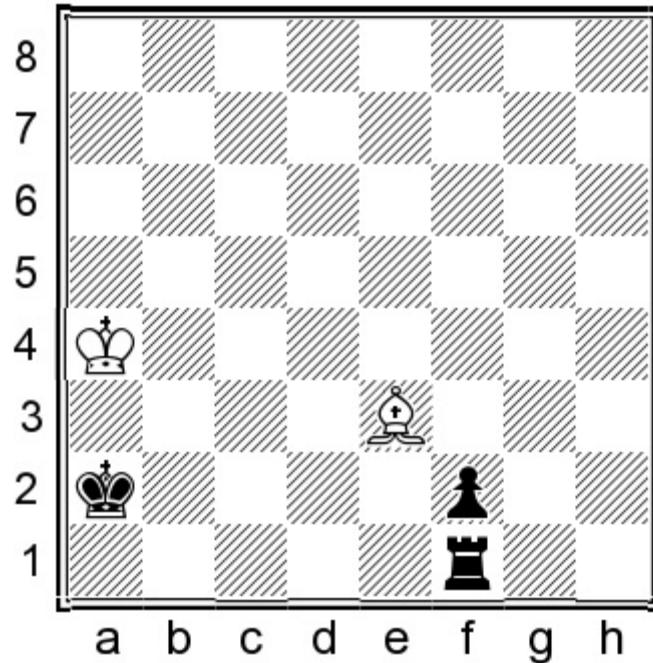
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/23. A.Troitsky 1898

1. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ (hoping for 1... $\mathbb{Q}e1?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3=$) fails because of 1... $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5+$.

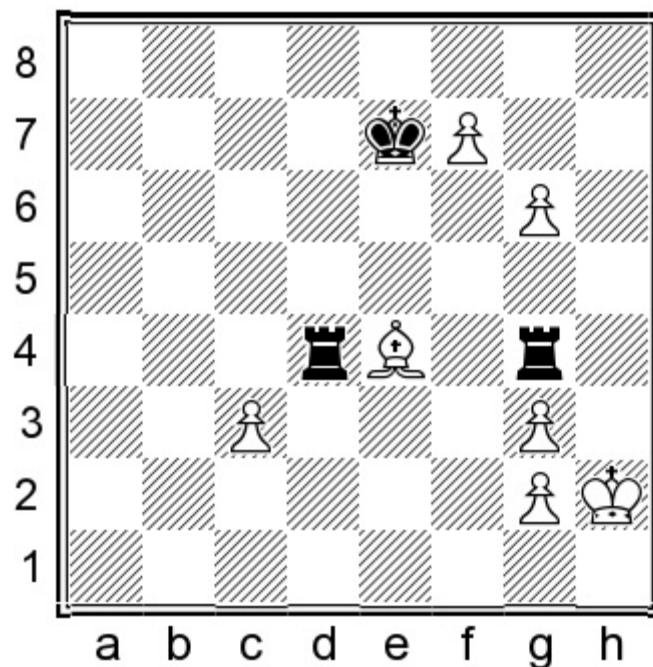
1. $\mathbb{Q}h1!$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$



16-115
B

The black rook is condemned to protect the pawn and the king fails to come and help it.

3... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3=$



15-75
15/24

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/24. F.Simkhovich 1940

The defensive plan is uncomplicated: White must keep both black rooks in the crosshairs, not allowing them to leave the fourth rank. The only question is, from which square should the bishop begin the attack?

1. $\mathbb{B}f5!$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ (1... $\mathbb{E}g5$ 2. $g7!$ $\mathbb{B}xf7$ 3. $g8=\mathbb{W}$ + $\mathbb{B}xg8$ 4. $\mathbb{B}e6+$ and 5. $cxd4$) 2. $\mathbb{B}e6!$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{B}h3$ $\mathbb{E}ge4$ 4. $\mathbb{B}d5!$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 5. $\mathbb{B}c6!$ $\mathbb{E}ec4$ 6. $\mathbb{B}b5!$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}h2!$ $\mathbb{E}g4$ 8. $\mathbb{B}d7!=$ etc.

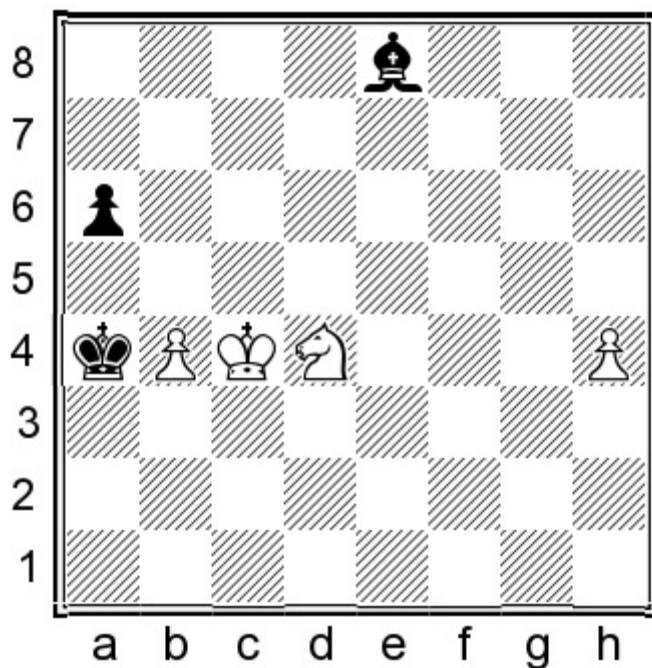
1. $\mathbb{B}f3?$ loses to 1... $\mathbb{E}a4!$ 2. $\mathbb{B}d1$ $\mathbb{B}f8! \mathbb{O}$ 3. $\mathbb{B}h3$ $\mathbb{E}a1!$ 4. $\mathbb{B}xg4$ $\mathbb{E}h1\#$.

Stalemate

Another important defensive resource, besides building a fortress, is stalemate. It should be taken into account without regard to material balance, as stalemate situations can arise quite suddenly.

Polovodin – S.Ivanov

Leningrad ch 1984



B?

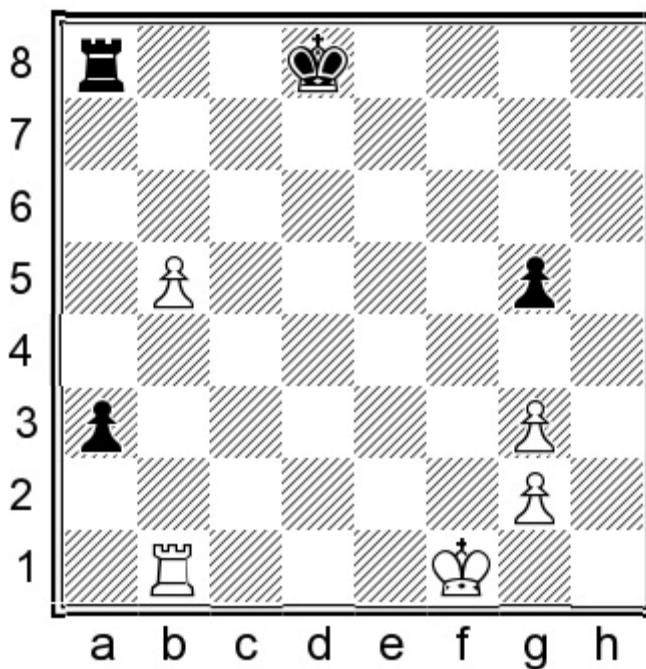
1...a5!=

Black would have been quite helpless without this resource, for example 1... $\mathbb{Q}h5?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{Q}g4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{Q}h5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \Delta \mathbb{Q}d5-f6(f4).$

1...a5!=

Now, however, 2.b5 $\mathbb{Q}xb5+!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ leads to a stalemate and 2.bxa5 $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ – to a drawn endgame.

V.Smyslov 2000



15-77

W?

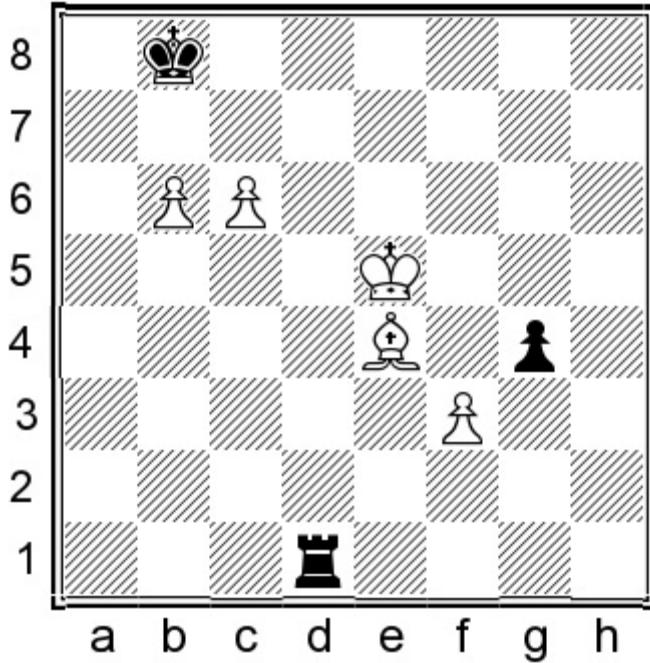
1. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ looks quite natural, but after 1... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}a5-$) 3...a2! 4. $\mathbb{Q}a1 g4$ White is lost (5. $\mathbb{Q}b3 \mathbb{Q}xb5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xa2 \mathbb{Q}xa2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xa2 \mathbb{Q}c4-$).

Playing for a stalemate is his salvation.

1.b6! (the threat 2.b7 forces Black to push his pawn to a2) 1...a2 2. $\mathbb{Q}a1 \mathbb{Q}c8$ 3.g3! $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4.g3 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}b5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{Q}b4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xa2!=$

Goldstein – Shakhnovich

Moscow 1946



15-78

B?

1...gxf3!

1...g3? is wrong: 2.c7+ ♕c8 3.♕f5+ ♜d7 4.♕h3 g2 5.♕xg2+-

1...gxf3! 2.♕xf3

If 2.c7+ ♕c8 3.♕xf3 (3.♕f5+ ♜d7=), then 3...♜c1 4.♕d6 ♜c6+!

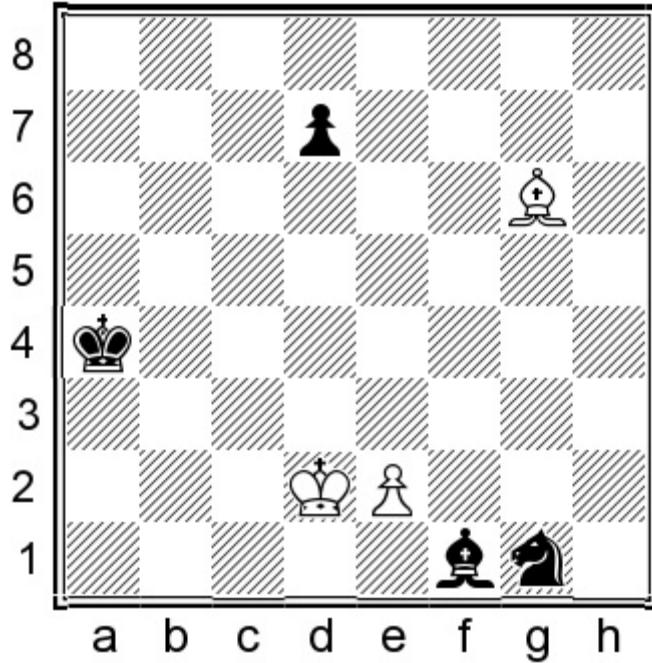
2...♜d7!!

Only this fine move holds the game. At first I thought that 2...♜c1 3.♕d6 ♕c8! was also sufficient for a draw. For example, 4.♕d5 (4.c7 ♜c6+!) 4...♜c2 5.♕e6+ ♕b8 6.♕d7 (6.c7+ ♕b7 7.c8=♛+ ♜xc8 8.♕xc8+ ♕xb6) 6...♜d2+ 7.♕e7 ♜c2 8.♕d6 ♜c1 9.♕d5 ♕c8!, or 4.♕e2 ♕b8! 5.♕d7 (5.♕a6 ♜d1+) 5...♜c2! (5...♜c3? 6.♕a6) 6.♕d3 ♜c1! Reciprocal zugzwang: Black loses if it is his turn to play, but now White is on move.

However, grandmaster Karsten Müller found the following winning way for White: 4.♕g4+ ♕b8 5.♕d7 ♜c3(c2) 6.♕f5 ♜c4 (Black must beware of 7.♕e4; on 6...♜c1 7.♕d3, we have the reciprocal zugzwang position from above, but with Black to play) 7.♕e6 ♜c5 8.♕b3O, and wherever the rook goes along the c-file, 9.♕d5 will be decisive.

3.♕e6 ♜b7!! Draw.

G.Kasparian 1963



15-79

W?

White's attempts to win a piece back fail: 1. $\mathbb{Q}e1?$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ or 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$. Therefore he chooses another plan: attacking the d-pawn.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}h3?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$; 1... $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ and 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$; 1... $\mathbb{Q}h3?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e8=$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ **d6**

Both 2... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ and 2... $d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ lead to an immediate draw.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ is threatened) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$

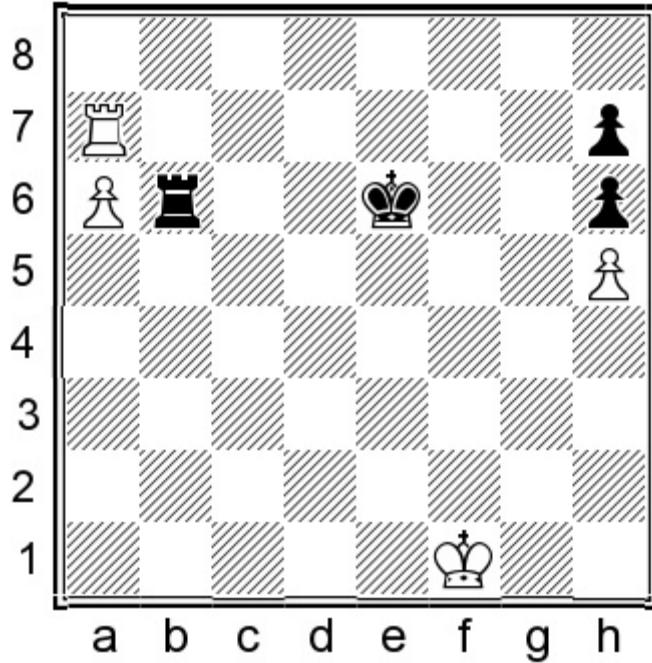
White's threats have been parried (5. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ $\mathbb{Q}c3+$), but an unexpected stalemate in the center of the board saves him now:

5. $\mathbb{Q}c4!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ stalemate.

Or 5... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6(c2)+$ and 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5=$.

A situation can arise when the defender has only one mobile piece, and if it can be sacrificed, a stalemate occurs. Even though the opponent rejects the Greek gift, "*the desperado*" continually offers itself for capture.

To escape from the pursuit of a "desperado queen" is almost impossible. With a rook in the "desperado" role, everything depends on the specific circumstances.



15-80

W?

Play

1. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh7?$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. a7 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ leads to a draw.

1. $\mathbb{Q}a8!$

It seems now that Black may well resign in view of the threat 2.a7.

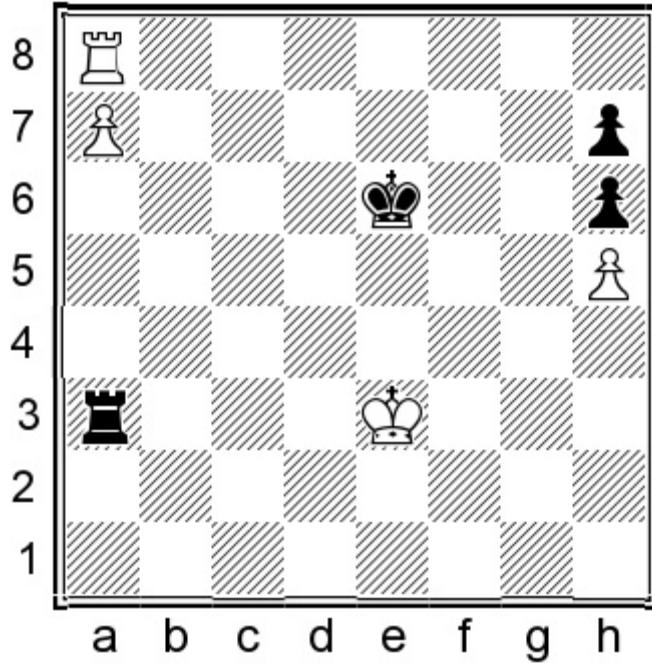
1... $\mathbb{Q}b1+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2!!$

This move can be played only if White has discovered Black's stalemate idea and evaluated it well enough. The apparently natural 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ misses the win because of 2... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. a7 $\mathbb{Q}f6!!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}e1+!$ (a desperado rook) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}d1+)$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+!$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}xf8!?$ is also good enough for a draw) 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. a7 $\mathbb{Q}a2+$

After 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. a8= \mathbb{Q} , the desperado rook is curbed immediately: 5... $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$, and there are no checks anymore because the queen controls the squares g2 and h1.

4. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8+ \mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. a8= \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4!+-$)



15-81

W?

7.†d4!

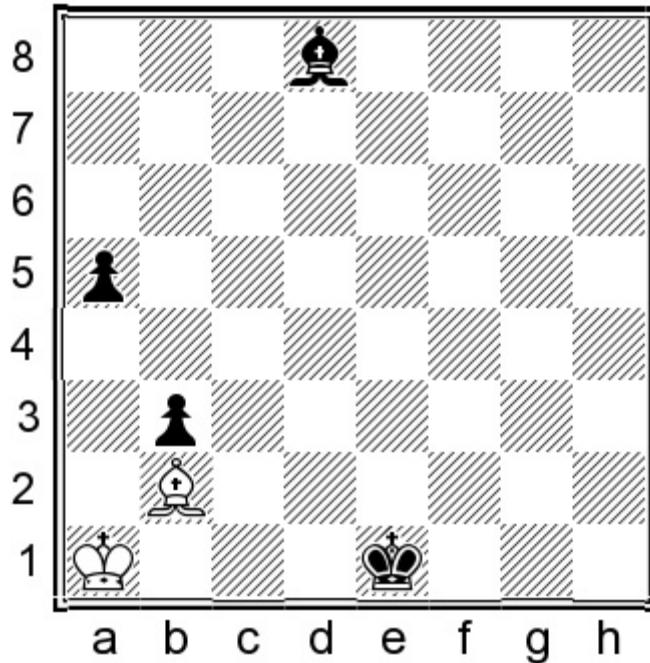
The final subtlety. 7.†d2? is inaccurate: after 7...†f6! 8.‡f8+ †g7 9.a8=¶ ‡d3+! the white king cannot escape.

7...†f6 (7...‡a4+ 8.†c5 †f6 9.†b6 ‡b4+ 10.†a5) 8.‡f8+ †g7 9.a8=¶+–

The checks will rapidly run out 9...‡d3+ 10.†e5 ‡e3+ 11.†f4.

In practice, the rook is the most frequent kind of desperado, but other pieces can also play the role.

H.Weenink 1918



15-82

W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa5=)$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xa5?$ fails to 2... $\mathbb{Q}c2-$ +, while after 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ Black wins by means of 2...a4 3. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$.

2...a4 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ a3!

The only possible attempt to avoid a stalemate or a permanent pursuit.

7. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ a2+ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a1!$

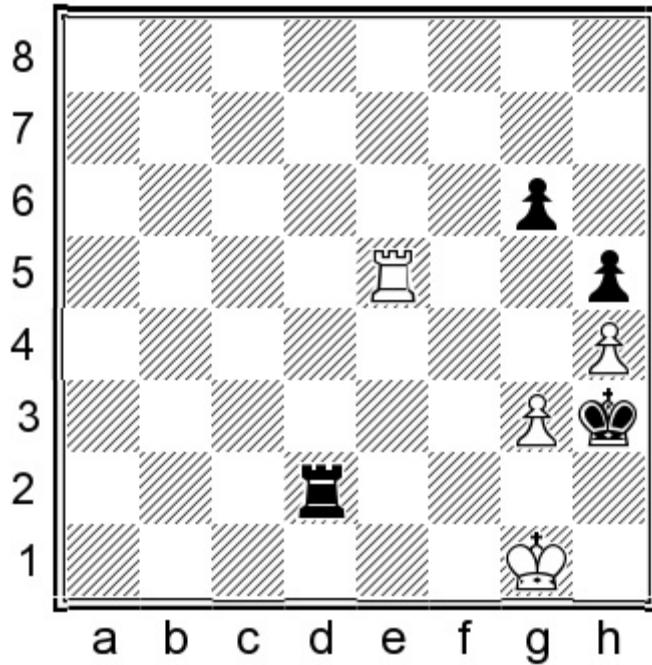
8. $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ loses to 8...a1= $\mathbb{Q}+$! 9. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$.

8... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ stalemate.

Tragomedies

Trabattoni – Barlov

La Valetta 1979



15-83

W?

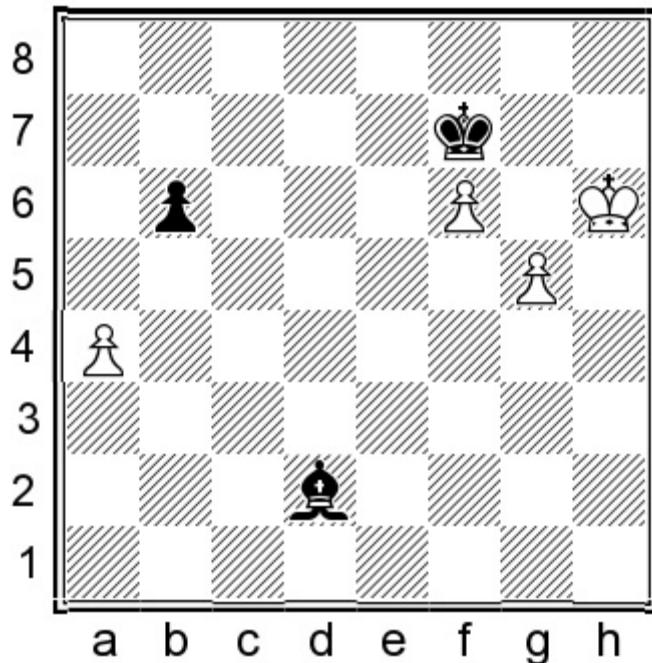
A simple stalemate combination could have led to a draw: 1. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$

White played 1. $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ with the same idea, but after 1... $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$, instead of the desired stalemate, a reciprocal zugzwang arose.

4. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ White resigned.

Zapata – Vaganian

Thessaloniki ol 1984



15-84

B?

1...♝c3?

As Vaganian demonstrated, the waiting move 1...♝c1! wins for Black. The main line is then 2.♗h5 ♜b2 3.♗g4 (3.♗h6 ♜xf6—+) 3...♝g6 4.♗f4 ♜c1+ 5.♗e5 ♜xg5 6.♗d6 ♜d2! 7.♗e7 (7.♗c6 ♜a5) 7...♜b4+ 8.♗e6 ♜c3 9.f7 ♜b4!—+ (rather than 9...♝g7? 10.♗e7 ♜b4+ 11.♗e8○ 11...♜c5 12.♗d7 ♜xf7 13.♗c6=).

Another winning continuation is 1...♝e3 2.♗h5 ♜c1 3.♗h6 ♜d2! (the bishop will occupy the optimal b4-square because of this triangular maneuver) 4.♗h5 ♜c3 5.♗g4 ♜g6 6.♗f4 ♜b4!—? (after 6...♜d2+ 7.♗e5 ♜xg5 we transpose to the Vaganian line) 7.♗e5 (7.♗g4 ♜d2○) 7...♜xg5 8.f7 ♜g6 9.♗e6 ♜g7 10.♗d7 ♜xf7 11.♗c6 ♜a5—+ (Inarkiev).

1...♝c3? 2.a5??

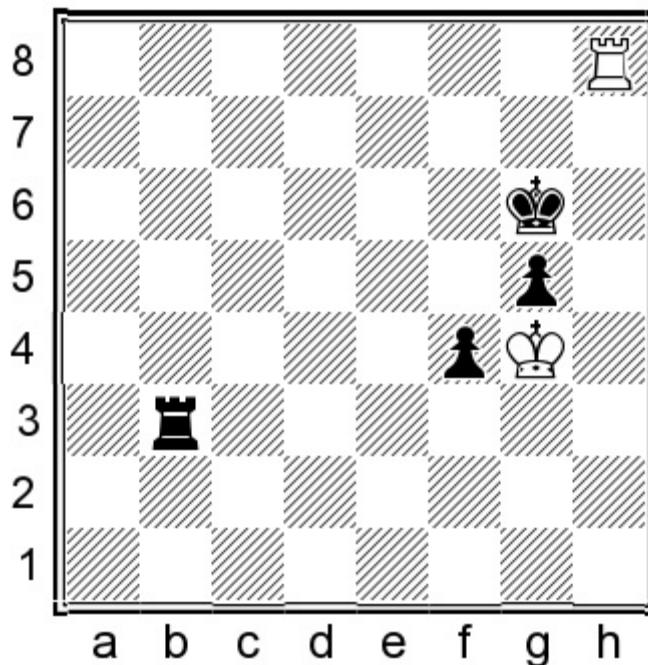
White misses the saving resource: 2.g6+! ♜xf6 3.a5! bxa5 4.g7 ♜f7 5.♗h7 ♜xg7=. Zapata has hit on the stalemate idea but the transposition of moves is fatal for him.

2...bxa5 3.g6+ ♜g8! White resigned.

Another tragicomical incident happened in the same Greek town four years later.

Hickl – Solomon

Thessaloniki ol 1988



15-85

W?

1.♝g8+ ♜f6 2.♝f8+??

2. $\mathbb{E}g6+$! led to a stalemate; the spectators saw this possibility, but the players overlooked it.

The game was adjourned here. An elementary win was possible after 2... $\mathbb{E}e7$ or 2... $\mathbb{E}g7$, but Black decided to repeat moves to be “on the safe side” and sealed

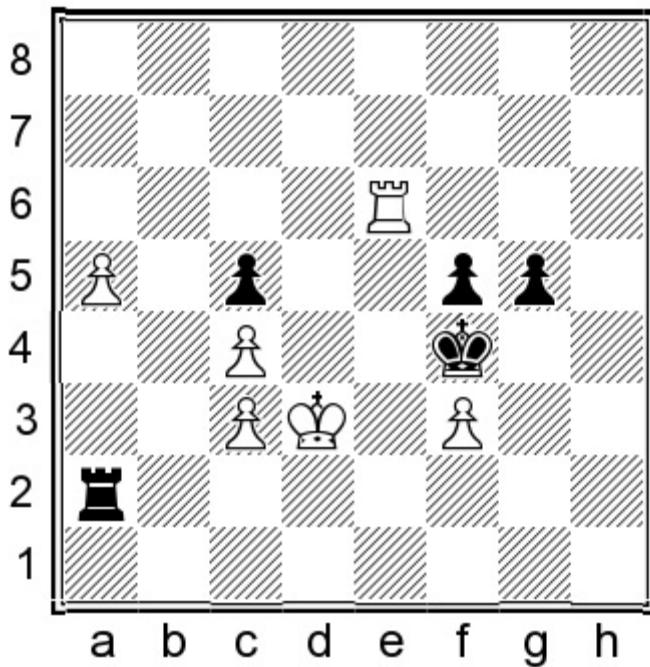
2... $\mathbb{E}g6??$

The captain of the Australian team ordered his player Solomon, to look satisfied, to go back to the hotel immediately, and to stay silent. Hickl did not suspect that his opponent could have sealed such a move and did not want to return for a hopeless resumption, so he resigned the next morning at breakfast.

Many cases of miraculous salvation through stalemate can be mentioned. I want to add just one more.

Jansa – Rublevsky

Ostrava 1992



15-86

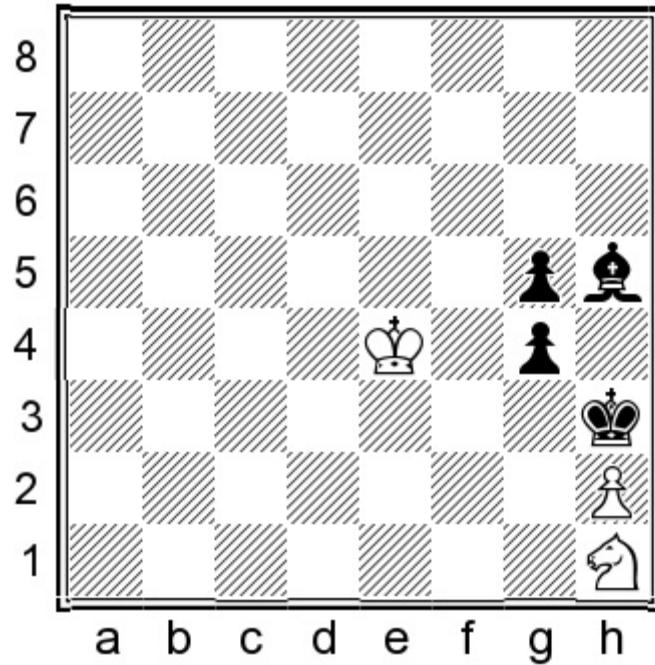
W?

1. a6 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ is completely hopeless; Jansa finds the best practical chance.

1. $\mathbb{E}e2!$ $\mathbb{E}xa5?$ 2. $\mathbb{E}a2!$ $\mathbb{E}xa2$ Draw.

1... $\mathbb{E}a4!?$ 2. $\mathbb{E}g2$ (2. $\mathbb{E}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 2... $\mathbb{E}a1! \circ$ was winning.

Exercises



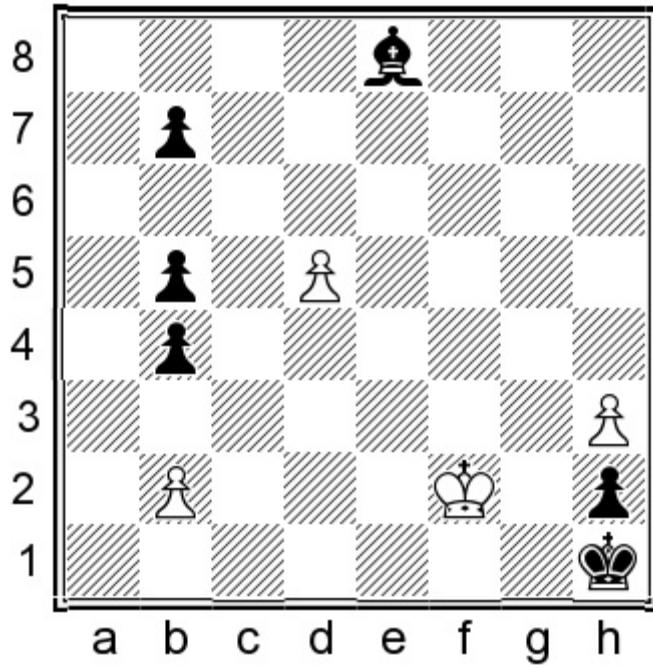
15-87
15/25
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/25. L.Kubbel 1926

1. $\mathbb{Q}g3?$ is bad in view of 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh2!$ (1... $\mathbb{Q}g6+?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2=$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $g3-+$.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ (Δ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3=$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3\odot$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}g1$ stalemate.



15-88

15/26

W?

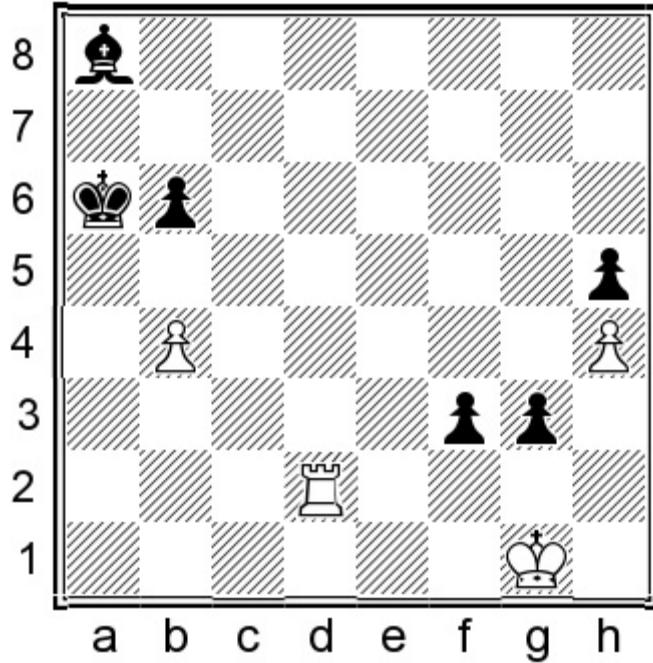
Show/Hide Solution

15/26. J.Møller 1916

1.b3!+–

The bishop is fighting against the passed pawns on two diagonals and is therefore unable to get the upper hand (“pants”).

The inaccurate 1.d6? (or 1.h4?) allows Black to hold by locking in his own bishop for the sake of a stalemate: 1...b3! 2.h4 b4 3.h5 ♜a4! 4.h6 b5=



15-89

15/27

W?

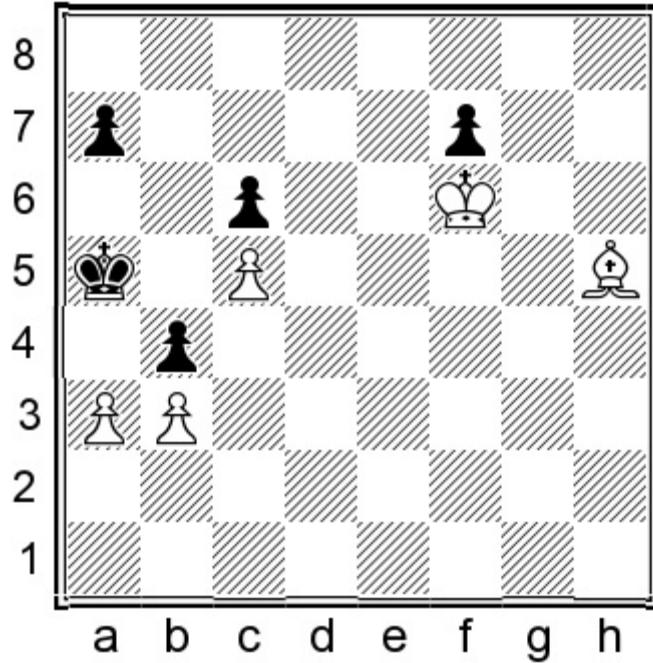
Show/Hide Solution

15/27. L. Prokeš, 1938

1.♗a2+! ♖b7 2.♗g2!! fxg2 3.b5!○=

This combination resembles that from the Goldstein-Shakhnovich ending. Here, precisely as in that case, another defensive plan (to keep the rook behind the bishop pawn) fails, for example, 2.b5 ♖b8 3.♗a6 ♖d5 4.♗xb6+ ♖c7 5.♗f6 f2+ 6.♗f1 ♖c4+ 7.♗g2 ♖xb5 and the king goes to the kingside. Unfortunately for White, the corner square (h1) is of the same color as the black bishop, so a rook sacrifice for two pawns does not help.

However, as Mrkalj has demonstrated, another solution exists: 2.b5 ♖b8 3.♗c2! ♖e4 4.♗c3 ♖b7 5.♗f1=. Black cannot make any progress: his king is confined to the queenside and the bishop is chained to defense of the f3-pawn.



15-90

15/28

W?

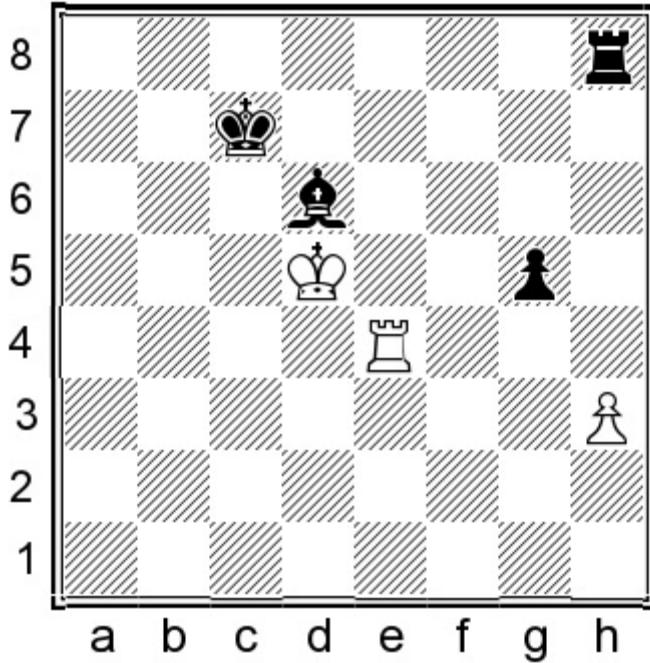
Show/Hide Solution

15/28. J.Gunst 1966

1.a4 a6!

It may seem that Black can take refuge in a stalemate defense but, in fact, White wins because he can subvert Black's plan with a series of precise moves.

2.♗f5! f6 3.♗g4! f5+ 4.♗h3! f4 5.♗e2 f3 6.♗xa6! f2 7.♗g2+-



15-91
15/29
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/29. D.Przepiórka 1926*

Here, as in the Zapata-Vaganian ending, finding the stalemate idea is not enough, a precise order of moves also needs to be chosen.

1.h4! gxh4

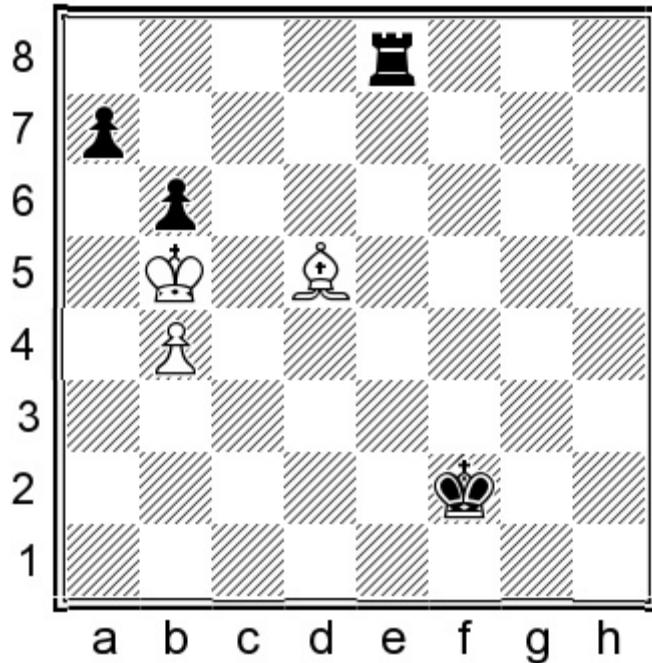
1... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $gxh4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $h3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3=$

2. $\mathbb{Q}c4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Black may also try 2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$? 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $h3$, but White holds by means of 4. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ (or 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b1$) 4... $h2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b1+!$ (rather than 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1?$ $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2-$ +) 5... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ (11. $\mathbb{Q}g4?$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$ $\mathbb{Q}f3-$ +) 11... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a1=$

3. $\mathbb{Q}xh4!=$

The try to avoid the 2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ line by means of a transposition of moves, 1. $\mathbb{Q}c4+?$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 2. $h4$, is refuted by 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh4!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $gxh4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $h3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5-$ +



15-92

15/30

W?

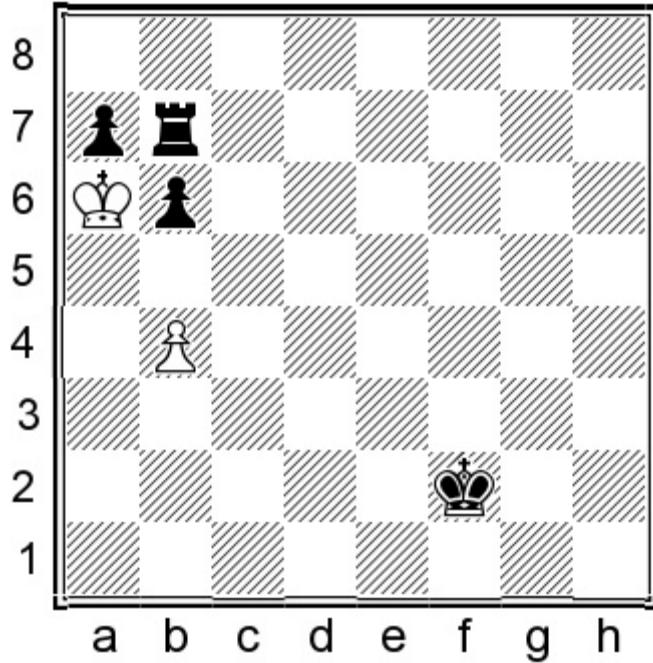
Show/Hide Solution

15/30. J. Fritz, 1965

1. ♜a6 ♕e7 2. ♜b7!

2.b5? ♜e3 3. ♜b7 ♜d4 4. ♜xa7 ♜c5 is bad. But now 2... ♜e3 is no longer effective: 3. ♜xa7 ♕e6 (3...b5 4. ♜b6 ♜d4 5. ♜c6=) 4. ♜a6 ♜d4 5. ♜b5 and 6. ♜c6=.

2... ♕xb7 (with 3. ♜xb7? a5–+ in mind)



16-116
W?

3.b5!!

A nice quiet move! Any rook retreat along the seventh rank results in a stalemate, while 3... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ even loses: 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a6\Theta$

3... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xb6=$

Diagram 15-93 has been intentionally omitted.

Exercise 15/31 and Diagram 16-117 have been intentionally omitted.

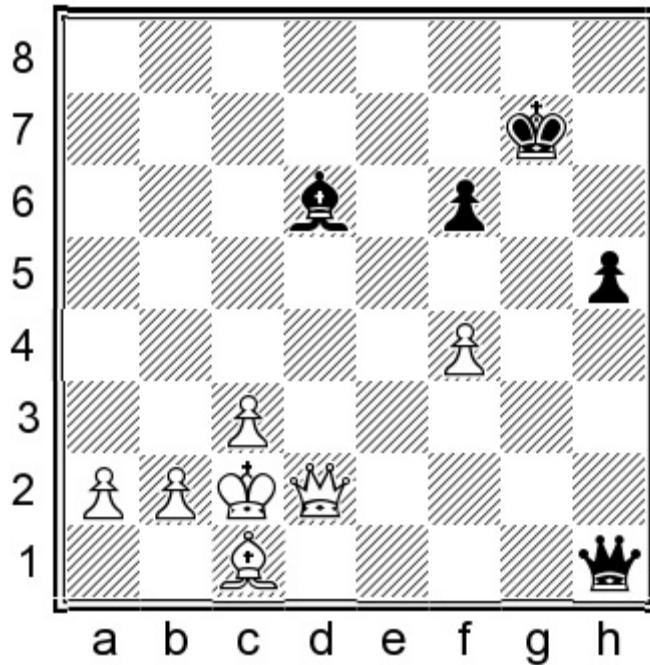
Show in Text Mode

Checkmate

The aim of chess is checkmate. But a mating net can hardly be made when only a few pieces remain on the board. First one should obtain a considerable advantage by means of a pawn promotion. Therefore, as has been mentioned already, creation and advance of passed pawns is the main theme of endgames.

However king attacks are possible in endgames, too. They happen relatively seldom but are almost always sudden, because our thoughts are occupied with other topics and mate threats can be easily overlooked.

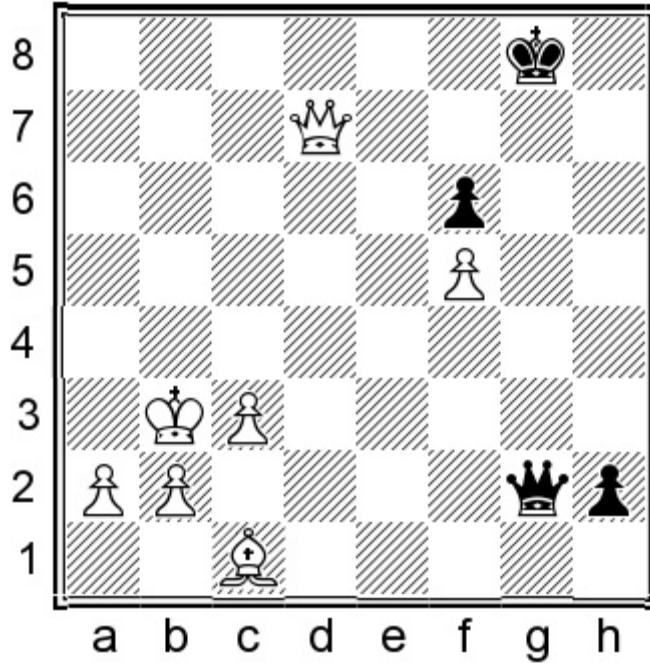
Simagin – Bronstein Moscow ch 1947



15-94
B

1... $\mathbb{W}e4+$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{W}g2+$ would have led to an easy draw. However, Bronstein decided to force a draw by means of a bishop sacrifice in order to rapidly advance his passed pawn.

1... $h4?$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xd6$ $\mathbb{W}g2+$ 3. $\mathbb{B}b3$ $h3$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d7+!$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ (4... $\mathbb{B}g6$ 5. $f5+$ $\mathbb{B}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{B}f4+-$) 5. $f5$ $h2$



15-95

W?

It might well seem that White can only give perpetual check. These illusions were dispelled by the following pretty stroke.

6. Kg5!! h1=Q

If 6...fxg5, then 7.f6 with an inevitable mate; after 6...Qxg5 7.Qc8+ Kg7 8.Qc7+ the h-pawn is lost.

7.Qe8+ Kg7 8.Qg6+ Qf8 9.Qxf6+ Kg8 10.Qd8+ Kg7 11.Qe7+

Another way to a mate was 11.Qf6+ Qf7 12.Qe7+ Kg8 13.Qe8+ Qh7 14.Qh8#

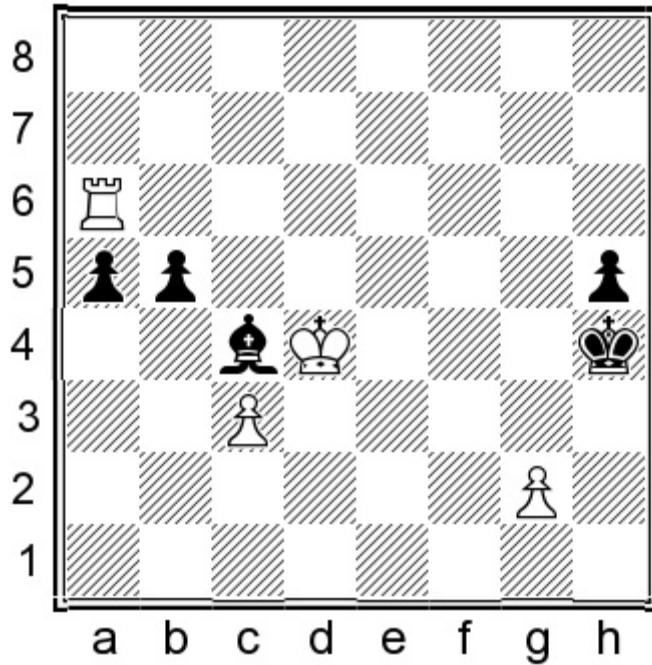
11...Qg8 12.Qe8+

Black resigned on account of 12...Qh7 13.Qg6+ Qh8 14.Qf6# or 12...Qg7 13.f6+ Qh7 14.Qf7+ Qh8 15.Qg7#

The queen is a powerful piece, so it is no wonder that its presence on the board is often dangerous for the hostile king. But a mating net can also sometimes be achieved with more modest forces.

Moldoyarov – Samochanov

cr 1974



15-96

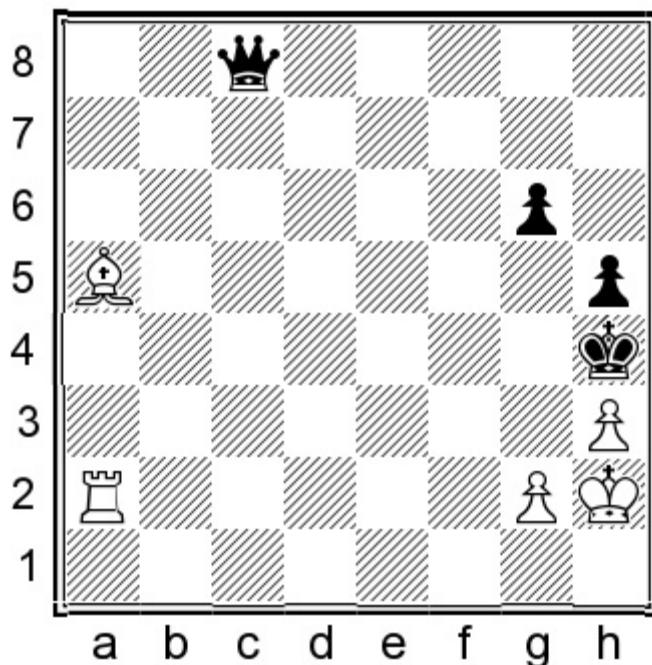
W?

1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$

White plays for mate. 1. $\mathbb{Q}xa5?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ leads to a draw.

1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ a4 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ a3 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ a2 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 6. g3#

S.Kaminer 1925



15-97

W?

Unlike the previous examples, here one feels that the black king is in danger. Paradoxically, White must immediately give up his strongest fighting unit to successfully conduct the attack.

1.♕c2!! ♖xc2

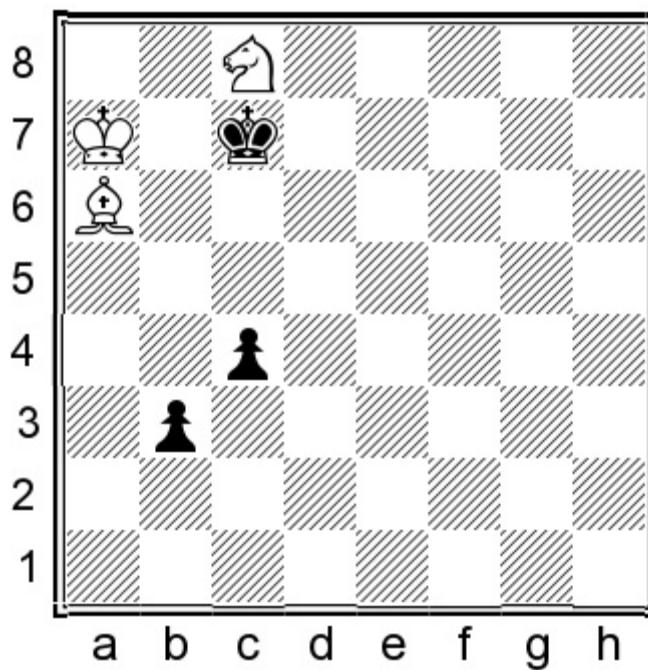
Black must accept the sacrifice. If 1...♖b8+, then 2.♕c7 ♖f8 3.♕c5! ♖xc5 4.♕d8+ and 5.g3#. 1...♖f8 2.♕c4+ ♕g5 3.♕d2+ ♕f6 4.♕f4+ is also bad. Other queen retreats are met with 2.♕c5, cutting off the king's escape.

2.♕d8+ g5 3.♕a5!

An amazing position: a bishop proves stronger than a queen. 4.♗e1+ is threatened. Black will be mated immediately after 3...g4 4.♕d8# or 3...♖d1 4.g3#, while after 3...♖f2 4.♕c7, he is in zugzwang.

3...♖e2 4.♕c7! (Δ ♕g3#) 4...♖f2 5.♕d6!○ (rather than 5.♕e5? g4) 5...♖f4+ 6.g3+! ♖xg3+ 7.♕xg3#

L.Kubbel 1940



15-98

W?

Does this position belong here? Is there any semblance of mating ideas, or is the only question whether White can safely block the black pawns? Let's see:

**1.♗b6 b2 2.♗d5+ ♕d6 3.♗c3 ♕c5 4.♗b1! ♕b4 (if 4...♕d4, then 5.♕c8! c3 6.♕f5+ – a barrier)
5.♗b6 c3**

Both 5...♗b3 6.♕c8 ♕c2 7.♕f5+ and 6...c3 7.♗b5 are no better.

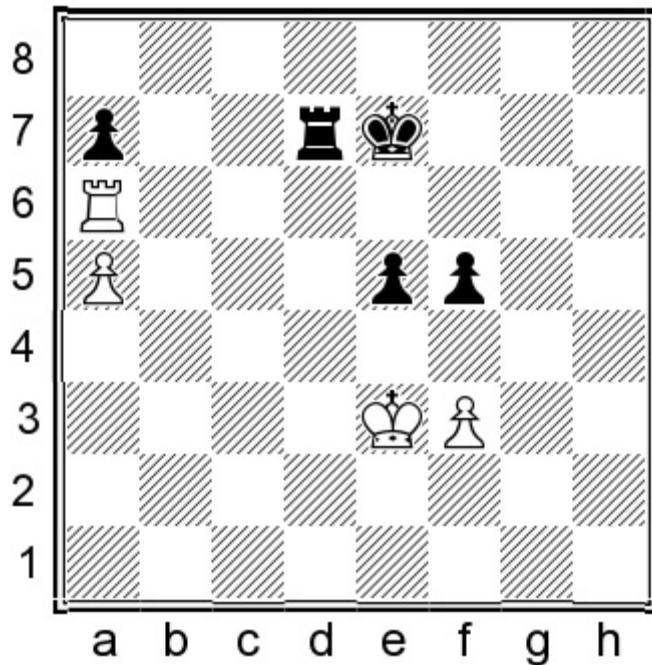
6.♗d3 ♕b3 7.♗b5 c2 8.♗c4#

It is mate after all!

Tragicomедies

Pilskalniece – Berzinš

Riga 1962



15-99
B

The position is drawish; the extra pawn has no effect because of the activity of White's rook.

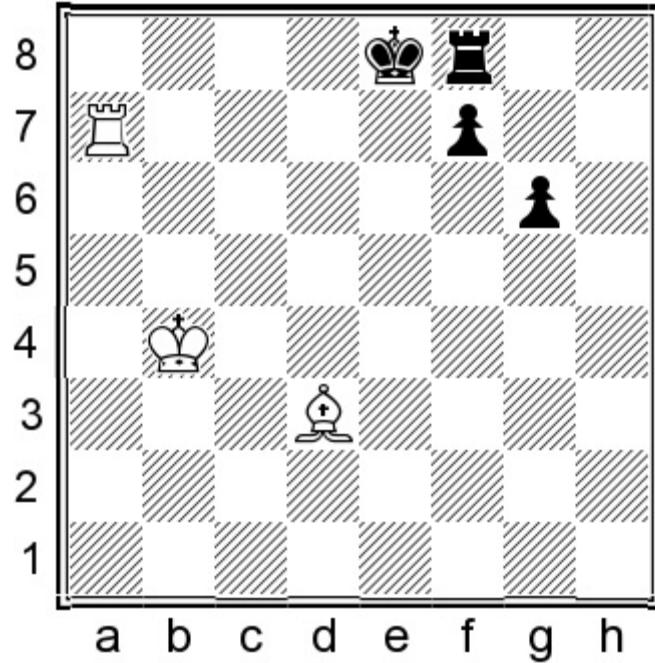
1...f4+!? 2.♔e4??

Black's rather primitive trap is successful. White could have held the balance after 2.♔e2!

2...♕d6!

White resigned. After 3.♕xa7+ ♔e6 the mate 4...♕d4# can be postponed only by means of a rook sacrifice. The pawn endgame is hopeless: 3.♕xd6 ♔xd6 4.a6 ♔e6 5.♔d3 ♔d5 6.♔c3 (6.♔e2 ♔c4) 6...e4.

Exercises



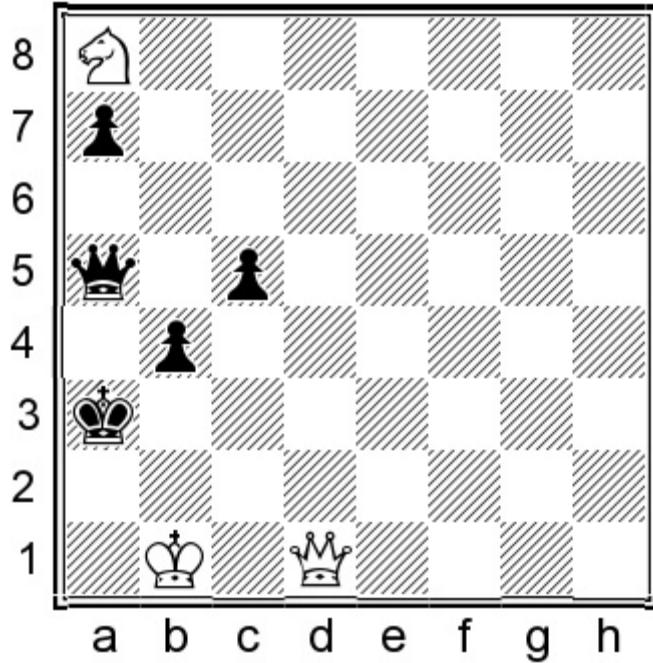
15-100
15/32
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/32. J.Hašek 1929

After 1. $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ f5 the position is drawn. A sudden bishop sacrifice decides.

1. $\mathbb{B}f5!!$ gxf5 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ f6 3. $\mathbb{B}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+-$



15-101

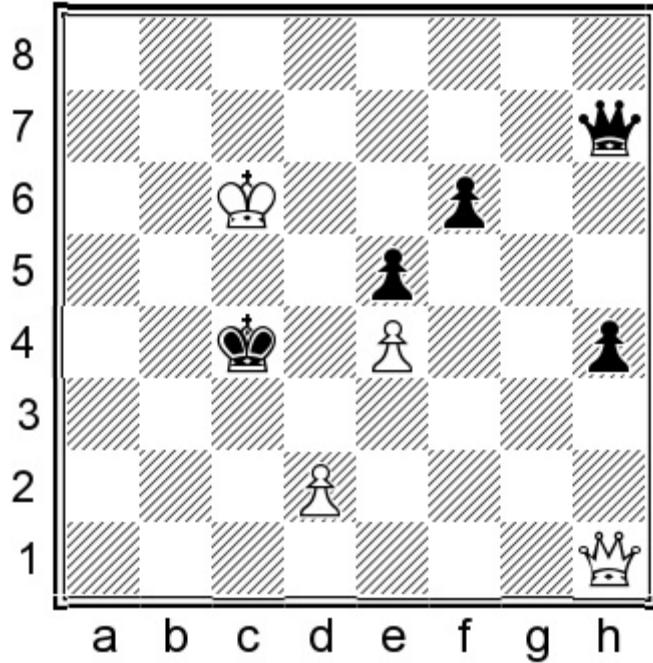
15/33

W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/33. L.Kubbel, A.Troitsky 1936

1. $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6+!$ $a \times b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4! \Theta+-$



15-102
15/34
W?

Show/Hide Solution

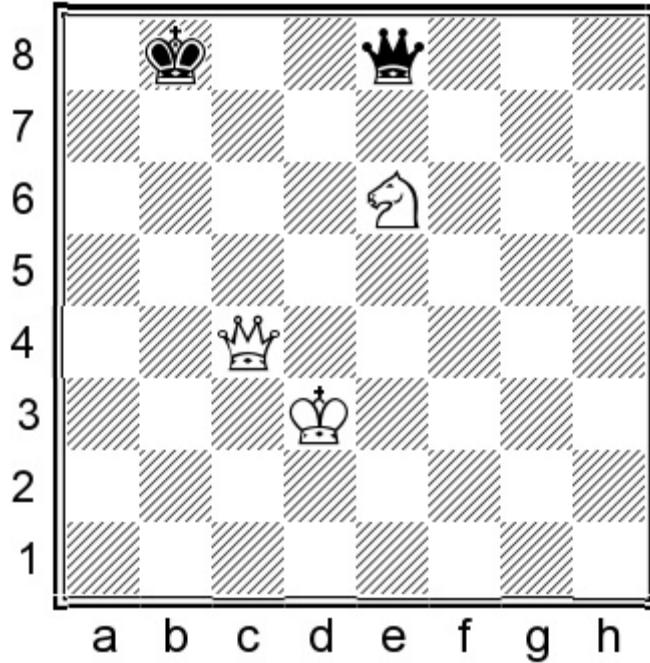
15/34. H.Rinck 1906

1. $\mathbb{W}b1!$ ($\Delta 2. \mathbb{W}b5+ \mathbb{Q}d4 3. \mathbb{W}d5\#$) 1... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 2. $\mathbb{W}b3!!$ $\mathbb{W}xe4+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$

4. $\mathbb{W}c3\#$ is threatened. If 3... $\mathbb{W}h1$, then 4. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c6+$.

3... $\mathbb{W}a8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7+-$)

9. $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 10. $\mathbb{W}c7\#$



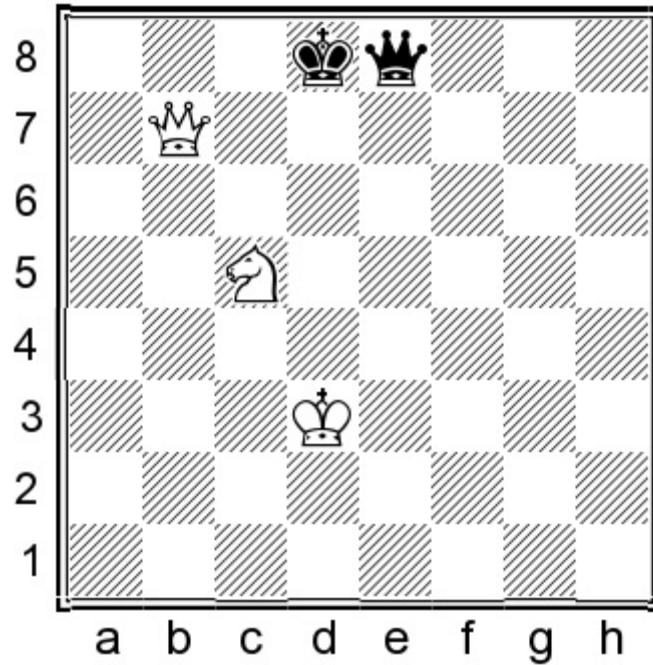
15-103
15/35
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/35. H.Rinck 1917

The initial attacking moves are easy to find.

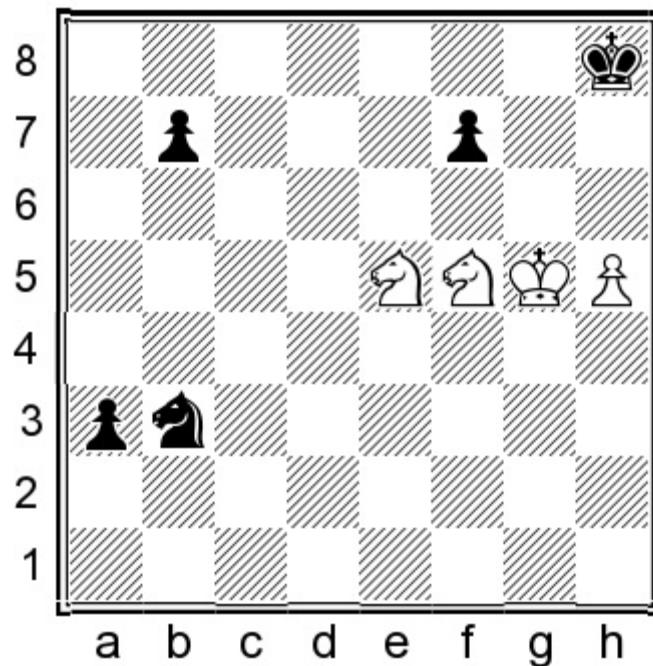
1. $\mathbb{W}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b6+$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}a4+$; 3... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}a8+$)
4. $\mathbb{W}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$



16-118
W?

However, no success can be achieved by means of new checks. The solution of this position is zugzwang:

6. ♔d2!!+-



15-104

Show/Hide Solution

15/36. Zakharov-Petrushin, USSR 1973

The a-pawn cannot be stopped (for example, 1. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!-+$

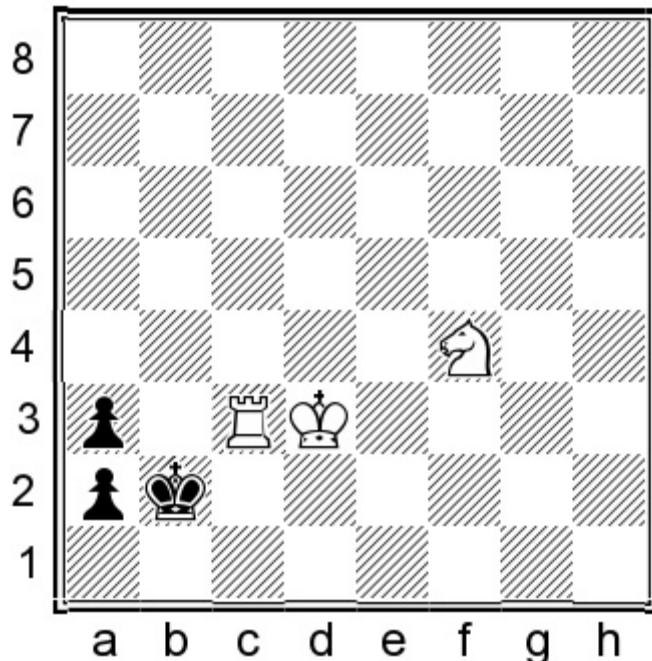
or 1. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+?$ $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!-+$). White's chances lie only in a kingside attack.

Zakharov chose 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ He had 1...a2?? 2. $\mathbb{Q}h6!-+$ or 1... $\mathbb{Q}h7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (Δ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$; 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$) in mind. However, Petrushin replied with 1...f6+! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ a2 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ The careless 4...a1= $\mathbb{W}+?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ could lead to perpetual check ($\mathbb{Q}f8-g6+$), while after the move actually played, White had to resign.

According to Gufeld's comments in *Chess Informant*, White could have achieved a draw by means of 1. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ a2 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ a1= \mathbb{W} 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$. However, Nunn indicated that this is wrong – Black could win after 1... $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ a2 4. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ (4...a1= $\mathbb{W}?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7=$ or 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6=$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ a1= \mathbb{W} .

Grandmaster Nunn found a win for White in the initial position:

1. $\mathbb{Q}h6!!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (1...a2 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$; 1...f6 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ a2 4. h6 a1= \mathbb{W} 5. h7+) **2. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$** (the threat is 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5)$ **2...f6** (2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ Δ $\mathbb{Q}d6+-$) **3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ a2** **4. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ a1= \mathbb{W}** **6. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$**



15-105

15/37

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

15/37. A. Troitsky, 1910

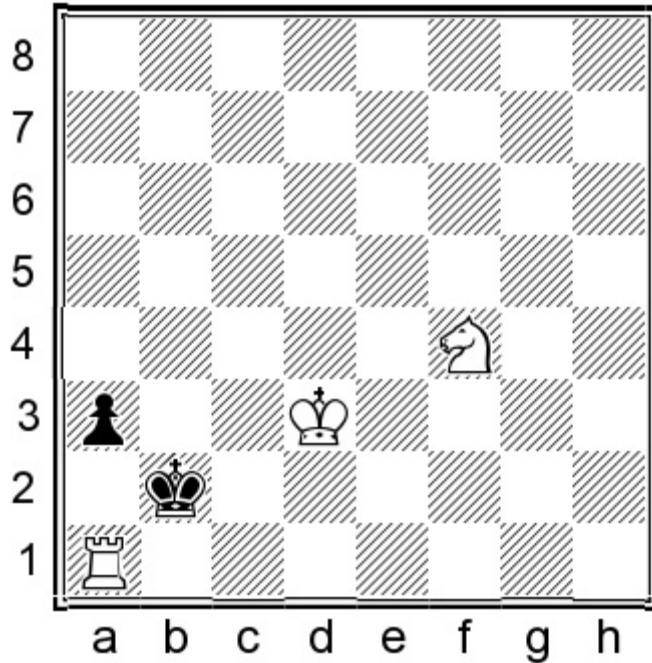
1. $\mathbb{E}c2+$

The line 1. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ $a1=\mathbb{W}$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3+\mathbb{Q}a2!$ (rather than 2... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ 3. $\mathbb{E}c1+\mathbb{Q}a2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4+\mathbb{Q}b2$ 5. $\mathbb{E}xa1\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c1\ a2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2\#$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1+\mathbb{Q}b1!$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b3+\mathbb{W}b2+$ only leads to a draw.

1. $\mathbb{E}c2+\mathbb{Q}b3!$

1... $\mathbb{Q}b1$ is bad: 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2(d5)$ 2... $a1=\mathbb{W}$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3+\mathbb{W}xc3+$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc3\ a2$ 5. $\mathbb{E}b2+$

2. $\mathbb{E}c1\ a1=\mathbb{W}!$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2\ a1=\mathbb{W}$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3+\mathbb{Q}a2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4+\mathbb{Q}b2$ 6. $\mathbb{E}xa1\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c1\Theta+-$) 3. $\mathbb{E}xa1\mathbb{Q}b2$



16-119

W?

4. $\mathbb{E}f1!!$

The only correct place for the rook retreat, as becomes clear from further events.

4... $a2\ 5.\mathbb{Q}c4!\ a1=\mathbb{W}\ 6.\mathbb{Q}d3+\mathbb{Q}a2\ 7.\mathbb{Q}b4+\mathbb{Q}b2\ 8.\mathbb{E}f2+\mathbb{Q}b1$

Black does not have 8... $\mathbb{Q}a3?$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2+$; if 8... $\mathbb{Q}c1$, White wins by 9. $\mathbb{Q}a2+\mathbb{Q}b1$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b3$.

If the white rook stood on e2, Black could save the game with 8... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$.

9. $\mathbb{Q}b3+$

If the rook were on g2 or h2, Black could parry the mate threat with 9... $\mathbb{W}a7$ or 9... $\mathbb{W}a8$ respectively. Now, however, he cannot do it: the knight controls the a6-square.

Domination

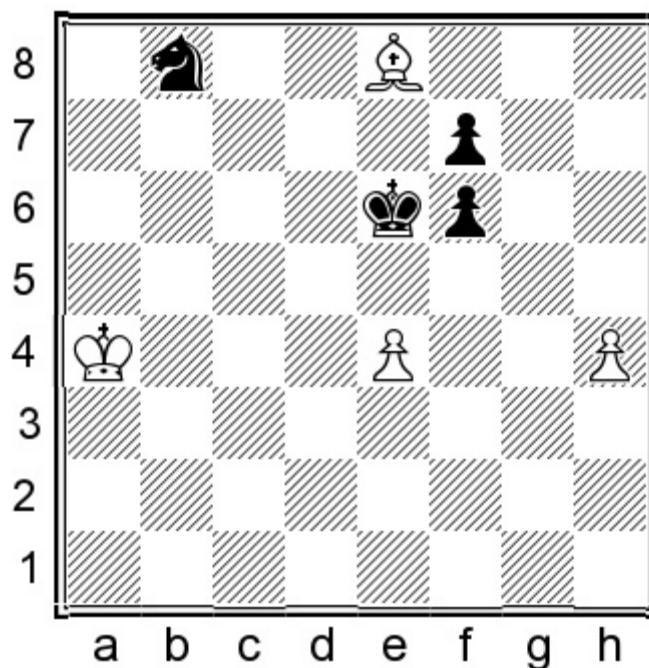
We use the word “domination” to name the technique that involves trapping an enemy piece by taking control of all of its flight squares. This method is not only applicable in endgames. Botvinnik was of the opinion that clever play for domination, in all stages of the game, is a characteristic feature of the chess style of the 12th world champion Anatoly Karpov.

Domination can be implemented in many ways. One can catch and eliminate an enemy piece or simply deprive it of all moves. Sometimes one can just make important squares inaccessible to certain pieces in order to prevent their interference in the main events on the board.

Please visualize some endgames with an extra exchange: catching a lonely knight when it is separated from its king, or a win with a rook versus a bishop when a king is in a dangerous corner, or the Elkies position (diagram 11-24).

Perhaps a knight is caught the most often because it is the least mobile piece.

AI.Kuznetsov 1955



15-106

W?

1.h5 f5 2.h6 ♜f6 3.exf5 ♜a6 4.♗b5!

To prevent liberation of the knight, White must sacrifice his bishop.

4...♝c7+ 5.♔c5!

After 5.♔c6? ♜xe8 (reciprocal zugzwang) 6.♔d7, Black holds: 6...♜xf5! 7.h7 ♜f6+. White must lose a tempo in order to get the same position with Black to move.

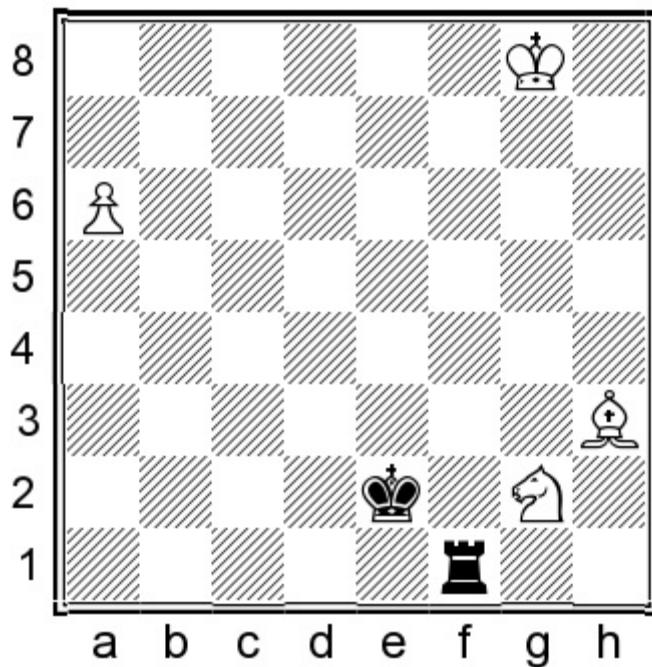
5...♜xe8

5...♜a6+ 6.♔c4 ♜c7 7.♔c6 ♜a6 8.♗b5 ♜c7+ 9.♗b6 ♜e6 10.fxe6 fxe6 11.♔e8! e5 12.♔c5+–

6.♔c6?

The cases when weaker pieces dominate stronger ones are, of course, the most impressive.

J.Sulz 1941



15-107

W?

White cannot win by “normal” means because Black attacks the a-pawn with his rook and king in time. For example, 1.♔c8? ♔d3 2.♔b7 ♕a1 3.♕f4+ ♔c4=,

or 1.♔d7? ♕a1 2.♔b5+ ♔f3 3.♕h4+ ♔e4=,

or 1.♕h4? ♕a1 2.♔c8 ♔d3 3.♕f5 ♔c4=

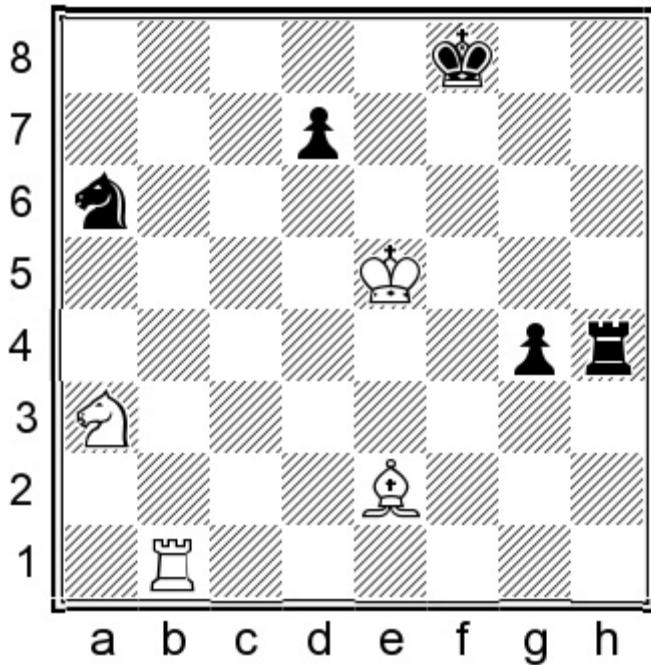
1.♕f4+!! ♕xf4 2.♔d7!+–

A striking situation: all paths to the a-file and to the eighth rank are closed for the rook on an open board (2... $\mathbb{E}f3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$; 2... $\mathbb{E}f1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$; 2... $\mathbb{E}f6$ 3.a7 $\mathbb{E}a6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$).

An equally sudden and striking capture of a rook on an open board is the point of the next study:

Diagram 15-108 has been intentionally omitted.

Y.Bazlov 1997, corrected 2019



15-108a

W?

Play

1. $\mathbb{Q}xa6?$ enables Black to gain the piece back: 1... $\mathbb{E}h5+$ and 2... $\mathbb{E}a5$. Of course, White may try to do without capturing on a6 and proceed with three pieces against two. These positions have not been analyzed seriously, but some (though not many) practical examples confirm that winning chances exist. However White has a more forceful method at his disposal.

1. $\mathbb{E}f1+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ d6+!

2... $\mathbb{E}h5+?$ 3. $\mathbb{E}f5+-$

3. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ g3+ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ $\mathbb{E}xa6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4!$

The rook has no refuge from knight forks.

6... $\mathbb{E}a3+$

6... $\mathbb{E}a8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$

7. $\mathbb{Q}b2!$ $\mathbb{E}a4$

7...g2 8. $\mathbb{E}e1+$

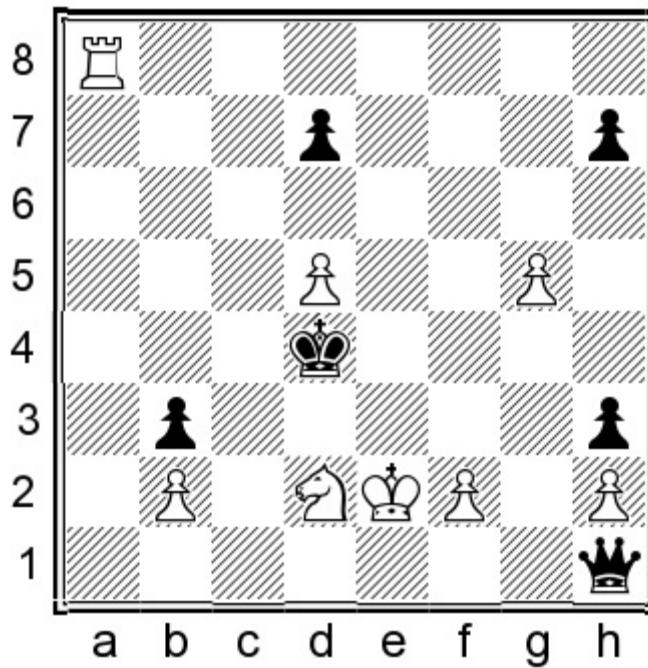
8.†b3 ♕a8 9.†d5+!

The rook is lost.

9...†d8 10.†f8++-

Diagram 15-109 has been intentionally omitted.

L.Kubbel 1914



15-110

W?

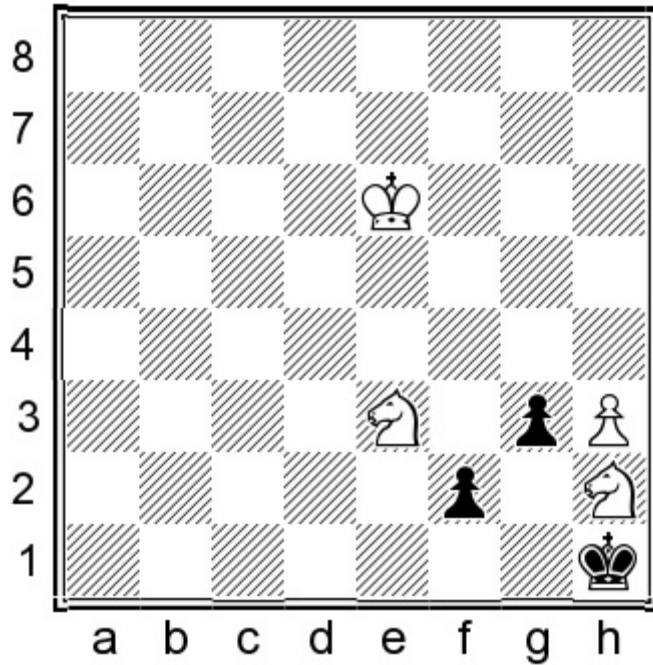
1.g6! (1.†a1? ♕g2!)

1.g6! hxg6 (1...♕g2 2.gxh7 ♕g4+ 3.†f3+) 2.†a1! ♕g2

Here and later on the rook cannot be captured in view of a knight fork with loss of the queen. If 2...♕xd5, the queen will be lost after 3.†a4+ †e5 4.†a5! But now the same mechanism works on the kingside.

3.†g1! ♕xd5 4.†g4+ †c5 5.†g5!+-

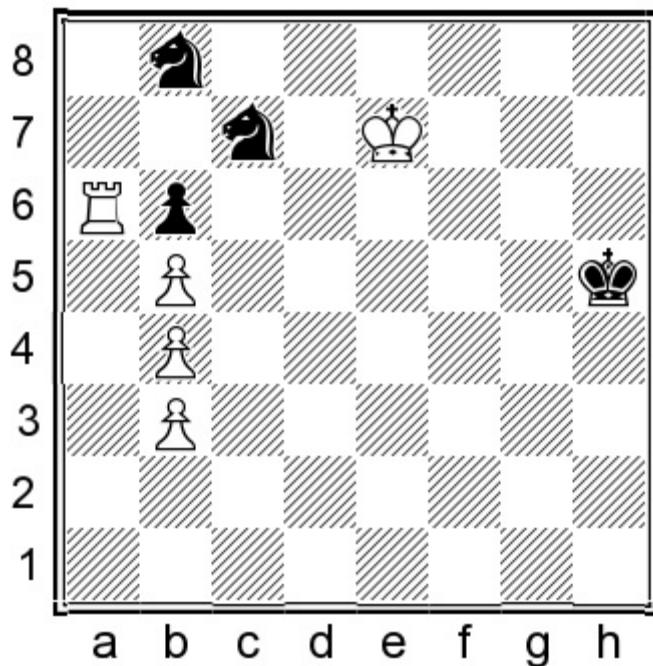
Y.Afek 1997



15-111
W?

After 1. $\mathbb{Q}hg4?$ Black holds by means of 1...f1=+=! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf1 \mathbb{Q}g2!$ 3. h4 $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 4. h5 $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ 5. h6 g2= 1. $\mathbb{Q}hf1!$ g2 2. h4!! g1=+= 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7! \mathcal{O}+-$

Exercises



15-112
15/38
W?

Show/Hide Solution

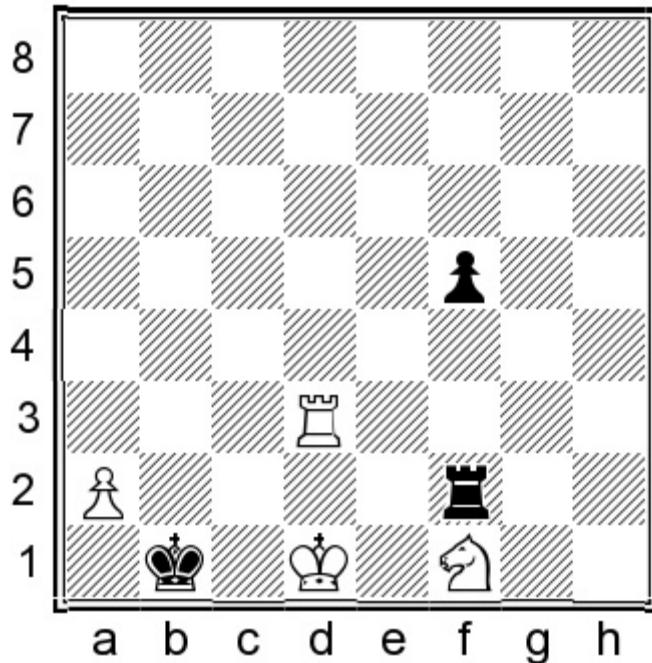
15/38. F.Bondarenko Al.Kuznetsov 1971*

False ideas are 1. $\mathbb{E}xb6?$ $\mathbb{Q}d5+$

or 1. $\mathbb{E}a7?$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 2. $\mathbb{E}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}cd4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ and Black can hold without much effort.

1. $\mathbb{E}a8!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c8+-$

The king alone gains the upper hand against two knights!



15-113a

15/39

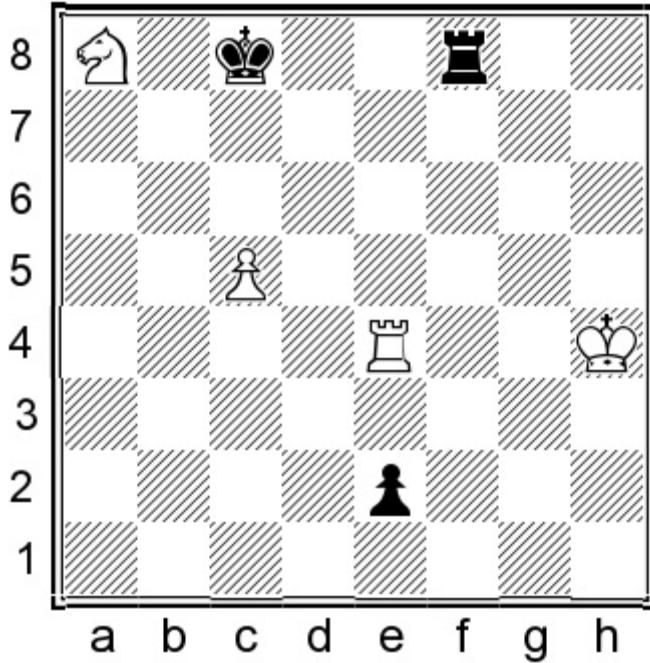
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/39. J.Fritz 1953 (corrected)

1.a3!! (1. $\mathbb{Q}d2+?$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ does not win)

1.a3!! $\mathbb{E}xf1+$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}f4$ (2... $\mathbb{E}h1$ 3. $\mathbb{E}d1+$; 2... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 3. $\mathbb{E}d2+)$ 3. $\mathbb{E}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b4!+-$



15-114
15/40
W?

Show/Hide Solution

15/40. A.Kuriatnikov 1981

1.♕e7!!

The line 1.♗b6+? ♔b7 2.♗g3 (2.♗xe2 ♕f5) 2...♔c6 3.♗a4 ♔b5! Δ 4...e1=♛ leads to a rapid draw.

1.♗xe2? ♔b7 is also unpromising. As we soon shall see, the rook belongs on e1 in this sort of position.

1.♕e7!! e1=♛+

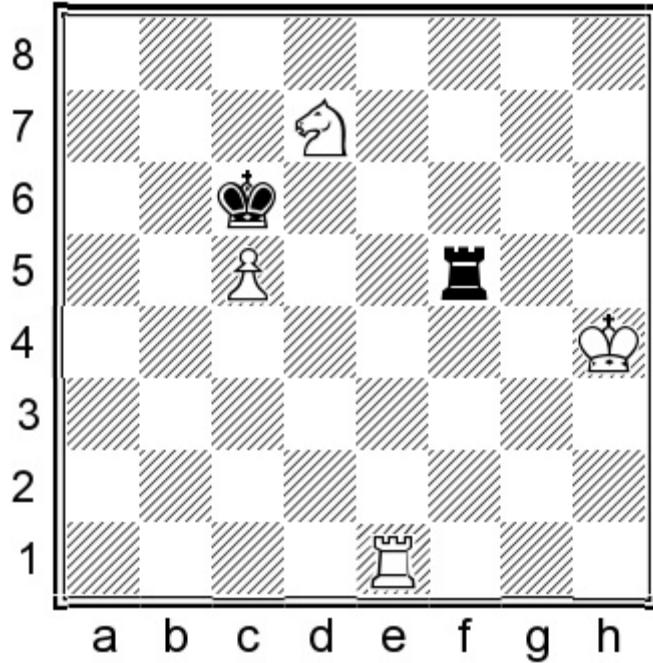
2.♗b6+ was threatened. If 1...♗f4+, then 2.♗g3 ♕c4 3.♗b6+ ♔d8 4.♗xc4 ♕xe7 5.♗f2+-. On 1...♔d8, White wins by means of 2.♗xe2 (the king cannot go to b7) 2...♔d7 3.♗b6+ ♔c6 4.♗e5 ♕f1 5.♗c8 ♕c1 6.♗e7+.

2.♗xe1 ♔b7 3.♗b6!

Rather than 3.♗a1? ♔c6 4.♗a5 ♕f5 5.♗a6+ ♔b7 6.♗a5 ♔c6=.

3...♕f5 (3...♔c6? 4.♗e6+ or 4.♗e5) 4.♗d7 ♔c6

4...♗d5 5.♗e6! ♔c7 6.c6 ♕d6 7.♗xd6 ♔xd6 8.♗e5+-

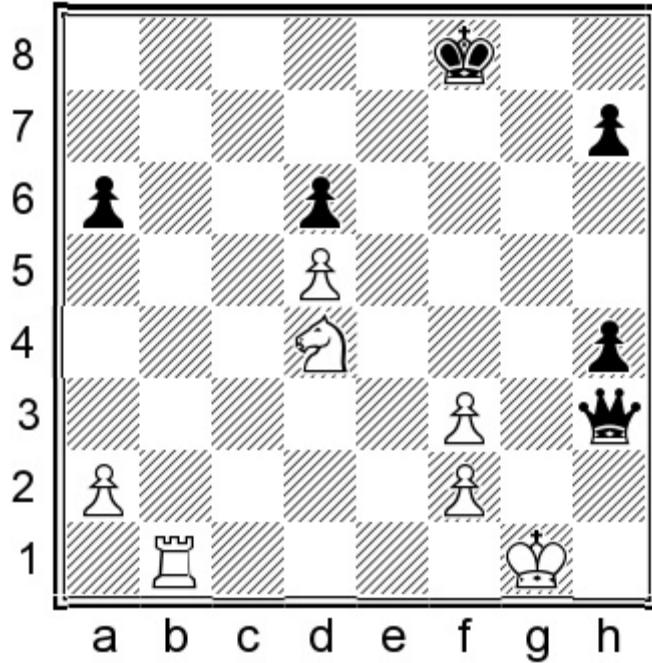


16-120
W?

5. $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ is useless now: 5... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6=$ It is an unexpected trapping of the rook that decides.

5. $\mathbb{Q}e5+! \mathbb{Q}xc5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4!+-$

This is why the white rook went to e1! After 1. $\mathbb{Q}xe2?$, the black rook would have had a safe square (f1) in the final position.



15-115

15/41

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

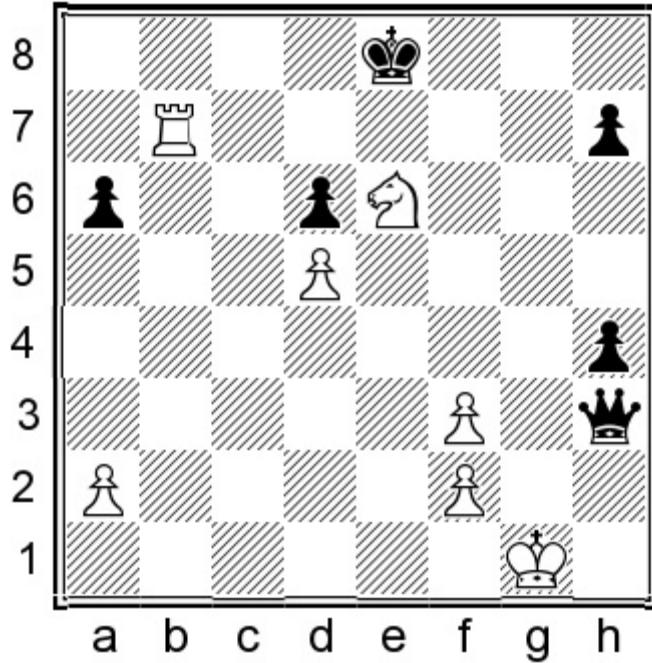
15/41. V. & M. Platov 1905

1. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 2. $\mathbb{B}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$

If 2... $\mathbb{Q}d7?$ 3. $\mathbb{B}f8!$ (with the threat 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$), White obtains his coveted position immediately, while now he cannot play 3. $\mathbb{B}f8?$ in view of 3... $\mathbb{W}xe6!+-$.

3. $\mathbb{B}b7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$

An inferior alternative is 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{B}f7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 5. a4 a5 6. $\mathbb{B}f8O+-$.



16-121
W?

4...Rf7!!

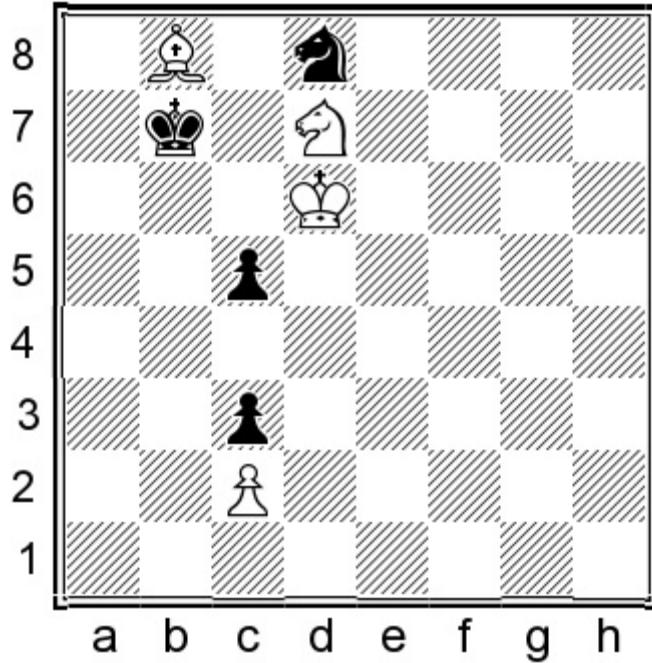
The rook is untouchable in view of the knight fork; White deprives the black queen of the f5-square and creates a threat (5.Rf8+ Qe7 6.Qg5+-).

4...h6 5.Rf8+!

After 5.Rf4? Qe7! 6.a3 a5 7.a4 Qe8! 8.Rf8+ Qd7! O White cannot make any progress because he has already spent his reserve tempo on the queenside.

5...Qd7 (5...Qe7 6.Qf4+-) 6.a3! a5 7.a4 O 7...Qe7 8.Qf4+-

Diagram 16-122 has been intentionally omitted.



15-116

15/42

W?

Play

Show/Hide Solution

15/42. G.Zakhodiakin (corrected) 1948

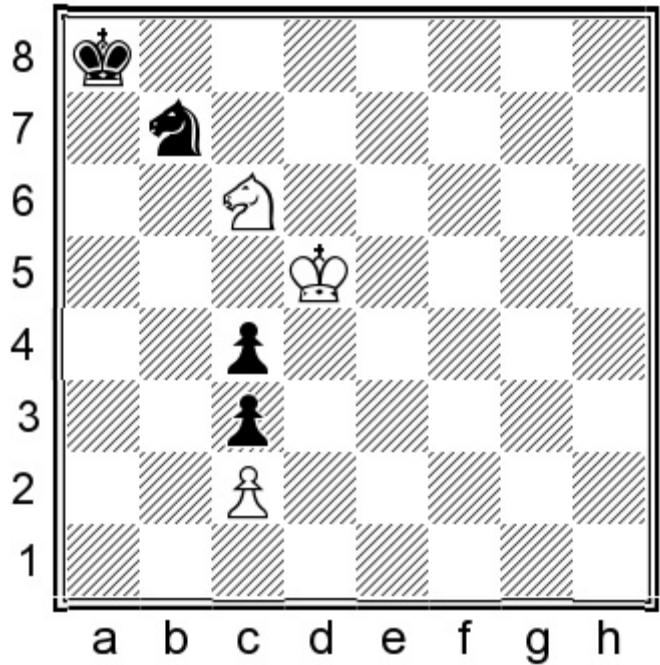
White appears to be in zugzwang and cannot maintain his extra piece. If 1. $\mathbb{Q}xc5?$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b7!$, the brilliant idea seen below does not work.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$

Not 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7?$ c4 and the knight gets out.

4...c4 5. $\mathbb{Q}d5\Theta+-$

A picturesque position: Black, with his extra pawn, is completely without moves.



16-123

B

Bibliography

Listed here are books used, to a greater or lesser extent, in writing this book. To a considerable degree, however, the book is based on my extensive collection of endgame positions and analyses, gathered over many years of coaching (my “exercise filing-cabinet” being a part of it), so that I can hardly recall all the primary sources for the positions and analyses included here.

Some of the books listed here are recommended to my readers; these have short synopses appended. Among the rest are some good works, some mediocre and even some obviously poor. Perhaps I should have pointed these out specifically, to warn my readers against buying them. However, in my experience, the least competent authors are often the most vocal and argumentative. I do not want to waste time, either my publisher’s or my own, in pointless squabbles with them in chess periodicals or on the Internet.

Please do not think that I recommend some of my earlier works here out of immodesty. I have never written a book unless I was convinced that I had some important ideas to share with my potential readers, plus some fitting examples to illustrate these ideas, examples which have proven their worth over years of actual chess training. Perhaps it is this approach that has made my books useful to chessplayers of the most varied qualifications, from amateurs to the world’s leading grandmasters.

The approach taken by some authors seems far less productive to me. Sometimes they even write quite frankly, in their prefaces, that they have first chosen a subject, often one quite new to them, and only then started searching for appropriate examples. Within the limited period of a book’s actual writing, it is quite difficult to make a deep investigation into the selected subject plus to collect original and high-quality illustrations.

This list is divided into several sections for clarity. The classification is somewhat arbitrary, since some books fit several descriptions.

Endgame Handbooks

These are books that give a more or less systematic presentation of the whole of endgame theory, or at least some of its chapters. The most complete is undoubtedly the *Yugoslavian Encyclopaedia of Endgames*, but most readers feel more comfortable when thoughts are represented verbally rather than symbolically.

Averbakh, Yuri (editor), *Shakhmatnye okonchaniya*, second edition (in five volumes), Fizkultura I Sport (FiS), Moscow, 1980-1984. A high-quality monograph written by Yuri Averbakh in co-operation with other Soviet endgame authorities. The authors took several earlier endgame handbooks (by R. Fine, M. Euwe, A. Chéron) as starting points and added a great deal of their own creative work, correcting old analyses and providing many new examples.

Levenfish & Smyslov, *Teoriya ladeinykh okonchanii*, 3rd edition, FiS, Moscow, 1986. A classic on the most important parts of endgame theory.

Müller & Lamprecht, *Fundamental Chess Endings*, Gambit Publications Ltd., London, 2001

Panchenko, Alexander, *Teoriya i praktika shakhmatnykh okonchanii*, Ioshkar-Ola, 1997

Various authors, *Encyclopaedia of Endgames* (in 5 volumes), Chess Informant, Belgrade, 1982-1993
Villeneuve, Alain, *Les Finales* (in 2 volumes), Garnier, Paris, 1982-1984

Analytical Collections

I really appreciate this sort of book because they bring much fresh material, not borrowed from other authors. In addition, their examples are usually well-analyzed and sometimes even well-generalized and explained.

Dvoretsky, Mark, *Shkola vysshego masterstva I – Endshpil*, 2nd edition, Kharkov, Ukraine, Folio, 2002. (In English: *School of Chess Excellence I – Endgame Analysis*, Edition Olms, Zürich, 2001; In German: *Geheimnisse gezielten Schachtrainings*, Edition Olms, Zürich, 1993) This was my first book; it was published in 1989 in Russian under the title *Iskusstvo analiza (The Art of Analysis)*. In 1991, Batsford Publishers translated it into English under the title *Secrets of Chess Training*; the book then received the British Chess Federation “Book of the Year” award. The new editions, both Russian and English, are considerably corrected and enlarged. The book contains only original endgame analyses by me and my pupils; on this basis, I explain the most important endgame ideas and methods of improving one’s chess strength in general, not merely in playing endgames.

Grigoriev, Nikolai, *Shakhmatnoe tvorchestvo N. Grigorieva*, 2nd edition, FiS, Moscow, 1954. The first edition was compiled by Konstantinopolsky and the second by Bondarevsky. Grigoriev was a classic analyst of the endgame, pawn endgames in particular. The book contains his numerous studies, analytical works, and tutorial materials.

Korchnoi, Victor, *Practical Rook Endings*, Edition Olms, Zürich, 2002. The outstanding grandmaster makes an extremely deep investigation of rook endgames from his own games. However, one should realize that the book is complicated, and designed for players of advanced skill.

Lutz, Christopher, *Endgame Secrets*, Batsford, London, 1999

Endgame Manuals

Amazingly, I have not yet found a single endgame manual which I could recommend wholeheartedly to my pupils (the wish to fill this gap stimulated me to write this book). Most existing books are useless methodologically or elementary and useful for novices only. Some books do not cover endgame theory fully – in this case, they are mentioned in the next section

Alburt and Krogius, *Just the Facts!*, 2nd edition, Chess Information and Research Center, New York, 2005

Averbakh, Yuri, *Chto nado znat' ob endshpile*, 3rd edition, FiS, Moscow, 1979. The English edition of this book is *Chess Endings: Essential Knowledge* (Everyman Chess, London 1993)

Soltis, Andrew, *Grandmaster Secrets – Endings*, Thinker’s Press, Davenport, Iowa, 1997. The book is original and fresh, with a good collection of examples, but the author’s pedagogical concepts do not inspire my trust.

Books on Various Endgame Themes

In this section of the index, various books are mentioned. Their quality depends not so much on the

subject as on the competence of the author, his ability to underline and to explain the most important and instructive ideas.

Belavsky & Mikhalkishin, *Winning Endgame Technique*, Batsford, London, 1995

Belavsky & Mikhalkishin, *Winning Endgame Strategy*, Batsford, London, 2003

Benko, Pal, *Chess Endgame Lessons* (2 volumes), Self-published, 1989, 1999. Grandmaster Pal Benko is a great connoisseur of endgames and a renowned study composer. The book is a compilation of his monthly columns in the American *Chess Life* magazine. Both theoretical endgames and practical cases from various levels, from amateur to grandmaster, are analyzed.

Nunn, John, *Tactical Chess Endings*, George Allen & Unwin, London 1981

Speelman, Jonathan, *Endgame Preparation*, Batsford, London, 2003. Some important endgame problems and concepts are analyzed, such as zugzwang, the theory of corresponding squares, pawn structure and weak pawns, an extra outside passed pawn, an extra pawn with all pawns on one wing, etc.

Speelman, Jonathan, *Analysing the Endgame*, Batsford, London, 2003

Books on Endgame Technique

As I have already mentioned in the preface, general endgame technique (and, particularly, the technique of exploiting an advantage) is beyond the scope of this book, although its important principles are described here more than once. A more systematic presentation of endgame technique can be obtained from the books named below.

Dvoretsky & Yusupov, *Tekhnika v shakhmatnoi igre*, 3rd edition, Folio, Kharkov, Ukraine, 2009. (In English: *Secrets of Endgame Technique*, Olms, Zürich, 2008. In German: *Effektives Endspieltraining*, Beyer Verlag, 1996) One of the main themes of the book is the problem of technique, although there are also chapters on other subjects, such as methods of improving one's endgame play, theory of certain types of endgame, etc.

Mednis, Edmar, *Practical Endgame Lessons*, Three Rivers Press, New York, 1986. The author's views on basic endgame techniques seem at first sight very different from mine and Shereshevsky's, but in fact they are very close to ours. This book is perhaps not so deep as Shereshevsky's, but is more attractive and accessible.

Shereshevsky, Mikhail, *Strategiya endshpilya*, FiS, Moscow, 1988. The English edition of this book is *Endgame Strategy* (Everyman Chess, London, 1994). This book has already been mentioned in the preface. The author explains the main principles of endgame technique and gives numerous illustrative examples.

Endgame Materials in Various Publications

Only the most important of the many sources I have used are mentioned here.

Belavenets, Sergey, *Master Sergey Belavenets*, FiS, Moscow, 1963. The book includes tutorial lectures on endgames that Belavenets had prepared shortly before the Second World War (in which he was killed). The lectures are very good, and gave me (and later, Shereshevsky) an impetus to prepare

our own tutorial materials on endgame technique.

Dvoretsky, Mark, *Shkola vysshego masterstva 3 – Strategiya*, Folio, Kharkov, Ukraine, 1998 (In English: *School of Chess Excellence 3 – Strategic Play*, Edition Olms, Zürich, 2008. In German: *Geheimnisse der Schachstrategie*, Edition Olms, Zürich, 1999) The first and largest part of the book is dedicated to various aspects of positional play; the second part handles positions with limited material, mainly problems of technique.

Nunn, John, *Secrets of Practical Chess*, 2nd edition, Gambit, London, 2007. This book contains practical advice on many problems important for a practical player. The endgame section of the book is, in my opinion, slightly below the level of other chapters, but the professional and intellectual level of Nunn's work as a whole is so high that I can recommend it without reservation to every chessplayer, whatever his level.

Shereshevsky, Mikhail, *The Soviet Chess Conveyor*, Sofia, 1994

Chess Informant

Chess magazines: 64, *Shakhmaty v SSSR*, *New in Chess*, etc.

Index of Players

Numbers in bold denote that the player named first had White. Numbers in brackets denote that the game was also discussed or mentioned in the text of the bracketed diagram number.

Adorján, András – Orsó **12-41a**

Agdestein, Simen – Karpov 12-35

Agzamov, Georgy – Tukmakov 12-17

Ahues, Carl – Schrage 1-95

Akopian, Vladimir -

Georgiev, Kir. **9-185**

Svidler 9-180

Alapin, Simon – Fahrni 1-27, (1-29), (1-88), (1-184), (1-189), (6-39)

Alburt, Lev -

de Firmian 10-6

Dlugy **9-14**

Lerner **3-14**

Alekhine, Alexander -

Bogoljubow **8-13**

Capablanca (**9-132**)

Keres 1-150

Maróczy **12-19**

Reshevsky 9-100, **12-32**

Tartakower **8-23**

Vidmar 10-21

Yates **1-22, (1-25)**

Alexandria, Nana – Chiburdanidze **14-29**

Alexandrov, Alexandr – Zubarev 7-51

Allakhverdian, Mikhail – Duz-Khotimirsky 10-5

Ambroz, Jan – Ciocaltea **13-46**

Anand, Viswanathan -

Leko 9-214

Svidler 15-13, (15-19)

Andric, Dragoslav – Rogulj **13-28**

Antoshin, Vladimir -

Kaidanov 5-43

Korchnoi 9-121

Arencibia, Walter – Vladimirov **9-36**

Arlazarov, Vladimir – Shcherbakov 12-26

Aronin, Lev – Smyslov **1-146**

Aronson, Lev – Mednis **1-163**

Arulaid, Aleksandr – Gurgenidze **8-24**

Augustin, Josef – Vilela 3-17

Averbakh, Yury -

Bebchuk **1-112, (1-143)**

Bondarevsky **13-30**

Euwe **9-212**

Gurgenidze (14-50)

Makarychev 5-40

Suetin **12-25**

Taimanov 9-110, (9-114), (9-209)

Veresov **6-16**

Zurakhov **12-27, (12-29)**

Azmaiparashvili, Zurab -

Beliavsky 9-72

Eolian **1-190**

Shirov **4-37**

Balashov, Yury -

Dvoretsky **9-74**

Smyslov **7-41**

Barcza, Gedeon – Simagin **3-2**

Bareev, Evgeny – Bronstein 15-12

Barlov, Dragan – Trabattoni 15-83

Bata – Gustavson 1-46

Batuev, Andrey – Simagin **12-8**

Bebchuk, Evgeny -

Averbakh 1-112, (1-143)

Yudovich (jr.) 14-9

Beliavsky, Alexandre -

Azmaiparashvili **9-72**

Dolmatov **14-26, 14-39**

Dorfman 13-38

Dreev 9-21

Eingorn 3-1

Miles **14-35**

Radulov **9-78**

Stefanov 6-41

Topalov 8-21

Belikov, Vladimir – Khalifman 1-52

Bellón López, Juan -

Chekhov **9-125**

Minic **5-30**

Tatai **11-36**

Belov, Igor – Yachmennik 14-25

Benko, Pal – Gereben **9-140, (9-152)**

Berezhnoy, Victor – Gusev **5-35**

Berger – Kotlerman **5-13, (5-14), (5-17), (5-19)**

Bernstein, Osip -

Smyslov **9-67**

Zukerman **9-104**

Berzinš, Alfreds – Pilskalniece 15-99

Bezgodov, Alexey 9-218

Bischoff, Klaus – Maiwald 4-14

Biyiasas, Peter – Browne 9-250

Blatný, František – Fichtl 14-44

Blümich, Max – Tarrasch 9-77

Bobotsov, Milko – Stolar 11-26

Bogatyrchuk, Fedor -

Lasker 6-33

Mazel **9-237**

Bogoljubow, Efim -

Alekhine 8-13

Maróczy 12-29

Böhm, Hans – Timman **15-5**

Boleslavsky, Isaak – Botvinnik 9-130

Bologan, Viorel – Vokác **1-65**

Bondarevsky, Igor -

Averbakh 13-30

Ebralidze 2-20

Bonner, Gerald – Medina **3-16**

Böök, Eero – Tal 2-29

Borisenko, Georgy -

Botvinnik 9-132

Simagin **12-9**

Botvinnik, Mikhail -

Boleslavsky **9-130**

Borisenko **9-132**

Eliskases **7-61**

Kotov 5-28

Matanovic 1-130

Minev **12-2**

Model **(6-3)**

Moiseev 11-27

Najdorf **9-116, (9-121)**

Ravinsky **(12-2)**

Spassky 7-43

Szabó 11-11

Taimanov 1-25

Tal **12-1**

Troianescu (13-44)

Bouaziz, Slim – Pomar **1-156**

Bowden, Karl – Duncan **8-30**

Brodsky, Mikhail – Khmelnitsky **9-47**

Bron, Vladimir – Ordell **13-9**

Bronstein, David -

Bareev **15-12**

Gufeld 9-68

Keres **14-43**

Simagin 15-94

Taimanov 10-12

Browne, Walter -

Biyiasas **9-250**

Ljubojevic 1-72

Peters 9-76

Wolff 11-43

Brüggemann, Joachim – Darius **1-123**

Bukhman, Eduard – Osnos 7-49

Bykova, Elizaveta – Volpert **7-15**

Capablanca, José Raúl -

Alekhine (9-132)

Janowsky **6-5, (6-15)**

Kostic **9-65**

Lasker, Ed. **1-106, (1-118)**

Lasker, Em. **14-31**

Marshall 9-108

Menchik **9-12**

Tartakower **9-240**

Yates **9-119, (9-121)**

Carvajal – Kozlovskaya 9-239
Charushin, Victor – Rosenholz **6-4, (6-18)**
Chekhov, Valery -
Bellón 9-125
Taimanov 9-232
Chekhover, Vitaly – Lasker **7-36**
Chernin, Alexandr -
Marjanovic **14-48**
Zviagintsev 6-12
Chiburdanidze, Maya -
Alexandria 14-29
Muresan **7-18, (7-21)**
Smyslov 11-48
Suba 10-18
Watson **1-183**
Chigorin, Mikhail -
Schlechter **12-18**
Tarrasch **1-162, 9-91, 9-99, (9-103), 15-51**
Chikovani, Yury – Gavrikov 4-30
Chistiakov, Alexandre – Dvoretsky **11-19**
Christiansen, Larry – Ivanov, I 6-34
Cifuentes, Roberto – Langeweg **5-20**
Ciocaltea, Victor – Ambroz 13-46
Cohn, Erich – Rubinstein **1-84**
Colle, Edgar – Grünfeld **1-134**
Conquest, Stuart – Mohr 1-73
Coull, Alison – Stanciu **1-5**
Cramling, Dan – Rohde 9-25
Cvetkovic, Srdjan – Stefanovic **3-20**

Darius, Harald – Brüggemann 1-123
Day, Angela – Nakagawa 1-110

de Firmian, Nick – Albert **10-6**

Denker, Arnold – Horowitz 1-86

Despotovic, Momcilo – Dvoretsky **1-171**

Djuric, Zeljko – Mednis 9-113

Dlugy, Max – Albert 9-14

Dolmatov, Sergey -
Beliavsky 14-26, 14-39

Georgadze **11-12**

Sorm **(9-33)**

Dombrowska – Lyszowska **4-9**

Donner, Jan Hein – Smyslov **6-38**

Dorfman, Iosif -
Beliavsky **13-38**

Lerner 9-182

Stein 7-10

Draško, Milan – Vratonjic **1-192**

Dreev, Alexey -

Beliavsky **9-21**

Ehlvest **9-101**

Dueball, Jürgen – Ostermeyer 9-102

Dukanovic – Minev 4-36

Duncan, Christopher – Bowden 8-30

Duras, Oldrich -

Marshall (9-110)

Spielmann 1-6

Duz-Khotimirsky, Fedor – Allakhverdian **10-5**

Dvoiris, Semen – Kovalev **(9-39)**

Dvoretsky, Mark -

Balashov 9-74

Chistiakov 11-19

Despotovic 1-171

Lickleder 1-54

Zaitsev, I (9-82)

Dzhindzhikhishvili, Roman – Miles 7-20

Ebralidze, Archil – Bondarevsky **2-20**

Ehlvest, Jaan -

Dreev 9-101

Topalov **12-36**

Eingorn, Vereslav – Beliavsky **3-1**

Eliseevic – Pytel **9-139**

Eiskases, Erich – Botvinnik 7-61

Emms, John – Riemersma (**9-51**)

Eolian, Levon – Azmaiparashvili 1-190

Ermolin – Petriaev **12-20**

Ernst, Thomas – Kharlov 1-107

Esipenko, Andrey – Short **3-21k**

Estrin, Yakov – Gusev (**1-24**)

Euwe, Max -

Averbakh 9-212

Hromádka **11-7**

Menchik **6-29**

Reshevsky **12-28**

Yanofsky **5-36**

Evans, Larry – Rossolimo **14-51**

Fahrni, Hans – Alapin **1-27, (1-29), (1-88), (1-184), (1-189), (6-39)**

Fernandez Garcia, Jose – Kotronias **9-156**

Ferragut, Arnaldo – Hernandez 1-157

Fichtl, Jiri – Blatný **14-44**

Fine, Reuben – Najdorf **3-25**

Finkel, Aleksandr – Tseitlin, Mark 14-22

Fischer, Robert -

Lombardy 1-119

Petrosian 7-43a
Reshevsky 15-63
Spassky 7-22
Taimanov 4-8
Walther 5-8
Flamberg, Aleksandr – Salwe 1-76
Flear, Glenn -
Krnic 7-32
Legky 9-234
Flohr, Salomon – Vidmar 9-223
Flórián, Tibor – Hollis 9-194
Fokin, Sergey – Mankus 2-14
Fridman – Khaunin 9-42
Fridstein, German -
Klaman 10-20
Lutikov 8-25
Friedlander, I – Nunn 1-58
Fries-Nielsen, Jens Ove – Plachetka **8-12**
Ftacnik, Lubomir – Murey 11-40

Galic – Popa 7-60
Galuzin – Nebylitsyn 7-38
Gaprindashvili, Nona – Levitina 11-14
Gavrikov, Viktor -
Chikovani 4-30
Kharitonov 1-74
Gazík, Igor – Pétursson **1-113**
Gelfand, Boris -
Lautier 15-30
Wang Hao 9-244
Geller, Uzi – Janetschek 9-247
Georgadze, Tamaz -

Dolmatov 11-12

Vaganian 15-73

Yusupov 11-50

Georgiev, Kiril – Akopian 9-185

Gereben, Erno – Benko 9-140, (9-152)

Gershon, Alik – Thorhallson **4-7**

Gerusel, Mathias – Kestler **7-50a**

Gheorghiu, Florin – Prandstetter 12-33

Glebov – Maslov 1-104

Glek, Igor – Leitao **9-58**

Gligoric, Svetozar -

Ljubojevic 9-154

Smyslov 9-61

Gliksman, Darko – Novak (**9-88**)

Golberg – Zhuk **1-151**

Goldberg, Grigory – Tolush **7-14**

Goldstein – Shakhovich **15-78, (15-89)**

Golombek, Harry – Keres **1-75**

Grigorian, Karen – Timoshchenko 9-249

Grischuk, Alexander – Moiseenko **3-25a**

Gritsak, Orest – Sulipa 1-152

Grószpéter, Attila – Szabó 3-6

Grünfeld, Ernst – Colle 1-134

Gufeld, Eduard -

Bronstein 9-68

Honfi (14-21)

Kavalek 15-20

Rahman 14-21

Guliev, Sarkhan – Tukmakov **1-118**

Gulko, Boris -

Lutikov 15-22

Short 1-34

Uhlmann 9-10

Gunsberg, Isidor – Pillsbury 15-27

Gurevich, Dmitry – Suba 14-19, (14-21)

Gurgenidze, Bukhuti -

Arulaid 8-24

Averbakh (**14-50**)

Smyslov 7-21

Gusev – Berezhnoy 5-35

Gusev, Nikolai – Zhukhovitsky **11-6**

Gusev, Yury – Estrin (1-24)

Gustavson – Bata **1-46**

Gutman, Lev – Mikenas **4-6, (4-25)**

Haakert, Jürgen – Süss 1-111

Hansen – Nimzovitch **1-83**

Hansen, Lars Bo – Winants 1-135

Hartston, William -

Penrose 13-20

Stean 9-128

Havasi – Peko **1-105**

Hebden, Mark – Wood **9-90**

Hector, Jonny – Krasenkov **9-16**

Hedge – Palatnik **11-8**

Heinemann, Thies – Zelbel **9-208d**

Hernandez – Ferragut **1-157**

Hernandez, Roman – Sula **3-4**

Hickl, Jörg – Solomon **15-85**

Hollis, Adrian – Flórián **9-194**

Honfi, Károly – Gufeld (**14-21**)

Horowitz, Israel – Denker **1-86**

Hort, Vlastimil – Ree 15-69

Hromádka, Karel – Euwe 11-7

Hübner, Robert – Zaitsev, A. 9-27

Ibragimov, Ildar – Obukhov 9-246

Ilivitsky, Georgy – Taimanov **9-228**

Ilyin-Zhenevsky, Alexandre – Miasoedov **4-26**

Ionov, Sergey -

Karasev **9-119**

Yusupov 1-173

Ivanchuk, Vasily -

Kharitonov 12-40

Lautier **9-46**

Ivanov, Igor -

Christiansen **6-34**

Yermolinsky 1-175

Ivanov, Sergey -

Polovodin **9-128**

Yusupov 1-178

Janetschek, Karl – Geller, U. **9-247**

Janowsky, Dawid – Capablanca 6-5, (6-15)

Jansa, Vlastimil – Rublevsky **15-86**

Janssen, K. – Simagin 5-49

Kachiani, Ketino – Maric **1-174**

Kaidanov, Grigory -

Antoshin **5-43**

Yermolinsky 14-54

Karasev, Vladimir – Ionov 9-128

Karpov, Anatoly -

Agdestein **12-35**

Kasparov **7-53**

Knaak **9-210**

Ljubojevic 5-32

Petrosian 9-84
Sokolov, A. **7-31**
Timman 14-32
Kashdan, Isaac – Stoltz 7-28
Kasparov, Garry -
Karpov 7-53
Piket 9-127
Polgar, Ju. 14-4
Short **9-69, (9-72)**
Sveshnikov 6-24
Yusupov **11-34, (11-36)**
Kavalek, Lubomir -
Gufeld 15-20
Larsen 9-233
Keene, Raymond – Ljubojevic (11-49)
Kengis, Edvins -
Korchnoi 8-7
Yuneev **15-54**
Keres, Paul -
Alekhine **1-150**
Bronstein 14-43
Golombek 1-75
Larsen 12-22, (12-33)
Lengyel **2-27**
Petrosian 9-115
Portisch **15-52**
Randviir 1-177
Smyslov 9-85
Szabó 9-54
Kestler, Hans-Günter – Gerusel 7-50a
Khalifman, Alexandre -
Belikov **1-52**

Leko **11-41, (11-49)**

Wojtkiewicz 6-22

Kharitonov, Andrey -

Gavrikov 1-74

Ivanchuk **12-40**

Kharlov, Andrey – Ernst **1-107**

Khaunin – Fridman **9-42**

Khmelnitsky, Igor – Brodsky 9-47

Kholmov, Ratmir -

Timoshchenko **9-157**

Tseshkovsky (**11-51**)

Kindermann, Stefan – Miles 14-27

Klaman, Konstantin – Fridstein 10-20

Knaak, Rainer -

Karpov 9-210

Lobron 9-20

Kobaidze, Tsiuri – Tsereteli **15-67**

Kobese, Watu – Tu Hoang Thai **1-23**

Kochiev, Alexandre – Smyslov **9-29, (9-31), (9-36)**

Komarov, Dmitry – Yermolinsky 1-88

Korchnoi, Viktor -

Antoshin **9-121**

Kengis **8-7**

Wade 1-114

Kosteniuk, Alexandra – Pähtz 9-152

Kostic, Boris – Capablanca 9-65

Kotlerman, S. – Berger 5-13, (5-14), (5-17), (5-19)

Kotov, Alexandre – Botvinnik **5-28**

Kotronias, Vasilios – Fernandez Garcia 9-156

Kovacevic, Vlado -

Rajkovic **9-238**

Sax 4-22

Kovalev, Andrey – Dvoiris (9-39)

Kozlov – Nevmerzhitsky **15-59**

Kozlovskaia, Valentina – Carvajal **9-239**

Kramnik, Vladimir – Yudasin 15-33

Krasenkov, Mikhail – Hector 9-16

Krivonosov, Oleg – Savchenko 6-10

Krnic, Zdenko – Flear **7-32**

Kuzmin, Gennady -

Matokhin 12-11

Miles **(10-22)**

Langeweg, Kick – Cifuentes 5-20

Larsen, Bent -

Kavalek **9-233**

Keres **12-22, (12-33)**

Matanovic 10-28

Olafsson 11-46

Tal **9-22, 10-8**

Torre **9-70**

Lasker, Edward -

Capablanca 1-106, (1-118)

Lasker, Em. 10-2

Moll **1-108**

Lasker, Emanuel -

Bogatyrchuk **6-33**

Capablanca 14-31

Chekhover 7-36

Lasker, Ed. **10-2**

Levenfish **9-136**

Nimzovitch **3-7**

Tarrasch **1-45**

Lautier, Joel -

Gelfand 15-30

Ivanchuk 9-46

Laveryd, Peter – Wikström **1-193**

Legky, Nikolay – Flear 9-234

Leitao, Rafael – Glek 9-58

Leko, Peter -

Anand **9-214**

Khalifman 11-41, (11-49)

Lengyel, Levent – Keres 2-27

Lerner, Konstantin -

Alburt 3-14

Dorfman **9-182**

Vyzhmanavin 9-45

Levenfish, Grigory – Lasker 9-136

Levitina, Irina – Gaprindashvili **11-14**

Liberzon, Vladimir – Šahovic 15-44

Lickleder, Andreas – Dvoretsky **1-54**

Lilienthal, Andor – Smyslov **9-243**

Lisitsyn, Georgy – Zagorovsky **7-3**

Ljubojevic, Ljubomir -

Browne **1-72**

Gligoric **9-154**

Karpov **5-32**

Keene **(11-49)**

Xie Jun **15-9**

Yusupov 1-13, (9-199)

Lobron, Eric – Knaak **9-20**

Lombardy, William – Fischer **1-119**

Lundin, Erik – Unzicker 9-141, (9-156), (9-158), (9-180)

Lutikov, Anatoly -

Fridstein 8-25

Gulko **15-22**

Lutz, Christopher -

Timman 14-15

Tondivar 15-1

Lyszowska, Anna – Dombrowska 4-9

Mackenzie, Arthur John – Sergeant **12-26**

Maiwald, Jens-Uwe – Bischoff **4-14**

Makarychev, Sergey – Averbakh **5-40**

Malaniuk, Vladimir – Yusupov 9-114

Malisauskas, Vidmantas – Sandler (**9-93**)

Mandler – Procházka **1-168**

Mankus – Fokin **2-14**

Maric, Alisa – Kachiani 1-174

Marin, Mihail – Slovineanu **5-18**

Marjanovic, Slavoljub – Chernin 14-48

Maróczy, Géza -

Alekhine 12-19

Bogoljubow **12-29**

Marshall 12-37

Tarrasch **8-26**

Marovic, Drazen – van der Weide 14-12

Marshall, Frank -

Capablanca **9-108**

Duras (**9-110**)

Maróczy **12-37**

Réti **1-166**

Schlechter **1-182**

Teichmann 6-25

Yates 1-44

Martynov, Pavel – Ulybin **1-120**

Maslov – Glebov **1-104**

Matanovic, Aleksandar -

Botvinnik 1-130

Larsen **10-28**

Uhlmann **6-40**

Matokhin, R. – Kuzmin, G. **12-11**

Matveeva, Svetlana – Rapoport **9-128**

Mazel, Isaak – Bogatyrchuk 9-237

McShane, Luke – Piket 13-25

Medina, Antonio – Bonner 3-16

Mednis, Edmar -

Aronson 1-163

Djukic **9-113**

Menchik, Vera -

Capablanca 9-12

Euwe 6-29

Metger, Johannes – Paulsen 4-21

Miasoedov, Grigory – Ilyin-Zhenevsky 4-26

Mikenas, Vladas – Gutman 4-6, (4-25)

Miles, Anthony -

Beliavsky 14-35

Dzhindzhikhishvili **7-20**

Kindermann **14-27**

Kuzmin, G. (10-22)

Webb **9-105, (9-229)**

Minev, Nikolay -

Botvinnik 12-2

Dukanovic **4-36**

Tsouros 9-106

White **10-31**

Minic, Dragoljub – Bellón 5-30

Model, Abram – Botvinnik (6-3)

Mohr, Stefan – Conquest **1-73**

Moiseenko – Grischuk 3-25a

Moiseev, Oleg – Botvinnik **11-27**

Moldoyarov – Samochanov **15-96**

Moll, Kurt – Lasker, Ed. 1-108

Morozevich, Alexandre – van Wely **15-29**

Müller, Hans – Svacina 1-109

Müller, Klaus Uwe – Vukic 9-24

Muñoz Sotomayor, Hugo – Salazar **15-24**

Muresan, Margareta – Chiburdanidze 7-18, (7-21)

Murey, Yakov – Ftacnik **11-40**

Najdorf, Miguel -

Botvinnik 9-116, (9-121)

Fine 3-25

Nakagawa, Emiko – Day **1-110**

Nazarevsky – Simonenko **7-4**

Nebylitsyn – Galuzin **7-38**

Nepomniashchy, Mikhail – Polovodin **7-44**

Neumann, Gustav – Steinitz **8-11**

Nevmerzhitsky – Kozlov 15-59

Nielsen, Poul Erik – Ravikumar 1-55

Nikolaevsky, Yury – Taimanov **1-161**

Nimzovitch, Aaron -

Hansen 1-83

Lasker 3-7

Rubinstein **2-27**

Stoltz 1-53

Tarrasch **1-122**

Norri, Joose – Svidler **9-126**

Novak, Ivan – Gliksman (9-88)

Novikov, Igor – Shmirin 12-10

Obukhov, Aleksandr – Ibragimov **9-246**

Olafsson, Fridrik – Larsen **11-46**

Onischuk, Alexander – Urkedal 9-208a

Ordel – Bron 13-9

Orsó, Miklós – Adorján 12-41a

Osnos, Viacheslav -

Bukhman **7-49**

Yudasin 1-29

Ostermeyer, Peter – Dueball **9-102**

Oszváth, Andras – Szily 12-21

Pähtz, Elisabeth – Kosteniuk **9-152**

Palatnik, Semen – Hedge 11-8

Paulsen, Louis – Metger **4-21**

Pawelczak – Sternberg 10-32

Peko – Havasi 1-105

Penrose, Jonathan -

Hartston **13-20**

Perkins **8-27**

Perkins, Alan – Penrose 8-27

Peters, John – Browne **9-76**

Petersons, Andrey – Privorotsky 1-129

Petriaev – Ermolin 12-20

Petrosian, Arshak – Tseshkovsky **8-28**

Petrosian, Tigran -

Fischer **7-43a**

Karpov **9-84**

Keres **9-115**

Portisch 9-205

Schmid **15-42**

Petrushin, Alexandr – Zakharov 15-104

Pétursson, Margeir – Gazík 1-113

Piket, Jeroen -

Kasparov **9-127**

McShane **13-25**

Pillsbury, Harry Nelson – Gunsberg **15-27**

Pilskalniece – Berzinš **15-99**

Pirrot, Dieter – Yusupov **7-37**

Plachetka, Ján -

Fries-Nielsen 8-12

Schmidt 9-87

Polak, Tomas – Velicka 9-26

Polgar, Judit -

Kasparov **14-4**

Short **9-89, (9-91)**

Polgar, Sofia – Smyslov **15-56**

Polovodin, Igor -

Ivanov, S. **15-76**

Nepomniashchy 7-44

Polugaevsky, Lev -

Ree **(9-62), 9-66**

Zakharov **4-17**

Pomar Salamanca, Arturo – Bouaziz 1-156

Popa, Toma – Galic **7-60**

Portisch, Ferenc – Suetin 9-50

Portisch, Lajos -

Keres 15-52

Petrosian **9-205**

Potter, William – Zukertort **1-155**

Prandstetter, Eduard – Gheorghiu **12-33**

Pribyl, Josef – Radev 11-51

Prins, Lodewijk – Sämisch 13-35

Privorotsky, Oleg – Petersons **1-129**

Procházka – Mandler 1-168

Psakhis, Lev – Sveshnikov 14-43a

Pytel – Eliseevic 9-139

Rabinovich, Ilya -

Ragozin 9-209

Romanovsky (11-20)

Radev, Nikolay – Pribyl **11-51**

Radulov, Ivan -

Beliavsky 9-78

Timman (9-85)

Ragozin, Viacheslav – Rabinovich, I 9-209

Rahman, Tahmidur – Gufeld 14-21

Rajkovic, Dušan – Kovacevic 9-238

Randviir, Jüri – Keres **1-177**

Rappoport – Matveeva 9-128

Rashkovsky, Naum – Vladimirov 9-39

Ravikumar, Vaidyanathan – Nielsen **1-55**

Ravinsky, Grigory – Botvinnik (12-2)

Ree, Hans -

Hort 15-69

Polugaevsky (9-62), 9-66

Taimanov 15-2

Timman 3-18

Reshevsky, Samuel -

Alekhine **9-100**, 12-32

Euwe 12-28

Fischer 15-63

Réti, Richard – Marshall 1-166

Ricardi, Pablo – Valerga **15-14**

Riemersma, Liefber – Emms (9-51)

Rigan, Josef – Yandemirov **9-107**

Rodriguez, Amador – Romanishin 10-25

Rogers, Ian – Shirov **1-97**

Rogulj, Branko – Andric 13-28

Rohácek, Ivan – Stoltz **11-16**
Rohde, Michael – Cramling **9-25**
Romanishin, Oleg – Rodriguez **10-25**
Romanovsky, Petr – Rabinovich, I (**11-20**)
Rosenholz – Charushin 6-4, (6-18)
Rossolimo, Nicolas – Evans 14-51
Rovner, Dmitry – Shchipunov **9-144, (9-155)**
Rubinstein, Akiba -
 Cohn 1-84
 Nimzovitch 2-27
 Salwe 11-29
 Spielmann 9-251
 Tartakower **11-17**
Rublevsky, Sergey – Jansa 15-86

Šahovic, Dragutin – Liberzon **15-44**
Sakaev, Konstantin – Sunye Neto (**7-10**)
Salazar, Hernán – Muñoz Sotomayor 15-24
Salwe, Georg -
 Flamberg **1-76**
 Rubinstein **11-29**
Sämisch, Fritz – Prins **13-35**
Samochanov – Moldoyarov 15-96
Sandler, Leonid – Malisauskas (9-93)
Savchenko, Stanislav -
 Krivonosov **6-10**
 Yakovich 9-94a
Savon, Vladimir – Zheliandinov **9-248, (9-215)**
Sax, Gyula -
 Kovacevic **4-22**
 Tseshkovsky **9-2**
Schlage, Willi – Ahues **1-95**

Schlechter, Carl -
Chigorin 12-18
Marshall 1-182
Schmid, Lothar – Petrosian 15-42
Schmidt, Włodzimierz – Plachetka **9-87**
Schneider, Aleksandr – Stangl 2-17
Schöneberg, Manfred – Starck **5-10**
Schüssler, Harry – Trolldalen 2-25
Sergeant, Edward – Mackenzie 12-26
Shabalov, Alexandr – Varavin **6-20**
Shakhnovich – Goldstein 15-78, (15-89)
Shamkovich, Leonid -
Spiridonov 9-59
Wirthensohn **12-5**
Shcherbakov, Leonid – Arlazarov **12-26**
Shchipunov, Vladimir – Rovner 9-144, (9-155)
Shirov, Alexey -
Azmaiparashvili 4-37
Rogers 1-97
Timman **1-144**
Topalov 5-16
Shmirin, Alexandre – Novikov **12-10**
Short, Nigel -
Esipenko 3-21k
Gulko 1-34
Kasparov 9-69, (9-72)
Polgar, J. 9-89, (9-91)
Sika, Tomáš – Švieda 1-191
Simagin, Vladimir -
Barcza 3-2
Batuev 12-8
Borisenko 12-9

Bronstein **15-94**

Janssen **5-49**

Simonenko – Nazarevsky 7-4

Slovineanu, Vyacheslav – Marin 5-18

Smyslov, Vasily -

Aronin 1-146

Balashov 7-41

Bernstein 9-67

Chiburdanidze **11-48**

Donner 6-38

Gligoric 9-61

Gurgenidze **7-21**

Keres **9-85**

Kochiev 9-29, (9-31), (9-36)

Lilienthal 9-243

Polgar, So 15-56

Tringov 5-48

Sokolov, Andrey -

Karpov 7-31

Yusupov **14-24**

Solomon, Stephen – Hickl 15-85

Sorm – Dolmatov (9-33)

Spassky, Boris -

Botvinnik **7-43**

Fischer **7-22**

Spielmann, Rudolf -

Duras **1-6**

Rubinstein **9-251**

Spiridonov, Nikola – Shamkovich **9-59**

Stanciu, Gabriela – Coull 1-5

Stangl, Marcus – Schneider **2-17**

Starck, Bodo – Schöneberg 5-10

Stean, Michael – Hartston **9-128**

Stefanov, Parik – Beliavsky **6-41**

Stefanovic – Cvetkovic 3-20

Stein, Leonid -

Dorfman **7-10**

Vaganian **9-138a**

Steinitz, Wilhelm – Neumann 8-11

Stephenson, M. – Timoshchenko 15-31

Sternberg, Pavel – Pawelczak **10-32**

Stoliar, Efim – Bobotsov **11-26**

Stoltz, Gösta -

Kashdan **7-28**

Nimzovitch **1-53**

Rohácek 11-16

Sturua, Zurab – Yusupov **10-13**

Suba, Mihai -

Chiburdanidze **10-18**

Gurevich, D. **14-19, (14-21)**

Suetin, Alexey -

Averbakh 12-25

Portisch, F. **9-50**

Sula, Zegir – Hernandez 3-4

Sulipa, Alexandre – Gritsak **1-152**

Sunye Neto, Jaime -

Sakaev (7-10)

Vaganian 1-186

Süss, Alois – Haakert **1-111**

Svacina – Müller **1-109**

Šveida – Sika **1-191**

Sveshnikov, Evgeny -

Kasparov **6-24**

Psakhis **14-43a**

Svidler, Petr -

Akopian **9-180**

Anand **15-13, (15-19)**

Norri 9-126

Szabó, László -

Botvinnik **11-11**

Grószpéter **3-6**

Keres **9-54**

Tukmakov **9-51**

Szily, József – Ozsváth **12-21**

Taimanov, Mark -

Averbakh **9-110, (9-114), (9-209)**

Botvinnik **1-25**

Bronstein **10-12**

Chekhov **9-232**

Fischer 4-8

Ilivitsky 9-228

Nikolaevsky 1-161

Ree **15-2**

Tal, Mikhail -

Böök **2-29**

Botvinnik 12-1

Larsen 9-22, 10-8

Zaitsev, I **9-34, (9-36), (9-107)**

Tarrasch, Siegbert -

Blümich **9-77**

Chigorin 1-162, 9-91, **9-99, (9-103)**, 15-51

Lasker 1-45

Maróczy 8-26

Nimzovitch 1-122

Tartakower, Savielly -

Alekhine 8-23

Capablanca 9-240

Rubinstein 11-17

Yates 1-12

Tatai, Stefano – Bellón 11-36

Teichmann, Richard – Marshall **6-25**

Thorhalsson, Trostur – Gershon 4-7

Timman, Jan -

Böhm 15-5

Karpov **14-32**

Lutz **14-15**

Nunn **13-31**

Radulov (**9-85**)

Ree **3-18**

Shirov 1-144

Velimirovic (**11-27**)

Yusupov 9-222

Timoshchenko, Gennady -

Grigorian, K. **9-249**

Kholmov 9-157

Stephenson **15-31**

Tolush, Alexandre -

Goldberg 7-14

Zagoriansky 14-45

Tondivar, Babak – Lutz **15-1**

Topalov, Veselin -

Beliavsky **8-21**

Ehlvest 12-36

Shirov **5-16**

Torre, Eugenio – Larsen 9-70

Trabattoni, Franco – Barlov **15-83**

Tringov, Georgy – Smyslov **5-48**

Troianescu, Octav – Botvinnik **(13-44)**

Trolldalen, Morten – Schüssler **2-25**

Tseitlin, Mark – Finkel **14-22**

Tsereteli, Mzia – Kobaidze 15-67

Tseshkovsky, Vitaly -

Kholmov (11-51)

Petrosian, A. 8-28

Sax 9-2

Yusupov 9-73

Tsouros, Georgios – Minev **9-106**

Tu Hoang Thai – Kobese 1-23

Tukmakov, Vladimir -

Agzamov **12-17**

Guliev 1-118

Szabó 9-51

Veingold **15-11**

Uhlmann, Wolfgang -

Gulko **9-10**

Matanovic 6-40

Ulybin, Mikhail – Martynov 1-120

Unzicker, Wolfgang – Lundin **9-141, (9-156), (9-158), (9-180)**

Urkedal, Frode – Onischuk **9-208a**

Vaganian, Rafael -

Georgadze **15-73**

Stein 9-138a

Sunye Neto **1-186**

Zapata 15-84, (15-91)

Vaisser, Anatoly – Djuric **9-88**

Vaisman, Alexandre – Zurakhov 9-149

Valerga, Diego – Ricardi 15-14

van der Weide – Marovic **14-12**

van Wely, Loek – Morozevich 15-29
Varavin, Viktor – Shabalov 6-20
Vasiukov, Evgeny – Zhuravlev 15-43
Veingold, Aleksandr – Tukmakov 15-11
Velea, Constantin – Vidoniak 15-8
Velicka, Petr – Polak 9-26
Velimirovic, Dragoljub – Timman (11-34)
Veresov, Gavriil – Averbakh 6-16
Vidmar, Milan -
Alekhine 10-21
Flohr 9-223
Vidoniak, Roman – Velea 15-8
Vilela, Jose – Augustin **3-17**
Vladimirov, Evgeny -
Arencibia 9-36
Rashkovsky 9-39
Vokác, Marek – Bologan 1-65
Volpert, Larisa – Bykova 7-15
Vratonjic, Slobodan – Draško 1-192
Vukic, Drasko – Müller **9-24**
Vyzhmanavin, Aleksey – Lerner **9-45**

Wade, Robert – Korchnoi **1-114**
Wang Ho – Gelfand 9-244
Walther, Edgar – Fischer **5-8**
Watson, William – Chiburdanidze 1-183
Webb, Simon – Miles 9-105, (9-229)
White – Minev 10-31
Wikström, Per – Laveryd 1-193
Winants, Luc – Hansen, L.B. 1-135
Wirthensohn, Heinz – Shamkovich 12-5
Wojtkiewicz, Alexander – Khalifman **6-22**

Wolff, Patrick – Browne **11-43**

Wood, David – Hebden 9-90

Xie Jun – Ljubojevic 15-9

Yachmennik – Belov **14-25**

Yakovich, Yuri – Savchenko **9-94a**

Yandemirov, Valery – Rigan 9-107

Yanofsky, Daniel – Euwe 5-36

Yates, Frederick -

Alekhine 1-22, (1-25)

Capablanca 9-119, (9-121)

Marshall **1-44**

Tartakower **1-12**

Yermolinsky, Alexey -

Ivanov, I **1-175**

Kaidanov **14-54**

Komarov **1-88**

Yudasin, Leonid -

Kramnik **15-33**

Osnos **1-29**

Yudovich (jr), Mikhail – Bebchuk **14-9**

Yuneev, Aleksey – Kengis 15-54

Yusupov, Artur -

Georgadze 11-50

Ionov **1-178**

Kasparov 11-34, (11-36)

Ljubojevic **1-13, (9-199)**

Malaniuk **9-114**

Pirrot 7-37

Sokolov, A. 14-24

Sturua 10-13

Timman **9-222**

Tseshkovsky **9-73**

Zagoriansky, Evgeny – Tolush **14-45**

Zagorovsky, Vladimir – Lisitsyn 7-3

Zaitsev, Alexandre – Hübner **9-27**

Zaitsev, Igor -

Dvoretsky (**9-82**)

Tal 9-34, (9-36), (9-107)

Zakharov, Alexandre -

Petrushin **15-104**

Polugaevsky 4-17

Zapata Ramirez, Alonso – Vaganian **15-84, (15-91)**

Zelbel – Heinemann 9-208d

Zheliandinov, Victor – Savon 9-248, (9-250)

Zhuk – Golberg 1-151

Zhukhovitsky, Samuil – Gusev 11-6

Zhuravlev, Valery – Vasiukov **15-43**

Zubarev, Nikolay – Alexandrov **7-51**

Zuckerman, Bernard – Bernstein 9-104

Zukertort, Johannes – Potter 1-155

Zurakhov, Vladlen -

Averbakh 12-27, (12-29)

Vaisman **9-149**

Zviagintsev, Vadim – Chernin **6-12**

Index of Composers and Analysts

A diagram number in boldface denotes a position stemming from the given composer or analyst. If a name is merely mentioned in the text, normal type is used. Annotators of their own games are not indicated, nor are those whose names are, for whatever reason, omitted from the text (for example, the author's own analytical corrections and additions are often not named). Double names (e.g. "Platov, Vasily & Mikhail" or "Levenfish, Grigory & Smyslov, Vasily") are included in the index only when the book contains more than one study or analysis by that duo.

- Aagaard, Jacob 9-162
Abramov, Lev 13-30
Aczel, Gergely 6-21
Adamson, Henry **1-101**
Afek, Yochanan **15-111**
Agapov, Igor **6-15**
Al' Adli **10-1**, (10-7)
Alekhine, Alexander 12-28
Aloni, Hillel **14-36**
An Ancient Problem **1-18**
Anand, Viswanathan 9-174
Anikaev, Yury 9-182
Arizmendi Martinez, Julen Luis 9-214
Aronin, Lev 9-117
Averbakh, Yury 4-5, **5-12**, **5-14**, 6-5, **6-19**, 6-25, **7-9**, 7-22, 7-29, 7-43, **8-18**, 9-127, **9-155**, 9-195, 9-206, 10-1, 10-2, 10-8, 10-12, 11-22, **12-15**, 12-29, 14-52

Bähr, Walter 1-125, **1-136**, **1-137**
Baranov, Boris 11-32
Barbier, Georges **8-1**
Barcza, Gedeon **11-22**
Baron, C. 1-65
Bazlov, Yuri **15-108a**
Behting, Johann **1-116**

Behting, Karl **15-62**
Belavenets, Sergey 9-65
Benko, Pal 1-186, 6-26, **8-16**, 9-113, 9-250, **10-19**, **15-19**
Berger, Johann 5-6, **11-3**, **13-14**
Bezgodov, Alexey 9-255
Bianchetti, Rinaldo **1-38**
Blundell, David **2-21**
Bologan, Viorel 5-22, 9-129, 15-8, 15-21
Bondarenko, Filipp **15-112**
Botokanov, Alym **1-66**
Bottlik, Ivan **1-142**
Botvinnik, Mikhail **13-44**
Bozic, Aleksandar 9-154
Breider, Bruno **15-16**
Bron, Vladimir **7-1**
Bücker, Stefan 9-204

Cathignol, Pierre-Antoine **15-24**
Centurini, Luigi **6-10**, (11-10)
Chebotarev, Oleg 9-202
Chekhover, Vitaly **1-149**, **2-3**, **8-35**, **15-58**
Chernous, Vladimir **15-17**
Chéron, André **2-9**, **5-24**, 6-26, 7-11, (9-14), **9-28**, **9-31**, **9-32**, **9-33**, 10-34, 13-17, 13-23, **13-26**
Cochrane, John 14-15
Costantini, C. 1-34
Cozio, Carlo 11-3, (11-9)

Dautov, Rustem 9-158, 9-172a, 9-180
de Feijter, Cor **15-71**
Dedrle, František 1-10, **1-141**, (1-148), **13-32**, (13-35), (13-42), (13-48)
del Rio, Ercole 11-11, (11-12), (11-15), (11-22)
Deutsche Schachzeitung **15-72**
Dolmatov, Sergey 9-151, 14-28

Drtina, Ján **1-10**

Duras, Oldøich **15-48**

Dvizov, Evgeny **1-79**

Dvoretsky, Mark **1-24**, 1-28, **1-82**, 1-178, 1-186, 2-17, **2-19**, **4-25**, 5-30, 5-48, 5-49, 6-28, 7-32, 7-53, 9-62, 9-91, 9-110, 9-123, **9-146**, 9-158, 9-180, 9-183, 9-185, 9-194, 9-205, 9-210, 9-214, 9-223, 9-228, 9-234, 9-247, 9-249, 10-13, 11-12, 11-51, 12-29, 13-9, 13-12, 13-48, 14-27, 14-29, 14-39, 14-48, 15-31, 15-78

Elkies, Noam **1-64**, (1-81), **11-24**, (11-41), (11-49)

Emms, John 15-20

Enevoldsen, Jens **11-28**, (11-49)

Eucken, Kurt **12-7**

Euwe, Max 1-188

Faragó, Paul **2-8**

Fine, Reuben **1-187**, **3-21**, 9-158, 9-240, 10-6, 10-21

Fishbein, Alex 3-21c, 9-181b, 9-257a

Fontana, Robert 5-8

Fridstein, German 9-91

Frink, Orrin 1-81, **4-10**

Fritz, Jindrich **15-92**, **15-113a**

Frolovsky, Alexandr **15-80**

Gabdrakipov, I **1-92**

Gansäuer, Andreas 9-147

Gashimov, Vugar 9-228

Gerbstman, Alexandr **1-100**, **4-12**

Giri, Anish 9-208e

Gligoric, Svetozar 7-22

Goldin, Vladimir 9-240

Gorgiev, Tigran **1-47**

Grigoriev, Nikolay **1-17**, **1-30**, **1-32**, **1-33**, **1-48**, **1-71**, (1-72), 1-77, **1-80**, **1-81**, **1-89**, **1-98**, **1-99**, **1-148**, 1-150, 1-151, **1-159**, **1-165**, **1-173**, **1-184**, (1-193), **2-12**, **2-15**, 2-16, 2-17, (4-32), 6-33, **9-95**, **13-7**, **13-27**, (13-30), (13-43), **15-15**, **15-47**

- Gufeld, Eduard 15-104
Gulko, Boris 9-62
Gunst, Julius 15-90
Guretzky-Cornitz, Bernhard von **11-4, 13-15, 13-18, 13-21, 13-23, 13-30, (13-26), (13-48)**
Gurgenidze, David **2-16, 9-79, 15-23**
Gurvich, Abram **15-68**
- Halberstadt, Vitaly **3-19**
Hašek, Josef **15-57, 15-100**
Heckler, Dink 9-181
Henneberger, Moritz **5-6**
Heuäcker, Paul **6-9, (6-10)**
Hoch, Yehuda **6-13**
Hooper, David 1-188
Horowitz, Israel **2-28**
Horwitz, Bernhard **4-5, 7-10**
Horwitz, Bernhard & Kling, Josef **1-153, 1-167, 7-11, 8-20, 9-55, 9-56, (9-96a), (9-104), 11-1, 14-23, 15-63**
- Inarkiev, Ernesto 7-61, 9-79, 14-55, 15-84, 15-116
Ionov, Sergey 9-114
Issler, Werner 6-7
- Kalinin, Aleksandr **7-12**
Kaminer, Sergey **15-97**
Kantorovich, Vadim **9-158, (9-180), 9-194, 9-205**
Karstedt, Max **14-38, (14-46)**
Kashdan, Isaac **2-28**
Kasparian, Genrikh **9-56, (9-58), (9-59), 9-60, (9-96a), (9-104), 13-27, (13-30), 14-47, 15-41, 15-79**
Kasparov, Garry 9-251
Katsnelson, Leonard **7-6, 7-27, 13-49, 15-25**
Keres, Paul **9-82, 11-24, 12-3, 13-35**
Khachaturov, Andrey **1-77, (1-176)**

Khenkin, Viktor **13-12, 13-13**, 13-15, 13-22, **13-36, 13-37**, 13-38, **13-42**, 13-44, **13-48**
Kholmov, Ratmir **9-145**, 11-51
Kiriakov, Petr **4-24**
Kok, Theodorus **1-117**
Kondratiev, Viktor **1-94**
Konstantinopolsky, Alexandre 7-4
Kopaev, Nikolay **1-158, 8-19, 9-3, 9-15**, 9-25, 9-61, 9-65, 9-119, 9-132
Kozlowski, Szaja **7-47**
Krnic, Zdenko 9-66
Krogius, Nikolay 9-228
Kromsky, D. 10-5
Kubbel, Leonid **2-7, 2-25, 10-34, 12-13, 12-14, 15-87, 15-98, 15-101, 15-110**
Kryukova, Irina 9-138a
Kuriatnikov, Anatoly **15-114**
Kuznetsov, Alexandre **15-106, 15-112**

L'Ami, Erwin 9-168a
Lasker, Emanuel **9-81**, (9-82), (9-84)
Leikin, A. 10-21
Leitao, Rafael 9-60
Lequesne, Eugene **11-3**, (11-4)
Levenfish, Grigory 9-228
Levenfish, Grigory & Smyslov, Vasily 9-57, **9-103**, 9-132, 9-155, **9-178**, 9-223, 9-251
Lewitt, Moritz **4-29**
Liburkin, Mark **7-48, 15-46**
Lindgren, Fredrik 1-193
Lolli, Giambattista **14-37**
Lucena, Luis Ramirez 9-1
Lurye, Boris **8-31**
Lutz, Christopher 14-20, 14-22

Maizelis, Ilia 1-95, **1-185**, 1-186, 1-187, **8-9**, 9-99, 11-29
Maksimovskikh, Aleksandr **15-25, 15-35**

Mandelail, M. **7-2**
Mandler, Arthur **1-181**, (1-183)
Marin, Mihail 7-55, 9-132, 9-214
Markov, Evgeny **15-49**
Marwitz, Jan **7-17**
Matanovic, Aleksandar 5-32
Mattison, Hermann **1-9**, 1-115, **10-33**, **15-36**
Mestel, Jonathan 1-85
Micawber, Wilburt 9-162, 9-198
Miles, Anthony 10-23
Milic, Borislav 9-154, 11-36
Minev, Nikolay 5-48, 9-110
Mitrofanov, Leopold **7-27**, **8-31**, **15-23**
Møller, Jørgen **15-88**
Moravec, Josef **1-4**, **1-70**, **1-78**, **1-90**, **1-91**, **1-96**, **8-15**
Mrkalj, Jadranko 15-89
Müller, Karsten 1-172, 3-7, 3-11, 3-21b, 4-33, 7-25, 7-43a, 7-58, 9-22, 9-89, 9-96a, **9-96b**, 9-111, 9-181a, 9-181b, 9-208h, 9-219, 9-233, 9-236, 9-251a, 9-254, 9-257a, 10-7, 10-22, 10-31, 11-48, 14-33, 14-43a, 15-21, 15-78, 16-34, 16-84, 16-85
Müller, Karsten & Lamprecht, Frank 3-7, 7-30
Murey, Yakov 15-63

Nadareishvili, Gia **14-46**
Naer, Evgeny 1-88
Naumann, Alexander 15-22
Navara, David 9-93
Neuenschwander, Beat **1-31**, (2-12)
Neurohr, Stephan 5-45
Neustadtl, Hermann **1-8**, **1-28**, (9-140)
Nielsen, Peter Heine 9-60
Nimzovitch, Aaron 15-1
Norlin, Adolf **5-25**
Nunn, John 5-37, 7-53, 11-53, 14-5, 15-78, 15-104

Osanov, V. 10-5

Pachman, Ludek **15-53**

Panchenko, Alexandr 12-37

Pechenkin, Petr **15-61**

Pervakov, Oleg **15-18**

Pfrommer, Christoph 11-26

Philidor, François-André **9-17, 9-17a** **13-2**, (13-3), **13-11**, (13-13), **13-17, 14-10**, (14-14), (14-18)

Platov, Vasily **11-2**

Platov, Vasily & Mikhail **4-28, 9-80, 15-115**

Pogosyan, Vardan 9-92, 9-93, 9-103, 9-120, 9-123, 9-133, 9-158, 9-181, 9-183, 9-199 – 9-201, 9-205, 9-214

Polgar, Sofia 15-11

Ponziani, Domenico **4-20**, (4-21), (4-22), (4-24), **13-1**

Post, Erhard **1-176**

Prokeš, Ladislav **1-42**, (1-44), **1-115, 13-5, 15-89**

Przepiórka, Dawid **15-91**

Rauch, Meir **1-56**

Rauzer, Vsevolod **4-2, 4-2b**, (4-7), (5-8), (7-32)

Réti, Richard **1-35, 1-41, (1-41)**, (1-43), **1-181**, (1-183), **3-13, 7-46, 8-10, 8-34, 8-37**, (10-10), (10-19), **15-38, 15-39**

Rezvov, Nikolay **10-35, 15-17**

Riabinin, Nikolay **15-49**

Rinck, Henri **3-5, 15-34, 15-102, 15-103**

Rogozenko, Dorian 5-18

Romanovsky, Petr **9-44**, 9-48

Roslov, Yury **11-15**

Rossi, Pietro **8-29**

Rothländer, Karl **1-124**

Rubenis, A. 1-164

Saavedra, Fernando **8-1**

Sackmann, Franz **1-11**, (1-21)
Salov, Valery 9-114
Salvio, Alessandro **2-1**, 9-1
Salvioli, Carlo **1-14**, **5-11**, 13-18
Sarychev, Alexandr & Kirill **1-43**, **15-10**
Scipione, Genovino 9-1
Seleznev, Alexey **10-27**, **15-37**
Seuffert, P. **7-5**
Seyboth, Hans **4-23**
Shipov, Sergey 11-44
Simkhovich, Froim **15-50**, **15-70a**, **15-75**
Smyslov, Vasily **4-15**, (4-25), **9-96a**, **9-96b**, **15-60**, **15-77**
Sokov, Vasily **8-17**
Solomon, Stephen 5-8
Somov-Nasimovich, Evgeny **1-16**, **4-19**
Sozin, Veniamim 8-22
Speelman, Jonathan **1-87**, **5-26**, 7-58, 9-120, **12-16**
Stark, Thomas 9-185h
Steckner, Johannes **9-158**, (9-180), 9-181, 9-183, 9-218
Studenetsky, Alexey 1-49
Sulz, Jindrich **6-14**, **15-107**
Szen, József – 14-13

Tarrasch, Siegbert **5-9**, 8-28, 9-96a
Timman, Jan **1-63**, **1-68**, (1-78), 11-26
Tisdall, Jonathan 7-58
Tkachenko, Sergey Nikolaevich **10-35**
Treiber, Burkhard 5-37, 7-30
Troitsky, Alexey **1-40**, **1-67**, **1-164**, **2-6**, **7-16**, **8-14**, **14-3**, **15-65**, **15-74**, **15-101**, **15-105**

Ullmann, Josef **8-36**

Valles, Vicente 1-185

van Breukelen, Gijs **4-11**

Vancura, Josef 4-10, **9-43, 11-9, 11-10**

van Vliet, Louis **12-12**

Vera, Reynaldo 10-25

Villeneuve, Alain 5-32, **11-47**, (11-49), 12-37

Vulfson, Vladimir 9-101, 9-183

Walker, George (1-11), 1-21, **1-69**

Weenink, Henri **1-15**, (2-12), **4-18, 15-82**

Yanvarjov, Igor 9-198, 14-21

Yusupov, Artur 6-30, 9-195, **15-3**

Zahrab **10-4**

Zaitsev, Igor 9-108, 9-207, 9-241

Zakhodiakin, Gleb **14-55, 15-45, 15-64, 15-116**

Index of Strategic and Tactical Techniques

When a technique is a particular case of a more general technique (for example, “mined squares” is a particular case of corresponding squares), it is not mentioned in the list of the more general case. Many positions are found in more than one list because several different techniques are used in them.

anti-opposition: 1-32, 1-36, 1-181, 1-183, 1-186, 1-187, 1-190, 9-199, 13-45

autopilot: 4-31, 4-33, 4-35, 5-8

bad bishop: 6-16 – 6-34, 6-40, 6-41, 7-38, 7-44, 7-47, 7-49 – 7-61, 11-16, 15-53

barrier: 2-11, 2-15, 2-28, 3-12, 6-34 – 6-41, 7-37 – 7-41, 7-43a, 7-51, 10-6, 11-17, 11-19, 11-22, 11-26, 11-38, 11-51, 14-1, 14-2, 14-37, 14-38, 15-10, 15-97

bishop sacrifice: 1-23, 2-14, 2-25, 4-18, 4-23, 4-24, 5-16, 5-33, 5-40, 5-45, 6-9, 6-15, 6-38, 11-18, 14-19 – 14-22, 14-28, 15-23, 15-30, 15-32, 15-36, 15-76, 15-79, 15-82, 15-90, 15-92, 15-94, 15-100, 15-106, 15-116

blockade of passed pawns: 5-1, 7-37, 7-43, 7-43a, 8-23, 9-55 – 9-57, 9-59, 9-96a, 9-99, 9-104, 9-130, 9-132, 9-222, 9-239

breakthrough: 1-102 – 1-118, 1-144, 1-147, 1-161, 1-178, 3-14, 5-26, 5-28, 5-34, 5-49, 7-25, 7-39, 9-136, 9-179, 9-201, 9-248, 11-51, 14-26, 14-55, 15-26, 15-27, 15-31, 15-59

changing the leader: 8-21, 8-26, 8-30

checkmate: 1-62, 1-65, 1-68, 1-79, 1-81, 1-153 – 1-159, 2-1, 2-6, 2-8, 8-1, 8-15, 8-31, 9-136, 9-142, 9-148, 10-27, 12-7 – 12-9, 12-11, 12-14, 12-26, 12-41a, 14-3, 15-10, 15-25, 15-75, 15-94 – 15-105

collective advance: 9-102, 9-105, 9-131, 9-240, 12-24, 14-32, 14-52

connected passed pawns: 1-57, 1-58, 1-117, 1-152 – 1-159, 4-37, 5-1 – 5-10, 6-15, 8-20 – 8-31, 9-54 – 9-60, 9-95 – 9-104, 9-235, 9-239, 14-45, 15-20, 15-27, 15-30, 15-36, 15-48, 15-62, 15-73 – 15-75, 15-78, 15-82, 15-85, 15-89, 15-97

cutting a king off: 4-2, 4-5, 4-10 – 4-12, 7-37, 9-23, 9-24, 9-31, 9-71, 9-75, 9-86, 9-89, 9-184, 9-199, 9-209, 9-212, 9-247, 9-248, 9-250, 11-1, 11-4, 12-24, 12-33, 13-38, 13-39, 15-9, 15-14, 15-33, 15-47

cutting a king off along a rank: 8-2, 8-9, 8-22, 9-10, 9-28, 9-30, 9-33, 9-72, 9-73, 9-82, 9-91, 9-102, 9-107, 9-108, 9-110, 9-154, 9-158, 9-178, 9-182, 9-183, 9-185, 9-194, 9-205, 9-208, 9-218, 9-230, 9-233, 9-249, 15-9, 15-91

cutting off a knight: 1-161, 2-12, 2-16, 3-1, 3-2, 3-18, 7-13 – 7-17, 7-30, 7-32, 8-5, 8-11

dangerous corner: 11-1, 11-2, 11-20, 11-43, 11-45, 14-1, 14-2

deflecting knight sacrifice: 3-1 – 3-6, 3-13, 3-19, 7-26

deflection: 2-29, 5-15, 5-23, 5-30, 6-9, 6-11, 6-13, 7-3, 7-4, 7-44, 9-72, 9-75, 9-77, 9-80, 9-81, 9-89, 9-100, 10-33, 13-49, 14-51, 15-25, 15-63, 15-64, 15-79, 15-94

desperado: 9-46, 9-55, 9-146, 13-28, 13-36, 15-80, 15-82

diagonal checks: 12-33

distant opposition: 1-8 – 1-11, 1-15, 1-18, 1-136, 1-148, 1-165

domination: 7-25, 7-44 – 7-48, 7-61, 9-125, 9-126, 10-1, 10-12 – 10-16, 10-19, 11-1, 11-2, 11-7, 11-9, 11-13, 11-15, 11-24, 11-43, 14-55, 15-45, 15-106 – 15-116

double attack: 9-116, 10-5, 10-18, 11-1, 11-2, 11-15, 12-14, 13-2, 13-3, 13-13, 13-14, 14-29, 14-42, 14-45, 14-47, 15-21, 15-79, 15-107, 15-108a, 15-111

driving a bishop off: 6-1 – 6-7, 6-11 – 6-14, 7-8, 7-9, 7-12

driving the king away by vertical checks: 9-74, 9-76, 9-158, 9-159, 9-162, 9-176, 9-195, 9-206

driving the king off: 4-2, 7-54, 7-60, 9-81 – 9-84, 9-249, 11-16, 11-28 – 11-36, 13-3, 13-7, 13-17, 14-1 – 14-3

exchange of pawns: 3-8, 3-21, 5-21, 6-25, 6-28, 6-33, 7-22, 7-36, 7-53, 9-115, 9-119, 9-121, 9-136, 9-149, 9-214, 9-222, 9-228, 9-254, 11-41, 11-50, 12-1, 14-21, 14-29, 14-32, 15-76

exchange of pieces: 1-6, 1-13, 1-24, 1-25, 1-45, 1-53, 1-54, 1-69, 1-75, 1-84, 1-112, 1-113, 1-118 – 1-122, 1-129, 1-130, 1-144, 1-146, 1-158, 1-161, 2-7, 4-17, 6-24, 6-34, 6-38, 6-41, 7-31, 7-41, 9-85, 9-107, 9-108, 9-113, 9-114, 9-116, 9-128, 9-140, 9-151, 9-152, 9-155, 9-199, 9-207, 9-227, 9-248, 9-251

– 9-255, 12-7, 12-13, 12-26, 12-33, 14-19, 14-22, 15-11, 15-32, 15-37, 15-99, 15-113a

exchange sacrifice: 10-20, 10-30, 11-12, 11-16, 11-22, 11-27 – 11-37, 11-42, 14-26, 15-20, 15-45, 15-53, 15-69, 15-72

fixing of pawns: 1-166, 4-26, 6-16, 6-22, 7-18, 7-21, 7-37, 7-49 – 7-52, 9-115, 9-121, 9-214, 9-226, 9-228, 9-233, 9-251

floating square: 1-48 – 1-56, 1-112, 15-59

fork (knight): 2-11, 2-16, 2-28, 3-8, 7-12, 7-17, 7-44, 7-46, 10-32 – 10-35, 12-26, 13-10, 14-43, 15-18, 15-19, 15-62, 15-65, 15-66, 15-79, 15-110, 15-114, 15-115

fortress – binding: 9-88, 9-94a, 10-2, 10-5 – 10-12, 15-72 – 15-75

fortress – bishops of opposite colors: 5-1, 5-2, 5-4 – 5-10, 5-12 – 5-22, 5-24

fortress – elementary, theoretical: 2-4, 2-5, 2-7, 4-1, 4-6 – 4-24, 5-8, 5-21, 7-21, 7-34, 9-5, 9-19, 9-153, 11-3, 11-7, 11-9, 11-11 – 11-15, 11-22, 11-33, 11-38, 11-46 – 11-51, 13-11, 13-12, 13-15, 13-21, 13-24 – 13-33, 13-42, 13-43, 13-48, 14-37, 14-38, 14-46, 15-17, 15-32, 15-91, 16-63, 16-100

fortress – fortified camp: 2-27, 13-36, 13-38, 13-39, 13-46, 14-24, 14-25, 14-39 – 14-43, 15-50, 15-61, 16-66

fortress – imprisoned king: 9-218, 9-230, 15-60 – 15-66

fortress – imprisoned piece: 15-67 – 15-71

fortress – miscellaneous: 7-37 – 7-41, 7-43, 9-181

fortress – pawn barrier: 1-175, 7-61, 15-51 – 15-59

frontal attack, defense by a frontal check: 9-28 – 9-36, 9-100, 9-101, 9-107, 9-114, 9-247, 15-14, 15-44

interference, building a bridge: 1-159, 6-1, 6-6 – 6-11, 6-13 – 6-15, 6-18, 6-26, 7-7, 7-9, 7-10, 7-12, 8-15, 8-16, 8-26, 9-1 – 9-3, 9-59, 9-74, 9-78, 9-80, 9-100, 9-112, 9-114, 9-155, 9-158 – 9-162, 9-174, 9-180, 9-183, 9-196, 9-205 – 9-207, 9-235, 10-32, 10-33, 10-35, 11-20, 12-41a, 15-20, 15-23, 15-24, 15-29, 15-30, 15-34, 15-36, 15-92, 15-94

key squares: 1-1 – 1-6, 1-28, 1-32, 1-33, 1-141

king behind the king: 6-1, 6-6, 6-7, 6-13, 6-26, 7-12

king on the edge of the board – checkmate

threats: 8-20, 8-24, 8-29, 9-4, 9-5, 9-10, 9-16, 9-26, 9-27, 9-32, 9-60, 9-65, 9-66, 9-72, 9-80, 9-85, 9-90, 9-95, 9-203, 9-208, 9-240 – 9-246, 10-15, 10-33, 10-34, 11-43, 14-4 – 14-18, 15-100

king on the edge of the board – squeezing: 1-32, 1-97, 1-99, 1-101, 1-127 – 1-129, 1-134, 1-136, 1-137, 1-167, 1-170, 2-1, 2-2, 2-6, 2-8, 4-5, 4-18, 7-10, 7-21, 7-43, 9-37 – 9-39, 9-172, 9-195, 9-237, 9-255, 15-32, 15-96, 15-105, 16-64

king-to-king: 12-3, 12-8, 12-15

king's activity: 1-82 – 1-87, 1-164, 3-2, 3-4, 7-27, 7-36, 7-51 – 7-54, 9-102, 9-182, 9-185, 9-204, 9-223, 9-224, 9-234 – 9-243, 9-250 – 9-254, 12-25, 12-36, 15-1, 15-2, 15-11, 15-12

knight defends the pawn: 2-18 – 2-29, 3-12, 14-30, 15-114

knight sacrifice: 1-76, 2-9, 3-14, 3-19, 3-21i, 3-25, 4-14, 4-28, 7-31, 7-47, 7-61, 8-14, 10-19, 10-33, 15-16, 15-17, 15-27, 15-67, 15-87, 15-101, 15-107, 15-113a

Lasker's idea: 9-81 – 9-84

long and short sides: 9-1, 9-7, 9-8, 9-14, 9-17 – 9-20, 9-22 – 9-25, 9-31, 9-32

maintaining the zone: 5-12, 5-14, 5-24, 5-38, 5-43, 15-68

mined squares: 1-19 – 1-25, 1-30, 1-31, 1-94, 1-143, 1-144, 1-149, 1-173 – 1-175, 1-177, 1-190, 2-21, 7-47, 9-142, 9-151, 10-4, 15-3, 15-38, 15-39, 15-73, 15-92, 16-93

moving downstairs: 8-1, 8-14, 8-21, 8-27

obstacles in the path of the king: 1-38 – 1-40, 4-28

one-diagonal principle: 4-15, 4-25, 5-1, 5-2, 5-12, 5-25, 5-28 – 5-31, 5-39, 7-17, 15-18, 15-35, 15-84

opposite-color bishops, first defensive

system: 5-26 – 5-35, 5-43, 5-44, 5-48

opposite-color bishops, second defensive

system: 5-36 – 5-49

opposition: 1-1, 1-6, 1-7, 1-12 – 1-14, 1-16, 1-17, 1-28, 1-86, 1-87, 1-99, 1-115, 1-116, 1-137, 1-187, 8-10, 9-128, 9-140, 9-199, 11-42, 15-3, 15-32, 15-37

outflanking: 1-4, 1-7, 1-10, 1-11, 1-15, 1-18, 1-28, 1-148, 1-149, 1-173, 1-185 – 1-187, 5-2 – 5-4, 5-6, 5-9, 8-10, 8-18, 8-19, 10-19, 15-3, 15-37

outside passed pawn: 1-83, 1-103, 1-107, 1-108, 1-110, 1-119 – 1-138, 2-14, 3-7, 3-20, 4-34, 6-16, 7-18, 10-28, 15-3, 15-8, 15-22, 15-38, 15-56

pants: 4-6, 4-25 – 4-29, 4-32, 5-16, 5-28, 5-33, 5-48, 7-25, 7-46, 15-88

passed pawn: 2-9, 2-12 – 2-17, 3-1, 3-2, 3-5, 3-6, 3-16, 3-19, 4-19, 6-31, 7-14, 7-16, 7-17, 7-22 – 7-27, 8-14, 9-89, 9-119, 9-132, 9-248, 9-250, 10-27, 10-32 – 10-35, 11-15, 12-27 – 12-36, 13-9, 13-49, 14-29, 14-36, 15-12, 15-13, 15-23 – 15-25, 15-29, 15-30, 15-33 – 15-35, 15-65, 15-94, 15-104, 15-107

pawn islands: 1-84, 7-49, 9-251, 14-48, 15-2

pawn promotion to a knight: 1-133, 7-26, 8-3 – 8-6, 8-8, 8-11, 8-15, 8-16, 8-22, 8-28, 9-76, 9-91, 12-21, 12-26, 13-10

pawn races: 1-17, 1-30, 1-35, 1-69 – 1-81, 1-87, 9-114, 9-128, 15-3, 15-6, 15-8, 15-26, 15-27

pawn sacrifice: 1-24, 1-38, 1-40, 1-83, 1-88, 1-114, 1-123, 1-124, 1-135, 1-149, 1-159, 2-14, 4-22, 4-25, 5-1, 5-10, 5-21, 5-28, 5-30, 5-37, 5-43, 6-13, 6-33, 6-34, 7-6, 7-38, 7-53, 9-42, 9-70, 9-79, 9-91, 9-111, 9-129, 9-223 – 9-230, 9-234, 9-238, 9-240, 10-7, 10-12, 11-1, 12-7, 12-29, 12-41a, 13-42, 13-43, 13-48, 14-26, 14-35, 14-52, 15-31, 15-39, 15-48, 15-49, 15-52 – 15-54, 15-59, 15-73, 15-84, 15-110

pawns in the crosshairs: 4-30, 4-36, 4-37, 5-1, 5-2, 5-4 – 5-10, 5-13, 5-17, 5-20, 5-31, 5-36, 5-48, 9-27, 9-120, 9-122, 9-158, 9-161, 9-176, 9-178, 9-181, 9-182, 9-185, 9-228, 11-17, 15-11

pendulum: 1-93, 1-94, 1-132, 1-190, 15-8, 15-38

perpetual check, perpetual pursuit: 3-15, 6-26, 8-24, 8-29, 8-35, 9-72, 9-243, 9-246, 9-256, 12-16, 12-17, 12-19, 12-21, 12-28, 12-32, 13-1, 13-5, 13-10, 15-68, 15-75, 15-80, 15-82, 15-104

pin: 1-6, 1-16, 6-7, 6-15, 9-80, 9-127, 9-228, 9-232, 12-41a, 14-15, 14-16, 14-47, 14-51, 14-54, 15-35, 15-72, 15-107, 16-58

principle of two weaknesses, play on both

wings: 1-15, 1-31, 1-87, 1-123, 1-173, 5-38 – 5-43, 7-18, 7-20, 7-22, 9-105, 9-130, 9-223 – 9-226, 10-28

protected passed pawn: 1-32, 1-33, 1-112, 1-139 – 1-150, 1-153 – 1-158, 1-161, 6-15, 15-59

queen sacrifice: 1-12, 12-12, 12-20, 12-26, 13-32, 13-34, 13-35, 13-44, 14-43

reciprocal zugzwang, corresponding

squares: 1-32 – 1-36, 1-57, 1-58, 1-83, 1-101, 1-128, 1-141, 1-142, 1-157, 1-158, 1-180 – 1-190, 2-2, 2-6, 2-20, 2-21, 3-8, 3-8a, 3-13, 4-11, 4-24, 4-29, 4-34, 6-3, 6-12, 6-19, 6-20, 7-2, 7-5, 7-10, 7-11, 7-44, 7-47, 7-48, 7-61, 8-37, 9-32, 9-56 – 9-58, 9-60, 9-62, 9-148, 9-150, 10-9, 10-19, 11-6, 11-8, 11-10, 11-27, 14-50, 15-15, 15-22, 15-39, 15-44, 15-46, 15-47, 15-78, 15-106, 16-101

refuge: 9-17, 9-40, 9-42, 9-43, 9-44, 9-53, 9-56, 9-84, 9-144, 9-149

renegade pawns: 6-21 – 6-24, 6-31, 6-39

reserve tempi: 1-14, 1-85, 1-131, 1-168 – 1-177, 1-191 – 1-193, 12-26, 15-3, 15-37

Réti's idea – chasing two birds at once: 1-41 – 1-48, 1-168, 7-27, 15-6, 15-16

rook's activity: 1-120, 9-105, 9-130, 9-223 – 9-233, 9-246, 9-251 – 9-255, 14-26, 15-2

rook attack of a rook pawn from the side,

Vancura's idea: 9-43, 9-44, 9-46 – 9-52, 9-78, 9-208b, 9-208e, 9-231

rook behind enemy's passed pawn: 8-18, 8-21 – 8-23, 8-31, 9-2, 9-17 – 9-25, 9-40 – 9-48, 9-53, 9-59, 9-60, 9-62, 9-80 – 9-84, 9-95, 9-96a – 9-100, 9-102 – 9-104, 9-139 – 9-208, 9-212 – 9-222, 9-225, 9-

230, 9-235, 9-243, 15-1

rook behind one's own passed pawn: 9-9, 9-10, 9-58, 9-69, 9-72, 9-101, 9-110, 9-130 – 9-137, 9-139, 9-222, 9-226, 9-233, 9-239, 9-246, 9-249, 9-251 – 9-255, 13-7, 13-9, 15-77

rook protection of pawns from the side: 9-68, 9-99, 9-100, 9-106 – 9-114, 9-131, 9-139, 9-158 – 9-168, 9-178 – 9-180, 9-182, 9-185, 9-209 – 9-222

rook sacrifice: 2-8, 8-14, 8-29, 9-59, 9-110, 13-1, 13-5, 14-29, 14-55, 15-24, 15-25, 15-34, 15-35, 15-57, 15-63, 15-64, 15-68, 15-74, 15-77, 15-78, 15-80, 15-83, 15-85, 15-86, 15-89, 15-91, 15-96, 15-97, 15-110, 15-112, 15-115

safe corner: 11-3 – 11-10, 11-22, 11-24, 11-31

self-propelled pawns: 9-54, 9-59, 9-95

semi-stalemate: 1-166 – 1-169, 8-16, 15-60, 16-101

short diagonal: 6-2 – 6-4, 6-11, 6-12, 7-8, 15-18

shouldering: 1-60, 1-71, 1-72, 1-81, 1-95 – 1-101, 1-162, 2-26, 3-17, 4-18, 4-30, 6-6, 6-25, 8-6, 8-8 – 8-10, 8-13, 8-17 – 8-19, 8-27, 9-69, 9-73, 9-74, 9-101, 9-161, 9-184, 10-8, 10-8, 15-6, 15-8, 15-14, 15-15, 15-17, 16-49, 16-79

side checks: 9-1, 9-2, 9-7, 9-8, 9-14 – 9-16, 9-52, 9-66, 9-68, 9-84, 9-93, 9-96a, 9-110, 9-114, 9-119, 9-145, 9-155

skewer check: 1-25, 1-30, 1-64, 1-70, 1-73, 1-81, 6-31, 7-27, 8-1, 8-14, 8-28, 8-36, 9-25, 9-41, 9-42, 9-44, 9-45, 9-48, 9-51, 9-67, 9-69, 9-249, 10-34, 10-35, 12-7, 12-10, 12-12, 14-55, 15-23, 15-36, 15-48, 15-102, 15-107

square: 1-37, 1-159, 1-176, 2-18, 6-10

stalemate: 1-44, 1-61, 1-86, 1-100, 1-165, 1-194, 4-36, 5-4, 7-6, 7-11, 8-1, 8-3, 8-6, 8-11, 8-15, 8-19, 8-27, 9-4, 9-6, 9-11, 9-39, 9-55, 9-67, 9-68, 9-79, 9-84, 9-87, 9-93, 9-138a, 9-151, 9-155, 10-27, 11-6, 11-8, 11-10, 11-45, 12-15, 12-18, 12-20, 12-26, 13-1, 13-5, 14-4, 14-17, 14-18, 14-44, 14-45, 15-41, 15-47, 15-57, 15-76 – 15-92

stalemate refuge: 1-160 – 1-164, 9-146, 15-77

Steinitz's rule: 1-58, 1-82, 1-178 – 1-180, 1-184, 1-191, 3-8, 7-33, 15-41, 15-115, 16-112

strategic double attack: 1-15, 1-31, 1-34, 2-12, 4-32, 11-24, 15-5, 15-8, 15-13, 15-17 – 15-19

the tail-hook (attacking pawns by a king)

from the rear): 4-30, 4-32, 5-5, 5-8, 7-27, 8-21, 8-27, 8-28, 8-30, 9-100, 15-48

triangulation: 1-26 – 1-31, 1-52, 1-56, 1-88, 1-138, 1-153, 1-177, 1-189, 3-19, 6-35, 7-1, 7-44, 9-8, 9-14, 9-143, 9-150, 9-213, 10-10, 10-25, 11-12, 13-2, 13-14, 13-23, 15-39, 15-84, 16-107

umbrella: 9-26, 9-27, 9-87, 9-93, 9-116, 9-242, 9-243, 9-248, 12-25, 12-29

undermining: 1-142, 1-150 – 1-152, 6-24, 9-138a, 9-238, 15-27, 15-42, 15-44

widening the beachhead: 1-83 – 1-86, 1-88, 3-8b, 5-38, 5-40, 6-24, 7-20, 7-53, 9-224, 15-3, 15-22

zigzag: 1-89 – 1-92

zugzwang: 1-39, 1-68, 1-82, 1-83, 1-88, 1-113, 1-151, 2-1, 3-18, 3-21h, 4-5, 4-9, 4-21, 5-3, 5-8, 5-14, 5-20, 5-31, 5-49, 6-2, 6-15, 6-16, 6-24, 6-26, 6-28, 6-33, 6-34, 6-38, 7-1, 7-3, 7-4, 7-6, 7-9, 7-13, 7-15, 7-20, 7-31, 7-46, 7-52, 8-4, 8-30, 9-36, 9-39, 9-69, 9-81, 9-82, 9-93, 9-98, 9-107, 9-119, 9-130, 9-136, 9-146, 9-149, 9-154, 9-155, 9-231, 9-246, 9-249, 10-6, 10-8, 10-12, 10-13, 10-20, 10-28, 11-13, 11-22, 11-28 – 11-31, 11-34, 11-36, 12-38, 13-7, 13-14 – 13-20, 13-29, 13-33, 13-34, 13-37 – 13-42, 14-10, 14-20, 14-29, 15-3, 15-17, 15-31, 15-37, 15-42, 15-43, 15-45, 15-48, 15-49, 15-60, 15-83, 15-84, 15-86, 15-87, 15-89, 15-97, 15-99, 15-101, 15-103, 15-105, 15-111, 15-116, 16-47, 16-50, 16-66, 16-97

zwischenschach prior to a pawn capture: 8-21, 8-25

zwischenschach to gain a tempo: 8-7, 8-12, 8-19, 9-75, 9-111, 9-159, 9-171, 16-85

zwischenzug to gain or lose a tempo 1-16, 1-68, 1-78, 4-12, 6-4, 6-5, 6-13, 6-14, 6-18, 8-10, 9-25, 9-34, 9-69, 9-80, 9-110, 9-113, 9-139, 9-140, 9-181, 9-183, 9-198, 9-201, 9-242, 10-19, 10-31, 11-3, 11-4, 11-53, 15-5, 15-50, 15-91, 15-106, 15-114

Table of Contents

Title page	10
From the Author, First Edition	12
Introduction to the Fifth Edition	17
Foreword by Vladimir Kramnik	19
Other Signs, Symbols, and Abbreviations	21
Key Squares	23
Corresponding Squares	2
Opposition	2
Mined Squares	2
Triangulation	50
Other Cases of Correspondence	2
King vs. Passed Pawns	2
The Rule of the Square	2
Réti's Idea	2
The Floating Square	2
Three Connected Pawns	85
Queen vs. Pawns	2
Knight or Center Pawn	2
Rook or Bishop Pawn	2
Pawn Races	2
The Active King	111
Zugzwang	2
Widening the Beachhead	2
The King Routes	2
Zigzag	2
The Pendulum	2
Shouldering	2
Breakthrough	138
The Outside Passed Pawn	2
Two Rook Pawns with an Extra Pawn on the Opposite Wing	2
The Protected Passed Pawn	2
Two Pawns to One	2

Multi-Pawn Endgames	177
Undermining	2
Two Connected Passed Pawns	2
Stalemate	2
The Stalemate Refuge	2
“Semi-Stalemate”	2
Reserve Tempi	209
Exploiting Reserve Tempi	2
Steinitz’s Rule	2
The g- and h-Pawns vs. the h-Pawn	2
The f- and h-Pawns vs. the h-Pawn	2
Both Sides have Reserve Tempi	2
King in the Corner	237
The Knight Defends the Pawn	2
The Deflecting Knight Sacrifice	269
The Elementary Fortresses	307
The Most Important Rules	347
The King Blockades the Passed Pawn	376